

Sixth Edition

INTERNATIONAL LAW



MALCOLM N. SHAW

CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE

www.cambridge.org/9780521899291

This page intentionally left blank

INTERNATIONAL LAW

Sixth edition

Malcolm Shaw's engaging and authoritative *International Law* has become the definitive textbook for instructors and students alike, in this increasingly popular field of academic study. The hallmark writing style provides a stimulating account, motivating students to explore the subject more fully, while maintaining detail and academic rigour. The analysis integrated in the textbook challenges students to develop critical thinking skills. The sixth edition is comprehensively updated throughout and is carefully constructed to reflect current teaching trends and course coverage. The International Court of Justice is now examined in a separate dedicated chapter and there is a new chapter on international criminal law. The detailed references and reliable, consistent commentary which distinguished previous editions remain, making this essential reading for all students of international law whether they be at undergraduate level, postgraduate level or professional lawyers.

MALCOLM N. SHAW, QC is the Sir Robert Jennings Professor of International Law at the University of Leicester. One of the world's leading international lawyers, he has been awarded the decoration of 'Officier de l'Ordre de la Valeur' by the Republic of Cameroon. He is a member of the Advisory Council of the British Institute of International and Comparative Law and a founding member of the Curatorium, Xiamen Academy of International Law. He is also a practising barrister at Essex Court Chambers.

INTERNATIONAL LAW

Sixth edition

MALCOLM N. SHAW QC

*Sir Robert Jennings Professor of International Law
University of Leicester*



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

Published in the United States of America by Cambridge University Press, New York

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521899291

© M. N. Shaw 2008

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provision of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published in print format 2008

ISBN-13 978-0-511-45559-9 eBook (EBL)

ISBN-13 978-0-521-89929-1 hardback

ISBN-13 978-0-521-72814-0 paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of urls for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate.

For my wife Judith

CONTENTS

Preface page **xxi**

Table of cases **xxiii**

Table of treaties and selected other international instruments **lxxxi**

List of abbreviations **clxii**

1	The nature and development of international law	1
	Law and politics in the world community	2
	The role of force	4
	The international system	5
	The function of politics	11
	Historical development	13
	Early origins	14
	The Middle Ages and the Renaissance	19
	The founders of modern international law	22
	Positivism and naturalism	24
	The nineteenth century	27
	The twentieth century	30
	Communist approaches to international law	31
	The Third World	38
2	International law today	43
	The expanding legal scope of international concern	43
	Modern theories and interpretations	49
	Positive Law and Natural Law	49
	New approaches	54
	The fragmentation of international law?	65
	Conclusion	67
3	Sources	69
	Custom	72

Introduction	72
The material fact	76
What is state practice?	81
<i>Opinio juris</i>	84
Protest, acquiescence and change in customary law	89
Regional and local custom	92
Treaties	93
General principles of law	98
Equity and international law	105
Judicial decisions	109
Writers	112
Other possible sources of international law	113
The International Law Commission	119
Other bodies	121
Unilateral acts	121
Hierarchy of sources and <i>jus cogens</i>	123
4 International law and municipal law	129
The theories	131
The role of municipal rules in international law	133
International law before municipal courts	138
The United Kingdom	139
Customary international law	141
Treaties	148
The United States	157
Other countries	166
Justiciability, act of state and related doctrines	179
Executive certificates	192
5 The subjects of international law	195
Legal personality – introduction	195
States	197
Creation of statehood	197
Self-determination and the criteria of statehood	205
Recognition	207
Extinction of statehood	208
The fundamental rights of states	211
Independence	211
Equality	214
Peaceful co-existence	215
Protectorates and protected states	216
Federal states	217
<i>Sui generis</i> territorial entities	224

Mandated and trust territories	224
Germany 1945	227
Condominium	228
International administration of territories	230
Taiwan	234
The ‘Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus’ (TRNC)	235
The Saharan Arab Democratic Republic	236
Various secessionist claimants	237
Associations of states	238
Conclusions	242
Special cases	243
The Sovereign Order of Malta	243
The Holy See and the Vatican City	243
Insurgents and belligerents	245
National liberation movements (NLMs)	245
International public companies	248
Transnational corporations	249
The right of all peoples to self-determination	251
The establishment of the legal right	251
The definition of self-determination	256
Individuals	257
International organisations	259
The acquisition, nature and consequences of legal personality – some conclusions	260
6 The international protection of human rights	265
The nature of human rights	265
Ideological approaches to human rights in international law	268
The development of international human rights law	270
Some basic principles	272
Domestic jurisdiction	272
The exhaustion of domestic or local remedies rule	273
Priorities of rights	274
Customary international law and human rights	275
Evolving principles	276
The United Nations system – general	276
The protection of the collective rights of groups and individuals	281
Prohibition of genocide	282
Prohibition of discrimination	286
The principle of self-determination as a human right	289
The protection of minorities	293
Other suggested collective rights	301
The United Nations system – implementation	302

Political bodies – general	303	
The Commission on Human Rights (1946–2006)		304
The Human Rights Council	306	
Expert bodies established by UN organs	307	
The Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights	307	
The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights	308	
Expert bodies established under particular treaties		311
The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination		311
The Human Rights Committee	314	
The Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women	322	
The Committee Against Torture	326	
The Committee on the Rights of the Child		331
The Committee on the Protection of Migrant Workers		333
The Committee on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities		334
The Committee on Enforced Disappearances	334	
Conclusions	335	
The specialised agencies	338	
The International Labour Organisation	338	
The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation	341	

7 The regional protection of human rights 345

Europe	345	
The Council of Europe	345	
The European Convention on Human Rights		347
The convention system	351	
The European Social Charter	360	
The European Convention for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment		362
The Council of Europe Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities	365	
The European Union	369	
The OSCE (Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe)	372	
The CIS Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms	378	
The Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and Herzegovina		379
The Inter-American Convention on Human Rights		381
The Banjul Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights		391
The Arab Charter on Human Rights	395	

8 Individual criminal responsibility in international law	397
International criminal courts and tribunals	399
The International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia (ICTY)	402
The International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (ICTR)	407
The International Criminal Court (ICC)	410
Hybrid courts and other internationalised domestic courts and tribunals	417
The Special Court for Sierra Leone	418
The Extraordinary Chambers of Cambodia	421
Kosovo Regulation 64 panels	423
East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes	424
The Bosnia War Crimes Chamber	426
The Special Tribunal for Lebanon	427
The Iraqi High Tribunal	428
The Serbian War Crimes Chamber	429
International crimes	430
Genocide	430
War crimes	433
Crimes against humanity	436
Aggression	439
Conclusion – fair trial provisions	440
9 Recognition	444
Recognition of states	445
Recognition of governments	454
<i>De facto</i> and <i>de jure</i> recognition	459
Premature recognition	460
Implied recognition	462
Conditional recognition	465
Collective recognition	465
Withdrawal of recognition	466
Non-recognition	468
The legal effects of recognition	470
Internationally	470
Internally	471
The UK	472
The USA	482
10 Territory	487
The concept of territory in international law	487
Territorial sovereignty	489
New states and title to territory	492

The acquisition of additional territory	495
Boundary treaties and boundary awards	495
Accretion	498
Cession	499
Conquest and the use of force	500
The exercise of effective control	502
Intertemporal law	508
Critical date	509
Sovereign activities (<i>effectivités</i>)	511
The role of subsequent conduct: recognition, acquiescence and estoppel	515
Conclusions	520
Territorial integrity, self-determination and sundry claims	522
The doctrine of <i>uti possidetis</i>	525
Beyond <i>uti possidetis</i>	528
International boundary rivers	531
The Falkland Islands	532
‘The common heritage of mankind’	533
The polar regions	534
Leases and servitudes	538
The law of outer space	541
The definition and delimitation of outer space	543
The regime of outer space	544
Telecommunications	549
11 The law of the sea	553
The territorial sea	556
Internal waters	556
Baselines	558
Bays	562
Islands	564
Archipelagic states	565
The width of the territorial sea	568
The juridical nature of the territorial sea	569
The right of innocent passage	570
Jurisdiction over foreign ships	574
International straits	575
The contiguous zone	578
The exclusive economic zone	580
The continental shelf	584
Definition	586
The rights and duties of the coastal state	588

Maritime delimitation	590
Conclusion	605
Landlocked states	607
The high seas	609
Jurisdiction on the high seas	611
Exceptions to the exclusivity of flag-state jurisdiction	614
Right of visit	614
Piracy	615
The slave trade	616
Unauthorised broadcasting	617
Hot pursuit	617
Collisions	618
Treaty rights and agreements	619
Pollution	620
Straddling stocks	623
The international seabed	628
Introduction	628
The 1982 Law of the Sea Convention (Part XI)	629
The Reciprocating States Regime	631
The 1994 Agreement on Implementation of the Seabed Provisions of the Convention on the Law of the Sea	632
The International Seabed Authority	633
Settlement of disputes	635
The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea	638
12 Jurisdiction	645
The principle of domestic jurisdiction	647
Legislative, executive and judicial jurisdiction	649
Civil jurisdiction	651
Criminal jurisdiction	652
The territorial principle	652
The nationality principle	659
The passive personality principle	664
The protective principle	666
The universality principle	668
War crimes, crimes against peace and crimes against humanity	668
Treaties providing for jurisdiction	673
Illegal apprehension of suspects and the exercise of jurisdiction	680
The US Alien Tort Claims Act	683
Extradition	686
Extraterritorial jurisdiction	688

13	Immunities from jurisdiction	697
	Sovereign immunity	697
	The absolute immunity approach	701
	The restrictive approach	704
	Sovereign and non-sovereign acts	708
	State immunity and violations of human rights	715
	Commercial acts	718
	Contracts of employment	725
	Other non-immunity areas	727
	The personality issue – instrumentalities and parts of the state	728
	The personality issue – immunity for government figures	735
	Waiver of immunity	740
	Pre-judgment attachment	742
	Immunity from execution	744
	The burden and standard of proof	748
	Conclusion	749
	Diplomatic law	750
	The Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, 1961	752
	The inviolability of the premises of the mission	754
	The diplomatic bag	759
	Diplomatic immunities – property	762
	Diplomatic immunities – personal	764
	Waiver of immunity	771
	Consular privileges and immunities: the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963	772
	The Convention on Special Missions, 1969	774
	The Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations of a Universal Character, 1975	775
	The immunities of international organisations	776
14	State responsibility	778
	The nature of state responsibility	781
	The question of fault	783
	Imputability	785
	<i>Ultra vires</i> acts	788
	State control and responsibility	789
	Mob violence, insurrections and civil wars	791
	Circumstances precluding wrongfulness	793
	Invocation of state responsibility	799
	The consequences of internationally wrongful acts	800
	Cessation	800
	Reparation	801

	Serious breaches of peremptory norms (<i>jus cogens</i>)	807
	Diplomatic protection and nationality of claims	808
	The exhaustion of local remedies	819
	The treatment of aliens	823
	The relevant standard of treatment	824
	The expropriation of foreign property	827
	The property question	830
	The nature of expropriation	830
	Public purposes	833
	Compensation	834
	Bilateral investment treaties	837
	Lump-sum agreements	840
	Non-discrimination	842
	The Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency	842
15	International environmental law	844
	State responsibility and the environment	851
	The basic duty of states	851
	The appropriate standard	853
	Damage caused	856
	Liability for damage caused by private persons	858
	Prevention of transboundary harm from hazardous activities	859
	The problems of the state responsibility approach	862
	International co-operation	862
	Atmospheric pollution	871
	Ozone depletion and global warming	875
	Outer space	881
	International watercourses	883
	Ultra-hazardous activities	887
	Nuclear activities	888
	The provision of information	890
	The provision of assistance	891
	Nuclear safety	892
	Civil liability	893
	Hazardous wastes	895
	Marine pollution	898
	Pollution from ships	898
16	The law of treaties	902
	The making of treaties	907
	Formalities	907
	Consent	909

Consent by signature	910	
Consent by exchange of instruments		911
Consent by ratification	911	
Consent by accession	913	
Reservations to treaties	913	
Entry into force of treaties	925	
The application of treaties	926	
Third states	928	
The amendment and modification of treaties		930
Treaty interpretation	932	
Invalidity, termination and suspension of the operation of treaties	939	
General provisions	939	
Invalidity of treaties	940	
Municipal law	940	
Error	941	
Fraud and corruption	942	
Coercion	942	
<i>Jus cogens</i>	944	
Consequences of invalidity	944	
The termination of treaties	945	
Termination by treaty provision or consent		945
Material breach	947	
Supervening impossibility of performance		949
Fundamental change of circumstances		950
Dispute settlement	952	
Treaties between states and international organisations		953
17 State succession	956	
Continuity and succession	960	
Succession to treaties	966	
Categories of treaties: territorial, political and other treaties		967
Succession to treaties generally	970	
Absorption and merger	971	
Cession of territory from one state to another		973
Secession from an existing state to form a new state or states		974
‘Newly independent states’	977	
Dissolution of states	979	
International human rights treaties		981
Succession with respect to matters other than treaties		985
Membership of international organisations		985
Succession to assets and debts	986	

	State property	987	
	State archives	993	
	Public debt	996	
	Private rights	1001	
	State succession and nationality	1004	
	Hong Kong	1008	
18	The settlement of disputes by peaceful means		1010
	Diplomatic methods of dispute settlement	1014	
	Negotiation	1014	
	Good offices and mediation	1018	
	Inquiry	1019	
	Conciliation	1022	
	International institutions and dispute settlement	1024	
	Regional organisations	1024	
	The African Union (Organisation of African Unity)		1026
	The Organisation of American States	1030	
	The Arab League	1031	
	Europe	1032	
	International organisations and facilities of limited competence	1034	
	Binding methods of dispute settlement	1047	
	Arbitration	1048	
19	The International Court of Justice		1057
	The organisation of the Court	1058	
	The jurisdiction of the Court	1064	
	General	1064	
	The nature of a legal dispute	1067	
	Contentious jurisdiction	1070	
	Article 36(1)	1075	
	Article 36(2)	1081	
	Sources of law, propriety and legal interest		1086
	Evidence	1088	
	Provisional measures	1093	
	Counter-claims	1096	
	Third-party intervention	1097	
	Remedies	1101	
	Enforcement	1104	
	Application for interpretation of a judgment		1105
	Application for revision of a judgment	1105	
	Examination of a situation after the judgment		1107
	The advisory jurisdiction of the Court	1108	

	The role of the Court	1113
	Proliferation of courts and tribunals	1115
20	International law and the use of force by states	1118
	Law and force from the 'just war' to the United Nations	1119
	The UN Charter	1123
	'Force'	1124
	'Against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state'	1126
	Categories of force	1128
	Retorsion	1128
	Reprisals	1129
	The right of self-defence	1131
	The protection of nationals abroad	1143
	Conclusions	1145
	Collective self-defence	1146
	Intervention	1147
	Civil wars	1148
	Aid to the authorities of a state	1151
	Aid to rebels	1152
	The situation in the Democratic Republic of the Congo	1154
	Humanitarian intervention	1155
	Terrorism and international law	1159
21	International humanitarian law	1167
	Development	1168
	The scope of protection under international humanitarian law	1170
	The wounded and sick	1171
	Prisoners of war	1172
	Protection of civilians and occupation	1176
	The conduct of hostilities	1184
	Armed conflicts: international and internal	1190
	Non-international armed conflict	1194
	Enforcement of humanitarian law	1199
	Conclusion	1201
22	The United Nations	1204
	The UN System	1204
	The Security Council	1206
	The General Assembly	1210
	Other principal organs	1213
	The peaceful settlement of disputes	1216
	The League of Nations	1216

The United Nations system	1217
The Security Council	1218
The General Assembly	1221
The Secretary-General	1222
Peacekeeping and observer missions	1224
Conclusion	1233
The collective security system	1235
The Security Council	1236
Determination of the situation	1236
Chapter VII measures	1241
The use of force in non-enforcement situations	1257
The range of UN actions from humanitarian assistance to enforcement – conclusions	1266
The Security Council, international law and the International Court of Justice	1268
The role of the General Assembly	1271
The UN and regional arrangements and agencies	1273
23 International institutions	1282
Introduction	1282
A brief survey of international institutions	1284
Institutions of a universal character	1284
Regional institutions	1287
Europe	1288
The American continent	1291
The Arab League	1292
Africa	1293
Asia	1294
Some legal aspects of international organisations	1295
Personality	1296
The constituent instruments	1303
The powers of international institutions	1306
The applicable law	1309
The responsibility of international institutions	1310
Liability of member states	1314
The accountability of international institutions	1317
Privileges and immunities	1318
Dissolution	1329
Succession	1330
 <i>Some useful international law websites</i>	 1332
 <i>Index</i>	 1342

PREFACE

The fifth edition of this book that appeared in 2003 has been extensively revised. To mark the growing importance of the international prosecution of alleged war criminals and others accused of egregious crimes, a new chapter on Individual Criminal Responsibility in International Law has been introduced. The chapter on Air and Space Law has had to be removed, with the section on Outer Space being moved to the chapter on Territory. The increasing significance of the International Court of Justice is recognised by devoting a separate chapter to it. The section on the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea has been moved to the chapter on the Law of the Sea. The other chapters in the book have been re-examined, updated and, where necessary, rewritten. I have also been able to correct some errors. I am particularly delighted that the book has been translated into, among other languages, Chinese, Polish, Hungarian and Portuguese and I am very grateful for the work of all those involved.

I would especially like to thank Sinead Moloney of Cambridge University Press for her encouragement, assistance and above all patience. Particular gratitude is owed to Merel Alstein for her meticulous research assistance and for updating the web reference section. I am, once again, very grateful to Diane Illott for her careful and thorough copy-editing and to Maureen MacGlashan for so carefully preparing the index and tables respectively. A debt remains to Sir Elihu Lauterpacht QC for his encouragement in the early development of this work. I also remain grateful to my many colleagues from many countries for their advice and encouragement, while reassuring them that all responsibility for the end product rests squarely with me.

As ever, the real and deepest thanks are due to my wife Judith and my children, Talia, Ilan and Daniella. They have borne the brunt of my travails over the years and endured the inevitable pressures and have done so in a caring and loving manner. Their support remains the indispensable foundation of this work.

Malcolm N. Shaw QC
Faculty of Law
University of Leicester
Spring 2008

TABLE OF CASES

Note: Figures in square brackets refer to volume and page of the *Annual Digest/International Law Reports* where cited cases are reproduced. ‘*Et al.*’ reflects the fact that the *Annual Digest* practice was to reproduce reports in sections according to subject matter so that reports are liable to be distributed throughout a volume.

Pº Congreso Del Partido [64 ILR 154] 145 n72, 699 n699, 707, 710–13, 714, 719, 735 n205

A v. B 1323 n184

A. Ahlström Oy v. Commission: *see* Woodpulp Cases (Ahlström Osakeyhtiö and Others v. Commission (*In re* Wood Pulp Cartel) (Joined Cases 89/85, 104/85, 114/85, 116–17/85 and 125–9/85)) [96 ILR 148]

A and B v. State of Israel 166 n190, 1174 n33

A Company Ltd v. Republic of X [87 ILR 412] 740 n237, 743, 748 n280, 771–2

A (FC) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 150, 153 n119

A Limited v. B Bank and Bank of X [111 ILR 590] 182

A and Others v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 140 n50

AA v. Azerbaijan 329 n351

Aaland Islands case 200–1, 251–2, 489 n12, 539–40, 969

Abbasi and Juma case [123 ILR 599; 126 ILR 685] 130, 181 n269, 182 n276, 187, 188, 811 n212, 812

Abbott v. Republic of South Africa (Decision No. 107/92) [113 ILR 411] 707, 746 n263, 747–8

Abu Dhabi Arbitration (Petroleum Development Limited/Sheikh of Abu Dhabi) [18 ILR 144] 105 n146, 585 n144

Re Accession of the European Community to the Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms (Opinion 2/94) [108 ILR 225] 369

- Acquisition of Polish Nationality (Series B, No. 7) [2 AD 292] 1004 n249
- Adams v. Adams [52 ILR 45] 478, 479 n135
- Ex parte* Adan 185
- ADM Milling Company v. Republic of Bolivia [63 ILR 56] 721
- Administration des Chemins de Fer du Gouvernement Iranien v. Société
Levant Express Transport [52 ILR 315] 707 n52
- Administration des Douanes v. Société Cafés Jacques Vabre and Weigel
et Compagnie [93 ILR 240] 174
- Administrative Tribunal case: *see* United Nations Administrative
Tribunal, Effect of Awards of Compensation [21 ILR 310]; United
Nations Administrative Tribunal, Review of Judgment
- Advocaten voor de Wereld v. Leden van de Ministerraad (judgment of
3 May 2007) (Case C-303/05) 371
- AE v. Switzerland 274 n48
- Aegean Sea Continental Shelf case (Greece v. Turkey) [60 ILR 511] 905
n10, 907 n25
- Aegean Sea Continental Shelf case (Greece v. Turkey) (Interim
Measures) [60 ILR 524] 1054
- Aegean Sea Continental Shelf case (Greece v. Turkey) (Jurisdiction) [60
ILR 562] 508–9, 1066, 1220, 1221
- Aerial Incident of 27 July 1955 case (Preliminary Objections) (Israel v.
Bulgaria) [27 ILR 557] 785, 821 n257, 1081 n162, 1083
- Aerial Incident (USA v. USSR) case 1076 n132
- Aerotrade Inc. and Aerotrade International Inc. v. Republic of Haiti [63
ILR 41] 723
- Affo and Another v. Commander Israel Defence Force in the West Bank
(HC 785/87); Rafia and Another v. Commander Israel Defence
Force in the Gaza Strip and Another (HC 845/87); Hindi v.
Commander Israel Defence Force in the Judea and Samaria Region
(HC 27/88) [83 ILR 121] 166 n190
- Afouneh v. Attorney-General (Palestine) [10 AD 327] 681
- AFRC case 420
- Agassi v. Robinson (Inspector of Taxes) 653 n37
- Agbor v. Metropolitan Police Commissioner [52 ILR 382] 765 n374
- AGIP Spa v. People's Republic of the Congo [67 ILR 318] 831 n311, 833
n323, 836 n342, 1042 n194
- Ex parte* Ahmed and Patel 151
- Ahmend Ali Al-Kateb v. Goodwin 168 n204, 170
- AIC Ltd v. Nigeria [129 ILR 571] 720, 745
- AIG v. Iran [84 ILR 645] 192 n348, 831, 837 n350

- AIG Capital Partners Inc. v. Kazakhstan 745
Air India v. Wiggins [77 ILR 276] 688 n217
Air Services Agreement of 27 March 1946 case (United States/France)
[54 ILR 303] 794 n93, 795, 949 n214
The Akademik Fyodorov [131 ILR 460] 742, 746
Akayesu case (ICTR-96-4-T) 409, 431, 432, 438
Akdeniz v. Turkey 358 n87, 359 n88
Akdivar v. Turkey 274 n49, 355
Aksoy v. Turkey 358 n57
Al-Adsani v. Government of Kuwait and Others [100 ILR 465, 103 ILR
420, 107 ILR 536] 647, 716
Al-Adsani v. United Kingdom (Application No 35763/97) (Merits) [123
ILR 24] 126, 147 n244, 326, 349, 716–17
Re Al-Fin Corporation's Patent [52 ILR 68] 455, 479
Al-Jedda case 127 n245, 139, 1183
Al-Rawi case: *see* R (Al-Rawi) v. Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs
Al Sabah v. Grupo Torras SA 653 n37
Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence [133 ILR 693] 138 n41, 153
n119, 653 nn33 and 37, 663 n72, 1183 n79
Alabama Claims 111, 135, 941, 1048
Alamieyeseigha v. CPS 734
Alcom Ltd v. Republic of Colombia [74 ILR 170] 707, 718 n111, 719,
746–7, 762
Alconbury case: *see* R (on the Application of Alconbury Ltd) v. Secretary
of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions
Alejandre v. Republic of Cuba and the Cuban Air Force [121 ILR 603]
126 n238, 715 n95
Alemán Lacayo v. Nicaragua 387
Alfred Dunhill of London Inc. v. Republic of Cuba *et al.* [66 ILR 212]
192, 705, 722–3
Re Alien Children Education Litigation 160 n161
Aloeboetoe v. Suriname 801 n150
Alvarez *et al.* v. Colombia 387 n247
Alvarez-Machain case [95 ILR 355] 147 n88, 160–1, 681–2, 685, 686
Amalgamated Metal Trading v. Department of Trade and Industry
180
Ambatielos Claim (Greece v. United Kingdom) [23 ILR 306, 24 ILR 291]
273, 820, 936, 946, 1051 n253, 1056
Ambatielos Claim (Greece v. United Kingdom) (Preliminary
Objections) [19 ILR 416] 1081

- AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia [89 ILR 366] 100 n116, 101 n124, 103, 107 n157, 825, 828, 836, 1042
- Amerada Hess Shipping Corporation v. Argentine Republic [79 ILR 1] 160 n160, 685
- American Insurance Association v. Garamendi 189
- Aminoil case (Government of Kuwait and American Independent Oil Company) [66 ILR 518] 802 n155, 804 n166, 829 n298, 834, 835
- Amoco International Finance Corporation v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 56) [83 ILR 500] 837
- Amoco Overseas Oil Company and Amoco Transport Company v. Compagnie Nationale Algérienne de Navigation and T/S Amenas [63 ILR 252] 721 n131
- AN International Bank Plc v. Republic of Zambia and Others [118 ILR 602] 749 n285
- Anderson v. NV Transandine Handelmaatschappij *et al.* [10 AD 10] 194 n359
- Anderson case: *see* R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Anderson
- Anglo-French Continental Shelf case (First Decision) [54 ILR 6] 107 n161, 111 n182, 556 n9, 593, 594 n198, 595, 600, 601 n241, 603 nn257 and 259, 606, 638 n425, 916, 920–1, 938, 1054–5
- Anglo-Iranian Oil Company case (Interim Measures) [19 ILR 501] 901, 1094
- Anglo-Iranian Oil Company case (Preliminary Objection) [19 ILR 507] 136, 905
- Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries case [18 ILR 86] 77, 78 n29, 83 n44, 90, 110, 134 n19, 507, 513, 517, 518–19, 520, 559–61, 562, 570 n84, 590–1, 609, 610, 638, 648, 656
- The Anna* 498
- The Annette* [1 AD 43] 472
- Antarctic cases (1958) 1076 n132
- Antarctica Legal Status case [108 ILR 654] 536 n274
- The Antelope* 650
- Applicability of Article VI, Section 22, of the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations [85 ILR 300] 1325
- Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate under Section 21 of the United Nations Headquarters Agreement of 26 June 1947 [82 ILR 225] 135, 165, 941 n182, 1068, 1113 n357, 1311, 1320
- Application for Arrest Warrant Against General Shaul Mofaz 740 n235
- Aquarone case 174 n236

- Arab Monetary Fund v. Hashim and Others (No. 3) [83 ILR 243, 85 ILR 1] 479 n139, 1301–2
- The Arantzazu Mendi* [9 AD 60] 474, 481
- Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989, Case concerning (Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal) (Request for Indication of Provisional Measures and Judgment) [92 ILR 1] 1093 n238, 1094 nn243 and 244
- Arbitral Award Made by the King of Spain on 23 December 1906 case (Honduras v. Nicaragua) [30.457] 518 n177, 939 n175, 1053 n268, 1054
- Argentina (Republic of) and Others v. Weltover Inc. and Others [100 ILR 509] 722, 724
- Argentina/Chile Frontier case (Palena) [38 ILR 10] 496, 509, 515 n156, 531, 934 n149, 939 n175, 1051 n252, 1055
- Argentine Airlines v. Ross [63 ILR 195] 721
- Re Argoud* [45 ILR 90] 681
- Arkansas v. Tennessee [9 AD 112] 498
- Armament Dieppe SA v. United States 557 n16
- Armando Dos Santos case 425
- Armed Actions case: *see* Nicaragua v. Honduras (Border and Transborder Armed Actions) [84 ILR 218]
- Armed Activities on the Territory of the Congo (Congo v. Uganda) (Request for Provisional Measures): *see* Congo v. Uganda
- Arrest Warrant case: *see* Congo v. Belgium (Arrest Warrant case)
- Artico case [60 ILR 182] 349, 938
- Artukovic v. Rison (In the Matter of the Extradition of Artukovic) [79 ILR 383] 960 n15
- AS & DD (Libya) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 906 n23
- Ashby case 320
- Asociacion de Reclamantes v. United Mexican States [84 ILR 87] 700
- Assanidze v. Georgia 350 n24
- Associated Provincial Picture Houses Ltd v. Wednesbury Corp. 692 n245
- Association of Lawyers for Peace and Four Other Organizations v. Netherlands 164 n178
- Association SOS Attentats v. France 736
- Asylum case (Colombia v. Peru) (Haya de la Torre case) (Judgment) [17 ILR 280] 76–7, 78, 83, 86 n54, 90 n74, 92, 488, 758–9
- Asylum case (Colombia v. Peru) (Haya de la Torre case) (Request for Interpretation) [17 ILR 339] 1067 n66, 1105
- Asylum case (Colombia v. Peru) (Haya de la Torre case) (Implementation of Judgment) [18 ILR 349] 1065, 1098

- Athens Maritime Enterprises Corporation v. Hellenic Mutual War Risks Association (Bermuda) Limited [78 ILR 563] 615 n323
- Attorney-General (Canada) v. Attorney-General for Ontario [8 AD 41] 151 n106, 166–7, 220
- Attorney-General (England) v. Associated Newspapers Ltd 154 n124
- Attorney-General (England), Reference (No. 1 of 1982) 695 n261
- Attorney-General (Fiji) v. Robt Jones House Ltd [80 ILR 1] 459
- Attorney-General (New Zealand) v. Ortiz and Others [78 ILR 591] 650
- Attorney-General (New Zealand) v. Zaoui 167 n197
- Auditing of Accounts between the Netherlands and France 852, 883 n214, 933 n142
- Australia and New Zealand Banking Group v. Commonwealth of Australia 701 n18, 719–20, 721
- Austria v. Altmann 707 n54
- Austria v. Italy 354, 937, 982 n138
- Austro-German Customs Union Regime [6 AD 26, 6 AD 427] 202, 211–12
- Autocephalous Greek-Orthodox Church of Cyprus and the Republic of Cyprus v. Goldberg and Feldman Fine Arts Inc. [108 ILR 488] 236 n203, 484
- Avena (Mexico v. USA) (Provisional Measures) [134 ILR 120] 130, 135–6, 159, 164 n178, 221, 773 n432, 774, 800 n142, 1091 n227, 1093 n238, 1094, 1095 n249, 1101 n292, 1103 nn302 and 305
- In the matter of AY Bank Ltd 185, 988 n168
- Azazh Kebbede Tesema and Others v. Italian Government [9 AD 93] 467
- Azinian v. United Mexican States [121 ILR 1] 789 n62
- Aziz v. Republic of Yemen 740
- Baboeram-Adhin and Others v. Suriname (Communication Nos. 146/1983 and 148–154/1983) [94 ILR 377] 274 n48
- Baccus SRL v. Servicio Nacional del Trigo [23 ILR 160] 703, 729–30, 731
- Bagilishima case (ICTR-95-1A-T) 432
- Baker v. Canada (Minister of Citizenship and Immigration) 169 n211
- Baker v. Carr 189, 190–1
- Ballantyne case 295 n168
- Banamar-Capizzi v. Embassy of the Popular Democratic Republic of Algeria (Case No. 2085) [87 ILR 56] 747
- Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Chase Manhattan Bank [66 ILR 421] 834 n329
- Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Sabbatino *et al.* [35 ILR 2] 482

- Bancoult v. McNamara 190
- Bancoult case 188
- Bandes v. Harlow and Jones Inc.; Harlow and Jones Inc. v. Bandes and Alvarez [92 ILR 468] 192
- Bank of Hawaii v. Balos 225 n140
- Banković v. Belgium and Others (Application No. 52207/99) (Admissibility) [123 ILR 94] 349, 350, 653, 1185 n88
- Barbados v. Trinidad 592, 601 n245, 605, 606, 636 n410, 1016 n24, 1055
- Barbie [78 ILR 124, 100 ILR 330] 174 n236, 670, 671
- Barcelona Traction, Light and Power Company Ltd, Case concerning (New Application, 1962) (Belgium v. Spain) (Second Phase) [46 ILR 178] 105, 107, 124, 137, 250, 800, 811, 816–17, 818, 841 n369, 982, 1081, 1147 n149
- Barrandon v. United States [113 ILR 464, 116 ILR 622] 726–7
- Bašić *et al.* v. Republika Srpska 380 n212
- BCCI (In Liquidation) v. Price Waterhouse (A Firm) and Others [111 ILR 604] 734
- Beagle Channel Arbitration (Argentina/Chile) [52 ILR 93] 111 n182, 124 n228, 496 n49, 499 n65, 510, 522, 526, 570, 903 n4, 934 n148, 968 n65, 1018 n38, 1051 n252, 1054–5
- BECTU case 371
- Beer and Regan v. Germany 1322
- Behrami v. France 350–1, 787–8, 1312 n143, 1313 n144, 1317 n161
- Behring International Inc. v. Imperial Iranian Air Force *et al.* [63 ILR 261] 742 n248
- Behring Sea Arbitration 1048, 1092 n232
- Beit Sourik v. Government of Israel [129 ILR 189] 1182
- Belgian Linguistics case [45 ILR 114] 288, 348 n14, 355
- Belgium v. Nicod and Another [82 ILR 124] 755 n316
- Belgium (Government) v. Postlethwaite 687 n211
- Belgium/Netherlands Frontier case [27 ILR 62] 1075 n127
- Belilos v. Switzerland [88 ILR 635] 916–17, 922
- Benaïm c. Procureur de la République de Bordeaux 216 n97
- Benin/Niger 137 n35, 510, 515 n153, 531, 542, 1063
- Benvenuti and Bonfant Srl v. Government of the People's Republic of the Congo [65 ILR 88, 67 ILR 345] 831 n311, 836 n340, 1042 n194
- Bergman v. de Sieyès [14 AD 150] 769 n403
- Berizzi Brothers Company v. SS *Pesaro* [3 AD 186] 703
- Berry case 321
- Beth El Mission v. Minister of Social Welfare (Israel) [47 ILR 205] 280

- Bhajan Singh case: *see* R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Bhajan Singh [61 ILR 260]
- Biloune and Marine Drive Complex Ltd v. Ghana Investments Centre and the Government of Ghana [95 ILR 183] 831–2, 836 n343
- Birch Shipping Corporation v. Embassy of the United Republic of Tanzania [63 ILR 524] 747
- Blagojević case (IT-02-60-A) 433 n199, 443 n229
- Blaškić case (IT-95-14-T) [122 ILR 1] 437
- Blathwayte v. Baron Cawley 154, 186 n306
- B.M. 173
- Re* Bo Xilai 775 n444
- Board of Trade v. Owen 655
- Boffolo case 826
- Bolivian Railway Company case 792 n76
- Boos, Waller and Brooker v. Barry and Others [121 ILR 499] 7, 157, 754–5, 764
- Border and Transborder Armed Actions case: *see* Nicaragua v. Honduras (Border and Transborder Armed Actions) [84 ILR 218]
- Bosphorus Airways v. Ireland 351 n27, 788 n56, 1317 n161
- Botswana/Namibia case 496 n49, 497, 499 n61, 504–5, 513, 531, 933 n142, 934
- Re* Bottali [78 ILR 105] 978 n121
- Boucherf v. Algeria 320 n299
- Boudellaa *et al.* v. Bosnia and Herzegovina and the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina 380 n213, 1163 n228
- Boumediene v. Bush 1174 n32
- Bouzari and Others v. Islamic Republic of Iran [124 ILR 427] 716
- Boyle and Rice v. UK 356
- BP Exploration Company (Libya) Ltd v. Libyan Arab Republic [53 ILR 297] 803, 833, 1052 n260
- Braka v. Nacional Financiera 722
- Brannigan and McBride v. UK 356, 358 n79
- Branno v. Ministry of War [22 ILR 756] 1300 n74, 1319 n165
- Brazilian Embassy Employee case (Case No. 706) [116 ILR 625] 173, 727
- Brazilian Federal Loans case [5 AD 466] 136 n32, 796 n107
- Brcko Inter-Entity Boundary case 105, 470
- Brdjanin case (IT-99-36-T) 433
- Breard v. Greene; Republic of Paraguay *et al.* v. Gilmore *et al.*; *Re* Breard; Republic of Paraguay *et al.* v. Gilmore III *et al.* [118 ILR 22] 130, 164 n179, 165–6

- Ex parte* Brind [84 ILR 754, 85 ILR 29] 150 n98, 153 n119, 154 n124, 168
- British Airways Board v. Laker Airways Ltd and Another [74 ILR 36] 184, 692
- Ex parte* British Council of Turkish Cypriot Associations and Another [112 ILR 735] 186
- British Guiana/Venezuela Boundary Arbitration 506 n97, 1048, 1052, 1053
- Brogan case 357–8
- Broniowski v. Poland 360 n93
- Brown v. United States 158
- Brown v. Whimster 153
- Brown cases: *see also* R v. Brown; Robert E. Brown Case [2 AD 66]
- Buchanan v. Babco 155
- Buck v. Attorney-General (England) [42 ILR 11] 186, 699
- Buraimi arbitration 1053 n267
- Burkina Faso/Mali Frontier Dispute (Judgment) [80 ILR 459] 89 n69, 107 n155, 108–9, 122 n218, 290–1, 490, 509–10, 514, 519, 522, 523 n205, 526–7, 528 n231, 529–30, 905 n18, 968, 995 n212, 1063
- Burkina Faso/Mali Frontier Dispute (Provisional Measures) [80 ILR 450] 1095 n251
- Buron v. Denman 180–1
- Buttes Gas and Oil Company and Another v. Hammer and Another (Nos. 2 and 3) [64 ILR 331] 186 n301
- Buttes Gas and Oil Company and Another v. Hammer and Another (No. 3) [64 ILR 273] 181–2, 186, 189, 699
- Buvot v. Barbuitt 141
- Café Jaques Vabre case [93 ILR 240] 174
- Caglar v. Billingham (Inspector of Taxes) and Related Appeals [108 ILR 510] 236 n203, 478–9
- Caire case [5 AD 146 *et al.*] 783, 788, 789 n64
- Callejo v. Bancomer SA [84 ILR 106] 722
- Calley v. Calloway 669
- Camacho v. Rogers 163 n178
- Cameroon v. Nigeria (Case concerning the Land and Maritime Boundary Between Cameroon and Nigeria) (Countermeasures: Order of 30 June 1999) 1097, 1100
- Cameroon v. Nigeria (Case concerning the Land and Maritime Boundary Between Cameroon and Nigeria) (Judgment) (2002) 89 n63, 108 n165, 122 n217, 134, 216–17, 224, 496 n45, 497 nn50 and

- 52, 508, 515 n154, 519 n183, 520, 524 n207, 601 n245, 604–5, 606, 607, 907 n27, 908, 909 n35, 910 n43, 934, 940–1, 1016 n29, 1075 n128, 1078, 1103, 1114
- Cameroon v. Nigeria (Case concerning the Land and Maritime Boundary Between Cameroon and Nigeria) (Preliminary Objections) (1998) 103, 104, 110–11, 516, 519 n180, 1016, 1066, 1070, 1075 n122, 1082, 1087 n200
- Cameroon v. Nigeria (Case concerning the Land and Maritime Boundary Between Cameroon and Nigeria) (Provisional Measures) (1996) [106 ILR 144] 1066, 1070 n91, 1093–4, 1095
- Cameroon v. Nigeria (Case concerning the Land and Maritime Boundary Between Cameroon and Nigeria) (Request for Interpretation) (1999) 1105
- The Camouco* (Panama v. France) [125 ILR 164] 642
- Campbell and Cosans case (Merits) [67 ILR 480] 355
- Can and Others v. United States [107 ILR 255] 190, 191
- Canada v. Cargnello (Decision No. 4017/1998) [114 ILR 559] 173 n228, 726 n157
- Canada v. Edelson [131 ILR 279] 755 n314
- Canepa v. Canada 320
- Canevaro case 815 nn233 and 235
- Carbonar v. Magurno (Decision No. 9675/1993) [114 ILR 534] 727
- Carey and New England Petroleum Corporation v. National Oil Corporation and the Libyan Arab Republic [63 ILR 164, 63 ILR 232] 732
- Carl Zeiss Stiftung v. Rayner and Keeler Limited (No. 2) [43 ILR 23] 445, 477–8, 480–1, 482
- The Caroline* 1131, 1139–40, 1145
- Cassell v. Broome 154
- Castillo Páez v. Peru [116 ILR 451] 390 n266
- Castro and Others v. Saudi Arabia [63 ILR 419] 723
- Čelebići case (IT-96-21) 443 n229
- Centre for Industrial Development v. Naidu [115 ILR 424] 746
- Cerrutti arbitrations 1053 n265
- Certain Expenses of the United Nations (Article 17, paragraph 2, of the Charter) [34 ILR 281] 8, 937, 1065 n55, 1066 n57, 1113 n357, 1114, 1272–3, 1295, 1304, 1307
- Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia case [3 AD 5 *et al.*] 101 n120, 103 n136, 137, 806, 824, 833, 911, 1002

- Certain Phosphate Lands in Nauru (Nauru v. Australia) (Preliminary Objections) [97 ILR 1] 224 nn135 and 136
- Certain Shrimp and Shrimp Products case 1038
- CGM Industrial (Pty) Ltd and Others v. KPMG and Others [121 ILR 472] 707 n52
- Chahal v. United Kingdom [108 ILR 385] 358
- Chamizal Arbitration 499 n61, 505–6, 531, 1053 n265
- Champagnie case 321
- Chandler v. Director of Public Prosecutions (England) 181 n269
- Channel Tunnel case: *see* Eurotunnel case (Partial Award); R on the Application of Channel Tunnel Group Ltd and France-Manch SA v. Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions [119 ILR 398]
- The Charkieh* 702 n19
- Chase Manhattan Bank v. Traffic Stream (BVI) Infrastructure Ltd 818 n245
- Re* Chateau-Gai Wines Ltd and Attorney-General for Canada [55 ILR 38] 459
- Chattin case [4 AD 248] 824 nn273 and 275
- Cheney v. Conn [41 ILR 421] 151 n106
- Chierici and Rosa v. Ministry of the Merchant Navy and Harbour Office of Rimini [71 ILR 258] 199 n16
- Children and Adolescents Deprived of Liberty in the ‘Complexo do Tatuapé’ of FEBEM v. Brazil 388
- China (Republic of) v. Merchants’ Fire Assurance Corporation of New York [5 AD 42] 463
- Chisholm and Company and Chisholm v. Bank of Jamaica and Barber [121 ILR 487] 722 n132
- Chorzów Factory case (Germany v. Poland) (Merits) [4 AD 258] 100, 781, 782, 801, 834, 836 n340, 987, 1002 n241, 1102
- Chow Hung Ching and Si Pao Kung v. R [15 AD 147] 167
- Christian v. The Queen [130 ILR 696] 181 n270, 499
- Chrysostomos v. Turkey 355 n52
- Chuan Pu Andrew Wang and Others v. Office of the Federal Prosecutor (Switzerland) 448 n16
- Chumbipuma Aguirre v. Peru (Barrios Altos case) 272 n35, 390
- Chung Chi Cheung v. R [9 AD 264] 143–4, 145
- Chung Kheng Lin v. Minister for Immigration (Australia) 168 n203
- City of Berne v. The Bank of England 472

- Civil Aeronautics Administration v. Singapore Airlines Ltd [133 ILR 371] 464
- Civil Air Transport Inc. v. Central Air Transport Corporation [19 ILR 85] 463, 476–7, 485
- Clark (Inspector of Taxes) v. Oceanic Contractors Inc. 553 n37
- Clerget v. Banque Commerciale pour l'Europe du Nord and Others [65 ILR 54] 463
- Clipperton Island Award (France and Mexico) [6 AD 105] 511 n130, 512
- CME Czech Republic BV v. Czech Republic 802 n150, 805 n172, 832 n312
- CND v. Prime Minister of the UK and Others 180, 181 n269, 184, 185
- Coard v. USA [123 ILR 156] 1197
- Coe (On Behalf of the Wiradjuri Tribe) v. Commonwealth of Australia and Another [118 ILR 322] 168 n201
- Colombia–Venezuela Boundary Arbitration [1 AD 84, 1 AD 371] 526, 968
- Comercial F SA v. Council of Ministers (Case No. 516) [88 ILR 691] 810
- Commercial and Estates Company of Egypt v. Board of Trade [2 AD 11, 2 AD 423] 143 n61
- Commission of the European Communities v. Council of the European Communities (Case 22/70) (ERTA case) [47 ILR 278] 241
- Committee of United States Citizens Living in Nicaragua v. Reagan [85 ILR 248] 158
- Commonwealth of Australia and Another v. State of Tasmania and Others [68 ILR 266] 170 n212, 222
- Compañía de Aguas del Aconquija v. Argentina 136 n29
- Re Competence of Conciliation Commission [22 ILR 867] 1052 n261
- Competence of the European Community to Conclude International Agreements Concerning Services and the Protection of Intellectual Property (Opinion 1/94) [105 ILR 75] 242
- Competence of the General Assembly for the Admission of a State to the United Nations [17 ILR 326] 933, 937 n165, 1210 n27, 1306
- Compulsory Membership in an Association Prescribed by Law for the Practice of Journalism (Articles 13 and 29 American Convention on Human Rights) (Advisory Opinion OC-5/85) [75 ILR 30]: *see* Licensing of Journalists case
- Conditions for Admission of a State to Membership of the United Nations [15 AD 333] 464, 1113 n357, 1210 n27, 1268, 1295
- Condor and Filvem v. Minister of Justice (Italy) (Case No. 329) [101 ILR 394] 743, 747

- Congo v. Belgium (Arrest Warrant case) [128 ILR 60] 82, 112, 397 n4, 653, 654 n38, 666, 669 n102, 674, 739, 1067 n66, 1069 n84, 1070, 1088, 1102
- Congo v. France 1095 n249
- Congo v. Rwanda 285, 921, 925 n109, 1067 n73, 1070 n89, 1071 n29, 1075, 1085, 1093 n238
- Congo v. Uganda 178 n147, 752, 755–6, 765, 801 n149, 1066, 1067 n65, 1071 n100, 1090, 1091, 1096, 1097 n261, 1101 n293, 1103–4, 1116 n374, 1127 n43, 1135–6, 1138 n98, 1142, 1143 n122, 1152 n174, 1153, 1177, 1180, 1181, 1270
- Consortium X v. Swiss Federal Government 1322 n180
- Constitutional Court case 387 n247
- Construction of a Wall case [129 ILR 37] 83, 88, 107, 110, 255, 276, 322, 798 n127, 801 n149, 804 n167, 935 n156, 1060 n17, 1108 n335, 1109, 1111, 1135, 1176 n43, 1177, 1178 n55, 1179, 1180 n62, 1181, 1200 n179
- Controller and Auditor General (New Zealand) v. Sir Ronald Davidson 715
- Cook v. United States (*The Mazel Tov*) [6 AD 3] 158, 164
- Coreck Maritime GmbH v. Sevyrbokholodflot [107 ILR 658] 961 n22
- Corfu Channel case (United Kingdom v. Albania) (Merits) [16 AD 155] 101, 107 n156, 109 n170, 213–14, 280 n81, 575–6, 610, 781 n20, 784–6, 806, 852, 854, 863, 936 n162, 1073, 1077–8, 1089 nn208 and 215, 1092, 1104, 1127, 1148, 1187 n105, 1221
- Corfu Channel case (United Kingdom v. Albania) (Preliminary Objection) [15 AD 349] 1076–7
- Cornejo v. County of San Diego 159 n155
- Corporacion Venezolana de Fomento v. Vintero Sales Corporation *et al.* [63 ILR 299, 63 ILR 477] 721 n131
- Corrie v. Caterpillar 191
- Costa v. ENEL (Ente Nazionale Energia Elettrica) (Case 6/64) [93 ILR 23] 178, 241, 1297 n64
- Council of Civil Service Unions v. Minister for the Civil Service 149, 181 n269, 187
- The Cristina* (Compañía Naviera Vascongado v. SS *Cristina*) [9 AD 250] 144, 653, 702–3, 705
- Croatia *et al.* v. Girocredit Bank AG der Sparkassen 991 n190
- Crotty v. An Taoiseach and Others [93 ILR 480] 170 n217
- Currie case 321
- Cutting case 664–5

Cyprus v. Turkey (Application No. 25781/94) [120 ILR 10] 236, 350, 354, 355 n56, 356, 357, 358, 469–70, 478 n133, 782, 790 n70

Cyprus v. Turkey, Decisions on the Admissibility of the Applications (Nos. 6780/74, 6950/75, 8007/77) [62 ILR 4] 274 n49, 354

Cyprus v. Turkey (First and Second Applications) 1197

Cyprus v. Turkey (Third Application) 354

Cyprus cases (Greece v. UK) 354

Cyprus cases (Greece v. UK) (Second Case) 273, 274 n49

The Cysne (Portugal v. Germany) [5 AD 150 *et al.*] 794 n92

Czarnikow Ltd v. Rolimpex [64 ILR 195, 64 ILR 204] 731

Dadar v. Canada 329

Dallal v. Iran, Bank Mellat (formerly International Bank of Iran) (Case No. 149) [75 ILR 126] 815 n234

Dalmia Cement Company Ltd v. National Bank of Pakistan [67 ILR 611] 1043

Dames & Moore v. Regan [72 ILR 270] 162 n171, 708 n56

Danzig Railway Officials case (Jurisdiction of the Courts of Danzig) [4 AD 281, 4 AD 287] 259

Daventree Ltd v. Azerbaijan 192 n351

Davy case 787 n53

De Andrade v. De Andrade [118 ILR 299] 766 n382, 767 n383

De Becker v. Belgium (No. 214/56) (Admissibility) [25 ILR 172] 355

De Haber v. Queen of Portugal 702 n19

De Queiroz v. State of Portugal [115 ILR 430] 727

De Sanchez v. Banco Central de Nicaragua and Others [88 ILR 75] 160 n163, 711, 828

Definition of Other Treaties Subject to the Interpretation of the Inter-American Court 388

Delagoa Bay case 505 n92

Delalić case (IT-96-21) 326

Delgamuukw and Others v. The Queen in Right of British Columbia and Others; First Nations Summit and Others, Interveners [115 ILR 446] 298 n180

Dellums v. Bush [87 ILR 684] 190 n331

Demjanjuk v. Petrovsky [79 ILR 534] 671 n120

Deputy Registrar case [94 ILR 308] 766

Derbyshire County Council v. Times Newspapers Ltd 154 n124

Deutsche Continental Gas-Gesellschaft v. Polish State [5 AD 11] 200 n19, 448

- Diallo (Guinea v. Democratic Republic of the Congo) 809, 817–18, 819 n250, 820 n253, 1071 n100
- Dickinson v. Del Solar; Mobile and General Insurance Company Ltd (Third Party) [5 AD 299] 766
- Diergaardt *et al.* v. New Zealand 292 n155
- Dietrich v. The Queen 168 n201
- Diggs v. Dent 164
- Diggs v. Schultz [60 ILR 393] 164
- Director of Public Prosecutions v. Doot and Others [57 ILR 117] 654
- Director of Public Prosecutions v. Stonehouse [73 ILR 252] 655
- Distomo Massacre case (Prefecture of Voiotia v. Germany) [129 ILR 556] 728, 1178 n56
- Re* Dittfort, *ex parte* Deputy Commissioner of Taxation [87 ILR 170] 189
- Diversion of Water from the River Meuse (Netherlands v. Belgium) [8 AD 444] 106, 1089
- Djibouti v. France 737, 739 n226, 1061 n20, 1075, 1076 n132
- Re* Doe (Mr and Mrs); Mr and Mrs Doe v. United States [121 ILR 567] 736
- Dole Food Co. v. Patrickson 722 n132
- Donegal v. Zambia 741 n243, 748 n277
- Donnelly case 274 n49
- Dow Chemical Ibérica v. Commission 369–70
- Dr Breger's case* 826 n288
- Draft Convention of the International Atomic Energy Agency on the Physical Protection of Nuclear Materials, Facilities and Transports (Ruling 1/78) [99 ILR 292] 241
- Dralle v. Republic of Czechoslovakia [17 ILR 155] 704–5
- Drozd and Janousek v. France and Spain 274 n49, 349
- Dubai Bank v. Galadari 187
- Dubai/Sharjah Border Arbitration [91 ILR 543] 491, 498, 510 n128, 514 n147, 522, 558, 591, 1049 n233, 1052 n257
- Duc de Guise Claim [18 ILR 423] 787 n53
- Re* Duchy of Sealand [80 ILR 683] 199 n16
- Dudgeon case (Merits) [67 ILR 395] 355 n55, 357 n74
- Duff v. R [73 ILR 678] 765 n370
- Duff Development Company v. Kelantan and Another [2 AD 124, 2 AD 140] 193, 704
- Duggan (State of Ireland) (Duggan v. Tapley) [18 ILR 336] 280
- Dujail case 429

- Duke of Brunswick v. King of Hanover 182 n274, 702
 Dumont v. State of Amazonas [15 AD 140] 733
 Durmic v. Serbia and Montenegro 313 n257
- Eain v. Wilkes [79 ILR 439] 687 n211
 East Timor case (Portugal v. Australia) [105 ILR 226] 88, 114 n193, 124
 n232, 255, 257, 1067 nn69 and 70, 1068, 1088 n202, 1114 n362,
 1219 n76
 East Timor (Democratic Republic of), Fretilin and Others v. State
 (Netherlands) [87 ILR 73] 449
 Eastern Carelia case [2 AD 394] 1051 n253, 1109–11
 Eastern Greenland (Legal Status of) (Denmark v. Norway) [6 AD 95, 6
 AD 428, 6 AD 430] 103 n133, 491, 505 n18, 509 n115, 511, 512–13,
 516 n160, 517, 518, 521 n194, 524 n209, 535, 905 n18, 938, 940
 n178
 Eastern Treaties Constitutionality case [73 ILR 691, 78 ILR 176] 172
 n224
 Eckhardt v. Eurocontrol (No. 2) [94 ILR 331] 1321 n176
 Eckle case (Merits) [68 ILR 48] 355
 Ecuador (Republic of) v. Occidental Exploration and Production Co.
 185
 Edye v. Robertson 163
 EEOR: *see* Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOR) v.
 Arabian American Oil Company and Aramco Services; Ali Boursan
 v. Arabian American Oil Company and Aramco Services [90 ILR
 617]
 Effect of Awards case: *see* United Nations Administrative Tribunal, Effect
 of Awards of Compensation [21 ILR 310]
 Effect of Reservations on the Entry into Force of the American
 Convention (Articles 74 and 75) (OC-2/82) [67 ILR 559] 925 n106,
 937 n167, 982 n138
 Egypt (Arab Republic of) v. Gamal-Eldin [104 ILR 673] 725
 Egyptian Workers' Claims (Report, Final Report and Recommendations
 made by the Panel of Commissioners) [117 ILR 195] 1046 nn214
 and 217, 1047 n221
 Eichmann case [36 ILR 5] 166, 214, 433, 651, 664 n77, 669 n102, 671–2,
 680
 El Salvador v. Nicaragua 563
 El Salvador/Honduras (Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute)
 [97 ILR 112, 97 ILR 266] 89 n66, 92 n82, 109 n169, 154, 229–30,

- 490 n20, 497, 498 n59, 510, 515, 516, 517, 524, 526, 527 n227, 528 n233, 959, 1002 n242, 1063, 1069 n80, 1078 n142, 1089 n218, 1099, 1100–1
- El Salvador/Honduras (Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute: Nicaragua Intervening) [97 ILR 154] 529–30, 554, 563, 1063, 1091, 1098, 1106–7
- Electricity Company of Sofia and Bulgaria (Provisional Measures) (Belgium v. Bulgaria) 1096 n255
- Elettronica Sicola SpA (ELSI) (United States v. Italy): *see* ELSI case (United States v. Italy) [84 ILR 311]
- Ellerman Lines Ltd v. Murray (*The Croxteth Hall*) [5 AD 342] 153
- ELSI case (United States v. Italy) [84 ILR 311] 102–3, 136, 519, 817, 821–2, 1063
- Emin v. Yeldag 479
- Empire of Iran case [45 ILR 57] 705 n34, 707 n52, 709 n64, 711 n69
- Empresa Exportadora de Azucar (Cubazucar) v. Industria Azucarera Nacional SA (IANSA) [64 ILR 368] 182, 700, 735 n205
- Empson v. Smith [41 ILR 407] 769
- Enforceability of the Right to Reply or Correction (Articles 14(1), 1(1) and 2 of the American Convention on Human Rights) (Advisory Opinion OC-7/85) [79 ILR 336] 934 n147
- Entico Corporation v. UNESCO 1322 nn180 and 181
- EP and Others v. Colombia (Communication No. 318/1988) [96 ILR 705] 292
- Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (EEOR) v. Arabian American Oil Company and Aramco Services; Ali Boursan v. Arabian American Oil Company and Aramco Services [90 ILR 617] 688 n217
- Erdemović (Case IT-96-22-A) (Sentencing Appeal) (Appeals Chamber) [111 ILR 298] 137 n34
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Boundary Commission Decision on Delimitation [130 ILR 1] 103 n133, 122 n217, 496, 510, 515, 516, 519–20, 658 n54, 934–5, 1050, 1055
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Eritrea’s Claims (Western Front, aerial bombardment and related claims) [135 ILR 565], 1, 3, 5, 9–13, 14, 21, 25 and 26 1184 n87, 1185 n89
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Eritrea’s Claim 17 (prisoners of war), Partial Award [135 ILR 199] 780, 795, 1168
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Eritrea’s Claim 20, Partial Award [135 ILR 519] 752 n302, 753 n304, 756 n319

- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claims 1–8 (*jus ad bellum*) [135 ILR 479] 1128
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claim 2 (Central Front), Partial Award [135 ILR 334] 1179
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claim 4 (prisoners of war), Partial Award [135 ILR 251] 1172 n27, 1175, 1200 n179
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claim 5 (civilians), Partial Award [135 ILR 427] 780
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claim 8 (diplomatic claim), Partial Award [135 ILR 544] 765 n372
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Ethiopia’s Claims 15, 16, 23 and 27–32 (civilians), Partial Award [135 ILR 374] 1168
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, partial award 752 n302, 753 n304, 756 n319, 765 n372
- Eritrea/Yemen Arbitration (Phase One: Territorial Sovereignty and Scope of the Dispute) [114 ILR 1] 41 n141, 99 n112, 491, 495–6, 497, 503, 508, 510 n128, 511, 513 n139, 514, 516 nn163 and 167, 519 n102, 524, 525 n216, 540, 559 n25, 969, 1050, 1055
- Eritrea/Yemen Arbitration (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation) [119 ILR 417] 92, 558, 565, 601 n243, 603, 605 n270
- ERT 370 n158
- ERTA case: *see* Commission of the European Communities v. Council of the European Communities (Case 22/70) (ERTA case) [47 ILR 278]
- Esphahanian v. Bank Tejarat (Case No. 157) [72 ILR 478] 815
- Espionage Prosecution case (Case No. 2 BGs 38/91) [94 ILR 68] 958–9
- Estamirov and Others v. Russia 359
- État de Céra c. D’Archer de Montgascon [6 AD 178] 733
- État de Céra c. Dorr et autres [4 AD 140] 733
- État de Hesse c. Jean Neger 733 n194
- Ette case 915 n61
- Eurodif Corporation v. Islamic Republic of Iran 747 n271
- European Commission of the Danube between Galatz and Braila, Jurisdiction of (Series B, No. 14) [4 AD 126 *et al.*] 76, 1306
- European Molecular Biology Laboratory Arbitration [105 ILR 1] 1321 n178
- European Parliament v. Council (2006) 371
- Eurotunnel case (Partial Award) [132 ILR 1] 657 n52, 799
- Ex parte* Everett [84 ILR 713] 187
- Exceptions to the Exhaustion of Domestic Remedies in Cases of Indigency 274 n50

Exchange of Greek and Turkish Populations (Series B, No. 10) [3 AD 362 *et al.*] 137, 138

Extradition of Greek National (Germany) case [22 ILR 520] 280

Ex parte Factortame [93 ILR 669, 93 ILR 731] 179

Factortame Ltd v. Secretary of State for Transport (No. 1) [93 ILR 652] 179

Factortame Ltd v. Secretary of State for Transport (No. 2) [93 ILR 731] 179

The Fagernes [3 AD 126] 181

The Fama 500 n66

FAO v. INPDAI (Case No. 5399) [87 ILR 1, 101 ILR 361] 1321

Faurisson v. France (Communication No. 550/1993) [115 ILR 355] 274 n48

Fayed v. Al-Tajir [86 ILR 131] 763 n362, 771

Fédéchar case (Case 8/55) 1307 n115

Federal Prosecutor (Switzerland) v. Kruszyk and Others [102 ILR 176] 758 n332

Re Feivel Pikelný's Estate 466

Feldman c. État de Bahia 733 n194

Ex parte Ferhut Butt [116 ILR 607] 187, 772, 819 n250

Fernandez v. Wilkinson [87 ILR 446] 160

Fernandez cases: *see also* R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Fernandes

Ferrini v. FRG 718 n108

Filartiga v. Pena-Irala [77 ILR 169] 159–60, 275 n60, 280 n81, 683, 684

III Finance Ltd v. Aegis Consumer Finance Inc. 818 n245

Finnish Vessels in Great Britain during the War (Finland v. Great Britain) [7 AD 231] 138, 273, 820–1

First American Corporation and Others v. Al-Nahyan and Others [121 ILR 577] 192 n351, 736–7

First Fidelity Bank NA v. Government of Antigua and Barbuda Permanent Mission [99 ILR 125] 751 n293, 942 n186

First National City Bank v. Banco Para el Comercio Exterior de Cuba [80 ILR 566] 732, 745 n262

First National City Bank of New York v. Banco Nacional de Cuba [66 ILR 102] 192

Fisheries Jurisdiction case (Spain v. Canada) (Jurisdiction) [123 ILR 189] 915, 936, 1069 n82, 1070, 1085

Fisheries Jurisdiction case (United Kingdom v. Iceland) (Jurisdiction) [55 ILR 149] 903, 905, 943, 950–1, 1015, 1016 n27, 1091, 1094

- Fisheries Jurisdiction case (United Kingdom v. Iceland) (Merits) [55 ILR 238] 83 n46, 104 n142, 107, 556, 581, 610, 624 n353, 903, 1017, 1064, 1104
- Flatow v. Islamic Republic of Iran and Others [121 ILR 618] 678, 715, 736 n215, 746 n263
- Flegenheimer Claim [25 ILR 91] 813 n225, 814 n231
- Re Flesche* [16 AD 266] 280
- Foremost-McKesson Inc. and Another v. Islamic Republic of Iran and Others [101 ILR 536] 732 n189
- Former Syrian Ambassador to the German Democratic Republic (Case No. 2 BvR 1516/96) [115 ILR 595] 752 n296, 770
- Foster v. Neilson 161, 162
- Fothergill v. Monarch Airlines Ltd [74 ILR 627] 154 n121, 155
- Foxworth v. Permanent Mission of the Republic of Uganda to the United Nations [99 ILR 138] 745 n262
- France v. Commission of the European Communities (Case C-327/91) [101 ILR 30] 694
- François v. State of Canada [115 ILR 418] 727
- Frankel v. Banco Nacional de Mexico 722
- Free Zones of Upper Savoy and the District of Gex case (France/Switzerland) (Order of 19 August 1929) [5 AD 461] 1015 n21
- Free Zones of Upper Savoy and the District of Gex case (France/Switzerland) (Judgment) [6 AD 362 *et al.*] 101 n120, 135, 929, 950, 969 n75
- French Consulate Disabled Employee case (Case No. AZ 1K 4/88) [114 ILR 507] 726 n157
- Frisbie v. Collins 681
- Frontier Dispute (Burkina Faso/Mali): *see* Burkina Faso/Mali Frontier Dispute (Judgment) [80 ILR 459]; Burkina Faso/Mali Frontier Dispute (Provisional Measures) [80 ILR 450]
- Frontier Land case: *see* Sovereignty over Certain Frontier Land, Case concerning (Belgium/Netherlands) [27 ILR 62]
- Fruehauf case 691 n238
- Furundžija (IT-95-17/1) [121 ILR 213] 124–5, 126 n238, 138 n38, 326 n336, 1192 n133, 1196
- Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project case (Hungary/Slovakia) (Judgment) [116 ILR 1] 89, 104–5, 111 n103, 120, 124 n228, 531 n251, 779, 782, 794, 798, 801, 804, 853 n37, 869, 883 n214, 885 n227, 886–7, 904 n8, 948, 949, 950 n218, 951–2, 970, 981, 1089, 1102

- Galić case (IT-98-29-T) 436 n212
- Gallardo, In the Matter of Viviana *et al.* (Government of Costa Rica (In the Matter of Viviana Gallardo *et al.*) (G 101/81)) [67 ILR 577] 390
- Gandara v. Bennett 159 n155
- García and Garza case [3 AD 215] 824
- Garland v. British Rail Engineering Ltd [93 ILR 622] 153
- Gdynia Ameryka Linie Zeglugowe Spółka Akcyjna v. Boguslawski and Another [19 ILR 72] 475–6
- Gemini Shipping Inc. v. Foreign Trade Organization for Chemicals and Foodstuffs (Tafco) and Another [63 ILR 494, 63 ILR 569] 721
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 1 (technical assistance measures) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 2 (international technical assistance) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 3 (international co-operation) 302 n199, 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 4 (adequate housing) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 5 (disabilities) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 6 (older persons) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 10 (national human rights institutions) 276
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 16 (equal treatment of men and women) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 18 (right to work) 310
- General Comments (UNCESCR), 19 (right to social security) 310
- General Comments (UNHRC), 6 (right to life) 317
- General Comments (UNHRC), 12 (self-determination) 291–2
- General Comments (UNHRC), 17 (rights of the child) 317–18
- General Comments (UNHRC), 22 (non-discrimination) 287, 288, 318
- General Comments (UNHRC), 23 (minorities) 296–7, 318
- General Comments (UNHRC), 24 (Issues relating to Reservations made upon Ratification or Accession to the Covenant or the Optional Protocols thereto, or in relation to Declarations under Article 41 of the Covenant) [107 ILR 64] 318
- General Comments (UNHRC), 28 (rights of women and General Comment 23) 318–19
- General Comments (UNHRC), 29 (non-derogable provisions) 319 n291
- General Comments (UNHRC), 32 (fair trial/equality of parties) 319 n291
- Generation Ukraine v. Ukraine 832 n313

- Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia) (Judgment) (2007)
78, 101, 112, 276, 433, 449 n20, 780 n10, 782, 791, 801, 804 n167,
806 n183, 908–9, 933, 937 n166, 963, 1071, 1090 n222, 1091–2,
1096, 1116 n374, 1193 n137
- Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia) (Order on
Withdrawal of Counterclaims) (1997) [115 ILR 206] 1096, 1097
- Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia) (Preliminary
Objections) (1996) [115 ILR 10] 101–2, 125, 963, 978, 981, 984,
1060, 1068–9, 1070, 1076, 1079
- Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia) (Request for Revision
of the Judgment of 11 July 1996: Preliminary Objections) (2003)
210, 963, 1106
- Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia (Serbia and
Montenegro)) (Request and Further Requests for the Indication of
Provisional Measures) [95 ILR 1] 13 n47, 127, 283–4, 1061–2, 1092,
1093 n238, 1094 nn246 and 247, 1236 n158, 1269 n325
- Genocide Convention (reservations) case: *see* Reservations to the
Genocide Convention case [18 ILR 364]
- Gentle case: *see* R (Gentle) v. Prime Minister
- Georges Pinson case [4 AD 9 *et al.*] 135 n21
- Georgia v. South Carolina [91 ILR 439] 498
- Gerbaud v. Meden [18 ILR 288] 961 n23
- German Consular Notification case (Individual Constitutional
Complaint Procedure) 171
- German External Debts Agreement case [22 ILR 611] 933 n143, 1017
- German Settlers in Poland case (Series B, No. 6) [2 AD 71 *et al.*] 100,
987, 1002
- Germany (Federal Republic) v. Elicofon 484 n163
- Germany–Poland Border Treaty Constitutionality case (Case No. 2 BvR
1613/91) [108 ILR 656] 1002 n242
- Ghaddafi case 737
- Re* Gill [6 AD 203] 789 n68, 796
- Gittler v. German Information Center [63 ILR 170] 732
- Godínez Cruz case [95 ILR 320] 390
- Golder case [57 ILR 200] 357, 903 n4
- Goldman v. Thai Airways International Ltd [101 ILR 316] 155 n130
- Goldwater v. Carter 467, 700, 908
- Gonzalez Corporation v. Consejo Nacional de Produccion de Costa Rica
and Another [63 ILR 370] 724
- Gonzalez-Vera v. Kissinger 190

- Görgülü case (Individual Constitutional Complaint Procedure) 171, 172
- Gosalia v. Agarwal and Others [118 ILR 429] 1002 n242
- Grand-Duchy of Luxembourg v. Compagnie Luxembourgeoise de
Télédiffusion and Compagnie Luxembourgeoise Assurance 'Le
Foyer' [91 ILR 281] 89
- Re Grand Jury Proceedings, Doe No. 700 [81 ILR 599] 736
- Grand Prince case [125 ILR 272] 613 n313, 644, 819 n248, 1114 n165
- Grant case 321
- Great Belt case (Passage through the Great Belt (Finland v. Denmark))
(Provisional Measures) [94 ILR 446] 578 n115, 1017 n33, 1062 n26,
1093 n238, 1094 n244, 1095 n249, 1102
- Greco-Bulgarian Communities (Series B, No. 17) [5 AD 4] 135 n20, 256
n292, 941 n182
- The Greek case 274 n49
- Greenham Women against Cruise Missiles and Others v. Reagan and
Others [99 ILR 43] 189–90
- Grisbadarna case 499, 504, 570
- Gruyez and Rolland v. Municipality of Sint-Genesius-Rode 173 n231
- Guatemalan Genocide case 673
- Guevera v. Peru 723
- Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal (Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989 (Guinea-Bissau
v. Senegal)) [77 ILR 635] 959 n10, 1084 n180, 1093 n238
- Guinea/Guinea-Bissau Maritime Delimitation case [77 ILR 635] 596,
602
- Gulf of Maine Maritime Boundary case [71 ILR 74] 89, 96 n99, 98 n109,
107, 516, 519, 587, 595–6, 599, 600 n240, 601–2, 606, 1062–3
- Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa [75 ILR 675] 150 n100, 445,
459, 478 n132, 480–1
- Gut Dam arbitration 854
- Re Gutierrez [24 ILR 265] 663
- Guyana v. Suriname 592, 601 n245, 605 n275, 607, 636, 1055 nn283 and
285, 1125 n35, 1128 n50
- Re H (Minors) 155 n130
- Habeas Corpus in Emergency Situations (Articles 27(2), 25(1) and 7(6)
of the American Convention on Human Rights) (Advisory
Opinion OC-8/87) [96 ILR 392] 389
- Haile Selassie v. Cable and Wireless Ltd (No. 2) [9 AD 94] 460, 473–4,
989 n174
- Hamdan v. Rumsfeld 658 n57

- Hamilton case 321
 Handel and Others v. Artukovic [79 ILR 397] 684
 Handelskwekerij GJ Bier BV v. Mines de Potasse d'Alsace SA 172 n226
 Handyside case [58 ILR 150] 356, 357
 Harb v. King Fahd 700 n10, 764 n369
 Hartford Fire Insurance Company and Others v. California and Others
 [100 ILR 566] 690–1
 Harza Engineering Company v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 98)
 [70 ILR 117] 831 n309
 Hauer v. Land Rheinland-Pfaltz 369
 Havana Club Holding Inc. v. Galleon SA 164
 Hawaiian Claims [3 AD 80] 1003 n245
 Hazletine Research Inc. v. Zenith Radio Corporation 689 n222
 Heathrow Airport User Charges Arbitration [102 ILR 215, 102 ILR 216,
 102 ILR 224, 102 ILR 564] 154 n124, 821 n258, 906 n21, 1049
 Re Herbert Wragg & Co. Ltd 139
 Herd case 791
 Hesperides Hotels Limited and Another v. Aegean Turkish Holidays
 Limited and Muftizade [73 ILR 9] 193, 478
 Hicks v. US [120 ILR 606] 713 n84
 High Commissioner for India *et al.* v. Ghosh [28 ILR 150] 771
 Hilaire and Others v. Trinidad and Tobago 387 n247
 Hildebrand v. Champagne [82 ILR 121] 766
 Hilton v. Guyot 157
 Hirota v. MacArthur [15 ILR 485] 400 n15
 Hirsch v. State (Israel) and State of Germany [113 ILR 543] 742 n246
 Hispano Americana Mercantil SA v. Central Bank of Nigeria [64 ILR
 221] 707
 HMKH v. Netherlands [94 ILR 342] 810
 Holiday Inns v. Morocco 1042 n194
 Holland v. Ireland (Communication No. 593/1994) [115 ILR 277] 274
 n48
 Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe [119 ILR 367] 699, 713–14, 716, 731 n183
 Holmes v. Bangladesh Biman Corporation [87 ILR 365] 653
 Holy See v. Starbright Sales Enterprises Inc. [102 ILR 163] 178 n252, 244
 n243, 708 n57
 Home Missionary Society case [1 AD 173, 1 AD 376 (note)] 783–4, 791
 Re Honecker [80 ILR 365] 736 n210
 Horgan v. An Taoiseach [132 ILR 407] 167, 170 n217, 184 n294
 Hoshinmaru (Japan v. Russia) 643

- Hosking & Hosking v. Runtig and Pacific Magazines NZ Ltd 169
- Hostages case: *see* United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in
Tehran case (USA v. Iran) (Iranian Hostages case) [61 ILR 502]
- HSA *et al.* v. SA *et al.* 672, 737
- Huber case 806 n184
- Huntington v. Atrill 650
- ICI v. Commission of the European Communities (Case 48/69) [48 ILR
106] 695
- Ilaşcu v. Moldova 238, 350, 789
- Ilhan v. Turkey 359
- Iloilo Claims case [3 AD 336] 500
- The I'm Alone* (Canada/United States) [7 AD 203] 617, 618, 805, 806
n180, 1101
- IMCO case (Constitution of the Maritime Safety Committee) [30 ILR
426] 612, 1295, 1306
- Immunity from Legal Process of a Special Rapporteur (Advisory
Opinion) [121 ILR 405] 222–3, 700, 786–7, 1111 n347, 1113,
1325–6
- Imports of Agricultural, Textile and Industrial Products case 1038
- INA Corporation v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 161) [75 ILR
595] 836–7
- India (Ministry of Finance (Revenue Division)) v. Taylor and Another
[22 ILR 286] 650
- Indigenous Community Yakye Axa v. Paraguay 300
- Indonesia/Malaysia case 509, 511 n131, 513 nn139 and 140, 517 n171,
933 n142, 1061 n24, 1114 n165
- Indonesia/Malaysia case (Philippines Intervening) 1091 n229, 1100,
1101 n290
- Inglis v. Sailor's Snug Harbour 662
- Inland Revenue Commissioners v. Collco Dealings Ltd [33 ILR 1] 153
- Interhandel case (Switzerland) v. United States (Preliminary Objections)
[27 ILR 475] 82, 273, 811, 819, 821, 1083 n168, 1084 n175
- International Association of Machinists and Aerospace Workers v.
Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) *et al.* [63
ILR 284, 66 ILR 413] 700, 701
- International Responsibility for the Promulgation and Enforcement of
Laws in Violation of the Convention (American Convention on
Human Rights) (Advisory Opinion OC-14/94) [116 ILR 320] 135
n26, 383

- International Shoe Co. v. Washington 723
- International Status of South-West Africa [17 ILR 47] 224–5, 493 n33, 1307 n116
- International Status of South-West Africa [17 ILR 47]: *see also*
South-West Africa cases (Second Phase) (1966) [37 ILR 243]
- International Tin Council v. Amalgamet Inc. [80 ILR 30] 1300 n74
- Re* International Tin Council [77 ILR 18, 80 ILR 81] 1310 n127, 1316 n153
- Internationale Handelsgesellschaft mbH v. Einfuhr und Vorratsstelle für Getreide und Futtermittel (Solange I) (Case 11/70) (Case No. 2 BvL 52/71) [93 ILR 362] 178–9, 369
- Interpretation of the American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man within the Framework of Article 64 of the American Convention on Human Rights (Advisory Opinion OC-10/87) [96 ILR 416] 389
- Interpretation of Peace Treaties with Bulgaria, Hungary and Romania, Second Phase (Advisory Opinion of 18 July 1950) [17 ILR 318] 936, 1051 n252, 1068, 1075, 1109
- Interpretation of the Treaty of Lausanne, Article 3, paragraph 2 (Series B, No. 12) [3 AD 105 *et al.*] 1049
- Intpro Properties (UK) Ltd v. Sauvel and Others [64 ILR 363, 64 ILR 384] 763, 766
- Iowa v. Illinois 112 n187
- Iran–United States (Case No. A/18) [75 ILR 175] 815 n236, 935 n157
- Iran–United States Claims Tribunal v. AS [94 ILR 321] 1320–1
- Iranian Hostages case: *see* United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran case (USA v. Iran) (Iranian Hostages case) [61 ILR 502]
- Ireland v. United Kingdom (Irish case) [58 ILR 188] 349, 354, 357
- Iron Rhine (Belgium/Netherlands) case 906 n21, 933 n142
- Island of Palmas Arbitration [4 AD 3 *et al.*] 110, 211 n74, 217 n98, 488, 489–90, 499, 504, 508, 509 n114, 511, 512, 513, 514, 520, 650, 782 n25, 852, 907 n27
- Issa v. Turkey 349 n22, 350 n24
- Italian South Tyrol Terrorism case (No. 2) [71 ILR 242] 667
- Italy (Republic of) v. Hambros Bank Ltd and Gregory (Custodian of Enemy Property) [17 ILR 1] 151 n106
- Jabari v. Turkey 358
- Jackson and Others v. People's Republic of China [84 ILR 132] 721 n131
- Jacobs and White 360 n93

- James case [75 ILR 397] 934 n147
- Jan Mayen (Maritime Delimitation in the Area between Greenland and Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)) [99 ILR 395] 106 nn147 and 148, 122 n219, 565 n59, 592 n181, 599–600, 601 n243, 603, 638 n424
- Janes case [3 AD 218, 3 AD 256] 787 n53, 825
- Japan Whaling Association v. American Cetacean Society 190 n331
- Jégo-Quéré v. Commission 371
- Jelisić (IT-95-10) 431
- The Jessie* [1 AD 175] 783 n35
- JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry and Others [77 ILR 55] 185, 748 n277 1300, 1316
- Jimenez v. Aristeguieta *et al.* [33 ILR 353] 737
- Johnson v. Eisenträger 658
- Johnston v. Chief Constable of the RUC 369
- Johnston and Others v. Ireland [89 ILR 154] 273, 349 n16, 355
- Jones v. Saudi Arabia [129 ILR 713] 139, 700 n12, 707 n51, 717–18, 720, 733
- Joyce v. Director of Public Prosecutions [15 AD 91] 667
- Juan Ysmael and Company Inc. v. Government of Indonesia [21 ILR 95] 703
- The Juno Trader* 643 n459
- The Jupiter* [3 AD 136] 702
- Juridical Condition and Rights of Undocumented Migrants 126 n238
- Jurisdiction of the European Commission of the Danube between Galatz and Braila (Series B, No. 14) [4 AD 126 *et al.*] 76, 1306 n109
- Kadahfi case 174 n236
- Kadić v. Karadžić; Doe I and Doe II v. Karadžić [104 ILR 135] 158 n146, 160 n160, 190–1, 684–5
- Kahan v. Pakistan Federation [18 ILR 210] 740 n238, 771 n423
- Kalamazoo Spice Extraction Company v. Provisional Military Government of Socialist Ethiopia [86 ILR 45, 90 ILR 596] 192, 831
- Kalogeropoulou v. Greece and Germany 717
- Kambanda case (ICTR-97-23-S) 409, 433
- Kanyabashi case (ICTR-96-15-T) (Jurisdiction) 436
- Karadžić and Mladić case (IT-95-5-R61 and IT-95-18-R61) (Rule 61) (Review of Indictments) [108 ILR 85] 433
- Kartinyeri v. The Commonwealth 168 n204

- Katangese Peoples' Congress v. Zaire 392
- Kaunda v. President of the Republic of South Africa 176 n243, 188–9, 653, 809 n206, 810 n207
- Kavanagh v. Governor of Mountjoy Prison [132 ILR 394] 170 n217
- Kay v. Lambeth Borough Council 140 n48
- Kaya v. Turkey 359
- Kayishema and Ruzindana case 431 n186, 432 n196
- Kenneth Good v. Attorney-General (Botswana) 168 n201
- Ker v. Illinois 681
- Khan v. Canada (Communication No. 15/1994) [108 ILR 268] 329
- Kirk case 369–70
- Kirkpatrick and Company Inc. and Others v. Environmental Tectonics Corporation International [88 ILR 93] 192
- Kitok case 292, 295–6
- KJ International v. *MV Oscar Jupiter* [131 ILR 529] 720
- Kjeldsen, Busk Madsen and Pedersen case [58 ILR 117] 274 n49
- Klass case [58 ILR 423] 355
- Klinghoffer and Others v. SNC *Achille Lauro* and Others [96 ILR 68] 158, 191, 665
- Knüller (Publishing, Printing and Promotions) Ltd v. Director of Public Prosecutions 147
- Koeppel and Koeppel and Another v. Federal Republic of Nigeria and Others [99 ILR 121] 774
- Koohi and Others v. United States and Another [99 ILR 80] 190
- Koowarta v. Bjelke-Petersen and Others; State of Queensland v. Commonwealth of Australia [68 ILR 181] 170 n212, 221–2
- Krajina v. The Tass Agency and Another [16 AD 129] 703, 729
- Kramer and Others (Joined Cases 3, 4 and 6/76) [99 ILR 217] 241 n129
- Kremzow v. Austria (Case C-299/95) [113 ILR 263] 369
- Krnojelca case (IT-97-24-A) 443 n229
- Krstić case (IT-98-33) 431–2
- Kruger and Others v. Commonwealth of Australia; Bray and Others v. Commonwealth of Australia [118 ILR 371] 168 nn201 and 203
- Kudla v. Poland 359
- Kunarac case (IT-96-23&23/1) 437–8, 1194
- Kunstsammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon [61 ILR 143] 484
- Kunstsammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon [94 ILR 133] 227 n157, 989 n174
- Kurt v. Turkey 359
- Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Company and the Republic of Iraq [103 ILR 340, 116 ILR 534] 185, 186–7, 714, 731, 749

- La Bretagne* [82 ILR 590] 903 n4, 933 n145
- Lac Lanoux Arbitration (France/Spain) [24 ILR 101] 852 n35, 864, 883, 1017
- Lafontant v. Aristide [103 ILR 581] 737
- LaGrand Case (Germany v. United States) (Request for the Indication of Provisional Measures) [118 ILR 37] 130, 135–6, 159, 220–1, 223, 773–4, 787 n53, 800–1, 802 n152, 823 n264, 933 n143, 938, 1071, 1094 n246, 1095–6, 1101 n292, 1102 n295, 1103
- Laguna del Desierto (Argentina/Chile) case [113 ILR 1] 101 n124, 497 n50, 531 n248, 934, 936, 1048
- Laker Airways v. Sabena 690, 692
- Ex parte* Lam 169 n209
- Lam Mow v. Nagle [4 AD 295] 662
- Lamy case 806 n114
- Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute: *see* El Salvador/Honduras (Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute) [97 ILR 112]
- Land Reclamation case [126 ILR 487] 1016 n24
- Landano v. United States [116 ILR 534] 727
- Länsman (Jlarkins) *et al.* v. Finland (Communication No. 671/1995) [115 ILR 300] 296
- Largueche v. Tancredi Fenu (Case No. 9321) [101 ILR 377] 766 n382
- Larsen v. Hawaiian Kingdom [119 ILR 566] 1050, 1068 n75, 1079 n151
- Latvian Constitutional Court's Judgment on the Request for Constitutional Review 173 n228
- Lawless case: *see* *Re O Laighléis* (Lawless) [24 ILR 420]
- Lawson v. Serco Ltd 653 n37
- Lawyers for Human Rights v. Switzerland 394
- LCB v. UK 358
- 'Le Ski' case [93 ILR 203] 173
- Leasing West GmbH v. Algeria (Case No. 3 Ob 38/86) [116 ILR 526] 748
- Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons, Request for an Advisory Opinion by the United Nations General Assembly [110 ILR 163] 48 n16, 74 n14, 88, 99 n112, 104 n142, 109, 116–17, 124 n228, 212, 284 n108, 317 n284, 793, 852–3, 904 n7, 1017, 1066 n56, 1087, 1108–9, 1110, 1112, 1125, 1130, 1141, 1142, 1169 n7, 1170, 1181, 1184, 1187–8, 1307–8
- Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict (Request by the World Health Organization for an Advisory Opinion) [110 ILR 1] 1303–4, 1305 n102, 1306 n108
- Legality of the Use of Force (Yugoslavia v. Belgium) 1093 n238, 1157 n199

- Legality of the Use of Force (Yugoslavia v. Spain) 921, 1074
Legality of the Use of Force (Yugoslavia v. USA) 915, 921, 1074
Lehigh Valley Railroad Company v. State of Russia [4 AD 58] 485
LETCO (Liberian Eastern Timber Corporation) v. Liberia [89 ILR 313] 1042 n114
Letelier and Moffitt case [88 ILR 727] 100, 1021
Letelier and Others v. Republic of Chile and Linea Aerea Nacional-Chile [63 ILR 378] 700–1, 727–8, 745 n262, 749–50
Levacher 174
Re von Lewinski (called von Manstein) [16 AD 509] 443 n229
Liamco case (Libyan American Oil Company v. Libyan Arab Republic), [62 ILR 140] 804 n166, 830, 833, 842
Libman v. The Queen [84 ILR 672] 655
Libra Bank Ltd v. Banco Nacional de Costa Rica [72 ILR 119] 742
Libya v. Rossbeton SRL (Case No. 2502) [87 ILR 63] 747
Libya/Chad, Territorial Dispute [100 ILR 1] 104, 123 n219, 200 n19, 496, 510 n123, 516, 522 n196, 526 n219, 528–9, 933 n342, 935–6, 969, 1011, 1075 n127, 1104
Libya/Malta, Continental Shelf case [81 ILR 238, 81 ILR 726] 74, 96 n99, 107, 583, 586 n147, 587, 596–7, 601 n241, 1089
Libya/Malta, Continental Shelf case (Application by Italy for Permission to Intervene) [70 ILR 527] 1067, 1078, 1097–8, 1099 n277
Libyan American Oil Company (LIAMCO) v. Libya [62 ILR 140] 723
Libyan Arab Foreign Investment Company (LAFICO)/Republic of Burundi (Dispute concerning the Libyan Arab–Burundi Holding Company) [96 ILR 279] 796 n119
Licensing of Journalists case 388–9
Lichtensztein case 321
Liechtenstein v. Germany 110, 1061 n21, 1067 n73, 1069 n78
Lighthouses Arbitration between France and Greece [6 AD 659] 1003–4
Lighthouses Arbitration between France and Greece, Claims No. 19 and 21 (Part) [23 ILR 352] 785 n42
Lighthouses Arbitration between France and Greece, Claim No. 27 [23 ILR 299] 836 n340
Ligue Internationale Contre le Racisme et l'Antisémitisme 174 n235
Lilian Celiberti de Casariego v. Uruguay [68 ILR 41] 322
Linder and Others v. Portocarrero and Others [99 ILR 54] 160 n163, 162, 190
Lithgow case [75 ILR 438] 830 n299, 903 n4, 933–4, 935 n158
Litster v. Forth Dry Dock Engineering 157

- Littlejohn, L, and Company Inc. v. United States [3 AD 483] 159 n157
- Littrell v. United States (No. 2) [100 ILR 438] 149–50, 184, 713
- Helen Liu v. Republic of China [101 ILR 519] 700 n14, 701
- Loayza Tamayo v. Peru [116 ILR 338] 390, 801 n150
- Lockerbie case (Questions of Interpretation and Application of the 1971 Montreal Convention arising from the Aerial Incident at Lockerbie) (Libyan Arab Jamahiriya v. United Kingdom) (Request for the Indication of Provisional Measures) [94 ILR 478] 114, 135, 654–5, 686, 927, 1065, 1067 n65, 1092 n234, 1094–5, 1114, 1236, 1268–70
- Lockerbie case (Questions of Interpretation and Application of the 1971 Montreal Convention arising from the Aerial Incident at Lockerbie) (Libyan Arab Jamarihiya v. United Kingdom) (Preliminary Objections) [117 ILR 1] 1088
- Loewen Group v. USA 1039 n174
- Loizidou v. Turkey (Merits) [108 ILR 443] 236, 360, 523 n203, 782 n27, 829 n299
- Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections) [103 ILR 621] 236, 349–50, 354 n52, 448 n16, 658 n55, 790, 922–3, 935 n157, 937 n166, 938
- Lonrho Exports Ltd v. Export Credits Guarantee Department [108 ILR 596] 149 n95, 150, 810
- López Burgos v. Uruguay [68 ILR 29] 322
- Lord Advocate's Reference No. 1 of 2000 [122 ILR 619] 144, 146
- The Lotus* case (France/Turkey) [4 AD 5 *et al.*] 9 n32, 46, 77 n26, 78 n29, 81, 84–5, 90, 110, 112 n185, 212, 614, 618, 650, 654, 655–7, 665
- Louisiana v. Mississippi 498
- Lovelace v. Canada (No. R6/24/1977) [68 ILR 17] 295, 321
- Ltd Partnership Z v. High Court (Obergericht) of the Canton of Thurgau 973
- Lubicon Lake Band case [96 ILR 667] 292, 296
- Lutcher SA Celulose e Papel Candoi v. Inter-American Development Bank [42 ILR 138] 1327 n199
- Lutgarda Jimenez v. Commissioners of Inland Revenue 768 n396, 769
- Luther v. Sagor [1 AD 47] 472–3, 483
- M v. Egypt [116 ILR 656] 727
- M v. Federal Department of Justice and Police (Switzerland) [75 ILR 107] 978 n122
- M v. Organisation des Nations Unies et l'État Belge [45 ILR 446] 313 n143

- Mabo and Another v. State of Queensland and Another (No. 1) [112 ILR 412] 298
- McCann v. UK 357, 358
- McGee v. International Life Insurance Co. 723
- McGimpsey and McGimpsey v. Ireland, An Taoiseach and Other Members of the Government of Ireland and the Attorney-General [87 ILR 334] 170 n217
- McKeel v. Islamic Republic of Iran [81 ILR 543] 752
- Re McKerr 184 n289
- Maclaine Watson and Company Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry; JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry and Others, and Related Appeals [80 ILR 47] 145–6, 183, 721, 734–5, 743, 748, 1316–17
- Maclaine Watson and Company Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry (JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry) [81 ILR 670] 149–50, 153 n120, 183–4
- Maclaine Watson and Company Ltd v. International Tin Council (JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry) [81 ILR 670] 1301 n80
- Maclaine Watson and Company Ltd v. International Tin Council (No. 1) [77 ILR 41, 80 ILR 191] 183, 1316 n153
- MacLeod v. United States 159 n157
- McMullen v. Immigration and Naturalization Service [79 ILR 602] 687 n211
- Maharanees of Baroda v. Wildenstein 651–2
- Mahuika *et al.* v. New Zealand 292 n155
- Malachtou v. Arnefti and Arnefti [88 ILR 199] 171
- Malaysia/Singapore case 122 n218, 488 n9, 491 n22, 509 n116, 511 n131, 516 nn164 and 166, 519 n181, 521 n194
- Malek v. Iran 815 n236
- Malone v. Metropolitan Police Commissioner (No. 2) [74 ILR 304] 154
- Mamatkulov and Abdurasulovic v. Turkey 352 n37, 358
- Manauta v. Embassy of the Russian Federation [113 ILR 429] 707 n52
- Mannington Mills Inc. v. Congoleum Corporation [66 ILR 487] 689–90
- Mapiripán Massacre case 387
- Mara'abe v. Prime Minister of Israel 1178 n56, 1179 nn57 and 59, 1182
- Marchiori v. Environment Agency [127 ILR 574] 181 n269
- Re Marcinkus, de Strobel and Mennini (Case No. 3932) [Italy] [87 ILR 48] 244
- Marckx case [58 ILR 561] 349, 355, 357

- Re Marcos Human Rights Litigation* [103 ILR 521, 104 ILR 119] 158
n146
- The Maret* [12 AD 29] 483, 485
- Mareva Compania Naviera v. International Bulkcarriers* 743
- Margellos v. FRG* [129 ILR 526] 728 n165
- Mariam Aziz v. Aziz and Sultan of Brunei* 764 n369
- Marine Steel Ltd v. Government of the Marshall Islands* [64 ILR 539, 64 ILR 562] 167
- Martić case* (IT-95-11-T) 438
- Martini case* (Italy v. Venezuela) [5 AD 153] 802 n154
- Masri v. Consolidated Contractors* 653 n37
- Massey case* [4 AD 250] 786 n51
- Matthew v. Trinidad and Tobago* [134 ILR 151] 151 n104
- Matthews v. United Kingdom* (Application No. 24833/94) (Merits) [123 ILR 1] 223 n131, 1317
- Mauritian Women case* 321
- Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* (Greece v. Great Britain) (Jurisdiction) [2 AD 27 *et al.*] 258, 810, 926 n113, 1012, 1015 n21, 1067–8, 1070 n91
- Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* (Greece v. Great Britain) (Merits) [3 AD 204] 1002
- The Mayagna (Sumo) Awas Tingni Community v. Nicaragua* 300, 781 n20
- Meaning of the Word ‘Laws’ in Article 30 of the American Convention on Human Rights* (Advisory Opinion OC-6/86) [79 ILR 325] 934
- Medellin v. Dretke* 221
- Medillin v. Texas* 130 n5, 164 n178, 221 n119
- Mellacher case* 830 n300
- Mellenger and Another v. New Brunswick Development Corporation* [52 ILR 322] 733, 734
- Mendaro v. World Bank* [99 ILR 92] 1320, 1327 n199
- Mergé Claim* [22 ILR 443] 815
- Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States* [119 ILR 615, 119 ILR 645] 789 n62, 832 n312, 836, 1041 n188, 1042 n134
- Methanex v. USA* 834 n324, 1039
- Mexico (Republic of) v. Hoffman* [12 AD 143] 194 n359, 703–4
- Middle East Cement Shipping v. Egypt* 832 n313
- Midland Bank Plc and Another v. Laker Airways Limited and Others* [118 ILR 540] 692 n242
- Miha v. Equatorial Guinea* 273

- Military Affairs Office of the Embassy of the State of Kuwait v. Caramba-Coker 726, 748 n278
- Mills v. USA [120 ILR 612] 740 n238
- Milutinović case 404
- Mininni v. Bari Institute of the International Centre for Advanced Mediterranean Agronomic Studies [78 ILR 112, 87 ILR 28] 1321 n177
- Minister for Arts Heritage and Environment (Australia) and Others v. Peko-Wallsend Ltd and Others [90 ILR 32] 184 n292
- Minister for Economic Affairs (Belgium) v. SA Fromagerie Franco-Suisse ‘Le Ski’ [93 ILR 203] 173
- Minister for Foreign Affairs (Australia) and Trade and Others v. Magno and Another [101 ILR 202] 170 n212, 755
- Minister for Immigration and Ethnic Affairs (Australia) v. Teoh [104 ILR 460] 151 n104, 167–9
- Ministry of Defence (Iran) v. Gould Inc. and Others [96 ILR 1] 484
- Minority Schools in Albania case (Series A/B, No. 64) [8 AD 386] 271, 288
- Minors Opposa v. Secretary of the Department of the Environment and Natural Resources 850 n23
- Minquiers and Ecrehos case (France/United Kingdom) [20 ILR 94] 491, 505 n94, 506–7, 511 n130, 513, 1075
- Missouri v. Holland, United States Game Warden [1 AD 4] 161 n170, 220
- Mobutu and Republic of Zaire v. Société Logrine [113 ILR 481] 737
- Moiwana Community v. Suriname 300 n191
- Ex parte* Molyneaux [87 ILR 329] 184
- Mondev International v. USA 1039 n174
- Monetary Gold case (Preliminary Objection) [21 ILR 399] 1067, 1073, 1076 n112, 1078–9
- Morocco (Kingdom of) v. DR [115 ILR 421] 727
- Mortensen v. Peters 143
- Mossé Claim [20 ILR 217] 788
- Mosul case (Interpretation of the Treaty of Lausanne, Article 3, paragraph 2 (Series B, No. 12)) [3 AD 105 *et al.*] 200 n19
- MOX Plant case (Ireland v. United Kingdom) (ECJ) 638 n422, 1116 n376
- MOX Plant case (Ireland v. United Kingdom) (Orders Nos. 3 and 4) (Arbitral Tribunal) [126 ILR 310] 638 n422
- MOX Plant case (Ireland v. United Kingdom) (Request for Provisional Measures) (ITLOS) [126 ILR 259] 643, 1015 n24

- Mugesera v. Canada (Minister of Citizenship and Immigration) [132 ILR 271] 169
- Muhonen v. Finland (Communication No. 89/1981) [94 ILR 388] 274 n48
- Mukuro v. European Bank for Reconstruction and Development 1321
- Muller v. USA [114 ILR 502] 726 n157
- Murray v. Schooner *Charming Betsy* 164
- Musema case 431
- Myers v. Canada: *see* SD Myers Inc. v. Canada (Partial Award) [121 ILR 72]
- NAC v. Federal Republic of Nigeria [63 ILR 228] 721
- Naim Molvan v. Attorney-General for Palestine [13 AD 51] 613–14
- Nallaratnam Singarasa v. Attorney-General (Sri Lanka) 168 n201
- Namibia (Legal Consequences for States of the Continued Presence of South Africa in, etc.) [49 ILR 2] 95 n96, 114, 224 n135, 226–7, 248, 254, 262, 277–8, 468, 470, 478 n133, 493 n33, 495, 790, 903, 935 n155, 948, 949 n214, 957 n165, 1059, 1060 n17, 1062 n27, 1114 n362, 1207 n10, 1219, 1269 n318, 1306, 1307 n116, 1331 n221
- Namibia (Minister of Defence) v. Mwandighi [91 ILR 341] 1003 n246, 1004 n247
- Nanni and Others v. Pace and the Sovereign Order of Malta [8 AD 2] 243
- National City Bank of New York v. Republic of China *et al.* [22 ILR 210 *et al.*] 705 n36
- National Oil Corporation v. Libyan Sun Oil Company [94 ILR 209] 482
- National Petrochemical Company of Iran v. The M/T *Stolt Sheaf* [87 ILR 583] 484
- National Smokeless Fuels Ltd v. IRC 153 n120
- Nationality of Claims (Administrative Decision No. V) [2 AD 185, 2 AD 191] 811
- Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco case (Series B, No. 4) [2 AD 349] 216, 272 n40, 648 n8, 660, 812–13, 1004 n249
- Naturalization Provisions of the Political Constitution of Costa Rica (Advisory Opinion OC-4/84), Proposed Amendments [79 ILR 282] 288 n137
- Naulilaa case (Portugal v. Germany) [4 AD 274 *et al.*] 794 n92, 1129–30
- Nauru v. Australia (Certain Phosphate Lands in Nauru (Nauru v. Australia)) (Preliminary Objections) [97 ILR 1] 224 n135, 799, 1078, 1084 n180, 1297

- The Navemar* (Compañía Española de Navegación SA v. *The Navemar et al.*) [9 AD 176] 194 n359, 703–4
- Neer Case [3 AD 213] 783, 824
- Neger v. Hesse [52 ILR 329] 733 n154
- Netherlands v. Parliament and Council (2001) 371
- Neumeister case (Merits) [41 ILR 316] 806 n114
- New England Merchants National Bank and Others v. Iran Power Generation and Transmission Company and Others [63 ILR 408, 63 ILR 497] 742
- New Jersey v. Delaware [7 AD 128] 531 n268
- Re* Newfoundland: *see* Reference *re* the Seabed and Subsoil of the Continental Shelf Offshore Newfoundland [86 ILR 593]
- Ng v. Canada (Communication No. 469/1991) [98 ILR 479] 321
- Nguyen Tuong Van v. Public Prosecutor (Singapore) [134 ILR 660] 167 n197
- Nicaragua v. Colombia 1069 n82, 1075, 1080
- Nicaragua v. Honduras (Border and Transborder Armed Actions) [84 ILR 218] 104, 1017, 1031 n122, 1065, 1070 n88, 1080, 1088
- Nicaragua v. Honduras (Territorial and Maritime Dispute in the Caribbean Sea) 116 n374, 509 n116, 510, 514, 524 n210, 530, 537 n227, 553, 559 n25, 569, 591, 592 n179, 680, 785, 1069 n83, 1090, 1116 n374
- Nicaragua v. United States (Military and Paramilitary Activities in and against Nicaragua) (El Salvador Intervention) [76 ILR 1, 76 ILR 74] 1098, 1099 n274
- Nicaragua v. United States (Military and Paramilitary Activities in and against Nicaragua) (Judgment) [76 ILR 349] 77–8, 85, 86, 87, 88, 96–7, 99 n111, 115, 116, 117, 118, 122 n218, 124 nn228 and 232, 212, 542, 571 n87, 610 n298, 680, 785, 790, 903 n7, 1078, 1085, 1087, 1089, 1090, 1091, 1092, 1124 n29, 1128, 1132–3, 1134–5, 1138–41, 1147–8, 1152, 1153, 1157 n200, 1188, 1193–4, 1195 n142, 1240
- Nicaragua v. United States (Military and Paramilitary Activities in and against Nicaragua) (Jurisdiction and Admissibility) [76 ILR 104] 903 n7, 945, 1013, 1025, 1026 n81, 1066, 1068, 1078, 1079, 1083, 1085 n183, 1091, 1098
- Nicaragua v. United States (Military and Paramilitary Activities in and against Nicaragua) (Provisional Measures) [76 ILR 1, 76 ILR 35] 794, 1094
- Re* Nicolo and Another [93 ILR 286] 174 n215

- Nicoud v. USA [116 ILR 650] 727
- Re Nielsen v. Denmark (No. 343/57) [28 ILR 210] 273, 274 n49
- Re Nielsen (Government of Denmark v. Nielsen) [74 ILR 458] 686
- Nissan v. Attorney-General (England) [44 ILR 359] 180–1
- Nixon v. United States 191
- NNB and Other Members of the Crew of MS *Saudi Independence* and International Transport Workers' Federation v. Ocean Trade Company, Saudi Europe Line Limited and Saudi International Shipping (Greece) Limited [87 ILR 96] 557
- Noble Ventures v. Romania 782 n24
- Nold (J), Kohlen- und Baustoffgrosshandlung v. Commission of the European Communities (Case 4/73) [55 ILR 459] 156, 369
- Non-resident Petitioner v. Central Bank of Nigeria 709 n64
- Nordstern Allgemeine Versicherungs Aktiengesellschaft v. Vereinigte Stinnes Rheinreedereien [74 ILR 2] 172 n225
- Norris v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 687
- Norris case [89 ILR 243] 355 n55
- North American Dredging Company of Texas case [3 AD 4 *et al.*] 821 n257
- North Atlantic Fisheries case 212 n76, 541, 562
- North Cyprus Tourism Centre Ltd v. Transport for London 194 n358, 479
- North Sea Continental Shelf cases (Federal Republic of Germany/Denmark; Federal Republic of Germany/The Netherlands) [41 ILR 29] 2, 76, 77, 79, 83, 85–6, 87–9, 90, 91, 95–6, 99 n111, 104, 107, 119 n210, 122 n218, 127, 199, 200 n19, 519, 553, 556, 586–7, 592, 593, 594–5, 600, 601, 603, 606, 638, 864 n109, 928, 1016, 1017, 1073
- North-Eastern Boundary Arbitration (Canada/United States) 1053
- Northern Cameroons case (Preliminary Objections) (Cameroon v. United Kingdom) [35 ILR 353] 1065, 1069 n84, 1070 n91, 1071 n92, 1088
- Re Norway's Application (Nos. 1 and 2) [84 ILR 730] 650
- Norwegian Embassy v. Quattri (Decision No. 12771/1991) [114 ILR 525] 726
- Norwegian Loans case [24 ILR 782] 939, 1082, 1084 n175
- Norwegian Shipowners' Claims 832 n315, 834 n318, 836 n340, 1052 n257
- Nottebohm case (Liechtenstein v. Guatemala) (Preliminary Objection) [20 ILR 567] 1051, 1052–3, 1081, 1084–5

- Nottebohm case (Liechtenstein v. Guatemala) (Second Phase) [22 ILR 349] 83, 110, 135, 217, 258, 648, 656, 660–1, 813–14, 816, 1004
- Nova Scotia/Newfoundland case (First Phase) [128 ILR 425] 122, 905
- Nuclear Tests case (Australia v. France) (Interim Measures) [57 ILR 360] 1038 n120, 1071, 1094
- Nuclear Tests case (New Zealand v. France), Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the *Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France) Case* (Order) [106 ILR 1] 122 n217, 610, 850 n23, 852, 867, 868, 889, 1064, 1067, 1085, 1107–8
- Nuclear Tests case (New Zealand v. France) [106 ILR 1] 122
- Nuclear Tests cases (Judgments) [57 ILR 398, 57 ILR 605] 104, 122, 610, 806, 854, 889, 903, 905, 1069, 1070–1, 1088, 1092, 1098, 1104
- Nuclear Weapons case: *see* Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons, Request for an Advisory Opinion by the United Nations General Assembly [110 ILR 163]; Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict (Request by the World Health Organization for an Advisory Opinion) [110 ILR 1]
- Nulyarimma and Others v. Thompson; Buzzacott v. Minister for the Environment and Others [120 ILR 353] 147 n88, 167 n198
- Re O Laighléis* (Lawless) [24 ILR 420] 170 n217
- Öcalan v. Turkey 349 n22
- O'Connell Machinery Company v. MV *Americana* and Italia Di Navigazione SpA [81 ILR 539] 742
- Oder Commission case (Territorial Jurisdiction of the International Commission of the River Oder) [5 AD 83 *et al.*] 851, 883 n214, 935
- Office of Fair Trading v. Lloyds TSB Bank plc 654 n37
- Oil Platforms (Counterclaims) case [130 ILR 174; 130 ILR 280] 1097
- Oil Platforms (Islamic Republic of Iran v. United States of America) (Merits) [130 ILR 174; 130 ILR 323] 935, 1067, 1072, 1086, 1091, 1092 n231, 1133, 1141, 1142, 1147 n146
- Oil Platforms (Preliminary Objections) case [130 ILR 174; 130 ILR 186] 907
- Opel Austria GmbH v. Council of the European Union (Case T-115/94) [113 ILR 295] 104 n139
- Open Door and Dublin Well Woman v. Ireland 273
- Oppenheimer v. Cattermole (Inspector of Taxes); Nothman v. Cooper (Inspector of Taxes) [72 ILR 446] 139, 186 n308

- OR, MM and MS v. Argentina 329
 Orinoco Steamship Company case 798 n123, 1053 n263
 OSPAR (Ireland v. UK) [126 ILR 364] 124 n229, 623 n351, 786 n51,
 1052 n260
 Othman (Jordan) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 906
 n23
 Ottoman Public Debt Arbitration [3 AD 42 *et al.*] 997 n225, 998
 Ovcara case 430
- Re P (No. 2) [114 ILR 485] 770 n408
 Palmagiero Gold Fields 802 n154
 Pan American Union v. American Security and Trust Company [18 ILR
 441] 1331 n223
 Pan American World Airways Inc. v. Aetna Casualty and Surety Co.
 463
 Pan American World Airways Inc. *et al.* v. R *et al.* [90 ILR 213] 542
 Panama v. Citizens and Southern International Bank and Others [86 ILR
 10] 484–5
 Panama v. Republic National Bank of New York and Others [86 ILR 1]
 484–5
 Panama–Costa Rica Boundary case 1053 n265
 Panevezys–Saldutiskis Railway case (Estonia v. Lithuania) [9 AD 308]
 258, 810 n209, 819 n249
 Papamichalopoulos v. Greece 832 n315
The Paquete Habana 77 n26, 83 n43, 112, 157
 Paraguay v. United States (Case concerning the Vienna Convention on
 Consular Relations (Request for Provisional Measures)) [118 ILR
 1] 165 n187
 Parent and Others v. Singapore Airlines Ltd and Civil Aeronautics
 Administration [133 ILR 264] 479 n136
 Parking Privileges for Diplomats case [70 ILR 396] 171 n222
The Parlement Belge 148–9, 702, 705
 Parot v. Spain 330
 PAU: *see* Pan American Union
 Pauline Fraisse case 174
 Pauling *et al.* v. McElroy *et al.* [26 ILR 1] 157
 Pauwels case 806 n184
 Pellat case [5 AD 145 *et al.*] 223, 787 n53
 Pelletier v. UNESCO [38 ILR 379] 1053 n265
 Perez *et al.* v. The Bahamas [63 ILR 350, 63 ILR 601] 723

- Permanent Mission of India to the US v. City of New York 723
Persinger v. Islamic Republic of Iran (No. 2) [90 ILR 586] 758
Peruvian Genocide case 673 n126
Peter Pázmány University case (Czechoslovakia v. Hungary), Appeal
from a Judgment of the Hungaro-Czechoslovak Mixed Arbitral
Tribunal [7 AD 490] 264 n320, 987 n164, 989 n174
Petrotimor Companhia de Petroleos SARL v. Commonwealth of
Australia 189
Pfizer Inc. v. Canada 167 n195
Phansopkar case: *see* R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Phansopkar [61 ILR
390]
Phelps Dodge Corporation v. Iran 836 n343
The Philippine Admiral (Owners) v. Wallem Shipping (Hong Kong)
Limited and Another [64 ILR 90] 705
Philippine Embassy Bank Account case [65 ILR 146] 746, 762
The Philippines v. Marcos and Others (No. 1) [81 ILR 581] 736
The Philippines v. Pimentel 699 n6, 700 n12
Physical Protection of Nuclear Materials case: *see* Draft Convention of
the International Atomic Energy Agency on the Physical Protection
of Nuclear Materials, Facilities and Transports (Ruling 1/78) [99
ILR 292]
Piandiong *et al.* v. The Philippines 320
Pickstone v. Freemans 156–7
Re Pikelny, Estate of [22 ILR 97, 22 ILR 102] 466 n92
Pine Valley v. Ireland 355
Pinochet cases: *see* R v. Bow Street Metropolitan Stipendiary Magistrate,
ex parte Pinochet Ugarte (No. 1) [119 ILR 50]; R v. Bow Street
Metropolitan Stipendiary Magistrate, *ex parte* Pinochet Ugarte
(No. 3) [119 ILR 135]
Pinson, George case [4 AD 9 *et al.*] 135 n21
Re Piperno 687 n211
Re Piracy *Jure Gentium* [7 AD 213] 144, 397, 398
Ex parte Pirbhai [107 ILR 461] 182, 187
The Pisaro 194 n359
Pitcairn and Associated Islands (Governor of) v. Sutton [104 ILR 508]
167
Planmount Ltd v. Republic of Zaire [64 ILR 268] 707, 709 n64, 719 n112
Polish Nationals in Danzig case [6 AD 47 *et al.*] 135
Polites v. Commonwealth of Australia and Another; Kandiliotes v.
Commonwealth and Another [12 AD 208] 167, 168 n205

- Polyukhovich v. Commonwealth of Australia 170 n212
Re Poncet [15 AD 346] 1300 n73
 Poropat v. Bosnia 380
 Porter v. Freudenberg 151 n106
The Porto Alexandre [1 AD 146] 702, 703, 705
 Portugal v. Goncalves [82 ILR 115] 767
 Post Office v. Estuary Radio Limited [43 ILR 114] 153, 193
Ex parte Postlethwaite 155 n129
 Potter v. BHP Co. Ltd 167
 Prefecture of Voiotia v. Germany (Distomo Massacre) 728, 1178 n56
 Princess Zizianoff v. Kahn and Bigelow [4 AD 384] 774
 Princz v. Federal Republic of Germany [103 ILR 594] 127 n244,
 715 n94
The Prins Frederik 702 n19
 Propend Finance Pty Ltd and Others v. Sing and Others [111 ILR 611]
 769–70
 Public Committee against Torture in Israel *et al.* v. Government of Israel
 166 n166
 Public Prosecutor (Malaysia) v. Orhan Olmez [87 ILR 212] 771
 Public Prosecutor (Netherlands) v. JBC [94 ILR 339] 769
 Public Prosecutor (Netherlands) v. JO [74 ILR 130] 172 n225
 Public Prosecutor (Sweden) v. Antoni [32 ILR 140] 663
 Pulp Mills on the River Uruguay case (Argentina v. Uruguay) 1017 n33,
 1093, 1095 nn249 and 251

 Qatar v. Bahrain (Maritime Delimitation and Territorial Questions)
 [102 ILR 1] 197 n179, 491 n23, 498, 511 n131, 553 n2, 558, 559,
 561–2, 566, 582 n130, 588 n159, 591–2, 601 n245, 603–4, 606, 905
 n12, 906–7, 911, 933 n142, 935 n158, 940 n178, 1049, 1067 n66,
 1072, 1077, 1091 n230, 1092 n232
 Quebec Secession case: *see* Reference by the Governor in Council
 concerning Certain Questions relating to the Secession of Quebec
 [115 ILR 536]
 Quintanilla case [3 AD 224] 825 n281

 R v. Abu Hamza 655 n42
 R v. Anderson 557
 R v. Asfaw 150 n99
 R v. Berry 654
 R v. Bow Street Magistrates, *ex parte* Mackerson 682 n177

- R v. Bow Street Metropolitan Stipendiary Magistrate, *ex parte* Pinochet Ugarte (No. 1) [119 ILR 50] 126 n239, 145 n72, 146, 186 n301
- R v. Bow Street Metropolitan Stipendiary Magistrate, *ex parte* Pinochet Ugarte (No. 3) [119 ILR 135] 126 n238, 146, 326 n336, 653 n35, 673 n129, 675, 698 n3, 699, 718, 737, 738
- R v. Brown 154 n154
- R v. Burgess, *ex parte* Henry [8 AD 54] 221
- R v. Chief Immigration Officer, Heathrow Airport, *ex parte* Salamat Bibi [61 ILR 267] 154
- R v. Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, *ex parte* Home Secretary 687 n211
- R v. Civil Aviation Authority [132 ILR 713] 1178 n54
- R v. Cooke 653
- R v. Council of Canadians 167 n195
- R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems 182 n.274, 183 n286, 185 n300, 188 n322, 798
- R v. Farnquist [94 ILR 238] 556 n13
- R v. Governor of Pentonville Prison, *ex parte* Teja [52 ILR 368] 768, 769 n403
- R v. HM Treasury and the Bank of England, *ex parte* Centro-Com 152 n113, 154–5
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Anderson 154
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Bagga [88 ILR 404] 768–9
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Bhajan Singh [61 ILR 260] 154
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Fernandes 154 n125
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Launder [114 ILR 402] 154 n124
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Phansopkar [61 ILR 390] 154 n124
- R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Wynne 154 n124
- R v. Horseferry Road Magistrates' Court, *ex parte* Bennett [95 ILR 380] 682
- R v. Jones [132 ILR 668] 130, 146–7, 181–2, 184–5, 398 n4, 400 n14, 670
- R v. Kelly [77 ILR 284] 663
- R v. Keyn 141–2, 143, 570 n85
- R v. Lambeth Justices, *ex parte* Yusufu [88 ILR 323] 769
- R v. Latif 682
- R v. Lyons [131 ILR 538] 150 n98, 180, 184 n293
- R v. Madan 740 n236
- R v. Ministry of Defence (UK), *ex parte* Smith 181 n269
- R v. Mullen 682 n180
- R v. Officer Commanding Depot Battalion RASC Colchester, *ex parte* Elliott 682 n177

- R v. P (No. 2) 732–3
- R v. Plymouth Justices and Another, *ex parte* Driver [77 ILR 351] 682
- R v. Republic of Iraq [116 ILR 664] 727
- R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, *ex parte* Rees-Mogg [98 ILR 166] 149
- R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, *ex parte* Samuel 757–8
- R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, *ex parte* Trawnik 103, 193
- R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, *ex parte* Thakrar [59 ILR 450] 144, 827 n291
- R v. Secretary of State for Transport, *ex parte* Factortame Limited (No. 2) (Case C 213/89) [93 ILR 642, 93 ILR 665] 179 n258
- R v. Secretary of State for Transport, *ex parte* Factortame Limited (No. 3) (Case C 221/89) [93 ILR 642, 93 ILR 731] 179 n258
- R v. West Yorkshire Coroner, *ex parte* Smith [78 ILR 550] 653 n33
- R (Al Fawwaz) v. Governor of Brixton Prison 155
- R (Al-Rawi) v. Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs 181 n270, 188, 811
- R (on the Application of Alconbury Ltd) v. Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions 156
- R on the Application of Channel Tunnel Group Limited and France-Manch SA v. Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions [119 ILR 398] 150–3
- R (B) v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs [131 ILR 616] 773 n428
- R (European Roma Rights Centre) v. Immigration Officer at Prague Airport and Another [131 ILR 652] 146, 152
- R (Gentle) v. Prime Minister 130, 181 n272, 185 n295
- R (Islamic Human Rights Commission) v. CAA [132 ILR 707] 185 n295
- R (Suresh and Manickavasagam) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department [123 ILR 593] 187
- Racke (A) GmbH and Company v. Hauptzollamt Mainz (Case C-162/96) [117 ILR 399] 952 n225
- Radovan Stanković case (Case No. IT-96-23/2-AR11 bis.1) (Decision on Rule 11 *bis* Referral) 426
- Radwan v. Radwan [55 ILR 579] 752
- Re Rafidain [101 ILR 332] 728 n166
- Rahimtoola v. Nizam of Hyderabad [24 ILR 175] 705
- Railway Traffic between Lithuania and Poland (Series A/B, No. 42) [6 AD 403] 1016

- Rainbow Warrior* (New Zealand/France) [82 ILR 499] 782 n23, 789, 797–8, 800, 803, 805–6, 946, 948, 1101
- Rainbow Warrior* (New Zealand/France) (UN Secretary-General's Ruling) [74 ILR 241] 779, 785, 1101
- Rajan v. Minister of Immigration (New Zealand) [117 ILR 641] 167 n197
- Ramirez v. Weinberger 700
- Ramos and Others v. United States [116 ILR 634] 727
- Rankin v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 10913) [82 ILR 204] 792, 827
- Rann of Kutch (Indo-Pakistan Western Boundary) case (India/Pakistan) [50 ILR 2] 106, 491, 513–14, 526 n220, 1052 n261, 1054–5
- Rantzen v. Mirror Group Newspapers 154 n124
- Rasul v. Bush 658, 686
- Rayner v. Department of Trade and Industry: *see* JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry and Others [77 ILR 55]
- Re-Introduction of the Death Penalty in the Peruvian Constitution case 104 n142, 398
- Reading and Bates Corporation and Reading and Bates Exploration Company v. National Iranian Oil Company [63 ILR 305] 742
- The Red Crusader* [35 ILR 485] 618, 638, 1021
- Reel v. Holder and Another [74 ILR 105] 479
- Rees v. Secretary of State for the Home Department 665
- Rees-Mogg case: *see* R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, *ex parte* Rees-Mogg [98 ILR 166]
- Reference by the Governor in Council concerning Certain Questions relating to the Secession of Quebec [115 ILR 536] 166, 255, 256–7, 291, 293, 523
- Reference *re* Exemption of US Forces from Canadian Criminal Law [12 AD 124] 167
- Reference *re* Ownership and Jurisdiction Over Offshore Mineral Rights of British Columbia [43 ILR 93] 166 n193
- Reference *re* Powers to Levy Rates on Foreign Legations and High Commissioners' Residences 166 n193, 167
- Reference *re* the Seabed and Subsoil of the Continental Shelf Offshore Newfoundland [86 ILR 593] 171 n219
- Reid v. Republic of Nauru [101 ILR 193] 711
- Reinier van Arkel Foundation and Others v. Minister for Transport, Public Works and Water Management (Netherlands) 172–3

- Renchard *et al.* v. Humphreys & Harding Inc. *et al.* [63 ILR 21, 63 ILR 33] 763
- Reparation for Injuries Suffered in the Service of the United Nations [16 AD 318] 47, 83, 93 n96, 95 n96, 110, 260, 264, 811, 937, 1113–14, 1297–8, 1302–3, 1306 n104, 1307 n112, 1311–12
- Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the *Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France) Case* (Order) [106 ILR 1]: *see* Nuclear Tests Case (New Zealand v. France), Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the *Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France) Case* (Order) [106 ILR 1]
- Reservations to the Genocide Convention case [18 ILR 364] 83, 110, 283–4, 918–19, 963, 981–2, 1060 n17, 1110
- Resolution of the Supreme Court of Poland of 19 February 2003 173
- Respublica v. De Longchamps 157
- Revere Copper and Brass Inc. and Overseas Private Investment Corporation [56 ILR 258] 832 n315
- Rich *et al.* v. Naviera Vacuba SA *et al.* [32 ILR 127] 705
- Richtersveld Community case 298 n180
- Right of Passage over Indian Territory case (Portugal v. India) (Merits) [31 ILR 23] 86 n54, 92–3, 102, 124 n228, 508, 539
- Right of Passage over Indian Territory case (Portugal v. India) (Preliminary Objections) [24 ILR 840] 936, 1015 n21, 1082 n168
- Right to Information on Consular Assistance case 130, 389–90
- Rights of US Nationals in Morocco: *see* US Nationals in Morocco case (USA v. France) [19 ILR 255]
- Rio Tinto Zinc Corporation and Others v. Westinghouse Electric Corporation [73 ILR 296] 689 n223
- RL v. Canada (Communication No. 358/1989) [96 ILR 706] 292 n155
- RMD v. Switzerland 223 n131
- Robert E. Brown case [2 AD 66] 273, 1003
- Roberts case [3 AD 227] 824–5
- Robinson v. Secretary-General of the UN [19 ILR 494] 280
- Robinson case 321
- Rocha *et al.* v. United States [32 ILR 112] 667
- Rodriguez-Fernandez v. Wilkinson [87 ILR 446] 158 n150
- Roma Rights case: *see* R (European Roma Rights Centre) v. Immigration Officer at Prague Airport and Another [131 ILR 652]

- Rothmans International France SA and Philip Morris France SA;
 Arizona Tobacco Products and Philip Morris France SA [93 ILR
 308] 174 n234
- RT v. Switzerland 330
- Ruggiu case 431
- Russian Indemnity case 802 n154
- Rustomjee v. R 149 n93
- Rutaganda case 432
- Rutili v. Minister of the Interior of the French Republic (Case 36/75) [62
 ILR 390] 156, 369–70
- Ruzmetove v. Uzbekistan 320 n299
- S v. India [82 ILR 13] 768 n395
- S & S Machinery Company v. Masinexport-import and Romanian Bank
 for Foreign Trade [72 ILR 183] 742
- Saadi v. Italy 687 n215
- Sabah Shipyard v. Pakistan 740 n237
- Sabbatino case: *see* Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Sabbatino *et al.* [35 ILR 2]
- Saghi v. Iran (Case No. 298) [84 ILR 609] 815 n236
- M/V *Saiga* (No. 2) (Saint Vincent and the Grenadines v. Guinea)
 (Admissibility and Merits) [120 ILR 143] 103 n133, 111 n183,
 137 n35, 583, 612 n307, 613, 618, 643–4, 798–9, 801, 819,
 823 n264
- St Pierre and Miquelon (Delimitation of Maritime Areas between
 Canada and the French Republic (St Pierre and Miquelon)) [95 ILR
 645] 598–9, 602
- Saipan, People of, *ex rel* Guerrero v. US Department of the Interior [61
 ILR 113] 164
- Salamat case: *see* R v. Chief Immigration Officer, Heathrow Airport, *ex*
parte Salamat Bibi [61 ILR 267]
- Salem case (United States and Egypt) [6 AD 188] 273, 815
- Salimoff and Company v. Standard Oil Company of New York; The
 Same v. Vacuum Oil Company [7 AD 22] 483, 485
- Salomon v. Commissioners of Customs and Excise [41 ILR 1] 153
- Saltzitter Mannesmann v. Commission 371
- Saluka Investments v. Czech Republic 834 n324, 1050
- Salvador Commercial Company case 786
- Sambaggio case 791 n74
- Sanchez-Espinoza and Others v. Reagan and Others [80 ILR 586] 160
 n163, 684

- Sanchez-Llamas v. Oregon 130, 159, 221
 Sandline International Inc./Papua New Guinea Arbitration (Interim Award) [117 ILR 552] 146, 789
Re Sandrock and Others 400 n14
 Sankoh case [119 ILR 385] 187
 Santa Elena v. Costa Rica 832, 833–4
 Sapphire International Petroleum Ltd v. National Iranian Oil Company [35 ILR 136] 836 n340
 Sara *et al.* v. Finland (Communication No. 431/1990) [114 ILR 331] 274 n48
 Saudi Arabia (Government of) v. Ahmed [104 ILR 629] 725
 Saudi Arabia and Others v. Nelson [100 ILR 544] 708, 709 n64, 715, 723 n136, 724 n145
 Sawhoyamaya Indigenous Community v. Paraguay 300–1, 391
 Scarfò v. Sovereign Order of Malta [24 ILR 1] 243 n235
 Schavernoeh v. Foreign Claims Commission [90 ILR 220] 815 n236
 Schmidt v. Polish People's Republic 721
Re Schmidt [111 ILR 548] 682
 Schneider v. Kissinger 190 n336, 191
 The Schooner *Exchange* v. McFaddon 558, 653 n33, 699
 Schreck case 1054
 Schroeder v. Bissell 158, 159
The Scotia case 83, 112
 SD Myers Inc. v. Canada (Partial Award) [121 ILR 72] 49, 801 n150, 830 n305
 Šećerbegović v. Bosnia 380
 Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Relations v. Tomlin 757
 Security Pacific National Bank v. Iran 742
 SEDCO v. National Iranian Oil Company and the Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 129) [84 ILR 483] 831 n309, 841
 Sei Fujii v. California 163
 Sellers v. Maritime Safety Inspector (New Zealand) [120 ILR 585] 614 n319
 Selmouni v. France 326
 Semco Salvage v. Lancer Navigation 155–6
 Sengupta v. Republic of India [64 ILR 352] 714, 725–6, 770
 Serbia and Montenegro v. Belgium 1060 n19
 Serbia and Montenegro v. UK 963, 1065, 1071, 1073–4, 1075 n88, 1085–6, 1157 n199

- Serbian Loans case (Payment of Various Serbian Loans Issued in France)
[5 AD 466] 2, 102, 136–7, 796
- Serre et Régnier case 663
- SGS Société Générale de Surveillance SA v. Pakistan (ICSID Case No.
ARB/01/13) (Procedural Order No. 2) [129 ILR 360] 1043
- Shanghai Power Co. v. United States 831 n307
- Shaw v. Shaw [78 ILR 483] 769 n405
- Shearson Lehman Brothers Inc. and Another v. Maclaine Watson and
Company Limited and Another and International Tin Council
(Intervener) (No. 2) [77 ILR 107] 763, 1327 n202
- Shimoda case [32 ILR 626] 1188
- Short v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 11135) [82 ILR 148] 792
- Shrimp/Turtle case 869 n134
- Shufeldt Claim (USA v. Guatemala) [5 AD 179] 103, 830
- Siderman de Blake and Others v. Republic of Argentina and Others [103
ILR 454] 126 n238, 160, 684, 700, 742
- Sidhu v. British Airways 155
- Siemens v. Argentina 832 n313
- Sierra Leone Telecommunications Company Ltd v. Barclays Bank plc
[114 ILR 466] 150 n100, 194 n358, 481 n150
- Simpson v. Libya 715–16
- Simsek v. Macphee 168 n202
- Sinclair v. HM Advocate 682 n177
- Skeen v. Federative Republic of Brazil [121 ILR 481] 766
- Skirioties v. Florida [10 AD 258] 663
- Smith v. Libya [113 ILR 534] 685 n202, 742
- Société Eram Shipping Co. Ltd v. Cie Internationale de Navigation 654
n37
- Société Internationale pour Participations Industrielles et Commerciales
SA v. Rogers, Attorney-General *et al.* [26 ILR 123] 689 n223
- Soering v. United Kingdom [98 ILR 270] 349, 358, 687, 938
- Sokoloff v. National City Bank of New York [2 AD 44] 483
- Sola Tiles Inc. v. Iran (Case No. 317) [83 ILR 460] 816 n237, 836 n341
- Solórzano v. Venezuela (Communication No. 156/1983) [94 ILR 400]
274 n48
- Somalia (Republic of) v. Woodhouse Drake and Carey (Suisse) SA and
Others [94 ILR 608] 194, 481
- Somchai Liangsirprasert v. United States (Government of) [84 ILR 55,
85 ILR 109] 655
- Some Powers of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights 383

- South-West Africa cases (Second Phase) (1966) [37 ILR 243] 12, 99
 n113, 100 n119, 107, 137 n34, 225, 230, 252 n276, 277 n71, 279
 n79, 286 n125, 288 n136, 493 n33, 905, 1059, 1067 n73, 1068, 1088,
 1307 n116, 1331
- South-West Africa cases (Second Phase) (1966) [37 ILR 243]: *see also*
 International Status of South-West Africa [17 ILR 47]
- South-West Africa (Hearings of Petitioners), Admissibility [23 ILR 38]
 225
- Southern Bluefin Tuna cases (Australia v. Japan; New Zealand v. Japan)
 (Award on Jurisdiction and Admissibility) [119 ILR 508] 636,
 637–8
- Southern Bluefin Tuna cases (Australia v. Japan; New Zealand v. Japan)
 (Request for Provisional Measures) [117 ILR 148] 643–4,
 1015 n24
- Sovereign Order of Malta v. Soc. An. commerciale [22 ILR 1] 243
- Sovereignty over Certain Frontier Land, Case concerning
 (Belgium/Netherlands) [27 ILR 62] 505
- Spanish Zone of Morocco Claims, General Decisions (Principles of State
 Responsibility) [2 AD 157] 113, 781, 791, 802 n154
- Sporrong and Lönnroth case (Merits) [68 ILR 86] 829 n299, 832 n315
- SPUC v. Grogan 369
- Stakić case (IT-97-24-T) 433
- Standard Chartered Bank v. International Tin Council and Others [77
 ILR 8] 1316
- Standards for Reformulated and Conventional Gasoline case 1038
- Starrett Housing Corporation, Starrett Systems Inc. and Starrett
 Housing International Inc. v. Iran, Bank Omran, Bank Mellat and
 Bank Markazi (Case No. 24) [85 ILR 349] 103, 831
- State (Céara) v. D'Archer de Montgascon [6 AD 162] 733 n194
- State (Céara) v. Dorr [4 AD 39] 733 n194
- State Party Responsibility for Awards Rendered Against Its Nationals
 (Case A/21) 1044
- State (South Africa) v. Ebrahim [95 ILR 417] 682 n179
- Stauder v. City of Ulm 369
- Steiner and Gross v. Polish State [4 AD 291 *et al.*] 259
- Strassheim v. Dailey 654
- Suárez-Rosero v. Ecuador [118 ILR 56] 802 nn150–2
- Sullivan v. State of São Paulo [10 AD 178] 733
- Sunday Times Case (Merits) [58 ILR 491] 356, 357, 389 n254, 786 n51
- Ex parte* Susannah Scott 682 n177

- Svenska Petroleum v. Lithuania 720–1, 741–2
 Swedish Engine Drivers' Union case [58 ILR 19] 348
 Swiss–Israel Trade Bank v. Government of Salta and Banco Provincial de Salta [55 ILR 411] 733
 Swissborough Diamond Mines v. South Africa [132 ILR 454] 189
 Syria (Arab Republic of) v. Arab Republic of Egypt (Case No. 298-DF) [91 ILR 288] 184 n292
- T v. Belgium [115 ILR 442] 186 n302
 Taba Award (Arbitral Award in the Dispute Concerning Certain Boundary Pillars between the Arab Republic of Egypt and the State of Israel) [80 ILR 224, 80 ILR 691] 516, 935 n155, 1054–5
 Tabag v. Minister for Immigration and Ethnic Affairs (Australia) 170 n212
 Tabatabai case [80 ILR 388] 769, 775
 Tabion v. Mufti [107 ILR 452] 767 n383
 Tachiona v. USA 737–8
 Tacna-Arica Arbitration (Chile/Peru) [3 AD 357] 947–8, 1017 n32
 Tadić case (IT-94-1-A) (Appeal against Conviction) (Appeals Chamber) [124 ILR 61] 121 n184, 438, 791, 1065 n55, 1081 n163, 1173 n29
 Tadić case (IT-94-1-AR72) (Jurisdiction) (Appeals Chamber) [105 ILR 419, 105 ILR 453] 404–5, 406, 435, 1191–2, 1195 n142, 1196, 1269 n320, 1271 n332, 1308 n120
 Tadić case (IT-94-1-T) (Judgment) (Trial Chamber II) [112 ILR 1, 112 ILR 214] 437
 Tag v. Rogers 158 n149
 A/S Tallinna Laevauhisus v. Tallinna Shipping Co. (*The Vapper*) [13 AD 12] 961 n24
 Tanli case 357, 358
 Tatchell v. Mugabe 737
 Tavignano case 1020 n52
 Tel-Oren v. Libyan Arab Republic [77 ILR 192] 160, 683, 684, 750
 Temeltasch v. Switzerland [88 ILR 619] 915 nn61 and 62
 Temple of Preah Vihear case (Cambodia v. Thailand) (Merits) [33 ILR 48] 102, 496, 516, 518–19, 522, 802 n154, 935 n155, 939, 941–2, 1061
 Teoh (Minister for Immigration and Ethnic Affairs (Australia) v. Teoh) [104 ILR 460] 151 n104, 167–9
 Texaco Overseas Petroleum Company (TOPCO) and California Asiatic Oil Company v. Libya [53 ILR 389] 105 n146, 262, 803–4, 829, 834–5, 905 n16

Texas v. White 482–3

Texas Trading and Milling Corporation v. Federal Republic of Nigeria
and Central Bank of Nigeria, Consolidated Appeal [63 ILR 552]
724

Thai-Europe Tapioca Service Ltd v. Government of Pakistan, Ministry of
Food and Agriculture, Directorate of Agricultural Supplies
(Imports and Shipping Wing) (*The Harmattan*) [64 ILR 81] 145,
706

Thakrar case: *see* R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, *ex*
parte Thakrar [59 ILR 450]

In re Thenault 662

767 Third Avenue Associates and Another v. Permanent Mission of the
Republic of Zaire to the United Nations [99 ILR 194] 752, 754

Thirty Hogsheads of Sugar, Bentzon v. Boyle 112 n185

Thomas v. Mowbray 189

Thomas Lubanga Dyilo case 1116 n374

Thompson v. St Vincent and the Grenadines 321

Thorpe v. Commonwealth of Australia (No. 3) [118 ILR 353] 189

Tiger case 1020 n52

Timberlane Lumber Company *et al.* v. Bank of America, NY and SA
et al. [66 ILR 270] 689–90

Tinoco Arbitration (Great Britain/Costa Rica) [2 AD 34 *et al.*] 455–6

Too v. Greater Modesto Insurance Associates 834 n324

Toonen v. Australia (Communication No. 488/1992) [112 ILR 328] 223
n131

Torres v. State of Oklahoma 159

Torres Ramírez v. Uruguay 274 n48

Touvier case [100 ILR 337] 670

Tradex Hellas SA v. Albania 1042 n194

Trail Smelter Arbitration (USA/Canada) [9 AD 315] 852, 854, 855–7,
872, 1052, 1053 n263, 1054 n271

Transamerican Steamship Corporation v. Somali Democratic
Republic and Somali Shipping Agency [86 ILR 55, 86 ILR 68] 723,
724

Transportes Aereos de Angola v. Ronair Inc. and Another [94 ILR 202]
482

Trawnik v. Gordon Lennox 704 n32

Trawnik v. Minister of Defence 154

Trawnik cases: *see also* R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and
Commonwealth Affairs, *ex parte* Trawnik

Treatment in Hungary of US Aircraft case 1076 n132

- Re Treaty on the Basis of Relations between the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic*, 1972 [78 ILR 149] 463, 965 n52
- Re Treaty on European Union*, 1992 (Maastricht I) (Decision No. 92-308 DC) [93 ILR 337] 174 n235
- Trendtex Trading Corporation v. Central Bank of Nigeria* [64 ILR 111] 141 n53, 144–5, 706–7, 709 n64, 728–9, 731, 745
- Triquet v. Bath* 141, 143
- Tubantia* case 1020 n52
- Tunis and Morocco Nationality Decrees* (Series B, No. 4) [2 AD 349] 216
- Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf case* (Application by Malta for Permission to Intervene) [62 ILR 608] 1098 n267, 1099 n277
- Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf case* (Application for Revision and Interpretation of the Judgment of 24 February 1982 in the Case concerning the Continental Shelf (Tunisia/Libya)) [81 ILR 419] 587 n152, 1062 n26, 1075 n128, 1085 n183, 1105 n316, 1106
- Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf case* (Merits) [67 ILR 4] 106 n151, 124, 563–4, 583, 587 n152, 594, 595, 597–8, 600 n240, 601 n241, 1075 n127, 1086 n193, 1089 n216
- TWA v. Franklin Mint Corporation* 950 n219
- Tyrer case* [58 ILR 339] 223 n131, 349
- UN v. B* [19 ILR 490] 1300 n75
- Underhill v. Hernandez* 180, 189
- Unification Treaty Constitutionality case* (Merits) (Cases 1 BvR 1170, 1174, 1175/90) [94 ILR 42] 172
- Union Bridge Company case* [2 AD 170] 788–9
- United Arab Emirates v. Abdelghafar* [104 ILR 647] 748
- United Euram Company v. Union of Soviet Socialist Republics et al.* [63 ILR 228] 721
- United Nations Administrative Tribunal, Effect of Awards of Compensation* [21 ILR 310] 101, 1081 n163, 1113 n357, 1307
- United Nations Administrative Tribunal, Review of Judgment, No. 158 (Fasla)* [54 ILR 381] 1113
- United Nations Administrative Tribunal, Review of Judgment, No. 273 (Mortished)* [69 ILR 330] 1112 n354, 1113 n357
- United Parcel Service of America v. Canada* 1039 n174
- United States v. Alaska* 563–4
- United States v. Aluminum Co. of America* 688–9
- United States v. Belmont* [8 AD 34] 158, 485

- United States v. Benitez 666
- United States v. Biermann [84 ILR 206] 619
- United States v. California [42 ILR 86] 564
- United States v. Claus [13 AD 181] 158
- United States v. Columba-Colella 654 n40
- United States v. Cortes 615
- United States v. Curtiss-Wright Export Corporation *et al.* [8 AD 48] 161
n170, 219 n111
- United States v. Dominguez 614
- United States v. Dulles 811 n213
- United States v. First National City Bank *et al.* [38 ILR 112] 689 n223
- United States v. Friedland; Friedland v. United States and Others [120
ILR 417] 707, 742 n245
- United States v. General Electric Co. 689 n222
- United States v. Guinand [99 ILR 117] 769
- United States v. Guinto, Valencia and Others 708 n57
- United States v. Kessler 568 n76
- United States v. Kostadinov [99 ILR 103] 752
- United States v. Layton [94 ILR 83] 667 n97
- United States v. Lira 681
- United States v. Louisiana *et al.* (Alabama and Mississippi Boundary
case) [91 ILR 411] 564
- United States v. Louisiana *et al.* (Louisiana Boundary case) (1969) [53
ILR 206] 564
- United States v. McCaffery 686 n208
- United States v. Mackin [79 ILR 459] 687
- United States v. Maine and Others [91 ILR 427] 564
- United States v. Marino-Garcia 614
- United States v. Matta-Ballesteros [107 ILR 429] 125 n236
- United States v. Melekh *et al.* [32 ILR 308] 157
- United States v. Monroy 614
- United States v. Noriega [99 ILR 143, 121 ILR 591] 191 n343, 258, 688
n219, 736, 764 n363, 1176
- United States v. Palestine Liberation Organization and Others [82 ILR
282] 158 n150, 165
- United States v. Percheman 162, 1002
- United States v. Perez-Herrera 654
- United States v. Pink, Superintendent of Insurance of the State of New
York *et al.* [10 AD 48] 162, 465, 485
- United States v. Pizzarusso 667

- United States v. Postal 162
- United States v. Public Service Alliance of Canada and Others (*Re*
Canada Labour Code) [94 ILR 264] 711, 714, 726
- United States v. Ray [51 ILR 225] 199 n16
- United States v. Rodriguez 159 n155
- United States v. Ruiz and de Guzman and Co. (Case No. L-35645) [102
ILR 122] 708 n57
- United States v. Sissoko [121 ILR 599] 775
- United States v. Smith 160 n160
- United States v. Timken Roller Bearing Co. 689 n222
- United States v. Toscanino [61 ILR 190] 681
- United States v. Watchmakers of Switzerland Information Center Inc.
et al. [22 ILR 168] 689 n222
- United States v. Wong Kim Ark 661
- United States v. Yunis (No. 2) [82 ILR 343] 666
- United States v. Yunis (No. 3) [88 ILR 176] 158, 666 n88
- United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran case (USA v.
Iran) (Iranian Hostages case) [61 ILR 502] 7, 751–2, 755–6, 763
n358, 766, 772 n424, 793, 801 n147, 1013, 1066 n56, 1079, 1089,
1094, 1102, 1104, 1144 n131
- United States *ex rel.* Lujan v. Gengler [61 ILR 206] 681
- United States and Republic of France v. Dollfus Mieg et Cie SA, and
Bank of England [16 AD 103, 16 AD 128, 19 ILR 163] 703 n29
- UNRAA v. Daan [16 AD 337] 1300
- Upright v. Mercury Business Machines Company [32 ILR 65] 483–4
- In re* Uranium Antitrust Litigation 689 n223
- Re* Urios [1 AD 107] 667
- US Nationals in Morocco case (USA v. France) [19 ILR 255] 83, 216, 934
n148
- Vafadar [82 ILR 97] 769
- Vagrancy cases (De Wilde, Ooms and Versyp) (Merits) [56 ILR 351] 356
n61
- Valdez v. Oklahoma 158–9
- Valsabbia v. Commission 369–70
- Van Duyn v. Home Office (Case 41/74) [60 ILR 247] 827 n291
- Van Gend en Loos (Algemene Transport en Expeditie Onderneming van
Gend en Loos NV v. Nederlandse Administratie der Belastingen
(Case 26/62)) [93 ILR 1] 241
- Van Zyl v. Government of RSA 809 n206, 810

- Velásquez Rodríguez case [95 ILR 232] 390, 789, 804–5
- Verlinden BV v. Central Bank of Nigeria [63 ILR 7, 63 ILR 390, 63 ILR 548, 63 ILR 573] 750
- Vermont v. New Hampshire [7 AD 127, 7 AD 135] 112 n187
- Vgt Verein gegen Tierfabriken case 357
- Victoria Leasing Ltd v. United States 189
- Victory Transport Inc. v. Comisaría General de Abastecimientos y Transportes [35 ILR 110] 705 n34, 708, 735
- Vietnam Association for Victims of Agent Orange v. Dow Chemical Company 161 n168
- Vietnam (Republic of) v. Pfizer Inc. and Others [94 ILR 199] 482
- Vijayanathan and Pusparajah v. France 355
- Vitkovice Horni v. Korner 748 n282
- Vladimir Kovačević case 430
- The Volga* (Russian Federation v. Australia) (Application for Prompt Release) [126 ILR 433] 642–3
- Vuolanne case [96 ILR 649] 322, 326
- Waddington v. Miah [57 ILR 175] 154
- Wahda Bank v. Arab Bank plc 155 n130
- Waite and Kennedy v. Germany (Application No. 26083/94) [118 ILR 121] 1321–2
- Waksman case 321
- Walker v. Baird 151 n106
- Walker v. UK 356 n58
- Ware v. Hylton 161
- Wei Ye v. Jiang Zemin 738
- Weinberger case 274 n48
- Weinberger, Secretary of Defense (United States) and Others v. Rossi and Others [101 ILR 562] 164
- Wellington District Legal Services Committee v. Tangiora [115 ILR 655] 167 n197
- Wemhoff case [41 ILR 281] 689 n221, 938 n168
- West Rand Gold Mining Co. v. R 142–3, 1001 n237, 1002–3
- Western Sahara case (Advisory Opinion) [59 ILR 30] 88, 197 n7, 198 n10, 199 n13, 200, 206 n46, 253, 254–5, 257, 264, 491, 493, 503, 508, 514, 516, 524, 525, 1062, 1109 n340, 1110–11
- Ex parte* Westfallen 682
- Westland Helicopters Ltd v. Arab Organization for Industrialization [108 ILR 564] 184 nn291 and 292, 1302, 1310 n127, 1317 n158

- Westland Helicopters Ltd v. Arab Organization for Industrialization,
United Arab Emirates, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, State of Qatar,
Arab Republic of Egypt and Arab British Helicopter Company
(Interim Award, 1984) [80 ILR 600] 135 n23, 1043, 1316
- Westminster City Council v. Government of Iran [108 ILR 557] 749, 758
- Whitney v. Robertson 158, 165 n182
- WHO Regional Office case (Interpretation of the Agreement of 25
March 1951 between the WHO and Egypt) [62 ILR 450] 260 n310,
1113 n357, 1303 n89, 1311, 1312 n138
- Wildenhus case 557
- Williams & Humbert Ltd v. W & H Trade Marks (Jersey) Ltd; Rumasa
SA and Others v. Multinvest (UK) and Others [75 ILR 268] 191
n345, 650
- Wilson v. Minister for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Affairs 189
- SS *Wimbledon* [2 AD 99 *et al.*] 212 n76, 540, 930, 1098
- Woodpulp cases (Ahlström Osakeyhtiö and Others v. Commission (*In re*
Wood Pulp Cartel) (Joined Cases 89/85, 104/85, 114/85, 116–17/85
and 125–9/85)) [96 ILR 148] 652, 695
- Re Woods* [53 ILR 552] 170 n217
- Wright v. Cantrell [12 ILR 133] 167
- Wulfsohn v. Russian Socialist Federated Soviet Republic [2 AD 39 *et al.*]
446 n6, 482 n153
- Wynne case: *see* R v. Home Secretary, *ex parte* Wynne
- X v. Argentina [114 ILR 502] 726 n157
- X v. Austria 355
- X v. Commission 369–70
- X v. FRG 355
- X v. UK 355
- Xuncax and Others v. Gramajo; Ortiz v. Gramajo [104 ILR 165]
160 n165
- Y v. Belgium 355
- Yeager v. Islamic Republic of Iran (Case No. 10199) [82 ILR 178] 791
n72, 792
- Yessenin-Volpin v. Novosti Press Agency, Tass *et al.* [63 ILR 127] 723, 732
- Yossi Beilin v. Prime Minister of Israel 1122 n19
- Youmans case [3 AD 223] 788, 791 n73
- Young, James and Webster case (Closed Shop case) (Merits) [62 ILR
359] 357, 787

- Young Loan Arbitration (Kingdom of Belgium, the French Republic, Swiss Confederation, United Kingdom and United States/Federal Republic of Germany) [59 ILR 494] 934 n148, 935 n158, 938 n172
- Yugoslavia v. Belgium (Legality of the Use of Force) 1093 n238, 1157 n199
- Yugoslavia v. Spain (Legality of the Use of Force) 921, 1074
- Yugoslavia v. USA (Legality of the Use of Force) 915, 921, 1074
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Interlocutory Decision (Opinion Nos. 8, 9 and 10) [92 ILR 194] 1053 n262
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 1 (Succession to SFRY) [92 ILR 162] 198, 210, 217–18, 448, 959, 962 n30
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 2 (Right to self determination of Serbs in Croatia and Bosnia-Herzegovina) [92 ILR 167] 291, 527–8, 1005
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 3 (Internal boundaries) [92 ILR 170] 528, 968 n68
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 4 (Independence of Bosnia and Heregovina pending referendum) [92 ILR 173] 201
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 5 (Recognition of Croatia) [92 ILR 178] 201 n24, 461
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 8 (Dissolution of SFRY) [92 ILR 199] 208, 210, 218, 449, 962
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 9 (Succession to SFRY) [92 ILR 203] 962
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 10 (Recognition of FRY) [92 ILR 206] 450, 962
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 11 (Succession to SFRY: date of) [96 ILR 718] 454 n.34, 960
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 13 (Succession to SFRY: principles applying to) [96 ILR 726] 958, 991–2
- Yugoslavia Peace Conference, Arbitration Commission, Opinions, 14 (Succession to SFRY: assets and liabilities) [96 ILR 729] 991
- Z v. Geneva Supervisory Authority for the Enforcement of Debts and Bankruptcy [102 ILR 205] 747 n268
- Z v. UK 356–7
- Zachevning v. Miller 219

The Zafiro [3 AD 221] 789

Zambian Embassy v. Sendanayake (Decision No. 5941/1992) [114 ILR 532] 727

Zedan v. Kingdom of Saudi Arabia [92 ILR 462] 724

Zimbabwe Human Rights NGO Forum v. Zimbabwe 394 n288

ZM v. Permanent Delegation of the League of Arab States to the United Nations [116 ILR 643] 1321

TABLE OF TREATIES AND SELECTED OTHER INTERNATIONAL INSTRUMENTS

1648

Treaty of Westphalia 26, 1120, 1282

1794

Great Britain–USA, Jay Treaty 823, 1048

1814

Great Britain–USA, Treaty of Ghent 1048 n227

1815

Final Act of the Congress of Vienna 28

1842

China–Great Britain, Treaty of Nanking ceding the Island of Hong
Kong 1008

1860

China–Great Britain, Convention of Peking leasing the New
Territories 1008

1864

Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the
Wounded and Sick of Armed Forces in the Field 28, 1168

1868

St Petersburg Declaration Renouncing the Use in Time of War of
Explosive Projectiles under 400 Grammes Weight 1168,
1186, 1189

1869

El Salvador–Honduras, Delimitation Agreement (unratified) 530

1878

Treaty of Berlin
art. 6 465
art. 27 465
art. 35 465
art. 43 465

1884

International Convention for the Protection of Submarine Telegraphic
Cables 399 n11

1885

General Act of the Congress of Berlin
art. 35 520

1888

Convention Respecting the Free Navigation of the Suez Canal
(Constantinople) 540

1890

Germany–Great Britain, Treaty Delimiting Respective Spheres of
Influence in Africa 496

1895

China–Japan, Treaty of Shimonoseki (Cession of Taiwan) 234

1898

Spain–USA, Treaty of Paris 499, 512

1899

Hague Convention I for the Pacific Settlement of International
Disputes 1052–3

art. 2 1020

art. 3 1019

art. 9 1020

art. 15 1048–9

art. 18 1049

art. 44 1049

art. 48 1049, 1051 n256

Hague Convention IV concerning the Laws and Customs of War on
Land 1165

Declaration No. 2 Concerning Asphyxiating Gases 1189

1903

France–Great Britain, Agreement for the Settlement by Arbitration of
Certain Classes of Questions which may arise between the two
Governments 1049

Panama–USA, Convention for the Construction of the Isthmian Ship
Canal 658

1904

France–Siam, Convention modifying the Treaty of 3 October 1893
regarding Territorial Boundaries and Other Arrangements
518

1906

- Convention for the Prohibition of the Use of White Phosphorus in the
Manufacture of Matches (Berne) 270
- Convention respecting the Prohibition of Night Work for Women in
Industrial Employment (Berne) 270
- France–UK, Treaty establishing the Condominium of the New
Hebrides 228–9

1907

- Convention for the Establishment of a Central American Court of
Justice 259
- Hague Convention No. I for the Pacific Settlement of International
Disputes
art. 2 1020
art. 3 1019
art. 37 1048
art. 73 1051 n256
art. 81 1053
art. 84 1053
- Hague Convention No. II respecting the Limitation on the
Employment of Force for the Recovery of Contract Debts
1121 n14
- Hague Convention No. IV on the Laws and Customs of Warfare on
Land 1165
preamble (Martens Clause) 1169 n9
- Hague Convention No. IV on the Laws and Customs of Warfare on
Land, Regulations
Section I, Chapter I 1173
Section I, Chapter II 1172 n28
Section II
art. 22 1186–7
art. 23(a) 1188
art. 23(e) 1187
Section III 1177
art. 42 1177
art. 43 1135, 1178, 1180
art. 47 1181

1910

- Agreement for the Suppression of the Circulation of Obscene
Publications 399 n11

1912

France–Morocco, Treaty of Fez for the Establishment of a New Regime
(Protectorate Treaty) 216

1914

France–UK, Protocol respecting the New Hebrides 229

1919

Allied and Association Powers–Poland, Minorities Treaty 1002

Constitution of the International Labour Organisation (Part XIII of the
Treaty of Versailles) 271

art. 26 1021

art. 37 1034 n148, 1305 n99

Covenant of the League of Nations 251, 942, 1121–2, 1285

arts. 10–16 1122

art. 12 1216

art. 15 1216–17

art. 16 1217

art. 22 224, 270–1

art. 23 270–1

Paris Convention for the Regulation of Aerial Navigation

art. 1 542

arts. 5–10 542

Treaty of St Germain (Treaty of Peace between the Allied and Associated
Powers and Austria) 211, 957–8, 996

art. 203 999

Treaty of Versailles (Treaty of Peace between the Allied and Associated
Powers and Germany) 448

art. 227 399 n11, 735

art. 228 399 n11, 669

art. 304(b) 258–9

art. 380 540

1920

Treaty of Trianon (Treaty of Peace between the Allied and Associated
Powers and Hungary)

art. 186 999

1921

Great Britain–Ireland, Articles of Agreement concerning Irish Free State
Treaty 999

1922

Germany–Poland, Geneva Convention concerning Upper Silesia
259

Saudi Arabia–Kuwait-administered Neutral Zone, Treaty
establishing 229 n168

1923

Mexico–USA, General Claims Convention
art. V 821

Treaty of Lausanne (Treaty Concerning the Demise of the Ottoman
Empire) 1000 n235

1924

International Convention for the Suppression of the Circulation of and
Traffic in Obscene Publications 399 n11

1925

Geneva Protocol for the Prohibition of the Use in War of Asphyxiating,
Poisonous or Other Gases, and of Bacteriological Methods of
Warfare 1188 n111

1926

Brussels Convention on the Immunity of State-owned Ships 704

International Convention for the Abolition of Slavery and the Slave
Trade 303
art. 3 335

Protocol (1953) 303

1928

American Convention on Commercial Arbitration 542

General Act for the Settlement of Disputes (revised 1949) 1016
n25, 1023, 1050 n250

art. 15(1) 1023 n67

art. 28 1052, 1052 n261

General Treaty for the Renunciation of War (Kellogg–Briand
Pact) 439 n226, 468, 501, 506, 509, 942

1929

General Treaty of Inter-American Arbitration 1050 n250

Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the
Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field 1169

Geneva Convention on the Treatment of Prisoners of War 1169

International Convention for the Suppression of Counterfeiting
Currency 399 n11, 674

Italy–Holy See, Lateran Treaty 244

1930

France/Germany/Italy/Japan, Switzerland, International Convention
Respecting the Bank for International Settlement 249

Hague Convention concerning Certain Questions relating to the
Conflict of Nationality Laws

art. 1 660, 812–13, 1004 n249

art. 3 815

art. 12 662

1933

Montevideo Convention on the Rights and Duties of States

art. 1 198

art. 3 448

art. 7 462

art. 11 469 n104

USSR–USA, Exchange of Notes following Recognition (Litvinov
Assignment) 162, 465

1936

Convention for the Suppression of the Illicit Traffic in Dangerous
Drugs 399 n11

International Convention Regarding the Regime of the Straits between
the Mediterranean and the Black Sea (Montreux) 578

1944

Agreement on Control Machinery in Germany (as amended) 964

Chicago Convention on International Civil Aviation

art. 17 664

Declaration of Philadelphia (ILO) 338

1945

Articles of Agreement of the International Bank for Reconstruction and
Development

art. VI(5) 1329

art. VII 1299, 1319 n168, 1327 n199

Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund

art. IX 1299, 1319 n168

Charter of the International Military Tribunal of the Far East (Tokyo
Charter) 436 n215, 439

art. 5 400

Charter of the United Nations 163–4, 187, 252–5, 276–8

Chapter I

art. 1 277, 1204–5, 1218

art. 1(1) 1268–9, 1271 n333

art. 1(2) 252

art. 2 929, 1205–6, 1211

- art. 2(2) 103–4
- art. 2(3) 635, 1013
- art. 2(4) 469, 488, 501, 522, 942, 1123–8, 1132, 1148–58
- art. 2(6) 97, 928–9, 1124
- art. 2(7) 212, 272–3, 278, 488, 506, 522, 648–9, 680, 1205,
1237, 1267

Chapter II

- art. 4 201, 464, 1209, 1210–11
- art. 5 1209, 1211
- art. 6 1209, 1211

Chapter IV

- arts. 10–14 1271–2
- art. 10 1222, 1225, 1331 n221
- art. 11 1222, 1272–3
- art. 11(2) 1225, 1272–3
- art. 12 1222
- art. 13 303
- art. 13(1) 277
- art. 14 1222, 1225
- art. 17 115 n195, 1212
- art. 17(1) 3
- art. 18 909, 1211, 1330 n215
- art. 20 1212, 1272
- art. 22 1225
- art. 25 1253–4
- art. 27 1206

Chapter V

- art. 23 1206
- art. 24 114–15, 1025, 1206, 1219, 1236, 1272
- art. 24(2) 1268
- art. 25 114–15, 1075, 1206, 1208, 1219, 1236, 1253–4,
1257 n260, 1270
- art. 27 1207, 1237
- art. 28 1206
- art. 29 1224

Chapter VI 1218

- art. 33 635, 952–3, 1017, 1218, 1220
- art. 33(1) 1013–14
- art. 34 1030–1, 1219–20, 1224
- art. 35 1030–1

- art. 35(1) 1220
- art. 35(2) 1220
- art. 36 1025, 1208, 1224
- art. 36(1) 1220
- art. 37 1025, 1224
- art. 37(1) 1014
- art. 37(2) 1025, 1220
- art. 38 1224
- Chapter VII 4, 231–4, 350–1, 403, 406, 412, 413–14, 427–8,
439–50, 1124, 1217, 1234–71, 1276, 1278–80
- art. 39 1224, 1236–41
- art. 40 1241–2
- art. 41 1208, 1242–3, 1248, 1274 n344
- art. 42 1208, 1224–5, 1242, 1251, 1252, 1253 n242
- art. 43 1224, 1251–2, 1266–7, 1309
- art. 44 1208
- art. 46 1251
- art. 47 1251
- art. 50 1243–4
- art. 51 96–7, 501, 502, 610–11, 793, 795, 1124–5, 1131–43,
1146–7, 1149 n157, 1154, 1269, 1273 n341, 1275
- Chapter VIII 1273–80
- art. 52 1147 n144, 1273
- art. 52(1) 1024–5
- art. 52(2) 371, 1275
- art. 52(3) 1025, 1275
- art. 52(4) 1025, 1275 n347
- art. 53 1273–4
- art. 53(1) 1025
- art. 54 1274
- Chapter IX
- art. 55 252, 277–8, 286
- art. 56 277, 286
- art. 57 277, 1285
- Chapter X
- art. 61 1213
- art. 62 303, 1213
- arts. 62–6 1285 n12
- art. 63 338
- art. 69 1213

Chapter XI	252
Chapter XII	224, 252
art. 73	277
art. 75	1309
art. 76	277
art. 77	1214, 1309
art. 79	1223, 1309
art. 80	1331 n221
art. 82	1209
art. 83	1209, 1214, 1309
art. 85	1214, 1309
Chapter XIII	224
Chapter XIV	
art. 92	1058, 1065, 1269
art. 93	71, 1072
art. 94	1104
art. 96	954–5, 1108, 1305
art. 96(1)	1304
art. 96(2)	1112, 1304, 1308, 1325 n190
Chapter XV	
art. 97	1215
art. 98	1215, 1216, 1223, 1225
art. 99	1215, 1223
art. 100	1214–15
art. 101	1214
Chapter XVI	
art. 102	905, 926
art. 103	127, 1025, 1236, 1270, 1274
art. 104	1298, 1299
art. 105	1298, 1319
Chapter XVIII	
art. 108	931, 1207, 1209
art. 109	1207, 1209
Nuremberg Charter	400–1
art. 5	400
art. 6	399, 439, 669, 1200
art. 6(b)	434–5
art. 6(c)	436
art. 7	735
art. 8	443 n229

Pact of the League of Arab States 1031–2

Statute of the International Court of Justice

- art. 2 1058
- art. 3 1059
- art. 4 1059, 1209
- art. 5 1059
- art. 9 39, 1059
- art. 10 1059
- art. 13 1059
- art. 16 1060
- art. 17 1060
- art. 18 1060
- art. 19 1060
- art. 21 1060
- art. 22 1060
- art. 26 1062
- art. 29 1062
- art. 31 1060
- art. 31(5) 1060 n19
- art. 34 1072, 1305 n101
- art. 34(2) 1073
- art. 35(1) 1073–4
- art. 35(2) 1073–4
- art. 36 3, 1089
- art. 36(1) 1075–81
- art. 36(2) 905, 1032, 1067–8, 1081–6
- art. 36(5) 1083
- art. 36(6) 1081, 1084, 1086
- art. 37 1079 n153, 1080–1
- art. 38(1) 70–1, 113–14, 122, 601, 640, 1052 n257, 1086–8
- art. 38(1)(a) 93
- art. 38(1)(b) 74
- art. 38(1)(c) 98, 123
- art. 38(1)(d) 112–13, 123
- art. 38(2) 105–6, 107 n158
- art. 40 1075 n124, 1079 n152
- art. 40(1) 1069
- art. 41 1093–6
- art. 43(5) 1089
- art. 44(2) 1089

art. 48	1089
art. 49	1089
art. 50	1089
art. 53	1104 n311
art. 59	109–12, 1101, 1104
art. 60	1104, 1105, 1107
art. 61	1071, 1105–8
art. 62	277 n70, 1098–9
art. 63	1098
art. 65	1108–13, 1305
UNESCO Constitution	1034
art. 1	341
art. 4(4)	342
art. 12	1299
art. 14	1305 n99
art. 14(2)	1034
1962 Protocol	342

1946

Constitution of the World Health Organisation (as amended 1960, 1975, 1977, 1984, 1994)

art. 2	1112, 1308
art. 75	1034

Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations
('The General Convention') 776, 1231 n134, 1319

art. II	
section 2	1326
section 5	1328
section 7	1328
art. IV	776
section 11	1322
section 14	1323
section 16	1323 n182
art. VIII	1113
section 30	1305

ILO Constitution 338–41

art. 19	339
art. 23(2)	339
art. 24	340
art. 25	340

- arts. 26–9 340
- arts. 31–3 340
- Paris Agreement on Reparations, the Establishment of an Inter-Allied
Reparation Agency and Tripartite Commission for Restitution of
Monetary Gold
Part III 1078
- UN–ILO, Agreement establishing ILO as Specialised Agency (UNGA
resolution 50 (I)) 338
- 1947**
- Burma–UK, Recognition of Burmese Independence and Related
Matters 493–4, 958
- Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the Specialised
Agencies 1319
- art. II, section 5 1327 n202
- art. III
section 4 1326 n198
- section 7 1328
- section 9 1328
- art. IV 1327
- art. V 776
- section 18 1324
- section 19 1324
- section 20 1324
- art. VI
section 22 1324–6
- section 23 1325 n189
- art. XIX, section 32 1305
- General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) 40, 97, 235,
1286–7
- art. IV(3) 1287
- art. IV(4) 1287
- art. XXII 1035
- art. XXIII 1035
- Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance (Rio) modified by the
1975 Protocol of San José 1291–2
- art. 3(1) 1137
- Peace Treaties 1188 n111
- Switzerland–UN, Headquarters Agreement 1319–20
- Treaty of Peace with Bulgaria 1109–10

Treaty of Peace with Hungary	1109–10
Treaty of Peace with Italy	987, 995
Annex IV	294 n163
Treaty of Peace with Romania	1109–10
USA–UN, Headquarters Agreement	1319–20
art. V	
section 15	1324
section 18	1324
art. VIII	
section 20	1324
section 21	1305 n100, 1320

1948

American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man	381, 389
American Treaty of Pacific Settlement (Pact of Bogotá)	1031
art. 31	1080
art. 32	1080
Charter of the Organisation of American States (Bogotá Charter)	
(as amended by Protocols of Buenos Aires (1967), Cartagena de	
Indias (1985), Washington (1992) and Managua (1993))	
1292	
art. 9 [12]	448, 1014
art. 17	469 n104
art. 20	1031 n121
art. 22	1276 n355
art. 23	1030–1
arts. 82–90	1031
art. 98	694 n253
China–UK, Joint Declaration on the Question of Hong Kong	539
Convention for the Establishment of the Intergovernmental Maritime	
[Consultative] Organisation	1015, 1035
Genocide Convention	46, 95, 269, 276 n67, 280, 282–5, 422, 431,
918–19, 984, 1079	
art. 3	1092
art. 4	430 n183
art. 6	410
art. 9	283–5, 1079
Italy–USA, Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation	822
Universal Declaration of Human Rights	46, 278–81, 659 n59
Preamble	265–6

art. 2	286, 288
art. 3	279
art. 5	279, 326
art. 7	279, 286
art. 8	279
art. 9	279
art. 10	279, 550
art. 12	279
art. 13	279
art. 14	279
art. 18	279
art. 19	279
art. 20	279
art. 23	279
art. 25	279
art. 26	279

1949

Agreement on the Privileges and Immunities of the Organisation of American States	1319 n169
General Agreement on the Privileges and Immunities of the Council of Europe	1319 n169
Geneva Conventions (including common articles)	262, 326, 401, 422, 669, 674 n134, 1168, 1169–1203
art. 1	1199
art. 2	1170–1, 1172 n28
art. 3	434–5, 1176, 1194–5, 1197–8
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field (Geneva Convention I)	
art. 7	1171
art. 8	1199
art. 12	1171
art. 13	1171
art. 14	1171
art. 15	1171
art. 16	1171
art. 19	1171–2
art. 22	1172
art. 49	401, 669

- art. 50 401, 1199
- art. 52 1200
- Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the
Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of the Armed Forces at
Sea (Geneva Convention II) 1172
 - art. 7 1171
 - art. 8 1199
 - art. 12 1172
 - art. 13 1172
 - art. 50 401, 669
 - art. 51 401, 1199
 - art. 53 1200
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War
(Geneva Convention III) 1172–6
 - art. 4 1172–3, 1176, 1193
 - art. 5 1174
 - art. 7 1171
 - art. 8 1199
 - art. 13 1175, 1186
 - art. 14 1175
 - art. 17 1175
 - art. 19 1175
 - art. 23 1175
 - art. 82 1175–6
 - art. 85 1176
 - art. 118 1176
 - art. 122 1171
 - art. 126 1200
 - art. 127 1199
 - art. 129 401, 669
 - art. 130 401, 1199
 - art. 132 1199
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in
Time of War (Geneva Convention IV) 402, 1176–84
 - art. 4 1176, 1193
 - art. 8 1171
 - art. 9 1199
 - art. 16 1177
 - arts. 27–34 1177
 - art. 33 1181

- arts. 35–46 1177
- art. 47 1180
- art. 51 1180
- art. 53 1180
- art. 54 1180
- art. 55 1180
- art. 60 1180
- art. 64 1180
- arts. 71–6 1177
- art. 142 1200
- art. 144 1199
- art. 146 401, 669
- art. 147 401, 1199
- art. 149 1200
- North Atlantic Treaty 1289–90
 - art. 4 1290
 - art. 5 1137, 1146, 1290
 - art. 9 1290
- Revised General Act: *see* 1928 General Act for the Settlement of Disputes
(revised 1949)
- Statute of the Council of Europe 1288–9
 - art. 1 345
 - art. 3 345
 - art. 13 359
 - art. 14 359
 - art. 15 359, 1288
 - art. 16 359, 1288
- 1950**
- Egypt–World Health Organisation (WHO), Agreement and Exchange of
Notes on Status of WHO in Egypt 1320 n171
- 1950/1998**
- European Convention on Human Rights 46, 154, 156, 259, 273
 - n47, 276, 346, 347–60, 369–70, 937–8, 1289
 - art. 1 335, 349, 826 n285
 - art. 2 274, 357, 358, 359
 - art. 3 274, 326, 348, 352, 357, 358, 359
 - art. 4 348
 - art. 4(1) 274
 - art. 5 127 n245, 347, 348, 359, 1183

art. 6	348, 359, 716–17, 922
art. 6(1)	357, 916–17, 1208, 1321–2
art. 7	274, 348
art. 8	275, 348
arts. 8–11	275
art. 10	275, 348, 550
art. 11	275, 348
art. 12	275, 348
art. 13	275, 348, 358–9
art. 14	275, 288, 348, 365
art. 15	274, 356, 357–8, 1197
art. 19	351
art. 20	351
art. 22	351
art. 23	351
art. 25 (former)	353, 354, 922
art. 26	273, 351
art. 27	351
art. 27(2)	1061 n21
art. 28	351
art. 30	352, 354
art. 32 (former)	354
art. 33	354
art. 34	352 n37, 353, 354
art. 35	356, 360, 819
art. 35(2)(b)	379
art. 36	353
art. 38	353
art. 39	353
art. 41	353, 359–60
art. 43	353, 354
art. 44	353
art. 46 (former)	354, 922–3
art. 46(1) (former)	353
art. 46(2)	359
art. 46(2) (former)	353
art. 47	352
art. 63	926
art. 64	917, 925
Protocol I	348, 829, 933–4

- Protocol IV 348, 827
- Protocol VI 348
- Protocol VII 348, 827
- Protocol XI 351, 353–6, 360, 392
- Protocol XII 348
- Protocol XIII 348
- Protocol XIV 347 n12, 360

1951

- Allied Powers, Japan, Treaty of Peace 234
- Convention on the Status of Refugees and Protocol (1967) 185,
303, 827
 - art. 35 335
 - art. 36 335
 - Protocol (1967) 827
- NATO Status of Forces Agreement 658, 776 n448
- Treaty Establishing the European Coal and Steel Community 1288
 - art. 6 241, 1297 n64

1952

- Convention on Damage Caused by Foreign Aircraft to Third Parties on
the Surface (Rome)
 - art. 37 925
- Convention on Relations between the Three Powers (France, UK and
USA) and the FRG (as amended by Schedule I to the Protocol on
the Termination of the Occupation Regime in the FRG, signed at
Paris on 23 October 1954) 227, 964
 - art. 2 964

1954

- Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Seas by Oil
621
- Convention on the Status of Stateless Persons 303
 - art. 33 335
- Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event
of Armed Conflict
 - art. 4 1186 n96
 - Protocol I (1954)
 - art. 48 1186
 - Protocol II (1999) 1186
 - art. 3 1186 n96
 - art. 6 1186 n96

- art. 7 1186 n96
- art. 22 1186 n96
- ILC Draft Code of Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind
- art. 1 401, 439 n226

1955

- Austrian State Treaty 294 n166, 1188 n111
- Convention on the Establishment of 'Eurofima' (European Company for the Financing of Railway Equipment) 249
- France–Libya, Treaty of Friendship and Neighbourly Relations 516 n164, 1011
- GDR–USSR, Treaty of Friendship 964 n48
- Iran–US, Treaty of Amity, Economic Relations and Consular Rights 935
- art. XXI(1) 1086
- art. XXI(2) 1086
- Treaty of Friendship, Co-operation and Mutual Assistance (Warsaw Pact) 47, 57, 1146, 1210, 1290

1956

- European Convention on Establishment
- art. 3 827
- Nicaragua–USA, Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation
- art. XXIV(2) 1079
- Statute of the International Atomic Energy Agency as amended 1034
- Supplementary Convention on the Abolition of Slavery, the Slave Trade and Institutions and Practices Similar to Slavery 303

1957

- Abolition of Forced Labour Convention (ILO Convention No. 105) 340
- Convention on the Nationality of Married Women 662
- Egypt–UN, Status of Forces Agreement 1320 n170
- European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes 1014, 1023, 1032
- art. 26 1052 n261
- art. 28 1052 n261
- ILO Convention No. 107 (Indigenous and Tribal Populations) 298
- Treaty Establishing the European Atomic Energy Community (Euratom)
- art. 192 623 n351
- art. 193 623 n351

Treaty Establishing the European Economic Community (Rome)
156–7, 369–70, 735, 1288

art. 85 695–6

art. 173 695

art. 210 1297

1958

Convention concerning Discrimination in respect of Employment and
Occupation (ILO Convention No. 111)

Special Protocol providing for Conciliation and Good Offices

Commission 1035

Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf 95–6, 555, 585,
596–7

art. 1 586–7

art. 2 588

art. 2(4) 588–9

art. 3 589

art. 4 589

art. 5 589

art. 6 85–6, 592–5, 599–600, 602, 603, 916, 920–1

art. 12(1) 925

Geneva Convention on Fishing and Conservation of Living
Resources 555

art. 1 620, 623

art. 6 623

Geneva Convention on the High Seas 925

preamble 555, 610

art. 1 609

art. 2 609, 610, 623

art. 2(1) 608

art. 3 607

art. 4 608

art. 5 611, 664

art. 6 613, 614

art. 8 614

art. 9 614

art. 11 618

art. 11(1) 558–9, 656–7

art. 13 616

art. 15 398, 615

- art. 19 398, 615–16
- art. 22 616
- art. 23 617
- art. 24 620
- art. 25 889
- art. 34 925–6
- Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea and Contiguous Zone
110, 555
 - art. 1 570
 - art. 2 570
 - art. 3 558
 - art. 4 561, 566 n66
 - art. 5(1) 556
 - art. 5(2) 557, 562
 - art. 7 562
 - art. 10(1) 564
 - art. 10(2) 565 n59
 - art. 11(1) 558
 - art. 12 591
 - art. 14 570
 - art. 14(1) 608
 - art. 14(3) 796
 - art. 14(4) 571
 - art. 16(4) 575–6
 - art. 19(1) 574
 - art. 20 575 n98
 - arts. 21–3 575 n99
 - art. 22 615
 - art. 24 579, 580–1
 - art. 26 913 n55
 - art. 28 913 n55
- 1959**
 - Antarctic Treaty 95, 536–7, 846
 - Protocol on Environmental Protection (1991) 846, 867
 - Annex VI 858 n67
 - art. 7 538
 - art. 8 865 n115
 - Declaration on the Rights of the Child (UNGA resolution 1386
(XIV)) 331 n363

1960

Convention on the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development 1289

Convention on Third Party Liability in the Field of Nuclear Energy (as amended by the Additional Protocol of 28 January 1964 and by the Protocol of 16 November 1982) (Paris Convention) 893

art. 4 894

art. 10 894

art. 13 895

Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples (UNGA resolution 1514(XV)) 40, 115–16, 252–3, 255, 256, 522

Statute of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights (as amended by the Protocols of Cartagena de Indias (1985), Washington (1992) and Managua (1993)) 381–2

art. 19(c) 385 n237

Treaties relating to the establishment of Cyprus 987 n162

UNESCO Convention against Discrimination in Education

art. 7 342

Special Protocol providing for Conciliation and Good Offices Commission (1962) 342, 1035

1961

Congo–UN, Status of Forces Agreement 1320 n170

Convention on the Reduction of Statelessness 1005

European Social Charter 347 n12, 360–2, 1289

arts. 1–6 361

art. 7–8 361

arts. 9–10 361

arts. 11–14 361

art. 15 361

arts. 16–17 361

arts. 18–19 361

art. 20 361

1988 Additional Protocol 361

1991 Protocol

art. 1 362

art. 2 362

1995 Additional Protocol

art. 1 362

art. 2	362
art. 5	363 n111
Harvard Draft Convention on the International Responsibility of States for Injuries to Aliens	
art. 10(3)	830
art. 10(7)	830
Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations	95, 740 n236, 752–72
preamble	752
art. 1(e)	764
art. 2	752
art. 3	753
art. 4	753
art. 9	753
art. 10	768
art. 13	753
art. 14	753
art. 22	754–9, 762, 771–2
art. 23	762
art. 24	763
art. 25	755 n317, 762
art. 26	755 n317, 764
art. 27	755 n317, 759, 761
art. 27(3)	759, 760
art. 27(4)	759
art. 29	764
arts. 29–36	767–8
art. 30(1)	762, 765
art. 30(2)	765
art. 31	776
art. 31(1)	766–7, 768
art. 31(1)a	767
art. 31(1)b	767
art. 31(2)	765, 767
art. 31(3)	765, 767
art. 31(4)	766
art. 32	771–2
art. 33	767
art. 34	767, 770
art. 35	767
art. 36	776

art. 36(1)	767
art. 36(2)	767
art. 37	767–8
art. 39	768–9
art. 39(2)	738, 769–70
art. 40	769
art. 41(1)	753
art. 41(3)	755
art. 45	757–8
art. 45(a)	756
Optional Protocol Concerning Acquisition of Nationality	
art. 2	662
Optional Protocol Concerning the Compulsory Settlement of	
Disputes	1079

1962

Brussels Convention on the Liability of Operators of Nuclear	
Ships	894 n282
art. III	894
art. V	894
art. X	895
Permanent Sovereignty over Natural Resources (UNGA resolution 1803	
(XVII))	833, 835

1963

Charter of the Organisation of African Unity	1293–4
art. III	215–16
art. III(3)	256
art. XIX	1026–7
Protocol on the Commission of Mediation, Conciliation and	
Arbitration (1964)	1023, 1026–7
Convention on Offences and Certain Other Acts Committed on Board	
Aircraft (Tokyo Convention)	668, 676–7, 1160 n212
art. 1(4)	678
Declaration of Legal Principles Governing the Activities of States in the	
Exploration and Use of Outer Space (UNGA resolution 1962	
(XVII))	116, 544
Nordic Mutual Emergency Assistance Agreement in Connection with	
Radiation Accidents	891
Treaty Banning Nuclear Weapons Tests in the Atmosphere, Outer Space	
and Under Water	471, 610, 872, 888, 1188

- Vienna Convention on Civil Liability for Nuclear Damage 893–5
- art. V 894
- art. VI 894
- art. VII 894
- art. XI 895
- Protocol to Amend (1997) 894
- Supplementary Convention (1997) 894
- Vienna Convention on Consular Relations 130, 135–6, 165, 755,
 761, 772–4
- art. 1(k) 763
- art. 10 772
- art. 11 772
- art. 12 772
- art. 31 772–3
- art. 32 773
- art. 33 773
- art. 35 773
- art. 35(3) 761
- art. 36 136, 159, 220–1, 389–90, 800–1
- art. 36(1) 773–4
- art. 36(1)(a) 773
- art. 36(1)(b) 389–90, 773, 774 n436
- art. 41 774
- art. 43 774
- Optional Protocol Concerning the Compulsory Settlement of
 Disputes 1079
- 1964**
- Cyprus–UN, Status of Forces Agreement 1320 n170
- European Fisheries Convention 581
- OAU Cairo Declaration on Border Disputes among African States
 Legitimising National Borders Inherited from Colonial
 Times 968
- 1965**
- Constitution of the Food and Agriculture Organisation (as amended)
- art. 16 1034
- art. 17 1299
- Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial
 Discrimination 221–2, 259, 269, 280, 286, 288, 462, 983
 n144, 1079

Part I

art. 1(4) 286, 289

Part II 311–14

art. 8 312

art. 9 312–13

art. 11 313

art. 11(3) 273 n47

art. 12 313

art. 13 313

art. 14 313

art. 15 313–14

Part III

art. 20 922 n93

Convention on Settlement of Investment Disputes between States and
Nationals of Other States (ICSID) 259, 1079

art. 25 818

art. 25(1) 1042

art. 25(2) 1042

art. 25(4) 1042

art. 53 1042

art. 54 1042

art. 55 1042

Convention on Transit Trade of Land-Locked States 607

Declaration on the Inadmissibility of Intervention in the Domestic
Affairs of States (UNGA resolution 2131 (XX)) 1127, 1148,
1153 n177Protocol Concerning the Privileges and Immunities of the European
Communities 1319 n169Treaty establishing a Single Council and a Single Commission of the
European Communities (Merger Treaty) 735**1966**Belgium–France, Agreement on the Siting of Nuclear Power
Installations 866 n116Chad–Libya, Treaty of Good Neighbourliness and Friendship 516
n164Helsinki Rules on the Uses of Waters of International Rivers
883–4International Convention for the Conservation of Atlantic Tuna
628 n367

International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights	46, 253, 256, 276, 522, 716 n98, 909, 946
art. 1	291–2, 314, 659 n59, 1005
art. 2	266, 314, 335, 826
art. 2(1)	287–9
art. 4	275, 1197
art. 6	275, 314, 317, 390
art. 6(5)	275, 318
art. 7	275, 315, 322, 326
art. 8	315
art. 8(1)	275
art. 8(2)	275
art. 9	315
art. 9(4)	322
art. 11	275
art. 12	275
art. 13	826
art. 14	315, 422
art. 15	275, 422
art. 16	275
art. 18	275, 315
art. 19	275, 292, 550
art. 21	275, 292
art. 22	275, 292, 315
art. 24(3)	662
art. 25	292–3
art. 26	288
art. 27	292–6, 315, 318–19, 321
arts. 28–32	315
art. 40	315
art. 40(4)	316
art. 41	319
art. 41(c)	273 n47
art. 42	319
Optional Protocol I	259, 273–4, 292, 319–20, 946
art. 2	273
art. 5	319, 819
Optional Protocol II	322 n315
International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights	46, 253, 256, 287, 308–11, 522, 909, 1005

- art. 1 289, 308
- art. 2 266, 308
- art. 2(2) 288
- art. 3 288
- art. 6 308
- art. 7 308
- art. 9 308
- art. 11 308
- art. 13 308–9
- art. 15 309
- arts. 16–25 309

1967

ASEAN Declaration 1294

Treaty on Principles Governing the Activities of States in the
Exploration and Use of Outer Space including the Moon and other
Celestial Bodies 488, 545–6, 549, 551, 859, 1188

- art. 1 545, 881
- art. 3 546 n320, 882
- art. 4 545, 885
- art. 6 545–6, 1312 n138
- art. 7 546
- art. 8 546
- art. 9 881
- art. 11 882
- art. 13 1312 n138
- art. 14 859 n77
- art. 15 1015

Treaty for the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons in Latin America
(Tlatelolco) 610, 888 n246, 1188 n111

1968

Agreement on the Rescue of Astronauts, the Return of Astronauts and
the Return of Objects Launched into Outer Space 547

Convention on the Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations to War
Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity 400 n19, 669

Proclamation of Tehran (UN Conference on Human Rights)
279

Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons 889, 1188
n111, 1189, 1247

- art. VI 1017

1969

Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage 621

art. II 900

art. III 900

art. V 900–1

Protocol on Liability (1992) 901

art. 2(3) 901

Convention for Co-operation in Dealing with Pollution of the North Sea
by Oil (Bonn) 900

Convention on Special Missions 761, 774–5

art. 8 775

art. 17 775

art. 27 775

art. 31 775

Inter-American Convention on Human Rights 259, 273 n47,
381–91

art. 1 335

art. 2 335

art. 3 274–5, 300–1

art. 4 274–5, 381, 390

art. 5 274–5, 326, 381

art. 6 274–5

art. 9 274–5

art. 12 274–5

arts. 12–14 275 n57

art. 13 388–9

arts. 15–16 275 n57

art. 17 274–5

art. 18 274–5, 381

art. 19 274–5, 381

art. 20 274–5

art. 21 390–1

arts. 21–2 275 n57

art. 23 274–5, 381

art. 26 381

art. 27 274, 300, 389, 1197

art. 44 382

art. 46 382, 819

art. 46(1)(a) 274

art. 47 382

art. 48	382
arts. 49–51	382
art. 50	387
art. 51	387
arts. 52–4	387
art. 62	387
art. 63(2)	385, 387
art. 64	388
art. 74	388 n251
Additional Protocol on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (1988)	
art. 8(a)	384
art. 11	847
art. 13	384
art. 19	384
Protocol on the Abolition of the Death Penalty (1990)	
384–5	
International Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in	
Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties	620–1, 798, 900
Protocol Extending Convention to Substances other than Oil	
(1973)	900
Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties 155–6, 219, 421, 903,	
1023	
art. 2	904, 913–14
art. 2(1)(a)	94 n93
art. 2(1)(b)	911
art. 3	904
art. 4	496
art. 5	907, 937
art. 6	1305 n102, 1309
art. 7	908–9, 940
art. 7(2)	134
art. 8	909
art. 9	909
art. 9(1)	910
art. 11	910, 913, 966 n57
art. 12	910–11
art. 13	911
art. 14	912
art. 14(2)	913
art. 15	913

art. 18	911
art. 19	919
art. 20(2)	920
art. 20(4)	920
art. 20(5)	925
art. 21	920
art. 21(3)	920–1
art. 22(3)(a)	925
art. 24	925
art. 26	904
art. 27	134, 941
art. 28	926
art. 29	926
art. 30	927–8, 931–2
art. 30(4)(b)	931
art. 31	496, 903, 933, 1305
art. 31(1)	933–5
art. 31(2)	934
art. 31(3)(a)	934
art. 31(3)(b)	515, 934, 1306
art. 31(3)(c)	935
art. 31(4)	938
arts. 31–3	933–8
art. 32	496, 935–6, 1305
art. 33	938, 952
art. 33(4)	1095
art. 34	928, 1315
art. 35	929, 1315
art. 36	930
art. 38	929
art. 39	930–1
art. 40	931
art. 41	927, 931, 946
art. 42	939
art. 44	939
art. 45	939
art. 46	903
art. 46(1)	134, 940
art. 46(2)	134, 940
art. 47	940

art. 48	941–2
art. 49	942
art. 50	942
art. 51	942
art. 52	469 n104, 500, 502, 943, 944
art. 53	125–7, 944, 945, 953
art. 54	945
art. 56	945
art. 57	945
art. 58	946
art. 59	927, 946
art. 60	794, 948
art. 60(1)	948
art. 60(2)	948–9
art. 60(3)	946
art. 60(5)	949
art. 61	949–50
art. 62	529 n234, 950–2
art. 62(2)	968–9
art. 64	125, 127, 944, 945, 953
art. 65	952 n226
art. 66	952–3
art. 69	903, 944–6
art. 70	952
art. 70(1)(b)	946
art. 71	127, 903, 944, 945
art. 72	952
art. 75	929
art. 80	926
Annex	1022 n65
Declaration on the Prohibition of Military, Political or Economic Coercion in the Conclusion of Treaties	943

1970

Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Seizure of Aircraft (Hague Convention)	668, 674 n134, 676, 677, 1160 n212
art. 3(2)	678
art. 8	687 n213
Declaration of Principles Governing the Seabed and Ocean Floor and the Subsoil Thereof Beyond the Limits of National Jurisdiction (UNGA resolution 2574)	533, 629

Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations and Co-operation among States (UNGA resolution 2625 (XXV)) 104, 116, 213, 214, 253, 256, 290, 291 n151, 469, 488, 495, 502, 508 n110, 522–3, 1013, 1124–5, 1127, 1148 n157, 1152–3

Hague Convention for the Recognition of Divorces and Legal Separations 652 n29

1971

Agreement Relating to the International Telecommunications Satellite Organisation (INTELSAT) 249

Convention on the Establishment of an International Fund for Compensation for Oil Pollution Damage 621, 901
Protocol (1992) 901

Convention Relating to Civil Liability in the Field of Maritime Carriage of Nuclear Material 894 n282

Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Civil Aviation (Montreal Convention) 668, 674 n134, 676, 677–8, 1160 n212

art. 8 687 n213

Protocol for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts of Violence at Airports (1988) 677, 1160 n212

Treaty on the Prohibition of the Emplacement of Nuclear Weapons and other Weapons of Mass Destruction on the Seabed 888, 1188 n111

1972

Convention on the International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects 546–7, 888

art. I 859

art. II 546, 854

art. III 546, 854

art. XI 821

art. XII 546

Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping from Ships and Aircraft (Oslo Convention) 621, 895

Annex I 895

Annex II 895

Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by the Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter (London Convention) 621, 895

art. 1 855

Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production and Stockpiling of Bacteriological (Biological) and Toxin Weapons and on Their Destruction 1188 n110, 1189 n118

Declaration of Guiding Principles on the Use of Satellite Broadcasting (UNESCO) 550

European Convention on State Immunity 698, 707 n56

art. 1 741

art. 7 711 n69

art. 11 727

art. 12 741 n242

art. 15 708

art. 20 744

art. 23 742, 744

art. 28 733

Additional Protocol for the Establishment of a European Tribunal in matters of State Immunity 707

FRG–GDR, Treaty on the Basis of Relations 227, 463 n79, 964–5

Quadripartite Agreement on Berlin (France, UK, USA, USSR) 964 n48

Stockholm Declaration on the Human Environment

preamble 847

Principles

1 847, 848, 869

6 895

8 849–50

20 890 n253

21 850, 853, 857

24 862–3

UNESCO Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage 222

1973

Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons 222, 276 n66, 674 n134, 675–6, 1160 n212

art. 1 675–6

art. 2 675, 764–5

art. 3 675, 764–5

art. 4 276 n66

art. 6 764–5

- art. 7 764–5
- art. 8 687 n213, 764–5
- art. 63(1)(c) 665
- Convention for the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of
Apartheid 286, 674 n134
- art. 4 335
- art. 7 335
- Convention on Trade in Endangered Species 845 n3
- International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships
(MARPOL) (London) 621, 898–9
- art. 8 863
- Annex I 899 n316
- Annex II 899 n316
- Annex III 899 n316
- Annex IV 899 n316
- Annex V 899 n316
- International Telecommunications Convention
- art. 33 549, 552 n341
- UN Environment Programme Principles of Conduct in the Field of
the Environment concerning Resources Shared by Two or More
States
- Principle 3 853
- 1974**
- Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States (UNGA resolution
3281 (XXIX)) 853, 1124–5
- art. 2(2) 833
- Consensus Definition of Aggression (UNGA resolution 3314
(XXIX)) 469 n104, 488, 1133
- art. 1 1240
- art. 3 1240
- art. 3(e) 1152 n174
- art. 3(g) 1133, 1153 n177
- art. 5(3) 502
- art. 7 1148 n157
- Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution from Land-Based
Sources (Paris Convention) 621, 846
- art. 1 872
- Protocol Extending the Convention to Atmospheric Emissions of
Pollutants 875

Convention on the Protection of the Marine Environment of the Baltic Sea (Helsinki Convention)

Annex 6 863

Nordic Convention on the Protection of the Environment 864,
893

art. 6 865 n115

1975

Convention on the Registration of Objects Launched into Outer Space 546–7

Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations 761, 775–6, 1023, 1296, 1323
n182

art. 30 776, 1323 n182

art. 84 1015 nn22 and 23

art. 85(7) 1022

Declaration on the Protection of All Persons from being subjected to Torture and Other Cruel, Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment (UNGA resolution 3452 (XXX)) 327

Final Act of the Helsinki Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe 118, 214 n38, 289, 372–3, 451, 522 n197, 905, 906
n19, 1014, 1032, 1289

Kenya–UN, Headquarters Agreement 1320 n170

Treaty of the Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) (as amended in 1993 and 2001)

art. 2 1276

art. 6 1029

arts. 7–10 1029 n108

art. 58 1029

1978 Protocol on Non-Aggression 1276

1981 Protocol Relating to Mutual Assistance on Defence (1981)
1276 n358

1991 Protocol Establishing the Court of Justice 1038

1976

Agreement on the Establishment of the ASEAN Secretariat
1294

Bogotá Declaration on the Geostationary Orbit 552

Convention for the Protection of the Mediterranean Sea (Barcelona Convention)

art. 2 872

- Protocol of Co-operation in Case of Emergency (1976) 863
- Protocols amending (1980/1982) 898 n314
- Declaration of ASEAN Concord 1294
- Japan–UN, Headquarters Agreement 1320 n170
- Treaty of Amity and Co-operation in South East Asia (as amended 1987 and 1998) (ASEAN) 1294
- 1977**
- Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage Resulting from Exploration and Exploitation of Seabed Mineral Resources 900
- Convention on the Prohibition of Military or any Other Hostile Use of Environmental Modification Techniques 1190
- European Convention on the Legal Status of Migrant Workers 368 n151
- European Convention on the Suppression of Terrorism 1164
- art. 1 687 n211
- Protocol amending (2003) 1164
- FRG–Netherlands, Agreement on the Siting of Nuclear Power Installations 866 n116
- IAEA–UNDRO, Agreement on the Coordination of Assistance Activities in the Case of Nuclear Accident 891
- OECD Recommendation of Equal Right of Access in Relation to Transfrontier Pollution 857, 864, 871
- Panama Canal Treaty 539, 540, 658
- Protocol additional to the Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War (Geneva Convention IV) (Protocol I) (relating to the Protection of Victims of International Armed Conflicts) 326, 401–2, 670, 1168
- art. 1(2) 1169 n12, 1172
- art. 1(4) 1149 n157, 1172, 1173 n30, 1195 n143
- art. 4 1179 n61
- art. 20 1186, 1199
- art. 35 1187
- art. 35(2) 1187
- art. 35(3) 1190
- art. 43 1173, 1178
- art. 44 1173
- art. 44(3) 1173
- art. 45 1173

- art. 45(3) 1174
- art. 48 1184, 1186
- art. 50(1) 1176–7
- art. 51 1185
- art. 51(4) 1185
- art. 51(6) 1199
- art. 52 1186
- art. 52(2) 1184–5, 1186
- art. 53 1186
- arts. 53–6 1186
- art. 54 1186
- art. 55 1190
- art. 56 1186
- art. 57 1185
- art. 75 1174, 1175 n37, 1177 n48
- art. 83 1199
- art. 85 401, 1199
- art. 87 443 n219
- art. 90 1022, 1200
- Protocol additional to the Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection
of Civilian Persons in Time of War (Geneva Convention IV)
(Protocol II) (relating to the Protection of Victims of Non-
International Armed Conflicts) 326, 401–2, 435, 1168,
1195–8
- art. 1 1195
- art. 1(2) 1195
- art. 4 1196
- art. 5 1196
- art. 6 1196
- art. 15 1196
- art. 17 1196
- art. 19 1199
- UK–USA Air Services Agreement (Bermuda II) 691–2, 906 n21
- 1978**
- Australia–Papua New Guinea, Maritime Boundaries Treaty 596
n210
- FRG–Switzerland, Agreement on Nuclear Installations 866 n116
- Kuwait Regional Convention for Co-operation on the Protection of the
Marine Environment from Pollution (including Protocols of 1978,
1989 and 1990) 898 n314

- art. XI 865 n115
- Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Convention 626–8
- Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties
 - 958–9, 1023–4, 1296 n58
- art. 2 959
- art. 2(1)(e) 959
- art. 2(1)(f) 977
- art. 7 967
- art. 8 967, 979 n125
- art. 9 967, 979
- art. 11 529, 959, 969
- art. 12 970, 981
- art. 12(3) 969 n75
- art. 15 972 n92, 973–4
- art. 16 977–8
- art. 17 979
- art. 17(3) 972, 979
- art. 24 978
- art. 26 103 n137
- art. 27(2) 979 n124
- art. 29 972 n92
- art. 30 978 n122
- art. 31 972–3
- art. 31(1) 971–2
- art. 31(2) 972
- art. 34 975–7, 980–1
- art. 35 975–6
- art. 41 1015

1979

- Agreement concerning the Activities of States on the Moon and other
 - Celestial Bodies (Moon Treaty) 534, 859
- art. III 882
- art. IV 548
- art. VI(2) 549
- art. VII 882
- art. XI 533–4, 548–9, 882
- art. XI(4) 549
- art. XI(5) 548
- art. XI(7) 548

- art. XIV 859
- art. XV 1015 n23
- Austria–UN, Headquarters Agreement 1320 n170
- China–USA, Claims Settlement Agreement 823 n267
- Constitution of the United Nations Industrial Development
Organisation (UNIDO)
- art. 22(1) 1035
- Convention against the Taking of Hostages 668, 676, 1160 n212
- art. 5 676
- art. 9 665
- Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against
Women 269, 287, 288, 924
- art. 4(1) 289
- art. 9 662
- arts. 17–21 323
- art. 21 323
- art. 22 322–3
- Optional Protocol (1999) 324
- Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution
(Geneva) 871–3
- preamble 853
- art. 1 856, 871–2
- art. 1(b) 872–3
- art. 2 855 n54, 873
- art. 3 873
- art. 4 873
- art. 5 864, 873
- art. 6 873
- art. 8 873
- art. 8(b) 864 n110, 873
- Protocol dealing with Long-Term Financing (1984) 873
- Protocol on Reduction of Sulphur Emissions (Helsinki) (1985)
873
- Protocol on Control of Nitrogen Oxides Emissions (Sophia)
(1988) 873
- Protocol on Control of Volatile Organic Compounds Emissions
(1991) 873–4
- Protocol on Further Reduction of Sulphur Emissions (Oslo)
(1994) 867, 874
- Protocol on Persistent Organic Pollutants (1998) 874

- Protocol on Heavy Metals (1998) 874
- Protocol on Acidification, Eutrophication and Ground-Level Ozone
(1999) 874
- Egypt–Israel, Peace Treaty 1228 n117, 1292
- art. 5 540
- art. 5(2) 578
- 1980**
- Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living
Resources 537 n275
- Convention on the Physical Protection of Nuclear Material 1160
n212
- Convention on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the Use of Certain
Conventional Weapons which may be Deemed to be Excessively
Injurious or to Have Indiscriminate Effects (as amended on 3 May
1996)
- preamble 1187
- Protocol I 1189
- Protocol II (as amended 1996) 1189
- Protocol III 1190
- Protocol IV 1190
- European Outline Convention on Transfrontier Co-operation between
Territorial Communities or Authorities 368 n151
- Iceland–Norway, Agreement concerning Fishery and Continental Shelf
Questions 1023
- Portugal–Spain, Agreement on the Siting of Nuclear Power
Installations 866 n116
- UK–International Maritime Satellite Organisation; Headquarters
Agreement
- art. 6 1327 n199
- 1981**
- African Charter on Human and Peoples’ Rights (Banjul) 275,
391–5
- art. 5 326
- arts. 19–22 392
- art. 20 290
- art. 23 393
- art. 24 847
- arts. 27–9 392
- art. 33 1181

- art. 45 392
- arts. 47–54 393
- art. 50 273 n47
- art. 55 393
- art. 56 393
- art. 58(1) 393
- art. 58(2) 393
- art. 58(3) 393
- art. 62 394
- Protocol on the Establishment of an African Court of Human Rights
(1998)
- art. 5 394
- art. 34(6) 394–5
- Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the
Marine and Coastal Environment of the Wider Caribbean
Region 898 n314
- Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment and Coastal
Areas of the South-East Pacific (Lima) and Protocols 898
n314
- Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and of
Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief (UNGA resolution
36/55) 287, 305
- Iran–US, Claims Settlement Declaration 818
- art. III 1044
- art. IV 1044
- art. V 1043–4
- Treaty Establishing the Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States
1276 n355
- art. 14(3) 1022 n65, 1023
- UK–Philippines, Investment Agreement 839 n356
- UK–USA, Agreement on Vessels Trafficking in Drugs 619
- 1982**
- France, FRG, UK, US, Agreement Concerning Interim Arrangements
Relating to Polymetallic Nodules of the Deep Seabed 631
- FRG–Switzerland, Agreement on the Siting of Nuclear Power
Installations 866 n116
- ILA Montreal Rules on Transfrontier Pollution 856
- art. 3 857
- art. 5 864

- ILC Draft Articles on the Law of Treaties between States and
International Organisations or between International
Organisations 953–4
- art. 36 *bis* 953
- art. 66 954
- International Telecommunications Union Convention and Optional
Protocol
- art. 50 1034
- art. 82 1034
- International Tin Agreement (Sixth) 734, 1315–17, 1325
- Law of the Sea Convention 488, 555–6, 1024
- Part I
- art. 1 629
- art. 1(2) 639
- art. 1(4) 856, 857
- Part II, section 2
- art. 3 569
- art. 5 558
- art. 7 561 n35
- art. 7(4) 559
- art. 8(1) 556
- art. 8(2) 557
- art. 10 562 n43
- art. 13(1) 558–9
- art. 13(2) 559
- art. 15 591–2
- Part II, section 3
- art. 17 570, 608
- art. 18 571
- art. 19(2) 571, 573–4
- art. 21 573
- art. 21(1) 572
- art. 22 572, 573
- art. 23 573
- art. 24 571–2
- art. 25 573
- Part II, section 3(b)
- art. 27(1) 574
- art. 28 574–5

Part II, section 3(c)

art. 29(2) 573 n93

arts. 29–32 575

art. 31 704 n33

art. 32 704 n33

Part II, section 4

art. 33 580

Part III, section 1

art. 34 576

art. 35 576

art. 35(c) 578

art. 36 576

Part III, section 2

art. 37 576

art. 38 542, 576, 577

art. 38(1) 576, 577, 608

arts. 38–42 577

art. 39 542, 577

art. 41 577

art. 42 577

art. 44 576, 577

Part III, section 3

art. 45 576–7

art. 45(2) 577

Part IV

art. 46(a) 566

art. 46(b) 566

art. 47 566–7

art. 47(4) 559

art. 49 567

art. 50 567

art. 51 567–8

art. 52 568

art. 52(1) 608

art. 53 568

art. 53(2) 608

Part V

art. 55 580, 582

art. 56 582, 586

art. 56(1) 624

art. 57	582
art. 58	582–3, 636
art. 58(1)	608
art. 59	108–9, 582–3
art. 60	589
art. 60(2)	583
art. 61	624
arts. 61–9	582
art. 62	624
art. 63(1)	624
art. 63(2)	625
art. 64	624
art. 65	624
art. 66	624
art. 67	624
art. 68	624
art. 69(1)	608
art. 69(2)	608
art. 69(4)	608
art. 70(1)	608
art. 70(2)	608
art. 70(5)	608
art. 71	608
art. 72	582
art. 74	108, 596, 601
art. 74(1)	601 n243

Part VI

art. 76	587
art. 76(1)	587
art. 76(3)	587
art. 76(4)	587
art. 76(5)	587
art. 76(6)	587
art. 76(7)	587
art. 76(8)	587
art. 76(9)	587
art. 77	588
art. 77(4)	588–9, 624
art. 78	589
art. 79	589

art. 80	589
art. 82	590
art. 82(3)	590
art. 83	108, 595, 601
art. 83(1)	601 n243
Part VII, section 1	
art. 86	609
art. 87	608, 609
art. 88	610
art. 90	608
art. 91	611–12, 664
art. 92	613, 614
art. 94	611 n306, 614
art. 95	614, 704 n33
art. 96	614, 704 n33
art. 97	614, 618
art. 98	614
art. 99	397 n3, 614, 616
art. 101	398, 615
art. 105	398, 615
art. 106	615
art. 108	616
art. 109	615, 617
art. 110	616, 617
art. 111	617, 643
art. 112	629
art. 113	614
art. 115	614
Part VII, section 2	
art. 116(b)	624
arts. 117–20	624
Part VIII	
art. 121(1)	564
art. 121(2)	565
art. 121(3)	565, 582, 588
Part X	
art. 125	607
arts. 127–30	607–8
art. 131	608
Part XI	582, 621–2, 629–35, 640

Part XI, section 2

art. 136 533–4, 629

art. 137 533–4, 629

art. 139 855

art. 140 108, 629

art. 143 629

art. 148 608

art. 149 994

Part XI, section 3

art. 150 629

art. 151 630

art. 152 608

art. 153 639

art. 159(1) 634

art. 160 608

art. 161 608

Part XI, section 4

art. 157 633

art. 159(1) 634

art. 160 634

art. 161(1) 634

art. 162 634

arts. 163–5 634

arts. 166–9 634

art. 170 636

Part XI, section 5

art. 187 637, 639, 640

art. 188 637, 640

Part XII, section 1

art. 192 622, 853

art. 194 622–5, 853, 855, 857, 898

Part XII, section 2

art. 198 863

Part XII, section 4

art. 204 865

art. 206 865

Part XII, section 5

art. 207 898 n314

art. 211 622

art. 211(2) 899

art. 211(7)	863
art. 212	875
Part XII, section 6	
art. 217	899
art. 218	899
art. 220	899
Part XII, section 9	
art. 235	622, 855
Part XIII	582
Part XIII, section 3	
art. 246(5)	636
art. 246(6)	636
art. 256	629
Part XV	638
Part XV, section 1	635–71
art. 279	635
art. 280	635
art. 281(1)	637–8
art. 283	635
art. 283(1)	1015
art. 284	635
Part XV, section 2	635
art. 286	635
art. 287	635, 1055 n285
art. 289	639
art. 290	641
art. 290(5)	643, 644
art. 290(6)	641
art. 292	642–3, 819
art. 292(1)	639
art. 293	639–40
art. 294	641
art. 295	819
Part XV, section 3	
art. 297(1)	636
art. 297(2)	636
art. 297(3)	636, 637
art. 298(1)	637
Part XVI	
art. 303	994

Part XVII	
art. 311(1)	556 n10
Agreement Relating to the Implementation of Part XI	556
Annex II	587
art. 4	588
Annex III	
art. 3	629
art. 4	629
art. 5	629
art. 8	629–30
art. 9	629–30
Annex IV	635
Annex V, section 1	635
Annex V, section 2	636, 637
Annex VI	635, 638–9
<i>see also</i> Statute of the Law of the Sea Tribunal	
Annex VI, section 4	637
Annex VII	635–6, 637, 1055 n285
Annex VIII	636
art. 1	636
Manila Declaration on the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes (UNGA resolution 37/590)	1014
section I	
para. 3	1014
para. 6	1026 n78
para. 10	1014, 1016 n28
Statute of the Law of the Sea Tribunal	
art. 2	639
art. 5	639
art. 8	639
art. 9	639
art. 13	639
art. 14	640
art. 15(1)	640
art. 15(3)	640
art. 17	639
arts. 18–22	639
art. 20(1)	639
art. 20(2)	639
art. 21	639

art. 22	639
art. 23	640
art. 25(1)	641
art. 28	641
art. 31	641–2
art. 32	642
art. 33	642
art. 35	640
art. 36	640
art. 38	640
art. 39	640

1983

Canada–Denmark, Agreement for Co-operation Relating to the Marine Environment	865 n112
Convention for Co-operation in Dealing with Pollution of the North Sea by Oil and Other Harmful Substances	900
Convention for the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment of the Wider Caribbean (Cartagena) and Protocols of 1983 and 1990	898 n314
Declaration of Principles Governing the Use by States of Artificial Earth Satellites for International Direct Television Broadcasting (UNGA resolution 37/92)	550
France–UK, Exchange of Notes concerning Exchanges of Information in the Event of Emergencies Occurring in One of the Two States which could have Radiological Consequences	890 n254
Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of State Property, Archives and Debts	958–9, 986–1001
art. 2	959
art. 2(1)(e)	977 n117
art. 8	987–8
art. 10	988
art. 11	959, 969, 989
art. 12	970, 989 n174
art. 14	987
art. 14(2)(b)	991 n185
art. 15(1)(b)	990
art. 15(1)(d)	991 n185
art. 17	987, 989, 990–1
art. 17(1)(c)	991

art. 18	987, 989
art. 18(1)(b)	990 n181
art. 18(1)(c)	991 n185
art. 18(1)(d)	991
art. 20	994
art. 21	988
arts. 21–4	994
art. 22	987
art. 23	987
art. 27	994–5
art. 28	987, 996
art. 28(1)(b)	995
art. 28(1)(c)	995
art. 28(2)	995
art. 28(3)	996
art. 29	996
art. 30	987, 996
art. 31	987, 996
art. 33	997
art. 35	988
art. 37	987
art. 38	987, 1000–1
art. 39	997
art. 40	999–1000
art. 41	987, 1000
art. 42	1015

1984

Belgium, France, FRG, Italy, Japan, Netherlands, UK, US, Provisional Understanding Regarding Deep Seabed Mining	631
China–UK, Joint Declaration on the Question of Hong Kong with Annexes	1008–9
Annex I	1009
art. XIII	1009
Convention for the Protection of Submarine Cables	619
IAEA Guidelines for Mutual Emergency Assistance Arrangements in Connection with a Nuclear Accident or Radiological Emergency	891
UN Convention against Torture and Other Cruel, Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment	269, 274 n88, 305, 326–30, 674 n134, 675, 716 n98, 909

art. 1	327
art. 2	276, 327
art. 3	327, 328, 329
art. 4	327, 675
art. 5	327, 675
art. 5(1)(c)	665
art. 7	327, 675
art. 8	675
art. 14	327
art. 16	276
art. 17(2)	327
arts. 17–24	327
art. 19	328
art. 20	328
art. 21	328
art. 22	328, 330
art. 28(1)	328
Optional Protocol (2003)	330

1985

Convention Establishing the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency	842
Declaration on the Human Rights of Individuals who are not Nationals of the Country in which they live (UNGA resolution 40/144)	826
European Charter of Local Self-Government	368 n151
Inter-American Convention to Prevent and Punish Torture (Charter of the Organisation of American States, Protocol of Cartagena de Indias)	326, 384
Treaty Establishing a South Pacific Nuclear-Free Zone (Rarotonga)	610, 888 n246, 1188 n111
Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer	846, 867, 876, 1022 n65, 1024
art. 1(1)	875
art. 1(2)	857, 876
art. 2	855, 876
art. 2(1)	876
art. 7	876
art. 11	876
1989 Helsinki Declaration on the Protection of the Ozone Layer	877

1986

Declaration on the Right to Development (UNGA resolution 41/128)

art. 1 301

art. 3 301

art. 4 301

art. 8 301

art. 9 301

France–New Zealand, Agreement Implementing Ruling of the
Secretary-General of the United Nations on the Solution of the
Rainbow Warrior Dispute 779, 797–8, 946

France–New Zealand, Agreement Providing for the Submission of
Disputes Arising from the *Rainbow Warrior* Affair to the
Secretary-General of the United Nations 779

France–United Kingdom, Treaty concerning the Construction and
Operation by Private Concessionaires of a Channel Fixed Link
(Treaty of Canterbury)

Protocol concerning Frontier Controls and Policing etc. (1991)
657

art. 38(1) 655

art. 38(2) 655

Protocol (2000) 655

Principles on Remote Sensing 551–2

Single European Act 1288

Treaty on Assistance in Case of a Nuclear Accident or Radiological
Emergency 889, 891–2

art. 2(1) 891

art. 2(2) 892

art. 2(5) 892

art. 3(a) 892

art. 5 892

art. 7 892

art. 8 892

art. 10(2) 892

UK–USSR, Agreement on the Settlement of Mutual Financial and
Property Claims 840–1

Vienna Convention on Early Notification of a Nuclear Accident
890

art. 2 890

art. 5 890

art. 6 890

Statements of Voluntary Application 890

Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and
International Organisations and between International
Organisations 903, 904, 953–5, 1296 n58

art. 2(d) 914

art. 34 1315

art. 35 1315

art. 66(2) 954–5

art. 73 953

art. 74(3) 954–5

1987

ASEAN Manila Declaration 1294

Belgium, Canada, Italy, Netherlands, USSR, Agreement on the
Resolution of Practical Problems with respect to Deep Sea Mining
Areas 631–5

China–UK, Agreement on the Settlement of Property Claims 841
n365

European Convention for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman or
Degrading Treatment or Punishment 326, 330 n360, 346,
362–5

art. 1 363

art. 2 363–4

art. 5 363

art. 7 363

art. 8 364

art. 9(1) 364

art. 10(2) 364

art. 11(1) 364

art. 12 364

Protocol 1 362 n109

Protocol 2 363 n111

Montreal Protocol on Ozone-Depleting Substances 846, 867,
876–7, 878, 879

art. 1 856

art. 1(5) 877

art. 1(6) 877

art. 3 856–7, 877

1990 Amendments 869 n132, 877

1992 Copenhagen Adjustments 877–8

1992 Montreal Adjustment 874

- Natural Rubber Agreement 1329 n211
- OAS Agreement Establishing an International Verification and
Follow-up Commission (Contadora Process) (Esquipulas II)
1031, 1229 n122
- SAARC Regional Convention on Suppression of Terrorism 1164
- UK–Hungary, Investment Agreement 839 n356

1987/8

- Denmark–UK, Agreement on Early Notification of a Nuclear Accident
and Exchange of Information Concerning the Operation and
Management of Nuclear Facilities 890–1
- Netherlands–UK, Agreement on Early Notification of a Nuclear
Accident and Exchange of Information Concerning the Operation
and Management of Nuclear Facilities 890–1
- Norway–UK, Agreement on Early Notification of a Nuclear Accident
and Exchange of Information Concerning the Operation and
Management of Nuclear Facilities 890–1

1988

- Canada, ESRO Member States, Japan, USA, Agreement on Space
Stations 548 n323
- art. 22 548 n323
- Convention for the Regulation of Antarctic Mineral Resource
Activities 537–8, 858
- art. 1(15) 857 n65, 858
- art. 7 855
- art. 8 855
- art. 8(2) 1015
- Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts Against the Safety of
Maritime Navigation 616 n324, 674 n134, 1160 n212
- Protocol for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts Against the Safety of
Fixed Platforms Located on the Continental Shelf
1160 n212
- Protocol (1989) 616 n324, 674 n134
- Protocol (2005) in respect of WMD 620
- Vienna Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and
Psychotropic Substances 619, 674 n134

1989

- Basle Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of
Hazardous Wastes and Their Disposal 846
- art. 4 896

- art. 6 896
- art. 13 863
- Chad–Libya, Framework Agreement on the Peaceful Settlement of the
Territorial Dispute 1011
- Concluding Document of the Vienna Follow-Up to the Helsinki
Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe (1975)
373–4
- Convention against the Recruitment, Use, Financing and Training of
Mercenaries 1173 n31
- Convention on the Rights of the Child 305, 317–18, 659 n59
 - art. 2(1) 288
 - art. 6 331
 - art. 7 331, 662
 - art. 13 331
 - art. 14 331
 - art. 19 331
 - art. 24 331
 - art. 29 847
 - art. 32 331
 - art. 33 331
 - art. 38 331
 - art. 43 331
 - art. 44 331
 - art. 45 331–2
- Optional Protocol on the Involvement of Children in Armed Conflict
(2000) 332, 1176 n45
- Optional Protocol on the Question of the Sale of Children, Child
Prostitution and Child Pornography (2000) 332
- Decisions of the Sofia CSCE Conference on the Environment 847
- European Charter on Environment and Health 848
- ILC Draft Articles on the Diplomatic Courier and Diplomatic Bag
 - art. 3(2) 759
 - art. 10 761
 - art. 17 761
 - art. 18 761–2
 - art. 21 762
- ILO Convention No. 169 (Indigenous and Tribal Populations in
Independent Countries) 298–9
 - art. 1(2) 298
 - art. 1(3) 298

International Convention on Salvage 900
 UK–USSR, Bilateral Investment Treaty 838–9
 USA–USSR, Agreement on Bering Straits Regional Commission
 578

1990

Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and
 Development
 art. 2(1) 869
 arts. 46–55 1319 n168
 Bergen Ministerial Declaration on Sustainable Development
 867–8
 Cairo Declaration on Human Rights in Islam 395
 Charter of Paris for a New Europe 375, 451, 1032, 1289
 Concluding Document of the Copenhagen Follow-Up to the Helsinki
 Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe (1975)
 374
 Dublin Declaration on the Environmental Imperative
 848 n18
 ECE Code of Conduct on Accidental Pollution of Transboundary Inland
 Waters 858, 860
 FRG–France, UK, USA, Agreement on the Settlement of Certain Matters
 Relating to Berlin 228
 Exchange of Notes Relating to the Presence of Allied Troops in
 Berlin 228 n162
 FRG–GDR, Treaty Establishing a Monetary, Economic and Social
 Union 228, 965
 FRG–GDR, Treaty on the Establishment of German Unity (Unification
 Treaty) 228, 965
 art. 1 965–6
 art. 7 966
 art. 8 966
 art. 11 966 n57, 971, 972
 art. 12 966 n57, 972–3
 art. 21 992
 art. 22 992
 art. 23 998
 Annex I 971, 972 n94
 FRG/GDR, France, UK, USA, USSR, Treaty on the Final Settlement with
 Respect to Germany 228, 965, 1188 n111

- IAEA Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste 896–7
- International Convention on Oil Pollution Preparedness, Response and Co-operation 870–1, 900
- International Convention on the Protection of the Rights of All Migrant Workers and Members of Their Families
- art. 2 333
- art. 3 333
- art. 18 333
- art. 22 333
- art. 25 333
- art. 26 333
- art. 28 333
- art. 30 333
- art. 31 333
- art. 73 334
- art. 76 334
- art. 77 334
- Model Status of Forces Agreement for Peacekeeping Operations 1231
- USA–USSR, Maritime Boundary Agreement 584
- Yemen, People’s Democratic Republic–Yemen Arab Republic, Merger Agreement 963–4
- 1991**
- Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay, Mercosur Treaty Protocol of Brasilia (1991) 1038
- Belarus, Russia, Ukraine, Minsk Agreement 960–1
- art. 5 968, 1291
- art. 6 1291
- art. 7 1291
- Canada–USA, Air Quality Agreement 875
- Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context (ESRO) 847–8
- art. 2 858 n68
- art. 3 864 n107, 865 n113
- art. 3(4) 866 n119
- art. 3(8) 867
- art. 5 866
- art. 6(1) 867

- art. 7 867
- Appendix I 866
- Appendix III 866
- Appendix V 867
- Convention on the Marking of Plastic Explosives for the Purpose of
Detection 1160 n212
- Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards (UN
Sub-Commission on the Prevention of Discrimination and
Protection of Minorities)
- art. 3 1198
- art. 4 1198
- art. 6 1198
- art. 8 1198
- art. 10 1198
- art. 12 1198
- art. 14 1198
- EU Declaration on Yugoslavia 452
- EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States 207, 451–2, 461,
522, 976
- European Commission–USA, Agreement Regarding the Application of
Competition Laws 694
- ILC Draft Articles on Jurisdictional Immunities of States and Their
Property 737 n217, 738
- Model Status of Forces Agreement for Peacekeeping Operations
1232–3
- OAU Convention on the Ban of the Import into Africa and the Control
of Transboundary Movement and Management of Hazardous
Wastes within Africa (Bamako Convention) 896
- art. 4(3) 868 n129
- Paris Peace Agreements (Cambodia) 231
- Yamoussoukro IV Accord (Libya) 1277
- 1992**
- Agenda 21 (Rio) 870 n140
- para. 8 870 n137
- para. 39 870 n137
- Convention on Biological Diversity (Rio) 534 n260, 845 n3, 846,
868
- preamble 870 n138
- art. 1 870 n138

- art. 8 870 n138
- art. 11 870 n138
- art. 121 870 n138
- art. 161 870 n138
- art. 171 870 n138
- art. 181 870 n138
- Convention on the Protection of the Black Sea Against Pollution
898 n314
- Convention on the Protection of the Marine Environment of the Baltic
Sea Area 898 n314
- Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the
North-East Atlantic 898 n314
- art. 9 891 n259
- Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses
and International Lakes 884–5
- art. 1(1) 883
- art. 1(2) 884
- art. 2 855
- art. 2(1) 884
- art. 2(5) 868, 871 n145
- art. 3 884
- arts. 4–6 885
- art. 7 885
- art. 9 885
- art. 10 885
- arts. 11–13 885
- art. 14 885
- art. 15 885
- Annex I 884
- Annex III 884
- Convention on the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents
870–1, 897
- art. 1(g) 897
- art. 2(2) 897
- art. 4 897
- art. 6 897
- art. 7 897
- art. 8 897
- art. 10 897
- Annex I 897

Annex II	897
Annex III	897
Annex IV	897
Annex V	897
Annex IX	897
Czech Republic–Slovakia, Treaty for the General Delimitation of the Common State Frontiers	968 n69
Decisions of the Helsinki CSCE Conference	375–6
Declaration on the Rights of Persons Belonging to National or Ethnic, Religious and Linguistic Minorities (UNGA resolution 47/135)	297
art. 1	368
Declaration and Treaty establishing the Southern African Development Community (SADC) 2001 Protocol Establishing an Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation	1029–30
art. 2(f)	1030
art. 3	1030
art. 4	1030
art. 5	1030
art. 6	1030
art. 7	1030
art. 11(2)	1030
art. 11(3)	1030
European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages	365
art. 15	365
art. 16	365, 366
art. 17	365
art. 20	366
European Convention on the Participation of Foreigners in Public Life at Local Level	368 n151
Framework Agreement on Enhancing ASEAN Economic Co-operation	1294
International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage: <i>see</i> Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage (1969)	
International Sugar Agreement	1329 n211
Mozambique–RENAMO rebels, Peace Agreement	1223 n97, 1229 n122
North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) Chapter 11	1038–9

art. 1110	835
art. 1120	1041 n288
art. 1131	1039
art. 1132	1039
art. 1134	1039
art. 1136	1039
Chapter 14	1038–9
Chapter 19	1038–9
arts. 1903–5	1039
Chapter 20	1039–40
art. 2001	1039 n173
art. 2002	1042 n173
arts. 2003–8	1039
art. 2011	1039
arts. 2014–17	1039–40
art. 2018	1040
art. 2019	1040
OSCE Convention on Conciliation and Arbitration	1033
art. 1	1033
art. 2	1033
art. 3	1033
art. 4	1033
art. 25	1033
art. 26	1033
art. 26(1)	1033 n138
art. 31	1033
Rio Declaration on Environment and Development	848
Principles	
1	848
2	850, 853
3	302, 850, 869
4	869
7	863, 868–9
9	890
13	863
14	895
15	867, 868
16	870
18	864

19	104 n142, 865
27	104 n142, 863, 869–70
Statement of Principles for a Global Consensus on the Management, Conservation and Sustainable Development of All Types of Forests (Rio)	870
Treaty on European Union (Maastricht Treaty)	179, 241–2, 370, 1288
Title I	
art. 6	370
art. 7	370
art. A	241
art. F(2)	370
Title V	370
Title VI	
art. K.1	370
art. K.2	370
Title VIII	
art. 49	370
UN Framework Convention on Climate Change	857, 878–80
art. 1(1)	857
art. 1(8)	878
art. 2	878
art. 3(1)	869
art. 3(3)	868
art. 3(4)	870
art. 4(1)	879
art. 4(2)	879
art. 4(8)	879
art. 7	880
arts. 8–10	880
Annex I	879
Annex II	879
USA–Belarus, Kazakhstan, Russia, Ukraine, Agreement for Admission to START	976–7
1993	
Alma Ata Declaration	209, 961 n21, 968 n69, 976–7, 1291
Charter Establishing the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS)	240–1, 1291
art. 1	240, 1291

- art. 21 240, 1291
- art. 22 240, 1291
- art. 23 240–1, 1291
- art. 27 1291
- art. 28 1291
- art. 30 1291
- art. 31 1291
- art. 32 1291
- art. 33 1291
- China–Taiwan, Agreements Concerning Cross-Straits Activities
235 n197
- China–UK, Exchange of Notes with regard to Liability for Damages
Arising During the Launch Phase of Asiasat Satellite 546
n319
- CIS Treaty on Economic Union 241, 1291–2
- Convention for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna 628
n367, 637–8
- art. 16 637–8
- Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production,
Stockpiling and Use of Chemical Weapons and on Their
Destruction 1188 n111, 1189
- Cotonou Peace Agreement (Libya) 1277
- Council of Europe Convention on Civil Liability for Environmental
Damage 858
- art. 2(7) 858
- art. 2(10) 858
- Declaration of Principles Relevant to the Use of Nuclear Power Sources
in Outer Space (UNGA resolution 47/68) 547, 881 n206
- Holy See–Israel, Fundamental Agreement 244 n241
- Hungary–Slovakia, Special Agreement for the Submission of a Dispute
to the ICJ 887
- Indian Ocean Tuna Commission Agreement 628 n367
- Israel–Palestine Liberation Organisation, Declaration of Principles on
Interim Self-Government 246
- Israel–Palestine Liberation Organisation, Exchange of Letters of Mutual
Recognition and Commitment to the Peace Process 246 n252
- OAU Declaration on a Mechanism for Conflict Prevention,
Management and Resolution (Cairo Declaration) 1027–8
- Rwanda–UN, Agreement on the Status of UN Mission 1233 n143

art. 4	632
art. 5	632
art. 7	632
art. 45	632
art. 155(1)	633
Annex	633
Arab Charter on Human Rights	395
art. 8	395
art. 9	395
art. 13	395
art. 25	395
art. 27	395
art. 28	395
art. 40	395
art. 41	395
Bosnia and Herzegovina–Croatia, Preliminary Agreement Concerning the Establishment of a Confederation	238 n215
Chad–Libya, Agreement concerning the Practical Modalities for the Implementation of the ICJ Judgment of 3 February 1994	
art. 1	1011
art. 6	1011
Convention on Nuclear Safety	
art. 2(1)	892
art. 4	892
art. 5	892–3
art. 7	892
art. 7(2)	893
art. 8	893
art. 9	893
arts. 10–19	893
arts. 20–5	892–3
art. 28	893
Convention on the Preservation and Management of Pollock Resources in the Central Bering Sea	627
Convention on the Safety of United Nations and Associated Personnel	668
art. 2(2)	1232
art. 4	1231
art. 6	1231
art. 9	676, 1231–2

- art. 10 676, 1232
- art. 11 276 n66
- arts. 13–15 1232
- art. 14 676
- art. 17 1232
- Decisions of the Budapest OSCE Conference 377
- Declaration on the Elimination of Violence against Women, its Causes
and Consequences (UNGA resolution 48/104) 325
- Declaration on Measures to Eliminate International Terrorism (UNGA
resolution 49/60) 1160 n212
- European Energy Charter Treaty
 - art. 1(6) 830, 839 n356
 - art. 13 835
 - art. 19 850
 - art. 26(4) 1041 n188
- ILA Revised Draft Articles for a Convention on State Immunity
708, 709 n64, 734–5
- Inter-American Convention on Forced Disappearances of Persons
384–5
 - art. 13 384
 - art. 14 384–5
- Inter-American Convention on the Prevention, Punishment and
Eradication of Violence Against Women 325 n329
 - art. 7 385
 - art. 10 385
 - art. 11 385
 - art. 12 385
- Israel–Jordan, Treaty of Peace 531
 - art. 14(3) 578
 - art. 18 844 n2
 - Annex I(b) 657–8
 - Annex I(c) 655
 - Annex II 844 n2
 - Annex IV 844 n2
- Israel–Palestine Liberation Organisation, Cairo Agreement Providing
for the Withdrawal of Israeli Forces from Jericho and the Gaza Strip
and the Transfer of Authority to a Palestine Authority 247
 - Protocol (1995) for the Transfer of Additional Powers 247
- Statute of the International Criminal Court for Rwanda (ICTR)
 - art. 2 430 n183, 432

arts. 2–4	408
art. 3	408, 436, 670
art. 4	408, 434 n206, 1196 n151
art. 6	408, 735
art. 6(3)	443 n229
art. 6(4)	443 n229
art. 7	408
art. 9	409
art. 10	408
art. 55	441–2
art. 66	442
art. 67	442–3
UN Convention to Combat Desertification	846 n12
1995	
Agreement for the Implementation of the Provisions of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea (1982) Relating to the Conservation and Management of Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks	619 n338, 625–6
art. 1(3)	625
art. 5	625, 868 n129
art. 6	625, 868 n129
art. 8	625
art. 10	625–6
art. 17(3)	626
art. 19	626
art. 21	626
art. 22	626
art. 22(1)(f)	618 n334
art. 23	626
CIS Agreement for the Defence of External Borders	1291
CIS Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms	240–1, 378–9
art. 14	378
art. 17	378
art. 21	378
art. 29	378
art. 34	378
Council of Europe Agreement on Illicit Traffic by Sea	619

Council of Europe Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities	346, 365–8
art. 4	366
art. 5	366
art. 7	366
art. 8	366
art. 9	366
art. 10(2)	367
art. 11(3)	367
art. 14(2)	367
art. 15	367
art. 24	367
art. 25	367
art. 26	367
Dayton General Framework Agreement for Peace	210, 377 n201, 1033–8, 1279
Agreement on Military Aspects	
art. 12	231
Annex 1–B	1034
Annex 2	239 n217
art. V	109 n169
Annex 3	1033
Annex 4	239 n217
Annex 6	231 n179, 379–4, 1034
art. II	379
art. VIII	380
art. X	380
art. XI	380
art. XIV	380
Annex 7	231 n179
Annex 10	204, 231–2
Draft Inter-American Commission Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples	300, 385
European Convention on the Exercise of Children's Rights	368 n151
European Convention on Simplified Extradition Procedure	687 n213
Israel–Palestinian Authority, Interim Agreement on the West Bank and Gaza	247

Memorandum of Understanding Concerning Establishment of the
Inter-Organisation Programme for the Sound Management of
Chemicals 897

Treaty on the Southeast Asia Nuclear Weapon-Free Zone 610,
1188–9 n111

Ukraine–USA, Exchange of Notes Relating to Bilateral Agreements
between the Two States 977

1996

African Nuclear Weapon-Free Treaty (Pelindaba) 610, 1189 n111

Convention on Extradition between the Member States of the European
Union 687 n213

Declaration on International Co-operation in the Exploration and Use
of Outer Space (UNGA resolution 51/126) 544

ILC Draft Code of Crimes against the Peace and Security of
Mankind 410

art. 1(2) 439 n226

art. 8 671

art. 9 671

art. 16 671

art. 17 402, 671

art. 18 671

art. 19 671

art. 20 671

art. 20(d) 1187 n101

1997

Consolidated Treaty Establishing the European Community (Treaty of
Amsterdam) (EC Treaty) 179, 241, 370–1, 635

art. 10 623 n351

art. 17 810 n211

art. 20 810 n211

art. 85 695–6

art. 130r(2) 868

art. 173 695

art. 174 870

art. 281 1297

art. 282 1299 n71

art. 292 623 n351

Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International
Watercourses 531 n251, 865, 885–6

- art. 2 883
- arts. 4–6 885
- art. 5 108, 885
- art. 6 862, 885
- art. 7 855 n50, 885
- art. 8 885
- art. 9 885
- art. 11 885
- arts. 11–17 885–6
- art. 12 885
- art. 18 886
- art. 19 886
- art. 20 886
- art. 21(1) 886
- art. 22 886
- art. 23 886
- Convention for the Suppression of Terrorist Bombing 1160 n212,
1161
- art. 11 687 n211
- art. 15 276 n66
- EU–USA, Memorandum of Understanding Regarding the Application
of Competition Laws 694–5
- European Convention on Nationality 659 n59
- art. 3(2) 813 n224
- art. 18 1006
- art. 19 1005–6
- art. 20 1006
- ILC Preliminary Conclusions on Reservations to Normative Multilateral
Treaties Including Human Rights Treaties 924
- Israel–Palestinian Authority, Hebron Agreement 247
- Joint Convention on the Safety of Spent Fuel Management and on the
Safety of Radioactive Waste Management 893 n277, 897 n302
- Kyoto Protocol 880–1
- 2001 Marrakesh Accords amending 881
- Ottawa Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling,
Production and Transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines and their
Destruction 1190
- 1998**
- Arab Convention for the Suppression of Terrorism 1164

Convention on Access to Information, Public Participation in Decision-Making and Access to Justice in Environmental Matters (Aarhus)	848–9
art. 1	849
art. 9	849
art. 10(2)	849
art. 15	849
Protocol for Registration of Releases into the Environment (2003)	849
Geneva Agreements on Afghanistan	1019
Israel–Palestinian Authority, Wye River Agreement	247
Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade	896
Statute of the International Criminal Court	422
art. 5	411, 439, 670
art. 5(2)	439–40
art. 6	411, 430 n183
arts. 6–8	411
art. 7	411, 436–7
art. 8	411, 434 n206
art. 9	411
art. 11	411
art. 12(2)	412
art. 12(3)	411
art. 13(a)	412
art. 13(b)	412
art. 14	412
art. 15	413
art. 17	414
art. 17(2)a–c	415
art. 17(3)	415
art. 20(3)	415
art. 25	411
art. 27	735
art. 28	443 n229
art. 33	443 n229
art. 34	415
art. 36	415

Statute of the International Criminal Court for the Former Yugoslavia
(ICTY) 410–17

- art. 1 404
- art. 2 433–4
- arts. 2–5 404
- art. 3 434, 435–6, 1192
- art. 3(a) 1187 n101
- art. 4 430–3
- art. 5 436–8, 670
- art. 7 404–5, 735
- art. 7(3) 443 n229
- art. 7(4) 443 n229
- art. 8(2)(c) 436
- art. 8(2)(e) 436
- art. 9 405
- art. 10 405
- art. 11 404
- art. 12 404
- art. 13 404
- art. 14 404
- art. 17 404
- arts. 18–20 406
- art. 21 440–1
- art. 24 406
- art. 25 406
- art. 29 155, 405

Treaty Establishing the Common Market for Eastern and Southern
Africa (Comesa) 1038, 1115 n371

Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action 276, 280–1, 301–2,
324–5, 332, 336

Appendix II 366

1994

Agreement Establishing the World Trade Organisation
(Marrakesh) 1287

Annex 2 (Dispute Settlement Understanding) 1036–8

Agreement on the Implementation of the Seabed Provisions of the 1982

Convention on the Law of the Sea 632–3

art. 1 632

art. 2 632

art. 36(8)(a)(iii)	65 n75
art. 38	415
art. 39(2)(b)(i)	417
art. 39(2)(b)(ii)	416
art. 39(2)(b)(iii)	416
art. 40	415
art. 42	415
art. 43	415
art. 53	416
arts. 53–5	415
art. 56(3)	417
art. 64	416
art. 68	416–17
art. 75(2)	416
art. 77	416
art. 81	417
art. 82	417
art. 83	417
art. 98(2)	414
art. 124	411
art. 126	926

1999

Convention of the Organisation of the Islamic Conference on Combating International Terrorism	1164
Convention for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism	1160 n212, 1161
ILC Draft Articles on Nationality of Natural Persons in Relation to a Succession of States	
art. 1	1006
art. 4	1006
art. 5	1006
art. 8	1008 n261
art. 11	1006
art. 12	1007
art. 13	1007 n258
art. 16	1006
art. 18	1006
art. 21	1007
art. 22	1007–8

- art. 23 1007, 1008 n262
- art. 24 1007–8
- art. 26 1007 n260
- Inter-American Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of
Discrimination against Persons with Disabilities 385 n238
- Israel–Palestinian Authority, Protocol Establishing Safe-Passage between
Gaza and the West Bank 247
- Israel–Palestinian Authority, Sharm el Sheikh Memorandum 247
- 2000**
- European Charter of Fundamental Rights 371
 - art. 20 371
 - art. 21 371
- ILA International Instrument on the Protection of the Environment
from Damage Caused by Space Debris (Buenos Aires) 547,
882
 - art. 4(e) 1016 n28
 - art. 8 882
- 2001**
- African Union, Constitutive Act
 - art. 3 1293
 - art. 4 1293
- Protocol on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation 526
n219
- Convention on the Conservation and Management of Highly Migratory
Fish Stocks in the Western and Central Pacific Ocean
627–8
- Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment 552
n341
- Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants (Stockholm) 874
- ILC Articles on State Responsibility (including earlier drafts)
780–1, 785
 - art. 1 781
 - art. 2 782
 - art. 3 782
 - art. 4 786–7
 - art. 5 787–8
 - art. 6 788
 - art. 7 789
 - art. 8 789–90, 791

art. 9	791
art. 10	791–2
art. 11	792–3
art. 12	782
art. 13	782
art. 14	782
art. 15	782
art. 16	782
art. 17	782
art. 18	782, 796
art. 19	807–8
art. 19 [1996]	806 n184, 807–8
art. 20	1152 n171
art. 21	793, 1132
art. 22	794
art. 23	796
art. 23(2)	796
art. 24	797
art. 24(2)	797
art. 25	798
art. 30	800, 803 n161
art. 31	802
art. 31(2)	805
art. 34	802
art. 36(1)	804–5
art. 36(2)	804–5
art. 37	806
art. 37(3)	806 n187
art. 39	802 n152
art. 40 [1996]	799 n130
art. 40(2)	127 n242, 808
art. 41	808
art. 41(3)	808
art. 42	799
art. 44	808, 819–20
art. 45	799
art. 46	799
art. 47	799
art. 48	800
art. 49	795

art. 50	795
art. 51	795
art. 52	795
art. 57	780 n15
art. 58	780 n15
art. 60	794
art. 70	794
ILC Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities	855, 856, 860–2, 868 n130
art. 1	858, 860
art. 2	860
art. 3	860–1
art. 4	861
art. 5	861
art. 6	861
art. 7	861, 865 n115
art. 8	865
art. 9	861
art. 10	861–2
art. 12	861
art. 13	861
art. 14	861
art. 17	861
OSCE Declaration and Plan of Action on Combating Terrorism	1164
Treaty of Nice	179, 241 n228, 371
Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues	988
Annex A	
art. 2	988
art. 2(1)	989
art. 3	988
art. 3(1)	991
art. 3(2)	991, 996
art. 5	902 n192
art. 6	989
art. 7	988
Annex B	
art. 4(3)	988
Annex C	
art. 2	1000

Annex D	996
Appendix	993

2002

Inter-American Convention against Terrorism	1164
Machakos Protocol (Sudan)	1265
Protocol Relating to the Establishment of the Peace and Security Council of the African Union	526 n219, 1026–7
art. 2	1028
art. 4	1028
art. 5	1028
art. 6	1028
art. 7	1028
art. 9	1028–9
art. 10	1028
art. 11	1028
art. 12	1028
arts. 13–15	1028
art. 16	1029
art. 22	1028
Statute of the Sierra Leone Special Court	
art. 1(2)	418
arts. 2–4	420
art. 3	434 n206
art. 5	420
art. 8	420
art. 9	420
art. 12(1)	419
art. 15	419
art. 16	419
art. 20	419
art. 21	419
UN–Sierra Leone (Establishment of Sierra Leone Special Court) (Security Council resolution 1315 (2000))	418
art. 1	418

2003

Declaration of ASEAN Concord II	1294
Proliferation Security Initiative and Interdiction Principles	619–20
UK–US Extradition Agreement	687 n211

2004

UN–Cambodia, Agreement for the Establishment of Extraordinary
Chambers in the Courts of Cambodia 421–3

art. 2 421

art. 3 422

art. 5 421

art. 6 421

art. 7 421 n135

art. 9 421

art. 12 421

UN Convention on State Immunity 698, 717

art. 2(1)(b) 709, 732 n187, 734

art. 2(1)(c) 720–1, 725

art. 2(2) 709–10

art. 5 707, 708–9

art. 8 741

art. 9 741 n241

art. 10 724–5

art. 17 741 n242

art. 18 743 n248

art. 19 744

art. 20 744

2005

Comprehensive Peace Agreement (Sudan) 1265

Convention for the Suppression of Acts of Nuclear Terrorism 1161

Council of Europe Convention on the Prevention of Terrorism
1164

Protocol additional to the Geneva Conventions (1949) relating to the
Adoption of an Additional Distinctive Emblem 1170

Statute of the Iraqi High Tribunal 428–9

art. 1 429

arts. 11–14 429

art. 14 434 206

art. 15 429

2006

Convention for the Protection of All Persons from Enforced
Disappearance 335 n381

art. 2 334

art. 4 334

art. 5	334
art. 29	334–5
art. 30	335
art. 31	335
art. 32	335
art. 33	335
art. 34	335
Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities	335 n381
arts. 5–9	334
arts. 34–6	334
Optional Protocol	334
Darfur Peace Agreement	1265–6
European Convention on the Avoidance of Statelessness in Relation to State Succession	1005 n252
ILC Articles on Diplomatic Protection	
art. 1	809, 817–18
art. 3	812 n223
art. 4	814
art. 5(1)	815
art. 6(1)	815
art. 8	811 n212
art. 9	817
art. 11	817
art. 12	817 n240
art. 14	820
art. 15	820
ILC Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss in the Case of Transboundary Harm Arising out of Hazardous Activities	862
Principle 1	858 n71
Principle 4	871 n145
Principle 5	864 n107

2007

ASEAN Charter	1294–5
art. 9	1294
art. 10	1294
art. 11	1294
art. 12	1294
art. 14	1294

art. 20	1294
art. 22	1034 n145, 1295 n54
ASEAN Convention on Counter Terrorism	1164
ILC Draft Articles on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties	
art. 2(1)	904 n9
art. 2(b)	1126 n37
art. 3	946 n202, 952 n225
ILC Draft Articles on the Responsibility of International	
Organisations	1310–13
art. 2	1296
art. 3	1311 n135
art. 4	1312
art. 6	1312
art. 12	1312
art. 17	1313
art. 18	1313
arts. 19–22	1313
art. 23	1313 n141
art. 25	1312 n140
art. 33	1313
art. 34	1313
arts. 37–42	1313 n142
Statute of the Special Tribunal for Lebanon	
art. 1	428
art. 2	428
art. 4	428
art. 7	428
art. 8	428
art. 11	428
art. 12	428
art. 13	428
Treaty of Lisbon	242, 371–2
Protocol 30 on the application of the Charter of Fundamental Rights	
to Poland and the United Kingdom	371 n172
UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples	307 n220
art. 1	299
art. 3	299
art. 4	299
art. 5	299
art. 6	299

art. 7(2)	299
art. 8	299
arts. 9–37	299
UN–Lebanon, Agreement for the Establishment of a Special Tribunal for Lebanon	427–8

ABBREVIATIONS

AC	Law Reports, Appeal Cases
AD	Annual Digest and Reports of Public International Law Cases (now International Law Reports)
AFDI	Annuaire Français de Droit International
AJIL	American Journal of International Law
All ER	All England Law Reports
ALR	Argus Law Reports (1895–1959); Australian Argus Law Reports (1960–73); Australian Law Reports (1973–)
Annuaire	Annuaire de l’Institut de Droit International
AU	African Union
Australian YIL	Australian Yearbook of International Law
B & C	Barnes & Cresswell (English Reports)
BCLC	Butterworths Company Law Cases
BFSP	British and Foreign State Papers
BPIL	British Practice in International Law
Bull.	Bulletin
Burr.	Burrow’s Reports
BYIL	British Year Book of International Law
Cal	California Reports
Canadian YIL	Canadian Yearbook of International Law
Cass. Crim.	Cour de Cassation, France, Criminal
CCC	Canadian Criminal Cases
Cd, Cmd or Cmnd	UK Command Papers
Ch.	Law Reports, Chancery Division
Cl. Ct.	US Court of Claims Reports
CLJ	Cambridge Law Journal
CLR	Commonwealth Law Reports
CMLR	Common Market Law Reports

Co.Litt.	Coke on Littleton (First Institute)
COMECON	Council for Mutual Economic Assistance
Cr App R	Criminal Appeal Reports
Cranch	Cranch Reports, United States Supreme Court
Crim. L. Forum	Criminal Law Forum
Crim. LR	Criminal Law Review
C.Rob.	C. Robinson's Admiralty Reports
Dall.	Dallas, Pennsylvania and United States Reports
Dir. Mar.	Diritto Marittimo, Italy
DLR	Dominion Law Reports
Dod.	Dodson's Admiralty Reports
DUSPIL	Digest of US Practice in International Law
EC	European Communities
ECHR	European Convention on Human Rights
ECOSOC	Economic and Social Council
ECR	European Court Reports
ECSC	European Coal and Steel Community
EEC	European Economic Community
EJIL	European Journal of International Law
Encyclopedia	Encyclopedia of Public International Law
ER	English Reports
Euratom	European Atomic Energy Community
EWCA Civ.	England and Wales, Court of Appeal, Civil
EWHC Admin.	England and Wales, High Court
Ex.D.	Law Reports, Exchequer Division
F.2d	Federal Reporter (Second Series)
Fam.	Law Reports, Family Division
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organisation
FCO	Foreign and Commonwealth Office
FCR	Federal Court Reports (Australia)
Finnish YIL	Finnish Yearbook of International Law
F.(J.)	Faculty of Advocates
FLR	Family Law Reports
F.Supp.	Federal Supplement
GAOR	General Assembly Official Records
GDR	German Democratic Republic
German YIL	German Yearbook of International Law
HC Deb.	House of Commons Debates

HLC	House of Lords Reports (Clark)
HL Deb.	House of Lords Debates
HMSO	Her Majesty's Stationery Office
HR	Hague Academy of International Law, Recueil des Cours
HRJ	Human Rights Journal
HRLJ	Human Rights Law Journal
HRQ	Human Rights Quarterly
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organisation
ICJ	International Court of Justice
ICLQ	International and Comparative Law Quarterly
ICR	Industrial Cases Reports
ICRC	International Committee of the Red Cross
ICSID	International Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes
ICTY	International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia
IJIL	Indian Journal of International Law
ILA	International Law Association
ILC	International Law Commission
ILM	International Legal Materials
ILO	International Labour Organisation
ILR	International Law Reports (see also Annual Digest and Reports of Public International Law Cases)
Iran–US CTR	Iran–United States Claims Tribunal Reports
ITU	International Telecommunications Union
KB	Law Reports, King's Bench Division
L.Ed.	US Supreme Court, Reports, Lawyers' Edition
LL. R	Lloyd's Law Reports
LNOJ	League of Nations Official Journal
LNTS	League of Nations Treaty Series
LQR	Law Quarterly Review
LR A&E	Law Reports: Admiralty and Ecclesiastical
MLR	Modern Law Review
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
NE	Northeastern Reporter
Netherlands YIL	Netherlands Yearbook of International Law

NGO	Non-governmental organisation
NILR	Netherlands International Law Review
NLM	National Liberation Movement
NQHR	Netherlands Quarterly of Human Rights
NY	New York Reports
NYS	New York Supplement
NZLR	New Zealand Law Reports
OAS	Organisation of American States
OAU	Organisation of African Unity
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
OECS	Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States
OR	Ontario Reports
P.	Law Reports, Probate, Divorce and Admiralty Division, 1891–
PAIGC	Partido Africano da Independencia da Guine e Cabo Verde
PASIL	Proceedings of the American Society of International Law
PCA	Permanent Court of Arbitration
PCIJ	Permanent Court of International Justice
PD	Law Reports, Probate, Divorce and Admiralty Division, 1875–90
Pet.	Peter's United States Supreme Court Reports
PLO	Palestine Liberation Organisation
QB	Law Reports, Queen's Bench Division
RecChl	Recommendation of the Committee of Ministers on the European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages
RFDA	Revue Française de Droit Administratif
RGDIP	Revue Française de Droit International Public
RIAA	United Nations Reports of International Arbitral Awards
R (J)	Justiciary cases in vols. of Session Cases, 1873–98
SA	South African Reports
SC	Supreme Court
SCOR	Security Council Official Records
SCR	Supreme Court Reports (Canada)

S. Ct.	Supreme Court Reporter
SR (NSW)	New South Wales, State Reports
Stat.	United States Statutes at Large
TFSC	‘Turkish Federated State of Cyprus’
TRNC	‘Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus’
UKHL	United Kingdom, House of Lords
UKMIL	United Kingdom Materials in International Law
UNCESCR	United Nations Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights
UNCIO	United Nations Conference of International Organisation
UNCLOS	United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea
UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
UNHRC	United Nations Human Rights Committee
UNJYB	United Nations Juridical Yearbook
UNTS	United Nations Treaty Series
US	United States Reports (Supreme Court)
US Av R	United States Aviation Reports
US and C Av R	United States and Canadian Aviation Reports
USC	United States Code
USLW	United States Law Weekly
Va. JIL	Virginia Journal of International Law
Ves. Jun.	Vesey Junior’s Chancery Reports
VR	Victoria Reports
Wheat	Wheaton, United States Supreme Court Reports
WHO	World Health Organisation
WLR	Weekly Law Reports
Yale JIL	Yale Journal of International Law
YBWA	Yearbook of World Affairs
ZACC	South African Constitutional Court
ZaöRV	Zeitschrift für ausländisches öffentliches Recht und Völkerrecht

The nature and development of international law

In the long march of mankind from the cave to the computer a central role has always been played by the idea of law – the idea that order is necessary and chaos inimical to a just and stable existence. Every society, whether it be large or small, powerful or weak, has created for itself a framework of principles within which to develop. What can be done, what cannot be done, permissible acts, forbidden acts, have all been spelt out within the consciousness of that community. Progress, with its inexplicable leaps and bounds, has always been based upon the group as men and women combine to pursue commonly accepted goals, whether these be hunting animals, growing food or simply making money.

Law is that element which binds the members of the community together in their adherence to recognised values and standards. It is both permissive in allowing individuals to establish their own legal relations with rights and duties, as in the creation of contracts, and coercive, as it punishes those who infringe its regulations. Law consists of a series of rules regulating behaviour, and reflecting, to some extent, the ideas and preoccupations of the society within which it functions.

And so it is with what is termed international law, with the important difference that the principal subjects of international law are nation-states, not individual citizens. There are many contrasts between the law within a country (municipal law) and the law that operates outside and between states, international organisations and, in certain cases, individuals.

International law itself is divided into conflict of laws (or private international law as it is sometimes called) and public international law (usually just termed international law).¹ The former deals with those cases, *within* particular legal systems, in which foreign elements obtrude, raising questions as to the application of foreign law or the role of foreign courts.²

¹ This term was first used by J. Bentham: see *Introduction to the Principles of Morals and Legislation*, London, 1780.

² See e.g. C. Cheshire and P. North, *Private International Law*, 13th edn, London, 1999.

For example, if two Englishmen make a contract in France to sell goods situated in Paris, an English court would apply French law as regards the validity of that contract. By contrast, public international law is not simply an adjunct of a legal order, but a separate system altogether,³ and it is this field that will be considered in this book.

Public international law covers relations between states in all their myriad forms, from war to satellites, and regulates the operations of the many international institutions. It may be universal or general, in which case the stipulated rules bind all the states (or practically all depending upon the nature of the rule), or regional, whereby a group of states linked geographically or ideologically may recognise special rules applying only to them, for example, the practice of diplomatic asylum that has developed to its greatest extent in Latin America.⁴ The rules of international law must be distinguished from what is called international comity, or practices such as saluting the flags of foreign warships at sea, which are implemented solely through courtesy and are not regarded as legally binding.⁵ Similarly, the mistake of confusing international law with international morality must be avoided. While they may meet at certain points, the former discipline is a legal one both as regards its content and its form, while the concept of international morality is a branch of ethics. This does not mean, however, that international law can be divorced from its values.

In this chapter and the next, the characteristics of the international legal system and the historical and theoretical background necessary to a proper appreciation of the part to be played by the law in international law will be examined.

Law and politics in the world community

It is the legal quality of international law that is the first question to be posed. Each side to an international dispute will doubtless claim legal justification for its actions and within the international system there is no independent institution able to determine the issue and give a final decision.

Virtually everybody who starts reading about international law does so having learned or absorbed something about the principal characteristics of ordinary or domestic law. Such identifying marks would include the

³ See the *Serbian Loans* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 14, pp. 41–2.

⁴ See further below, p. 92.

⁵ *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 44; 41 ILR, p. 29. See also M. Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source of International Law', 47 BYIL, 1974–5, p. 1.

existence of a recognised body to legislate or create laws, a hierarchy of courts with compulsory jurisdiction to settle disputes over such laws and an accepted system of enforcing those laws. Without a legislature, judiciary and executive, it would seem that one cannot talk about a legal order.⁶ And international law does not fit this model. International law has no legislature. The General Assembly of the United Nations comprising delegates from all the member states exists, but its resolutions are not legally binding save for certain of the organs of the United Nations for certain purposes.⁷ There is no system of courts. The International Court of Justice does exist at The Hague but it can only decide cases when both sides agree⁸ and it cannot ensure that its decisions are complied with. Above all there is no executive or governing entity. The Security Council of the United Nations, which was intended to have such a role in a sense, has at times been effectively constrained by the veto power of the five permanent members (USA; USSR, now the Russian Federation; China; France; and the United Kingdom).⁹ Thus, if there is no identifiable institution either to establish rules, or to clarify them or see that those who break them are punished, how can what is called international law be law?

It will, of course, be realised that the basis for this line of argument is the comparison of domestic law with international law, and the assumption of an analogy between the national system and the international order. And this is at the heart of all discussions about the nature of international law.

At the turn of the nineteenth century, the English philosopher John Austin elaborated a theory of law based upon the notion of a sovereign issuing a command backed by a sanction or punishment. Since international law did not fit within that definition it was relegated to the category of 'positive morality'.¹⁰ This concept has been criticised for oversimplifying and even confusing the true nature of law within a society and for overemphasising the role of the sanction within the system by linking it to every rule.¹¹ This is not the place for a comprehensive summary of Austin's

⁶ See generally, R. Dias, *Jurisprudence*, 5th edn, London, 1985, and H. L. A. Hart, *The Concept of Law*, Oxford, 1961.

⁷ See article 17(1) of the United Nations Charter. See also D. Johnson, 'The Effect of Resolutions of the General Assembly of the United Nations', 32 BYIL, 1955–6, p. 97 and below, chapter 22.

⁸ See article 36 of the Statute of the International Court of Justice and below, chapter 19.

⁹ See e.g. *Bowett's Law of International Institutions* (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, London, 2001, and below, chapter 23.

¹⁰ See J. Austin, *The Province of Jurisprudence Determined* (ed. H. L. A. Hart), London, 1954, pp. 134–42.

¹¹ See e.g. Hart, *Concept of Law*, chapter 10.

theory but the idea of coercion as an integral part of any legal order is a vital one that needs looking at in the context of international law.

The role of force

There is no unified system of sanctions¹² in international law in the sense that there is in municipal law, but there are circumstances in which the use of force is regarded as justified and legal. Within the United Nations system, sanctions may be imposed by the Security Council upon the determination of a threat to the peace, breach of the peace or act of aggression.¹³ Such sanctions may be economic, for example those proclaimed in 1966 against Rhodesia,¹⁴ or military as in the Korean war in 1950,¹⁵ or indeed both, as in 1990 against Iraq.¹⁶

Coercive action within the framework of the UN is rare because it requires co-ordination amongst the five permanent members of the Security Council and this obviously needs an issue not regarded by any of the great powers as a threat to their vital interests.

Korea was an exception and joint action could only be undertaken because of the fortuitous absence of the USSR from the Council as a protest at the seating of the Nationalist Chinese representatives.¹⁷

Apart from such institutional sanctions, one may note the bundle of rights to take violent action known as self-help.¹⁸ This procedure to resort to force to defend certain rights is characteristic of primitive systems of law with blood-feuds, but in the domestic legal order such procedures and

¹² See e.g. W. M. Reisman, 'Sanctions and Enforcement' in *The Future of the International Legal Order* (eds. C. Black and R. A. Falk), New York, 1971, p. 273; J. Brierly, 'Sanctions', 17 *Transactions of the Grotius Society*, 1932, p. 68; Hart, *Concept of Law*, pp. 211–21; A. D'Amato, 'The Neo-Positivist Concept of International Law', 59 *AJIL*, 1965, p. 321; G. Fitzmaurice, 'The Foundations of the Authority of International Law and the Problem of Enforcement', 19 *MLR*, 1956, p. 1, and *The Effectiveness of International Decisions* (ed. S. Schwebel), Leiden, 1971.

¹³ Chapter VII of the United Nations Charter. See below, chapter 22.

¹⁴ Security Council resolution 221 (1966). Note also Security Council resolution 418 (1977) imposing a mandatory arms embargo on South Africa.

¹⁵ Security Council resolutions of 25 June, 27 June and 7 July 1950. See D. W. Bowett, *United Nations Forces*, London, 1964.

¹⁶ Security Council resolutions 661 and 678 (1990). See *The Kuwait Crisis: Basic Documents* (eds. E. Lauterpacht, C. Greenwood, M. Weller and D. Bethlehem), Cambridge, 1991, pp. 88 and 98. See also below, chapter 22.

¹⁷ See E. Luard, *A History of the United Nations*, vol. I, *The Years of Western Domination 1945–55*, London, 1982, pp. 229–74, and below, chapter 22.

¹⁸ See D. W. Bowett, *Self-Defence in International Law*, Manchester, 1958, and I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963.

methods are now within the exclusive control of the established authority. States may use force in self-defence, if the object of aggression, and may take action in response to the illegal acts of other states. In such cases the states themselves decide whether to take action and, if so, the extent of their measures, and there is no supreme body to rule on their legality or otherwise, in the absence of an examination by the International Court of Justice, acceptable to both parties, although international law does lay down relevant rules.¹⁹

Accordingly those writers who put the element of force to the forefront of their theories face many difficulties in describing the nature, or rather the legal nature of international law, with its lack of a coherent, recognised and comprehensive framework of sanctions. To see the sanctions of international law in the states' rights of self-defence and reprisals²⁰ is to misunderstand the role of sanctions within a system because they are at the disposal of the states, not the system itself. Neither must it be forgotten that the current trend in international law is to restrict the use of force as far as possible, thus leading to the absurd result that the more force is controlled in international society, the less legal international law becomes.

Since one cannot discover the nature of international law by reference to a definition of law predicated upon sanctions, the character of the international legal order has to be examined in order to seek to discover whether in fact states feel obliged to obey the rules of international law and, if so, why. If, indeed, the answer to the first question is negative, that states do not feel the necessity to act in accordance with such rules, then there does not exist any system of international law worthy of the name.

The international system²¹

The key to the search lies within the unique attributes of the international system in the sense of the network of relationships existing primarily, if not exclusively, between states recognising certain common principles

¹⁹ See below, chapter 19. See also M. Barkin, *Law Without Sanctions*, New Haven, 1967.

²⁰ See e.g. H. Kelsen, *General Theory of Law and State*, London, 1946, pp. 328 ff.

²¹ See L. Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, 2nd edn, New York, 1979, and Henkin, *International Law: Politics and Values*, Dordrecht, 1995; M. A. Kaplan and N. Katzenbach, *The Political Foundations of International Law*, New York, 1961; C. W. Jenks, *The Common Law of Mankind*, London, 1958; W. Friedmann, *The Changing Structure of International Law*, New York, 1964; A. Sheikh, *International Law and National Behaviour*, New York, 1974; O. Schachter, *International Law in Theory and Practice*, Dordrecht, 1991; T. M. Franck, *The Power of Legitimacy Among Nations*, Oxford, 1990; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, and *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, vol. I, chapter 1.

and ways of doing things.²² While the legal structure within all but the most primitive societies is hierarchical and authority is vertical, the international system is horizontal, consisting of over 190 independent states, all equal in legal theory (in that they all possess the characteristics of sovereignty) and recognising no one in authority over them. The law is above individuals in domestic systems, but international law only exists as between the states. Individuals only have the choice as to whether to obey the law or not. They do not create the law. That is done by specific institutions. In international law, on the other hand, it is the states themselves that create the law and obey or disobey it.²³ This, of course, has profound repercussions as regards the sources of law as well as the means for enforcing accepted legal rules.

International law, as will be shown in succeeding chapters, is primarily formulated by international agreements, which create rules binding upon the signatories, and customary rules, which are basically state practices recognised by the community at large as laying down patterns of conduct that have to be complied with.

However, it may be argued that since states themselves sign treaties and engage in action that they may or may not regard as legally obligatory, international law would appear to consist of a series of rules from which states may pick and choose. Contrary to popular belief, states do observe international law, and violations are comparatively rare. However, such violations (like armed attacks and racial oppression) are well publicised and strike at the heart of the system, the creation and preservation of international peace and justice. But just as incidents of murder, robbery and rape do occur within national legal orders without destroying the system as such, so analogously assaults upon international legal rules point up the weaknesses of the system without denigrating their validity or their necessity. Thus, despite the occasional gross violation, the vast majority of the provisions of international law are followed.²⁴

²² As to the concept of 'international community', see e.g. G. Abi-Saab, 'Whither the International Community?', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 248, and B. Simma and A. L. Paulus, 'The "International Community": Facing the Challenge of Globalisation', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 266. See also P. Weil, 'Le Droit International en Quête de son Identité', 237 HR, 1992 VI, p. 25.

²³ This leads Rosenne to refer to international law as a law of co-ordination, rather than, as in internal law, a law of subordination, *Practice and Methods of International Law*, Dordrecht, 1984, p. 2.

²⁴ See H. Morgenthau, *Politics Among Nations*, 5th edn, New York, 1973, pp. 290–1; Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, pp. 46–9; J. Brierly, *The Outlook for International Law*, Oxford, 1944, p. 5, and P. Jessup, *A Modern Law of Nations*, New York, 1948, pp. 6–8.

In the daily routine of international life, large numbers of agreements and customs are complied with. However, the need is felt in the hectic interplay of world affairs for some kind of regulatory framework or rules network within which the game can be played, and international law fulfils that requirement. States feel this necessity because it imports an element of stability and predictability into the situation.

Where countries are involved in a disagreement or a dispute, it is handy to have recourse to the rules of international law even if there are conflicting interpretations since at least there is a common frame of reference and one state will be aware of how the other state will develop its argument. They will both be talking a common language and this factor of communication is vital since misunderstandings occur so easily and often with tragic consequences. Where the antagonists dispute the understanding of a particular rule and adopt opposing stands as regards its implementation, they are at least on the same wavelength and communicate by means of the same phrases. That is something. It is not everything, for it is a mistake as well as inaccurate to claim for international law more than it can possibly deliver. It can constitute a mutually understandable vocabulary book and suggest possible solutions which follow from a study of its principles. What it cannot do is solve every problem no matter how dangerous or complex merely by being there. International law has not yet been developed, if it ever will, to that particular stage and one should not exaggerate its capabilities while pointing to its positive features.

But what is to stop a state from simply ignoring international law when proceeding upon its chosen policy? Can a legal rule against aggression, for example, of itself prevail over political temptations? There is no international police force to prevent such an action, but there are a series of other considerations closely bound up with the character of international law which might well cause a potential aggressor to forbear.

There is the element of reciprocity at work and a powerful weapon it can be. States quite often do not pursue one particular course of action which might bring them short-term gains, because it could disrupt the mesh of reciprocal tolerance which could very well bring long-term disadvantages. For example, states everywhere protect the immunity of foreign diplomats for not to do so would place their own officials abroad at risk.²⁵ This constitutes an inducement to states to act reasonably and moderate

²⁵ See *Case Concerning United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran*, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 3; 61 ILR, p. 502. See also the US Supreme Court decision in *Boos v. Barry* 99 L. Ed. 2d 333, 345–6 (1988); 121 ILR, p. 499.

demands in the expectation that this will similarly encourage other states to act reasonably and so avoid confrontations. Because the rules can ultimately be changed by states altering their patterns of behaviour and causing one custom to supersede another, or by mutual agreement, a certain definite reference to political life is retained. But the point must be made that a state, after weighing up all possible alternatives, might very well feel that the only method to protect its vital interests would involve a violation of international law and that responsibility would just have to be taken. Where survival is involved international law may take second place.

Another significant factor is the advantages, or 'rewards', that may occur in certain situations from an observance of international law. It may encourage friendly or neutral states to side with one country involved in a conflict rather than its opponent, and even take a more active role than might otherwise have been the case. In many ways, it is an appeal to public opinion for support and all states employ this tactic.

In many ways, it reflects the esteem in which law is held. The Soviet Union made considerable use of legal arguments in its effort to establish its non-liability to contribute towards the peacekeeping operations of the United Nations,²⁶ and the Americans too, justified their activities with regard to Cuba²⁷ and Vietnam²⁸ by reference to international law. In some cases it may work and bring considerable support in its wake, in many cases it will not, but in any event the very fact that all states do it is a constructive sign.

A further element worth mentioning in this context is the constant formulation of international business in characteristically legal terms. Points of view and disputes, in particular, are framed legally with references to precedent, international agreements and even the opinions of juristic authors. Claims are pursued with regard to the rules of international law and not in terms of, for example, morality or ethics.²⁹ This has brought into being a class of officials throughout governmental departments, in

²⁶ See *Certain Expenses of the United Nations*, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281, and R. Higgins, *United Nations Peace-Keeping: Documents and Commentary*, Oxford, 4 vols., 1969–81.

²⁷ See e.g. A. Chayes, *The Cuban Missile Crisis*, Oxford, 1974, and Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, pp. 279–302.

²⁸ See e.g. *The Vietnam War and International Law* (ed. R. A. Falk), Princeton, 4 vols., 1968–76; J. N. Moore, *Law and the Indo-China War*, Charlottesville, 1972, and Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, pp. 303–12.

²⁹ See Hart, *Concept of Law*, p. 223.

addition to those working in international institutions, versed in international law and carrying on the everyday functions of government in a law-oriented way. Many writers have, in fact, emphasised the role of officials in the actual functioning of law and the influence they have upon the legal process.³⁰

Having come to the conclusion that states do observe international law and will usually only violate it on an issue regarded as vital to their interests, the question arises as to the basis of this sense of obligation.³¹ The nineteenth century, with its business-oriented philosophy, stressed the importance of the contract, as the legal basis of an agreement freely entered into by both (or all) sides, and this influenced the theory of consent in international law.³² States were independent, and free agents, and accordingly they could only be bound with their own consent. There was no authority in existence able theoretically or practically to impose rules upon the various nation-states. This approach found its extreme expression in the theory of auto-limitation, or self-limitation, which declared that states could only be obliged to comply with international legal rules if they had first agreed to be so obliged.³³

Nevertheless, this theory is most unsatisfactory as an account of why international law is regarded as binding or even as an explanation of the international legal system.³⁴ To give one example, there are about 100 states that have come into existence since the end of the Second World War and by no stretch of the imagination can it be said that such states have consented to all the rules of international law formed prior to their establishment. It could be argued that by 'accepting independence', states consent to all existing rules, but to take this view relegates consent to the role of a mere fiction.³⁵

³⁰ See e.g. M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and W. M. Reisman, 'The World Constitutive Process of Authoritative Decision' in *International Law Essays* (eds. M. S. McDougal and W. M. Reisman), New York, 1981, p. 191.

³¹ See e.g. J. Brierly, *The Basis of Obligation in International Law*, Oxford, 1958.

³² See W. Friedmann, *Legal Theory*, 5th edn, London, 1967, pp. 573–6. See also the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, p. 18.

³³ E.g. G. Jellinek, *Allgemeine Rechtslehre*, Berlin, 1905.

³⁴ See also Hart, *Concept of Law*, pp. 219–20. But see P. Weil, 'Towards Relative Normativity in International Law?', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 413 and responses thereto, e.g. R. A. Falk, 'To What Extent are International Law and International Lawyers Ideologically Neutral?' in *Change and Stability in International Law-Making* (eds. A. Cassese and J. Weiler), 1989, p. 137, and A. Pellet, 'The Normative Dilemma: Will and Consent in International Law-Making', 12 Australian YIL, 1992, p. 22.

³⁵ See further below, p. 88.

This theory also fails as an adequate explanation of the international legal system, because it does not take into account the tremendous growth in international institutions and the network of rules and regulations that have emerged from them within the last generation.

To accept consent as the basis for obligation in international law³⁶ begs the question as to what happens when consent is withdrawn. The state's reversal of its agreement to a rule does not render that rule optional or remove from it its aura of legality. It merely places that state in breach of its obligations under international law if that state proceeds to act upon its decision. Indeed, the principle that agreements are binding (*pacta sunt servanda*) upon which all treaty law must be based cannot itself be based upon consent.³⁷

One current approach to this problem is to refer to the doctrine of consensus.³⁸ This reflects the influence of the majority in creating new norms of international law and the acceptance by other states of such new rules. It attempts to put into focus the change of emphasis that is beginning to take place from exclusive concentration upon the nation-state to a consideration of the developing forms of international co-operation where such concepts as consent and sanction are inadequate to explain what is happening.

Of course, one cannot ignore the role of consent in international law. To recognise its limitations is not to neglect its significance. Much of international law is constituted by states expressly agreeing to specific normative standards, most obviously by entering into treaties. This cannot be minimised. Nevertheless, it is preferable to consider consent as important not only with regard to specific rules specifically accepted (which is not the sum total of international law, of course) but in the light of the approach of states generally to the totality of rules, understandings, patterns of behaviour and structures underpinning and constituting the international system.³⁹ In a broad sense, states accept or consent to the general system of international law, for in reality without that no such system could possibly operate. It is this approach which may be characterised as consensus

³⁶ See e.g. J. S. Watson, 'State Consent and the Sources of International Obligation', PASIL, 1992, p. 108.

³⁷ See below, chapter 3.

³⁸ See e.g. A. D'Amato, 'On Consensus', 8 Canadian YIL, 1970, p. 104. Note also the 'gentleman's agreement on consensus' in the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea: see L. Sohn, 'Voting Procedures in United Nations Conference for the Codification of International Law', 69 AJIL, 1975, p. 318, and UN Doc. A/Conf.62/WP.2.

³⁹ See e.g. J. Charney, 'Universal International Law', 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 529.

or the essential framework within which the demand for individual state consent is transmuted into community acceptance.

It is important to note that while states from time to time object to particular rules of international law and seek to change them, no state has sought to maintain that it is free to object to the system as a whole. Each individual state, of course, has the right to seek to influence by word or deed the development of specific rules of international law, but the creation of new customary rules is not dependent upon the express consent of each particular state.

The function of politics

It is clear that there can never be a complete separation between law and policy. No matter what theory of law or political philosophy is professed, the inextricable bonds linking law and politics must be recognised.

Within developed societies a distinction is made between the formulation of policy and the method of its enforcement. In the United Kingdom, Parliament legislates while the courts adjudicate and a similar division is maintained in the United States between the Congress and the courts system. The purpose of such divisions, of course, is to prevent a concentration of too much power within one branch of government. Nevertheless, it is the political branch which makes laws and in the first place creates the legal system. Even within the hierarchy of courts, the judges have leeway in interpreting the law and in the last resort make decisions from amongst a number of alternatives.⁴⁰ This position, however, should not be exaggerated because a number of factors operate to conceal and lessen the impact of politics upon the legal process. Foremost amongst these is the psychological element of tradition and the development of the so-called 'law-habit'.⁴¹ A particular legal atmosphere has been created, which is buttressed by the political system and recognises the independent existence of law institutions and methods of operation characterised as 'just' or 'legal'. In most countries overt interference with the juridical process would be regarded as an attack upon basic principles and hotly contested. The use of legal language and accepted procedures together with the pride of the legal profession reinforce the system and emphasise the degree

⁴⁰ See e.g. R. Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*, London, 1977.

⁴¹ See e.g. K. Llewellyn, *The Common Law Tradition*, Boston, 1960, and generally D. Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, 4th edn, London, 1979.

of distance maintained between the legislative–executive organs and the judicial structure.⁴²

However, when one looks at the international legal scene the situation changes. The arbiters of the world order are, in the last resort, the states and they both make the rules (ignoring for the moment the secondary, if growing, field of international organisations) and interpret and enforce them.

While it is possible to discern an ‘international legal habit’ amongst governmental and international officials, the machinery necessary to enshrine this does not exist.

Politics is much closer to the heart of the system than is perceived within national legal orders, and power much more in evidence.⁴³ The interplay of law and politics in world affairs is much more complex and difficult to unravel, and signals a return to the earlier discussion as to why states comply with international rules. Power politics stresses competition, conflict and supremacy and adopts as its core the struggle for survival and influence.⁴⁴ International law aims for harmony and the regulation of disputes. It attempts to create a framework, no matter how rudimentary, which can act as a kind of shock-absorber clarifying and moderating claims and endeavouring to balance interests. In addition, it sets out a series of principles declaring how states should behave. Just as any domestic community must have a background of ideas and hopes to aim at, even if few can be or are ever attained, so the international community, too, must bear in mind its ultimate values.

However, these ultimate values are in a formal sense kept at arm’s length from the legal process. As the International Court noted in the *South-West Africa* case,⁴⁵ ‘It is a court of law, and can take account of moral principles only in so far as these are given a sufficient expression in legal form. Law exists, it is said, to serve a social need; but precisely for that reason it can do so only through and within the limits of its own discipline. Otherwise, it is not a legal service that would be rendered.’⁴⁶

International law cannot be a source of instant solutions to problems of conflict and confrontation because of its own inherent weaknesses

⁴² See P. Stein and J. Shand, *Legal Values in Western Society*, Edinburgh, 1974.

⁴³ See generally Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, and Schachter, *International Law*, pp. 5–9.

⁴⁴ See G. Schwarzenberger, *Power Politics*, 3rd edn, London, 1964, and Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1957, vol. I, and Morgenthau, *Politics Among Nations*.

⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 6, 34.

⁴⁶ But see Higgins’ criticism that such a formulation may be question-begging with regard to the identity of such ‘limits of its own discipline’, *Problems*, p. 5.

in structure and content. To fail to recognise this encourages a utopian approach which, when faced with reality, will fail.⁴⁷ On the other hand, the cynical attitude with its obsession with brute power is equally inaccurate, if more depressing.

It is the medium road, recognising the strength and weakness of international law and pointing out what it can achieve and what it cannot, which offers the best hope. Man seeks order, welfare and justice not only within the state in which he lives, but also within the international system in which he lives.

Historical development⁴⁸

The foundations of international law (or the law of nations) as it is understood today lie firmly in the development of Western culture and political organisation.

The growth of European notions of sovereignty and the independent nation-state required an acceptable method whereby inter-state relations could be conducted in accordance with commonly accepted standards of

⁴⁷ Note, of course, the important distinction between the existence of an obligation under international law and the question of the enforcement of that obligation. Problems with regard to enforcing a duty cannot affect the legal validity of that duty: see e.g. Judge Weeramantry's Separate Opinion in the Order of 13 September 1993, in the *Bosnia* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 374; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 92.

⁴⁸ See in particular A. Nussbaum, *A Concise History of the Law of Nations*, rev. edn, New York, 1954; *Encyclopedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 1984, vol. VII, pp. 127–273; J. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 10 vols., 1968–79, and M. Koskenniemi, *The Gentle Civilizer of Nations: The Rise and Fall of International Law, 1870–1960*, Cambridge, 2001. See also W. Grewe, *The Epochs of International Law* (trans. and rev. M. Byers), New York, 2000; A. Cassese, *International Law in a Divided World*, Oxford, 1986, and Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapter 2; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 41; H. Thierry, 'L'Évolution du Droit International', 222 HR, 1990 III, p. 9; P. Guggenheim, 'Contribution à l'Histoire des Sources du Droit des Gens', 94 HR, 1958 II, p. 5; A. Truyol y Serra, *Histoire de Droit International Public*, Paris, 1995; D. Gaurier, *Histoire du Droit International Public*, Rennes, 2005; D. Korff, 'Introduction à l'Histoire de Droit International Public', 1 HR, 1923 I, p. 1; P. Le Fur, 'Le Développement Historique de Droit International', 41 HR, 1932 III, p. 501; O. Yasuaki, 'When was the Law of International Society Born? An Inquiry of the History of International Law from an Intercivilisational Perspective', 2 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2000, p. 1, and A. Kemmerer, 'The Turning Aside: On International Law and its History' in *Progress in International Organisation* (eds. R. A. Miller and R. Bratspies), Leiden, 2008, p. 71. For a general bibliography, see P. Macalister-Smith and J. Schwietzke, 'Literature and Documentary Sources relating to the History of International Law', 1 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 1999, p. 136.

behaviour, and international law filled the gap. But although the law of nations took root and flowered with the sophistication of Renaissance Europe, the seeds of this particular hybrid plant are of far older lineage. They reach far back into history.

Early origins

While the modern international system can be traced back some 400 years, certain of the basic concepts of international law can be discerned in political relationships thousands of years ago.⁴⁹ Around 2100 BC, for instance, a solemn treaty was signed between the rulers of Lagash and Umma, the city-states situated in the area known to historians as Mesopotamia. It was inscribed on a stone block and concerned the establishment of a defined boundary to be respected by both sides under pain of alienating a number of Sumerian gods.⁵⁰ The next major instance known of an important, binding, international treaty is that concluded over 1,000 years later between Rameses II of Egypt and the king of the Hittites for the establishment of eternal peace and brotherhood.⁵¹ Other points covered in that agreement signed, it would seem, at Kadesh, north of Damascus, included respect for each other's territorial integrity, the termination of a state of aggression and the setting up of a form of defensive alliance.

Since that date many agreements between the rival Middle Eastern powers were concluded, usually aimed at embodying in a ritual form a state of subservience between the parties or attempting to create a political alliance to contain the influence of an over-powerful empire.⁵²

⁴⁹ See D. J. Bederman, *International Law in Antiquity*, Cambridge, 2001.

⁵⁰ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 1–2. Note the discovery in the excavated city of Ebla, the capital of a civilisation at least 4,500 years old, of a copy of a political treaty between Ebla and the city of Abarsal: see *Times Higher Education Supplement*, 19 May 1995, p. 20. See also R. Cohen, *On Diplomacy in the Ancient Near East: The Amarna Letters*, Discussion Paper of the Centre for the Study of Diplomacy, University of Leicester, 1995; O. Butkevych, 'History of Ancient International Law: Challenges and Prospects', 5 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2003, p. 189; A. Altman, 'Tracing the Earliest Recorded Concepts of International Law. The Early Dynastic Period in Southern Mesopotamia', 6 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2004, p. 153, and 'Tracing the Earliest Recorded Concepts of International Law. (2) The Old Akkadian and Ur III Periods in Mesopotamia', 7 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2005, p. 115.

⁵¹ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 1–2.

⁵² Preiser emphasises that the era between the seventeenth and fifteenth centuries BC witnessed something of a competing state system involving five independent (at various times) states: Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 133–4.

The role of ancient Israel must also be noted. A universal ethical stance coupled with rules relating to warfare were handed down to other peoples and religions and the demand for justice and a fair system of law founded upon strict morality permeated the thought and conduct of subsequent generations.⁵³ For example, the Prophet Isaiah declared that sworn agreements, even where made with the enemy, must be performed.⁵⁴ Peace and social justice were the keys to man's existence, not power.

After much neglect, there is now more consideration of the cultures and standards that evolved, before the birth of Christ, in the Far East, in the Indian⁵⁵ and Chinese⁵⁶ civilisations. Many of the Hindu rules displayed a growing sense of morality and generosity and the Chinese Empire devoted much thought to harmonious relations between its constituent parts. Regulations controlling violence and the behaviour of varying factions with regard to innocent civilians were introduced and ethical values instilled in the education of the ruling classes. In times of Chinese dominance, a regional tributary-states system operated which fragmented somewhat in times of weakness, but this remained culturally alive for many centuries.

However, the predominant approach of ancient civilisations was geographically and culturally restricted. There was no conception of an

⁵³ See P. Weil, 'Le Judaïsme et le Développement du Droit International', 151 HR, 1976, p. 253, and S. Rosenne, 'The Influence of Judaism on International Law', *Nederlands Tijdschrift voor Internationaal Recht*, 1958, p. 119.

⁵⁴ See Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, p. 3.

⁵⁵ *Ibid.* See also C. H. Alexandrowicz, *An Introduction to the History of the Law of Nations in the East Indies*, Leiden, 1967, and Alexandrowicz, 'The Afro-Asian World and the Law of Nations (Historical Aspects)', 123 HR, 1967, p. 117; L. Chatterjee, *International Law and Inter-State Relations in Ancient India*, 1958; Nagendra Singh, 'The Distinguishing Characteristics of the Concept of the Law of Nations as it Developed in Ancient India', *Liber Amicorum for Lord Wilberforce* (eds. A. Bos and I. Brownlie), Oxford, 1987, p. 91; R. P. Anand, *International Law and the Developing Countries*, The Hague, 1987; *International Law and Practice in Ancient India* (ed. H. S. Bhatia), New Delhi, 1977; Nagendra Singh, *India and International Law*, New Delhi, 1969, and P. Bandyopadhyay, *International Law and Custom in Ancient India*, New Delhi, 1982.

⁵⁶ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, p. 4; Liu Tchoan Pas, *Le Droit des Gens et de la Chine Antique*, Paris, 2 vols., 1926; P. Gong, *The Standard of 'Civilisation' in International Society*, 1984, pp. 130–63; pp. 164–200 with regard to Japan; pp. 201–37 with regard to Siam; I. C. Y. Hsu, *China's Entrance into the Family of Nations*, Harvard, 1960; K. Iriye, 'The Principles of International Law in the Light of Confucian Doctrine', 120 HR, 1967, p. 1, and Wang Tieya, 'International Law in China', 221 HR, 1990 II, p. 195. See also C. F. Amerasinghe, 'South Asian Antecedents of International Law' in *International Law – Theory and Practice* (ed. K. Wellens), The Hague, 1998, p. 3, and E. Y.-J. Lee, 'Early Development of Modern International Law in East Asia – With Special Reference to China, Japan and Korea', 4 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2002, p. 42.

international community of states co-existing within a defined framework. The scope for any 'international law' of states was extremely limited and all that one can point to is the existence of certain ideals, such as the sanctity of treaties, which have continued to this day as important elements in society. But the notion of a universal community with its ideal of world order was not in evidence.

The era of classical Greece, from about the sixth century BC and onwards for a couple of hundred years, has, one must note, been of overwhelming significance for European thought. Its critical and rational turn of mind, its constant questioning and analysis of man and nature and its love of argument and debate were spread throughout Europe and the Mediterranean world by the Roman Empire which adopted Hellenic culture wholesale, and penetrated Western consciousness with the Renaissance. However, Greek awareness was limited to their own competitive city-states and colonies. Those of different origin were barbarians not deemed worthy of association.

The value of Greece in a study of international law lies partly in the philosophical, scientific and political analyses bequeathed to mankind and partly in the fascinating state of inter-relationship built up within the Hellenistic world.⁵⁷ Numerous treaties linked the city-states together in a network of commercial and political associations. Rights were often granted to the citizens of the states in each other's territories and rules regarding the sanctity and protection of diplomatic envoys developed. Certain practices were essential before the declaration of war, and the horrors of war were somewhat ameliorated by the exercise, for example, of religious customs regarding sanctuaries. But no overall moral approach similar to those emerging from Jewish and Hindu thought, particularly, evolved. No sense of a world community can be traced to Greek ideology in spite of the growth of Greek colonies throughout the Mediterranean area. This was left to the able administrators of the Roman Empire.⁵⁸

The Romans had a profound respect for organisation and the law.⁵⁹ The law knitted together their empire and constituted a vital source of

⁵⁷ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 5–9, and A. Lanni, 'The Laws of War in Ancient Greece', *Harvard Law School Public Law Research Paper No. 07-24*, 2007. See also G. Ténékidès, 'Droit International et Communautés Fédérales dans la Grèce des Cités', 90 HR, 1956, p. 469; S. L. Ager, *Interstate Arbitrations in the Greek World, 337-90 BC*, Berkeley, 1996, and Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 154–6.

⁵⁸ Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 136–9, and Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 10–16.

⁵⁹ See e.g. A. Jolowicz, *Historical Introduction to Roman Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1972. See also A. Watson, *International Law in Archaic Rome*, Baltimore, 1993.

reference for every inhabitant of the far-flung domain. The early Roman law (the *jus civile*) applied only to Roman citizens. It was formalistic and hard and reflected the status of a small, unsophisticated society rooted in the soil.

It was totally unable to provide a relevant background for an expanding, developing nation. This need was served by the creation and progressive augmentation of the *jus gentium*. This provided simplified rules to govern the relations between foreigners, and between foreigners and citizens. The instrument through which this particular system evolved was the official known as the Praetor Peregrinus, whose function it was to oversee all legal relationships, including bureaucratic and commercial matters, within the empire.

The progressive rules of the *jus gentium* gradually overrode the narrow *jus civile* until the latter system ceased to exist. Thus, the *jus gentium* became the common law of the Roman Empire and was deemed to be of universal application.

It is this all-embracing factor which so strongly distinguishes the Roman from the Greek experience, although, of course, there was no question of the acceptance of other nations on a basis of equality and the *jus gentium* remained a 'national law' for the Roman Empire.

One of the most influential of Greek concepts taken up by the Romans was the idea of Natural Law.⁶⁰ This was formulated by the Stoic philosophers of the third century BC and their theory was that it constituted a body of rules of universal relevance. Such rules were rational and logical, and because the ideas and precepts of the 'law of nature' were rooted in human intelligence, it followed that such rules could not be restricted to any nation or any group but were of worldwide relevance. This element of universality is basic to modern doctrines of international law and the Stoic elevation of human powers of logical deduction to the supreme pinnacle of 'discovering' the law foreshadows the rational philosophies of the West. In addition to being a fundamental concept in legal theory, Natural Law is vital to an understanding of international law, as well as being an indispensable precursor to contemporary concern with human rights.

Certain Roman philosophers incorporated those Greek ideas of Natural Law into their own legal theories, often as a kind of ultimate justification

⁶⁰ See e.g. Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, pp. 79–169.

of the *jus gentium*, which was deemed to enshrine rational principles common to all civilised nations.

However, the law of nature was held to have an existence over and above that of the *jus gentium*. This led to much confusion over the exact relationship between the two ideas and different Roman lawyers came to different conclusions as to their identity and characteristics. The important factors though that need to be noted are the theories of the universality of law and the rational origins of legal rules that were founded, theoretically at least, not on superior force but on superior reason.

The classical rules of Roman law were collated in the *Corpus Juris Civilis*, a compilation of legal material by a series of Byzantine philosophers completed in AD 534.⁶¹ Such a collection was to be invaluable when the darkness of the early Middle Ages, following the Roman collapse, began gradually to evaporate. For here was a body of developed laws ready made and awaiting transference to an awakening Europe.

At this stage reference must be made to the growth of Islam.⁶² Its approach to international relations and law was predicated upon a state of hostility towards the non-Moslem world and the concept of unity, Dar al-Islam, as between Moslem countries. Generally speaking, humane rules of warfare were developed and the 'peoples of the book' (Jews and Christians) were treated better than non-believers, although in an inferior position to Moslems. Once the period of conquest was over and power was consolidated, norms governing conduct with non-Moslem states began to develop. The law dealing with diplomats was founded upon notions of hospitality and safety (*aman*), while rules governing international agreements grew out of the concept of respecting promises made.⁶³

⁶¹ See generally with regard to Byzantium, M. De Taube, 'L'Apport de Byzance au Développement du Droit International Occidental', 67 HR, 1939, p. 233, and S. Verosta, 'International Law in Europe and Western Asia between 100–650 AD', 113 HR, 1964, p. 489.

⁶² See e.g. M. Al Ghunaimi, *The Muslim Conception of International Law and the Western Approach*, The Hague, 1968; A. Draz, 'Le Droit International Public et l'Islam', 5 *Revue Égyptienne de Droit International*, p. 17; C. Stumpf, 'Christian and Islamic Traditions of Public International Law', 7 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2005, p. 69; H. Khadduri, 'Islam and the Modern Law of Nations', 50 AJIL, 1956, p. 358, and Khadduri, *War and Peace in the Law of Islam*, 2nd edn, Baltimore, 1962, and S. Mahmassani, 'The Principles of International Law in the Light of Islamic Doctrine', 117 HR, 1966, p. 205. See also 'L'Asile et les Réfugiés dans la Tradition Musulmane', Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference, International Law Association, London, 2000, p. 305, and Y. Ben Achour Yadh, 'La Civilisation Islamique et le Droit International', RGDIP, 2006, p. 19.

⁶³ See Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 141–2, and Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 51–4.

The Middle Ages and the Renaissance

The Middle Ages were characterised by the authority of the organised Church and the comprehensive structure of power that it commanded.⁶⁴ All Europe was of one religion, and the ecclesiastical law applied to all, notwithstanding tribal or regional affiliations. For much of the period, there were struggles between the religious authorities and the rulers of the Holy Roman Empire.

These conflicts were eventually resolved in favour of the Papacy, but the victory over secularism proved of relatively short duration. Religion and a common legacy derived from the Roman Empire were strongly unifying influences, while political and regional rivalries were not. But before a recognised system of international law could be created, social changes were essential.

Of particular importance during this era were the authority of the Holy Roman Empire and the supranational character of canon law.⁶⁵ Nevertheless, commercial and maritime law developed apace. English law established the *Law Merchant*, a code of rules covering foreign traders, and this was declared to be of universal application.⁶⁶

Throughout Europe, mercantile courts were set up to settle disputes between tradesmen at the various fairs, and while it is not possible to state that a Continental *Law Merchant* came into being, a network of common regulations and practices weaved its way across the commercial fabric of Europe and constituted an embryonic international trade law.⁶⁷

Similarly, maritime customs began to be accepted throughout the Continent. Founded upon the Rhodian Sea Law, a Byzantine work, many of whose rules were enshrined in the Rolls of Oleron in the twelfth century, and other maritime textbooks, a series of commonly applied customs relating to the sea permeated the naval powers of the Atlantic and Mediterranean coasts.⁶⁸

⁶⁴ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 17–23, and Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 143–9.

⁶⁵ Note in particular the influence of the Church on the rules governing warfare and the binding nature of agreements: see Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 17–18, and Bernhardt *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 146–7. See also M. Keen, *The Laws of War in the Late Middle Ages*, London, 1965.

⁶⁶ See G. Holdsworth, *A History of English Law*, London, 1924, vol. 5, pp. 60–3.

⁶⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 63–129.

⁶⁸ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 29–31. Note also the influence of the Consolato del Mare, composed in Barcelona in the mid-fourteenth century, and the Maritime Code of Wisby (c. 1407) followed by the Hanseatic League.

Such commercial and maritime codes, while at this stage merely expressions of national legal systems, were amongst the forerunners of international law because they were created and nurtured against a backcloth of cross-national contacts and reflected the need for rules that would cover international situations.

Such rules, growing out of the early Middle Ages, constituted the seeds of international law, but before they could flourish, European thought had first to be developed by that intellectual explosion known as the Renaissance.

This complex of ideas changed the face of European society and ushered in the modern era of scientific, humanistic and individualistic thought.⁶⁹

The collapse of the Byzantine Empire centred on Constantinople before the Turkish armies in 1453 drove many Greek scholars to seek sanctuary in Italy and enliven Western Europe's cultural life. The introduction of printing during the fifteenth century provided the means to disseminate knowledge, and the undermining of feudalism in the wake of economic growth and the rise of the merchant classes provided the background to the new inquiring attitudes taking shape.

Europe's developing self-confidence manifested itself in a sustained drive overseas for wealth and luxury items. By the end of the fifteenth century, the Arabs had been ousted from the Iberian peninsula and the Americas reached.

The rise of the nation-states of England, France and Spain in particular characterised the process of the creation of territorially consolidated independent units, in theory and doctrine, as well as in fact. This led to a higher degree of interaction between sovereign entities and thus the need to regulate such activities in a generally acceptable fashion. The pursuit of political power and supremacy became overt and recognised, as Machiavelli's *The Prince* (1513) demonstrated.

The city-states of Italy struggled for supremacy and the Papacy too became a secular power. From these hectic struggles emerged many of the staples of modern international life: diplomacy, statesmanship, the theory of the balance of power and the idea of a community of states.⁷⁰

Notions such as these are immediately appreciable and one can identify with the various manoeuvres for political supremacy. Alliances, betrayals, manipulations of state institutions and the drive for power are not unknown to us. We recognise the roots of our society.

⁶⁹ See e.g. Friedmann, *Changing Structure*, pp. 114–16.

⁷⁰ See e.g. G. Mattingley, *Renaissance Diplomacy*, London, 1955.

It was the evolution of the concept of an international community of separate, sovereign, if competing, states, that marks the beginning of what is understood by international law. The Renaissance bequeathed the prerequisites of independent, critical thought and a humanistic, secular approach to life as well as the political framework for the future. But it is the latter factor which is vital to the subsequent growth of international law. The Reformation and the European religious wars that followed emphasised this, as did the growing power of the nations. In many ways these wars marked the decline of a continental system founded on religion and the birth of a continental system founded on the supremacy of the state.

Throughout these countries the necessity was felt for a new conception of human as well as state relationships. This search was precipitated, as has been intimated, by the decline of the Church and the rise of what might be termed 'free-thinking'. The theory of international law was naturally deeply involved in this reappraisal of political life and it was tremendously influenced by the rediscovery of Greco-Roman ideas. The Renaissance stimulated a rebirth of Hellenic studies and ideas of Natural Law, in particular, became popular.

Thus, a distinct value-system to underpin international relations was brought into being and the law of nations was heralded as part of the universal law of nature.

With the rise of the modern state and the emancipation of international relations, the doctrine of sovereignty emerged. This concept, first analysed systematically in 1576 in the *Six Livres de la République* by Jean Bodin, was intended to deal with the structure of authority within the modern state. Bodin, who based his study upon his perception of the politics of Europe rather than on a theoretical discussion of absolute principles, emphasised the necessity for a sovereign power within the state that would make the laws. While such a sovereign could not be bound by the laws he himself instituted, he was subject to the laws of God and of nature.⁷¹

The idea of the sovereign as supreme legislator was in the course of time transmuted into the principle which gave the state supreme power vis-à-vis other states. The state was regarded as being above the law. Such

⁷¹ See A. Gardot, 'Jean Bodin – Sa Place Parmi les Fondateurs du Droit International', 50 HR, 1934, p. 549. See also, for a discussion of sovereignty and the treaty-making power in the late middle ages, T. Meron, 'The Authority to Make Treaties in the Late Middle Ages', 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 1.

notions as these formed the intellectual basis of the line of thought known as positivism which will be discussed later.⁷²

The early theorists of international law were deeply involved with the ideas of Natural Law and used them as the basis of their philosophies. Included within that complex of Natural Law principles from which they constructed their theories was the significant merging of Christian and Natural Law ideas that occurred in the philosophy of St Thomas Aquinas.⁷³ He maintained that Natural Law formed part of the law of God, and was the participation by rational creatures in the Eternal Law. It complemented that part of the Eternal Law which had been divinely revealed. Reason, declared Aquinas, was the essence of man and thus must be involved in the ordering of life according to the divine will. Natural Law was the fount of moral behaviour as well as of social and political institutions, and it led to a theory of conditional acceptance of authority with unjust laws being unacceptable. Aquinas' views of the late thirteenth century can be regarded as basic to an understanding of present Catholic attitudes, but should not be confused with the later interpretation of Natural Law which stressed the concepts of natural rights.

It is with such an intellectual background that Renaissance scholars approached the question of the basis and justification of a system of international law. Maine, a British historical lawyer, wrote that the birth of modern international law was the grandest function of the law of nature and while that is arguable, the point must be taken.⁷⁴ International law began to emerge as a separate topic to be studied within itself, although derived from the principles of Natural Law.

The founders of modern international law

The essence of the new approach to international law can be traced back to the Spanish philosophers of that country's Golden Age.⁷⁵ The leading figure of this school was Francisco Vitoria, Professor of Theology at the University of Salamanca (1480–1546). His lectures were preserved by his students and published posthumously. He demonstrated a remarkably progressive attitude for his time towards the Spanish conquest of the

⁷² Below, p. 49. ⁷³ *Summa Theologiae*, English edn, 1927.

⁷⁴ H. Maine, *Ancient Law*, London, 1861, pp. 56 and 64–6.

⁷⁵ Note Preiser's view that '[t]here was hardly a single important problem of international law until the middle of the 17th century which was not principally a problem of Spain and the allied Habsburg countries': Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, p. 150. See also Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 79–93.

South American Indians and, contrary to the views prevalent until then, maintained that the Indian peoples should be regarded as nations with their own legitimate interests. War against them could only be justified on the grounds of a just cause. International law was founded on the universal law of nature and this meant that non-Europeans must be included within its ambit. However, Vitoria by no means advocated the recognition of the Indian nations as equal to the Christian states of Europe. For him, opposing the work of the missionaries in the territories was a just reason for war, and he adopted a rather extensive view as to the rights of the Spaniards in South America. Vitoria was no liberal and indeed acted on behalf of the Spanish Inquisition, but his lectures did mark a step forward in the right direction.⁷⁶

Suárez (1548–1617) was a Jesuit and Professor of Theology who was deeply immersed in medieval culture. He noted that the obligatory character of international law was based upon Natural Law, while its substance derived from the Natural Law rule of carrying out agreements entered into.⁷⁷

From a totally different background but equally, if not more, influential was Alberico Gentili (1552–1608). He was born in Northern Italy and fled to England to avoid persecution, having converted to Protestantism. In 1598 his *De Jure Belli* was published.⁷⁸ It is a comprehensive discussion of the law of war and contains a valuable section on the law of treaties. Gentili, who became a professor at Oxford, has been called the originator of the secular school of thought in international law and he minimised the hitherto significant theological theses.

It is, however, Hugo Grotius, a Dutch scholar, who towers over this period and has been celebrated, if a little exaggeratedly, as the father of international law. He was born in 1583 and was the supreme Renaissance man. A scholar of tremendous learning, he mastered history, theology, mathematics and the law.⁷⁹ His primary work was the *De Jure Belli ac Pacis*,

⁷⁶ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 79–84, and Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 151–2. See also F. Vitoria, *De Indis et de Jure Belli Relectiones*, Classics of International Law, Washington, DC, 1917, and J. B. Scott, *The Spanish Origin of International Law, Francisco de Vitoria and his Law of Nations*, Washington, DC, 1934.

⁷⁷ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 84–91. See also *ibid.*, pp. 92–3 regarding the work of Ayala (1548–84).

⁷⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 94–101. See also A. Van der Molen, *Alberico Gentili and the Development of International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1968.

⁷⁹ Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 102–14. See also W. S. M. Knight, *The Life and Works of Hugo Grotius*, London, 1925, and 'Commemoration of the Fourth Century of the Birth of Grotius' (various articles), 182 HR, 1984, pp. 371–470.

written during 1623 and 1624. It is an extensive work and includes rather more devotion to the exposition of private law notions than would seem appropriate today. He refers both to Vitoria and Gentili, the latter being of special influence with regard to many matters, particularly organisation of material.

Grotius finally excised theology from international law and emphasised the irrelevance in such a study of any conception of a divine law. He remarked that the law of nature would be valid even if there were no God: a statement which, although suitably clothed in religious protestation, was extremely daring. The law of nature now reverted to being founded exclusively on reason. Justice was part of man's social make-up and thus not only useful but essential. Grotius conceived of a comprehensive system of international law and his work rapidly became a university textbook. However, in many spheres he followed well-trodden paths. He retained the theological distinction between a just and an unjust war, a notion that was soon to disappear from treatises on international law, but which in some way underpins modern approaches to aggression, self-defence and liberation.

One of his most enduring opinions consists in his proclamation of the freedom of the seas. The Dutch scholar opposed the 'closed seas' concept of the Portuguese that was later elucidated by the English writer John Selden⁸⁰ and emphasised instead the principle that the nations could not appropriate to themselves the high seas. They belonged to all. It must, of course, be mentioned, parenthetically, that this theory happened to accord rather nicely with prevailing Dutch ideas as to free trade and the needs of an expanding commercial empire.

However, this merely points up what must not be disregarded, namely that concepts of law as of politics and other disciplines are firmly rooted in the world of reality, and reflect contemporary preoccupations. No theory develops in a vacuum, but is conceived and brought to fruition in a definite cultural and social environment. To ignore this is to distort the theory itself.

Positivism and naturalism

Following Grotius, but by no means divorced from the thought of previous scholars, a split can be detected and two different schools identified.

⁸⁰ In *Mare Clausum Sive de Dominio Maris*, 1635.

On the one hand there was the 'naturalist' school, exemplified by Samuel Pufendorf (1632–94),⁸¹ who attempted to identify international law completely with the law of nature; and on the other hand there were the exponents of 'positivism', who distinguished between international law and Natural Law and emphasised practical problems and current state practices. Pufendorf regarded Natural Law as a moralistic system, and misunderstood the direction of modern international law by denying the validity of the rules about custom. He also refused to acknowledge treaties as in any way relevant to a discussion of the basis of international law. Other 'naturalists' echoed those sentiments in minimising or ignoring the actual practices of states in favour of a theoretical construction of absolute values that seemed slowly to drift away from the complexities of political reality.

One of the principal initiators of the positivist school was Richard Zouche (1590–1660), who lived at the same time as Pufendorf, but in England.⁸² While completely dismissing Natural Law, he paid scant regard to the traditional doctrines. His concern was with specific situations and his book contains many examples from the recent past. He elevated the law of peace above a systematic consideration of the law of war and eschewed theoretical expositions.

In similar style Bynkershoek (1673–1743) stressed the importance of modern practice and virtually ignored Natural Law. He made great contributions to the developing theories of the rights and duties of neutrals in war, and after careful studies of the relevant facts decided in favour of the freedom of the seas.⁸³

The positivist approach, like much of modern thought, was derived from the empirical method adopted by the Renaissance. It was concerned not with an edifice of theory structured upon deductions from absolute principles, but rather with viewing events as they occurred and discussing actual problems that had arisen. Empiricism as formulated by Locke and Hume⁸⁴ denied the existence of innate principles and postulated that ideas were derived from experience. The scientific method of experiment and verification of hypotheses emphasised this approach.

From this philosophical attitude, it was a short step to reinterpreting international law not in terms of concepts derived from reason but rather in terms of what actually happened between the competing states. What

⁸¹ *On the Law of Nature and of Nations*, 1672. See also Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 147–50.

⁸² Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 165–7. ⁸³ *Ibid.*, pp. 167–72.

⁸⁴ See Friedmann, *Legal Theory*, pp. 253–5.

states actually do was the key, not what states ought to do given basic rules of the law of nature. Agreements and customs recognised by the states were the essence of the law of nations.

Positivism developed as the modern nation-state system emerged, after the Peace of Westphalia in 1648, from the religious wars.⁸⁵ It coincided, too, with theories of sovereignty such as those propounded by Bodin and Hobbes,⁸⁶ which underlined the supreme power of the sovereign and led to notions of the sovereignty of states.

Elements of both positivism and naturalism appear in the works of Vattel (1714–67), a Swiss lawyer. His *Droit des Gens* was based on Natural Law principles yet was practically oriented. He introduced the doctrine of the equality of states into international law, declaring that a small republic was no less a sovereign than the most powerful kingdom, just as a dwarf was as much a man as a giant. By distinguishing between laws of conscience and laws of action and stating that only the latter were of practical concern, he minimised the importance of Natural Law.⁸⁷

Ironically, at the same time that positivist thought appeared to demolish the philosophical basis of the law of nature and relegate that theory to history, it re-emerged in a modern guise replete with significance for the future. Natural Law gave way to the concept of natural rights.⁸⁸

It was an individualistic assertion of political supremacy. The idea of the social contract, that an agreement between individuals pre-dated and justified civil society, emphasised the central role of the individual, and whether such a theory was interpreted pessimistically to demand an absolute sovereign as Hobbes declared, or optimistically to mean a conditional acceptance of authority as Locke maintained, it could not fail to be a revolutionary doctrine. The rights of man constitute the heart of the American⁸⁹ and French Revolutions and the essence of modern democratic society.

⁸⁵ See L. Gross, 'The Peace of Westphalia 1648–1948', 42 *AJIL*, 1948, p. 20; *Renegotiating Westphalia* (eds. C. Harding and C. L. Lim), The Hague, 1999, especially chapter 1, and S. Beaulac, 'The Westphalian Legal Orthodoxy – Myth or Reality?', 2 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2000, p. 148.

⁸⁶ *Leviathan*, 1651.

⁸⁷ See Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 156–64. See also N. Onuf, 'Civitas Maxima: Wolff, Vattel and the Fate of Republicanism', 88 *AJIL*, 1994, p. 280.

⁸⁸ See e.g. J. Finnis, *Natural Law and Natural Rights*, Oxford, 1980, and R. Tuck, *Natural Rights Theories*, Cambridge, 1979.

⁸⁹ See e.g. N. Onuf and O. Onuf, *Federal Unions, Modern World*, Madison, 1994.

Yet, on the other hand, the doctrine of Natural Law has been employed to preserve the absoluteness of sovereignty and the sanctity of private possessions. The theory has a reactionary aspect because it could be argued that what was, ought to be, since it evolved from the social contract or was divinely ordained, depending upon how secular one construed the law of nature to be.

The nineteenth century

The eighteenth century was a ferment of intellectual ideas and rationalist philosophies that contributed to the evolution of the doctrine of international law. The nineteenth century by contrast was a practical, expansionist and positivist era. The Congress of Vienna, which marked the conclusion of the Napoleonic wars, enshrined the new international order which was to be based upon the European balance of power. International law became Eurocentric, the preserve of the civilised, Christian states, into which overseas and foreign nations could enter only with the consent of and on the conditions laid down by the Western powers. Paradoxically, whilst international law became geographically internationalised through the expansion of the European empires, it became less universalist in conception and more, theoretically as well as practically, a reflection of European values.⁹⁰ This theme, the relationship between universalism and particularism, appears time and again in international law. This century also saw the coming to independence of Latin America and the forging of a distinctive approach to certain elements of international law by the states of that region, especially with regard to, for example, diplomatic asylum and the treatment of foreign enterprises and nationals.⁹¹

There are many other features that mark the nineteenth century. Democracy and nationalism, both spurred on by the wars of the French revolution and empire, spread throughout the Continent and changed the essence of international relations.⁹² No longer the exclusive concern

⁹⁰ See Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 186–250, and, e.g., C. H. Alexandrowicz, *The European–African Confrontation*, Leiden, 1973. See also B. Bowden, ‘The Colonial Origins of International Law. European Expansion and the Classical Standard of Civilisation’, 7 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2005, p. 1, and C. Sylvest, ‘International Law in Nineteenth-Century Britain’, 75 *BYIL*, 2004, p. 9.

⁹¹ See below, chapters 3 and 14 respectively. See also H. Gros Espiell, ‘La Doctrine du Droit International en Amérique Latine avant la Première Conférence Panaméricaine’, 3 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2001, p. 1.

⁹² See especially A. Cobban, *The Nation State and National Self-Determination*, London, 1969.

of aristocratic élites, foreign policy characterised both the positive and the negative faces of nationalism. Self-determination emerged to threaten the multinational empires of Central and Eastern Europe, while nationalism reached its peak in the unifications of Germany and Italy and began to exhibit features such as expansionism and doctrines of racial superiority. Democracy brought to the individual political influence and a say in government. It also brought home the realities of responsibility, for wars became the concern of all. Conscription was introduced throughout the Continent and large national armies replaced the small professional forces.⁹³ The Industrial Revolution mechanised Europe, created the economic dichotomy of capital and labour and propelled Western influence throughout the world. All these factors created an enormous increase in the number and variety of both public and private international institutions, and international law grew rapidly to accommodate them.⁹⁴ The development of trade and communications necessitated greater international co-operation as a matter of practical need. In 1815, the Final Act of the Congress of Vienna established the principle of freedom of navigation with regard to international waterways and set up a Central Commission of the Rhine to regulate its use. In 1856 a commission for the Danube was created and a number of other European rivers also became the subject of international agreements and arrangements. In 1865 the International Telegraphic Union was established and in 1874 the Universal Postal Union.⁹⁵

European conferences proliferated and contributed greatly to the development of rules governing the waging of war. The International Committee of the Red Cross, founded in 1863, helped promote the series of Geneva Conventions beginning in 1864 dealing with the 'humanisation' of conflict, and the Hague Conferences of 1899 and 1907 established the Permanent Court of Arbitration and dealt with the treatment of prisoners and the control of warfare.⁹⁶ Numerous other conferences, conventions and congresses emphasised the expansion of the rules of international law and the close network of international relations. In addition, the academic study of international law within higher education developed with the appointment of professors of the subject and the appearance of specialist textbooks emphasising the practice of states.

⁹³ G. Best, *Humanity in Warfare*, London, 1980; Best, *War and Law Since 1945*, Oxford, 1994, and S. Bailey, *Prohibitions and Restraints in War*, Oxford, 1972.

⁹⁴ See e.g. Bowett's *Law of International Institutions*, and *The Evolution of International Organisations* (ed. E. Luard), Oxford, 1966.

⁹⁵ See further below, chapter 23. ⁹⁶ See further below, chapter 21.

Positivist theories dominate this century. The proliferation of the powers of states and the increasing sophistication of municipal legislation gave force to the idea that laws were basically commands issuing from a sovereign person or body. Any question of ethics or morality was irrelevant to a discussion of the validity of man-made laws. The approach was transferred onto the international scene and immediately came face to face with the reality of a lack of supreme authority.

Since law was ultimately dependent upon the will of the sovereign in national systems, it seemed to follow that international law depended upon the will of the sovereign states.

This implied a confusion of the supreme legislator within a state with the state itself and thus positivism had to accept the metaphysical identity of the state. The state had a life and will of its own and so was able to dominate international law. This stress on the abstract nature of the state did not appear in all positivist theories and was a late development.⁹⁷

It was the German thinker Hegel who first analysed and proposed the doctrine of the will of the state. The individual was subordinate to the state, because the latter enshrined the 'wills' of all citizens and had evolved into a higher will, and on the external scene the state was sovereign and supreme.⁹⁸ Such philosophies led to disturbing results in the twentieth century and provoked a re-awakening of the law of nature, dormant throughout the nineteenth century.

The growth of international agreements, customs and regulations induced positivist theorists to tackle this problem of international law and the state; and as a result two schools of thought emerged.

The monists claimed that there was one fundamental principle which underlay both national and international law. This was variously posited as 'right' or social solidarity or the rule that agreements must be carried out (*pacta sunt servanda*). The dualists, more numerous and in a more truly positivist frame of mind, emphasised the element of consent.

For Triepel, another German theorist, international law and domestic (or municipal) law existed on separate planes, the former governing international relations, the latter relations between individuals and between the individual and the state. International law was based upon agreements between states (and such agreements included, according to Triepel, both

⁹⁷ See below, chapter 2.

⁹⁸ See e.g. S. Avineri, *Hegel's Theory of the Modern State*, London, 1972, and Friedmann, *Legal Theory*, pp. 164–76.

treaties and customs) and because it was dictated by the 'common will' of the states it could not be unilaterally altered.⁹⁹

This led to a paradox. Could this common will bind individual states and, if so, why? It would appear to lead to the conclusion that the will of the sovereign state could give birth to a rule over which it had no control. The state will was not, therefore, supreme but inferior to a collection of states' wills. Triepel did not discuss these points, but left them open as depending upon legal matters. Thus did positivist theories weaken their own positivist outlook by regarding the essence of law as beyond juridical description. The nineteenth century also saw the publication of numerous works on international law, which emphasised state practice and the importance of the behaviour of countries to the development of rules of international law.¹⁰⁰

The twentieth century

The First World War marked the close of a dynamic and optimistic century. European empires ruled the world and European ideologies reigned supreme, but the 1914–18 Great War undermined the foundations of European civilisation. Self-confidence faded, if slowly, the edifice weakened and the universally accepted assumptions of progress were increasingly doubted. Self-questioning was the order of the day and law as well as art reflected this.

The most important legacy of the 1919 Peace Treaty from the point of view of international relations was the creation of the League of Nations.¹⁰¹ The old anarchic system had failed and it was felt that new institutions to preserve and secure peace were necessary. The League consisted of an Assembly and an executive Council, but was crippled from the start by the absence of the United States and the Soviet Union for most of its life and remained a basically European organisation.

While it did have certain minor successes with regard to the maintenance of international order, it failed when confronted with determined aggressors. Japan invaded China in 1931 and two years later withdrew from the League. Italy attacked Ethiopia, and Germany embarked unhindered

⁹⁹ Friedmann *Legal Theory*, pp. 576–7. See also below, chapter 4.

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. H. Wheaton, *Elements of International Law*, New York, 1836; W. E. Hall, *A Treatise on International Law*, Oxford, 1880; Von Martens, *Völkerrecht*, Berlin, 2 vols., 1883–6; Pradier-Fodéré, *Traité de Droit International Public*, Paris, 8 vols., 1855–1906; and Fiore, *Il Diritto Internazionale Codificato e la Sua Sanzione Giuridica*, 1890.

¹⁰¹ See Nussbaum, *Law of Nations*, pp. 251–90, and below, chapter 22.

upon a series of internal and external aggressions. The Soviet Union, in a final gesture, was expelled from the organisation in 1939 following its invasion of Finland.

Nevertheless much useful groundwork was achieved by the League in its short existence and this helped to consolidate the United Nations later on.¹⁰²

The Permanent Court of International Justice was set up in 1921 at The Hague and was succeeded in 1946 by the International Court of Justice.¹⁰³ The International Labour Organisation was established soon after the end of the First World War and still exists today, and many other international institutions were inaugurated or increased their work during this period.

Other ideas of international law that first appeared between the wars included the system of mandates, by which colonies of the defeated powers were administered by the Allies for the benefit of their inhabitants rather than being annexed outright, and the attempt was made to provide a form of minority protection guaranteed by the League. This latter creation was not a great success but it paved the way for later concern to secure human rights.¹⁰⁴

After the trauma of the Second World War the League was succeeded in 1946 by the United Nations Organisation, which tried to remedy many of the defects of its predecessor. It established its site at New York, reflecting the realities of the shift of power away from Europe, and determined to become a truly universal institution. The advent of decolonisation fulfilled this expectation and the General Assembly of the United Nations currently has 192 member states.¹⁰⁵

Many of the trends which first came to prominence in the nineteenth century have continued to this day. The vast increase in the number of international agreements and customs, the strengthening of the system of arbitration and the development of international organisations have established the essence of international law as it exists today.

Communist approaches to international law

Classic Marxist theory described law and politics as the means whereby the ruling classes maintained their domination of society. The essence of economic life was the ownership of the means of production, and all

¹⁰² See also G. Scott, *The Rise and Fall of the League of Nations*, London, 1973.

¹⁰³ See below, chapter 19. ¹⁰⁴ See below, chapter 6.

¹⁰⁵ Following the admission of Montenegro on 28 June 2006.

power flowed from this control. Capital and labour were the opposing theses and their mutual antagonism would eventually lead to a revolution out of which a new, non-exploitive form of society would emerge.¹⁰⁶ National states were dominated by the capitalist class and would have to disappear in the re-organising process. Indeed, the theory was that law and the state would wither away once a new basis for society had been established¹⁰⁷ and, because classical international law was founded upon the state, it followed that it too would go.

However, the reality of power and the existence of the USSR surrounded by capitalist nations led to a modification in this approach. The international system of states could not be changed overnight into a socialist order, so a period of transition was inevitable. Nevertheless basic changes were seen as having been wrought.

Professor Tunkin, for example, emphasised that the Russian October revolution produced a new series of international legal ideas. These, it is noted, can be divided into three basic, interconnected groups: (a) principles of socialist internationalism in relations between socialist states, (b) principles of equality and self-determination of nations and peoples, primarily aimed against colonialism, and (c) principles of peaceful co-existence aimed at relations between states with different social systems.¹⁰⁸

We shall briefly look at these concepts in this section, but first a historical overview is necessary.

During the immediate post-revolution period, it was postulated that a transitional phase had commenced. During this time, international law as a method of exploitation would be criticised by the socialist state, but it would still be recognised as a valid system. The two Soviet theorists Korovin and Pashukanis were the dominant influences in this phase. The transitional period demanded compromises in that, until the universal victory of the revolution, some forms of economic and technical

¹⁰⁶ See Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, chapter 10, and Friedmann, *Legal Theory*, chapter 29.

¹⁰⁷ Engels, *Anti-Duhring*, quoted in Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, pp. 773–4.

¹⁰⁸ *Theory of International Law*, London, 1974, p. 4, and *International Law* (ed. G. I. Tunkin), Moscow, 1986, chapter 3. See also B. S. Chimni, *International Law and World Order*, New Delhi, 1993, chapter 5; K. Grzybowski, *Soviet Public International Law*, Leiden, 1970, especially chapter 1, and generally H. Baade, *The Soviet Impact on International Law*, Leiden, 1964, and Friedmann, *Legal Theory*, pp. 327–40. See also R. St J. Macdonald, 'Rummaging in the Ruins, Soviet International Law and Policy in the Early Years: Is Anything Left?' in Wellens, *International Law*, p. 61.

co-operation would be required since they were fundamental for the existence of the international social order.¹⁰⁹ Pashukanis expressed the view that international law was an interclass law within which two antagonistic class systems would seek accommodation until the victory of the socialist system. Socialism and the Soviet Union could still use the legal institutions developed by and reflective of the capitalist system.¹¹⁰ However, with the rise of Stalinism and the 'socialism in one country' call, the position hardened. Pashukanis altered his line and recanted. International law was not a form of temporary compromise between capitalist states and the USSR but rather a means of conducting the class war. The Soviet Union was bound only by those rules of international law which accorded with its purposes.¹¹¹

The new approach in the late 1930s was reflected politically in Russia's successful attempt to join the League of Nations and its policy of wooing the Western powers, and legally by the ideas of Vyshinsky. He adopted a more legalistic view of international law and emphasised the Soviet acceptance of such principles as national self-determination, state sovereignty and the equality of states, but not others. The role of international law did not constitute a single international legal system binding all states. The Soviet Union would act in pursuance of Leninist-Stalinist foreign policy ideals and would not be bound by the rules to which it had not given express consent.¹¹²

The years that followed the Second World War saw a tightening up of Soviet doctrine as the Cold War gathered pace, but with the death of Stalin and the succession of Khrushchev a thaw set in. In theoretical terms the law of the transitional stage was replaced by the international law of peaceful co-existence. War was no longer regarded as inevitable between capitalist and socialist countries and a period of mutual tolerance and co-operation was inaugurated.¹¹³

Tunkin recognised that there was a single system of international law of universal scope rather than different branches covering socialist and capitalist countries, and that international law was founded upon agreements

¹⁰⁹ Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, p. 5.

¹¹⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 5–6. See also H. Babb and J. Hazard, *Soviet Legal Philosophy*, Cambridge, MA, 1951.

¹¹¹ Grzybowski, *Soviet Public International Law*, pp. 6–9. ¹¹² *Ibid.*, p. 9.

¹¹³ *Ibid.*, pp. 16–22. See also R. Higgins, *Conflict of Interests*, London, 1964, part III.

between states which are binding upon them. He defined contemporary general international law as:

the aggregate of norms which are created by agreement between states of different social systems, reflect the concordant wills of states and have a generally democratic character, regulate relations between them in the process of struggle and co-operation in the direction of ensuring peace and peaceful co-existence and freedom and independence of peoples, and are secured when necessary by coercion effectuated by states individually or collectively.¹¹⁴

It is interesting to note the basic elements here, such as the stress on state sovereignty, the recognition of different social systems and the aim of peaceful co-existence. The role of sanctions in law is emphasised and reflects much of the positivist influence upon Soviet thought. Such pre-occupations were also reflected in the definition of international law contained in the leading Soviet textbook by Professor Kozhevnikov and others where it was stated that:

international law can be defined as the aggregate of rules governing relations between states in the process of their conflict and co-operation, designed to safeguard their peaceful co-existence, expressing the will of the ruling classes of these states and defended in case of need by coercion applied by states individually or collectively.¹¹⁵

Originally, treaties alone were regarded as proper sources of international law but custom became accepted as a kind of tacit or implied agreement with great stress laid upon *opinio juris* or the legally binding element of custom. While state practice need not be general to create a custom, its recognition as a legal form must be.¹¹⁶

Peaceful co-existence itself rested upon certain basic concepts, for example non-intervention in the internal affairs of other states and the sovereignty of states. Any idea of a world authority was condemned as a violation of the latter principle. The doctrine of peaceful co-existence was also held to include such ideas as good neighbourliness, international co-operation and the observance in good faith of international obligations.

¹¹⁴ *Theory of International Law*, p. 251. See also G. I. Tunkin, 'Co-existence and International Law', 95 HR, 1958, pp. 1, 51 ff., and E. McWhinney, 'Contemporary Soviet General Theory of International Law: Reflections on the Tunkin Era', 25 Canadian YIL, 1989, p. 187.

¹¹⁵ *International Law*, Moscow, 1957, p. 7.

¹¹⁶ *Theory of International Law*, p. 118. See also G. I. Tunkin, 'The Contemporary Soviet Theory of International Law', *Current Legal Problems*, London, 1978, p. 177.

The concept was regarded as based on specific trends of laws of societal development and as a specific form of class struggle between socialism and capitalism, one in which armed conflict is precluded.¹¹⁷ It was an attempt, in essence, to reiterate the basic concepts of international law in a way that was taken to reflect an ideological trend. But it must be emphasised that the principles themselves have long been accepted by the international community.

While Tunkin at first attacked the development of regional systems of international law, he later came round to accepting a socialist law which reflected the special relationship between communist countries. The Soviet interventions in eastern Europe, particularly in Czechoslovakia in 1968, played a large part in augmenting such views.¹¹⁸ In the Soviet view relations between socialist (communist) states represented a new, higher type of international relations and a socialist international law. Common socio-economic factors and a political community created an objective basis for lasting friendly relations whereas, by contrast, international capitalism involved the exploitation of the weak by the strong. The principles of socialist or proletarian internationalism constituted a unified system of international legal principles between countries of the socialist bloc arising by way of custom and treaty. Although the basic principles of respect for state sovereignty, non-interference in internal affairs and equality of states and peoples existed in general international law, the same principles in socialist international law were made more positive by the lack of economic rivalry and exploitation and by increased co-operation. Accordingly, these principles incorporated not only material obligations not to violate each other's rights, but also the duty to assist each other in enjoying and defending such rights against capitalist threats.¹¹⁹

The Soviet emphasis on territorial integrity and sovereignty, while designed in practice to protect the socialist states in a predominantly capitalist environment, proved of great attraction to the developing nations of the Third World, anxious too to establish their own national identities and counteract Western financial and cultural influences.

¹¹⁷ Tunkin, 'Soviet Theory', pp. 35–48. See also F. Vallat, 'International Law – A Forward Look', 18 YBWA, 1964, p. 251; J. Hazard, 'Codifying Peaceful Co-existence', 55 AJIL, 1961, pp. 111–12; E. McWhinney, *Peaceful Co-existence and Soviet–Western International Law*, Leiden, 1964, and K. Grzybowski, 'Soviet Theory of International Law for the Seventies', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 862.

¹¹⁸ See Grzybowski, *Soviet Public International Law*, pp. 16–22.

¹¹⁹ Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, pp. 431–43.

With the decline of the Cold War and the onset of *perestroika* (restructuring) in the Soviet Union, a process of re-evaluation in the field of international legal theory took place.¹²⁰ The concept of peaceful co-existence was modified and the notion of class warfare eliminated from the Soviet political lexicon. Global interdependence and the necessity for international co-operation were emphasised, as it was accepted that the tension between capitalism and socialism no longer constituted the major conflict in the contemporary world and that beneath the former dogmas lay many common interests.¹²¹ The essence of new Soviet thinking was stated to lie in the priority of universal human values and the resolution of global problems, which is directly linked to the growing importance of international law in the world community. It was also pointed out that international law had to be universal and not artificially divided into capitalist, socialist and Third World 'international law' systems.¹²²

Soviet writers and political leaders accepted that activities such as the interventions in Czechoslovakia in 1968 and Afghanistan in 1979 were contrary to international law, while the attempt to create a state based on the rule of law was seen as requiring the strengthening of the international legal system and the rule of law in international relations. In particular, a renewed emphasis upon the role of the United Nations became evident in Soviet policy.¹²³

The dissolution of the Soviet Union in 1991 marked the end of the Cold War and the re-emergence of a system of international relations based upon multiple sources of power untrammelled by ideological determinacy. From that point,¹²⁴ Russia as the continuation of the former Soviet Union (albeit in different political and territorial terms) entered into the Western political system and defined its actions in terms of its own national interests free from principled hostility. The return to statehood of the Baltic states and the independence of the other former republics of the Soviet Union, coupled with the collapse of Yugoslavia, has constituted

¹²⁰ See, for example, *Perestroika and International Law* (eds. A. Carty and G. Danilenko), Edinburgh, 1990; R. Müllerson, 'Sources of International Law: New Tendencies in Soviet Thinking', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 494; V. Vereshchetin and R. Müllerson, 'International Law in an Interdependent World', 28 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1990, p. 291, and R. Quigley, 'Perestroika and International Law', 82 AJIL, 1988, p. 788.

¹²¹ Vereshchetin and Müllerson, 'International Law', p. 292.

¹²² *Ibid.* ¹²³ See Quigley, 'Perestroika', p. 794.

¹²⁴ See e.g. R. Müllerson, *International Law, Rights and Politics*, London, 1994. See also *The End of the Cold War* (eds. P. Allan and K. Goldmann), Dordrecht, 1992, and W. M. Reisman, 'International Law after the Cold War', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 859.

a political upheaval of major significance. The Cold War had imposed a dualistic superstructure upon international relations that had had implications for virtually all serious international political disputes and had fettered the operations of the United Nations in particular. Although the Soviet regime had been changing its approach quite significantly, the formal demise both of the communist system and of the state itself altered the nature of the international system and this has inevitably had consequences for international law.¹²⁵ The ending of inexorable superpower confrontation has led to an increase in instability in Europe and emphasised paradoxically both the revitalisation and the limitations of the United Nations.

While relatively little has previously been known of Chinese attitudes, a few points can be made. Western concepts are regarded primarily as aimed at preserving the dominance of the bourgeois class on the international scene. Soviet views were partially accepted but since the late 1950s and the growing estrangement between the two major communist powers, the Chinese concluded that the Russians were interested chiefly in maintaining the status quo and Soviet–American superpower supremacy. The Soviet concept of peaceful co-existence as the mainstay of contemporary international law was treated with particular suspicion and disdain.¹²⁶

The Chinese conception of law was, for historical and cultural reasons, very different from that developed in the West. ‘Law’ never attained the important place in Chinese society that it did in European civilisation.¹²⁷ A sophisticated bureaucracy laboured to attain harmony and equilibrium, and a system of legal rights to protect the individual in the Western sense did not really develop. It was believed that society would be best served by example and established morality, rather than by rules and sanctions. This Confucian philosophy was, however, swept aside after the successful

¹²⁵ See e.g. R. Bilder, ‘International Law in the “New World Order”: Some Preliminary Reflections’, 1 *Florida State University Journal of Transnational Law and Policy*, 1992, p. 1.

¹²⁶ See H. Chiu, ‘Communist China’s Attitude towards International Law’, 60 *AJIL*, 1966, p. 245; J. K. Fairbank, *The Chinese World Order*, Cambridge, 1968; J. Cohen, *China’s Practice of International Law*, Princeton, 1972; Anglo-Chinese Educational Trust, *China’s World View*, London, 1979; J. Cohen and H. Chiu, *People’s China and International Law*, Princeton, 2 vols., 1974, and C. Kim, ‘The People’s Republic of China and the Charter-based International Legal Order’, 72 *AJIL*, 1978, p. 317.

¹²⁷ See Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, pp. 760–3; S. Van der Sprenkel, *Legal Institutions in Northern China*, New York, 1962, and R. Unger, *Law in Modern Society*, New York, 1976, pp. 86–109.

communist revolution, to be replaced by strict Marxism–Leninism, with its emphasis on class warfare.¹²⁸

The Chinese seem to have recognised several systems of international law, for example, Western, socialist and revisionist (Soviet Union), and to have implied that only with the ultimate spread of socialism would a universal system be possible.¹²⁹ International agreements are regarded as the primary source of international law and China has entered into many treaties and conventions and carried them out as well as other nations.¹³⁰ One exception, of course, is China's disavowal of the so-called 'unequal treaties' whereby Chinese territory was annexed by other powers, in particular the Tsarist Empire, in the nineteenth century.¹³¹

On the whole, international law has been treated as part of international politics and subject to considerations of power and expediency, as well as ideology. Where international rules conform with Chinese policies and interests, then they will be observed. Where they do not, they will be ignored.

However, now that the isolationist phase of its history is over, relations with other nations established and its entry into the United Nations secured, China has adopted a more active role in international relations, an approach more in keeping with its rapidly growing economic power. China has now become fully engaged in world politics and this has led to a legalisation of its view of international law, as indeed occurred with the Soviet Union.

The Third World

In the evolution of international affairs since the Second World War one of the most decisive events has been the disintegration of the colonial empires and the birth of scores of new states in the so-called Third World. This has thrust onto the scene states which carry with them a legacy of bitterness over their past status as well as a host of problems relating to

¹²⁸ Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, and H. Li, 'The Role of Law in Communist China', *China Quarterly*, 1970, p. 66, cited in Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, pp. 801–8.

¹²⁹ See e.g. Cohen and Chiu, *People's China*, pp. 62–4.

¹³⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 77–82, and part VIII generally.

¹³¹ See e.g. I. Detter, 'The Problem of Unequal Treaties', 15 ICLQ, 1966, p. 1069; F. Nozari, *Unequal Treaties in International Law*, Stockholm, 1971; Chiu, 'Communist China's Attitude', pp. 239–67, and L.-F. Chen, *State Succession Relating to Unequal Treaties*, Hamden, 1974.

their social, economic and political development.¹³² In such circumstances it was only natural that the structure and doctrines of international law would come under attack. The nineteenth century development of the law of nations founded upon Eurocentrism and imbued with the values of Christian, urbanised and expanding Europe¹³³ did not, understandably enough, reflect the needs and interests of the newly independent states of the mid- and late twentieth century. It was felt that such rules had encouraged and then reflected their subjugation, and that changes were required.¹³⁴

It is basically those ideas of international law that came to fruition in the nineteenth century that have been so clearly rejected, that is, those principles that enshrined the power and domination of the West.¹³⁵ The underlying concepts of international law have not been discarded. On the contrary. The new nations have eagerly embraced the ideas of the sovereignty and equality of states and the principles of non-aggression and non-intervention, in their search for security within the bounds of a commonly accepted legal framework.

While this new internationalisation of international law that has occurred in the last fifty years has destroyed its European-based homogeneity, it has emphasised its universalist scope.¹³⁶ The composition of, for example, both the International Court of Justice and the Security Council of the United Nations mirrors such developments. Article 9 of the Statute of the International Court of Justice points out that the main forms of civilisation and the principal legal systems of the world must be represented within the Court, and there is an arrangement that of the ten non-permanent seats in the Security Council five should go to Afro-Asian

¹³² See e.g. R. P. Anand, 'Attitude of the Afro-Asian States Towards Certain Problems of International Law', 15 ICLQ, 1966, p. 35; T. O. Elias, *New Horizons in International Law*, Leiden, 1980, and Higgins, *Conflict of Interests*, part II. See also Hague Academy of International Law, Colloque, *The Future of International Law in a Multicultural World*, especially pp. 117–42, and Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, pp. 121–7.

¹³³ See e.g. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, vol. I, pp. 435–6. See also B. Roling, *International Law in an Expanded World*, Leiden, 1960, p. 10.

¹³⁴ The converse of this has been the view of some writers that the universalisation of international law has led to a dilution of its content: see e.g. Friedmann, *Changing Structure*, p. 6; J. Stone, *Quest for Survival: The Role of Law and Foreign Policy*, Sydney, 1961, p. 88, and J. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, p. 43.

¹³⁵ See e.g. Alexandrowicz, *European–African Confrontation*.

¹³⁶ See F. C. Okoye, *International Law and the New African States*, London, 1972; T. O. Elias, *Africa and the Development of International Law*, Leiden, 1972, and Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 205–51.

states and two to Latin American states (the others going to Europe and other states). The composition of the International Law Commission has also recently been increased and structured upon geographic lines.¹³⁷

The influence of the new states has been felt most of all within the General Assembly, where they constitute a majority of the 192 member states.¹³⁸ The content and scope of the various resolutions and declarations emanating from the Assembly are proof of their impact and contain a record of their fears, hopes and concerns.

The Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples of 1960, for example, enshrined the right of colonies to obtain their sovereignty with the least possible delay and called for the recognition of the principle of self-determination. This principle, which is discussed elsewhere in this book,¹³⁹ is regarded by most authorities as a settled rule of international law although with undetermined borders. Nevertheless, it symbolises the rise of the post-colonial states and the effect they are having upon the development of international law.

Their concern for the recognition of the sovereignty of states is complemented by their support of the United Nations and its Charter and supplemented by their desire for 'economic self-determination' or the right of permanent sovereignty over natural resources.¹⁴⁰ This expansion of international law into the field of economics was a major development of the twentieth century and is evidenced in myriad ways, for example, by the creation of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development, and the establishment of the International Monetary Fund and World Bank.

The interests of the new states of the Third World are often in conflict with those of the industrialised nations, witness disputes over nationalisations. But it has to be emphasised that, contrary to many fears expressed in the early years of the decolonisation saga, international law has not been discarded nor altered beyond recognition. Its framework has been retained as the new states, too, wish to obtain the benefits of rules such as those governing diplomatic relations and the controlled use of force, while campaigning against rules which run counter to their perceived interests.

While the new countries share a common history of foreign dominance and underdevelopment, compounded by an awakening of national

¹³⁷ By General Assembly resolution 36/39, twenty-one of the thirty-four members are to be nationals of Afro-Asian-Latin American states.

¹³⁸ See above, note 105. ¹³⁹ See below, chapter 5, p. 205.

¹⁴⁰ See below, chapter 14, p. 827.

identity, it has to be recognised that they are not a homogenous group. Widely differing cultural, social and economic attitudes and stages of development characterise them, and the rubric of the 'Third World' masks diverse political affiliations. On many issues the interests of the new states conflict with each other and this is reflected in the different positions adopted. The states possessing oil and other valuable natural resources are separated from those with few or none and the states bordering on oceans are to be distinguished from landlocked states. The list of diversity is endless and variety governs the make-up of the southern hemisphere to a far greater degree than in the north.

It is possible that in legal terms tangible differences in approach may emerge in the future as the passions of decolonisation die down and the Western supremacy over international law is further eroded. This trend will also permit a greater understanding of, and greater recourse to, historical traditions and conceptions that pre-date colonisation and an increasing awareness of their validity for the future development of international law.¹⁴¹

In the medium term, however, it has to be recognised that with the end of the Cold War and the rapid development of Soviet (then Russian)–American co-operation, the axis of dispute is turning from East–West to North–South. This is beginning to manifest itself in a variety of issues ranging from economic law to the law of the sea and human rights, while the impact of modern technology has hardly yet been appreciated.¹⁴² Together with such factors, the development of globalisation has put additional stress upon the traditional tension between universalism and particularism.¹⁴³ Globalisation in the sense of interdependence of a high order of individuals, groups and corporations, both public and private, across national boundaries, might be seen as the universalisation of Western civilisation and thus the triumph of one special particularism.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. H. Sarin, 'The Asian–African States and the Development of International Law', in Hague Academy Colloque, p. 117; Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia*, vol. VII, pp. 205–51, and R. Westbrook, 'Islamic International Law and Public International Law: Separate Expressions of World Order', 33 Va. JIL, 1993, p. 819. See also C. W. Jenks, *The Common Law of Mankind*, Oxford, 1958, p. 169. Note also the references by the Tribunal in the *Eritrea/Yemen* cases to historic title and regional legal traditions: see the judgment in Phase One: Territorial Sovereignty, 1998, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 37 ff. and Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation, 1999, 119 ILR, pp. 417, 448.

¹⁴² See e.g. M. Lachs, 'Thoughts on Science, Technology and World Law', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 673.

¹⁴³ See Koskeniemi, *Gentle Civilizer of Nations*. See also G. Simpson, *Great Powers and Outlaw States: Unequal Sovereigns in the International Legal Order*, Cambridge, 2004.

On the other hand, particularism (in the guise of cultural relativism) has sometimes been used as a justification for human rights abuses free from international supervision or criticism.

Suggestions for further reading

T. M. Franck, *The Power of Legitimacy Among Nations*, Oxford, 1990

L. Henkin, *International Law: Politics and Values*, Dordrecht, 1995

R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994

A. Nussbaum, *A Concise History of the Law of Nations*, revised edition, New York, 1954

International law today

The expanding legal scope of international concern

International law since the middle of the last century has been developing in many directions, as the complexities of life in the modern era have multiplied. For, as already emphasised, law reflects the conditions and cultural traditions of the society within which it operates. The community evolves a certain specific set of values – social, economic and political – and this stamps its mark on the legal framework which orders life in that environment. Similarly, international law is a product of its environment. It has developed in accordance with the prevailing notions of international relations and to survive it must be in harmony with the realities of the age.

Nevertheless, there is a continuing tension between those rules already established and the constantly evolving forces that seek changes within the system. One of the major problems of international law is to determine when and how to incorporate new standards of behaviour and new realities of life into the already existing framework, so that, on the one hand, the law remains relevant and, on the other, the system itself is not too vigorously disrupted.

Changes that occur within the international community can be momentous and reverberate throughout the system. For example, the advent of nuclear arms created a status quo in Europe and a balance of terror throughout the world. It currently constitutes a factor of unease as certain states seek to acquire nuclear technology. Another example is the technological capacity to mine the oceans and the consequent questions as to the nature and beneficiaries of exploitation.¹ The rise of international terrorism has posited new challenges to the system as states and international organisations struggle to deal with this phenomenon while retaining

¹ See below, chapter 11.

respect for the sovereignty of states and for human rights.² There are several instances of how modern developments demand a constant reappraisal of the structure of international law and its rules.

The scope of international law today is immense. From the regulation of space expeditions to the question of the division of the ocean floor, and from the protection of human rights to the management of the international financial system, its involvement has spread out from the primary concern with the preservation of peace, to embrace all the interests of contemporary international life.

But the *raison d'être* of international law and the determining factor in its composition remains the needs and characteristics of the international political system. Where more than one entity exists within a system, there has to be some conception as to how to deal with other such entities, whether it be on the basis of co-existence or hostility. International law as it has developed since the seventeenth century has adopted the same approach and has in general (though with notable exceptions) eschewed the idea of permanent hostility and enmity. Because the state, while internally supreme, wishes to maintain its sovereignty externally and needs to cultivate other states in an increasingly interdependent world, it must acknowledge the rights of others. This acceptance of rights possessed by all states, something unavoidable in a world where none can stand alone, leads inevitably to a system to regulate and define such rights and, of course, obligations.

And so one arrives at some form of international legal order, no matter how unsophisticated and how occasionally positively disorderly.³ The current system developed in the context of European civilisation as it progressed, but this has changed. The rise of the United States and the Soviet Union mirrored the decline of Europe, while the process of decolonisation also had a considerable impact. More recently, the collapse of the Soviet Empire and the Soviet Union, the rise of India and China as major powers and the phenomenon of globalisation are also impacting deeply upon the system. Faced with radical changes in the structure of power, international law needs to come to terms with new ideas and challenges.

² See below, chapter 20.

³ For views as to the precise definition and characteristics of the international order or system or community, see G. Schwarzenberger and E. D. Brown, *A Manual of International Law*, 6th edn, London, 1976, pp. 9–12; H. Yalem, 'The Concept of World Order', 29 YBWA, 1975, and I. Pogany, 'The Legal Foundations of World Order', 37 YBWA, 1983, p. 277.

The Eurocentric character of international law has been gravely weakened in the last sixty years or so and the opinions, hopes and needs of other cultures and civilisations are now playing an increasing role in the evolution of world juridical thought.⁴

International law reflects first and foremost the basic state-oriented character of world politics and this essentially because the state became over time the primary repository of the organised hopes of peoples, whether for protection or for more expansive aims. Units of formal independence benefiting from equal sovereignty in law and equal possession of the basic attributes of statehood⁵ have succeeded in creating a system enshrining such values. Examples that could be noted here include non-intervention in internal affairs, territorial integrity, non-use of force and equality of voting in the United Nations General Assembly. However, in addition to this, many factors cut across state borders and create a tension in world politics, such as inadequate economic relationships, international concern for human rights and the rise in new technological forces.⁶ State policies and balances of power, both international and regional, are a necessary framework within which international law operates, as indeed are domestic political conditions and tensions. Law mirrors the concern of forces within states and between states.

It is also important to realise that states need law in order to seek and attain certain goals, whether these be economic well-being, survival and security or ideological advancement. The system therefore has to be certain enough for such goals to be ascertainable, and flexible enough to permit change when this becomes necessary due to the confluence of forces demanding it.⁷

International law, however, has not just expanded horizontally to embrace the new states which have been established since the end of the Second World War; it has extended itself to include individuals, groups and international organisations, both private and public, within its scope. It has also moved into new fields covering such issues as international trade, problems of environmental protection, human rights and outer space exploration.

⁴ See e.g. L. C. Green, 'Is There a Universal International Law Today?', 23 Canadian YIL, 1985, p. 3.

⁵ See below, chapter 5, p. 211.

⁶ For examples of this in the context of the law relating to territory, see M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 1–11.

⁷ See S. Hoffman, 'International Systems and International Law', 14 *World Politics*, 1961–2, p. 205.

The growth of positivism in the nineteenth century had the effect of focusing the concerns of international law upon sovereign states. They alone were the 'subjects' of international law and were to be contrasted with the status of non-independent states and individuals as 'objects' of international law. They alone created the law and restrictions upon their independence could not be presumed.⁸ But the gradual sophistication of positivist doctrine, combined with the advent of new approaches to the whole system of international relations, has broken down this exclusive emphasis and extended the roles played by non-state entities, such as individuals, multinational firms and international institutions.⁹ It was, of course, long recognised that individuals were entitled to the benefits of international law, but it is only recently that they have been able to act directly rather than rely upon their national states.

The Nuremberg and Tokyo Tribunals set up by the victorious Allies after the close of the Second World War were a vital part of this process. Many of those accused were found guilty of crimes against humanity and against peace and were punished accordingly. It was a recognition of individual responsibility under international law without the usual interposition of the state and has been reinforced with the establishment of the Yugoslav and Rwanda War Crimes Tribunals in the mid-1990s and the International Criminal Court in 1998.¹⁰ Similarly the 1948 Genocide Convention provided for the punishment of offenders after conviction by national courts or by an international criminal tribunal.¹¹ The developing concern with human rights is another aspect of this move towards increasing the role of the individual in international law. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights adopted by the United Nations in 1948 lists a series of political and social rights, although it is only a guideline and not legally binding as such. The European Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms signed in 1950 and the International Covenants on Human Rights of 1966 are of a different nature and binding upon the signatories. In an effort to function satisfactorily various bodies of a supervisory and implementational nature were established. Within the European Union, individuals and corporations have certain rights of direct appeal to the European Court of Justice against decisions of the various Union institutions. In addition, individuals may appear before certain international tribunals. Nevertheless, the whole subject has been highly controversial, with some writers (for example Soviet theorists prior

⁸ See the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, p. 18.

⁹ See further below, chapter 5.

¹⁰ See below, chapter 8. ¹¹ *Ibid.*

to *perestroika*) denying that individuals may have rights as distinct from duties under international law, but it is indicative of the trend away from the exclusivity of the state.¹²

Together with the evolution of individual human rights, the rise of international organisations marks perhaps the key distinguishing feature of modern international law. In fact, international law cannot in the contemporary era be understood without reference to the growth in number and influence of such intergovernmental institutions, and of these the most important by far is the United Nations.¹³ The UN comprises the vast majority of states (there are currently 192 member states) and that alone constitutes a political factor of high importance in the process of diplomatic relations and negotiations and indeed facilitates international co-operation and norm creation. Further, of course, the existence of the Security Council as an executive organ with powers to adopt resolutions in certain circumstances that are binding upon all member states is unique in the history of international relations.

International organisations have now been accepted as possessing rights and duties of their own and a distinctive legal personality. The International Court of Justice in 1949 delivered an Advisory Opinion¹⁴ in which it stated that the United Nations was a subject of international law and could enforce its rights by bringing international claims, in this case against Israel following the assassination of Count Bernadotte, a United Nations official. Such a ruling can be applied to embrace other international institutions, like the International Labour Organisation and the Food and Agriculture Organisation, which each have a judicial character of their own. Thus, while states remain the primary subjects of international law, they are now joined by other non-state entities, whose importance is likely to grow even further in the future.

The growth of regional organisations should also be noted at this stage. Many of these were created for reasons of military security, for example NATO and the opposing Warsaw Pact organisations, others as an expression of regional and cultural identity such as the Organisation of African Unity (now the African Union) and the Organisation of American States. In a class of its own is the European Union which has gone far down the road of economic co-ordination and standardisation and has a range of

¹² See further below, chapters 6 and 7. ¹³ See further below, chapter 22.

¹⁴ *Reparation for Injuries Suffered in the Service of the United Nations*, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318.

common institutions serviced by a growing bureaucracy stationed primarily at Brussels.

Such regional organisations have added to the developing sophistication of international law by the insertion of 'regional-international law sub-systems' within the universal framework and the consequent evolution of rules that bind only member states.¹⁵

The range of topics covered by international law has expanded hand in hand with the upsurge in difficulties faced and the proliferation in the number of participants within the system. It is no longer exclusively concerned with issues relating to the territory or jurisdiction of states narrowly understood, but is beginning to take into account the specialised problems of contemporary society. Many of these have already been referred to, such as the vital field of human rights, the growth of an international economic law covering financial and development matters, concern with environmental despoliation, the space exploration effort and the exploitation of the resources of the oceans and deep seabed. One can mention also provisions relating to the bureaucracy of international institutions (international administrative law), international labour standards, health regulations and communications controls. Many of these trends may be seen as falling within, or rather reflecting, the phenomenon of globalisation, a term which encompasses the inexorable movement to greater interdependence founded upon economic, communications and cultural bases and operating quite independently of national regulation.¹⁶ This in

¹⁵ See generally below, chapter 23.

¹⁶ See e.g. A. Giddens, *The Consequences of Modernity*, Stanford, 1990; S. Sur, 'The State Between Fragmentation and Globalisation', 8 EJIL, 1997, p. 421; B. Simma and A. Paulus, 'The "International Community": Facing the Challenge of Globalisation. General Conclusions', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 266, and P. M. Dupuy, 'International Law: Torn Between Coexistence, Co-operation and Globalisation. General Conclusions', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 278. See also the Declaration of Judge Bedjaoui in the Advisory Opinion on *The Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 270–1. Note that Philip Bobbitt has described five developments challenging the nation-state system, and thus in essence characterising the globalisation challenge, as follows: the recognition of human rights as norms requiring adherence within all states regardless of internal laws; the widespread deployment of weapons of mass destruction rendering the defence of state borders ineffectual for the protection of the society within; the proliferation of global and transnational threats transcending state boundaries such as those that damage the environment or threaten states through migration, population expansion, disease or famine; the growth of a world economic regime that ignores borders in the movement of capital investment to a degree that effectively curtails states in the management of their economic affairs; and the creation of a global communications network that penetrates borders electronically and threatens national languages, customs and cultures, *The Shield of Achilles*, London, 2002, p. xxii.

turn stimulates disputes of an almost ideological nature concerning, for example, the relationship between free trade and environmental protection.¹⁷ To this may be added the pressures of democracy and human rights, both operating to some extent as countervailing influences to the classical emphasis upon the territorial sovereignty and jurisdiction of states.

Modern theories and interpretations

At this point some modern theories as to the nature and role of international law will be briefly noted.

Positive Law and Natural Law

Throughout the history of thought there has been a complex relationship between idealism and realism, between the way things ought to be and the way things are, and the debate as to whether legal philosophy should incorporate ethical standards or confine itself to an analysis of the law as it stands is a vital one that continues today.¹⁸

The positivist school, which developed so rapidly in the pragmatic, optimistic world of the nineteenth century, declared that law as it exists should be analysed empirically, shorn of all ethical elements. Moral aspirations were all well and good but had no part in legal science. Man-made law must be examined as such and the metaphysical speculations of Natural Law rejected because what counted were the practical realities, not general principles which were imprecise and vague, not to say ambiguous.¹⁹

This kind of approach to law in society reached its climax with Kelsen's 'Pure Theory of Law'. Kelsen defined law solely in terms of itself and eschewed any element of justice, which was rather to be considered within the discipline of political science. Politics, sociology and history were all

¹⁷ See e.g. *Myers v. Canada* 121 ILR, pp. 72, 110.

¹⁸ See e.g. D. Lyons, *Ethics and the Rule of Law*, London, 1984; R. Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*, London, 1977; H. L. A. Hart, *The Concept of Law*, Oxford, 1961, and P. Stein and J. Shand, *Legal Values in Western Society*, Edinburgh, 1974. See also R. Dias, *Jurisprudence*, 5th edn, London, 1985.

¹⁹ See Hart, *Concept of Law*, and Hart, 'Positivism and the Separation of Law and Morals', 71 *Harvard Law Review*, 1958, p. 593. Cf. L. Fuller, 'Positivism and Fidelity to Law – A Reply to Professor Hart', 71 *Harvard Law Review*, 1958, p. 630. See also D. Anzilotti, *Cours de Droit International*, Paris, 1929, and B. Kingsbury, 'Legal Positivism as Normative Politics: International Society, Balance of Power and Lassa Oppenheim's Positive International Law', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 401.

excised from the pure theory which sought to construct a logical unified structure based on a formal appraisal.²⁰

Law was to be regarded as a normative science, that is, consisting of rules which lay down patterns of behaviour. Such rules, or norms, depend for their legal validity on a prior norm and this process continues until one reaches what is termed the basic norm of the whole system. This basic norm is the foundation of the legal edifice, because rules which can be related back to it therefore become *legal* rules. To give a simple example, a court order empowering an official to enforce a fine is valid if the court had that power which depends upon an Act of Parliament establishing the court. A rule becomes a legal rule if it is in accordance with a previous (and higher) legal rule and so on. Layer builds upon layer and the foundation of it all is the basic norm.²¹

The weakness of Kelsen's 'pure' system lies primarily in the concept of the basic norm for it relies for its existence upon non-legal issues. In fact, it is a political concept, and in the United Kingdom it would probably be the principle of the supremacy of Parliament.²²

This logical, structured system of validity founded upon an extra-legal concept encounters difficulties when related to international law. For Kelsen international law is a primitive legal order because of its lack of strong legislative, judicial and enforcement organs and its consequent resemblance to a pre-state society. It is accordingly characterised by the use of self-help.²³ The principles of international law are valid if they can be traced back to the basic norm of the system, which is hierarchical in the same sense as a national legal system. For Kelsen, the basic norm is the rule that identifies custom as the source of law, or stipulates that 'the states ought to behave as they customarily behaved'.²⁴ One of the prime rules of this category is *pacta sunt servanda* declaring that agreements must be carried out in good faith and upon that rule is founded the second stage within the international legal order. This second stage consists of the network of norms created by international treaties and conventions

²⁰ 'The Pure Theory of Law', 50 LQR, 1934, pp. 474, 477–85 and 51 LQR, 1935, pp. 517–22. See also the articles collected in 'The European Tradition in International Law: Hans Kelsen', 9 EJIL, 1998, pp. 287 ff.

²¹ Kelsen, *Pure Theory*.

²² See J. Stone, 'Mystery and Mystique in the Basic Norm', 26 MLR, 1963, p. 34, and J. Raz, *Practical Reason and Norms*, Oxford, 1975, pp. 129–31.

²³ *General Theory of Law and State*, Cambridge, 1946, pp. 328 ff. See also J. Lador-Lederer, 'Some Observations on the "Vienna School" in International Law', 17 NILR, 1970, p. 126.

²⁴ Kelsen, *General Theory of Law and State*, pp. 369–70.

and leads on to the third stage which includes those rules established by organs which have been set up by international treaties, for instance, decisions of the International Court of Justice.²⁵

The problem with Kelsen's formulation of the basic norm of international law is that it appears to be tautological: it merely repeats that states which obey rules ought to obey those rules.²⁶ It seems to leave no room for the progressive development of international law by new practices accepted as law for that involves states behaving differently from the way they have been behaving. Above all, it fails to answer the question as to why custom is binding.

Nevertheless, it is a model of great logical consistency which helps explain, particularly with regard to national legal systems, the proliferation of rules and the importance of validity which gives as it were a mystical seal of approval to the whole structured process. It helps illustrate how rule leads to rule as stage succeeds stage in a progression of norms forming a legal order.

Another important element in Kelsen's interpretation of law is his extreme 'monist' stance. International law and municipal law are not two separate systems but one interlocking structure and the former is supreme. Municipal law finds its ultimate justification in the rules of international law by a process of delegation within one universal normative system.²⁷

Kelsen's pure theory seemed to mark the end of that particular road, and positivism was analysed in more sociological terms by Hart in his book *The Concept of Law* in 1961.

Hart comprehends law as a system of rules, based upon the interaction of primary and secondary rules. The former, basically, specify standards of behaviour while the latter provide the means for identifying and developing them and thus specify the constitutional procedures for change. Primitive societies would possess only the primary rules and so would be characterised by uncertainty, inefficiency and stagnation, but with increasing sophistication the secondary rules would develop and identify authority and enable the rules to be adapted to changing circumstances in a regular and accepted manner.²⁸

²⁵ *Ibid.* ²⁶ Hart terms this 'mere useless reduplication': *Concept of Law*, p. 230.

²⁷ *General Theory of Law and State*, pp. 366–8. See further below, chapter 4.

²⁸ *Concept of Law*, chapter 5. See also e.g. Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*; Raz, *Practical Reason*, and N. MacCormick, *Legal Reasoning and Legal Theory*, Oxford, 1978.

The international legal order is a prime example of a simple form of social structure which consists only of the primary rules, because of its lack of a centralised legislature, network of recognised courts with compulsory jurisdiction and organised means of enforcement. Accordingly, it has no need of, or rather has not yet evolved, a basic norm or in Hart's terminology a rule of recognition, by reference to which the validity of all the rules may be tested. Following this train of thought, Hart concludes that the rules of international law do not as yet constitute a 'system' but are merely a 'set of rules'. Of course, future developments may see one particular principle, such as *pacta sunt servanda*, elevated to the state of a validating norm but in the present situation this has not yet occurred.²⁹

This approach can be criticised for its over-concentration upon rules to the exclusion of other important elements in a legal system such as principles and policies,³⁰ and more especially as regards international law, for failing to recognise the sophistication or vitality of the system. In particular, the distinction between a system and a set of rules in the context of international law is a complex issue and one which is difficult to delineate.

The strength of the positivist movement waned in the last century as the old certainties disintegrated and social unrest grew. Law, as always, began to reflect the dominant pressures of the age, and new theories as to the role of law in society developed. Writers started examining the effects of sociological phenomena upon the legal order and the nature of the legal process itself, with analyses of judicial behaviour and the means whereby rules were applied in actual practice. This was typified by Roscoe Pound's view of the law as a form of social engineering, balancing the various interests within the society in the most efficacious way.³¹ Law was regarded as a method of social control and conceptual approaches were rejected in favour of functional analyses. What actually happened within the legal system, what claims were being brought and how they were satisfied: these were the watchwords of the sociological school.³²

It was in one sense a move away from the ivory tower and into the courtroom. Empirical investigations proliferated, particularly in the United States, and the sciences of psychology and anthropology as well

²⁹ *Concept of Law*, pp. 228–31. ³⁰ See Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*.

³¹ See e.g. *Philosophy of Law*, New Haven, 1954, pp. 42–7. See also M. D. A. Freeman, *The Legal Structure*, London, 1974, chapter 4.

³² *Outlines of Jurisprudence*, 5th edn, Cambridge, 1943, pp. 116–19.

as sociology became allied to jurisprudence. Such concern with the wider social context led to the theories of Realism, which treated law as an institution functioning within a particular community with a series of jobs to do. A study of legal norms within a closed logical system in the Kelsenite vein was regarded as unable to reveal very much of the actual operation of law in society. For this an understanding of the behaviour of courts and the various legal officials was required. Historical and ethical factors were relegated to a minor role within the realist–sociological tradition, with its concentration upon field studies and ‘technical’ dissections. Legal rules were no longer to be accepted as the heart of the legal system.³³

Before one looks at contemporary developments of this approach and how they have affected interpretations of international law, the revival of Natural Law has first to be considered.

In the search for meaning in life and an ethical basis to law, Natural Law has adopted a variety of different approaches. One of them has been a refurbishment of the principles enumerated by Aquinas and adopted by the Catholic Church, emphasising the dignity of man and the supremacy of reason together with an affirmation of the immorality (though not necessarily the invalidity) of law contrary to right reason and the eternal law of God.³⁴ A more formalistic and logic-oriented trend has been exemplified by writers such as Stammler, who tried to erect a logical structure of law with an inbuilt concept of ‘Natural Law with a changing content’. This involved contrasting the *concept* of law, which was intended to be an abstract, formal definition universally applicable, with the *idea* of law, which embodies the purposes and direction of the system. This latter precept varied, of necessity, in different social and cultural contexts.³⁵

As distinct from this formal idealist school, there has arisen a sociologically inspired approach to the theme of Natural Law represented by Gény and Duguit. This particular trend rejected the emphasis upon form, and concentrated instead upon the definition of Natural Law in terms

³³ See e.g. K. Llewellyn, *The Common Law Tradition*, Boston, 1960, and *Jurisprudence*, Chicago, 1962. See also W. Twining, *Karl Llewellyn and the Realist Movement*, London, 1973, and L. Loevinger, ‘Jurimetrics – The Next Step Forward’, 33 *Minnesota Law Review*, 1949, p. 455.

³⁴ See e.g. J. Maritain, *Man and the State*, Paris, 1951, and J. Dabin, *General Theory of Law*, 2nd edn, 1950.

³⁵ See e.g. R. Stammler, *Theory of Justice*, New York, 1925, and G. Del Vecchio, *Formal Bases of Law*, Boston, 1921.

of universal factors, physical, psychological, social and historical, which dominate the framework of society within which the law operated.³⁶

The discussion of Natural Law increased and gained in importance following the Nazi experience. It stimulated a German philosopher, Radbruch, to formulate a theory whereby unjust laws had to be opposed by virtue of a higher, Natural Law.³⁷

As far as international law is concerned, the revival of Natural Law came at a time of increasing concern with international justice and the formation of international institutions. Many of the ideas and principles of international law today are rooted in the notion of Natural Law and the relevance of ethical standards to the legal order, such as the principles of non-aggression and human rights.³⁸

*New approaches*³⁹

Traditionally, international law has been understood in a historical manner and studied chronologically. This approach was especially marked in the nineteenth century as international relations multiplied and international conferences and agreements came with increasing profusion. Between the world wars, the opening of government archives released a wealth of material and further stimulated a study of diplomatic history,

³⁶ See e.g. F. Gény, *Méthode d'Interprétation et Sources en Droit Privé Positif*, Paris, 1899, and L. Duguit, *Law in the Modern State*, New York, 1919, and 'Objective Law', 20 *Columbia Law Review*, 1920, p. 817.

³⁷ *Introduction to Legal Philosophy*, 1947. See also Hart, 'Positivism'; Fuller, 'Positivism', and Fuller, 'The Legal Philosophy of Gustav Radbruch', 6 *Journal of Legal Education*, 1954, p. 481.

³⁸ See H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950. Note more generally the approach of J. Rawls, *A Theory of Justice*, Oxford, 1971, and A. D'Amato, 'International Law and Rawls' Theory of Justice', 5 *Denver Journal of International Law and Policy*, 1975, p. 525. See also J. Boyle, 'Ideals and Things: International Legal Scholarship and the Prison-house of Language', 26 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1985, p. 327; A. D'Amato, 'Is International Law Part of Natural Law?', 9 *Vera Lex*, 1989, p. 8; E. Midgley, *The Natural Law Tradition and the Theory of International Relations*, London, 1975, and C. Dominicé, 'Le Grand Retour du Droit Naturel en Droit des Gens', *Mélanges Grossen*, 1992, p. 399.

³⁹ See e.g. B. S. Chimni, *International Law and World Order*, New Delhi, 1993; A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapter 1, and R. Müllerson, *Ordering Anarchy: International Law in International Society*, The Hague, 2000. See also D. J. Bederman, *The Spirit of International Law*, Athens, 2002; A. Buchanan, *Justice, Legitimacy and Self-Determination*, Oxford, 2004; *International Law and its Others* (ed. A. Orford), Cambridge, 2006; S. Rosenne, *The Perplexities of Modern International Law*, Leiden, 2004, and P. M. Dupuy, *L'Unité de l'Ordre Juridique International*, Leiden, 2003.

while the creation of such international institutions as the League of Nations and the Permanent Court of International Justice encouraged an appreciation of institutional processes.

However, after the Second World War a growing trend appeared intent upon the analysis of power politics and the comprehension of international relations in terms of the capacity to influence and dominate. The approach was a little more sophisticated than might appear at first glance, for it involved a consideration of social and economic as well as political data that had a bearing upon a state's ability to withstand as well as direct pressures.⁴⁰ Nevertheless, it was a pessimistic interpretation because of its centring upon power and its uses as the motive force of inter-state activity.

The next 'wave of advance', as it has been called, witnessed the successes of the behaviouralist movement. This particular train of thought introduced elements of psychology, anthropology and sociology into the study of international relations and paralleled similar developments within the realist school. It reflected the altering emphasis from analyses in terms of idealistic or cynical ('realistic') conceptions of the world political order, to a mechanistic discussion of the system as it operates today, by means of field studies and other tools of the social sciences. Indeed, it is more a method of approach to law and society than a theory in the traditional sense.⁴¹

One can trace the roots of this school of thought to the changing conceptions of the role of government in society. The nineteenth-century ethic of individualism and the restriction of state intervention to the very minimum has changed radically. The emphasis is now more upon the responsibility of the government towards its citizens, and the phenomenal growth in welfare legislation illustrates this. Rules and regulations controlling wide fields of human activity, something that would have been unheard of in the mid-nineteenth century, have proliferated throughout the nations of the developed world and theory has had to try and keep up with such re-orientations.

⁴⁰ See e.g. H. Morgenthau, *Politics Among Nations*, 4th edn, New York, 1967, and K. Thompson, *Political Realism and the Crisis of World Politics: An American Approach to Foreign Policy*, Princeton, 1960. See also A. Slaughter Burley, 'International Law and International Relations Theory: A Dual Agenda', 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 205, and A.-M. Slaughter, *A New World Order*, Princeton, 2004; R. Aron, *Paix et Guerre Entre des Nations*, Paris, 1984; M. Koskenniemi, *The Gentle Civilizer of Nations*, Cambridge, 2001, chapter 6.

⁴¹ See e.g. *Contending Approaches to International Politics* (eds. K. Knorr and J. Rosenau), Princeton 1969, and W. Gould and M. Barkun, *International Law and the Social Sciences*, Princeton, 1970.

Since the law now plays a much deeper role in society with the increase in governmental intervention, impetus has been given to legal theories that reflect this growing involvement. Law, particularly in the United States, is seen as a tool to effect changes in society and realist doctrine underlines this. It emphasises that it is community values and policy decisions that determine the nature of the law and accordingly the role of the judge is that much more important. He is no longer an interpreter of a body of formal legal rules, but should be seen more as an active element in making decisions of public policy.

This means that to understand the operation of law, one has to consider the character of the particular society, its needs and values. Law thus becomes a dynamic process and has to be studied in the context of society and not merely as a collection of legal rules capable of being comprehended on their own. The social sciences have led the way in this reinterpretation of society and their influence has been very marked on the behavioural method of looking at the law, not only in terms of general outlook but also in providing the necessary tools to dissect society and discover the way it operates and the direction in which it is heading. The interdisciplinary nature of the studies in question was emphasised, utilising all the social sciences, including politics, economics and philosophy.⁴² In particular the use of the scientific method, such as obtaining data and quantitative analysis, has been very much in evidence.

Behaviouralism has divided the field of international relations into basically two studies, the first being a consideration of foreign policy techniques and the reasons whereby one particular course of action is preferred to another, and the second constituting the international systems analysis approach.⁴³ This emphasises the interaction of the various players on the international stage and the effects of such mutual pressures upon both the system and the participants. More than that, it examines

⁴² Note Barkun's comment that 'the past theoretical approaches of the legal profession have involved logical manipulations of a legal corpus more often than the empirical study of patterns of human behaviour', *Law Without Sanctions*, New Haven, 1968, p. 3. See also R. A. Falk, 'New Approaches to the Study of International Law', in *New Approaches to International Relations* (ed. M. A. Kaplan), New York, 1968, pp. 357–80, and J. Frankel, *Contemporary International Theory and the Behaviour of States*, London, 1973, pp. 21–2.

⁴³ See e.g. C. A. McClelland, *Theory and the International System*, New York, 1966; M. A. Kaplan, *System and Process in International Politics*, New York, 1964; M. A. Kaplan and N. Katzenbach, *The Political Foundations of International Law*, New York, 1961, and R. A. Falk and C. Black, *The Future of International Legal Order*, Princeton, 1969. See also A. Kiss and D. Shelton, 'Systems Analysis of International Law: A Methodological Inquiry', 17 *Netherlands YIL*, 1986, p. 45.

the various international orders that have existed throughout history in an attempt to show how the dynamics of each particular system have created their own rules and how they can be used as an explanation of both political activity and the nature of international law. In other words, the nature of the international system can be examined by the use of particular variables in order to explain and to predict the role of international law.

For example, the period between 1848 and 1914 can be treated as the era of the 'balance of power' system. This system depended upon a number of factors, such as a minimum number of participants (accepted as five), who would engage in a series of temporary alliances in an attempt to bolster the weak and restrict the strong, for example the coalitions Britain entered into to overawe France. It was basic to this system that no nation wished totally to destroy any other state, but merely to humble and weaken, and this contributed to the stability of the order.⁴⁴

This system nurtured its own concepts of international law, especially that of sovereignty which was basic to the idea of free-floating alliances and the ability of states to leave the side of the strong to strengthen the weak. The balance of power collapsed with the First World War and, after a period of confusion, a discernible, loose 'bipolar' system emerged in the years following the Second World War.

This was predicated upon the polarisation of capitalism and communism and the consequent rigid alliances that were created. It included the existence of a Third World of basically non-aligned states, the objects of rivalry and of competition while not in themselves powerful enough to upset the bipolar system. This kind of order facilitated 'frontier' conflicts where the two powers collided, such as in Korea, Berlin and Vietnam, as well as modified the nature of sovereignty within the two alliances thus allowing such organisations as NATO and the European Community (subsequently European Union) on the one hand, and the Warsaw Pact and COMECON on the other, to develop. The other side of this coin has been the freedom felt by the superpowers to control wavering states within their respective spheres of influence, for example, the Soviet actions in Poland, Hungary and Czechoslovakia and those of the USA, particularly within Latin America.⁴⁵

⁴⁴ See J. Frankel, *International Relations in a Changing World*, London, 1979, pp. 152–7, and Kaplan and Katzenbach, *Political Foundations*, pp. 62–70.

⁴⁵ Kaplan and Katzenbach, *Political Foundations*, pp. 50–5. As far as the systems approach is concerned, see also S. Hoffman, 'International Systems and International Law' in *The*

Behaviouralism has been enriched by the use of such techniques as games theory.⁴⁶ This is a mathematical method of studying decision-making in conflict situations where the parties react rationally in the struggle for benefits. It can be contrasted with the fight situation, where the essence is the actual defeat of the opponent (for example, the Israel–Arab conflict), and with the debate situation, which is an effort to convince the participants of the rightness of one's cause. Other factors which are taken into account include communications, integration, environment and capabilities. Thus the range and complexity of this approach far exceeds that of prior theories.

All this highlights the switch in emphasis that has taken place in the consideration of law in the world community. The traditional view was generally that international law constituted a series of rules restricting the actions of independent states and forming exceptions to state sovereignty. The new theories tend to look at the situation differently, more from the perspective of the international order expanding its horizons than the nation-state agreeing to accept certain defined limitations upon its behaviour.

The rise of quantitative research has facilitated the collation and ordering of vast quantities of data. It is primarily a methodological approach utilising political, economic and social data and statistics, and converting facts and information into a form suitable for scientific investigation. Such methods with their behavioural and quantitative aspects are beginning to impinge upon the field of international law. They enable a greater depth of knowledge and comprehension to be achieved and a wider appreciation of all the various processes at work.⁴⁷

International System (eds. K. Knorr and S. Verba), Westport, 1961, p. 205; G. Clark and L. Sohn, *World Peace Through World Law*, 3rd edn, Boston, 1966, and *The Strategy of World Order* (eds. R. A. Falk and S. Mendlovitz), New York, 4 vols., 1966. See now Bobbitt, *Shield*, book II.

⁴⁶ See e.g. R. Lieber, *Theory and World Politics*, London, 1972, chapter 2; *Game Theory and Related Approaches to Social Behaviour* (ed. H. Shubik), London, 1964, and W. J. M. Mackenzie, *Politics and Social Sciences*, London, 1967.

⁴⁷ Note also the functionalist approach to international law. This orientation emphasises the practical benefits to states of co-operation in matters of mutual interest: see e.g. W. Friedmann, *An Introduction to World Politics*, 5th edn, London, 1965, p. 57; F. Haas, *Beyond the Nation State*, Stanford, 1964; D. Mitrany, *A Working Peace System*, London, 1946; C. W. Jenks, *Law, Freedom and Welfare*, London, 1964, and J. Stone, *Legal Controls of International Conflict*, London, 1959. See also D. Johnston, 'Functionalism in the Theory of International Law', 25 Canadian YIL, 1988, p. 3.

The behavioural approach to international relations has been translated into international law theory by a number of writers, in particular Professor McDougal, with some important modifications. This 'policy-orientated' movement regards law as a comprehensive process of decision-making rather than as a defined set of rules and obligations. It is an active all-embracing approach, seeing international law as a dynamic system operating within a particular type of world order.⁴⁸ It therefore minimises the role played by rules, for such a traditional conception of international law 'quite obviously offers but the faintest glimpse of the structures, procedures and types of decision that take place in the contemporary world community'.⁴⁹ It has been emphasised that the law is a constantly evolving process of decision-making and the way that it evolves will depend on the knowledge and insight of the decision-maker.⁵⁰ In other words, it is the social process of constant human interaction that is seen as critical and in this process, claims are continually being made in an attempt to maximise values at the disposal of the participants. Eight value-institution categories have been developed to analyse this process: power, wealth, enlightenment, skill, well-being, affection, respect and rectitude. This list may be further developed. It is not exhaustive. Law is to be regarded as a product of such social processes.⁵¹ International law is the whole process of authoritative decision-making involving crucially the concepts of authority and control. The former is defined in terms of the structure of expectation concerning the identity and competence of the decision-maker, whilst the latter refers to the actual effectiveness of a decision, whether or not authorised.⁵²

⁴⁸ See e.g. M. S. McDougal, 'International Law, Power and Policy', 82 HR, 1952, p. 133; M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and W. M. Reisman, 'Theories about International Law: Prologue to a Configurative Jurisprudence', 8 Va. JIL, 1968, p. 188; M. S. McDougal, 'International Law and the Future', 50 *Mississippi Law Journal*, 1979, p. 259, and H. Lasswell and M. S. McDougal, *Jurisprudence for a Free Society*, Yale, 1992. See also G. Scelle, *Manuel de Droit International*, Paris, 1948, and Chimni, *International Law*, chapter 3.

⁴⁹ M. S. McDougal and W. M. Reisman, *International Law in Contemporary Perspective*, New Haven, 1980, p. 5.

⁵⁰ M. S. McDougal, 'The Policy-Oriented Approach to Law', 40 *Virginia Quarterly Review*, 1964, p. 626. See also E. Suzuki, 'The New Haven School of International Law: An Invitation to a Policy-Oriented Jurisprudence', 1 *Yale Studies in World Public Order*, 1974, p. 1.

⁵¹ Suzuki, 'Policy-Oriented Jurisprudence', pp. 22–3. See also M. S. McDougal, 'Some Basic Theoretical Concepts about International Law: A Policy-Oriented Framework of Inquiry', 4 *Journal of Conflict Resolution*, 1960, pp. 337–54.

⁵² M. S. McDougal and H. Lasswell, 'The Identification and Appraisal of Diverse Systems of Public Order', 53 AJIL, 1959, pp. 1, 9.

McDougal's work and that of his followers emphasises the long list of values, interests and considerations that have to be taken into account within the international system by the persons actually faced with making the decisions. This stress upon the so-called 'authoritative decision-maker', whether he or she be in the United States Department of State, in the British Foreign Office or 'anyone whose choice about an event can have some international significance',⁵³ as the person who in effect has to choose between different options respecting international legal principles, emphasises the practical world of power and authority.

Such a decision-maker is subject to a whole series of pressures and influences, such as the values of the community in which that person operates, and the interests of the particular nation-state served. He or she will also have to consider the basic values of the world order, for instance human dignity. This approach involves a complex dissection of a wide-ranging series of factors and firmly fixes international law within the ambit of the social sciences, both with respect to the procedures adopted and the tools of analysis. International law is seen in the following terms, as

a comprehensive process of authoritative decision in which rules are continuously made and remade; that the function of the rules of international law is to communicate the perspectives (demands, identifications and expectations) of the peoples of the world about this comprehensive process of decision; and that the national application of these rules in particular instances requires their interpretation, like that of any other communication, in terms of who is using them, with respect to whom, for what purposes (major and minor), and in what context.⁵⁴

Legal rules articulate and seek to achieve certain goals and this value factor must not be ignored. The values emphasised by this school are basically those of human dignity, familiar from the concepts of Western democratic society.⁵⁵ Indeed, Reisman has emphasised the Natural Law origins of this approach as well as the need to clarify a jurisprudence for those persons whose activities have led to innovations in such fields of international law as human rights and the protection of the environment.⁵⁶

⁵³ McDougal and Reisman, *International Law*, p. 2.

⁵⁴ M. S. McDougal, 'A Footnote', 57 AJIL, 1963, p. 383.

⁵⁵ See M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and L. C. Chen, *Human Rights and World Public Order*, New Haven, 1980. For a discussion of the tasks required for a realistic inquiry in the light of defined goals, see McDougal, 'International Law and the Future', pp. 259, 267.

⁵⁶ 'The View from the New Haven School of International Law', PASIL, 1992, p. 118.

The policy-oriented movement has been greatly criticised by traditional international lawyers for unduly minimising the legal content of the subject and for ignoring the fact that nations generally accept international law as it is and obey its dictates.⁵⁷ States rarely indulge in a vast behavioural analysis, studiously considering every relevant element in a particular case and having regard to fundamental objectives like human dignity and welfare. Indeed, so to do may weaken international law, it has been argued.⁵⁸ In addition, the insertion of such value-concepts as 'human dignity' raises difficulties of subjectivity that ill fit within a supposedly objective analytical structure. Koskenniemi, for example, has drawn attention to the predilection of the policy-oriented approach to support the dominant power.⁵⁹

Other writers, such as Professor Falk, accept the basic comprehensive approach of the McDougal school, but point to its inconsistencies and overfulsome cataloguing of innumerable interests. They tend to adopt a global outlook based upon a deep concern for human welfare and morality, but with an emphasis upon the importance of legal rules and structure.⁶⁰

Professor Franck, however, has sought to refocus the essential question of the existence and operation of the system of international law in terms of inquiring into why states obey international law despite the undeveloped condition of the international legal system's structures, processes and enforcement mechanisms.⁶¹ The answer is seen to lie in the concept of legitimacy. States will obey the rules because they see such rules and

⁵⁷ See in particular P. Allott, 'Language, Method and the Nature of International Law', 45 BYIL, 1971, p. 79. Higgins has vividly drawn attention to the differences in approach to international law adopted by American and British writers: 'Policy Considerations and the International Judicial Process', 17 ICLQ, 1968, p. 58. See also T. Farer, 'Human Rights in Law's Empire: The Jurisprudence War', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 117.

⁵⁸ Allott, 'Language', pp. 128 ff. ⁵⁹ See *Gentle Civilizer of Nations*, pp. 474 ff.

⁶⁰ See e.g. R. A. Falk, *Human Rights and State Sovereignty*, New York, 1981, and Falk, *On Human Governance*, Cambridge, 1995. See also *The United Nations and a Just World Order* (eds. R. Falk, S. Kim and S. Mendlovitz), Boulder, 1991, and Chimni, *International Law*, chapter 4. But note the approach of, e.g., J. S. Watson, 'A Realistic Jurisprudence of International Law', 34 YBWA, 1980, p. 265, and M. Lane, 'Demanding Human Rights: A Change in the World Legal Order', 6 *Hofstra Law Review*, 1978, p. 269. See also Boyle, 'Ideals and Things'.

⁶¹ T. M. Franck, *The Power of Legitimacy Among Nations*, Oxford, 1990. See also Franck, 'Fairness in the International Legal and Institutional System', 240 HR, 1993 III, p. 13, chapter 2; Franck, *Fairness in International Law and Institutions*, Oxford, 1995, chapter 2, and Franck, 'The Power of Legitimacy and the Legitimacy of Power: International Law in an Age of Power Disequilibrium', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 88.

their institutional framework as possessing a high degree of legitimacy. Legitimacy itself is defined as 'a property of a rule or rule-making institution which itself exerts a pull towards compliance on those addressed normatively because those addressed believe that the rule or institution has come into being and operates in accordance with generally accepted principles of right process'.⁶² Legitimacy may be empirically demonstrated but compliance may be measured not only by observing states acting in accordance with the principle in question, but also by observing the degree to which a violator actually exhibits deference to that principle even while violating it.

Legitimacy will depend upon four specific properties, it is suggested: determinacy (or readily ascertainable normative content or 'transparency'); symbolic validation (or authority approval); coherence (or consistency or general application) and adherence (or falling within an organised hierarchy of rules). In other words, it is proposed that there exist objectively verifiable criteria which help us to ascertain why international rules are obeyed and thus why the system works. This approach is supplemented by the view that legitimacy and justice as morality are two aspects of the concept of fairness, which is seen by Franck as the most important question for international law.⁶³ Franck, however, has also drawn attention to the 'emerging right to individuality'⁶⁴ within the context of a 'global identity crisis'⁶⁵ in which the growth of supranational institutions and the collapse of a range of states combine to undermine traditional certainties of world order. He notes that persons are increasingly likely to identify themselves as autonomous individuals and that this is both reflected and manifested in the rise and expansion of international human rights law and in the construction of multi-layered and freely selected affinities.⁶⁶ While such personal rights are increasingly protected in both national and international law, the question as to the appropriate balancing of individual, group and state rights is posed in more urgent form.

However, legitimacy may also be understood in a broader way in referring to the relationship with the international political system as a whole and as forming the link between power and the legal system. It imbues the normative order with authority and acceptability, although not as such legality. Legitimacy links law and politics in its widest sense and will depend upon the context out of which it emerges. One writer has concluded

⁶² Franck, *Legitimacy*, p. 24. ⁶³ Franck, 'Fairness', p. 26.

⁶⁴ T. M. Franck, *The Empowered Self*, Oxford, 1999, p. 1.

⁶⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 3. ⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 278–80.

that legitimacy 'is a matter of history and thus is subject to change as new events emerge from the future and new understandings reinterpret the past'.⁶⁷ Legitimacy is important in that it constitutes a standard for the testing in the wider political environment of the relevance and acceptability of legal norms and practices. A rule seen as legitimate will benefit from a double dose of approval. A rule, institution or practice seen as illegal and illegitimate will be doubly disapproved of. A rule, or entity, which is legal but not legitimate will, it is suggested, not be able to sustain its position over the long term. A practice seen as illegal but legitimate is likely to form the nucleus of a new rule.

The recurring themes of the relationship between sovereign states and international society and the search for a convincing explanation for the binding quality of international law in a state-dominated world appear also in very recent approaches to international law theory which fall within the general critical legal studies framework.⁶⁸ Such approaches have drawn attention to the many inconsistencies and incoherences that persist within the international legal system. The search for an all-embracing general theory of international law has been abandoned in mainstream thought as being founded upon unverifiable propositions, whether religiously or sociologically based, and attention has switched to the analysis of particular areas of international law and in particular procedures for the settlement of disputes. The critical legal studies movement notes that the traditional approach to international law has in essence involved the transposition of 'liberal' principles of domestic systems onto the international scene, but that this has led to further problems.⁶⁹ Specifically, liberalism tries constantly to balance individual freedom and social order and, it is argued, inevitably ends up siding with either one or other of those propositions.⁷⁰

⁶⁷ Bobbitt, *Shield*, p. 17.

⁶⁸ See e.g. *The Structure and Processes of International Law* (eds. R. St J. Macdonald and D. Johnston), Dordrecht, 1983; Boyle, 'Ideals and Things'; A. Carty, *The Decay of International Law? A Reappraisal of the Limits of Legal Imagination in International Affairs*, Manchester, 1986; D. Kennedy, *International Legal Structure*, Boston, 1987; M. Koskenniemi, *From Apology to Utopia*, Helsinki, 1989; F. V. Kratochwil, *Rules, Norms and Decisions: On the Conditions of Practical and Legal Reasoning in International Relations and Domestic Affairs*, Cambridge, 1989; P. Allott, *Eunomia*, Oxford, 1990; Allott, *The Health of Nations*, Cambridge, 2002; *Theory and International Law: An Introduction* (ed. Allott), London, 1991, and *International Law* (ed. M. Koskenniemi), Aldershot, 1992. See also I. Scobbie, 'Towards the Elimination of International Law: Some Radical Scepticism about Sceptical Radicalism', 61 BYIL, 1990, p. 339, and S. Marks, *The Riddle of All Constitutions: International Law, Democracy and the Critique of Ideology*, Cambridge, 2000.

⁶⁹ See e.g. Koskenniemi, *International Law*, p. xvi.

⁷⁰ Koskenniemi, *From Apology to Utopia*, p. 52.

Additionally, there are only two possibilities with regard to justice itself, it is either simply subjective or it is imposed. In either case, liberalism is compromised as a system.

The critical legal studies approach (sometimes termed the 'New Approaches to International Law' or NAIL) notes the close relationship that exists between law and society, but emphasises that conceptual analysis is also crucial since such concepts are not in themselves independent entities but reflect particular power relationships. The point is made that the nexus between state power and international legal concepts needs to be taken into consideration as well as the way in which such concepts in themselves reflect political factors. As Koskenniemi writes, 'a post-realist theory... aims to answer questions regarding the relationship of law and society and the legitimacy of constraint in a world of sovereigns as aspects of one single problem: the problem of power in concepts'.⁷¹ The problem posed by the growth in the world community and the need to consider the range of different cultures and traditions within that community leads, it is suggested, to the decline of universality as such and the need to focus upon the specific contexts of particular problems.

In a more recent work, Koskenniemi has drawn attention not only to the continuing tension between the universalist and particularist impulses in international law,⁷² but also to the related distinction between formalism and dynamism, or the contrast between rule-oriented and policy-oriented approaches. It is his view in essence that the latter approach might too easily be utilised to support a dominant political position.⁷³ It is the typical lawyer's answer in any event to declare that all depends upon the particular circumstances of the case and this approach is generalised in order to deal with the question of which of several relevant international rules is to predominate. It is in fact a way of noting that superior operating principles are difficult to find or justify and thus concluding that the search for universal concepts or principles is of little value. In effect, it is proposed that no coherent international system as such actually exists and that one should rather concentrate upon ad hoc legal concepts as reflecting power considerations and within the confines of the specific contexts in which the particular questions or issues have arisen. Like the policy-oriented approach, the critical legal studies view is to accept that

⁷¹ *Ibid.*, p. xxi.

⁷² See also M. Eyskens, 'Particularism versus Universalism' in *International Law – Theory and Practice* (ed. K. Wellens), The Hague, 1998, p. 11.

⁷³ *Gentle Civilizer of Nations*.

international law is more than a set of rules, but it then proceeds to emphasise the indeterminacy as such of law rather than seeing law as a collection of competing norms between which choices must be made.⁷⁴ One particular area of study in recent years has been that concerned with the position of women within international law, both in terms of the structure of the system and the, for example, relative absence of females from the institutions and processes of international law and in terms of substantive law, which has until recently paid little attention to the needs and concerns of women.⁷⁵

*The fragmentation of international law?*⁷⁶

The tremendous expansion of both the rules and the institutions of international law, with the rise of more and more specialist areas, such as trade law, environmental law and human rights law, has led to arguments that international law as a holistic system is in the process of fragmentation. This has led to the fear that the centre will not be able to hold and that international law might dissolve into a series of discrete localised or limited systems with little or no interrelationship. In many ways it is the explosion

⁷⁴ See Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 9. See also J. A. Beckett, 'Countering Uncertainty and Ending Up/Down Arguments: Prolegomena to a Response to NAIL', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 213.

⁷⁵ See e.g. H. Charlesworth and C. M. Chinkin, *The Boundaries of International Law: A Feminist Analysis*, Manchester, 2000; H. Charlesworth, C. M. Chinkin and S. Wright, 'Feminist Approaches to International Law', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 613; F. Tesón, 'Feminism and International Law: A Reply', 33 Va. JIL, 1993, p. 647, and *International Law: Modern Feminist Approaches* (eds. D. Buss and A. Manji), Oxford, 2005. See also the 'Final Report on Women's Equality and Nationality in International Law' in *Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference*, International Law Association, London, 2000, p. 248. Note that article 25(2) of the Rules of the European Court of Human Rights requires that the Sections of the Court be 'gender balanced', while article 36(8)a(iii) of the Statute of the International Criminal Court 1998 declares that the selection process for judges of the Court should include the need for a 'fair representation of female and male judges'. See also ICC-ASP/1/Res.- 2 (2002) on the procedure for nomination of judges which required a minimum number of female and male candidates.

⁷⁶ See e.g. 'Fragmentation of International Law: Difficulties Arising from the Diversification and Expansion of International Law', Report of the Study Group of the International Law Commission (finalised by M. Koskenniemi), A/CN.4/L.682, 2006; M. Koskenniemi and P. Leino, 'Fragmentation of International Law? Postmodern Anxieties', 15 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 2002, p. 553; M. Prost and P. K. Clark, 'Unity, Diversity and the Fragmentation of International Law', 5 *Chinese Journal of International Law*, 2006, p. 341; B. Simma and D. Pulkowski, 'Of Planets and the Universe: Self-contained Regimes in International Law', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 483, and E. Benvenisti and G. W. Downs, 'The Empire's New Clothes: Political Economy and the Fragmentation of International Law', 60 *Stanford Law Review*, 2007, p. 595.

of what is termed globalisation, with the consequential spread of practices and mechanisms across the world,⁷⁷ that has precipitated this problem of fragmentation, being defined in one view as the ‘emergence of specialised and relatively autonomous spheres of social action and structure’.⁷⁸ This has led to a debate as to the relationship between self-contained regimes in international law and the system as a whole,⁷⁹ with the fear being expressed that the rise of specialised rules and mechanisms that have no clear authority relationship might lead to conflicts between local systems and, at the least, inconsistency in the interpretation and development of international law.⁸⁰ While to some extent the former is a real danger,⁸¹ there is still a powerful centralising dynamic in international law and indeed a strong presumption against normative conflict:⁸² for example, the principle that special law (*lex specialis*) derogates from general law (*lex generalis*), so that the more detailed and specific rule will have priority.⁸³ It is also true that international law, as a decentralised system, has long had to face the problem of relating together a variety of rules derived from general treaties, specific treaties and customary law, while it is indeed the case that even with the increase in specialist areas of international law, there is an increasing tendency to relate hitherto discrete spheres.⁸⁴ Further, while decisions of international courts and tribunals may not always be compatible, there is a hierarchy of authority with the International Court of Justice at the summit.⁸⁵ The International Law Commission’s Report on Fragmentation reached two principal conclusions, first that ‘the

⁷⁷ See e.g. P. S. Berman, *The Globalisation of International Law*, Aldershot, 2005.

⁷⁸ International Law Commission Report on Fragmentation, p. 11.

⁷⁹ See, for an early example, B. Simma, ‘Self-Contained Regimes’, 16 *Netherlands YIL*, 1985, p. 111.

⁸⁰ See e.g. *Unity and Diversity in International Law* (eds. A. Zimmermann and R. Hofmann), Berlin, 2006; K. Wellens, ‘Fragmentation of International Law and Establishment of an Accountability Regime for International Organizations’, 25 *Michigan Journal of International Law*, 2004, p. 1159, and *L’Influence des Sources sur l’Unité et la Fragmentation du Droit International* (eds. K. C. Wellens and R. H. Viraxia), Brussels, 2006.

⁸¹ See e.g. A. Reinisch, ‘Necessity in International Arbitration – An Unnecessary Split of Opinions in Recent ICSID Cases? Comments on CMS v. Argentina and LG&E v. Argentina’, 8 *Journal of World Investment and Trade*, 2007, p. 191.

⁸² International Law Commission Report on Fragmentation, p. 25.

⁸³ See further below, chapter 3, p. 124.

⁸⁴ See e.g. with regard to human rights law and humanitarian law (or the laws of war), A. E. Cassimatis, ‘International Humanitarian Law, International Human Rights Law, and Fragmentation of International Law’, 56 *ICLQ*, 2007, p. 623. See further below, chapter 21, p. 1180.

⁸⁵ See further below, chapter 19, p. 1115.

emergence of special treaty-regimes (which should not be called “self-contained”) has not seriously undermined legal security, predictability or the equality of legal subjects’ and second that ‘increasing attention will have to be given to the collision of norms and regimes and the rules, methods and techniques for dealing with such collisions.’⁸⁶

Conclusion

The range of theories and approaches to international law and not least the emphasis upon the close relationship between international law and international relations⁸⁷ testifies both to the importance of the subject and the inherent difficulties it faces.⁸⁸ International law is clearly much more than a simple set of rules. It is a culture in the broadest sense in that it constitutes a method of communicating claims, counter-claims, expectations and anticipations as well as providing a framework for assessing and prioritising such demands.

International law functions in a particular, concrete world system, involving a range of actors from states to international organisations, companies and individuals, and as such needs to be responsive to the needs and aspirations of such participants. The international system is composed increasingly of co-operative and competing elements participating in cross-boundary activities, but the essential normative and structural nature of international law remains. Law is not the only way in which issues transcending borders are negotiated and settled or indeed fought over. It is one of a number of methods for dealing with an existing complex and shifting system, but it is a way of some prestige and influence for it is

⁸⁶ At pp. 248–9.

⁸⁷ See e.g. A.-M. Slaughter, A. S. Tulumello and S. Wood, ‘International Law and International Relations Theory: A New Generation of Interdisciplinary Scholarship’, 92 *AJIL*, 1998, p. 367, and Slaughter, *A New World Order*. See also Bobbitt, *Shield*, who posits the dying of the nation-state and its replacement by the market-state, with consequential changes with regard to both international law and its institutions, e.g. pp. 353 ff. and 667 ff.

⁸⁸ Note relatively recent arguments based on a revived power realism approach, particularly made in the US, that international law is simply a part of a complex of factors which are relevant, and implicitly subservient, to diplomacy and the pursuit of national interests: see e.g. J. L. Goldsmith and E. A. Posner, *The Limits of International Law*, Oxford, 2005, and M. J. Glennon, *Limits of Law, Prerogatives of Power: Interventionism after Kosovo*, New York, 2001, but cf. Franck, *Power of Legitimacy*; A. Van Aaken, ‘To Do Away with International Law? Some Limits to the “Limits of International Law”’, 17 *EJIL*, 2006, p. 289, and G. Simpson, *Great Powers and Outlaw States: Unequal Sovereigns in the International Legal Order*, Cambridge, 2004.

of its very nature in the form of mutually accepted obligations.⁸⁹ Law and politics cannot be divorced. They are not identical, but they do interact on several levels. They are engaged in a crucial symbiotic relationship. It does neither discipline a service to minimise the significance of the other.

Suggestions for further reading

P. Bobbitt, *The Shield of Achilles*, London, 2002

H. Charlesworth and C. Chinkin, *The Boundaries of International Law: A Feminist Analysis*, Manchester, 2000

T. M. Franck, *Fairness in International Law and Institutions*, Oxford, 1995
The Empowered Self, Oxford, 1999

M. Koskenniemi, *The Gentle Civilizer of Nations*, Cambridge, 2001

S. Marks, *The Riddle of All Constitutions: International Law, Democracy and the Critique of Ideology*, Cambridge, 2000

R. Müllerson, *Ordering Anarchy: International Law in International Society*, The Hague, 2000

⁸⁹ Higgins has noted that 'international law has to be identified by reference to what the actors (most often states), often without benefit of pronouncement by the International Court of Justice, believe normative in their relations with each other', *Problems and Process*, p. 18.

Sources

Ascertainment of the law on any given point in domestic legal orders is not usually too difficult a process.¹ In the English legal system, for example, one looks to see whether the matter is covered by an Act of Parliament and, if it is, the law reports are consulted as to how it has been interpreted by the courts. If the particular point is not specifically referred to in a statute, court cases will be examined to elicit the required information. In other words, there is a definite method of discovering what the law is. In addition to verifying the contents of the rules, this method also demonstrates how the law is created, namely, by parliamentary legislation or judicial case-law. This gives a degree of certainty to the legal process because one is able to tell when a proposition has become law and the

¹ See generally C. Parry, *The Sources and Evidences of International Law*, Cambridge, 1965; M. Sørensen, *Les Sources de Droit International*, Paris, 1946; V. D. Degan, *Sources of International Law*, The Hague, 1997; *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, p. 22; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapter 1; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 111; A. Boyle and C. Chinkin, *The Making of International Law*, Oxford, 2007; G. M. Danilenko, *Law-Making in the International Community*, The Hague, 1993; G. I. Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, London, 1974, pp. 89–203; J. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 1968, vol. I, p. 1; H. Lauterpacht, *International Law: Collected Papers*, Cambridge, 1970, vol. I, p. 58; *Change and Stability in International Law-Making* (eds. A. Cassese and J. Weiler), Leiden, 1988; A. Bos, *A Methodology of International Law*, Amsterdam, 1984; A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapters 8–10; A. Pellet, 'Article 38' in *The Statute of the International Court of Justice: A Commentary* (eds. A. Zimmermann, C. Tomuschat and K. Oellers-Frahm), Oxford, 2006, p. 677; M. Virally, 'The Sources of International Law' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 116; C. Tomuschat, 'Obligations Arising for States Without or Against Their Will', 241 HR, 1993, p. 195; B. Simma, 'From Bilateralism to Community Interest in International Law', 250 HR, 1994, p. 219; M. Mendelson, 'The International Court of Justice and the Sources of International Law' in *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. A. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996, p. 63; G. Abi-Saab, 'Les Sources du Droit International – Un Essai de Déconstruction' in *Le Droit International dans un Monde en Mutation*, Montevideo, 1994, p. 29, and O. Schachter, 'Recent Trends in International Law-Making', 12 Australian YIL, 1992.

necessary mechanism to resolve any disputes about the law is evident. It reflects the hierarchical character of a national legal order with its gradations of authority imparting to the law a large measure of stability and predictability.

The contrast is very striking when one considers the situation in international law. The lack of a legislature, executive and structure of courts within international law has been noted and the effects of this will become clearer as one proceeds. There is no single body able to create laws internationally binding upon everyone, nor a proper system of courts with comprehensive and compulsory jurisdiction to interpret and extend the law. One is therefore faced with the problem of discovering where the law is to be found and how one can tell whether a particular proposition amounts to a legal rule. This perplexity is reinforced because of the anarchic nature of world affairs and the clash of competing sovereignties. Nevertheless, international law does exist and is ascertainable. There are 'sources' available from which the rules may be extracted and analysed.

By 'sources' one means those provisions operating within the legal system on a technical level, and such ultimate sources as reason or morality are excluded, as are more functional sources such as libraries and journals. What is intended is a survey of the process whereby rules of international law emerge.²

Article 38(1) of the Statute of the International Court of Justice is widely recognised as the most authoritative and complete statement as to the sources of international law.³ It provides that:

the Court, whose function is to decide in accordance with international law such disputes as are submitted to it, shall apply: (a) international conventions, whether general or particular, establishing rules expressly recognised by the contesting states; (b) international custom, as evidence of a general practice accepted as law; (c) the general principles of law recognised by civilised nations; (d) subject to the provisions of Article 59, judicial decisions and the teachings of the most highly qualified publicists of the various nations, as subsidiary means for the determination of rules of law.

Although this formulation is technically limited to the sources of international law which the International Court must apply, in fact since

² See also, e.g., M. S. McDougal and W. M. Reisman, 'The Prescribing Function: How International Law is Made', 6 *Yale Studies in World Public Order*, 1980, p. 249.

³ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 5; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 24, and M. O. Hudson, *The Permanent Court of International Justice*, New York, 1934, pp. 601 ff.

the function of the Court is to decide disputes submitted to it 'in accordance with international law' and since all member states of the United Nations are *ipso facto* parties to the Statute by virtue of article 93 of the United Nations Charter (states that are non-members of the UN can specifically become parties to the Statute of the Court: Switzerland was the most obvious example of this until it joined the UN in 2002), there is no serious contention that the provision expresses the universal perception as to the enumeration of sources of international law.

Some writers have sought to categorise the distinctions in this provision, so that international conventions, custom and the general principles of law are described as the three exclusive law-creating processes while judicial decisions and academic writings are regarded as law-determining agencies, dealing with the verification of alleged rules.⁴ But in reality it is not always possible to make hard and fast divisions. The different functions overlap to a great extent so that in many cases treaties (or conventions) merely reiterate accepted rules of customary law, and judgments of the International Court of Justice may actually create law in the same way that municipal judges formulate new law in the process of interpreting existing law.⁵

A distinction has sometimes been made between formal and material sources.⁶ The former, it is claimed, confer upon the rules an obligatory character, while the latter comprise the actual content of the rules. Thus the formal sources appear to embody the constitutional mechanism for identifying law while the material sources incorporate the essence or subject-matter of the regulations. This division has been criticised particularly in view of the peculiar constitutional set-up of international law, and it tends to distract attention from some of the more important problems by its attempt to establish a clear separation of substantive and procedural elements, something difficult to maintain in international law.

⁴ See e.g. G. Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1957, vol. I, pp. 26–7.

⁵ There are a number of examples of this: see below, chapter 4, p. 138.

⁶ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 1. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 111–12, where it is noted that 'les sources *formelles* du droit sont les *procédés* d'élaboration du droit, les diverses techniques qui autorisent à considérer qu'une règle appartient au droit positif. Les sources *matérielles* constituent les fondements sociologiques des normes internationales, leur base politique, morale ou économique plus ou moins explicitée par la doctrine ou les sujets du droit', and Pellet, 'Article 38' p. 714.

Custom⁷

Introduction

In any primitive society certain rules of behaviour emerge and prescribe what is permitted and what is not. Such rules develop almost subconsciously within the group and are maintained by the members of the group by social pressures and with the aid of various other more tangible implements. They are not, at least in the early stages, written down or codified, and survive ultimately because of what can be called an aura of historical legitimacy.⁸ As the community develops it will modernise its

⁷ See generally, A. D'Amato, *The Concept of Custom in International Law*, Cornell, 1971; M. Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source of International Law', 47 BYIL, 1974–5, p. 1; M. Mendelson, 'The Formation of Customary International Law', 272 HR, 1999, p. 159; B. Cheng, 'Custom: The Future of General State Practice in a Divided World' in *The Structure and Process of International Law* (eds. R. St J. Macdonald and D. Johnston), Dordrecht, 1983, p. 513; A. E. Roberts, 'Traditional and Modern Approaches to Customary International Law: A Reconciliation', 95 AJIL, 2001, p. 757; H. Thirlway, *International Customary Law and Codification*, Leiden, 1972; *Sources of State Practice in International Law* (eds. R. Gaebler and M. Smolka-Day), Ardley, 2002; K. Wolfke, *Custom in Present International Law*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1993, and Wolfke, 'Some Persistent Controversies Regarding Customary International Law', Netherlands YIL, 1993, p. 1; L. Kopelmanas, 'Custom as a Means of the Creation of International Law', 18 BYIL, 1937, p. 127; H. Lauterpacht, *The Development of International Law by the International Court*, Cambridge, 1958, pp. 368–93; J. Kunz, 'The Nature of Customary International Law', 47 AJIL, 1953, p. 662; R. J. Dupuy, 'Coutume Sage et Coutume Sauvage', *Mélanges Rousseau*, Paris, 1974, p. 75; B. Stern, 'La Coutume au Coeur du Droit International', *Mélanges Reuter*, Paris, 1981, p. 479; R. Y. Jennings, 'Law-Making and Package Deal', *Mélanges Reuter*, p. 347; G. Danilenko, 'The Theory of International Customary Law', 31 German YIL, 1988, p. 9; Barberis, 'Réflexions sur la Coutume Internationale', AFDI, 1990, p. 9; L. Condorelli, 'Custom' in *International Law: Achievements and Perspectives* (ed. M. Bedjaoui), Paris, 1991, p. 206; M. Byers, 'Custom, Power and the Power of Rules', 17 *Michigan Journal of International Law*, 1995, p. 109; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice: 1960–89 (Part Two)', 61 BYIL, 1990, pp. 3, 31, and Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice: 1960–89: Supplement, 2005: Parts One and Two', 76 BYIL, 2006, pp. 1, 92; J. Kammerhofer, 'The Uncertainty in the Formal Sources of International Law: Customary International Law and Some of Its Problems', 15 EJIL, 2004, p. 523; P. M. Dupuy, 'Théorie des Sources et Coutume en Droit International Contemporain' in *Le Droit International dans un Monde en Mutation*, p. 51; D. P. Fidler, 'Challenging the Classic Conception of Custom', German YIL, 1997, p. 198; R. Müllerson, 'On the Nature and Scope of Customary International Law', *Austrian Review of International and European Law*, 1998, p. 1; M. Byers, *Custom, Power and the Power of Rules*, Cambridge, 1999, and A. Carty, *The Decay of International Law?*, Manchester, 1986, chapter 3. See also the 'Statement of Principles Applicable to the Formation of General Customary International Law' in *Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference*, International Law Association, London, 2000, p. 713.

⁸ See e.g. R. Unger, *Law in Modern Society*, London, 1976, who notes that customary law can be regarded as 'any recurring mode of interaction among individuals and groups,

code of behaviour by the creation of legal machinery, such as courts and legislature. Custom, for this is how the original process can be described, remains and may also continue to evolve.⁹ It is regarded as an authentic expression of the needs and values of the community at any given time.

Custom within contemporary legal systems, particularly in the developed world, is relatively cumbersome and unimportant and often of only nostalgic value.¹⁰ In international law on the other hand it is a dynamic source of law in the light of the nature of the international system and its lack of centralised government organs.

The existence of customary rules can be deduced from the practice and behaviour of states and this is where the problems begin. How can one tell when a particular line of action adopted by a state reflects a legal rule or is merely prompted by, for example, courtesy? Indeed, how can one discover what precisely a state is doing or why, since there is no living 'state' but rather thousands of officials in scores of departments exercising governmental functions? Other issues concern the speed of creation of new rules and the effect of protests.

There are disagreements as to the value of a customary system in international law. Some writers deny that custom can be significant today as a source of law, noting that it is too clumsy and slow-moving to accommodate the evolution of international law any more,¹¹ while others declare that it is a dynamic process of law creation and more important than treaties since it is of universal application.¹² Another view recognises that custom is of value since it is activated by spontaneous behaviour and thus mirrors the contemporary concerns of society. However, since international law now has to contend with a massive increase in the pace and variety of state activities as well as having to come to terms with many different cultural and political traditions, the role of custom is perceived to be much diminished.¹³

together with the more or less explicit acknowledgement by these groups and individuals that such patterns of interaction produce reciprocal expectations of conduct that ought to be satisfied', p. 49. See also R. Dias, *Jurisprudence*, 5th edn, London, 1985, chapter 9, and H. L. A. Hart, *The Concept of Law*, Oxford, 1961.

⁹ See e.g. D. Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, 4th edn, London, 1979, p. 649, and H. Maine, *Ancient Law*, London, 1861.

¹⁰ See e.g. Dias, *Jurisprudence*.

¹¹ See e.g. W. Friedmann, *The Changing Structure of International Law*, New York, 1964, pp. 121–3. See also I. De Lupis, *The Concept of International Law*, Aldershot, 1987, pp. 112–16.

¹² E.g. D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, p. 12.

¹³ C. De Visscher, *Theory and Reality in Public International Law*, 3rd edn, Princeton, 1960, pp. 161–2.

There are elements of truth in each of these approaches. Amidst a wide variety of conflicting behaviour, it is not easy to isolate the emergence of a new rule of customary law and there are immense problems involved in collating all the necessary information. It is not always the best instrument available for the regulation of complex issues that arise in world affairs, but in particular situations it may meet the contingencies of modern life. As will be seen, it is possible to point to something called 'instant' customary law in certain circumstances that can prescribe valid rules without having to undergo a long period of gestation, and custom can and often does dovetail neatly within the complicated mechanisms now operating for the identification and progressive development of the principles of international law.

More than that, custom does mirror the characteristics of the decentralised international system. It is democratic in that all states may share in the formulation of new rules, though the precept that some are more equal than others in this process is not without its grain of truth. If the international community is unhappy with a particular law it can be changed relatively quickly without the necessity of convening and successfully completing a world conference. It reflects the consensus approach to decision-making with the ability of the majority to create new law binding upon all, while the very participation of states encourages their compliance with customary rules. Its imprecision means flexibility as well as ambiguity. Indeed, the creation of the concept of the exclusive economic zone in the law of the sea may be cited as an example of this process. This is discussed further in chapter 11. The essence of custom according to article 38 is that it should constitute 'evidence of a general practice accepted as law'. Thus, it is possible to detect two basic elements in the make-up of a custom. These are the material facts, that is, the actual behaviour of states, and the psychological or subjective belief that such behaviour is 'law'. As the International Court noted in the *Libya/Malta* case, the substance of customary law must be 'looked for primarily in the actual practice and *opinio juris* of states'.¹⁴

It is understandable why the first requirement is mentioned, since customary law is founded upon the performance of state activities and the convergence of practices, in other words, what states actually do. It is the psychological factor (*opinio juris*) that needs some explanation. If one left the definition of custom as state practice then one would be faced with the

¹⁴ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 29; 81 ILR, p. 239. See also the Advisory Opinion on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 226, 253; 110 ILR, p. 163.

problem of how to separate international law from principles of morality or social usage. This is because states do not restrict their behaviour to what is legally required. They may pursue a line of conduct purely through a feeling of goodwill and in the hope of reciprocal benefits. States do not have to allow tourists in or launch satellites. There is no law imposing upon them the strict duty to distribute economic aid to developing nations. The bare fact that such things are done does not mean that they have to be done.

The issue therefore is how to distinguish behaviour undertaken because of a law from behaviour undertaken because of a whole series of other reasons ranging from goodwill to pique, and from ideological support to political bribery. And if customary law is restricted to the overt acts of states, one cannot solve this problem.

Accordingly, the second element in the definition of custom has been elaborated. This is the psychological factor, the belief by a state that behaved in a certain way that it was under a legal obligation to act that way. It is known in legal terminology as *opinio juris sive necessitatis* and was first formulated by the French writer François Géný as an attempt to differentiate legal custom from mere social usage.¹⁵

However, the relative importance of the two factors, the overt action and the subjective conviction, is disputed by various writers.¹⁶ Positivists, with their emphasis upon state sovereignty, stress the paramount importance of the psychological element. States are only bound by what they have consented to, so therefore the material element is minimised to the greater value of *opinio juris*. If states believe that a course of action is legal and perform it, even if only once, then it is to be inferred that they have tacitly consented to the rule involved. Following on from this line of analysis, various positivist thinkers have tended to minimise many of the requirements of the overt manifestation, for example, with regard to repetition and duration.¹⁷ Other writers have taken precisely the opposite line and maintain that *opinio juris* is impossible to prove and therefore

¹⁵ *Méthode d'Interprétation et Sources en Droit Privé Positif*, 1899, para. 110.

¹⁶ See e.g. R. Müllerson, 'The Interplay of Objective and Subjective Elements in Customary Law' in *International Law – Theory and Practice* (ed. K. Wellens), The Hague, 1998, p. 161.

¹⁷ See e.g. D. Anzilotti, *Corso di Diritto Internazionale*, 3rd edn, 1928, pp. 73–6; K. Strupp, 'Les Règles Générales du Droit International de la Paix', 47 HR, 1934, p. 263; Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, pp. 113–33, and 'Remarks on the Juridical Nature of Customary Norms of International Law', 49 *California Law Review*, 1961, pp. 419–21, and B. Cheng, 'United Nations Resolutions on Outer Space: "Instant" International Customary Law?', 5 *Indian Journal of International Law*, 1965, p. 23.

of no tremendous consequence. Kelsen, for one, has written that it is the courts that have the discretion to decide whether any set of usages is such as to create a custom and that the subjective perception of the particular state or states is not called upon to give the final verdict as to its legality or not.¹⁸

The material fact

The actual practice engaged in by states constitutes the initial factor to be brought into account. There are a number of points to be considered concerning the nature of a particular practice by states, including its duration, consistency, repetition and generality. As far as the duration is concerned, most countries specify a recognised time-scale for the acceptance of a practice as a customary rule within their municipal systems. This can vary from 'time immemorial' in the English common law dating back to 1189, to figures from thirty or forty years on the Continent.

In international law there is no rigid time element and it will depend upon the circumstances of the case and the nature of the usage in question. In certain fields, such as air and space law, the rules have developed quickly; in others, the process is much slower. Duration is thus not the most important of the components of state practice.¹⁹ The essence of custom is to be sought elsewhere.

The basic rule as regards continuity and repetition was laid down in the *Asylum* case decided by the International Court of Justice (ICJ) in 1950.²⁰ The Court declared that a customary rule must be 'in accordance with a constant and uniform usage practised by the States in question'.²¹ The case concerned Haya de la Torre, a Peruvian, who was sought by his government after an unsuccessful revolt. He was granted asylum by Colombia in its embassy in Lima, but Peru refused to issue a safe conduct to permit Torre to leave the country. Colombia brought the matter before

¹⁸ 'Théorie du Droit International Coutumier', 1 *Revue Internationale de la Théorie du Droit*, 1939, pp. 253, 264–6. See also P. Guggenheim, *Traité de Droit International Public*, Paris, 1953, pp. 46–8; T. Gihl, 'The Legal Character of Sources of International Law', 1 *Scandinavian Studies in Law*, 1957, pp. 53, 84, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 27–31.

¹⁹ See D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, pp. 56–8, and Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 15–16. Judge Negulesco in an unfortunate phrase emphasised that custom required immemorial usage: *European Commission of the Danube*, PCIJ, Series B, No. 14, 1927, p. 105; 4 AD, p. 126. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 7, and the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 43; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 72.

²⁰ ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 266; 17 ILR, p. 280.

²¹ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 276–7; 17 ILR, p. 284.

the International Court of Justice and requested a decision recognising that it (Colombia) was competent to define Torre's offence, as to whether it was criminal as Peru maintained, or political, in which case asylum and a safe conduct could be allowed.

The Court, in characterising the nature of a customary rule, held that it had to constitute the expression of a right appertaining to one state (Colombia) and a duty incumbent upon another (Peru). However, the Court felt that in the *Asylum* litigation, state practices had been so uncertain and contradictory as not to amount to a 'constant and uniform usage' regarding the unilateral qualification of the offence in question.²² The issue involved here dealt with a regional custom pertaining only to Latin America and it may be argued that the same approach need not necessarily be followed where a general custom is alleged and that in the latter instance a lower standard of proof would be upheld.²³

The ICJ emphasised its view that some degree of uniformity amongst state practices was essential before a custom could come into existence in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case.²⁴ The United Kingdom, in its arguments against the Norwegian method of measuring the breadth of the territorial sea, referred to an alleged rule of custom whereby a straight line may be drawn across bays of less than ten miles from one projection to the other, which could then be regarded as the baseline for the measurement of the territorial sea. The Court dismissed this by pointing out that the actual practice of states did not justify the creation of any such custom. In other words, there had been insufficient uniformity of behaviour.

In the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases,²⁵ which involved a dispute between Germany on the one hand and Holland and Denmark on the other over the delimitation of the continental shelf, the ICJ remarked that state practice, 'including that of states whose interests are specially affected', had to be 'both extensive and virtually uniform in the sense of the provision invoked'. This was held to be indispensable to the formation of a new rule of customary international law.²⁶ However, the Court emphasised in the *Nicaragua v. United States* case²⁷ that it was not necessary that the

²² *Ibid.* ²³ See further below, p. 92.

²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 131 and 138; 18 ILR, p. 86.

²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 3; 41 ILR, p. 29.

²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 43; 41 ILR, p. 72. Note that the Court was dealing with the creation of a custom on the basis of what had been purely a treaty rule. See Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', p. 21, especially footnote 5. See also the *Paquete Habana* case, 175 US 677 (1900) and the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 153.

²⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

practice in question had to be 'in absolutely rigorous conformity' with the purported customary rule. The Court continued:

In order to deduce the existence of customary rules, the Court deems it sufficient that the conduct of states should, in general, be consistent with such rules, and that instances of state conduct inconsistent with a given rule should generally have been treated as breaches of that rule, not as indications of the recognition of a new rule.²⁸

The threshold that needs to be attained before a legally binding custom can be created will depend both upon the nature of the alleged rule and the opposition it arouses. This partly relates to the problem of ambiguity where it is not possible to point to the alleged custom with any degree of clarity, as in the *Asylum* case where a variety of conflicting and contradictory evidence had been brought forward.

On the other hand, an unsubstantiated claim by a state cannot be accepted because it would amount to unilateral law-making and compromise a reasonably impartial system of international law. If a proposition meets with a great deal of opposition then it would be an undesirable fiction to ignore this and talk of an established rule. Another relevant factor is the strength of the prior rule which is purportedly overthrown.²⁹ For example, the customary law relating to a state's sovereignty over its airspace developed very quickly in the years immediately before and during the First World War. Similarly, the principle of non-sovereignty over the space route followed by artificial satellites came into being soon after the launching of the first sputniks. Bin Cheng has argued that in such circumstances repetition is not at all necessary provided the *opinio juris* could be clearly established. Thus, 'instant' customary law is possible.³⁰

This contention that single acts may create custom has been criticised, particularly in view of the difficulties of proving customary rules any other way but through a series of usages.³¹ Nevertheless, the conclusion must be that it is the international context which plays the vital part in the creation of custom. In a society constantly faced with new situations because of the dynamics of progress, there is a clear need for a reasonably speedy method of responding to such changes by a system of prompt rule-formation. In

²⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 98; 76 ILR, p. 432.

²⁹ See D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, pp. 60–1, and Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', p. 19. See also Judge Alvarez, the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 152; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 105, and Judge Loder, the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, pp. 18, 34.

³⁰ Cheng, 'United Nations Resolutions'.

³¹ See e.g. Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 325–6.

new areas of law, customs can be quickly established by state practices by virtue of the newness of the situations involved, the lack of contrary rules to be surmounted and the overwhelming necessity to preserve a sense of regulation in international relations.

One particular analogy that has been used to illustrate the general nature of customary law was considered by de Visscher. He likened the growth of custom to the gradual formation of a road across vacant land. After an initial uncertainty as to direction, the majority of users begin to follow the same line which becomes a single path. Not long elapses before that path is transformed into a road accepted as the only regular way, even though it is not possible to state at which precise moment this latter change occurs. And so it is with the formation of a custom. De Visscher develops this idea by reflecting that just as some make heavier footprints than others due to their greater weight, the more influential states of the world mark the way with more vigour and tend to become the guarantors and defenders of the way forward.³²

The reasons why a particular state acts in a certain way are varied but are closely allied to how it perceives its interests. This in turn depends upon the power and role of the state and its international standing. Accordingly, custom should to some extent mirror the perceptions of the majority of states, since it is based upon usages which are practised by nations as they express their power and their hopes and fears. But it is inescapable that some states are more influential and powerful than others and that their activities should be regarded as of greater significance. This is reflected in international law so that custom may be created by a few states, provided those states are intimately connected with the issue at hand, whether because of their wealth and power or because of their special relationship with the subject-matter of the practice, as for example maritime nations and sea law. Law cannot be divorced from politics or power and this is one instance of that proposition.³³

The influence of the United Kingdom, for example, on the development of the law of the sea and prize law in the nineteenth century when it was at the height of its power, was predominant. A number of propositions later accepted as part of international customary law appeared this way.

³² De Visscher, *Theory and Reality*, p. 149. See also Lauterpacht, *Development of International Law*, p. 368; P. Cobbett, *Leading Cases on International Law*, 4th edn, London, 1922, p. 5, and Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 22–3.

³³ See e.g. the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 42–3; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 71–3.

Among many instances of this, one can point to navigation procedures. Similarly, the impact of the Soviet Union (now Russia) and the United States on space law has been paramount.³⁴

One can conclude by stating that for a custom to be accepted and recognised it must have the concurrence of the major powers in that particular field. A regulation regarding the breadth of the territorial sea is unlikely to be treated as law if the great maritime nations do not agree to or acquiesce in it, no matter how many landlocked states demand it. Other countries may propose ideas and institute pressure, but without the concurrence of those most interested, it cannot amount to a rule of customary law. This follows from the nature of the international system where all may participate but the views of those with greater power carry greater weight.

Accordingly, the duration and generality of a practice may take second place to the relative importance of the states precipitating the formation of a new customary rule in any given field. Universality is not required, but some correlation with power is. Some degree of continuity must be maintained but this again depends upon the context of operation and the nature of the usage.

Those elements reflect the external manifestations of a practice and establish that it is in existence and exhibited as such. That does not mean that it is law and this factor will be considered in the next subsection. But it does mean that all states who take the trouble can discover its existence. This factor of conspicuousness emphasises both the importance of the context within which the usage operates and the more significant elements of the overt act which affirms the existence of a custom.

The question is raised at this stage of how significant a failure to act is. Just how important is it when a state, or more particularly a major state, does not participate in a practice? Can it be construed as acquiescence in the performance of the usage? Or, on the other hand, does it denote indifference implying the inability of the practice to become a custom until a decision one way or the other has been made? Failures to act are in themselves just as much evidence of a state's attitudes as are actions. They similarly reflect the way in which a nation approaches its environment. Britain consistently fails to attack France, while Chad consistently fails to send a man to the moon. But does this mean that Britain recognises a

³⁴ See e.g. Cheng, 'United Nations Resolutions'; C. Christol, *The Modern International Law of Outer Space*, New York, 1982, and Christol, *Space Law: Past, Present and Future*, The Hague, 1991. See further below, chapter 10.

rule not to attack its neighbour and that Chad accepts a custom not to launch rockets to the moon? Of course, the answer is in the first instance yes, and in the second example no. Thus, a failure to act can arise from either a legal obligation not to act, or an incapacity or unwillingness in the particular circumstances to act. Indeed, it has been maintained that the continued habit of not taking actions in certain situations may lead to the formation of a legal rule.³⁵

The danger of saying that a failure to act over a long period creates a negative custom, that is a rule actually not to do it, can be shown by remarking on the absurdity of the proposition that a continual failure to act until the late 1950s is evidence of a legal rule not to send artificial satellites or rockets into space. On the other hand, where a particular rule of behaviour is established it can be argued that abstention from protest by states may amount to agreement with that rule.

In the particular circumstances of the *Lotus* case³⁶ the Permanent Court of International Justice, the predecessor of the International Court of Justice, laid down a high standard by declaring that abstention could only give rise to the recognition of a custom if it was based on a conscious duty to abstain. In other words, states had actually to be aware that they were not acting a particular way because they were under a definite obligation not to act that way. The decision has been criticised and would appear to cover categories of non-acts based on legal obligations, but not to refer to instances where, by simply not acting as against a particular rule in existence, states are tacitly accepting the legality and relevance of that rule.

It should be mentioned, however, that acquiescence must be based upon full knowledge of the rule invoked. Where a failure to take a course of action is in some way connected or influenced or accompanied by a lack of knowledge of all the relevant circumstances, then it cannot be interpreted as acquiescence.

What is state practice?

Some of the ingredients of state activities have been surveyed and attempts made to place them in some kind of relevant context. But what is state practice? Does it cover every kind of behaviour initiated by the state, or

³⁵ See e.g. Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, pp. 116–17. But cf. D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, pp. 61–3 and 88–9.

³⁶ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 153.

is it limited to actual, positive actions? To put it more simply, does it include such things as speeches, informal documents and governmental statements or is it restricted to what states actually do?

It is how states behave in practice that forms the basis of customary law, but evidence of what a state does can be obtained from numerous sources. Obvious examples include administrative acts, legislation, decisions of courts and activities on the international stage, for example treaty-making.³⁷ A state is not a living entity, but consists of governmental departments and thousands of officials, and state activity is spread throughout a whole range of national organs. There are the state's legal officers, legislative institutions, courts, diplomatic agents and political leaders. Each of these engages in activity which relates to the international field and therefore one has to examine all such material sources and more in order to discover evidence of what states do.³⁸

The obvious way to find out how countries are behaving is to read the newspapers, consult historical records, listen to what governmental authorities are saying and peruse the many official publications. There are also memoirs of various past leaders, official manuals on legal questions, diplomatic interchanges and the opinions of national legal advisors. All these methods are valuable in seeking to determine actual state practice.

In addition, one may note resolutions in the General Assembly, comments made by governments on drafts produced by the International Law Commission, decisions of the international judicial institutions, decisions of national courts, treaties and the general practice of international organisations.³⁹

³⁷ See e.g. Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 751, and *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 23–4; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 78–80.

³⁸ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1950, vol. II, pp. 368–72, and the *Interhandel* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 27. Note also Brierly's comment that not all contentions put forward on behalf of a state represent that state's settled or impartial opinion, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, p. 60. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 6, and Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', p. 2.

³⁹ The United States has produced an extensive series of publications covering its practice in international law. See the Digests of International Law produced by Wharton (1887), Moore (1906) and Whiteman (1963–70). From 1973 to 1980 an annual *Digest of US Practice in International Law* has been produced, while three composite volumes covering the years 1981–8 have appeared. The series resumed with effect from the year 2000. See also H. A. Smith, *Great Britain and the Law of Nations*, London, 2 vols., 1932–5; A. D. McNair, *International Law Opinions*, Cambridge, 3 vols., 1956; C. Parry, *British Digest of International Law*, London, 1965, and E. Lauterpacht, *British Practice in International Law*, London, 1963–7. Several yearbooks now produce sections devoted to national practice, e.g. *British Yearbook of International Law* and *Annuaire Français de Droit International*.

International organisations in fact may be instrumental in the creation of customary law. For example, the Advisory Opinion of the International Court of Justice declaring that the United Nations possessed international personality was partly based on the actual behaviour of the UN.⁴⁰ The International Law Commission has pointed out that 'records of the cumulative practice of international organisations may be regarded as evidence of customary international law with reference to states' relations to the organisations'.⁴¹ The International Court has also noted that evidence of the existence of rules and principles may be found in resolutions adopted by the General Assembly and the Security Council of the United Nations.⁴²

States' municipal laws may in certain circumstances form the basis of customary rules. In the *Scotia* case decided by the US Supreme Court in 1871,⁴³ a British ship had sunk an American vessel on the high seas. The Court held that British navigational procedures established by an Act of Parliament formed the basis of the relevant international custom since other states had legislated in virtually identical terms. Accordingly, the American vessel, in not displaying the correct lights, was at fault. The view has also been expressed that mere claims as distinct from actual physical acts cannot constitute state practice. This is based on the precept that 'until it [a state] takes enforcement action, the claim has little value as a prediction of what the state will actually do'.⁴⁴ But as has been demonstrated this is decidedly a minority view.⁴⁵ Claims and conventions of states in various contexts have been adduced as evidence of state practice and it is logical that this should be so,⁴⁶ though the weight to be attached to such claims, may, of course, vary according to the circumstances. This

⁴⁰ The *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318. See also the *Reservations to the Genocide Convention* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 15, 25; 18 ILR, p. 364.

⁴¹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1950, vol. II, pp. 368–72. See also Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', p. 12.

⁴² See the Court's advisory opinion in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 171; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 89–90.

⁴³ 14 Wallace 170 (1871). See also the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 4, 22; 22 ILR, p. 349, and the *Paquete Habana* case, 175 US 677 (1900).

⁴⁴ D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, pp. 88 and 50–1. See also Judge Read (dissenting), the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 191; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 132.

⁴⁵ Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 2–3. See also Thirlway, *International Customary Law*, p. 58.

⁴⁶ E.g. the *Asylum* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 266, 277; 17 ILR, p. 280; the *Rights of US Nationals in Morocco* case, ICJ Reports, 1952, pp. 176, 200, 209; 19 ILR, p. 255, and the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 32–3, 47 and 53; 41 ILR, p. 29. See also the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 47, 56–8, 81–8, 119–20, 135 and 161; 55 ILR, p. 238.

approach is clearly the correct one since the process of claims and counter-claims is one recognised method by which states communicate to each other their perceptions of the status of international rules and norms. In this sense they operate in the same way as physical acts. Whether *in abstracto* or with regard to a particular situation, they constitute the raw material out of which may be fashioned rules of international law.⁴⁷ It is suggested that the formulation that 'state practice covers any act or statements by a state from which views about customary law may be inferred',⁴⁸ is substantially correct. However, it should be noted that not all elements of practice are equal in their weight and the value to be given to state conduct will depend upon its nature and provenance.

Opinio juris⁴⁹

Once one has established the existence of a specified usage, it becomes necessary to consider how the state views its own behaviour. Is it to be regarded as a moral or political or legal act or statement? The *opinio juris*, or belief that a state activity is legally obligatory, is the factor which turns the usage into a custom and renders it part of the rules of international law. To put it slightly differently, states will behave a certain way because they are convinced it is binding upon them to do so.

The Permanent Court of International Justice expressed this point of view when it dealt with the *Lotus* case.⁵⁰ The issue at hand concerned a collision on the high seas (where international law applies) between the *Lotus*, a French ship, and the *Boz-Kourt*, a Turkish ship. Several people aboard the latter ship were drowned and Turkey alleged negligence by the French officer of the watch. When the *Lotus* reached Istanbul, the French officer was arrested on a charge of manslaughter and the case turned on whether Turkey had jurisdiction to try him. Among the various

⁴⁷ But see Thirlway, *International Customary Law*, pp. 58–9.

⁴⁸ Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', p. 10. This would also include omissions and silence by states: *ibid.*

⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 31–42, and D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, pp. 66–72. See also Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 753; Mendelson, 'Formation', p. 245; Bos, *Methodology*, pp. 236 ff.; P. Haggenmacher, 'Des Deux Éléments du Droit Coutumier dans la Pratique de la Cour Internationale', 91 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1985, p. 5; O. Elias, 'The Nature of the Subjective Element in Customary International Law', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 501; I. M. Lobo de Souza, 'The Role of State Consent in the Customary Process', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 521, and B. Cheng, 'Opinio Juris: A Key Concept in International Law that is Much Misunderstood' in *International Law in the Post-Cold War World* (eds. S. Yee and W. Tieya), London, 2001, p. 56.

⁵⁰ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 153.

arguments adduced, the French maintained that there existed a rule of customary law to the effect that the flag state of the accused (France) had exclusive jurisdiction in such cases and that accordingly the national state of the victim (Turkey) was barred from trying him. To justify this, France referred to the absence of previous criminal prosecutions by such states in similar situations and from this deduced tacit consent in the practice which therefore became a legal custom.

The Court rejected this and declared that even if such a practice of abstention from instituting criminal proceedings could be proved in fact, it would not amount to a custom. It held that 'only if such abstention were based on their [the states] being conscious of a duty to abstain would it be possible to speak of an international custom'.⁵¹ Thus the essential ingredient of obligation was lacking and the practice remained a practice, nothing more.

A similar approach occurred in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases.⁵² In the general process of delimiting the continental shelf of the North Sea in pursuance of oil and gas exploration, lines were drawn dividing the whole area into national spheres. However, West Germany could not agree with either Holland or Denmark over the respective boundary lines and the matter came before the International Court of Justice.

Article 6 of the Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf of 1958 provided that where agreement could not be reached, and unless special circumstances justified a different approach, the boundary line was to be determined in accordance with the principle of equidistance from the nearest points of the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea of each state is measured. This would mean a series of lines drawn at the point where Germany met Holland on the one side and Denmark on the other and projected outwards into the North Sea. However, because Germany's coastline is concave, such equidistant lines would converge and enclose a relatively small triangle of the North Sea. The Federal Republic had signed but not ratified the 1958 Geneva Convention and was therefore not bound by its terms. The question thus was whether a case could be made out that the 'equidistance-special circumstances principle' had been absorbed into customary law and was accordingly binding upon Germany.

The Court concluded in the negative and held that the provision in the Geneva Convention did not reflect an already existing custom. It was

⁵¹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 28; 4 AD, p. 159.

⁵² ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 3; 41 ILR, p. 29.

emphasised that when the International Law Commission had considered this point in the draft treaty which formed the basis of discussion at Geneva, the principle of equidistance had been proposed with considerable hesitation, somewhat on an experimental basis and not at all as an emerging rule of customary international law.⁵³ The issue then turned on whether practice subsequent to the Convention had created a customary rule. The Court answered in the negative and declared that although time was not of itself a decisive factor (only three years had elapsed before the proceedings were brought):

an indispensable requirement would be that within the period in question, short though it might be, state practice, including that of states whose interests are specially affected, should have been both extensive and virtually uniform in the sense of the provision invoked, and should moreover have occurred in such a way as to show a general recognition that a rule of law or legal obligation is involved.⁵⁴

This approach was maintained by the Court in the *Nicaragua* case⁵⁵ and express reference was made to the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases. The Court noted that:

for a new customary rule to be formed, not only must the acts concerned 'amount to a settled practice', but they must be accompanied by the *opinio juris sive necessitatis*. Either the States taking such action or other States in a position to react to it, must have behaved so that their conduct is 'evidence of a belief that this practice is rendered obligatory by the existence of a rule of law requiring it. The need for such a belief, i.e. the existence of a subjective element, is implicit in the very notion of the *opinio juris sive necessitatis*.'⁵⁶

It is thus clear that the Court has adopted and maintained a high threshold with regard to the overt proving of the subjective constituent of customary law formation.

The great problem connected with the *opinio juris* is that if it calls for behaviour in accordance with law, how can new customary rules be created since that obviously requires action different from or

⁵³ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 32–41.

⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 43. See also e.g. the *Asylum* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 266, 277; 17 ILR, p. 280, and the *Right of Passage* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 6, 42–3; 31 ILR, pp. 23, 55.

⁵⁵ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

⁵⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 108–9; 76 ILR, pp. 442–3, citing ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 44; 41 ILR, p. 73.

contrary to what until then is regarded as law? If a country claims a three-mile territorial sea in the belief that this is legal, how can the rule be changed in customary law to allow claims of, for example, twelve miles, since that cannot also be in accordance with prevailing law?⁵⁷ Obviously if one takes a restricted view of the psychological aspects, then logically the law will become stultified and this demonstrably has not happened.

Thus, one has to treat the matter in terms of a process whereby states behave in a certain way in the belief that such behaviour is law or is becoming law. It will then depend upon how other states react as to whether this process of legislation is accepted or rejected. It follows that rigid definitions as to legality have to be modified to see whether the legitimating stamp of state activity can be provided or not. If a state proclaims a twelve-mile limit to its territorial sea in the belief that although the three-mile limit has been accepted law, the circumstances are so altering that a twelve-mile limit might now be treated as becoming law, it is vindicated if other states follow suit and a new rule of customary law is established. If other states reject the proposition, then the projected rule withers away and the original rule stands, reinforced by state practice and common acceptance. As the Court itself noted in the *Nicaragua* case,⁵⁸ '[r]eliance by a State on a novel right or an unprecedented exception to the principle might, if shared in principle by other States, tend towards a modification of customary international law'. The difficulty in this kind of approach is that it is sometimes hard to pinpoint exactly when one rule supersedes another, but that is a complication inherent in the nature of custom. Change is rarely smooth but rather spasmodic.

This means taking a more flexible view of the *opinio juris* and tying it more firmly with the overt manifestations of a custom into the context of national and international behaviour. This should be done to accommodate the idea of an action which, while contrary to law, contains the germ of a new law and relates to the difficulty of actually proving that a state, in behaving a certain way, does so in the belief that it is in accordance with the law. An extreme expression of this approach is to infer or deduce the *opinio juris* from the material acts. Judge Tanaka, in his Dissenting Opinion in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, remarked that there was:

⁵⁷ See Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 32–4 for attempts made to deny or minimise the need for *opinio juris*.

⁵⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 109; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 443.

no other way than to ascertain the existence of *opinio juris* from the fact of the external existence of a certain custom and its necessity felt in the international community, rather than to seek evidence as to the subjective motives for each example of State practice.⁵⁹

However, states must be made aware that when one state takes a course of action, it does so because it regards it as within the confines of international law, and not as, for example, purely a political or moral gesture. There has to be an aspect of legality about the behaviour and the acting state will have to confirm that this is so, so that the international community can easily distinguish legal from non-legal practices. This is essential to the development and presentation of a legal framework amongst the states.⁶⁰

Faced with the difficulty in practice of proving the existence of the *opinio juris*, increasing reference has been made to conduct within international organisations. This is so particularly with regard to the United Nations. The International Court of Justice has in a number of cases utilised General Assembly resolutions as confirming the existence of the *opinio juris*, focusing on the content of the resolution or resolutions in question and the conditions of their adoption.⁶¹ The key, however, is the attitude taken by the states concerned, whether as parties to a particular treaty or as participants in the adoption of a UN resolution.⁶² The Court has also referred to major codification conventions

⁵⁹ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 176; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 171. Lauterpacht wrote that one should regard all uniform conduct of governments as evidencing the *opinio juris*, except where the conduct in question was not accompanied by such intention: *The Development of International Law*, p. 580; but cf. Cheng, 'Custom: The Future', p. 36, and Cheng, 'United Nations Resolutions', pp. 530–2.

⁶⁰ Note D'Amato's view that to become a custom, a practice has to be preceded or accompanied by the 'articulation' of a rule, which will put states on notice than an action etc. will have legal implications: *Concept of Custom*, p. 75. Cf. Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 35–6, who also puts forward his view that 'the practice of states needs to be accompanied by statements that something is already law before it can become law': such statements need not be beliefs as to the truths of the given situation, *ibid.*, p. 37. Akehurst also draws a distinction between permissive rules, which do not require express statements as to *opinio juris*, and duty-imposing rules, which do: *ibid.*, pp. 37–8.

⁶¹ See e.g. the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 254–5; 110 ILR, p. 163. See also the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 31–3; the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 102; 105 ILR, p. 226; the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 100, 101 and 106; 76 ILR, p. 349; and the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 171–2; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 89–90.

⁶² See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 99–100.

for the same purpose,⁶³ and to the work of the International Law Commission.⁶⁴

*Protest, acquiescence and change in customary law*⁶⁵

Customary law is thus established by virtue of a pattern of claim, absence of protest by states particularly interested in the matter at hand and acquiescence by other states.⁶⁶ Together with related notions such as recognition, admissions and estoppel, such conduct or abstinence from conduct forms part of a complex framework within which legal principles are created and deemed applicable to states.⁶⁷

The Chamber of the International Court in the *Gulf of Maine* case defined acquiescence as 'equivalent to tacit recognition manifested by unilateral conduct which the other party may interpret as consent' and as founded upon the principles of good faith and equity.⁶⁸ Generally, where states are seen to acquiesce⁶⁹ in the behaviour of other states without protesting against them, the assumption must be that such behaviour is accepted as legitimate.⁷⁰

Some writers have maintained that acquiescence can amount to consent to a customary rule and that the absence of protest implies agreement.

⁶³ See e.g. the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 28–32 with regard to the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention and e.g. among many cases, *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 429–30 with regard to the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969.

⁶⁴ See e.g. the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38–42 and 46; 116 ILR, pp. 1, 47–51 and 55.

⁶⁵ See H. Lauterpacht, 'Sovereignty over Submarine Areas', 27 BYIL, 1950, p. 376; I. MacGibbon, 'Some Observations on the Part of Protest in International Law', 29 BYIL, 1953, p. 293, and MacGibbon, 'Customary International Law and Acquiescence', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 115; Wolfke, *Custom*, pp. 157–65, and I. Sinclair, 'Estoppel and Acquiescence' in *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. A. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996, p. 104.

⁶⁶ See, for a good example, the decision of the International Court in the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 601; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 517, with regard to the joint sovereignty over the historic waters of the Gulf of Fonseca beyond the territorial sea of the three coastal states.

⁶⁷ See e.g. Sinclair, 'Estoppel and Acquiescence', p. 104 and below, chapter 10, p. 515.

⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 305; 71 ILR, p. 74.

⁶⁹ Note that the Court has stated that 'the idea of acquiescence . . . presupposes freedom of will', *Burkina Faso/Mali*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 597; 80 ILR, p. 459.

⁷⁰ See e.g. *Grand-Duchy of Luxembourg v. Cie. Luxembourgaise de Télédiffusion*, 91 ILR, pp. 281, 286.

In other words where a state or states take action which they declare to be legal, the silence of other states can be used as an expression of *opinio juris* or concurrence in the new legal rule. This means that actual protests are called for to break the legitimising process.⁷¹

In the *Lotus* case, the Court held that 'only if such abstention were based on their [the states] being conscious of having a duty to abstain would it be possible to speak of an international custom'.⁷² Thus, one cannot infer a rule prohibiting certain action merely because states do not indulge in that activity. But the question of not reacting when a state behaves a certain way is a slightly different one. It would seem that where a new rule is created in new fields of international law, for example space law, acquiescence by other states is to be regarded as reinforcing the rule whether it stems from actual agreement or lack of interest depending always upon the particular circumstances of the case. Acquiescence in a new rule which deviates from an established custom is more problematic.

The decision in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case⁷³ may appear to suggest that where a state acts contrary to an established customary rule and other states acquiesce in this, then that state is to be treated as not bound by the original rule. The Court noted that 'in any event the . . . rule would appear to be inapplicable as against Norway inasmuch as she had always opposed any attempt to apply it to the Norwegian coast'.⁷⁴ In other words, a state opposing the existence of a custom from its inception would not be bound by it, but the problem of one or more states seeking to dissent from recognised customs by adverse behaviour coupled with the acquiescence or non-reaction of other states remains unsettled.

States fail to protest for very many reasons. A state might not wish to give offence gratuitously or it might wish to reinforce political ties or other diplomatic and political considerations may be relevant. It could be that to protest over every single act with which a state does not agree would be an excessive requirement. It is, therefore, unrealistic to expect every state

⁷¹ See e.g. MacGibbon, 'Customary International Law', p. 131, and H. S. McDougal *et al.*, *Studies in World Public Order*, New Haven, 1960, pp. 763–72.

⁷² PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 28; 4 ILR, p. 159.

⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86.

⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 131; 18 ILR, p. 93. See also the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 26–7; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 55–6, and the *Asylum* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 266, 277–8; 17 ILR, pp. 280, 285.

to react to every single act of every other state. If one accepted that a failure to protest validated a derogation from an established custom in every case then scores of special relationships would emerge between different states depending upon acquiescence and protest. In many cases a protest might be purely formal or part of diplomatic manoeuvring designed to exert pressure in a totally different field and thus not intended to alter legal relationships.

Where a new rule which contradicts a prior rule is maintained by a large number of states, the protests of a few states would not overrule it, and the abstention from reaction by other countries would merely reinforce it. Constant protest on the part of a particular state when reinforced by the acquiescence of other states might create a recognised exception to the rule, but it will depend to a great extent on the facts of the situation and the views of the international community. Behaviour contrary to a custom contains within itself the seeds of a new rule and if it is endorsed by other nations, the previous law will disappear and be replaced, or alternatively there could be a period of time during which the two customs co-exist until one of them is generally accepted,⁷⁵ as was the position for many years with regard to the limits of the territorial sea.⁷⁶ It follows from the above, therefore, that customary rules are binding upon all states except for such states as have dissented from the start of that custom.⁷⁷ This raises the question of new states and custom, for the logic of the traditional approach would be for such states to be bound by all existing customs as at the date of independence. The opposite view, based upon the consent theory of law, would permit such states to choose which customs to adhere to at that stage, irrespective of the attitude of other states.⁷⁸ However, since such an approach could prove highly disruptive, the proviso is often made that by entering into relations without reservation with other states, new states signify their acceptance of the totality of international law.⁷⁹

⁷⁵ See also protests generally: Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 38–42.

⁷⁶ See below, chapter 11, p. 568.

⁷⁷ See e.g. the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 38, 130; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 67, 137, and *The Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, vol. I, pp. 25–6. See also T. Stein, 'The Approach of the Different Drummer: The Principle of the Persistent Objector in International Law', 26 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1985, p. 457, and J. Charney, 'The Persistent Objector Rule and the Development of Customary International Law', 56 BYIL, 1985, p. 1.

⁷⁸ See e.g. Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, p. 129. ⁷⁹ *Ibid.*

*Regional and local custom*⁸⁰

It is possible for rules to develop which will bind only a set group of states, such as those in Latin America,⁸¹ or indeed just two states.⁸² Such an approach may be seen as part of the need for 'respect for regional legal traditions'.⁸³

In the *Asylum* case,⁸⁴ the International Court of Justice discussed the Colombian claim of a regional or local custom peculiar to the Latin American states, which would validate its position over the granting of asylum. The Court declared that the 'party which relies on a custom of this kind must prove that this custom is established in such a manner that it has become binding on the other party'.⁸⁵ It found that such a custom could not be proved because of uncertain and contradictory evidence.

In such cases, the standard of proof required, especially as regards the obligation accepted by the party against whom the local custom is maintained, is higher than in cases where an ordinary or general custom is alleged.

In the *Right of Passage over Indian Territory* case,⁸⁶ Portugal claimed that there existed a right of passage over Indian territory as between the Portuguese enclaves, and this was upheld by the International Court of Justice over India's objections that no local custom could be established between only two states. The Court declared that it was satisfied that there had in the past existed a constant and uniform practice allowing free passage and that the 'practice was accepted as law by the parties and has given rise to a right and a correlative obligation'.⁸⁷ More generally, the Court stated that 'Where therefore the Court finds a practice clearly established between two States which was accepted by the Parties as

⁸⁰ See Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 29–31; Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 105; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 762; D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, chapter 8; G. Cohen-Jonathan, 'La Coutume Locale', AFDI, 1961, p. 133, and Wolfke, *Custom*, pp. 88–90. Local custom is sometimes referred to as regional or special custom.

⁸¹ See e.g. H. Gros Espiel, 'La Doctrine du Droit International en Amérique Latine avant la Première Conférence Panaméricaine', 3 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2001, p. 1.

⁸² Note the claim by Honduras in the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 597; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 513 that a 'trilateral local custom of the nature of a convention' could establish a condominium arrangement.

⁸³ See the *Eritrea/Yemen (Maritime Delimitation)* case, 119 ILR, pp. 417, 448.

⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 266; 17 ILR, p. 280.

⁸⁵ ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 276; 17 ILR, p. 284. ⁸⁶ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 6; 31 ILR, p. 23.

⁸⁷ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 40; 31 ILR, p. 53. See Wolfke, *Custom*, p. 90.

governing the relations between them, the Court must attribute decisive effect to that practice for the purpose of determining their specific rights and obligations. Such a particular practice must prevail over any general rules.⁸⁸

Such local customs therefore depend upon a particular activity by one state being accepted by the other state (or states) as an expression of a legal obligation or right. While in the case of a general customary rule the process of consensus is at work so that a majority or a substantial minority of interested states can be sufficient to create a new custom, a local custom needs the positive acceptance of both (or all) parties to the rule.⁸⁹ This is because local customs are an exception to the general nature of customary law, which involves a fairly flexible approach to law-making by all states, and instead constitutes a reminder of the former theory of consent whereby states are bound only by what they assent to. Exceptions may prove the rule, but they need greater proof than the rule to establish themselves.

Treaties⁹⁰

In contrast with the process of creating law through custom, treaties (or international conventions) are a more modern and more deliberate method.⁹¹ Article 38 refers to 'international conventions, whether general or particular, establishing rules expressly recognised by the contracting states'. Treaties will be considered in more detail in chapter 16 but in this survey of the sources of international law reference must be made to the role of international conventions.

Treaties are known by a variety of differing names, ranging from Conventions, International Agreements, Pacts, General Acts, Charters, through to Statutes, Declarations and Covenants.⁹² All these terms refer to a similar transaction, the creation of written agreements whereby the states participating bind themselves legally to act in a particular way or to set up particular relations between themselves. A series of conditions and

⁸⁸ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 44. ⁸⁹ See Cohen-Jonathan, 'La Coutume Locale'.

⁹⁰ See generally A. D. McNair, *The Law of Treaties*, Oxford, 1961; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 736, and A. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2007. See further below, chapter 16.

⁹¹ *Oppenheim's International Law* emphasises that 'not only is custom the original source of international law, but treaties are a source the validity and modalities of which themselves derive from custom', p. 31.

⁹² See e.g. UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 404.

arrangements are laid out which the parties oblige themselves to carry out.⁹³

The obligatory nature of treaties is founded upon the customary international law principle that agreements are binding (*pacta sunt servanda*). Treaties may be divided into 'law-making' treaties, which are intended to have universal or general relevance, and 'treaty-contracts', which apply only as between two or a small number of states. Such a distinction is intended to reflect the general or local applicability of a particular treaty and the range of obligations imposed. It cannot be regarded as hard and fast and there are many grey areas of overlap and uncertainty.⁹⁴

Treaties are express agreements and are a form of substitute legislation undertaken by states. They bear a close resemblance to contracts in a superficial sense in that the parties create binding obligations for themselves, but they have a nature of their own which reflects the character of the international system. The number of treaties entered into has expanded over the last century, witness the growing number of volumes of the United Nations Treaty Series or the United Kingdom Treaty Series. They fulfil a vital role in international relations.

As governmental controls increase and the technological and communications revolutions affect international life, the number of issues which require some form of inter-state regulation multiplies.

For many writers, treaties constitute the most important sources of international law as they require the express consent of the contracting parties. Treaties are thus seen as superior to custom, which is regarded in any event as a form of tacit agreement.⁹⁵ As examples of important treaties one may mention the Charter of the United Nations, the Geneva Conventions on the treatment of prisoners and the protection of civilians and the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations. All kinds of agreements exist, ranging from the regulation of outer space exploration to the control of drugs and the creation of international financial and development institutions. It would be impossible to telephone abroad or post a

⁹³ See the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969. Article 2(1)a defines a treaty for the purposes of the Convention as 'an international agreement concluded between states in written form and governed by international law, whether embodied in a single instrument or in two or more related instruments and whatever its particular designation'. See further below, p. 117 with regard to non-binding international agreements.

⁹⁴ See Virally, 'Sources', p. 126; Sørensen, *Les Sources*, pp. 58 ff., and Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, pp. 93–5.

⁹⁵ Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, pp. 91–113. See also R. Müllerson, 'Sources of International Law: New Tendencies in Soviet Thinking', 83 AJIL, 1989, pp. 494, 501–9, and Danilenko, 'Theory', p. 9.

letter overseas or take an aeroplane to other countries without the various international agreements that have laid down the necessary, recognised conditions of operation.

It follows from the essence of an international treaty that, like a contract, it sets down a series of propositions which are then regarded as binding upon the parties. How then is it possible to treat conventions as sources of international law, over and above the obligations imposed upon the contracting parties? It is in this context that one can understand the term 'law-making treaties'. They are intended to have an effect *generally*, not restrictively, and they are to be contrasted with those treaties which merely regulate limited issues between a few states. Law-making treaties are those agreements whereby states elaborate their perception of international law upon any given topic or establish new rules which are to guide them for the future in their international conduct. Such law-making treaties, of necessity, require the participation of a large number of states to emphasise this effect, and may produce rules that will bind all.⁹⁶ They constitute normative treaties, agreements that prescribe rules of conduct to be followed. Examples of such treaties may include the Antarctic Treaty and the Genocide Convention. There are also many agreements which declare the existing law or codify existing customary rules, such as the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations of 1961.

Parties that do not sign and ratify the particular treaty in question are not bound by its terms. This is a general rule and was illustrated in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases⁹⁷ where West Germany had not ratified the relevant Convention and was therefore under no obligation to heed its terms. However, where treaties reflect customary law then non-parties are bound, not because it is a treaty provision but because it reaffirms a rule or rules of customary international law. Similarly, non-parties may come to accept that provisions in a particular treaty can generate customary law, depending always upon the nature of the agreement, the number of participants and other relevant factors.

⁹⁶ But this may depend upon the attitude of other states. This does not constitute a form of international legislation: see e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 32; the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 185; 16 AD, p. 318, and the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 56; 49 ILR, p. 2. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 12–14, and R. Baxter, 'Treaties and Custom', 129 HR, 1970, p. 27. See also O. Schachter, 'Entangled Treaty and Custom' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 717, and Y. Dinstein, 'The Interaction Between Customary International Law and Treaties', 322 HR, 2006, p. 247.

⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 25; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 54.

The possibility that a provision in a treaty may constitute the basis of a rule which, when coupled with the *opinio juris*, can lead to the creation of a binding custom governing all states, not just those party to the original treaty, was considered by the International Court of Justice in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases⁹⁸ and regarded as one of the recognised methods of formulating new rules of customary international law. The Court, however, declared that the particular provision had to be 'of a fundamentally norm-creating character',⁹⁹ that is, capable of forming the basis of a general rule of law. What exactly this amounts to will probably vary according to the time and place, but it does confirm that treaty provisions may lead to custom providing other states, parties and non-parties to the treaty fulfil the necessary conditions of compatible behaviour and *opinio juris*. It has been argued that this possibility may be extended so that generalisable treaty provisions may of themselves, without the requirement to demonstrate the *opinio juris* and with little passage of time, generate *ipso facto* customary rules.¹⁰⁰ This, while recognising the importance of treaties, particularly in the human rights field, containing potential norm-creating provisions, is clearly going too far. The danger would be of a small number of states legislating for all, unless dissenting states actually entered into contrary treaties.¹⁰¹ This would constitute too radical a departure for the current process of law-formation within the international community.

It is now established that even where a treaty rule comes into being covering the same ground as a customary rule, the latter will not be simply absorbed within the former but will maintain its separate existence. The Court in the *Nicaragua* case¹⁰² did not accept the argument of the US that the norms of customary international law concerned with self-defence had been 'subsumed' and 'supervened' by article 51 of the United Nations Charter. It was emphasised that 'even if a treaty norm and a customary norm relevant to the present dispute were to have exactly the

⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 41; 41 ILR, p. 71. The Court stressed that this method of creating new customs was not to be lightly regarded as having been attained, *ibid*.

⁹⁹ But see the minority opinions, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 56, 156–8, 163, 169, 172–80, 197–200, 221–32 and 241–7; 41 ILR, p. 85. See also the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 295; 71 ILR, pp. 74, 122, and the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 29–34; 81 ILR, pp. 239, 261–6.

¹⁰⁰ See D'Amato, *Concept of Custom*, p. 104, and D'Amato, 'The Concept of Human Rights in International Law', 82 *Columbia Law Review*, 1982, pp. 1110, 1129–47. See also Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source', pp. 42–52.

¹⁰¹ D'Amato, 'Concept of Human Rights', p. 1146.

¹⁰² ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

same content, this would not be a reason for the Court to hold that the incorporation of the customary norm into treaty law must deprive the customary norm of its applicability as distinct from the treaty norm.¹⁰³ The Court concluded that 'it will therefore be clear that customary international law continues to exist and to apply separately from international treaty law, even where the two categories of law have an identical content'.¹⁰⁴ The effect of this in the instant case was that the Court was able to examine the rule as established under customary law, whereas due to an American reservation, it was unable to analyse the treaty-based obligation.

Of course, two rules with the same content may be subject to different principles with regard to their interpretation and application; thus the approach of the Court as well as being theoretically correct is of practical value also. In many cases, such dual source of existence of a rule may well suggest that the two versions are not in fact identical, as in the case of self-defence under customary law and article 51 of the Charter, but it will always depend upon the particular circumstances.¹⁰⁵

Certain treaties attempt to establish a 'regime' which will, of necessity, also extend to non-parties.¹⁰⁶ The United Nations Charter, for example, in its creation of a definitive framework for the preservation of international peace and security, declares in article 2(6) that 'the organisation shall ensure that states which are not members of the United Nations act in accordance with these Principles [listed in article 2] so far as may be necessary for the maintenance of international peace and security'. One can also point to the 1947 General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) which set up a common code of conduct in international trade and has had an important effect on non-party states as well, being now transmuted into the World Trade Organisation.

On the same theme, treaties may be constitutive in that they create international institutions and act as constitutions for them, outlining their proposed powers and duties.

'Treaty-contracts' on the other hand are not law-making instruments in themselves since they are between only small numbers of states and on a limited topic, but may provide evidence of customary rules. For example, a series of bilateral treaties containing a similar rule may be evidence of the existence of that rule in customary law, although this proposition needs to

¹⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 94–5; 76 ILR, pp. 428–9. See also W. Czaplinski, 'Sources of International Law in the *Nicaragua* Case', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 151.

¹⁰⁴ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 96; 76 ILR, p. 430. ¹⁰⁵ See further below, chapter 20, p. 1131.

¹⁰⁶ See further below, chapter 16, p. 928.

be approached with some caution in view of the fact that bilateral treaties by their very nature often reflect discrete circumstances.¹⁰⁷

General principles of law¹⁰⁸

In any system of law, a situation may very well arise where the court in considering a case before it realises that there is no law covering exactly that point, neither parliamentary statute nor judicial precedent. In such instances the judge will proceed to deduce a rule that will be relevant, by analogy from already existing rules or directly from the general principles that guide the legal system, whether they be referred to as emanating from justice, equity or considerations of public policy. Such a situation is perhaps even more likely to arise in international law because of the relative underdevelopment of the system in relation to the needs with which it is faced.

There are fewer decided cases in international law than in a municipal system and no method of legislating to provide rules to govern new situations.¹⁰⁹ It is for such a reason that the provision of 'the general principles of law recognised by civilised nations'¹¹⁰ was inserted into article 38 as a source of law, to close the gap that might be uncovered in international law and solve this problem which is known legally as *non liquet*.¹¹¹ The

¹⁰⁷ See further below, p. 686, with regard to extradition treaties and below, p. 837, with regard to bilateral investment treaties.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. B. Cheng, *General Principles of Law as Applied by International Courts and Tribunals*, London, 1953; A. D. McNair, 'The General Principles of Law Recognised by Civilised Nations', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 1; H. Lauterpacht, *Private Law Sources and Analogies of International Law*, London, 1927; G. Herczegh, *General Principles of Law and the International Legal Order*, Budapest, 1969; O. Schachter, *International Law in Theory and Practice*, Dordrecht, 1991, pp. 50–5; O. Corten, *L'Utilisation du 'Raisonnable' par le Juge International*, Brussels, 1997; B. Vitanyi, 'Les Positions Doctrinales Concernant le Sens de la Notion de "Principes Généraux de Droit Reconnus par les Nations Civilisées"', 86 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1982, p. 48; H. Waldock, 'General Course on Public International Law', 106 HR, 1962, p. 54; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 764; Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 108; M. Sørensen, 'Principes de Droit International', 101 HR, 1960, p. 16, and V. Degan, 'General Principles of Law', 3 Finnish YIL, 1992, p. 1.

¹⁰⁹ Note that the International Court has regarded the terms 'principles' and 'rules' as essentially the same within international law: the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 288–90. Introducing the adjective 'general', however, shifts the meaning to a broader concept.

¹¹⁰ The additional clause relating to recognition by 'civilised nations' is regarded today as redundant: see e.g. Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 769.

¹¹¹ See e.g. J. Stone, *Of Law and Nations*, London, 1974, chapter 3; H. Lauterpacht, 'Some Observations on the Prohibition of *Non Liquet* and the Completeness of the Legal Order',

question of gaps in the system is an important one. It is important to appreciate that while there may not always be an immediate and obvious rule applicable to every international situation, 'every international situation is capable of being determined *as a matter of law*'.¹¹²

There are various opinions as to what the general principles of law concept is intended to refer. Some writers regard it as an affirmation of Natural Law concepts, which are deemed to underlie the system of international law and constitute the method for testing the validity of the positive (i.e. man-made) rules.¹¹³ Other writers, particularly positivists, treat it as a sub-heading under treaty and customary law and incapable of adding anything new to international law unless it reflects the consent of states. Soviet writers like Tunkin subscribed to this approach and regarded the 'general principles of law' as reiterating the fundamental precepts of international law, for example, the law of peaceful co-existence, which have already been set out in treaty and custom law.¹¹⁴

Between these two approaches, most writers are prepared to accept that the general principles do constitute a separate source of law but of fairly limited scope, and this is reflected in the decisions of the Permanent Court of International Justice and the International Court of Justice. It is not clear, however, in all cases, whether what is involved is a general principle of law appearing in municipal systems or a general principle of international law. But perhaps this is not a terribly serious problem since both municipal legal concepts and those derived from existing international practice can be defined as falling within the recognised catchment area.¹¹⁵

Symbolae Verzijl, 1958, p. 196; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 704; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice', BYIL, 1988, p. 76, and Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 44, and P. Weil, 'The Court Cannot Conclude Definitively . . . ? *Non Liquet* Revisited', 36 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1997, p. 109. See also the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 46; 41 ILR, p. 29, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 135; 76 ILR, p. 349.

¹¹² *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 13. See, however, the conclusion of the International Court that it was unable to state whether there was a rule of international law prohibiting or permitting the threat or use of nuclear weapons by a state in self-defence where its very survival was at stake: the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 244; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 194. Cf. the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Higgins, *ibid.*; 110 ILR, pp. 532 ff. See also *Eritrea/Yemen* (First Phase), 114 ILR, pp. 1, 119 and 121–2.

¹¹³ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *Private Law Sources*. See also Waldock, 'General Course', p. 54; C. W. Jenks, *The Common Law of Mankind*, London, 1958, p. 169, and Judge Tanaka (dissenting), *South-West Africa* case, (Second Phase), ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 6, 294–9; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 455–9.

¹¹⁴ Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, chapter 7.

¹¹⁵ See Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 16, and Virally, 'Sources', pp. 144–8.

While the reservoir from which one can draw contains the legal operations of 190 or so states, it does not follow that judges have to be experts in every legal system. There are certain common themes that run through the many different orders. Anglo-American common law has influenced a number of states throughout the world, as have the French and Germanic systems. There are many common elements in the law in Latin America, and most Afro-Asian states have borrowed heavily from the European experience in their efforts to modernise the structure administering the state and westernise economic and other enterprises.¹¹⁶

Reference will now be made to some of the leading cases in this field to illustrate how this problem has been addressed.

In the *Chorzów Factory* case in 1928,¹¹⁷ which followed the seizure of a nitrate factory in Upper Silesia by Poland, the Permanent Court of International Justice declared that 'it is a general conception of law that every violation of an engagement involves an obligation to make reparation'. The Court also regarded it as:

a principle of international law that the reparation of a wrong may consist in an indemnity corresponding to the damage which the nationals of the injured state have suffered as a result of the act which is contrary to international law.

The most fertile fields, however, for the implementation of municipal law analogies have been those of procedure, evidence and the machinery of the judicial process. In the *German Settlers in Poland* case,¹¹⁸ the Court, approaching the matter from the negative point of view,¹¹⁹ declared that 'private rights acquired under existing law do not cease on a change of sovereignty . . . It can hardly be maintained that, although the law survived, private rights acquired under it perished. Such a contention

¹¹⁶ See generally, R. David and J. Brierley, *Major Legal Systems in the World Today*, 2nd edn, London, 1978. Note that the Tribunal in *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia* stated that while a practice or legal provisions common to a number of nations would be an important source of international law, the French concepts of administrative unilateral acts or administrative contracts were not such practices or legal provisions: 89 ILR, pp. 366, 461.

¹¹⁷ PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928, p. 29; 4 AD, p. 258. See also the Chile–United States Commission decision with regard to the deaths of Letelier and Moffitt: 31 ILM, 1982, pp. 1, 9; 88 ILR, p. 727.

¹¹⁸ PCIJ, Series B, No. 6, p. 36.

¹¹⁹ See also the *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 3, 47; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 280–1, for a statement that the notion of *actio popularis* was not part of international law as such nor able to be regarded as imported by the concept of general principles of law.

is based on no principle and would be contrary to an almost universal opinion and practice.¹²⁰ The International Court of Justice in the *Corfu Channel* case,¹²¹ when referring to circumstantial evidence, pointed out that ‘this indirect evidence is admitted in all systems of law and its use is recognised by international decisions’. International judicial reference has also been made to the concept of *res judicata*, that is that the decision in the circumstances is final, binding and without appeal.¹²²

In the *Administrative Tribunal* case,¹²³ the Court dealt with the problem of the dismissal of members of the United Nations Secretariat staff and whether the General Assembly had the right to refuse to give effect to awards to them made by the relevant Tribunal. In giving its negative reply, the Court emphasised that:

according to a well-established and generally recognised principle of law, a judgment rendered by such a judicial body is *res judicata* and has binding force between the parties to the dispute.¹²⁴

The question of *res judicata* was discussed in some detail in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Serbia and Montenegro)* case,¹²⁵ where the issue focused on the meaning of the 1996 decision of the Court rejecting preliminary objections to jurisdiction.¹²⁶ The Court emphasised that the principle ‘signifies that the decisions of the Court are not only binding on the parties, but are final, in the sense that they cannot be reopened by the parties as regards the issues that have been determined, save by procedures, of an exceptional nature, specially laid down for that purpose. That principle signifies that the decisions of the Court are not

¹²⁰ See also the *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, p. 42, and the *Free Zones of Upper Savoy and the District of Gex* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 46, p. 167.

¹²¹ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 18; 16 AD, pp. 155, 157.

¹²² The *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 248.

¹²³ ICJ Reports, 1954, p. 47; 21 ILR, p. 310.

¹²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1954, p. 53; 21 ILR, p. 314, and the *Laguna del Desierto (Argentina/Chile)* case, 113 ILR, pp. 1, 43, where it was stated that ‘A judgment having the authority of *res judicata* is judicially binding on the Parties to the dispute. This is a fundamental principle of the law of nations repeatedly invoked in the jurisprudence, which regards the authority of *res judicata* as a universal and absolute principle of international law.’ See also *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia*, 89 ILR, pp. 366, 558; Cheng, *General Principles*, chapter 17; S. Rosenne, *The Law and Practice of the International Court, 1920–2005*, 4th edn, Leiden, 2006, pp. 1598 ff.; M. Shahabuddeen, *Precedent in the International Court*, Cambridge, 1996, pp. 30 and 168, and I. Scobbie, ‘*Res Judicata*, Precedent and the International Court’, 20 Australian YIL, 2000, p. 299.

¹²⁵ ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 113. ¹²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 595; 115 ILR, p. 110.

only binding on the parties, but are final, in the sense that they cannot be reopened by the parties as regards the issues that have been determined, save by procedures, of an exceptional nature, specially laid down for that purpose.¹²⁷ The Court noted that two purposes, one general and one specific, underpinned the principle of *res judicata*, internationally as well as nationally. The first referred to the stability of legal relations that requires that litigation come to an end. The second was that it is in the interest of each party that an issue which has already been adjudicated in favour of that party not be argued again. It was emphasised that depriving a litigant of the benefit of a judgment it had already obtained must in general be seen as a breach of the principles governing the legal settlement of disputes. The Court noted that the principle applied equally to preliminary objections judgments and merits judgments and that since jurisdiction had been established by virtue of the 1996 judgment, it was not open to a party to assert in current proceedings that, at the date the earlier judgment was given, the Court had no power to give it, because one of the parties could now be seen to have been unable to come before it. This would be to call in question the force as *res judicata* of the operative clause of the judgment.¹²⁸

Further, the Court in the preliminary objections phase of the *Right of Passage* case¹²⁹ stated that:

it is a rule of law generally accepted, as well as one acted upon in the past by the Court, that, once the Court has been validly seized of a dispute, unilateral action by the respondent state in terminating its Declaration [i.e. accepting the jurisdiction of the Court], in whole or in part, cannot divest the Court of jurisdiction.

The Court has also considered the principle of estoppel which provides that a party that has acquiesced in a particular situation cannot then proceed to challenge it. In the *Temple* case¹³⁰ the International Court of Justice applied the doctrine, but in the *Serbian Loans* case¹³¹ in 1929, in which French bondholders were demanding payment in gold francs as against paper money upon a series of Serbian loans, the Court declared the principle inapplicable.

As the International Court noted in the *ELSI* case,¹³² there were limitations upon the process of inferring an estoppel in all circumstances, since

¹²⁷ *Ibid.*, at para. 115. ¹²⁸ *Ibid.*, at paras. 116–23.

¹²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1957, pp. 125, 141–2; 24 ILR, pp. 840, 842–3.

¹³⁰ ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 23, 31 and 32; 33 ILR, pp. 48, 62, 69–70.

¹³¹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 20; 5 AD, p. 466.

¹³² ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 15, 44; 84 ILR, pp. 311, 350.

‘although it cannot be excluded that an estoppel could in certain circumstances arise from a silence when something ought to have been said, there are obvious difficulties in constructing an estoppel from a mere failure to mention a matter at a particular point in somewhat desultory diplomatic exchanges’.¹³³ The meaning of estoppel was confirmed in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*,¹³⁴ where the Court emphasised that ‘An estoppel would only arise if by its acts or declarations Cameroon had consistently made it fully clear that it had agreed to settle the boundary dispute submitted to the Court by bilateral avenues alone. It would further be necessary that, by relying on such an attitude, Nigeria had changed position to its own detriment or had suffered some prejudice.’

Another example of a general principle was provided by the Arbitration Tribunal in the *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia* case,¹³⁵ where it was stated that ‘the full compensation of prejudice, by awarding to the injured party the *damnum emergens* and *lucrum cessans* is a principle common to the main systems of municipal law, and therefore, a general principle of law which may be considered as a source of international law’. Another principle would be that of respect for acquired rights.¹³⁶ One crucial general principle of international law is that of *pacta sunt servanda*, or the idea that international agreements are binding. The law of treaties rests inexorably upon this principle since the whole concept of binding international agreements can only rest upon the presupposition that such instruments are commonly accepted as possessing that quality.¹³⁷

Perhaps the most important general principle, underpinning many international legal rules, is that of good faith.¹³⁸ This principle is enshrined

¹³³ See also the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, pp. 52 ff.; 6 AD, pp. 95, 100–2; the decision of the Eritrea/Ethiopia Boundary Commission of 13 April 2002, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 35–6; and the *Saiga* (No. 2) case, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 230; Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 615, and H. Thirlway, ‘The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1960–89 (Part One)’, 60 BYIL, 1989, pp. 4, 29. See also below, chapter 10, p. 515.

¹³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 303. ¹³⁵ 89 ILR, pp. 366, 504.

¹³⁶ See, for example, the *German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926, p. 22; *Starrett Housing Corporation v. Iran* 85 ILR p. 34; the *Shufeld* claim, 5 AD, p. 179, and *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia* 89 ILR, pp. 366, 496. See further below, p. 830.

¹³⁷ See Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 591–2, and McNair, *Law of Treaties*, vol. I, chapter 30. See also article 26 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, and *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia* 89 ILR, pp. 366, 495–7.

¹³⁸ *Oppenheim’s International Law* notes that this is ‘of overriding importance’, p. 38. See E. Zoller, *Bonne Foi en Droit International Public*, Paris, 1977; R. Kolb, *La Bonne Foi en Droit International Public*, Paris, 2000; Thirlway, ‘Law and Procedure of the ICJ (Part One)’ pp. 3, 7 ff., and Thirlway, ‘Supplement’, p. 7; and G. Fitzmaurice, *The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice*, Cambridge, 1986, vol. I, p. 183 and vol. II, p. 609.

in the United Nations Charter, which provides in article 2(2) that 'all Members, in order to ensure to all of them the rights and benefits resulting from membership, shall fulfil in good faith the obligations assumed by them in accordance with the present Charter', and the elaboration of this provision in the Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations and Co-operation among States adopted by the General Assembly in resolution 2625 (XXV), 1970, referred to the obligations upon states to fulfil in good faith their obligations resulting from international law generally, including treaties. It therefore constitutes an indispensable part of the rules of international law generally.¹³⁹

The International Court declared in the *Nuclear Tests* cases¹⁴⁰ that:

One of the basic principles governing the creation and performance of legal obligations, whatever their source, is the principle of good faith. Trust and confidence are inherent in international co-operation, in particular in an age when this co-operation in many fields is becoming increasingly essential. Just as the very rule of *pacta sunt servanda* in the law of treaties is based on good faith, so also is the binding character of an international obligation assumed by unilateral obligation.

Nevertheless, the Court has made the point that good faith as a concept is 'not in itself a source of obligation where none would otherwise exist'.¹⁴¹ The principle of good faith, therefore, is a background principle informing and shaping the observance of existing rules of international law and in addition constraining the manner in which those rules may legitimately be exercised.¹⁴² As the International Court has noted, the principle of good faith relates 'only to the fulfilment of existing obligations'.¹⁴³ A further principle to be noted is that of *ex injuria jus non oritur*, which

¹³⁹ See also Case T-115/94, *Opel Austria GmbH v. Republic of Austria*, 22 January 1997.

¹⁴⁰ ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 267; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 412.

¹⁴¹ The *Border and Transborder Armed Actions* case (*Nicaragua v. Honduras*), ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 105; 84 ILR, p. 218. See also Judge Ajibolo's Separate Opinion in the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 71–4; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 69–72, and the statement by the Inter-American Court of Human Rights in the *Re-introduction of the Death Penalty in Peru* case, 16 *Human Rights Law Journal*, 1995, pp. 9, 13.

¹⁴² See also the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 33; 55 ILR, pp. 238, 268; the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 46–7; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 76; the *Lac Lannoux* case, 24 ILR, p. 119, and the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 264 ff.; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 214–15. Note also Principles 19 and 27 of the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992, 31 ILM, 1992, p. 876.

¹⁴³ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 304.

posits that facts flowing from wrongful conduct cannot determine the law.¹⁴⁴

Thus it follows that it is the Court which has the discretion as to which principles of law to apply in the circumstances of the particular case under consideration, and it will do this upon the basis of the inability of customary and treaty law to provide the required solution. In this context, one must consider the *Barcelona Traction* case¹⁴⁵ between Belgium and Spain. The International Court of Justice relied heavily upon the municipal law concept of the limited liability company and emphasised that if the Court were to decide the case in disregard of the relevant institutions of municipal law it would, without justification, invite serious legal difficulties. It would lose touch with reality, for there are no corresponding institutions of international law to which the Court could resort.¹⁴⁶

However, international law did not refer to the municipal law of a particular state, but rather to the rules generally accepted by municipal legal systems which, in this case, recognise the idea of the limited company.

*Equity and international law*¹⁴⁷

Apart from the recourse to the procedures and institutions of municipal legal systems to reinforce international law, it is also possible to see in a

¹⁴⁴ See e.g. the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 76; 116 ILR, p. 1, and the *Brcko* case, 36 ILM, 1997, pp. 396, 422.

¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1970, p. 3; 46 ILR, p. 178.

¹⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1970, p. 37; 46 ILR, p. 211. See also generally the *Abu Dhabi* arbitration, 1 ICLQ, 1952, p. 247; 18 ILR, p. 44, and *Texaco v. Libya* 53 ILR, p. 389.

¹⁴⁷ See M. Akehurst, 'Equity and General Principles of Law', 25 ICLQ, 1976, p. 801; B. Cheng, 'Justice and Equity in International Law', 8 *Current Legal Problems*, 1955, p. 185; V. Degan, *L'Équité et le Droit International*, Paris, 1970; C. de Visscher, *De l'Équité dans le Règlement Arbitral ou Judiciaire des Litiges de Droit International Public*, Paris, 1972; E. Lauterpacht, 'Equity, Evasion, Equivocation and Evolution in International Law', *Proceedings of the American Branch of the ILA*, 1977–8, p. 33, and E. Lauterpacht, *Aspects of the Administration of International Justice*, Cambridge, 1991, pp. 117–52; R. Y. Jennings, 'Equity and Equitable Principles', *Annuaire Suisse de Droit International*, 1986, p. 38; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 43; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 13; M. Miyoshi, *Considerations of Equity in the Settlement of Territorial and Boundary Disputes*, The Hague, 1993; S. Rosenne, 'Equitable Principles and the Compulsory Jurisdiction of International Tribunals', *Festschrift für Rudolf Bindschedler*, Berne, 1980, p. 410, and Rosenne, 'The Position of the International Court of Justice on the Foundations of the Principle of Equity in International Law' in *Forty Years International Court of Justice: Jurisdiction, Equality and Equity* (eds. A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk), Dordrecht, 1988, p. 108; Pirotte, 'La Notion d'Équité dans la Jurisprudence Récente de la CIJ', 77 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1973, p. 131; Chattopadhyay, 'Equity in International Law: Its Growth and Development',

number of cases references to equity¹⁴⁸ as a set of principles constituting the values of the system. The most famous decision on these lines was that of Judge Hudson in the *Diversion of Water from the Meuse* case¹⁴⁹ in 1937 regarding a dispute between Holland and Belgium. Hudson pointed out that what are regarded as principles of equity have long been treated as part of international law and applied by the courts. 'Under article 38 of the Statute', he declared, 'if not independently of that article, the Court has some freedom to consider principles of equity as part of the international law which it must apply.' However, one must be very cautious in interpreting this, although on the broadest level it is possible to see equity (on an analogy with domestic law) as constituting a creative charge in legal development, producing the dynamic changes in the system rendered inflexible by the strict application of rules.¹⁵⁰

The concept of equity¹⁵¹ has been referred to in several cases. In the *Rann of Kutch Arbitration* between India and Pakistan in 1968¹⁵² the Tribunal agreed that equity formed part of international law and that accordingly the parties could rely on such principles in the presentation of their cases.¹⁵³ The International Court of Justice in the *North*

5 *Georgia Journal of International and Comparative Law*, 1975, p. 381; R. Lapidoth, 'Equity in International Law', 22 *Israel Law Review*, 1987, p. 161; Schachter, *International Law*, p. 49; A. V. Lowe, 'The Role of Equity in International Law', 12 *Australian YIL*, 1992, p. 54; P. Weil, 'L'Équité dans la Jurisprudence de la Cour Internationale de Justice' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 121; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 723; Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure of the ICJ (Part One)', p. 49, and Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 26. Note especially Judge Weeramantry's study of equity in the *Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 38, 211; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 579.

¹⁴⁸ Equity generally may be understood in the contexts of adapting law to particular areas or choosing between several different interpretations of the law (equity *infra legem*), filling gaps in the law (equity *praetor legem*) and as a reason for not applying unjust laws (equity *contra legem*): see Akehurst, 'Equity', and Judge Weeramantry, the *Jan Mayen* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 38, 226–34; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 594–602. See also below, chapter 17, for the extensive use of equity in the context of state succession.

¹⁴⁹ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 70, pp. 73, 77; 8 AD, pp. 444, 450.

¹⁵⁰ See e.g. Judge Weeramantry, the *Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 38, 217; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 585. Cf. Judge Schwebel's Separate Opinion, ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 118; 99 ILR, p. 486.

¹⁵¹ Note that the International Court in the *Tunisia /Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 60; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 53, declared that 'equity as a legal concept is a direct emanation of the idea of justice'. However, see G. Abi-Saab's reference to the International Court's 'flight into equity' in 'The ICJ as a World Court' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, pp. 3, 11.

¹⁵² 50 ILR, p. 2.

¹⁵³ *Ibid.*, p. 18. In deciding the course of the boundary in two deep inlets, the Tribunal had recourse to the concept of equity: *ibid.*, p. 520.

Sea Continental Shelf cases directed a final delimitation between the parties – West Germany, Holland and Denmark – ‘in accordance with equitable principles’¹⁵⁴ and discussed the relevance to equity in its consideration of the *Barcelona Traction* case.¹⁵⁵ Judge Tanaka, however, has argued for a wider interpretation in his Dissenting Opinion in the Second Phase of the *South-West Africa* cases¹⁵⁶ and has treated the broad concept as a source of human rights ideas.¹⁵⁷

However, what is really in question here is the use of equitable principles in the context of a rule requiring such an approach. The relevant courts are not applying principles of abstract justice to the cases,¹⁵⁸ but rather deriving equitable principles and solutions from the applicable law.¹⁵⁹ The Court declared in the *Libya/Malta* case¹⁶⁰ that ‘the justice of which equity is an emanation, is not an abstract justice but justice according to the rule of law; which is to say that its application should display consistency and a degree of predictability; even though it also looks beyond it to principles of more general application’.

Equity has been used by the courts as a way of mitigating certain inequities, not as a method of refashioning nature to the detriment of legal rules.¹⁶¹ Its existence, therefore, as a separate and distinct source of law is at best highly controversial. As the International Court noted in the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case,¹⁶²

¹⁵⁴ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 53; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 83. Equity was used in the case in order to exclude the use of the equidistance method in the particular circumstances: *ibid.*, pp. 48–50; 41 ILR, pp. 78–80.

¹⁵⁵ ICJ Reports, 1970, p. 3; 46 ILR, p. 178. See also the *Burkina Faso v. Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 631–3; 80 ILR, pp. 459, 532–5.

¹⁵⁶ ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 6, 294–9; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 455–9. See also the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, p. 155.

¹⁵⁷ See also *AMCO v. Republic of Indonesia* 89 ILR, pp. 366, 522–3.

¹⁵⁸ The International Court of Justice may under article 38(2) of its Statute decide a case *ex aequo et bono* if the parties agree, but it has never done so: see e.g. Pellet, ‘Article 38’, p. 730.

¹⁵⁹ See the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 47; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 76, and the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 33; 55 ILR, pp. 238, 268. The Court reaffirmed in the *Libya/Malta* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 40; 81 ILR, pp. 238, 272, ‘the principle that there can be no question of distributive justice’.

¹⁶⁰ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 39; 81 ILR, pp. 238, 271.

¹⁶¹ See the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 49–50; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 78–80, and the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, 1978, pp. 116–17; 54 ILR, pp. 6, 123–4. See also the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 60; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 53, and the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 313–14 and 325–30; 71 ILR, pp. 74, 140–1 and 152–7.

¹⁶² ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 60; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 53.

it is bound to apply equitable principles as part of international law, and to balance up the various considerations which it regards as relevant in order to produce an equitable result. While it is clear that no rigid rules exist as to the exact weight to be attached to each element in the case, this is very far from being an exercise of discretion or conciliation; nor is it an operation of distributive justice.¹⁶³

The use of equitable principles, however, has been particularly marked in the 1982 Law of the Sea Convention. Article 59, for example, provides that conflicts between coastal and other states regarding the exclusive economic zone are to be resolved 'on the basis of equity', while by article 74 delimitation of the zone between states with opposite or adjacent coasts is to be effected by agreement on the basis of international law in order to achieve an equitable solution. A similar provision applies by article 83 to the delimitation of the continental shelf.¹⁶⁴ These provisions possess flexibility, which is important, but are also somewhat uncertain. Precisely how any particular dispute may be resolved, and the way in which that is likely to happen and the principles to be used are far from clear and an element of unpredictability may have been introduced.¹⁶⁵ The Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997,¹⁶⁶ also lays great emphasis upon the concept of equity. Article 5, for example, provides that watercourse states shall utilise an international watercourse in an equitable and reasonable manner both in their own territories and in participating generally in the use, development and protection of such a watercourse.

Equity may also be used in certain situations in the delimitation of non-maritime boundaries. Where there is no evidence as to where a boundary line lies, an international tribunal may resort to equity. In the case of *Burkina Faso/Republic of Mali*,¹⁶⁷ for example, the Court noted with regard

¹⁶³ See generally R. Y. Jennings, 'The Principles Governing Marine Boundaries' in *Festschrift für Karl Doehring*, Berlin, 1989, p. 408, and M. Bedjaoui, 'L'énigme' des "principes équitables" dans le Droit des Délimitations Maritimes, *Revista Español de Derecho Internacional*, 1990, p. 376.

¹⁶⁴ See also article 140 providing for the equitable sharing of financial and other benefits derived from activities in the deep sea-bed area.

¹⁶⁵ However, see *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 443, where the Court declared that its jurisprudence showed that in maritime delimitation disputes, 'equity is not a method of delimitation, but solely an aim that should be borne in mind in effecting the delimitation'. See further below, chapter 11, p. 590.

¹⁶⁶ Based on the Draft Articles of the International Law Commission: see the Report of the International Law Commission on the Work of its Forty-Sixth Session, A/49/10, 1994, pp. 197, 218 ff.

¹⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 633; 80 ILR, pp. 459, 535.

to the pool of Soum, that 'it must recognise that Soum is a frontier pool; and that in the absence of any precise indication in the texts of the position of the frontier line, the line should divide the pool of Soum in an equitable manner'. This would be done by dividing the pool equally. Although equity did not always mean equality, where there are no special circumstances the latter is generally the best expression of the former.¹⁶⁸ The Court also emphasised that 'to resort to the concept of equity in order to modify an established frontier would be quite unjustified'.¹⁶⁹

Although generalised principles or concepts that may be termed community value-judgements inform and pervade the political and therefore the legal orders in the broadest sense, they do not themselves constitute as such binding legal norms. This can only happen if they have been accepted as legal norms by the international community through the mechanisms and techniques of international law creation. Nevertheless, 'elementary principles of humanity' may lie at the base of such norms and help justify their existence in the broadest sense, and may indeed perform a valuable role in endowing such norms with an additional force within the system. The International Court has, for example, emphasised in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* Advisory Opinion¹⁷⁰ that at the heart of the rules and principles concerning international humanitarian law lies the 'overriding consideration of humanity'.

Judicial decisions¹⁷¹

Although these are, in the words of article 38, to be utilised as a subsidiary means for the determination of rules of law rather than as an actual source of law, judicial decisions can be of immense importance. While by virtue of

¹⁶⁸ *Ibid.*

¹⁶⁹ *Ibid.* See also the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 514–15, and the *Brcko* case, 36 ILM, 1997, pp. 396, 427 ff. However, note that in the latter case, the Arbitral Tribunal was expressly authorised to apply 'relevant legal and equitable principles': see article V of Annex 2 of the Dayton Accords, 1995, *ibid.*, p. 400. See also J. M. Sorel, 'L'Arbitrage sur la Zona de Brcko Tragi-comédie en Trois Actes et un Épilogue à Suivre', AFDI, 1997, p. 253.

¹⁷⁰ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 257, 262–3; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 207, 212–13. See also the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, p. 155. See further below, chapter 21, p. 1187.

¹⁷¹ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *Development of International Law*; Waldock, 'General Course', and Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, pp. 30 ff. See also Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure of the ICJ (Part Two)', pp. 3, 127, and Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 114; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 784, and P. Cahier, 'Le Rôle du Juge dans l'Élaboration du Droit International' in *Theory of International Law at the Threshold of the 21st Century* (ed. J. Makarczyk), The Hague, 1996, p. 353.

article 59 of the Statute of the International Court of Justice the decisions of the Court have no binding force except as between the parties and in respect of the case under consideration, the Court has striven to follow its previous judgments and insert a measure of certainty within the process: so that while the doctrine of precedent as it is known in the common law, whereby the rulings of certain courts must be followed by other courts, does not exist in international law, one still finds that states in disputes and textbook writers quote judgments of the Permanent Court and the International Court of Justice as authoritative decisions.

The International Court of Justice itself will closely examine its previous decisions and will carefully distinguish those cases which it feels should not be applied to the problem being studied.¹⁷² But just as English judges, for example, create law in the process of interpreting it, so the judges of the International Court of Justice sometimes do a little more than merely 'determine' it. One of the most outstanding instances of this occurred in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case,¹⁷³ with its statement of the criteria for the recognition of baselines from which to measure the territorial sea, which was later enshrined in the 1958 Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea and Contiguous Zone.

Other examples include the *Reparation* case,¹⁷⁴ which recognised the legal personality of international institutions in certain cases, the *Genocide* case,¹⁷⁵ which dealt with reservations to treaties, the *Nottebohm* case,¹⁷⁶ which considered the role and characteristics of nationality and the range of cases concerning maritime delimitation.¹⁷⁷

Of course, it does not follow that a decision of the Court will be invariably accepted in later discussions and formulations of the law. One example of this is part of the decision in the *Lotus* case,¹⁷⁸ which was criticised and later abandoned in the Geneva Conventions on the Law of the Sea. But this is comparatively unusual and the practice of the Court is to examine its own relevant case-law with considerable attention and to depart from it rarely.¹⁷⁹ At the very least, it will constitute the starting point of analysis, so that, for example, the Court noted in the *Cameroon*

¹⁷² See further Shahabuddeen, *Precedent*.

¹⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86. See further below, chapter 11, p. 558.

¹⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318. See further below, chapter 23, p. 1296.

¹⁷⁵ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 15; 18 ILR, p. 364.

¹⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 4; 22 ILR, p. 349.

¹⁷⁷ See e.g. Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 116, and see below, chapter 11, p. 590.

¹⁷⁸ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 5. See below, p. 618.

¹⁷⁹ See e.g. *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 93; *Liechtenstein v. Germany*, ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 6 and the *Construction of a Wall* advisory opinion, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 135, 154–6; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 71–4.

v. *Nigeria* case that 'the real question is whether, in this case, there is cause not to follow the reasoning and conclusion of earlier cases'.¹⁸⁰

In addition to the Permanent Court and the International Court of Justice, the phrase 'judicial decisions' also encompasses international arbitral awards and the rulings of national courts. There have been many international arbitral tribunals, such as the Permanent Court of Arbitration created by the Hague Conferences of 1899 and 1907 and the various mixed-claims tribunals, including the Iran-US Claims Tribunal, and, although they differ from the international courts in some ways, many of their decisions have been extremely significant in the development of international law. This can be seen in the existence and number of the Reports of International Arbitral Awards published since 1948 by the United Nations.

One leading example is the *Alabama Claims* arbitration,¹⁸¹ which marked the opening of a new era in the peaceful settlement of international disputes, in which increasing use was made of judicial and arbitration methods in resolving conflicts. This case involved a vessel built on Merseyside to the specifications of the Confederate States, which succeeded in capturing some seventy Federal ships during the American Civil War. The United States sought compensation after the war for the depredations of the *Alabama* and other ships and this was accepted by the Tribunal. Britain had infringed the rules of neutrality and was accordingly obliged to pay damages to the United States. Another illustration of the impact of arbitral awards is the *Island of Palmas* case¹⁸² which has proved of immense significance to the subject of territorial sovereignty and will be discussed in chapter 10. In addition, the growing significance of the case-law of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia and the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda needs to be noted. As a consequence, it is not rare for international courts of one type or another to cite each other's decisions, sometimes as support¹⁸³ and sometimes to disagree.¹⁸⁴

¹⁸⁰ ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 292.

¹⁸¹ J. B. Moore, *International Arbitrations*, New York, 1898, vol. I, p. 653.

¹⁸² 2 RIAA, p. 829; 4 AD, p. 3. See also the *Beagle Channel* award, HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93, and the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, 1978; 54 ILR, p. 6.

¹⁸³ See e.g. the references in the *Saiga (No. 2)* case, International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea, judgment of 1 July 1999, paras. 133-4; 120 ILR, p. 143, to the *Gabčíkovo-Nagymaros* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 7.

¹⁸⁴ For example, the views expressed in the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia's decision in the *Tadić* case (IT-94-1-A, paras. 115 ff; 124 ILR, p. 61) disapproving of the approach adopted by the ICJ in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986,

As has already been seen, the decisions of municipal courts¹⁸⁵ may provide evidence of the existence of a customary rule. They may also constitute evidence of the actual practice of states which, while not a description of the law as it has been held to apply, nevertheless affords examples of how states actually behave, in other words the essence of the material act which is so necessary in establishing a rule of customary law.¹⁸⁶ British and American writers, in particular, tend to refer fairly extensively to decisions of national courts.

One may, finally, also point to decisions by the highest courts of federal states, like Switzerland and the United States, in their resolution of conflicts between the component units of such countries, as relevant to the development of international law rules in such fields as boundary disputes. A boundary disagreement between two US states which is settled by the Supreme Court is in many ways analogous to the International Court of Justice considering a frontier dispute between two independent states, and as such provides valuable material for international law.¹⁸⁷

Writers¹⁸⁸

Article 38 includes as a subsidiary means for the determination of rules of law, 'the teachings of the most highly qualified publicists of the various nations'.

Historically, of course, the influence of academic writers on the development of international law has been marked. In the heyday of Natural Law it was analyses and juristic opinions that were crucial, while the role of state practice and court decisions was of less value. Writers such as Gentili, Grotius, Pufendorf, Bynkershoek and Vattel were the supreme authorities of the sixteenth to eighteenth centuries and determined the scope, form and content of international law.¹⁸⁹

p. 14, with regard to the test for state responsibility in respect of paramilitary units. The International Court indeed reaffirmed its approach in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 402 ff.

¹⁸⁵ See e.g. *Thirty Hogsheads of Sugar, Bentzon v. Boyle* 9 Cranch 191 (1815); the *Paquete Habana* 175 US 677 (1900) and the *Scotia* 14 Wallace 170 (1871). See also the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 153. For further examples in the fields of state and diplomatic immunities particularly, see below, chapter 13.

¹⁸⁶ See e.g. *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 24; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 80.

¹⁸⁷ See e.g. *Vermont v. New Hampshire* 289 US 593 (1933) and *Iowa v. Illinois* 147 US 1 (1893).

¹⁸⁸ See e.g. Parry, *British Digest*, pp. 103–5 and Lauterpacht, *Development of International Law*, pp. 23–5. See also R. Y. Jennings, 'International Lawyers and the Progressive Development of International Law' in Makarczyk, *Theory of International Law at the Threshold of the 21st Century*, 1996, p. 325, and Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 790.

¹⁸⁹ See above, chapter 1.

With the rise of positivism and the consequent emphasis upon state sovereignty, treaties and custom assumed the dominant position in the exposition of the rules of the international system, and the importance of legalistic writings began to decline. Thus, one finds that textbooks are used as a method of discovering what the law is on any particular point rather than as the fount or source of actual rules. There are still some writers who have had a formative impact upon the evolution of particular laws, for example Gidel on the law of the sea,¹⁹⁰ and others whose general works on international law tend to be referred to virtually as classics, for example Oppenheim and Rousseau, but the general influence of textbook writers has somewhat declined.

Nevertheless, books are important as a way of arranging and putting into focus the structure and form of international law and of elucidating the nature, history and practice of the rules of law. Academic writings also have a useful role to play in stimulating thought about the values and aims of international law as well as pointing out the defects that exist within the system, and making suggestions as to the future.

Because of the lack of supreme authorities and institutions in the international legal order, the responsibility is all the greater upon the publicists of the various nations to inject an element of coherence and order into the subject as well as to question the direction and purposes of the rules.

States in their presentation of claims, national law officials in their opinions to their governments, the various international judicial and arbitral bodies in considering their decisions, and the judges of municipal courts when the need arises, all consult and quote the writings of the leading juristic authorities.¹⁹¹

Of course, the claim can be made, and often is, that textbook writers merely reflect and reinforce national prejudices,¹⁹² but it is an allegation which has been exaggerated. It should not lead us to dismiss the value of writers, but rather to assess correctly the writer within his particular environment.

Other possible sources of international law

In the discussion of the various sources of law prescribed by the Statute of the International Court of Justice, it might have been noted that there is a

¹⁹⁰ *Droit International Public de la Mer*, Chateauroux, 3 vols., 1932–4.

¹⁹¹ See Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 23–4.

¹⁹² See e.g. Huber in the *Spanish Zone of Morocco* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 615, 640; 2 AD, pp. 157, 164 (note). See also Carty, *Decay of International Law?*, pp. 128–31.

distinction between, on the one hand, actual sources of rules, that is those devices capable of instituting new rules such as law-making treaties, customary law and many decisions of the International Court of Justice since they cannot be confined to the category of merely determining or elucidating the law, and on the other hand those practices and devices which afford evidence of the existence of rules, such as juristic writings, many treaty-contracts and some judicial decisions both at the international and municipal level. In fact, each source is capable, to some extent, of both developing new law and identifying existing law. This results partly from the disorganised state of international law and partly from the terms of article 38 itself.

A similar confusion between law-making, law-determining and law-evidencing can be discerned in the discussion of the various other methods of developing law that have emerged since the conclusion of the Second World War. Foremost among the issues that have arisen and one that reflects the growth in the importance of the Third World states and the gradual de-Europeanisation of the world order is the question of the standing of the resolutions and declarations of the General Assembly of the United Nations.¹⁹³

Unlike the UN Security Council, which has the competence to adopt resolutions under articles 24 and 25 of the UN Charter binding on all member states of the organisation,¹⁹⁴ resolutions of the Assembly are generally not legally binding and are merely recommendatory, putting forward opinions on various issues with varying degrees of majority

¹⁹³ See e.g. O. Y. Asamoah, *The Legal Significance of the Declarations of the General Assembly of the United Nations*, The Hague, 1966; D. Johnson, 'The Effect of Resolutions of the General Assembly of the United Nations', 32 BYIL, 1955–6, p. 97; J. Castañeda, *Legal Effects of United Nations Resolutions*, New York, 1969, and R. A. Falk, 'On the Quasi-Legislative Competence of the General Assembly', 60 AJIL, 1966, p. 782. See also A. Cassese, *International Law in a Divided World*, London, 1986, pp. 192–5; M. Virally, 'La Valeur Juridique des Recommendations des Organisations Internationales', AFDI, 1956, p. 69; B. Sloan, 'The Binding Force of a Recommendation of the General Assembly of the United Nations', 25 BYIL, 1948, p. 1, and Sloan, 'General Assembly Resolutions Revisited (40 Years After)', 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 39; Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure of the ICJ (Part One)', p. 6; O. Schachter, 'United Nations Law', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 1; A. Pellet, 'La Formation du Droit International dans le Cadre des Nations Unies', 6 EJIL, 1995, p. 401, and Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 711; and S. Schwebel, 'United Nations Resolutions, Recent Arbitral Awards and Customary International Law' in *Realism in Law-Making* (eds. M. Bos and H. Siblescu), Dordrecht, 1986, p. 203. See also Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 185; 105 ILR, pp. 226, 326.

¹⁹⁴ See e.g. the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 54; 49 ILR, p. 29 and the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 15; 94 ILR, p. 478. See further below, chapter 22.

support.¹⁹⁵ This is the classic position and reflects the intention that the Assembly was to be basically a parliamentary advisory body with the binding decisions being taken by the Security Council.

Nowadays, the situation is somewhat more complex. The Assembly has produced a great number of highly important resolutions and declarations and it was inevitable that these should have some impact upon the direction adopted by modern international law. The way states vote in the General Assembly and the explanations given upon such occasions constitute evidence of state practice and state understanding as to the law. Where a particular country has consistently voted in favour of, for example, the abolition of apartheid, it could not afterwards deny the existence of a usage condemning racial discrimination and it may even be that that usage is for that state converted into a binding custom.

The Court in the *Nicaragua* case tentatively expressed the view that the *opinio juris* requirement could be derived from the circumstances surrounding the adoption and application of a General Assembly resolution. It noted that the relevant

opinio juris may, though with all due caution, be deduced from, *inter alia*, the attitude of the Parties [i.e. the US and Nicaragua] and the attitude of States towards certain General Assembly resolutions, and particularly resolution 2625 (XXV) entitled 'Declaration on Principles of International Law concerning Friendly Relations and Co-operation among States in accordance with the Charter of the United Nations'.¹⁹⁶

The effect of consent to resolutions such as this one 'may be understood as acceptance of the validity of the rule or set of rules declared by the resolution by themselves'.¹⁹⁷ This comment, however, may well have referred solely to the situation where the resolution in question defines or elucidates an existing treaty (i.e. Charter) commitment.

Where the vast majority of states consistently vote for resolutions and declarations on a topic, that amounts to a state practice and a binding rule may very well emerge provided that the requisite *opinio juris* can be proved. For example, the 1960 Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples, which was adopted with no opposition and only nine abstentions and followed a series of resolutions

¹⁹⁵ Some resolutions of a more administrative nature are binding: see e.g. article 17 of the UN Charter.

¹⁹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 99–100; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 433–4.

¹⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 100; 76 ILR, p. 434.

in general and specific terms attacking colonialism and calling for the self-determination of the remaining colonies, has, it would seem, marked the transmutation of the concept of self-determination from a political and moral principle to a legal right and consequent obligation, particularly taken in conjunction with the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law.¹⁹⁸

Declarations such as that on the Legal Principles Governing Activities of States in the Exploration and Use of Outer Space (1963) can also be regarded as examples of state practices which are leading to, or have led to, a binding rule of customary law. As well as constituting state practice, it may be possible to use such resolutions as evidence of the existence of or evolution towards an *opinio juris* without which a custom cannot arise. Apart from that, resolutions can be understood as authoritative interpretations by the Assembly of the various principles of the United Nations Charter depending on the circumstances.¹⁹⁹

Accordingly, such resolutions are able to speed up the process of the legalisation of a state practice and thus enable a speedier adaptation of customary law to the conditions of modern life. The presence of representatives of virtually all of the states of the world in the General Assembly enormously enhances the value of that organ in general political terms and in terms of the generation of state practice that may or may not lead to binding custom. As the International Court noted, for example, in the *Nicaragua* case,²⁰⁰ 'the wording of certain General Assembly declarations adopted by states demonstrates their recognition of the principle of the prohibition of force as definitely a matter of customary international law'. The Court put the issue the following way in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* Advisory Opinion:²⁰¹

The Court notes that General Assembly resolutions, even if they are not binding, may sometimes have normative value. They can, in certain circumstances, provide evidence important for establishing the existence of a rule or the emergence of an *opinio juris*. To establish whether this is true of a General Assembly resolution, it is necessary to look at its content and

¹⁹⁸ See further below, chapter 5, p. 251.

¹⁹⁹ See e.g. O. Schachter, 'Interpretation of the Charter in the Political Organs of the United Nations' in *Law, States and International Order*, 1964, p. 269; R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963, and M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, chapter 2.

²⁰⁰ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 102; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 436.

²⁰¹ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 254–5; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 204–5.

the conditions of its adoption; it is also necessary to see whether an *opinio juris* exists as to its normative character. Or a series of resolutions may show the gradual evolution of the *opinio juris* required for the establishment of a new rule.

The Court in this case examined a series of General Assembly resolutions concerning the legality of nuclear weapons and noted that several of them had been adopted with substantial numbers of negative votes and abstentions. It was also pointed out that the focus of such resolutions had not always been constant. The Court therefore concluded that these resolutions fell short of establishing the existence of an *opinio juris* on the illegality of nuclear weapons.²⁰²

Nevertheless, one must be alive to the dangers in ascribing legal value to everything that emanates from the Assembly. Resolutions are often the results of political compromises and arrangements and, comprehended in that sense, never intended to constitute binding norms. Great care must be taken in moving from a plethora of practice to the identification of legal norms.

As far as the practice of other international organisations is concerned,²⁰³ the same approach, but necessarily tempered with a little more caution, may be adopted. Resolutions may evidence an existing custom or constitute usage that may lead to the creation of a custom and the *opinio juris* requirement may similarly emerge from the surrounding circumstances, although care must be exercised here.²⁰⁴

It is sometimes argued more generally that particular non-binding instruments or documents or non-binding provisions in treaties form a special category that may be termed 'soft law'. This terminology is meant to indicate that the instrument or provision in question is not of itself 'law', but its importance within the general framework of international legal development is such that particular attention requires to be paid to it.²⁰⁵ 'Soft law' is not law. That needs to be emphasised, but a document,

²⁰² *Ibid.*, p. 255; 110 ILR, p. 205. See as to other cases, above, p. 84.

²⁰³ See generally, as to other international organisations in this context, A. J. P. Tammes, 'Decisions of International Organs as a Source of International Law', 94 HR, 1958, p. 265; Virally, 'La Valeur Juridique', p. 66, and H. Thierry, 'Les Résolutions des Organes Internationaux dans la Jurisprudence de la Cour Internationale de Justice', 167 HR, 1980, p. 385.

²⁰⁴ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 100–2; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 434–6.

²⁰⁵ See e.g. Boyle and Chinkin, *The Making of International Law*, pp. 211 ff.; Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 712; H. Hillgenberg, 'A Fresh Look at Soft Law', 10 EJIL, 1999, p. 499; M. Bothe, 'Legal and Non-Legal Norms – A Meaningful Distinction in International Relations', 11

for example, does not need to constitute a binding treaty before it can exercise an influence in international politics. The Helsinki Final Act of 1975 is a prime example of this. This was not a binding agreement, but its influence in Central and Eastern Europe in emphasising the role and importance of international human rights proved incalculable.²⁰⁶ Certain areas of international law have generated more 'soft law', in the sense of the production of important but non-binding instruments, than others. Here one may cite particularly international economic law²⁰⁷ and international environmental law.²⁰⁸ The use of such documents, whether termed, for example, recommendations, guidelines, codes of practice or standards, is significant in signalling the evolution and establishment of guidelines, which may ultimately be converted into legally binding rules. This may be accomplished either by formalisation into a binding treaty or by acceptance as a customary rule, provided that the necessary conditions have been fulfilled. The propositions of 'soft law' are important and influential, but do not in themselves constitute legal norms. In many cases, it may be advantageous for states to reach agreements with each other or through international organisations which are not intended to be binding and thus subject to formal legal implementation, but which reflect a political intention to act in a certain way. Such agreements may be more flexible, easier to conclude and easier to adhere to for domestic reasons.

A study by the US State Department concerning non-binding international agreements between states²⁰⁹ noted that

Netherlands YIL, 1980, p. 65; I. Seidl-Hohenveldern, 'International Economic Soft Law', 163 HR, 1980, p. 164, and Seidl-Hohenveldern, *International Economic Law*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1992, p. 42; J. Gold, 'Strengthening the Soft International Law of Exchange Arrangements', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 443; PASIL, 1988, p. 371; G. J. H. Van Hoof, *Re-thinking the Sources of International Law*, Deventer, 1983, p. 187; C. M. Chinkin, 'The Challenge of Soft Law: Development and Change in International Law', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 850; L. Henkin, *International Law, Politics and Values*, Dordrecht, 1995, pp. 94 and 192; W. M. Reisman, 'The Concept and Functions of Soft Law in International Politics' in *Essays in Honour of Judge Taslim Olawale Elias* (eds. E. G. Bello and B. Ajibola), Dordrecht, 1992, vol. I, p. 135; A. E. Boyle, 'Some Reflections on the Relationship of Treaties and Soft Law', 48 ICLQ, 1999, p. 901; F. Francioni, 'International "Soft Law": A Contemporary Assessment' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 167, and *Commitment and Compliance: The Role of Non-Binding Norms in the International Legal System* (ed. D. Shelton), Oxford, 2000

²⁰⁶ See e.g. the reference to it in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 100; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 434.

²⁰⁷ See e.g. Seidl-Hohenveldern, *International Economic Law*, pp. 42 ff.

²⁰⁸ See e.g. P. Birnie and A. Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002, pp. 24 ff.

²⁰⁹ Memorandum of the Assistant Legal Adviser for Treaty Affairs, US State Department, quoted in 88 AJIL, 1994, pp. 515 ff. See also A. Aust, 'The Theory and Practice of Informal

it has long been recognised in international practice that governments may agree on joint statements of policy or intention that do not establish legal obligations. In recent decades, this has become a common means of announcing the results of diplomatic exchanges, stating common positions on policy issues, recording their intended course of action on matters of mutual concern, or making political commitments to one another. These documents are sometimes referred to as non-binding agreements, gentlemen's agreements, joint statements or declarations.

What is determinative as to status in such situations is not the title given to the document in question, but the intention of the parties as inferred from all the relevant circumstances as to whether they intended to create binding legal relationships between themselves on the matter in question.

The International Law Commission

The International Law Commission was established by the General Assembly in 1947 with the declared object of promoting the progressive development of international law and its codification.²¹⁰ It consists of thirty-four members from Africa, Asia, America and Europe, who remain in office for five years each and who are appointed from lists submitted by national governments. The Commission is aided in its deliberations by consultations with various outside bodies including the Asian–African Legal Consultative Committee, the European Commission on Legal Co-operation and the Inter-American Council of Jurists.²¹¹

International Instruments', 35 ICLQ, 1984, p. 787; O. Schachter, 'The Twilight Existence of Nonbinding International Agreements', 71 AJIL, 1977, p. 296; McNair, *The Law of Treaties*, p. 6, and A. T. Guzman, 'The Design of International Agreements', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 579.

²¹⁰ See, as to the relationship between codification and progressive development, Judge ad hoc Sørensen's Dissenting Opinion in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 242–3; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 217–19.

²¹¹ See articles 2, 3 and 8 of the Statute of the ILC. See also e.g. B. Ramcharan, *The International Law Commission*, Leiden, 1977; *The Work of the International Law Commission*, 4th edn, New York, 1988; I. Sinclair, *The International Law Commission*, Cambridge, 1987; *The International Law Commission and the Future of International Law* (eds. M. R. Anderson, A. E. Boyle, A. V. Lowe and C. Wickremasinghe), London, 1998; *International Law on the Eve of the Twenty-first Century: Views from the International Law Commission*, New York, 1997; S. Rosenne, 'The International Law Commission 1949–59', 36 BYIL, 1960, p. 104, and Rosenne, 'Relations Between Governments and the International Law Commission', 19 YBWA, 1965, p. 183; B. Graefrath, 'The International Law Commission Tomorrow: Improving its Organisation and Methods of Work', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 597, and R. P. Dhokalia, *The Codification of Public International Law*, Manchester, 1970.

Many of the most important international conventions have grown out of the Commission's work. Having decided upon a topic, the International Law Commission will prepare a draft. This is submitted to the various states for their comments and is usually followed by an international conference convened by the United Nations. Eventually a treaty will emerge. This procedure was followed in such international conventions as those on the Law of the Sea in 1958, Diplomatic Relations in 1961, Consular Relations in 1963, Special Missions in 1969 and the Law of Treaties in 1969. Of course, this smooth operation does not invariably occur, witness the many conferences at Caracas in 1974, and Geneva and New York from 1975 to 1982, necessary to produce a new Convention on the Law of the Sea.

Apart from preparing such drafts, the International Law Commission also issues reports and studies, and has formulated such documents as the Draft Declaration on Rights and Duties of States of 1949 and the Principles of International Law recognised in the Charter of the Nuremberg Tribunal and in the Judgment of the Tribunal of 1950. The Commission produced a set of draft articles on the problems of jurisdictional immunities in 1991, a draft statute for an international criminal court in 1994 and a set of draft articles on state responsibility in 2001. The drafts of the ILC are often referred to in the judgments of the International Court of Justice. Indeed, in his speech to the UN General Assembly in 1997, President Schwebel noted in referring to the decision in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case²¹² that the judgment:

is notable, moreover, because of the breadth and depth of the importance given in it to the work product of the International Law Commission. The Court's Judgment not only draws on treaties concluded pursuant to the Commission's proceedings: those on the law of treaties, of State succession in respect of treaties, and the law of international watercourses. It gives great weight to some of the Commission's *Draft Articles on State Responsibility*, as did both Hungary and Slovakia. This is not wholly exceptional; it rather illustrates the fact that just as the judgments and opinions of the Court have influenced the work of the International Law Commission, so the work of the Commission may influence that of the Court.²¹³

Thus, one can see that the International Law Commission is involved in at least two of the major sources of law. Its drafts may form the bases of

²¹² ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 7; 116 ILR, p. 1.

²¹³ See www.icj-cij.org/icjwww/ipresscom/SPEECHES/Ga1997e.htm.

international treaties which bind those states which have signed and ratified them and which may continue to form part of general international law, and its work is part of the whole range of state practice which can lead to new rules of customary law. Its drafts, indeed, may constitute evidence of custom, contribute to the corpus of usages which may create new law and evidence the *opinio juris*.²¹⁴ In addition, it is not to be overlooked that the International Law Commission is a body composed of eminently qualified publicists, including many governmental legal advisers, whose reports and studies may be used as a method of determining what the law actually is, in much the same way as books.

Other bodies

Although the International Law Commission is by far the most important of the organs for the study and development of the law, there do exist certain other bodies which are involved in the same mission. The United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) and the United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD), for example, are actively increasing the range of international law in the fields of economic, financial and development activities, while temporary organs such as the Committee on the Principles of International Law have been engaged in producing various declarations and statements. Nor can one overlook the tremendous work of the many specialised agencies like the International Labour Organisation and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), which are constantly developing international law in their respective spheres.

There are also some independent bodies which are actively involved in the field. The International Law Association and the Institut de Droit International are the best known of such organisations which study and stimulate the law of the world community, while the various Harvard Research drafts produced before the Second World War are still of value today.

Unilateral acts

In certain situations, the unilateral acts of states, including statements made by relevant state officials, may give rise to international legal

²¹⁴ See above, p. 84.

obligations.²¹⁵ Such acts might include recognition and protests, which are intended to have legal consequences. Unilateral acts, while not sources of international law as understood in article 38(1) of the Statute of the ICJ, may constitute sources of obligation.²¹⁶ For this to happen, the intention to be bound of the state making the declaration in question is crucial, as will be the element of publicity or notoriety.²¹⁷ Such intention may be ascertained by way of interpretation of the act, and the principle of good faith plays a crucial role. The International Court has stressed that where states make statements by which their freedom of action is limited, a restrictive interpretation is required.²¹⁸ Recognition will be important here in so far as third states are concerned, in order for such an act or statement to be opposable to them. Beyond this, such unilateral statements may be used as evidence of a particular view taken by the state in question.²¹⁹

²¹⁵ See Virally, 'Sources', pp. 154–6; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 612–15; W. Fiedler, 'Unilateral Acts in International Law' in *Encyclopedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 2000, vol. IV, p. 1018; G. Venturini, 'La Portée et les Effets Juridiques des Attitudes et des Actes Unilatéraux des États', 112 HR, 1964, p. 363; J. Charpentier, 'Engagements Unilatéraux et Engagements Conventionnels' in *Theory of International Law at the Threshold of the 21st Century*, p. 367; A. P. Rubin, 'The International Legal Effects of Unilateral Declarations', 71 AJIL, 1977, p. 1; K. Zemanek, 'Unilateral Legal Acts Revisited' in Wellens, *International Law*, p. 209; E. Suy, *Les Actes Unilatéraux en Droit International Public*, Paris, 1962, and J. Garner, 'The International Binding Force of Unilateral Oral Declarations', 27 AJIL, 1933, p. 493. The International Law Commission has been studying the question of the Unilateral Acts of States since 1996, see A/51/10, pp. 230 and 328–9. See also the Fifth Report, A/CN.4/525, 2002.

²¹⁶ See e.g. the Report of the International Law Commission, A/57/10, 2002, p. 215.

²¹⁷ The *Nuclear Tests* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 267; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 412. See also the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France) Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 305; 106 ILR, pp. 1, 27; the *Nova-Scotia/Newfoundland* (First Phase) case, 2001, para. 3.14; 128 ILR, pp. 425, 449; and the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 2002, para. 4.70; 130 ILR, pp. 1, 69. Such a commitment may arise in oral pleadings before the Court itself: see *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 452.

²¹⁸ *Nuclear Tests* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 267; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 412. See also the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 132; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 466, and the *Burkina Faso v. Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 573–4; 80 ILR, pp. 459, 477–8. The Court in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases declared that the unilateral assumption of the obligations of a convention by a state not party to it was 'not lightly to be presumed', ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 25; 41 ILR, p. 29. The Court in the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 229, noted that a denial could not be interpreted as a binding undertaking where not made in response to a claim by the other party or in the context of a dispute between them.

²¹⁹ See e.g. the references to a press release issued by the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Norway and the wording of a communication of the text of an agreement to Parliament by the Norwegian Government in the *Jan Mayen* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 38, 51; 99 ILR,

Hierarchy of sources and *jus cogens*²²⁰

The question of the hierarchy of sources is more complex than appears at first sight. Although there does exist a presumption against normative conflict,²²¹ international law is not as clear as domestic law in listing the order of constitutional authority²²² and the situation is complicated by the proliferation of international courts and tribunals existing in a non-hierarchical fashion,²²³ as well as the significant expansion of international law, both substantively and procedurally. Judicial decisions and writings clearly have a subordinate function within the hierarchy in view of their description as subsidiary means of law determination in article 38(1) of the statute of the ICJ, while the role of general principles of law as a way of complementing custom and treaty law places that category fairly firmly in third place.²²⁴ The question of priority as between custom and treaty law is more complex.²²⁵ As a general rule, that which is later in time will have priority. Treaties are usually formulated to replace or codify existing custom,²²⁶ while treaties in turn may themselves fall out of use and be replaced by new customary rules. However, where the same rule appears

pp. 395, 419. See also Judge Ajibola's Separate Opinion in the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 58; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 56.

²²⁰ See D. Shelton, 'Normative Hierarchy in International Law', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 291; M. Koskenniemi, 'Hierarchy in International Law: A Sketch', 8 EJIL, 1997, p. 566; B. Simma and D. Pulkowski, 'Of Planets and the Universe: Self-contained Regimes in International Law', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 483; P. Weil, 'Towards Relative Normativity in International Law?', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 413, and 'Vers une Normativité Relative en Droit International?' 86 RGDIP, 1982, p. 5; M. Akehurst, 'The Hierarchy of the Sources of International Law', 47 BYIL, 1974–5, p. 273, and Virally, 'Sources', pp. 165–6. See also H. Mosler, *The International Society as a Legal Community*, Leiden, 1980, pp. 84–6; Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure of the ICJ (Part One)', p. 143, and Thirlway, 'Supplement', p. 52, and U. Fastenrath, 'Relative Normativity in International Law', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 305.

²²¹ See e.g. 'Fragmentation of International Law: Difficulties Arising from the Diversification and Expansion of International Law', Report of the Study Group of the International Law Commission (finalised by M. Koskenniemi), A/CN.4/L.682, 2006, p. 25.

²²² Pellet, however, notes that while there is no formal hierarchy as between conventions, custom and general principles, the International Court uses them in successive order and 'has organized a kind of complementarity between them', 'Article 38', p. 773. Dupuy argues that there is no hierarchy of sources: see *Droit International Public*, 8th edn, Paris, 2006, pp. 370 ff. The ILC Study on Fragmentation, however, agrees with writers proclaiming that 'treaties generally enjoy priority over custom and particular treaties over general treaties', p. 47.

²²³ See further below, chapter 19, p. 1115. ²²⁴ Pellet, 'Article 38', p. 780.

²²⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 778, and see H. Villager, *Customary International Law and Treaties*, Dordrecht, 1985.

²²⁶ See R. Baxter, 'Multilateral Treaties as Evidence of Customary International Law', BYIL, 1965–6, p. 275.

in both a treaty and a custom, there is no presumption that the latter is subsumed by the former. The two may co-exist.²²⁷ There is in addition a principle to the effect that a special rule prevails over a general rule (*lex specialis derogat legi generali*), so that, for example, treaty rules between states as *lex specialis* would have priority as against general rules of treaty or customary law between the same states,²²⁸ although not if the general rule in question was one of *jus cogens*.²²⁹

The position is complicated by the existence of norms or obligations deemed to be of a different or higher status than others, whether derived from custom or treaty. These may be obligations *erga omnes* or rules of *jus cogens*. While there may be significant overlap between these two in terms of the content of rules to which they relate, there is a difference in nature. The former concept concerns the scope of application of the relevant rule, that is the extent to which states as a generality may be subject to the rule in question and may be seen as having a legal interest in the matter.²³⁰ It has, therefore, primarily a procedural focus. Rules of *jus cogens*, on the other hand, are substantive rules recognised to be of a higher status as such. The International Court stated in the *Barcelona Traction* case²³¹ that there existed an essential distinction between the obligations of a state towards the international community as a whole and those arising vis-à-vis another state in the field of diplomatic protection. By their very nature the former concerned all states and ‘all states can be held to have a legal interest in their protection; they are obligations *erga omnes*’. Examples of such obligations included the outlawing of aggression and of genocide and the protection from slavery and racial discrimination.²³² To this one may

²²⁷ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 95.

²²⁸ See ILC Report on Fragmentation, pp. 30 ff., and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1270 and 1280. See also the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 76; 116 ILR, pp. 1, 85; the *Beagle Channel* case, 52 ILR, pp. 141–2; the *Right of Passage* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 6, 44; 31 ILR, pp. 23, 56; the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 240; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 190; the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 38; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 31, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 137; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 471.

²²⁹ See e.g. the *OSPAR (Ireland v. UK)* case, 126 ILR, p. 364, para. 84, and further below, p. 623.

²³⁰ See e.g. Article 48 of the ILC Draft Articles on State Responsibility and the commentary thereto, A/56/10, pp. 126 ff. See also the *Furundžija* case before the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, 121 ILR, pp. 213, 260.

²³¹ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 32; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 206.

²³² See also the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 100; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 468, and Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 172 and 204; 105 ILR pp. 226; 313 and 345. See, in addition, Simma, ‘Bilateralism’,

add the prohibition of torture.²³³ Further, the International Court in the *East Timor* case stressed that the right of peoples to self-determination 'has an *erga omnes* character',²³⁴ while reiterating in the *Genocide Convention* (*Bosnia v. Serbia*) case that 'the rights and obligations enshrined in the Convention are rights and obligations *erga omnes*'.²³⁵

This easing of the traditional rules concerning *locus standi* in certain circumstances with regard to the pursuing of a legal remedy against the alleged offender state may be linked to the separate question of superior principles in international law. Article 53 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, provides that a treaty will be void 'if, at the time of its conclusion, it conflicts with a peremptory norm of general international law'. Further, by article 64, if a new peremptory norm of general international law emerges, any existing treaty which is in conflict with that norm becomes void and terminates. This rule (*jus cogens*) will also apply in the context of customary rules so that no derogation would be permitted to such norms by way of local or special custom.

Such a peremptory norm is defined by the Convention as one 'accepted and recognised by the international community of states as a whole as a norm from which no derogation is permitted and which can be modified only by a subsequent norm of general international law having the same character'.²³⁶ The concept of *jus cogens* is based upon an acceptance of fundamental and superior values within the system and in some respects is akin to the notion of public order or public policy in domestic legal orders.²³⁷ It also reflects the influence of Natural

pp. 230 ff.; M. Ragazzi, *The Concept of International Obligations Erga Omnes*, Oxford, 1997, and J. Crawford, *The International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility*, Cambridge, 2002, pp. 242–4.

²³³ See e.g. the *Furundžija* case, 121 ILR, pp. 213, 260.

²³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 102; 105 ILR, p. 226.

²³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 616; 115 ILR, p. 10.

²³⁶ It was noted in *US v. Matta-Ballesteros* that: 'Jus cogens norms which are nonderogable and peremptory, enjoy the highest status within customary international law, are binding on all nations, and cannot be preempted by treaty', 71 F.3d 754, 764 n. 4 (9th circuit, 1995).

²³⁷ See e.g. J. Sztucki, *Jus Cogens and the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties*, New York, 1974; I. Sinclair, *The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1984, p. 203; M. Virally, 'Réflexions sur le Jus Cogens', 12 AFDI, 1966, p. 1; Shelton, 'Normative Hierarchy', pp. 297 ff.; C. Rozakis, *The Concept of Jus Cogens in the Law of Treaties*, Amsterdam, 1976; Cassese, *International Law*, chapter 11; Gomez Robledo, 'Le Jus Cogens International', 172 HR, 1981 p. 17; G. Gaja, 'Jus Cogens beyond the Vienna Conventions', 172 HR, 1981, p. 279; Crawford, *ILC's Articles*, pp. 187–8 and 243; J. Verhoeven, 'Jus Cogens and Reservations or "Counter-Reservations" to the Jurisdiction of the International Court

Law thinking. Rules of *jus cogens* are not new rules of international law as such. It is a question rather of a particular and superior quality that is recognised as adhering in existing rules of international law. Various examples of rules of *jus cogens* have been provided, particularly during the discussions on the topic in the International Law Commission, such as an unlawful use of force, genocide, slave trading and piracy.²³⁸ However, no clear agreement has been manifested regarding other areas,²³⁹ and even the examples given are by no means uncontroverted. Nevertheless, the rise of individual responsibility directly for international crimes marks a further step in the development of *jus cogens* rules. Of particular importance, however, is the identification of the mechanism by which rules of *jus cogens* may be created, since once created no derogation is permitted.

A two-stage approach is here involved in the light of article 53: first, the establishment of the proposition as a rule of general international law and, secondly, the acceptance of that rule as a peremptory norm by the international law community of states as a whole. It will be seen therefore that a stringent process is involved, and rightly so, for the establishment of a higher level of binding rules has serious implications for the international law community. The situation to be avoided is that of foisting peremptory norms upon a political or ideological minority, for that in the long run would devalue the concept. The appropriate test would thus require universal acceptance of the proposition as a legal rule by states and recognition of it as a rule of *jus cogens* by an overwhelming majority

of Justice' in Wellens, *International Law*, p. 195, and L. Hannikainen, *Peremptory Norms (Jus Cogens) in International Law*, Helsinki, 1988. See also article 26 of the ILC's Articles on State Responsibility, 2001, and below, chapter 16, p. 944.

²³⁸ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 248. See, as regards the prohibition of torture as a rule of *jus cogens*, the decision of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia in the *Furundžija* case, 121 ILR, pp. 257–8 and 260–2; *Siderman v. Argentina* 26 F.2d 699, 714–18; 103 ILR, p. 454; *Ex Parte Pinochet* (No. 3) [2000] 1 AC 147, 247 (Lord Hope), 253–4 (Lord Hutton) and 290 (Lord Phillips); 119 ILR, pp. 135, 200, 206–7 and 244, and the *Al-Adsani* case, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 21 November 2001, para. 61; 123 ILR, pp. 24, 41–2. See also, as regards the prohibition of extrajudicial killing, the decision of the US District Court in *Alejandro v. Cuba* 121 ILR, pp. 603, 616, and as regards non-discrimination, the decision of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights in its advisory opinion concerning the *Juridical Condition and Rights of the Undocumented Migrants*, OC-18/03, Series A, No. 18 (2003).

²³⁹ See e.g. Lord Slynn in *Ex Parte Pinochet* (No. 1) who stated that 'Nor is there any *jus cogens* in respect of such breaches of international law [international crimes] which require that a claim of state or head of state immunity ... should be overridden', [2000] 1 AC 61, 79; 119 ILR, pp. 50, 67.

of states, crossing ideological and political divides.²⁴⁰ It is also clear that only rules based on custom or treaties may form the foundation of *jus cogens* norms. This is particularly so in view of the hostile attitude of many states to general principles as an independent source of international law and the universality requirement of *jus cogens* formation. As article 53 of the Vienna Convention notes, a treaty that is contrary to an existing rule of *jus cogens* is void *ab initio*,²⁴¹ whereas by virtue of article 64 an existing treaty that conflicts with an emergent rule of *jus cogens* terminates from the date of the emergence of the rule. It is not void *ab initio*, nor by article 71 is any right, obligation or legal situation created by the treaty prior to its termination affected, provided that its maintenance is not in itself contrary to the new peremptory norm. Article 41(2) of the ILC's Articles on State Responsibility, 2001, provides that no state shall recognise as lawful a 'serious breach' of a peremptory norm.²⁴² Reservations that offended a rule of *jus cogens* may well be unlawful,²⁴³ while it has been suggested that state conduct violating a rule of *jus cogens* may not attract a claim of state immunity.²⁴⁴ The relationship between the rules of *jus cogens* and article 103 of the United Nations Charter, which states that obligations under the Charter have precedence as against obligations under other international agreements, was discussed by Judge Lauterpacht in his Separate Opinion in the *Bosnia* case.²⁴⁵ He noted in particular that 'the relief which article 103 of the Charter may give the Security Council in case of conflict between one of its decisions and an operative treaty obligation cannot – as a matter of simple hierarchy of norms – extend to a conflict between a Security Council resolution and *jus cogens*'.

²⁴⁰ See e.g. Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 218–24, and Akehurst, 'Hierarchy'.

²⁴¹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 91–2.

²⁴² One that involves a gross or systematic failure by the responsible state to fulfil the obligation, article 40(2). See also article 50(d).

²⁴³ See e.g. Judges Padilla Nervo, Tanaka and Sørensen in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 97, 182 and 248; 41 ILR, p. 29. See also General Comment No. 24 (52) of the UN Human Rights Committee, CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add.6.

²⁴⁴ See e.g. Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 105 ff, citing the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Wald in *Prinz v. Federal Republic of Germany*, a decision of the US Court of Appeals, 1994, 103 ILR, p. 618, but see the *Al-Adsani* case, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 21 November 2001; 123 ILR, p. 24.

²⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 440; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 158. See also the decision of the House of Lords in the *Al-Jedda* case, [2007] UKHL 58 concerning the priority of article 103 obligations (here Security Council resolutions) over article 5 of the European Convention on Human Rights.

Suggestions for further reading

- M. Akehurst, 'Custom as a Source of International Law', 47 BYIL, 1974–5, p. 1
- A. Boyle and C. Chinkin, *The Making of International Law*, Oxford, 2007
- B. Cheng, *General Principles of Law as Applied by International Courts and Tribunals*, London, 1953
- C. Parry, *The Sources and Evidences of International Law*, Cambridge, 1965
- A. Pellet, 'Article 38' in *The Statute of the International Court of Justice: A Commentary* (eds. A. Zimmermann, C. Tomuschat and K. Oellers-Frahm), Oxford, 2006, p. 677
- P. Weil, 'Towards Relative Normativity in International Law?', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 413

International law and municipal law

The role of the state in the modern world is a complex one. According to legal theory, each state is sovereign and equal.¹ In reality, with the phenomenal growth in communications and consciousness, and with the constant reminder of global rivalries, not even the most powerful of states can be entirely sovereign. Interdependence and the close-knit character of contemporary international commercial and political society ensures that virtually any action of a state could well have profound repercussions upon the system as a whole and the decisions under consideration by other states. This has led to an increasing interpenetration of

¹ See generally *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, vol. I, p. 52; L. Reydams, *Universal Jurisdiction: International and Municipal Legal Perspectives*, Oxford, 2004; Y. Shany, *Regulating Jurisdictional Relations Between National and International Courts*, Oxford, 2007; J. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 1968, vol. I, p. 90; R. A. Falk, *The Role of Domestic Courts in the International Legal Order*, Princeton, 1964; H. Kelsen, *Principles of International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1966, pp. 290–4 and 551–88; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapter 2; H. Lauterpacht, *International Law: Collected Papers*, Cambridge, 1970, vol. I, pp. 151–77; A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapter 12, and Cassese, 'Modern Constitutions and International Law', 192 HR, 1985 III, p. 335; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 92; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 12; K. Marek, 'Les Rapports entre le Droit International et le Droit Interne à la Lumière de la Jurisprudence de la CIJ', *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1962, p. 260; L. Ferrari-Bravo, 'International Law and Municipal Law: The Complementarity of Legal Systems' in *The Structure and Process of International Law* (eds. R. St J. Macdonald and D. Johnston), Dordrecht, 1983, p. 715; F. Morgenstern, 'Judicial Practice and the Supremacy of International Law', 27 BYIL, 1950, p. 42; B. Conforti, *International Law and the Role of Domestic Legal Systems*, The Hague, 1993; J. G. Starke, 'Monism and Dualism in the Theory of International Law Considered from the Standpoint of the Rule of Law', 92 HR, 1957, pp. 5, 70–80; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1960–89 (Part One)', 60 BYIL, 1989, pp. 4, 114; Report of the Committee on International Law and Municipal Law, International Law Association: Report of the Sixty-Sixth Conference, 1994, p. 326; V. Erades, *Interactions Between International and Municipal Law – A Comparative Caselaw Study*, Leiden, 1993, and V. Heiskanen, *International Legal Topics*, Helsinki, 1992, chapter 1.

international law and domestic law across a number of fields, such as human rights, environmental and international investment law, where at the least the same topic is subject to regulation at both the domestic and the international level (and indeed the regional level in the case of the European Union). With the rise and extension of international law, questions begin to arise paralleling the role played by the state within the international system and concerned with the relationship between the internal legal order of a particular country and the rules and principles governing the international community as a whole. Municipal law governs the domestic aspects of government and deals with issues between individuals, and between individuals and the administrative apparatus, while international law focuses primarily upon the relations between states. That is now, however, an overly simplistic assertion. There are many instances where problems can emerge and lead to difficulties between the two systems. In a case before a municipal court a rule of international law may be brought forward as a defence to a charge, as for example in *R v. Jones*, where the defence of seeking to prevent a greater crime (essentially of international law) was claimed with regard to the alleged offence of criminal damage (in English law),² or where a vessel is being prosecuted for being in what, in domestic law, is regarded as territorial waters but in international law would be treated as part of the high seas. Further, there are cases where the same situation comes before both national and international courts, which may refer to each other's decisions in a complex process of interaction. For example, the failure of the US to allow imprisoned foreign nationals access to consular assistance in violation of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963 was the subject of case-law before the International Court of Justice,³ the Inter-American Court of Human Rights⁴ and US courts,⁵ while there is a growing tendency for domestic courts to be used to address violations of international law.⁶

² [2006] UKHL 16; 132 ILR, p. 668. See further below, p. 146.

³ See e.g. the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 466; 134 ILR, p. 1, and the *Avena* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 12; 134 ILR, p. 120.

⁴ *The Right to Information on Consular Assistance in the Framework of the Guarantees of the Due Process of Law*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 16, 1999.

⁵ See e.g. *Breard v. Greene* 523 US 371 (1998) and *Sanchez-Llamas v. Oregon* 126 S Ct 2669 (2006). See also *Medillin v. Texas* 522 US (2008) (Slip Opinion).

⁶ See e.g. *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16; 132 ILR, p. 668; *ex parte Abbasi* [2002] EWCA Civ 1598; 126 ILR, p. 685, and *R (Gentle) v. Prime Minister* [2006] EWCA Civ 1689; 132 ILR, p. 721.

The theories⁷

Positivism stresses the overwhelming importance of the state and tends to regard international law as founded upon the consent of states. It is actual practice, illustrated by custom and by treaty, that formulates the role of international law, and not formalistic structures, theoretical deductions or moral stipulations. Accordingly, when positivists such as Triepel⁸ and Strupp⁹ consider the relationship of international law to municipal law, they do so upon the basis of the supremacy of the state, and the existence of wide differences between the two functioning orders. This theory, known as *dualism*, stresses that the rules of the systems of international law and municipal law exist separately and cannot purport to have an effect on, or overrule, the other.

This is because of the fundamentally different nature of inter-state and intra-state relations and the different legal structure employed on the one hand by the state and on the other hand as between states. Where municipal legislation permits the exercise of international law rules, this is on sufferance as it were and is an example of the supreme authority of the state within its own domestic jurisdiction, rather than of any influence maintained by international law within the internal sphere.¹⁰

Those writers who disagree with this theory and who adopt the *monist* approach tend to fall into two distinct categories: those who, like Lauterpacht, uphold a strong ethical position with a deep concern for human rights, and others, like Kelsen, who maintain a monist position on formalistic logical grounds. The monists are united in accepting a unitary view of law as a whole and are opposed to the strict division posited by the positivists.

The 'naturalist' strand represented in England by Lauterpacht's works sees the primary function of all law as concerned with the well-being of individuals, and advocates the supremacy of international law as the

⁷ See above, chapters 1 and 2. See also J. H. Jackson, 'Status of Treaties in Domestic Legal Systems: A Policy Analysis', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 310; N. Valticos, 'Pluralité des Ordres Juridiques et Unité de Droit International Public' in *Theory of International Law at the Threshold of the 21st Century* (ed. J. Markarczyk), The Hague, 1996, p. 301, and J. Dhommeaux, 'Monismes et Dualismes en Droit International des Droits de l'Homme', AFDI, 1995, p. 447.

⁸ H. Triepel, *Völkerrecht und Landesrecht*, Berlin, 1899.

⁹ K. Strupp, 'Les Règles Générales du Droit International de la Paix', 47 HR, 1934, p. 389. See also D. Anzilotti, *Corso di Diritto Internazionale*, 3rd edn, Rome, 1928, vol. I, pp. 43 ff.

¹⁰ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 53.

best method available of attaining this. It is an approach characterised by deep suspicion of an international system based upon the sovereignty and absolute independence of states, and illuminated by faith in the capacity of the rules of international law to imbue the international order with a sense of moral purpose and justice founded upon respect for human rights and the welfare of individuals.¹¹

The method by which Kelsen elucidates his theory of monism is markedly different and utilises the philosophy of Kant as its basis. Law is regarded as constituting an order which lays down patterns of behaviour that ought to be followed, coupled with provision for sanctions which are employed once an illegal act or course of conduct has occurred or been embarked upon. Since the same definition appertains within both the internal sphere and the international sphere, a logical unity is forged, and because states owe their legal relationship to one another to the rules of international law, such as the one positing equality, since states cannot be equal before the law without a rule to that effect, it follows that international law is superior to or more basic than municipal law.¹²

Reference has already been made to Kelsen's hierarchical system whereby the legality of a particular rule is affirmed once it conforms to an anterior rule. This process of referring back to previous or higher rules ends with the so-called basic norm of the legal order. However, this basic norm is basic only in a relative sense, since the legal character of states, such as their jurisdiction, sovereignty and equality, is fixed by international law. Thus, Kelsen emphasises the unity of the entire legal order upon the basis of the predominance of international law by declaring that it is the basic norm of the international legal order which is the ultimate reason of validity of the national legal orders too.¹³

A third approach, being somewhat a modification of the dualist position and formulated by Fitzmaurice and Rousseau amongst others, attempts to establish a recognised theoretical framework tied to reality. This approach begins by denying that any common field of operation exists as between international law and municipal law by which one system is superior or inferior to the other. Each order is supreme in its own sphere,

¹¹ Lauterpacht, *International Law*. See also Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950.

¹² Kelsen, *Principles*, pp. 557–9. See also Kelsen, *General Theory of Law and State*, Cambridge, 1945, pp. 363–80. Note that Scelle, for example, founds international legal monism upon an intersocial monism, essentially a sociological explanation: see Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 96.

¹³ See further above, chapter 2, p. 50.

much as French law and English law are in France and England. And just as one cannot talk in terms of the supremacy of French law over English law, but only of two distinct legal systems each operating within its own field, so it is possible to treat international law and municipal law in the same way. They are both the legal element contained within the domestic and international systems respectively, and they exist within different juridical orders.

What may, and often does, happen is what is termed a conflict of obligations, that is the state within its own domestic sphere does not act in accordance with its obligations as laid down by international law. In such a case, the domestic position is unaffected (and is not overruled by the contrary rule of international law) but rather the state as it operates internationally has broken a rule of international law and the remedy will lie in the international field, whether by means of diplomatic protest or judicial action.

This method of solving the problem does not delve deeply into theoretical considerations, but aims at being practical and in accord with the majority of state practice and international judicial decisions.¹⁴ In fact, the increasing scope of international law has prompted most states to accept something of an intermediate position, where the rules of international law are seen as part of a distinct system, but capable of being applied internally depending on circumstance, while domestic courts are increasingly being obliged to interpret rules of international law.¹⁵

The role of municipal rules in international law¹⁶

The general rule with regard to the position of municipal law within the international sphere is that a state which has broken a stipulation of international law cannot justify itself by referring to its domestic legal situation. It is no defence to a breach of an international obligation to

¹⁴ G. Fitzmaurice, 'The General Principles of International Law Considered from the Standpoint of the Rule of Law', 92 HR, 1957 II, pp. 5, 70–80. See also C. Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, Paris, 1979, pp. 4–16; E. Borchard, 'The Relations between International Law and Municipal Law', 27 *Virginia Law Review*, 1940, p. 137; M. S. McDougal, 'The Impact of International Law upon National Law: A Policy-Orientated Perspective' in McDougal *et al.*, *Studies in World Public Order*, New Haven, 1960, p. 157.

¹⁵ See further as to relevant theories, Shany, *Regulating Jurisdictional Relations*, pp. 92 ff.

¹⁶ See e.g. C. W. Jenks, *The Prospects of International Adjudication*, London, 1964, chapter 9; H. Lauterpacht, *The Development of International Law by the International Court*, London, 1958, and Morgenthau, 'Judicial Practice', pp. 43 ff.

argue that the state acted in such a manner because it was following the dictates of its own municipal laws. The reasons for this inability to put forward internal rules as an excuse to evade international responsibility are obvious. Any other situation would permit international law to be evaded by the simple method of domestic legislation.

Accordingly, state practice and decided cases have established this provision and thereby prevented countries involved in international litigation from pleading municipal law as a method of circumventing international law. Article 27 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 lays down that in so far as treaties are concerned, a party may not invoke the provisions of its internal law as justification for its failure to carry out an international agreement, while article 46(1) provides that a state may not invoke the fact that its consent to be bound by a treaty has been expressed in violation of a provision of its internal law regarding competence to conclude treaties as invalidating its consent.¹⁷ This is so unless the violation of its internal law in question was 'manifest and concerned a rule of fundamental importance'. Article 46(2) states that such a violation is manifest where it would be objectively evident to any state conducting itself in the matter in accordance with normal practice and in good faith. The International Court considered this provision in *Cameroon v. Nigeria* in the context of Nigeria's argument that the Maroua Declaration of 1975 signed by the two heads of state was not valid as it had not been ratified.¹⁸ It was noted that article 7(2) of the Vienna Convention provided that heads of state belonged to the group of persons who in virtue of their functions and without having to produce full powers are considered as representing their state. The Court also took the view that 'there is no general legal obligation for States to keep themselves informed of legislative and constitutional developments in other States which are or may become important for the international relations of these States'.¹⁹

¹⁷ Note also article 13 of the Draft Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States, 1949, which provides that every state 'has the duty to carry out in good faith its obligations arising from treaties and other sources of international law, and it may not invoke provisions in its constitution or its laws as an excuse for failure to perform this duty', *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1949, pp. 286, 289.

¹⁸ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 430 ff.

¹⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 430. But see the view of the Court in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case that the UK as a coastal state greatly interested in North Sea fishing 'could not have been ignorant' of a relevant Norwegian decree, despite claiming that Norway's delimitation system was not known to it: ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 101.

Such provisions are reflected in the case-law. In the *Alabama Claims* arbitration of 1872, the United States objected strenuously when Britain allowed a Confederate ship to sail from Liverpool to prey upon American shipping. It was held that the absence of British legislation necessary to prevent the construction or departure of the vessel could not be brought forward as a defence, and Britain was accordingly liable to pay damages for the depredations caused by the warship in question.²⁰ In the *Polish Nationals in Danzig* case, the Court declared that 'a State cannot adduce as against another State its own constitution with a view to evading obligations incumbent upon it under international law or treaties in force'.²¹

The International Court, in the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate* case,²² has underlined 'the fundamental principle of international law that international law prevails over domestic law', while Judge Shahabuddeen emphasised in the *Lockerbie* case²³ that inability under domestic law to act was no defence to non-compliance with an international obligation. This was reinforced in the *LaGrand* case,²⁴ where the Court noted that the effect of the US procedural default rule,²⁵ which was to prevent counsel for the LaGrand brothers from raising the violation by the US of its obligations under the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963 before the US federal courts system, had no impact upon the responsibility of the US for the breach of the convention.²⁶ The Court underlined this approach in the *Avena* case,²⁷ noting that 'The rights guaranteed under the Vienna Convention are treaty rights which the United States has undertaken to comply with in relation to the individual concerned, irrespective of the due process rights under the United States constitutional law.' The

²⁰ J. B. Moore, *International Arbitrations*, New York, 1898, vol. I, pp. 495, 653. See also e.g. the *Free Zones* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 46, 1932, p. 167; 6 AD, p. 362; the *Greco-Bulgarian Communities* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 17, 1930, p. 32; 5 AD, p. 4, and the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 4, 20–1; 22 ILR, pp. 349, 357–8.

²¹ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 44, pp. 21, 24; 6 AD, p. 209. See also the *Georges Pinson* case, 5 RIAA, p. 327; 4 AD, p. 9.

²² ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 12, 34; 82 ILR, pp. 225, 252.

²³ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 32; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 515. See also *Westland Helicopters Ltd and AOI* 80 ILR, pp. 595, 616.

²⁴ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 497–8; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 35–6.

²⁵ This US federal rule of criminal law essentially prevents a claim from being heard before a federal court if it has not been presented to a state court: see ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 477–8.

²⁶ See also the Advisory Opinion of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights on the *Promulgation and Enforcement of Law in Violation of the Convention*, 116 ILR, pp. 320, 332–3.

²⁷ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 65; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 168.

Court took a step further in that case, which also concerned the failure to allow foreign prisoners access to the consular officials of their state in breach of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, declaring that ‘the remedy to make good these violations should consist in an obligation on the United States to permit review and reconsideration of these nationals’ cases by the United States courts . . . with a view to ascertaining whether in each case the violation of Article 36 committed by the competent authorities caused actual prejudice to the defendant in the process of administration of criminal justice’.²⁸ By way of contrast, the International Court pointed out in the *Elettronica Sicula SpA (ELSI)* case²⁹ that the fact that an act of a public authority may have been unlawful in municipal law did not necessarily mean that the act in question was unlawful in international law.

However, such expressions of the supremacy of international law over municipal law in international tribunals do not mean that the provisions of domestic legislation are either irrelevant or unnecessary.³⁰ On the contrary, the role of internal legal rules is vital to the workings of the international legal machine. One of the ways that it is possible to understand and discover a state’s legal position on a variety of topics important to international law is by examining municipal laws.³¹ A country will express its opinion on such vital international matters as the extent of its territorial sea, or the jurisdiction it claims or the conditions for the acquisition of nationality through the medium of its domestic law-making. Thus, it is quite often that in the course of deciding a case before it, an international court will feel the necessity to make a study of relevant pieces of municipal legislation. Indeed, there have been instances, such as the *Serbian Loans* case of 1929,³² when the crucial issues turned upon the interpretation of internal law, and the rules of international law in

²⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 60. President Bush then issued an order to the state courts to give effect to the decision of the International Court: see 44 ILM, p. 461 (28 February 2005). The US also withdrew its acceptance of the Optional Protocol to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, which had provided for the jurisdiction of the International Court in cases of dispute over the convention.

²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 15, 73–4; 84 ILR, pp. 311, 379–80. See also *Compañía de Aguas del Aconquija v. Argentina* 41 ILM, 2002, pp. 1135, 1154.

³⁰ See e.g. Jenks, *Prospects*, pp. 547–603, and K. Marek, *Droit International et Droit Interne*, Paris, 1961. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 36–40.

³¹ See e.g. the *Anglo-Iranian Oil Co.* case, ICJ Reports, 1952, p. 93; 19 ILR, p. 507.

³² PCIJ, Series A, No. 20; 5 AD, p. 466. See also the *Brazilian Loans* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 21.

a strict sense were not at issue. Further, a court may turn to municipal law concepts where this is necessary in the circumstances.³³ However, it is clear that caution is necessary where an international court or tribunal is considering concepts of national law in the absence of an express or implied requirement so to do and no automatic transposition should occur.³⁴

In addition to the role of municipal law in revealing the legal position of the state on topics of international importance, the rules of municipal law can be utilised as evidence of compliance or non-compliance with international obligations. This was emphasised in the *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case, where the Permanent Court of International Justice declared that:

From the standpoint of International Law and of the Court, which is its organ, municipal laws are merely facts which express the will and constitute the activities of States, in the same manner as do legal decisions or administrative measures. The Court is certainly not called upon to interpret the Polish law as such; but there is nothing to prevent the Court's giving judgment on the question whether or not, in applying that law, Poland is acting in conformity with its obligations towards Germany under the Geneva Convention.³⁵

Nevertheless, and despite the many functions that municipal law rules perform within the sphere of international law, the point must be emphasised that the presence or absence of a particular provision within the internal legal structure of a state, including its constitution if there is one, cannot be applied to evade an international obligation. Any other solution would render the operations of international law rather precarious.

³³ See e.g. the *Barcelona Traction* case concerning the nature of a limited liability company, ICJ Reports, 1970, p. 3; 46 ILR, p. 178.

³⁴ See e.g. the *Exchange of Greek and Turkish Populations* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 10, pp. 19–21; 3 AD, p. 378. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge McNair in the *South West Africa* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 148; 17 ILR, p. 47, noting that private law institutions could not be imported into international law 'lock, stock and barrel'; the Separate Opinion of Judge Fitzmaurice in the *Barcelona Traction* case, ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 66–7; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 240–1, and the Separate and Dissenting Opinion of President Cassese in the *Erdemović* case, 111 ILR, pp. 298, 387 ff.

³⁵ PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, p. 19; 3 AD, p. 5. See also the *Saiga (No. 2)* case before the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 188, and *Benin v. Niger*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 90, 125 and 148. For criticism, see e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 38–40.

International law before municipal courts³⁶

The problem of the role of international law within the municipal law system is, however, rather more complicated than the position discussed above, and there have been a number of different approaches to it. States are, of course, under a general obligation to act in conformity with the rules of international law and will bear responsibility for breaches of it, whether committed by the legislative, executive or judicial organs and irrespective of domestic law.³⁷ Further, international treaties may impose requirements of domestic legislation upon states parties,³⁸ while binding Security Council resolutions may similarly require that states take particular action within their jurisdictions.³⁹ There is indeed a clear trend towards the increasing penetration of international legal rules within domestic systems coupled with the exercise of an ever-wider jurisdiction with regard to matters having an international dimension by domestic courts. This has led to a blurring of the distinction between the two previously maintained autonomous zones of international and domestic law, a re-evaluation of the role of international legal rules and a greater preparedness by domestic tribunals to analyse the actions of their governments in the light of international law.⁴⁰ Further, domestic courts may often have to determine the meaning of an international rule that is relevant for a case before them⁴¹ or to seek to resolve conflicts between international rules,

³⁶ See e.g. Morgenstern, 'Judicial Practice', pp. 48–66, and Conforti, *International Law*. See also H. Mosler, 'L'Application du Droit International Public par les Tribunaux Nationaux', 91 HR, 1957 I, p. 619; W. Wenger, 'Réflexions sur l'Application du Droit International Public par les Tribunaux Internes', 72 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1968, p. 921; E. Benveniste, 'Judges and Foreign Affairs: A Comment on the Institut de Droit International's Resolution on "The Activities of National Courts and the International Relations of their State"', 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 423.

³⁷ See e.g. the *Exchange of Greek and Turkish Populations* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 10, p. 20, and the *Finnish Ships Arbitration*, 3 RIAA, p. 1484. See further below, chapter 14.

³⁸ See e.g. as to requirements imposed by anti-terrorist conventions, below, chapter 12, p. 673. See also the decision of Trial Chamber II in the *Furundžija* case, 121 ILR, pp. 218, 248–9.

³⁹ See as to the effect of counter-terrorism and weapons of mass destruction proliferation measures taken by the Security Council, below chapter 22, pp. 1208, 1210 and 1240.

⁴⁰ See e.g. Shany, *Regulating Jurisdictional Relations*; A. Nollkaemper, 'Internationally Wrongful Acts in Domestic Courts', 101 AJIL, 2007, p. 760, and *New Perspectives on the Divide Between National and International Law* (eds. A. Nollkaemper and J. E. Nijman), Oxford, 2007. See also Conforti, *International Law*.

⁴¹ For example, the concept of jurisdiction as laid down in the European Convention on Human Rights: see *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26; 133 ILR, p. 693.

such as that between state immunity and the prohibition of torture⁴² and that between treaty rules of human rights and binding Security Council resolutions.⁴³

In this section, the approach adopted by municipal courts will be noted. We shall look first at the attitudes adopted by the British courts, and then proceed to note the views taken by the United States and other countries.⁴⁴

*The United Kingdom*⁴⁵

It is part of the public policy of the UK that the courts should in principle give effect to clearly established rules of international law.⁴⁶ Various theories have been put forward to explain the applicability of international law rules within the jurisdiction. One expression of the positivist–dualist position has been the doctrine of *transformation*. This is based upon the perception of two quite distinct systems of law, operating separately, and maintains that before any rule or principle of international law can have any effect within the domestic jurisdiction, it must be expressly and specifically ‘transformed’ into municipal law by the use of the appropriate constitutional machinery, such as an Act of Parliament. This doctrine grew from the procedure whereby international agreements are rendered operative in municipal law by the device of ratification by the sovereign and the idea has developed from this that any rule of international law must be transformed, or specifically adopted, to be valid within the internal legal order.

⁴² See e.g. *Jones v. Saudi Arabia* [2006] UKHL 26; 129 ILR, p. 713.

⁴³ See *Al-Jedda v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 58.

⁴⁴ Note the view expressed in *Oppenheim’s International Law*, p. 54, that ‘states show considerable flexibility in the procedures whereby they give effect within their territories to the rules of international law . . . while the procedures vary, the result that effect is given within states to the requirements of international law is by and large achieved by all states’.

⁴⁵ See e.g. Morgenstern, ‘Judicial Practice’; H. Lauterpacht, ‘Is International Law a Part of the Law of England?’, 25 *Transactions of the Grotius Society*, 1939, p. 51; J. E. S. Fawcett, *The British Commonwealth in International Law*, London, 1963, chapter 2; *Oppenheim’s International Law*, pp. 39–41, and W. Holdsworth, *Essays in Law and History*, Oxford, 1946, p. 260. See also J. Collier, ‘Is International Law Really Part of the Law of England?’, 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 924; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, chapter 12; R. O’Keefe, ‘Customary International Crimes in English Courts’, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 293; K. Reece Thomas, ‘The Changing Status of International Law in English Domestic Law’, 53 NILR, 2006, p. 371; S. Fatima, *Using International Law in Domestic Courts*, Oxford, 2005, and D. Feldman, ‘Monism, Dualism and Constitutional Legitimacy’, 20 Australian YIL, 1999, p. 105.

⁴⁶ See e.g. Upjohn J in *In re Claim by Herbert Wragg & Co. Ltd* [1956] Ch. 323, 334, and Lord Cross in *Oppenheimer v. Cattermole* [1976] AC 249, 277; 72 ILR, p. 446.

Another approach, known as the doctrine of *incorporation*, holds that international law is part of the municipal law automatically without the necessity for the interposition of a constitutional ratification procedure. The best-known exponent of this theory is the eighteenth-century lawyer Blackstone, who declared in his Commentaries that:

the law of nations, wherever any question arises which is properly the object of its jurisdiction, is here adopted in its full extent by the common law, and it is held to be a part of the law of the land.⁴⁷

This doctrine refers to customary international law and different rules apply to treaties. However, the previously accepted dichotomy between the reception of custom and treaty if now maintained absolutely would distort the many developments currently taking place. As will be seen, English courts have had to deal with the effect of legal decisions emanating from the EU and its Court of Justice and the European Court of Human Rights,⁴⁸ as well as the other consequences resulting from membership of the EU and of the Council of Europe; have been concerned with the interpretation of an increasing number of rules of international law incorporated into English law through the ratification of international treaties (particularly the significant number dealing with terrorist issues) and subsequent domestic legislation that they have required;⁴⁹ have sought to tackle conflicts of international legal rules and have dealt with the changing configuration of the doctrine of non-justiciability of issues raising questions as to the executive's conduct of foreign policy. They have also had to concern themselves with the validity of foreign laws deemed to conflict with international law and the acceptability of evidence obtained abroad in circumstances that may have violated international law.⁵⁰ English courts take judicial notice of international law, so that formal proof of a proposition does not need to be demonstrated (unlike propositions of foreign law) and this itself has been a key factor in determining the relationship between international law and domestic law. Judges are deemed to know international law. In practice this means that judges and lawyers trained in domestic law have had to grapple with the

⁴⁷ *Commentaries*, IV, chapter 5.

⁴⁸ See section 3(1) of the European Communities Act 1972 and section 2 of the Human Rights Act 1998, incorporating into domestic law respectively the EU treaties and the European Convention on Human Rights. See also *Kay v. Lambeth Borough Council* [2006] UKHL 10.

⁴⁹ See below, chapter 12, p. 673.

⁵⁰ See below, p. 186. See also *A & Ors v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2005] UKHL 71.

different sources of international law and the difficulties of this task have percolated through the relationship.

Customary international law

It is in this sphere that the doctrine of incorporation has become the main British approach. It is an old-established theory dating back to the eighteenth century, owing its prominence at that stage to the considerable discussion then taking place as to the precise extent of diplomatic immunity. A few of the more important cases will be briefly surveyed. In *Buvot v. Barbuitt*,⁵¹ Lord Talbot declared unambiguously that 'the law of nations in its full extent was part of the law of England', so that a Prussian commercial agent could not be rendered liable for failing to perform a decree. This was followed twenty-seven years later by *Triquet v. Bath*,⁵² where Lord Mansfield, discussing the issue as to whether a domestic servant of the Bavarian Minister to Britain could claim diplomatic immunity, upheld the earlier case and specifically referred to Talbot's statement.

This acceptance of customary international law rules as part and parcel of the common law of England, so vigorously stated in a series of eighteenth-century cases, was subject to the priority granted to Acts of Parliament and tempered by the principle of *stare decisis* or precedent, maintained by the British courts and ensuring that the judgments of the higher courts are binding upon the lower courts of the hierarchical system. Accordingly, a rule of international law would not be implemented if it ran counter to a statute or decision by a higher court.⁵³ It is also important to admit that during this period the rules of customary international law were relatively few in number so that few conflicts between the systems were to be envisaged.

In the nineteenth century, a series of cases occurred which led many writers to dispute the validity of the hitherto accepted incorporation doctrine and replace it with the theory of transformation, according to which the rules of customary international law only form part of English law if they have been specifically adopted, either by legislation or case-law. The turning point in this saga is marked by the case of *R v. Keyn*⁵⁴ which concerned a German ship, the *Franconia*, which collided with and sank a British vessel in the English Channel within three miles of the English

⁵¹ (1737) Cases t. Talbot 281. ⁵² (1764) 3 Burr. 1478.

⁵³ But see *Trendtex Trading Corporation v. Central Bank of Nigeria* [1977] 2 WLR 356; 64 ILR, p. 111; below, p. 144.

⁵⁴ (1876) 2 Ex.D. 63.

coast. The German captain was indicted for manslaughter following the death of a passenger from the British ship, and the question that came before the Court for Crown Cases Reserved was whether an English court did indeed have jurisdiction to try the offence in such circumstances.

The Court came to the conclusion that no British legislation existed which provided for jurisdiction over the three-mile territorial sea around the coasts. It was true that such a rule might be said to exist in international law, but it was one thing to say that the state had the right to legislate over a part of what had previously been the high seas, and quite another to conclude that the state's laws operate at once there, independently of any legislation. One thing did not follow from another, and it was imperative to keep distinct on the one hand the power of Parliament to make laws, and on the other the authority of the courts, without appropriate legislation, to apply the criminal law where it could not have been applied before. The question, as Lord Cockburn emphasised, was whether, acting judicially, the Court could treat the power of Parliament to legislate as making up for the absence of actual legislation. The answer came in the negative and the German captain was released.

This case was seen by some as marking a change to a transformation approach,⁵⁵ but the judgment was in many respects ambiguous, dealing primarily with the existence or not of any right of jurisdiction over the territorial sea.⁵⁶ In many respects the differences between the incorporation and transformation theories have revolved in practice more around evidential questions than any comprehensive theoretical revolution. In any event, any doubts as to the outcome of any further *Franconia* situations were put to rest by the Territorial Waters Jurisdiction Act 1878, which expressed British jurisdiction rights in similar circumstances.

The opinions put forward in the *West Rand Gold Mining Co.* case⁵⁷ showed a further blurring of the distinction between the incorporation and transformation theories. Lord Alverstone declared that whatever had received the common consent of civilised nations must also have received the assent of Great Britain and as such would be applied by the municipal tribunals. However, he went on to modify the impact of this by noting that any proposed rule of international law would have to be proved by satisfactory evidence to have been 'recognised and acted upon by our own

⁵⁵ See e.g. Holdsworth, *Essays*, pp. 263–6, and W. Halsbury, *Laws of England*, 3rd edn, London, 1968, vol. VII, p. 264.

⁵⁶ See e.g. Lauterpacht, 'Is International Law a Part?', pp. 60–1. ⁵⁷ [1905] 2 KB 391.

country' or else be of such a nature that it could hardly be supposed any civilised state would repudiate it. Lord Mansfield's view in *Triquet's* case could not be so interpreted as to include within the common law rules of international law which appear in the opinions of textbook writers and as to which there is no evidence that Britain ever assented.⁵⁸ This emphasis on assent, it must be noted, bears a close resemblance to the views put forward by the Court in *R v. Keyn* as to the necessity for conclusive evidence regarding the existence and scope of any particular rule of customary law. Indeed, the problem is often one of the uncertainty of existence and scope of customary law.

Not long after the *West Rand* case, another important dispute came before the courts. In *Mortensen v. Peters*,⁵⁹ a Danish captain was convicted by a Scottish court for contravening a fishing by-law regarding the Moray Firth. His ship had been operating within the Moray Firth and was within the area covered by the relevant by-law, but it was beyond the three-mile limit recognised by international law. The issue came to the Scottish Court of Justiciary, where Lord Dunedin, in discussing the captain's appeal, concentrated upon the correct construction to be made of the relevant legislation. He noted that an Act of Parliament duly passed and assented to was supreme and the Court had no option but to give effect to its provisions. In other words, statutes had predominance over customary law, and a British court would have to heed the terms of an Act of Parliament even if it involved the breach of a rule of international law. This is so even though there is a presumption in British law that the legislation is to be so construed as to avoid a conflict with international law. Where such a conflict does occur, the statute has priority and the state itself will have to deal with the problem of the breach of a customary rule.⁶⁰

This modified incorporation doctrine was clearly defined by Lord Atkin in *Chung Chi Cheung v. R.*⁶¹ He noted that:

international law has no validity except in so far as its principles are accepted and adopted by our own domestic law . . . The courts acknowledge the existence of a body of rules which nations accept among themselves. On any judicial issue they seek to ascertain what the relevant rule is, and having

⁵⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 407–8. ⁵⁹ (1906) 8 F.(J.) 93.

⁶⁰ See also 170 HC Deb., col. 472, 4 March 1907 and the Trawling in Prohibited Areas Prevention Act 1909.

⁶¹ [1939] AC 160; 9 AD, p. 264. See also *Commercial and Estates Co. of Egypt v. Board of Trade* [1925] 1 KB 271, 295; 2 AD, p. 423.

found it they will treat it as incorporated into the domestic law, so far as it is not inconsistent with rules enacted by statutes or finally declared by their tribunals.

It goes without saying, of course, that any alleged rule of customary law must be proved to be a valid rule of international law, and not merely an unsupported proposition.

One effect of the doctrines as enunciated by the courts in practice is that international law is not treated as a foreign law but in an evidential manner as part of the law of the land. This means that whereas any rule of foreign law has to be proved as a fact by evidence, as occurs with other facts, the courts take judicial notice of any rule of international law and may refer, for example, to textbooks rather than require the presence and testimony of expert opinion.⁶²

In ascertaining the existence and nature of any particular rule, the courts may have recourse to a wider range of authoritative material than would normally be the case, such as 'international treaties and conventions, authoritative textbooks, practice and judicial decisions' of the courts of other countries.⁶³

The case of *Trendtex Trading Corporation v. Central Bank of Nigeria* raised anew many of these issues. The case concerned a claim for sovereign or state immunity by the Central Bank of Nigeria.⁶⁴ In *Trendtex* all three judges of the Court of Appeal accepted the incorporation doctrine as the correct one. Lord Denning, reversing his opinion in an earlier case,⁶⁵ stressed that otherwise the courts could not recognise changes in the norms of international law.⁶⁶ Stephenson LJ emphasised in an important statement that:

it is the nature of international law and the specific problems of ascertaining it which create the difficulty in the way of adopting or incorporating or recognising as already incorporated a new rule of international law.⁶⁷

⁶² *Lord Advocate's Reference No. 1 of 2000*, 2001, SLT 507, 512–13.

⁶³ Per Lord MacMillan, *The Cristina* [1938] AC 485, 497; 9 AD, p. 250. See *Re Piracy Jure Gentium* [1934] AC 586, 588; 7 AD, p. 213, and Stephenson LJ, *Trendtex Trading Corporation v. Central Bank of Nigeria* [1977] 2 WLR 356, 379; 64 ILR, pp. 111, 135. But see also Lauterpacht, 'Is International Law a Part?', p. 87, note m.

⁶⁴ [1977] 2 WLR 356; 64 ILR, p. 111. See further below, chapter 13.

⁶⁵ *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Thakrar* [1974] 2 WLR 593, 597; 59 ILR, p. 450.

⁶⁶ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 365; 64 ILR, pp. 111, 128. See also Shaw LJ, *ibid.*, 386 and Stephenson LJ, *ibid.*, 378–81.

⁶⁷ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 379.

The issue of *stare decisis*, or precedent, and customary international law was also discussed in this case. It had previously been accepted that the doctrine of *stare decisis* would apply in cases involving customary international law principles as in all other cases before the courts, irrespective of any changes in the meantime in such law.⁶⁸ This approach was reaffirmed in *Thai-Europe Tapioca Service Ltd v. Government of Pakistan*.⁶⁹ However, in *Trendtex*, Lord Denning and Shaw LJ emphasised that international law did not know a rule of *stare decisis*.⁷⁰ Where international law had changed, the court could implement that change 'without waiting for the House of Lords to do it'.⁷¹ The true principle, noted Shaw LJ, was that 'the English courts must at any given time discover what the prevailing international rule is and apply that rule'.⁷² This marked a significant approach and one that in the future may have some interesting consequences, for example, in the human rights field.

The dominant incorporationist approach was clearly reaffirmed by the Court of Appeal in *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry*.⁷³ This case concerned the consequences of the demise of the International Tin Council and the attempts *inter alia* to render states that were members of the ITC liable for the debts incurred by that unfortunate organisation. Nourse LJ emphasised that the *Trendtex* case had resolved the rivalry between the incorporation and transformation doctrines in favour of the former.⁷⁴ One of the major points at issue in the *Tin Council* litigation was whether a rule existed in international law stipulating that the states members of an international organisation with separate personality could be rendered liable for the latter's debts.

If such a rule did exist, the question would then arise as to how that would be accepted or manifested in the context of municipal law. This, of course, would depend upon the precise content of such a claimed international rule and, as Kerr LJ noted, no such rule did exist in international law permitting action against member states 'in any national court'.⁷⁵ It was

⁶⁸ See e.g. *Chung Chi Cheung v. R* [1939] AC 160, 169; 9 AD, p. 264. But see Morgenstern, 'Judicial Practice', pp. 80–2.

⁶⁹ [1975] 3 All ER 961, 967, 969–70; 64 ILR, p. 81.

⁷⁰ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 365; 64 ILR, pp. 111, 128.

⁷¹ Per Lord Denning, [1977] 2 WLR 356, 366.

⁷² *Ibid.*, 388; 64 ILR, p. 152. But cf. Stephenson LJ, *ibid.*, 381. See also e.g. Goff J, *I^o Congreso del Partido* [1977] 3 WLR 778, 795; 64 ILR, p. 154. This approach was supported by Lord Slynn in *Ex Parte Pinochet (No. 1)* [2000] 1 AC 61, 77; 119 ILR, pp. 50, 65.

⁷³ [1988] 3 WLR 1033; 80 ILR, p. 49. ⁷⁴ [1988] 3 WLR 1116; 80 ILR, p. 132.

⁷⁵ [1988] 3 WLR 1095; 80 ILR, p. 109.

also not possible for an English court to remedy the gap in international law by itself creating such a rule.⁷⁶ Nourse LJ, however, took a different position on this point, stating that ‘where it is necessary for an English court to decide such a question [i.e. an uncertain question of international law], and whatever the doubts and difficulties, it can and must do so.’⁷⁷ This, with respect, is not and cannot be the case, not least because it strikes at the heart of the community-based system of international law creation.

Lord Oliver in the House of Lords judgment⁷⁸ clearly and correctly emphasised that

It is certainly not for a domestic tribunal in effect to legislate a rule into existence for the purposes of domestic law and on the basis of material that is wholly indeterminate.⁷⁹

Such approaches find support in the *Pinochet* decisions. Lord Lloyd, for example, in *Ex Parte Pinochet (No. 1)* referred to the ‘well-established principles of customary international law, which principles form part of the common law of England’,⁸⁰ while Lord Slynn took the view that the doctrine of precedent did not apply to the incorporation of rules of customary international law.⁸¹ Lord Millett in *Ex Parte Pinochet (No. 3)* stressed that ‘Customary international law is part of the common law.’⁸² In *Lord Advocate’s Reference No. 1 of 2000*, the High Court of Justiciary stated that ‘A rule of customary international law is a rule of Scots law’,⁸³ and the point was emphasised by the Arbitration Tribunal in *Sandline v. Papua New Guinea* that ‘it is part of the public policy of England that its courts should give effect to clearly established rules of international law’.⁸⁴

The doctrine that customary international law formed part of the law of England was discussed by the House of Lords in *R v. Jones*,⁸⁵ where the issue focused upon whether the customary international law rule prohibiting aggression had automatically entered into English criminal law. Lord Bingham, while noting that the general principle was not at issue

⁷⁶ *Ibid.* ⁷⁷ [1988] 3 WLR 1118; 80 ILR, p. 135.

⁷⁸ [1989] 3 All ER 523; 81 ILR, p. 671. ⁷⁹ [1989] 3 All ER 554; 81 ILR, p. 715.

⁸⁰ [2000] 1 AC 61, 98 and see also at 90; 119 ILR, pp. 50, 87.

⁸¹ See *Ex Parte Pinochet (No. 1)* [2000] 1 AC 61, 77; 119 ILR, pp. 50, 65.

⁸² [2000] 1 AC 147, 276; 119 ILR, pp. 135, 230. See also *Regina (European Roma Rights Centre) v. Immigration Officer at Prague Airport and Another* [2004] UKHL 55, paras. 22 ff. (per Lord Bingham); 131 ILR, pp. 652, 671 ff.

⁸³ 2001 SLT 507, 512. See also S. Neff, ‘International Law and Nuclear Weapons in Scottish Courts’, 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 171.

⁸⁴ 117 ILR, pp. 552, 560. ⁸⁵ [2006] UKHL 16; 132 ILR, p. 668.

between the parties, commented that he 'would for my part hesitate, at any rate without much fuller argument, to accept this proposition in quite the unqualified terms in which it has often been stated'. Preference was expressed for the view maintained by Brierly that international law was not a part, but was rather one of the sources, of English law.⁸⁶

More specifically, the House of Lords unanimously accepted that the incorporation doctrine did not apply to the customary international law offence of aggression. While it was accepted that a crime recognised in customary international law 'may' be assimilated into domestic criminal law without statutory provision, this was not automatic.⁸⁷ The English courts no longer had the power to create new criminal offences, which could only now be done by statute, and in practice when domestic effect was sought for customary international crimes this was achieved through legislation.⁸⁸ Further, a charge of aggression would involve a determination not only of the guilt of the accused, but also of the state itself and possibly of other states, should the state go to war with allies and this raised constitutional issues as to non-justiciability.⁸⁹

Accordingly, a degree of caution may therefore now be necessary with regard to the traditionally and baldly expressed proposition that customary international law is part of English law. This will be subject not only, as in the past, to the rule that common law (including where incorporating an international customary rule) gives way to statute, but also to considerations of a constitutional nature. Courts will be obliged to

⁸⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 11; 132 ILR, p. 675, and see J. Brierly, 'International Law in England' 51 LQR, 1935, 24, 31.

⁸⁷ *R v. Jones*, para. 23; 132 ILR, p. 680, per Lord Bingham, who noted that 'customary international law is applicable in the English courts only where the constitution permits', quoting O'Keefe, 'Customary International Crimes in English Courts', p. 335, and that 'international law could not create a crime triable directly, without the intervention of Parliament, in an English court', quoting Sir Franklin Berman, 'Jurisdiction: The State' in *Asserting Jurisdiction: International and European Legal Perspectives* (P. Capps, M. Evans and S. Konstadinidis eds.), Oxford, 2003, pp. 3, 11.

⁸⁸ *R v. Jones*, para. 28; 132 ILR, p. 683. See also *Knüller (Publishing, Printing and Promotions) Ltd v. Director of Public Prosecutions* [1973] AC 435. Lord Hoffmann in *R v. Jones* noted that 'new domestic offences should in my opinion be debated in Parliament, defined in a statute and come into force on a prescribed date. They should not creep into existence as a result of an international consensus to which only the executive of this country is a party', para. 62; 132 ILR, pp. 694–5, and see Lord Mance at paras. 102–3; 132 ILR, pp. 705–6. See also *Sosa v. Alvarez-Machain* (2004) 159 L Ed 2d 718, 765; 127 ILR, pp. 769, 807 (per Scalia J) and the Federal Court of Australia decision in *Nulyarimma v. Thompson* (1999) 165 ALR 621, 630; 120 ILR, pp. 353, 364.

⁸⁹ *R v. Jones*, para. 30; 132 ILR, p. 684, and Lord Hoffmann, paras. 63–7; 132 ILR, pp. 695–6. See further as to non-justiciability, below, p. 179.

conduct an enquiry, as before, into whether a particular provision indeed constitutes a rule of custom, and additionally into whether there are any constitutional bars to incorporation.

Treaties⁹⁰

As far as treaties are concerned, different rules apply as to their application within the domestic jurisdiction for very good historical and political reasons. While customary law develops through the evolution of state practice, international conventions are in the form of contracts binding upon the signatories. For a custom to emerge it is usual, though not always necessary, for several states to act in a certain manner believing it to be in conformity with the law. Therefore, in normal circumstances the influence of one particular state is not usually decisive. In the case of treaties, the states involved may create new law that would be binding upon them irrespective of previous practice or contemporary practice. In other words, the influence of the executive is generally of greater impact where treaty law is concerned than is the case with customary law and this is particularly so where, as in the UK, ratification of treaties is an executive act.

It follows from this that were treaties to be rendered applicable directly within the state without any intermediate stage after signature and ratification and before domestic operation, the executive would be able to legislate without the legislature. Because of this, any incorporation theory approach to treaty law has been rejected. Indeed, as far as this topic is concerned, it seems to turn more upon the particular relationship between the executive and legislative branches of government than upon any preconceived notions of international law.

One of the principal cases in English law illustrating this situation is the case of the *Parlement Belge*.⁹¹ It involved a collision between this ship and a British tug, and the claim for damages brought by the latter vessel

⁹⁰ See generally A. D. McNair, *The Law of Treaties*, Oxford, 1961, pp. 81–97; A. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2007, chapter 10; F. A. Mann, 'The Enforcement of Treaties by English Courts', 44 *Transactions of the Grotius Society*, 1958–9, p. 29; R. Higgins in *The Effect of Treaties in Domestic Law* (eds. F. Jacobs and S. Roberts), London, 1987, p. 123; D. Lasok, 'Les Traités Internationaux dans la Système Juridique Anglaise', 70 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1966, p. 961; I. Sinclair, 'The Principles of Treaty Interpretation and their Application by the English Courts', 12 *ICLQ*, 1963, p. 508; I. Sinclair and S. J. Dickson, 'National Treaty Law and Practice: United Kingdom' in *National Treaty Law and Practice* (eds. M. Leigh and M. R. Blakeslee), 1995, p. 223, and C. Warbrick, 'Treaties', 49 *ICLQ*, 2000, p. 944.

⁹¹ (1879) 4 PD 129.

before the Probate, Divorce and Admiralty division of the High Court. The *Parlement Belge* belonged to the King of the Belgians and was used as a cargo boat. During the case, the Attorney General intervened to state that the Court had no jurisdiction over the vessel as it was the property of the Belgian monarch, and that further, by a political agreement of 1876 between Britain and Belgium, the same immunity from foreign legal process as applied to warships should apply also to this packet boat. In discussing the case, the Court concluded that only public ships of war were entitled to such immunity and that such immunity could not be extended to other categories by a treaty without parliamentary consent. Indeed, it was stated that this would be 'a use of the treaty-making prerogative of the Crown . . . without precedent, and in principle contrary to the law of the constitution'.⁹²

It is the Crown which in the UK possesses the constitutional authority to enter into treaties and this prerogative power cannot be impugned by the courts.⁹³ However, this power may be affected by legislation. Section 6 of the European Parliamentary Elections Act 1978 provided, for example, that no treaty providing for any increase in the powers of the European Parliament would be ratified by the UK without being first approved by Parliament.⁹⁴ Thus it is that treaties cannot operate of themselves within the state, but require the passing of an enabling statute. The Crown in the UK retains the right to sign and ratify international agreements, but is unable to legislate directly. Before a treaty can become part of English law, an Act of Parliament is essential. This fundamental proposition was clearly spelt out by Lord Oliver in the House of Lords decision in *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry*.⁹⁵ He noted that:

as a matter of the constitutional law of the United Kingdom, the royal prerogative, whilst it embraces the making of treaties, does not extend to altering the law or conferring rights on individuals or depriving individuals of rights which they enjoy in domestic law without the intervention of Parliament. Treaties, as it is sometimes expressed, are not self-executing.

⁹² *Ibid.*, p. 154.

⁹³ See e.g. *Council of Civil Service Unions v. Minister for the Civil Service* [1985] AC 374, 418. See also *Rustomjee v. R* (1876) 2 QBD 69 and *Lonrho Exports v. ECGD* [1996] 4 All ER 673; 108 ILR, pp. 596, 611.

⁹⁴ See *R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, ex parte Rees-Mogg* [1994] 2 WLR 115.

⁹⁵ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 531; 81 ILR, pp. 671, 684. See also *Lonrho Exports v. ECGD* [1996] 4 All ER 673, 687; 108 ILR, pp. 596, 611.

Quite simply, a treaty is not part of English law unless and until it has been incorporated into the law by legislation.⁹⁶

It therefore followed that as far as individuals were concerned such treaties were *res inter alia acta* from which they could not derive rights and by which they could not be deprived of rights or subjected to obligations.⁹⁷ Lord Templeman emphasised that 'Except to the extent that a treaty becomes incorporated into the laws of the United Kingdom by statute, the courts of the United Kingdom have no power to enforce treaty rights and obligations at the behest of a sovereign government or at the behest of a private individual.'⁹⁸ This was reaffirmed by Lord Bingham in *A (FC) and Others (FC) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department*, noting that 'a treaty, even if ratified by the United Kingdom, has no binding force in the domestic law of this country unless it is given effect by statute or expresses principles of customary international law.'⁹⁹ The interpretation of treaties not incorporated by statute into municipal law, and the decision as to whether they have been complied with, are matters exclusively for the Crown as 'the court must speak with the same voice as the Executive'.¹⁰⁰ An exception is where reference to a treaty is needed in order to explain the relevant factual background,¹⁰¹ for example where the terms of a treaty are incorporated into a contract.¹⁰² Where the legislation in question refers expressly to a relevant but unincorporated treaty, it is

⁹⁶ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 544–5; 81 ILR, p. 701. See also *Littrell v. USA (No. 2)* [1995] 1 WLR 82. But see R. Y. Jennings, 'An International Lawyer Takes Stock', 39 ICLQ, 1990, pp. 513, 523–6.

⁹⁷ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 544–5; 81 ILR, p. 701. See further as to the non-justiciability of unincorporated treaties, below, p. 183.

⁹⁸ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 526; 81 ILR, p. 676. See also *Ex Parte Brind* [1991] 1 AC 696, 747–8; 85 ILR, p. 29, and *R v. Lyons* [2002] UKHL 44; 131 ILR, p. 538.

⁹⁹ [2005] UKHL 71, para. 27. Lord Bingham in *R v. Asfaw* [2008] UKHL 31, para. 29 stated that, 'While, therefore, one would expect any government intending to legislate inconsistently with an obligation binding on the UK to make its intention very clear, there can on well known authority be no ground in domestic law for failing to give effect to an enactment in terms unambiguously inconsistent with such an obligation.'

¹⁰⁰ *Lonrho Exports v. ECGD* [1996] 4 All ER 673, 688; 108 ILR, pp. 596, 613. See also *GUR Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa Ltd* [1986] 3 All ER 449, 454, 459 and 466–7; 75 ILR, p. 675, and *Sierra Leone Telecommunications v. Barclays Bank* [1998] 2 All ER 821, 828; 114 ILR, p. 466.

¹⁰¹ Lord Oliver in *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry* emphasised that the conclusion of an international treaty is a question of fact, thus a treaty may be referred to as part of the factual background against which a particular issue arises, [1989] 3 All ER 523, 545; 81 ILR, pp. 671, 702. See further below, pp. 183–5.

¹⁰² *Lonrho Exports v. ECGD* [1996] 4 All ER 673, 688; 108 ILR, pp. 596, 613.

permissible to utilise the latter in order to constrain any discretion provided for in the former.¹⁰³ Further, it has been argued that ratification of an international treaty (where no incorporation has taken place) may give rise to legitimate expectations that the executive, in the absence of statutory or executive indications to the contrary, will act in conformity with the treaty.¹⁰⁴

However, treaties relating to the conduct of war, cession of territory and the imposition of charges on the public purse¹⁰⁵ do not need an intervening act of legislation before they can be made binding upon the citizens of the country.¹⁰⁶ A similar situation exists also with regard to relatively unimportant administrative agreements which do not require ratification, providing of course they do not purport to alter municipal law. In certain cases, Parliament will give its approval generically in advance for the conclusion of treaties in certain fields within specified limits, subject to the terms negotiated for particular treaties being promulgated by statutory instrument (secondary legislation).¹⁰⁷ Such exceptions occur because it is felt that, having in mind the historical compromises upon which the British constitutional structure is founded, no significant legislative powers are being lost by Parliament. In all other cases where the rights and duties of British subjects are affected, an Act of Parliament is necessary to render the provisions of the particular treaty operative within Britain. In conclusion, it may be stated that parliamentary legislation will

¹⁰³ See e.g. *R v. Secretary of State, On the Application of the Channel Tunnel Group* 119 ILR, pp. 398, 407–8.

¹⁰⁴ See Lord Woolf MR in *Ex Parte Ahmed and Patel* [1998] INLR 570, 584, relying upon the approach of the High Court of Australia in *Minister of Immigration v. Teoh*, as to which see below, p. 167. Hobhouse LJ in *Ex Parte Ahmed and Patel* noted that where the Secretary of State had adopted a specific policy, it was not possible to derive a legitimate expectation from the treaty going beyond the scope of the policy: at 592. Note, as to the special position of human rights treaties as against other multilateral treaties, e.g. *Matthew v. Trinidad and Tobago State* [2004] UKPC 33; 134 ILR, p. 687.

¹⁰⁵ See the evidence presented by the Foreign and Commonwealth Office to the Royal Commission on the Reform of the House of Lords, UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 405.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. S. de Smith and R. Brazier, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 6th edn, London, 1989, pp. 140–2, and W. Wade and O. H. Phillips, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 9th edn, London, 1977, pp. 303–6. See also *Attorney-General for Canada v. Attorney-General for Ontario* [1937] AC 326, 347; 8 AD, p. 41; *Walker v. Baird* [1892] AC 491; *Republic of Italy v. Hambro's Bank* [1950] 1 All ER 430; *Cheney v. Conn* [1968] 1 WLR 242; 41 ILR, p. 421; *Porter v. Freudenberg* [1915] 1 KB 857, 874–80, and McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 89–91.

¹⁰⁷ See the evidence presented by the Foreign and Commonwealth Office to the Royal Commission on the Reform of the House of Lords, UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 405, citing the examples of extradition and double-taxation treaties.

be required where a treaty for its application in the UK requires a modification of, or addition to, existing common law or statute, affects private rights, creates financial obligations for the UK, provides for an increase in the powers of the European Parliament, involves the cession of British territory or increases the powers of the Crown.¹⁰⁸

There is no rule specifying the precise legislative method of incorporation of a treaty¹⁰⁹ and a variety of means are available in practice.¹¹⁰ For example, a treaty may be incorporated into domestic law by being given the force of law in a statute with or without being scheduled to the relevant act; by being referred to in a statute otherwise than in an incorporating statute; by tangential reference in a statute;¹¹¹ and by statutory referral to definitions contained in a treaty.¹¹²

It is the practice in the UK to lay before both Houses of Parliament all treaties which the UK has either signed or to which it intends to accede.¹¹³ The text of any agreement requiring ratification, acceptance, approval or accession has to be laid before Parliament at least twenty-one sitting days before any of these actions is taken.¹¹⁴ This is termed the 'Ponsonby Rule'.¹¹⁵ All treaties signed after 1 January 1997 and laid before Parliament

¹⁰⁸ Sinclair and Dickson, 'National Treaty Law', p. 230.

¹⁰⁹ See *Regina (European Roma Rights Centre) v. Immigration Officer at Prague Airport and Another* [2004] UKHL 55, para. 42; 131 ILR, p. 683 (per Lord Steyn).

¹¹⁰ See e.g. Fatima, *Using International Law*, pp. 57 ff.

¹¹¹ For example, section 2 of the Asylum and Immigration Appeals Act 1993 provides that nothing in the immigration rules within the Immigration Act 1971 shall lay down any practice contrary to the Refugee Convention.

¹¹² See e.g. the International Criminal Court Act 2001.

¹¹³ It is also the practice to put before Parliament Orders in Council made under the United Nations Act 1946 in order, for example, to implement United Nations sanctions internally: see s. 1(4) of the Act and H. Fox and C. Wickremasinghe, 'UK Implementation of UN Economic Sanctions', 42 ICLQ, 1993, pp. 945, 959. See also *R v. HM Treasury and the Bank of England, ex parte Centro-Com*, Times Law Report, 7 October 1993.

¹¹⁴ Since 1998, it has been the FCO's practice to apply the Ponsonby Rule also to treaties subject simply to the mutual notification of the completion of constitutional or other internal procedures by each party: see the evidence presented by the Foreign and Commonwealth Office to the Royal Commission on the Reform of the House of Lords, UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 408.

¹¹⁵ See 171 HC Deb., col. 2001, 1 April 1924. This is regarded not as a binding rule but as a constitutional usage: see Wade and Phillips, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, p. 304. See also the Foreign and Commonwealth Office Nationality, Treaty and Claims Department's handbook entitled *International Agreements: Practice and Procedure – Guidance Notes*, 1992, quoted in UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 705, and *Ersine May's Treatise on the Law, Privileges, Proceedings and Usages of Parliament* (eds. D. Limon and W. R. McKay), 22nd edn, London, 1997. If primary or secondary legislation is required in order to ensure compliance with obligations arising under a treaty, the Government will not ratify a treaty

under this rule are accompanied by an Explanatory Memorandum.¹¹⁶ The UK government, however, is currently reviewing issues of governance, including the prerogative powers, which include the making and ratification of treaties, the deployment and use of armed forces abroad, acquiring and ceding territory and the conduct of diplomacy.¹¹⁷ It has been proposed that the Ponsonby rule be placed on a statutory footing.¹¹⁸

There is in English law a presumption that legislation is to be so construed as to avoid a conflict with international law.¹¹⁹ This operates particularly where the Act of Parliament which is intended to bring the treaty into effect is itself ambiguous. Accordingly, where the provisions of a statute implementing a treaty are capable of more than one meaning, and one interpretation is compatible with the terms of the treaty while others are not, it is the former approach that will be adopted. For, as Lord Diplock pointed out: 'Parliament does not intend to act in breach of international law, including therein specific treaty obligations.'¹²⁰

However, where the words of a statute are unambiguous the courts have no choice but to apply them irrespective of any conflict with international agreements.¹²¹ Of course, any breach of an international

until such legislation has been implemented: see Parliamentary Under-Secretary of State, 220 HC Deb., WA, cols. 483–4, 9 March 1993, quoted in UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 629.

¹¹⁶ UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 406. See also the Second Report of the House of Commons Select Committee on Procedure – Parliamentary Scrutiny of Treaties, 2000, HC 210 (www.parliament.the-stationery-office.co.uk/pa/cm199900/cmselect/cmproced/210/21003.htm). See also the Government Response, HC 990 (www.parliament.the-stationery-office.co.uk/pa/cm199900/cmselect/cmproced/210/21003.htm).

¹¹⁷ See *The Governance of Britain*, Cm 7170, 2007. See also the Prime Minister's statement to the House of Commons, Hansard HC vol. 462 col. 815, 3 July 2007, and C. Warbrick, 'The Governance of Britain', 57 ICLQ, 2008, p. 209. See further *The Governance of Britain – War, Powers and Treaties: Limiting Executive Powers*, Cm 7239, 2007.

¹¹⁸ *The Governance of Britain*, para. 33, and Warbrick, 'Governance', p. 216.

¹¹⁹ See e.g. *Garland v. British Rail Engineering Ltd* [1983] 2 AC 751; 93 ILR, p. 622, and *Ex Parte Brind* [1991] 1 AC 696, 748; 85 ILR, p. 29, where this presumption is referred to as 'a mere canon of construction which involves no importation of international law into the domestic field'. See also *Maxwell on the Interpretation of Statutes*, 12th edn, London, 1969, p. 183; *A (FC) and Others (FC) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2005] UKHL 71, para. 27, and *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26, para. 45; 133 ILR, pp. 715–16 (per Lord Rodger).

¹²⁰ *Salomon v. Commissioners of Customs and Excise* [1967] 2 QB 116, 143; *Post Office v. Estuary Radio Ltd* [1968] 2 QB 740 and *Brown v. Whimster* [1976] QB 297. See also *National Smokeless Fuels Ltd v. IRC*, *The Times*, 23 April 1986, p. 36, and Lord Oliver in *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1989] 3 All ER 523, 545; 81 ILR, pp. 671, 702.

¹²¹ *Ellerman Lines v. Murray* [1931] AC 126; 5 AD, p. 342 and *IRC v. Collico Dealings Ltd* [1962] AC 1; 33 ILR, p. 1. See Sinclair, 'Principles of Treaty Interpretation', and C. Schreuer, 'The

obligation will import the responsibility of the UK at the international level irrespective of domestic considerations.¹²² Attempts have been made in the past to consider treaties in the context of domestic legislation not directly enacting them, or as indications of public policy, particularly with regard to human rights treaties,¹²³ and it seems that account may be taken of them in seeking to interpret ambiguous provisions.¹²⁴ However, ministers are under no obligation to do this in reaching decisions.¹²⁵

One particular issue has arisen in the case of the implementation of international obligations and that relates to United Nations sanctions. In the UK, such sanctions are enforced as a consequence of the United Nations Act 1946 which enables the Crown to adopt Orders in Council so that effect can be given to sanctions.¹²⁶ Such secondary legislation tends to be detailed and thus the possibility of differential interpretations arises. It is to be noted that the relevance and application of rules of the European

Interpretation of Treaties by Domestic Courts', 45 BYIL, 1971, p. 255. See also F. A. Mann, *Foreign Affairs in English Courts*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 97–114; R. Gardiner, 'Treaty Interpretation in the English Courts since *Fothergill v. Monarch Airlines* (1980)', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 620, and Fatima, *Using International Law*, pp. 65 ff.

¹²² See above, p. 133. ¹²³ See e.g. *Blathwayt v. Baron Cawley* [1976] AC 397.

¹²⁴ See e.g. in the context of the European Convention on Human Rights prior to its incorporation by the Human Rights Act 1998, *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Bhajan Singh* [1975] 2 All ER 1081; 61 ILR, p. 260; *R v. Chief Immigration Officer, Heathrow Airport, ex parte Salamat Bibi* [1976] 3 All ER 843; 61 ILR, p. 267; *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Phansopkar* [1976] QB 606; 61 ILR, p. 390; *Waddington v. Miah* [1974] 1 WLR 683; 57 ILR, p. 175; *Cassell v. Broome* [1972] AC 1027; *Malone v. MPC* [1979] Ch. 344; 74 ILR, p. 304; *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Anderson* [1984] 1 All ER 920; *Trawnik v. Ministry of Defence* [1984] 2 All ER 791 and *Ex Parte Launder* [1997] 1 WLR 839. In *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Brind* [1991] 1 AC 696, it was held that subordinate legislation and executive discretion did not fall into this category. See also *Derbyshire County Council v. Times Newspapers Ltd* [1993] AC 534 HL; *Rantzen v. Mirror Group Newspapers* (1986) Ltd [1993] 3 WLR 953 CA; *Attorney-General v. Associated Newspapers Ltd* [1993] 3 WLR 74; *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Wynne* [1993] 1 WLR 115 and *R v. Brown* [1993] 2 WLR 556. See also A. Cunningham, 'The European Convention on Human Rights, Customary International Law and the Constitution', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 537.

¹²⁵ See e.g. *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Fernandes* [1984] 2 All ER 390.

¹²⁶ See e.g. the Iraq and Kuwait (UN Sanctions) Order 1990, SI 1990 No. 1651; the Serbia and Montenegro (UN Sanctions) Orders 1992 and 1993, SI 1992 No. 1302 and SI 1993 No. 1188; the Libya (UN Sanctions) Orders 1992 and 1993, SI 1992 Nos. 973 and 975 and SI 1993 No. 2807; the Former Yugoslavia (UN Sanctions) Order 1994, SI 1994 No. 2673.

Union may also be in issue.¹²⁷ Further, one may note the obligation contained in article 29 of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, adopted by binding UN Security Council resolution 827 (1993), for all states to co-operate with the Tribunal and in particular to 'comply without undue delay with any request for assistance or an order issued by a Trial Chamber', including the arrest and detention of persons and their surrender or transfer to the Tribunal. This was implemented by secondary legislation adopted under the United Nations Act 1946.¹²⁸

In the interpretation of international treaties incorporated by statute, the English courts have adopted a broader approach than is customary in statutory interpretation.¹²⁹ In particular, recourse to the relevant *travaux préparatoires* may be possible.¹³⁰ However, different approaches have been taken by the British courts as to how to deal with the question of interpretation in such circumstances. In *Sidhu v. British Airways*, Lord Hope, adopting the broad approach signalled in *Fothergill v. Monarch Airlines*, stated that it was 'well-established that a purposive approach should be taken to the interpretation of international conventions which have the force of law in this country'.¹³¹ Lord Mustill in *Semco Salvage v. Lancer Navigation* took a more traditional approach founded upon the relevant articles of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969,¹³² in particular emphasising the significance of a textual interpretation of the words

¹²⁷ See e.g. *Ex Parte Centro-Com* [1994] 1 CMLR 109; [1997] ECR I-81, and [1997] 3 WLR 239; 117 ILR, p. 444. See also R. Pavoni, 'UN Sanctions in EU and National Law: The Centro-Com Case', 48 ICLQ, 1999, p. 582. See further below, p. 1251, note 237.

¹²⁸ The UN (International Tribunal) (Former Yugoslavia) Order 1996, SI 1996 No. 716. See for differing approaches to this procedure, C. Warbrick, 'Co-operation with the International Criminal Tribunal for Yugoslavia', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 947, and H. Fox, 'The Objections to Transfer of Criminal Jurisdiction to the Tribunal', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 434.

¹²⁹ Lord Slynn stated in *R (Al Fawwaz) v. Governor of Brixton Prison* that 'to apply to extradition treaties the strict canons appropriate to the construction of domestic statutes would often tend to defeat rather than to serve [their] purpose', [2001] UKHL 69, para. 39, citing Lord Bridge in *Ex Parte Postlethwaite* [1988] AC 924, 947.

¹³⁰ See *Buchanan v. Babco* [1978] AC 141 and *Fothergill v. Monarch Airlines* [1981] AC 251; 74 ILR, p. 648. Compare in the latter case the restrictive approach of Lord Wilberforce, [1981] AC 278; 74 ILR, p. 656 with that of Lord Diplock, [1981] AC 283; 74 ILR, pp. 661–2. See also *Goldman v. Thai Airways International Ltd* [1983] 3 All ER 693. Note also that in *Wahda Bank v. Arab Bank plc* Times Law Reports, 16 December 1992, Phillips J referred to UN sanctions resolutions in examining the question of the applicability of the Order in Council implementing the sanctions internally to the case in question. See further *Re H (Minors)* [1998] AC 72.

¹³¹ [1997] 1 All ER 193, 202. ¹³² See below, chapter 16, p. 932.

in question as understood in their ordinary meaning.¹³³ In a rather special position is the Human Rights Act 1998, which incorporated the European Convention on Human Rights. Section 3(1) provides that, 'So far as it is possible to do so, primary and subordinate legislation must be read and given effect in a way which is compatible with Convention rights', although this does not affect the validity, continuing operation or enforcement of any incompatible primary legislation.¹³⁴ The obligation imposed by s. 3 arises crucially in relation to both previous and subsequent enactments.¹³⁵ Where legislation cannot be rendered compatible with Convention rights, then a declaration of incompatibility can be made under s. 4 and Parliament may then modify the offending provisions under s. 10. The courts have also adopted a broader, purposive approach to interpretation of domestic legislation in order to ensure its compatibility with the Convention.¹³⁶ In the process of interpreting domestic legislation so as to render it compatible if possible with the Convention rights, the courts 'must take into account'¹³⁷ any relevant jurisprudence from the European Court of Human Rights, although this is not a provision imposing an obligation to follow such case-law.¹³⁸ Reference should also be made to the growing importance of entry into the European Communities in this context. The case-law of the Communities demonstrates that fundamental rights are an integral part of the general principles of law, the observance of which the European Court of Justice seeks to ensure. The system provides that Community law prevails over national law and that the decisions of the European Court are to be applied by the domestic courts of the member states. The potential for change through this route is, therefore, significant.¹³⁹ Further, in interpreting domestic legislation made pursuant to the European Communities Act 1972 where the former appears to conflict with the Treaty of Rome (establishing the European Community),

¹³³ [1997] 1 All ER 502, 512.

¹³⁴ Section 3(2)b. Nor that of incompatible subordinate legislation where primary legislation prevents removal of the incompatibility: section 3(2)c.

¹³⁵ Section 3(2)a. See further H. Fenwick, *Civil Liberties and Human Rights*, 3rd edn, London, 2002, p. 139, and R. Clayton and H. Tomlinson, *Human Rights Law*, London, 2000, chapter 4.

¹³⁶ See e.g. the decision of the House of Lords in *R v. A* [2001] 2 WLR 1546 and *R (on the application of Alconbury Ltd) v. Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions* [2001] 2 All ER 929.

¹³⁷ Section 2 of the Human Rights Act. ¹³⁸ See further below, chapter 7, p. 351.

¹³⁹ See e.g. *Nold v. EC Commission* [1974] ECR 491, 508 and *Rutili v. Ministry of Interior of French Republic* [1975] ECR 1219.

the House of Lords has held that a purposive approach should be adopted.¹⁴⁰

*The United States*¹⁴¹

As far as the American position on the relationship between municipal law and customary international law is concerned, it appears to be very similar to British practice, apart from the need to take the Constitution into account. The US Supreme Court in *Boos v. Barry* emphasised that, 'As a general proposition, it is of course correct that the United States has a vital national interest in complying with international law.' However, the rules of international law were subject to the Constitution.¹⁴²

An early acceptance of the incorporation doctrine was later modified as in the UK. It was stated in the *Paquete Habana* case¹⁴³ that

international law is part of our law and must be ascertained and administered by the courts of justice of appropriate jurisdiction as often as questions of right depending upon it are duly presented for their determination.¹⁴⁴

¹⁴⁰ *Pickstone v. Freemans* [1988] 3 WLR 265. See also *Litster v. Forth Dry Dock Engineering* [1989] 1 All ER 1194.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. J. F. Murphy, *The United States and the Rule of Law in International Affairs*, Cambridge, 2004, chapter 2; J. J. Paust, *International Law as Law of the United States*, Durham, NC, 1996, and Paust, 'International Law as Law of the United States: Trends and Prospects', 1 Chinese JIL, 2002, p. 615; Morgenstern, 'Judicial Practice'; I. Seidl-Hohenveldern, 'Transformation or Adoption of International Law into Municipal Law', 12 ICLQ, 1963, p. 88; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 74 ff.; C. Dickinson, 'The Law of Nations as Part of the National Law of the United States', 101 *University of Pennsylvania Law Review*, 1953, p. 793; R. A. Falk, *The Role of Domestic Courts in the International Legal Order*, Princeton, 1964; R. B. Lillich, 'Domestic Institutions' in *The Future of the International Legal Order* (eds. C. Black and R. A. Falk), New York, 1972, vol. IV, p. 384; L. Henkin, *Foreign Affairs and the Constitution*, New York, 1972; L. Henkin, 'International Law: as Law in the United States', 82 *Michigan Law Review*, 1984, p. 1555; J. J. Paust, 'Customary International Law: Its Nature, Sources and Status as Law in the United States', 12 *Michigan Journal of International Law*, 1990, p. 59, and L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, chapter 3. See also *Treaties and Other International Agreements: A Study Prepared for the Committee on Foreign Relations*, US Senate, 2001.

¹⁴² 99 L Ed 2d 333, 345–7 (1988); 121 ILR, p. 551.

¹⁴³ 175 US 677 (1900). See also *Respublica v. De Longchamps* 1 Dall. 111.

¹⁴⁴ 175 US 677, 700. See *Hilton v. Guyot* 159 US 113 and *United States v. Melekh* 190 F.Supp. 67 (1960), cf. *Pauling v. McElroy* 164 F.Supp. 390 (1958).

Similarly, the early pure incorporation cases gave way to a more cautious approach.¹⁴⁵

The current accepted position is that customary international law in the US is federal law and that its determination by the federal courts is binding on the state courts.¹⁴⁶ The similarity of approach with the UK is not surprising in view of common historical and cultural traditions, and parallel restraints upon the theories are visible. US courts are bound by the doctrine of precedent and the necessity to proceed according to previously decided cases, and they too must apply statute as against any rules of customary international law that do not accord with it.¹⁴⁷ The Court of Appeals reaffirmed this position in the *Committee of United States Citizens Living in Nicaragua v. Reagan* case,¹⁴⁸ where it was noted that 'no enactment of Congress can be challenged on the ground that it violates customary international law'.¹⁴⁹

It has been noted that the political and judicial organs of the United States have the power to ignore international law, where this occurs pursuant to a statute or 'controlling executive act'. This has occasioned much controversy,¹⁵⁰ as has the general relationship between custom and inconsistent pre-existing statutes.¹⁵¹ However, it is now accepted that statutes supersede earlier treaties or customary rules of international law.¹⁵² It has also been held that it would run counter to the Constitution for a court to decide that a decision of the International Court of Justice overrules a binding decision of the US Supreme Court and thus affords a judicial

¹⁴⁵ See e.g. *Cook v. United States* 288 US 102 (1933); 6 AD, p. 3 and *United States v. Claus* 63 F.Supp. 433 (1944).

¹⁴⁶ See *US v. Belmont* 301 US 324, 331, 57 S.Ct. 758, 761 (1937); 8 AD, p. 34 and *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, vol. I, pp. 48–52. See also *Kadić v. Karadžić* 70 F.3d 232, 246 (2d Cir. 1995); 104 ILR, pp. 149, 159; and *In Re Estate of Ferdinand E. Marcos Human Rights Litigation* 978 F.2d 493, 502 (9th Cir. 1992); 103 ILR, pp. 521, 529. However, see C. A. Bradley and J. L. Goldsmith, 'Customary International Law as Federal Common Law: A Critique of the Modern Position', 110 *Harvard Law Review*, 1997, p. 816, and J. Paust, 'Customary International Law in the United States: Clean and Dirty Laundry', 40 *German YIL*, 1997, p. 78.

¹⁴⁷ See e.g. *Schroeder v. Bissell* 5 F.2d 838, 842 (1925). ¹⁴⁸ 859 F.2d 929 (1988).

¹⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, at 939. See also *Tag v. Rogers* 267 F.2d 664, 666 (1959); 28 ILR, p. 467 and *US v. Yunis* (No. 3) 724 F.2d 1086, 1091 (1991); 88 ILR, pp. 176, 181.

¹⁵⁰ See *Brown v. United States* 12 US (8 Cranch) 110, 128 (1814) and *Whitney v. Robertson* 124 US 190, 194 (1888). See also Henkin, 'International Law', p. 1555. See also *Rodriguez-Fernandez v. Wilkinson* 654 F.2d 1382 (1981); 505 F.Supp. 787 (1980); *US v. PLO* 695 F.Supp. 1456 (1988) and *Klinghoffer v. SNC Achille Lauro* 739 F.Supp. 854 (1990).

¹⁵¹ See *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 63–9 (§115); the *Reagan* case, 859 F.2d 929, and Goldklang, 'Back on Board the *Paquete Habana*', 25 *Va. JIL*, 1984, p. 143.

¹⁵² See previous footnote.

remedy to an individual for a violation of the Constitution.¹⁵³ However, the question of the impact of a ruling of the International Court upon US courts has been discussed in the light of decisions of the former¹⁵⁴ as to the violation of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963 by the failure to permit access to consular officials by imprisoned foreigners.¹⁵⁵

There does exist, as in English law, a presumption that legislation does not run counter to international law and, as it was stated by the Court in *Schroeder v. Bissell*,¹⁵⁶

unless it unmistakably appears that a congressional act was intended to be in disregard of a principle of international comity, the presumption is that it was intended to be in conformity with it.¹⁵⁷

The relationship between US law and customary law has been the subject of re-examination in the context of certain human rights situations. In *Filartiga v. Pena-Irala*,¹⁵⁸ the US Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit dealt with an action brought by Paraguayans against a Paraguayan for the torture and death of the son of the plaintiff. The claim was based on the Alien Tort Claims Act of 1789¹⁵⁹ which provides that '[t]he district courts shall have original jurisdiction of any civil action by an alien for a tort only, committed in violation of the law of nations'. The Court of Appeals held that torture constituted a violation of international customary law and was thus actionable. The Court accordingly held against the

¹⁵³ *Valdez v. Oklahoma*, US Court of Criminal Appeals of Oklahoma, Case No. PCD-2001-1011, 2002.

¹⁵⁴ See the *LaGrand* case (*Germany v. United States of America*), ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 466; 134 ILR, p. 1, and the *Avena and Other Mexican Nationals* case (*Mexico v. United States of America*), ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 12; 134 ILR, p. 120.

¹⁵⁵ See e.g. *Torres v. State of Oklahoma* 43 ILM, 2004, p. 1227, and *Sanchez-Llamas v. Oregon* 126 S. Ct. 2669 (2006), holding that a violation of article 36 of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations did not necessarily require reversal of a criminal conviction or sentence. As to civil remedies, see *United States v. Rodriguez* 162 Fed. Appx. 853, 857 (11th Cir. 2006), *Cornejo v. County of San Diego* 504 F.3d 853, 872 (9th Cir. 2007) and *Gandara v. Bennett*, Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit, judgment of 22 May 2008, holding that the Vienna Convention did not create judicially enforceable individual rights. It was emphasised in *Cornejo* that '[f]or any treaty to be susceptible to judicial enforcement it must both confer individual rights and be self-executing', at p. 856.

¹⁵⁶ 5 F.2d 838 (1925).

¹⁵⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 842. See also *Macleod v. United States* 229 US 416 (1913) and *Littlejohn & Co. v. United States* 270 US 215 (1926); 3 AD, p. 483.

¹⁵⁸ 630 F.2d 876 (1980); 77 ILR, p. 169. See e.g. R. B. Lillich, *Invoking Human Rights Law in Domestic Courts*, Charlottesville, 1985, and Comment, 'Torture as a Tort in Violation of International Law', 33 *Stanford Law Review*, 1981, p. 353.

¹⁵⁹ 28 USC 1350 (1988).

defendant despite the fact that both parties were alien and all the operative acts occurred in Paraguay. The Court also noted that in ascertaining the content of international law, the contemporary rules and principles of international law were to be interpreted and not those as of the date of the prescribing statute.¹⁶⁰ Other cases came before the courts in which the incorporation of international customary law provisions concerning human rights issues was argued with mixed success.¹⁶¹ An attempt to obtain a judgment in the US against the Republic of Argentina for torturing its own citizens, however, ultimately foundered upon the doctrine of sovereign immunity,¹⁶² while it has been held that acts of 'international terrorism' are not actionable under the Alien Tort Claims Act.¹⁶³ In *Kadić v. Karadžić*,¹⁶⁴ the US Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that claims based on official torture and summary executions did not exhaust the list of actions that may be covered by the Alien Tort Claims Act and that allegations of genocide, war crimes and other violations of international humanitarian law would also be covered.¹⁶⁵ However, in *Sosa v. Alvarez-Machain*,¹⁶⁶ the Supreme Court held that the Alien Tort Claims Act was a jurisdictional statute creating no new causes of action and enacted on the understanding that the common law would provide a cause of action for

¹⁶⁰ 630 F.2d 876, 881 (1980); 77 ILR, pp. 169, 175. See also *Amerada Hess v. Argentine Republic* 830 F.2d 421; 79 ILR, p. 1. The norms of international law were to be found by 'consulting the works of jurists, writing professedly on public law; or by the general usage and practice of nations; or by judicial decisions recognising and enforcing that law', 630 F.2d 876, 880; 77 ILR, p. 174, quoting *United States v. Smith* 18 US (5 Wheat.), 153, 160–1. See also *Kadić v. Karadžić* 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1592.

¹⁶¹ See e.g. *Fernandez v. Wilkinson* 505 F.Supp. 787 (1980) and *In re Alien Children Education Litigation* 501 F.Supp. 544 (1980).

¹⁶² *Siderman v. Republic of Argentina*, No. CV 82-1772-RMT (MCx) and *International Practitioner's Notebook*, July 1985, p. 1. See also below, chapter 13.

¹⁶³ *Tel-Oren v. Libyan Arab Republic* 517 F.Supp. 542 (1981), *aff'd per curiam*, 726 F.2d 774 (1984), *cert. denied* 53 USLW 3612 (1985); 77 ILR, p. 192. See e.g. A. D'Amato, 'What Does *Tel-Oren* Tell Lawyers?', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 92. See also *De Sanchez v. Banco Central de Nicaragua* 770 F.2d 1385, 1398 (1985); 88 ILR, pp. 75, 90 and *Linder v. Portocarrero* 747 F.Supp. 1452; 99 ILR, p. 55.

¹⁶⁴ 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1592.

¹⁶⁵ Note that the US Torture Victim Protection Act 1992 provides a cause of action for official torture and extrajudicial killing where an individual, under actual or apparent authority or colour of law of any foreign law subjects, engages in such activities. This is not a jurisdictional statute, so that claims of official torture will be pursued under the jurisdiction conferred by the Alien Tort Claims Act or under the general federal question jurisdiction of section 1331: see e.g. *Xuncax v. Gramajo* 886 F.Supp. 162 (1995); 104 ILR, p. 165. In addition, local remedies must have been exhausted.

¹⁶⁶ 542 US 692, 714 ff. (2004).

the modest number of international law violations thought to carry personal liability at the time, being offences against ambassadors, violation of safe conducts, and piracy. The federal courts, it was declared, should not recognise claims under federal common law for violations of any international law norm with less 'definite content and acceptance among civilized nations' than these particular offences deemed to exist at the date of the adoption of the act.¹⁶⁷ Accordingly, both 'a specificity comparable to the features of the 18th-century paradigms' and a foundation resting upon 'a norm of international character accepted by the civilized world' were required in order to form the basis of a claim under the statute.¹⁶⁸

The relative convergence of practice between Britain and the United States with respect to the assimilation of customary law is not reflected as regards the treatment of international treaties.¹⁶⁹ In the United Kingdom, it is the executive branch which negotiates, signs and ratifies international agreements, with the proviso that parliamentary action is required prior to the provisions of the agreement being accepted as part of English law. In the United States, on the other hand, Article VI Section 2 of the Constitution provides that:

all Treaties made or which shall be made with the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land and the Judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or Laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.¹⁷⁰

There is also a difference in the method of approval of treaties, for Article II of the Constitution notes that while the President has the power to make international agreements, he may only ratify them if at least two-thirds of the Senate approve.

There is an exception and this is the institution of the executive agreements. These are usually made by the President on his own authority, but still constitute valid treaties within the framework of international law. As distinct from ordinary treaties, the creation of executive agreements

¹⁶⁷ *Ibid.*, at 732.

¹⁶⁸ *Ibid.*, at 725 and 738. See also *Vietnam Association for Victims of Agent Orange v. Dow Chemical Company*, US Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, Docket No. 05-1953-cv, 22 February 2008.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. Jackson, 'Status of Treaties', p. 310, and D. Vagts, 'The United States and its Treaties: Observance and Breach', 95 AJIL, 2001, p. 313.

¹⁷⁰ See e.g. *Ware v. Hylton* 3 US (3 Dall.) 199 (1796) and *Foster v. Neilson* 27 US (2 Pet.) 253 (1829). See also on treaty powers and the 'reserved powers' of the states the tenth amendment, *Missouri v. Holland* 252 US 416 (1920); 1 AD, p. 4 and *United States v. Curtiss-Wright Export Corporation* 299 US 304 (1936); 8 AD, p. 48.

is not expressly covered by the Constitution, but rather implied from its terms and subsequent practice, and they have been extensively used. The Supreme Court, in cases following the 1933 Litvinov Agreement, which established US recognition of the Soviet government and provided for the assignment to the US of particular debts owing to the USSR, emphasised that such executive agreements possessed the same status and dignity as treaties made by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate under Article II of the Constitution.¹⁷¹

American doctrines as to the understanding of treaty law are founded upon the distinction between 'self-executing' and 'non-self-executing' treaties.¹⁷² The former are able to operate automatically within the domestic sphere, without the need for any municipal legislation, while the latter require enabling acts before they can function inside the country and bind the American courts. Self-executing treaties apply directly within the United States as part of the supreme law of the land, whereas those conventions deemed not self-executing are obliged to undergo a legislative transformation and, until they do so, they cannot be regarded as legally enforceable against American citizens or institutions.¹⁷³

But how does one know when an international agreement falls into one category or the other? This matter has absorbed the courts of the United States for many years, and the distinction appears to have been made upon the basis of political content. In other words, where a treaty involves political questions of definition or exposition, then the issue should be left to the legislative organs of the nation, rather than automatic operation.¹⁷⁴ Examples of this would include the acquisition or loss of territory

¹⁷¹ See e.g. *United States v. Pink* 315 US 203 (1942); 10 AD, p. 48. See, as regards the President's power to settle claims and create new rules of law applicable to pending legislation, *Dames & Moore v. Regan* 101 SC 2972 (1981); 72 ILR, p. 270.

¹⁷² See e.g. Y. Iwasawa, 'The Doctrine of Self-Executing Treaties in the United States: A Critical Analysis', 26 Va. JIL, 1986, p. 635; J. Paust, 'Self-Executing Treaties', 82 AJIL, 1986, p. 760; T. Buergenthal, 'Self-Executing and Non-Self-Executing Treaties in National and International Law', 235 HR, 1992 IV, p. 303, and C. M. Vázquez, 'The Four Doctrines of Self-Executing Treaties', 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 695.

¹⁷³ See e.g. *Foster v. Neilson* 27 US (2 Pet.) 253, 311, 7 L.Ed. 415 (1829); *United States v. Percheman* 32 US (7 Pet.) 51 (1833); *United States v. Postal* 589 F.2d 862, 875 (5th Cir. 1979), *cert. denied*, 444 US 832 and *Linder v. Portocarrero* 747 F.Supp. 1452, 1463; 99 ILR, pp. 55, 67–8.

¹⁷⁴ See Chief Justice Marshall, *Foster v. Neilson* 27 US (2 Pet.) 253, 314 (1829). See also J. C. Yoo, 'Globalism and the Constitution: Treaties, Non-Self-Execution, and the Original Understanding', 99 *Columbia Law Review*, 1999, p. 1955, and Vagts, 'US and its Treaties', p. 321.

and financial arrangements. The Supreme Court in *Edye v. Robertson*¹⁷⁵ declared that treaties which

contain provisions which are capable of enforcement as between private parties in the courts of the country... [are] in the same category as other laws of Congress.

This would seem to mean that an international convention would become a law of the land, where its terms determine the rights and duties of private citizens, and contrasts with the position where a political issue is involved and the treaty is thereby treated as non-self-executing.

Of course such generalisations as these are bound to lead to considerable ambiguity and doubt in the case of very many treaties; and the whole matter was examined again in 1952 before the Supreme Court of California in *Sei Fujii v. California*.¹⁷⁶ The plaintiff was a Japanese citizen who had purchased some land in 1948 in California. By legislation enacted in that state, aliens had no right to acquire land. To prevent the property from going to the state, the plaintiff argued that, amongst other things, such legislation was not consistent with the Charter of the United Nations, an international treaty which called for the promotion of human rights without racial distinction.

The issue raised was whether the UN Charter was a self-executing treaty and, by virtue of such, part of the law of the land, which would supersede inconsistent local statutes. The Court declared that, in making a decision as to whether a treaty was self-executing or not, it would have to consult the treaty itself to try to deduce the intentions of the signatories and examine all relevant circumstances. Following *Edye*'s case it would have to see whether the provisions of the treaty laid down rules that were to be enforceable of themselves in the municipal courts.

The Court concluded after a comprehensive survey that the relevant provisions of the UN Charter were not intended to be self-executing. They laid down various principles and objectives of the United Nations Organisation, but 'do not purport to impose legal obligations on the individual member nations or to create rights in private persons'. The Court held that it was obvious that further legislative action by the signatories would be called for to turn the principles of the UN into domestic laws binding upon the individual citizens of states.¹⁷⁷ Accordingly, they could not be regarded as part of the law of the land and could not operate to deflect

¹⁷⁵ 112 US 580 (1884).

¹⁷⁶ 38 Cal (2d) 718 (1952).

¹⁷⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 721.

the Californian legislation in question. The case was decided in favour of the plaintiff, but on other grounds altogether.¹⁷⁸

As is the case with the UK system, it is possible for the US legislature to take action which not only takes no account of international law rules but may be positively contrary to them, and in such an instance the legislation would be supreme within the American jurisdiction.

In *Diggs v. Schultz*,¹⁷⁹ for example, the Court had to consider the effect of the Byrd Amendment which legalised the importation into the USA of strategic materials, such as chrome from Rhodesia, a course of action which was expressly forbidden by a United Nations Security Council resolution which in the circumstances was binding. The Court noted that the Byrd Amendment was 'in blatant disregard of our treaty undertakings' but concluded that: 'under our constitutional scheme, Congress can denounce treaties if it sees fit to do so, and there is nothing the other branches of government can do about it.' Although in municipal terms the Amendment was unchallengeable, the United States was, of course, internationally liable for the breach of an international legal rule.¹⁸⁰

However, there is a presumption that Congress will not legislate contrary to the international obligations of the state¹⁸¹ and a principle of

¹⁷⁸ See e.g. *People of Saipan ex rel. Guerrero v. United States Department of Interior* 502 F.2d 90 (1974); 61 ILR, p. 113. See also *Camacho v. Rogers* 199 F.Supp. 155 (1961) and *Diggs v. Dent* 14 ILM, 1975, p. 797. Note also O. Schachter, 'The Charter and the Constitution', 4 *Vanderbilt Law Review*, 1951, p. 643. In *Medillin v. Texas* 128 S. Ct. 1346 (2008), the US Supreme Court held that the decision of the International Court of Justice in the *Avena (Mexico v. US)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 12, requiring the US to provide 'further review and reconsideration' of the convictions in question, did not constitute directly enforceable federal law as the relevant treaties (the UN Charter, the Statute of the International Court and the Optional Protocol to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations) were non-self-executing. See further as to the *Avena* case, below, chapter 13, p. 773 and chapter 19, p. 1103, note 305. See also the similar conclusion adopted by the Supreme Court of the Netherlands in *Association of Lawyers for Peace and Four Other Organizations v. State of the Netherlands*, Nr C02/217HR; LJN: AN8071; NJ 2004/329.

¹⁷⁹ 470 F.2d 461, 466–7 (1972); 60 ILR, pp. 393, 397. See also *Breard v. Greene* 523 US 371, 376 (1998) and *Havana Club Holding, Inc. v. Galleon SA* 974 F.Supp. 302 (SDNY 1997), *aff'd* 203 F.3d (2d Cir. 2000).

¹⁸⁰ This, of course, reflects the general rule. See e.g. G. Hackworth, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1940–4, vol. V, pp. 185–6 and 324–5. See also *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, 1987, para. 115(1)b.

¹⁸¹ See e.g. Marshall CJ, *Murray v. Schooner Charming Betsy* 6 US (2 Cranch) 64; *Weinberger v. Rossi* 456 US 25 (1982) and *Cook v. United States* 288 US 102 (1933). See also R. Steinhart, 'The Role of International Law as a Canon of Domestic Statutory Construction', 43 *Vanderbilt Law Review*, 1990, p. 1103, and C. A. Bradley, 'The *Charming Betsy* Canon and Separation of Powers', 86 *Georgia Law Journal*, 1998, p. 479.

interpretation that where an act and a treaty deal with the same subject, the courts will seek to construe them so as to give effect to both of them without acting contrary to the wording of either. Where the two are inconsistent, the general rule has been posited that the later in time will prevail, provided the treaty is self-executing.¹⁸²

The question of a possible conflict between treaty obligations and domestic legislation was raised in *United States v. Palestine Liberation Organisation*.¹⁸³ The Anti-Terrorism Act of the previous year¹⁸⁴ provided for the closure of all PLO offices in the United States and this was construed by the Attorney-General to include the PLO mission to the United Nations, an action which would have breached the obligations of the US under the United Nations Headquarters Agreement. However, the District Court found that it could not be established that the legislation clearly and unequivocally intended that an obligation arising out of the Headquarters Agreement, a valid treaty, was to be violated.¹⁸⁵

The issue of the relationship between international treaties and municipal law came before the US Supreme Court in *Breard v. Greene*.¹⁸⁶ The Court noted that 'respectful consideration' should be given to the interpretation of an international treaty by a relevant international court;¹⁸⁷ however, 'it has been recognised in international law that absent a clear and express statement to the contrary, the procedural rules of the forum State govern the implementation of the treaty in that State'.¹⁸⁸ Accordingly, the effect of resort to a domestic procedural rule might result in preventing the provision of an international treaty from being applied in any given case. The Supreme Court also affirmed that international treaties under the Constitution were recognised as the 'supreme law of the land', but so were the provisions of the Constitution. An Act of Congress was

¹⁸² See the decision of the Supreme Court in *Whitney v. Robertson* 124 US 190 (1888). The *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 63 ff. suggests that an Act of Congress will supersede an earlier rule of international law or a provision in an international agreement 'if the purpose of the act to supersede the earlier rule or provision is clear or if the act and the earlier rule or provision cannot be fairly reconciled'.

¹⁸³ 695 F.Supp. 1456 (1988). ¹⁸⁴ 22 USCA, paras. 5201–3.

¹⁸⁵ *Ibid.* See the Advisory Opinion of the International Court in the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 12; 82 ILR, p. 225. See also DUSPIL, 1981–8, part I, pp. 8 ff.

¹⁸⁶ 140 L.Ed. 2d 529 (1998); 118 ILR, p. 22.

¹⁸⁷ The issue concerned the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963, and the international court in question was the International Court of Justice in *Paraguay v. USA*, ICJ Reports, 1998, p. 248; 118 ILR, p. 1.

¹⁸⁸ 140 L.Ed.2d 529, 537 (1998); 118 ILR, p. 22.

‘on full parity’ with a treaty, so that a later statute would render an earlier treaty null to the extent of any conflict.¹⁸⁹

Other countries

In other countries where the English common law was adopted, such as the majority of Commonwealth states and, for example, Israel,¹⁹⁰ it is possible to say that in general the same principles apply. Customary law is regarded on the whole as part of the law of the land.¹⁹¹ Municipal laws are presumed not to be inconsistent with rules of international law, but in cases of conflict the former have precedence.

The Canadian Supreme Court in the *Reference Re Secession of Quebec* judgment¹⁹² noted that it had been necessary for the Court in a number of cases to look to international law to determine the rights or obligations of some actor within the Canadian legal system.¹⁹³ As far as treaties are concerned, Lord Atkin expressed the general position in *Attorney-General for Canada v. Attorney-General for Ontario*,¹⁹⁴ in a case dealing with the respective legislative competences of the Dominion Parliament and the provincial legislatures. He noted that within the then British Empire it was well enshrined that the making of a treaty was an executive act, while the performance of its obligations, if they involved alteration of the existing

¹⁸⁹ *Ibid.* See above, note 178.

¹⁹⁰ See the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, p. 5; R. Lapidoth, *Les Rapports entre le Droit International Public et le Droit Interne en Israel*, Paris, 1959, and Lapidoth, ‘International Law Within the Israel Legal System’, 24 *Israel Law Review*, 1990, p. 251. See also the *Affo* case before the Israeli Supreme Court, 29 ILM, 1990, pp. 139, 156–7; 83 ILR, p. 121, and *The Public Committee against Torture in Israel et al. v. The Government of Israel et al.*, HCJ 769/02. See also *A & B v. State of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 11 June 2008.

¹⁹¹ But see as to doubts concerning the application of the automatic incorporation of customary international law into Australia, I. Shearer, ‘The Internationalisation of Australian Law’, 17 *Sydney Law Review*, 1995, pp. 121, 124. See also G. Triggs, ‘Customary International Law and Australian Law’ in *The Emergence of Australian Law* (eds. M. P. Ellinghaus, A. J. Bradbrook and A. J. Duggan), 1989, p. 376. Note that Brennan J in *Mabo v. Queensland* (1992) 175 CLR 1, 41–2, stated that ‘international law is a legitimate and important influence on the development of the common law’.

¹⁹² (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 399; 115 ILR, p. 536. See also G. La Forest, ‘The Expanding Role of the Supreme Court of Canada in International Law Issues’, 34 *Canadian YIL*, 1996, p. 89.

¹⁹³ See also *Reference re Powers to Levy Rates on Foreign Legations and High Commissioners’ Residences* [1943] SCR 208; *Reference re Ownership of Offshore Mineral Rights of British Columbia* [1967] SCR 792; 43 ILR, p. 93, and *Reference re Newfoundland Continental Shelf* [1984] 1 SCR 86; 86 ILR, p. 593.

¹⁹⁴ [1937] AC 326; 8 AD, p. 41.

domestic law, required legislative action. 'The question', remarked Lord Atkin,

is not how is the obligation formed, that is the function of the executive, but how is the obligation to be performed, and that depends upon the authority of the competent legislature or legislatures.¹⁹⁵

The doctrine that customary international law forms part of the domestic law of Canada has been reaffirmed in a number of cases.¹⁹⁶ This has also been accepted in New Zealand¹⁹⁷ and in Australia.¹⁹⁸ In *Horgan v. An Taoiseach*, it was affirmed that 'established principles of customary international law may be incorporated into Irish domestic law *providing* that they are not contrary to the provisions of the Constitution, statute law or common law'.¹⁹⁹ The relationship between treaties and domestic law was examined by the High Court of Australia in *Minister of State for Immigration and Ethnic Affairs v. Teoh*.²⁰⁰ The Court upheld the traditional doctrine to the effect that the provisions of an international

¹⁹⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 347–8; 8 AD, pp. 43–4. See also *Pfizer Inc. v. Canada* [1999] 4 CF 441 and *R v. Council of Canadians* 2003 CanLII 28426, paras. 35–7 (2005), affirmed 2006 CanLII 400222, 217 OAC 316.

¹⁹⁶ See e.g. *Reference re Exemption of US Forces from Canadian Criminal Law* [1943] 4 DLR 11, 41 and *Reference re Powers to Levy Rates on Foreign Legations and High Commissioners' Residences* [1943] SCR 208.

¹⁹⁷ See e.g. *Marine Steel Ltd v. Government of the Marshall Islands* [1981] 2 NZLR 1; 64 ILR, p. 539; and *Governor of Pitcairn and Associated Islands v. Sutton* [1995] 1 NZLR 426; 104 ILR, p. 508. The courts have also referred to a presumption of statutory interpretation that, so far as wording allows, legislation should be read in a way that is consistent with New Zealand's obligations: see e.g. *Rajan v. Minister of Immigration* [1996] 3 NZLR 543, 551 and *Wellington District Legal Services v. Tangiora* [1998] 1 NZLR 129, 137; 115 ILR, pp. 655, 663. See, as to the use of treaties in statutory interpretation, *Attorney-General v. Zaoui* [2005] NZSC 38, [2006] 1 NZLR 289, (2005) 7 HRNZ 860. See also *Nguyen Tuong Van v. Public Prosecutor* [2004] SGCA 47; 134 ILR, p. 660 with regard to Singapore.

¹⁹⁸ See e.g. *Potter v. BHP Co. Ltd* (1906) 3 CLR 479, 495, 506–7 and 510; *Wright v. Cantrell* (1943) 44 SR (NSW) 45; *Polites v. Commonwealth* (1945) 70 CLR 60 and *Chow Hung Ching v. R* (1948) 77 CLR 449. These cases are unclear as to whether the incorporationist or transformation approaches have been adopted as the appropriate theoretical basis. As to the view that international law is the 'source' of domestic law, see Dixon J in *Chow Hung Ching* and Merkel J in *Nulyarimma v. Thompson* (1999) 165 ALR 621, 653–5; 120 ILR, p. 353. See also *Public International Law: An Australian Perspective* (eds. S. Blay, R. Piotrowicz and B. M. Tsamenyi), Oxford, 1997, chapter 5, and H. Burmeister and S. Reye, 'The Place of Customary International Law in Australian Law: Unfinished Business', 21 Australian YIL, 2001, p. 39.

¹⁹⁹ 132 ILR, pp. 407, 442.

²⁰⁰ (1995) 128 ALR 353; 104 ILR, p. 466. See also Blay *et al.*, *Public International Law: An Australian Perspective*.

treaty to which Australia is a party do not form part of Australian law, and do not give rise to rights, unless those provisions have been validly incorporated into municipal law by statute.²⁰¹ It was noted that this was because of the constitutional separation of functions whereby the executive made and ratified treaties, while the legislature made and altered laws.²⁰² The majority of the Court, however, went on to hold that the fact that a treaty had not been incorporated did not mean that its ratification by the executive held no significance for Australian law. Where a statute or subordinate legislation was ambiguous, the courts should favour that construction which accorded with Australia's obligations under the particular treaty,²⁰³ while a statute generally had to be interpreted as far as its language permitted so that it was in conformity and not in conflict with the established rules of international law.²⁰⁴ Indeed, the Court felt that a narrow conception of ambiguity in this context should be rejected.²⁰⁵ Referring to *Ex Parte Brind*,²⁰⁶ the Court stated that this principle was no more than a canon of construction and did not import the terms of the treaty into municipal law.²⁰⁷ Moving beyond this approach which is generally consistent with common law doctrines, the majority of the Court took the view that ratification of a convention itself would constitute an adequate foundation for a legitimate expectation (unless there were statutory or executive indications to the contrary) that administrative decision-makers would act in conformity with the unincorporated but

²⁰¹ See e.g. judgment by Mason CJ and Deane J, (1995) 128 ALR 353, 361. See also *Dietrich v. The Queen* (1992) 177 CLR 292, 305 and *Coe v. Commonwealth of Australia* (1993) 118 ALR 193, 200–1; 118 ILR, p. 322. Reaffirmed by the High Court in *Kruger v. Commonwealth of Australia* (1997) 146 ALR 126, 161; 118 ILR, p. 371. See e.g. *Kenneth Good v. Attorney-General*, Court of Appeal Civil Appeal No. 028 of 2005 for the similar situation in Botswana and *Nallaratnam Singarasa v. Attorney General*, S.C. Spl (LA) No. 182/99 (2006) with regard to Sri Lanka.

²⁰² (1995) 128 ALR 353, 362 and see e.g. *Simsek v. Macphree* (1982) 148 CLR 636, 641–2.

²⁰³ Judgment of Mason CJ and Deane J. See also *Chung Kheng Lin v. Minister for Immigration* (1992) 176 CLR 1, 38. In *Kruger v. Commonwealth of Australia*, Dawson J noted that such a construction was not required where the obligations arise only under a treaty and the legislation in question was enacted before the treaty, (1997) 146 ALR 126, 161; 118 ILR, p. 371.

²⁰⁴ See also *Kartinyeri v. The Commonwealth* (1998) 195 CLR 337 at 384 and *Ahmed Ali Al-Kateb v. Goodwin* [2004] HCA 37. In the latter case, McHugh J criticised the rule, but concluded that it was too well established to be repealed by judicial decision, *ibid.* at para. 65.

²⁰⁵ (1995) 128 ALR 353, 361. See also *Polites v. The Commonwealth* (1945) 70 CLR 60, 68–9, 77, 80–1.

²⁰⁶ [1991] 1 AC 696 at 748; 85 ILR, p. 29. ²⁰⁷ (1995) 128 ALR 353, 362.

ratified convention.²⁰⁸ This particular proposition is controversial in legal doctrine, but is an interesting example of the fact that internal decision-makers may not always be expected to be immune from the influence of obligations undertaken by the state.²⁰⁹

There are further signs of an increasingly flexible approach. For example, in *Hosking & Hosking v. Runting and Pacific Magazines NZ Ltd*,²¹⁰ the New Zealand Court of Appeal referred to the 'increasing recognition of the need to develop the common law consistently with international treaties to which New Zealand is a party. That is an international trend. The historical approach to the State's international obligations as having no part in the domestic law unless incorporated by statute is now recognised as too rigid.' Further, the Canadian Supreme Court, in noting that genocide was a crime in both customary international law and treaty law, declared that international law was therefore called upon to play a crucial role as an aid in interpreting domestic law, particularly as regards the elements of the crime of incitement to genocide, and emphasised the importance of interpreting domestic law in a manner that accorded with the principles of customary international law and with Canada's treaty obligations.²¹¹ This, however, would go further than most common law states would accept.

Although the basic approach adopted by the majority of common law states is clear, complications have arisen where the country in question has a written constitution, whether or not specific reference is made

²⁰⁸ *Ibid.*, 365. See also the judgment of Toohey J, *ibid.* at 371–2, and the judgment of Gaudron J, *ibid.* at 375–6. Cf. the judgment of McHugh J, *ibid.* at 385–7.

²⁰⁹ Note that after the decision in *Teoh*, the Minister for Foreign Affairs and the Attorney General issued a Joint Statement (10 May 1995) denying the existence of any such legitimate expectation upon the ratification of a treaty: see M. Allars, 'One Small Step for Legal Doctrine, One Giant Leap Towards Integrity in Government: *Teoh's* Case and the Internationalisation of Administrative Law', 17 *Sydney Law Review*, 1995, pp. 204, 237–41. The Government also introduced the Administrative Decisions (Effect of International Instruments) Bill 1995 into the Parliament with the specific purpose of denying that treaties or conventions give rise to a legitimate expectation of how a decision-maker will make a decision in an area affected by such international instruments. See also *Trick or Treaty? Commonwealth Power to Make and Implement Treaties*, a Report by the Senate Legal and Constitutional References Committee, November 1995. See now also *Minister for Immigration and Multicultural Affairs; Ex Parte Lam* [2003] HCA 6, which is critical of *Teoh*.

²¹⁰ [2004] NZCA 34, para. 6.

²¹¹ *Mugesera v. Canada (Minister of Citizenship and Immigration)* [2005] 2 SCR 100, para. 82; 132 ILR, pp. 295–6. See also *Baker v. Canada (Minister of Citizenship and Immigration)* [1999] 2 SCR 817, paras. 69–71.

therein to the treatment of international agreements. The use of international law in interpreting the Constitution has occasioned much debate in Australia.²¹² In *Ahmed Ali Al-Kateb v. Godwin*, for example, two judges of the High Court of Australia came to radically different conclusions. One judge regarded the view that the Constitution should be read consistently with the rules of international law as ‘heretical’,²¹³ while another declared that ‘opinions that seek to cut off contemporary Australian law (including constitutional law) from the persuasive force of international law are doomed to fail’.²¹⁴ This debate reflects differing approaches to constitutional interpretation.²¹⁵

The Indian Constitution refers only in the vaguest of terms to the provisions of international law,²¹⁶ whereas by contrast the Irish Constitution clearly states that the country will not be bound by any treaty involving a charge upon public funds unless the terms of the agreement have been approved by the Dáil.²¹⁷ Under article 169(3) of the Cyprus Constitution, treaties concluded in accordance with that provision have as from

²¹² See e.g. D. Hovell and G. Williams, ‘A Tale of Two Systems: The Use of International Law in Constitutional Interpretation in Australia and South Africa’, 29 *Melbourne University Law Review*, 2005, p. 95; H. Charlesworth, M. Chiam, D. Hovell and G. Williams, ‘Deep Anxieties: Australia and the International Legal Order’, 25 *Sydney Law Review*, 2003, pp. 423, 446–63; *International Law in Australia* (ed. K. W. Ryan), Sydney, 1984; Blay *et al.*, *Public International Law: An Australian Perspective*; A. Byrnes and H. Charlesworth, ‘Federalism and the International Legal Order: Recent Developments in Australia’, 79 *AJIL*, 1985, p. 622, and *Koowarta v. Bjelke-Petersen*, High Court of Australia, 39 *ALR* 417 (11 May 1982); 68 *ILR*, p. 181; *Tabag v. Minister for Immigration and Ethnic Affairs*, Federal Court of Australia, 45 *ALR* 705 (23 December 1982); *Commonwealth of Australia v. State of Tasmania*, High Court of Australia, 46 *ALR* 625 (1 July 1983); 68 *ILR*, p. 266; *Polyukhovich v. Commonwealth* (1991) 172 *CLR* 501 and *Minister for Foreign Affairs v. Magno* (1992) 37 *FCR* 298.

²¹³ [2004] *HCA* 37, para. 63 (McHugh J). ²¹⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 190 (Kirby J).

²¹⁵ Simpson and Williams have concluded that ‘[j]udges will approach extrinsic materials, such as international law, differently depending on whether they favour rigidly applying the Constitution as originally drafted and intended or, at the other extreme, updating the instrument for societal change consistent with a vision of the Constitution as a “living force”’; A. Simpson and G. Williams, ‘International Law and Constitutional Interpretation’, 11 *Public Law Review*, 2000, pp. 205, 226.

²¹⁶ See e.g. D. D. Basu, *Commentaries on the Constitution of India*, New Delhi, 1962, vol. II, and *Constitutions of the World* (ed. R. Peaslee), 3rd edn, New York, 1968, vol. II, p. 308. See also K. Thakore, ‘National Treaty Law and Practice: India’ in Leigh and Blakeslee, *National Treaty Law and Practice*, p. 79.

²¹⁷ Peaslee, *Constitutions*, vol. III, p. 463 (article 29(5)2). Article 29 also states that Ireland accepts the generally recognised principles of international law as its rule of conduct in its relations with other states. See e.g. *Re O’Laighléis* 24 *ILR*, p. 420 and *Re Woods* 53 *ILR*, p. 552. See also *Crotty v. An Taoiseach* 93 *ILR*, p. 480; *McGimpsey v. Ireland* [1988] *IR* 567, and *Kavanagh v. Governor of Mountjoy Prison* [2002] 3 *IR* 97, 125–6; 132 *ILR*, pp. 394, 401–2. Note also the decision of the Irish High Court in *Horgan v. An Taoiseach* on 28

publication in the Official Gazette of the Republic 'superior force to any municipal law on condition that such treaties, conventions and agreements are applied by the other party thereto'.²¹⁸ In such cases where there is a written constitution, serious questions of constitutional law may be involved, and one would have to consider the situation as it arises and within its own political context.²¹⁹ But in general common law states tend to adopt the British approach.

The practice of those states which possess the civil law system, based originally on Roman law, manifests certain differences.²²⁰ The Basic Law of the Federal Republic of Germany,²²¹ for example, specifically states in article 25 that 'the general rules of public international law are an integral part of federal law. They shall take precedence over the laws and shall directly create rights and duties for the inhabitants of the federal territory'.²²² This provision, which not only treats international law as part of municipal law but regards it as superior to municipal legislation, has been the subject of a great deal of controversy as writers and lawyers have tried to establish whether international legal rules would invalidate any inconsistent municipal legislation and, indeed, whether international rules could override the constitution. Similarly, the phrase 'general rules of public international law' has led to problems over interpretation as it may refer to all aspects of international law, including customary and treaty rules, or merely general principles common to all, or perhaps only certain nations.²²³

April 2003 reaffirming that article 29 does not confer individual rights, 132 ILR, pp. 407, 446.

²¹⁸ See e.g. *Malachtou v. Armefti and Armefti* 88 ILR, p. 199.

²¹⁹ See e.g. *International Law Chiefly as Interpreted and Applied in Canada* (ed. H. Kindred), 6th edn, Toronto, 2000, chapter 4; *Re Newfoundland Continental Shelf* [1984] 1 SCR 86, and C. Okeke, *The Theory and Practice of International Law in Nigeria*, London, 1986.

²²⁰ See e.g. L. Wildhaber and S. Breitenmoser, 'The Relationship Between Customary International Law and Municipal Law in Western European Countries', 48 ZaöRV, 1988, p. 163; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 63 ff., and Henkin *et al.*, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, pp. 154 ff.

²²¹ See H. D. Treviranus and H. Beemelmans, 'National Treaty Law and Practice: Federal Republic of Germany' in Leigh and Blakeslee, *National Treaty Law and Practice*, p. 43.

²²² See e.g. the *Parking Privileges for Diplomats* case, 70 ILR, p. 396.

²²³ See e.g. *German Consular Notification case (Individual Constitutional Complaint Procedure)*, BVerfG, 2 BvR 2115/01, 19 September 2006, and *Görgülü case (Individual Constitutional Complaint)*, BVerfG, 2 BvR 1481/04 of 14 October 2004, 111 *Entscheidungen des Bundesverfassungsgerichts* (BVerfGE), 307–32, [2004] *Neue Juristische Wochenschrift* (NJW) 3407–3412. See also D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I, pp. 71–6, and sources therein cited. See also generally A. Drzemczewski, *The European Human Rights Convention in Domestic Law*, Oxford, 1983, and Peaslee, *Constitutions*, vol. III, p. 361.

As far as treaties are concerned, the German federal courts will regard these as superior to domestic legislation, though they will not be allowed to operate so as to affect the constitution. Article 59 of the Basic Law declares that treaties which regulate the political relations of the federation or relate to matters of federal legislation shall require the consent or participation, in the form of a federal law, of the bodies competent in any specific case for such federal legislation. Thereafter such treaties will be treated as incorporated into German law, but with the status (no higher) of a federal law. Such laws may indeed be challenged before the German courts by means of a constitutional complaint if the treaty in question contains provisions directly encroaching upon the legal sphere of the individual.²²⁴

Article 91(1) of the Netherlands Constitution 1983 requires the prior approval of Parliament before treaties, or their denunciation, become binding, while article 91(3) provides that any provisions of a treaty that conflict with the Constitution or which lead to conflicts with it may be approved by the Chambers of the Parliament, provided that at least two-thirds of the votes cast are in favour. Article 93 states that provisions of treaties and of decisions by international organisations which may be binding by virtue of their contents are to become binding after they have been published, while article 94 provides that statutory regulations in force within the kingdom shall not be applicable if such application is in conflict with provisions of treaties that are binding on all persons or with resolutions by international institutions.²²⁵ Customary international law is not referred to in the Constitution. It is deemed to apply internally, although it seems that statute will prevail in cases of conflict.²²⁶ It is for the courts to establish whether the provisions of a treaty or decision by an

²²⁴ See the *Unification Treaty Constitutionality* case, 94 ILR, pp. 2, 54. See also the *East Treaties Constitutionality* case, 73 ILR, p. 691 and the *Görgülü* case (*Individual Constitutional Complaint*), BVerfG, 2 BvR 1481/04 of 14 October 2004, 111 *Entscheidungen des Bundesverfassungsgerichts* (BVerfGE), 307–32, [2004] *Neue Juristische Wochenschrift* (NJW) 3407–12.

²²⁵ See e.g. E. A. Alkema, 'Fundamental Human Rights and the Legal Order of the Netherlands' in *International Law in the Netherlands* (eds. H. Van Panhuys *et al.*), Dordrecht, 1980, vol. III, p. 109; Peaslee, *Constitutions*, vol. III, p. 652; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 69, and H. Schermers, *The Effect of Treaties in Domestic Law* (eds. F. Jacobs and S. Roberts), Leiden, 1987, p. 109. See also e.g. *Nordstern Allgemeine Versicherungs AG v. Vereinigte Stinees Rheinreedereien* 74 ILR, p. 2 and *Public Prosecutor v. JO* 74 ILR, p. 130. Note also J. Klabbers, 'The New Dutch Law on the Approval of Treaties', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 629.

²²⁶ See e.g. H. F. van Panhuys, 'The Netherlands Constitution and International Law: A Decade of Experience', 58 AJIL, 1964, pp. 88–108. See also *Handelskwekerij GJ Bier BV v. Mines de Potasse d'Alsace SA* 11 Netherlands YIL, 1980, p. 326.

international organisation are binding on all persons within the meaning of articles 93 and 94 of the Constitution.²²⁷

In a provision contained in other constitutions, article 10 of the Italian Constitution of 1947 stipulates that the Italian legal order 'shall conform with the generally recognised rules of international law'. This is interpreted to indicate that international customary law will override inconsistent ordinary national legislation.²²⁸ Article 8(1) of the Portuguese Constitution provides that the rules and principles of general or customary international law are an integral part of Portuguese law,²²⁹ while under article 87 of Poland's Constitution of 1997, a ratified international treaty, equal to a statute, is one of the sources of law.²³⁰ The Supreme Court of Belgium has taken the view that directly effective treaty provisions have superiority over the Constitution,²³¹ as well as over a conflicting legislative act.²³²

The French Constitution of 1958 declares that treaties duly ratified and published shall operate as laws within the domestic system.²³³ However, the Constitution provides that, although in principle it is the President of the Republic who negotiates and ratifies treaties, with regard to important treaties such as commercial treaties which entail some form of financial outlay, treaties relating to international organisations, treaties modifying legislation and treaties affecting personal status, ratification takes place by Act of Parliament. Once the relevant legislation has been passed, the agreement is promulgated and becomes binding upon the courts.

²²⁷ See *Reinier van Arkel Foundation and Others v. Minister for Transport, Public Works and Water Management*, Case Nr 200401178/1; LJN: AR2181; AB 2005/12.

²²⁸ Cassese, *International Law*, p. 225, note 21. See also the decision of the Italian Court of Cassation in *Canada v. Cargnello* 114 ILR, p. 559, and, for a similar view in Latvia, *Judgment of the Constitutional Court of the Republic of Latvia on a Request for Constitutional Review*, No. 2004-01-06 of 7 July 2004, *Latvian Herald*, 9 July 2004, No. 108, 3056.

²²⁹ See e.g. the decision of the Supreme Court of Portugal in the *Brazilian Embassy Employee* case, May 1984, 116 ILR, p. 625.

²³⁰ See *Resolution of the Supreme Court of 19 February 2003*, I KZP 47/02.

²³¹ *B.M.*, Cass. 16 November 2004, nr P.04.0644.N, *Pas.* 2004, I, 1795, *RCJB* 2007, 36, *RW* 2005-06, 387, *CDPK* 2005, 610, *RABG* 2005, 504, *T.Strafr.* 2005, 285. See also *Gruyeyz and Rolland v. Municipality of Sint-Genesius-Rode*, Court of Appeal of Brussels, 28 January 2003, AR nr 2002/KR/412.

²³² *Franco-Suisse Le Ski (Hof van Cassatie/Cour de Cassation)*, 21 May 1971, *Pas.* 1971, I, 886.

²³³ See Title VI of the Constitution. See also e.g. Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 231 ff.; P. M. Dupuy, *Droit International Public*, 8th edn, Paris, 2006, pp. 422 ff.; D. Alland, 'Jamais, Parfois, Toujours. Réflexions sur la Compétence de la Cour de Cassation en Matière d'Interprétation des Conventions Internationales', *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1996, p. 599; V. Kronenberger, 'A New Approach to the Interpretation of the French Constitution in Respect to International Conventions: From Hierarchy of Norms to Conflict of Competence', *NILR*, 2000, p. 323.

Article 55 of the Constitution provides that duly ratified or approved treaties or agreements shall upon publication override domestic laws, subject only to the application of the treaty or agreement by the other party or parties to the treaty.²³⁴ It is also now accepted that the French courts may declare a statute inapplicable for conflicting with an earlier treaty.²³⁵ However, the Cour de Cassation has held that the supremacy of international agreements in the domestic order does not extend to constitutional provisions.²³⁶

In 1993, South Africa adopted a new (interim) constitution.²³⁷ Whereas the previous constitutions of 1910, 1961 and 1983 had been silent on the question of international law, the 1993 Constitution contained several relevant provisions. Section 231(4) states that 'the rules of customary international law binding on the Republic, shall, unless inconsistent with this Constitution or an Act of Parliament, form part of the law of the Republic'. This formulation confirms essentially the common law position and would also suggest that the principle of *stare decisis* is not applicable to customary international law. As far as treaties are concerned, the previous position whereby an Act of Parliament was required in order to incorporate an international agreement has been modified. While the negotiation and signature of treaties is a function of the President (section 82(1)i), ratification is now a function of the Parliament (section 231(2)).²³⁸

²³⁴ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 65–8; Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, and Peaslee, *Constitutions*, vol. III, p. 312. See also SA *Rothmans International France and SA Philip Morris France* 93 ILR, p. 308.

²³⁵ See the *Cafés Jacques Vabre* case, 16 *Common Market Law Review*, 1975, p. 336 and *In re Nicolo* 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 765; 93 ILR, p. 286. Under article 54 of the Constitution, the Constitutional Council may declare a treaty to be contrary to the Constitution, so that the Constitution must first be amended before the treaty may be ratified or approved. See e.g. *Re Treaty on European Union* 93 ILR, p. 337. See also *Ligue Internationale Contre le Racisme et l'Antisémitisme*, AFDI, 1993, p. 963 and AFDI, 1994, pp. 963 ff.

²³⁶ See *Pauline Fraisse*, 2 June 2000, *Bulletin de l'Assemblée Plénière*, No. 4, p. 7 and *Levacher*, RFDA, 2000, p. 79. The position with regard to customary law is unclear: see e.g. *Aquarone*, RGDI, 1997–4, pp. 1053–4; *Barbie*, Cass. Crim., 6 October 1983, Bull., p. 610 and *Kadahfi*, RGDI, 2001–2, pp. 474–6.

²³⁷ See 33 ILM, 1994, p. 1043. This interim constitution came into force on 27 April 1994 and was intended to remain in force for five years to be replaced by a constitution adopted by a Constitutional Assembly consisting of the National Assembly and Senate of Parliament: see below. See J. Dugard, *International Law: A South African Perspective*, 2nd edn, Kenwyn, 2000, and Hovell and Williams, 'A Tale of Two Systems', pp. 113 ff.

²³⁸ See Dugard, *International Law*. Note that this change means that treaties entered into before the Constitution came into force do not form part of municipal law unless expressly incorporated by legislation, while those treaties that postdate the new Constitution may.

Section 231(3) provides that 'such international agreement shall be binding on the Republic and shall form part of the law of the Republic, provided Parliament expressly so provides and such agreement is not inconsistent with this constitution'. Thus South Africa has moved from the British system to a position akin to the civil law tradition. It should also be noted that this interim constitution expressly provides that the National Defence Force shall 'not breach international customary law binding on the Republic relating to aggression', while in armed conflict, it would 'comply with its obligations under international customary law and treaties binding on the Republic' (section 227(2)).²³⁹

These provisions were considered and refined by the Constitutional Assembly, which on 8 May 1996 adopted a new constitution.²⁴⁰ Section 231(1) of this constitution provides that the negotiating and signing of all international agreements is the responsibility of the national executive, while such an agreement would only bind the Republic after approval by resolution in both the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces.²⁴¹ Any international agreement becomes domestic law when enacted into law by national legislation, although a self-executing provision of an agreement that has been approved by Parliament is law in the Republic unless it is inconsistent with the Constitution or an Act of Parliament.²⁴² Section 232 provides that customary international law is law in the Republic unless it is inconsistent with the Constitution or an Act of Parliament, while section 233 stipulates that when interpreting any legislation, every court must prefer any reasonable interpretation of the legislation which is consistent with international law over any alternative interpretation that is inconsistent with international law. It is also to be particularly noted that section 200(2) of the Constitution states that the primary object of the defence force is to defend and protect the Republic,

²³⁹ Note that article 144 of the Namibian Constitution provides that 'unless otherwise provided by this Constitution or Act of Parliament, the general rules of public international law and international agreements binding upon Namibia under this Constitution shall form part of the law of Namibia': see B. Erasmus, 'The Namibian Constitution and the Application of International Law', 15 *South African Yearbook of International Law*, 1989–90, p. 81.

²⁴⁰ See 36 ILM, 1997, p. 744.

²⁴¹ Section 231(2). This is unless either such an agreement is of a 'technical, administrative or executive nature' or it is one not requiring ratification (or accession), in which case tabling in the Assembly and the Council within a reasonable time is required: section 231(3).

²⁴² Section 231(4).

its territorial integrity and its people, 'in accordance with the Constitution and the principles of international law regulating the use of force'.²⁴³

The Russian Federation adopted a new constitution in 1993.²⁴⁴ Under article 86, the President negotiates and signs treaties and signs the ratification documents, while under article 106 the Federal Council (the upper chamber of the federal parliament) must consider those federal laws adopted by the State Duma (the lower chamber) that concern the ratification and denunciation of international agreements. The Constitutional Court may review the constitutionality of treaties not yet in force (article 125(2)) and treaties that conflict with the Constitution are not to be given effect (article 125(6)). Article 15(4) of the new constitution provides that 'the generally recognised principles and norms of international law and the international treaties of the Russian Federation shall constitute part of its legal system. If an international treaty of the Russian Federation establishes other rules than those stipulated by the law, the rules of the international treaty shall apply.' Thus both treaty law and customary law are incorporated into Russian law, while treaty rules have a higher status than domestic laws.²⁴⁵ The Constitutional Court takes the view that customary international law and international treaties ratified by Russia are norms incorporated into Russian law.²⁴⁶

²⁴³ Note that O'Regan J stated in *Kaunda v. President of the Republic of South Africa* that 'our Constitution recognises and asserts that, after decades of isolation, South Africa is now a member of the community of nations, and a bearer of obligations and responsibilities in terms of international law', CCT 23/04, [2004] ZACC 5, para. 222.

²⁴⁴ See G. M. Danilenko, 'The New Russian Constitution and International Law', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 451 and Danilenko, 'Implementation of International Law in CIS States: Theory and Practice', 10 EJIL, 1999, p. 51; V. S. Vereshchetin, 'New Constitutions and the Old Problem of the Relationship between International Law and National Law', 7 EJIL, 1996, p. 29, and S. Y. Marochkin, 'International Law in the Courts of the Russian Federation: Practice of Application', 6 Chinese JIL, 2007, p. 329. See, as regards the practice of the Soviet Union, K. Grzybowski, *Soviet Public International Law*, Leiden, 1970, pp. 30–2.

²⁴⁵ See also article 5 of the Russian Federal Law on International Treaties adopted on 16 June 1995, 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1370. This repeats article 15(4) of the Constitution and also provides that 'the provisions of officially published international treaties of the Russian Federation which do not require the publication of intra-state acts for application shall operate in the Russian Federation directly. Respective legal acts shall be adopted in order to effectuate other provisions of international treaties of the Russian Federation.' See further W. E. Butler, *The Law of Treaties in Russia and the Commonwealth of Independent States*, Cambridge, 2002, who notes that the change brought about by article 15(4) 'is among the most momentous changes of the twentieth century in the development of Russian Law', at p. 36.

²⁴⁶ Butler, *Law of Treaties in Russia*, p. 37. See also generally, *Constitutional Reform and International Law in Central and Eastern Europe* (eds. R. Müllerson, M. Fitzmaurice

Under article 73(3) of the Japanese Constitution of 1946,²⁴⁷ the Cabinet has authority to conclude treaties with the prior or subsequent approval of the Diet, although executive agreements may be entered into without such approval, usually by simple exchange of notes. Promulgation of a treaty takes place by publication in the Official Gazette under the name of the Emperor once the Diet has approved and the Cabinet ratified the agreement (article 7). Article 98(2) provides that 'treaties concluded by Japan and established laws of nations shall be faithfully observed' and this provision is taken as incorporating international law, both relevant treaty and customary law, into Japan's legal system.²⁴⁸ Japan has also experienced some difficulty²⁴⁹ in the context of the relative definition of self-governing and non-self-governing treaties.²⁵⁰

This survey of the attitudes adopted by various countries of the common law and civil law traditions leads to a few concluding remarks. The first of these is that a strict adherence to either the monist or the dualist position will not suffice. Most countries accept the operation of customary rules within their own jurisdictions, providing there is no conflict with existing laws, and some will allow international law to prevail over municipal provisions. One can regard this as a significant element in extending the principles and protection of international law, whether or not it is held that the particular provision permitting this, whether by constitutional enactment or by case-law, illustrates the superiority of municipal law in so acting.

The situation as regards treaties is much more complex, as different attitudes are maintained by different states. In some countries, certain treaties will operate internally by themselves (self-executing) while others must undergo a process of domestic legalisation. There are countries where legislation is needed for virtually all international agreements: for example,

and M. Andenas), *The Hague*, 1998; T. Schweisfurth and R. Alleweldt, 'The Position of International Law in the Domestic Legal Orders of Central and Eastern European Countries', 40 *German YIL*, 1997, p. 164; I. Ziemele, 'The Application of International Law in the Baltic States', 40 *German YIL*, 1997, p. 243, and W. Czaplinski, 'International Law and Polish Municipal Law', 53 *ZaöRV*, 1993, p. 871.

²⁴⁷ See generally S. Oda, *The Practice of Japan in International Law 1961–1970*, Leiden, 1982, and Y. Iwasawa, 'The Relationship Between International Law and National Law: Japanese Experiences', 64 *BYIL*, 1993, p. 333. See also H. Oda, *Japanese Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 1999, and Y. Iwasawa, *International Law, Human Rights, and Japanese Law – The Impact of International Law on Japanese Law*, Oxford, 1998.

²⁴⁸ Iwasawa, 'Relationship', p. 345. ²⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 349 ff.

²⁵⁰ See generally with regard to China, T. Wang, 'International Law in China', 221 *HR*, 1990, p. 195.

Belgium.²⁵¹ It is by no means settled as a general principle whether treaties prevail over domestic rules. Some countries allow treaties to supersede all municipal laws, whether made earlier or later than the agreement. Others, such as Norway, adopt the opposite stance. Where there are written constitutions, an additional complicating factor is introduced and some reasonably stable hierarchy incorporating ordinary laws, constitutional provisions and international law has to be maintained. This is particularly so where a federal system is in operation. It will be up to the individual country to adopt its own list of preferences.²⁵²

Of course, such diverse attitudes can lead to confusion, but in the light of the present state of international law, it is inevitable that its enforcement and sphere of activity will become entangled with the ideas and practices of municipal law. Indeed, it is precisely because of the inadequate enforcement facilities that lie at the disposal of international law that one must consider the relationship with municipal law as of more than marginal importance. This is because the extent to which domestic courts apply the rules of international law may well determine the effectiveness of international legislation and judicial decision-making.

However, to declare that international legal rules therefore prevail over all relevant domestic legislation at all times is incorrect in the vast majority of cases and would be to overlook the real in the face of the ideal. States jealously guard their prerogatives, and few are more meaningful than the ability to legislate free from outside control; and, of course, there are democratic implications. The consequent supremacy of municipal legal systems over international law in the domestic sphere is not exclusive, but it does exist as an undeniable general principle.

It is pertinent to refer here briefly to the impact of the European Union.²⁵³ The European Court of Justice has held that Community law has supremacy over ordinary national law,²⁵⁴ and indeed over domestic

²⁵¹ See article 68 of the Constitution, which deals basically with treaties of commerce and treaties which impose obligations on the state or on individuals.

²⁵² See generally Drzemczewski, *Domestic Law*, and Peaslee, *Constitutions*, vol. III, pp. 76 and 689. See also, as regards the Philippines, the decision of the Supreme Court (en banc) in *The Holy See v. Starbright Sales Enterprises Inc.* 102 ILR, p. 163, and, as regards Poland, W. Czaplinski, 'International Law and Polish Municipal Law – A Case Study', 8 *Hague Yearbook of International Law*, 1995, p. 31.

²⁵³ See e.g. S. Weatherill and P. Beaumont, *EC Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1999; L. Collins, *European Community Law in the United Kingdom*, 4th edn, London, 1990, and H. Kovar, 'The Relationship between Community Law and National Law' in *Thirty Years of Community Law* (Commission of the European Communities), 1981, p. 109. See also above, p. 156.

²⁵⁴ See *Costa v. ENEL*, Case 6/64 [1964] ECR 585; 93 ILR, p. 23.

constitutional law.²⁵⁵ In addition to the treaties creating the EC,²⁵⁶ there is a great deal of secondary legislation issuing forth from its institutions, which can apply to the member states. This takes the form of regulations, decisions or directives. Of these, the first two are directly applicable and enforceable within each of the countries concerned without the need for enabling legislation. While it is true that the legislation for this type of activity has been passed – for example section 2(1) of the European Communities Act 1972²⁵⁷ in the UK, which permits in advance this form of indirect law-making, and is thus assimilated into municipal law – the fact remains that the member states have accepted an extraterritorial source of law, binding in certain circumstances upon them. The effect is thus that directly effective Community law has precedence over inconsistent UK legislation. This was confirmed by the House of Lords in *Factortame Ltd v. Secretary of State for Transport*.²⁵⁸ It was further noted that one of the consequences of UK entry into the European Communities and the European Communities Act 1972 was that an interim injunction could be granted, the effect of which would be to suspend the operation of a statute on the grounds that the legislation in question allegedly infringed Community law. This is one illustration of the major effect which joining the Community has had in terms of the English legal system and previously accepted legal principles. The mistake, however, should not be made of generalising from this specific relationship to the sphere of international law as a whole.

Justiciability, act of state and related doctrines

An issue is justiciable basically if it can be tried according to law.²⁵⁹ It would, therefore, follow that matters that fall within the competence of the executive branch of government are not justiciable before the courts. Accordingly, the test as to whether a matter is or is not justiciable involves

²⁵⁵ See *Internationale Handelsgesellschaft v. Einfuhr- und Vorratsstelle für Getreide und Futtermittel* [1970] ECR 1125.

²⁵⁶ Including the treaties of Maastricht (1992), Amsterdam (1997), Nice (2001) and Lisbon (2007, not in force).

²⁵⁷ See also section 2(4).

²⁵⁸ See [1990] 2 AC 85, 140 (per Lord Bridge); 93 ILR, p. 652. See also *Ex parte Factortame* (No. 2) [1991] 1 AC 603; 93 ILR, p. 731; *R v. Secretary of State for Transport, ex parte Factortame*, European Court of Justice case C-213/89, 93 ILR, p. 669 and Case C-221/89, 93 ILR, p. 731.

²⁵⁹ See Mann, *Foreign Affairs*, chapter 4. See also L. Collins, 'Foreign Relations and the Judiciary', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 485.

an illumination of that grey area where the spheres of executive and judiciary merge and overlap. Recent years have seen a reduction in the sphere of exclusive competence of the executive free from judicial oversight and a number of important cases have sought to redraw the boundary. Justiciability as a concept includes the doctrine of act of state, which generally concerns the activities of the executive in relations with other states,²⁶⁰ but in the context of international law and municipal courts it refers particularly to the doctrine that no state can exercise jurisdiction over another state.²⁶¹ As such it is based upon the principles of the sovereignty and equality of states.²⁶² Non-justiciability acts as an evidential bar, since an issue cannot be raised or proved, in contrast to sovereign immunity, which provides that the courts cannot exercise the jurisdiction that exists with regard to the matter in question due to the status of the entity or individual concerned, although it is open to the state concerned to waive its immunity and thus remove the jurisdictional bar.²⁶³ Non-justiciability will usually concern a clear inter-state relationship or situation which is impleaded in a seemingly private action, while immunity issues will invariably arise out of a state-private party relationship not usually relating to inter-state activities as such.²⁶⁴

The concept of non-justiciability rests upon a number of pillars, ranging from prerogative of the executive in the areas of foreign policy and national defence,²⁶⁵ where it is essentially a rule of law principle in a democratic system of government delineating the separation of powers,²⁶⁶ to respect for the sovereignty and independence of foreign states.²⁶⁷ Accordingly, both domestic and foreign executive acts are covered. With regard

²⁶⁰ See e.g. Wade and Phillips, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, pp. 299–303; J. B. Moore, *Acts of State in English Law*, New York, 1906; Mann, *Foreign Affairs*, chapter 9; Singer, 'The Act of State Doctrine of the UK', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 283; M. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction in International Law', 46 BYIL, 1972–3, pp. 145, 240, and M. Zander, 'The Act of State Doctrine', 53 AJIL, 1959, p. 826.

²⁶¹ See Lord Pearson, *Nissan v. Attorney-General* [1970] AC 179, 239; 44 ILR, pp. 359, 390.

²⁶² See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 365.

²⁶³ See further as to sovereign or state immunity and diplomatic immunity, below, chapter 13.

²⁶⁴ See e.g. *Amalgamated Metal Trading v. Department of Trade and Industry*, *The Times*, 21 March 1989, p. 40.

²⁶⁵ In the UK, areas traditionally covered by the Crown prerogative: see above, p. 149.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. Lord Hoffmann in *R v. Lyons* [2002] UKHL 44, para. 40; 131 ILR, p. 555; Lord Millett in *R v. Lyons*, para. 105; 131 ILR, p. 575, and Richards J in the *CND* case [2002] EWHC 2777 (Admin), para. 60.

²⁶⁷ See *Underhill v. Hernandez* 168 US 250, 252.

to the former,²⁶⁸ the courts will refuse, or at the least be extremely reluctant, to adjudicate upon an exercise of sovereign power, such as making war and peace, making international treaties or ceding territory.²⁶⁹ This would include the definition of territories within the UK²⁷⁰ as well as the conduct of foreign affairs.²⁷¹ Lord Hoffmann held in *R v. Jones* that ‘the making of war and peace and the disposition of the armed forces has always been regarded as a discretionary power of the Crown into the exercise of which the courts will not enquire’.²⁷² As far as the latter instance is

²⁶⁸ See *Nissan v. Attorney-General* [1970] AC 179 and *Buron v. Denman* (1848) 145 ER 450. See also S. de Smith and R. Brazier, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 6th edn, London, 1989, pp. 145–51, and Mann, *Foreign Affairs*, chapter 10.

²⁶⁹ Not simply because they form part of the Crown’s prerogative powers, but because such powers are discretionary: see *Council of Civil Service Unions v. Minister for the Civil Service* [1984] 3 All ER 935, 956 and Lord Hoffmann in *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16, para. 65; 132 ILR, pp. 695–6. See also Lord Reid in *Chandler v. DPP* [1964] AC 763, 791; Simon Brown LJ, *R v. Ministry of Defence, ex parte Smith* [1996] QB 517, 539; Laws LJ, *Marchiori v. The Environment Agency* [2002] EWCA Civ 3, paras. 38 and 40; 127 ILR, pp. 642 and 643; *CND v. Prime Minister* [2002] EWHC 2759 at paras. 15 (Simon Brown LJ), 50 (Maurice Kay J) and 59 (Richards J); 126 ILR, pp. 735, 750 and 753; and *R (on the application of Abbasi) v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2002] EWCA Civ 1598, para. 106(iii); 126 ILR, p. 725.

²⁷⁰ See *The Fagernes* [1927] P 311, 324 (per Atkin LJ). See also *Christian v. The Queen* [2006] UKPC 47, paras. 9–10 (Lord Hoffmann) and 33 (Lord Woolf); 130 ILR, pp. 699–700, 707.

²⁷¹ See e.g. *R (Al-Rawi) v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2006] EWCA Civ 1279, paras. 131 ff. (Laws LJ), and cases cited in footnote 266 above.

²⁷² [2006] UKHL 16, para. 65; 132 ILR, p. 696. He concluded that ‘The decision to go to war [against Iraq], whether one thinks it was right or wrong, fell squarely within the discretionary powers of the Crown to defend the realm and conduct its foreign affairs... The discretionary nature or non-justiciability of the power to make war is in my opinion simply one of the reasons why aggression is not a crime in domestic law’, paras. 66 and 67, *ibid.*, and see also Lord Mance, para. 103; *ibid.*, pp. 705–6. More cautiously, Lord Bingham noted that ‘there are well established rules that the courts will be very slow to review the exercise of prerogative powers in relation to the conduct of foreign affairs and the deployment of the armed services’, para. 30, *ibid.*, p. 684. The *Jones* approach was applied by the Court of Appeal in *R (Gentle) v. Prime Minister* [2006] EWCA Civ 1689, para. 33 (Clarke MR); 132 ILR, p. 737, where it was held that the question whether the UK had acted unlawfully in sending troops to Iraq was non-justiciable for two reasons: first, because it would require consideration of at least two international instruments (Security Council resolutions 678 and 1441) and, secondly, because it would require detailed consideration of policy decisions in the fields of foreign affairs and defence ‘which are the exclusive responsibility of the executive government’. In the House of Lords, [2008] UKHL 20, their Lordships essentially focused on the meaning of article 2 of the European Convention on Human Rights, but Lord Bingham referred to the ‘restraint traditionally shown by the courts in ruling on what has been called high policy – peace and war, the making of treaties, the conduct of foreign relations’, *ibid.*, para. 2, while Lord Hope noted that, ‘The issue of legality in this area of international law [the use of force by states] belongs

concerned, Lord Wilberforce declared in *Buttes Gas and Oil Co. v. Hammer* (No. 3):²⁷³

there exists in English law a general principle that the courts will not adjudicate upon the transactions of foreign sovereign states . . . it seems desirable to consider this principle . . . not as a variety of 'act of state' but one for judicial restraint or abstention.²⁷⁴

Such a principle was not one of discretion, but inherent in the nature of the judicial process. Although that case concerned litigation in the areas of libel and conspiracy, the House of Lords felt that a determination of the issue would have involved the court in reviewing the transactions of four sovereign states and having to find that part of those transactions was contrary to international law. Quite apart from the possibility of embarrassment to the foreign relations of the executive, there were no judicial or manageable standards by which to judge such issues.²⁷⁵ It has been held, for example, that judicial review would not be appropriate in a matter which would have serious international repercussions and which was more properly the sphere of diplomacy.²⁷⁶ Although the Court of Appeal has noted that the keeping and disposal of foreign bank notes for commercial purposes in the UK could not be treated as sovereign acts so as to bring the activity within the protection of the *Buttes* non-justiciability doctrine, the acts in question had to be of a sovereign rather than of a commercial nature and performed within the territory of a foreign state.²⁷⁷ Legislation can, of course, impinge upon the question as to whether an issue is or is not justiciable,²⁷⁸ while the State Immunity Act 1978 removed sovereign immunity for commercial transactions.²⁷⁹

to the area of relations between states . . . [and] . . . is a matter of political judgment . . . It is not part of domestic law reviewable here', *ibid.*, para. 24 (and see para. 26). See also Lady Hale, *ibid.*, para. 58.

²⁷³ [1982] AC 888; 64 ILR, p. 331.

²⁷⁴ [1982] AC 888, 931; 64 ILR, p. 344. See also *Duke of Brunswick v. King of Hanover* (1848) 1 HLC 1. See Fatima, *Using International Law*, pp. 385 ff. Note also *R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems* [2008] EWHC 714 (Admin), paras. 74 and 160.

²⁷⁵ [1982] AC 888, 938; 64 ILR, p. 351.

²⁷⁶ See e.g. *R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, ex parte Pirbhai* 107 ILR, p. 462. But see the *Abbasi* case below, p. 188.

²⁷⁷ *A Ltd v. B Bank* 111 ILR, pp. 590, 594–6.

²⁷⁸ So that, for example, issues related to war crimes were justiciable in the light of the International Criminal Courts Act 2001: see *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16, paras. 4 and 28; 132 ILR, pp. 672 and 683.

²⁷⁹ See *Empresa Exportadora de Azúcar v. Industria Azucarera Nacional SA* [1983] 2 LL. R 171, 194–5; 64 ILR, p. 368. See further below, chapter 13.

One of the questions that the Court of Appeal addressed in *Maclaine Watson v. International Tin Council*²⁸⁰ was whether in such circumstances the doctrine of non-justiciability survived. It was emphasised that the two concepts of immunity and non-justiciability had to be kept separate and concern was expressed that the *Buttes* non-justiciability principle could be used to prevent proceedings being brought against states in commercial matters, contrary to the Act.²⁸¹

The issue of justiciability was discussed in *Maclaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry* both by the Court of Appeal²⁸² and by the House of Lords²⁸³ in the context of the creation of the collapsed International Tin Council by a group of states by a treaty which was unincorporated into English law. Kerr LJ emphasised that the doctrine in this context rested upon the principles that unincorporated treaties do not form part of the law of England and that such international agreements were not contracts which the courts could enforce.²⁸⁴ However, this did not prevent reference to an unincorporated treaty where it was necessary or convenient, for example in order to assess the legal nature of the International Tin Council.²⁸⁵ Lord Oliver in the House of Lords decision reaffirmed the essence of the doctrine of non-justiciability. He noted that it was

axiomatic that municipal courts have not and cannot have the competence to adjudicate upon or to enforce the rights arising out of transactions entered into by independent sovereign states between themselves on the plane of international law.²⁸⁶

However, this did not mean that the court must never look at or construe a treaty. A treaty could be examined as a part of the factual background against which a particular issue has arisen.²⁸⁷ It was pointed out that the creation of the Council by a group of states was a sovereign act and that the adjudication of the rights and obligations between the member states of the Council and the Council itself could only be undertaken on the international plane.²⁸⁸ In other words, the

²⁸⁰ [1988] 3 WLR 1169; 80 ILR, p. 191.

²⁸¹ [1988] 3 WLR 1169, 1188 per Kerr LJ; 80 ILR, p. 209.

²⁸² [1988] 3 WLR 1033; 80 ILR, p. 49. ²⁸³ [1989] 3 All ER 523; 81 ILR, p. 671.

²⁸⁴ [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1075; 80 ILR, pp. 49, 86.

²⁸⁵ [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1075–6. See also Nourse LJ, *ibid.*, p. 1130; 80 ILR, p. 148.

²⁸⁶ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 544; 81 ILR, pp. 671, 700. See also *R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems* [2008] EWHC 714 (Admin), para. 107.

²⁸⁷ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 545; 81 ILR, p. 701.

²⁸⁸ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 559; 81 ILR, p. 722. See also Ralph Gibson LJ in the Court of Appeal judgment, [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1143–4; 80 ILR, pp. 49, 163.

situation appeared to involve not only the *Buttes* form of act of state non-justiciability, but also non-justiciability on the basis of an unincorporated treaty.²⁸⁹

Hoffmann LJ in *Littrell v. USA (No. 2)*²⁹⁰ pointed out in the context of a status of forces agreement (providing for the placement of NATO troops in the UK) that the courts could look at such agreement to ensure that the foreign troops were here by invitation since the conclusion of a treaty was as much a fact as any other,²⁹¹ but this could not be taken to mean that the courts would actually enforce the terms of an unincorporated treaty. Additionally, it would not be open to the courts to determine whether a foreign sovereign state had broken a treaty.²⁹² The basic position is that: 'Ordinarily speaking, English courts will not rule upon the true meaning and effect of international instruments which apply only at the level of international law.'²⁹³ Further, the English courts are likely to decline to seek to determine an issue where this could be 'damaging to the public interest in the field of international relations, national security or defence'.²⁹⁴ Lord Bingham noted in *R v. Jones* that the courts would be 'very slow to adjudicate upon rights arising out of transactions entered into between

²⁸⁹ But see *Re McKerr*, where Lord Steyn noted that faced with the narrowness of this decision, a critical re-examination of this area of the law might become necessary in the future in the light of the 'growing support for the view that human rights treaties enjoy a special status', [2004] UKHL 12, paras. 51–2.

²⁹⁰ [1995] 1 WLR 82, 93.

²⁹¹ Similarly, Colman J in *Westland Helicopters Ltd v. Arab Organisation for Industrialisation* [1995] 2 WLR 126, 149, held that reference to the terms of the treaty establishing an international organisation and to the terms of the basic statute of that organisation in order to ascertain the governing law of that organisation and its precise nature did not transgress the boundary between what was justiciable and what was non-justiciable.

²⁹² See *British Airways Board v. Laker Airways Ltd* [1985] AC 58, 85–6; *Ex parte Molyneux* [1986] 1 WLR 331; 87 ILR, p. 329 and *Westland Helicopters Ltd v. Arab Organisation for Industrialisation* [1995] 2 WLR 126, 136. See also *Minister for Arts Heritage and Environment v. Peko-Wallsend Ltd* (1987) 75 ALR 218, 250–4; 90 ILR, pp. 32, 51–5, where the Australian Federal Court held that a Cabinet decision involving Australia's international relations in implementing a treaty was not a justiciable matter, and *Arab Republic of Syria v. Arab Republic of Egypt* 91 ILR, pp. 288, 305–6, where the Supreme Court of Brazil held that the courts of a third state could not exercise jurisdiction in a matter essentially of state succession between two other states even where the property was within the jurisdiction.

²⁹³ *CND v. Prime Minister of the UK and Others* [2002] EWHC 2777 (Admin), paras. 23, 36 and 47. See also *R v. Lyons* [2002] 3 WLR 1562; 131 ILR, p. 538.

²⁹⁴ *CND v. Prime Minister of the UK*, para. 47, cited with approval by the Irish High Court in *Horgan v. An Taoiseach*, judgment of 28 April 2003, as emphasising 'the strictly circumspect role which the courts adopt when called upon to exercise jurisdiction in relation to the Executive's conduct of international relations generally', 132 ILR, pp. 407, 440.

sovereign states on the plane of international law'.²⁹⁵ However, the rule is not absolute.²⁹⁶ The courts are willing to look at the terms of an unincorporated treaty in specific situations: first, as noted above, in order to ascertain certain facts such as the existence and terms of, and the parties to, a treaty or where the treaty in question is incorporated into a contract or referred to in domestic legislation and is necessary to a particular decision, and secondly, where the national courts have to adjudicate upon the interpretation of a particular international treaty in order to determine private rights and obligations under domestic law.²⁹⁷ The latter proposition would operate, for example, with regard to extradition and asylum cases where a view has to be taken with regard to the Geneva Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, 1951 as a result of domestic legislation, the Asylum and Immigration Act 1996.²⁹⁸ In *Republic of Ecuador v. Occidental Exploration and Production Co.*, the Court of Appeal, while affirming this principle, emphasised that context was always important, so that a treaty intended by its signatories to give rise to rights in favour of private investors capable of enforcement under the treaty in consensual arbitration against one or other of its signatory states in domestic proceedings would fall within this exception and thus be justiciable.²⁹⁹ The exception to non-justiciability laid down in the *CND* and *Occidental* cases was reaffirmed in *In the Matter of AY Bank Ltd*,³⁰⁰ where it was held that the right to prove in the liquidation of a joint venture bank in the UK (involving the National Bank of Yugoslavia), upon the dissolution of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia and its National Bank and consequential apportionment among the successor states, arose in domestic law, so

²⁹⁵ [2006] UKHL 16, para. 30; 132 ILR, p. 684. See also *R (Islamic Human Rights Commission) v. CAA* [2006] EWHC 2465; 132 ILR, p. 707, and *R (Gentle) v. Prime Minister* [2008] UKHL 20, above, p. 181, note 272.

²⁹⁶ See Lord Oliver in *JH Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1990] 2 AC 418, 500. Lord Steyn in *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Co. (Nos. 4 and 5)* [2002] 2 AC 883, 1101 considered that the principle was not 'a categorical rule'. See also Fatima, *Using International Law*, pp. 273 ff.

²⁹⁷ See e.g. *CND v. Prime Minister* [2002] EWHC 2777 (Admin), paras. 35–6 (Simon Brown LJ) and 61 (iii) (Richards J).

²⁹⁸ See e.g. *Ex parte Adan* [2000] UKHL 67.

²⁹⁹ [2005] EWCA Civ 1116, paras. 31 and 37. Mance LJ went on to say that 'For the English Court to treat the extent of such rights as non-justiciable would appear to us to involve an extension, rather than an application, of existing doctrines developed in different contexts', *ibid.* See also paras. 39–42. Somewhat confusingly, Mance LJ concluded that the doctrine of non-justiciability could not be ousted by consent, *ibid.*, para. 57.

³⁰⁰ [2006] EWHC 830 (Ch), paras. 51 ff. See also *R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems* [2008] EWHC 714 (Admin), paras. 118–20.

that the existence of the Agreement on Succession Issues, signed by the successor states formally apportioning the assets and debts of the Former Yugoslavia, did not render the question non-justiciable.

The principle of non-justiciability, which includes but goes beyond the concept of act of state,³⁰¹ must exist in an international system founded upon sovereign and formally equal states.³⁰² Having said that, there is no doubt that the extent of the doctrine is open to question. While the courts would regard a question concerning the constitutionality of a foreign government as non-justiciable³⁰³ and would not as a general rule inquire into the validity of acts done in a sovereign capacity, such as the constitutionality of foreign laws,³⁰⁴ the latter proposition may be subject to exceptions. The House of Lords addressed the question in *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Company*.³⁰⁵ Lord Nicholls noted that in appropriate circumstances it was legitimate for an English court to have regard to the content of international law in deciding whether to recognise a foreign law and it did not flow inevitably from the non-justiciability principle that the judiciary must ignore a breach of international law committed by one state against another 'where the breach is plain and, indeed, acknowledged'.³⁰⁶ In such cases, the difficulty discussed by Lord Wilberforce in *Buttes Gas and Oil* concerning the lack of judicial or manageable standards by which to deal with a sovereignty dispute between two foreign states did not apply.³⁰⁷ The acceptability of a provision of foreign law had to be judged by contemporary standards and the courts had to give effect to clearly established rules of international law.³⁰⁸ Where foreign legislation

³⁰¹ A distinction has recently been drawn between a narrower doctrine of act of state, which concerns the recognition of acts of a foreign state within its own territory, and a broader principle of non-justiciability in respect of 'certain sovereign acts' of a foreign state: see Mance J in *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Company* 116 ILR, pp. 534, 568, basing himself upon Lord Wilberforce in *Buttes Gas and Oil v. Hammer* [1982] AC 888, 930–2; 64 ILR, p. 331. Mance J's analysis was approved by Lord Lloyd in *Ex Parte Pinochet* (No. 1) [2000] 1 AC 61, 102; 119 ILR, pp. 51, 91.

³⁰² See e.g. the decision of the Belgian Conseil d'État in *T v. Belgium* on 9 April 1998 that the process of declaring a foreign diplomat persona non grata was not justiciable both because the request from the receiving state was a matter between states and because it was the sending state that had to recall the person in question or terminate his functions and the Conseil d'État had no jurisdiction over an act emanating from a foreign state: 115 ILR, p. 442.

³⁰³ See e.g. *Ex parte Turkish Cypriot Association* 112 ILR, p. 735.

³⁰⁴ See *Buck v. Attorney-General* [1965] 1 Ch. 745; 42 ILR, p. 11.

³⁰⁵ Decision of 16 May 2002, [2002] UKHL 19; 125 ILR, p. 677.

³⁰⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 26. ³⁰⁷ See above, p. 182.

³⁰⁸ [2002] UKHL 19, para. 28. See also *Blathwayt v. Baron Cawley* [1976] AC 397, 426 and *Oppenheimer v. Cattermole* [1976] AC 249, 278.

was adopted consequential upon a fundamental breach of international law (such as the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait in 1990 and seizure of its assets), enforcement or recognition of such law by the courts would be 'manifestly contrary to the public policy of English law'. Further, it was emphasised that international law recognised that a national court may decline to give effect to legislative and other acts of foreign states which are in violation of international law.³⁰⁹ Lord Steyn noted that the extension of the public policy exception to recognition of foreign laws from human rights violations to 'flagrant breaches of international law' was correct. Reference was made to the UN Charter, binding Security Council resolutions and international opinion in general.³¹⁰ Lord Hope emphasised that 'very narrow limits must be placed on any exception to the act of state rule', but there was no need for restraint on grounds of public policy 'where it is plain beyond dispute that a clearly established norm of international law has been violated'.³¹¹ He concluded that 'a legislative act by a foreign state which is in flagrant breach of clearly established rules of international law ought not to be recognised by the courts of this country as forming part of the *lex situs* of that state'.³¹²

The courts may also not feel constrained in expressing their views as to foreign sovereign activities where a breach of international law, particularly human rights, is involved³¹³ and may not feel constrained from investigating, in a dispute involving private rights, the legal validity of an act done by a citizen purporting to act on behalf of the sovereign or sovereign state.³¹⁴ It is clear that the courts will regard as non-justiciable policy decisions by the government concerning relationships with friendly foreign states, on the basis that foreign policy is pre-eminently an area for the government and not the courts.³¹⁵ In particular, a number of cases have laid down the proposition that decisions taken by the executive in its dealings with foreign states regarding the protection of British citizens abroad are non-justiciable.³¹⁶

³⁰⁹ [2002] UKHL 19, para. 29. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 371 ff.

³¹⁰ [2002] UKHL 19, para. 114. ³¹¹ *Ibid.*, paras. 138–40.

³¹² *Ibid.*, para. 148. See also Lord Scott, *ibid.*, para. 192.

³¹³ See e.g. *Abbasi v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2002] EWCA Civ. 1598, paras. 57 and 66 (per Lord Phillips MR); 126 ILR, pp. 710 and 713.

³¹⁴ See e.g. *Dubai Bank v. Galadari*, *The Times*, 14 July 1990.

³¹⁵ See *Ex parte Everett* [1989] 1 QB 811; 84 ILR, p. 713; *Ex parte Ferhut Butt* 116 ILR, pp. 607, 620–1, and *Foday Saybana Sankoh* 119 ILR, pp. 389, 396. See further above, p. 180.

³¹⁶ See e.g. *Council of Civil Service Unions v. Minister for the Civil Service* [1985] 1 AC 374, 411 (per Lord Diplock); *Ex parte Pirbhai* 107 ILR, pp. 462, 479; *Ex parte Ferhut Butt* 116 ILR, pp. 607, 615 and 622 and *R (Suresh and Manickavasagam) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2001] EWHC Admin 1028, para. 19; 123 ILR, p. 598.

This approach, however, is subject to some qualification.³¹⁷ This concerns in particular the evolving law of judicial review³¹⁸ both with regard to its scope concerning the executive and in terms of ‘legitimate expectation’,³¹⁹ or a reasonable expectation that a regular practice will continue. Where diplomatic protection of a national abroad is concerned, the Court of Appeal has noted that ‘The Secretary of State must be free to give full weight to foreign policy considerations, which are not justiciable. However, this does not mean the whole process is immune from judicial scrutiny. The citizen’s legitimate expectation is that his request will be “considered”, and that in that consideration all relevant factors will be thrown into the balance.’³²⁰ Taylor LJ referred, for example, in *ex parte Everett* to the ‘normal expectation of every citizen’ that, if he were subjected abroad to a violation of a fundamental right, the British government would not simply wash their hands of the matter and abandon him to his fate.³²¹ The Court in *Abbasi* concluded that judicial review would lie where the Foreign and Commonwealth Office, contrary to its stated policy, refused even to consider whether to make diplomatic representations on behalf of a subject whose fundamental rights were being violated. However, beyond this, no general proposition could be stated, being dependent upon the precise circumstances. In particular, there was no enforceable duty to protect the citizen, only a discretion.³²² In *Al-Rawi v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs*, the Court of Appeal denied that any such legitimate expectation as to the exercise of discretion would extend to the position of non-nationals.³²³

The approach in *Abbasi* was approved in *Kaunda v. The President of the Republic of South Africa* by the Constitutional Court of South Africa,

³¹⁷ See Lord Phillips MR in *Abbasi v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2002] EWCA Civ. 1598, paras. 80 ff; 126 ILR, p. 718.

³¹⁸ See e.g. S. A. De Smith, H. Woolf and J. Jowell, *Judicial Review*, 5th edn, London, 1998, pp. 419 ff.

³¹⁹ See *Secretary of State for the Foreign and Commonwealth Office v. The Queen (on the application of Bancoult)* [2007] EWCA Civ 498, paras. 72 ff.

³²⁰ Per Lord Phillips MR in *Abbasi v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2002] EWCA Civ. 1598, para. 99.

³²¹ [1989] 1 QB 811, paras. 96–8.

³²² [2002] EWCA Civ 1598, paras. 104–7. The court concluded that this discretion was a very wide one but there was no reason why the decision or inaction of the Foreign Office should not be reviewable if it can be shown that the same is irrational or contrary to legitimate expectation. However, the court could not enter into the forbidden areas, including decisions affecting foreign policy, *ibid.*, para. 106(iii). See also *R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems* [2008] EWHC 714 (Admin), para. 56.

³²³ [2006] EWCA Civ 1279, para. 89.

which noted that 'A decision as to whether, and if so, what protection should be given, is an aspect of foreign policy which is essentially the function of the executive.'³²⁴ This did not mean that the South African courts had no jurisdiction to deal with issues concerned with diplomatic protection. Since the exercise of all public power was subject to constitutional control, this would also apply to an allegation that the government has failed to respond appropriately to a request for diplomatic protection. If, for instance, the decision were to be irrational or made in bad faith, the court could intervene to require the government to deal with the matter properly.³²⁵

Australian courts also have emphasised the importance of separation of powers and the need for courts to exercise considerable caution with regard to foreign policy, expressly citing the *Buttes* case.³²⁶ The question of justiciability was one for the federal judicial branch.³²⁷ It has been noted, for example, that any question of a dispute as to the assessment made by the executive and legislative branches of government of the 'terrorist threat' to the safety of the public would not be justiciable, but that this situation would change upon the adoption of relevant legislation.³²⁸

The US courts have similarly recognised the existence of areas of non-justiciability for sensitive political reasons. This is usually referred to as the political question doctrine and operates to prevent the courts from considering issues of political delicacy in the field of foreign affairs.³²⁹ In

³²⁴ CCT 23/04, [2004] ZACC 5, para. 77 (per Chief Justice Chaskalson). See also *Swissborough Diamond Mines v. South Africa*, Supreme Court, Transvaal Provincial Division, 1997, 132 ILR, p. 454, and the decision of the German Federal Constitutional Court in *Hess*, where it was held that 'the Federal Government enjoys wide discretion in deciding the question of whether and in what manner to grant protection against foreign States', BVerfGE 55, 349; 90 ILR 386, 395.

³²⁵ CCT 23/04, [2004] ZACC 5, paras. 78–80.

³²⁶ See the decision of the High Court of Australia in *Thorpe v. Commonwealth of Australia* (No. 3) (1997) 144 ALR 677, 690–1; 118 ILR, p. 353; *Re Dittfort* (1988) 19 FCR 347, 369; 87 ILR, p. 170; *Petrotimor Companhia de Petroleos SARL v. Commonwealth of Australia* [2003] FCAFC 3, and *Victoria Leasing Ltd v. United States* (2005) 218 ALR 640. See also G. Lindell, 'The Justiciability of Political Questions: Recent Developments' in *Australian Constitutional Perspectives* (eds. H. P. Lee and G. Winterton), Sydney, 1992, p. 180, and R. Garnett, 'Foreign States in Australian Courts', *Melbourne University Law Review*, 2005, p. 704.

³²⁷ *Wilson v. Minister for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Affairs* [1996] HCA 18; (1996) 189 CLR 1 at 11.

³²⁸ *Thomas v. Mowbray* [2007] HCA 33, para. 107.

³²⁹ See e.g. *Underhill v. Hernandez* 168 US 250 (1897), *Baker v. Carr* 369 US 181 (1962) and *American Insurance Association v. Garamendi*, US Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit, 23 June 2003. See also Henkin *et al.*, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, p. 178;

the *Greenham Women against Cruise Missiles v. Reagan* case,³³⁰ for example, the Court held that a suit to prevent the US deployment of cruise missiles at an air force base in the UK constituted a non-justiciable political question, not appropriate for judicial resolution.³³¹ Similarly, issues relating to rights of succession to the assets of a foreign state were non-justiciable.³³² Much will depend upon the particular circumstances of the case. In *Linder v. Portocarrero*,³³³ for instance, concerning the murder of a US citizen working for the Nicaraguan government by rebel forces (the Contras), the US Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit held that the political question doctrine was not implicated since the complaint neither challenged the legitimacy of US policy on Nicaragua nor sought to require the Court to decide who was right and who was wrong in the civil war in that country. The complaint was rather narrowly focused on the lawfulness of the conduct of the defendants in a single incident. In *Koohi v. United States*,³³⁴ the US Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit held that the courts were not precluded from reviewing military decisions, whether taken during war or peacetime, which caused injury to US or enemy civilians. The Court in *Baker v. Carr*,³³⁵ the leading case on the political question doctrine, while noting that not every case touching foreign relations was non-justiciable, provided a list of six factors that might render a case non-justiciable.³³⁶ The Court of Appeals underlined

L. Henkin, 'Is There a "Political Question" Doctrine?', 85 *Yale Law Journal*, 1976, p. 597; J. Charney, 'Judicial Deference in Foreign Relations', 83 *AJIL*, 1989, p. 805, and T. M. Franck, *Political Questions/Judicial Answers: Does the Rule of Law Apply to Foreign Affairs?*, Princeton, 1992.

³³⁰ 591 F.Supp. 1332 (1984); 99 ILR, p. 44.

³³¹ But see *Japan Whaling Association v. American Cetacean Society* 478 US 221 (1986), where the Supreme Court held that the judicial interpretation of a US statute, even if it involved foreign relations, was not a political question precluding justiciability. See also *Dellums v. Bush* 752 F.Supp. 1141 (1990).

³³² See e.g. *Can and Others v. United States* 14 F.3d 160 (1994); 107 ILR, p. 255.

³³³ 963 F.2d 332, 337 (1992); 99 ILR, pp. 54, 79.

³³⁴ 976 F.2d 1328, 1331–2 (1992); 99 ILR, pp. 80, 84–5. ³³⁵ 369 US 186, 211 (1962).

³³⁶ That there should be (1) a textually demonstrable constitutional commitment of the issue to a co-ordinate political department; or (2) a lack of judicially discoverable and manageable standards for resolving it; or (3) the impossibility of deciding without an initial policy determination of a kind clearly for non-judicial discretion; or (4) the impossibility of a court's undertaking independent resolution without expressing lack of respect due co-ordinate branches of government; or (5) an unusual need for unquestioning adherence to a political decision already made; or (6) the potentiality of embarrassment of multifarious pronouncements by various departments on one question, *Baker*, 369 US at 217. See also *Schneider v. Kissinger* 412 F.3d 190 (DC Cir. 2005); *Bancoult v. McNamara* 445 F.3d 427 (DC Cir. 2006); *Gonzalez-Vera v. Kissinger* 449 F.3d 1260 (2006).

in *Kadić v. Karadžić*³³⁷ that ‘judges should not reflexively invoke these doctrines [political question and act of state doctrines] to avoid difficult and somewhat sensitive decisions in the context of human rights’. The fact that judicially discoverable and manageable standards exist would indicate that the issues involved were indeed justiciable.³³⁸ In *Corrie v. Caterpillar*, the US Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit reaffirmed that the political question doctrine was a jurisdictional issue and that the *Baker v. Carr* factors precluded justiciability, noting in particular that the provision of military assistance by the US to foreign states constituted such a political question.³³⁹

Also relevant in the context of non-justiciability is the doctrine of act of state. The *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*³⁴⁰ provides that ‘in the absence of a treaty or other unambiguous agreements regarding controlling legal principles, courts in the United States will generally refrain from examining the validity of a taking by a foreign state of property within its own territory, or from sitting in judgment on other acts of a governmental character done by a foreign state within its own territory and applicable there.’³⁴¹ In *Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Sabbatino*,³⁴² the US Supreme Court held that the act of state concept was not a rule of public international law, but related instead to internal constitutional balances.³⁴³ It was a rule of judicial self-restraint. The Court declared that the judicial branch would not examine the validity of a taking of property within its own territory by a foreign sovereign government,³⁴⁴ irrespective of the legality in international law of that action.³⁴⁵ This basic approach

³³⁷ 1995 US App. LEXIS 28826.

³³⁸ See e.g. *Klinghoffer v. SNC Achille Lauro* 937 F.2d 44 (1991); *Nixon v. United States* 122 L.Ed.2d 1 (1993); *Can v. United States* 14 F.3d 160 (1994); *Schneider v. Kissinger* 310 F.Supp. 2d 251, 257–64 (DDC 2004).

³³⁹ 503 F.3d 974 CA 9 (Wash.), 2007. ³⁴⁰ 1987, para. 443, pp. 366–7.

³⁴¹ This doctrine is subject to modification by act of Congress, *ibid.*, para. 444.

³⁴² 376 US 398 (1964); 35 ILR, p. 2.

³⁴³ 376 US 398, 427–8 (1964); 35 ILR, p. 37. In *United States v. Noriega* 746 F.Supp. 1506, 1521–3 (1990); 99 ILR, pp. 143, 163–5, the US District Court noted that the act of state doctrine was a function of the separation of powers, since it precluded judicial examination of the acts of foreign governments which might otherwise hinder the executive’s conduct of foreign relations.

³⁴⁴ 376 US 398 (1964); 35 ILR, p. 2.

³⁴⁵ This approach was reversed by Congress in the Hickenlooper Amendment to the Foreign Assistance Act of 1964, Pub. L. No. 86–663, para. 301(d)(4), 78 Stat. 1013 (1964), 79 Stat. 653, 659, as amended 22 USC, para. 23470(e)(2), (1982). Note that in *Williams & Humbert Ltd v. W & H Trade Marks (Jersey) Ltd* [1986] 1 All ER 129; 75 ILR, p. 312, the House of Lords held that an English court would recognise a foreign law effecting

was supported in a subsequent case,³⁴⁶ whereas in *Alfred Dunhill of London Inc. v. Republic of Cuba*³⁴⁷ the Supreme Court employed sovereign immunity concepts as the reason for not recognising the repudiation of the commercial obligations of a state instrumentality as an act of state. However, it now appears that there is an exception to the strict act of state doctrine where a relevant treaty provision between the parties specifies the standard of compensation to be payable and thus provides 'controlling legal principles'.³⁴⁸

In an important case in 1990, the Supreme Court examined anew the extent of the act of state doctrine. *Kirkpatrick v. Environmental Tectonics*³⁴⁹ concerned a claim brought by an unsuccessful bidder on a Nigerian government contract in circumstances where the successful rival had bribed Nigerian officials. The Court unanimously held that the act of state doctrine did not apply since the validity of a foreign sovereign act was not at issue. The Court also made the point that act of state issues only arose when a court 'must decide – that is, when the outcome of the case turns upon – the effect of official action by a foreign sovereign'.³⁵⁰ While the doctrine clearly meant that a US court had to accept that the acts of foreign sovereigns taken within their jurisdictions were to be deemed valid, this did not extend to cases and controversies that might embarrass foreign governments in situations falling outside this. Act of state was not to be extended.³⁵¹

Executive certificates

There is an established practice adopted by the British courts of applying to the executive branch of government for the conclusive ascertainment

compulsory acquisition and any change of title to property which came under the control of the foreign state as a result and would accept and enforce the consequences of that compulsory acquisition without considering its merits.

³⁴⁶ *First National City Bank v. Banco Nacional de Cuba* 406 US 759 (1972); 66 ILR, p. 102.

³⁴⁷ 96 S. Ct. 1854 (1976); 66 ILR, p. 212. See also M. Halberstam, 'Sabbatino Resurrected', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 68.

³⁴⁸ See *Kalamazoo Spice Extraction Co. v. Provisional Military Government of Socialist Ethiopia* 729 F.2d 422 (1984). See also *AIG v. Iran* 493 F.Supp. 522 (1980) and Justice Harlan in the *Sabbatino* case, 376 US 398, 428 (1964); 35 ILR, pp. 25, 37.

³⁴⁹ 110 S. Ct. 701 (1990); 88 ILR, p. 93. ³⁵⁰ 110 S.Ct. 701, 705 (1990).

³⁵¹ See also *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 366–89; *Bandes v. Harlow & Jones* 82 AJIL, 1988, p. 820, where the Court of Appeals held that the act of state doctrine was inapplicable to takings by a foreign state of property located outside its territory, and *First American Corp. v. Al-Nahyan* 948 F.Supp. 1107 (1996). Note that the party claiming the application of the doctrine bears the burden of proving its applicability: see *Daventree Ltd v. Republic of Azerbaijan* 349 F.Supp.2d 736, 754 (SDNY 2004).

of certain facts. Examples include the status of a foreign state or government, questions as to whether a state of war is in operation as regards a particular country or as between two foreign states, and whether or not a particular person is entitled to diplomatic status. This means that in such matters of state the courts will consult the government and regard the executive certificate (or Foreign Office certificate as it is sometimes called), which is issued following the request, as conclusive, irrespective of any relevant rules of international law.³⁵² This was firmly acknowledged in *Duff Development Co. Ltd v. Kelantan*,³⁵³ which concerned the status of the state of Kelantan in the Malay Peninsula and whether it was able to claim immunity in the English courts. The government declared that it was regarded as an independent state and the House of Lords noted that 'where such a statement is forthcoming, no other evidence is admissible or needed', and that:

it was not the business of the Court to inquire whether the Colonial Office rightly concluded that the Sultan [of Kelantan] was entitled to be recognised as a sovereign by international law.³⁵⁴

This basic position was reaffirmed in *R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, ex parte Trawnik*,³⁵⁵ in which it was held that certificates under section 40(3) of the Crown Proceedings Act 1947 and section 21 of the State Immunity Act 1978 were reviewable in the courts only if they constituted a nullity in that they were not genuine certificates or if, on their face, they had been issued outside the scope of the relevant statutory power. The contents of such certificates were conclusive of the matters contained therein and, in so far as they related to recognition of foreign states, were matters within the realm of the royal prerogative and not subject to judicial review.

Problems have arisen in the context of the decision of the UK announced in 1980 not to accord recognition to governments, but rather to treat the question of an unconstitutional change of regimes as one

³⁵² See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1046 ff.

³⁵³ [1924] AC 797; 2 AD, p. 124. See also *The Fagernes* [1927] P. 311; 3 AD, p. 126 and *Post Office v. Estuary Radio Ltd* [1968] 2 QB 740; 43 ILR, p. 114. But cf. *Hesperides Hotels v. Aegean Turkish Holidays* [1978] 1 All ER 277; 73 ILR p. 9.

³⁵⁴ Note that under s. 7, Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 and s. 21, State Immunity Act 1978, such certificates are 'conclusive evidence' as to issues of diplomatic and state immunity. See also s. 8, International Organisations Act 1968, and see further below, chapter 13.

³⁵⁵ *The Times*, 18 April 1985, p. 4. See also C. Warbrick, 'Executive Certificates in Foreign Affairs: Prospects for Review and Control', 35 ICLQ, 1986, p. 138, and E. Wilmshurst, 'Executive Certificates in Foreign Affairs: The United Kingdom', 35 ICLQ, 1986, p. 157.

relating to diplomatic relations.³⁵⁶ In *Republic of Somalia v. Woodhouse Drake and Carey (Suisse) SA*,³⁵⁷ the court was faced with a confused situation concerning whether the interim government of Somalia was actually in effective control and the extent to which other factions controlled different areas of the country. The court noted that in reaching its decision as to whether the interim government was or was not the valid successor to the former legitimate government in the light of the degree of actual control exercised over the country, letters from the Foreign and Commonwealth Office became part of the evidence in the case. In so far as the three letters concerned statements as to what was happening in the country, 'such letters may not be the best evidence', but in so far as they dealt with the question as to whether and to what extent the UK government had dealings with the foreign government, such letters 'will almost certainly be the best and only conclusive evidence of that fact'.³⁵⁸

The United States State Department similarly offers 'suggestions' on such matters, although they tend to be more extensive than their British counterparts, and include comments upon the issues and occasionally the views of the executive.³⁵⁹

Suggestions for further reading

- A. Cassese, 'Modern Constitutions and International Law', 192 HR, 1985 III, p. 335
- S. Fatima, *Using International Law in Domestic Courts*, Oxford, 2005
- D. Feldman, 'Monism, Dualism and Constitutional Legitimacy', 20 Australian YIL, 1999, p. 105
- J. F. Murphy, *The United States and the Rule of Law in International Affairs*, Cambridge, 2004
- J. J. Paust, *International Law as Law of the United States*, Durham, NC, 1996
- Y. Shany, *Regulating Jurisdictional Relations Between National and International Courts*, Oxford, 2007

³⁵⁶ See further below, chapter 9, p. 454.

³⁵⁷ [1993] QB 54, 64–8; 94 ILR, pp. 608, 618–23.

³⁵⁸ [1993] QB 54, 65; 94 ILR, pp. 608, 619. See also *Sierra Leone Telecommunications Co. Ltd v. Barclays Bank* [1998] 2 All ER 821; 114 ILR, p. 466 and *North Cyprus Tourism Centre Ltd v. Transport for London* [2005] EWHC 1698 (Admin).

³⁵⁹ O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 119–22. See *The Pisaro* 255 US 216 (1921); *Anderson v. NV Transandine Handelmaatschappij* 289 NY 9 (1942); 10 AD, p. 10; *Mexico v. Hoffman* 324 US 30 (1945); 12 AD, p. 143, and the *Navemar* 303 US 68 (1938); 9 AD, p. 176. See also M. Chorazak, 'Clarity and Confusion: Did *Republic of Austria v. Altmann* Revive State Department Suggestions of Foreign Sovereign Immunity?', 55 *Duke Law Journal*, 2005, p. 373.

The subjects of international law

Legal personality – introduction

In any legal system, certain entities, whether they be individuals or companies, will be regarded as possessing rights and duties enforceable at law.¹ Thus an individual may prosecute or be prosecuted for assault and a company can sue for breach of contract. They are able to do this because the law recognises them as ‘legal persons’ possessing the capacity to have and to maintain certain rights, and being subject to perform specific duties. Just which persons will be entitled to what rights in what circumstances will depend upon the scope and character of the law. But it is the function of the law to apportion such rights and duties to such entities as it sees fit. Legal personality is crucial. Without it institutions and groups cannot operate, for they need to be able to maintain and enforce claims. In municipal law individuals, limited companies and public corporations are recognised as each possessing a distinct legal personality, the terms of which are circumscribed by the relevant legislation.² It is the law which

¹ See e.g. I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, part II; J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006; D. P. O’Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I; J. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 1969, vol. II; O. Lissitzyn, ‘Territorial Entities other than Independent States in the Law of Treaties’, 125 HR, 1968, p. 5; C. Berezowski, in *Mélanges Offerts à Juraj Andrassy* (ed. Ibler), 1968, p. 31; H. Lauterpacht, *International Law: Collected Papers*, Cambridge, 1975, vol. II, p. 487; C. Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, Paris, 1974, vol. II; N. Mugerwa, ‘Subjects of International Law’ in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 247; G. Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1957, vol. I, p. 89; A. Cassese, *International Law in a Divided World*, Oxford, 1986, chapter 4, and Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, part II; *International Law: Achievements and Prospects* (ed. M. Bedjaoui), Paris, 1991, part 1, title 1; *Oppenheim’s International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, chapter 2; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 3; L. Henkin, R. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, chapters 4 and 5, and S. Rosenne, ‘The Perplexities of Modern International Law’, 291 HR, 2001, chapter VII.

² R. Dias, *Jurisprudence*, 5th edn, London, 1985, chapter 12.

will determine the scope and nature of personality. Personality involves the examination of certain concepts within the law such as status, capacity, competence, as well as the nature and extent of particular rights and duties. The status of a particular entity may well be determinative of certain powers and obligations, while capacity will link together the status of a person with particular rights and duties. The whole process operates within the confines of the relevant legal system, which circumscribes personality, its nature and definition. This is especially true in international law. A particular view adopted of the system will invariably reflect upon the question of the identity and nature of international legal persons.³

Personality in international law necessitates the consideration of the interrelationship between rights and duties afforded under the international system and capacity to enforce claims. One needs to have close regard to the rules of international law in order to determine the precise nature of the capacity of the entity in question. Certain preliminary issues need to be faced. Does the personality of a particular claimant, for instance, depend upon its possession of the capacity to enforce rights? Indeed, is there any test of the nature of enforcement, or can even the most restrictive form of operation on the international scene be sufficient? One view suggests, for example, that while the quality of responsibility for violation of a rule usually co-exists with the quality of being able to enforce a complaint against a breach in any legal person, it would be useful to consider those possessing one of these qualities as indeed having juridical personality.⁴ Other writers, on the other hand, emphasise the crucial role played by the element of enforceability of rights within the international system.⁵

However, a range of factors needs to be carefully examined before it can be determined whether an entity has international personality and, if so, what rights, duties and competences apply in the particular case. Personality is a relative phenomenon varying with the circumstances. One of the distinguishing characteristics of contemporary international law has been the wide range of participants. These include states, international organisations, regional organisations, non-governmental organisations, public companies, private companies and individuals. To these may be added groups engaging in international terrorism. Not all such entities

³ See, for example, the Soviet view: G. I. Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, London, 1974.

⁴ See e.g. M. Sørensen, 'Principes de Droit International Public', 101 HR, 1960, pp. 5, 127. For a wider definition, see H. Mosler, *The International Society as a Legal Community*, Dordrecht, 1980, p. 32.

⁵ See e.g. Verzijl, *International Law*, p. 3.

will constitute legal persons, although they may act with some degree of influence upon the international plane. International personality is participation plus some form of community acceptance. The latter element will be dependent upon many different factors, including the type of personality under question. It may be manifested in many forms and may in certain cases be inferred from practice. It will also reflect a need. Particular branches of international law here are playing a crucial role. Human rights law, the law relating to armed conflicts and international economic law are especially important in generating and reflecting increased participation and personality in international law.

States

Despite the increasing range of actors and participants in the international legal system, states remain by far the most important legal persons and despite the rise of globalisation and all that this entails, states retain their attraction as the primary focus for the social activity of humankind and thus for international law.

Lauterpacht observed that: 'the orthodox positivist doctrine has been explicit in the affirmation that only states are subjects of international law'.⁶ However, it is less clear that in practice this position was maintained. The Holy See (particularly from 1871 to 1929), insurgents and belligerents, international organisations, chartered companies and various territorial entities such as the League of Cities were all at one time or another treated as possessing the capacity to become international persons.⁷

*Creation of statehood*⁸

The relationship in this area between factual and legal criteria is a crucial shifting one. Whether the birth of a new state is primarily a question of

⁶ Lauterpacht, *International Law*, p. 489.

⁷ See Verzijl, *International Law*, pp. 17–43, and Lauterpacht, *International Law*, pp. 494–500. See also the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 39; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 56, and *Survey of International Law in Relation to the Work of Codification of the International Law Commission*, Memorandum of the Secretary-General, 1949, A/CN.4/1/Rev.1, p. 24.

⁸ See in particular Crawford, *Creation of States*, chapter 2; R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963, pp. 11–57; K. Marek, *Identity and Continuity of States in Public International Law*, 2nd edn, Leiden, 1968; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1963, vol. I, pp. 221–33, 283–476, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 407. See also Société Française pour le Droit International, *L'État Souverain*, Paris, 1994; L. Henkin, *International Law: Politics and Values*, Dordrecht, 1995, chapter 1; R. H. Jackson, *Quasi-States: Sovereignty, International Relations and the*

fact or law and how the interaction between the criteria of effectiveness and other relevant legal principles may be reconciled are questions of considerable complexity and significance. Since *terrae nullius* are no longer apparent,⁹ the creation of new states in the future, once the decolonisation process is at an end, can only be accomplished as a result of the diminution or disappearance of existing states, and the need for careful regulation thus arises. Recent events such as the break-up of the Soviet Union, the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia underline this. In addition, the decolonisation movement has stimulated a re-examination of the traditional criteria. Article 1 of the Montevideo Convention on Rights and Duties of States, 1933¹⁰ lays down the most widely accepted formulation of the criteria of statehood in international law. It notes that the state as an international person should possess the following qualifications: '(a) a permanent population; (b) a defined territory; (c) government; and (d) capacity to enter into relations with other states'.

The Arbitration Commission of the European Conference on Yugoslavia¹¹ in Opinion No. 1 declared that 'the state is commonly defined as a community which consists of a territory and a population subject to an organised political authority' and that 'such a state is characterised by sovereignty'. It was also noted that the form of internal political organisation and constitutional provisions constituted 'mere facts', although it was necessary to take them into account in order to determine the government's sway over the population and the territory.¹²

Such provisions are neither exhaustive nor immutable. As will be seen below, other factors may be relevant, including self-determination and recognition, while the relative weight given to such criteria in particular

Third World, Cambridge, 1990, and A. James, *Sovereign Statehood: The Basis of International Society*, London, 1986.

⁹ See, as regards Antarctica, O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 451. See also below, chapter 10, p. 535.

¹⁰ 165 LNTS 19. International law does not require the structure of a state to follow any particular pattern: *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 43–4; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 60–1.

¹¹ Established pursuant to the Declaration of 27 August 1991 of the European Community: see Bull. EC, 7/8 (1991). See generally, M. Craven, 'The EC Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia', 65 BYIL, 1994, p. 333, and below, p. 210.

¹² 92 ILR, pp. 162, 165. Note that *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 120, provides that 'a state proper is in existence when a people is settled in a territory under its own sovereign government'.

situations may very well vary. What is clear, however, is that the relevant framework revolves essentially around territorial effectiveness.

The existence of a permanent population¹³ is naturally required and there is no specification of a minimum number of inhabitants, as examples such as Nauru and Tuvalu¹⁴ demonstrate. However, one of the issues raised by the Falkland Islands conflict does relate to the question of an acceptable minimum with regard to self-determination issues,¹⁵ and it may be that the matter needs further clarification as there exists a number of small islands awaiting decolonisation.¹⁶

The need for a defined territory focuses upon the requirement for a particular territorial base upon which to operate. However, there is no necessity in international law for defined and settled boundaries. A state may be recognised as a legal person even though it is involved in a dispute with its neighbours as to the precise demarcation of its frontiers, so long as there is a consistent band of territory which is undeniably controlled by the government of the alleged state. For this reason at least, therefore, the 'State of Palestine' declared in November 1988 at a conference in Algiers cannot be regarded as a valid state. The Palestinian organisations did not control any part of the territory they claim.¹⁷

Albania prior to the First World War was recognised by many countries even though its borders were in dispute.¹⁸ More recently, Israel has been accepted by the majority of nations as well as the United Nations as a valid state despite the fact that its frontiers have not been finally settled

¹³ A nomadic population might not thus count for the purposes of territorial sovereignty, although the International Court in the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 63–5; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 80–2, held that nomadic peoples did have certain rights with regard to the land they traversed.

¹⁴ Populations of some 12,000 and 10,000 respectively: see *Whitaker's Almanack*, London, 2003, pp. 1010 and 1089.

¹⁵ See below, p. 251.

¹⁶ But see, as regards artificial islands, *United States v. Ray* 51 ILR, p. 225; *Chierici and Rosa v. Ministry of the Merchant Navy and Harbour Office of Rimini* 71 ILR, p. 283, and *Re Duchy of Sealand* 80 ILR, p. 683.

¹⁷ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 36438 (1989). See also General Assembly resolution 43/77; R. Lapidot and K. Calvo-Goller, 'Les Éléments Constitutifs de l'État et la Déclaration du Conseil National Palestinien du 15 Novembre 1988', AFDI, 1992, p. 777; J. Crawford, 'The Creation of the State of Palestine: Too Much Too Soon?', 1 EJIL, 1990, p. 307, and Crawford, 'Israel (1948–1949) and Palestine (1998–1999): Two Studies in the Creation of States' in *The Reality of International Law* (eds. G. Goodwin-Gill and S. Talmon), Oxford, 1999, p. 95. See below, p. 246, with regard to the evolution of Palestinian autonomy in the light of the Israel–Palestine Liberation Organisation (PLO) Declaration on Principles.

¹⁸ See e.g. the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 32.

and despite its involvement in hostilities with its Arab neighbours over its existence and territorial delineation.¹⁹ What matters is the presence of a stable community within a certain area, even though its frontiers may be uncertain. Indeed, it is possible for the territory of the state to be split into distinct parts, for example Pakistan prior to the Bangladesh secession of 1971 or present-day Azerbaijan.

For a political society to function reasonably effectively it needs some form of government or central control. However, this is not a precondition for recognition as an independent country.²⁰ It should be regarded more as an indication of some sort of coherent political structure and society, than the necessity for a sophisticated apparatus of executive and legislative organs.²¹ A relevant factor here might be the extent to which the area not under the control of the government is claimed by another state as a matter of international law as distinct from *de facto* control. The general requirement might be seen to relate to the nineteenth-century concern with 'civilisation' as an essential of independent statehood and ignores the modern tendency to regard sovereignty for non-independent peoples as the paramount consideration, irrespective of administrative conditions.²²

As an example of the former tendency one may note the *Aaland Islands* case of 1920. The report of the International Committee of Jurists appointed to investigate the status of the islands remarked, with regard to the establishment of the Finnish Republic in the disordered days following the Russian revolution, that it was extremely difficult to name the date that Finland became a sovereign state. It was noted that:

¹⁹ Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 71. In fact most of the new states emerging after the First World War were recognised *de facto* or *de jure* before their frontiers were determined by treaty: H. Lauterpacht, *Recognition in International Law*, Cambridge, 1948, p. 30. See *Deutsche Continental Gas-Gesellschaft v. Polish State* (1929), 5 AD, pp. 11, 15; the *Mosul Boundary* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 12, p. 21; the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 32; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 62, and the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 22 and 26; 100 ILR, pp. 5, 21 and 25. See also Jessup speaking on behalf of the US regarding Israel's admission to the UN, SCOR, 3rd year, 383rd meeting, p. 41. The Minister of State of the Foreign and Commonwealth Office in a statement on 5 February 1991, UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 557, noted that the UK 'recognises many states whose borders are not fully agreed with their neighbours'. See as to the doctrine of *uti possidetis*, the presumption that on independence entities will retain existing boundaries, below, chapter 10, p. 525.

²⁰ See e.g. the Congo case, Higgins, *Development*, pp. 162–4, and C. Hoskyns, *The Congo Since Independence*, Oxford, 1965. See also Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 40, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 415 ff.

²¹ See the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 43–4; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 60–1.

²² See below, p. 251, on the right to self-determination.

[t]his certainly did not take place until a stable political organisation had been created, and until the public authorities had become strong enough to assert themselves throughout the territories of the state without the assistance of the foreign troops.²³

Recent practice with regard to the new states of Croatia and Bosnia and Herzegovina emerging out of the former Yugoslavia suggests the modification of the criterion of effective exercise of control by a government throughout its territory. Both Croatia and Bosnia and Herzegovina were recognised as independent states by European Community member states²⁴ and admitted to membership of the United Nations (which is limited to 'states' by article 4 of the UN Charter²⁵)²⁶ at a time when both states were faced with a situation where non-governmental forces controlled substantial areas of the territories in question in civil war conditions. More recently, Kosovo declared independence on 17 February 2008 with certain Serb-inhabited areas apparently not under the control of the central government.²⁷ In such situations, lack of effective central control might be balanced by significant international recognition, culminating in membership of the UN. Nevertheless, a foundation of effective control is required for statehood. Conversely, however, a comprehensive breakdown in order and the loss of control by the central authorities in an independent state will not obviate statehood. Whatever the consequences in terms of possible humanitarian involvement, whether by the UN or otherwise depending upon the circumstances, the collapse of governance within a state (sometimes referred to as a 'failed state') has no necessary effect upon the status of that state as a state. Indeed the very

²³ LNOJ Sp. Supp. No. 4 (1920), pp. 8–9. But cf. the view of the Commission of Rapporteurs in this case, LN Council Doc. B7 21/68/106 (1921), p. 22.

²⁴ On 15 January 1992 and 6 April 1992 respectively: see *Keesing's Record of World Events*, 1992, pp. 38703, 38704 and 38833. But see the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission's Opinion No. 5 of 11 January 1992 noting that Croatia had not met the requirements laid down in the Draft Convention on Yugoslavia of 4 November 1991 and in the Declaration on Yugoslavia and Guidelines on the Recognition of New States in Eastern Europe and in the Soviet Union of 16 December 1991: see 92 ILR, p. 178. Opinion No. 4 expressed reservations concerning the independence of Bosnia and Herzegovina pending the holding of a referendum. A referendum showing a majority for independence, however, was held prior to recognition by the EC member states and admission by the UN, *ibid.*, p. 173. See also below, p. 209.

²⁵ See e.g. V. Gowlland-Debbas, 'Collective Responses to the Unilateral Declarations of Independence of Southern Rhodesia and Palestine', 61 BYIL, 1990, p. 135.

²⁶ On 22 May 1992. See M. Weller, 'The International Response to the Dissolution of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 569.

²⁷ See further below, p. 204.

designation of 'failed state' is controversial and, in terms of international law, misleading.²⁸

The capacity to enter into relations with other states is an aspect of the existence of the entity in question as well as an indication of the importance attached to recognition by other countries. It is a capacity not limited to sovereign nations, since international organisations, non-independent states and other bodies can enter into legal relations with other entities under the rules of international law. But it is essential for a sovereign state to be able to create such legal relations with other units as it sees fit. Where this is not present, the entity cannot be an independent state. The concern here is not with political pressure by one country over another, but rather the lack of competence to enter into legal relations. The difference is the presence or absence of legal capacity, not the degree of influence that may affect decisions.

The essence of such capacity is independence. This is crucial to statehood and amounts to a conclusion of law in the light of particular circumstances. It is a formal statement that the state is subject to no other sovereignty and is unaffected either by factual dependence upon other states or by submission to the rules of international law.²⁹ It is arguable that a degree of actual as well as formal independence may also be necessary. This question was raised in relation to the grant of independence by South Africa to its Bantustans. In the case of the Transkei, for example, a considerable proportion, perhaps 90 per cent, of its budget at one time was contributed by South Africa, while Bophuthatswana was split into a series of areas divided by South African territory.³⁰ Both the Organisation of African Unity and the United Nations declared such 'independence' invalid and called upon all states not to recognise the new entities. These entities were, apart from South Africa, totally unrecognised.³¹

²⁸ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 719–22; S. Ratner, 'The Cambodia Settlement Agreements', 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 1, and T. M. Franck, 'The Democratic Entitlement', 29 *University of Richmond Law Review*, 1994, p. 1.

²⁹ See *Austro-German Customs Union case*, (1931) PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 41, pp. 41 (Court's Opinion) and 57–8 (Separate Opinion of Judge Anzilotti); 6 AD, pp. 26, 28. See also Marek, *Identity*, pp. 166–80; Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 62 ff., and Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, vol. II, pp. 53, 93.

³⁰ This was cited as one of the reasons for UK non-recognition, by the Minister of State, FCO: see UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, pp. 507–8.

³¹ The 1993 South African Constitution provided for the repeal of all laws concerning apartheid, including the four Status Acts which purported to create the 'independent states' of the four Bantustans, thus effectively reincorporating these areas into South Africa: see J. Dugard, *International Law – A South African Perspective*, Kenwyn, 1994, p. 346.

However, many states are as dependent upon aid from other states, and economic success would not have altered the attitude of the international community. Since South Africa as a sovereign state was able to alienate parts of its own territory under international law, these entities would appear in the light of the formal criteria of statehood to have been formally independent. However, it is suggested that the answer as to their status lay elsewhere than in an elucidation of this category of the criteria of statehood. It lay rather in understanding that actions taken in order to pursue an illegal policy, such as apartheid, cannot be sustained.³²

An example of the complexities that may attend such a process is provided by the unilateral declaration of independence by Lithuania, one of the Baltic states unlawfully annexed by the Soviet Union in 1940, on 11 March 1990.³³ The 1940 annexation was never recognised *de jure* by the Western states and thus the control exercised by the USSR was accepted only upon a *de facto* basis. The 1990 declaration of independence was politically very sensitive, coming at a time of increasing disintegration within the Soviet Union, but went unrecognised by any state. In view of the continuing constitutional crisis within the USSR and the possibility of a new confederal association freely accepted by the fifteen Soviet republics, it was at that time premature to talk of Lithuania as an independent state, not least because the Soviet authorities maintained substantial control within that territory.³⁴ The independence of Lithuania and the other Baltic States was recognised during 1991 by a wide variety of states, including crucially the Soviet Union.³⁵

It is possible, however, for a state to be accepted as independent even though, exceptionally, certain functions of government are placed in the hands of an outside body. In the case of Bosnia and Herzegovina, for example, the Dayton Peace Agreement of 1995 provided for a High

³² See M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 161–2. See also OAU Resolution CM.Res.493 (XXVII), General Assembly resolution 31/61A and Security Council statements on 21 September 1979 and 15 December 1981. Note that the Minister of State at the Foreign and Commonwealth Office declared that ‘the very existence of Bophuthatswana is a consequence of apartheid and I think that that is the principal reason why recognition has not been forthcoming’, 126, HC Deb., cols. 760–1, 3 February 1988.

³³ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37299 (1990).

³⁴ See e.g. the view of the UK government, 166 HC Deb., col. 697, Written Answers, 5 February 1990.

³⁵ See e.g. R. Müllerson, *International Law, Rights and Politics*, London, 1994, pp. 119 ff.

Representative to be appointed as the 'final authority in theatre' with regard to the implementation of the agreement,³⁶ and the High Representative has, for example, removed a number of persons from public office. None of this has been understood by the international community to affect Bosnia's status as an independent state, but the arrangement did arise as an attempt to reach and implement a peace agreement in the context of a bitter civil war with third-party intervention. More controversially, after a period of international administration,³⁷ Kosovo declared its independence on 17 February 2008, noting specifically that it accepted the obligations for Kosovo under the Comprehensive Proposal for the Kosovo Status Settlement (the Ahtisaari Plan).³⁸ This Plan called for 'independence with international supervision' and the obligations for Kosovo included human rights and decentralisation guarantees together with an international presence to supervise implementation of the Settlement. The provisions of the Settlement were to take precedence over all other legal provisions in Kosovo. The international presence was to take the form of an International Civilian Representative (ICR), who would also be the European Union Special Representative, to be appointed by the International Steering Group.³⁹ The ICR would be the final authority in Kosovo regarding interpretation of the civilian aspects of the Settlement and, in particular, would have the ability to annul decisions or laws adopted by the Kosovo authorities and sanction and remove public officials whose actions were determined to be inconsistent with the Settlement terms.⁴⁰ In addition, an international military presence, led by NATO, would ensure a safe environment throughout Kosovo.⁴¹

³⁶ See Annex 10 of the Dayton Peace Agreement. See also R. Caplan, 'International Authority and State Building: The Case of Bosnia and Herzegovina', 10 *Global Governance*, 2004, p. 53, and International Crisis Group, *Bosnia: Reshaping the International Machinery*, November 2001. The High Representative is nominated by the Steering Board of the Peace Implementation Council, a group of fifty-five countries and international organisations that sponsor and direct the peace implementation process, and this nomination is then endorsed by the Security Council. See further below, p. 231.

³⁷ See, as to the international administration of Kosovo, below, p. 232 and, as to recognition, below, chapter 9, p. 452.

³⁸ See www.assembly-kosova.org/?krye=news&newsid=1635&lang=en.

³⁹ To consist of France, Germany, Italy, Russia, the UK, the US, the EU, the European Commission and NATO.

⁴⁰ See S/2007/168 and S/2007/168/Add.1. Annex IX of the latter document details the role of the ICR.

⁴¹ See Annex XI. An EU Rule of Law Mission (EULEX) was established on 16 February 2008 to support the Kosovan authorities.

Self-determination and the criteria of statehood

It is the criterion of government which, as suggested above, has been most affected by the development of the legal right to self-determination. The traditional exposition of the criterion concentrated upon the stability and effectiveness needed for this factor to be satisfied,⁴² while the representative and democratic nature of the government has also been put forward as a requirement. The evolution of self-determination has affected the standard necessary as far as the actual exercise of authority is concerned, so that it appears a lower level of effectiveness, at least in decolonisation situations, has been accepted.⁴³ This can be illustrated by reference to a couple of cases.

The former Belgian Congo became independent on 30 June 1960 in the midst of widespread tribal fighting which had spread to the capital. Within a few weeks the Force Publique had mutinied, Belgian troops had intervened and the province of Katanga announced its secession. Notwithstanding the virtual breakdown of government, the Congo was recognised by a large number of states after independence and was admitted to the UN as a member state without opposition. Indeed, at the time of the relevant General Assembly resolution in September 1960, two different factions of the Congo government sought to be accepted by the UN as the legitimate representatives of the state. In the event, the delegation authorised by the head of state was accepted and that of the Prime Minister rejected.⁴⁴ A rather different episode occurred with regard to the Portuguese colony of Guinea-Bissau. In 1972, a UN Special Mission was dispatched to the 'liberated areas' of the territory and concluded that the colonial power had lost effective administrative control of large areas of the territory. Foreign observers appeared to accept the claim of the PAIGC, the local liberation movement, to control between two-thirds and three-quarters of the area. The inhabitants of these areas, reported the Mission, supported the PAIGC which was exercising effective *de facto* administrative control.⁴⁵ On 24 September 1973, the PAIGC proclaimed the Republic of Guinea Bissau an independent state. The issue of the 'illegal occupation by Portuguese military forces of certain sections of the Republic of Guinea-Bissau' came before the General Assembly and a number of states

⁴² See Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, p. 28.

⁴³ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 107 ff.

⁴⁴ *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 17594–5 and 17639–40, and Hoskyns, *Congo*, pp. 96–9.

⁴⁵ *Yearbook of the UN*, 1971, pp. 566–7, and A/AC.109/L 804, p. 19. See also A/8723/Rev.1 and Assembly resolution 2918 (XXVII).

affirmed the validity of the independence of the new state in international law. Western states denied that the criteria of statehood had been fulfilled. However, ninety-three states voted in favour of Assembly resolution 3061 (XXVIII) which mentioned 'the recent accession to independence of the people of Guinea-Bissau thereby creating the sovereign state of the Republic of Guinea-Bissau'. Many states argued in favour of this approach on the basis that a large proportion of the territory was being effectively controlled by the PAIGC, though it controlled neither a majority of the population nor the major towns.⁴⁶

In addition to modifying the traditional principle with regard to the effectiveness of government in certain circumstances, the principle of self-determination may also be relevant as an additional criterion of statehood. In the case of Rhodesia, UN resolutions denied the legal validity of the unilateral declaration of independence on 11 November 1965 and called upon member states not to recognise it.⁴⁷ No state did recognise Rhodesia and a civil war ultimately resulted in its transformation into the recognised state of Zimbabwe. Rhodesia might have been regarded as a state by virtue of its satisfaction of the factual requirements of statehood, but this is a dubious proposition. The evidence of complete non-recognition, the strenuous denunciations of its purported independence by the international community and the developing civil war militate strongly against this. It could be argued on the other hand that, in the absence of recognition, no entity could become a state, but this constitutive theory of recognition is not acceptable.⁴⁸ The best approach is to accept the development of self-determination as an additional criterion of statehood, denial of which would obviate statehood. This can only be acknowledged in relation to self-determination situations and would not operate in cases, for example, of secessions from existing states.⁴⁹ In other words, in the case of an entity seeking to become a state and accepted by the international community as being entitled to exercise the right of self-determination,

⁴⁶ See GAOR, 28th Session, General Committee, 213rd meeting, pp. 25–6, 28, 30 and 31; GAOR, 28th session, plenary, 2156th meeting, pp. 8, 12 and 16, and 2157th meeting, pp. 22–5 and 65–7. See also *Yearbook of the UN*, 1973, pp. 143–7, and CDDH/SR.4, pp. 33–7. See also the Western Sahara situation, below, p. 213, and the recognition of Angola in 1975 despite the continuing civil war between the three liberation movements nominally allied in a government of national unity: see Shaw, *Title*, pp. 155–6.

⁴⁷ E.g. General Assembly resolutions 2024 (XX) and 2151 (XXI) and Security Council resolutions 216 (1965) and 217 (1966). See R. Higgins, *The World Today*, 1967, p. 94, and Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 129 ff. See also Shaw, *Title*.

⁴⁸ Below, chapter 9, p. 445. ⁴⁹ See further below, pp. 237 and 257.

it may well be necessary to demonstrate that the internal requirements of the principle have not been offended. One cannot define this condition too rigorously in view of state practice to date, but it would appear to be a sound proposition that systematic and institutionalised discrimination might invalidate a claim to statehood.

In particular, one may point to the practice of the international community concerning the successor states to the former Yugoslavia. The European Community adopted Guidelines on Recognition of New States in Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union on 16 December 1991,⁵⁰ which constituted a common position on the process of recognition of such new states and referred specifically to the principle of self-determination. The Guidelines underlined the need to respect the rule of law, democracy and human rights and mentioned specifically the requirement for guarantees for the rights of minorities. Although these Guidelines deal with the issue of recognition and not as such the criteria for statehood, the two are interlinked and conditions required for recognition may in the circumstances, especially where expressed in general and not specific terms, often in practice be interpreted as additions to the criteria for statehood.

Recognition

Recognition is a method of accepting certain factual situations and endowing them with legal significance, but this relationship is a complicated one. In the context of the creation of statehood, recognition may be viewed as constitutive or declaratory, as will be noted in more detail in chapter 9. The former theory maintains that it is only through recognition that a state comes into being under international law, whereas the latter approach maintains that once the factual criteria of statehood have been satisfied, a new state exists as an international person, recognition becoming merely a political and not a legal act in this context. Various modifications have been made to these theories, but the role of recognition, at the least in providing strong evidential demonstration of satisfaction of the relevant criteria, must be acknowledged. In many situations, expressed requirements for recognition may be seen as impacting upon the question of statehood as the comments in the previous section on the EC Guidelines indicate. There is also an integral relationship between recognition and

⁵⁰ For the text see 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 1486–7 and 92 ILR, p. 173.

the criteria for statehood in the sense that the more overwhelming the scale of international recognition is in any given situation, the less may be demanded in terms of the objective demonstration of adherence to the criteria. Conversely, the more sparse international recognition is, the more attention will be focused upon proof of actual adherence to the criteria concerned.

*Extinction of statehood*⁵¹

Extinction of statehood may take place as a consequence of merger, absorption or, historically, annexation. It may also occur as a result of the dismemberment of an existing state.⁵² In general, caution needs to be exercised before the dissolution of a state is internationally accepted.⁵³ While the disappearance, like the existence, of a state is a matter of fact,⁵⁴ it is a matter of fact that is legally conditioned in that it is international law that will apportion particular legal consequences to particular factual situations and the appreciation of these facts will take place within a certain legal framework.

While it is not unusual for governments to disappear, it is rather rarer for states to become extinct. This will not happen in international law as a result of the illegal use of force, as the Kuwait crisis of August 1990 and the consequent United Nations response clearly demonstrates,⁵⁵ nor as a consequence of internal upheavals within a state,⁵⁶ but it may occur by consent. Three recent examples may be noted. On 22 May 1990, North and South Yemen united, or merged, to form one state, the Republic of Yemen,⁵⁷ while on 3 October 1990, the two German states reunified as a result of the constitutional accession of the *Länder* of the German

⁵¹ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 700 ff., and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 206. See also H. Ruiz-Fabri, 'Genèse et Disparition de l'État à l'Époque Contemporaine', AFDI, 1992, p. 153.

⁵² *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 206–7. Extinction of statehood may also take place as a consequence of the geographical disappearance of the territory of the state: see e.g. with regard to the precarious situation of Tuvalu, *Guardian*, 29 October 2001, p. 17.

⁵³ See e.g. Yugoslav Arbitration Commission, Opinion No. 8, 92 ILR, pp. 199, 201.

⁵⁴ *Ibid.* ⁵⁵ See further below, chapter 22, p. 941.

⁵⁶ Such as Somalia since the early 1990s: see e.g. Security Council resolutions 751 (1992); 767 (1992); 794 (1992); 814 (1993); 837 (1993); 865 (1993); 885 (1993) and 886 (1993). See also Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 412 ff.

⁵⁷ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37470 (1990). See also 30 ILM, 1991, p. 820, and R. Goy, 'La Réunification du Yémen', AFDI, 1990, p. 249.

Democratic Republic to the Federal Republic of Germany.⁵⁸ The dissolution of Czechoslovakia⁵⁹ on 1 January 1993 and the establishment of the two new states of the Czech Republic and Slovakia constitutes a further example of the dismemberment, or disappearance, of a state.⁶⁰

During 1991, the process of disintegration of the Soviet Union gathered force as the Baltic states reasserted their independence⁶¹ and the other Republics of the USSR stated their intention to become sovereign. In December of that year, the Commonwealth of Independent States was proclaimed, and it was stated in the Alma Ata Declaration⁶² that, with the establishment of the CIS, 'the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics ceases to exist'. The states of the CIS agreed to support 'Russia's continuance of the membership of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in the United Nations, including permanent membership of the Security Council, and other international organisations'.⁶³ It has been commonly accepted that Russia constitutes a continuation of the USSR, with consequential adjustments to take account of the independence of the other former Republics of the Soviet Union.⁶⁴ It is therefore a case of dismemberment basically consisting of the transformation of an existing state. The disappearance of the USSR was accompanied by the claim, internationally accepted, of the Russian Federation to be the continuation of that state. While the element of continuity is crucial in the framework of the rules of state succession,⁶⁵ it does constitute a complication in the context of extinction of states.

By way of contrast, not all the relevant parties accepted that the process of dissolution of the former Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia during 1991–2 resulted in the dissolution of that state.⁶⁶ The Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, comprising the former Republics of Serbia and Montenegro, saw itself as the continuation of the former state within reduced boundaries, while the other former Republics disputed this and maintained rather that the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and

⁵⁸ See below, p. 227. See also C. Schrike, 'L'Unification Allemande', AFDI, 1990, p. 47, and W. Czaplinski, 'Quelques Aspects sur la Réunification de l'Allemagne', AFDI, 1990, p. 89.

⁵⁹ Termed at that stage the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic.

⁶⁰ See e.g. J. Malenovsky, 'Problèmes Juridiques Liés à la Partition de la Tchécoslovaquie', AFDI, 1993, p. 305.

⁶¹ See L. Kherad, 'La Reconnaissance Internationale des États Baltes', RGDIP, 1992, p. 843.

⁶² See 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 148–9. ⁶³ *Ibid.*, p. 151.

⁶⁴ See further below, p. 960. ⁶⁵ See below, chapter 17.

⁶⁶ See also A. Pellet, 'La Commission d'Arbitrage de la Conférence Européenne pour la Paix en Yougoslavie', AFDI, 1991, p. 329; AFDI, 1992, p. 220, and AFDI, 1993, p. 286.

Montenegro) was a successor to the former Yugoslavia precisely on the same basis as the other former Republics such as Croatia, Slovenia and Bosnia and Herzegovina. The matter was discussed by the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission. In Opinion No. 1 of 29 November 1991, it was noted that at that stage the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia was 'in the process of dissolution'.⁶⁷ However, in Opinion No. 8, adopted on 4 July 1992, the Arbitration Commission stated that the process of dissolution had been completed and that the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (SFRY) no longer existed. This conclusion was reached on the basis of the fact that Slovenia, Croatia and Bosnia and Herzegovina had been recognised as new states, the republics of Serbia and Montenegro had adopted a new constitution for the 'Federal Republic of Yugoslavia' and UN resolutions had been adopted referring to 'the former SFRY'.⁶⁸ The Commission also emphasised that the existence of federal states was seriously compromised when a majority of the constituent entities, embracing a majority of the territory and population of the federal state, constitute themselves as sovereign states with the result that federal authority could no longer be effectively exercised.⁶⁹ The UN Security Council in resolution 777 (1992) stated that 'the state formerly known as the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia has ceased to exist'. This was reiterated in resolution 1022 (1995) in which the Security Council, in welcoming the Dayton Peace Agreement (the General Framework Agreement for Peace in Bosnia and Herzegovina) between the states of the former Yugoslavia and suspending the application of sanctions, stated that the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia 'has ceased to exist'. On 1 November 2000, Yugoslavia was admitted to the UN as a new member,⁷⁰ following its request sent to the Security Council on 27 October 2000.⁷¹

⁶⁷ 92 ILR, pp. 164–5. One should note the importance of the federal structure of the state in determining the factual situation regarding dissolution. The Arbitration Commission pointed out that in such cases 'the existence of the state implies that the federal organs represent the components of the Federation and wield effective power', *ibid.*, p. 165.

⁶⁸ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 752 and 757 (1992). See also the resolution adopted by the European Community at the Lisbon Council on 27 June 1992, quoted in part in Opinion No. 9, 92 ILR, pp. 204–5.

⁶⁹ 92 ILR, p. 201. In Opinions Nos. 9 and 10, the Arbitration Commission noted that the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) could not consider itself as the continuation of the SFRY, but was instead one of the successors to that state on the same basis as the recognised new states, *ibid.*, pp. 205 and 208.

⁷⁰ General Assembly resolution 55/12.

⁷¹ See the *Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 July 1996 (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia)*, ICJ Reports, 2003, p. 7.

The fundamental rights of states

The fundamental rights of states exist by virtue of the international legal order, which is able, as in the case of other legal orders, to define the characteristics of its subjects.⁷²

Independence⁷³

Perhaps the outstanding characteristic of a state is its independence, or sovereignty. This was defined in the Draft Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States prepared in 1949 by the International Law Commission as the capacity of a state to provide for its own well-being and development free from the domination of other states, providing it does not impair or violate their legitimate rights.⁷⁴ By independence, one is referring to a legal concept and it is no deviation from independence to be subject to the rules of international law. Any political or economic dependence that may in reality exist does not affect the legal independence of the state, unless that state is formally compelled to submit to the demands of a superior state, in which case dependent status is concerned.

A discussion on the meaning and nature of independence took place in the *Austro-German Customs Union* case before the Permanent Court of International Justice in 1931.⁷⁵ It concerned a proposal to create a free trade customs union between the two German-speaking states and whether this was incompatible with the 1919 Peace Treaties (coupled with a subsequent protocol of 1922) pledging Austria to take no action to compromise its independence. In the event, and in the circumstances of the case, the Court held that the proposed union would adversely affect Austria's sovereignty. Judge Anzilotti noted that restrictions upon a state's liberty, whether arising out of customary law or treaty obligations, do not as such affect its independence. As long as such restrictions do not place

⁷² See e.g. A. Kiss, *Répertoire de la Pratique Française en Matière de Droit International Public*, Paris, 1966, vol. II, pp. 21–50, and *Survey of International Law*, prepared by the UN Secretary-General, A/CN.4/245.

⁷³ *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 382. See also N. Schrijver, 'The Changing Nature of State Sovereignty', 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 65; C. Rousseau, 'L'Indépendance de l'État dans l'Ordre International', 73 HR, 1948 II, p. 171; H. G. Gelber, *Sovereignty Through Independence*, The Hague, 1997; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 287 ff., and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 422.

⁷⁴ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1949, p. 286. Judge Huber noted in the *Island of Palmas* case that 'independence in regard to a portion of the globe is the right to exercise therein, to the exclusion of any other state, the functions of a state', 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 838 (1928); 4 AD, p. 3.

⁷⁵ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 41, 1931; 6 AD, p. 26.

the state under the legal authority of another state, the former maintains its status as an independent country.⁷⁶

The Permanent Court emphasised in the *Lotus* case⁷⁷ that '[r]estrictions upon the independence of states cannot therefore be presumed'. A similar point in different circumstances was made by the International Court of Justice in the *Nicaragua* case,⁷⁸ where it was stated that 'in international law there are no rules, other than such rules as may be accepted by the state concerned, by treaty or otherwise, whereby the level of armaments of a sovereign state can be limited, and this principle is valid for all states without exception'. The Court also underlined in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*⁷⁹ that '[s]tate practice shows that the illegality of the use of certain weapons as such does not result from an absence of authorisation but, on the contrary, is formulated in terms of prohibition'. The starting point for the consideration of the rights and obligations of states within the international legal system remains that international law permits freedom of action for states, unless there is a rule constraining this. However, such freedom exists within and not outside the international legal system and it is therefore international law which dictates the scope and content of the independence of states and not the states themselves individually and unilaterally.

The notion of independence in international law implies a number of rights and duties: for example, the right of a state to exercise jurisdiction over its territory and permanent population, or the right to engage upon an act of self-defence in certain situations. It implies also the duty not to intervene in the internal affairs of other sovereign states. Precisely what constitutes the internal affairs of a state is open to dispute and is in any event a constantly changing standard. It was maintained by the Western powers for many years that any discussion or action by the United Nations⁸⁰ with regard to their colonial possessions was contrary to international law.

⁷⁶ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 41, 1931, p. 77 (dissenting); 6 AD, p. 30 See also the *North Atlantic Coast Fisheries* case (1910), Scott, *Hague Court Reports*, p. 141 at p. 170, and the *Wimbledon* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 1, 1923, p. 25; 2 AD, p. 99.

⁷⁷ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, pp. 153, 155.

⁷⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 135; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 469. See also the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 238–9; 110 ILR, p. 163.

⁷⁹ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 247; 110 ILR, p. 163.

⁸⁰ Article 2(7) of the UN Charter provides that 'nothing in the present Charter shall authorise the United Nations to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state'. On the relationship between this article and the general international law provision, see Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 290 ff.

However, this argument by the European colonial powers did not succeed and the United Nations examined many colonial situations.⁸¹ In addition, issues related to human rights and racial oppression do not now fall within the closed category of domestic jurisdiction. It was stated on behalf of the European Community, for example, that the 'protection of human rights and fundamental freedoms can in no way be considered an interference in a state's internal affairs'. Reference was also made to 'the moral right to intervene whenever human rights are violated'.⁸²

This duty not to intervene in matters within the domestic jurisdiction of any state was included in the Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations and Co-operation among States adopted in October 1970 by the United Nations General Assembly. It was emphasised that

[n]o state or group of states has the right to intervene, directly or indirectly, for any reason whatever, in the internal or external affairs of any other state. Consequently, armed intervention and all other forms of interference or attempted threats against the personality of the state or against its political, economic and cultural elements, are in violation of international law.

The prohibition also covers any assistance or aid to subversive elements aiming at the violent overthrow of the government of a state. In particular, the use of force to deprive peoples of their national identity amounts to a violation of this principle of non-intervention.⁸³

The principles surrounding sovereignty, such as non-intervention, are essential in the maintenance of a reasonably stable system of competing states. Setting limits on the powers of states vis-à-vis other states contributes to some extent to a degree of stability within the legal order. As the International Court of Justice pointed out in the *Corfu Channel* case

⁸¹ See Higgins, *Development*, pp. 58–130; M. Rajan, *United Nations and Domestic Jurisdiction*, 2nd edn, London, 1961, and H. Kelsen, *Principles of International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1966.

⁸² E/CN.4/1991/SR. 43, p. 8, quoted in UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 556. See also statement of the European Community in 1992 to the same effect, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, pp. 635–6. By way of contrast, the Iranian *fatwa* condemning the British writer Salman Rushdie to death was criticised by the UK government as calling into question Iran's commitment to honour its obligations not to interfere in the internal affairs of the UK, *ibid.*, p. 635. See also M. Reisman, 'Sovereignty and Human Rights in Contemporary International Law', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 866.

⁸³ See also the use of force, below, chapter 20.

in 1949, 'between independent states, respect for territorial sovereignty is an essential foundation of international relations'.⁸⁴

By a similar token a state cannot purport to enforce its laws in the territory of another state without the consent of the state concerned. However, international law would seem to permit in some circumstances the state to continue to exercise its jurisdiction, notwithstanding the illegality of the apprehension.⁸⁵ It also follows that the presence of foreign troops on the territory of a sovereign state requires the consent of that state.⁸⁶

Equality⁸⁷

One other crucial principle is the legal equality of states, that is equality of legal rights and duties. States, irrespective of size or power, have the same juridical capacities and functions, and are likewise entitled to one vote in the United Nations General Assembly. The doctrine of the legal equality of states is an umbrella category for it includes within its scope the recognised rights and obligations which fall upon all states.

This was recognised in the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law. This provides that:

All states enjoy sovereign equality. They have equal rights and duties and are equal members of the international community, notwithstanding differences of an economic, social, political or other nature.

In particular, sovereign equality includes the following elements:

- (a) States are juridically equal;
- (b) Each state enjoys the rights inherent in full sovereignty;
- (c) Each state has the duty to respect the personality of other states;
- (d) The territorial integrity and political independence of the state are inviolable;
- (e) Each state has the right freely to choose and develop its political, social, economic and cultural systems;
- (f) Each state has the duty to comply fully and in good faith with its international obligations and to live in peace with other states.⁸⁸

⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 35; 16 AD, pp. 155, 167. See below, p. 575.

⁸⁵ See e.g. the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, p. 5. But see further below, p. 680.

⁸⁶ See the statement made on behalf of the European Community on 25 November 1992 with regard to the presence of Russian troops in the Baltic states, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 724.

⁸⁷ *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 339, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 428.

⁸⁸ See also Final Act of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe, Helsinki, 1975, Cmnd 6198, pp. 2–3. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 322–4; P. Kooijmans,

In many respects this doctrine owes its origins to Natural Law thinking. Just as equality was regarded as the essence of man and thus contributed philosophically to the foundation of the state, so naturalist scholars treated equality as the natural condition of states. With the rise in positivism, the emphasis altered and, rather than postulating a general rule applicable to all and from which a series of rights and duties may be deduced, international lawyers concentrated upon the sovereignty of each and every state, and the necessity that international law be founded upon the consent of states.

The notion of equality before the law is accepted by states in the sense of equality of legal personality and capacity. However, it would not be strictly accurate to talk in terms of the equality of states in creating law. The major states will always have an influence commensurate with their status, if only because their concerns are much wider, their interests much deeper and their power more effective.⁸⁹

Within the General Assembly of the United Nations, the doctrine of equality is maintained by the rule of one state, one vote.⁹⁰ However, one should not overlook the existence of the veto possessed by the USA, Russia, China, France and the United Kingdom in the Security Council.⁹¹

Peaceful co-existence

This concept has been formulated in different ways and with different views as to its legal nature by the USSR, China and the Third World. It was elaborated in 1954 as the Five Principles of Peaceful Co-existence by India and China, which concerned mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty, mutual non-aggression, non-interference in each other's affairs and the principle of equality.⁹²

The idea was expanded in a number of international documents such as the final communiqué of the Bandung Conference in 1955 and in various resolutions of the United Nations.⁹³ Its recognised constituents also appear

The Doctrine of the Legal Equality of States, Leiden, 1964, and Marshall CJ, *The Antelope*, 10 Wheat., 1825, pp. 66, 122.

⁸⁹ See Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 1062–3.

⁹⁰ See e.g. L. Sohn, *Cases on UN Law*, 2nd edn, Brooklyn, 1967, pp. 232–90, and G. Clark and L. Sohn, *World Peace Through World Law*, 3rd edn, New York, 1966, pp. 399–402.

⁹¹ The doctrine of equality of states is also influential in areas of international law such as jurisdictional immunities, below, chapter 13, and act of state, above, chapter 4, p. 179.

⁹² See e.g. Tunkin, *Theory*, pp. 69–75. See also B. Ramondo, *Peaceful Co-existence*, Baltimore, 1967, and R. Higgins, *Conflict of Interests*, London, 1965, pp. 99–170.

⁹³ See e.g. General Assembly resolutions 1236 (XII) and 1301 (XIII). See also *Yearbook of the UN*, 1957, pp. 105–9; *ibid.*, 1961, p. 524 and *ibid.*, 1962, p. 488.

in the list of Principles of the Charter of the Organisation of African Unity. Among the points enumerated are the concepts of sovereign equality, non-interference in the internal affairs of states, respect for the sovereignty and territorial integrity of states, as well as a condemnation of subversive activities carried out from one state and aimed against another. Other concepts that have been included in this category comprise such principles as non-aggression and the execution of international obligations in good faith. The Soviet Union had also expressed the view that peaceful co-existence constituted the guiding principle in contemporary international law.⁹⁴

*Protectorates and protected states*⁹⁵

A distinction is sometimes made between a protectorate and a protected state. In the former case, in general, the entity concerned enters into an arrangement with a state under which, while separate legal personality may be involved, separate statehood is not. In the case of a protected state, the entity concerned retains its status as a separate state but enters into a valid treaty relationship with another state affording the latter certain extensive functions possibly internally and externally. However, precisely which type of arrangement is made and the nature of the status, rights and duties in question will depend upon the circumstances and, in particular, the terms of the relevant agreement and third-party attitudes.⁹⁶ In the case of Morocco, the Treaty of Fez of 1912 with France gave the latter the power to exercise certain sovereign powers on behalf of the former, including all of its international relations. Nevertheless, the ICJ emphasised that Morocco had in the circumstances of the case remained a sovereign state.⁹⁷

In the case of sub-Saharan Africa in the colonial period, treaties of protection were entered into with tribal entities that were not states. Such institutions were termed 'colonial protectorates' and constituted internal

⁹⁴ Tunkin, *Theory*, pp. 35–48.

⁹⁵ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 266; Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 286 ff.; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 341–4, and Verzijl, *International Law*, pp. 412–27.

⁹⁶ See the *Tunis and Morocco Nationality Decrees* case, (1923) PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, p. 27; 2 AD, p. 349. See also the question of the Ionian Islands, M. F. Lindley, *The Acquisition and Government of Backward Territory in International Law*, London, 1926, pp. 181–2.

⁹⁷ *Rights of Nationals of the United States of America in Morocco*, ICJ Reports, 1952, pp. 176, 188; 19 ILR, pp. 255, 263. See also to the same effect, *Benaïm c. Procureur de la République de Bordeaux*, AFDI, 1993, p. 971.

colonial arrangements. They did not constitute international treaties with internationally recognised states.⁹⁸

The extent of powers delegated to the protecting state in such circumstances may vary, as may the manner of the termination of the arrangement. In these cases, formal sovereignty remains unaffected and the entity in question retains its status as a state, and may act as such in the various international fora, regard being had of course to the terms of the arrangement. The obligation may be merely to take note of the advice of the protecting state, or it may extend to a form of diplomatic delegation subject to instruction, as in the case of Liechtenstein. Liechtenstein was refused admission to the League of Nations since it was held unable to discharge all the international obligations imposed by the Covenant in the light of its delegation of sovereign powers, such as diplomatic representation, administration of post, telegraph and telephone services and final decisions in certain judicial cases.⁹⁹ Liechtenstein, however, has been a party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice and was a party to the *Nottebohm*¹⁰⁰ case before the Court, a facility only open to states. Liechtenstein joined the United Nations in 1990.

*Federal states*¹⁰¹

There are various forms of federation or confederation, according to the relative distribution of power between the central and local organs. In some states, the residue of power lies with the central government, in others with the local or provincial bodies. A confederation implies a more flexible arrangement, leaving a considerable degree of authority and competence with the component units to the detriment of the central organ.¹⁰²

The Yugoslav Arbitration Commission noted in Opinion No. 1 that in the case of a federal state embracing communities possessing a degree of autonomy where such communities participate in the exercise of political

⁹⁸ See *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 404–7. See also the *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 826, 858–9, and Shaw, *Title*, chapter 1.

⁹⁹ See Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 479 ff.; Report of the 5th Committee of the League, 6 December 1920, G. Hackworth, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1940, vol. I, pp. 48–9, and Higgins, *Development*, p. 34, note 30.

¹⁰⁰ ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 4; 22 ILR, p. 349.

¹⁰¹ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 245. See also I. Bernier, *International Legal Aspects of Federalism*, London, 1973, and 17 *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1983, p. 1.

¹⁰² See also below, p. 219.

power within the framework of institutions common to the federation, the 'existence of the state implies that the federal organs represent the components of the federation and wield effective power'.¹⁰³ In addition, the existence of such a federal state would be seriously compromised 'when a majority of these entities, embracing the greater part of the territory and population, constitute themselves as sovereign states with the result that federal authority may no longer be effectively exercised'.¹⁰⁴

The division of powers inherent in such arrangements often raises important questions for international law, particularly in the areas of personality, responsibility and immunity. Whether the federation dissolves into two or more states also brings into focus the doctrine of self-determination in the form of secession. Such dissolution may be the result of an amicable and constitutional agreement or may occur pursuant to a forceful exercise of secession. In the latter case, international legal rules may be pleaded in aid, but the position would seem to be that (apart from recognised colonial situations) there is no right of self-determination applicable to independent states that would justify the resort to secession. There is, of course, no international legal duty to refrain from secession attempts: the situation remains subject to the domestic law. However, should such a secession prove successful in fact, then the concepts of recognition and the appropriate criteria of statehood would prove relevant and determinative as to the new situation.¹⁰⁵

The federal state will itself, of course, have personality, but the question of the personality and capability of the component units of the federation on the international plane can really only be determined in the light of the constitution of the state concerned and state practice. For instance, the then Soviet Republics of Byelorussia and the Ukraine were admitted as members of the United Nations in 1945 and to that extent possessed international personality.¹⁰⁶ Component states of a federation that have been provided with a certain restricted international competence may thus be accepted as having a degree of international personality. The issue has arisen especially with regard to treaties. Lauterpacht, in his Report on the Law of Treaties, for example, noted that treaties concluded by component units of federal states 'are treaties in the meaning of international law',¹⁰⁷ although Fitzmaurice adopted a different approach in his Report on the

¹⁰³ 92 ILR, p. 165.

¹⁰⁴ Opinion No. 8, *ibid.*, p. 201.

¹⁰⁵ See below, p. 256.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. Bernier, *Federalism*, pp. 64–6. These entities were also members of a number of international organisations and signed treaties.

¹⁰⁷ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1953, vol. II, p. 139.

Law of Treaties by stating that such units act as agents for the federation which alone possesses international personality and which is the entity bound by the treaty and responsible for its implementation.¹⁰⁸ Article 5(2) of the International Law Commission's Draft Articles on the Law of Treaties provided that

[s]tates members of a federal union may possess a capacity to conclude treaties if such capacity is admitted by the federal constitution and within the limits there laid down

but this was ultimately rejected at the Vienna Conference on the Law of Treaties,¹⁰⁹ partly on the grounds that the rule was beyond the scope of the Convention itself. The major reasons for the rejection, however, were that the provision would enable third states to intervene in the internal affairs of federal states by seeking to interpret the constitutions of the latter and that, from another perspective, it would unduly enhance the power of domestic law to determine questions of international personality to the detriment of international law. This perhaps would indeed have swung the balance too far away from the international sphere of operation.

Different federations have evolved different systems with regard to the allocation of treaty-making powers. In some cases, component units may enter into such arrangements subject to varying conditions. The Constitution of Switzerland, for example, enables the cantons to conclude treaties with foreign states on issues concerning public economy, frontier relations and the police, subject to the provision that the Federal Council acts as the intermediary.¹¹⁰ In the case of the United States, responsibility for the conduct of foreign relations rests exclusively with the Federal Government,¹¹¹ although American states have entered into certain compacts with foreign states or component units (such as Manitoba and Quebec, provinces of Canada) dealing with the construction and maintenance of highways and international bridges, following upon consultations with the foreign state conducted by the federal authorities. In any event, it is

¹⁰⁸ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1958, vol. II, p. 24. Cf. Waldock, *ibid.*, 1962, vol. II, p. 36.

¹⁰⁹ A/CONF.39/SR.8, 28 April 1969.

¹¹⁰ See e.g. A. Looper, 'The Treaty Power in Switzerland', 7 *American Journal of Comparative Law*, 1958, p. 178.

¹¹¹ See e.g. Article I, Section 10 of the US Constitution; *US v. Curtiss-Wright Export Corp.* 299 US 304 (1936); 8 AD, p. 48, and *Zachevning v. Miller* 389 US 429 (1968). See also generally, Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 58–9; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. 14, pp. 13–17, and Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, pp. 138–213 and 264–8.

clear that the internal constitutional structure is crucial in endowing the unit concerned with capacity. What, however, turns this into international capacity is recognition.

An issue recently the subject of concern and discussion has been the question of the domestic implementation of treaty obligations in the case of federations, especially in the light of the fact that component units may possess legislative power relating to the subject-matter of the treaty concerned. Although this issue lies primarily within the field of domestic constitutional law, there are important implications for international law. In the US, for example, the approach adopted has been to insert 'federal' reservations to treaties in cases where the states of the Union have exercised jurisdiction over the subject-matter in question, providing that the Federal Government would take appropriate steps to enable the competent authorities of the component units to take appropriate measures to fulfil the obligations concerned.¹¹² In general, however, there have been few restrictions on entry into international agreements.¹¹³

The question as to divided competence in federations and international treaties has arisen in the past, particularly with regard to conventions of the International Labour Organisation, which typically encompass areas subject to the law-making competence of federal component units. In Canada, for example, early attempts by the central government to ratify ILO conventions were defeated by the decisions of the courts on constitutional grounds, supporting the views of the provinces,¹¹⁴ while the US has a poor record of ratification of ILO conventions on similar grounds of local competence and federal treaty-making.¹¹⁵ The issue that arises therefore is either the position of a state that refuses to ratify or sign a treaty on grounds of component unit competence in the area in question or alternatively the problem of implementation and thus responsibility where ratification does take place. In so far as the latter is concerned, the issue has been raised in the context of article 36 of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963, to which the US is a party, and which requires, among other things, that states parties inform a foreigner under arrest of his or her right to communicate with the relevant consulate. The International Court of Justice has twice held the US in violation of this

¹¹² See e.g. the proposed reservations to four human rights treaties in 1978, *US Ratification of the Human Rights Treaties* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1981, pp. 83–103.

¹¹³ See e.g. *Missouri v. Holland* 252 US 416 (1920); 1 AD, p. 4.

¹¹⁴ See especially, *Attorney-General for Canada v. Attorney-General for Ontario* [1937] AC 326; 8 AD, p. 41.

¹¹⁵ Bernier, *Federalism*, pp. 162–3, and A. Looper, 'Federal State Clauses in Multilateral Instruments', 32 BYIL, 1955–6, p. 162.

requirement, noting that the domestic doctrine known as the procedural default rule, preventing a claimant from raising an issue on appeal or on review if it had not been raised at trial, could not excuse or justify that violation.¹¹⁶ The US Supreme Court has held that while the International Court's decisions were entitled to 'respectful consideration', they were not binding.¹¹⁷ This was so even though the US President in a memorandum dated 28 February 2005 had declared that the US would fulfil its obligations under the *Avena* decision by having states' courts give effect to it.¹¹⁸ The Texas Court of Criminal Appeals, however, held that neither the *Avena* decision of the ICJ nor the President's memorandum constituted binding federal law pre-empting Texas law, so that Medellín (the applicant) would not be provided with the review called for by the International Court and by the President.¹¹⁹

In Australia, the issue has turned on the interpretation of the constitutional grant of federal power to make laws 'with respect to . . . external affairs'.¹²⁰ Two recent cases have analysed this, in the light particularly of the established principle that the Federal Government could under this provision legislate on matters, not otherwise explicitly assigned to it, which possessed an intrinsic international aspect.¹²¹

In *Koowarta v. Bjelke-Petersen*¹²² in 1982, the Australian High Court, in dealing with an action against the Premier of Queensland for breach of the Racial Discrimination Act 1975 (which incorporated parts of the International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial

¹¹⁶ The *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 104 and the *Avena* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 12; 134 ILR, p. 120.

¹¹⁷ *Medellín v. Dretke* 118 S.Ct. 1352 (2005) and *Sanchez-Llamas v. Oregon* 126 S.Ct. 2669 (2006); 134 ILR, p. 719.

¹¹⁸ 44 ILM, 2005, p. 964.

¹¹⁹ *Medellín v. Dretke*, Application No. AP-75,207 (Tex. Crim. App. 15 November 2006). Note that the US Supreme Court held that a writ of certiorari to consider the effect of the International Court's decision had been 'improvidently granted' prior to the Texas appeal: see 44 ILM, 2005, p. 965. However, the Supreme Court did grant certiorari on 30 April 2007 (after the Texas decision) to consider two questions: '1. Did the President of the United States act within his constitutional and statutory foreign affairs authority when he determined that the states must comply with the United States' treaty obligation to give effect to the *Avena* judgment in the cases of the 51 Mexican nationals named in the judgment? [and] 2. Are state courts bound by the Constitution to honor the undisputed international obligation of the United States, under treaties duly ratified by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate, to give effect to the *Avena* judgment in the cases that the judgment addressed?' See now *Medellín v. Texas*, 128 S.Ct. 1346 and above, p. 164, note 178.

¹²⁰ See e.g. L. R. Zines, *The High Court and the Constitution*, Sydney, 1981, and A. Byrnes and H. Charlesworth, 'Federalism and the International Legal Order: Recent Developments in Australia', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 622.

¹²¹ *R v. Burgess, ex parte Henry* 55 CLR 608 (1936); 8 AD, p. 54. ¹²² 68 ILR, p. 181.

Discrimination adopted in 1965), held that the relevant legislation was valid with respect to the 'external affairs' provision under section 51(29) of the Constitution. In other words, the 'external affairs' power extended to permit the implementation of an international agreement, despite the fact that the subject-matter concerned was otherwise outside federal power. It was felt that if Australia accepted a treaty obligation with respect to an aspect of its own internal legal order, the subject of the obligation thus became an 'external affair' and legislation dealing with this fell within section 51(29), and was thereby valid constitutionally.¹²³ It was not necessary that a treaty obligation be assumed: the fact that the norm of non-discrimination was established in customary international law was itself sufficient in the view of Stephen J to treat the issue of racial discrimination as part of external affairs.¹²⁴

In *Commonwealth of Australia v. Tasmania*,¹²⁵ the issue concerned the construction of a dam in an area placed on the World Heritage List established under the 1972 UNESCO Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, to which Australia was a party. The Federal Government in 1983 wished to stop the scheme by reference *inter alia* to the 'external affairs' power as interpreted in *Koowarta*, since it possessed no specific legislative power over the environment. The majority of the Court held that the 'external affairs' power extended to the implementation of treaty obligations. It was not necessary that the subject-matter of the treaty be inherently international.

The effect of these cases seen, of course, in the context of the Australian Constitution, is to reduce the problems faced by federal states of implementing international obligations in the face of local jurisdiction.

The difficulties faced by federal states have also become evident with regard to issues of state responsibility.¹²⁶ As a matter of international law, states are responsible for their actions, including those of subordinate organs irrespective of domestic constitutional arrangements.¹²⁷ The

¹²³ *Ibid.*, pp. 223–4 (Stephen J); p. 235 (Mason J) and p. 255 (Brennan J).

¹²⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 223–4.

¹²⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 266. The case similarly came before the High Court.

¹²⁶ See e.g. R. Higgins, 'The Concept of "the State": Variable Geometry and Dualist Perceptions' in *The International Legal System in Quest of Equity and Universality* (eds. L. Boisson de Chazournes and V. Gowlland-Debas), The Hague, 2001, p. 547.

¹²⁷ Article 4(1) of the International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility, 2001, provides that: 'The conduct of any State organ shall be considered an act of that State under international law, whether the organ exercises legislative, executive, judicial or any other functions, whatever position it holds in the organisation of the State, and whatever its character as an organ of the central government or of a territorial unit of the State.'

International Court in the *Immunity from Legal Process of a Special Rapporteur* case stated that it was a well-established rule of customary international law that 'the conduct of any organ of a State must be regarded as an act of that State'¹²⁸ and this applies to component units of a federal state. As the Court noted in its Order of 3 March 1999 on provisional measures in the *LaGrand* case, 'the international responsibility of a State is engaged by the action of the competent organs and authorities acting in that State, whatever they may be'. In particular, the US was under an obligation to transmit the Order to the Governor of the State of Arizona, while the Governor was under an obligation to act in conformity with the international undertakings of the US.¹²⁹ Similarly, the Court noted in the *Immunity from Legal Process of a Special Rapporteur* case that the government of Malaysia was under an obligation to communicate the Court's Advisory Opinion to the Malaysian courts in order that Malaysia's international obligations be given effect.¹³⁰

Thus, international responsibility of the state may co-exist with an internal lack of capacity to remedy the particular international wrong. In such circumstances, the central government is under a duty to seek to persuade the component unit to correct the violation of international law,¹³¹ while the latter is, it seems, under an international obligation to act in accordance with the international obligations of the state.

Federal practice in regulating disputes between component units is often of considerable value in international law. This operates particularly in cases of boundary problems, where similar issues arise.¹³² Conversely, international practice may often be relevant in the resolution of conflicts between component units.¹³³

See also J. Crawford, *The International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility*, Cambridge, 2002, pp. 94 ff.

¹²⁸ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 62, 87; 121 ILR, p. 367.

¹²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 9, 16; 118 ILR, p. 37. See also e.g. the *Pellat* case, 5 RIAA, p. 534 (1929).

¹³⁰ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 62, 88; 121 ILR, p. 367.

¹³¹ Such issues arise from time to time with regard to human rights matters before international or regional human rights bodies: see e.g. *Toonen v. Australia*, Human Rights Committee, Communication No. 488/1992, 112 ILR, p. 328, and *Tyrv v. UK*, 2 European Human Rights Reports 1. See also *Matthews v. UK*, 28 European Human Rights Reports 361, and *RMD v. Switzerland*, *ibid.*, 224.

¹³² See e.g. E. Lauterpacht, 'River Boundaries: Legal Aspects of the Shatt-Al-Arab Frontier', 9 ICLQ, 1960, pp. 208, 216, and A. O. Cukwurah, *The Settlement of Boundary Disputes in International Law*, Manchester, 1967.

¹³³ See also below, chapters 13 and 14.

Sui generis territorial entities

*Mandated and trust territories*¹³⁴

After the end of the First World War and the collapse of the Axis and Russian empires, the Allies established a system for dealing with the colonies of the defeated powers that did not involve annexation. These territories would be governed according to the principle that 'the well-being and development of such peoples form a sacred trust of civilisation'. The way in which this principle would be put into effect would be to entrust the tutelage of such people to 'advanced nations who by reason of their resources, their experience or their geographical position' could undertake the responsibility. The arrangement would be exercised by them as mandatories on behalf of the League.¹³⁵

Upon the conclusion of the Second World War and the demise of the League, the mandate system was transmuted into the United Nations trusteeship system under Chapters XII and XIII of the UN Charter.¹³⁶ The strategic trust territory of the Pacific, taken from Japan, the mandatory power, was placed in a special category subject to Security Council rather than Trusteeship Council supervision for security reasons,¹³⁷ while South

¹³⁴ See generally H. Duncan Hall, *Mandates, Dependencies and Trusteeships*, London, 1948; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, pp. 598–911 and vol. XIII, pp. 679 ff.; C. E. Toussaint, *The Trusteeship System of the United Nations*, New York, 1957; Verzijl, *International Law*, vol. II, pp. 545–73; Q. Wright, *Mandates Under the League of Nations*, New York, 1930; J. Dugard, *The South West Africa/Namibia Dispute*, Berkeley, 1973, and S. Slonim, *South West Africa and the United Nations*, Leiden, 1973. See also Oppenheim's *International Law*, pp. 295 and 308, and Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 565 ff.

¹³⁵ See article 22 of the Covenant of the League of Nations. See also the *International Status of South West Africa*, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 128, 132; 17 ILR, p. 47; the *Namibia case*, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 28–9; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 18–19; *Certain Phosphate Lands in Nauru*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 256; 97 ILR, pp. 1, 23 and *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, para. 212.

¹³⁶ See e.g. *Certain Phosphate Lands in Nauru*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 257; 97 ILR, pp. 1, 24. See also the discussion by Judge Shahabuddeen in his Separate Opinion, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 276 ff.; 97 ILR, p. 43. Note that the Court in this case stated that the arrangements whereby Nauru was to be administered under the trusteeship agreement by the governments of the UK, Australia and New Zealand together as 'the administering authority' did not constitute that authority an international legal person separate from the three states so designated: ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 258; 97 ILR, p. 25. See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, para. 212.

¹³⁷ See O. McHenry, *Micronesia: Trust Betrayed*, New York, 1975; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, pp. 769–839; S. A. de Smith, *Micro-States and Micronesia*, New York, 1970; DUSPIL, 1973, pp. 59–67; *ibid.*, 1974, pp. 54–64; *ibid.*, 1975, pp. 94–104; *ibid.*, 1976, pp. 56–61; *ibid.*, 1977, pp. 71–98 and *ibid.*, 1978, pp. 204–31.

Africa refused to place its mandated territory under the system. Quite who held sovereignty in such territories was the subject of extensive debates over many decades.¹³⁸

As far as the trust territory of the Pacific was concerned, the US signed a Covenant with the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands and Compacts of Free Association with the Federated States of Micronesia and with the Republic of the Marshall Islands. Upon their entry into force in autumn 1986, it was determined that the trusteeship had been terminated. This procedure providing for political union with the US was accepted by the Trusteeship Council as a legitimate exercise of self-determination.¹³⁹ However, the proposed Compact of Free Association with the Republic of Palau (the final part of the former trust territory) did not enter into force as a result of disagreement over the transit of nuclear-powered or armed vessels and aircraft through Palauan waters and airspace and, therefore, the US continued to act as administering authority under the trusteeship agreement.¹⁴⁰ These difficulties were eventually resolved.¹⁴¹

South West Africa was administered after the end of the First World War as a mandate by South Africa, which refused after the Second World War to place the territory under the trusteeship system. Following this, the International Court of Justice in 1950 in its Advisory Opinion on the *International Status of South West Africa*¹⁴² stated that, while there was no legal obligation imposed by the United Nations Charter to transfer a mandated territory into a trust territory, South Africa was still bound by the terms of the mandate agreement and the Covenant of the League of Nations, and the obligations that it had assumed at that time. The Court emphasised that South Africa alone did not have the capacity to modify the international status of the territory. This competence rested with South Africa acting with the consent of the United Nations, as successor to the League of Nations. Logically flowing from this decision was the ability of the United Nations to hear petitioners from the territory in consequence of South Africa's refusal to heed United Nations decisions and in pursuance of League of Nations practices.¹⁴³

¹³⁸ See in particular Judge McNair, *International Status of South West Africa*, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 128, 150 and the Court's view, *ibid.*, p. 132; 17 ILR, pp. 47, 49.

¹³⁹ See Security Council resolution 683 (1990).

¹⁴⁰ See 'Contemporary Practice of the United States Relating to International Law', 81 AJIL, 1987, pp. 405–8. See also *Bank of Hawaii v. Balos* 701 F.Supp. 744 (1988).

¹⁴¹ See Security Council resolution 956 (1994).

¹⁴² ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 128, 143–4; 17 ILR, pp. 47, 57–60.

¹⁴³ ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 68; 22 ILR, p. 651 and ICJ Reports, 1956, p. 23; 23 ILR, p. 38.

In 1962 the ICJ heard the case brought by Ethiopia and Liberia, the two African members of the League, that South Africa was in breach of the terms of the mandate and had thus violated international law. The Court initially affirmed that it had jurisdiction to hear the merits of the dispute.¹⁴⁴ However, by the Second Phase of the case, the Court (its composition having slightly altered in the meanwhile) decided that Ethiopia and Liberia did not have any legal interest in the subject-matter of the claim (the existence and supervision of the mandate over South West Africa) and accordingly their contentions were rejected.¹⁴⁵ Having thus declared on the lack of standing of the two African appellants, the Court did not discuss any of the substantive questions which stood before it.

This judgment aroused a great deal of feeling, particularly in the Third World, and occasioned a shift in emphasis in dealing with the problem of the territory in question.¹⁴⁶

The General Assembly resolved in October 1966 that since South Africa had failed to fulfil its obligations, the mandate was therefore terminated. South West Africa (or Namibia as it was to be called) was to come under the direct responsibility of the United Nations.¹⁴⁷ Accordingly, a Council was established to oversee the territory and a High Commissioner appointed.¹⁴⁸ The Security Council in a number of resolutions upheld the action of the Assembly and called upon South Africa to withdraw its administration from the territory. It also requested other states to refrain from dealing with the South African government in so far as Namibia was concerned.¹⁴⁹

The Security Council ultimately turned to the International Court and requested an Advisory Opinion as to the *Legal Consequences for States of the Continued Presence of South Africa in Namibia*.¹⁵⁰ The Court concluded that South Africa's presence in Namibia was indeed illegal in view of the series of events culminating in the United Nations resolutions on the grounds of a material breach of a treaty (the mandate agreement) by South Africa, and further that 'a binding determination made by a competent organ of the United Nations to the effect that a situation is illegal cannot remain without consequence'. South Africa was obligated to withdraw its

¹⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 141 and 143. ¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1966, p. 6; 37 ILR, p. 243.

¹⁴⁶ See e.g. Dugard, *South West Africa/Namibia*, p. 378. ¹⁴⁷ Resolution 2145 (XXI).

¹⁴⁸ See General Assembly resolutions 2145 (XXI) and 2248 (XXII).

¹⁴⁹ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 263 (1969), 269 (1969) and 276 (1970).

¹⁵⁰ ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 3.

administration from the territory, and other states members of the United Nations were obliged to recognise the illegality and the invalidity of its acts with regard to that territory and aid the United Nations in its efforts concerning the problem.¹⁵¹

The opinion was approved by the Security Council in resolution 301 (1971), which also reaffirmed the national unity and territorial integrity of Namibia. In 1978 South Africa announced its acceptance of proposals negotiated by the five Western contact powers (UK, USA, France, Canada and West Germany) for Namibian independence involving a UN supervised election and peace-keeping force.¹⁵² After some difficulties,¹⁵³ Namibia finally obtained its independence on 23 April 1990.¹⁵⁴

Germany 1945

With the defeat of Germany on 5 June 1945, the Allied Powers assumed 'supreme authority' with respect to that country, while expressly disclaiming any intention of annexation.¹⁵⁵ Germany was divided into four occupation zones with four-power control over Berlin. The Control Council established by the Allies acted on behalf of Germany and in such capacity entered into binding legal arrangements. The state of Germany continued, however, and the situation, as has been observed, was akin to legal representation or agency of necessity.¹⁵⁶ Under the 1952 Treaty between the three Western powers and the Federal Republic of Germany, full sovereign powers were granted to the latter subject to retained powers concerning the making of a peace treaty, and in 1972 the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic, established in 1954 by the Soviet Union in its zone, recognised each other as sovereign states.¹⁵⁷

However, following a series of dramatic events during 1989 in Central and Eastern Europe, deriving in essence from the withdrawal of

¹⁵¹ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 52–8.

¹⁵² 17 ILM, 1978, pp. 762–9, and DUSPIL, 1978, pp. 38–54. See Security Council resolution 435 (1978). See also *Africa Research Bulletin*, April 1978, p. 4829 and July 1978, p. 4935.

¹⁵³ See S/14459; S/14460/Rev.1; S/14461 and S/14462. ¹⁵⁴ See 28 ILM, 1989, p. 944.

¹⁵⁵ See Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, pp. 325–6, and R. W. Piotrowicz, 'The Status of Germany in International Law', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 609. See also Crawford, *Creation of States*, p. 523.

¹⁵⁶ Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 107. See also Whiteman, *Digest*, p. 333, and I. D. Hendry and M. C. Wood, *The Legal Status of Berlin*, Cambridge, 1987.

¹⁵⁷ 12 AD, p. 16. Note also *Kunstsammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon* 94 ILR, p. 135. Both states became members of the UN the following year. See Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 523–6, and F. A. Mann, *Studies in International Law*, Oxford, 1973, pp. 634–59 and 660–706.

Soviet control, the drive for a reunified Germany in 1990 became unstoppable.¹⁵⁸ A State Treaty on German Economic, Monetary and Social Union was signed by the Finance Ministers of the two German states on 18 May and this took effect on 1 July.¹⁵⁹ A State Treaty on Unification was signed on 31 August, providing for unification on 3 October by the accession to the Federal Republic of Germany of the *Länder* of the German Democratic Republic under article 23 of the Basic Law of the Federal Republic, with Berlin as the capital.¹⁶⁰ The external obstacle to unity was removed by the signing on 12 September of the Treaty on the Final Settlement with Respect to Germany, between the two German states and the four wartime allies (UK, USA, USSR and France).¹⁶¹ Under this treaty, a reunified Germany agreed to accept the current Oder–Neisse border with Poland and to limit its armed forces to 370,000 persons, while pledging not to acquire atomic, chemical or biological weapons. The Agreement on the Settlement of Certain Matters Relating to Berlin between the Federal Republic and the three Western powers on 25 September 1990 provided for the relinquishment of Allied rights with regard to Berlin.¹⁶²

Condominium

In this instance two or more states equally exercise sovereignty with respect to a territory and its inhabitants. There are arguments as to the relationship between the states concerned, the identity of the sovereign for the purposes of the territory and the nature of the competences involved.¹⁶³ In the case of the New Hebrides, a series of Anglo-French agreements established a region of joint influence, with each power retaining sovereignty over its nationals and neither exercising separate authority

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. J. Frowein, 'The Reunification of Germany', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 152; Schrike, 'L'Unification Allemande', p. 47; Czaplinski, 'Quelques Aspects', p. 89, and R. W. Piotrowicz and S. Blay, *The Unification of Germany in International and Domestic Law*, Amsterdam, 1997.

¹⁵⁹ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37466 (1990). See also 29 ILM, 1990, p. 1108.

¹⁶⁰ *Keesing's*, p. 37661. See also 30 ILM, 1991, pp. 457 and 498.

¹⁶¹ See 29 ILM, 1990, p. 1186.

¹⁶² See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 445. See also the Exchange of Notes of the same date concerning the presence of allied troops in Berlin, *ibid.*, p. 450.

¹⁶³ Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 113–14. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 327–8; A. Coret, *Le Condominium*, Paris, 1960; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 565, and V. P. Bantz, 'The International Legal Status of Condominia', 12 *Florida Journal of International Law*, 1998, p. 77.

over the area.¹⁶⁴ A Protocol listed the functions of the condominium government and vested the power to issue joint regulations respecting them in a British and a French High Commissioner. This power was delegated to resident commissioners who dealt with their respective nationals. Three governmental systems accordingly co-existed, with something of a legal vacuum with regard to land tenure and the civil transactions of the indigenous population.¹⁶⁵ The process leading to the independence of the territory also reflected its unique status as a condominium.¹⁶⁶ It was noted that the usual independence Bill would not have been appropriate, since the New Hebrides was not a British colony. Its legal status as an Anglo-French condominium had been established by international agreement and could only be terminated in the same fashion. The nature of the condominium was such that it assumed that the two metropolitan powers would always act together and unilateral action was not provided for in the basic constitutional documents.¹⁶⁷ The territory became independent on 30 July 1980 as the state of Vanuatu. The entity involved prior to independence grew out of an international treaty and established an administrative entity arguably distinct from its metropolitan governments but more likely operating on the basis of a form of joint agency with a range of delegated powers.¹⁶⁸

The Central American Court of Justice in 1917¹⁶⁹ held that a condominium existed with respect to the Gulf of Fonseca providing for rights of co-ownership of the three coastal states of Nicaragua, El Salvador and Honduras. The issue was raised in the *El Salvador/Honduras* case before

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. 99 BFSP, p. 229 and 114 BFSP, p. 212.

¹⁶⁵ O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 328.

¹⁶⁶ Lord Trefgarne, the government spokesman, moving the second reading of the New Hebrides Bill in the House of Lords, 404 HL Deb., cols. 1091–2, 4 February 1980.

¹⁶⁷ See Mr Luce, Foreign Office Minister, 980 HC Deb., col. 682, 8 March 1980 and 985 HC Deb., col. 1250, 3 June 1980. See also D. P. O'Connell, 'The Condominium of the New Hebrides', 43 BYIL, p. 71.

¹⁶⁸ See also the joint Saudi Arabian–Kuwaiti administered Neutral Zone based on the treaty of 2 December 1922, 133 BFSP, 1930 Part II, pp. 726–7. See e.g. *The Middle East* (ed. P. Mansfield), 4th edn, London, 1973, p. 187. Both states enjoyed an equal right of undivided sovereignty over the whole area. However, on 7 July 1965, both states signed an agreement to partition the neutral zone, although the territory apparently retained its condominium status for exploration of resources purposes: see 4 ILM, 1965, p. 1134, and H. M. Albaharna, *The Legal Status of the Arabian Gulf States*, 2nd rev. edn, Beirut, 1975, pp. 264–77. See also F. Ali Taha, 'Some Legal Aspects of the Anglo-Egyptian Condominium over the Sudan: 1899–1954', 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 337.

¹⁶⁹ 11 AJIL, 1917, p. 674.

the International Court of Justice.¹⁷⁰ The Court noted that a condominium arrangement being 'a structured system for the joint exercise of sovereign governmental powers over a territory' was normally created by agreement between the states concerned, although it could be created as a juridical consequence of a succession of states (as in the Gulf of Fonseca situation itself), being one of the ways in which territorial sovereignty could pass from one state to another. The Court concluded that the waters of the Gulf of Fonseca beyond the three-mile territorial sea were historic waters and subject to a joint sovereignty of the three coastal states. It based its decision, apart from the 1917 judgment, upon the historic character of the Gulf waters, the consistent claims of the three coastal states and the absence of protest from other states.¹⁷¹

International administration of territories

In such cases a particular territory is placed under a form of international regime, but the conditions under which this has been done have varied widely, from autonomous areas within states to relatively independent entities.¹⁷² The UN is able to assume the administration of territories in specific circumstances. The trusteeship system was founded upon the supervisory role of the UN,¹⁷³ while in the case of South West Africa, the General Assembly supported by the Security Council ended South Africa's mandate and asserted its competence to administer the territory pending independence.¹⁷⁴ Beyond this, UN organs exercising their powers may assume a variety of administrative functions over particular territories where issues of international concern have arisen. Attempts were made to create such a regime for Jerusalem under the General Assembly partition resolution for Palestine in 1947 as a '*corpus separatum* under a special international regime . . . administered by the United Nations', but this never materialised for a number of reasons.¹⁷⁵ Further, the Security Council

¹⁷⁰ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 597 ff.; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 513 ff. El Salvador and Nicaragua were parties to the 1917 decision but differed over the condominium solution. Honduras was not a party to that case and opposed the condominium idea.

¹⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 601; 97 ILR, p. 517.

¹⁷² See e.g. R. Wilde, *International Territorial Administration*, Oxford, 2008; M. Ydit, *Internationalised Territories*, Leiden, 1961; Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 501 ff.; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 60 and 167, and Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, vol. II, pp. 413–48.

¹⁷³ See further above, p. 224. ¹⁷⁴ See above, p. 225.

¹⁷⁵ Resolution 18(II). See e.g. E. Lauterpacht, *Jerusalem and the Holy Places*, London, 1968, and Ydit, *Internationalised Territories*, pp. 273–314.

in 1947 adopted a Permanent Statute for the Free Territory of Trieste, under which the Council was designated as the supreme administrative and legislative authority of the territory.¹⁷⁶

More recently, the UN has become more involved in important administrative functions, authority being derived from a mixture of international agreements, domestic consent and the powers of the Security Council under Chapter VII to adopt binding decisions concerning international peace and security, as the case may be. For example, the 1991 Paris Peace Agreements between the four Cambodian factions authorised the UN to establish civil administrative functions in that country pending elections and the adoption of a new constitution. This was accomplished through the UN Transitional Authority in Cambodia (UNTAC), to which were delegated 'all powers necessary to ensure the implementation' of the peace settlement and which also exercised competence in areas such as foreign affairs, defence, finance and so forth.¹⁷⁷

Annex 10 of the General Framework Agreement for Peace in Bosnia and Herzegovina (the Dayton Agreement)¹⁷⁸ established the post of High Representative with extensive powers with regard to the civilian implementation of the peace agreement and with the final authority to interpret the civilian aspects of the settlement.¹⁷⁹ This was endorsed and confirmed by the Security Council in binding resolution 1031 (1995). The relatively modest powers of the High Representative under Annex 10 were subsequently enlarged in practice by the Peace Implementation Council, a body

¹⁷⁶ See Security Council resolution 16 (1947). Like the Jerusalem idea, this never came into being. See also the experiences of the League of Nations with regard to the Saar and Danzig, Ydit, *Internationalised Territories*, chapter 3.

¹⁷⁷ See Article 6 and Annex I of the Paris Peace Settlement. See also C. Stahn, 'International Territorial Administration in the Former Yugoslavia: Origins, Developments and Challenges Ahead', ZaōRV, 2001, p. 107. UNTAC lasted from March 1992 to September 1993 and involved some 22,000 military and civilian personnel: see www.un.org/Depts/dpko/dpko/co_mission/untac.htm. Note also e.g. the operations of the UN Transition Group in Namibia which, in the process leading to Namibian independence, exercised a degree of administrative power: see Report of the UN Secretary-General, A/45/1 (1991), and the UN Transitional Administration for Eastern Slavonia (UNTAES), which facilitated the transfer of the territory from Serb to Croat rule over a two-year period: see Security Council resolution 1037 (1996).

¹⁷⁸ Initialled at Dayton, Ohio, and signed in Paris, 1995.

¹⁷⁹ The final authority with regard to the military implementation of the agreement remains the commander of SFOR: see article 12 of the Agreement on the Military Aspects of the Dayton Peace Agreement. Note also the establishment of the Human Rights Chamber, the majority of whose members are from other states: see below, chapter 7, p. 379, and the Commission for Displaced Persons and Refugees: see Annexes 6 and 7 of the Peace Agreement.

with fifty-five members established to review progress regarding the peace settlement, in the decisions it took at the Bonn Summit of December 1997 (the Bonn Conclusions).¹⁸⁰ These provided, for example, for measures to be taken against persons found by the High Representative to be in violation of legal commitments made under the Peace Agreement. This has included removal from public office, the competence to impose interim legislation where Bosnia's institutions had failed to do so¹⁸¹ and 'other measures to ensure implementation of the Peace Agreement throughout Bosnia and Herzegovina and its Entities, as well as the smooth running of the common institutions'.¹⁸² The High Representative has taken a wide-ranging number of decisions, from imposing the Law on Citizenship of Bosnia and Herzegovina in December 1997¹⁸³ and imposing the Law on the Flag of Bosnia and Herzegovina in February 1998¹⁸⁴ to enacting the Law on Changes and Amendments to the Election Law in January 2006 to mark the ongoing process of transferring High Representative powers to the domestic authorities in the light of the improving situation.¹⁸⁵ This unusual structure with regard to an independent state arises, therefore, from a mix of the consent of the parties and binding Chapter VII activity by the Security Council.

In resolution 1244 (1999), the Security Council authorised the Secretary-General to establish an interim international civil presence in Kosovo (UNMIK),¹⁸⁶ following the withdrawal of Yugoslav forces from

¹⁸⁰ See e.g. the documentation available at www.ohr.int/pic/archive.asp?so=d&sa=on. See also Security Council resolutions 1144 (1997), 1256 (1999) and 1423 (2002).

¹⁸¹ www.ohr.int/pic/default.asp?content_id=5182. The competence of the High Representative to adopt binding decisions with regard to interim measures when the parties are unable to reach agreement remains in force until the Presidency or Council of Ministers has adopted a decision consistent with the Peace Agreement on the issue concerned.

¹⁸² Paragraph XI of the Bonn Conclusions. See also Security Council resolutions 1247 (1999), 1395 (2000), 1357 (2001), 1396 (2002) and 1491 (2003).

¹⁸³ www.ohr.int/statemattersdec/default.asp?content_id=343.

¹⁸⁴ www.ohr.int/statemattersdec/default.asp?content_id=344.

¹⁸⁵ www.ohr.int/statemattersdec/default.asp?content_id=36465.

¹⁸⁶ See Stahn, 'International Territorial Administration', p. 111; T. Garcia, 'La Mission d'Administration Intérimaire des Nations Unies au Kosovo', RGDIP, 2000, p. 61, and M. Ruffert, 'The Administration of Kosovo and East Timor by the International Community', 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 613. See also *Kosovo and the International Community: A Legal Assessment* (ed. C. Tomuschat), The Hague, 2002; B. Knoll, 'From Benchmarking to Final Status? Kosovo and the Problem of an International Administration's Open-Ended Mandate', 16 *European Journal of International Law*, 2005, p. 637; *Kosovo: KFOR and Reconstruction*, House of Commons Research Paper 99/66, 1999; A. Yannis, 'The UN as Government in Kosovo', 10 *Global Governance*, 2004, p. 67; International Crisis Group (ICG), *Kosovo: Towards Final Status*, January 2005, ICG, *Kosovo: The Challenge of Transition*,

that part of the country consequent upon NATO action. Under this resolution, UNMIK performed a wide range of administrative functions, including health and education, banking and finance, post and telecommunications, and law and order. It was tasked *inter alia* to promote the establishment of substantial autonomy and self-government in Kosovo, to co-ordinate humanitarian and disaster relief, support the reconstruction of key infrastructure, maintain civil law and order, promote human rights and assure the return of refugees. Administrative structures were established and elections held. The first regulation adopted by the Special Representative of the UN Secretary-General appointed under resolution 1244 vested all legislative and executive authority in Kosovo in UNMIK as exercised by the Special Representative.¹⁸⁷ This regulation also established that the law in the territory was that in existence in so far as this did not conflict with the international standards referred to in section 2 of the regulation, the fulfilment of the mandate given to UNMIK under resolution 1244, or the present or any other regulation issued by UNMIK. A Constitutional Framework for Provisional Self-Government was promulgated by the Special Representative in May 2001.¹⁸⁸ This comprehensive administrative competence was founded upon the reaffirmation of Yugoslavia's sovereignty and territorial integrity (and thus continuing territorial title over the province) and the requirement for 'substantial autonomy and meaningful self-administration for Kosovo'.¹⁸⁹ Accordingly, this arrangement illustrated a complete division between title to the territory and the exercise of power and control over it. It flowed from a binding Security Council resolution, which referred to Yugoslavia's consent to the essential principles therein contained.¹⁹⁰

The United Nations Transitional Administration in East Timor (UNTAET) was established by Security Council resolution 1272 (1999) acting under Chapter VII. It was 'endowed with overall responsibility for the administration of East Timor' and 'empowered to exercise all legislative and executive authority, including the administration of justice'.¹⁹¹

February 2006, ICG, *Kosovo: No Good Alternatives to the Ahtisaari Plan*, 14 May 2007, and ICG, *Kosovo Countdown: A Blueprint for Transition*, 6 December 2007. Resolution 1244 also authorised an international military presence.

¹⁸⁷ Regulation 1 (1999). This was backdated to the date of adoption of resolution 1244.

¹⁸⁸ See UNMIK Regulation 9 (2001). ¹⁸⁹ Resolution 1244 (1999).

¹⁹⁰ See S/1999/649 and Annex 2 to the resolution. Kosovo declared independence on 17 February 2008: see below, p. 452 and above, p. 201.

¹⁹¹ East Timor, a Portuguese non-self-governing territory, was occupied by Indonesia in 1974. These two states agreed with the UN on 5 May 1999 to a process of popular consultation

Its widespread mandate included, in addition to public administration, humanitarian responsibilities and a military component and it was authorised to take all necessary measures to fulfil its mandate. UNTAET's mandate was extended to 20 May 2002, the date of East Timor's independence as the new state of Timor-Leste.¹⁹² It was thereafter succeeded by the United Nations Mission of Support in East Timor (UNMISET).¹⁹³

*Taiwan*¹⁹⁴

This territory was ceded by China to Japan in 1895 by the treaty of Shimonoseki and remained in the latter's hands until 1945. Japan undertook on surrender not to retain sovereignty over Taiwan and this was reaffirmed under the Peace Treaty, 1951 between the Allied Powers (but not the USSR and China) and Japan, under which all rights to the island were renounced without specifying any recipient. After the Chinese Civil War, the Communist forces took over the mainland while the Nationalist regime installed itself on Taiwan (Formosa) and the Pescadores. Both the US and the UK took the view at that stage that sovereignty over Taiwan was uncertain or undetermined.¹⁹⁵ The key point affecting status has been that both governments have claimed to represent the whole of China. No claim of separate statehood for Taiwan has been made and in such a case it is difficult to maintain that such an unsought status exists. Total lack of recognition of Taiwan as a separate independent state merely reinforces this point. In 1979 the US recognised the People's Republic of China as the sole and legitimate government of China.¹⁹⁶ Accordingly, Taiwan would

in the territory over its future. The inhabitants expressed a clear wish for a transitional process of UN authority leading to independence. Following the outbreak of violence, a multinational force was sent to East Timor pursuant to resolution 1264 (1999): see also the Report of the Secretary-General, S/1999/1024; www.un.org/peace/etimor/etimor.htm.

¹⁹² See resolutions 1388 (2001) and 1392 (2002). ¹⁹³ See resolution 1410 (2002).

¹⁹⁴ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 198 ff.; *China and the Question of Taiwan* (ed. H. Chiu), New York, 1979; W. M. Reisman, 'Who Owns Taiwan?', 81 *Yale Law Journal*, p. 599; F. P. Morello, *The International Legal Status of Formosa*, The Hague, 1966; V. H. Li, *De-Recognising Taiwan*, Washington, DC, 1977, and L. C. Chiu, 'The International Legal Status of the Republic of China', 8 *Chinese Yearbook of International Law and Affairs*, 1990, p. 1. See also *The International Status of Taiwan in the New World Order* (ed. J. M. Henck-aerts), London, 1996; *Let Taiwan be Taiwan* (eds. M. J. Cohen and E. Teng), Washington, 1990, and J. I. Charney and J. R. V. Prescott, 'Resolving Cross-Strait Relations Between China and Taiwan', 94 *AJIL*, 2000, p. 453.

¹⁹⁵ See Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. III, pp. 538, 564 and 565.

¹⁹⁶ See Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 209 ff. Note that the 1972 USA–China communiqué accepted that Taiwan was part of China, 11 *ILM*, pp. 443, 445. As to the 1979 changes, see 73 *AJIL*, p. 227. See also 833 *HC Deb.*, col. 32, 13 March 1972, for the new British

appear to be a non-state territorial entity which is capable of acting independently on the international scene, but is most probably *de jure* part of China. It is interesting to note that when in early 1990 Taiwan sought accession to the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), it did so by requesting entry for the 'customs territory' of 'Taiwan, Penghu, Kinmen and Matsu', thus avoiding an assertion of statehood.¹⁹⁷ The accession of 'Chinese Taipei' to the World Trade Organisation was approved by the Ministerial Conference in November 2001.¹⁹⁸

*The 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus' (TRNC)*¹⁹⁹

In 1974, following a coup in Cyprus backed by the military regime in Greece, Turkish forces invaded the island. The Security Council in resolution 353 (1974) called upon all states to respect the sovereignty, independence and territorial integrity of Cyprus and demanded an immediate end to foreign military intervention in the island that was contrary to such respect. On 13 February 1975 the Turkish Federated State of Cyprus was proclaimed in the area occupied by Turkish forces. A resolution adopted at the same meeting of the Council of Ministers and the Legislative Assembly of the Autonomous Turkish Cypriot Administration at which the proclamation was made, emphasised the determination 'to oppose resolutely all attempts against the independence of Cyprus and its partition or union with any other state' and resolved to establish a separate administration until such time as the 1960 Cyprus Constitution was amended to provide for a federal republic.²⁰⁰

approach, i.e. that it recognised the Government of the People's Republic of China as the sole legal Government of China and acknowledged the position of that government that Taiwan was a province of China, and see e.g. UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 537. See also *Reel v. Holder* [1981] 1 WLR 1226.

¹⁹⁷ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37671 (1990). This failed, however, to prevent a vigorous protest by China: *ibid.* Note also the Agreements Concerning Cross-Straits Activities between unofficial organisations established in China and Taiwan in order to reach functional, non-political agreements, 32 ILM, 1993, p. 1217. A degree of evolution in Taiwan's approach was evident in the Additional Articles of the Constitution adopted in 1997.

¹⁹⁸ See www.wto.org/english/news_e/pres01_e/pr253_e.htm. As to Rhodesia (1965–79) and the Bantustans, see above, pp. 206 and 202.

¹⁹⁹ See Z. M. Necatigil, *The Cyprus Question and the Turkish Position in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford 1993; G. White, *The World Today*, April 1981, p. 135, and Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 143 ff.

²⁰⁰ Resolution No. 2 in Supplement IV, Official Gazette of the TFSC, cited in Nadjatigil, *Cyprus Conflict*, p. 123.

On 15 November 1983, the Turkish Cypriots proclaimed their independence as the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus'.²⁰¹ This was declared illegal by the Security Council in resolution 541 (1983) and its withdrawal called for. All states were requested not to recognise the 'purported state' or assist it in any way. This was reiterated in Security Council resolution 550 (1984). The Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe decided that it continued to regard the government of the Republic of Cyprus as the sole legitimate government of Cyprus and called for respect for the independence and territorial integrity of Cyprus.²⁰² The European Court of Human Rights in its judgment of 10 May 2001 in *Cyprus v. Turkey* concluded that, 'it is evident from international practice ... that the international community does not recognise the "TRNC" as a state under international law' and declared that 'the Republic of Cyprus has remained the sole legitimate government of Cyprus'.²⁰³ In the light of this and the very heavy dependence of the territory upon Turkey, it cannot be regarded as a sovereign state, but remains as a *de facto* administered entity within the recognised confines of the Republic of Cyprus and dependent upon Turkish assistance.²⁰⁴

*The Saharan Arab Democratic Republic*²⁰⁵

In February 1976, the Polisario liberation movement conducting a war to free the Western Saharan territory from Moroccan control declared the independent sovereign Saharan Arab Democratic Republic (SADR).²⁰⁶ Over the succeeding years, many states recognised the new entity, including a majority of Organisation of African Unity members. In February 1982, the OAU Secretary-General sought to seat a delegation from SADR on that basis, but this provoked a boycott by some nineteen states and a major crisis. However, in November 1984 the Assembly of Heads of State and Government of the OAU did agree to seat a delegation from SADR,

²⁰¹ See *The Times*, 16 November 1983, p. 12, and 21(4) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 17.

²⁰² Resolution (83)13 adopted on 24 November 1983.

²⁰³ Application No. 25781/94; 120 ILR, p. 10. See *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, Series A, No. 310, 1995; 103 ILR, p. 622, and *Loizidou v. Turkey (Merits)*, Reports 1996-VI, p. 2216; 108 ILR, p. 443. See also to the same effect, *Autocephalous Church of Cyprus v. Goldberg* 917 F.2d 278 (1990); 108 ILR, p. 488, and *Caglar v. Billingham* [1996] STC (SCD) 150; 108 ILR, p. 510.

²⁰⁴ See also Foreign Affairs Committee, Third Report, Session 1986–7, Cyprus: HCP 23 (1986–7).

²⁰⁵ See Shaw, *Title*, chapter 3.

²⁰⁶ *Africa Research Bulletin*, June 1976, p. 4047 and July 1976, pp. 4078 and 4081.

despite Morocco's threat of withdrawal from the organisation.²⁰⁷ This, therefore, can be taken as OAU recognition of statehood and, as such, of evidential significance. However, although in view of the reduced importance of the effectiveness of control criterion in such self-determination situations a credible argument can now be made regarding SADR's statehood, the issue is still controversial in view of the continuing hostilities and what appears to be effective Moroccan control. It is to be noted that the legal counsel to the UN gave an opinion in 2002 to the effect that Western Sahara continued as a non-self-governing territory and that this status was unaffected by the transfer of administrative authority to Morocco and Mauritania in 1975. The view was also taken that exploitation and exploitation activities undertaken in disregard of the interests and wishes of the people of Western Sahara would violate international law.²⁰⁸

Various secessionist claimants

A number of secessionist claims from recognised independent states exist. The former territory of British Somaliland, being the northern part of the new state of Somalia after its independence in 1960, asserted its own independence on 17 May 1991.²⁰⁹ A constitution was adopted in 2001, but the Organisation of African Unity refused to support any action that would affect the unity and sovereignty of Somalia.²¹⁰ 'Somaliland' is unrecognised by any state or international organisation, although a number of dealings with the authorities of that entity have taken place.²¹¹ Following an armed conflict between Armenia and Azerbaijan in the early 1990s, Armenian forces captured and occupied the area of Nagorno-Karabakh (and seven surrounding districts) from Azerbaijan. Nagorno-Karabakh, an area with

²⁰⁷ See *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 33324–45.

²⁰⁸ S/2002/161. The UK has stated that it regards the 'the sovereignty of Western Sahara as undetermined pending United Nations efforts to find a solution to the dispute over the territory', UKMIL, 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 720.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 412 ff., and *Somalia: A Country Study* (ed. H. C. Metz), 4th edn, Washington, 1993. See generally P. Kolsto, 'The Sustainability and Future of Unrecognized Quasi-States', 43 *Journal of Peace Research*, 2006, p. 723.

²¹⁰ See Report of the UN Secretary-General on the Situation in Somalia, S/2001/963, paras. 16 ff. (2001).

²¹¹ See e.g. the provision of assistance to the authorities of the area by the UK and the visit to the UK and meetings with UK government officials by the 'president of Somaliland' in July 2006: see FCO Press Release, 16 August 2006. See also UKMIL, 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 715.

a majority ethnic Armenian population, declared its independence from Azerbaijan. However, it has not been recognised by any state (including Armenia) and the UN Security Council adopted resolutions 822, 853, 874 and 884 reaffirming the sovereign and territorial integrity of Azerbaijan and calling for withdrawal from the occupied territories of Azerbaijan.²¹² The former USSR republic of Moldova became independent on 23 June 1990 as the USSR dissolved. On 2 September 1990 the 'Moldavian Republic of Transdnistria' was proclaimed as an independent state in an area of Moldova bordering Ukraine. This entity has been able to maintain itself as a result of Russian assistance. However, it has not been recognised by any state.²¹³ Similarly, the areas of South Ossetia and Abkhazia in Georgia have sought to establish separate *de facto* governments and independence respectively with Russian support and have similarly not been recognised by any state.²¹⁴

Associations of states

There are a number of ways in which states have become formally associated with one another. Such associations do not constitute states but have a certain effect upon international law. Confederations, for example, are probably the closest form of co-operation and they generally involve several countries acting together by virtue of an international agreement, with some kind of central institutions with limited functions.²¹⁵ This is to be contrasted with federations. A federal unit is a state with strong

²¹² See e.g. the Reports of the International Crisis Group on Nagorno-Karabakh of 14 September 2005, 11 October 2005 and 14 November 2007. See also resolution 1416 of the Council of Europe Parliamentary Assembly, 2005.

²¹³ See the Reports of the International Crisis Group on Moldova of 12 August 2003, 17 June 2004 and 17 August 2006. See also *Ilascu v. Moldova and Russia*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 8 July 2004, pp. 8–40.

²¹⁴ See the Reports of the International Crisis Group on South Ossetia of 26 November 2004, 19 April 2005 and 7 June 2007, and the Reports on Abkhazia of 15 September 2006 and 18 January 2007.

²¹⁵ Note, for example, the Preliminary Agreement Concerning the Establishment of a Confederation between the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina and the Republic of Croatia, 1994, 33 ILM, 1994, p. 605. This Agreement 'anticipated' the creation of a Confederation, but provides that its 'establishment shall not change the international identity or legal personality of Croatia or of the Federation'. The Agreement provided for co-operation between the parties in a variety of areas and for Croatia to grant the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina free access to the Adriatic through its territory. This Confederation did not come about.

centralised organs and usually a fairly widespread bureaucracy with extensive powers over the citizens of the state, even though the powers of the state are divided between the different units.²¹⁶ However, a state may comprise component units with extensive powers.²¹⁷

There are in addition certain 'associated states' which by virtue of their smallness and lack of development have a close relationship with another state. One instance is the connection between the Cook Islands and New Zealand, where internal self-government is allied to external dependence.²¹⁸ Another example was the group of islands which constituted the Associated States of the West Indies. These were tied to the United Kingdom by the terms of the West Indies Act 1967, which provided for the latter to exercise control with regard to foreign and defence issues. Nevertheless, such states were able to and did attain their independence.²¹⁹

The status of such entities in an association relationship with a state will depend upon the constitutional nature of the arrangement and may in certain circumstances involve international personality distinct from the metropolitan state depending also upon international acceptance. It must, however, be noted that such status is one of the methods accepted by the UN of exercising the right to self-determination.²²⁰ Provided that an acceptable level of powers, including those dealing with domestic affairs, remain with the associated state, and that the latter may without undue difficulty revoke the arrangement, some degree of personality would appear desirable and acceptable.

The Commonwealth of Nations (the former British Commonwealth) is perhaps the most well known of the loose associations which group together sovereign states on the basis usually of common interests and historical ties. Its members are all fully independent states who co-operate through the assistance of the Commonwealth Secretariat and periodic conferences of Heads of Government. Regular meetings of particular ministers also take place. The Commonwealth does not constitute

²¹⁶ See Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 479 ff., and above, p. 217. See also with regard to the proposed arrangement between Gambia and Senegal, 21 ILM, 1982, pp. 44–7.

²¹⁷ See e.g. the Dayton Peace Agreement 1995, Annex 4 laying down the constitution of Bosnia and Herzegovina as an independent state consisting of two Entities, the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina and the Republika Srpska. The boundary between the two Entities was laid down in Annex 2.

²¹⁸ Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 625 ff. See also as regards Puerto Rico and Niue, *ibid.*

²¹⁹ See e.g. J. E. S. Fawcett, *Annual Survey of Commonwealth Law*, London, 1967, pp. 709–11.

²²⁰ See, with regard to the successors of the trust territory of the Pacific, above, p. 224.

a legally binding relationship, but operates as a useful forum for discussions. Relations between Commonwealth members display certain special characteristics, for example, ambassadors are usually referred to as High Commissioners. It would appear unlikely in the circumstances that it possesses separate international personality.²²¹ However, the more that the Commonwealth develops distinctive institutions and establishes common policies with the capacity to take binding decisions, the more the argument may be made for international legal personality.

Following the dissolution of the Soviet Union and the coming to independence of the constituent Republics, with the Russian Federation being deemed the continuation of the Soviet Union, it was decided to establish the Commonwealth of Independent States.²²² Originally formed by Russia, Belarus and Ukraine on 8 December 1991, it was enlarged on 21 December 1991 to include eleven former Republics of the USSR. Georgia joined the CIS on 8 October 1993. Thus all the former Soviet Republics, excluding the three Baltic states, are now members of that organisation.²²³ The agreement establishing the CIS provided for respect for human rights and other principles and called for co-ordination between the member states. The Charter of the CIS was adopted on 22 June 1993 as a binding international treaty²²⁴ and laid down a series of principles ranging from respect for the sovereignty and territorial integrity of states, self-determination of peoples, prohibition of the use or threat of force and settlement of disputes by peaceful means. It was noted that the CIS was neither a state nor 'supranational' (article 1) and a number of common co-ordinating institutions were established. In particular, the Council of Heads of State is the 'highest body of the Commonwealth' and it may 'take decisions on the principal issues relating to the activity of the member states in the field of their mutual interests' (article 21), while the Council of the Heads of Government has the function of co-ordinating co-operation among executive organs of member states (article 22). Both Councils may

²²¹ See J. E. S. Fawcett, *The British Commonwealth in International Law*, London, 1963; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 256; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 346–56; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, pp. 476–544; Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, vol. II, pp. 214–64, and Sale, *The Modern Commonwealth*, 1983. See also, as regards the French Community, Whiteman, *Digest*, pp. 544–82, and O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 356–9.

²²² See e.g. J. Lippott, 'The Commonwealth of Independent States as an Economic and Legal Community', 39 *German YIL*, 1996, p. 334.

²²³ See 31 *ILM*, 1992, pp. 138 and 147, and 34 *ILM*, 1995, p. 1298.

²²⁴ See 34 *ILM*, 1995, p. 1279.

take decisions on the basis of consensus (article 23). A Council of Foreign Ministers was also established together with a Co-ordination and Consultative Committee, as a permanent executive and co-ordinating body of the Commonwealth.²²⁵ The CIS has adopted in addition a Treaty on Economic Union²²⁶ and a Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms.²²⁷ The increasing development of the CIS as a directing international institution suggests its possession of international legal personality.

The European Union²²⁸ is an association, of twenty-seven states, which has established a variety of common institutions and which has the competence to adopt not only legal acts binding upon member states but also acts having direct effect within domestic legal systems. The Union consists essentially of the European Community (itself an amalgam of the European Coal and Steel Community, EURATOM and the European Economic Community) and two additional pillars, viz. the Common Foreign and Security Policy, and Justice and Home Affairs. Only the European Coal and Steel Community Treaty provided explicitly for international legal personality (article 6), but the case-law of the European Court of Justice demonstrates its belief that the other two communities also possess such personality.²²⁹ It is also established that Community law has superiority over domestic law. The European Court of Justice early in the history of the Community declared that the Community constituted 'a new legal order of international law'.²³⁰ In the circumstances, it seems hard to deny that the Community possesses international legal personality, but

²²⁵ Note also the creation of the Council of Defence Ministers, the Council of Frontier Troops Chief Commanders, an Economic Court, a Commission on Human Rights, an Organ of Branch Co-operation and an Interparliamentary Assembly (articles 30–5).

²²⁶ 24 September 1993, 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1298.

²²⁷ 26 May 1995, see Council of Europe Information Sheet No. 36, 1995, p. 195.

²²⁸ Established as such by article A, Title I of the Treaty on European Union (Maastricht) signed in February 1992 and in force as from 1 January 1993. See also the Treaty of Amsterdam, 1997, the Treaty of Nice, 2001 and the Treaty of Lisbon, 2007.

²²⁹ See e.g. *Costa v. ENEL* [1964] ECR 585, 593; *Commission v. Council* [1971] ECR 263, 274; *Kramer* [1976] ECR 1279, 1308 and *Protection of Nuclear Materials* [1978] ECR 2151, 2179; *The Oxford Encyclopaedia of European Community Law* (ed. A. Toth), Oxford, 1991, p. 351; D. Lasok and J. Bridge, *Law and Institutions of the European Union* (ed. P. Lasok), 6th edn, London, 1994, chapter 2, and S. Weatherill and P. Beaumont, *EU Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1999. See also A. Peters, 'The Position of International Law Within the European Community Legal Order', 40 German YIL, 1997, p. 9, and D. Chalmers and A. Tomkins, *European Union Public Law*, Cambridge, 2007.

²³⁰ *Van Gend en Loos v. Nederlandse Administratie des Belastingen* [1963] ECR 1.

unlikely that the co-operative processes involved in the additional two pillars are so endowed.²³¹ The European Community has the power to conclude and negotiate agreements in line with its external powers, to become a member of an international organisation and to have delegations in non-member countries. However, the Treaty on European Union contained no provision on the legal personality of the Union. The Union does not have institutionalised treaty-making powers, but is able to conclude agreements through the Council of the European Union or by asserting its position on the international stage, especially in connection with the Common Foreign and Security Policy. However, article 55 of the Treaty of Lisbon, 2007 provides for the insertion into the Treaty on European Union of a new article 46A, which expressly asserts that the European Union has legal personality.²³²

Conclusions

Whether or not the entities discussed above constitute international persons or indeed states or merely part of some other international person is a matter for careful consideration in the light of the circumstances of the case, in particular the claims made by the entity in question, the facts on the ground, especially with regard to third-party control and the degree of administrative effectiveness manifested, and the reaction of other international persons. The importance here of recognition, acquiescence and estoppel is self-evident. Acceptance of some international personality need not be objective so as to bind non-consenting states nor unlimited as to time and content factors. These elements will be considered below. It should, however, be noted here that the international community itself also has needs and interests that bear upon this question as to international status. This is particularly so with regard to matters of responsibility and the protection of persons via the rules governing the recourse to and conduct of armed conflicts.²³³

²³¹ See e.g. the Second Legal Adviser of the Foreign and Commonwealth Office, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 660. But see also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 20. Note also the European Court of Justice's *Opinion No. 1/94, Community Competence to Conclude Certain International Agreements* [1994] ECR I-5276; 108 ILR, p. 225.

²³² The Treaty of Lisbon, 2007 is not yet in force.

²³³ As to the specific regime established in the Antarctica Treaty, 1959, see below, p. 535. See also below, p. 628, with regard to the International Seabed Authority under the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982.

Special cases

The Sovereign Order of Malta

This Order, established during the Crusades as a military and medical association, ruled Rhodes from 1309 to 1522 and was given Malta by treaty with Charles V in 1530 as a fief of the Kingdom of Sicily. This sovereignty was lost in 1798, and in 1834 the Order established its headquarters in Rome as a humanitarian organisation.²³⁴ The Order already had international personality at the time of its taking control of Malta and even when it had to leave the island it continued to exchange diplomatic legations with most European countries. The Italian Court of Cassation in 1935 recognised the international personality of the Order, noting that ‘the modern theory of the subjects of international law recognises a number of collective units whose composition is independent of the nationality of their constituent members and whose scope transcends by virtue of their universal character the territorial confines of any single state.’²³⁵ This is predicated upon the functional needs of the entity as accepted by third parties. It is to be noted, for example, that the Order maintains diplomatic relations with or is recognised by over eighty states and has observer status in the UN General Assembly.²³⁶ It is not a state and it is questionable whether it has general international personality beyond those states and organisations expressly recognising it.²³⁷

*The Holy See and the Vatican City*²³⁸

In 1870, the conquest of the Papal states by Italian forces ended their existence as sovereign states. The question therefore arose as to the status

²³⁴ *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 329, note 7; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 85–6, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, pp. 584–7. See also Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 231 ff., and B. J. Theutenberg, *The Holy See, the Order of Malta and International Law*, Skara, 2003.

²³⁵ *Nanni v. Pace and the Sovereign Order of Malta* 8 AD, p. 2. See also *Scarfo v. Sovereign Order of Malta* 24 ILR, p. 1; *Sovereign Order of Malta v. Soc. An. Commerciale* 22 ILR, p. 1, and Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 132–3.

²³⁶ Crawford, *Creation of States*, p. 231. ²³⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 233.

²³⁸ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 325; Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 221 ff.; J. Duursma, *Fragmentation and the International Relations of Microstates: Self-determination and Statehood*, Cambridge, 1996, pp. 374 ff.; Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, vol. II, pp. 353–77; *Le Saint-Siège dans les Relations Internationales* (ed. J. P. D'Onorio), Aix-en-Provence, 1989, and R. Graham, *Vatican Diplomacy: A Study of Church and State on the International Plane*, Princeton, 1959. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 455.

in international law of the Holy See, deprived, as it then was, of normal territorial sovereignty. In 1929 the Lateran Treaty was signed with Italy which recognised the state of the Vatican City and 'the sovereignty of the Holy See in the field of international relations as an attribute that pertains to the very nature of the Holy See, in conformity with its traditions and with the demands of its mission in the world'.²³⁹ The question thus interrelates with the problem of the status today of the Vatican City. The latter has no permanent population apart from Church functionaries and exists only to support the work of the Holy See. Italy carries out a substantial number of administrative functions with regard to the City. Some writers accordingly have concluded that it cannot be regarded as a state.²⁴⁰ Nevertheless, it is a party to many international treaties and is a member of the Universal Postal Union and the International Telecommunications Union. It would appear that by virtue of recognition and acquiescence in the context of its claims, it does exist as a state. The Vatican City is closely linked with the Holy See and they are essentially part of the same construct.

The Holy See, the central organisational authority of the Catholic Church, continued after 1870 to engage in diplomatic relations and enter into international agreements and concordats.²⁴¹ Accordingly its status as an international person was accepted by such partners. In its joint eleventh and twelfth report submitted to the UN Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination in 1993,²⁴² the Holy See reminded the Committee of its 'exceptional nature within the community of nations; as a sovereign subject of international law, it has a mission of an essentially religious and moral order, universal in scope, which is based on minimal territorial dimensions guaranteeing a basis of autonomy for the pastoral ministry of the Sovereign Pontiff'.²⁴³ Crawford has concluded that the Holy See is both an international legal person in its own right and the government of a state (the Vatican City).²⁴⁴

²³⁹ 130 BFSP, p. 791. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 289, and *Re Marcinkus, Mennini and De Strobel* 87 ILR, p. 48.

²⁴⁰ See M. Mendelson, 'The Diminutive States in the United Nations', 21 ICLQ, 1972, p. 609. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 64.

²⁴¹ See e.g. the Fundamental Agreement between the Holy See and the State of Israel of 30 December 1993, 33 ILM, 1994, p. 153.

²⁴² CERD/C/226/Add. 6 (15 February 1993).

²⁴³ See also the decision of the Philippines Supreme Court (en banc) in *The Holy See v. Starbright Sales Enterprises Inc.* 102 ILR, p. 163.

²⁴⁴ Crawford, *Creation of States*, p. 230. The International Committee of the Red Cross also appears on the basis of state practice, particularly its participation in international

Insurgents and belligerents

International law has recognised that such entities may in certain circumstances, primarily dependent upon the *de facto* administration of specific territory, enter into valid arrangements.²⁴⁵ In addition they will be bound by the rules of international law with respect to the conduct of hostilities and may in due course be recognised as governments. The traditional law is in process of modification as a result of the right to self-determination, and other legal principles such as territorial integrity, sovereign equality and non-intervention in addition to recognition will need to be taken into account.²⁴⁶

National liberation movements (NLMs)

The question of whether or not NLMs constitute subjects of international law and, if so, to what extent, is bound up with the development of the law relating to non-self-governing territories and the principle of self-determination. What is noticeable is not only the increasing status of NLMs during the decolonisation period, but also the fact that in many cases the international community turned to bodies other than the NLMs in controversial situations.

The UN trusteeship system permitted the hearing of individual petitioners and this was extended to all colonial territories. In 1977, the General Assembly Fourth Committee voted to permit representatives of certain NLMs from Portugal's African territories to participate in its work dealing with such territories.²⁴⁷ The General Assembly endorsed the concept of observer status for liberation movements recognised by the Organisation of African Unity in resolution 2918 (XVII). In resolution 3247 (XXIX), the Assembly accepted that NLMs recognised by the OAU or

agreements, to be an international legal person to a limited extent: see Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 133–4.

²⁴⁵ See Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 165; Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 494–5; Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 63, and T. C. Chen, *Recognition*, London, 1951. See also Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 124 ff.; S. C. Neff, 'The Prerogatives of Violence – In Search of the Conceptual Foundations of Belligerents' Rights', 38 *German YIL*, 1995, p. 41, and Neff, *The Rights and Duties of Neutrals*, Manchester, 2000, pp. 200 ff.

²⁴⁶ See below, p. 251.

²⁴⁷ See M. N. Shaw, 'The International Status of National Liberation Movements', 5 *Liverpool Law Review*, 1983, p. 19, and R. Ranjeva, 'Peoples and National Liberation Movements' in *International Law: Achievements and Prospects* (ed. M. Bedjaoui), Paris, 1991, p. 101. See also Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 140 ff., and H. Wilson, *International Law and the Use of Force by National Liberation Movements*, Oxford, 1988.

the Arab League could participate in Assembly sessions, in conferences arranged under the auspices of the Assembly and in meetings of the UN specialised agencies and the various Assembly organs.²⁴⁸

The inclusion of the regional recognition requirement was intended both to require a minimum level of effectiveness with regard to the organisation concerned before UN acceptance and to exclude in practice secessionist movements. The Economic and Social Committee of the UN has also adopted a similar approach and under its procedural rules it may invite any NLM recognised by or in accordance with General Assembly resolutions to take part in relevant debates without a vote.²⁴⁹

The UN Security Council also permitted the Palestine Liberation Organisation (PLO) to participate in its debates with the same rights of participation as conferred upon a member state not a member of the Security Council, although this did raise serious constitutional questions.²⁵⁰ Thus the possibility of observer status in the UN and related organs for NLMs appears to have been affirmatively settled in international practice. The question of international personality, however, is more complex and more significant, and recourse must be made to state practice.²⁵¹ Whether extensive state recognition of a liberation movement is of itself sufficient to confer such status is still a controversial issue.

The position of the PLO, however, began to evolve considerably with the Israel–PLO Declaration of Principles on Interim Self-Government Arrangements signed in Washington on 13 September 1993.²⁵² By virtue of

²⁴⁸ While the leader of the PAIGC was not permitted to speak at the Assembly in 1973, the leader of the PLO was able to address the body in 1974: see A/C.4/SR.1978 p. 23 and resolution 3237 (XXIX).

²⁴⁹ ECOSOC resolution 1949 (LVII), 8 May 1975, rule 73. See also, as regards the Human Rights Commission, CHR/Res.19 (XXIX). The General Assembly and ECOSOC have also called upon the specialised agencies and other UN-related organisations to assist the peoples and NLMs of colonial territories: see e.g. Assembly resolutions 33/41 and 35/29.

²⁵⁰ See *Yearbook of the UN*, 1972, p. 70 and 1978, p. 297; S/PV 1859 (1975); S/PV 1870 (1976); *UN Chronicle*, April 1982, p. 16, and DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 73–5. See also Shaw, 'International Status'.

²⁵¹ See the *UN Headquarters Agreement* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 12; 82 ILR, p. 225.

²⁵² 32 ILM, 1993, p. 1525. Note that letters of mutual recognition and commitment to the peace process were exchanged between the Prime Minister of Israel and the Chairman of the PLO on 9 September 1993. See e.g. K. Calvo-Goller, 'L'Accord du 13 Septembre 1993 entre L'Israël et l'OLP: Le Régime d'Autonomie Prévu par la Déclaration Israël/OLP', AFDI, 1993, p. 435. See also Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 442 ff.; *New Political Entities in Public and Private International Law* (eds. A. Shapira and M. Tabor), The Hague, 1999; E. Benvenisti, 'The Status of the Palestinian Authority' in *Arab–Israeli Accords: Legal Perspectives* (eds. E. Cotrain and C. Mallat), The Hague, 1996, p. 47, and Benvenisti,

this Declaration, the PLO team in the Jordanian–Palestinian delegation to the Middle East Peace Conference was accepted as representing the Palestinian people. It was agreed to establish a Palestinian Interim Self-Government Authority as an elected Council for the Palestinian people in the West Bank and Gaza (occupied by Israel since 1967) for a transitional period of up to five years leading to a permanent solution. Its jurisdiction was to cover the territory of the West Bank and Gaza, save for issues to be negotiated in the permanent status negotiations. Upon the entry into force of the Declaration, a transfer of authority was to commence from the Israel military government and its civil administration. The Cairo Agreement of 4 May 1994²⁵³ provided for the immediate withdrawal of Israeli forces from Jericho and the Gaza Strip and transfer of authority to a separately established Palestinian Authority. This Authority, distinct from the PLO it should be emphasised, was to have certain specified legislative, executive and judicial powers. The process continued with a transfer of further powers and responsibilities in a Protocol of 27 August 1995 and with the Interim Agreement on the West Bank and Gaza of 28 September 1995, under which an additional range of powers and responsibilities was transferred to the Palestinian Authority pending the election of the Council and arrangements were made for Israeli withdrawal from a number of cities and villages on the West Bank.²⁵⁴ An accord concerning Hebron followed in 1997²⁵⁵ and the Wye River agreement in 1998, both marking further Israeli redeployments, while the Sharm el Sheikh memorandum and a later Protocol of 1999 concerned safe-passage arrangements between the Palestinian Authority areas in Gaza and the West Bank.²⁵⁶ The increase in the territorial and jurisdictional competence of the Palestinian Authority established as a consequence of these arrangements raised the question of legal personality. While Palestinian statehood has clearly not been accepted by the international community, the Palestinian Authority can be regarded as possessing some form of limited international

'The Israeli–Palestinian Declaration of Principles: A Framework for Future Settlement', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 542, and P. Malanczuk, 'Some Basic Aspects of the Agreements Between Israel and the PLO from the Perspective of International Law', 7 EJIL, 1996, p. 485.

²⁵³ 33 ILM, 1994, p. 622.

²⁵⁴ See e.g. M. Benchikh, 'L'Accord Intérimaire Israélo-Palestinien sur la Cisjordanie et la bande de Gaza du 28 Septembre 1995', AFDI, 1995, p. 7, and *The Arab–Israeli Accords: Legal Perspectives* (eds. E. Cotran and C. Mallat), The Hague, 1996.

²⁵⁵ See e.g. A. Bockel, 'L'Accord d'Hebron (17 janvier 1997) et la Tentative de Relance du Processus de Paix Israélo-Palestinien', AFDI, 1997, p. 184.

²⁵⁶ See A. Bockel, 'L'Issue du Processus de Paix Israélo-Palestinien en Vue?', AFDI, 1999, p. 165.

personality.²⁵⁷ Such personality, however, derives from the agreements between Israel and the PLO and exists separately from the personality of the PLO as an NLM, which relies upon the recognition of third parties.²⁵⁸

As far as Namibia was concerned, the territory was regarded as having an international status²⁵⁹ and there existed an NLM recognised as the authentic representative of the people²⁶⁰ but it was, theoretically, administered by the UN Council for Namibia. This body was established in 1967 by the General Assembly in order to administer the territory and to prepare it for independence; it was disbanded in 1990. There were thirty-one UN member states on the Council, which was responsible to the General Assembly.²⁶¹ The Council sought to represent Namibian interests in international organisations and in conferences, and issued travel and identity documents to Namibians which were recognised by most states.²⁶² In 1974, the Council issued Decree No. 1 which sought to forbid the exploitation under South African auspices of the territory's resources, but little was in practice achieved by this Decree, which was not drafted in the clearest possible manner.²⁶³ The status of the Council was unclear, but it was clearly recognised as having a role within the UN context and may thus have possessed some form of qualified personality. It was, of course, distinct from SWAPO, the recognised NLM.

International public companies

This type of entity, which may be known by a variety of names, for example multinational public enterprises or international bodies

²⁵⁷ See e.g. K. Reece Thomas, 'Non-Recognition, Personality and Capacity: The Palestine Liberation Organisation and the Palestinian Authority in English Law', 29 *Anglo-American Law Review*, 2000, p. 228; *New Political Entities in Public and Private International Law With Special Reference to the Palestinian Entity* (eds. A. Shapiro and M. Tabory), The Hague, 1999, and C. Wasserstein Fassberg, 'Israel and the Palestinian Authority', 28 *Israel Law Review*, 1994, p. 319.

²⁵⁸ See e.g. M. Tabory, 'The Legal Personality of the Palestinian Autonomy' in Shapiro and Tabory, *New Political Entities*, p. 139.

²⁵⁹ The *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 3.

²⁶⁰ Assembly resolution 3295 (XXIX), recognising the South-West Africa People's Organisation (SWAPO) as the authentic representative of the Namibian people.

²⁶¹ The UK did not recognise the Council: see 408 HL Deb., col. 758, 23 April 1980.

²⁶² See e.g. J. F. Engers, 'The UN Travel and Identity Documents for Namibia', 65 *AJIL*, 1971, p. 571.

²⁶³ See *Decolonisation*, No. 9, December 1977.

corporate, is characterised in general by an international agreement providing for co-operation between governmental and private enterprises.²⁶⁴ One writer, for example, defined such entities as corporations which

have not been constituted by the exclusive application of one national law; whose members and directors represent several national sovereignties; whose legal personality is not based, or at any rate not entirely, on the decision of a national authority or the application of a national law; whose operations, finally, are governed, at least partially, by rules that do not stem from a single or even from several national laws.²⁶⁵

Such enterprises may vary widely in constitutional nature and in competences. Examples of such companies would include INTELSAT, established in 1973 as an intergovernmental structure for a global commercial telecommunications satellite system; Eurofima, established in 1955 by fourteen European states in order to lease equipment to the railway administrations of those states, and the Bank of International Settlement, created in 1930 by virtue of a treaty between five states, and the host country, Switzerland. The personality question will depend upon the differences between municipal and international personality. If the entity is given a range of powers and is distanced sufficiently from municipal law, an international person may be involved, but it will require careful consideration of the circumstances.

Transnational corporations

Another possible candidate for international personality is the transnational or multinational enterprise. Various definitions exist of this important phenomenon in international relations.²⁶⁶ They in essence constitute

²⁶⁴ See e.g. D. Fligler, *Multinational Public Corporations*, Washington, DC, 1967; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 65–6, and D. A. Ijalaye, *The Extension of Corporate Personality in International Law*, Leiden, 1978, pp. 57–146. See also P. Muchlinski, *Multinational Enterprises and the Law*, updated edn, Oxford, 1999.

²⁶⁵ Cited in Ijalaye, *Corporate Personality*, p. 69.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. C. W. Jenks, in *Transnational Law in a Changing Society* (eds. W. Friedman, L. Henkin and O. Lissitzyn), New York, 1972, p. 70; H. Baade, in *Legal Problems of a Code of Conduct for Multinational Enterprises* (ed. N. Horn), Boston, 1980; J. Charney, 'Transnational Corporations and Developing Public International Law', *Duke Law Journal*, 1983, p. 748; F. Rigaux, 'Transnational Corporations' in Bedjaoui, *International Law: Achievements and Prospects*, p. 121, and Henkin *et al.*, *International Law: Cases*

private business organisations comprising several legal entities linked together by parent corporations and are distinguished by size and multinational spread. In the years following the *Barcelona Traction* case,²⁶⁷ an increasing amount of practice has been evident on the international plane dealing with such corporations. What has been sought is a set of guidelines governing the major elements of the international conduct of these entities.²⁶⁸ However, progress has been slow and several crucial issues remain to be resolved, including the legal effect, if any, of such guidelines.²⁶⁹ The question of the international personality of transnational corporations remains an open one.²⁷⁰

and Materials, p. 368. See also Muchlinski, *Multinational Enterprises*; C. M. Vazquez, 'Direct vs Indirect Obligations of Corporations under International Law', 43 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 2005, p. 927; F. Johns, 'The Invisibility of the Transnational Corporation: An Analysis of International Law and Legal Theory', 19 *Melbourne University Law Review*, 1993–4, p. 893; D. Eshanov, 'The Role of Multinational Corporations from the Neoinstitutionalist and International Law Perspectives', 16 *New York University Environmental Law Journal*, 2008, p. 110, and S. R. Ratner, 'Corporations and Human Rights: A Theory of Legal Responsibility', 111 *Yale Law Journal*, 2001, p. 443.

²⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 46–7; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 220–1.

²⁶⁸ See e.g. OECD Guidelines for Multinational Enterprises, 75 US Dept. State Bull., p. 83 (1976), and ILO Tripartite Declaration of Principles concerning Multinational Enterprises and Social Policy, 17 ILM, pp. 423–30. See also Baade, *Legal Problems*, pp. 416–40. Note the OECD Principles of Corporate Governance, 1998 and the ILO Tripartite Declaration of Principles concerning Multinational Enterprises and Social Policy, 2000. See also the Draft Norms on Responsibilities for Transnational Corporations and Other Business Enterprises with Regard to Human Rights produced by the UN Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights' Sessional Working Group on the working methods and activities of transnational corporations, E/CN.4/Sub.2/2002/13, August 2002, and *Human Rights Standards and the Responsibilities of Transnational Corporations* (ed. M. Addo), The Hague, 1999.

²⁶⁹ See the Draft Code of Conduct produced by the UN Commission on Transnational Corporations, 22 ILM, pp. 177–206; 23 ILM, p. 627 and *ibid.*, p. 602 (Secretariat report on outstanding issues); E/1990/94 (1990) and the World Bank Guidelines on the Treatment of Foreign Direct Investment, 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1366. The Commission ceased work in 1993. The Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights adopted 'Norms on the Responsibilities of Transnational Corporations and Other Business Enterprises with Regard to Human Rights' in 2003: see E/CN.4/Sub.2/2003/12/Rev.2. Note the Andean Group commission decision 292 on a uniform code on Andean multinational enterprises, 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1295, and the Eastern and Southern African states charter on a regime of multinational industrial enterprises, *ibid.*, p. 696. See also the previous footnote.

²⁷⁰ The *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, p. 126 notes that the transnational corporation, while an established feature of international life, 'has not yet achieved independent status in international law'.

The right of all peoples to self-determination²⁷¹

The establishment of the legal right

This principle, which traces its origin to the concepts of nationality and democracy as evolved primarily in Europe, first appeared in major form after the First World War. Despite President Wilson's efforts, it was not included in the League of Nations Covenant and it was clearly not regarded as a legal principle.²⁷² However, its influence can be detected in the various provisions for minority protection²⁷³ and in the establishment of the mandates system based as it was upon the sacred trust concept. In the ten years before the Second World War, there was relatively little practice regarding self-determination in international law. A number of treaties concluded by the USSR in this period noted the principle,²⁷⁴ but in the *Aaland Islands* case it was clearly accepted by both the International Commission of Jurists and the Committee of Rapporteurs dealing with the situation that the principle of self-determination was not a legal rule of international law, but purely a political concept.²⁷⁵ The situation,

²⁷¹ See in general e.g. A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995; K. Knop, *Diversity and Self-Determination in International Law*, Cambridge, 2002; U. O. Umzurike, *Self-Determination in International Law*, Hamden, 1972; A. Rigo-Sureda, *The Evolution of the Right of Self-Determination*, Leiden, 1973; M. Pomerance, *Self-Determination in Law and Practice*, Leiden, 1982; Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 59–144; A. E. Buchanan, *Justice, Legitimacy and Self-Determination*, Oxford, 2004; D. Raic, *Statehood and the Law of Self-Determination*, The Hague, 2002; Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 107 ff., and Crawford, 'The General Assembly, the International Court and Self-Determination' in *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. A. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996, p. 585; Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, vol. II, pp. 17–35; Wilson, *International Law*; Tunkin, *Theory*, pp. 60–9; and Tomuschat, *Modern Law of Self-Determination*. See also M. Koskenniemi, 'National Self-Determination Today: Problems of Legal Theory and Practice', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 241; H. Quane, 'The UN and the Evolving Right to Self-Determination', 47 ICLQ, 1998, p. 537, and W. Ofuatey-Kodjoe, 'Self Determination' in *United Nations Legal Order* (eds. O. Schachter and C. Joyner), Cambridge, 1995, vol. I, p. 349.

²⁷² See A. Cobban, *The Nation-State and National Self-Determination*, London, 1969; D. H. Miller, *The Drafting of the Covenant*, New York, 1928, vol. II, pp. 12–13; S. Wambaugh, *Plebiscites since the World War*, Washington, 1933, vol. I, p. 42, and Pomerance, *Self-Determination*.

²⁷³ See e.g. I. Claude, *National Minorities*, Cambridge, 1955, and J. Lador-Lederer, *International Group Protection*, Leiden, 1968.

²⁷⁴ See e.g. the Baltic States' treaties, Martens, *Recueil Général de Traités*, 3rd Series, XI, pp. 864, 877 and 888, and Cobban, *Nation-State*, pp. 187–218. See also Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. IV, p. 56.

²⁷⁵ LNOJ Supp. No. 3, 1920, pp. 5–6 and Doc. B7/21/68/106[VII], pp. 22–3. See also J. Barros, *The Aaland Islands Question*, New Haven, 1968, and Verzijl, *International Law*, pp. 328–32.

which concerned the Swedish inhabitants of an island alleged to be part of Finland, was resolved by the League's recognition of Finnish sovereignty coupled with minority guarantees.

The Second World War stimulated further consideration of the idea and the principle was included in the UN Charter. Article 1(2) noted as one of the organisation's purposes the development of friendly relations among nations based upon respect for the principle of equal rights and self-determination, and article 55 reiterated the phraseology. It is disputed whether the reference to the principle in these very general terms was sufficient to entail its recognition as a binding right, but the majority view is against this. Not every statement of a political aim in the Charter can be regarded as automatically creative of legal obligations. On the other hand, its inclusion in the Charter, particularly within the context of the statement of purposes of the UN, provided the opportunity for the subsequent interpretation of the principle both in terms of its legal effect and consequences and with regard to its definition. It is also to be noted that Chapters XI and XII of the Charter deal with non-self-governing and trust territories and may be seen as relevant within the context of the development and definition of the right to self-determination, although the term is not expressly used.²⁷⁶

Practice since 1945 within the UN, both generally as regards the elucidation and standing of the principle and more particularly as regards its perceived application in specific instances, can be seen as having ultimately established the legal standing of the right in international law. This may be achieved either by treaty or by custom or indeed, more controversially, by virtue of constituting a general principle of law. All these routes are relevant, as will be seen. The UN Charter is a multilateral treaty which can be interpreted by subsequent practice, while the range of state and organisation practice evident within the UN system can lead to the formation of customary law. The amount of material dealing with self-determination in the UN testifies to the importance of the concept and some of the more significant of this material will be briefly noted.

Resolution 1514 (XV), the Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples, adopted in 1960 by eighty-nine votes to none, with nine abstentions, stressed that:

²⁷⁶ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 312; N. Bentwich and A. Martin, *Commentary on the Charter of the UN*, New York, 1950, p. 7; D. Nincic, *The Problem of Sovereignty in the Charter and the Practice of States*, The Hague, 1970, p. 221; H. Kelsen, *Law of the United Nations*, London, 1950, pp. 51–3, and H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, The Hague, 1950, pp. 147–9. See also Judge Tanaka, *South-West Africa cases*, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 288–9; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 451–2.

all peoples have the right to self-determination; by virtue of that right they freely determine their political status and freely pursue their economic, social and cultural development.

Inadequacy of political, social, economic or educational preparedness was not to serve as a protest for delaying independence, while attempts aimed at the partial or total disruption of the national unity and territorial integrity of a country were deemed incompatible with the UN Charter. The Colonial Declaration set the terms for the self-determination debate in its emphasis upon the colonial context and its opposition to secession, and has been regarded by some as constituting a binding interpretation of the Charter.²⁷⁷ The Declaration was reinforced by the establishment of a Special Committee on Decolonisation, which now deals with all dependent territories and has proved extremely active, and by the fact that virtually all UN resolutions dealing with self-determination expressly refer to it. Indeed, the International Court has specifically referred to the Colonial Declaration as an 'important stage' in the development of international law regarding non-self-governing territories and as the 'basis for the process of decolonisation'.²⁷⁸

In 1966, the General Assembly adopted the International Covenants on Human Rights. Both these Covenants have an identical first article, declaring *inter alia* that '[a]ll peoples have the right to self-determination. By virtue of that right they freely determine their political status', while states parties to the instruments 'shall promote the realisation of the right of self-determination and shall respect that right in conformity with the provisions of the Charter of the United Nations'. The Covenants came into force in 1976 and thus constitute binding provisions as between the parties, but in addition they also may be regarded as authoritative interpretations of several human rights provisions in the Charter, including self-determination. The 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations can be regarded as constituting an authoritative interpretation of the seven Charter provisions it expounds. The Declaration states *inter alia* that 'by virtue of the principle of equal rights and self-determination of peoples enshrined in the Charter of the United Nations, all people have the right freely to determine . . . their political status' while all states are under the duty to respect this right in accordance with the Charter. The Declaration was specifically intended

²⁷⁷ See e.g. O. Asamoah, *The Legal Significance of the Declarations of the General Assembly of the United Nations*, The Hague, 1966, pp. 177–85, and Shaw, *Title*, chapter 2.

²⁷⁸ The *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 31 and 32; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 49.

to act as an elucidation of certain important Charter provisions and was indeed adopted without opposition by the General Assembly.²⁷⁹

In addition to this general, abstract approach, the UN organs have dealt with self-determination in a series of specific resolutions with regard to particular situations and this practice may be adduced as reinforcing the conclusions that the principle has become a right in international law by virtue of a process of Charter interpretation. Numerous resolutions have been adopted in the General Assembly and also the Security Council.²⁸⁰ It is also possible that a rule of customary law has been created since practice in the UN system is still state practice, but the identification of the *opinio juris* element is not easy and will depend upon careful assessment and judgment.

Judicial discussion of the principle of self-determination has been relatively rare and centres on the *Namibia*²⁸¹ and *Western Sahara*²⁸² advisory opinions by the International Court. In the former case, the Court emphasised that 'the subsequent development of international law in regard to non-self-governing territories as enshrined in the Charter of the United Nations made the principle of self-determination applicable to all of them'.²⁸³ The *Western Sahara* case reaffirmed this point.²⁸⁴ This case arose out of the decolonisation of that territory, controlled by Spain as the colonial power but subject to irredentist claims by Morocco and Mauritania. The Court was asked for an opinion with regard to the legal ties between the territory at that time and Morocco and the Mauritanian entity. The Court stressed that the request for an opinion arose out of the consideration by the General Assembly of the decolonisation of Western Sahara and that the right of the people of the territory to self-determination constituted a basic assumption of the questions put to the Court.²⁸⁵ After

²⁷⁹ Adopted in resolution 2625 (XXV) without a vote. See e.g. R. Rosenstock, 'The Declaration of Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations', 65 AJIL, 1971, pp. 16, 111 and 115.

²⁸⁰ See e.g. Assembly resolutions 1755 (XVII); 2138 (XXI); 2151 (XXI); 2379 (XXIII); 2383 (XXIII) and Security Council resolutions 183 (1963); 301 (1971); 377 (1975) and 384 (1975).

²⁸¹ ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 3.

²⁸² ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 30. See also M. N. Shaw, 'The Western Sahara Case', 49 BYIL, p. 119.

²⁸³ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 31; 49 ILR, pp. 3, 21.

²⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 31; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 48.

²⁸⁵ ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 68; 59 ILR, p. 85. See in particular the views of Judge Dillard that 'a norm of international law has emerged applicable to the decolonisation of those non-self-governing territories which are under the aegis of the United Nations', ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 121-2; 59 ILR, p. 138. See also Judge Petren, ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 110; 59 ILR, p. 127.

analysing the Charter provisions and Assembly resolutions noted above, the Court concluded that the ties which had existed between the claimants and the territory during the relevant period of the 1880s were not such as to affect the application of resolution 1514 (XV), the Colonial Declaration, in the decolonisation of the territory and in particular the right to self-determination. In other words, it is clear that the Court regarded the principle of self-determination as a legal one in the context of such territories.

The Court moved one step further in the *East Timor (Portugal v. Australia)* case²⁸⁶ when it declared that 'Portugal's assertion that the right of peoples to self-determination, as it evolved from the Charter and from United Nations practice, has an *erga omnes* character, is irreproachable.' The Court emphasised that the right of peoples to self-determination was 'one of the essential principles of contemporary international law'.²⁸⁷ However, in that case, the Court, while noting that for both Portugal and Australia, East Timor (under Indonesian military occupation since the invasion of 1975) constituted a non-self-governing territory and pointing out that the people of East Timor had the right to self-determination, held that the absence of Indonesia from the litigation meant that the Court was unable to exercise its jurisdiction.²⁸⁸ These propositions were all reaffirmed by the International Court in the *Construction of a Wall* advisory opinion.²⁸⁹

The issue of self-determination came before the Supreme Court of Canada in *Reference Re Secession of Quebec* in 1998 in the form of three questions posed. The second question asked whether there existed in international law a right to self-determination which would give Quebec the right unilaterally to secede.²⁹⁰ The Court declared that the principle of self-determination 'has acquired a status beyond "convention" and is considered a general principle of international law'.²⁹¹

²⁸⁶ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 102; 105 ILR, p. 226. ²⁸⁷ *Ibid.*

²⁸⁸ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 105–6. The reason related to the principle that the Court is unable to exercise jurisdiction over a state without the consent of that state. The Court took the view that Portugal's claims against Australia could not be decided upon without an examination of the position of Indonesia, which had not consented to the jurisdiction of the Court. See further below, chapter 19, p. 1078.

²⁸⁹ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 171–2; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 89–91.

²⁹⁰ (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385; 115 ILR, p. 536. The first question concerned the existence or not in Canadian constitutional law of a right to secede, and the third question asked whether in the event of a conflict constitutional or international law would have priority. See further below, chapter 10, p. 522, on the question of secession and self-determination.

²⁹¹ (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 434–5.

The definition of self-determination

If the principle exists as a legal one, and it is believed that such is the case, the question arises then of its scope and application. As noted above, UN formulations of the principle from the 1960 Colonial Declaration to the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law and the 1966 International Covenants on Human Rights stress that it is the right of 'all peoples'. If this is so, then all peoples would become thereby to some extent subjects of international law as the direct repositories of international rights, and if the definition of 'people' used was the normal political-sociological one,²⁹² a major rearrangement of international law perceptions would have been created. In fact, that has not occurred and an international law concept of what constitutes a people for these purposes has been evolved, so that the 'self' in question must be determined within the accepted colonial territorial framework. Attempts to broaden this have not been successful and the UN has always strenuously opposed any attempt at the partial or total disruption of the national unity and territorial integrity of a country.²⁹³ The UN has based its policy on the proposition that 'the territory of a colony or other non-self-governing territory has under the Charter a status separate and distinct from the territory of the state administering it' and that such status was to exist until the people of that territory had exercised the right to self-determination.²⁹⁴ Self-determination has also been used in conjunction with the principle of territorial integrity so as to protect the territorial framework of the colonial period in the decolonisation process and to prevent a rule permitting secession from independent states from arising.²⁹⁵ The Canadian Supreme Court noted in the *Quebec* case that 'international law expects that the right to self-determination will be exercised by peoples within the framework of existing sovereign states and consistently with the maintenance of the territorial integrity of

²⁹² See e.g. Cobban, *Nation-State*, p. 107, and K. Deutsche, *Nationalism and Social Communications*, New York, 1952. See also the *Greco-Bulgarian Communities* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 17; 5 AD, p. 4.

²⁹³ See e.g. the Colonial Declaration 1960; the 1970 Declaration on Principles and article III [3] of the OAU Charter.

²⁹⁴ 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law. Note also that resolution 1541 (XV) declared that there is an obligation to transmit information regarding a territory 'which is geographically separate and is distinct ethnically and/or culturally from the country administering it'.

²⁹⁵ See e.g. T. M. Franck, *The Power of Legitimacy Among Nations*, Oxford, 1990, pp. 153 ff.; Franck, 'Fairness in the International Legal and Institutional System', 240 HR, 1993 III, pp. 13, 127-49; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, chapter 11, and Shaw, *Title*, chapters 3 and 4.

those states'.²⁹⁶ Self-determination as a concept is capable of developing further so as to include the right to secession from existing states,²⁹⁷ but that has not as yet convincingly happened.²⁹⁸ It clearly applies within the context, however, of decolonisation of the European empires and thus provides the peoples of such territories with a degree of international personality.

The principle of self-determination provides that the people of the colonially defined territorial unit in question may freely determine their own political status. Such determination may result in independence, integration with a neighbouring state, free association with an independent state or any other political status freely decided upon by the people concerned.²⁹⁹ Self-determination also has a role within the context of creation of statehood, preserving the sovereignty and independence of states, in providing criteria for the resolution of disputes, and in the area of the permanent sovereignty of states over natural resources.³⁰⁰

Individuals³⁰¹

The question of the status in international law of individuals is closely bound up with the rise in the international protection of human rights.

²⁹⁶ (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 436; 115 ILR, p. 536.

²⁹⁷ Note that the Canadian Supreme Court did refer to 'exceptional circumstances' in which a right of secession 'may' arise: see further below, chapter 10, p. 289.

²⁹⁸ But see further below, chapter 6, p. 522, with regard to the evolution of self-determination as a principle of human rights operating within independent states.

²⁹⁹ *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 33 and 68. See also Judge Dillard, *ibid.*, p. 122; 59 ILR, pp. 30, 50, 85, 138. See Assembly resolution 1541 (XV) and the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law.

³⁰⁰ See the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 102; 105 ILR, p. 226, where Portugal claimed *inter alia* that Australia's agreement with Indonesia dealing with the exploration and exploitation of the continental shelf in the 'Timor Gap' violated the right of the people of East Timor to self-determination.

³⁰¹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, chapter 8; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, pp. 48–55; Brownlie, *Principles*, chapter 25; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 106–12; C. Norgaard, *Position of the Individual in International Law*, Leiden, 1962; Cassese, *International Law*, pp. 142 ff.; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 643; R. Müllerson, 'Human Rights and the Individual as a Subject of International Law: A Soviet View', 1 EJIL, 1990, p. 33; P. M. Dupuy, 'L'individu et le Droit International', 32 *Archives de Philosophie du Droit*, 1987, p. 119; H. Lauterpacht, *Human Rights in International Law*, London, 1951, and *International Law: Collected Papers*, vol. II, p. 487, and *The Individual's Duties to the Community and the Limitations on Human Rights and Freedoms under Article 29 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights*, study prepared by Daes, 1983, E/CN.4/Sub.2/432/Rev.2. See also below, chapter 6.

This section will be confined to some general comments about the former. The object theory in this regard maintains that individuals constitute only the subject-matter of intended legal regulation as such. Only states, and possibly international organisations, are subjects of the law.³⁰² This has been a theory of limited value. The essence of international law has always been its ultimate concern for the human being and this was clearly manifest in the Natural Law origins of classical international law.³⁰³ The growth of positivist theories, particularly in the nineteenth century, obscured this and emphasised the centrality and even exclusivity of the state in this regard. Nevertheless, modern practice does demonstrate that individuals have become increasingly recognised as participants and subjects of international law. This has occurred primarily but not exclusively through human rights law.

The link between the state and the individual for international law purposes has historically been the concept of nationality. This was and remains crucial, particularly in the spheres of jurisdiction and the international protection of the individual by the state. It is often noted that the claim of an individual against a foreign state, for example, becomes subsumed under that of his national state.³⁰⁴ Each state has the capacity to determine who are to be its nationals and this is to be recognised by other states in so far as it is consistent with international law, although in order for other states to accept this nationality there has to be a genuine connection between the state and the individual in question.³⁰⁵

Individuals as a general rule lack standing to assert violations of international treaties in the absence of a protest by the state of nationality,³⁰⁶ although states may agree to confer particular rights on individuals which will be enforceable under international law, independently of municipal law. Under article 304(b) of the Treaty of Versailles, 1919, for example, nationals of the Allied and Associated Powers could bring cases against Germany before the Mixed Arbitral Tribunal in their own names for

³⁰² See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 106–7.

³⁰³ See e.g. Grotius, *De Jure Praedae Commentarius*, 1604, cited in Daes, *Individual's Duties*, p. 44, and Lauterpacht, *Human Rights*, pp. 9, 70 and 74.

³⁰⁴ See the *Panevezys–Saldutiskis* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 76; 9 AD, p. 308. See also the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case (Jurisdiction), PCIJ, Series A, No. 2 (1924); 2 AD, p. 27. See also below, chapter 14, p. 808.

³⁰⁵ See the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 4, 22–3; 22 ILR, p. 349, and below, chapter 14, p. 808.

³⁰⁶ See e.g. *US v. Noriega* 746 F.Supp. 1506, 1533 (1990); 99 ILR, pp. 143, 175.

compensation, while the Treaty of 1907 between five Central American states establishing the Central American Court of Justice provided for individuals to bring cases directly before the Court.³⁰⁷

This proposition was reiterated in the *Danzig Railway Officials* case³⁰⁸ by the Permanent Court of International Justice, which emphasised that under international law treaties did not as such create direct rights and obligations for private individuals, although particular treaties could provide for the adoption of individual rights and obligations enforceable by the national courts where this was the intention of the contracting parties. Under the provisions concerned with minority protection in the 1919 Peace Treaties, it was possible for individuals to apply directly to an international court in particular instances. Similarly the Tribunal created under the Upper Silesia Convention of 1922 decided that it was competent to hear cases by the nationals of a state against that state.³⁰⁹

Since then a wide range of other treaties have provided for individuals to have rights directly and have enabled individuals to have direct access to international courts and tribunals. One may mention as examples the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950; the European Communities treaties, 1957; the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights, 1969; the Optional Protocol to the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966; the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination, 1965 and the Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes, 1965.

However, the question of the legal personality of individuals under international law extends to questions of direct criminal responsibility also. It is now established that international law proscribes certain heinous conduct in a manner that imports direct individual criminal responsibility. This is dealt with in chapter 8.

International organisations

International organisations have played a crucial role in the sphere of international personality. Since the nineteenth century a growing number of such organisations have appeared and thus raised the issue of international legal personality. In principle it is now well established that international organisations may indeed possess objective international legal

³⁰⁷ See Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 39. ³⁰⁸ PCIJ, Series B, No. 15 (1928); 4 AD, p. 287.

³⁰⁹ See e.g. *Steiner and Gross v. Polish State* 4 AD, p. 291.

personality.³¹⁰ Whether that will be so in any particular instance will depend upon the particular circumstances of that case. Whether an organisation possesses personality in international law will hinge upon its constitutional status, its actual powers and practice. Significant factors in this context will include the capacity to enter into relations with states and other organisations and conclude treaties with them, and the status it has been given under municipal law. Such elements are known in international law as the indicia of personality. International organisations will be dealt with in chapter 23.

The acquisition, nature and consequences of legal personality – some conclusions

The above survey of existing and possible subjects of international law demonstrates both the range of interaction upon the international scene by entities of all types and the pressures upon international law to come to terms with the contemporary structure of international relations. The International Court clearly recognised the multiplicity of models of personality in stressing that ‘the subjects of law in any legal system are not necessarily identical in their nature or in the extent of their rights.’³¹¹ There are, however, two basic categories – objective and qualified personality. In the former case, the entity is subject to a wide range of international rights and duties and it will be entitled to be accepted as an international person by any other international person with which it is conducting relations. In other words, it will operate *erga omnes*. The creation of objective international personality will of necessity be harder to achieve and will require the action in essence of the international community as a whole or a substantial element of it. The Court noted in the *Reparation* case that:

fifty states, representing the vast majority of the members of the international community, have the power, in conformity with international law, to bring into being an entity possessing objective international personality and not merely personality recognised by them alone, together with capacity to bring international claims.³¹²

³¹⁰ See the *Reparation for Injuries* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318. See also the *Interpretation of the Agreement of 25 March 1951 between the WHO and Egypt* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 73, 89–90; 62 ILR, pp. 450, 473–4.

³¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 178; 16 AD, p. 321.

³¹² ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 185; 16 AD, p. 330. H. Lauterpacht wrote that, ‘[I]n each particular case the question whether . . . a body is a subject of international law must be answered in a pragmatic manner by reference to actual experience and to the reason of the law as

The attainment of qualified personality, on the other hand, binding only the consenting subject, may arise more easily and it is clear that in this respect at least theory ought to recognise existing practice. Any legal person may accept that another entity possesses personality in relation to itself and that determination will operate only *in personam*.

States are the original and major subjects of international law. Their personality derives from the very nature and structure of the international system. Statehood will arise as a result of the factual satisfaction of the stipulated legal criteria. The constitutive theory of recognition is not really acceptable, although recognition, of course, contributes valuable evidence of adherence to the required criteria. All states, by virtue of the principle of sovereign equality, will enjoy the same degree of international legal personality. It has been argued that some international organisations, rather than being derivative subjects of international law, will as sovereign or self-governing legal communities possess an inherent personality directly from the system and will thus constitute general and even objective subjects of international law. Non-sovereign persons, including non-governmental organisations and individuals, would be derived subjects possessing only such international powers as conferred exceptionally upon them by the necessary subjects of international law.³¹³ This view may be questioned, but it is true that the importance of practice via the larger international organisations cannot be underestimated.

Similarly the role of the Holy See (particularly prior to 1929) as well as the UN experience demonstrates that the derivative denomination is unsatisfactory. The significance of this relates to their ability to extend their international rights and duties on the basis of both constituent instruments and subsequent practice and to their capacity to affect the creation of further international persons and to play a role in the norm-creating process.

Recognition, acquiescence and estoppel are important principles in the context of international personality, not only with regard to states and international organisations but throughout the range of subjects. They will affect not only the creation of new subjects but also the definition of their nature and rights and duties.

Personality may be acquired by a combination of treaty provisions and recognition or acquiescence by other international persons. For

distinguished from a preconceived notion as to who can be subjects of international law', *International Law and Human Rights*, p. 12.

³¹³ See e.g. F. Seyersted, 'International Personality of Intergovernmental Organisations', 4 *IJIL*, 1964, p. 19.

instance, the International Committee of the Red Cross, a private non-governmental organisation subject to Swiss law, was granted special functions under the 1949 Geneva Red Cross Conventions and has been accepted as being able to enter into international agreements under international law with international persons, such as with the EEC under the World Food Programme.³¹⁴ Another possible method of acquiring international personality is by subjecting an agreement between a recognised international person and a private party directly to the rules of international law. This would have the effect of rendering the latter an international person in the context of the arrangement in question so as to enable it to invoke in the field of international law the rights it derives from that arrangement.³¹⁵ While this currently may not be entirely acceptable to Third World states, this is probably because of a perception of the relevant rules of international law which may very well alter.³¹⁶ Personality may also be acquired by virtue of being directly subjected to international duties. This would apply to individuals in specific cases such as war crimes, piracy and genocide, and might in the future constitute the method by which transnational corporations may be accepted as international persons.

Community needs with regard to the necessity to preserve international stability and life may well be of relevance in certain exceptional circumstances. In the case of non-state territorial entities that are not totally dominated by a state, there would appear to be a community need to ensure that at least the rules relating to the resort to force and the laws of war operate. Not to accept some form of qualified personality in this area might be to free such entities from having to comply with such rules and that clearly would affect community requirements.³¹⁷ The determining point here, it is suggested, must be the degree of effective control maintained by the entity in its territorial confines. However, even so, recognition may overcome this hurdle, as the recognition of Byelorussia

³¹⁴ See e.g. Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 48, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, p. 12.

³¹⁵ See in particular the *Texaco v. Libya* case, 53 ILR, pp. 389, 457–62.

³¹⁶ Note the intriguing suggestion raised in the study prepared for the Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East, that an agreement between autonomous public entities (not being subjects of international law) might create an international person: UNJYB, 1971, pp. 215–18. The study was very cautious about this possibility.

³¹⁷ See the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 56, 134 and 149; 49 ILR, pp. 3, 46, 124, 139. See also Security Council resolutions 326 (1973), 328 (1973), 403 (1977), 406 (1977), 411 (1977) and 424 (1978) in which the Council condemned Rhodesian attacks against neighbouring states and recognised that the entity was subject to the norms relating to the use of force.

and the Ukraine as non-sovereign state entities prior to the demise of the Soviet Union and the emergence of these entities as the independent states of Belarus and Ukraine demonstrated.³¹⁸

All these entities may be easily contained within the category of qualified personality, possessing a limited range of rights and duties valid as against those accepting their personality. There are no preset rules governing the extent of rights and duties of international persons. This will depend upon the type of entity concerned, its claims and expectations, functions and attitude adopted by the international community. The exception here would be states which enter upon life with an equal range of rights and obligations. Those entities with objective personality will, it is suggested, benefit from a more elastic perception of the extent of their rights and duties in the form of a wider interpretation of implied powers through practice. However, in the case of qualified subjects implied powers will be more difficult to demonstrate and accept and the range of their rights and duties will be much more limited. The presumption, thus, will operate the other way.

The precise catalogue of rights and duties is accordingly impossible to list in advance; it will vary from case to case. The capacity to function on the international scene in legal proceedings of some description will not be too uncommon, while the power to make treaties will be less widespread. As to this the International Law Commission noted that 'agreements concluded between entities other than states or than international organisations seem too heterogeneous a group to constitute a general category, and the relevant body of international practice is as yet too exiguous for the characteristics of such a general category to be inferred from it'.³¹⁹ The extent to which subjects may be internationally responsible is also unclear, although in general such an entity will possess responsibility to the extent of its rights and duties; but many problem areas remain. Similarly controversial is the norm-creating role of such diverse entities, but the practice of all international persons is certainly relevant material upon which to draw in an elucidation of the rules and principles of international law, particularly in the context of the entity in question.

International personality thus centres, not so much upon the capacity of the entity as such to possess international rights and duties, as upon

³¹⁸ See e.g. UKMIL, 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 340. Byelorussia and the Ukraine were separate members of the UN and parties to a number of conventions: *ibid*.

³¹⁹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, pp. 125–6.

the actual attribution of rights and/or duties on the international plane as determined by a variety of factors ranging from claims made to prescribed functions. Procedural capacity with regard to enforcement is important but not essential,³²⁰ but in the case of non-individual entities the claimant will have to be in 'such a position that it possesses, in regard to its members, rights which it is entitled to ask them to respect'.³²¹ This, noted the International Court, expressed 'the essential test where a group, whether composed of states, of tribes or of individuals, is claimed to be a legal entity distinct from its members'.³²²

A wide variety of non-subjects exist and contribute to the evolution of the international system. Participation and personality are two concepts, but the general role played in the development of international relations and international law by individuals and entities of various kinds that are not international legal subjects as such needs to be appreciated.

Suggestions for further reading

A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995

J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006

R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994

N. Schrijver, 'The Changing Nature of State Sovereignty', 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 65

³²⁰ See e.g. Norgaard, *Position of the Individual*, p. 35. See also the *Peter Pázmány University* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 61 (1933); 7 AD, p. 490.

³²¹ *Reparation for Injuries* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 178; 16 AD, pp. 318, 321.

³²² *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 63; 59 ILR, p. 14, 80.

The international protection of human rights

The nature of human rights¹

The preamble to the Universal Declaration of Human Rights adopted on 10 December 1948 emphasises that ‘recognition of the inherent dignity and of the equal and inalienable rights of all members of the human family is the foundation of freedom, justice and peace in the world’. While there is widespread acceptance of the importance of human rights in the international structure, there is considerable confusion as to their precise nature and role in international law.² The question of what is meant by a ‘right’ is itself controversial and the subject of intense jurisprudential debate.³ Some ‘rights’, for example, are intended as immediately enforceable

¹ See e.g. H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950; D. Weissbrodt, J. Fitzpatrick and F. Newman, *International Human Rights*, 3rd edn, Cincinnati, 2001; J. Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, London, 2002; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 656; F. Sudre, *Droit International et Européen des Droits de l’Homme*, 3rd edn, Paris, 1997; M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and L. C. Chen, *Human Rights and World Public Order*, New Haven, 1980; L. Sohn and T. Buergenthal, *International Protection of Human Rights*, Indianapolis, 1973; *Human Rights in International Law* (ed. T. Meron), Oxford, 2 vols., 1984; A. H. Robertson and J. Merrills, *Human Rights in the World*, 4th edn, Manchester, 1996; A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapter 19; *Guide to International Human Rights Practice* (ed. H. Hannum), 4th edn, Ardsley, 2004; J. Donnelly, *International Human Rights*, Boulder, 1993; D. R. Forsythe, *Human Rights in International Relations*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2006; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 6; *Human Rights: An Agenda for the Next Century* (eds. L. Henkin and L. Hargrove), Washington, 1994; T. Meron, *The Humanization of International Law*, The Hague, 2006; C. Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, Oxford, 2003; R. K. M. Smith, *Text and Materials on International Human Rights*, London, 2007, and H. Steiner, P. Alston and R. Goodman, *International Human Rights in Context*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008.

² See e.g. M. Moskowitz, *The Policies and Dynamics of Human Rights*, London, 1968, pp. 98–9, and McDougal et al., *Human Rights*, pp. 63–8.

³ See e.g. W. N. Hohfeld, ‘Fundamental Legal Conceptions as Applied to Judicial Reasoning’, 23 *Yale Law Journal*, 1913, p. 16, and R. Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*, London, 1977. See also J. Shestack, ‘The Jurisprudence of Human Rights’ in Meron, *Human Rights in International Law*, vol. I, p. 69, and M. Cranston, *What Are Human Rights?*, London, 1973.

binding commitments, others merely as specifying a possible future pattern of behaviour.⁴ The problem of enforcement and sanctions with regard to human rights in international law is another issue which can affect the characterisation of the phenomenon. There are writers who regard the high incidence of non-compliance with human rights norms as evidence of state practice that argues against the existence of a structure of human rights principles in international law.⁵ Although sight must not be lost of violations of human rights laws, such an approach is not only academically incorrect but also profoundly negative.⁶ The concept of human rights is closely allied with ethics and morality. Those rights that reflect the values of a community will be those with the most chance of successful implementation. Positive rights may be taken to include those rights enshrined within a legal system, whether or not reflective of moral considerations, whereas a moral right is not necessarily enforceable by law. One may easily discover positive rights. Deducing or inferring moral rights is another matter entirely and will depend upon the perception of the person seeking the existence of a particular right.⁷

Rights may be seen as emanating from various sources, whether religion or the nature of man or the nature of society. The Natural Law view, as expressed in the traditional formulations of that approach or by virtue of the natural rights movement, is that certain rights exist as a result of a higher law than positive or man-made law. Such a higher law constitutes a universal and absolute set of principles governing all human beings in time and space. The natural rights approach of the seventeenth century, associated primarily with John Locke, founded the existence of such inalienable rights as the rights to life, liberty and property upon a social contract marking the end of the difficult conditions of the state of nature. This theory enabled recourse to be had to a superior type of law and thus

⁴ Compare, for example, article 2 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966 with article 2 of the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, 1966.

⁵ See e.g. J. S. Watson, 'Legal Theory, Efficacy and Validity in the Development of Human Rights Norms in International Law', *University of Illinois Law Forum*, 1979, p. 609; Watson, 'Autointerpretation, Competence and the Continuing Validity of Article 2(7) of the UN Charter', 71 *AJIL*, 1977, p. 60, and Watson, *Theory and Reality in the International Protection of Human Rights*, Ardsley, 1999.

⁶ See e.g. R. Higgins, 'Reality and Hope and International Human Rights: A Critique', 9 *Hofstra Law Review*, 1981, p. 1485.

⁷ See M. Cranston, 'What are Human Rights?' in Laquer and Rubin, *Human Rights Reader*, pp. 17, 19.

was able to provide a powerful method of restraining arbitrary power.⁸ Although this approach fell out of favour in the nineteenth century due to the problems of its non-empirical and diffuse methodology, it proved of immense value in the last century in the establishment of human rights within the international community as universal principles. Positivism as a theory emphasised the authority of the state and as such left little place for rights in the legal system other than specific rights emanating from the constitutional structure of that system,⁹ while the Marxist doctrine, although based upon the existence of certain immutable historical laws governing the development of society, nevertheless denied the existence of rights outside the framework of the legal order.¹⁰ Modern rights theories cover a wide range of approaches, and this clearly emphasises the need to come to terms with the requirements of an evolving legal system that cannot be totally comprehended in terms of that system itself.¹¹

Of particular interest is the work of the policy-oriented movement that seeks to identify, characterise and order a wide variety of relevant factors in the process of human rights creation and equipment. Eight interdependent values are noted (viz. demands relating to respect, power, enlightenment, well-being, health, skill, affection and rectitude) and various environmental influences stressed. Human dignity is seen as the key concept in relation to these values and to the ultimate goal of a world community in which a democratic distribution of values is sought.¹²

All these theories emphasise the complexity of the nature of the concept of human rights in the context of general legal and political processes, but also the importance and centrality of such notions. The broad issues are similarly raised within the framework of international law.

⁸ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *International Law*; R. Tuck, *Natural Rights Theories*, Cambridge, 1979; J. Finnis, *Natural Law and Natural Rights*, Oxford, 1980, and McDougal *et al.*, *Human Rights*, pp. 68–71. See also Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, chapter 2, and above, chapter 1.

⁹ See e.g. D. Lloyd, *Introduction to Jurisprudence*, 4th edn, London, 1979, chapter 4. See also H. Hart, *The Concept of Law*, Oxford, 1961; McDougal *et al.*, *Human Rights*, pp. 73–5, and above, chapters 1 and 2.

¹⁰ See e.g. Lloyd, *Jurisprudence*, chapter 10, and McDougal *et al.*, *Human Rights*, pp. 76–9. See also below, p. 268.

¹¹ See e.g. J. Rawls, *A Theory of Justice*, Oxford, 1971; E. Cahn, *The Sense of Injustice*, Bloomington, 1949; R. Nozick, *Anarchy, State and Utopia*, Oxford, 1974, and Dworkin, *Taking Rights Seriously*. See also S. Davidson, *Human Rights*, Buckingham, 1993, chapter 3.

¹² See McDougal *et al.*, *Human Rights*, especially pp. 82–93.

Ideological approaches to human rights in international law

The view adopted by the Western world with regard to international human rights law in general terms has tended to emphasise the basic civil and political rights of individuals, that is to say those rights that take the form of claims limiting the power of government over the governed. Such rights would include due process, freedom of expression, assembly and religion, and political participation in the process of government. The consent of the governed is seen as crucial in this process.¹³ The approach of the Soviet Union was to note the importance of basic rights and freedoms for international peace and security, but to emphasise the role of the state. Indeed, the source of human rights principles was seen as the state. Tunkin wrote that the content of the principle of respect for human rights in international law may be expressed in three propositions:

- (1) all states have a duty to respect the fundamental rights and freedoms of all persons within their territories; (2) states have a duty not to permit discrimination by reason of sex, race, religion or language, and (3) states have a duty to promote universal respect for human rights and to co-operate with each other to achieve this objective.¹⁴

In other words, the focus was not upon the individual (as in Western conceptions of human rights) but solely upon the state. Human rights were not directly regulated by international law and individuals were not subjects of international law. Indeed, human rights were implemented by the state and matters basically and crucially within the domestic affairs of the state. As Tunkin emphasised, 'conventions on human rights do not grant rights directly to individuals'.¹⁵ Having stressed the central function of the state, the point was also made that the context of the international human rights obligations themselves was defined solely by the state in the light of the socio-economic advancement of that state. Accordingly, the nature and context of those rights would vary from state to state, depending upon the social system of the state in question. It was the particular

¹³ See e.g. R. Hauser, 'A First World View', in *Human Rights and American Foreign Policy* (eds. D. P. Kommers and G. Loescher), Notre Dame, 1979, p. 85.

¹⁴ G. Tunkin, *Theory of International Law*, London, 1974, p. 81. See also K. Tedin, 'The Development of the Soviet Attitude Towards Implementing Human Rights under the UN Charter', 5 HRJ, 1972, p. 399; R. N. Dean, 'Beyond Helsinki: The Soviet View of Human Rights in International Law', 21 Va. JIL, 1980, p. 55; P. Reddaway, 'Theory and Practice of Human Rights in the Soviet Union' in Kommers and Loescher, *Human Rights and American Foreign Policy*, p. 115, and Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, chapter 3.

¹⁵ Tunkin, *Theory*, p. 83.

socio-economic system of a state that would determine the concrete expression of an international human rights provision.¹⁶ In other words, the Soviet Union was able and willing to enter into many international agreements on human rights, on the basis that only a state obligation was incurred, with no direct link to the individual, and that such an obligation was one that the country might interpret in the light of its own socio-economic system. The supremacy or centrality of the state was the key in this approach. As far as the different kinds of human rights were concerned, the Soviet approach was to stress those dealing with economic and social matters and thus to minimise the importance of the traditional civil and political rights. However, a new approach to the question of international human rights began to emerge by the end of the 1980s, reflecting the changes taking place politically.¹⁷ In particular, the USSR began to take a different approach with regard to human rights treaties.¹⁸

The general approach of the Third World states has combined elements of both the previous perceptions.¹⁹ Concern with the equality and sovereignty of states, together with a recognition of the importance of social and economic rights, has characterised the Third World view. Such countries, in fact constituting a wide range of nations with differing interests and needs, and at different stages of development, have been much influenced by decolonisation and the struggle to obtain it and by the phenomenon of apartheid in South Africa. In addition, economic problems have played a large role in focusing their attention upon general developmental issues. Accordingly, the traditional civil and political rights have tended to lose their priority in the concerns of Third World states.²⁰ Of particular interest is the tension between the universalism of human rights and the relativism of cultural traditions. This has led to arguments by

¹⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 82–3.

¹⁷ See e.g. V. Vereshchetin and R. Müllerson, 'International Law in an Interdependent World', 28 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1990, pp. 291, 300.

¹⁸ *Ibid.* Note that on 10 February 1989, the USSR recognised the compulsory jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice with regard to six human rights treaties, including the Genocide Convention, 1948; the Racial Discrimination Convention, 1965; the Convention on Discrimination against Women, 1979, and the Torture Convention, 1984.

¹⁹ See e.g. R. Emerson, 'The Fate of Human Rights in the Third World', 27 *World Politics*, 1975, p. 201; G. Mower, 'Human Rights in Black Africa', 9 *HRJ*, 1976, p. 33; R. Zvobgo, 'A Third World View' in Kommers and Loescher, *Human Rights and American Foreign Policy*, p. 90, and M. Nawaz, 'The Concept of Human Rights in Islamic Law' in Symposium on International Law of Human Rights, 11 *Howard Law Journal*, 1965, p. 257.

²⁰ See generally T. Van Boven, 'Some Remarks on Special Problems Relating to Human Rights in Developing Countries', 3 *Revue des Droits de l'Homme*, 1970, p. 383. See further below, p. 391, on the Banjul Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights.

some adherents of the latter tendency that human rights can only be approached within the context of particular cultural or religious traditions, thus criticising the view that human rights are universal or transcultural. The danger, of course, is that states violating human rights that they have accepted by becoming parties to human rights treaties, as well as being bound by relevant customary international law, might seek to justify their actions by pleading cultural differences.²¹

The development of international human rights law²²

In the nineteenth century, the positivist doctrines of state sovereignty and domestic jurisdiction reigned supreme. Virtually all matters that today would be classified as human rights issues were at that stage universally regarded as within the internal sphere of national jurisdiction. The major exceptions to this were related to piracy *jure gentium* and slavery. In the latter case a number of treaties were entered into to bring about its abolition.²³ Concern also with the treatment of sick and wounded soldiers and with prisoners of war developed as from 1864 in terms of international instruments,²⁴ while states were required to observe certain minimum standards in the treatment of aliens.²⁵ In addition, certain agreements of a general welfare nature were beginning to be adopted by the turn of the century.²⁶ The nineteenth century also appeared to accept a right of humanitarian intervention, although its range and extent were unclear.²⁷

An important change occurred with the establishment of the League of Nations in 1919.²⁸ Article 22 of the Covenant of the League set up

²¹ See e.g. Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 517 ff.; E. Brems, *Human Rights: Universality and Diversity*, The Hague, 2001, and A. D. Renteln, *International Human Rights: Universalism versus Relativism*, Newbury Park, 1990.

²² See e.g. *The International Protection of Human Rights* (ed. E. Luard), London, 1967; Sohn and Buergenthal, *International Protection*; Lauterpacht, *International Law*; M. Moscovitz, *International Concern with Human Rights*, London, 1968, and M. Ganji, *The International Protection of Human Rights*, London, 1962.

²³ See e.g. C. Greenidge, *Slavery*, London, 1958, and V. Nanda and M. C. Bassiouni, 'Slavery and the Slave Trade: Steps towards Eradication', 12 *Santa Clara Law Review*, 1972, p. 424. See also ST/SOA/4.

²⁴ See generally G. Best, *War and Law Since 1945*, Oxford, 1994, and *Studies and Essays on International Humanitarian Law and Red Cross Principles* (ed. C. Swinarski), The Hague, 1984.

²⁵ See below, chapter 14.

²⁶ E.g. regarding the Prohibition of Night Work for Women in Industrial Employment and regarding the Prohibition of the Use of White Phosphorus in the Manufacture of Matches.

²⁷ See below, chapter 20, p. 1155. ²⁸ See below, chapter 23.

the mandates system for peoples in ex-enemy colonies 'not yet able to stand by themselves in the strenuous conditions of the modern world'. The mandatory power was obliged to guarantee freedom of conscience and religion and a Permanent Mandates Commission was created to examine the reports the mandatory authorities had undertaken to make. The arrangement was termed 'a sacred trust of civilisation'. Article 23 of the Covenant provided for just treatment of the native populations of the territories in question.²⁹ The 1919 peace agreements with Eastern European and Balkan states included provisions relating to the protection of minorities,³⁰ providing essentially for equality of treatment and opportunities for collective activity.³¹ These provisions were supervised by the League of Nations, to whom there was a right of petition.³²

Part XIII of the Treaty of Versailles provided for the creation of the International Labour Organisation, among the purposes of which were the promotion of better standards of working conditions and support for the right of association.³³ The impact of the Second World War upon the development of human rights law was immense as the horrors of the war and the need for an adequate international system to maintain international peace and protect human rights became apparent to all. In addition, the rise of non-governmental organisations, particularly in the sphere of human rights, has had an immense effect.³⁴ While the post-Second World War world witnessed the rise of intergovernmental committees and organs and courts to deal with human rights violations, whether by public debate, states' reports, comments, inter-state or individual petition procedures, recent years have seen the interposition of domestic amnesty laws and this

²⁹ See above, chapter 5, p. 224.

³⁰ See generally P. Thornberry, 'Is There a Phoenix in the Ashes? – International Law and Minority Rights', 15 *Texas International Law Journal*, 1980, p. 421; C. A. Macartney, *National States and National Minorities*, London, 1934, and I. Claude, *National Minorities: An International Problem*, Cambridge, 1955. See also M. N. Shaw, 'The Definition of Minorities in International Law' in *Protection of Minorities and Human Rights* (eds. Y. Dinstein and M. Tabor), Dordrecht, 1992, p. 1.

³¹ See e.g. the *Minority Schools in Albania* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 64, 1935, p. 17.

³² See Thornberry, 'Phoenix', pp. 433–54, and M. Jones, 'National Minorities: A Case Study in International Protection', 14 *Law and Contemporary Problems*, 1949, pp. 599, 610–24. See further below, p. 293.

³³ See further below, p. 338.

³⁴ See e.g. Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 1420 ff., and C. Chinkin, 'The Role of Non-Governmental Organisations in Standard Setting, Monitoring and Implementation of Human Rights' in *The Changing World of International Law in the 21st Century* (eds. J. J. Norton, M. Andendas and M. Footer), The Hague, 1998.

has given rise to the question of the acceptability of impunity.³⁵ Further developments have included the establishments of truth and reconciliation commissions³⁶ and various other alternative justice systems such as the Rwandan Gacaca court system,³⁷ while the extent to which participants in the international legal system apart from states have become involved both in the process of formulating and seeking the implementation of human rights and in being the subjects of human rights concern and regulation is marked.³⁸

Some basic principles

*Domestic jurisdiction*³⁹

The basic rule of international law providing that states have no right to encroach upon the preserve of other states' internal affairs is a consequence of the equality and sovereignty of states and is mirrored in article 2(7) of the UN Charter. It has, however, been subject to a process of reinterpretation in the human rights field⁴⁰ as this and the two succeeding

³⁵ See e.g. J. Gavron, 'Amnesties in the Light of Developments in International Law and the Establishment of the International Criminal Court', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 91. See also C. Jenkins, 'Amnesty for Gross Violations of Human Rights: A Better Way of Dealing with the Past?' in *Comparative Law in a Global Perspective* (ed. I. Edge), London, 2000, p. 345, and J. Dugard, 'Dealing with Crimes of a Past Regime: Is Amnesty Still an Option?', 16 Leiden JIL, 2000, p. 1. Note the Final Report of the Special Rapporteur on the Right to Restitution, Compensation and Rehabilitation for Victims of Gross Violations of Human Rights, E/CN.4/2000/62, January 2000, and *Chumbipuma Aguirre v. Peru*, the *Barrios Altos* case, where the Inter-American Court of Human Rights held that Peruvian amnesty laws were incompatible with the Inter-American Convention and thus void of any legal effect, judgment of 14 March 2001, 41 ILM, 2002, p. 93. Peru accepted this and altered its legislation, *ibid*.

³⁶ See e.g. Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 1344 ff.; the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act of South Africa 1995; R. G. Teitel, *Transitional Justice*, Oxford, 2001, and J. Dugard, 'Possible Conflicts of Jurisdiction with Truth Commissions' in *The Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court: A Commentary* (eds. A. Cassese, P. Gaeta and J. R. W. D. Jones), Oxford, 2002.

³⁷ See e.g. Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 1319 ff. See also below, chapter 8, p. 407.

³⁸ See e.g. *Non-State Actors and Human Rights* (ed. Philip Alston), Oxford, 2005, and A. Clapham, *Human Rights Obligations of Non-State Actors*, Oxford, 2006.

³⁹ See e.g. R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963; M. Rajan, *United Nations and Domestic Jurisdiction*, 2nd edn, London, 1961, and A. Cançado Trindade, 'The Domestic Jurisprudence of States in the Practice of the United Nations and Regional Organisations', 25 ICLQ, 1976, p. 715.

⁴⁰ Note that the question of the extent and content of domestic jurisdiction is a matter for international law: see *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* cases, PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, 1923; 2 AD, p. 349. See also below, chapter 12.

chapters will make apparent, so that states may no longer plead this rule as a bar to international concern and consideration of internal human rights situations.⁴¹ It is, of course, obvious that where a state accepts the right of individual petition under an international procedure, it cannot thereafter claim that the exercise of such a right constitutes interference with its domestic affairs.⁴²

*The exhaustion of domestic or local remedies rule*⁴³

This rule flows from the above principle. It is a method of permitting states to solve their own internal problems in accordance with their own constitutional procedures before accepted international mechanisms can be invoked, and is well established in general international law.⁴⁴ However, where such internal remedies are non-existent or unduly and unreasonably prolonged or unlikely to bring effective relief, the resort to international measures will not be required.⁴⁵ The existence of such a remedy must be certain not only in theory but also in practice.⁴⁶ A provision regarding the need to exhaust domestic remedies before the various international mechanisms may be resorted to appears in all the international and regional human rights instruments⁴⁷ and has been the subject of much consideration by the Human Rights Committee under the Optional Protocol

⁴¹ See also the resolution of the Institut de Droit International, 1989, H/Inf (90) 1, p. 131.

⁴² See e.g. *Miha v. Equatorial Guinea*, CCPR/C/51/D/414/1990, 10 August 1994, Human Rights Committee, para. 63.

⁴³ See e.g. A. Cançado Trindade, *The Application of the Rule of Exhaustion of Local Remedies in International Law*, Cambridge, 1983; C. Law, *The Local Remedies Rule in International Law*, Geneva, 1961, and C. F. Amerasinghe, *Local Remedies in International Law*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2004. See also C. F. Amerasinghe, 'The Rule of Exhaustion of Local Remedies and the International Protection of Human Rights', 17 *Indian Yearbook of International Affairs*, 1974, p. 3. and below, chapter 14, p. 819.

⁴⁴ See e.g. the *Ambatielos* case, 23 ILR, p. 306; the *Finnish Ships* case, 3 RIAA, p. 1479; 7 AD, p. 231, and the *Interhandel* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, pp. 26–7; 27 ILR, pp. 475, 490.

⁴⁵ See e.g. the *Robert E. Brown* case, 6 RIAA, p. 120; 2 AD, p. 66. See also the *Salem* case, 2 RIAA, p. 1161; 6 AD, p. 188; the *Nielsen* case, 2 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 413; 28 ILR, p. 210, and the *Second Cyprus* case (*Greece v. UK*), 2 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 186. See also the cases cited in the succeeding footnotes.

⁴⁶ See e.g. *Johnston v. Ireland*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 112 (1986); 89 ILR, p. 154, and *Open Door and Dublin Well Woman v. Ireland*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 246 (1992).

⁴⁷ See e.g. article 41(c), Civil and Political Rights Covenant and article 2, Optional Protocol; article 11(3), Racial Discrimination Convention; article 26, European Convention; article 50, Inter-American Convention, and article 50, Banjul Charter. See also ECOSOC resolution 1503 and UNESCO decision 104 EX/3.3, 1978, para. 14(IX).

procedure of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights,⁴⁸ and within the European Convention⁴⁹ and Inter-American Convention human rights systems.⁵⁰

Priorities of rights

Certain rights may not be derogated from in the various human rights instruments even in times of war or other public emergency threatening the nation. In the case of the European Convention⁵¹ these are the rights to life (except in cases resulting from lawful acts of war), the prohibition on torture and slavery, and non-retroactivity of criminal offences.⁵² In the case of the Inter-American Convention,⁵³ the following rights are non-derogable: the rights to juridical personality, life and humane treatment, freedom from slavery, freedom from *ex post facto* laws, freedom

⁴⁸ See e.g. S. Joseph, J. Schultz and M. Castan, *The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, chapter 6; the *Weinberger* case, Reports of the Human Rights Committee, A/36/40, p. 114 and A/44/40, p. 142 and the *Sara* case, A/49/40, annex X, Section C, para. 8.3. States are required to provide evidence that there would be a reasonable prospect that available remedies would be effective, *Torres Ramírez v. Uruguay*, *Selected Decisions under the Optional Protocol*, CCPR/C/OP/1, 1985, p. 3. See also e.g. *Baboeram-Adhin v. Suriname*, A/40/40, p. 187; 94 ILR, p. 377; *Muhonen v. Finland*, A/40/40, p. 164; 94 ILR, p. 389; *Solórzano v. Venezuela*, A/41/40, p. 134; 94 ILR, p. 400; *Holland v. Ireland* 115 ILR, p. 277 and *Faurisson v. France* 115 ILR, p. 355. See also, with regard to the UN Convention against Torture, *AE v. Switzerland*, CAT/C/14/D/24/1995.

⁴⁹ See, as to the position under the European Convention on Human Rights, e.g. the *Nielsen* case, 2 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 413; the *Second Cyprus* case (*Greece v. UK*), 2 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 186; the *Donnelly* case, 16 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 212; *Kjeldsen v. Denmark*, 15 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, p. 428; 58 ILR, p. 117; *Drozdz and Janousek v. France and Spain* 64 DR 97 (1989) and *Akdivar v. Turkey* 23 EHRR, 1997, p. 143. See also D. J. Harris, M. O'Boyle and C. Warbrick, *Law of the European Convention on Human Rights*, London, 1995, p. 608, and *Jacobs and White: European Convention on Human Rights* (eds. C. Ovey and R. C. A. White), 4th edn, Oxford, 2006, p. 485. The rule of exhaustion of domestic remedies applies also in inter-state cases: see *Cyprus v. Turkey* 2 DR 125 at 137–8 (first and second applications) and 13 DR 85, 150–3 (third application), although not with regard to legislative measures nor with regard to administrative actions in certain circumstances: see e.g. the *Greek* case, 12 *European Yearbook of Human Rights*, p. 196.

⁵⁰ See e.g. article 46(1)a of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights, 1969 and article 37 of the Regulations of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights. See also *Exceptions to the Exhaustion of Domestic Remedies in Cases of Indigency*, Advisory Opinion of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1990, 12 HRLJ, 1991, p. 20, and *Annual Report of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights* 1993, Washington, 1994, pp. 148, 185 and 266.

⁵¹ Article 15. See generally, R. Higgins, 'Derogations Under Human Rights Treaties', 48 BYIL, 1976–7, p. 281.

⁵² Articles 2, 3, 4(1) and 7. ⁵³ Article 27.

of conscience and religion, rights of the family, to a name, of the child, nationality and participation in government.⁵⁴ By article 4 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, the rights to life and recognition as a person before the law, the freedoms of thought, conscience and religion and the prohibition on torture, slavery, retroactivity of criminal legislation and imprisonment on grounds solely of inability to fulfil a contractual obligation are non-derogable.⁵⁵

Such non-derogable rights clearly are regarded as possessing a special place in the hierarchy of rights.⁵⁶ In addition, it must be noted, many rights are subject to a limitation or clawback clause, whereby the absolute right provided for will not operate in certain situations.⁵⁷ Those rights therefore that are not so limited may be regarded as of particular value.⁵⁸

Customary international law and human rights

In addition to the many international and regional treaty provisions concerning human rights to be noted in this and the next two chapters,⁵⁹ certain human rights may now be regarded as having entered into the category of customary international law in the light of state practice. These would certainly include the prohibition of torture, genocide and slavery and the principle of non-discrimination.⁶⁰ In addition, human rights established under treaty may constitute obligations *erga omnes* for the states parties.⁶¹

⁵⁴ Articles 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 12, 17, 18, 19, 20 and 23.

⁵⁵ Articles 6, 7, 8(1) and (2), 11, 15, 16 and 18. Note that the Banjul Charter contains no specific derogations clause.

⁵⁶ The fact that a right may not be derogated from may constitute evidence that the right concerned is part of *jus cogens*.

⁵⁷ See e.g. articles 8–11 of the European Convention, articles 12–14, 15–16 and 21–2 of the Inter-American Convention and articles 12, 18, 19, 21 and 22 of the Civil and Political Rights Covenant. See also Higgins, 'Derogations'.

⁵⁸ See e.g. the due process rights.

⁵⁹ Note that questions relating to the interpretation of and reservations to human rights treaties will be noted below in chapter 16, pp. 932 and 913, while the issue of succession to human rights treaties will be noted below in chapter 17, p. 981.

⁶⁰ See e.g. *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, vol. II, pp. 161 ff. and *Filartiga v. Pena-Irala* 630 F.2d 876; 77 ILR, p. 169. See also T. Meron, *Human Rights and Humanitarian Norms as Customary Law*, Oxford, 1989 and the articles published in the Special Issue on Customary International Human Rights Law, 25 *Georgia Journal of International and Comparative Law*, 1995–6.

⁶¹ See below, chapter 14, p. 807.

Evolving principles

Certain areas of international human rights law are rapidly evolving. First, for example, the increasing extraterritoriality of human rights is becoming evident in the case-law of the European Convention on Human Rights,⁶² the approach of the Human Rights Committee under the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights⁶³ and the case-law of the International Court of Justice.⁶⁴ Secondly, the responsibility of states to prevent human rights abuses is beginning to be seriously considered, particularly with regard to genocide⁶⁵ and torture,⁶⁶ while more generally the obligation upon states and, for example, international organisations positively to protect human rights is becoming part of the agenda of international human rights law. Thirdly, increasing interest is being manifested in national human rights institutions.⁶⁷

The United Nations system – general⁶⁸

There are a number of human rights provisions in the Charter.⁶⁹ Article 1 includes in the purposes of the organisation the promotion and

⁶² See below, chapter 7, p. 349.

⁶³ See *Extraterritorial Application of Human Rights Treaties* (eds. F. Coomans and M. Kamminga), Antwerp, 2004. See also below, p. 315.

⁶⁴ See the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 177 ff; 129 ILR. pp. 37, 96 ff.; and the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 183.

⁶⁵ See e.g. the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 428 ff.

⁶⁶ See articles 2 and 16 of the Convention against Torture: see further below, p. 326. See also the Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons, 1973 (art. 4); the Convention on the Safety of United Nations and Associated Personnel, 1994 (art. 11), and the International Convention on the Suppression of Terrorist Bombings, 1997 (art. 15).

⁶⁷ See e.g. the Vienna Declaration on Human Rights adopted by the UN in 1993, para. 36; General Assembly resolution 48/134, adopting the Paris Principles Relating to the Status and Functioning of National Institutions for Protection and Promotion of Human Rights, 1993; General Comment No. 10 of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, E/C.12/1998/25, and the Optional Protocol to the UN Convention against Torture, 2002, article 3.

⁶⁸ See generally *Bowett's Law of International Institutions* (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, Manchester, 2001; Lauterpacht, *International Law*, pp. 145–220; *UN Action in the Field of Human Rights*, New York, 1981, and *Human Rights: Thirty Years after the Universal Declaration* (ed. B. Ramcharan), Dordrecht, 1979.

⁶⁹ Largely as a result of lobbying by non-governmental organisations at the San Francisco Conference: see J. Humphrey, 'The United Nations Charter and the Universal Declaration of Human Rights' in Luard, *International Protection*, chapter 3.

encouragement of respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms for all without distinction as to race, sex, language or religion. Article 13(1) notes that the General Assembly shall initiate studies and make recommendations regarding the realisation of human rights for all, while article 55 provides that the United Nations shall promote universal respect for and observance of human rights. In a significant provision, article 56 states that:

all members pledge themselves to take joint and separate action in co-operation with the organisation for the achievement of the purposes set forth in article 55.⁷⁰

The mandate system was replaced by the trusteeship system, one of the basic objectives of which was, by article 76, the encouragement of respect for human rights, while, with regard to non-self-governing territories, the administering powers under article 73 of the Charter recognised the principle that the interests of the inhabitants were paramount, and accepted as a sacred trust the obligation to promote the well-being of the inhabitants. It can thus be seen that the Charter provisions on human rights were very general and vague. No enforcement procedures were laid down. Some have argued that the term 'pledge' in article 56 had the effect of converting the enumerated purposes of article 55 into legal obligations,⁷¹ but this has been disputed.⁷² Certainly, as of 1946, this would have been a difficult proposition to sustain, particularly in view of the hortatory language used in the provisions and the fact that the respect for human rights stipulation does not identify precise legal rights.⁷³ However, in the *Namibia* case of 1971, the Court noted that under the UN Charter:

the former Mandatory had pledged itself to observe and respect, in a territory having international status, human rights and fundamental freedoms for all without distinction as to race. To establish instead and to enforce,

⁷⁰ Under article 62, the Economic and Social Council has the power to make recommendations for the purpose of promoting respect for and observance of human rights.

⁷¹ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *International Law*, pp. 47–9; Q. Wright, 'National Courts and Human Rights – the *Fujii* case', 45 *AJIL*, 1951, p. 73, and B. Sloan, 'Human Rights, the United Nations and International Law', 20 *Nordisk Tidsskrift for International Ret*, 1950, pp. 30–1. See also Judge Tanaka, *South West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 6, 288–9; 37 *ILR*, pp. 243, 451–2.

⁷² See M. O. Hudson, 'Integrity of International Instruments', 42 *AJIL*, 1948, pp. 105–8 and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1949, p. 178. See also H. Kelsen, *The Law of the United Nations*, London, 1950, p. 29.

⁷³ See D. Driscoll, 'The Development of Human Rights in International Law' in Laquer and Rubin, *Human Rights Reader*, pp. 41, 43.

distinctions, exclusions, restrictions and limitations, exclusively based on grounds of race, colour, descent or national or ethnic origin which constitute a denial of fundamental human rights is a flagrant violation of the purposes and principles of the Charter.⁷⁴

It may be that this provision can only be understood in the light of the special, international status of that territory, but in the light of extensive practice since the 1940s in the general area of non-discrimination and human rights, the broader interpretation is to be preferred.

The Charter does contain a domestic jurisdiction provision. Article 2(7) provides that:

nothing contained in the present Charter shall authorise the United Nations to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state

but as noted later⁷⁵ this has over the years been flexibly interpreted, so that human rights issues are no longer recognised as being solely within the domestic jurisdiction of states.

The elucidation, development and protection of human rights through the UN has proved to be a seminal event. A range of declarations and treaties has emerged, coupled with the establishment of a variety of advisory services and implementation and enforcement mechanisms. Large numbers of studies and reports of various kinds have appeared, while the whole process has been accompanied by extensive debate and consideration in a variety of UN organs and committees. Notwithstanding a certain degree of cynicism, it can be concluded that the acceptance of the centrality of human rights concerns within the international community has been due in no small measure to the unceasing consideration of human rights issues within the framework of the United Nations.

The cornerstone of UN activity has been without doubt the Universal Declaration of Human Rights adopted by the UN General Assembly on 10 December 1948.⁷⁶ The Declaration was approved without a dissenting vote

⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 57; 49 ILR, pp. 3, 47. See also I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, pp. 546 ff.; E. Schwelb, 'The International Court of Justice and the Human Rights Clauses of the Charter', 66 AJIL, 1972, p. 337, and O. Schachter, 'The Charter and the Constitution', 4 *Vanderbilt Law Review*, 1951, p. 443.

⁷⁵ See below, p. 647.

⁷⁶ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, p. 1001; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1965, vol. V, p. 237; J. Humphrey, 'The Universal Declaration on Human Rights' in Ramcharan, *Human Rights*, p. 21; J. Kunz, 'The United Nations Declaration of Human Rights', 43

(the Byelorussian SSR, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Ukrainian SSR, USSR, Yugoslavia and Saudi Arabia abstained). It was intended not as a legally binding document as such but, as its preamble proclaims, 'a common standard of achievement for all peoples and nations'. Its thirty articles cover a wide range of rights, from liberty and security of the person (article 3), equality before the law (article 7), effective remedies (article 8), due process (articles 9 and 10), prohibitions on torture (article 5) and arbitrary interference with privacy (article 12) to rights protecting freedom of movement (article 13), asylum (article 14), expression (article 19), conscience and religion (article 18) and assembly (article 20). One should also note that included in the Declaration are social and economic rights such as the right to work and equal pay (article 23), the right to social security (article 25) and the right to education (article 26).

Although clearly not a legally enforceable instrument as such, the question arises as to whether the Declaration has subsequently become binding either by way of custom⁷⁷ or general principles of law, or indeed by virtue of interpretation of the UN Charter itself by subsequent practice.⁷⁸ The Declaration has had a marked influence upon the constitutions of many states and upon the formulation of subsequent human rights treaties and resolutions.⁷⁹ It is also to be noted that in 1968, the Proclamation of Tehran at the conclusion of the UN-sponsored International Conference on Human Rights stressed that the Declaration constituted 'an obligation for members of the international community'.⁸⁰ The Declaration has also

AJIL, 1949, p. 316; E. Schwelb, 'The Influence of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights on International and National Law', PASIL, 1959, p. 217; A. Verdoodt, *Naissance et Signification de la Déclaration Universelle de Droits de l'Homme*, Paris, 1964; *The Universal Declaration of Human Rights: A Commentary* (eds. A. Eide, G. Alfredsson, G. Melander, L. A. Rehof and A. Rosas), Dordrecht, 1992; *The Universal Declaration of Human Rights: A Common Standard of Achievement* (eds. G. Alfredsson and A. Eide), The Hague, 1999, and P. R. Ghandi, 'The Universal Declaration of Human Rights at 50 Years', 41 German YIL, 1998, p. 206.

⁷⁷ Note that the Foreign and Commonwealth Office in a document issued in January 1991 on 'Human Rights in Foreign Policy' took the view that, although the Declaration was 'not in itself legally binding, much of its content can now be said to form part of customary international law', UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 592.

⁷⁸ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1002.

⁷⁹ See e.g. Schwelb, 'Influence'; J. Humphrey, 'The International Bill of Rights: Scope and Implementation', 17 *William and Mary Law Review*, 1975, p. 527; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1002–5; Judge Tanaka, *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 6, 288 and 293; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 451, 454, and the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950, below, chapter 7, p. 347.

⁸⁰ 23 GAOR, A/Conf. 32/41. See also the non-governmental Montreal Statement, 9 *Review of the International Commission of Jurists*, 1968, p. 94.

been referred to in many cases,⁸¹ and its importance within the context of United Nations human rights law should not be disregarded.⁸² The intention had been that the Declaration would be followed immediately by a binding universal convention on human rights, but this process took considerably longer than anticipated. In the meantime, a number of important international conventions dealing with selective human rights issues were adopted, including the Genocide Convention⁸³ and the Convention on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination.⁸⁴

The Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, adopted in 1993, emphasised that all human rights were universal, indivisible and interdependent and interrelated. The protection of human rights was seen as a priority objective of the UN and the interrelationship of democracy, development and respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms underlined. Additional facilities for the UN Centre for Human Rights were called for as well as the establishment of a UN High Commissioner for Human Rights. The Declaration made particular reference *inter alia* to the problems of racial discrimination, minorities, indigenous peoples, migrant workers, the rights of women, the rights of the child, freedom from torture, the rights of disabled persons and human rights education.⁸⁵ The post of UN High Commissioner for Human Rights was indeed established several months later⁸⁶ and filled in April 1994. In General Assembly resolution 48/141, it is provided that the UN High Commissioner for Human Rights would be the UN official with principal responsibility for UN human rights activities. The High Commissioner is responsible

⁸¹ See e.g. *In re Flesche* 16 AD, pp. 266, 269; *The State (Duggan) v. Tapley* 18 ILR, pp. 336, 342; *Robinson v. Secretary-General of the UN* 19 ILR, pp. 494, 496; *Extradition of Greek National case*, 22 ILR, pp. 520, 524 and *Beth El Mission v. Minister of Social Welfare* 47 ILR, pp. 205, 207. See also *Corfu Channel case*, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, pp. 155, 158 and *Filartiga v. Pena-Irala* 630 F.2d 876 (1980).

⁸² The Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action adopted on 25 June 1993 at the UN Conference on Human Rights referred to the Declaration as the 'source of inspiration' and the 'basis for the United Nations in making advances in standard setting as contained in the existing international human rights instruments', 32 ILM, 1993, pp. 1661, 1663. The private International Law Association adopted a resolution in 1994 in which it noted that 'the Universal Declaration of Human Rights is universally regarded as an authoritative elaboration of the human rights provisions of the United Nations Charter' and that 'many if not all of the rights elaborated in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights are widely recognised as constituting rules of customary international law', Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, Buenos Aires, 1994, p. 29.

⁸³ See below, p. 282. ⁸⁴ See further below, p. 311. ⁸⁵ See 32 ILM, 1993, pp. 1661 ff.

⁸⁶ See General Assembly resolution 48/141, 20 December 1993. See also A. Clapham, 'Creating the High Commissioner for Human Rights: The Outside Story', 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 556.

for promoting and protecting the effective enjoyment by all of all civil, cultural, economic, political and social rights, providing through the UN Centre for Human Rights and other appropriate institutions, advisory services and other assistance including education and engaging in dialogue with all governments with a view to securing respect for human rights. The High Commissioner may also make recommendations to competent bodies of the UN system with a view to improving the promotion and protection of all human rights,⁸⁷ has engaged in a series of visits to member states of the UN and become involved in co-ordination activities.⁸⁸

*The protection of the collective rights of groups and individuals*⁸⁹

International law since 1945 has focused primarily upon the protection of individual human rights, as can be seen from the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. In recent years, however, more attention has been given to various expressions of the concept of collective rights, although it is often difficult to maintain a strict differentiation between individual and collective rights. Some rights are purely individual, such as the right to life or freedom of expression, others are individual rights that are necessarily expressed collectively, such as freedom of assembly or the right to manifest one's own religion. Some rights are purely collective, such as the right to self-determination or the physical protection of the group as such through the prohibition of genocide, others constitute collective manifestations of individual rights, such as the right of persons belonging to minorities to enjoy their own culture and practise their own religion or use their own language. In addition, the question of the balancing of the legitimate rights of the state, groups and individuals is in practice crucial and sometimes not sufficiently considered. States, groups and individuals have legitimate rights and interests that should not be ignored. All within a state have an interest in ensuring the efficient functioning of that state in a manner consistent with respect for the rights of groups and individuals, while the balancing of the rights of groups and individuals may itself prove difficult and complex.

⁸⁷ See the first Report of the United Nations High Commissioner for Human Rights, 1995, A/49/36, p. 2.

⁸⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 3 ff. Further details as to activities may be found on the website, www.ohchr.org.

⁸⁹ See e.g. D. Sanders, 'Collective Rights', 13 HRQ, 1991, p. 368, and N. Lerner, *Group Rights and Discrimination in International Law*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 2003.

Prohibition of genocide

The physical protection of the group as a distinct identity is clearly the first and paramount factor. The Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of the Crime of Genocide signed in 1948⁹⁰ reaffirmed that genocide, whether committed in time of war or peace, was a crime under international law. Genocide was defined as any of the following acts committed 'with intent to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnical, racial or religious group as such':

- (a) killing members of the group; (b) causing serious bodily or mental harm to members of the group; (c) deliberately inflicting on the group conditions of life calculated to bring about its physical destruction in whole or in part; (d) imposing measures intended to prevent births within the group; (e) forcibly transferring children of the group to another group.

The Convention, which does not have an implementational system,⁹¹ provides that persons charged with genocide shall be tried by a competent tribunal of the state in the territory of which the act was committed or by an international penal tribunal. Several points should be noted. First, the question of intent is such that states may deny genocidal activity by noting that the relevant intent to destroy in whole or in part was in fact absent.⁹² Secondly, the groups protected do not include political groups.⁹³

⁹⁰ See e.g. W. Schabas, *Genocide in International Law*, Cambridge, 2000; N. Robinson, *The Genocide Convention*, London, 1960; R. Lemkin, *Axis Rule in Occupied Europe*, London, 1944; L. Kuper, *Genocide*, Harmondsworth, 1981, and *International Action Against Genocide*, Minority Rights Group Report No. 53, 1984; *Genocide and Human Rights* (ed. J. Porter), Washington 1982, and I. Horowitz, *Taking Lives: Genocide and State Power*, New Brunswick, 1980. See also N. Ruhashyankiko, *Study on the Question of the Prevention and Punishment of the Crime of Genocide*, 1978, E/CN.4/Sub.2/416; B. Whittaker, *Revised and Updated Report on the Question of the Prevention and Punishment of the Crime of Genocide*, 1985, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1985/6; 'Contemporary Practice of the United States Relating to International Law', 79 AJIL, 1985, pp. 116 ff.; M. Shaw, *War and Genocide*, Oxford, 2003; C. Fournet, *The Crime of Destruction and the Law of Genocide*, Ashgate, 2007; M. N. Shaw, 'Genocide and International Law' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 797, and G. Verdirame, 'The Genocide Definition in the Jurisprudence of the *Ad Hoc* Tribunals', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 578.

⁹¹ But see Sub-Commission resolution 1994/11.

⁹² See Kuper, *Genocide*, pp. 32–5, and N. Lewis, 'The Camp at Cecilio Baez', in *Genocide in Paraguay* (ed. R. Arens), Philadelphia, 1976, p. 58. See also Ruhashyankiko, *Study*, p. 25.

⁹³ See e.g. Kuper, *Genocide*, pp. 25–30, and Ruhashyankiko, *Study*, p. 21. See also Robinson, *Genocide Convention*, p. 59.

Thirdly, the concept of cultural genocide is not included,⁹⁴ and fourthly there is virtually no mention of means to prevent the crime (although the obligation is stated).

In the 1990s, the issue of genocide unfortunately ceased to be an item of primarily historical concern. Events in the former Yugoslavia and in Rwanda stimulated increasing anxiety in this context. The Statutes of both the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia and the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda provide for the prosecution of individuals for the crime of genocide and a significant case-law has now developed through these tribunals.⁹⁵ In addition, the question of state responsibility for the crime of genocide has been raised.⁹⁶ The International Court of Justice in the *Case Concerning Application of the Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of the Crime of Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro))* was faced with Bosnian claims that Yugoslavia had violated the Genocide Convention.⁹⁷ The Court in its Order of 8 April 1993 on the Request for the Indication of Provisional Measures⁹⁸ held that article IX of the Convention⁹⁹ provided a valid jurisdictional basis,¹⁰⁰ while reaffirming¹⁰¹ the view expressed in the Advisory Opinion on *Reservations to the Genocide Convention* that the crime of genocide 'shocks the conscience of mankind, results in great losses to humanity . . . and is contrary to moral law and to the spirit and aims of the United Nations'.¹⁰² The Court called upon both parties not to take any action that might aggravate or extend the dispute over the prevention or punishment of the crime of genocide. The government of

⁹⁴ See e.g. Kuper, *Genocide*, p. 31; Robinson, *Genocide Convention*, p. 64, and Ruhashyankiko, *Study*, pp. 21 ff.

⁹⁵ See further below, chapter 8, pp. 430 ff. ⁹⁶ See further generally below, chapter 14.

⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3 and 325; 95 ILR, pp. 1 and 43.

⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 16; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 31. See also R. Maison, 'Les Ordonnances de la CIJ dans l'Affaire Relative à l'Application de la Convention sur la Prévention et la Répression du Crime du Génocide', 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 381.

⁹⁹ This provides that 'disputes between the Contracting Parties relating to the interpretation, application or fulfilment of the present Convention, including those relating to the responsibility of a state for genocide or for any of the other acts enumerated in article III, shall be submitted to the International Court of Justice at the request of any of the parties to the dispute'.

¹⁰⁰ The Court dismissed other suggested grounds for its jurisdiction in the case, ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 18; 95 ILR, p. 33.

¹⁰¹ ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 23; 95 ILR, p. 38.

¹⁰² ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 15, 23; 18 ILR, pp. 364, 370, quoting the terms of General Assembly resolution 96 (I) of 11 December 1946.

Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) was requested to take all measures within its power to prevent commission of the crime of genocide, and was specifically called upon to ensure that 'any military, paramilitary or irregular armed units which may be directed or supported by it, as well as any organisations and persons which may be subject to its control, direction or influence, do not commit any acts of genocide'.¹⁰³ These provisional measures were reaffirmed by the Court in its Order on Provisional Measures of 13 September 1993 as measures which should be 'immediately and effectively implemented'.¹⁰⁴

On 11 July 1996, the Court rejected the Preliminary Objections raised by Yugoslavia.¹⁰⁵ In particular, the Court emphasised that it followed from the object and purpose of the Genocide Convention that the rights and obligations contained therein were rights and obligations *erga omnes* and that the obligation upon each state to prevent and punish the crime of genocide was not dependent upon the type of conflict involved in the particular situation (whether international or domestic) and was not territorially limited by the Convention.¹⁰⁶ The type of state responsibility envisaged under article IX of the Convention did not exclude any form of state responsibility.¹⁰⁷ In addition, the Court observed that the Convention did not contain any clause the object or effect of which was to limit the scope of its jurisdiction *ratione temporis* so as to exclude events prior to a particular date.¹⁰⁸ Yugoslavia subsequently withdrew the counter-claims it had introduced against Bosnia,¹⁰⁹ while introducing an application in April 2001 for revision of the 1996 judgment on the basis that a 'new fact' had appeared since that state had become a new member of the UN during 2000. This was rejected by the Court.¹¹⁰ On 26 February 2007, the Court rendered its judgment on the merits. The Court affirmed that the effect of the categorisation of genocide as a 'crime under international law', coupled with the obligation to prevent genocide contained in the Genocide Convention, is to prohibit states from committing

¹⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 24; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 39.

¹⁰⁴ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 350; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 68. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Lauterpacht, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 407, 431–2; 95 ILR, pp. 125, 149–50.

¹⁰⁵ Now so called, rather than the former Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro), as from, and in consequence of, the Dayton Peace Agreement initialled at Dayton, USA, on 11 November 1995 and signed in Paris on 14 December 1995.

¹⁰⁶ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 615; 115 ILR, p. 1. ¹⁰⁷ ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 616.

¹⁰⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 617. See also the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 240; 110 ILR, p. 163.

¹⁰⁹ ICJ, Order of 10 September 2001.

¹¹⁰ ICJ Reports, 2003, p. 7. See further below, chapter 19, p. 1106.

genocide through the actions of their organs or persons or groups whose acts are attributable to them.¹¹¹ The Court also held that state responsibility could arise under the Convention for genocide and complicity, without an individual being convicted of the crime or an associated one,¹¹² and that such responsibility for genocide applied to a state wherever it may be acting.¹¹³ It was noted that the essence of the intent, at the heart of the definition of genocide, is to destroy the protected group, in whole or in part, as such. It is a group which must have particular positive characteristics – national, ethnical, racial or religious – and not the lack of them. The intent must also relate to the group ‘as such’. That means that the crime requires an intent to destroy a collection of people who have a particular group identity¹¹⁴ and such intent refers to the intent to destroy at least a substantial part of the particular group and this may apply to a geographically limited area (such as Srebrenica).¹¹⁵ The Court emphasised that claims against a state involving charges of exceptional gravity, such as genocide, must be proved by evidence that is fully conclusive.¹¹⁶ However, the Court emphasised that the Convention established a separate and distinct duty to prevent genocide, which was both ‘normative and compelling’¹¹⁷ and an obligation of conduct, not of result,¹¹⁸ provided that the offence was actually committed.¹¹⁹ Such obligation arose at the instant that the state learned of, or should normally have learned of, the existence of a serious risk that genocide would be committed.¹²⁰ It was also held that Serbia was in violation of its duty to punish genocide.¹²¹

¹¹¹ ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 161–7. See also *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 31–2, where the Court noted that the rights and obligations in the Genocide Convention were rights and obligations *erga omnes* and stated that the prohibition of genocide was ‘assuredly’ a norm of *jus cogens*.

¹¹² ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 182. ¹¹³ *Ibid.*, para. 183. ¹¹⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 193.

¹¹⁵ *Ibid.*, paras. 198–9.

¹¹⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 209 and see also para. 319. The Court, however, was not convinced, on the basis of the evidence before it, that it had been conclusively established that the massive killings of members of the protected group were committed with the specific intent (*dolus specialis*) on the part of the perpetrators to destroy, in whole or in part, the group as such, *ibid.*, para. 277, nor that deportations and expulsions of the protected group amounted to genocide for the same reason, *ibid.*, para. 334, nor indeed the imposition of terrible conditions on camp detainees and other allegations, *ibid.*, paras. 354, 370 and 376. The exception to this was with regard to Srebrenica, where the Court found that the necessary intent had been established to the required standard of proof, paras. 278–97.

¹¹⁷ *Ibid.*, para. 427.

¹¹⁸ *Ibid.*, para. 430.

¹¹⁹ *Ibid.*, para. 431.

¹²⁰ *Ibid.*

¹²¹ *Ibid.*, para. 450.

Prohibition of discrimination

Apart from the overwhelming requirement of protection from physical attack upon their very existence as a group, groups need protection from discriminatory treatment as such.¹²² The norm of non-discrimination thus constitutes a principle relevant both to groups and to individual members of groups.

The International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination¹²³ was signed in 1965 and entered into force in 1969. It builds on the non-discrimination provisions in the UN Charter. Racial discrimination is defined as:

any distinction, exclusion, restriction or preference based on race, colour, descent or national or ethnic origin which has the purpose or effect of nullifying or impairing the recognition, enjoyment or exercise, on an equal footing, of human rights and fundamental freedoms in the political, economic, social, cultural or any other field of public life.

States parties undertake to prohibit racial discrimination and guarantee equality for all in the enjoyment of a series of rights and to assure to all within their jurisdiction effective protection and remedies regarding such human rights.¹²⁴ It is also fair to conclude that in addition to the existence of this Convention, the prohibition of discrimination on racial grounds is contrary to customary international law.¹²⁵ This conclusion may be reached on the basis *inter alia* of articles 55 and 56 of the UN Charter, articles 2 and 7 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, the International Covenants on Human Rights,¹²⁶ regional instruments on human

¹²² See e.g. Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapter 10; W. Vandenhoe, *Non-discrimination and Equality in the View of the UN Human Rights Treaty Bodies*, Antwerp, 2005; Joseph *et al.*, *International Covenant*, chapter 23; A. Bayefsky, 'The Principle of Equality or Non-discrimination in International Law', 11 HRLJ, 1990, p. 1; J. Greenberg, 'Race, Sex and Religious Discrimination' in Meron, *Human Rights in International Law*, p. 307; W. McKean, *Equality and Discrimination under International Law*, Oxford, 1983, and T. Meron, *Human Rights Law-Making in the United Nations*, Oxford, 1986, chapters 1–3.

¹²³ See e.g. N. Lerner, *The UN Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1980.

¹²⁴ See further below, p. 311, with regard to the establishment of the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination. Note also the Convention on the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid, 1973.

¹²⁵ See e.g. the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Tanaka in the *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 3, 293; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 455.

¹²⁶ See below, p. 314.

rights protection¹²⁷ and general state practice. Discrimination on other grounds, such as religion¹²⁸ and gender,¹²⁹ may also be contrary to customary international law. The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights provides in article 2(1) that all states parties undertake to respect and ensure to all individuals within their territories and within their jurisdictions the rights recognised in the Covenant 'without distinction of any kind such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other

¹²⁷ See below, pp. 347 ff.

¹²⁸ See e.g. the Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and of Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief, 1981, General Assembly resolution 36/55 and the appointment of a Special Rapporteur to examine situations inconsistent with the Declaration by the UN Commission on Human Rights, resolution 1986/20 of 10 March 1986. See also Odio Benito, *Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief*, New York, 1989, and Report on the Implementation of the Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and of Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief, E/CN.4/1995/91, 1994. In 2000, the Commission on Human Rights changed the mandate title to 'Special Rapporteur on freedom of religion or belief': see ECOSOC decision 2000/261 and General Assembly resolution 55/97. On 14 December 2007, the Human Rights Council extended the mandate of the Special Rapporteur for a further period of three years. The UN Human Rights Committee has produced a General Comment on article 18 concerning freedom of thought, conscience and religion: see General Comment 22, 1993, HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, 1994, and Joseph *et al.*, *International Covenant*, chapter 17. Note also S. Neff, 'An Evolving International Legal Norm of Religious Freedom: Problems and Prospects', 7 *California Western International Law Journal*, 1975, p. 543; A. Krishnaswami, *Study of Discrimination in the Matter of Religious Rights and Practices*, New York, 1960, E/CN.4/Sub.2/200/Rev.1; N. Lerner, 'Towards a Draft Declaration against Religious Intolerance and Discrimination', 11 *Israel Yearbook on Human Rights*, 1981, p. 82; B. Tahzib, *Freedom of Religion or Belief: Ensuring Effective International Legal Protection*, Dordrecht, 1995, and B. Dickson, 'The United Nations and Freedom of Religion', 44 *ICLQ*, 1995, p. 327.

¹²⁹ See the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women 1979, below, p. 322. Article 1 of the Convention provides that discrimination against women means any distinction, exclusion or restriction made on the basis of sex which has the effect or purpose of impairing or nullifying the recognition, enjoyment or exercise by women, irrespective of their marital status, on a basis of equality with men and women, of human rights and fundamental freedoms in the political, economic, social, cultural, civil or any other field. See e.g. McKean, *Equality*, chapter 10; Bayefsky, 'Equality', and Meron, *Human Rights Law-Making*, chapter 2. See also J. Morsink, 'Women's Rights in the Universal Declaration', 13 *HRQ*, 1991, p. 229; R. Cook, 'Women's International Human Rights Law', 15 *HRQ*, 1993, p. 230; *Human Rights of Women* (ed. R. Cook), Philadelphia, 1994, and M. A. Freeman and A. S. Fraser, 'Women's Human Rights' in Herkin and Hargrove, *Human Rights: An Agenda for the Next Century*, p. 103. Note also the UN General Assembly Declaration on Elimination of Violence against Women, 33 *ILM*, 1994, p. 1049. See also the London Declaration of International Law Principles on Internally Displaced Persons adopted by the International Law Association, *Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference*, London, 2000, p. 794.

opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status'.¹³⁰ Article 26 stipulates that all persons are equal before the law and thus, 'the law shall prohibit any discrimination and guarantee to all persons equal and effective protection against discrimination on any ground such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status'.¹³¹ The UN Human Rights Committee established under this Covenant¹³² has noted in its General Comment 18 on Non-Discrimination¹³³ that non-discrimination 'constitutes a basic and general principle relating to the protection of human rights'. The Committee, while adopting the definition of the term 'discrimination' as used in the Racial Discrimination and Women's Discrimination Conventions, concludes that it should be understood to imply any distinction, exclusion, restriction or preference which is based on any ground such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status and which has the purpose or effect of nullifying or impairing the recognition, enjoyment or exercise by all persons, on an equal footing, of all rights and freedoms.

The principle of non-discrimination requires the establishment of equality in fact as well as formal equality in law. As the Permanent Court of International Justice noted in the *Minority Schools in Albania* case,¹³⁴ 'equality in law precludes discrimination of any kind; whereas equality in fact may involve the necessity of different treatment in order to attain a result which establishes an equilibrium between different situations'.¹³⁵ The appropriate test of acceptable differentiation in such circumstances will centre upon what is just or reasonable¹³⁶ or objectively and reasonably justified.¹³⁷ The application of equality in fact may also require the

¹³⁰ See also, for example, articles 2(2) and 3 of the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, 1966. See M. C. Craven, *The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights*, Oxford, 1995, chapter 4, and see further below, p. 308.

¹³¹ Note that this provision constitutes an autonomous or free-standing principle, whereas article 2(1) of that Covenant and articles 2 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, 14 of the European Convention on Human Rights and 2(1) of the Convention on the Rights of the Child prohibit discrimination in the context of specific rights and freedoms laid down in the instrument in question: see Bayefsky, 'Equality', pp. 3–4, and the Human Rights Committee's General Comment on Non-Discrimination, paragraph 12.

¹³² See further below, p. 314. ¹³³ Adopted on 9 November 1989, CCPR/C/Rev.1/Add.1.

¹³⁴ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 64, p. 19 (1935); 8 AD, pp. 386, 389–90.

¹³⁵ See also the Human Rights Committee's General Comment on Non-Discrimination, paragraph 8.

¹³⁶ See Judge Tanaka's Dissenting Opinion in the *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 3, 306; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 464.

¹³⁷ See e.g. the *Belgian Linguistics* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 6, 1986, para. 10; 45 ILR, pp. 114, 165. See also the *Amendments to the Naturalisation*

introduction of affirmative action measures in order to diminish or eliminate conditions perpetuating discrimination. Such measures would need to be specifically targeted and neither absolute nor of infinite duration.¹³⁸

The principle of self-determination as a human right¹³⁹

The right to self-determination has already been examined in so far as it relates to the context of decolonisation.¹⁴⁰ The question arises whether this right, which has been widely proclaimed, has an application beyond the colonial context. Article 1 of both International Covenants on Human Rights provides that 'all peoples have the right to self-determination. By virtue of that right they freely determine their political status and freely pursue their economic, social and cultural development', while the Helsinki Final Act of 1975¹⁴¹ refers to 'the principle of equal rights and self-determination . . . all peoples have the right, in full freedom, to determine, when and as they wish, their internal and external political status, without external interference, and to pursue as they wish their

Provisions of the Constitution of Costa Rica case, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1984, para. 56; 5 HRLJ, 1984, p. 172, and the Human Rights Committee's General Comment on Non-Discrimination, paragraph 13, which notes that 'not every differentiation of treatment will constitute discrimination, if the criteria for such differentiation are reasonable and objective and if the aim is to achieve a purpose which is legitimate under the Covenant'.

¹³⁸ See the Human Rights Committee's General Comment on Non-Discrimination, paragraph 10. See also article 1(4) of the Racial Discrimination Convention, article 4(1) of the Women's Discrimination Convention and article 27 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights.

¹³⁹ See e.g. A. Buchanan, *Justice, Legitimacy and Self-Determination*, Oxford, 2004; J. Sumners, *Peoples and International Law*, The Hague, 2007; K. Knop, *Diversity and Self-Determination in International Law*, Cambridge, 2002; T. D. Musgrave, *Self-Determination and National Minorities*, Oxford, 1997; W. Ofuatey-Kodjoe, 'Self-Determination' in *United Nations Legal Order* (eds. O. Schachter and C. C. Joyner), Cambridge, 1995, vol. I, p. 349; A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995; *Modern Law of Self-Determination* (ed. C. Tomuschat), Dordrecht, 1993; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, chapter 7; T. Franck, *The Power of Legitimacy Among Nations*, Oxford, 1990, pp. 153 ff.; Franck, 'Fairness in the International and Institutional System', 240 HR, 1993 III, pp. 13, 125 ff.; *The Rights of Peoples* (ed. J. Crawford), Oxford, 1988; *Peoples and Minorities in International Law* (eds. C. Brölmann, R. Lefebvre and M. Zieck), Dordrecht, 1993, and P. Thornberry, 'Self-Determination, Minorities, Human Rights: A Review of International Instruments', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 867. See also M. Koskeniemi, 'National Self-Determination Today: Problems of Legal Theory and Practice', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 241; G. Simpson, 'The Diffusion of Sovereignty: Self-Determination in the Post-Colonial Age', 32 *Stanford Journal of International Law*, 1996, p. 255, and R. McCorquodale, 'Self-Determination: A Human Rights Approach', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 857.

¹⁴⁰ See above, chapter 5, p. 251. ¹⁴¹ See further below, p. 372.

political, economic, social and cultural development'. Article 20 of the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights, 1981¹⁴² stipulates that 'all peoples shall have the right to existence. They shall have the unquestionable and inalienable right to self-determination. They shall freely determine their political status and shall pursue their economic and social development according to the policy they have chosen.' The 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations¹⁴³ referred to the colonial situation and noted that subjection of peoples to alien subjugation, domination and exploitation constituted a violation of the principle. A number of UN resolutions have discussed the relevance of self-determination also to situations of alien occupation where the use of force has been involved.¹⁴⁴ The International Law Commission in 1988 expressed its view that the principle of self-determination was of universal application,¹⁴⁵ while the practice of the UN Human Rights Committee has been of particular significance.

Before this is briefly noted, reference must be made to the crucial importance of the principle of territorial integrity.¹⁴⁶ This norm protects the territorial framework of independent states and is part of the overall concept of the sovereignty of states. In terms of the concept of the freezing of territorial boundaries as at the moment of independence (save by mutual consent), the norm is referred to as *uti possidetis juris*.¹⁴⁷ This posits that boundaries established and existing at the moment of independence cannot be altered unless the relevant parties consent to change. It is supported by international instruments¹⁴⁸ and by judicial pronouncement. In the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case,¹⁴⁹ the Chamber of the International Court of Justice emphasised that *uti possidetis* constituted a general principle, whose purpose was to prevent the independence and stability of

¹⁴² See further below, p. 391. ¹⁴³ General Assembly resolution 2625 (XXV).

¹⁴⁴ See, for an examination of state practice, e.g. Cassese, *Self-Determination*, pp. 90–9.

¹⁴⁵ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1988, vol. II, Part 2, p. 64.

¹⁴⁶ General Assembly resolution 1514 (XV) 1960 (the Colonial Declaration) underlines that 'any attempt at the partial or total disruption of the national unity and the territorial integrity of a country is incompatible with the purposes and principles of the Charter of the UN', while resolution 2625 (XXV) 1970 (the Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations) emphasises that 'nothing in the foregoing paragraphs shall be construed as authorising or encouraging any action which would dismember or impair, totally or in part, the territorial integrity or political unity of sovereign or independent states'. See further below, chapter 10, p. 522.

¹⁴⁷ See further below, chapter 10, p. 525.

¹⁴⁸ See e.g. General Assembly resolutions 1514 (XV) and 1541 (XV) and Organisation of African Unity resolution 16 (I) 1964.

¹⁴⁹ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 566–7; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 470–1.

new states from being endangered by fratricidal struggles provoked by the challenging of frontiers. This essential requirement of stability had induced newly independent states to consent to the respecting of colonial borders 'and to take account of it in the interpretation of the principle of self-determination of peoples'. The Arbitration Commission of the European Conference on Yugoslavia emphasised in Opinion No. 2¹⁵⁰ that 'it is well established that, whatever the circumstances, the right to self-determination must not involve changes to existing frontiers at the time of independence (*uti possidetis juris*) except where the states concerned agree otherwise'.

The principle of self-determination, therefore, applies beyond the colonial context, within the territorial framework of independent states. It cannot be utilised as a legal tool for the dismantling of sovereign states.¹⁵¹ Its use, however, as a crucial principle of collective human rights¹⁵² has been analysed by the Human Rights Committee in interpreting article 1 of the Civil and Political Rights Covenant.¹⁵³ In its General Comment on

¹⁵⁰ 92 ILR, pp. 167, 168. See further above, chapter 5, p. 256.

¹⁵¹ The clause in the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations (repeated in the UN Vienna Declaration on Human Rights, 1993), stating that nothing in the section on self-determination shall be construed as authorising or encouraging the dismembering or impairing of the territorial integrity of states conducting themselves in compliance with the principle of self-determination 'as described above and thus possessed of a government representing the whole people belonging to the territory without distinction as to race, creed or colour', may be seen, first, as establishing the primacy of the principle of territorial integrity and, secondly, as indicating the content of self-determination within the territory. Whether it also can be seen as offering legitimacy to secession from an independent state in exceptional circumstances is the subject of much debate. Cassese, for example, concludes that 'a racial or religious group may attempt secession, a form of external self-determination, when it is apparent that internal self-determination is absolutely beyond reach. Extreme and unrelenting persecution and the lack of any reasonable prospect for peaceful challenge may make secession legitimate', *Self-Determination*, p. 120. See also R. Rosenstock, 'The Declaration on Principles of International Law', 65 AJIL, 1971, pp. 713, 732, and J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006, pp. 118 ff. The Canadian Supreme Court in the *Quebec Secession* case discussed the question without reaching a conclusion, (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 437 ff.; 115 ILR, pp. 536, 582–7. It would appear that practice demonstrating the successful application of even this modest proposition is lacking.

¹⁵² Note Brownlie's view that the principle of self-determination has a core of reasonable certainty and this consists in 'the right of a community which has a distinct character to have this character reflected in the institutions of government under which it lives', 'The Rights of Peoples in International Law' in Crawford, *Rights of Peoples*, pp. 1, 5.

¹⁵³ See in particular D. McGoldrick, *The Human Rights Committee*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 5; Cassese, *Self-Determination*, pp. 59 ff., and M. Nowak, *UN Covenant on Civil and Political Rights*, CCPR Commentary, 2nd edn, Kehl, 2005, part 1.

Self-Determination adopted in 1984,¹⁵⁴ the Committee emphasised that the realisation of the right was 'an essential condition for the effective guarantee and observance of individual human rights'. Nevertheless, the principle is seen as a collective one and not one that individuals could seek to enforce through the individual petition procedures provided in the First Optional Protocol to the Covenant.¹⁵⁵ The Committee takes the view, as Professor Higgins¹⁵⁶ noted,¹⁵⁷ that 'external self-determination requires a state to take action in its foreign policy consistent with the attainment of self-determination in the remaining areas of colonial or racist occupation. But internal self-determination is directed to their own peoples.' In the context of the significance of the principle of self-determination within independent states, the Committee has encouraged states parties to provide in their reports details about participation in social and political structures,¹⁵⁸ and in engaging in dialogue with representatives of states parties, questions are regularly posed as to how political institutions operate and how the people of the state concerned participate in the governance of their state.¹⁵⁹ This necessarily links in with consideration of other articles of the Covenant concerning, for example, freedom of expression (article 19), freedom of assembly (article 21), freedom of association (article 22) and the right to take part in the conduct of public affairs and to vote

¹⁵⁴ General Comment 12: see HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, p. 12, 1994.

¹⁵⁵ See the *Kitok* case, Report of the Human Rights Committee, A/43/40, pp. 221, 228; 96 ILR, pp. 637, 645; the *Lubicon Lake Band* case, A/45/40, vol. II, pp. 1, 27; 96 ILR, pp. 667, 702; *EP v. Colombia*, A/45/40, vol. II, pp. 184, 187, and *RL v. Canada*, A/47/40, pp. 358, 365; 96 ILR, p. 706. However, in *Mahuika et al. v. New Zealand*, the Committee took the view that the provisions of article 1 may be relevant in the interpretation of other rights protected by the Covenant, in particular article 27 on the rights of persons belonging to minorities, A/56/40, vol. II, annex X, A. See also *Diergaardt et al. v. Namibia*, A/55/40, vol. II, annex IX, sect. M, para. 10.3.

¹⁵⁶ A member of the Committee from 1985 to 1995.

¹⁵⁷ Higgins, 'Postmodern Tribalism and the Right to Secession' in Brölmann *et al.*, *Peoples and Minorities in International Law*, p. 31.

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. the report of Colombia, CCPR/C/64/Add.3, pp. 9 ff., 1991. In the third periodic report of Peru, it was noted that the first paragraph of article 1 of the Covenant 'lays down the right of every people to self-determination. Under that right any people is able to decide freely on its political and economic condition or regime and hence establish a form of government suitable for the purposes in view. To this effect Peru adopted as its form of government the republican system which was embodied in the constitution of 1979, which stated that Peru was a democratic and social independent and sovereign republic based on work with a unitary representative and decentralised government', CCPR/C/83/Add.1, 1995, p. 4.

¹⁵⁹ See e.g. with regard to Canada, A/46/40, p. 12. See also A/45/40, pp. 120–1, with regard to Zaire.

(article 25). The right of self-determination, therefore, provides the overall framework for the consideration of the principles relating to democratic governance.¹⁶⁰ The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination adopted General Recommendation 21 in 1996 in which it similarly divided self-determination into an external and an internal aspect and noted that the latter referred to the 'right of every citizen to take part in the conduct of public affairs at any level'.¹⁶¹ The Canadian Supreme Court has noted that self-determination 'is normally fulfilled through *internal* self-determination – a people's pursuit of its political, economic, social and cultural development within the framework of an existing state'.¹⁶²

The protection of minorities¹⁶³

Various attempts were made in the post-First World War settlements, following the collapse of the German, Ottoman, Russian and Austro-Hungarian Empires and the rise of a number of independent nation-based states in Eastern and Central Europe, to protect those groups to whom sovereignty and statehood could not be granted.¹⁶⁴ Persons

¹⁶⁰ See T. Franck, 'The Emerging Right to Democratic Governance', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 46. See also P. Thornberry, 'The Democratic or Internal Aspect of Self-Determination' in Tomuschat, *Modern Law of Self-Determination*, p. 101.

¹⁶¹ A/51/18.

¹⁶² The *Quebec Secession* case, (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 437–8; 115 ILR, p. 536.

¹⁶³ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 972 ff.; Nowak, *UN Covenant*, pp. 480 ff.; M. Weller, *Universal Minority Rights: A Commentary on the Jurisprudence of International Courts and Treaty Bodies*, Oxford, 2007; R. Higgins, 'Minority Rights: Discrepancies and Divergencies Between the International Covenant and the Council of Europe System' in *Liber Amicorum for Henry Schermers*, Dordrecht, 1994, p. 193; Shaw, 'Definition of Minorities'; P. Thornberry, *International Law and Minorities*, Oxford, 1991, and Thornberry, 'Phoenix', and 'Self-Determination', p. 867; G. Alfredsson, 'Minority Rights and a New World Order' in *Broadening the Frontiers of Human Rights: Essays in Honour of A. Eide* (ed. D. Gomien), Oslo, 1993; G. Alfredsson and A. M. de Zayas, 'Minority Rights: Protection by the UN', 14 HRLJ, 1993, p. 1; Brölmann *et al.*, *Peoples and Minorities in International Law: The Protection of Ethnic and Linguistic Minorities in Europe* (eds. J. Packer and K. Myntti), Turku, 1993; *Documents on Autonomy and Minority Rights* (ed. H. Hannum), Dordrecht, 1993; N. Rodley, 'Conceptual Problems in the Protection of Minorities: International Legal Developments', 17 HRQ, 1995, p. 48; A. Fenet *et al.*, *Le Droit et les Minorités*, Brussels, 1995; J. Rehman, *The Weakness in the International Protection of Minority Rights*, The Hague, 2000, and *International Human Rights Law*, chapters 11 and 12; Musgrave, *Self-Determination, and Minority and Group Rights in the New Millennium* (eds. D. Fottrell and B. Bowring), The Hague, 1999. See also the Capotorti Study on the Rights of Persons Belonging to Ethnic, Religious and Linguistic Minorities, E/CN.4/Sub.2/384/Rev.1, 1979.

¹⁶⁴ The minorities regime of the League consisted of five special minorities treaties binding Poland, the Serbo-Croat-Slovene state, Romania, Greece and Czechoslovakia; special

belonging to racial, religious or linguistic minorities were to be given the same treatment and the same civil and political rights and security as other nationals in the state in question. Such provisions constituted obligations of international concern and could not be altered without the assent of a majority of the League of Nations Council. The Council was to take action in the event of any infraction of minorities' obligations. There also existed a petition procedure by minorities to the League, although they had no standing as such before the Council or the Permanent Court of International Justice.¹⁶⁵ However, the schemes of protection did not work well, ultimately for a variety of reasons ranging from the sensitivities of newly independent states to international supervision of minority issues to overt exploitation of minority issues by Nazi Germany in order to subvert neighbouring countries. After the Second World War, the focus shifted to the international protection of universal individual human rights, although several instruments dealing with specific situations incorporated provisions concerning the protection of minorities,¹⁶⁶ and in 1947 the Sub-Commission on the Prevention of Discrimination and the Protection of Minorities was established.¹⁶⁷ It was not, however, until the adoption of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights in 1966 that the question of minority rights came back onto the international agenda. Article 27 of this Covenant provides that 'in those states in which ethnic, religious or linguistic minorities exist, persons belonging to such minorities shall not be denied the right, in community with the other members of their group, to enjoy their own culture, to profess and practise their own religion, or to use their own language'.

This modest and rather negative provision as formulated centres upon 'persons belonging' to minorities rather than upon minorities as such

minorities clauses in the treaties of peace with Austria, Bulgaria, Hungary and Turkey; five general declarations made on admission to the League by Albania, Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia and Iraq; a special declaration by Finland regarding the Åland Islands, and treaties relating to Danzig, Upper Silesia and Memel: see generally Thornberry, *International Law and Minorities*, pp. 38 ff.

¹⁶⁵ In the early 1930s several hundred petitions were received but this dropped to virtually nil by 1939: see Thornberry, *International Law and Minorities*, pp. 434–6, and the Capotorti Report on the *Rights of Persons belonging to Ethnic, Religious and Linguistic Minorities*, 1979, E/CN.4/Sub.2/384/Rev.1, pp. 20–2. See also Macartney, *National States*, pp. 370 ff.; J. Stone, *International Guarantees of Minority Rights*, London, 1932, and Richard, *Le Droit de Petition*, Paris, 1932.

¹⁶⁶ See e.g. Annex IV of the Treaty of Peace with Italy, 1947; the Indian–Pakistan Treaty, 1950, and article 7 of the Austrian State Treaty, 1955. See also the provisions in the documents concerning the independence of Cyprus, Cmnd 1093, 1960.

¹⁶⁷ See further below, p. 307.

and does not define the concept of minorities.¹⁶⁸ Nevertheless, the UN Human Rights Committee has taken the opportunity to consider the issue in discussing states' reports, individual petitions and in a General Comment. In commenting upon states' reports made pursuant to the International Covenant, the Committee has made clear, for example, that the rights under article 27 apply to all members of minorities within a state party's territory and not just nationals,¹⁶⁹ and it has expressed concern with regard to the treatment of minorities within particular states.¹⁷⁰

In the *Lovelace* case,¹⁷¹ the Committee decided that there had been a violation of article 27 with regard to an Indian woman who, by having married a non-Indian, had lost her rights by Canadian law to reside on the Tobique Reserve, something which she wished to do upon the collapse of her marriage. The Committee noted that statutory restrictions affecting the right to residence on a reserve of a person belonging to the minority concerned had to have both a reasonable and objective justification and be consistent with the other provisions of the Covenant read as a whole. This had not been the case. There was no place outside the reserve where her right to access to her native culture and language could be conducted in community with other members of the minority in question.

In the *Kitok* case,¹⁷² the Committee took the view with regard to a petition by a member of the Sami community in Sweden that where the regulation of economic activity was an essential element in the culture

¹⁶⁸ Attempts to define minorities have invariably focused upon the numerically inferior numbers of minorities and their non-dominant position, the existence of certain objective features differentiating them from the majority population (e.g. ethnic, religious or linguistic) coupled with the subjective wish of the minority concerned to preserve those characteristics. See e.g. Shaw, 'Definition of Minorities', and the Capotorti Report, p. 96. See also Council of Europe Assembly Recommendation 1255 (1955), H/Inf (95) 3, p. 88. Note that the Human Rights Committee in the *Ballantyne* case held that English-speaking citizens in Quebec did not constitute a minority since the term 'minority' applied to the whole state and not a part of it, 14 HRLJ, 1993, pp. 171, 176.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. comments upon Norway's third periodic report, A/49/40, p. 23 and Japan's third periodic report, *ibid.*, p. 25. See also Joseph *et al.*, *International Covenant*, chapter 24.

¹⁷⁰ See e.g. with regard to the third periodic report of Romania, A/49/40, p. 29 and that of Mexico, *ibid.*, p. 35, and the fourth periodic report of Russia, CCPR/C/79/Add.54, p. 5 and that of Ukraine, CCPR/C/79/Add.52, p. 4. Note also the criticism of the Democratic Republic of the Congo for its marginalisation, discrimination and, at times, persecution of some of the country's minorities, including pygmies, see CCPR/C/SR.2358, 2006, and of the situation in Kosovo, CCPR/C/SR.2394, 2006.

¹⁷¹ I *Selected Decisions of the Human Rights Committee*, 1985, p. 83; 68 ILR, p. 17.

¹⁷² A/43/40, p. 221; 96 ILR, p. 637.

of an economic community, its application to an individual could fall within article 27. It was emphasised that a restriction upon an individual member of a minority must be shown to have a reasonable and objective justification and to be necessary for the continued viability and welfare of the minority as a whole.

In the *Lubicon Lake Band* case,¹⁷³ the Committee upheld the complaint that the Canadian Government, in allowing the Provincial Government of Alberta to expropriate the Band's territory for the benefit of private corporate interests, violated article 27. It was held that the rights protected under article 27 included the right of persons in community with others to engage in economic and social activities which were part of the culture of the community to which they belonged. However, measures with only a limited impact on the way of life and livelihood of persons belonging to a minority would not necessarily violate article 27.¹⁷⁴

The Committee adopted a General Comment on article 27 in 1994 after much discussion and hesitation due to fears that such a comment might be perceived to constitute an encouragement to secession.¹⁷⁵ The General Comment pointed to the distinction between the rights of persons belonging to minorities on the one hand, and the right to self-determination and the right to equality and non-discrimination on the other. It was emphasised that the rights under article 27 did not prejudice the sovereignty and territorial integrity of states, although certain minority rights, in particular those pertaining to indigenous communities, might consist of a way of life closely associated with territory and the use of its resources, such as fishing, hunting and the right to live in reserves protected by law. The Committee, in an important part of the General Comment, underlined that persons belonging to a minority need not be nationals or permanent residents of the state concerned so that migrant workers or even visitors might be protected under article 27. Whether an ethnic, religious or linguistic minority exists was an objective question, not dependent upon a decision of the state party. Although article 27 is negatively formulated, the Committee pointed out that positive measures of protection were required not only against the acts of the state party itself, but also against the acts of other persons within the state party. Positive measures may also be necessary to protect the identity of the minority concerned and legitimate

¹⁷³ A/45/40, vol. II, p. 1; 96 ILR, p. 667.

¹⁷⁴ See the *Länsmann* cases against Finland, 511/92 and 671/95, 115 ILR, p. 300, and Report of the Human Rights Committee 2005, volume II, A/60/40, pp. 90 ff.

¹⁷⁵ General Comment No. 23, HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, p. 38.

differentiation was permitted so long as it was based on reasonable and objective criteria.

The UN General Assembly adopted a Declaration on the Rights of Persons Belonging to National or Ethnic, Religious and Linguistic Minorities in December 1992.¹⁷⁶ Article 1 provides that states 'shall protect the existence and the national or ethnic, cultural, religious and linguistic identity of minorities within their respective territories' and shall adopt appropriate legislative and other measures to achieve these ends. The Declaration states that persons belonging to minorities have the right to enjoy their own culture, practise and profess their own religion and to use their own language in private and in public without hindrance. Such persons also have the right to participate effectively in cultural, social, economic and public life. The UN Sub-Commission has been considering the question of minorities for many years and in 1994 agreed to establish a five-person inter-sessional working group¹⁷⁷ to examine peaceful and constructive solutions to situations involving minorities and, in particular, to review the practical application of the Declaration, to provide recommendations to *inter alia* the Sub-Commission and the UN High Commissioner for Human Rights to protect minorities where there is a risk of violence and generally to promote dialogue between minority groups in society and between those groups and governments. In 2005, the Commission on Human Rights appointed an Independent Expert on Minorities with the mandate to promote the implementation of the Declaration; to identify best practices and possibilities for technical co-operation by the Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Human Rights at the request of Governments; and to co-operate closely with existing relevant UN bodies, while taking into account the views of non-governmental organisations and applying a gender perspective.¹⁷⁸

The issue of minority rights has also been taken up recently particularly by European states, primarily as a consequence of the demise of the Soviet Union and its empire in Eastern Europe and the reintegration of Eastern and Central European states within the political system of

¹⁷⁶ Resolution 47/135. See e.g. *The UN Minority Rights Declaration* (eds. A. Phillips and A. Rosas), London, 1993.

¹⁷⁷ E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/56. This was authorised by the Commission on Human Rights on 3 March 1995: see resolution 1995/24. See also E/CN.4/Sub.2/1995/51.

¹⁷⁸ Resolution 2005/79. The Independent Expert has, for example, drawn attention to the rights of women facing multiple forms of discrimination, exclusion and violence, such as women from minority communities, Press Release of 7 March 2006, and to problems faced by the Roma in Hungary, Press Release of 4 July 2006.

Western Europe. The specific response to questions of minority rights within the Council of Europe and the Conference (as from 1995 Organisation) on Security and Co-operation in Europe are addressed below.¹⁷⁹

As has been noted, the UN Human Rights Committee has pointed to the special position of indigenous peoples as minorities with a particular relationship to their traditional territory. It has been accepted that such communities form a specific category of minorities with special needs.¹⁸⁰ The International Labour Organisation adopted Convention No. 107 on Indigenous and Tribal Populations in 1957, an instrument with a predominantly assimilationist approach to the question of indigenous peoples. It was partially revised in Convention No. 169 on Indigenous and Tribal Peoples in Independent Countries, 1989. The change in terminology from 'populations' to 'peoples' is instructive¹⁸¹ and the latter Convention focuses far more upon the protection of the social, cultural, religious and spiritual values and practices of indigenous peoples. Unlike the prevailing approach to the definition of minorities generally, which intermingles objective and subjective criteria, this Convention stipulates in article 1(2) that 'self-identification as indigenous or tribal shall be regarded as a fundamental criterion' for determining the groups to which the Convention applies. The Sub-Commission recommended that a study of discrimination against indigenous populations should be made and this was completed in 1984.¹⁸² A definition of indigenous populations was suggested and

¹⁷⁹ See below, pp. 365 and 376.

¹⁸⁰ See e.g. P. Thornberry, *Indigenous Peoples and Human Rights*, Manchester, 2002; S. Marquardt, 'International Law and Indigenous Peoples', 3 *International Journal on Group Rights*, 1995, p. 47; J. Berger and P. Hunt, 'Towards the International Protection of Indigenous Peoples' Rights', 12 NQHR, 1994, p. 405; C. Tennant, 'Indigenous Peoples, International Institutions, and the International Legal Literature from 1945–1993', 16 HRQ, 1994, p. 1; E. Stamatopoulou, 'Indigenous Peoples and the United Nations: Human Rights as a Developing Dynamic', 16 HRQ, 1994, p. 58; Crawford, *Rights of Peoples*; R. Barsh, 'Indigenous Peoples: An Emerging Object of International Law', 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 369; J. Anaya, *Indigenous Peoples in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2004, and G. Bennett, *Aboriginal Rights in International Law*, London, 1978. See also *Justice Pending: Indigenous Peoples and Other Good Causes* (eds. G. Alfredsson and M. Stavropoulou), The Hague, 2002. Note in particular the cases of *Delgamuukw v. British Columbia* (1998) 153 DLR (4th) 193; 115 ILR, p. 446, Canadian Supreme Court, and *Mabo v. State of Queensland (No. 1)* (1988) 83 ALR 14; 112 ILR, p. 412 and (*No. 2*) (1992) 107 ALR 1; 112 ILR, p. 457. See also *The Richtersveld Community case*, 24 March 2003, Supreme Court of South Africa, 127 ILR, p. 507.

¹⁸¹ But note that the Convention provides that the use of the term 'peoples' is not to be construed as having any implication as regards the rights that may attach to the term under international law (article 1(3)).

¹⁸² The Martinez Cobo Report, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1986/7 and Add. 1–4.

various suggestions made as to future action. In 1982, the Sub-Commission established a Working Group on Indigenous Populations¹⁸³ and a Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples was finally adopted in 2007.¹⁸⁴ The Declaration notes that indigenous peoples have the right to the full enjoyment, as a collective or as individuals, of all human rights and fundamental freedoms as recognised in the Charter of the United Nations, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and international human rights law (article 1). They have the right to self-determination (article 3) and, in exercising their right to self-determination, have the right to autonomy or self-government in matters relating to their internal and local affairs, as well as ways and means for financing their autonomous functions (article 4). They further have the right to maintain and strengthen their distinctive political, economic, social and cultural characteristics, as well as their legal systems, while retaining the right to participate fully in the life of the state (article 5), the right to a nationality (article 6) and the collective right to live in freedom and security as distinct peoples free from any act of genocide or violence (article 7(2)). They also have the right not to be subjected to forced assimilation or destruction of their culture, while states are to provide effective mechanisms for prevention of, and redress for, *inter alia* any action which has the aim or effect of depriving them of their integrity as distinct peoples, or of their cultural values or ethnic identities (article 8). The Declaration also lists their rights to practise their cultural traditions, and to education, access to media and health practices, together with a range of rights concerning their distinctive relationship to the land (articles 9–37). The United Nations, its bodies, including the Permanent Forum on Indigenous Issues, and specialised agencies, including at the country level, and states are called upon to promote respect for and full application of the Declaration (article 42). A special rapporteur on indigenous peoples was appointed in 2001 and a Voluntary Fund for Indigenous Populations established in 1985.¹⁸⁵ A Permanent Forum on Indigenous Issues was set up in 2000¹⁸⁶ and UN Development Group Guidelines on Indigenous

¹⁸³ See E/CN.4/Sub.2/1982/33.

¹⁸⁴ A Draft Declaration was adopted in 1994: see resolution 1994/45, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/56, p. 103. See also R. T. Coulter, 'The Draft UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples: What Is It? What Does It Mean?', 13 NQHR, 1995, p. 123.

¹⁸⁵ See General Assembly resolution 40/131.

¹⁸⁶ See ECOSOC resolution 2000/22. Note that 1993 was designated International Year of the World's Indigenous Peoples, see E/CN.4/1994/AC.4/TN.4/2, while the International Decade of the World's Indigenous Peoples was declared by the General Assembly on

Peoples' Issues were produced in 2008.¹⁸⁷ An expert mechanism, consisting of five independent experts, on the rights of indigenous peoples was called for in Human Rights Council resolution 6/36, 2007, in order to provide the Council with thematic expertise.

The question of an American Declaration on Indigenous Peoples has also been under discussion within the Organisation of American States.¹⁸⁸ The Inter-American Court of Human Rights discussed the issue of the rights of indigenous peoples to ancestral lands and resources in *The Mayagna (Sumo) Awas Tingni Community v. Nicaragua* in 2001.¹⁸⁹ The Court emphasised the communitarian tradition regarding a communal form of collective property of the land and consequential close ties of indigenous people with that land,¹⁹⁰ and noted that the customary law of such people had especially to be taken into account so that 'possession of the land should suffice for indigenous communities lacking real title'.¹⁹¹ In *Sawhoyamaya Indigenous Community v. Paraguay*, the Court emphasised that the close ties of members of the indigenous communities with their traditional lands and the natural resources associated with their culture had to be secured under article 21 of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights concerning the right to the use and enjoyment of property. The Court, in interpreting this provision, also took account of Convention No. 169 of the ILO, which required *inter alia* respect for the special importance for the cultural and spiritual values of the communities concerned of their relationship with their lands. The collective nature of property ownership was also noted. In addition, the Court found a violation of the right to recognition as a person before the law under article 3 of the Convention as there had been no registration or official documentation

10 December 1994. See also the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination's General Recommendation 23 on Indigenous Peoples, 1997, A/52/18, annex V.

¹⁸⁷ www.2.ohchr.org/english/issues/indigenous/docs/guidelines.pdf.

¹⁸⁸ See the Draft Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples adopted in 1995, OEA/Ser.L/V/II/90; Doc. 9, rev. 1. For further discussions on the Draft Declaration, see e.g. GT/DADIN/doc.1/99 rev.2, 2000; Report of the Rapporteur of the Working Group, GT/DADIN/doc.83/02, 2002 and OEA/Ser.K/XVI, GT/DADIN/doc.301/07, 2007. See also, for example, resolutions AG/RES.1780 (XXI-0/01), 2001 and AG/RES. 2073 (XXXV-0/05), 2007.

¹⁸⁹ Series C, No. 79. ¹⁹⁰ *Ibid.*, para. 149.

¹⁹¹ *Ibid.*, para. 151. Nicaragua was held to be obliged to create 'an effective mechanism for delimitation, demarcation and titling of the property of indigenous communities, in accordance with their customary law, values, customs and mores', *ibid.*, para. 164. See also the cases of the *Moiwana Community v. Suriname*, Judgment of 15 June 2005, Series C, No. 124 and the *Indigenous Community Yakye Axa v. Paraguay*, Judgment of 17 June 2005, Series C, No. 125.

for the existence of several members of the indigenous community. The Court ordered the state to adopt all legislative, administrative and other measures to guarantee the members of the community ownership rights over their traditional lands.¹⁹²

Other suggested collective rights

The subject of much concern in recent years has been the question of a right to development.¹⁹³ In 1986, the UN General Assembly adopted the Declaration on the Right to Development.¹⁹⁴ This instrument reaffirms the interdependence and indivisibility of all human rights and seeks to provide a framework for a range of issues (article 9). The right to development is deemed to be an inalienable human right of all human beings and peoples to participate in and enjoy economic, social, cultural and political development (article 1), while states have the primary responsibility to create conditions favourable to its realisation (article 3), including the duty to formulate international development policies (article 4). States are particularly called upon to ensure *inter alia* equal opportunity for all in their access to basic resources, education, health services, food, housing, employment and the fair distribution of income. Effective measures are to be undertaken to ensure that women participate in the development process and appropriate economic and social reforms are to be carried out with a view to eradicating all social injustices (article 8). The question of encouraging the implementation of this Declaration was the subject of continuing UN attention,¹⁹⁵ with the reaffirmation of the right to

¹⁹² Judgment of 29 March 2006, Series C, No. 146, paras. 17 ff., 187 ff. and 210 ff.

¹⁹³ See e.g. *Le Droit au Développement au Plan International* (ed. R. J. Dupuy), Paris, 1980; A. Pellet, *Le Droit International du Développement*, 2nd edn, Paris, 1987; K. Mbaye, 'Le Droit du Développement comme un Droit de l'Homme', 5 *Revue des Droits de l'Homme*, 1972, p. 503; *Report of the UN Secretary-General on the International Dimensions of the Right to Development as a Human Right*, E/CN.4/1334, 1979; O. Schachter, 'The Emerging International Law of Development', 15 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1976, p. 1; R. Rich, 'The Right to Development as an Emerging Human Right', 23 *Va. JIL*, 1983, p. 287; K. de Vey Mestdagh, 'The Right to Development', 28 *NILR*, 1981, p. 31; I. Brownlie, *The Human Right to Development*, Commonwealth Secretariat Human Rights Unit Occasional Paper, 1989; C. Weeramantry, 'The Right to Development', 25 *IJIL*, 1985, p. 482; P. Alston, 'Revitalising United Nations Work on Human Rights and Development', 18 *Melbourne University Law Review*, 1991, p. 216, and T. Kunanayakam, *Historical Analysis of the Principles Contained in the Declaration on the Right to Development*, HR/RD/1990/CONF.1, 1990.

¹⁹⁴ General Assembly resolution 41/128.

¹⁹⁵ Note e.g. the Global Consultation carried out in 1990, E/CN.4/1990/9/Rev.1, 1990: see R. Barsh, 'The Right to Development as a Human Right: Results of the Global Consultation',

development by the UN Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, 1993¹⁹⁶ and the establishment by the UN Commission on Human Rights of a Working Group on the Right to Development in the same year.¹⁹⁷ It should also be noted that Principle 3 of the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development, 1992 stipulated that ‘the right to development must be fulfilled so as to equitably meet developmental and environmental needs of present and future generations’.¹⁹⁸ While the general issue of development is clearly on the international agenda in the context of economic issues and broad human rights concerns, it is premature to talk in terms of a legal right in international law of groups or peoples or states to development.¹⁹⁹ Other suggested collective rights have included the right to a healthy environment²⁰⁰ and the right to peace.²⁰¹

The United Nations system – implementation²⁰²

The United Nations system has successfully generated a wide-ranging series of international instruments dealing with the establishment of

13 HRQ, 1991, p. 322; the Report of the UN Secretary-General, E/CN.4/1992/10, 1991 and the Concrete Proposals of the UN Secretary-General, E/CN.4/1993/16, 1993.

¹⁹⁶ See 32 ILM, 1993, p. 1661.

¹⁹⁷ Resolution 1993/22. The first report of this Working Group was at the end of 1993, E/CN.4/1994/21. The most recent mechanism has been the creation of an open-ended Working Group on the Right to Development in 1998, resolution 1998/72. A high-level task force on the implementation of the right to development was established by the Working Group in 2004: see e.g. A/HRC/8/WG.2/TF/2, 2008.

¹⁹⁸ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 876. See also below, chapter 15.

¹⁹⁹ Note that the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights has adopted a General Comment in which it is stated that international co-operation for development and thus the realisation of economic, social and cultural rights is an obligation for all states, General Comment 3 (1991), HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, pp. 48, 52.

²⁰⁰ See e.g. S. Prakash, ‘The Right to the Environment. Emerging Implications in Theory and Praxis’, 13 NQHR, 1995, p. 403. See further below, chapter 15 on international environmental law.

²⁰¹ See e.g. General Assembly resolutions 33/73 and 39/11. See also R. Bilder, ‘The Individual and the Right to Peace’, 11 *Bulletin of Peace Proposals*, 1982, p. 387, and J. Fried, ‘The United Nations’ Report to Establish a Right of the Peoples to Peace’, 2 *Pace Yearbook of International Law*, 1990, p. 21.

²⁰² See *The Future of UN Human Rights Treaty Monitoring* (eds. P. Alston and J. Crawford), Cambridge, 2000; *Human Rights: International Protection, Monitoring and Enforcement* (ed. J. Symonides), Aldershot, 2003; Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapters 2–5; Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, chapters 6–8; *United Nations Action in the Field of Human Rights*, New York, 1994; *The United Nations and Human Rights* (ed. P. Alston), Oxford, 1992; *Guide to International Human Rights Practice* (ed. H. Hannum), 4th edn, Ardsley, 2004; Ramcharan, *Human Rights: Thirty Years After the Universal Declaration*, and *UN Law/Fundamental*

standards and norms in the human rights field.²⁰³ The question of implementation will now be addressed.

Political bodies – general

The General Assembly has power under article 13 of the Charter to initiate studies and make recommendations regarding *inter alia* human rights. Human rights items on its agenda may originate in Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) reports or decisions taken by the Assembly at earlier sessions to consider particular matters, or are proposed for inclusion by the UN organs, the Secretary-General or member states. Most items on human rights go to the Assembly's Third Committee (Social, Humanitarian and Cultural Committee), but others may be referred to other committees such as the Sixth Committee (Legal) or the First Committee (Political and Security) or the Special Political Committee. The Assembly has also established subsidiary organs under Rule 161, several of which deal with human rights issues, such as the Special Committee on Decolonisation, the UN Council for Namibia, the Special Committee against Apartheid, the Special Committee to Investigate Israeli Practices in the Occupied Territories and the Committee on the Exercise of the Inalienable Rights of the Palestine People.²⁰⁴ ECOSOC may, under article 62 of the Charter, make recommendations on human rights, draft conventions for the Assembly and call international conferences on human rights matters. It consists of fifty-four members of the UN elected by the General Assembly and hears annually the reports of a wide range of bodies including the UN High Commissioner for Refugees, the UN Children's Fund, the UN Conference on Trade and Development, the UN Environment Programme and the World Food Council. Of its subsidiary bodies, the Commission on

Rights (ed. A. Cassese), Alphen aan den Rijn, 1979. See also Lauterpacht, *International Law*, chapter 11; F. Ermacora, 'Procedure to Deal with Human Rights Violations', 7 *Revue des Droits de l'Homme*, 1974, p. 670; Robertson and Merrills, *Human Rights*, and A. A. Cançado Trindade, 'Co-existence and Co-ordination of Mechanisms of International Protection of Human Rights', 202 HR, 1987, p. 9.

²⁰³ See also e.g. the Slavery Convention, 1926 and Protocol, 1953; the Supplementary Convention on the Abolition of Slavery, the Slave Trade and Institutions and Practices Similar to Slavery, 1956; the Convention for the Suppression of the Traffic in Persons and of the Exploitation of the Prostitution of Others, 1949; the Convention on the Status of Refugees, 1951 and Protocol, 1967; the Convention relating to the Status of Stateless Persons, 1954 and the Convention on the Reduction of Statelessness 1961.

²⁰⁴ See *UN Action*, chapter 1. Note also the relevant roles of the other organs of the UN, the Security Council, Trusteeship Council, International Court and Secretariat, *ibid*.

Human Rights and the Commission on the Status of Women have the most direct connection with human rights issues.²⁰⁵ The Commission on Human Rights was replaced by the Human Rights Council in 2006.

The Commission on Human Rights (1946–2006)²⁰⁶

This was established in 1946 as a subsidiary organ of ECOSOC with extensive terms of reference, including making studies, preparing recommendations and drafting international instruments on human rights. Originally consisting of forty-three representatives of member states of the UN selected by ECOSOC on the basis of equitable geographic distribution,²⁰⁷ that number was increased to fifty-three by resolution 1990/48 in May 1990. For its first twenty years, it took the view that it had no power to take any action with regard to complaints concerning human rights violations, despite receiving many via the Secretary-General.²⁰⁸ However, in 1967, ECOSOC resolution 1235 (XLII) authorised the Commission and its Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities to examine information relevant to gross violations of human rights contained in communications, and to study such situations as revealed a consistent pattern of violations with a view to making recommendations to ECOSOC.²⁰⁹ This constituted the public debate function of the Commission relating to specific situations. The situations in question referred at first primarily to Southern Africa. In 1967, also, the Commission set up an ad hoc working group of experts on South Africa and has since established working groups on Chile; Situations revealing a Consistent Pattern of Gross Violations of Human Rights; Disappearances; the Right to Development and structural adjustment programmes and economic, social and cultural rights. Special rapporteurs were appointed by the Commission to deal with situations in specific countries, such as, for

²⁰⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 13 ff. See also Assembly resolutions 1991B (XVIII) and 2847 (XXVI).

²⁰⁶ See e.g. N. Rodley and D. Weissbrodt, 'United Nations Non-Treaty Procedures for Dealing with Human Rights Violations' in Hannum, *Guide to International Human Rights Practice*, p. 65; Lauterpacht, *International Law*, chapter 11; Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, chapter 9, and T. Buergenthal and J. V. Torney, *International Human Rights and International Education*, Washington, DC, 1976, pp. 75 ff. See also *UN Action*, p. 20, and H. Tolley, 'The Concealed Crack in the Citadel', 6 HRQ, 1984, p. 420. A Commission on the Status of Women was also created: see *UN Action*, p. 15, and below, p. 322.

²⁰⁷ See ECOSOC resolutions 6 (I), 1946; 9 (II), 1946; 845 (XXXII), 1961; 1147 (XLI), 1966 and 1979/36, 1979.

²⁰⁸ See e.g. Report of the First Session of the Commission, E/259, para. 22.

²⁰⁹ See Tolley, 'Concealed Crack', pp. 421 ff., and ECOSOC resolution 728F.

example, Afghanistan, Cuba, El Salvador, Equatorial Guinea, Guatemala, Iran, Sudan, the Democratic Republic of the Congo and Iraq. Special Rapporteurs were also appointed to deal with particular thematic concerns such as summary executions, torture, mercenaries, religious intolerance and the sale of children. In an attempt to provide some co-ordination, the first meeting of special rapporteurs and other mechanisms of the special procedures of the Commission took place in 1994.²¹⁰

A series of informal working groups were created to prepare drafts of international instruments, such as the Declaration on Religious Intolerance, the Convention against Torture and instruments on minority rights and the rights of the child.²¹¹ The Commission also established a Group of Three pursuant to article IX of the Apartheid Convention to consider states' reports under that Convention. In 1970 a new procedure for dealing with human rights complaints was introduced in ECOSOC resolution 1503 (XLVIII).²¹² By virtue of this resolution as modified in 2000,²¹³ the Sub-Commission appointed annually a Working Group on Communications to meet to consider communications received and to pass on to the Sub-Commission those that appeared to reveal 'a consistent pattern of gross and reliably attested violations of human rights'. These were examined by the Working Group on Situations of the Sub-Commission which then determined whether or not to refer particular situations to the Commission.²¹⁴ Those so transmitted were examined in two separate closed meetings by the Commission, which then decided whether or not to take further action, such as appointing an independent expert or discussing the matter under the resolution 1235 public procedure. The procedure, which was confidential until the final stage, did not fulfil initial high expectations. The confidentiality requirement and the highly political nature of the Commission itself combined to frustrate hopes that had been raised.²¹⁵

²¹⁰ See E/CN.4/1995/5. See also the report of the meeting of special rapporteurs/representatives/experts and chairpersons of working groups of the special procedures of the Commission on Human Rights and of the advisory services programme, May 1995, E/CN.4/1996/50.

²¹¹ See e.g. *UN Action*, pp. 20–3.

²¹² See e.g. P. Alston, 'The Commission on Human Rights' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, pp. 126, 145 ff., and M. Bossuyt, 'The Development of Special Procedures of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights', 6 HRLJ, 1985, p. 179.

²¹³ ECOSOC resolution 2000/3. ²¹⁴ See also Sub-Committee resolution 1 (XXIV), 1971.

²¹⁵ See e.g. T. Van Boven, 'Human Rights Fora at the United Nations' in *International Human Rights Law and Practice* (ed. J. C. Tuttle), Philadelphia, 1978, p. 83; H. Möller, 'Petitioning the United Nations', 1 *Universal Human Rights*, 1979, p. 57; N. Rodley, 'Monitoring

Despite good work in the field of standard-setting and in drawing attention to abuses of human rights, albeit on rather less than a universalist basis, the Commission began to attract an increasing level of criticism, mainly concerning political selectivity and the failure to review objectively the situation in particular countries.²¹⁶ The High Level Panel on Threats, Challenge and Change convened by the United Nations Secretary-General concluded in its Report of 2004 that, 'In recent years, the Commission's capacity to perform these tasks has been undermined by eroding credibility and professionalism.'²¹⁷ As a result, the Human Rights Council was created to replace the Commission by General Assembly resolution 60/251 on 3 April 2006.

The Human Rights Council

The Council was established with a higher status in the UN hierarchy as a subsidiary organ of the General Assembly with forty-seven members,²¹⁸ elected by a majority of members of the Assembly for three years for up to two consecutive terms. The Commission's special procedures function was retained, although all functions and responsibilities of the Commission assumed by the Council are subject to a review aimed at their rationalisation and improvement. A new universal periodic review mechanism by which the human rights record of all countries is to be examined was also established. This was intended as a partial response to the criticisms of

Human Rights by the UN System and Non-governmental Organisations' in Kommers and Loescher, *Human Rights and American Foreign Policy*, p. 157, and Tolley, 'Concealed Crack', pp. 429 ff. Note that the Commission chairman began the practice of announcing the names of the countries subject to complaints under resolution 1503, although no further details were disclosed: see e.g. E/CN.4/1984/77, p. 151, naming Albania, Argentina, Benin, Haiti, Indonesia, Malaysia, Pakistan, Paraguay, the Philippines, Turkey and Uruguay.

²¹⁶ See e.g. the Amnesty International Report, 'Meeting the Challenge', AI Index, IOR 40/008/2005.

²¹⁷ www.un.org/secureworld/report3.pdf, at para. 283. See also the Secretary-General's Report, 'In Larger Freedom: Towards Development, Security and Human Rights for All', A/59/2005, at para. 182. It was noted that the Commission had been 'undermined by the politicisation of its sessions and the selectivity of its work', A/59/2005/Add.1, para. 2. Note also, for example, the inability of the Commission in 1990 even to discuss draft resolutions relating to China and Iraq: E. Zoller, '46th Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights', 8(2) NQHR, 1990, pp. 140, 142. Note also the election of Libya to chair the Commission in 2003.

²¹⁸ Distributed regionally with thirteen seats for the African group; thirteen seats for the Asian group; six seats for the Eastern European group; eight seats for the Latin American and Caribbean group and seven seats for the Western European and Other group.

the Commission's selectivity.²¹⁹ The Council adopted resolution 5/1 on 18 June 2007 entitled 'United Nations Human Rights Council: Institution-Building', which ranged over a wide area and established the details of the universal periodic review mechanism. The principles laid down for this mechanism include the universality of human rights, universal coverage and equal treatment of all states and the conduct of the review in an objective, transparent, non-selective, constructive, non-confrontational and non-politicised manner. This resolution also laid down details for the conduct and review of the special procedures, provided for the creation of the Human Rights Council Advisory Committee, composed of eighteen experts serving in their personal capacity, intended to function as a think-tank for the Council and work at its direction, and provided for the establishment of a confidential complaints procedure based upon the mechanism created by ECOSOC resolution 1503 (1970).²²⁰

Expert bodies established by UN organs

The Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection
of Human Rights²²¹

The Sub-Commission, initially entitled the Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities, was established by the Commission in 1947 with wide terms of reference.²²² It came to an end in 2006 as a consequence of General Assembly resolution 60/251, which established the Human Rights Council. The Sub-Commission was composed of twenty-six members elected by the Commission on the basis of nominations of experts made by the UN member states and it

²¹⁹ See e.g. F. J. Hampson, 'An Overview of the Reform of the UN Human Rights Machinery', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 7.

²²⁰ The Council also adopted at its first session in June 2006 the International Convention for the Protection of All Persons from Enforced Disappearances and the UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples. A Code of Conduct for Special Procedures Mandate-holders was adopted at the fifth session of the Council.

²²¹ See e.g. A. Eide, 'The Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 211; Tolley, 'Concealed Crack', pp. 437 ff.; J. Gardeniers, H. Hannum and C. Kruger, 'The UN Sub-Committee on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities: Recent Developments', 4 HRQ, 1982, p. 353, and L. Garber and C. O'Connor, 'The 1984 UN Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 168. See also *UN Action*, pp. 23–4.

²²² See e.g. *UN Action*, p. 23. See also resolutions E/259, 1947; E/1371, 1949, and 17 (XXXVII), 1981.

was renamed the Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights in 1999.²²³ Members served in their individual capacity for four-year terms²²⁴ and the composition reflected an agreed geographical pattern.²²⁵ The Sub-Commission produced a variety of studies by rapporteurs²²⁶ and established a number of subsidiary bodies. The Working Group on Communications functioned within the framework of the resolution 1503 procedure, while the Working Group on Contemporary Forms of Slavery²²⁷ and the Working Group on the Rights of Indigenous Populations²²⁸ prepared material within the areas of their concern.²²⁹ The Sub-Commission from 1987 produced an annual report listing all states that had proclaimed, extended or ended a state of emergency.²³⁰

The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights²³¹

The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights was adopted in 1966 and entered into force in 1976. Article 2 provides that each state party undertakes to take steps to the maximum of its available resources 'with a view to achieving progressively the full realisation of the rights recognised in the present Covenant'. In other words, an evolving programme is envisaged depending upon the goodwill and resources of states rather than an immediate binding legal obligation with regard to the rights in question. The rights included range from self-determination (article 1), the right to work (articles 6 and 7), the right to social security (article 9), adequate standard of living (article 11) and education

²²³ See E/1999/INF/2/Add.2.

²²⁴ See ECOSOC resolution 1986/35 with effect from 1988. Before this, the term was for three years and originally for two years.

²²⁵ See ECOSOC resolution 1334 (XLIV), 1968, and decision 1978/21, 1978.

²²⁶ See e.g. the Capotorti Study, above, footnote 165, and the Ruhashyankiko Study, above, footnote 90. See also the Daes Study on the *Individual's Duties to the Community*, E/CN.4/Sub.2/432/Rev.2, 1983 and the Questiaux Study on *States of Emergency*, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1982/15, 1982.

²²⁷ Resolution 11 (XXVII), 1974, established the Working Group on Slavery. Its name was changed in 1988: see resolution 1988/42. See K. Zoglin, 'United Nations Action Against Slavery: A Critical Evaluation', 8 HRQ, 1986, p. 306.

²²⁸ See resolution 2 (XXXIV), 1981. See also E/CN.4/Sub.2/1982/33, and above, p. 298.

²²⁹ See e.g. the S. Chernichenko and W. Treat Study on *The Administration of Justice and the Human Rights of Detainees: The Right to a Fair Trial*, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/24, 1994.

²³⁰ See e.g. E/CN.4/Sub.2/1987/19/Rev.1; E/CN.4/Sub.2/1991/28 and E/CN.4/Sub.2/1995/20 and Corr. 1.

²³¹ See e.g. Craven, *Covenant*.

(article 13) to the right to take part in cultural life and enjoy the benefits of scientific progress and its applications (article 15).

Under the Covenant itself, states parties were obliged to send periodic reports to ECOSOC.²³² In 1978, a Sessional Working Group was set up, consisting of fifteen members elected by ECOSOC from amongst states parties for three-year renewable terms. The Group met annually and reported to the Council. It was not a success, however, and in 1985 it was decided to establish a new committee of eighteen members, this time composed of independent experts.²³³ Accordingly in 1987 the new Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights commenced operation.²³⁴ But it is to be especially noted that unlike, for example, the Racial Discrimination Committee, the Human Rights Committee and the Torture Committee, the Economic Committee is not autonomous and it is responsible not to the states parties but to a main organ of the United Nations. As will be seen by comparison with the other bodies, the Economic Committee has at its disposal only relatively weak means of implementation.

The implementation of this Covenant faces particular difficulties in view of the perceived vagueness of many of the principles contained therein, the relative lack of legal texts and judicial decisions, and the ambivalence of many states in dealing with economic, social and cultural rights. In addition, problems of obtaining relevant and precise information have loomed large, not least in the light of the fact that comparatively few non-governmental organisations focus upon this area.²³⁵

The Committee initially met annually in Geneva for three-week sessions, though it now meets twice per year. Its primary task lies in

²³² See articles 16–22 of the Covenant, and *UN Chronicle*, July 1982, pp. 68–70. See generally on implementation B. S. Ramcharan, 'Implementing the International Covenants on Human Rights' in Ramcharan, *Human Rights: Thirty Years After the Universal Declaration*, p. 159; P. Alston, 'Out of the Abyss: The Challenge Confronting the New UN Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 9 HRQ, 1987, p. 332; P. Alston and G. Quinn, 'The Nature and Scope of States Parties' Obligations under the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 9 HRQ, 1987, p. 156; P. Alston, 'The Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 473; B. Simma, 'The Implementation of the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights' in *The Implementation of Economic, Social and Cultural Rights* (ed. F. Matscher), Kehl am Rhein, 1991, p. 75, and S. Leckie, 'The Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, chapter 6.

²³³ See ECOSOC resolution 1985/17.

²³⁴ See P. Alston and B. Simma, 'First Session of the UN Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 747, and 'Second Session of the UN Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 82 AJIL, 1988, p. 603.

²³⁵ See Alston, 'The Economic Rights Committee', p. 474.

examining states' reports, drawing upon a list of questions prepared by its pre-sessional working group. The problem of overdue reports from states parties applies here as it does with regard to other human rights implementation committees. The Economic Rights Committee adopted a decision at its sixth session, whereby it established a procedure allowing for the consideration of the situation of particular states where those states had not produced reports for a long time, thus creating a rather valuable means of exerting pressure upon recalcitrant states parties.²³⁶ Additional information may also be requested from states parties where this is felt necessary.²³⁷ The Committee also prepares 'General Comments', the second of which on international technical assistance measures was adopted at its fourth session in 1990.²³⁸ The third general comment, adopted in 1991, is of particular interest and underlines that although the Covenant itself appears promotional and aspirational, nevertheless certain obligations of immediate effect are imposed upon states parties. These include the non-discrimination provisions and the undertaking to take steps which should be taken within a reasonably short time after the Covenant has entered into force for the state concerned and which should be 'deliberate, concrete and targeted as clearly as possible towards meeting the obligations recognised in the Covenant'. The Committee also emphasised that international co-operation for development, and thus for the realisation of economic, social and cultural rights, was an obligation for all states.²³⁹ General Comment 4, adopted in 1991, discussed the right to adequate housing,²⁴⁰ while General Comment 5, adopted in 1994, dealt with the rights of persons with disabilities.²⁴¹ General Comment 6, adopted in 1995, concerned the economic, social and cultural rights of older persons,²⁴² General Comment 16, adopted in 2005, concerned the equal treatment of men and women with regard to the enjoyment of all economic, social and cultural rights,²⁴³ while General Comments 18 and 19, adopted in 2005 and 2007 respectively, concerned the right to work and the right to social security. The Committee also holds general discussions on particular

²³⁶ See e.g. E/C.12/1994/20, p. 18. ²³⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 16–18.

²³⁸ See HRI/GEN/Rev.1, p. 45. ²³⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 48. ²⁴⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 53.

²⁴¹ E/1995/22, p. 99. On disabilities and human rights, see also the final report of Leandro Despouy, Special Rapporteur on Human Rights and Disability, of the Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities, E/CN.4/Sub.2/1991/31; General Assembly resolution 3447 (XXX) of 9 December 1975 adopting the Declaration of the Rights of Disabled Persons, and General Assembly resolution 37/52 of 3 December 1982 adopting the World Programme of Action concerning Disabled Persons, A/37/351/Add.1 and Corr. 1, chapter VIII.

²⁴² E/C.12/1995/16, adapted in 1995. ²⁴³ E/C.12/2005/4.

rights in the form of a 'day of general discussion'.²⁴⁴ It cannot hear individual petitions, nor has it an inter-state complaints competence.²⁴⁵

*Expert bodies established under particular treaties*²⁴⁶

A number of expert committees have been established under particular treaties. They are not subsidiary organs of the UN, but autonomous, although in practice they are closely connected with it, being serviced, for example, by the UN Secretariat through the UN Centre for Human Rights in Geneva.²⁴⁷ These committees are termed 'UN Treaty Organs'.

The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination²⁴⁸

Under Part II of the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination, 1965, a Committee of eighteen experts was established

²⁴⁴ At the ninth session, for example, in the autumn of 1993, the Committee discussed the right to health, E/1994/23, p. 56, while at the tenth session in May 1994 the role of social safety-nets as a means of protecting economic, social and cultural rights was discussed: see E/1995/22, p. 70. See also generally C. Dommen, 'Building from a Solid Basis: The Fourth Session of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 8 NQHR, 1990, p. 199, and C. Dommen and M. C. Craven, 'Making Way for Substance: The Fifth Session of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights', 9 NQHR, 1991, p. 93.

²⁴⁵ Note, however, that at its seventh session in 1992, the Committee formally proposed that an optional protocol providing for some kind of petition procedure be drafted and adopted: see E/1993/22, pp. 87 ff., and Craven, *Covenant*, pp. 98 ff. See also E/C.12/1994/12 and E/C.12/1995/SR.50, December 1995. A working group was established in 2003 to achieve this and the matter is still under consideration: see e.g. A/HRC/8/WG.4/3, 2008.

²⁴⁶ See e.g. Alston and Crawford, *Future*, and S. Lewis-Anthony and M. Scheinin, 'Treaty-Based Procedures for Making Human Rights Complaints Within the UN System' in Hannum, *Guide to International Human Rights Practice*, p. 43. See also M. O'Flaherty, *Human Rights and the UN: Practice Before the Treaty Bodies*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 2002.

²⁴⁷ This link with the Secretariat has been termed ambiguous, particularly in the light of the difficulties in performing the two functions carried out by the Secretariat (Charter-based political activities and expert activities): see e.g. T. Opsahl, 'The Human Rights Committee' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, pp. 367, 388.

²⁴⁸ See e.g. M. Banton, 'Decision-Taking in the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 55; K. J. Partsch, 'The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 339; T. Meron, *Human Rights Law-Making in the United Nations*, Oxford, 1986, chapter 1; K. Das, 'The International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination' in *The International Dimension of Human Rights* (eds. K. Vasak and P. Alston), Paris, 1982, p. 307; Lerner, *UN Convention* and 'Curbing Racial Discrimination – Fifteen Years CERD', 13 *Israel Yearbook on Human Rights*, 1983, p. 170; M. R. Burrowes, 'Implementing the UN Racial Convention – Some Procedural Aspects', 7 *Australian YIL*, p. 236, and T. Buergenthal, 'Implementing the UN Racial Convention', 12 *Texas International Law Journal*, 1977, p. 187.

consisting of persons serving in their personal capacity and elected by the states parties to the Convention.²⁴⁹ States parties undertook to submit reports every two years regarding measures adopted to give effect to the provisions of the Convention to the Committee, which itself would report annually through the UN Secretary-General to the General Assembly. The Committee may make suggestions and general recommendations based on the examination of the reports and information received from the states parties, which are reported to the General Assembly together with any comments from states parties.²⁵⁰ The Committee is also able to operate early warning measures and urgent procedures. Early warning measures are directed at preventing existing problems from escalating into conflicts, while urgent procedures are to respond to problems requiring immediate attention to prevent or limit the scale or number of serious violations of the Convention. Decisions, statements or resolutions may be adopted. Such action has been taken in relation to more than twenty states parties. The Committee has, for example, conducted two field visits in connection with the procedure and has drawn the attention of the Secretary-General, the Security Council or other relevant bodies to issues in relation to six states parties. For example, in 1993, the Committee, concerned at events in the former Yugoslavia, sought additional information on the implementation of the Convention as a matter of urgency.²⁵¹ This information was provided during the autumn of 1994 and the spring of 1995.²⁵²

The Committee has also established a procedure to deal with states whose reports are most overdue. Under this procedure, the Committee proceeds to examine the situation in the state party concerned on the basis of the last report submitted.²⁵³ At its forty-ninth session, the Committee further decided that states parties whose initial reports were excessively overdue by five years or more would also be scheduled for a review of implementation of the provisions of the Convention. In the absence of an initial report, the Committee considers all information submitted by the state party to other organs of the United Nations or, in the absence of such material, reports and information prepared by organs of the United

²⁴⁹ Rules of Procedure have been adopted, see CERD/C/35/Rev. 3 (1986), and are revised from time to time: see, for example, A/48/18, p. 137.

²⁵⁰ Articles 8 and 9 of the Convention. ²⁵¹ A/48/18, paras. 496–506.

²⁵² See e.g. CERD/C/248/Add.1 (Federal Republic of Yugoslavia); CERD/C/249/Add.1 (Croatia) and CERD/C/247/Add.1 (Bosnia and Herzegovina). See also CERD/C/65/DEC.1 (Darfur, 2004); CERD/C/66/DAR/Dec.2 (Darfur, 2005); CERD/C/DEC/1 (USA, 2006); and CERD/C/DEC/SUR/5 (Suriname, 2006).

²⁵³ See e.g. A/48/18, p. 20.

Nations. In practice the Committee also considers relevant information from other sources, including from non-governmental organisations, whether it is an initial or a periodic report that is seriously overdue.²⁵⁴

Under article 11, one state party may bring a complaint against another state party and the Committee will seek to resolve the complaint. Should the matter not be so settled, either party may refer it back to the Committee and by article 12 an ad hoc Conciliation Commission may be established, which will report back to the Committee with any recommendation thought proper for the amicable solution of the dispute.²⁵⁵ In addition to hearing states' reports and inter-state complaints, the Committee may also hear individual petitions under the article 14 procedure. This, however, is subject to the state complained of having made a declaration recognising the competence of the Committee to receive and consider such communications. If such a declaration has not been notified by a state, therefore, the Committee has no authority to hear a petition against the state.²⁵⁶ Under this procedure, consideration of communications is confidential and the Committee may be assisted by a five-person working group making recommendations to the full Committee. The Committee began hearing individual communications in 1984 and a number of important cases have now been completed.²⁵⁷

The Committee regularly meets twice a year and has interpreted articles of the Convention, discussed reports submitted to it, adopted decisions²⁵⁸ and general recommendations,²⁵⁹ obtained further information from states parties and co-operated closely with the International Labour Organisation and UNESCO. Many states have enacted legislation as a consequence of the work of the Committee and its record of impartiality is very good.²⁶⁰ The Committee also receives copies of petitions and

²⁵⁴ See e.g. A/57/18, p. 99. ²⁵⁵ Article 13.

²⁵⁶ The provision entered into force on 31 December 1982 upon the tenth declaration.

²⁵⁷ See e.g. the Report of the Committee for its forty-eighth session, A/48/18, 1994, pp. 105 and 130, and for the sixtieth and sixty-first sessions, A/57/18, p. 128. Note, for example, the case of *Durmic v. Serbia and Montenegro* concerning discrimination against Roma in Serbia, CERD/C/68/D/29/2003, 2006.

²⁵⁸ For example, the decision adopted on 19 March 1993 requesting the governments of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) and Croatia to submit further information concerning implementation of the Convention: see A/48/18, p. 112.

²⁵⁹ See, for example, General Recommendation XII (42) encouraging successor states to declare that 'they continue to be bound' by the obligations of the Convention if predecessor states were parties to it; General Recommendation XIV (42) concerning non-discrimination, A/48/18, pp. 113 ff. and General Recommendation XXIX concerning discrimination based upon descent, A/57/18, p. 111.

²⁶⁰ See e.g. Lerner, *UN Convention*.

reports sent to UN bodies dealing with trust and non-self-governing territories in the general area of Convention matters and may make comments upon them.²⁶¹ The general article 9 reporting system appears to work well, with large numbers of reports submitted and examined, but some states have proved tardy in fulfilling their obligations.²⁶² The Committee has published guidelines for states parties as to the structure of their reports.²⁶³

The Committee, in order to speed up consideration of states' reports, has instituted the practice of appointing country rapporteurs, whose function it is to prepare analyses of reports of states parties.²⁶⁴ The Committee has also called for additional technical assistance to be provided by the UN to help in the reporting process, while it has expressed serious concern that financial difficulties are beginning to affect its functioning.²⁶⁵

The Human Rights Committee²⁶⁶

The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights was adopted in 1966 and entered into force in 1976.²⁶⁷ By article 2, all states parties undertake to respect and to ensure to all individuals within their territory and subject to their jurisdiction the rights recognised in the Covenant. These rights are clearly intended as binding obligations. They include the right of peoples to self-determination (article 1), the right to life (article 6),

²⁶¹ Article 15. See e.g. A/48/18, p. 107.

²⁶² See e.g. A/38/18, pp. 14–24. Note, for example, that by late 1983 fifteen reminders had been sent to Swaziland requesting it to submit its fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh overdue periodic reports, *ibid.*, p. 21. See also A/44/18, pp. 10–16.

²⁶³ See CERD/C/70/Rev.1, 6 December 1983.

²⁶⁴ See e.g. A/44/18, 1990, p. 7 and A/48/18, 1994, p. 149. ²⁶⁵ A/44/18, p. 91.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. Joseph *et al.*, *International Covenant*; Nowak, *UN Covenant*; Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 844 ff.; McGoldrick, *Human Rights Committee*; Opsahl, 'Human Rights Committee', p. 367; D. Fischer, 'Reporting under the Convention on Civil and Political Rights: The First Five Years of the Human Rights Committee', 76 AJIL, 1982, p. 142; Ramcharan, 'Implementing the International Covenants'; E. Schwelb, 'The International Measures of Implementation of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights and of the Optional Protocol', 12 *Texas International Law Review*, 1977, p. 141; M. Nowak, 'The Effectiveness of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights – Stock-taking after the First Eleven Sessions of the UN Human Rights Committee', 2 HRLJ, 1981, p. 168 and 5 HRLJ, 1984, p. 199. See also M. Bossuyt, *Guide to the Travaux Préparatoires of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights*, The Hague, 1987; F. Jhabvala, 'The Practice of the Covenant's Human Rights Committee, 1976–82: Review of State Party Reports', 6 HRQ, 1984, p. 81, and P. R. Gandhi, 'The Human Rights Committee and the Right of Individual Communication', 57 BYIL, 1986, p. 201.

²⁶⁷ See Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, p. 83.

prohibitions on torture and slavery (articles 7 and 8), the right to liberty and security of the person (article 9), due process (article 14), freedom of thought, conscience and religion (article 18), freedom of association (article 22) and the rights of persons belonging to minorities to enjoy their own culture (article 27).

A Human Rights Committee was established under Part IV of the Covenant. It consists of eighteen independent and expert members, elected by the states parties to the Covenant for four-year terms, with consideration given to the need for equitable geographical distribution and representation of the different forms of civilisation and of the principal legal systems.²⁶⁸ The Committee meets three times a year (in Geneva and New York) and operates by way of consensus.²⁶⁹ The Covenant is primarily implemented by means of a reporting system, whereby states parties provide information on the measures adopted to give effect to the rights recognised in the Covenant. Initial reports are made within one year of the entry into force of the Covenant for the state in question and general guidelines have been issued.²⁷⁰ The Committee has decided that subsequent reports would be required every five years,²⁷¹ and the first of the second periodic reports became due in 1983. The reports are discussed by the Committee with representatives of the state concerned (following upon the precedent established by the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination).²⁷² The practice used to be that Committee members would informally receive information from sources other than the reporting state provided the source is not publicly identified. This enabled the Committee to be more effective than would otherwise have been the case.²⁷³ However, no doubt due to the ending of Soviet control in Eastern Europe and the demise of the Soviet Union, there appears to be no

²⁶⁸ See articles 28–32 of the Covenant.

²⁶⁹ See e.g. Nowak, 'Effectiveness', p. 169, 1981 3 HRLJ, 1982, p. 209 and 1984, p. 202. See also A/36/40, annex VII, Introduction; CCPR/C/21/Rev.1 and A/44/40, p. 173.

²⁷⁰ See article 40 and CCPR/C/5. Supplementary reports may be requested: see Rule 70(2) of the provisional rules of procedure, CCPR/C/3/Rev.1. See now the Rules of Procedure 2001, CCPR/C/3/Rev.6 and the revised consolidated guidelines 2001, CCPR/C/66/GUI/Rev.2.

²⁷¹ See CCPR/C/18; CCPR/C/19 and CCPR/C/19/Rev.1. See also CCPR/C/20 regarding guidelines. Several states have been lax about producing reports, e.g. Zaire and the Dominican Republic, while the initial report of Guinea was so short as to be held by the Committee as not providing sufficient information: see Nowak, 'Effectiveness', 1984, p. 200.

²⁷² See Buergenthal, 'Implementing', pp. 199–201, and Fischer, 'Reporting', p. 145.

²⁷³ Fischer, 'Reporting', pp. 146–7.

problem now about acknowledging publicly the receipt of information from named non-governmental organisations.²⁷⁴ The Committee may also seek additional information from the state concerned. For example, in October 1992, the Committee adopted a decision requesting the governments of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro), Croatia and Bosnia-Herzegovina to submit a short report concerning measures to prevent *inter alia* ethnic cleansing and arbitrary killings.²⁷⁵ Such reports were forthcoming and were discussed with the state representatives concerned and comments adopted. The Committee thereafter adopted an amendment to its rules of procedure permitting it to call for reports at any time deemed appropriate.²⁷⁶ The Committee has also noted that the peoples within a territory of a former state party to the Covenant remain entitled to the guarantees of the Covenant.²⁷⁷ Where states parties have failed to report over several reporting cycles, or request a postponement of their scheduled appearance before the Committee at short notice, the Committee may continue to examine the situation in the particular state on the basis of material available to it.²⁷⁸

Under article 40(4), the Committee is empowered to make such 'general comments as it may deem appropriate'. After some discussion, a consensus was adopted in 1980, which permitted such comments provided that they promoted co-operation between states in the implementation of the Covenant, summarised the experience of the Committee in examining states' reports and drew the attention of states parties to matters relating to the improvement of the reporting procedure and the implementation of the Covenant. The aim of the Committee was to engage in a constructive dialogue with each reporting state, and the comments would be non-country-specific.²⁷⁹ However, in 1992, the Committee decided that at the end of the consideration of each state party's report, specific comments would be adopted referring to the country in question and such comments

²⁷⁴ Such documents may now be officially distributed, rather than being informally made available to Committee members individually: see McGoldrick, *Human Rights Committee*, p. liii.

²⁷⁵ CCPR/C/SR/1178/Add.1.

²⁷⁶ New Rule 66(2), see CCPR/C/SR/1205/Add.1. See also S. Joseph, 'New Procedures Concerning the Human Rights Committee's Examination of State Reports', 13 NQHR, 1995, p. 5.

²⁷⁷ See, with regard to former Yugoslavia, CCPR/C/SR.1178/Add.1, pp. 2–3 and CCPR/C/79/Add.14–16. See, with regard to the successor states of the USSR, CCPR/C/79/Add.38 (Azerbaijan). See also I. Boerefijn, 'Towards a Strong System of Supervision', 17 HRQ, 1995, p. 766.

²⁷⁸ See e.g. A/56/40, vol. I, p. 25. ²⁷⁹ CCPR/C/18.

would express both the satisfaction and the concerns of the Committee as appropriate.²⁸⁰ These specific comments are in a common format and refer to 'positive aspects' of the report and 'principal subjects for concern', as well as 'suggestions and recommendations'.²⁸¹ The Committee has also adopted the practice, where a due report has not been forthcoming, of considering the measures taken by the state party in question to give effect to rights in the Covenant in the absence of a report but in the presence of representatives of the state and of adopting provisional concluding observations.²⁸²

The Committee has also adopted a variety of General Comments.²⁸³ These comments are generally non-controversial. One interesting comment on article 6 (the right to life), however, emphasised the Committee's view that 'the designing, testing, manufacture, possession and development of nuclear weapons are among the greatest threats to the right to life', and that the 'production, testing, possession and deployment and use of nuclear weapons should be prohibited and recognised as crimes against humanity'.²⁸⁴

In April 1989, the Committee adopted a General Comment on the rights of the child, as the process of adopting the Convention on the Rights of the Child neared its climax. It noted the importance of economic, social and cultural measures, such as the need to reduce infant mortality and prevent exploitation. Freedom of expression was referred to, as was

²⁸⁰ See A/47/40, p. 4.

²⁸¹ See, for example, the comments concerning Colombia in September 1992, CCPR/C/79/Add.2; Guinea in April 1993, CCPR/C/79/Add.20; Norway in November 1993, CCPR/C/79/Add.27; Morocco in November 1994, CCPR/C/79/Add.44; the Russian Federation in July 1995, CCPR/C/79/Add.54; Estonia in November 1995, CCPR/C/79/Add.59 and the United Kingdom in July 1995, CCPR/C/79/Add.55 and, relating to Hong Kong, in November 1995, CCPR/C/79/Add.57. Note that in September 1995, Mexico responded to the Committee's Concluding Comments upon its report by issuing Observations, CCPR/C/108.

²⁸² See Rule 70 of its Rules of Procedure 2005. The procedures are described, for example, in the 2005–6 Report of the Committee, A/61/40, paras. 49 ff. (2006)

²⁸³ See e.g. T. Opsahl, 'The General Comments of the Human Rights Committee' in *Festschrift für Karl Josef Partsch zum 75*, Berlin, 1989, p. 273.

²⁸⁴ CCPR/C/21/Add.4, 14 November 1984. Note that the International Court of Justice gave an Advisory Opinion on 8 July 1996 at the request of the General Assembly of the UN concerning the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, in which it was noted that the right not to be arbitrarily deprived of one's life applied also in hostilities. Whether a particular loss of life was arbitrary within the terms of article 6 would depend on the situation and would be decided by reference to the law applicable in armed conflict and not deduced from the terms of the Covenant itself, ICJ Reports, 1996, para. 25; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 190.

the requirement that children be protected against discrimination on grounds such as race, sex, religion, national or social origin, property or birth. Responsibility for guaranteeing the necessary protection lies, it was stressed, with the family, society and the state, although it is primarily incumbent upon the family. Special attention needed to be paid to the right of every child to acquire a nationality.²⁸⁵

In November 1989, an important General Comment was adopted on non-discrimination. Discrimination was to be understood to imply for the purposes of the Covenant:

any distinction, exclusion, restriction or preference which is based on any ground such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status, and which has the purpose or effect of nullifying or impairing the recognition, enjoyment or exercise by all persons, on an equal footing, of all rights and freedoms.²⁸⁶

Identical treatment in every instance was not, however, demanded. The death sentence could not, under article 6(5) of the Covenant, be imposed on persons under the age of eighteen or upon pregnant women. It was also noted that the principle of equality sometimes requires states parties to take affirmative action in order to diminish or eliminate conditions which cause or help to perpetuate discrimination prohibited by the Covenant. In addition, it was pointed out that not every differentiation constituted discrimination, if the criteria for such differentiation were reasonable and objective and if the aim was to achieve a purpose which was legitimate under the Covenant.²⁸⁷

Important General Comments on Minorities²⁸⁸ and Reservations²⁸⁹ were adopted in 1994. In 1997, the Committee noted in General Comment 26 that the rights in the Covenant belonged to the people living in the territory of the state party concerned and that international law did not permit a state which had ratified or acceded or succeeded to the Covenant to denounce it or withdraw from it,²⁹⁰ while in General Comment 28 the Committee pointed out that the rights which persons belonging to minorities enjoyed under article 27 of the Covenant in respect of their language, culture and religion did not authorise any state, group or person

²⁸⁵ A/44/40, pp. 173–5. ²⁸⁶ CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add.1, p. 3.

²⁸⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 4. See also above, p. 286.

²⁸⁸ HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, 1995. See further above, p. 293

²⁸⁹ CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add.6. See further below, p. 913. ²⁹⁰ A/53/40, annex VII.

to violate the right to the equal enjoyment by women of any Covenant rights, including the right to equal protection of the law.²⁹¹

Under article 41 of the Covenant, states parties may recognise the competence of the Committee to hear inter-state complaints. Both the complainant and the object state must have made such declarations. The Committee will seek to resolve the issue and, if it is not successful, it may under article 42 appoint, with the consent of the parties, an ad hoc Conciliation Commission.²⁹²

The powers of the Human Rights Committee were extended by Optional Protocol I to the Civil and Political Rights Covenant with regard to ratifying states to include the competence to receive and consider individual communications alleging violations of the Covenant by a state party to the Protocol.²⁹³ The individual must have exhausted all available domestic remedies (unless unreasonably prolonged) and the same matter must not be in the process of examination under another international procedure.²⁹⁴ The procedure under the Optional Protocol is divided into several stages. The gathering of basic information is done by the Secretary-General and laid before the Working Group on Communications of the Committee, which recommends whether, for example, further information is required from the applicant or the relevant state party and whether the communication should be declared inadmissible. The procedure before the Committee itself is divided into an admissibility and a merits stage. Interim decisions may be made by the Committee and ultimately a 'final view' communicated to the parties.²⁹⁵

²⁹¹ CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add.10, 2000. General Comment 29 adopted in 2001 dealt with the question of non-derogable provisions, see CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add.11. Note also General Comment 32 concerning the right to equality before courts and tribunals and to a fair trial, CCPR/C/GC/32, 2007.

²⁹² The inter-state procedure has not been used to date.

²⁹³ Signed in 1966 and in force as from 23 March 1976. See e.g. H. Steiner, 'Individual Claims in a World of Massive Violations: What Role for the Human Rights Committee?' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 15; P. R. Ghandi, *The Human Rights Committee and the Right of Individual Communication: Law and Practice*, Aldershot, 1998; A. de Zayas, H. Möller and T. Opsahl, 'Application of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights under the Optional Protocol by the Human Rights Committee', 28 German YIL, 1985, p. 9, and *Selected Decisions of the Human Rights Committee under the Optional Protocol*, New York, vol. I, 1985 and vol. II, 1990. Two states (Jamaica and Trinidad and Tobago) have denounced the Protocol.

²⁹⁴ Article 5, Optional Protocol.

²⁹⁵ See Nowak, 'Effectiveness', 1980, pp. 153 ff., and 1981 Report of Human Rights Committee, A/36/40, pp. 85–91.

An increasing workload, however, began to cause difficulties as the number of parties to the Optional Protocol increased. By mid-2006, 1,490 communications had been registered. Of these, 547 had been the subject of a final view (of which 429 concluded that a violation had occurred), 449 were declared inadmissible and 218 were discontinued or withdrawn, leaving 276 yet to be concluded.²⁹⁶ In order to deal with the growth in applications, the Committee decided at its thirty-fifth session to appoint a Special Rapporteur to process new communications as they were received (i.e. between sessions of the Committee), and this included requesting the state or individual concerned to provide additional written information or observations relevant to the question of the admissibility of the communication.²⁹⁷ The Committee has also authorised its five-member Working Group on Communications to adopt a decision declaring a communication admissible, providing there is unanimity.²⁹⁸ The Committee may also adopt interim measures of protection under Rule 92 of its Rules of Procedure 2005. This has been used primarily in connection with cases submitted by or on behalf of persons sentenced to death and awaiting execution.²⁹⁹ Such a request was made, for example, to Trinidad and Tobago in the *Ashby* case pending examination of the communication, but to no avail. After the individual was executed, the Committee adopted a decision expressing its indignation at the failure of the state party to comply with the request for interim measures and deciding to continue consideration of the case.³⁰⁰ Where the state concerned has disregarded the Committee's decisions under Rule 92, the Committee has found that the state party has violated its obligations under the Optional Protocol.³⁰¹

The Committee, however, is not a court with the power of binding decision on the merits of cases. Indeed, in instances of non-compliance with its final views, the Optional Protocol does not provide for an enforcement mechanism, nor indeed for sanctions, although follow-up techniques are being developed in order to address such problems.³⁰²

²⁹⁶ Report of the Committee for 2005–6, A/61/40, para. 89 (2006).

²⁹⁷ A/44/40, pp. 139–40. See also Rule 91 of the amended Rules of Procedure, *ibid.*, p. 180.

²⁹⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 140.

²⁹⁹ See, in particular, *Canepa v. Canada*, A/52/40, vol. II, annex VI, sect. K. See also *Ruzmetov v. Uzbekistan*, A/61/40, vol. II, p. 31 (2006) and *Boucherf v. Algeria*, *ibid.*, p. 312.

³⁰⁰ A/49/40, pp. 70–1. ³⁰¹ See *Piandiong et al. v. The Philippines*, A/54/40, para. 420(b).

³⁰² Note that in October 1990, the Committee appointed a Special Rapporteur to follow up cases, CCPR/C/SR.1002, p. 8. See Rule 101 of the Rules of Procedure 2005. In 1994, the Committee decided that every form of publicity would be given to follow-up activities, including separate sections in annual reports, the issuing of annual press communiqués and the institution of such practices in a new rule of procedure (Rule 99)

A variety of interesting decisions have so far been rendered. The first group of cases concerned complaints against Uruguay, in which the Committee found violations by that state of rights recognised in the Covenant.³⁰³ In the *Lovelace* case,³⁰⁴ the Committee found Canada in breach of article 27 of the Covenant protecting the rights of minorities since its law provided that an Indian woman, whose marriage to a non-Indian had broken down, was not permitted to return to her home on an Indian reservation. In the *Mauritian Women* case³⁰⁵ a breach of Covenant rights was upheld where the foreign husbands of Mauritian women were liable to deportation whereas the foreign wives of Mauritian men would not have been.

The Committee has also held that the Covenant's obligations cover the decisions of diplomatic authorities of a state party regarding citizens living abroad.³⁰⁶ In the *Robinson* case,³⁰⁷ the Committee considered whether a state was under an obligation itself to make provision for effective representation by counsel in a case concerning a capital offence, in circumstances where the counsel appointed by the author of the communication declines to appear. The Committee emphasised that it was axiomatic that legal assistance be available in capital cases and decided that the absence of counsel constituted unfair trial.

The Committee has dealt with the death penalty issue in several cases³⁰⁸ and has noted, for example, that such a sentence may only be imposed in accordance with due process rights.³⁰⁹ The Committee has also taken the view that where the extradition of a person facing the death penalty may expose the person to violation of due process rights in the receiving state, the extraditing state may be in violation of the Covenant.³¹⁰

emphasising that follow-up activities were not confidential, A/49/40, pp. 84–6. See also A/56/40, vol. I, p. 131.

³⁰³ These cases are reported in 1 HRLJ, 1980, pp. 209 ff. See, for other cases, 2 HRLJ, 1981, pp. 130 ff.; *ibid.*, pp. 340 ff.; 3 HRLJ, 1982, p. 188; 4 HRLJ, 1983, pp. 185 ff. and 5 HRLJ, 1984, pp. 191 ff. See also Annual Reports of the Human Rights Committee, 1981 to date.

³⁰⁴ 1981 Report of the Human Rights Committee, A/36/40, p. 166.

³⁰⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 134.

³⁰⁶ See e.g. the *Waksman* case, 1 HRLJ, 1980, p. 220 and the *Lichtensztein* case, 5 HRLJ, 1984, p. 207.

³⁰⁷ A/44/40, p. 241 (1989).

³⁰⁸ See e.g. *Thompson v. St Vincent and the Grenadines*, A/56/40, vol. II, annex X, sect. H, para. 8.2.

³⁰⁹ See e.g. the *Berry, Hamilton, Grant, Currie and Champagnie* cases against Jamaica, A/49/40, vol. II, pp. 20, 37, 50, 73 and 136.

³¹⁰ See the *Ng* case, concerning extradition from Canada to the US. The Committee found that there was no evidence of such a risk, A/49/40, vol. II, p. 189.

The Committee has also noted that execution by gas asphyxiation would violate the prohibition in article 7 of cruel and inhuman treatment.³¹¹ The issue faced in the *Vuolanne* case³¹² was whether the procedural safeguards in article 9(4) of the Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, whereby a person deprived of his liberty is to be allowed recourse to the courts, applied to military disciplinary detention. The Committee was very clear that it did. One issue of growing importance concerns the question of the extraterritorial application of human rights treaties, that is whether a state party to a particular human rights treaty is obliged to apply it outside of its own territory where it is acting abroad either by way of its state agents or organs or because it is in control of an area beyond its border. The Committee has consistently taken the view that the Covenant does apply in such circumstances, whether it be with regard to state agents acting abroad³¹³ or with regard to the obligations of Israel within the occupied territories.³¹⁴

It is already apparent that the Committee has proved a success and is performing a very important role in the field of human rights protection.³¹⁵

The Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women

The Commission on the Status of Women was established in 1946 as one of the functional commissions of ECOSOC and has played a role both in standard-setting and in the elaboration of further relevant instruments.³¹⁶ The Committee on the Elimination of All Forms of

³¹¹ *Ibid.* ³¹² *Ibid.*, p. 249.

³¹³ See e.g. *López Burgos v. Uruguay*, case no. 52/79, 68 ILR, p. 29, or *Lilian Celiberti de Casariego v. Uruguay*, case no. 56/79, 68 ILR, p. 41, concerning the activities of Uruguayan agents in Brazil and Argentina respectively.

³¹⁴ See e.g. CCPR/C/79/Add.93, para. 10 and CCPR/C/0/78/1SR, para. 11 (concluding observations on Israel's reports). This approach was affirmed by the International Court of Justice in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 178–9; 129, ILR, pp. 37, 97–8.

³¹⁵ The second optional protocol aimed at the abolition of the death penalty was adopted in 1990, while the desirability of a third optional protocol to the Covenant, concerning the right to a fair trial and a remedy, has been considered by the Commission on Human Rights: see E/CN.4/Sub.2.1994/24, Sub-Commission resolution 1994/35 and Commission resolution 1994/107.

³¹⁶ See ECOSOC resolutions 1/5 (1946), 2/11 (1946) and 48 (IV) (1947). See also L. Reanda, 'The Commission on the Status of Women' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 265. The mandate of the Commission was revised by ECOSOC resolutions 1987/22 and

Discrimination Against Women was established under article 22 of the 1979 Convention on the Elimination of all Forms of Discrimination Against Women.³¹⁷ This Convention is implemented by means of states' reports. It is composed of twenty-three experts serving in individual capacities for four-year terms. It held its first regular session in October 1982 and at its second session examined the reports of seven states parties regarding measures taken to comply with the terms of the Convention. It reports annually to the UN General Assembly through ECOSOC.³¹⁸ The Committee has provided guidelines to states parties on reporting, whereby initial reports are intended to be detailed and comprehensive with subsequent reports being of an updating nature.³¹⁹ Since 1990, subsequent reports are examined first by a pre-sessional working group. Following discussion of a report, the Committee provides concluding comments. The Committee, in addition to hearing states' reports, may make suggestions and general recommendations, which are included in the report.³²⁰ Since 1997 the process of adopting a general recommendation is preceded by an open dialogue between the Committee, non-governmental organisations and others regarding the topic of the general recommendation

1996/6. There is also an individual petition procedure by which complaints are considered by a Working Group on Communications which then reports to the Commission. The Commission in turn reports to ECOSOC.

³¹⁷ This came into force in 1981. See R. Jacobson, 'The Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination against Women' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 444; A. Byrnes, 'The "Other" Human Rights Body: The Work of the Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women', 14 *Yale Journal of International Law*, 1989, p. 1; M. Galey, 'International Enforcement of Women's Rights', 6 HRQ, 1984, p. 463, and M. Wadstein, 'Implementation of the UN Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women', 6 NQHR, 1988, p. 5. See also R. Cook, 'Women's International Human Rights Law', 15 HRQ, 1993, p. 230; *Human Rights of Women* (ed. R. Cook), Philadelphia, 1994; M. Freeman and A. Fraser, 'Women's Human Rights' in Herlin and Hargrove, *Human Rights: An Agenda for the Next Century*, p. 103; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapter 13; Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, pp. 175 and 541; J. Morsink, 'Women's Rights in the Universal Declaration', 13 HRQ, 1991, p. 229; H. Charlesworth and C. Chinkin, *The Boundaries of International Law: A Feminist Analysis*, Manchester, 2000, and M. Bustelo, 'The Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination against Women at the Crossroads' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 79.

³¹⁸ See articles 17–21 of the Convention and the first Report of the Committee, A/38/45, and *UN Chronicle*, November 1983, pp. 65–86.

³¹⁹ See CEDAW/C/7Rev.3 and with regard to reports submitted from 1 January 2003, www.un.org/womenwatch/daw/cedaw/guidelines.PDF.

³²⁰ Article 21.

and a discussion of a draft prepared by a Committee member. General Recommendation No. 5 called upon states parties to make more use of 'temporary special measures such as positive action, preferential treatment or quota systems to advance women's integration into education, the economy, politics and employment', while General Recommendation No. 8 provided that states parties should take further measures to ensure to women, on equal terms with men and without discrimination, the opportunity to represent their government at the international level.³²¹ General Recommendation No. 12 called upon states parties to include in their reports information on measures taken to deal with violence against women, while General Recommendation No. 14 called for measures to be taken to eradicate the practice of female circumcision. General Recommendation No. 19 (1992) dealt at some length with the problem of violence against women in general and specific terms, and General Recommendation No. 21 is concerned with equality in marriage and family relations.³²² In 1999, the Committee adopted a General Recommendation No. 24 on women and health. General Recommendation No. 25 was adopted in 2004 and concerned temporary special measures.³²³

The Committee, however, met only for one session of two weeks a year, which was clearly inadequate. This was increased to two sessions a year from 1997.³²⁴ An Optional Protocol adopted in 1999 and in force as from December 2000 allows for the right of individual petition provided a number of conditions are met, including the requirement for the exhaustion of domestic remedies. In addition, the Protocol creates an inquiry procedure enabling the Committee to initiate inquiries into situations of grave or systematic violations of women's rights where it has received reliable information of grave or systematic violations by a state party of rights established in the Convention.³²⁵ In recent years, the importance of women's rights has received greater recognition. The Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action adopted in 1993 emphasised that the human rights of women should be brought into the

³²¹ A/43/38 (1988). ³²² HRI/GEN/1/Rev.1, 1994, pp. 72 ff.

³²³ HRI/GEN/1/Rev.7, 2004, p. 282.

³²⁴ Although the Committee met exceptionally for three sessions during 2002 to deal with backlog reports. However, see General Assembly resolution 60/230 concerning the extension of meeting time in 2005 and 2006.

³²⁵ See, for example, for an earlier view, R. Cook, 'The Elimination of Sexual Apartheid: Prospects for the Fourth World Conference on Women', *ASIL Issue Papers on World Conferences*, Washington, 1995, pp. 48 ff.

mainstream of UN system-wide activity and that women's rights should be regularly and systematically addressed throughout the UN bodies and mechanisms.³²⁶ In the light of this, the fifth meeting of Chairpersons of Human Rights Treaty Bodies in 1994 agreed that the enjoyment of the human rights of women by each treaty body within the competence of its mandate should be closely monitored. Each of the treaty bodies took steps to examine its guidelines with this in mind.³²⁷ It should also be noted, for example, that the Special Rapporteur on Torture was called upon by the Commission on Human Rights in 1994 to examine questions concerning torture directed disproportionately or primarily against women.³²⁸ In addition, the General Assembly adopted a Declaration on the Elimination of Violence Against Women in February 1994,³²⁹ and a Special Rapporteur on Violence against Women, its Causes and Consequences was appointed in 1994.³³⁰ The International Labour Organisation established the promotion of equality of opportunity and treatment of men and women in employment as a priority item in its programme and budget for 1994/5.³³¹ The Committee on the Rights of the Child has also discussed the issue of the 'girl-child' and the question of child prostitution.³³²

³²⁶ See Part II, Section 3, 32 ILM, 1993, p. 1678. See also the Beijing Conference 1995, Cook, 'Elimination of Sexual Apartheid'; the Beijing plus 5 process, see General Assembly resolution 55/71. In 2000, the General Assembly adopted resolution S-23/3 containing a Political Declaration and a statement on further actions and initiatives to implement the Beijing Declaration and Platform for Action.

³²⁷ See HRI/MC/1995/2. See also the Report of the Expert Group Meeting on the Development of Guidelines for the Integration of Gender Perspectives into Human Rights Activities and Programmes, E/CN.4/1996/105, 1995. This called *inter alia* for the use of gender-inclusive language in human rights instruments and standards, the identification, collection and use of gender-disaggregated data, gender-sensitive interpretation of human rights mechanisms and education and the promotion of a system-wide co-ordination and collaboration on the human rights of women within the UN.

³²⁸ See resolution 1994/37. See also the Report of the Special Rapporteur of January 1995, E/CN.4/1995/34, p. 8.

³²⁹ Resolution 48/104, see 33 ILM, 1994, p. 1049. Note also the adoption of the Inter-American Convention on the Prevention, Punishment and Eradication of Violence Against Women in June 1994, *ibid.*, p. 1534 and the March 2002 Joint Declaration by the Special Rapporteur on women's rights of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights, the Special Rapporteur on Violence Against Women, its Causes and its Consequences of the UN Commission on Human Rights, and the Special Rapporteur on the Rights of Women in Africa of the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights which called for the elimination of violence and discrimination against women: see www.cidh.org/declaration.women.htm.

³³⁰ See E/CN.4/2003/75. ³³¹ E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/5, p. 6.

³³² See further below, p. 331.

The Committee Against Torture³³³

The prohibition of torture is contained in a wide variety of human rights³³⁴ and humanitarian law treaties,³³⁵ and has become part of customary international law. Indeed it is now established as a norm of *jus cogens*.³³⁶ Issues concerning torture have come before a number of human rights organs, such as the Human Rights Committee,³³⁷ the European Court of Human Rights³³⁸ and the International Criminal Tribunal on the Former Yugoslavia.³³⁹

The Convention against Torture and Other Cruel, Inhuman or Degrading Treatment or Punishment was signed on 10 December 1984 and entered into force in 1987. It built particularly upon the

³³³ See e.g. M. Nowak and E. McArther, *The UN Convention Against Torture: A Commentary*, Oxford, 2008; A. Byrnes, 'The Committee Against Torture' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 509; R. Bank, 'Country-Oriented Procedures under the Convention against Torture: Towards a New Dynamism' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 145; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapter 15; N. Rodley, *The Treatment of Prisoners under International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 1999; A. Boulesbaa, *The UN Convention on Torture and Prospects for Enforcement*, The Hague, 1999; M. Evans, 'Getting to Grips with Torture', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 365; J. Burgers and H. Danelius, *The United Nations Convention against Torture*, Boston, 1988; Meron, *Human Rights in International Law*, pp. 126–30, 165–6, 511–15; S. Ackerman, 'Torture and Other Forms of Cruel and Unusual Punishment in International Law', 11 *Vanderbilt Journal of Transnational Law*, 1978, p. 653; Amnesty International, *Torture in the Eighties*, London, 1984; A. Dormenval, 'UN Committee Against Torture: Practice and Perspectives', 8 NQHR, 1990, p. 26; Z. Haquani, 'La Convention des Nations Unies Contre la Torture', 90 RGDI, 1986, p. 127; N. Lerner, 'The UN Convention on Torture', 16 *Israel Yearbook on Human Rights*, 1986, p. 126, and R. St J. Macdonald, 'International Prohibitions against Torture and other Forms of Similar Treatment or Punishment' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1987, p. 385.

³³⁴ See e.g. article 5 of the Universal Declaration; article 7 of the Civil and Political Rights Covenant; article 3 of the European Convention on Human Rights; article 5 of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights; article 5 of the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights; the UN Convention against Torture, 1984; the European Convention on the Prevention of Torture, 1987 and the Inter-American Convention to Prevent and Punish Torture, 1985.

³³⁵ See e.g. the four Geneva Red Cross Conventions, 1949 and the two Additional Protocols of 1977.

³³⁶ See e.g. *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3) [2000] 1 AC 147, 198; 119 ILR, p. 135 and the *Furundžija* case, 121 ILR, pp. 213, 260–2. See also *Al-Adsani v. UK*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 21 November 2001, para. 61; 123 ILR, pp. 24, 41–2.

³³⁷ See e.g. *Vuolanne v. Finland*, 265/87, 96 ILR, p. 649, and generally Joseph *et al.*, *International Covenant*, chapter 9.

³³⁸ See e.g. *Selmouni v. France*, Judgment of 28 July 1999.

³³⁹ See e.g. the *Delalić* case, IT-96-21, Judgment of 16 November 1998.

Declaration on the Protection of All Persons from being subjected to Torture and Other Cruel, Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment adopted by the General Assembly in 1975.³⁴⁰ Other relevant instruments preceding the Convention were the Standard Minimum Rules for the Treatment of Prisoners, 1955, the Code of Conduct for Law Enforcement Officers, 1979 (article 5) and the Principles of Medical Ethics, 1982 (Principles 1 and 2).³⁴¹

Torture is defined in article 1 of the Convention against Torture to mean:

[a]ny act by which severe pain or suffering, whether physical or mental, is intentionally inflicted on a person for such purposes as obtaining from him or a third person information or a confession, punishing him for an act he or a third person has committed or is suspected of having committed, or intimidating or coercing him or a third person, or for any reason based on discrimination of any kind, when such pain or suffering is inflicted by or at the instigation of or with the consent or the acquiescence of a public official or other person acting in an official capacity. It does not include pain or suffering arising only from, inherent in or incidental to lawful sanctions.

The states parties to the Convention are under duties *inter alia* to take measures to prevent such activities in territories under their jurisdiction (article 2), not to return a person to a country where he may be subjected to torture (article 3), to make torture a criminal offence and establish jurisdiction over it (articles 4 and 5),³⁴² to prosecute or extradite persons charged with torture (article 7) and to provide a remedy for persons tortured (article 14).

The Committee against Torture was established under Part II of the Convention against Torture, 1984 and commenced work in 1987. It consists of ten independent experts. In an interesting comment on the proliferation of international human rights committees and the dangers of inconsistencies developing, article 17(2) provides that in nominating experts, states parties should 'bear in mind the usefulness of nominating persons who are also members of the Human Rights Committee'.

³⁴⁰ General Assembly resolution 3452 (XXX).

³⁴¹ Note also the Principles on the Protection of Persons under Detention or Imprisonment adopted by the General Assembly in 1989. See generally *Human Rights: A Compilation of International Instruments*, United Nations, New York, vol. I (First Part), 1993, Section H.

³⁴² See, as far as the UK is concerned, sections 134 and 135 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988.

The Committee receives states' reports (article 19), has an inter-state complaint competence (article 21) and may hear individual communications (article 22). In both the latter cases, it is necessary that the state or states concerned should have made a declaration accepting the competence of the Committee.³⁴³ Article 20 of the Convention provides that if the Committee receives 'reliable evidence' that torture is being systematically practised in the territory of a state party, it may invite the state in question to co-operate in examining the evidence. The Committee may designate one or more of its members to make a confidential inquiry. In doing so, it shall seek the co-operation of the state concerned and, with the latter's agreement, such an inquiry may include a visit to its territory. The Committee will transmit the findings of the inquiry to the state, together with appropriate comments or suggestions. The proceedings up to this point are to be confidential, but the Committee may, after consulting the state, decide to include a summary account of the results in its annual report. This additional, if cautiously phrased, power may provide the Committee with a significant role.³⁴⁴ It should be noted that states parties have the ability to 'opt out' of this procedure if they so wish at the time of signature or ratification, or accession.³⁴⁵

The conduct of the reporting procedure bears much resemblance to the practice of the UN Human Rights Committee.³⁴⁶ Guidelines have been issued for states parties and the discussions with state representatives are held with a view to establishing a constructive dialogue. Many problems facing other treaty bodies also appear with regard to the Committee against Torture, for example, overdue reports and problems relating to implementation of the Convention generally. The Committee may also make comments on states' reports in the form of concluding observations³⁴⁷ and may issue general comments.³⁴⁸ Interim measures of protection may also

³⁴³ See e.g. the Committee's report of Spring 2002, A/57/44, p. 82.

³⁴⁴ Note e.g. the report of the Committee on Sri Lanka in this context, A/57/44, p. 59 (2002). See also E. Zoller, 'Second Session of the UN Commission against Torture', 7 NQHR, 1989, p. 250.

³⁴⁵ Article 28(1). See e.g. A/57/44, p. 81.

³⁴⁶ As at May 2006, the Committee had received a total of 194 reports, with 192 overdue: see A/61/44, p. 5 (2006).

³⁴⁷ See e.g. A/61/44, pp. 6 ff. (2006).

³⁴⁸ To date only one has been issued on the implementation of article 3 concerning deportation to states where there is substantial reason to fear torture: see A/53/44, annex IX.

be granted under Rule 108(1) and this is monitored by the rapporteurs for new complaints and interim measures.³⁴⁹

The first three cases before the Committee under article 22 were admissibility decisions concerning Argentinian legislation exempting junior military officers from liability for acts of torture committed during the 1976–83 period and its compatibility with the Torture Convention.³⁵⁰ The Committee noted that there existed a general rule of international law obliging all states to take effective measures to prevent and punish acts of torture. However, the Convention took effect only from its date of entry (26 June 1987) and could not be applied retroactively to cover the enactment of legislation prior to that date. Therefore, the communications were inadmissible. However, the Committee did criticise the Argentinian legislation and stated that Argentina was morally bound to provide a remedy to the victims of torture.³⁵¹ In May 2002, the Committee revised its rules of procedure and established the function of a Rapporteur for follow-up of decisions on complaints submitted under article 22.³⁵² The Committee has held that where substantial grounds exist for believing that the applicant would be in danger of being subjected to torture, the expulsion or return of the applicant by the state party concerned to the state in which he might be tortured would constitute a violation of article 3 of the Convention.³⁵³ The Committee has also emphasised that the risk of torture must be assessed on grounds that go beyond mere theory or suspicion. The risk need not be highly probable, but it must be personal and present. While the Committee does give considerable weight to findings of fact made by the organs of the state party concerned, it is not bound by these and has the power of free assessment of the facts arising in the circumstances of each case. It has been particularly underlined that the prohibition enshrined in article 3 of the Convention was an absolute one.³⁵⁴ It has also been noted that where complaints of torture are made during court

³⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 82–3. See also A/57/44, p. 219.

³⁵⁰ *OR, MM and MS v. Argentina*, communications nos. 1–3/1988. Decisions of 23 November 1989. See 5 *Interights Bulletin*, 1990, p. 12.

³⁵¹ The Committee has, however, held that where the effect of the violations continues after the date that the Convention comes into force for the state concerned and where those effects constitute a breach of the Convention, then the matter can be considered: see e.g. *AA v. Azerbaijan*, A/61/44, pp. 255, 259 (2006).

³⁵² See e.g. A/61/44, p. 86 (2006). ³⁵³ *Khan v. Canada*, CAT/C/13/D/15/1994.

³⁵⁴ See *Dadar v. Canada*, A/61/44, pp. 233 ff. (2006).

proceedings, it is desirable that they be elucidated by means of independent proceedings.³⁵⁵ A complaint must be submitted by the alleged victim, or by a close relative or a duly authorised representative, and must first be declared admissible. Requirements include that the matter must not be before another tribunal, that domestic remedies have been exhausted and that the complaint must reach a 'basic level of substantiation'.³⁵⁶

An Optional Protocol to the Convention to enable the Committee through a new Subcommittee on Prevention to conduct regular visits to places of detention and make recommendations to states parties was adopted by the General Assembly in December 2002 and came into force in 2006. Under the Protocol, states parties must establish a 'national preventive mechanism' for the prevention of torture at the domestic level. Visits by the Subcommittee and the national preventive mechanism to any place under the state party's jurisdiction and control where persons are, or may be, deprived of their liberty must be permitted by the state concerned.³⁵⁷

In 1985, the United Nations Commission on Human Rights appointed a Special Rapporteur on Torture to examine questions relevant to torture and to seek and receive credible and reliable information on such questions and to respond to that information without delay.³⁵⁸ The work of the rapporteur includes the sending of urgent appeals and an increasing number of country visits. He is directed to co-operate closely with the Committee against Torture.³⁵⁹ The rapporteur also works with other UN officials. In 1994, for example, the rapporteur accompanied the Special Rapporteur on Rwanda on a visit to that country, while later that year the rapporteur accompanied the Special Rapporteur on Extrajudicial, Summary or Arbitrary Executions on a visit to Colombia.³⁶⁰ The rapporteur produces an annual report.³⁶¹

³⁵⁵ *Parot v. Spain*, CAT/C/14/D/6/1990.

³⁵⁶ *RT v. Switzerland*, A/61/44, pp. 249, 253 (2006). See also article 22 of the Convention and Rule 107(b) of the Rules of Procedure.

³⁵⁷ See General Assembly resolution 57/199. ³⁵⁸ Resolution 1985/33.

³⁵⁹ See e.g. E. Zoller, '46th Session of the United Nations Commission on Human Rights', 8(2) NQHR, 1990, pp. 140, 166.

³⁶⁰ See E/CN.4/1995/34, pp. 6–7. See also the European Convention on the Prevention of Torture, below, p. 362, and the African guidelines on torture adopted in 2002, www.achpr.org/english/communiques/communique32-en.html and www.apr.ch/africa/rig/Robben20Island%20Guidelines.pdf.

³⁶¹ See e.g. A/62/221 (2007).

The Committee on the Rights of the Child³⁶²

The Convention on the Rights of the Child was adopted by the General Assembly on 20 November 1989.³⁶³ It provides that in all actions concerning children, the best interests of the child shall be a primary consideration. A variety of rights are stipulated, including the inherent right to life (article 6); the right to a name and to acquire a nationality (article 7); the right to freedom of expression (article 13); the right to freedom of thought, conscience and religion (article 14); the right not to be subjected to arbitrary or unlawful interference with privacy, family, home or correspondence and the right to the enjoyment of the highest attainable standard of health (article 24).

States parties agree to take all appropriate measures to protect the child from all forms of physical and mental violence (article 19) and from economic exploitation (article 32) and the illicit use of drugs (article 33), and there are specific provisions relating to refugees and disabled children. In addition, states parties agree to respect the rules of international humanitarian law applicable to armed conflicts relevant to children (article 38). This provision was one response to the use of children in the Iran–Iraq war.

Article 43 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child provides for the establishment of a Committee. This Committee, which was elected in 1991, was originally composed of ten independent experts³⁶⁴ and has the competence to hear states' reports (article 44). The Committee itself submits reports every two years to the General Assembly through ECOSOC. The Committee can recommend to the General Assembly that the Secretary-General be requested to undertake on its behalf studies on

³⁶² See e.g. T. Buck, *International Child Law*, London, 2005; G. Lansdown, 'The Reporting Procedures under the Convention on the Rights of the Child' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 113; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapter 14; *Revisiting Children's Rights: 10 Years of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child* (ed. D. Fottrell), The Hague, 2000; D. McGoldrick, 'The UN Convention on the Rights of the Child', 5 *International Journal of Law and the Family*, 1991, p. 132; M. Santos Pais, 'The Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Work of the Committee', 26 *Israel Law Review*, 1992, p. 16, and Santos Pais, 'Rights of Children and the Family' in Herkin and Hargrove, *Human Rights: An Agenda for the Next Century*, p. 183. See also G. Van Bueren, *The International Law on the Rights of the Child*, Dordrecht, 1995, and *The United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child* (ed. S. Detrick), Dordrecht, 1992.

³⁶³ The Convention came into force on 2 September 1990. Note also the Declaration on the Rights of the Child adopted by the General Assembly in resolution 1386 (XIV), 1959 and the proclamation of 1979 as the International Year of the Child in resolution 31/169.

³⁶⁴ The membership has increased to eighteen.

specific issues relating to the rights of the child, an innovation in the functions of such treaty bodies, and it can make suggestions and general recommendations (article 45). The Committee (like the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights) sets aside time for general discussions on particular topics in accordance with Rule 75 of its provisional rules of procedure. For example, at its second session in 1992, the Committee discussed the question of children in armed conflicts,³⁶⁵ while at its fourth session, the problem of the economic exploitation of children was discussed.³⁶⁶ A general discussion on the 'girl-child' was held at the eighth session of the Committee in 1995,³⁶⁷ and one on the administration of juvenile justice at the ninth session.³⁶⁸

As part of the general reporting process, the Committee adopted an urgent action procedure at its second session. Provided that the state concerned has ratified the Convention, that the situation is serious and there is a risk of further violations, the Committee may send a communication to the state 'in a spirit of dialogue' and may request the provision of additional information or suggest a visit.³⁶⁹ At its fourth session, the Committee established a working group to study ways and means whereby the urgent action procedure could be pursued effectively.³⁷⁰ The Committee has produced a set of guidelines concerning states' reports³⁷¹ and a pre-sessional working group considers these reports and draws up a list of issues needing further clarification which is sent to the state concerned.³⁷² As is the case with other reporting mechanisms, the state whose report is being considered by the Committee is invited to send representatives to the appropriate meetings. After the process is completed, the Committee issues Concluding Observations in which both the positive aspects of the report considered and the problems identified are noted, together

³⁶⁵ A/49/41, pp. 94 ff. This led to a recommendation to the General Assembly to request the Secretary-General to undertake a special study on the means to protect children in armed conflicts: see CRC/C/SR.72, p. 2 and resolution 48/157. This led to the adoption of the Optional Protocol on the Involvement of Children in Armed Conflict, General Assembly resolution 54/263, 25 May 2000, which entered into force on 12 February 2002. Note that the question of the protection of children in armed conflicts was referred to in the Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, 1993, Part II, B, 4: see 32 ILM, 1993, p. 1680. See also G. Van Bueren, 'The International Legal Protection of Children in Armed Conflicts', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 809, and M. Happold, *Child Soldiers in International Law*, Manchester, 2005.

³⁶⁶ A/49/41, pp. 99 ff.

³⁶⁷ See CRC/C/38, p. 47. This led to the adoption of the Optional Protocol on the Question of the Sale of Children, Child Prostitution and Child Pornography: see General Assembly resolution 54/263 of 25 May 2000 which entered into force on 18 January 2002.

³⁶⁸ See CRC/C/43, p. 64. ³⁶⁹ See CRC/C/SR.42, p. 2 and A/49/41, pp. 69–71.

³⁷⁰ *Ibid.* ³⁷¹ See CRC/C/5. ³⁷² See e.g. CRC/C/121, 2002.

with suggestions and recommendations.³⁷³ Various follow-up measures to the consideration of reports exist, but usually they consist of the request for the provision of further information.³⁷⁴ The Committee also holds 'days of discussion' to examine relevant issues³⁷⁵ and issues General Comments.³⁷⁶

The Committee on the Protection of Migrant Workers³⁷⁷

The International Convention on the Protection of the Rights of All Migrant Workers and Members of Their Families was adopted by the General Assembly and opened for signature in December 1990.³⁷⁸ The Convention defines a migrant worker as 'a person who is to be engaged, is engaged, or has been engaged in a remunerated activity in a state of which he or she is not a national' (article 2). This includes, for example, frontier and seasonal workers, workers on offshore installations and specified-employment workers, but excludes employees of international organisations or official state employees abroad, refugees, stateless persons, students and workers on offshore installations who have not been admitted to take up residence and engage in a remunerated activity in the state of employment (article 3).

Migrant workers are entitled to equality of treatment with nationals in areas such as matters before courts and tribunals (article 18), terms of employment (article 25), freedom to join trades unions (article 26), medical treatment (article 28), access to education for their children (article 30) and respect for cultural identity (article 31). Migrant workers are protected from collective expulsion (article 22). Further provisions deal with additional rights for migrant workers and members of their families in a documented or regular situation (Part IV).

³⁷³ See e.g. A/49/41, pp. 20 ff.; CRC/C/38, pp. 10 ff. and CRC/C/43, pp. 10 ff. See also CRC/C/121, 2002, pp. 8 ff.

³⁷⁴ See e.g. CRC/C/27/Rev.3, 1995 detailing such measures up to mid-1995.

³⁷⁵ See e.g. the day of discussion on 'The private sector as service provider and its role in implementing child rights' held in September 2002, CRC/C/121, p. 145.

³⁷⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 159 (on 'The role of national human rights institutions in promoting and protecting children's rights'). In 2007, the Committee adopted General Comment No. 10 on the rights of children in juvenile justice.

³⁷⁷ See e.g. K. Samson, 'Human Rights Co-ordination within the UN System' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, pp. 620, 641 ff.; S. Hune and J. Niessen, 'Ratifying the UN Migrant Workers Convention: Current Difficulties and Prospects', 12 NQHR, 1994, p. 393, and S. Hune and J. Niessen, 'The First UN Convention on Migrant Workers', 9 NQHR, 1991, p. 133.

³⁷⁸ The necessary twenty ratifications were achieved on 10 December 2002. The Convention came into force on 1 April 2003.

The Convention provided for the creation of a Committee of fourteen independent experts (Part VII). States parties are required to provide reports on measures taken to give effect to the provisions of the Convention (article 73). An inter-state complaints procedure is provided for in article 76, on the condition that the states concerned have made a declaration expressly recognising the competence of the Committee to hear such complaints, while under article 77 an individual complaints procedure can be used with regard to states that have made a declaration recognising the competence of the Committee in this regard.³⁷⁹

The Committee on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities

The Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities was adopted in December 2006 and is not yet in force. The Convention provides for the prohibition of discrimination against persons with disability and for equality of opportunity and accessibility. States parties are to undertake immediate, effective and appropriate measures to raise awareness and combat prejudices and harmful practices (articles 5–9). A twelve-person Committee is provided for to examine states' reports on measures taken to give effect to the obligations under the Convention (articles 34–6). States parties to the Optional Protocol recognise the competence of the Committee to hear individual communications alleging a violation of the Convention against them. Further, where the Committee receives reliable information indicating grave or systematic violations by a state party of Convention rights, the Committee may invite the state to co-operate in the examination of the information and submit observations. The Committee may proceed to conduct an inquiry confidentially. A state party may, however, on signature or ratification of the Optional Protocol, declare that it does not accept the inquiry competence of the Committee.

The Committee on Enforced Disappearances

The Convention for the Protection of All Persons from Enforced Disappearance was adopted in December 2006 and is not yet in force. It requires states parties to make enforced disappearance, defined as the deprivation of liberty by agents of the state or persons acting with the support or acquisition of the state coupled with the refusal to acknowledge the deprivation of liberty or concealment of the fate of the person in question (article 2), a criminal law offence (article 4). It is stated to be a crime against humanity (article 5). A ten-person Committee on Enforced Disappearances is

³⁷⁹ See the Report of the Committee for 2006–7, A/62/48 (2007).

provided for to examine states' reports on measures taken to give effect to the obligations under the Convention (article 29), to hear inter-state complaints (article 32) and to hear individual communications (article 31). The Committee may also, upon receiving a request for urgent action, transmit a request to the state party concerned to take interim measures to locate and protect the person in question (article 30). Where the Committee receives reliable information indicating a serious violation, it may seek, in consultation with the state party concerned, to organise a visit (article 33). Further, where the Committee receives information appearing to contain well-founded indications that enforced disappearance is being practised on a widespread or systematic basis in the territory under the jurisdiction of a state party, it may, after seeking information from the state, urgently bring the matter to the attention of the General Assembly through the Secretary-General (article 34).

Conclusions

Most international human rights conventions obligate states parties to take certain measures with regard to the provisions contained therein, whether by domestic legislation or otherwise.³⁸⁰ In addition, all nine of the treaty bodies discussed above require states parties to make periodic reports.³⁸¹ Seven have the competence to consider individual communications,³⁸² five may consider inter-state complaints,³⁸³ while three may inquire into allegations of grave or systematic violations.³⁸⁴

³⁸⁰ See e.g. article 2 of the Civil and Political Rights Covenant, 1966; article 1 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950; articles 1 and 2 of the American Convention on Human Rights, 1969; article 5 of the Genocide Convention, 1948; article 4 of the Convention on the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid, 1973 and article 3 of the Slavery Convention, 1926.

³⁸¹ Note that the Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and the Convention on Enforced Disappearance are not yet in force. See also article 7 of the Apartheid Convention, 1973. Several conventions provide for the communication of information to the UN Secretary-General: see e.g. article 33 of the Convention Relating to the Status of Stateless Persons, 1954 and articles 35 and 36 of the Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, 1951.

³⁸² The Economic and Social Committee and the Committee on the Rights of the Child do not.

³⁸³ The Human Rights Committee, the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination, the Committee on Migrant Workers, the Committee against Torture and the Committee on Enforced Disappearances.

³⁸⁴ The Committee against Torture, the Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination against Women and the Committee on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities. Note the competence to visit under the Convention on Enforced Disappearance.

The proliferation of committees raises problems concerned both with resources and with consistency.³⁸⁵ The question of resources is a serious and ongoing difficulty. The Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, 1993 emphasised the necessity for a substantial increase in the resources for the human rights programme of the UN and particularly called for sufficient funding to be made available to the UN Centre for Human Rights, which *inter alia* provides the administrative support for the human rights organs and committees discussed in this chapter.³⁸⁶ The various human rights committees themselves have pointed to the resource problem.³⁸⁷ The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination and the Committee against Torture changed their financing system so that, since January 1994, they have been financed under the regular budget of the United Nations.³⁸⁸ The Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights sought additional resources from the Economic and Social Council.³⁸⁹ Nevertheless, the fact remains that human rights activity within the UN system is seriously underfunded.

The question of consistency in view of the increasing number of human rights bodies within the UN system has been partially addressed by the establishment of an annual system of meetings between the chairpersons of the treaty bodies.³⁹⁰ Issues of concern have been discussed, ranging from the need to encourage states to ratify all human rights treaties, concern about reservations made to human rights treaties,³⁹¹ attempts to establish that successor states are automatically bound by obligations under

³⁸⁵ See e.g. E. Tistounet, 'The Problem of Overlapping among Different Treaty Bodies' in Alston and Crawford, *Future*, p. 383.

³⁸⁶ See Part II, Section A of the Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action, 32 ILM, 1993, pp. 1674–5.

³⁸⁷ See e.g. the Human Rights Committee, A/49/44, and the Committee Against Torture, A/50/44. See also the Report of the Secretary-General to the sixth meeting of chairpersons of treaty bodies, HRI/MC/1995/2, p. 13.

³⁸⁸ See General Assembly resolution 47/111 and HRI/MC/1995/2, p. 14.

³⁸⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 15.

³⁹⁰ See General Assembly resolution 49/178, 1994, which endorsed the recommendation of the chairpersons that the meetings be held annually. The first meeting of the chairpersons of treaty bodies was held in 1984, A/39/484 and the second in 1988, A/44/98. See also e.g. A/62/224 (2007). A working group on the harmonisation of working methods of the treaty bodies has been established, see e.g. HRI/MC/2006/3 and HRI/MC/2007/2. Note also that the first inter-committee meeting of the human rights treaty bodies took place in September 2002, HRI/ICM/2002/3.

³⁹¹ See further below, chapter 16, p. 912.

international human rights treaties from the date of independence irrespective of confirmation,³⁹² the formulation of new norms and instruments and the promotion of human rights education, to consideration of the continuing problem of overdue reports³⁹³ and the role of non-governmental organisations.³⁹⁴ The development of early warning and preventive procedures by the committees is to be particularly noted.³⁹⁵ The Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination, for example, under its urgent procedures may, since 1994, review the human rights situation in states parties that give rise for especial concern,³⁹⁶ while the Human Rights Committee is able to request states parties to submit special urgent reports.³⁹⁷

The UN Secretary-General in his report entitled 'In Larger Freedom' emphasised the need for streamlining procedures and called for the implementation of harmonised guidelines on reporting.³⁹⁸ The UN High Commissioner for Human Rights, noting that the treaty bodies system had developed ad hoc and does not function as an integrated and indivisible framework for human rights protection, has called for a unified standing treaty body and proposed a series of models.³⁹⁹ While greater harmonisation and integration is to be encouraged, as is increased training and logistical assistance for states, there may be disadvantages in one human rights body, not only in terms of locating the necessary expertise, but also in political terms by having such authority concentrated in one organ and thus being particularly susceptible to political pressure.

³⁹² See further below, chapter 17, p. 981.

³⁹³ For example, the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination and the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights have established procedures enabling them to examine the situation in the state concerned: see above, pp. 311 and 308. Other Committees have sought to hold meetings with the officials of the states concerned in order to encourage submission of overdue reports, HRI/MC/1995/2, p. 7.

³⁹⁴ See e.g. HRI/MC/1995.

³⁹⁵ The role of the treaty bodies in seeking to prevent human rights violations has been emphasised: see e.g. A/47/628, para. 44.

³⁹⁶ See above, p. 311.

³⁹⁷ See above, p. 314. See also above, p. 331, with regard to the procedures of the Committee on the Rights of the Child.

³⁹⁸ A/59/2005 and A/59/2005/Add.3.

³⁹⁹ Concept Paper on the Proposal for a Unified Standing Treaty Body, HRI/MC/2006/2, 2006.

The specialised agencies

*The International Labour Organisation*⁴⁰⁰

The ILO was created in 1919 and expanded in 1946.⁴⁰¹ The Declaration of Philadelphia of 1944 (which was incorporated in the ILO constitution in 1946) reaffirmed the basic principles of the organisation. These are (a) that labour is not a commodity, (b) that freedom of expression and of association are essential to sustained progress and (c) that poverty anywhere constitutes a danger to prosperity everywhere. The ILO is composed of a unique tripartite structure involving governments, workers and employers and consists of three organs: a General Conference of representatives of member states (the International Labour Conference), the Governing Body and the International Labour Office.⁴⁰² The ILO constitution enables the organisation to examine and elaborate international labour standards, whether Conventions or Recommendations. The former are the more

⁴⁰⁰ See e.g. Weissbrodt, Fitzpatrick and Newman, *International Human Rights*, chapter 16; L. Betten, 'At its 75th Anniversary, the International Labour Organisation Prepares Itself for an Active Future', 12 NQHR, 1994, p. 425; L. Swepston, 'Human Rights Complaints Procedures of the International Labour Organisation' in Hannum, *Guide to International Human Rights Practice*, p. 89; V. Leary, 'Lessons from the Experience of the International Labour Organisation' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 580; C. W. Jenks, 'Human Rights, Social Justice and Peace' in *The International Protection of Human Rights* (eds. A. Schou and A. Eide), Stockholm, 1968, p. 227, and *Social Justice in the Law of Nations*, Oxford, 1970; E. A. Landy, *The Effectiveness of International Supervision: Thirty Years of ILO Experience*, New York, 1966, and 'The Implementation Procedures of the International Labour Organisation', 20 *Santa Clara Law Review*, 1980, p. 633; N. Valticos, 'The Role of the ILO: Present Action and Future Perspectives' in Ramcharan, *Human Rights: Thirty Years After the Universal Declaration*, p. 211, *Le Droit International du Travail*, Paris, 1980, and 'The International Labour Organisation' in *The International Dimensions of Human Rights* (eds. K. Vasak and P. Alston), Paris, 1982, vol. I, p. 363; F. Wolf, 'ILO Experience in Implementation of Human Rights', 10 *Journal of International Law and Economics*, 1975, p. 599; J. M. Servais, 'ILO Standards on Freedom of Association and Their Implementation', 123 *International Labour Review*, 1984, p. 765, and Robertson and Merrills, *Human Rights*, p. 282. See also H. K. Nielsen, 'The Concept of Discrimination in ILO Convention No. 111', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 827.

⁴⁰¹ An agreement bringing the ILO into relationship with the UN as a specialised agency under article 63 of the UN Charter came into force on 14 December 1946: see General Assembly resolution 50 (I).

⁴⁰² See *UN Action*, p. 28. The tripartite structure means that the delegation of each member state to the International Labour Conference includes two representatives of the government, one representative of workers and one representative of the employers. There are fifty-six members of the Governing Body, with twenty-eight government representatives and fourteen each from employers' and workers' organisations.

formal method of dealing with important matters, while the latter consist basically of guidelines for legislation. Between 1919 and 1994, 175 Conventions and 182 Recommendations were adopted by the ILO, all dealing basically with issues of social justice.⁴⁰³ Under article 19 of the ILO constitution, all members must submit Conventions and Recommendations to their competent national authorities within twelve to eighteen months of adoption. Under article 22, states which have ratified Conventions are obligated to make annual reports on measures taken to give effect to them to the International Labour Office.⁴⁰⁴ Under article 19, members must also submit reports regarding both unratified Conventions and Recommendations to the Director-General of the International Labour Office at appropriate intervals as requested by the Governing Body, concerning the position of their law and practice in regard to the matters dealt with in the Convention or Recommendation and showing the extent to which effect has been given or is proposed to be given to the provisions of the Convention or Recommendation, including a statement of the difficulties which prevent or delay ratification of the Convention concerned.⁴⁰⁵ In 1926–7, a Committee of Experts on the Application of Conventions and Recommendations was established to consider reports submitted by member states. The comments of the twenty-member Committee, appointed by the Governing Body on the suggestion of the Director-General of the International Labour Office, on ratified Conventions take the form of ‘observations’ included in the printed report of the Committee in the case of more important issues, or ‘requests’ to the government concerned for information, which are not published in the report of the Committee. In the case of unratified Conventions and Recommendations, a ‘general survey’ of the application of the particular instrument in question is carried out.⁴⁰⁶ A Committee on the Application of Conventions and Recommendations of the International Labour Conference is appointed at each of

⁴⁰³ See Valticos, ‘International Labour Organisation’, p. 365, and Swepton, ‘Human Rights Complaints Procedures of the International Labour Organisation’, p. 100. See also E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/5, p. 3.

⁴⁰⁴ However, in practice the annual rule is relaxed: see Valticos, ‘International Labour Organisation’, p. 368. Governments are obliged by article 23(2) to communicate copies of the reports to employers’ and workers’ organisations.

⁴⁰⁵ The latter provision does not, of course, apply in the case of Recommendations.

⁴⁰⁶ Valticos, ‘International Labour Organisation’, pp. 369–70, and Wolf, ‘ILO Experience’, pp. 608–10. See e.g. *Freedom of Association and Collective Bargaining: General Survey*, Geneva, 1983.

its annual sessions, composed of tripartite representatives to discuss relevant issues based primarily upon the general report of the Committee of Experts.⁴⁰⁷ It may also draw up a 'Special List' of cases to be drawn to the attention of the Conference.

Two types of procedure exist. Under articles 24 and 25, a representation may be made by employers' or workers' organisations to the Office to the effect that any of the members have failed to secure the effective observation of any Convention to which it is a party. If deemed receivable by the Governing Body, the matter is examined first by a committee of three of the Governing Body then by the Governing Body itself. States are invited to reply and both the original representation and the reply (if any) may be publicised by the Governing Body. There have not been many representations of this kind.⁴⁰⁸ Under articles 26–9 and 31–3 any member may file a complaint against another member state that the effective observance of a ratified Convention has not been secured. The Governing Body may call for a reply by the object state or establish a commission of inquiry. Such a commission is normally composed of three experts and the procedure adopted is of a judicial nature. Recourse may be had by the parties to the International Court of Justice. Ultimately the Governing Body may recommend to the Conference such action as it considers wise and expedient. The complaints procedure was first used by Ghana against Portugal regarding the Abolition of Forced Labour Convention, 1957 in its African territories.⁴⁰⁹

A special procedure regarding freedom of association was established in 1951, with a Committee on Freedom of Association which examines a wide range of complaints. It consists of nine members (three from each of the tripartite elements in the ILO). The Committee submits detailed reports to the Governing Body with proposed conclusions and suggested recommendations to be made to the state concerned, and a considerable case-law has been built up.⁴¹⁰ A Fact-finding and

⁴⁰⁷ The Committee usually consists of 200 members.

⁴⁰⁸ But see e.g. Official Bulletin of the ILO, 1956, p. 120 (Netherlands Antilles); *ibid.*, 1967, p. 267 (Brazil) and *ibid.*, 1972, p. 125 (Italy). See also *ibid.*, 1978 (Czechoslovakia).

⁴⁰⁹ See Official Bulletin of the ILO, 1962; *ibid.*, 1963 (Liberia) and *ibid.*, 1971 (Greece).

⁴¹⁰ See e.g. G. Von Potobsky, 'Protection of Trade Union Rights: Twenty Years Work of the Committee on Freedom of Association', 105 *International Labour Review*, 1972, p. 69. See also Servais, 'ILO Standards', and *Freedom of Association: Digest of Decisions of the Freedom of Association Committee of the Governing Body of the ILO*, 3rd edn, Geneva, 1985. By the end of 1991, over 1,600 cases had been considered by the Committee: see Swepston, 'Human Rights Complaints Procedures of the International Labour Organisation', p. 109.

Conciliation Commission has been created for more serious and politically delicate cases which operates with the consent of the state concerned. Accordingly, few questions have been dealt with,⁴¹¹ although in 1992 a visit was made to South Africa and recommendations made to the ILO and ECOSOC. The government of that country sent a response to the Director-General of the ILO and, at the request of ECOSOC, the ILO Committee on Freedom of Association examined South Africa's report in 1994. The Committee's report, noting changes taking place in that country, was approved by the Governing Body and transmitted to ECOSOC.⁴¹² In addition, a system of 'direct contacts' has been instituted, consisting of personal visits by ILO officials, or independent persons named by the Director-General, in order to assist in overcoming particular difficulties. These have included, for example, questions regarding freedom of association in Argentina in 1990 and the situation of Haitian workers on sugar plantations in the Dominican Republic in 1991.⁴¹³

*The United Nations Educational, Scientific and
Cultural Organisation*⁴¹⁴

UNESCO came into being in November 1946 and was brought into relationship with the UN on 14 December that year.⁴¹⁵ The aim of the organisation, proclaimed in article 1 of its constitution, is to contribute to peace and security by promoting collaboration through education, science and culture 'in order to further universal respect for justice, for the rule of law and for the human rights and fundamental freedoms which are affirmed for the peoples of the world'. The organisation consists of a General

⁴¹¹ See Valticos, 'International Labour Organisation', pp. 384 ff. See also Official Bulletin of the ILO, 1966 (Japan), and N. Valticos, 'Un Double Type d'Enquête de l'OIT au Chili', AFDI, 1975, p. 483.

⁴¹² E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/5, p. 4.

⁴¹³ See N. Valticos, 'Une Nouvelle Forme d'Action Internationale: Les "Contacts Directs"', 27 AFDI, 1981, p. 481, and V. Leary, 'Lessons from the Experience of the International Labour Organisation' in Alston, *United Nations and Human Rights*, p. 611.

⁴¹⁴ See e.g. S. Marks, 'The Complaints Procedure of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation' in Hannum, *Guide to International Human Rights Practice*, p. 107; D. Weissbrodt and R. Farley, 'The UNESCO Human Rights Procedure: An Evaluation', 16 HRQ, 1994, p. 391; P. Alston, 'UNESCO's Procedures for Dealing with Human Rights Violations', 20 *Santa Clara Law Review*, 1980, p. 665; H. S. Saba, 'UNESCO and Human Rights' in Vasak and Alston, *International Dimensions of Human Rights*, vol. II, p. 401; Robertson and Merrills, *Human Rights*, p. 288, and *UN Action*, pp. 308 and 321.

⁴¹⁵ See General Assembly resolution 50 (I).

Conference which meets every two years and in which all member states are represented, an Executive Board, elected by the conference, and a secretariat headed by a Director-General. Under article 4(4), member states undertake to submit Conventions and Resolutions to the competent national authorities within a year of adoption and may be required to submit reports on action taken.⁴¹⁶ Unlike the ILO, UNESCO has no constitution provision for reviewing complaints concerning the implementation of conventions procedure. However, in 1962 a Protocol instituting a Conciliation and Good Offices Commission was adopted to help resolve disputes arising between states parties to the 1960 Convention against Discrimination in Education. It entered into force in 1968 and the first meeting of the eleven-member Commission was in 1971. It aims to make available its good offices in order to reach a friendly settlement between the states parties to the convention in question. In 1978 the Executive Board of UNESCO adopted decision 104 EX/3.3, by which it established a procedure to handle individual communications alleging violations of human rights. Ten conditions for admissibility are laid down, including the requirement that the human rights violated must fall within UNESCO's competence in the fields of education, science, culture and information, and the need for the communication to be compatible with international human rights interests. The condition with regard to domestic remedies is rather different than is the case with other human rights organs, in that all the communication needs to do is to 'indicate whether an attempt has been made to exhaust domestic remedies . . . and the result of such an attempt, if any'. The investigating body is the Executive Board's Committee on Conventions and Recommendations, which is composed of twenty-four members and normally meets twice a year in private session.⁴¹⁷ The examination of communications is confidential. The Committee decides whether a communication is admissible and then makes a decision on the merits. The task of the Committee is to reach a 'friendly solution designed to advance the promotion of the human rights falling within UNESCO's fields of competence'.⁴¹⁸ Confidential reports are submitted to the Executive Board each session, which contain appropriate information

⁴¹⁶ See, for example, the obligation to submit reports under article 7 of the 1960 Convention against Discrimination in Education. See also *UN Action*, p. 163.

⁴¹⁷ Formerly the Committee on Conventions and Recommendations in Education, *ibid.*, pp. 321–2. See also A/CONF.157/PC/61/Add.6, 1993.

⁴¹⁸ Decision 104.EX/3.3, para. 14(k).

plus recommendations.⁴¹⁹ It is also to be noted that under this procedure the Director-General generally has a role in seeking to strengthen the action of UNESCO in promoting human rights and initiating consultations in confidence to help reach solutions to particular human rights problems.⁴²⁰ UNESCO published a report in 1993 concerning the operations of the procedure, noting that the Committee had examined 414 cases between 1978 and 1993, of which it settled 241 individual cases.⁴²¹ It is unclear how successful the procedure has been, in view of the strict confidentiality which binds it,⁴²² the length of time taken to produce results and the high proportion of cases declared inadmissible.⁴²³

A special procedure to deal with disappeared persons has been established by the Committee. Communications dealing with such persons are placed on a Special List, if insufficient information is forthcoming from the government in question, and examined by the Committee.⁴²⁴ In addition to *cases* concerning violations of human rights which are individual and specific, UNESCO may also examine *questions* of massive, systematic or flagrant violations of human rights resulting either from a policy contrary to human rights applied by a state or from an accumulation of individual cases forming a consistent pattern.⁴²⁵ In the instance of such *questions*, the issue is to be discussed by the Executive Board of the General Conference in public.⁴²⁶

⁴¹⁹ In the April 1980 session, for example, forty-five communications were examined as to admissibility, of which five were declared inadmissible, thirteen admissible, twenty suspended and seven deleted from the agenda. Ten communications were examined on the merits, UNESCO Doc. 21 C/13, para. 65. Between 1978 and September 2003 508 communications were examined: see Marks, 'UNESCO Complaints Procedure', p. 120.

⁴²⁰ *Ibid.*, paras. 8 and 9.

⁴²¹ See UNESCO Doc. 141/EX/6 and Weissbrodt and Farley, 'UNESCO Human Rights Procedure', p. 391. It was noted that during this period, 129 individuals were either released or acquitted, 20 authorised to leave and 34 to return to the state concerned, 24 were able to resume banned employment or activity, and 11 were able to resume a banned publication or broadcast, *ibid.*

⁴²² See G. H. Dumont, 'UNESCO's Practical Action on Human Rights', 122 *International Social Sciences Journal*, 1989, p. 585, and K. Partsch, 'La Mise en Oeuvre des Droit de l'Homme par l'UNESCO', 36 AFDI, 1990, p. 482.

⁴²³ Weissbrodt and Farley note that of sixty-four cases studied only five were declared admissible, 'UNESCO Human Rights Procedure', p. 399. Of these, three concerned one particular country in Latin America. One case was considered over a nine-and-a-half-year period and another was considered over eight-and-a-half years.

⁴²⁴ UNESCO Doc. 108 EX/CR/HR/PROC/2 Rev. (1979).

⁴²⁵ Decision 104. EX/3.3, para. 10. ⁴²⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 18.

Suggestions for further reading

- The Future of UN Human Rights Treaty Monitoring* (eds. P. Alston and J. Crawford), Cambridge, 2000
- Guide to International Human Rights Practice* (ed. H. Hannum), 4th edn, Ardsley, 2004
- T. Meron, *The Humanization of International Law*, The Hague, 2006
- J. Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, London, 2002
- A. H. Robertson and J. Merrills, *Human Rights in the World*, 4th edn, Manchester, 1996
- H. Steiner, P. Alston and R. Goodman, *International Human Rights in Context*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008
- C. Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, Oxford, 2003

The regional protection of human rights

Europe¹

The Council of Europe

The Council of Europe was founded in 1949 as a European organisation for encouraging and developing intergovernmental and interparliamentary co-operation. Its aim as laid down in article 1 of the Statute is to achieve a greater unity between member states for the purpose of safeguarding and realising the ideals and principles which are their common heritage and facilitating their economic and social progress. The principles of the Council of Europe as established in article 3 of the Statute include pluralist democracy, respect for human rights and the rule of law. A Committee of Ministers, consisting of the Foreign Ministers of member states, and a Parliamentary Assembly, consisting of delegations of members of national parliaments, constitute the principal organs of the Council of Europe, together with a Secretary-General and supporting secretariat. There also exists a Standing Conference of Local and Regional Authorities of Europe, consisting of national delegations of local and regional elected representatives. The Council of Europe also maintains a number of support and assistance programmes.²

The demise of the Soviet Empire in Eastern and Central Europe has been the primary reason for the great increase in member states over the last few years.³ The process of joining the Council of Europe has provided the Council with some influence over prospective members and this has led both to expert advice and assistance being proffered and to commitments being entered into in the field of human rights by applicants. For

¹ See generally *Monitoring Human Rights in Europe* (eds. A. Bloed, L. Leicht, M. Nowak and A. Rosas), Dordrecht, 1993.

² See e.g. A/CONF.157/PC/66/Add.2, 1993.

³ With the entry of Montenegro in May 2007, the number of member states reached forty-seven.

example, Parliamentary Assembly Opinion No. 191 on the Application for Membership by the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia⁴ notes that the applicant entered into commitments relating to revision and establishment of new laws (for example, with respect to the organisation and functioning of the criminal justice system), amendment of the constitution in order to include the right to a fair trial, and agreement to sign a variety of international instruments including the European Convention on Human Rights, the European Convention on the Prevention of Torture and the Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities. In addition, the applicant agreed to co-operate fully in the monitoring process for implementation of Assembly Order No. 508 (1995) on the honouring of obligations and commitments by member states of the Council of Europe as well as in monitoring processes established by virtue of the Committee of Ministers Declaration of 10 November 1994. The Council of Europe has also moved beyond agreeing or noting commitments made at the time of application for membership and approval thereof to consideration of how those commitments have been honoured once an applicant has become a member state. The Committee of Ministers Declaration of 10 November 1994 provides a mechanism for examining state practice in this area and one may expect further developments in this context.⁵ In 1999, the Council of Europe established the office of the Commissioner for Human Rights within the General Secretariat to promote education and awareness in the field of human rights.⁶ The

⁴ 16 HRLJ, 1995, p. 372. See also Parliamentary Assembly Opinion No. 190 on the Application of Ukraine for Membership, *ibid.*, p. 373, and Opinion Nos. 183 (1995) on the Application of Latvia for Membership, 188 (1995) on the Application of Moldova for Membership and 189 (1995) on the Application of Albania for Membership, H/INF (95) 3 pp. 77 ff. Note that under Recommendation 1055 (1995), the Assembly decided to suspend the procedure concerning its statutory opinion on Russia's request for membership in the light of the situation in Chechnya. However, Russia joined the Council of Europe in early 1996.

⁵ See further below, p. 359. Note also Assembly Order 508 (1995). The Committee on the Honouring of Obligations and Commitments by Member States of the Council of Europe (known as the Monitoring Committee) commenced operations in April 1997 under the authorisation of Assembly resolution 1115 (1997). This Committee is responsible for verifying the fulfilment of the obligations assumed by the member states under the terms of the Council of Europe Statute, the European Convention on Human Rights and all other Council of Europe conventions to which they are parties, as well as the honouring of the commitments entered into by the authorities of member states upon their accession to the Council of Europe. It reports directly to the Assembly.

⁶ Committee of Ministers resolution (99) 50. The Commissioner cannot consider individual petitions and exercises functions other than those of the supervisory bodies of Council of Europe human rights instruments. No general reporting system exists in this framework.

Commissioner may also issue opinions⁷ and make recommendations⁸ and undertake visits.⁹

Although a large number of treaties between member states have been signed under the auspices of the Council of Europe, undoubtedly the most important has been the European Convention on Human Rights.

The European Convention on Human Rights¹⁰

The Convention was signed on 4 November 1950 and entered into force in September 1953.¹¹ Together with thirteen Protocols, it covers a wide variety of primarily civil and political rights.¹² The preamble notes that the European states are like-minded and have a common heritage of political tradition, ideals, freedoms and the rule of law. The rights covered

⁷ See e.g. CommDH(2002)7, Opinion 1/2002 on certain aspects of the United Kingdom 2001 derogation from article 5(1) of the European Convention on Human Rights.

⁸ See e.g. Recommendations CommDH/Rec(2001)1 concerning the rights of aliens wishing to enter a Council of Europe member state and the enforcement of expulsion orders, and CommDH/Rec(2002)1 concerning certain rights that must be guaranteed during the arrest and detention of persons following 'cleansing' operations in the Chechen Republic of the Russian Federation.

⁹ See e.g. the visit to Russia including Chechnya, Press Release 072a (2003).

¹⁰ See e.g. *Jacobs and White: The European Convention on Human Rights* (eds. C. Ovey and R. C. A. White), 4th edn, Oxford, 2006; D. J. Harris, M. O'Boyle and C. Warbrick, *Law of the European Convention on Human Rights*, London, 1995; M. W. Janis, R. S. Kay and A. W. Bradley, *European Human Rights Law: Text and Materials*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008; S. Greer, *The European Convention on Human Rights: Achievements, Problems and Prospects*, Cambridge, 2006; G. Letsas, *A Theory of Interpretation of the European Convention on Human Rights*, Oxford, 2007; *La Convention Européenne des Droits de l'Homme* (eds. P. Imbert and L. Pettiti), Paris, 1995; L. J. Clements, N. Mole and A. Simmons, *European Human Rights: Taking a Case under the Convention*, 2nd edn, London, 1999; *The European System for the Protection of Human Rights* (eds. R. St J. Macdonald, F. Matscher and H. Petzold), Dordrecht, 1993; A. H. Robertson and J. G. Merrills, *Human Rights in Europe*, 4th edn, Manchester, 2001; P. Van Dijk, G. J. H. Van Hoof, A. Van Rijn and L. Zwaak, *Theory and Practice of the European Convention on Human Rights*, 4th edn, Antwerp, 2006; P. J. Velu and R. Ergel, *La Convention Européenne des Droits de l'Homme*, Brussels, 1990; G. Cohen-Jonathan, *La Convention Européenne des Droits de l'Homme*, Paris, 1989; E. Lambert, *Les Effets des Arrêts de la Cour Européenne des Droits de l'Homme*, Brussels, 1999, and K. Starmer, *European Human Rights Law*, London, 1999. See also L. G. Loucaides, *Essays on the Developing Law of Human Rights*, Dordrecht, 1995; J. G. Merrills, *The Development of International Law by the European Court of Human Rights*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1993, and A. Drzemczewski, *The European Human Rights Convention in Domestic Law*, Oxford, 1983.

¹¹ All forty-seven member states of the Council of Europe have ratified the Convention.

¹² Protocol No. 14, dealing with procedural issues, is not yet in force: see below, p. 360. Economic and social rights are covered in the European Social Charter, 1961. See below, p. 360.

in the Convention itself include the right to life (article 2), prohibition of torture and slavery (articles 3 and 4), right to liberty and security of person (article 5), right to a fair and public hearing within a reasonable time by an independent and impartial tribunal established by law (article 6), prohibition of retroactive criminal legislation (article 7), right to respect for private and family life (article 8), freedom of thought, conscience and religion (article 9), freedom of expression (article 10), freedom of assembly and association (article 11), the right to marry and found a family (article 12), the right to an effective remedy before a national authority if one of the Convention rights or freedoms is violated (article 13) and a non-discrimination provision regarding the enjoyment of rights and freedoms under the Convention (article 14). In addition, several protocols have been added to the substantive rights protected under the Convention. Protocol No. 1 protects the rights of property, education and free elections by secret ballots, Protocol No. 4 prohibits imprisonment for civil debt and protects *inter alia* the rights of free movement and choice of residence and the right to enter one's own country, Protocol No. 6 provides for the abolition of the death penalty, while Protocol No. 7 provides *inter alia* that an alien lawfully resident in a state shall not be expelled therefrom except in pursuance of a decision reached in accordance with the law, that a person convicted of a criminal offence shall have the right to have that conviction or sentence reviewed by a higher tribunal and that no one may be tried or punished again in criminal proceedings for an offence for which he has already been finally acquitted or convicted. Protocol No. 12 prohibits discrimination, while Protocol No. 13 abolishes the death penalty. Like other international treaties, the European Convention imposes obligations upon states parties to respect a variety of provisions. In this instance the Convention has also been incorporated into the domestic legislation of all current states parties¹³ although the Convention does not provide as to how exactly the states parties are to implement internally the relevant obligations.¹⁴ It has been emphasised that:

unlike international treaties of the classic kind, the Convention comprises more than mere reciprocal engagements between contracting states. It

¹³ The UK incorporated the Convention in the Human Rights Act 1998. See e.g. J. Polakiewicz and V. Jacob-Foltzer, 'The European Human Rights Convention in Domestic Law', 12 HRLJ, 1991, pp. 65 and 125, and Harris *et al.*, *Law of the European Convention*, p. 24, note 2.

¹⁴ See e.g. the *Swedish Engine Drivers' Union* case, Series A, vol. 20, 1976, p. 18; 58 ILR, pp. 19, 36. See also the *Belgian Linguistics* case, Series A, vol. 6, 1968, p. 35; 45 ILR, pp. 136, 165.

creates, over and above a network of mutual and bilateral undertakings, objective obligations, which in the words of the preamble, benefit from a 'collective enforcement'.¹⁵

In addition, a more teleological and flexible approach to the interpretation of the Convention has been adopted.¹⁶ The European Court of Human Rights has emphasised that the Convention is a living instrument to be interpreted in the light of present-day conditions and this approach applies not only to the substantive rights protected under the Convention, but also to those provisions which govern the operation of the Convention's enforcement machinery.¹⁷ In addition, the Court has noted that the object and purpose of the Convention as an instrument for the protection of individuals requires that its provisions be interpreted and applied so as to make its safeguards practical and effective.¹⁸ The Convention should also be interpreted as far as possible in harmony with other principles of international law.¹⁹ It has been emphasised that the Convention constitutes a 'constitutional instrument of European public order ("ordre public")'.²⁰ The Convention applies, of course, within the territory of contracting states, but the issue of its extraterritorial application has been addressed. The Court has interpreted the concept of 'jurisdiction' under article 1 to include the possibility of application to extradition or expulsion of a person by a contracting state to the territory of a non-contracting state²¹ and the situation where acts of the authorities of contracting states, whether performed within or outside national boundaries, produce effects outside their own territory.²² Further, in a significant move, the Court in *Loizidou v. Turkey* emphasised that the responsibility of a contracting state may also arise when it exercises effective control or 'effective overall control'

¹⁵ See article 1 and *Ireland v. UK*, Series A, vol. 25, 1978, pp. 90–1; 58 ILR, pp. 188, 290–1. See also *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Series A, vol. 310, 1995, pp. 22–3; 103 ILR, p. 622.

¹⁶ See e.g. the *Tyrer* case, Series A, vol. 26, 1978; 58 ILR, p. 339, and see also the *Marckx* case, Series A, vol. 31, 1979; 58 ILR, p. 561, although not to the extent of adding new rights or new jurisdictions thereby, see *Johnston v. Ireland*, Judgment of 18 December 1986 and *Banković v. Belgium*, Judgment of 12 December 2001, 123 ILR, p. 94. See also below, chapter 16, p. 937.

¹⁷ See *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Series A, vol. 310, 1995, p. 23; 103 ILR, p. 622.

¹⁸ See *Soering v. UK*, Series A, vol. 161, 1989, p. 34; 98 ILR, p. 270; *Artico v. Italy*, Series A, vol. 37, p. 16 and *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Series A, vol. 310, p. 23; 103 ILR, p. 622.

¹⁹ See *Al-Adsani v. UK*, Judgment of 21 November 2001, para. 60; 123 ILR, p. 41.

²⁰ *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Series A, vol. 310, pp. 24 and 27; 103 ILR, p. 622.

²¹ See e.g. *Soering v. UK*, Series A, vol. 161, 1989, pp. 35–6.

²² See e.g. *Drozd and Janousek v. France and Spain*, Series A, vol. 240, 1992, p. 29. See also *Issa v. Turkey*, Judgment of 30 May 2000, and *Öcalan v. Turkey*, Judgment of 14 December 2000.

of an area outside its national territory, irrespective of the lawfulness of such control, whether by the state's own agents and officials or by the acts of a subordinate local administration.²³ Despite this, the Court has stated that its recognition of the exercise of extraterritorial jurisdiction by a contracting state is exceptional and that the Convention's notion of jurisdiction is essentially territorial.²⁴ These principles were reaffirmed in *Ilașcu v. Moldova and Russia*, where the Court, while emphasising that jurisdiction was primarily territorial, noted that in exceptional circumstances the state might not be responsible for Convention violations where it was prevented from exercising its authority in a part of its territory, whether as a result of military occupation by the armed forces of another state which effectively controls the territory concerned, acts of war or rebellion, or the acts of a foreign state supporting the installation of a separatist state within the territory of the state concerned.²⁵ Further, a state's responsibility will be engaged where, as a consequence of military action, whether lawful or unlawful, it exercises in practice effective control of an area situated outside its national territory. Overall control of an area would suffice and the responsibility of the state would extend not only to the acts of its own soldiers and officials, but also to acts of the local administration which survives there by virtue of its military and other support.²⁶

Linked with the territorial jurisdictional issue is the question whether the Court has jurisdiction over the states in question (or jurisdiction *ratione personae*). In *Behrami v. France*, the Court, in an application against a number of states with regard to activities undertaken as part of the international presence in Kosovo (whether military, KFOR, or civil, UNMIK), had to decide whether the acts in question were attributable or imputable to the states concerned such as to found jurisdiction or whether the acts were imputable rather to the UN. The Court concluded that KFOR was exercising lawfully delegated Chapter VII powers of the UN Security Council

²³ Series A, vol. 310, p. 20; 103 ILR, p. 622. See also *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 75 ff.; 120 ILR, p. 10.

²⁴ See *Banković v. Belgium*, Judgment of 12 December 2001, paras. 63, 67 and 71; 123 ILR, pp. 110, 111 and 113. The Court noted that 'the Convention is a multi-lateral treaty operating ... in an essentially regional context and notably in the legal space (*espace juridique*) of the contracting states', *ibid.*, para. 80. See also *Issa v. Turkey*, Judgment of 16 November 2004, paras. 65 ff., where the Court held that the degree of control exercised by Turkish troops during a large-scale incursion into northern Iraq did not amount to overall control, and *Assanidze v. Georgia*, Judgment of 8 April 2004.

²⁵ Judgment of 8 July 2004 at paras. 312–13. ²⁶ *Ibid.*, paras. 314–19.

so that the impugned action was, in principle, 'attributable' to the UN and thus not to the states brought before the Court.²⁷

The convention system

With the coming into force of Protocol 11 on 1 November 1998, a single permanent and full-time Court was established, so that the former Court and Commission ceased to exist. The new Court consists of a number of judges equal to that of the contracting parties to the Convention. Judges are elected by the Parliamentary Assembly of the Council of Europe for six-year terms.²⁸ To consider cases before it, the Court may sit in Committees of three judges, in Chambers of seven judges and in a Grand Chamber of seventeen judges.²⁹ The Rules of Court provide for the establishment of at least four Sections, the compositions of which are to be geographically and gender-balanced and reflective of the different legal systems among the contracting states.³⁰ The Chambers of seven judges provided for in the amended Convention are constituted from the Sections, as are the Committees of three judges.³¹ The plenary Court is responsible for the election of the President and Vice-Presidents of the Court, the appointment of the Presidents of the Chambers, constituting Chambers and adopting rules of procedure.³²

In ascertaining whether an application is admissible, the President of the Chamber to which it has been assigned will appoint a judge as Judge Rapporteur to examine the application and decide whether it should be considered by a Committee of three or a Chamber.³³ A Committee, acting unanimously, may decide to declare the application inadmissible or strike it out of the list.³⁴ That decision is final. In other cases, the application will be considered by a Chamber on the basis of the Judge Rapporteur's report.

²⁷ Judgment of 2 May 2007, paras. 141 ff.; similarly with regard to those activities falling within the framework of the UNMIK, deemed to be a subsidiary organ of the Security Council, para. 143. But see *Bosphorus Airways v. Ireland*, Judgment of 30 June 2005. See, as to the situation in Kosovo, above, chapter 5, pp. 204 and 232.

²⁸ Articles 22 and 23. Note that there will no longer be a prohibition on two judges having the same nationality. The terms of office of the judges will end at the age of seventy.

²⁹ Article 27. ³⁰ Rule 25. There are now five Sections. ³¹ Rules 26 and 27.

³² Article 26. ³³ Rule 49.

³⁴ *Ibid.* and article 28. In so doing, the Committee will take into account the report of the Judge Rapporteur, Rule 53. Note that the Court has the right to strike out an application at any stage of the proceedings where it concludes that the applicant does not intend to pursue his application or the matter has been resolved or, for any other reason established by the Court, it is no longer justified to continue the examination of the application. However, the Court shall continue the examination of an application if respect for human rights as defined in the Convention and the Protocols thereto so requires: see article 37.

The Chamber may hold oral hearings. The question of admissibility will then be decided. Once an application is declared admissible, the Chamber may invite the parties to submit further evidence and written observations and a hearing on the merits may be held if the Chamber decides or one of the parties so requests.³⁵ At this point the respondent government is usually contacted for written observations.³⁶ Where a serious question affecting the interpretation of the Convention or its Protocols is raised in a case, or where the resolution of a question might lead to a result inconsistent with earlier case-law, the Chamber may, unless one of the parties to the case objects, relinquish jurisdiction in favour of the Grand Chamber.³⁷

The Court may give advisory opinions, although in very restrictive circumstances.³⁸ In all cases before a Chamber or the Grand Chamber, a

³⁵ Rule 59.

³⁶ In the case of inter-state cases, the respondent government will be automatically contacted: see Rule 51.

³⁷ Article 30. While there is no specific power in the Convention under which the Court may order interim measures of protection with binding effect, Rule 39 of the Rules of Court provides that the Chamber or, where appropriate, its President may, at the request of a party or of any other person concerned, or of its own motion, indicate to the parties any interim measure which it considers should be adopted in the interests of the parties or of the proper conduct of the proceedings before it. The Court in *Mamatkulov and Abdurasulovic v. Turkey*, Judgment of 6 February 2003, referring to the practice of other international organs including the International Court of Justice and the Inter-American Court and Commission of Human Rights, held that article 34 of the Convention requires that applicants are entitled to exercise their right to individual application effectively, while article 3, relevant in the context of expulsion, also necessitated an effective examination of the issues in question. The Court noting that Rule 39 indications 'permit it to carry out an effective examination of the application and to ensure that the protection afforded by the Convention is effective', concluded that 'any state party to the Convention to which interim measures have been indicated in order to avoid irreparable harm being caused to the victim of an alleged violation must comply with those measures and refrain from any act or omission that will undermine the authority and effectiveness of the final judgment', paras. 107–10.

³⁸ Article 47. Only the Committee of Ministers can make such a request and advisory opinions cannot deal with any question relating to the content or scope of the rights and freedoms laid down in Section 1 of the Convention and its Protocols or with any question which the Court or Committee of Ministers might have to consider during proceedings instituted in accordance with the Convention. The first request for an advisory opinion concerned the co-existence of the Convention on Human Rights of the Commonwealth of Independent States and the European Convention on Human Rights, but on 2 June 2004 the Court concluded unanimously that the request did not come within its advisory competence. The first advisory opinion was given on 12 February 2008, where the Court unanimously concluded that it was not compatible with the European Convention on Human Rights for a list of candidates for election to the post of judge at the Court to be rejected on the sole

contracting party, one of whose nationals is an applicant, shall have the right to submit written comments and to take part in hearings, while the President of the Court may, in the interest of the proper administration of justice, invite any contracting party which is not a party to the proceedings, or any person concerned who is not the applicant to submit written comments or take part in hearings.³⁹ Once an application has been declared admissible, the Court will pursue the examination of the case and place itself at the disposal of the parties with a view to securing a friendly settlement.⁴⁰ If a friendly settlement is reached, the Court will strike the case out of its list.⁴¹ Hearings before the Court will be in public unless the Court in exceptional circumstances decides otherwise. The Court will be able to afford just satisfaction to the injured party if necessary, where a violation is found and the domestic law of the contracting party concerned allows only partial reparation to be made.⁴² Under article 43, within a period of three months from the date of the judgment of the Chamber, any party to the case may, in exceptional cases, request that the case be referred to the Grand Chamber. A panel of five judges of the Grand Chamber will accept this request if the case raises a serious question affecting the interpretation or application of the Convention or Protocols, or a serious issue of general importance. If the panel does accept the request, the Grand Chamber will decide the case by means of a judgment. Judgments of the Grand Chamber will be final, as will those of a Chamber where the parties declare that they will not request that the case be referred to the Grand Chamber, or three months after the date of judgment if reference to the Grand Chamber has not been requested, or when the panel of the Grand Chamber rejects the request to refer. The final judgment will be published⁴³ and is binding upon the parties,⁴⁴ and it will be transmitted to the Committee of Ministers, which shall supervise its execution.⁴⁵

A number of crucial changes took place as a result of the reform of the system under Protocol 11. The right of individual petition became automatic rather than dependent upon the acceptance of the state complained against,⁴⁶ the new Court became full-time, the function of the Committee of Ministers was limited to the supervision of the execution of the judgments of the Court rather than including a decision-making

ground that there was no woman included in the proposed list and called for exceptions to the principle that lists must contain a candidate of the under-represented sex to be defined as soon as possible.

³⁹ Article 36. ⁴⁰ Article 38. Proceedings in the latter case will be confidential.

⁴¹ Article 39. ⁴² Article 41. ⁴³ Article 44. ⁴⁴ Article 46(1).

⁴⁵ Article 46(2). ⁴⁶ Compare former article 25 with current article 34.

function in the absence of referral of a Commission report to the Court,⁴⁷ the number of judges in a Chamber was reduced from nine to seven, the right of third-party intervention became part of the Convention itself rather than a Rule of Court and hearings became public apart from the friendly settlement process. However, under article 30, the parties to a case are able to prevent the relinquishment of jurisdiction by a Chamber in favour of the Grand Chamber. In addition, where a case is referred to the Grand Chamber under article 43, the Grand Chamber will include the President of the Chamber and the judge who sat in respect of the state party concerned, who will thus be involved in a rehearing of a case that they have already heard. This unusual procedure remains a source of some disquiet.

The Convention provides for the right of both inter-state and individual application. Under article 33, any contracting state may institute a case against another contracting state. To date applications have been lodged with the Commission by states involving seven situations.⁴⁸ The first inter-state application to reach the Court was *Ireland v. UK*.⁴⁹ Such applications are a means of bringing to the fore an alleged breach of the European public order, so that, for example, it is irrelevant whether the applicant state has been recognised by the respondent state.⁵⁰ Article 34 provides for the right of individual petition to the Commission and this has proved to be a crucial provision.⁵¹ This right is now automatic.⁵² The

⁴⁷ See former article 32 and e.g. P. Leuprecht, 'The Protection of Human Rights by Political Bodies: The Example of the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe' in *Progress in the Spirit of Human Rights: Festschrift für Felix Ermacora* (eds. M. Nowak, D. Steurer and H. Tretter), Kehl, 1988, p. 95.

⁴⁸ *Cyprus case (Greece v. UK)*, 1956 and 1957, two applications; *Austria v. Italy*, 1960; five applications against Greece, 1967–70; *Ireland v. UK*, 1971; *Cyprus v. Turkey*, 1974–94, four applications, and five applications against Turkey, 1982. See also the application brought by Georgia against Russia, 2007.

⁴⁹ Series A, vol. 25, 1978; 58 ILR, p. 188. Note also the Court's decision in *Cyprus v. Turkey*, Judgment of 10 May 2001; 120 ILR, p. 10.

⁵⁰ *Cyprus v. Turkey (Third Application)* 13 DR 85 (1978).

⁵¹ The total number of new applications in 2007 was estimated at 54,000, of which 41,700 were allocated to a decision body. As at 31 December 2007, there were a total of 103,850 applications pending, of which some 79,000 were pending before a decision body: see Annual Report for 2007 (2008), p. 134.

⁵² Note that the issue of reservations to former articles 25 and 46 (concerning the jurisdiction of the Court prior to Protocol XI) was discussed in the case-law. The Court noted that while temporal reservations could be valid, reservations beyond this were not: see *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, Series A, vol. 310, 1995; 103 ILR, p. 622. The Court, in dismissing the territorial limitations upon the Turkish declarations under articles 25 and 46, held that such declarations therefore took effect as valid declarations without such

Convention system does not contemplate an *actio popularis*.⁵³ Individuals cannot raise abstract issues, but must be able to claim to be the victim of a violation of one or more of the Convention rights.⁵⁴ However, the Court has emphasised that:

an individual may, under certain conditions, claim to be the victim of a violation occasioned by the mere existence of secret measures or of legislation permitting secret measures, without having to allege that such measures were in fact applied to him.⁵⁵

A near relative of the victim, for example, could also raise an issue where the violation alleged was personally prejudicial or where there existed a valid personal interest.⁵⁶

The Court may only deal with a matter once all domestic remedies have been exhausted according to the generally accepted rules of international law and within a period of six months from the date on which the final decision was taken.⁵⁷ Such remedies must be effective. Where there are no domestic remedies to exhaust, the act or decision complained against will itself normally be taken as the 'final decision' for the purposes of article 26.⁵⁸ The need to exhaust domestic remedies applies also in the

limitations, Series A, vol. 310 pp. 27–9. Turkey had argued that if the limitations were not upheld, the declarations themselves would fall. Not to adopt this approach would, the Court noted, have entailed a weakening of the Convention system for the protection of human rights, which constituted a European constitutional public order, and would run counter to the aim of greater unity in the maintenance and further realisation of human rights, *ibid.* See also the Commission Report in *Chrysostomos v. Turkey* 68 DR 216.

⁵³ See e.g. *X v. Austria* 7 DR 87 (1976) concerning legislation on abortion.

⁵⁴ See e.g. *Pine Valley v. Ireland*, Series A, vol. 222, 1991; *Johnston v. Ireland*, Series A, vol. 112, 1986; *Marckx v. Belgium*, Series A, vol. 31, 1979; *Campbell and Cosans v. UK*, Series A, vol. 48, 1982; *Eckle v. Federal Republic of Germany*, Series A, vol. 51, 1982 and *Vijayanathan and Pusparajah v. France*, Series A, vol. 241-B, 1992.

⁵⁵ *The Klass case*, Series A, vol. 28, 1979, pp. 17–18; 58 ILR, pp. 423, 442. See also e.g. the *Marckx case*, Series A, vol. 31, 1979, pp. 12–14; 58 ILR, pp. 561, 576; the *Dudgeon case*, Series A, vol. 45, 1982, p. 18; 67 ILR, pp. 395, 410; the *Belgian Linguistics case*, Series A, vol. 6, 1968; 45 ILR, p. 136 and *Norris v. Ireland*, Series A, No. 142, 1988; 89 ILR, p. 243.

⁵⁶ See e.g. Application 100/55, *X v. FRG*, 1 *Yearbook of the ECHR*, 1955–7, p. 162 and Application 1478/62, *Y v. Belgium*, *Yearbook of the ECHR*, 1963, p. 590. See also *Cyprus v. Turkey*, Judgment of 10 May 2001; 120 ILR, p. 10.

⁵⁷ Article 35. See *Akdivar v. Turkey*, Judgment of 16 September 1996. As to the meaning of domestic or local remedies in international law, see below, p. 819.

⁵⁸ See e.g. *X v. UK*, 8 DR, pp. 211, 212–13 and *Cyprus v. Turkey*, *Yearbook of the European Convention on Human Rights*, 1978, pp. 240–2. Where, however, there is a permanent state of affairs which is still continuing, the question of the six-month rule can only arise after the state of affairs has ceased to exist: see e.g. *De Becker v. Belgium*, 2 *Yearbook of the*

case of inter-state cases as does the six-month rule.⁵⁹ In addition, no petition may be dealt with which is anonymous or substantially the same as a matter already examined, and any petition which is incompatible with the Convention, manifestly ill-founded⁶⁰ or an abuse of the right of petition is to be rendered inadmissible.⁶¹

The Court, in an ever-increasing number of judgments,⁶² has developed a jurisprudence of considerable importance.⁶³ It has operated on the basis of a number of evolving principles. In particular, the Court will allow states a degree of leeway in a system composed of obligations of contracting states and a European-level supervisory mechanism. The doctrine of 'the margin of appreciation' means that the Court will not interfere in certain domestic spheres while retaining a general overall supervision. For example, in *Brannigan and McBride v. UK*, the Court held that states benefit from a 'wide margin of appreciation' with regard to the process of determining the existence and scope of a public emergency permitting derogation from certain provisions of the Convention under article 15.⁶⁴ This margin of appreciation will vary depending upon the content of the rights in question in substantive proceedings or on the balancing of rights in contention. It will be wider with regard to issues of personal morality,⁶⁵ but narrower in other cases.⁶⁶ The essential point is, as the Court noted in *Z v. UK*, that: 'It is fundamental to the machinery of protection established by the Convention that the national systems themselves provide redress for breaches of its provision, the Court exercising its supervisory role subject to the principle of

European Convention on Human Rights, 1958, pp. 214, 244. The rule is strict and cannot be waived by the state concerned: see *Walker v. UK*, Judgment of 25 January 2000.

⁵⁹ See *Cyprus v. Turkey*, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 82 ff. Note that the Court suggested that the remedies provided by the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus' had to be taken into account in this situation, *ibid*. See above, chapter 5, p. 235.

⁶⁰ See e.g. *Boyle and Rice v. UK*, Series A, vol. 131, 1988. This does not apply to inter-state cases.

⁶¹ Article 35. See Harris *et al.*, *Law of the European Convention*, pp. 608 ff.; Jacobs and White, chapter 24 and e.g. the *Vagrancy* case, Series A, vol. 12, 1971; 56 ILR, p. 351.

⁶² One judgment was delivered in its first year of operation in 1960; 6 in 1976; 17 in 1986; 25 in 1989; 126 in 1996; 695 in 2000; 844 in 2002 and 1,503 in 2007: see *Survey of Activities 2007* (2008).

⁶³ See e.g. P. Mahoney, 'Judicial Activism and Judicial Self-Restraint in the European Court of Human Rights: Two Sides of the Same Coin', 11 HRLJ, 1990, p. 57.

⁶⁴ Series A, No. 258-B, 1994, para. 43.

⁶⁵ See e.g. *Handyside v. UK*, Series A, vol. 24, 1981; 58 ILR, p. 150.

⁶⁶ E.g. fair trial and due process questions: see e.g. *The Sunday Times v. UK*, Series A, vol. 30, 1979; 58 ILR, p. 491.

subsidiarity.⁶⁷ This also means that the Court is wary of undertaking fact-finding⁶⁸ and similarly cautious about indicating which measures a state should take in order to comply with its obligations under the Convention.⁶⁹

The Court has dealt with a number of critical issues. In *Ireland v. UK*,⁷⁰ for example, the Court found that the five interrogation techniques used by the UK Forces in Northern Ireland amounted to a practice of inhuman and degrading treatment, contrary to article 3.⁷¹ In *McCann v. UK*,⁷² the Court narrowly held that the killing by members of the security forces of three members of an IRA unit suspected of involvement in a bombing mission in Gibraltar violated the right to life under article 2. In *Golder v. UK*,⁷³ the Court inferred from article 6(1) a fundamental right of access to the courts, and the Court has emphasised the importance of fair trial mechanisms such as the principle of contempt of court.⁷⁴ The Court has also developed a considerable jurisprudence in the field of due process⁷⁵ that is having a significant impact upon domestic law, not least in the UK. A brief reference to some further examples will suffice. In the *Marckx* case,⁷⁶ the Court emphasised that Belgian legislation discriminating against illegitimate children violated the Convention, while in the *Young, James and Webster* case⁷⁷ it was held that railway workers dismissed for refusing to join a trade union in the UK were entitled to compensation. In the *Brogan* case,⁷⁸ the Court felt that periods of detention under anti-terrorist legislation in the UK before appearance before a judge or other judicial officer of at least four days violated the Convention. This

⁶⁷ Judgment of 10 May 2001, para. 103.

⁶⁸ See e.g. the *Tanli* case, Judgment of 10 April 2001.

⁶⁹ The *Vgt Verein gegen Tierfabriken* case, Judgment of 28 June 2001, para. 78.

⁷⁰ Series A, vol. 25, 1978; 58 ILR, p. 188.

⁷¹ See also *Cyprus v. Turkey*, where the Court held that the discriminatory treatment of the Greek Cypriots in the Turkish occupied north of Cyprus amounted to degrading treatment, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 302–11; 120 ILR, p. 10.

⁷² Series A, vol. 324, 1995. ⁷³ Series A, vol. 18, 1975; 57 ILR, p. 200.

⁷⁴ See e.g. *Handyside v. UK*, Series A, vol. 24, 1981; 58 ILR, p. 150; the *Dudgeon* case, Series A, vol. 45, 1982; 67 ILR, p. 395 and the *Sunday Times* case, Series A, vol. 30, 1979; 58 ILR, p. 491.

⁷⁵ See e.g. S. Trechsel, 'Liberty and Security of Person' in Macdonald *et al.*, *European System*, p. 277; P. Van Dijk, 'Access to Court', *ibid.*, p. 345; O. Jacot-Guillarmod, 'Rights Related to Good Administration (Article 6)', *ibid.*, p. 381; Harris *et al.*, *Law of the European Convention*, chapter 6; and *Digest of Strasbourg Case-law relating to the European Convention on Human Rights*, Strasbourg, 1984, vol. II (article 6).

⁷⁶ Series A, vol. 31, 1979; 58 ILR, p. 561. ⁷⁷ Series A, vol. 44, 1981; 62 ILR, p. 359.

⁷⁸ Series A, vol. 145, 1988.

decision, however, prompted a notice of derogation under article 15 of the Convention by the UK government.⁷⁹

In the important *Soering* case,⁸⁰ the Court unanimously held that the extradition of a German national from the UK to the United States, where the applicant feared he would be sentenced to death on a charge of capital murder and be subjected to the 'death row' phenomenon, would constitute a breach of article 3 of the Convention prohibiting torture and inhuman and degrading treatment and punishment. Further, the Court has held that the deportation to Iran of a woman who in the circumstances would have been at risk of punishment by stoning would violate article 3.⁸¹ The Court has also emphasised that national security considerations had no application where article 3 violations were in question.⁸²

The Court has approached its task in a generally evolving way. For example, it has deduced from a number of substantive provisions that circumstances may arise in which a state would have a positive obligation to conduct an inquiry or effective official investigation. This would arise, for instance, where individuals have been killed as a result of the use of force by agents of the state,⁸³ or while in custody,⁸⁴ or 'upon proof of an arguable claim that an individual, who was last seen in the custody of agents of the state, subsequently disappeared in a context which may be considered life-threatening'.⁸⁵ Similarly, the Court has held that the right to life under article 2 entails also the obligation upon states to take appropriate steps for the safeguarding of life within the jurisdiction.⁸⁶ Linked with these provisions is article 13 which requires the state party to provide a remedy, effective in law and in practice, which is able both to deal with the substance of the applicant's complaint and to provide an appropriate legal redress.⁸⁷ The jurisprudence of the Court with regard to Article 13 demonstrates that in an increasing number of cases that provision is

⁷⁹ For the text, see e.g. 7 NQHR, 1989, p. 255. See also *Brannigan and McBride v. UK*, Series A, vol. 258-B, 1993.

⁸⁰ Series A, vol. 161, 1989. See also *Mamatkulov and Abdurasulovic v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 6 February 2003, paras. 66 ff.

⁸¹ *Jabari v. Turkey*, Judgment of 11 July 2000.

⁸² *Chahal v. UK*, Judgment of 15 November 1996.

⁸³ See e.g. *McCann v. UK*, Series A, vol. 324, 1996.

⁸⁴ E.g. *Tanli*, Judgment of 10 April 2001, para. 152.

⁸⁵ *Cyprus v. Turkey*, Judgment of 10 May 2001, para. 132; 120 ILR, p. 10.

⁸⁶ *LCB v. UK*, Judgment of 9 June 1998.

⁸⁷ *Soering v. UK*, Judgment of 7 July 1989, at para. 120. See also *Aksoy v. Turkey*, Judgment of 18 December 1996, at para. 95 and *Akdeniz v. Turkey*, Judgment of 31 May 2005, at para. 138.

understood as requiring states to undertake an effective investigation into arguable claims of the violation of Convention rights. This has included claims of violations of Articles 2, 3, 5 and 6.⁸⁸

Execution of Court decisions is the responsibility of the Committee of Ministers.⁸⁹ This is a political body, the executive organ of the Council of Europe,⁹⁰ and consists of the Foreign Ministers, or their deputies, of all the member states.⁹¹ Under article 15 of the Statute of the Council of Europe, the Committee of Ministers, acting on the recommendation of the Parliamentary Assembly or on its own initiative, considers the action required to further the aims of the Council of Europe, including the conclusion of conventions or agreements, and the adoption by governments of a common policy with regard to particular matters. Under article 16 of the Statute, it decides with binding effect all matters relating to the internal organisation and arrangements of the Council of Europe. Resolutions and recommendations on a wide variety of issues are regularly adopted.⁹² The Committee of Ministers performs a variety of functions with regard to the protection of human rights. For example, in its Declaration on Compliance with Commitments Accepted by Member States of the Council of Europe, adopted on 10 November 1994, the Committee decided that it would consider the question of implementation of commitments concerning the situation of democracy, human rights and the rule of law in any member state which may be referred to it by member states, the Secretary-General or on the basis of a recommendation of the Parliamentary Assembly.

Where the Court has found a violation, the matter will be placed on the agenda of the Committee of Ministers and will stay there until the respondent government has confirmed that any sum awarded in just satisfaction under article 41 has been paid and/or any required individual measure has been taken and/or any general measures have been adopted

⁸⁸ E.g. *Kaya v. Turkey*, Judgment of 19 February 1998, at para. 107; *Ilhan v. Turkey*, Judgment of 27 June 2000, at para. 97; *Kurt v. Turkey*, Judgment of 25 May 1998, at para. 140 and *Kudla v. Poland*, Judgment of 26 October 2000, at paras. 146–9. The Court has noted that ‘the requirements of Article 13 are broader than a Contracting State’s obligation under Article 2 to conduct an effective investigation into the disappearance of a person last seen in the hands of the authorities’, *Akdeniz v. Turkey*, Judgment of 31 May 2005, at para. 139 and *Estamirov and Others v. Russia*, Judgment of 12 October 2006, at para. 118.

⁸⁹ Article 46(2). ⁹⁰ Article 13 of the Statute of the Council of Europe.

⁹¹ Article 14 of the Statute of the Council of Europe.

⁹² These are non-binding. Resolutions relate to the general work of the Council as such, while recommendations concern action which it is suggested should be taken by the governments of member states.

preventing new similar violations or putting an end to continuing violation.⁹³ Information so provided by states is to be accessible to the public, unless the Committee decides otherwise in order to protect legitimate public or private interests.⁹⁴

Despite the reform of the Convention system by Protocol No. 11, difficulties remain. Applications continue to increase inexorably.⁹⁵ As a consequence, Protocol No. 14 provides that a single judge will be able to declare an application inadmissible and a committee of three judges will be able to rule on repetitive cases where the underlying matter is already the subject of well-established case-law. In addition, a new admissibility requirement will be added to article 35 so that an application may be declared inadmissible where the applicant has not suffered a significant disadvantage and where an examination on the merits by the Court is not seen as necessary in terms of respect for human rights, provided that the matter has been examined by a domestic tribunal. Judges will be elected for non-renewable periods of nine years.⁹⁶

*The European Social Charter*⁹⁷

The wide social and economic differences between the European states, coupled with the fact that economic and social rights often depend for their realisation upon economic resources, has meant that this area of

⁹³ Rules 3 and 4. Very occasionally there have been difficulties. For example, the decision of the Court in *Loizidou v. Turkey* awarding the applicant compensation for deprivation of property rights remains to be implemented: see e.g. *Jacobs and White*, pp. 502 ff. See also e.g. interim Committee resolutions DH (2000) 105 and DH (2001) 80. Note that where the Court finds a systemic defect in the national legal order, which has or is likely to produce a large number of applications, a remedy may be required of the state that would apply to the class of individuals in the same category: see *Broniowski v. Poland*, Judgment of 22 June 2004. See also V. Colandrea, 'On the Power of the European Court of Human Rights to Order Specific Non-monetary Measures', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 396.

⁹⁴ Rule 5. ⁹⁵ See above, p. 354.

⁹⁶ The Protocol was opened for signature on 30 May 2004. In order to come into force it requires all contracting states to ratify it. To date, only Russia has failed to ratify. See L. Caflisch, 'The Reform of the European Court of Human Rights: Protocol No. 14 and Beyond', 6 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2006, p. 403, and A. Mowbray, 'Faltering Steps on the Path to Reform of the Strasbourg Enforcement System', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 609. Note the Interim and Final Reports of the Group of Wise Persons to the Committee of Ministers in May and November 2006, CM (2006) 88 and CM (2006) 203.

⁹⁷ See e.g. D. J. Harris, *The European Social Charter*, 2nd edn, Charlottesville, 2000, 'A Fresh Impetus for the European Charter', 41 *ICLQ*, 1992, p. 659, and 'The System of Supervision of the European Social Charter – Problems and Options for the Future' in *The Future*

concern has lagged far behind that of civil and political rights. Seven years of negotiations were necessary before the Charter was signed in 1961.⁹⁸

The Charter consists of a statement of long-term objectives coupled with a list of more restricted rights. The Charter covers labour rights and trade union rights,⁹⁹ the protection of specific groups such as children, women, disabled persons and migrant workers,¹⁰⁰ social security rights,¹⁰¹ and protection of the family.¹⁰² In an attempt to deal with economic disparities within Europe, the Charter provides for a system whereby only ten of the forty-five paragraphs (including five 'key articles'¹⁰³) need to be accepted upon ratification. The Charter¹⁰⁴ is implemented by the European Committee of Social Rights, consisting of fifteen independent experts elected for a six-year period, renewable once. States parties submit annual reports on some of the provisions of the Charter. These provisions have been divided since 2007 into four thematic groups, each group being the subject of an annual review.¹⁰⁵ These reports are examined by the

of European Social Policy (ed. L. Betten), 2nd edn, Deventer, 1991, p. 1; *25 Years of the European Social Charter* (eds. A. P. C. M. Jaspers and L. Betten), 1988; H. Wiebringhaus, 'La Charte Sociale Européenne: 20 Ans Après la Conclusion du Traité', AFDI, 1982, p. 934; O. Kahn-Freund, 'The European Social Charter' in *European Law and the Individual* (ed. F. G. Jacobs), London, 1976, and 'La Charte Sociale Européenne et la Convention Européenne des Droits de l'Homme', 8 HRJ, 1975, p. 527; F. M. Van Asbeck, 'La Charte Sociale Européenne' in *Mélanges Rolin*, Paris, 1964, p. 427, and T. Novitz, 'Remedies for Violation of Social Rights Within the Council of Europe' in *The Future of Remedies in Europe* (eds. C. Kilpatrick, T. Novitz and P. Skidmore), London, 2000, p. 230.

⁹⁸ As at April 2008, there were thirty-nine states parties to the Charter.

⁹⁹ Articles 1–6, 9–10. ¹⁰⁰ Articles 7–8, 15, 18–19. ¹⁰¹ Articles 11–14.

¹⁰² Articles 16–17. An Additional Protocol was signed in 1988 which added four more economic and social rights, guaranteeing the rights to equal opportunities in employment without discrimination based on sex; information and consultation of workers within the undertaking; participation in the determination and improvement of working conditions, and social protection of elderly persons. The Protocol entered into force on 4 September 1992.

¹⁰³ Out of the following seven rights: the right to work, organise, bargain collectively, social security, social and medical assistance, and the rights of the family to special protection and of migrant workers and their families to protection and assistance: see article 20.

¹⁰⁴ As amended by the Turin Protocol 1991 and as revised in 1996. The revised Charter came into force in 1999 and gathered together the rights contained in the 1961 instrument as amended and the 1988 Protocol and added new rights, such as the right to protection against poverty and social exclusion, the right to housing, the right to protection in cases of termination of employment and the right to protection against sexual harassment in the workplace.

¹⁰⁵ These groups are employment, training and equal opportunities; health, social security and social protection; labour rights; and children, families and migrants respectively.

Committee and its conclusions published. If a state does not implement a Committee decision, the Committee of Ministers addresses a recommendation to the state to the same effect. A system of Collective Complaints was established by an Additional Protocol adopted in 1995. This provides that international organisations of employers and trade unions, other international non-governmental organisations with consultative status with the Council of Europe placed on a list for this purpose by the Governmental Committee, and representative national organisations of employers and trade unions within the jurisdiction of the contracting party against which they have lodged a complaint may submit complaints alleging unsatisfactory application of the Charter.¹⁰⁶ Contracting parties may also make a declaration recognising the right of any other representative national non-governmental organisation within their jurisdiction which has particular competence in the matters governed by the Charter to lodge complaints against them.¹⁰⁷ Such complaints are lodged with the European Committee of Social Rights, which makes a decision on both admissibility and on the merits. Its decision is sent to the parties concerned and to the Committee of Ministers, which adopts a resolution on the matter.

The European Convention for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment¹⁰⁸

This innovative Convention was signed in 1987 and came into force on 1 February 1989.¹⁰⁹ The purpose of the Convention is to enable the supervision of persons deprived of their liberty and, in particular, to prevent

¹⁰⁶ Article 1. ¹⁰⁷ Article 2.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. M. Evans and R. Morgan, *Combating Torture in Europe – The Work and Standards of the European Committee for the Prevention of Torture*, Strasbourg, 2001; J. Murdoch, 'The Work of the Council of Europe's Torture Committee', 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 220; M. Evans and R. Morgan, 'The European Torture Committee: Membership Issues', 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 249; A. Cassese, 'A New Approach to Human Rights: The European Convention for the Prevention of Torture', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 128, and Cassese, 'Une Nouvelle Approche des Droits de l'Homme: La Convention Européenne pour la Prévention de la Torture', 93 RGDIP, 1989, p. 6; M. Evans and R. Morgan, 'The European Convention on the Prevention of Torture: Operational Practice', 41 ICLQ, 1992, p. 590, and C. Jenkins, 'An Appraisal of the Role and Work of the European Committee for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman or Degrading Treatment or Punishment', SOAS Working Paper No. 11, 1996.

¹⁰⁹ All forty-seven members of the Council of Europe are parties. By Protocol No. 1 non-member states of the Council of Europe are allowed to accede to the Convention at the invitation of the Committee of Ministers, CPT/Inf (93) 17. This came into force in March 2002.

the torture or other ill-treatment of such persons.¹¹⁰ The Committee for the Prevention of Torture was established under the Convention,¹¹¹ placing, as it has noted, a 'proactive non-judicial mechanism alongside the existing reactive judicial mechanisms of the European Commission and European Court of Human Rights'.¹¹² The Committee is given a fact-finding and reporting function. The Committee is empowered to carry out both visits of a periodic nature and ad hoc visits to places of detention in order to examine the treatment of persons deprived of their liberty with a view to strengthening, if necessary, the protection of such persons from torture and from inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment. Periodic visits are carried out to all contracting parties on a regular basis, while ad hoc visits are organised when they appear to the Committee to be required in the circumstances.¹¹³ Thus periodic visits are planned in advance.¹¹⁴ The real innovation of the Convention, however, lies in the competence of the Committee to visit places of detention when the situation so warrants.¹¹⁵ When the Committee is not in session, the Bureau (i.e. the President and Vice-President of the Committee)¹¹⁶ may in cases of urgency decide, on the Committee's behalf, on the carrying out of such an ad hoc visit.¹¹⁷ States parties agree to permit visits to any place within their jurisdiction where persons are deprived of their liberty by a public

¹¹⁰ The Committee established under the Convention described its function in terms of strengthening 'the *cordon sanitaire* that separates acceptable and unacceptable treatment or behaviour': see First General Report, CPT (91) 3, para. 3.

¹¹¹ See Resolution DH (89) 26 of the Committee of Ministers adopted on 19 September 1989 for the election of the members of the Committee. Note that under Protocol No. 2 to the Convention, the members of the Committee may be re-elected twice (rather than once as specified in article 5). The Protocol came into force in March 2002.

¹¹² See Fifth General Report, CPT/Inf (95) 10, 1995, p. 3.

¹¹³ See articles 1 and 7. See also the Rules of Procedure of the Committee, 1989, CPT/Inf (89) 2, especially Rules 29–35. The Rules have been amended on a number of occasions, the most recent being 12 March 1997. See also Seventeenth General Report, 2007, CPT/Inf (2007) 39, p. 14.

¹¹⁴ Note that in 2001, 17 visits took place, CPT/Inf (2002) 15. By January 2003, 146 visits had taken place, 98 periodic and 48 ad hoc: see www.cpt.coe.int/en/about.htm. In the period August 2006 to July 2007, the Committee made periodic visits to ten states and ad hoc visits to six states: see Seventeenth General Report, 2007, CPT/Inf (2007) 39, pp. 20 ff.

¹¹⁵ A significant number of ad hoc visits have been made, e.g. to Turkey and Northern Ireland in the early years of operation of the Committee: see Murdoch, 'Work of the Council of Europe's Torture Committee', p. 227. In 2001, for example, ad hoc visits were made to Albania, Spain, Russia, Romania, Macedonia and Turkey, CPT/Inf (2002) 15, while in 2006–7 ad hoc visits were made to Greece, Hungary, Russia, Serbia (Kosovo), Spain and Turkey.

¹¹⁶ Rule 10 of the Rules of Procedure. ¹¹⁷ Rule 31 of the Rules of Procedure.

authority,¹¹⁸ although in exceptional circumstances, the competent authorities of the state concerned may make representations to the Committee against a visit at the time or place proposed on grounds of national defence, public safety, serious disorder, the medical condition of a person or because an urgent interrogation relating to a serious crime is in progress.¹¹⁹ The Committee may interview in private persons deprived of their liberty and may communicate freely with any person whom it believes can supply relevant information.¹²⁰

After each visit, the Committee draws up a report for transmission to the party concerned. That report will remain confidential¹²¹ unless and until the state party concerned decides to make it public.¹²² Where a state refuses to co-operate or to improve matters in the light of recommendations made, the Committee may decide, after the state has had an opportunity to make known its views, by a two-thirds majority to issue a public statement.¹²³ The Committee makes an annual general report on its activities to the Committee of Ministers, which is transmitted to the Parliamentary Assembly and made public.¹²⁴ The relationship between the approach taken by the Committee as revealed in its published reports and the practice under the European Human Rights Convention is

¹¹⁸ Article 2. ¹¹⁹ Article 9(1). ¹²⁰ Article 8.

¹²¹ As does the information gathered by the Committee in relation to a visit and its consultations with the contracting state concerned, article 11(1).

¹²² See Rules 40–2. Most reports have been published together with the comments of contracting states upon them: see e.g. Report to the Government of Liechtenstein, CPT/Inf (95) 7 and the Interim Report of the Government of Liechtenstein, CPT/Inf (95) 8; Report to the Government of Italy, CPT/Inf (95) 1 and the Response of the Government of Italy, CPT/Inf (95) 2; Report to the Government of the UK, CPT/Inf (94) 17 and the Response of the Government of the UK, CPT/Inf (94) 18; Report to the Government of Greece, CPT/Inf (94) 20 and the Response of the Government of Greece, CPT/Inf (94) 21. The Fifth General Report of the Committee revealed that twenty-one of the thirty-seven visit reports had been published and that there was good reason to believe that most of the remaining sixteen would be published soon, CPT/Inf (95) 10, p. 6. According to its 12th Report covering 2001, 91 of the 129 visit reports so far drawn up had been placed in the public domain. On 6 February 2002, the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe ‘encourage[d] all Parties to the Convention to authorise publication, at the earliest opportunity, of all CPT visit reports and of their responses’, CPT/Inf (2002) 15. See also CPT/Inf (2007), Appendix 4.

¹²³ Article 10(2). See e.g. the public statements concerning police detention conditions in Turkey, CPT/Inf (93) 1, paras. 21 and 37. The situation concerning Chechnya, Russia, has also led to public statements being made in 2001, 2003 and 2007: see e.g. CPT/Inf (2002) 15, Appendix 6 and CPT/Inf (2007), Appendix 9.

¹²⁴ Article 12. This is subject to the rules of confidentiality in article 11. Note that the Committee reports also include general substantive sections for the general guidance of states: see, for a collection of these, *The CPT Standards*, CPT/Inf/E (2002) 1.

particularly interesting and appears to demonstrate that the Committee has adopted a more flexible attitude to issues relating to detention and ill-treatment.¹²⁵

The Council of Europe Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities¹²⁶

The question of minorities is addressed in the European Convention on Human Rights only in terms of one possible ground of prohibited discrimination stipulated in article 14. However, the Council of Europe has been dealing with the issue of minorities in a more vigorous manner in more recent years. Resolution 192 (1988) of the Standing Conference of Local and Regional Authorities of Europe proposed the text of a European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages, while Recommendation 1134 (1990) of the Parliamentary Assembly on the Rights of Minorities called for either a protocol to the European Convention or a special convention on this topic.¹²⁷ The Committee of Ministers adopted on 22 June 1992 the European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages.¹²⁸ Under this Charter, a variety of measures to promote the use of regional or minority languages is suggested, for example, in the fields of education, court proceedings, public services, media, cultural facilities, economic and social life and transfrontier exchanges. Implementation is by periodic reports to the Secretary-General of the Council of Europe in a form prescribed by the Committee of Ministers.¹²⁹ Such reports are examined by a committee of experts,¹³⁰ composed of one member per contracting party, nominated by the party concerned, appointed for a period of six years and eligible for re-appointment.¹³¹ Bodies or associations legally established in a party may draw the attention of the committee of experts to matters relating to the undertakings entered into by that party and, on the basis of states' reports, the committee will itself report to the Committee of Ministers. The committee of experts' report may be accompanied by the comments which the parties have been requested to make and may also contain the proposals of the committee of experts to the Committee of Ministers for

¹²⁵ See e.g. Murdoch, 'Work of the Council of Europe's Torture Committee', pp. 238 ff.

¹²⁶ See generally, P. Thornberry and M. Estebanez, *The Council of Europe and Minorities*, Strasbourg, 1994, and G. Pentasugglia, *Minorities in International Law*, Strasbourg, 2002.

¹²⁷ See also Recommendations 1177 (1992) and 1201 (1993).

¹²⁸ It came into force in March 1998.

¹²⁹ Article 15. See e.g. the reports by Germany, MIN-LANG/PR (2000) 1 and by the UK, MIN-LANG/PR (2002) 5.

¹³⁰ Article 16. See e.g. the report on Germany, ECRML (2002) 1. ¹³¹ Article 17.

the preparation of such recommendations of the latter body to one or more of the parties as may be required.¹³² The Secretary-General also makes a two-yearly detailed report to the Parliamentary Assembly on the application of the Charter.¹³³ The Committee of Ministers may invite any non-member state of the Council of Europe to accede to the Charter.¹³⁴

At the Vienna Meeting of Heads of State and Government of the Council of Europe in October 1993, it was decided that a legal instrument would be drafted with regard to the protection of national minorities, and appendix II of the Vienna Declaration instructed the Committee of Ministers to work upon both a framework convention on national minorities and a draft protocol on cultural rights complementing the European Convention on Human Rights.¹³⁵ The Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities was adopted by the Committee of Ministers on 10 November 1994 and opened for signature on 1 February 1995.¹³⁶ The Framework Convention underlines the right to equality before the law of persons belonging to national minorities and prohibits discrimination based on belonging to a national minority. Contracting parties to the Framework Convention undertake to adopt, where necessary, adequate measures to promote in all areas of economic, social, political and cultural life, full and effective equality between persons belonging to a national minority and to the majority.¹³⁷ The parties agree to promote the conditions necessary for persons belonging to minorities to develop their culture and to preserve the essential elements of their identity, namely their religion, language, traditions and cultural heritage.¹³⁸ The collective expression of individual human rights of persons belonging to national minorities is to be respected,¹³⁹ while in areas inhabited by such persons traditionally

¹³² See e.g. the Committee of Ministers Recommendations to the Netherlands, RecChL (2001) 1 and to Germany, RecChL (2002) 1.

¹³³ Article 16. See the first biennial report in 2000, Doc. 8879, and the second in 2002, Doc. 9540.

¹³⁴ Article 20.

¹³⁵ See 14 HRLJ, 1993, pp. 373 ff. See also the Explanatory Report to the Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities, 1995. An ad hoc Committee for the Protection of National Minorities (CAHMIN) was established. Note that in January 1996, it was decided to suspend the work of the Committee on the drafting of an Additional Protocol: see CAHMIN (95) 22 Addendum, 1996.

¹³⁶ The Convention came into force on 1 February 1998. ¹³⁷ Article 4.

¹³⁸ Article 5. The parties also agree to refrain from assimilation policies and practices where this is against the will of persons belonging to national minorities.

¹³⁹ E.g. the freedoms of peaceful assembly, association, expression and thought, conscience and religion, article 7. See also articles 8 and 9.

or in substantial numbers, the parties shall endeavour to ensure as far as possible the condition which would make it possible to use the minority languages in relations between those persons and the administrative authorities.¹⁴⁰ By article 15, the parties agree to refrain from measures which alter the geographic proportions of the population in areas inhabited by persons belonging to national minorities.

The implementation of this Framework Convention is monitored by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe¹⁴¹ with the assistance of an advisory committee of experts¹⁴² and on the basis of periodic reports from contracting states.¹⁴³ The Committee of Ministers adopted rules on monitoring arrangements in 1997¹⁴⁴ and the Advisory Committee started operating in June 1998. The Committee examines state reports,¹⁴⁵ which are made public by the Council of Europe upon receipt from the state party, and prepares an opinion on the measures taken by that party.¹⁴⁶ The Committee may request additional information from a state party or other sources, including individuals and NGOs, but cannot deal with individual complaints. It may hold meetings with governments, and has to do so if the government concerned so requests, and may hold meetings with others than the governments concerned, during the course of country visits. Having received the opinion of the Advisory Committee, the Committee of Ministers will take the final decisions (called conclusions) concerning the adequacy of the measures taken by the state party. Where appropriate, it may also adopt recommendations in respect of the state party concerned. The conclusions and recommendations of the Committee of Ministers shall be made public upon their adoption, together with

¹⁴⁰ Upon request and where such a request corresponds to a real need, article 10(2). Similarly with regard to the display of traditional local names, street names and other topographical indications intended for the public in the minority language, article 11(3), and with regard to adequate opportunities for being taught the minority language or for receiving instruction in that language, article 14(2).

¹⁴¹ Article 24. Note that parties which are not members of the Council of Europe shall participate in the implementation mechanism according to modalities to be determined. Accordingly, the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia became a party to the Convention on 11 May 2001 and its first report became due on 1 September 2002.

¹⁴² Article 26. ¹⁴³ Article 25. The first reports became due on 1 February 1999.

¹⁴⁴ Resolution (97) 10 and see H(1998)005 rev.11.

¹⁴⁵ Guidelines for such reports have been issued by the Committee: see e.g. ACFC/INF(2003)001 and ACFC/INF(1998)001.

¹⁴⁶ See, for a list of opinions delivered as of January 2003, ACFC(2002)Opinions bil. See also the Collection of Resolutions and Recommendations Referred to by the Advisory Committee in its Opinions, 2007 and the Activities of the Council of Europe in the Field of the Protection of National Minorities, DH-MIN (2005) 003.

any comments the state party may have submitted in respect of the opinion delivered by the Advisory Committee. The opinion of the Advisory Committee is as a rule made public together with the conclusions of the Committee of Ministers. A first cycle of monitoring began in 1998 with thirty-four opinions adopted by the Advisory Committee and twenty-nine resolutions adopted by the Committee of Ministers. A second cycle of monitoring began in February 2004.

While the range of rights accorded to members of minorities is clearly greater than that envisaged in UN instruments,¹⁴⁷ its ambit is narrower in being confined to 'national minorities'. The Framework Convention itself provides no definition of that term since no consensus existed as to its meaning,¹⁴⁸ although Recommendation 1201 (1993) adopted by the Parliamentary Assembly and reaffirmed in Recommendation 1255 (1995) suggests that it refers to persons who reside on the territory of the state concerned and are citizens of it; maintain longstanding, firm and lasting ties with that state; display distinctive ethnic, cultural, religious or linguistic characteristics; are sufficiently representative, although smaller in numbers than the rest of the population of that state or of a region of that state; and are motivated by a concern to preserve together that which constitutes their common identity, including their culture, their traditions, their religion or their language. The narrowing of regard to persons belonging to national minorities who are citizens of the state concerned is perhaps a matter of concern.¹⁴⁹ The issue of the protection of minority rights is the subject of continuing discussion as to both their nature and scope.¹⁵⁰

The Council of Europe has adopted measures with regard to other areas of human rights activities of some relevance to the above issues.¹⁵¹

¹⁴⁷ See above, p. 293.

¹⁴⁸ See the Explanatory Report to the Convention, which states that, 'It was decided to adopt a pragmatic approach, based on the recognition that at this stage, it is impossible to arrive at a definition capable of mustering general support of all Council of Europe member States', H(1995)010, para. 12. The European Court of Human Rights has also referred to the problem of defining national minorities: see *Gorzelik v. Poland*, Judgment of 20 December 2001, para. 62.

¹⁴⁹ See e.g. R. Higgins, 'Minority Rights Discrepancies and Divergencies Between the International Covenant and the Council of Europe System' in *Liber Amicorum for Henry Schermers*, The Hague, 1994.

¹⁵⁰ See e.g. Parliamentary Assembly Recommendation Rec 1492 (2001) and the response of the Advisory Committee dated 14 September 2001.

¹⁵¹ See e.g. the European Charter of Local Self-Government, 1985; the European Convention on the Participation of Foreigners in Public Life at Local Level, 1992; the European Outline Convention on Transfrontier Co-operation between Territorial Communities or

*The European Union*¹⁵²

The Treaty of Rome, 1957 established the European Economic Community and is not of itself a human rights treaty. However, the European Court of Justice has held that subsumed within Community law are certain relevant unwritten general principles of law, emanating from several sources.¹⁵³ The Court noted in the *Internationale Handelsgesellschaft* case¹⁵⁴ that 'respect for fundamental rights forms an integral part of the general principles of law protected by the Court of Justice',¹⁵⁵ while in *Nold v. Commission*,¹⁵⁶ the Court emphasised that measures incompatible with fundamental rights recognised and protected by the constitutions of member states could not be upheld. It was also held that international treaties for the protection of human rights on which member states have collaborated, or of which they are signatories, could supply guidelines which should be followed within the framework of Community law.¹⁵⁷ The European Convention on Human Rights is clearly the prime example of this and it has been referred to on several occasions by

Authorities, 1980; the European Convention on the Legal Status of Migrant Workers, 1977 and the European Convention on the Exercise of Children's Rights, 1995.

¹⁵² See e.g. D. Chalmers and A. Tomkins, *European Union Public Law*, Cambridge, 2007; *European Fundamental Rights and Freedoms* (ed. D. Ehlers), Berlin, 2007; *The European Union and Human Rights* (eds. N. Neuwahl and A. Rosas), Dordrecht, 1995; *The EU and Human Rights* (ed. P. Alston), Oxford, 1999; L. Betten and N. Grief, *EU Law and Human Rights*, London, 1998; S. Weatherill and P. Beaumont, *EU Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1999; T. C. Hartley, *The Foundations of European Community Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2007; L. N. Brown and T. Kennedy, *The Court of Justice of the European Communities*, 4th edn, London, 1994, chapter 15; M. Mendelson, 'The European Court of Justice and Human Rights', 1 *Yearbook of European Law*, 1981, p. 126, and H. Schermers, 'The European Communities Bound by Fundamental Human Rights', 27 *Common Market Law Review*, 1990, p. 249.

¹⁵³ See e.g. *Stauder v. City of Ulm* [1969] ECR 419; *Internationale Handelsgesellschaft* [1970] ECR 1125; *Nold v. EC Commission* [1974] ECR 491; *Kirk* [1984] ECR 2689 and *Johnston v. Chief Constable of the RUC* [1986] 3 CMLR 240. See also the Joint Declaration by the European Parliament, the Council and the Commission of 5 April 1979, *Official Journal*, 1977, C103/1; the Joint Declaration Against Racism and Xenophobia, 11 June 1986, *Official Journal*, 1986, C158/1 and the European Parliament's Declaration of Fundamental Rights and Freedoms, 1989, *EC Bulletin*, 4/1989.

¹⁵⁴ [1970] ECR 1125, 1134.

¹⁵⁵ See also *Re Accession of the European Community to the Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms* 108 ILR, p. 225 and *Kremzow v. Austria* [1997] ECR I-2629; 113 ILR, p. 264.

¹⁵⁶ [1974] ECR 491, 507.

¹⁵⁷ See e.g. *Hauer v. Land Rheinland-Pfalz* [1979] ECR 3727 and *SPUC v. Grogan* [1991] ECR I-4685.

the Court.¹⁵⁸ Indeed the question has also been raised and considered without resolution as to whether the Community should itself accede to the European Convention on Human Rights.¹⁵⁹

The Treaty on European Union (the Maastricht Treaty), 1992 amended the Treaty of Rome and established the European Union, founded on the European Communities supplemented by the policies and forms of co-operation established under the 1992 Treaty. Article F(2) of Title I noted that the Union 'shall respect fundamental rights', as guaranteed by the European Convention on Human Rights and as they result from common constitutional traditions, 'as general principles of Community law'. Under article K.1 of Title VI, the member states agreed that asylum, immigration, drug, fraud, civil and criminal judicial co-operation, customs co-operation and certain forms of police co-operation would be regarded as 'matters of common interest', which under article K.2 would be dealt with in compliance with the European Convention on Human Rights and the Convention relating to the Status of Refugees, 1951. The provisions under Title V on the Common Foreign and Security Policy may also impact upon human rights, so that, for instance, the European Union sent its own human rights observers to Rwanda within this framework.¹⁶⁰ From the early 1990s, the European Communities began to include human rights references in its trade and aid policies, formalised in article 177(2), and from the mid-1990s, all trade and co-operation agreements contained provisions concerning respect for human rights.¹⁶¹

The Treaty of Amsterdam, which came into force on 1 May 1999, inserted a new article 6 into the Treaty on European Union, which stated that the European Union 'is founded on the principles of liberty, democracy,

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. *Rutili* [1975] ECR 1219; *Valsabbia v. Commission* [1980] ECR 907; *Kirk* [1984] ECR 2689; *Dow Chemical Ibérica v. Commission* [1989] ECR 3165; *ERT* [1991] ECR I-2925 and *X v. Commission* [1992] ECR II-2195 and 16 HRLJ, 1995, p. 54. Note also the Joint Declaration on Human Rights, 1977, by which the three EC institutions undertook to respect the European Convention on Human Rights, OJ 1977 C103/1.

¹⁵⁹ See e.g. 'Accession of the Communities to the European Convention on Human Rights', *EC Bulletin*, Suppl. 2/79. Note that the President of the European Court of Human Rights suggested in January 2003 that the EU should accede to the Convention: see www.echr.coe.int/eng/Edocs/SpeechWildhaber.htm.

¹⁶⁰ See J. Van Der Kaauw, 'European Union', 13 NQHR, 1995, p. 173. Note, however, that the European Court of Justice held in Opinion 2/94 that the EC had no competence to accede to the European Convention as it did not have any general human rights competence, [1996] ECR I-1759.

¹⁶¹ See e.g. E. Riedel and M. Will, 'Human Rights Clauses in External Agreements' in Alston, *The EU and Human Rights*, p. 723.

respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms, and the rule of law, principles which are common to the Member States', and provided that the Union 'shall respect fundamental rights as guaranteed by' the European Convention on Human Rights.¹⁶² Member states violating these principles in a 'serious and persistent' manner risk the suspension of certain of their rights deriving from the application of the Union Treaty.¹⁶³ In addition, candidate countries have to respect these principles to join the Union.¹⁶⁴ The European Union adopted the Charter of Fundamental Rights in December 2000. This instrument, for example, notes the principle of the equality before the law of all people,¹⁶⁵ prohibits discrimination on any ground,¹⁶⁶ provides for a number of workers' rights and citizens' rights, and requests the Union to protect cultural, religious and linguistic diversity. Quite what the legal status of this Charter was¹⁶⁷ and how it related to the Strasbourg system were open questions.¹⁶⁸ However, Advocates-General of the European Court of Justice have been referring to the Charter with great frequency as part of a shared set of values within the Union,¹⁶⁹ as has the Court of First Instance¹⁷⁰ and more recently the European Court of Justice.¹⁷¹ Further, the Lisbon Treaty, 2007 (which is not as yet in force) provides for article 6 to be revised so that the Charter would have legally binding force¹⁷² and

¹⁶² See the discussion by the European Court of Justice of these principles in the context of the European Arrest Warrant, C-303/05, *Advocaten voor de Wereld*, Judgment of 3 May 2007. See A. Hinarejos, 'Recent Human Rights Developments in the EU Courts', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 793.

¹⁶³ Article 7. See also the amendments introduced by the Nice Treaty, 2001.

¹⁶⁴ Article 49. See also the Copenhagen Criteria 1993, including stable institutions guaranteeing democracy, the rule of law, human rights and the protection of minorities, EC Bulletin 6-1993, I.13.

¹⁶⁵ Article 20. ¹⁶⁶ Article 21.

¹⁶⁷ Note the official UK view that it is a political declaration and not legally binding, 365 HC Deb., col. 614W, 27 March 2001; UKMIL, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 564.

¹⁶⁸ However, article 52(3) of the Charter specifies that any rights that 'correspond' to those already articulated by the Human Rights Convention shall have the same meaning and scope.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. *BECTU* [2001] ECR I-4881 and *Netherlands v. Parliament and Council* [2001] ECR I-7079.

¹⁷⁰ See e.g. *Jégo-Quéré v. Commission* [2002] ECR II-2365.

¹⁷¹ See e.g. *European Parliament v. Council* [2006] ECR I-5769 and C-411/04 P, *Salzgitter Mannesmann v. Commission*, Judgment of 25 January 2007.

¹⁷² Although a Protocol to the treaty provides that the Charter does not extend the ability of the Court of Justice to find the law or practices of the UK and Poland to be inconsistent with the Charter and that no new justiciable rights applicable to these states have been created, and that a provision of the Charter referring to national laws and practices shall

opens the way for the accession of the EU to the European Convention on Human Rights.

The Union, more generally, seeks in some measure to pay regard to human rights as internationally defined, in its activities.¹⁷³ As noted above, there appears now to be a formal policy, for example, to include a human rights clause in co-operation agreements with third countries, which incorporates a provision for the suspension of the agreement in case of a breach of the essential elements of the agreement in question, including respect for human rights.¹⁷⁴ The European Parliament is also active in consideration of human rights issues.¹⁷⁵

*The OSCE (Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe)*¹⁷⁶

What was initially termed the 'Helsinki process', and which more formally was referred to as the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe, developed out of the Final Act of the Helsinki meeting, which was signed on 1 August 1975 after two years of discussions by the representatives of the then thirty-five participating states.¹⁷⁷ The Final Act¹⁷⁸ dealt primarily with questions of international security and state relations, and was seen

only apply to the UK and Poland to the extent that the rights or principles in the Charter are recognised in the laws and practices of these two states.

¹⁷³ See e.g. the Commission Report on the Implementation of Actions to Promote Human Rights and Democracy, 1994, COM 9(5) 191, 1995.

¹⁷⁴ See e.g. 13 NQHR, 1995, pp. 276 and 460.

¹⁷⁵ See e.g. the Annual Reports of the Parliament on Respect for Human Rights in the European Community, www.europarl.europa.eu/comparl/afet/droi/annual-reports.htm.

¹⁷⁶ See, for example, A. Bloed, 'Monitoring the CSCE Human Dimension: In Search of its Effectiveness' in *Monitoring Human Rights in Europe* (eds. Bloed et al.), Dordrecht, 1993, p. 45; *The CSCE* (ed. A. Bloed), Dordrecht, 1993; *Human Rights, International Law and the Helsinki Accord* (ed. T. Buergenthal), Montclair, NJ, 1977; J. Maresca, *To Helsinki – The CSCE 1973–75*, Durham, 1987; T. Buergenthal, 'The Helsinki Process: Birth of a Human Rights System' in *Human Rights in the World Community* (eds. R. Claude and B. Weston), 2nd edn, Philadelphia, 1992, p. 256; *Essays on Human Rights in the Helsinki Process* (eds. A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk), Dordrecht, 1985; A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk, *The Human Dimension of the Helsinki Process*, Dordrecht, 1991; D. McGoldrick, 'Human Rights Developments in the Helsinki Process', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 923, and McGoldrick, 'The Development of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe – From Process to Institution' in *Legal Visions of the New Europe* (eds. B. S. Jackson and D. McGoldrick), London, 1993, p. 135. See also the *OSCE Handbook* published regularly and available at www.osce.org/publications/handbook/files/handbook.pdf.

¹⁷⁷ I.e. all the states of Western and Eastern Europe, except Albania, plus the United States and Canada.

¹⁷⁸ For the text, see, for example, 14 ILM, 1975, p. 1292.

as the method by which the post-war European territorial settlement would be finally accepted. In the Western view, the Final Act constituted a political statement and accordingly could not be regarded as a binding treaty. Nonetheless, the impact of the Final Act on developments in Europe has far exceeded the impact of most legally binding treaties.

The Final Act set out in 'Basket I' a list of ten fundamental principles dealing with relations between participating states, principle 7 of which refers to 'respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms, including freedom of thought, conscience, religion and belief'. 'Basket III' dealt with Co-operation in Humanitarian and Other Fields and covered family reunification, free flow of information and cultural and educational co-operation.¹⁷⁹

At the third 'follow-up' meeting at Vienna in January 1989, great progress regarding human rights occurred,¹⁸⁰ primarily as a result of the changed attitudes in the then USSR and in Eastern Europe, especially as regards the extent of the detailed provisions and the recognition of concrete rights and duties. The part entitled 'Questions Relating to Security in Europe' contained a Principles section, in which *inter alia* the parties confirmed their respect for human rights and their determination to guarantee their effective exercise. Paragraphs 13–27 contain in a detailed and concrete manner a list of human rights principles to be respected, ranging from due process rights to equality and non-discrimination and the rights of religious communities, and from the rights of minorities to the rights of refugees. The provision in which states agree to respect the right of their citizens to contribute actively, either individually or collectively, to the promotion and protection of human rights, constitutes an important innovation of great practical significance, as does the comment that states will respect the right of persons to observe and promote the implementation of CSCE provisions.

The part entitled 'Co-operation in Humanitarian and Other Fields' included an important section on Human Contacts in which the right to leave one's country and return thereto was reaffirmed. It was decided that all outstanding human contacts applications would be resolved within six months and that thereafter there would be a series of regular reviews. Family reunion issues were to be dealt with in as short a time as possible and in normal practice within one month. The parties committed

¹⁷⁹ 'Basket II' covered co-operation in the fields of economics, science, technology and the environment.

¹⁸⁰ See the text of the Concluding Document in 10 HRLJ, 1989, p. 270.

themselves to publishing all laws and statutory regulations concerning movement by individuals within their territory and travel between states, an issue that had caused a great deal of controversy, while the right of members of religions to establish and maintain personal contacts with each other in their own and other countries, *inter alia* through travel and participation in religious events, was proclaimed.¹⁸¹

In a further significant development, the Vienna Concluding Document contained a part entitled 'Human Dimension of the CSCE' in which some implementation measures were provided for. The participating states decided to exchange information and to respond to requests for information and to representations made to them by other participating states on questions relating to the human dimension of the CSCE. Bilateral meetings would be held with other participating states that so request, in order to examine such questions, while such questions could be brought to the attention of other participating states through diplomatic channels or raised at further 'follow-up' meetings or at meetings of the Conference on the Human Dimension. The procedure is confidential.¹⁸²

The Concluding Document of the Copenhagen meeting in 1990¹⁸³ constituted a further crucial stage in the development of the process. The participating states proclaimed support for the principles of the rule of law, free and fair elections, democracy, pluralism and due process rights. Paragraph 1 of Chapter 1 emphasised that the protection and promotion of human rights was one of the basic purposes of government. A variety of specific rights, including the freedoms of expression, assembly, association, thought, conscience and religion, and the rights to leave one's own country and return and to receive legal assistance, the rights of the child, the rights of national minorities and the prohibition of torture are proclaimed. Time-limits were imposed with regard to the Vienna Human Dimension mechanism.

¹⁸¹ Paragraphs 18 and 32.

¹⁸² The mechanism was used over 100 times between 1989 and 1992: see Bloed and Van Dijk, *Human Dimension*, p. 79, and McGoldrick, 'Development of the CSCE', p. 139. See also H. Tretter, 'Human Rights in the Concluding Document of the Vienna Follow-up Meeting of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe of January 15, 1989', 10 HRLJ, 1989, p. 257; R. Brett, *The Development of the Human Dimension Machinery*, Essex University, 1992, and A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk, 'Supervisory Mechanisms for the Human Dimension of the CSCE: Its Setting-up in Vienna, its Present Functioning and its Possible Development towards a General Procedure for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes' in Bloed and Van Dijk, *Human Dimension*, p. 74.

¹⁸³ See 8 NQHR, 1990, p. 302 and Cm 1324 (1990).

The Charter of Paris, adopted at the Summit of Heads of State and of Government in 1990,¹⁸⁴ called for more regular consultations at ministerial and senior official level and marked an important stage in the institutionalisation of the process, with a Council of Foreign Ministers, a Committee of Senior Officials and a secretariat being established. The section on Human Rights, Democracy and Rule of Law consisted of a list of human rights, including the right to effective remedies, full respect for which constituted 'the bedrock' for the construction of 'the new Europe'. The Moscow Human Dimension meeting of 1991¹⁸⁵ described the Human Dimension mechanism as an essential achievement of the CSCE process and it was strengthened. The time-limits provided for at Copenhagen were reduced¹⁸⁶ and a resource list of experts was to be established,¹⁸⁷ with three experts being appointed by each participating state in order to allow for CSCE missions to be created to assist states requesting such help in facilitating the resolution of a particular question or problem related to the human dimension of the CSCE. The observations of the missions of experts together with the comments of the state concerned were to be forwarded to CSCE states within three weeks of the submission of the observations to the state concerned and might be discussed by the Committee of Senior Officials, who could consider follow-up measures.¹⁸⁸

By the time of the Helsinki Conference in 1992, the number of participating states had risen to fifty-two,¹⁸⁹ the political climate in Europe having changed dramatically after the establishment of democratic regimes in Eastern Europe, the ending of the Soviet Union and the rise of tensions in Yugoslavia and other parts of Eastern Europe. The participating states strongly reaffirmed that Human Dimension commitments were matters of direct and legitimate concern to all participating states and did not belong exclusively to the internal affairs of the states concerned, while

¹⁸⁴ See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 190. ¹⁸⁵ See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1670 and Cm 1771 (1991).

¹⁸⁶ So that, for example, the written responses to requests for information were to occur within ten days, and the bilateral meetings were to take place as a rule within one week of the date of request, Section I(1).

¹⁸⁷ The Council of Ministers of the CSCE subsequently decided that the Office of Democratic Institutions and Human Rights (formerly the Office for Free Elections) would be the appropriate institution establishing the resource list.

¹⁸⁸ A variety of missions have now been employed in, for example, Nagorno-Karabakh, Georgia, Chechnya, Moldova and Croatia. See generally *OSCE Handbook*, Vienna, 2007.

¹⁸⁹ There are currently fifty-six participating states. Note also the report entitled 'Common Purposes: Towards a More Effective OSCE' produced by a Panel of Eminent Persons in 2005 and the new OSCE Rules of Procedure adopted in 2006: see *OSCE Handbook*.

gross violations of such commitments posed a special threat to stability. This reference of the link between human rights and international stability was to increase in the following years. At Helsinki, the CSCE was declared to be a regional arrangement in the sense of Chapter VIII of the UN Charter.¹⁹⁰ The post of High Commissioner on National Minorities was established in order to provide early warning and early action where appropriate, concerning tensions relating to national minority issues that have the potential to develop into a conflict within the CSCE area affecting peace, stability or relations between participating states.¹⁹¹ The High Commissioner, who acts in confidence, was also mandated to collect relevant information and make visits. Where the High Commissioner concludes that there is a *prima facie* risk of potential conflict in such situations, an early warning is to be issued, which will be promptly conveyed by the Chairman-in-Office of the CSCE to the Committee of Senior Officials. The High Commissioner is able to make recommendations to participating states regarding the treatment of national minorities.¹⁹² In addition, a number of general recommendations have been made with regard to Roma¹⁹³ and other matters.¹⁹⁴

As far as the Human Dimension mechanism was concerned, the Conference decided to permit any participating state to provide information on situations and cases that are the subject of requests for information, and it was also decided that in years in which a review conference was not being held, a three-week meeting at expert level of participating states would be organised in order to review implementation of the CSCE Human

¹⁹⁰ See further below, p. 1273.

¹⁹¹ See Section II of the Helsinki Decisions. Note that the High Commissioner deals with situations and not with individual complaints. See also *Quiet Diplomacy in Action: The OSCE High Commissioner on National Minorities* (ed. W. A. Kemp), The Hague, 2001; K. Drzewicki, 'The OSCE High Commissioner on National Minorities – Confronting Traditional and Emerging Challenges' in *OSCE and Minorities. Assessment and Priorities* (ed. S. Parzymies), Warsaw, 2007, and J. Packer, 'The OSCE High Commissioner on National Minorities: Pyrometer, Prophylactic, Pyrovestis' in *Minorities, Peoples and Self-Determination* (eds. N. Ghanea and A. Xanthaki), Leiden, 2005, p. 249.

¹⁹² See generally www.osce.org/hcnm/documents.html.

¹⁹³ See www.osce.org/documents/hcnm/2000/03/241_en.pdf.

¹⁹⁴ See e.g. the Hague Recommendation on Education Rights of National Minorities, 1996; the Oslo Recommendations on Linguistic Rights of National Minorities, 1998; the Lund Recommendations on Effective Participation of National Minorities in Public Life, 1999; the Guidelines on the Use of Minority Languages in the Broadcast Media, 2003, and the Recommendations on Policing in Multi-Ethnic Societies, 2006: see www.osce.org/hcnm/documents.html.

Dimension commitments. In addition, it was provided that the Office of Democratic Institutions and Human Rights would begin organising Human Dimension seminars.¹⁹⁵

The next major step in the process took place at Budapest at the end of 1994.¹⁹⁶ The CSCE, in recognition of the institutional changes underway in recent years, changed its name to the OSCE (the Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe) and took a number of steps in the field of security and conflict management. The Conference emphasised that human rights, the rule of law and democratic institutions represented a crucial contribution to conflict prevention and that the protection of human rights constituted an 'essential foundation of democratic civil society',¹⁹⁷ and it was decided that Human Dimension issues would be regularly dealt with by the Permanent Council,¹⁹⁸ with the Office of Democratic Institutions and Human Rights (based in Warsaw) acting as the main institution of the Human Dimension in an advisory capacity to the organisation, with enhanced roles in election monitoring and the dispatch of missions.¹⁹⁹ States were encouraged to use the Human Dimension mechanism (now termed the Moscow Mechanism) and the Chairman-in-Office was encouraged to inform the Permanent Council of serious cases of alleged non-implementation of Human Dimension commitments. Further, an OSCE Representative on Freedom of the Media was appointed in 1997 and the role increased in 2004 to include the task of combating the misuse of hate speech regulations in order to silence legitimate dissent and alternative opinion.²⁰⁰ Thus, step by step over recent years, the Helsinki process has transformed itself into an institutional structure with a particular interest in describing and requiring the implementation of human rights.²⁰¹

¹⁹⁵ Section VI of the Helsinki Decisions and www.osce.org/odihr/.

¹⁹⁶ See 5 HRLJ, 1994, p. 449. ¹⁹⁷ Section VIII of the Budapest Decisions.

¹⁹⁸ This group is responsible for the day-to-day operations of the OSCE and its members are the permanent representatives of the member states meeting weekly. It is based in Vienna.

¹⁹⁹ Note also that the Monitoring Section within the ODIHR analyses human rights developments and compliance with Human Dimension commitments by participating states and alerts the Chairman-in-Office to serious deteriorations in respect for human rights.

²⁰⁰ See *OSCE Handbook*, p. 34 and the Sofia Decision 12, para. 16, 2004.

²⁰¹ An OSCE Advisory Panel for the Prevention of Torture was established in 1998: see e.g. the Final Report of the Supplementary Human Dimension Meeting on Human Rights and Inhuman Treatment and Punishment 2000, www.osce.org/documents/odihr/2000/03/1787_en.pdf, and a restructured Advisory Panel of Experts on Freedom of Religion or Belief was established in 2000. Note that as a consequence of the Dayton Peace Agreement on Bosnia, 1995, it was agreed that the OSCE would supervise elections in that country and would closely monitor human rights throughout Bosnia and would

The OSCE has also established a number of missions in order to help mitigate conflicts²⁰² and adopted a Treaty on Open Skies and a Convention on Conciliation and Arbitration within the OSCE in 1992. Although some overlay with the Council of Europe system does exist, the fact that a large proportion of participating states are now members of the Council of Europe obviates the most acute dangers inherent in differing human rights systems. Nevertheless, as the Council of Europe system moves beyond the strictly legal enforcement stage and as the OSCE develops and strengthens its institutional mechanisms, some overlapping is inevitable. However, in general terms, the OSCE system remains politically based and expressed, while the essence of the Council of Europe system remains juridically focused.

*The CIS Convention on Human Rights and
Fundamental Freedoms*²⁰³

The Commonwealth of Independent States, which links together the former Republics of the Soviet Union (with the exception of the three Baltic states), adopted a Convention on Human Rights in May 1995. Under this Convention, a standard range of rights is included, ranging from the right to life, liberty and security of person, equality before the judicial system, respect for private and family life, to freedom of religion, expression, assembly and the right to marry. The right to work is included (article 14) as is the right to social security, the right to education and the right of every minor child to special protective measures (article 17). The right of persons belonging to national minorities to express and develop their ethnic, linguistic, religious and cultural identity is protected (article 21), while everyone has the right to take part in public affairs, including voting (article 29). It is intended that the implementation of the Convention be monitored by the Human Rights Commission of the CIS (article 34). Under Section II of the Regulations of the Human Rights Commission, adopted in September 1993, states parties may raise human rights matters falling within the

appoint an international human rights Ombudsman: see MC (5) Dec/1, 1995. The OSCE also has a role in Kosovo: see *OSCE Handbook*, p. 46.

²⁰² See *OSCE Handbook*, pp. 39 ff. Of particular importance, perhaps, is the Minsk Process, dealing with the Nagorno-Karabakh conflict, *ibid.*, p. 76.

²⁰³ See H/INF (95) 3, pp. 195 ff. See also the essays contained in 17 HRLJ, 1996 concerning the CIS and human rights.

Convention with other states parties and, if no satisfactory response is received within six months, the matter may be referred to the Commission. Domestic remedies need to be exhausted. Under Section III of the Regulations, the Commission may examine individual and collective applications submitted by any person or non-governmental organisation. The Convention entered into force on 11 August 1998 upon the third ratification.

Concerned with the level of protection afforded under this Convention (in particular the facts that the members of the Commission are appointed representatives of member states and the Commission implements the instrument by means of recommendations) and the problems of co-existence with the Council of Europe human rights system, the Parliamentary Assembly of the Council of Europe adopted a resolution in 2001 calling upon member or applicant states which are also members of the CIS not to sign or ratify the CIS Convention. In addition, it recommended that those that already had should issue a legally binding declaration stating that the European Convention procedures would not be replaced or weakened through recourse to the CIS Convention procedures.²⁰⁴

The Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and Herzegovina

The Chamber was established under Annex 6 of the Dayton Peace Agreement, 1995.²⁰⁵ It consisted of fourteen members, eight of whom (not to be citizens of Bosnia or of any neighbouring state) were appointed by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe.²⁰⁶ The Chamber considered alleged or apparent violations of human rights as provided in the European Convention on Human Rights, as well as alleged or apparent discrimination on any ground. Applications could be submitted by all persons or groups of persons, including by way of referral from the Ombudsman, claiming to be a victim of a violation or acting on behalf

²⁰⁴ Resolution 1249 (2001). See also recommendation 1519 (2001) stating that recourse to the CIS Commission should not be regarded as another procedure of international settlement within the meaning of article 35(2)b of the European Convention.

²⁰⁵ As part of the Commission on Human Rights, the other part being the Ombudsman: see article II of Annex 6 of the Dayton Agreement.

²⁰⁶ See resolutions (93)6 and (96)8. It should be noted that, at the time, Bosnia was not a member of the Council of Europe.

of victims who were deceased or missing.²⁰⁷ There were a number of admissibility requirements similar to those of international human rights bodies, including the exhaustion of effective remedies and the submission of the application within six months of the date of any final decision. The Chamber normally sat in panels²⁰⁸ of seven, four of whom were not to be citizens of Bosnia or a neighbouring state. In such cases, the decision could be reviewed by the full Chamber.²⁰⁹ The President could refer to the plenary Chamber any application not yet placed before a panel where a serious question was raised as to the interpretation of the Agreement or any other international agreement therein referred to or it appeared that a final decision should be taken without delay or there appeared to be any other justified reason.²¹⁰ Decisions were final and binding.²¹¹ The work of the Chamber, primarily concerning housing-related issues²¹² and property rights,²¹³ steadily increased.²¹⁴ According to the Agreement Pursuant to Article XIV of Annex 6 of the Dayton Agreement, 2003, the mandate of the Human Rights Chamber expired on 31 December 2003. This Agreement established a five-member Human Rights Commission to operate during 2004 within the framework of the Constitutional Court of Bosnia and Herzegovina. After 1 January 2004, new cases alleging human rights violations were decided by the Constitutional Court.

²⁰⁷ Article VIII.

²⁰⁸ Two panels were set up under Rule 26 of the Rules of Procedure 1996, as amended in 1998 and 2001.

²⁰⁹ Article X. ²¹⁰ Rule 29.

²¹¹ Article XI. The Chamber could also order provisional measures: see article X. These were made particularly in housing-related cases where eviction was threatened: see *Annual Report 2000*, p. 6.

²¹² For example, the question of refugees seeking to regain possession of properties from which they had fled and which were being used to house other persons: see e.g. *Bašić et al. v. Republika Srpska*, Cases Nos. CH/98/752 *et al.*, *Decisions of the Human Rights Chamber August–December 1999, 2000*, pp. 149 ff.

²¹³ For example, the question of restriction on withdrawal of foreign currency from bank accounts: see e.g. *Poropat v. Bosnia*, Cases Nos. CH/97/42, 52, 105 and 108, and the question of pensions from the Yugoslav army, *Šećerbegović v. Bosnia*, Cases Nos. CH/98/706, 740 and 776. Note in particular, however, the case of *Boudellaa et al. v. Bosnia and Herzegovina and the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina*, Judgment of 11 October 2002, where in a case involving expulsion of Bosnian citizens of Algerian origin into the custody of the US on terrorism charges, the chamber found that the respondents had violated relevant human rights provisions.

²¹⁴ In 1996, 31 applications were received; 83 in 1997; 3,226 in 2000. By the end of 2000, a total of 6,675 applications had been registered and a total of 669 separate decisions reached: see *Annual Report 2000*, p. 3.

The Inter-American Convention on Human Rights²¹⁵

The Inter-American Convention, which came into force in 1978, contains a range of rights to be protected by the states parties.²¹⁶ The rights are fundamentally those protected by the European Convention, but with some interesting differences.²¹⁷ For example, under article 4 the right to life is deemed to start in general as from conception,²¹⁸ while the prohibition on torture and inhuman or degrading treatment is more extensively expressed and is in the context of the right to have one's physical, mental and moral integrity respected (article 5). In addition, articles 18 and 19 of the Inter-American Convention protect the right to a name and the specific rights of the child, article 23 provides for a general right to participation in the context of public affairs and article 26 provides for the progressive achievement of the economic, social and cultural rights contained in the Charter of the Organisation of American States, 1948, as amended by the Protocol of Buenos Aires, 1967.²¹⁹

The Inter-American Commission on Human Rights was created in 1959 and its first Statute approved by the OAS Council in 1960. In 1971, it was recognised as one of the principal organs of the OAS.²²⁰ Under its

²¹⁵ See generally J. M. Pasqualucci, *The Practice and Procedure of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights*, Cambridge, 2003; H. J. Steiner, P. Alston and R. Goodman, *International Human Rights in Context*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008, pp. 1020 ff.; *The Inter-American System of Human Rights* (eds. D. J. Harris and S. Livingstone), Oxford, 1998; T. Buergenthal and D. Shelton, *Protecting Human Rights in the Americas*, 4th edn, Strasbourg, 1995; D. Shelton, 'The Inter-American Human Rights System' in *Guide to International Human Rights Practice* (ed. H. Hannum), 4th edn, Ardsley, 2004, p. 127, and T. Buergenthal and R. Norris, *The Inter-American System*, Dobbs Ferry, 5 vols., 1983–4. See also J. Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, London, 2003, chapter 8; A. H. Robertson and J. G. Merrills, *Human Rights in the World*, 4th edn, London, 1996, chapter 6; S. Davidson, *The Inter-American Court of Human Rights*, Aldershot, 1992; S. Davidson, 'Remedies for Violations of the American Convention on Human Rights', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 405, and C. Grossman, 'Proposals to Strengthen the Inter-American System of Protection of Human Rights', 32 German YIL, 1990, p. 264.

²¹⁶ The Convention currently has twenty-four parties: see *Annual Report of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights 2006*, Washington, 2007.

²¹⁷ See e.g. J. Frowein, 'The European and the American Conventions on Human Rights – A Comparison', 1 HRLJ, 1980, p. 44. See also the American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man, 1948.

²¹⁸ See e.g. 10 DR, 1977, p. 100.

²¹⁹ The Charter of the OAS has also been amended by the Protocols of Cartagena de Indias, 1985; Washington, 1992 and Managua, 1993.

²²⁰ See e.g. C. Medina, 'The Inter-American Commission on Human Rights and the Inter-American Court of Human Rights: Reflections on a Joint Venture', 12 HRQ, 1990, p. 439.

original Statute, it had wide powers to promote the awareness and study of human rights in America and to make recommendations to member states. In 1965, the Statute was revised and the Commission's powers expanded to include *inter alia* the examination of communications. With the entry into force of the 1969 Convention in 1978, the Commission's position was further strengthened. The Commission has powers regarding all member states of the OAS, not just those that have ratified the Convention, and its Statute emphasises that the human rights protected include those enumerated in both the Convention and the American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man.²²¹ Article 44 of the Convention provides that any person or group of persons or any non-governmental entity legally recognised in one or more of the OAS states may lodge petitions with the Commission alleging a violation of the Convention by a state party.²²² Contrary to the European Convention prior to its reform in Protocol 11, this right is automatic, whereas the right of inter-state complaint, again contrary to the European Convention, is under article 45 subject to a prior declaration recognising the competence of the Commission in this regard. The admissibility requirements in articles 46 and 47 are very broadly similar to those in the European Convention, as is the procedure laid down in article 48 and the drawing-up of a report in cases in which a friendly settlement has been achieved.²²³ The Commission has dealt with a number of issues in the individual application procedure. During 1994, for example, just under 300 cases were opened and the total number of cases being processed by early 1995 was 641.²²⁴ In 2006, 1,325 complaints were received.²²⁵

The Commission has a wide-ranging competence to publicise human rights matters by way of reports, studies, lectures and so forth. It may also make recommendations to states on the adoption of progressive measures in favour of human rights and conduct on-site investigations with

²²¹ See generally the *Basic Documents Pertaining to Human Rights in the Inter-American System*, Washington, 1992. The competence of the Commission to hear petitions relates to the rights in the Convention for states parties and to rights in the American Declaration for states not parties to the Convention.

²²² Note that this is far broader than the equivalent article 34 of the European Convention, which requires that the applicant be a victim.

²²³ Articles 49–51. The Secretary-General of the OAS has played the role assigned in the European Convention to the Committee of Ministers.

²²⁴ See *Annual Report 1994*, p. 39. ²²⁵ *Annual Report 2006*, chapter III.

the consent of the state in question.²²⁶ It provides states generally with advisory services in the human rights field and submits an annual report to the OAS General Assembly. Many special reports have been published dealing with human rights in particular states, e.g. Argentina, Bolivia, Chile, Colombia, Cuba, Dominican Republic, El Salvador, Guatemala, Haiti, Nicaragua, Paraguay, Suriname and Uruguay.²²⁷ The Commission has also devoted attention to certain themes, such as disappearances, torture, refugees and economic and social rights.²²⁸ Special Rapporteurs have been appointed, for example, on the rights of indigenous peoples, the rights of women and the rights of the child.²²⁹ The Inter-American Court of Human Rights has declared that the Commission also has the authority to determine that any domestic law of a state party has violated the obligations assumed in ratifying or acceding to the Convention²³⁰ and that the Commission may consequentially recommend that states repeal or amend the law that is in violation of the Convention. For the Commission to be able to do this, the law may have come to its attention by any means, regardless of whether or not that law is applied in any specific case before the Commission.²³¹ In the light of this, the Commission in 1994, for example, made a thorough study of the contempt laws (*leyes de desacato*), and concluded that many of these do not meet international human rights standards. The Commission recommended that all member states of the OAS that have such laws should repeal or amend them to bring them into line with international instruments, and with the obligations acquired

²²⁶ In 1994, for example, with regard to Guatemala, Haiti, the Bahamas, Ecuador and Jamaica, see *Annual Report 1994*, pp. 21 ff., while in 2006 on-site visits were made to Haiti, Colombia, Bolivia, Dominican Republic, Brazil, Argentina and Peru, *Annual Report 2006*, chapter II C, paras. 34 ff.

²²⁷ See *Annual Report 1994*, chapter IV, with regard to Colombia, Cuba, El Salvador and Guatemala, and *Annual Report 2006*, chapter IV, with regard to Colombia, Cuba, Haiti and Venezuela.

²²⁸ See e.g. *Annual Report 1992–3*, pp. 539 ff. See also e.g. AG/Res.443, 1979, AG/Res.666, 1983, AG/Res.547, 1981, AG/Res.624, 1982 and AG/Res.644, 1983 (torture). In its *Annual Report 2000*, the Commission reported on migrant workers and made recommendations with regard to asylum and international crimes, and the promotion and protection of the mentally ill, chapter VI.

²²⁹ *Annual Report 2006*, chapter II D, paras. 49 ff. See as to the Special Rapporteur for Freedom of Expression, *Annual Report 2006*, vol. II.

²³⁰ *Some Powers of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights*, Advisory Opinion OC-13/93 of 16 July 1993, Series A, No. 13, para. 26.

²³¹ *International Responsibility for Issuing and Applying Laws in Violation of the Convention*, Advisory Opinion OC-14/94 of 9 December 1994, Series A, No. 14, para. 39.

under those instruments, so as to harmonise their laws with human rights treaties.²³²

In 1985, the OAS General Assembly adopted the Inter-American Convention to Prevent and Punish Torture,²³³ while in 1988 an Additional Protocol on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights was signed.²³⁴ Under article 19 of this instrument, states parties agreed to provide periodic reports on the progressive measures undertaken to ensure respect for the rights set forth therein. Such reports go to the Secretary-General of the OAS, who sends them to the Inter-American Economic and Social Council and the Inter-American Council for Education, Science and Culture, with a copy to both the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights and the specialised agencies of the inter-American system. Violations by a state party of the rights to organise and join trades unions (article 8(a)) and to education (article 13) 'may give rise' to application of the system of individual or inter-state petition under the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights.

A Protocol on the Abolition of the Death Penalty was adopted on 8 June 1990²³⁵ and a Convention on Forced Disappearances of Persons was adopted on 9 June 1994.²³⁶ Under article 13 of this Convention, states parties agree that the processing of petitions or communications presented to the Inter-American Commission alleging the forced disappearance of persons will be subject to the procedures established under the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights, the Statute and Regulations of the Commission and the Statute and Rules of the Court. Particular reference is made to precautionary measures.²³⁷ Under article 14, when

²³² *Annual Report 1994*, pp. 199 ff.

²³³ This entered into force in February 1987. Under the Convention, states parties agree to inform the Inter-American Commission of measures taken in application of the Convention, and the Commission 'will endeavour in its annual report to analyse the existing situation in the member states of the Organisation of American States in regard to the prevention and elimination of torture', article 17.

²³⁴ This came into force in November 1999. Eleven states parties were required for the Additional Protocol to come into force. See also L. Le Blanc, 'The Economic, Social and Cultural Rights Protocol to the American Convention and its Background', 10 NQHR, 1992, 130.

²³⁵ This entered into force the following year. It currently has eight parties. See e.g. C. Cerna, 'US Death Penalty Tested Before the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights', 10 NQHR, 1992, p. 155.

²³⁶ This entered into force in March 1996.

²³⁷ Article 63(2) of the Convention states that in cases of extreme gravity and urgency, and when necessary to avoid irreparable damage to persons, the Court shall adopt such provisional measures as it deems pertinent in matters it has under consideration. With

the Commission receives a petition or communication alleging forced disappearance, its Executive Secretariat shall urgently and confidentially address the respective government and shall request that government to provide as soon as possible information as to the whereabouts of the allegedly disappeared person. The OAS also adopted the Inter-American Convention on the Prevention, Punishment and Eradication of Violence Against Women in 1994, which entered into force in March the following year. Article 10 provides that states parties are to include in their national reports to the Inter-American Commission of Women information on measures taken in this area, while under article 11, both states parties and the Commission of Women may request of the Inter-American Court advisory opinions on the interpretations of this Convention. Article 12 provides a procedure whereby any person, group of persons or any non-governmental entity legally recognised in one or more member states of the OAS may lodge petitions with the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights alleging violations of the duties of states under article 7 to pursue without delay and by all appropriate means policies to prevent, punish and eradicate violence against women.²³⁸ The question of indigenous peoples has also been addressed and on 18 September 1995, the Inter-American Commission adopted a Draft Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples.²³⁹

The Commission itself consists of seven members elected in a personal capacity by the OAS General Assembly for four-year terms.²⁴⁰ The Commission may indicate precautionary measures as provided for in article

respect to a case not yet submitted to the Court, it may act at the request of the Commission. Article 19(c) of the Statute of the Commission provides that the Commission has the power to request the Court to take such provisional measures as it considers appropriate in serious and urgent cases which have not yet been submitted to it for consideration, whenever this becomes necessary to prevent irreparable injury to persons. Under article 29 of the Regulations of the Commission, the Commission may on its own initiative or at the request of a party take any action it considers necessary for the discharge of its functions. In particular, in urgent cases, when it becomes necessary to avoid irreparable damage to persons, the Commission may request that provisional measures be taken to avoid irreparable damage in cases where the denounced facts are true. Article 24 of the Rules of Procedure of the Inter-American Court provides that at any stage of the proceeding involving cases of extreme gravity and urgency and when necessary to avoid irreparable damage to persons, the Court may, at the request of a party or on its own motion, order whatever provisional measures it deems appropriate, pursuant to article 63(2) of the Convention.

²³⁸ Note also the Inter-American Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Persons with Disabilities, 1999. This came into force in September 2001.

²³⁹ See above, chapter 6, p. 298. ²⁴⁰ See articles 34–8 of the Convention.

25 of the Commission's Rules of Procedure. This grants the Commission the power in serious and urgent cases, and whenever necessary according to the information available, either on its own initiative or upon request by a party, to request that the state concerned adopt precautionary measures to prevent irreparable harm to persons. The Commission may also request information from the interested parties related to any aspect of the adoption and observance of the precautionary measures.²⁴¹ Of particular interest has been the granting of precautionary measures in favour of individuals captured in connection with the US-led military operation against the former Taliban regime in Afghanistan and the Al-Qaida organisation and their detention at the US naval base at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba. Such measures were first granted on 12 March 2002 and requested that the United States take the 'urgent measures necessary to have the legal status of the detainees at Guantanamo determined by a competent tribunal'. The Commission considered that, without this determination, the fundamental and non-derogable rights of the detainees might not be recognised and guaranteed by the United States. Such measures were repeated on four separate occasions and amplified in response to information indicating the possible torture or other cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment of detainees at Guantanamo Bay or the possible removal of detainees to jurisdictions where they could be subjected to torture. As these measures were not complied with – the US arguing that the Commission lacked jurisdiction – the Commission adopted resolution no. 2/06 on 28 July 2006, noting that the failure of the United States to give effect to the Commission's precautionary measures had resulted in irreparable prejudice to the fundamental rights of the detainees at Guantanamo Bay, including their rights to liberty and to humane treatment, and urging the US to close the Guantanamo Bay facility without delay; to remove the detainees from Guantanamo Bay through a process undertaken in full accordance with applicable forms of international human rights and humanitarian law; to ensure that detainees who may face a risk of torture elsewhere are provided with a fair and independent examination of their circumstances and to ensure that any instances of torture at Guantanamo Bay are investigated, prosecuted and punished.²⁴²

²⁴¹ See, for recent examples, *Annual Report 2001*, chapter III C. I and *Annual Report 2006*, chapter III C I.

²⁴² See *Annual Report 2006*, chapter III E and see also 45 ILM, 2006, pp. 669 ff.

Where in the case of petitions received, a friendly settlement has not been achieved,²⁴³ then under article 50 a report will be drawn up, together with such proposals and recommendations as are seen fit, and transmitted to the parties. The Commission may, under article 46 of the Rules of Procedure, adopt the follow-up measures it deems appropriate, such as requesting information from the parties and holding hearings in order to verify compliance with friendly settlement agreements and its recommendations and report thereon. It also publishes a table indicating whether its recommendations have achieved total or partial compliance from the state concerned or whether compliance is pending.²⁴⁴

After its report, a three-month period is then available during which the Commission or the state concerned (but not the individual concerned) may go to the Inter-American Court of Human Rights.²⁴⁵ The Court consists of seven judges serving in an individual capacity and elected by an absolute majority of the states parties to the Convention in the OAS General Assembly for six-year terms.²⁴⁶ The jurisdiction of the Court is subject to a prior declaration under article 62. Article 63(2) of the Convention provides that, in cases of extreme gravity and urgency, and when necessary to avoid irreparable damage to persons, the Court, in matters not yet submitted to it, may adopt such provisional measures as it deems pertinent in matters under its consideration. Where a case has not yet been submitted to it, the Court may act at the request of the Commission. This power has been used on a number of occasions.²⁴⁷

²⁴³ See, for examples of friendly settlement procedures, *Annual Report 2001*, chapter III C. 4.

²⁴⁴ See *Annual Report 2006*, chapter III D.

²⁴⁵ Article 51. If this does not happen and the matter is not settled with the state concerned, the Commission by a majority vote may set forth its own opinion and conclusions on the matter, which may be published. See, for example, *Annual Report 1983–4*, pp. 23–75.

²⁴⁶ Articles 52–4. See also Davidson, *Inter-American Court*; C. Cerna, 'The Structure and Functioning of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights (1979–1992)', 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 135, and L. E. Frost, 'The Evolution of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights', 14 HRQ, 1992, p. 171.

²⁴⁷ The first time was in January 1988, against Honduras, following the killing of a person due to testify before it and concerns expressed about the safety of other witnesses, H/Inf. (88) 1, p. 64. See also the provisional measures adopted by the Court against Peru, in similar circumstances, in August 1990, 11 HRLJ, 1990, p. 257, and the *Alemán Lacayo v. Nicaragua* case, Series E, Order of 2 February 1996; the *Álvarez et al. v. Colombia* case, Series E, Order of 22 July 1997, and the *Constitutional Court* case, Series E, Order of 14 August 2000. See also *Hilaire and Others v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Judgment of 21 June 2002. The Court also granted provisional measures, for example, to protect the lives and personal integrity of witnesses in the *Mapiripán Massacre* case against Colombia, see

Under article 64, the Court also possesses an advisory jurisdiction with regard to the interpretation of the Inter-American Convention and other conventions concerning the protection of human rights in the American states at the request of any member state of the OAS. The Court has dealt with a variety of important issues by way of advisory opinions.²⁴⁸ In *Definition of Other Treaties Subject to the Interpretation of the Inter-American Court*,²⁴⁹ the Court took the view that the object of the Convention was to integrate the regional and universal systems of human rights protection and that, therefore, any human rights treaty to which American states were parties could be the subject of an advisory opinion. In *The Effect of Reservations*,²⁵⁰ the Court stressed that human rights treaties involve the establishment of legal orders within which obligations are created towards all individuals within their jurisdiction and concluded that an instrument of ratification of adherence containing a reservation compatible with the object and purpose of the Convention does not require acceptance by the other states parties and the instrument thus enters into force as of the moment of deposit.²⁵¹ In a manner reminiscent of and clearly influenced by the European Court of Human Rights, the Inter-American Court stated that human rights treaties were different in nature from traditional multilateral treaties, since they focused not upon the reciprocal exchange of rights for the mutual benefit of the contracting states, but rather upon the protection of the basic rights of individuals. The obligations were *erga omnes*, rather than with regard to particular other states.²⁵²

In an important discussion of freedom of expression in the *Licensing of Journalists* case,²⁵³ the Court advised that the compulsory licensing of journalists was incompatible with article 13, the freedom of expression provision in the Convention, if it denied any person access to the full use of the media as a means of expressing opinions. The Court emphasised that freedom of expression could only be restricted on the basis of 'compelling governmental interest' and that the restriction must be 'closely tailored

Annual Report of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights 2005, p. 39, and in the case of the *Children and Adolescents Deprived of Liberty in the 'Complexo do Tatuapé' of FEBEM* against Brazil, *ibid.*, p. 41.

²⁴⁸ Of the nineteen advisory opinions issued between 1959 and 2005, twelve concerned the interpretation of the Convention, four concerned the interpretation of other treaties and three concerned the compatibility between domestic laws and international instruments: see *Annual Report 2005*, p. 60.

²⁴⁹ 22 ILM, 1983, p. 51; 67 ILR, p. 594. ²⁵⁰ 22 ILM, 1983, p.33; 67 ILR, p. 559.

²⁵¹ Para. 37. See article 74 of the Convention. ²⁵² *Ibid.*, para. 29. See also below, p. 937.

²⁵³ 7 HRLJ, 1986, p. 74; 75 ILR, p. 31.

to the accomplishment of the legitimate governmental objective necessitating it'.²⁵⁴ In the *Habeas Corpus* case,²⁵⁵ the Court declared that the writ of habeas corpus was a non-suspendable 'judicial guarantee' for the protection of rights from which no derogation was permitted under the Convention under article 27. Reference was made to the 'inseparable bond between the principle of legality, democratic institutions and the rule of law'. The Court also emphasised that only democratic governments could avail themselves of the right to declare a state of emergency and then only under closely circumscribed conditions. The Court has also addressed the issue of the relationship between itself and the American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man, 1948 in the *Interpretation of the American Declaration* case.²⁵⁶ In an opinion likely to be of significance in view of the fact that, for example, the USA is not a party to the Convention but, as a member of the OAS, has signed the Declaration, the Court stressed that in interpreting the Declaration regard had to be had to the current state of the Inter-American system and that, by a process of authoritative interpretation, the member states of the OAS have agreed that the Declaration contains and defines the human rights norms referred to in the OAS Charter.²⁵⁷ Since the Charter was a treaty, the Court could, therefore, interpret the Declaration under article 64.²⁵⁸ This rather ingenious argument is likely to open the door to a variety of advisory opinions on a range of important issues.

In the *Right to Information on Consular Assistance* opinion requested by Mexico,²⁵⁹ the Court declared that article 36 of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963, providing for the right to consular assistance of detained foreign nationals,²⁶⁰ was part of international human rights law and that the state must comply with its duty to inform the detainee of the rights that the article confers upon him at the time of his arrest or at least before he makes his first statement before the authorities. Further, it was held that the enforceability of the right was not subject to the protests of the sending state and that the failure to observe a detained foreign national's right to information, recognised in article 36(1)(b) of

²⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 45. See also the *Sunday Times* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, vol. 30, 1979.

²⁵⁵ 9 HRLJ, 1988, p. 94; 96 ILR, p. 392. ²⁵⁶ 28 ILM, 1989, p. 378; 96 ILR, p. 416.

²⁵⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 388–9. See also T. Buergenthal, 'The Revised OAS Charter and the Protection of Human Rights', 69 AJIL, 1975, p. 828.

²⁵⁸ The problem was that the Declaration clearly was not a treaty and article 64 provides for advisory opinions regarding the Convention itself and 'other treaties'.

²⁵⁹ Series A 16, OC-16/99, 1999. ²⁶⁰ See further below, chapter 13, p. 773.

the Vienna Convention, was prejudicial to the due process of law. In such circumstances, imposition of the death penalty constituted a violation of the right not to be deprived of life 'arbitrarily', as stipulated in the relevant provisions of the human rights treaties,²⁶¹ involving therefore the international responsibility of the state and the duty to make reparation.

The exercise of the Court's contentious jurisdiction was, however, less immediately successful. In the *Gallardo* case,²⁶² the Court remitted the claim to the Commission declaring it inadmissible, noting that a state could not dispense with the processing of the case by the Commission, while in the *Velásquez Rodríguez*²⁶³ and *Godínez Cruz*²⁶⁴ cases the Court in 'disappearance' situations found that Honduras had violated the Convention.²⁶⁵ In the former case, it was emphasised that states had a legal responsibility to prevent human rights violations and to use the means at their disposal to investigate and punish such violations. Where this did not happen, the state concerned had failed in its duty to ensure the full and free exercise of these rights within the jurisdiction.²⁶⁶ In *Loayza Tamayo v. Peru*, the Court held Peru responsible for a number of breaches of the Convention concerned with the detention and torture of the applicant and for the absence of a fair trial.²⁶⁷ In *Chumbipuma Aguirre v. Peru*, the *Barrios Altos* case, the Court tackled the issue of domestic amnesty laws and held that the Peruvian amnesty laws in question were incompatible with the Inter-American Convention and thus void of any legal effect.²⁶⁸ The Court has also addressed the question of indigenous peoples in several cases, in which it has emphasised the close ties of such peoples with their traditional lands and the natural resources associated with their culture in the context particularly of the right to the use and enjoyment of property in article 21 of the Convention. It has concluded that the traditional possession of their lands by indigenous peoples has equivalent effects to those of a state-granted full property title; that traditional possession entitles indigenous peoples to demand official recognition and registration

²⁶¹ I.e. article 4 of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights and article 6 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights.

²⁶² 20 ILM, 1981, p. 1424; 67 ILR, p. 578. ²⁶³ 9 HRLJ, 1988, p. 212; 95 ILR, p. 232.

²⁶⁴ H/Inf (90) 1, p. 80; 95 ILR, p. 320 (note).

²⁶⁵ Note also the award of compensation to the victims in both of these cases, *ibid.*, pp. 80–1.

²⁶⁶ At paras. 174–6. See also *Castillo Páez v. Peru*, Series C, No. 34, 1997; 116 ILR, p. 451.

²⁶⁷ Series C, No. 33, 1997; 116 ILR, p. 338.

²⁶⁸ Judgment of 14 March 2001, 41 ILM, 2002, p. 93. See also generally C. Martin, 'Catching Up with the Past: Recent Decisions of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights Addressing Gross Human Rights Violations Perpetrated During the 1970–1980s', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 774.

of property titles; that members of such peoples who have been obliged to leave their traditional lands maintain property rights thereto even though they lack legal title, unless the lands have been lawfully transferred to innocent third parties; and that in the latter instance, such members are entitled to restitution thereof or to obtain other lands of equal extension and quality.²⁶⁹ In the period between 1959 and 2005, the Court issued 62 orders of provisional measures, 19 advisory opinions and 139 judgments.²⁷⁰

The Banjul Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights²⁷¹

This Charter was adopted by the Organisation of African Unity in 1981 and came into force in 1986. Currently all fifty-three members of the African Union (as the OAU was renamed in 2000) are parties.²⁷² The Charter contains a wide range of rights, including in addition to the traditional civil and political rights, economic, social and cultural rights and

²⁶⁹ See e.g. *Sawhoyamaza Indigenous Community v. Paraguay*, Judgment of 29 March 2006. See further above, chapter 6, p. 293.

²⁷⁰ See *Annual Report 2005*, p. 57.

²⁷¹ See e.g. U. O. Umzurike, *The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights*, The Hague, 1997; R. Murray, *The African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights*, London, 2000; *The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights* (eds. M. Evans and R. Murray), Cambridge, 2002; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, chapter 9; Steiner, Alston and Goodman, *International Human Rights*, p. 1062; E. Ankumah, *The African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights*, Dordrecht, 1996; R. Gittleman, 'The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights: A Legal Analysis', 22 Va. JIL, 1981, p. 667; Robertson and Merrills, *Human Rights in the World*, p. 242; U. O. Umzurike, 'The Protection of Human Rights under the Banjul (African) Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights', 1 *African Journal of International Law*, 1988, p. 65; A. Bello, 'The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights', 194 HR, 1985, p. 5; S. Neff, 'Human Rights in Africa', 33 ICLQ, 1984, p. 331; U. O. Umzurike, 'The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 902; B. Ramcharan, 'The Travaux Préparatoires of the African Commission on Human Rights', HRLJ, 1992, p. 307; W. Benedek, 'The African Charter and Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights: How to Make It More Effective', 14 NQHR, 1993, p. 25; C. Flinterman and E. Ankumeh, 'The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights' in Hannum, *Guide to International Human Rights Practice*, p. 171; M. A. Baderin, 'Recent Developments in the African Regional Human Rights System', 5 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2005, p. 117, and C. Beyani, 'Recent Developments in the African Human Rights System 2004–2006', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 582. See also F. Ougurgouz, 'La Commission Africaine des Droits de l'Homme et des Peuples', AFDI, 1989, p. 557; K. Mbaye, *Les Droits de l'Homme en Afrique*, Paris, 1992, and M. Hamalengwa, C. Flinterman and E. Dankwa, *The International Law of Human Rights in Africa – Basic Documents and Annotated Bibliography*, Dordrecht, 1988.

²⁷² See www.achpr.org/english/ratifications/ratification_african%20charter.pdf.

various peoples' rights. In this latter category are specifically mentioned the rights to self-determination, development and a generally satisfactory environment.²⁷³ The reference to the latter two concepts is unusual in human rights instruments and it remains to be seen both how they will be interpreted and how they will be implemented.

One question that is immediately posed with respect to the notion of 'peoples' rights' is to ascertain the definition of a people. If experience with the definition of self-determination in the context of the United Nations is any guide,²⁷⁴ and bearing in mind the extreme sensitivity which African states have manifested with regard to the stability of the existing colonial borders,²⁷⁵ then the principle is likely to be interpreted in the sense of independent states. This was confirmed in the *Katangese Peoples' Congress v. Zaire*,²⁷⁶ where the Commission declared that Katanga was obliged to exercise a variant of self-determination that was compatible with the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Zaire.

The African Charter is the first human rights convention that details the duties of the individual to the state, society and family.²⁷⁷ Included are the duties to avoid compromising the security of the state and to preserve and strengthen social and national solidarity and independence. It remains to be seen whether this distinctive approach brings with it more problems than advantages.

The Charter set up the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights, consisting of eleven persons appointed by the Conference of the Heads of State and Government of the OAU for six-year renewable terms, to implement the Charter. The Secretary to the Commission is appointed by the Secretary-General of the Organisation of African Unity. The Commission has important educational and promotional responsibilities,²⁷⁸ including undertaking studies, organising conferences, disseminating information and making recommendations to governments. This is quite unlike the European Commission as it used to be prior to Protocol 11, but rather more similar to the Inter-American Commission. The African Commission has developed a range of special mechanisms, including the appointment of Special Rapporteurs (not being independent experts but

²⁷³ See articles 19–22. ²⁷⁴ See above, chapter 5, p. 256.

²⁷⁵ See e.g. M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa*, Oxford, 1986.

²⁷⁶ Case No. 75/92: see 13 NQHR, 1995, p. 478. ²⁷⁷ See articles 27–9.

²⁷⁸ See article 45 and Rule 87 of the Rules of Procedure 1995. See also A. Bello, 'The Mandate of the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights', 1 *African Journal of International Law*, 1988, p. 31.

Commission members)²⁷⁹ and working groups;²⁸⁰ and the adoption of country and thematic resolutions.²⁸¹

The Commission may hear as of right inter-state complaints.²⁸² The first such complaint was brought in 1999 by the Democratic Republic of the Congo alleging *inter alia* that it had been the victim of aggression perpetrated by Burundi, Rwanda and Uganda. The Commission held that the respondent states had contravened the principle of the peaceful settlement of disputes and had violated article 23 of the African Charter concerning the right to peace. It concluded that the three states concerned had occupied parts of the Congo in violation of the Charter and had committed a series of human rights violations as a consequence.²⁸³

Other, non-state, communications may also be sent to the Commission and the terminology used is far more flexible than is the case in the other regional human rights systems.²⁸⁴ Where it appears that one or more communications apparently relates to special cases which reveal the existence of a series of serious or massive violations of rights, the Commission will draw the attention of the Assembly of Heads of State and Government to these special cases. The Commission may then be asked to conduct an in-depth study of these cases and make a factual report, accompanied by its finding and recommendations.²⁸⁵ The Commission

²⁷⁹ Covering topics such as the rights of women, refugees, asylum seekers and internally displaced persons in Africa; freedom of expression; human rights defenders in Africa, and prisons and conditions of detention in Africa: see e.g. Beyani, 'Recent Developments', p. 588.

²⁸⁰ Covering issues such as economic, social and cultural rights; indigenous populations and communities; and the death penalty: e.g. *ibid.*, p. 589.

²⁸¹ Such as the resolutions expressing deep concern about the violation of human rights and international humanitarian law in Darfur, e.g. ACHPR/Res.74(XXXVII)05, 2005 and about the continued attacks on the independence of the judiciary by the government of Zimbabwe, e.g. resolution adopted by the Executive Council of the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights, 9th Ordinary Session, June 2006, Ex. CL/279 (ix), Annex III, p. 99. See also Beyani, 'Recent Developments', pp. 592 ff., and the resolution concerning the protection of human rights defenders in Africa, ACHPR/Res.69(XXXV)04, 2004.

²⁸² Articles 47–54. See also Rules 88 ff. of the Rules of Procedure.

²⁸³ Communication 227/99, African Commission, *Twentieth Activity Report*, EX.CL/279 (IX), Annex IV, pp. 111 ff. See also Beyani, 'Recent Developments', pp. 598 ff.

²⁸⁴ See article 55. There are a number of admissibility requirements: see article 56. For recent decisions on communications, see African Commission, *Twentieth Activity Report*.

²⁸⁵ Article 58(1) and (2). Further, a case of emergency duly noted by the Commission shall be submitted to the Chairman of the Assembly of Heads of State and Government who may request an in-depth study, article 58(3).

is able to suggest provisional measures where appropriate.²⁸⁶ The Commission adopted Rules of Procedure in 1988, which were amended in 1995.²⁸⁷ A number of important individual communications have been dealt with.²⁸⁸ In addition, there is an obligation upon states parties to produce reports every two years upon the measures taken to implement the rights under the Charter.²⁸⁹ The Commission was given authority by the OAU to study the reports and make observations upon them and has indeed adopted guidelines. However, to date, it is fair to conclude that the reporting procedure has encountered serious problems, not least in that many states have failed to submit reports or adequate reports,²⁹⁰ while the financial resources difficulties faced by the Commission have been significant. No provision was made for a Court in the Charter, but a Protocol on the Establishment of an African Court of Human and Peoples' Rights was signed in 1998.²⁹¹ Under this Protocol, the Court has advisory, conciliatory and contentious jurisdiction. The African Commission, states parties and African intergovernmental organisations have automatic access to the Court,²⁹² but not individuals or non-governmental organisations, whose access depends upon the state concerned having made

²⁸⁶ Rule 111. See e.g. G. J. Naldi, 'Interim Measures of Protection in the African System for the Protection of Human and Peoples' Rights', 2 *African Human Rights Law Journal*, 2002, p. 1. The Commission has taken the view that the adoption of interim measures is binding on the parties: see e.g. *Saro-Wiwa v. Nigeria*, 7 *International Human Rights Reports*, 2000, p. 274.

²⁸⁷ See 40 *The Review, International Commission of Jurists*, 1988, p. 26.

²⁸⁸ See e.g. *Lawyers for Human Rights v. Swaziland*, Communication 251/2002, 13 *International Human Rights Reports*, 2006, p. 887, concerning the overthrow of constitutional democracy and the banning of political parties. See also *Zimbabwe Human Rights NGO Forum v. Zimbabwe*, African Commission, *Twenty-First Activity Report*, Annex III, pp. 54 ff. See S. Gumudz, 'Bringing Communications Before the African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights', 3 *African Human Rights Law Journal*, 2003, p. 118.

²⁸⁹ Article 62. See also Rules 81–6.

²⁹⁰ See e.g. G. Oberleitner and C. Welch, 'Africa: 15th Session African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights', 12 *NQHR*, 1994, p. 333; Rehman, *International Human Rights Law*, p. 255, and M. Vans, T. Ige and R. Murray, 'The Reporting Mechanism of the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights' in *The African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights* (eds. M. Evans and R. Murray), Cambridge, 2002, p. 36.

²⁹¹ This came into force on 25 January 2004. Judges were elected in 2006. See e.g. D. Padilla, 'An African Human Rights Court: Reflections from the Perspective of the Inter-American System', 2 *African Human Rights Law Journal*, 2002, p. 185; R. W. Eno, 'The Jurisdiction of the African Court on Human and Peoples' Rights', 2 *African Human Rights Law Journal*, 2002, p. 223, and R. Murray, 'A Comparison Between the African and European Courts of Human Rights', 2 *African Human Rights Law Journal*, 2002, p. 195.

²⁹² Article 5.

a declaration accepting the jurisdiction of the Court to hear relevant applications.²⁹³

The Arab Charter on Human Rights²⁹⁴

An Arab Charter on Human Rights was adopted by the Council of the League of Arab States on 15 September 1994 and a revised version was adopted by the League of Arab States in May 2004. It affirms the principles contained in the UN Charter, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, the International Covenants on Human Rights and the Cairo Declaration on Human Rights in Islam.²⁹⁵ Reference is made to the national identity of the Arab states and the right to self-determination is affirmed. A number of traditional human rights are also provided for, including the right to liberty and security of persons, equality of persons before the law, fair trial, protection of persons from torture, the right to own private property, freedom to practise religious observance and freedom of peaceful assembly and association.²⁹⁶ The Charter also provides for the election of a seven-person Arab Human Rights Committee to consider states' reports.²⁹⁷ The Charter came into force on 24 January 2008 upon the seventh ratification.²⁹⁸

²⁹³ Article 34(6).

²⁹⁴ See e.g. M. Rishmawi, 'The Revised Arab Charter on Human Rights: A Step Forward?', 5 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2005, p. 361, and R. K. M. Smith, *Textbook on International Human Rights*, Oxford, 2002, p. 87. See also Robertson and Merrills, *Human Rights in the World*, p. 238, and A. A. A. Naim, 'Human Rights in the Arab World: A Legal Perspective', 23 *HRQ*, 2001, p. 70.

²⁹⁵ Adopted in 1990 by the Nineteenth Islamic Conference of Foreign Ministers. This Declaration emphasises that all rights and freedoms provided for are subject to Islamic Shari'ah (article 24), which is also 'the only source of reference for the explanation or clarification of any of the articles in the Declaration' (article 25).

²⁹⁶ Articles 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 30, 31 and 35. The right to development is proclaimed as a fundamental human right, see article 37.

²⁹⁷ Articles 45 and 48.

²⁹⁸ Note, however, the statement by the UN High Commissioner for Human Rights expressing concern with regard to the incompatibility of some of the provisions of the Arab Charter with international norms and standards. These concerns included the approach to the death penalty for children and the rights of women and non-citizens. The High Commissioner also noted that in equating Zionism with racism, the Arab Charter was 'not in conformity with General Assembly resolution 46/86, which rejects that Zionism is a form of racism and racial discrimination': see statement of 30 January 2008, www.unhcr.ch/hurricane/hurricane.nsf/0/6C211162E43235FAC12573E00056E19D?opendocument.

Suggestions for further reading

- The *African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights* (eds. M. Evans and R. Murray), Cambridge, 2002
- Guide to International Human Rights Practice* (ed. H. Hannum), 4th edn, Ardsley, 2004
- Jacobs and White: The European Convention on Human Rights* (eds. C. Ovey and R. C. A. White), 4th edn, Oxford, 2006
- J. M. Pasqualucci, *The Practice and Procedure of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights*, Cambridge, 2003
- H. J. Steiner, P. Alston and R. Goodman, *International Human Rights in Context*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008
- P. Van Dijk, G. J. H. Van Hoof, A. Van Rijn and L. Zwaak, *Theory and Practice of the European Convention on Human Rights*, 4th edn, Antwerp, 2006

Individual criminal responsibility in international law¹

The rise of individual criminal responsibility directly under international law marks the coming together of elements of traditional international law with more modern approaches to human rights law and humanitarian law, and involves consideration of domestic as well as international enforcement mechanisms. Although the rights of individuals in international law have evolved significantly in the post-1945 era, the placing of obligations directly upon persons as opposed to states has a distinct, if narrow, pedigree.² Those committing piracy or slave trading³ have long been regarded as guilty of crimes against international society bearing direct responsibility, for which they may be punished by international tribunals or by any state at all. Jurisdiction to hear the offence is not confined to, for example, the state on whose territory the act took place, or the national state of the offender or the victim. This universal jurisdiction over piracy constitutes a long-established principle of the world community.⁴

¹ See e.g. A. Cassese, *International Criminal Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2008; W. Schabas, *An Introduction to the International Criminal Court*, 3rd edn, Cambridge, 2007; R. Cryer, H. Friman, D. Robinson and E. Wilmshurst, *An Introduction to International Criminal Law and Procedure*, Cambridge, 2007; I. Bantekas and S. Nash, *International Criminal Law*, 2nd edn, London, 2003; G. Werle, *Principles of International Criminal Law*, The Hague, 2005; C. de Than and E. Shorts, *International Criminal Law and Human Rights*, London, 2003; S. R. Ratner and J. Abrams, *Accountability for Human Rights Atrocities in International Law: Beyond the Nuremberg Legacy*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2001; K. Kittichaisaree, *International Criminal Law*, Oxford, 2001, and *Justice for Crimes Against Humanity* (eds. M. Lattimer and P. Sands), Oxford, 2003.

² See e.g. M. C. Bassiouni, *Crimes Against Humanity in International Criminal Law*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 1999. As to state responsibility for international offences, see below, chapter 14.

³ See as to slave trading, article 99 of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 and below, chapter 11, p. 616.

⁴ See e.g. *In re Piracy Jure Gentium* [1934] AC 586; 7 AD, p. 213. See also D. H. Johnson, 'Piracy in Modern International Law', 43 *Transactions of the Grotius Society*, 1957, p. 63, and G. E. White, 'The Marshall Court and International Law: The Piracy Cases', 83 *AJIL*, 1989, p. 727. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Guillaume in *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ

All states may both arrest and punish pirates, provided of course that they have been apprehended on the high seas⁵ or within the territory of the state concerned. The punishment of the offenders takes place whatever their nationality and wherever they happened to carry out their criminal activities.

Piracy under international law (or piracy *jure gentium*) must be distinguished from piracy under municipal law. Offences that may be characterised as piratical under municipal laws do not necessarily fall within the definition of piracy in international law, and thus are not susceptible to universal jurisdiction (depending of course upon the content and form of international conventions). Piracy *jure gentium* was defined in article 15 of the High Seas Convention, 1958 (and reaffirmed in article 101 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea) as illegal acts of violence, detention or depredation committed for private ends by the crew or passengers of a private ship or private aircraft and directed against another ship or aircraft (or persons or property therein) on the high seas or *terra nullius*.⁶ Attempts to commit such acts are sufficient to constitute piracy and it is not essential for the attempt to have been successful.⁷

However, the range of offences under international law for which individuals bore international responsibility was narrow indeed.⁸ It is doubtful whether it had extended beyond piracy and slave trading by the turn of the twentieth century. Even then, jurisdiction was exercisable in practice only by domestic courts. It is a modern phenomenon to establish international courts or tribunals to exercise jurisdiction directly over individuals with regard to specified crimes. As will be seen in chapter 12, domestic courts are indeed exercising a greater jurisdiction with regard to offences with international elements, for example, with regard to torture or war crimes committed outside of the territory of the state concerned provided that the alleged offender is within the territory of the state, but this is only where an international treaty authorises states to exercise such

Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 37–8; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 92–4, and *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16; 132 ILR, p. 668.

⁵ Article 105 of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 (reproducing article 19 of the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958).

⁶ See further below, chapter 11, p. 615.

⁷ *In re Piracy Jure Gentium* [1934] AC 586; 7 AD, p. 213.

⁸ See the advisory opinion of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights in the *Re-Introduction of the Death Penalty in the Peruvian Constitution* case, 16 HRLJ, 1995, pp. 9, 14, noting that individual responsibility may only be invoked for violations that are defined in international instruments as crimes under international law.

jurisdiction and this has been brought into effect internally.⁹ However, the focus of this chapter is upon courts established internationally or with an international element in order to prosecute individuals directly accused of international offences.

International criminal courts and tribunals

After the conclusion of the First World War, a commission set up by the Allied Powers recommended that as the defeated powers had violated the laws of war, high officials, including the Kaiser, be prosecuted for ordering such crimes and on the basis of command responsibility. It was also suggested that an Allied High Tribunal be established to try violations of the laws and customs of war and the laws of humanity.¹⁰ Accordingly, the Treaty of Versailles, 1919 noted that the German government recognised the right of the Allied and Associated Powers to bring individuals accused of crimes against the laws and customs of war before military tribunals (article 228) and established the individual responsibility of the Kaiser (article 227). In the event, the Netherlands refused to hand over the Kaiser and only a few trials were held before German courts in Leipzig with, at best, mixed results.¹¹

The Charter annexed to the Agreement for the Prosecution and Punishment of the Major War Criminals, 1945 provided specifically for individual responsibility for crimes against peace, war crimes and crimes against humanity. There was also a conspiracy charge.¹² The Nuremberg Tribunal, composed of four principal judges (from the US, UK, USSR and France) and four alternates, was the first international criminal

⁹ See below, p. 673.

¹⁰ See the Report of the Commission to the Preliminary Peace Conference, 14 AJIL, 1920, p. 95. See also Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 91–2, and T. Meron, ‘Reflections on the Prosecution of War Crimes by International Tribunals’, 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 551.

¹¹ See C. Mullins, *The Leipzig Trials*, London, 1921. See also e.g. the International Convention for the Protection of Submarine Telegraph Cables, 1884; the Agreement for the Suppression of the Circulation of Obscene Publications, 1910; the International Convention for the Suppression of the Circulation of and Traffic in Obscene Publications 1924; the Agreement Concerning the Suppression of Opium-Smoking, 1931; the Convention for the Suppression of the Illicit Traffic in Dangerous Drugs, 1936, and the International Convention for the Suppression of Counterfeiting Currency, 1929 with regard to the establishment of individual responsibility in the case of specific issues.

¹² See article 6, 39 AJIL, 1945, Supp., p. 259. See also H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950, p. 6, and Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 92 ff.

tribunal and marks the true starting-point for international criminal law. It affirmed in ringing and lasting terms that 'international law imposes duties and liabilities upon individuals as well as upon states' as 'crimes against international law are committed by men, not by abstract entities, and only by punishing individuals who commit such crimes can the provisions of international law be enforced'. Included in the relevant category for which individual responsibility was posited were crimes against peace, war crimes and crimes against humanity.¹³ In addition, a number of war crimes trials were instituted within Allied-occupied Germany under the authority of Control Council Law No. 10.¹⁴ The International Military Tribunal for the Far East was established in January 1946 to deal with Japanese war crimes.¹⁵ This Tribunal was composed of judges from eleven states¹⁶ and it essentially reaffirmed the Nuremberg Tribunal's legal findings as to, for example, the criminality of aggressive war and the rejection of the absolute defence of superior orders.¹⁷ The Charter of the Tribunal also provided for individual responsibility with regard to certain crimes.¹⁸

The provisions of the Nuremberg Charter can now be regarded as part of international law, particularly since the General Assembly in 1946 affirmed the principles of this Charter and the decision of the Tribunal.¹⁹ The Assembly also stated that genocide was a crime under international

¹³ See 41 AJIL, 1947, p. 220. See also I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963, p. 167; T. Taylor, *An Anatomy of the Nuremberg Trial*, London, 1993, and A. Tusa and J. Tusa, *The Nuremberg Trial*, London, 1983.

¹⁴ 36 ILR, p. 31. Twelve major US trials took place in Nuremberg, see H. Levie, *Terrorism in War: The Law of War Crimes*, New York, 1992, pp. 72 ff., while trials took place in the British occupied sector of Germany under the Royal Warrant of 1946, see A. P. V. Rogers, 'War Crimes Trials under the Royal Warrant, British Practice 1945–1949', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 780, and see also *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16, para. 22 (Lord Bingham); 132 ILR, p. 679, and *Re Sandrock and Others* 13 ILR, p. 297.

¹⁵ Established by a proclamation by General MacArthur of 19 January 1946, so authorised by the Allied Powers in order to implement the Potsdam Declaration: see *Hirota v. MacArthur* 335 US 876 and TIAS, 1946, No. 1589, p. 3; 15 AD, p. 485.

¹⁶ US, UK, USSR, Australia, Canada, China, France, India, the Netherlands, New Zealand and the Philippines.

¹⁷ See e.g. B. V. A. Röling and A. Cassese, *The Tokyo Trial and Beyond*, Cambridge, 1992, and S. Horowitz, *The Tokyo Trial*, International Conciliation No. 465 (1950). But see as to criticisms of the process, R. Minear, *Victor's Justice: The Tokyo War Crimes Trial*, Princeton, 1971.

¹⁸ Article 5.

¹⁹ Resolution 95(I). See also the International Law Commission's Report on Principles of the Nuremberg Tribunal, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1950, vol. II, p. 195, and the Convention on the Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations to War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity, 1968.

law bearing individual responsibility.²⁰ This was reaffirmed in the Genocide Convention of 1948, which also called for prosecutions by either domestic courts or 'an international penal tribunal'.²¹ The International Law Commission produced a Draft Code of Offences against the Peace and Security of Mankind in 1954, article 1 of which provided that 'offences against the peace and security of mankind, as defined in this Code, are crimes under international law, for which the responsible individuals shall be punishable'.²²

Individual responsibility has also been confirmed with regard to grave breaches of the four 1949 Geneva Red Cross Conventions and 1977 Additional Protocols I and II dealing with armed conflicts. It is provided specifically that the High Contracting Parties undertake to enact any legislation necessary to provide effective penal sanctions for persons committing or ordering to be committed any of a series of grave breaches.²³ Such grave breaches include wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, extensive destruction and appropriation of property not justified by military necessity and carried out unlawfully and wantonly, unlawful deportation or transfer of protected persons and the taking of hostages.²⁴ Protocol I of 1977 extends the list to include, for example, making the civilian population the object of attack and launching an attack against works or installations containing dangerous forces in the knowledge that such attack will cause excessive loss of life or damage to civilians or their property when committed wilfully and causing death or serious injury; other activities such as transferring civilian population from the territory of an occupying power to that of an occupied area or deporting from an occupied area, apartheid and racial discrimination and attacking clearly recognised historic monuments, works of art or places of worship, may also constitute grave breaches when committed wilfully.²⁵

²⁰ Resolution 96(1).

²¹ Note that the International Convention on the Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid of 1973 declared apartheid to be an international crime involving direct individual criminal responsibility.

²² A/2693, and 45 AJIL, 1954, Supp., p. 123.

²³ See article 49 of the First Geneva Convention, article 50 of the Second Geneva Convention, article 129 of the Third Geneva Convention and article 146 of the Fourth Geneva Convention. See further below, chapter 21, p. 1199.

²⁴ See e.g. article 50 of the First Geneva Convention, article 51 of the Second Geneva Convention, article 130 of the Third Geneva Convention and article 147 of the Fourth Geneva Convention. See also L. C. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000, chapter 18.

²⁵ See article 85 of Protocol I.

Any individual, regardless of rank or governmental status, would be personally liable for any war crimes or grave breaches committed, while the principle of command (or superior) responsibility means that any person in a position of authority ordering the commission of a war crime or grave breach would be as accountable as the subordinate committing it.²⁶ The International Law Commission in 1991 provisionally adopted a Draft Code of Crimes Against the Peace and Security of Mankind,²⁷ which was revised in 1996.²⁸ The 1996 Draft Code provides for individual criminal responsibility²⁹ with regard to aggression,³⁰ genocide,³¹ a crime against humanity,³² a crime against United Nations and associated personnel³³ and war crimes.³⁴ The fact that an individual may be responsible for the crimes in question is deemed not to affect the issue of state responsibility.³⁵ The Security Council in two resolutions on the Somali situation in the early 1990s unanimously condemned breaches of humanitarian law and stated that the authors of such breaches or those who had ordered their commission would be held 'individually responsible' for them,³⁶ while Security Council resolution 674 (1990) concerning Iraq's occupation of Kuwait, reaffirming Iraq's liability under the Fourth Geneva Convention, 1949 dealing with civilian populations of occupied areas, noted that such responsibility for grave breaches extended to 'individuals who commit or order the commission of grave breaches'.³⁷

*The International Criminal Tribunal for the Former
Yugoslavia (ICTY)*³⁸

It was, however, the events in the former Yugoslavia that impelled a renewal of interest in the establishment of an international criminal court, which had long been under consideration, but in a desultory fashion.³⁹

²⁶ See further below, pp. 404 and 408. ²⁷ A/46/10 and 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1584.

²⁸ A/51/10, p. 9. ²⁹ See article 2. ³⁰ See article 16. ³¹ Article 17.

³² Article 18. ³³ Article 19. ³⁴ Article 20. ³⁵ Article 4.

³⁶ Resolutions 794 (1992) and 814 (1993).

³⁷ See also e.g. the Special Section on Iraqi War Crimes, 31 Va. JIL, 1991, p. 351.

³⁸ See e.g. W. Schabas, *The UN International Criminal Tribunals: The Former Yugoslavia, Rwanda and Sierra Leone*, Cambridge, 2006; V. Morris and M. P. Scharf, *An Insider's Guide to the International Criminal Tribunal for Former Yugoslavia*, New York, 1995; R. Kerr, *The International Criminal Tribunal for Former Yugoslavia: An Exercise in Law, Politics and Diplomacy*, Oxford, 2004; the series of articles on the ICTY published in 2 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2004, pp. 353 ff. and 37 *New England Law Review*, 2002–3, pp. 865 ff.

³⁹ See e.g. B. Ferencz, 'An International Criminal Code and Court: Where They Stand and Where They're Going', 30 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1992, p. 375.

The Yugoslav experience, and the Rwanda massacres of 1994, led to the establishment of two specific war crimes tribunals by the use of the authority of the UN Security Council to adopt decisions binding upon all member states of the organisation under Chapter VII of the Charter, rather than by an international conference as was to be the case with the International Criminal Court. This method was used in order both to enable the tribunal in question to come into operation as quickly as possible and to ensure that the parties most closely associated with the subject-matter of the war crimes alleged should be bound in a manner not dependent upon their consent (as would be necessary in the case of a court established by international agreement). The establishment of the Tribunal was preceded by a series of steps. In Security Council resolutions 764 (1992), 771 (1992) and 820 (1993) grave concern was expressed with regard to breaches of international humanitarian law and the responsibilities of the parties were reaffirmed. In particular, individual responsibility for the commission of grave breaches of the 1949 Conventions was emphasised. Under resolution 780 (1992), the Security Council established an impartial Commission of Experts to examine and analyse information concerning evidence of grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions and other violations of international humanitarian law committed in the territory of the former Yugoslavia. The Commission produced a report in early 1993 in which it concluded that grave breaches and other violations of international humanitarian law had been committed in the territory of the former Yugoslavia, including wilful killing, 'ethnic cleansing', mass killings, torture, rape, pillage and destruction of civilian property, the destruction of cultural and religious property and arbitrary arrests.⁴⁰

The Security Council then adopted resolution 808 (1993) calling for the establishment of an international tribunal to prosecute 'persons responsible for serious violations of international humanitarian law committed in the territory of the former Yugoslavia since 1991'. The Secretary-General of the UN produced a report incorporating a draft statute and commentary,⁴¹ which was adopted by the Security Council in resolution 827 (1993) acting under Chapter VII of the UN Charter.⁴²

⁴⁰ See S/25274. See also M.C. Bassiouni, 'The United Nations Commission of Experts Established Pursuant to Security Council Resolution 780 (1992)', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 784.

⁴¹ S/25704 (1993).

⁴² The Statute has been subsequently amended: see Security Council resolutions 1166 (1998), 1329 (2000), 1411 (2002), 1431 (2002), 1481 (2003), 1597 (2005) and 1660 (2006).

The Tribunal has the power to prosecute persons responsible for serious violations of international humanitarian law committed in the territory of the former Yugoslavia since 1991 (articles 1 and 8 of the Statute). The absence of a closing date meant that the later conflict in Kosovo could be the subject of prosecutions.⁴³ The Tribunal consists of three main organs: the Registry, the office of the Prosecutor and the Chambers.⁴⁴ The Registry is the administrative body,⁴⁵ while the Office of the Prosecutor is responsible for investigations, issuing of indictments and bringing matters to trial. There are currently three Trial Chambers, each consisting of a presiding judge and two other judges, and an Appeals Chamber, consisting of seven members but sitting in a panel of five, headed by a President. Of the seven, five come from the ICTY and two from the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda.⁴⁶ The Chambers have a maximum of sixteen permanent judges and a maximum of twelve *ad litem* judges drawn from a pool of twenty-seven such judges elected by the General Assembly for four-year renewable terms.⁴⁷

Articles 2 to 5 of the Statute lay down the crimes with regard to which the Tribunal can exercise jurisdiction. These are: grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions of 1949, violation of the laws or customs of war, genocide and crimes against humanity.⁴⁸

Article 7 establishes that persons who 'planned, instigated, ordered, committed or otherwise aided and abetted in the planning, preparation or execution' of crimes listed in articles 2 to 5 shall be individually responsible for the crime. This article also provides that the official position of any accused person is not to relieve a person of criminal responsibility nor mitigate punishment, while the fact that a subordinate committed the crime is not to relieve a superior of responsibility if the latter knew or had reason to know that the subordinate was about to or had committed the crime and the superior failed to take the necessary and reasonable measures to prevent the acts or to punish the perpetrators thereof. It is also stipulated that the fact that an accused person acted pursuant to an order of a government or of a superior will not relieve him of criminal responsibility, although this may constitute a mitigating factor if the Tribunal determines that justice so requires. The Appeals Chamber of the Tribunal

⁴³ See Security Council resolution 1160 (1998) and *Milutinović*, ICTY, A. Ch. 8 June 2004. See also as to events in the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, *In re: The Republic of Macedonia I*, ICTY, T. Ch. 4 October 2002.

⁴⁴ Article 11. ⁴⁵ Article 17. ⁴⁶ Article 14.

⁴⁷ Articles 12 and 13. ⁴⁸ See further below, p. 430.

in the *Tadić* case confirmed that customary international law had imposed criminal responsibility for serious violations of humanitarian law governing internal as well as international armed conflicts.⁴⁹

The Tribunal and national courts have concurrent jurisdiction with regard to the prosecution of relevant accused persons, but the Tribunal has primacy over national courts, so that the former may request the latter to defer to its competence.⁵⁰ States are obliged to co-operate with the International Tribunal in the investigation and prosecution of persons accused of committing serious violations of international humanitarian law and must comply without undue delay with any request for assistance or an order issued by a Trial Chamber, including the identification and location of persons; the taking of testimony and the production of evidence; the arrest or detention of persons; and the surrender or the transfer of the accused to the International Tribunal.⁵¹ No person may be tried by a national court for acts constituting serious violations of international humanitarian law under the Statute, for which he or she has already been tried by the International Tribunal, but the Tribunal may try a person for relevant acts after trial by a national court where the act for which he or she was tried was characterised as an ordinary crime; or where the national court proceedings were not impartial or independent, were designed to shield the accused from international criminal responsibility, or the case was not diligently prosecuted.⁵²

Investigations into alleged offences under the Statute are initiated by the Prosecutor either *ex officio* or on the basis of information obtained from any source, particularly from governments, United Nations organs, intergovernmental and non-governmental organisations. Information received is assessed by the Prosecutor, who then decides whether there is a sufficient basis to proceed. The Prosecutor may question suspects, victims and witnesses, collect evidence and conduct on-site investigations.

⁴⁹ See IT-94-1-AR72, 2 October 1995, p. 70; 105 ILR, p. 419. See further below, chapter 21, p. 1194.

⁵⁰ Article 9. Under Rule 9 of the Rules of Procedure and Evidence as amended, deferral of national proceedings may be requested where the act being investigated or which is the subject of those proceedings is characterised as an ordinary crime; or there is a lack of impartiality or independence, or the investigations or proceedings are designed to shield the accused from international criminal responsibility, or the case is not diligently prosecuted; or what is in issue is closely related to, or otherwise involves, significant factual or legal questions which may have implications for investigations or prosecutions before the Tribunal. See as to the different situation with regard to the International Criminal Court, below, p. 410.

⁵¹ Article 29. ⁵² Article 10.

Where it is determined that a *prima facie* case exists, the Prosecutor shall prepare an indictment containing a concise statement of the facts and the crime or crimes with which the accused is charged, and this indictment is then transmitted to a judge of the Trial Chamber, who will review it. If satisfied that a *prima facie* case has been established by the Prosecutor, the judge will confirm the indictment. If not so satisfied, the indictment shall be dismissed. Upon confirmation of an indictment, the judge may, at the request of the Prosecutor, issue such orders and warrants for the arrest, detention, surrender or transfer of persons, and any other orders as may be required for the conduct of the trial. It will then be for the Trial Chambers to ensure that the trial is fair and expeditious and that proceedings are conducted in accordance with the rules of procedure and evidence, with full respect for the rights of the accused and due regard for the protection of victims and witnesses.⁵³ Judgment will then be reached by the Trial Chamber concerned and punishment, limited to imprisonment, imposed upon conviction.⁵⁴ Appeal is to the Appeals Chamber on the grounds either of an error of law invalidating the decision or of an error of fact occasioning a miscarriage of justice. The Appeals Chamber may affirm, reverse or revise the decisions taken by the Trial Chambers.⁵⁵

The Tribunal has dealt with a number of significant issues.⁵⁶ In an early case, the Appeal Chamber held that it had the power to review the question of the legality of the establishment of the Tribunal and noted that the Security Council had adopted a decision under Chapter VII of the UN Charter binding on all member states to create the Tribunal in the framework of the restoration of international peace and security.⁵⁷

As of early March 2008, the Tribunal had issued 161 indictments; 111 proceedings had been concluded, with regard to which 53 individuals had been sentenced, 9 acquitted and 36 indictments withdrawn (including where the accused had died). Four persons indicted were still at large, including Radovan Karadžić and Ratko Mladić, the leaders of the Bosnian Serbs during the war.⁵⁸ However, the UN Security Council has

⁵³ Articles 18–20. ⁵⁴ Article 24. ⁵⁵ Article 25. ⁵⁶ See further below, pp. 435 ff.

⁵⁷ *Tadić*, IT-94-1-AR72, 2 October 1995, p. 70, paras. 30 ff.; 105 ILR, p. 419. After this decision, the Dayton Peace Agreement was signed, which includes the obligation placed upon all states of the former Yugoslavia to co-operate with the Tribunal: see Article X, Annex 1-A.

⁵⁸ See www.un.org/icty/glance-e/index.htm. Note the death in custody of the Yugoslav President Slobodan Milošević on 11 March 2006 during his trial on sixty-six counts of violations of the Statute including genocide: see ICTY Annual Report 2006, A/61/271 – S/2006/666, para. 55. After the text above was written, Radovan Karadžić was arrested in Belgrade and sent to the Tribunal, who assigned his case to a Trial Chamber: see IT-95-5/18-I, 22 July 2008.

confirmed a completion strategy which is intended to ensure a phased and co-ordinated completion of the Tribunal's mission by the end of 2010.⁵⁹ Under this strategy, the ICTY has concentrated on the prosecution and trial of the most senior leaders while referring other cases involving intermediate and lower-rank accused to national courts. Two main categories of cases have been referred to national courts in the region of the former Yugoslavia, being those cases that were investigated to different levels by the Tribunal's Prosecution which did not result in the issuance of an indictment by the ICTY and the small number of cases that were investigated by the Tribunal's Prosecution and that resulted in the confirmation of indictments by the Tribunal and the transfer of accused persons to the Tribunal's custody. Cases began to be transferred to the national courts of successor states to the former Yugoslavia, particularly Bosnia and Croatia, in 2005.⁶⁰ By mid-2007, thirteen 'lower to mid-level accused' had been transferred to local courts.⁶¹

*The International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (ICTR)*⁶²

Following events in Rwanda during 1994 and the mass slaughter that took place, the Security Council decided in resolution 955 (1994) to establish an International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda, with the power to prosecute persons responsible for serious violations of international humanitarian law. The Statute of this Tribunal was annexed to the body of the Security Council resolution and bears many similarities to the Statute of the Yugoslav Tribunal.

⁵⁹ See resolutions 1503 (2003) and 1534 (2004). Under the resolutions the Trial Chambers were required to complete their business by 2008 and the Appeals Chamber by 2010. See also D. Raab, 'Evaluating the ICTY and Its Completion Strategy', 3 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2005, p. 82.

⁶⁰ See M. Bohlander, 'Referring an Indictment from the ICTY and ICTR to Another Court – Rule 11 *bis* and the Consequences for the Law of Extradition', 55 *ICLQ*, 2006, p. 219. See also below, pp. 409 ff.

⁶¹ See ICTY Annual Report 2007, A/62/172 – S/2007/469, para. 10.

⁶² See e.g. UN Secretary-General Reports S/1994/879 and S/1994/906 and the Report of the Special Rapporteur for Rwanda of the UN Commission on Human Rights, S/1994/1157, annex I and annex II, and the Report of the Commission of Experts, S/1994/1125. See also V. Morris and M. P. Scharf, *The International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda*, New York, 1998; L. J. van den Herik, *The Contribution of the Rwanda Tribunal to the Development of International Law*, The Hague, 2005; L. Sunga, 'The Commission of Experts on Rwanda and the Creation of the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda', 16 *HRLJ*, 1995, p. 121, and R. S. Lee, 'The Rwanda Tribunal', 9 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 1996, p. 37.

The Rwanda Tribunal consists of three Trial Chambers, an Office of the Prosecutor and a Registry with the same functions as those of the Yugoslav Tribunal.⁶³ The Chambers are composed of sixteen permanent independent judges, no two of whom may be nationals of the same state, and a maximum at any one time of nine *ad litem* independent judges. The ICTR and the ICTY share a joint Appeals Chamber, two members of whom are members of the Rwanda Tribunal.⁶⁴

Articles 2 to 4 stipulate the crimes over which the Tribunal has jurisdiction. Article 2 deals with genocide; article 3 with crimes against humanity, being the crimes of (a) murder; (b) extermination; (c) enslavement; (d) deportation; (e) imprisonment; (f) torture; (g) rape; (h) persecutions on political, racial and religious grounds; and (i) other inhumane acts, when committed as part of a widespread or systematic attack against any civilian population on national, political, ethnic, racial or religious grounds; and article 4 deals with violations of article 3 common to the Geneva Conventions and of Additional Protocol II.⁶⁵ Article 6 provides for individual criminal responsibility with regard to persons planning, ordering, committing or aiding the crimes listed, while provisions similar to the Statute of the Yugoslav Tribunal with regard to the absence of immunity for persons holding official positions, command responsibility and superior orders apply.

The Tribunal has jurisdiction with regard to serious violations of international humanitarian law committed in the territory of Rwanda and Rwandan citizens responsible for such violations committed in the territory of neighbouring states between 1 January 1994 and 31 December 1994.⁶⁶ As is the case with the ICTY, the ICTR has concurrent jurisdiction with national courts and has primacy over national courts of all states, while at any stage of the procedure, the Tribunal may formally request national courts to defer to its competence.⁶⁷ Similarly, no person may be tried before a national court for acts constituting serious violations of international humanitarian law under the present Statute, for which he or she has already been tried by the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda, while a person who has been tried before a national court for acts constituting serious violations of international humanitarian law may be subsequently tried by the Tribunal only if either the act for which

⁶³ Article 10.

⁶⁴ See Security Council resolution 1329 (2000). The two Tribunals shared a Prosecutor until a separate Prosecutor was appointed to the ICTR in 2003; see Security Council resolution 1503 (2003).

⁶⁵ See below, chapter 21, p. 1194. ⁶⁶ Article 7. ⁶⁷ Article 8.

he or she was tried was characterised as an ordinary crime; or the national court proceedings were not impartial or independent, were designed to shield the accused from international criminal responsibility, or the case was not diligently prosecuted.⁶⁸

After several difficult early years, during which problems of mismanagement with regard to the Office of the Prosecutor and the Registry predominated,⁶⁹ the Tribunal began to produce some significant decisions. These commenced with the *Kambanda* case,⁷⁰ which was the first time that a former head of government was convicted for the crime of genocide (after having pleaded guilty), and the *Akayesu* case,⁷¹ in which for the first time an international tribunal was called upon to interpret the definition of genocide in the Genocide Convention, 1948 and to define the crime of rape in international law. However, the rate of progress has been disappointing and tensions with Rwanda have surfaced from time to time.⁷²

As in the case of the ICTY, the Rwanda Tribunal has formulated a completion strategy, which has been affirmed by Security Council resolutions 1503 (2003) and 1534 (2004), although it had in 2002 adopted Rule 11 *bis* of the Rules of Procedure permitting the transfer of cases to national jurisdictions. The Security Council, as with the ICTY, increased the number of *ad litem* judges and various other management decisions were taken. A separate Prosecutor for the ICTR was appointed in 2003. Attention was focused upon the prosecution of individuals who allegedly were in positions of leadership, and those who allegedly bore the greatest responsibility for the genocide, while the Prosecutor is continuously reviewing his files to determine which cases may be suitable for referral to national jurisdictions for trial. Such decision is for judicial determination. The Prosecutor also holds discussions with states, including Rwanda, regarding the referral of cases to national jurisdictions for trial, in particular with respect to accused persons who were investigated but not indicted by his office. Considerations of fair trial in the state concerned are also a relevant factor, as well as the alleged status and extent of participation of the individual during the genocide, the alleged connection that the individual may have had with other cases, the need to cover the major geographical areas of Rwanda, the availability of evidence with regard to

⁶⁸ Article 9.

⁶⁹ See e.g. Report of the Secretary-General on the Activities of the Office of Internal Oversight Services, A/51/789 and ICTR Annual Report 1997, A/52/582 – S/1997/868.

⁷⁰ ICTR T. Ch. 4 September 1998. ⁷¹ ICTR T. Ch. 1 2 September 1998.

⁷² As of May 2007, twenty-seven judgments, involving thirty-three accused, had been rendered: see ICTR Annual Report 2007, A/62/284 – S/007/502.

the individual concerned and the availability of investigative material for transmission to a state for national prosecution.⁷³

*The International Criminal Court (ICC)*⁷⁴

Article VI of the Genocide Convention, 1948 provided for persons charged with genocide to be tried either by a court in the territory where the act had been committed or by an 'international penal tribunal' to be established. The International Law Commission was asked to study the possibility of the establishment of such an international court and a report was produced.⁷⁵ The matter was then transmitted to the General Assembly which produced a draft statute.⁷⁶ However, the question was postponed until a definition of aggression had been achieved and the draft Code of Offences completed. Due primarily to political reasons, no further progress was made until Trinidad and Tobago proposed the creation of a permanent international criminal court to deal with drug trafficking in 1989. Given additional urgency by the developing Yugoslav situation in the early 1990s, the International Law Commission adopted a Draft Statute for an International Criminal Court in 1994.⁷⁷ This draft statute proposed that an international criminal court be established with jurisdiction not only over genocide, war crimes, crimes against humanity and aggression, but also over certain 'treaty crimes' such as terrorism and drugs offences found in UN conventions. The draft statute was also less expansive than the International Criminal Court Statute proved to be in a number of ways, including not providing for the Prosecutor to initiate investigations on his or her own authority. However, the ILC draft proved very

⁷³ See Report on the Completion Strategy of the ICTR 2007, S/2007/676, paras. 32 ff. Of the fourteen indicted persons still at large, five have been earmarked for trial at the Tribunal on the basis of the leadership roles they played during the 1994 genocide, *ibid.*, para. 38.

⁷⁴ See e.g. Schabas, *International Criminal Court: The Permanent International Criminal Court: Legal and Policy Issues* (eds. D. McGoldrick, P. Rowe and E. Donnelly), Oxford, 2004; *The Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court* (eds. A. Cassese, P. Gaeta and J. R. W. D. Jones), Oxford, 2002; M. C. Bassiouni, 'The Permanent International Criminal Court' in Lattimer and Sands, *Justice for Crimes Against Humanity*, p. 173; B. Broomhall, *International Justice and the International Criminal Court: Between Sovereignty and the Rule of Law*, Oxford, 2003, and *The International Criminal Court: The Making of the Rome Statute* (ed. R. Lee), The Hague, 1999.

⁷⁵ See General Assembly resolution 260 (III) B and A/CN.4/15 and A/CN.4/20 (1950).

⁷⁶ UNGAOR A/2645.

⁷⁷ See Report of the ILC on the Work of its 46th Session, A/49/10, pp. 43 ff. See in particular J. Crawford, 'The ILC's Draft Statute for an International Criminal Court', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 140, and Crawford, 'The Making of the Rome Statute' in *From Nuremberg to The Hague: The Future of International Criminal Justice* (ed. P. Sands), Cambridge, 2003, p. 109.

influential and a Preparatory Committee was convened in December 1995.⁷⁸ The work of this Committee⁷⁹ led to the Rome Conference in 1998, which produced after some effort the Rome Statute on the International Criminal Court on 17 July 1998.⁸⁰ Sixty states were needed to ratify the Rome Statute in order for it to come into force and this duly happened on 1 July 2002. Unlike the two international criminal tribunals (for the former Yugoslavia and for Rwanda), the ICC is the product not of a binding Security Council resolution, but of an international treaty. This was essentially because states, while being prepared to accept the creation of geographically limited and temporally constrained (in Rwanda's case) tribunals by Security Council action, were not willing to be so bound by the establishment of a permanent international criminal court with much more extensive jurisdiction without express consent. Secondly, it is to be noted that the range and content of the Rome Statute is far greater than those of the two international criminal tribunals. The Rome Statute contains 128 articles, while the ICTY Statute contains 34 articles and the ICTR Statute 32 articles

The Statute provides that the jurisdiction of the International Criminal Court is limited to the 'most serious crimes of concern to the international community as a whole', being genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and aggression,⁸¹ and that a person who commits a crime within the jurisdiction of the Court 'shall be individually responsible and liable for punishment' in accordance with the Statute.⁸² The ICC only has jurisdiction with respect to crimes committed after the Statute came into force and with respect to states which have become parties to the Statute.⁸³

⁷⁸ General Assembly resolution 50/46. See also resolutions 51/207 and 52/160.

⁷⁹ See A/51/22 and A/CONF.183/13 (III), p. 5.

⁸⁰ See Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 18 ff.

⁸¹ Article 5. These provisions are further defined in detail in articles 6–8 and see below, p. 430. In addition, article 9 provides for the preparation of Elements of Crimes to assist the Court in the interpretation and application of articles 6, 7 and 8. This was adopted on 9 September 2002 by the Assembly of States Parties, together with the Rules of Procedure and Evidence. However, jurisdiction cannot be exercised with regard to the crime of aggression until the Statute has been amended by its definition and the acceptance of conditions for jurisdiction. A review conference is due to take place in 2009 during which the issue is to be discussed.

⁸² Article 25.

⁸³ Article 11. Note, however, that a state may make a declaration under article 12(3) to permit the Court to exercise jurisdiction in the particular case as from 1 July 2002. Note also that under article 124, a state may, upon ratification, decide not to accept the jurisdiction of the ICC over war crimes with regard to its nationals or to crimes committed on its territory for a period of seven years. In fact, only France and Colombia have taken advantage of this provision.

Further, jurisdiction may only be exercised provided either the state on the territory of which the conduct in question occurred (or if the crime was committed on board a vessel or aircraft, the state of registration of that vessel or aircraft) or the state of which the person accused of the crime is a national is a party to the Statute.⁸⁴ This means that the jurisdiction of the ICC is not universal, but territorial or personal in nature. It also means that the national of a state which is not a party to the Statute may be prosecuted where the crime is committed in the territory of a state which is a party. However, the Court may also have jurisdiction where a situation has been referred to the Prosecutor by the Security Council acting under Chapter VII of the Charter, which is thereby binding and in which case it is unnecessary that a relevant state be a party to the Statute.⁸⁵ This has happened with regard to the situation in Darfur, Sudan, which was referred to the Prosecutor on 31 March 2005 by the Security Council in resolution 1593. After a preliminary examination of the situation, an investigation was opened on 1 June 2005 and after a twenty-month investigation into crimes allegedly committed in Darfur since 1 July 2002, the Prosecutor presented evidence to the judges and a summons to two named Sudanese individuals, one being a government minister and the other a military officer, to appear was issued with regard to charges alleging the commission of war crimes and crimes against humanity.⁸⁶ Warrants of arrest were issued on 27 April 2007 against the two individuals by Pre-Trial Chamber I.⁸⁷

In addition to the Security Council referral, the ICC is also able to exercise its jurisdiction with regard to one or more of the crimes in question where the situation in which one or more of these crimes appears to have been committed has been referred to the Prosecutor by a state party to the Statute,⁸⁸ or the where Prosecutor has himself or herself initiated an investigation.⁸⁹ In the latter case, where the Prosecutor concludes, after having analysed the seriousness of the information received, that there is a reasonable basis to proceed to an investigation, a request for authorisation of an investigation, together with any supporting material collected, will be submitted to the Pre-Trial Chamber. Victims may also make representations to the Pre-Trial Chamber, in accordance with the

⁸⁴ Article 12(2). ⁸⁵ Article 13(b).

⁸⁶ See www.icc-cpi.int/library/organs/otp/ICC-OTP_Fact-Sheet-Darfur-20070227_en.pdf.

⁸⁷ See ICC-02/05-01/07-2 01-05-2007 1/16 CB PT and ICC-02/05-01/07-3 01-05-2007 1/17 CB PT. See also Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 47 ff. The Prosecutor applied for a warrant of arrest against the President of Sudan on 14 July 2008 alleging genocide, war crimes and crimes against humanity, ICC-OTP-20080714-PR341-ENG.

⁸⁸ Articles 13(a) and 14. ⁸⁹ Article 13(c).

Rules of Procedure and Evidence. Where the Pre-Trial Chamber, upon examination of the request and the supporting material, considers that there is a reasonable basis to proceed with an investigation, and that the case appears to fall within the jurisdiction of the Court, it shall authorise the commencement of the investigation, without prejudice to subsequent determinations by the Court with regard to the jurisdiction and admissibility of a case.⁹⁰

There have been three examples to date of referral by a state party. In December 2003, Uganda referred to the Prosecutor the situation with regard to the Lord's Resistance Army;⁹¹ in April 2004, the Democratic Republic of the Congo referred to the Prosecutor the situation of crimes committed in its territory;⁹² and in December 2004, the Central African Republic referred the situation in its country during the armed conflict of 2002–3 to the Prosecutor.⁹³

However, in a concession to obtain the support of states to the ICC, article 16 provides that no investigation or prosecution may be commenced

⁹⁰ Article 15. The refusal of the Pre-Trial Chamber to authorise the investigation will not preclude the presentation of a subsequent request by the Prosecutor based on new facts or evidence regarding the same situation. If, after the preliminary examination referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2, the Prosecutor concludes that the information provided does not constitute a reasonable basis for an investigation, he or she shall inform those who provided the information. This shall not preclude the Prosecutor from considering further information submitted to him or her regarding the same situation in the light of new facts or evidence.

⁹¹ In July 2004, an investigation was opened by the Prosecutor, and on 8 July 2005, warrants of arrest for crimes against humanity and war crimes against five senior commanders of the Lord's Resistance Army were issued under seal by Pre-Trial Chamber II. These warrants were made public on 13 October 2005: see www.icc-cpi.int/library/cases/ICC_20051410-056-1_English.pdf and Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 36 ff.

⁹² See ICC-OTP-20040419-50-En. An investigation was opened in June 2004, the first such investigation by the Prosecutor: see ICC-OTP-20040623-59-En. An arrest warrant was issued in early 2006 against Thomas Lubanga Dyilo, who was charged on various counts concerning the recruitment and use of child soldiers: see *ICC Newsletter*, No. 10, November 2006. However, a stay on proceedings was ordered and the accused released due to fair trial considerations. An appeal is pending, ICC-01/04-01/06, 2 July 2008. An arrest warrant was issued against Germain Katanga on 2 July 2007 and he was transferred to the custody of the Court in October that year: see www.icc-cpi.int/library/cases/DRC-18-10-07_En.pdf. An arrest warrant was issued against Mathieu Ngudjolo Chui on 7 July 2007 and he was transferred to the custody of the Court in February 2008: see www.icc-cpi.int/pressrelease_details&id=329.html. Both the latter individuals are also charged with regard to the situation in the Congo. See also Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 42 ff.

⁹³ An investigation was opened by the Prosecutor in May 2007: see www.icc-cpi.int/library/press/pressreleases/ICC-OTP-BN-20070522-220_A_EN.pdf and Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 51–2.

or proceeded with for a period of twelve months after the Security Council, in a resolution adopted under Chapter VII of the Charter, has so requested the Court. Such request may be renewed by the Council under the same conditions.⁹⁴ Article 98(2) provides that the Court may not proceed with a request for surrender which would require the requested state to act inconsistently with its obligations under international agreements pursuant to which the consent of a sending state is required to surrender a person of that state to the Court, unless the Court can first obtain the co-operation of the sending state for the giving of consent for the surrender. The provision, which was intended to deal with conflicting obligations, such as the position of soldiers stationed overseas under Status of Forces agreements which allow the sending state to exercise elements of criminal jurisdiction with regard to its soldiers, has been used by the US for a much broader purpose. The US has signed a number of bilateral agreements with states, some parties to the Rome Statute and some not, which provide that no nationals, current or former officials, or military personnel of either party may be surrendered or transferred by the other state to the ICC for any purpose. This tactic has been widely criticised and is highly controversial.⁹⁵

A key feature of the ICC, and one that distinguished it from the two international criminal tribunals, is that it is founded upon the concept of complementarity, which means essentially that the national courts have priority. A case will be inadmissible and the Court will be unable to exercise jurisdiction in a number of situations.⁹⁶ These are, first, where the case is being investigated or prosecuted by a state which has jurisdiction over it, unless the state is unwilling or unable genuinely to carry out the

⁹⁴ See Security Council resolution 1422 (2002) calling for the ICC to defer any exercise of jurisdiction for twelve months if a case arises involving current or former officials or personnel from a contributing state not a party to the Rome Statute over acts or omissions relating to a UN established or authorised operation. This was renewed for a further twelve months in resolution 1487 (2003), but not subsequently: see e.g. D. McGoldrick, 'Political and Legal Responses to the ICC' in McGoldrick *et al.* *The Permanent International Criminal Court*, p. 415. However, resolutions 1497 (2003) and 1593 (2005) provide that personnel from a state not a party to the Rome Statute will be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of that state for all acts related to the multinational force or UN force in Liberia and Darfur respectively: see Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 142 ff.

⁹⁵ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 144–5; M. Benzing, 'US Bilateral Non-Surrender Agreements and Article 98 of the Statute of the International Criminal Court', 8 *Max Planck Yearbook of United Nations Law*, 2004, p. 182, and Schabas, *International Criminal Court*, pp. 29 ff.

⁹⁶ Article 17. See also the *Thomas Lubanga Dyilo* case, ICC-01/04-01/06, Decision on the Prosecutor's Application for a Warrant of Arrest, 10 February 2006.

investigation or prosecution; secondly, where the case is being investigated or prosecuted by a state which has jurisdiction over it and the state has decided not to prosecute the person concerned, unless the decision resulted from the unwillingness⁹⁷ or inability⁹⁸ of the state genuinely to prosecute; and thirdly, where the person concerned has already been tried for conduct which is the subject of the complaint, unless the proceedings before the court other than the ICC were for the purpose of shielding the person concerned from criminal responsibility for crimes within the jurisdiction of the ICC or where those proceedings were not conducted independently or impartially.⁹⁹

The Court consists of four organs. These are respectively the Presidency; an Appeals Division, a Trial Division and a Pre-Trial Division; the Office of the Prosecutor; and the Registry.¹⁰⁰ The eighteen judges elected must be independent and serve on a full-time basis,¹⁰¹ have competence in criminal law or in relevant areas of international law and must represent the principal legal systems in the world, as well as reflect equitable geographical representation and the need for a fair representation of male and female judges. The judges are elected by the Assembly of States Parties using rather complicated voting rules.¹⁰² The Presidency, consisting of the President and the First and Second Vice-Presidents, is responsible for the proper administration of the Court (apart from the Office of the Prosecutor),¹⁰³ while the Registry is responsible for the non-judicial aspects of the administration and servicing of the Court.¹⁰⁴ The Office of the Prosecutor acts independently as a separate organ of the Court. It is responsible for receiving referrals and any substantiated information on crimes within the jurisdiction of the Court, for examining them and for conducting investigations and prosecutions before the Court.¹⁰⁵ The Office is headed by the Prosecutor who is elected by secret ballot by members of the Assembly of States Parties and assisted by one or more Deputy Prosecutors.¹⁰⁶

⁹⁷ In order to determine this, the Court must consider whether the proceedings were being undertaken or the decision made in order to shield the person concerned from criminal responsibility for crimes within the jurisdiction of the ICC; whether there has been an unjustified delay in the proceedings, and whether the proceedings have been conducted independently or impartially, article 17(2)a–c.

⁹⁸ In order to determine this, the Court must consider whether, due to a total or substantial collapse or unavailability of its national judicial system, the state is unable to obtain the accused or the necessary evidence and testimony or is otherwise unable to carry out its proceedings, article 17(3).

⁹⁹ Article 20(3). ¹⁰⁰ Article 34. ¹⁰¹ Article 40. ¹⁰² Article 36.

¹⁰³ Article 38. ¹⁰⁴ Article 43. ¹⁰⁵ See further articles 53–5. ¹⁰⁶ Article 42.

The Pre-Trial Division is composed of judges with predominantly criminal trial experience, who serve in the Division for a period of three years. The Pre-Trial Chamber is composed either of a single judge or of a bench of three judges¹⁰⁷ and confirms or rejects the authorisation to commence an investigation and makes a preliminary determination that the case falls within the jurisdiction of the Court, without prejudice to subsequent determinations by the Court with regard to the jurisdiction and admissibility of a case. The Pre-Trial Chamber may also review a decision of the Prosecutor not to proceed with an investigation either on its own initiative, or at the request of the state making a referral under article 14, or the United Nations Security Council under article 13(b),¹⁰⁸ and can issue warrants of arrests and summons to appear before the Court at the request of the Prosecutor, issue orders to grant the rights of the parties in the proceeding, and, where necessary, provide for the protection and privacy of victims and witnesses, the preservation of evidence, the protection of persons who have been arrested or appeared in response to a summons, and the protection of national security information. Within a reasonable time after the person's surrender or voluntary appearance before the Court, the Pre-Trial Chamber holds a hearing in the presence of the Prosecutor, the person charged and his/her counsel to confirm or reject the charges. Once the Pre-Trial Chamber has confirmed the charges and committed the person for trial by the Trial Chamber, the Presidency will establish a Trial Chamber to conduct subsequent proceedings.

The Trial Division is also predominantly composed of judges with criminal trial experience who serve for a period of three years. Three judges of the Division carry out the judicial functions of the Trial Chamber.¹⁰⁹ The primary function of the Trial Chamber is to ensure that a trial is fair and expeditious, and is conducted with full respect for the rights of the accused with regard for the protection of victims and witnesses.¹¹⁰ The Trial Chamber will determine whether the accused is innocent or guilty. In the latter case, imprisonment for a specified number of years, which may not exceed a maximum of thirty years or a term of life imprisonment, may be imposed. Financial penalties may also be imposed¹¹¹ and the Trial Chamber can also order a convicted person to pay money for compensation, restitution or rehabilitation for victims.¹¹² The trial must be held in public unless special circumstances require that certain proceedings be in

¹⁰⁷ Article 39(2)(b)(iii). ¹⁰⁸ Article 53. ¹⁰⁹ Article 39(2)(b)(ii).

¹¹⁰ Article 64. ¹¹¹ Article 77. ¹¹² Article 75(2).

closed session to protect confidential or sensitive information to be given in evidence, or to protect victims and witnesses.¹¹³

The Appeals Division is composed of judges with established competence in relevant areas of international law and the Appeals Chamber is composed of all the judges assigned to the Appeals Division.¹¹⁴ The Prosecutor or the convicted person can appeal against the decisions of the Pre-Trial and Trial Chambers to the Appeals Chamber. A sentence may be appealed on the ground of procedural error, error of fact, error of law, or any other ground that affects the fairness or reliability of the proceedings or decision. Further, a sentence may be appealed on the ground of disproportion between the crime and the sentence.¹¹⁵ The Appeals Chamber may decide to reverse or amend the decision, judgment or sentence, or order a new trial before a different Trial Chamber.¹¹⁶

*Hybrid courts and other internationalised domestic
courts and tribunals*¹¹⁷

In addition to the temporary and geographically limited international criminal tribunals and the permanent International Criminal Court, a new style of judicial institution has made an appearance recently in which both international and national elements co-exist in varying combinations. Such institutions, which may for convenience be termed hybrid courts, exist primarily to enhance legitimacy and increase acceptability both locally and internationally, invariably in difficult post-conflict situations where reliance upon purely domestic mechanisms carries significant political risks or costs. However, as will be seen, there are a number of models adopted which differ as to formal legal origin, constitutional status, applicable law and structure. Some of these mechanisms may more

¹¹³ Article 68. ¹¹⁴ Article 39(2)(b)(i).

¹¹⁵ Article 81. Either party may appeal against decisions as to, for example, jurisdiction or admissibility; decisions as to the grant or denial of the release of the person being investigated or prosecuted; and decisions of the Pre-Trial Chamber to act on its own initiative under article 56(3): see article 82.

¹¹⁶ Article 83. The revision of the sentence can be requested if new evidence has been discovered which was not available at the time of the trial and is sufficiently important or decisive for the Appeals Chamber to revise or amend the sentence: see article 84.

¹¹⁷ See e.g. *Internationalized Criminal Courts* (eds. C. P. R. Romano, A. Nollkaemper and J. K. Kleffner), Oxford, 2004; Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, chapter 9; Schabas, *The UN International Criminal Tribunals*; and L. A. Dickinson, 'The Promise of Hybrid Courts', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 295.

correctly be termed internationalised courts or tribunals¹¹⁸ as the balance between the international and the domestic tips far to the latter. They are essentially domestic courts applying domestic law, but with a heightened international element in terms, for example, of their function or origins, the basis of their applicable law or the use of international experts. Some courts are difficult to place along the spectrum, but together this category marks an extension of international concern and involvement in issues focusing upon individual criminal responsibility for what are international crimes, even if subsequently incorporated into domestic law.

The Special Court for Sierra Leone

The Special Court for Sierra Leone was established, following a particularly violent civil war, by virtue of an agreement between the UN and Sierra Leone dated 16 January 2002, pursuant to Security Council resolution 1315 (2000), in order to prosecute persons bearing 'the greatest responsibility for serious violations of international humanitarian law and Sierra Leonean law committed in the territory of Sierra Leone since 30 November 1996' on the basis of individual criminal responsibility.¹¹⁹ However, it is stipulated that any transgressions by peacekeepers and related personnel present in the country by virtue of agreements with the UN or other governments or regional organisations or otherwise with the consent of the Sierra Leonean government are within the 'primary jurisdiction' of the sending state.¹²⁰

The Special Court consists of the Chambers (two Trial Chambers and an Appeals Chamber), the Prosecutor and the Registry. Three judges serve

¹¹⁸ See for this terminology, M. P. Scharf, 'The Iraqi High Tribunal', 5 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2007, pp. 258, 259.

¹¹⁹ Article 1 of the Agreement contained in S/2002/246, Appendix II, and articles 1 and 6 of the Statute of the Special Court, contained in S/2002/246, Appendix III, and see Security Council resolution 1436 (2002) affirming 'strong support' for the Court, and the Report on the Special Court by Professor A. Cassese, the independent expert commissioned by the UN Secretary-General to review the work of the Special Court, December 2006, www.sc-sl.org/documents/independentexpertreport.pdf. See also R. Cryer, 'A "Special Court" for Sierra Leone', 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 435; Schabas, *The UN International Criminal Tribunals*; A. Smith, 'Sierra Leone: The Intersection of Law, Policy and Practice', P. Mochochoko and G. Tortora, 'The Management Committee for the Special Court for Sierra Leone', and W. A. Schabas, 'Internationalized Courts and their Relationship with Alternative Accountability Mechanisms' in Romano *et al.*, *Internationalized Criminal Courts*, at pp. 125, 141 and 157 respectively.

¹²⁰ Article 1(2) of the Statute of the Special Court for Sierra Leone.

in each Trial Chamber, of whom one is appointed by the Sierra Leonean government and two are appointed by the UN Secretary-General. Five judges sit in the Appeals Chamber, of whom two are appointed by the government and three by the UN Secretary-General.¹²¹ The Appeals Chamber hears appeals from persons convicted by the Trial Chamber or from the Prosecutor on the grounds of procedural error, an error on a question of law invalidating the decision or an error of fact which has occasioned a miscarriage of justice. The Appeals Chamber may affirm, reverse or revise the decisions taken by the Trial Chamber. In so acting, the judges of the Appeals Chamber of the Special Court are to be guided by the decisions of the Appeals Chamber of the International Tribunals for the former Yugoslavia and for Rwanda. In the interpretation and application of the laws of Sierra Leone, they are to be guided by the decisions of the Supreme Court of Sierra Leone.¹²²

The Prosecutor, who is appointed by the UN Secretary-General for a three-year term and acts independently as a separate organ of the Special Court, is responsible for the investigation and prosecution of persons who bear the greatest responsibility for serious violations of international humanitarian law and crimes under Sierra Leonean law committed in the territory of Sierra Leone since 30 November 1996. The Office of the Prosecutor has the power to question suspects, victims and witnesses, to collect evidence and to conduct on-site investigations. The Prosecutor is assisted by a Sierra Leonean Deputy Prosecutor, and by a mixture of Sierra Leonean and international staff.¹²³ The Registry is responsible for the administration and servicing of the Special Court and is appointed by the UN Secretary-General after consultation with the President of the Special Court.¹²⁴

The jurisdiction of the Special Court mirrors the hybrid nature of its creation and staffing. The Court has jurisdiction with regard to crimes against humanity; violations of article 3 common to the Geneva Conventions and of Additional Protocol II; other serious violations of

¹²¹ Article 12(1). Eight judges were appointed in July 2002: see UN Press Release SG/A/813. There are currently eleven judges and one alternate judge.

¹²² Article 20. Under article 21, the convicted person or the Prosecutor may apply to the Appeals Chamber for review where a new fact has been discovered which was not known at the time of the proceedings before the Trial Chamber or Appeals Chamber and which could have been a decisive factor in reaching the decision. The Appeals Chamber may reject the application, reconvene the Trial Chamber or retain jurisdiction over the matter.

¹²³ Article 15. ¹²⁴ Article 16.

international humanitarian law¹²⁵ and certain crimes under Sierra Leonean law.¹²⁶ Article 8 of the Statute provides that the Special Court and the national courts of Sierra Leone have concurrent jurisdiction, but that the Special Court has primacy over the national courts and that at any stage of the procedure it may formally request a national court to defer to its competence. The Annual Report of the Special Court for 2006–7 notes that thirteen persons were indicted, all between March and September 2003. Of these, nine were in custody, one dead, one still at large, while two indictments were withdrawn. Trials of the nine in custody began in 2004 and 2005 in three joint trials. Of particular interest is the Charles Taylor case. He was the former President of Liberia. His claim to immunity was rejected by the Appeals Chamber in May 2004¹²⁷ and he is currently standing trial in The Hague at the premises of the ICC.¹²⁸ Judgment in the *AFRC* trial was handed down on 20 June 2007 and the three accused convicted of offences. Sentencing took place on 19 July 2007 and the appeal against sentencing was dismissed on 22 February 2008.¹²⁹ On 2 August 2007, Trial Chamber I reached a decision in the trial of three persons accused of being leaders of the so-called ‘Civil Defence Forces’, of whom one died prior to pronouncement of judgment, in which the two remaining accused were convicted.¹³⁰ The Special Court adopted a completion strategy under which proceedings were due to be completed in 2007.¹³¹ However, this date was not able to be met.

¹²⁵ Articles 2–4 of the Statute.

¹²⁶ Article 5 of the Statute. These crimes relate to offences relating to the abuse of girls under the Prevention of Cruelty to Children Act 1926 and offences relating to the wanton destruction of property under the Malicious Damages Act 1861. However, the Special Court has no jurisdiction with regard to any person under the age of fifteen at the time of the alleged commission of the crime. No person may be tried before a national court of Sierra Leone for acts for which he or she has already been tried by the Special Court. But a person who has been tried by a national court for the acts referred to in articles 2 to 4 of the Statute may be subsequently tried by the Special Court if either the act for which he or she was tried was characterised as an ordinary crime; or the national court proceedings were not impartial or independent, or were designed to shield the accused from international criminal responsibility or the case was not diligently prosecuted: see article 9.

¹²⁷ See www.sc-sl.org/Documents/Taylor/SCSL-03-01-I-059.pdf.

¹²⁸ See Annual Report 2006–7, p. 5. ¹²⁹ See www.sc-sl.org/AFRC.html.

¹³⁰ See www.sc-sl.org/documents/CDF/SCSL-04-14-T-785A.pdf. See also S. M. Meisenberg, ‘Legality of Amnesties in International Humanitarian Law – The Lomé Decision of the Special Court for Sierra Leone’, 86 *International Review of the Red Cross*, 2004, p. 837.

¹³¹ See A/59/816 – S/2005/350.

The Extraordinary Chambers of Cambodia

The Khmer Rouge regime under Pol Pot took power in Cambodia in 1975 following a civil war and proceeded to commit widescale atrocities which are believed to have resulted in the death of well over 1 million people. The regime was ousted by a Vietnamese invasion in 1979. In 1997, the Cambodian government requested the United Nations (UN) to assist in establishing a trial process in order to prosecute the senior leaders of the Khmer Rouge. In 2001, the Cambodian National Assembly passed a law to create a court to try serious crimes committed during the Khmer Rouge regime. On 13 May 2003, after a long period of negotiation, the UN General Assembly approved a Draft Agreement between the UN and Cambodia providing for Extraordinary Chambers in the courts of Cambodia, with the aim of bringing to trial senior leaders of Democratic Kampuchea and those who were most responsible for the crimes and serious violations of Cambodian penal law, international humanitarian law and custom, and international conventions recognised by Cambodia, that were committed during the period from 17 April 1975 to 6 January 1979.¹³² The Agreement was ratified by Cambodia on 19 October 2004.

Article 2 of the Agreement provided that the Extraordinary Chambers were to have subject-matter jurisdiction consistent with that laid down in the Cambodian Law (of 2001) and that the Agreement was to be implemented via that law. However, it is provided also that the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 is to apply to the Agreement. Accordingly, the Agreement must be seen as an international treaty, although one closely linked with the relevant domestic law. The Chambers are composed of a Trial Chamber, consisting of three Cambodian judges and two international judges, and a Supreme Court Chamber, serving as both appellate chamber and final instance and consisting of four Cambodian judges and three international judges. The UN Secretary-General was to nominate seven judges and the Cambodian Supreme

¹³² See General Assembly resolutions 57/228A and 57/228B and A/57/806. See also R. Williams, 'The Cambodian Extraordinary Chambers – A Dangerous Precedent for International Justice?', 53 ICLQ, 2004, p. 227; G. Acquaviva, 'New Paths in International Criminal Justice? The Internal Rules of the Cambodian Extraordinary Chambers', 6 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2008, p. 129; C. Etcheson, 'The Politics of Genocide Justice in Cambodia' and E. E. Meijer, 'The Extraordinary Chambers in the Courts of Cambodia for Prosecuting Crimes Committed by the Khmer Rouge: Jurisdiction, Organization and Procedure of an Internationalized Tribunal' in Romano *et al.*, *Internationalized Criminal Courts*, at pp. 181 and 207 respectively.

Council of Magistracy, the highest domestic judicial body, was to choose five of these to serve in the Chambers.¹³³ The Agreement also provided for independent co-investigation judges, one Cambodian and one international, who are responsible for the conduct of investigations,¹³⁴ and two independent co-prosecutors, one Cambodian and one international, competent to appear in both Chambers, who are responsible for the conduct of the prosecutions.¹³⁵

The jurisdiction of the Extraordinary Chambers covers the crime of genocide as defined in the Genocide Convention, 1948, crimes against humanity as defined in the 1998 Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court and grave breaches of the 1949 Geneva Conventions and such other crimes as are defined in Chapter II of the Cambodian Law of 2001.¹³⁶ The procedure of the Chambers is to be in accordance with Cambodian law, but where Cambodian law does not deal with a particular matter, or where there is uncertainty regarding the interpretation or application of a relevant rule of Cambodian law, or where there is a question regarding the consistency of such a rule with international standards, guidance may also be sought in procedural rules established at the international level. It is also provided that the Extraordinary Chambers are to exercise their jurisdiction in accordance with international standards of justice, fairness and due process of law, as set out in Articles 14 and 15 of the 1966 International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, to which Cambodia is a party.¹³⁷

A list of five suspects was submitted by the prosecutors on 19 July 2007 to the Chambers with a request that they be indicted and, on 31 July 2007, the first suspect (Khang Khék Ieu, known as 'Duch') was indicted.¹³⁸ To

¹³³ Article 3 of the Agreement. The Secretary-General nominated seven judges in March 2006 and the Supreme Council of Magistracy approved a list of thirty Cambodian and international judges in May that year to be followed by appointment by Royal Decree. The judges were duly sworn in in July 2006 and Internal Rules were adopted in June 2007 and revised in February 2008.

¹³⁴ Article 5.

¹³⁵ Article 6. In the case of both the co-investigating judges and co-prosecutors, the UN Secretary-General was to make two nominations out of which the Supreme Council of Magistracy was to choose one international investigating judge and one international prosecutor. Any differences between the two co-investigating judges and the two co-prosecutors are to be settled by a Pre-Trial Chamber of five judges, three appointed by the Supreme Council of the Magistracy, with one as President, and two appointed by the Supreme Council of the Magistracy upon nomination by the Secretary-General: see article 7.

¹³⁶ Article 9. ¹³⁷ Article 12.

¹³⁸ Case file No. 001/18-07-2007-ECCC/OCIJ. See also Annual Report 2007, p. 11.

date, five suspects are before the Chambers¹³⁹ and two appeal proceedings have taken place.¹⁴⁰

Kosovo Regulation 64 panels¹⁴¹

Following the conflict between the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (as it then was, today Serbia) and NATO in 1999, the Security Council adopted resolution 1244, which *inter alia* called for the establishment of an 'international civil presence' in Kosovo. The international civil presence was granted responsibilities, including promoting 'the establishment, pending a final settlement, of substantial autonomy and self-government'; performing basic civilian administrative functions; organising the development of provisional institutions for democratic and autonomous self-government pending a political settlement; and protecting and promoting human rights.¹⁴² The competence of the international civil presence carried out by the UN Interim Administration Mission in Kosovo (UNMIK) was extensive. Section 1.1 of the first regulation issued by UNMIK in 1999 stated that: 'All legislative and executive authority with respect to Kosovo, including the administration of the judiciary, is vested in UNMIK and is exercised by the Special Representative of the Secretary General',¹⁴³ while section 1.2 provided that the Special Representative could appoint any person to perform functions in the civil administration in Kosovo, including the judiciary, or remove such person in accordance with the applicable law.¹⁴⁴

Following a series of disturbances in 2000, UNMIK Regulation 2000/6 was adopted, providing for the appointment of international judges and prosecutors,¹⁴⁵ and UNMIK Regulation 2000/64 was adopted, providing for UNMIK to create panels (known as Regulation 64 panels) of three judges, including at least two international judges, at the request

¹³⁹ Annual Report 2007, pp. 9 ff. ¹⁴⁰ Annual Report 2007, pp. 13–14.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. J. Cerone and C. Baldwin, 'Explaining and Evaluating the UNMIK Court System' and J. C. Cady and N. Booth, 'Internationalized Courts in Kosovo: An UNMIK Perspective' in Romano *et al.*, *Internationalized Criminal Courts*, at pp. 41 and 59 respectively. See also S. de Bertodano, 'Current Developments in Internationalized Courts', 1 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2003, pp. 226, 239 ff., and *Finding the Balance: The Scales of Justice in Kosovo*, International Crisis Group, 2002.

¹⁴² Paragraphs 10 and 11. ¹⁴³ UNMIK/REG/1991/1, S/1999/987, p. 14.

¹⁴⁴ As amended in UNMIK/REG/2000/54.

¹⁴⁵ Initially in Mitrovica and then in all domestic courts and the Supreme Court: see UNMIK Regulation 2000/34. Note that attempts to establish a Kosovo War and Ethnic Crimes Court were abandoned in September 2000: see Cady and Booth, 'Internationalized Courts in Kosovo', p. 60.

of the accused, defence counsel or prosecutor. Such international judges functioned as regular court judges in Kosovo with powers derived from domestic legislation, but their involvement in a case was under either their own control or at the behest of the UN Secretary-General's Special Representative in Kosovo. The applicable law was stated to be regulations promulgated by the Special Representative and subsidiary instruments issued thereunder and the law in force in Kosovo on 22 March 1989.¹⁴⁶ However, problems surfaced, particularly with regard to the high rate of national judge convictions overturned by retrials by international judges and lack of systematic publication of case decisions and brevity of such decisions.¹⁴⁷ Kosovo declared independence in early 2008.¹⁴⁸

East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes¹⁴⁹

Following a period of violence in East Timor instigated by pro-Indonesian militia after the ending of the long Indonesian occupation, the Security Council established the UN Transitional Administration in East Timor (UNTAET) with a wide-ranging mandate to administer the territory.¹⁵⁰ By Regulation No. 1 adopted on 27 November 1999, all legislative and executive authority with respect to East Timor, including the administration of the judiciary, was vested in UNTAET and exercised by the Transitional Administrator. This administrator was given the competence further to appoint any person to perform functions in the civil administration in the territory, including the judiciary, or remove such person and to issue regulations and directives. UNTAET created a new courts

¹⁴⁶ See UNMIK/REG/1999/24 and UNMIK/REG/2000/59. Section 1.3 provided that all persons exercising public functions were to observe internationally recognised human rights standards as reflected in particular in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, the International Covenants on Human Rights, the European Convention on Human Rights, the Racial Discrimination Convention, the Women's Discrimination Convention, the Torture Convention and the Rights of the Child Convention.

¹⁴⁷ See e.g. de Bertodano, 'Current Developments in Internationalized Courts', pp. 239 ff.

¹⁴⁸ See above, chapter 5, p. 201.

¹⁴⁹ See e.g. S. de Bertodano, 'East Timor: Trials and Tribulations' in Romano *et al.*, *Internationalized Criminal Courts*, p. 79; S. Linton, 'Prosecuting Atrocities at the District Court of Dili', 2 *Melbourne Journal of International Law*, 2001, p. 414, and S. Linton and C. Reiger, 'The Evolving Jurisprudence and Practice of East Timor's Special Panels for Serious Crimes on Admission of Guilt, Duress and Superior Orders', 4 *Yearbook of International Humanitarian Law*, 2001, p. 1. See also the report produced by the Judicial System Monitoring Programme in April 2007, [www.jsmp.minihub.org/Reports/2007/SPSC/SERIOUS%20CRIMES%20DIGEST%20\(Megan\)%20250407.pdf](http://www.jsmp.minihub.org/Reports/2007/SPSC/SERIOUS%20CRIMES%20DIGEST%20(Megan)%20250407.pdf).

¹⁵⁰ Resolution 1272 (1999). See also resolution 1264 (1999) and S/1999/24.

system,¹⁵¹ including the establishment of special panels to deal with serious crimes within the District Court of Dili and in the Court of Appeal.¹⁵² These serious crimes were defined as genocide, war crimes, crimes against humanity, murder, sexual offences and torture,¹⁵³ for which there was individual criminal responsibility.¹⁵⁴ The applicable law was the law of East Timor as promulgated by sections 2 and 3 of UNTAET Regulation No. 1999/1 and any subsequent UNTAET regulations and directives; and, where appropriate, applicable treaties and recognised principles and norms of international law, including the established principles of the international law of armed conflict.

The Panels in the District Court of Dili were to be composed of two international judges and one East Timorese judge, as were the Panels in the Court of Appeal in Dili. In cases of special importance or gravity, a panel of five judges composed of three international and two East Timorese judges could be established.¹⁵⁵ However, the system had barely started before 2003 and in the *Armando Dos Santos* case, the Court of Appeal held, in a decision much criticised,¹⁵⁶ that since the Indonesian occupation was illegal, Indonesian law was never validly in force so that domestic law was Portuguese law and, further, Regulation 2000/15 could not be applied retroactively so that only Portuguese law could be applied to crimes committed before 6 June 2000.¹⁵⁷ On 20 May 2002, the UN handed over its authority to the new institutions of East Timor and UNTAET was replaced by the UN Mission of Support in East Timor (UNMISET), although UNTAET regulations continued in force. In May 2005, UNMISET came to an end and the Serious Crimes Unit closed. Partly no doubt as a consequence, the Special Panels suspended operations indefinitely. By this time, fifty-five trials, most involving relatively low-level defendants, had taken place, eighty-four individuals had been convicted and three acquitted.¹⁵⁸

¹⁵¹ UNTAET Regulations 2000/11 and 2000/14.

¹⁵² Regulation 2000/15. ¹⁵³ Defined in sections 4–10 of Regulation 2000/15.

¹⁵⁴ Section 14. ¹⁵⁵ Section 22.

¹⁵⁶ See de Bertodano, 'East Timor', pp. 90 ff., and de Bertodano, 'Current Developments in Internationalized Courts: East Timor – Justice Denied', 2 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2004, p. 910.

¹⁵⁷ Case No. 16/201: see www.jsmp.minihub.org/Judgements/courtfofappeal/Ct_of_App-dos-Santos_English22703.pdf.

¹⁵⁸ See the digest of cases before the Special Panels, produced in 2007, [www.jsmp.minihub.org/Reports/2007/SPSC/SERIOUS%20CRIMES%20DIGEST%20\(Megan\)%20250407.pdf](http://www.jsmp.minihub.org/Reports/2007/SPSC/SERIOUS%20CRIMES%20DIGEST%20(Megan)%20250407.pdf).

The Bosnia War Crimes Chamber¹⁵⁹

In January 2003, the Office of the High Representative in Bosnia¹⁶⁰ and the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia issued a set of joint conclusions recommending the creation of a specialised chamber within the State Court of Bosnia and Herzegovina to try war crimes cases.¹⁶¹ This was supported by the UN Security Council.¹⁶² The Chamber came into being in 2005 with jurisdiction concerning cases referred to it by the ICTY pursuant to Rule 11 *bis* of the ICTY Rules of Procedure and Evidence with regard to lower- to mid-level accused persons. As such, this procedure forms part of the completion strategy of the ICTY.¹⁶³ In addition, the Chamber has jurisdiction with regard to cases submitted to it by the Office of the Prosecutor of the ICTY where investigations have not been completed, and the first case was referred to the Chamber on 1 September 2005.¹⁶⁴ Further, the Chamber also has jurisdiction over what have been termed 'Rules of the Road' cases. The 'Rules of the Road' procedure was first established in response to the widespread fear of arbitrary arrest and detention immediately after the conflict in Bosnia. Originally, the Bosnian authorities were obliged to submit every war crimes case proposed for prosecution in Bosnia to the Office of the Prosecutor of the ICTY to determine whether the evidence was sufficient by international standards before proceeding to arrest. This review function was subsequently assumed by the Special Department for War Crimes within the Office of the Prosecutor of the State Court of Bosnia in October 2004. Where the case has not yet led to a confirmed indictment and where the prosecutor determines that the case is 'highly sensitive', it will be passed to the Chamber, otherwise it will be tried before the relevant cantonal or district court. If, however, the indictment has been confirmed, the case will remain with the relevant cantonal or district court.

The Chamber has both trial and appeals chambers and there are currently five judicial panels, each comprising two international judges and one local judge, the latter of whom is the presiding judge of the

¹⁵⁹ See Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 159 ff.; Bohlander, 'Referring an Indictment from the ICTY and the ICTR to Another Court', p. 219; *Looking for Justice – The War Crimes Chamber in Bosnia and Herzegovina*, Human Rights Watch, 2006, and *Narrowing the Impunity Gap – Trials Before Bosnia's War Crimes Chamber*, Human Rights Watch, 2007.

¹⁶⁰ As to the High Representative, see above, chapter 5, p. 231.

¹⁶¹ See www.un.org/icty/pressreal/2003/p723-e.htm.

¹⁶² See resolution 1503 (2003). ¹⁶³ See above, p. 407.

¹⁶⁴ *Prosecutor v. Radovan Stanković*, ICTY, Case No. IT-96-23/2-AR11 bis.1, Decision on Rule 11 bis Referral (Appeals Chamber), 1 September 2005, para. 30.

panel. The Office of the Prosecutor of the State Court includes a Special Department for War Crimes and there are five international prosecutors and one international acting prosecutor, as well as eight local prosecutors, including the deputy prosecutor.¹⁶⁵ The Registry manages the process of appointing and engaging international judges and prosecutors. The international judges are appointed by the High Representative after a joint recommendation of the President of the State Court and the President of the High Judicial and Prosecutorial Council, while the international prosecutors are appointed by the High Representative following a joint recommendation from the Bosnian Chief Prosecutor, the President of the High Judicial and Prosecutorial Council and the Registry.¹⁶⁶

As of October 2006, the Chamber had confirmed a total of eighteen indictments involving thirty-two defendants. In addition to cases initiated locally, the Chamber had received five Rule 11 *bis* referrals, involving nine accused, from the ICTY.¹⁶⁷ The applicable law is that of Bosnia, including criminal and criminal procedure codes introduced by the High Representative in 2003.

The Special Tribunal for Lebanon¹⁶⁸

Following the assassination of Rafiq Hariri, the former Prime Minister of Lebanon, in February 2005, the Security Council established an International Independent Investigation Commission to aid the Lebanese authorities in their investigation. As a result of its report and the request of the Lebanese government to establish 'a tribunal of an international character' to try those persons accused of the assassination,¹⁶⁹ the Security Council adopted resolution 1664 (2006) calling upon the UN Secretary-General to negotiate an agreement with the government of Lebanon aimed at establishing a tribunal of an international character based on the highest international standards of criminal justice. The Secretary-General's report¹⁷⁰ was accepted by the Council in resolution 1757 (2007). Acting

¹⁶⁵ See Human Rights Watch, *Looking for Justice*, pp. 4 ff.

¹⁶⁶ The appointments by the High Representative are made under the powers vested in him by article 5, annex 10, of the Dayton Peace Accord.

¹⁶⁷ See Human Rights Watch, *Narrowing the Impunity Gap*, p. 5.

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, p. 155; B. Fassbender, 'Reflections on the International Legality of the Special Tribunal for Lebanon', C. Aptel, 'Some Innovations in the Statute of the Special Tribunal for Lebanon', and N. N. Jurdi, 'The Subject-Matter Jurisdiction of the Special Tribunal for Lebanon', 5 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2007, pp. 1091, 1107 and 1125 respectively.

¹⁶⁹ See Security Council resolutions 1595 (2005), 1636 (2005) and 1644 (2005). See also S/2005/783 and S/2006/375.

¹⁷⁰ S/2006/893 and S/2007/150. See resolutions 1686 (2006) and 1748 (2007) calling for the work of the Commission to continue.

under Chapter VII of the Charter, the Council established the Special Tribunal for Lebanon by virtue of an agreement with the government of Lebanon, annexed to the resolution. The Statute of the Tribunal is attached to the agreement.

The Tribunal has jurisdiction not only with regard to those responsible for the assassination of Rafiq Hariri but also with regard to those responsible for other attacks that occurred in Lebanon between 1 October 2004 and 12 December 2005, or any later date decided by the parties and with the consent of the Security Council, that are seen as connected in accordance with the principles of criminal justice and are of a nature and gravity similar to the attack of 14 February 2005.¹⁷¹ The Tribunal is to be composed of the Chambers, the Prosecutor, the Registry and the Defence Office. The Chambers, to be composed of between eleven and fourteen independent judges, are to consist of a Pre-Trial Judge, a Trial Chamber and an Appeals Chamber. A single international judge is to serve as Pre-Trial Judge, while three judges are to serve in the Trial Chamber, being one Lebanese judge and two international judges. Five judges are to serve in the Appeals Chamber, of whom two are to be Lebanese and three international judges.¹⁷² The Prosecutor and the Registrar are to be appointed by the UN Secretary-General after consultation with the Lebanese government, while the Head of the Defence Office is to be appointed by the Secretary-General after consultation with the President of the Tribunal.¹⁷³ The applicable law is Lebanese criminal law and the Tribunal is to have concurrent jurisdiction with Lebanese courts and have primacy over them.¹⁷⁴

The Iraqi High Tribunal¹⁷⁵

The Governing Council of Iraq was authorised by the Coalition Provisional Authority on 10 December 2003 to establish the Iraqi Special

¹⁷¹ Article 1 of the Statute. ¹⁷² Articles 7 and 8 of the Statute.

¹⁷³ Articles 11, 12 and 13 of the Statute. The Registrar was appointed on 11 March 2008: see www.un.org/apps/news/story.asp?NewsID=25925&Cr=Leban&Cr1.

¹⁷⁴ Articles 2 and 4 of the Statute.

¹⁷⁵ See e.g. Scharf, 'The Iraqi High Tribunal', Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, p. 160; I. Bantekas, 'The Iraqi Special Tribunal for Crimes against Humanity', 54 ICLQ, 2004, p. 237; M. C. Bassiouni, 'Post-Conflict Justice in Iraq: An Appraisal of the Iraqi Special Tribunal', 38 *Cornell International Law Journal*, 2005, p. 327; M. Sissons and A. S. Bassin, 'Was the Dujail Trial Fair?', 5 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2007, p. 272; G. Mettraux, 'The 2005 Revision of the Statute of the Iraqi Special Tribunal', 5 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2007, p. 287; S. de Bertodano, 'Were There More Acceptable Alternatives to the Iraqi High Tribunal?', 5 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2007, p. 294.

Tribunal to hear crimes alleged against the former regime of Saddam Hussein.¹⁷⁶ A revised Statute was enacted in 2005 and the tribunal renamed the Iraqi High Tribunal. The Tribunal has jurisdiction over genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes, the definitions of which are based upon the provisions of the Rome Statute and newly incorporated into Iraqi law, committed between 16 July 1968 and 1 May 2003¹⁷⁷ by Iraqi nationals or residents.¹⁷⁸ Persons accused of committing crimes within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal bear individual criminal responsibility.¹⁷⁹ The Tribunal has concurrent jurisdiction with national courts but primacy over them. Article 6(b) of the Statute provides that the President of the Tribunal shall be required to appoint non-Iraqi nationals to act in advisory capacities or as observers to the Trial Chambers and to the Appeals Chamber. The role of the non-Iraqi nationals is stated to be to provide assistance to the judges with respect to international law and the experience of similar tribunals (whether international or otherwise), and to monitor the protection by the Tribunal of general due process of law standards. In appointing such non-Iraqi experts, the President of the Tribunal is entitled to request assistance from the international community, including the United Nations. However, the judges and prosecutors of the Tribunal are all Iraqi nationals. Criticisms have been made of the Tribunal, including the fact that it can impose the death penalty, as for example with regard to Saddam Hussein upon his conviction in the *Dujail* case.¹⁸⁰

The Serbian War Crimes Chamber

On 1 July 2003, the Serbian National Assembly adopted a law establishing a specialised War Crimes Chamber within the Belgrade District Court to prosecute and investigate crimes against humanity and serious violations of international humanitarian law as defined in Serbian law. A War Crimes Prosecutor's Office was established in Belgrade. The Chamber consists of two panels of three judges each selected from the Belgrade District Court

¹⁷⁶ Order No. 48.

¹⁷⁷ The dates reflect the commencement of the Ba'ath party control of Iraq and the end of the Saddam Hussein regime.

¹⁷⁸ Articles 1 and 11–14 of the Statute of the Tribunal. ¹⁷⁹ Article 15.

¹⁸⁰ See e.g. N. Bhuta, 'Fatal Errors: The Trial and Appeal Judgments in the *Dujail* Case', 6 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2008, p. 39; M. P. Scharf and M. A. Newton, 'The Iraq High Tribunal's *Dujail* Trial Opinion', *ASIL Insight*, 18 December 2006, www.asil.org/insights/2006/12/insights061218.html, and Human Rights Watch report on the *Dujail* trial, <http://hrw.org/english/docs/2007/06/22/iraq16230.htm>.

or seconded from other courts, and two investigative judges. It is, however, essentially a national court.¹⁸¹

International crimes

A brief survey of some of the main features of international crimes for which individual criminal responsibility now exists will follow, noting that issues concerning the jurisdiction of purely domestic courts for those international crimes that have been incorporated into domestic legislation are covered in chapter 12, while state responsibility for such offences is covered in chapter 14.

*Genocide*¹⁸²

Article 4 of the Statute of the ICTY, by way of example, provides that:

2. Genocide means any of the following acts committed with intent to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnical, racial or religious group, as such: (a) killing members of the group; (b) causing serious bodily or mental harm to members of the group; (c) deliberately inflicting on the group conditions of life calculated to bring about its physical destruction in whole or in part; (d) imposing measures intended to prevent births within the group; (e) forcibly transferring children of the group to another group

and that the following acts shall be punishable:

(a) genocide; (b) conspiracy to commit genocide; (c) direct and public incitement to commit genocide; (d) attempt to commit genocide; (e) complicity in genocide.¹⁸³

¹⁸¹ The War Crimes Chamber's first trial, the *Ovcara* case, began on 9 March 2004. As of 2006, three trials had been completed and three others were ongoing: see *Unfinished Business – Serbia's War Crimes Chamber*, Human Rights Watch, 2007, pp. 1 ff. See also M. Ellis, 'Coming to Terms with its Past: Serbia's New Court for the Prosecution of War Crimes', 22 *Berkeley Journal of International Law*, 2004, p. 165. The ICTY has referred some cases to this Chamber: see e.g. *Vladimir Kovačević*, ICTY Referral Bench, 2006.

¹⁸² See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, chapter 10; Werle, *Principles of International Criminal Law*, part 3; and Cassese, *International Criminal Law*, chapter 6. This section should also be read with the relevant section in chapter 6 above: see p. 282.

¹⁸³ See also article IV of the Genocide Convention, 1948, article 2 of the Statute of the ICTR and article 6 of the Statute of the ICC.

Genocide has been regarded as an international crime since the Second World War and the Genocide Convention, 1948 was a critical step in that process. The crime of genocide has also been included in the operative provisions of the statutes of most of the courts and tribunals discussed in the previous section. Case-law before the two international criminal tribunals (ICTY and ICTR) has, however, helped clarify many of the relevant principles. For example, perhaps the distinctive feature of the crime is the importance of establishing the specific intent to destroy the group in question in whole or in part, for genocide is more than the act of killing. This was emphasised by the ICTY in the *Jelisić* case, which noted that 'it is in fact the *mens rea* [i.e. the intention as distinct from the actual act] which gives genocide its speciality and distinguishes it from an ordinary crime and other crimes against international humanitarian law'.¹⁸⁴ This was reaffirmed by the ICTR in the *Akayesu* case,¹⁸⁵ which defined the specific intent necessary as 'the specific intention, required as a constitutive element of the crime, which demands that the perpetrator clearly seeks to produce the act charged'. The Trial Chamber underlined the difficulties in establishing the critical intent requirement and held that recourse may be had in the absence of confessions to inferences from facts.¹⁸⁶ In the *Ruggiu* case, the ICTR held that a person who incites others to commit genocide must himself have a specific intent to commit genocide.¹⁸⁷ However, in the *Jelisić* case, the ICTY pointed to the difficulty in practice of proving the genocidal intention of an individual if the crimes committed were not widespread or backed up by an organisation or a system.¹⁸⁸ This may be distinguished from the *Ruggiu* case, where a systematic scheme to destroy the Tutsis was not in doubt.

The element of intention was further discussed by the ICTY in the *Krstić* case, where it was noted that the intent to eradicate a group within a limited geographical area, such as a region of a country or even a municipality, could be characterised as genocide,¹⁸⁹ while 'the intent to destroy a group, even if only in part, means seeking to destroy a distinct part of the group as opposed to an accumulation of isolated individuals within it'. The part of the group sought to be destroyed had to constitute a distinct element.¹⁹⁰ In the decision of the Appeal Chamber in this case, it was emphasised that it was well established that

¹⁸⁴ IT-95-10, para. 66. ¹⁸⁵ ICTR-96-4-T, 1998, para. 498.

¹⁸⁶ *Ibid.*, para. 523. See also the cases of *Kayishema and Ruzindana*, ICTR-95-1-T, 1999, paras. 87 ff. and *Musema*, ICTR-96-13-T, 2000, paras. 884 ff.

¹⁸⁷ ICTR-97-32-I, 2000, para. 14. ¹⁸⁸ IT-95-10, paras. 100-1.

¹⁸⁹ IT-98-33-T, 2001, para. 589. ¹⁹⁰ *Ibid.*, para. 590.

where a conviction for genocide relies on the intent to destroy a protected group 'in part', the part must be a substantial part of that group. The aim of the Genocide Convention is to prevent the intentional destruction of entire human groups, and the part targeted must be significant enough to have an impact on the group as a whole.¹⁹¹

It was concluded that the intent requirement of genocide under article 4 of the Statute was satisfied where evidence shows that the alleged perpetrator

intended to destroy at least a substantial part of the protected group. The determination of when the targeted part is substantial enough to meet this requirement may involve a number of considerations. The numeric size of the targeted part of the group is the necessary and important starting point, though not in all cases the ending point of the inquiry. The number of individuals targeted should be evaluated not only in absolute terms, but also in relation to the overall size of the entire group. In addition to the numeric size of the targeted portion, its prominence within the group can be a useful consideration. If a specific part of the group is emblematic of the overall group, or is essential to its survival, that may support a finding that the part qualifies as substantial within the meaning of Article 4.¹⁹²

It was also emphasised that each perpetrator must possess the necessary specific intent.¹⁹³

The intention to 'destroy' means the physical or biological destruction of all or part of the group and not, for example, attacks upon the cultural or sociological characteristics of a group in order to remove its separate identity.¹⁹⁴ The sometimes difficult question of the definition of membership of the groups specifically referred to in the relevant instruments has also been analysed. In *Akayesu*,¹⁹⁵ the Trial Chamber of the Rwanda Tribunal leaned towards the objective definition of membership of groups,¹⁹⁶ but this has been mitigated by other cases emphasising the importance of subjective elements as part of the relevant framework.¹⁹⁷

¹⁹¹ IT-98-33-A, 2004, para. 8. ¹⁹² *Ibid.*, para. 12. ¹⁹³ *Ibid.*, para. 134.

¹⁹⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 25. ¹⁹⁵ ICTR-96-4-T, 1998, paras. 511 ff.

¹⁹⁶ In *Kayishema and Ruzindana*, ICTR-95-1-T, 1999, paras. 522 ff., the Trial Chamber emphasised the importance of the designation contained in identity cards.

¹⁹⁷ See *Rutaganda*, ICTR-96-3-T, 1999, paras. 55 ff. See also *Bagilishima*, ICTR-95-1A-T, 2001, para. 65, where the Trial Chamber concluded that 'if a victim was perceived by a perpetrator as belonging to a protected group, the victim could be considered by the Chamber as a member of the protected group, for the purposes of genocide'. See also the Report of the UN Commission of Inquiry on Darfur, S/2005/60, paras. 500 ff.

In so far as the material elements of the crime are concerned, killing is clearly the key conduct involved and it has been held that the act in question must be intentional if not necessarily premeditated.¹⁹⁸ Forced migration (or 'ethnic cleansing') as such does not constitute genocide,¹⁹⁹ but may amount to a pattern of conduct demonstrating genocidal intent.²⁰⁰ The *Akayesu* case has also been important in emphasising that rape and sexual violence may amount to genocide when committed with the necessary specific intent to commit genocide. The Trial Chamber concluded that 'Sexual violence was an integral part of the process of destruction, specifically targeting Tutsi women and specifically contributing to their destruction and to the destruction of the Tutsi group as a whole.'²⁰¹ Further, where it is intended to prevent births within the group whether by impelling the child born of rape to be part of another group or where the woman raped refuses subsequently to procreate, this may amount to genocide.²⁰² The Rwanda Tribunal has also held that genocide may be committed by omission as well as by acts.²⁰³

*War Crimes*²⁰⁴

War crimes are essentially serious violations of the rules of customary and treaty law concerning international humanitarian law, otherwise known as the law governing armed conflicts.²⁰⁵ Article 2 of the Statute of the ICTY, by way of example, provides for jurisdiction with regard to:

¹⁹⁸ See e.g. *Stakić*, IT-97-24-T, 2003, para. 515.

¹⁹⁹ See e.g. the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, p. 5 and the *Brdjanin* case, IT-99-36-T, 2004, para. 118. See also the *Blagojević* case, where, in addition, the Appeals Chamber of the ICTY held that awareness of facts related to the forcible transfer operation was insufficient to prove complicity in genocide in the absence of knowledge of mass killings at Srebrenica, IT-02-60-A, 2007, paras. 119 ff.

²⁰⁰ See e.g. the *Review of the Indictments Concerning Karadžić and Mladić Pursuant to Rule 61 of the Rules of Procedure and Evidence*, ICTY, IT-95-5-R61 and IT-95-18-R61, 11 July 1996, para. 94, 108 ILR, pp. 134–5. See also ad hoc Judge Lauterpacht's Separate Opinion in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 431–2, and the ICC Elements of Crimes, article 6(c), footnote 4, UN Doc. PCNICC/2000/1/Add.2 (2000).

²⁰¹ ICTR-96-4-T, para. 731. ²⁰² *Ibid.*, paras. 507–8.

²⁰³ *Kambanda*, ICTR-97-23-S, 1998, paras. 39–40.

²⁰⁴ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, chapter 12; Werle, *Principles of International Criminal Law*, part 5; and Cassese, *International Criminal Law*, chapter 4.

²⁰⁵ See further as to international humanitarian law, below, chapter 21.

grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions of 12 August 1949, namely the following acts against persons or property protected under the provisions of the relevant Geneva Convention: (a) wilful killing; (b) torture or inhuman treatment, including biological experiments; (c) wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health; (d) extensive destruction and appropriation of property, not justified by military necessity and carried out unlawfully and wantonly; (e) compelling a prisoner of war or a civilian to serve in the forces of a hostile power; (f) wilfully depriving a prisoner of war or a civilian of the rights of fair and regular trial; (g) unlawful deportation or transfer or unlawful confinement of a civilian; (h) taking civilians as hostages.

Article 3 provides for jurisdiction for violation of the laws or customs of war. Such violations include, but are not be limited to:

(a) employment of poisonous weapons or other weapons calculated to cause unnecessary suffering; (b) wanton destruction of cities, towns or villages, or devastation not justified by military necessity; (c) attack, or bombardment, by whatever means, of undefended towns, villages, dwellings, or buildings; (d) seizure of, destruction or wilful damage done to institutions dedicated to religion, charity and education, the arts and sciences, historic monuments and works of art and science; (e) plunder of public or private property.²⁰⁶

Accordingly, war crimes are a discrete part of the principles of international humanitarian law, being those which have become accepted as criminal offences for which there is individual responsibility (in addition to state responsibility). Essentially, war crimes law applies to individuals and international humanitarian law to states. There is a long history of provision for individual responsibility for war crimes,²⁰⁷ and article 6(b) of the Nuremberg Charter included war crimes within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal, while the concept of grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions

²⁰⁶ See article 8 of the Statute of the ICC, which is exhaustive rather than illustrative in its exposition of fifty offences and is divided into sections dealing with: grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions of 12 August 1949; other serious violations of the laws and customs applicable in international armed conflict, within the established framework of international law; in the case of an armed conflict not of an international character, serious violations of article 3 common to the four Geneva Conventions of 12 August 1949 and other serious violations of the laws and customs applicable in armed conflicts not of an international character, within the established framework of international law. See also article 4 of the Statute of the ICTR concerning violations of article 3 common to the Geneva Conventions and of Additional Protocol II of 1977; article 3 of the Statute of the Special Court for Sierra Leone and article 14 of the Statute of the Iraqi High Tribunal.

²⁰⁷ See e.g. the US Army Lieber Code, April 1864.

of 1949 recognised certain violations as crimes subject to universal jurisdiction. Traditionally, international humanitarian law has distinguished between international and non-international armed conflicts, with legal provision being relatively modest with regard to the latter. However, common article 3 to the Geneva Conventions laid down certain minimum standards which were elaborated in Additional Protocol II of 1977.²⁰⁸ In addition, since the conflict in Rwanda was clearly an internal one, the ICTR Statute necessarily provided for individual responsibility for violations of the principles concerning non-international armed conflicts, in effect recognising that common article 3 and Additional Protocol II formed the basis of criminal liability.

The key modern decision has been the *Tadić* case before the ICTY. The Appeals Chamber in the jurisdictional phase of the case noted that an armed conflict existed whenever there was a resort to armed force between states or protracted armed violence between governmental authorities and organised armed groups or between such groups within a state. International humanitarian law applied from the initiation of such armed conflicts and extended beyond the cessation of hostilities until a general conclusion of peace was reached; or, in the case of internal conflicts, a peaceful settlement achieved. Until that moment, international humanitarian law continued to apply in the whole territory of the warring states or, in the case of internal conflicts, the whole territory under the control of a party, whether or not actual combat takes place there.²⁰⁹ The distinction between international and non-international armed conflicts was thus minimised. Although it was noted that international law did not regulate internal conflict in all aspects, it was held to 'cover such areas as protection of civilians from hostilities, in particular from indiscriminate attacks, protection of civilian objects, in particular cultural property, protection of all those who do not (or no longer) take active part in hostilities, as well as prohibition of means of warfare proscribed in international armed conflicts and ban of certain methods of conducting hostilities'.²¹⁰ Further, it was held that individual criminal responsibility existed with regard to violations laid down in customary and treaty law, irrespective of whether the conflict was an international or an internal one.²¹¹ It was concluded that in order for article 3 of the ICTY Statute to be applicable, the violation had to be 'serious', which meant that it had to constitute a

²⁰⁸ See below, chapter 21, p. 1194.

²⁰⁹ IT-94-1-T, Decision of 2 October 1995, para. 70, 105 ILR, pp. 453, 486.

²¹⁰ *Ibid.*, para. 127. ²¹¹ *Ibid.*, para. 129.

breach of a rule protecting important values, and the breach must involve grave consequences for the victim. In addition, the violation of the rule must entail, under customary or conventional law, the individual criminal responsibility of the person breaching the rule.²¹²

This *Tadić* judgment can now be taken as reflecting international law and it is to be noted that a significant number of provisions dealing with international conflicts now apply to internal conflicts as laid down in the Statute of the International Criminal Court.²¹³

*Crimes against humanity*²¹⁴

Article 6(c) of the Nuremberg Charter included 'crimes against humanity' within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal and these were defined as 'murder, extermination, enslavement, deportation and other inhumane acts committed against any civilian population, before or during the war, or persecutions on political, racial or religious grounds in execution of or in connection with any crime within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal, whether or not in violation of the law of the country where perpetrated'.²¹⁵

Article 5 of the Statute of the ICTY provided for jurisdiction with regard to the following crimes when committed in armed conflict, whether international or internal in character, and directed against any civilian population: '(a) murder; (b) extermination; (c) enslavement; (d) deportation; (e) imprisonment; (f) torture; (g) rape; (h) persecutions on political, racial and religious grounds; (i) other inhumane acts'. Article 3 of the Statute of the ICTR is in similar form, other than that it is specified that the crimes in question (which are the same as those specified in the ICTY Statute) must have been committed as part of a widespread or systematic attack against any civilian population on national, political, ethnic, racial or religious grounds. Article 7 of the Statute of the ICC notes that the crimes in question (enforced disappearance and apartheid are added to the list appearing in

²¹² *Ibid.*, para. 94. See also e.g. the *Galić* case, IT-98-29-T, 2003, para. 11 and the *Kanyabashi* decision on jurisdiction, ICTR-96-15-T, 1997, para. 8.

²¹³ See article 8(2)(c) and (e) of the Statute.

²¹⁴ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, chapter 11; Werle, *Principles of International Criminal Law*, part 4; and Cassese, *International Criminal Law*, chapter 5. See also Bassiouni, *Crimes Against Humanity in International Criminal Law*.

²¹⁵ The Tokyo Charter was in similar terms, as was Allied Control Council Law No. 10 save that it added rape, imprisonment and torture to the list of inhumane acts and did not require a connection to war crimes or aggression: see Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 188 ff.

the Statutes of the two international criminal tribunals) have to be committed as part of a widespread or systematic attack directed against any civilian population, with knowledge of the attack.

Although article 5 of the ICTY Statute did not specifically refer, unlike the other instruments, to the necessity of a widespread or systematic attack as the required framework for the commission of acts amounting to crimes against humanity, this was incorporated into the jurisprudence through the *Tadić* trial decision of 7 May 1997. This interpreted the phrase 'directed against any civilian population' as meaning 'that the acts must occur on a widespread or systematic basis, that there must be some form of a governmental, organizational or group policy to commit these acts and that the perpetrator must know of the context within which his actions are taken'.²¹⁶

The requirement of 'widespread or systematic' was examined in *Akayesu*, where the Trial Chamber declared that the concept of widespread could be defined as 'massive, frequent, large scale action, carried out collectively with considerable seriousness and directed against a multiplicity of victims', while 'systematic' could be defined as 'thoroughly organised and following a regular pattern on the basis of a common policy involving substantial public or private resources'. It was noted that there was no requirement that this policy must be adopted formally as the policy of a state, although there had to be some kind of preconceived plan or policy.²¹⁷ In *Blaškić*, the ICTY Trial Chamber defined 'systematic' in terms of

the existence of a political objective, a plan pursuant to which the attack is perpetrated or an ideology, in the broad sense of the word, that is, to destroy, persecute or weaken a community; the perpetration of a criminal act on a very large scale against a group of civilians or the repeated and continuous commission of inhumane acts linked to one another; the preparation and use of significant public or private resources, whether military or other, and the implication of high-level political and/or military authorities in the definition and establishment of the methodical plan. The plan, however, need not necessarily be declared expressly or even stated clearly and precisely. It may be surmised from the occurrence of a series of events.²¹⁸

In *Kunarac*, the ICTY Appeals Chamber held that while proof that the attack was directed against a civilian population and proof that it was

²¹⁶ IT-94-1-T, para. 644, 112 ILR, pp. 1, 214. See also paras. 645 ff. This was reaffirmed in the decision of the Appeals Chamber of 15 July 1999, para. 248, 124 ILR, pp. 61, 164.

²¹⁷ ICTR-96-4-T, 1998, para. 580. ²¹⁸ IT-95-14-T, 2000, paras. 203–4, 122 ILR, pp. 1, 78

widespread or systematic were legal elements of the crime, it was not necessary to show that they were the result of the existence of a policy or plan. The existence of a policy or plan could be evidentially relevant, but it was not a legal element of the crime.²¹⁹

Many of the same acts may constitute both war crimes and crimes against humanity, but what is distinctive about the latter is that they do not need to take place during an armed conflict. However, to constitute crimes against humanity the acts in question have to be committed as part of a widespread or systematic activity, and to be committed against any civilian population, thus any reference to nationality is irrelevant. However, it is important to maintain a clear distinction between civilian and non-civilian in this context. The Trial Chamber in the *Martić* case noted that one could not allow the term 'civilian' for the purposes of a crime against humanity to include all persons who were not actively participating in combat, including those who were *hors de combat*, at the time of the crimes, as this would blur the necessary distinction between combatants and non-combatants.²²⁰

Of course, any act of genocide by definition will constitute also a crime against humanity, although the reverse is clearly not the case. What is required for crimes against humanity is an 'attack' and this has been broadly defined. In the *Akayesu* case, for example, this term was defined as an

unlawful act of the kind enumerated in Article 3(a) to (i) of the Statute, like murder, extermination, enslavement etc. An attack may also be non-violent in nature, like imposing a system of apartheid, which is declared a crime against humanity in Article 1 of the Apartheid Convention of 1973, or exerting pressure on the population to act in a particular manner, may come under the purview of an attack, if orchestrated on a massive scale or in a systematic manner.²²¹

It is also necessary for the alleged perpetrator to be aware that his act was part of a broader attack. The Appeals Chamber in its jurisdiction decision in *Tadić* concluded that to convict an accused of crimes against humanity, it had to be proved that the crimes were related to the attack on a civilian population and that the accused knew that his crimes were so related.²²² This is so even if he does not identify with the aims of the attack and his act was committed for personal reasons.²²³

²¹⁹ IT-96-23&23/1, 2002, para. 98.

²²⁰ IT-95-11-T, 2007, paras. 55–6. ²²¹ ICTR-96-4-T, 1998, para. 581.

²²² IT-94-1-A, 1999, para. 271, 124 ILR, pp. 61, 173. ²²³ *Ibid.*, paras. 255 ff.

*Aggression*²²⁴

Aggression is recognised as a crime in customary international law. Article 6 of the Nuremberg Charter defined its jurisdiction as including '(a) Crimes against peace. Namely, planning, preparation, initiation, or waging of a war of aggression or a war in violation of international treaties, agreements or assurances, or participation in a common plan or conspiracy for the accomplishment of any of the foregoing' and a number of defendants were convicted of offences under this head. General Assembly resolution 95(1) affirmed the principles recognised by the Nuremberg Charter and its judgment. Aggression was termed the 'supreme international crime' in one of the judgments.²²⁵ The Tokyo Charter included the same principle as did Allied Control Council Law No. 10. General Assembly resolution 3314 (XXIX) of 14 December 1974 contained a definition of aggression in contravention of the Charter.²²⁶ The crime of aggression is referred to in article 5 of the Statute of the ICC, but in no other such instrument. Indeed, article 5(2) provides that the Court cannot exercise jurisdiction over the crime of aggression until a provision is adopted defining the crime and setting out the conditions under which the Court may exercise jurisdiction with respect to it. The delay in achieving this has been caused by several problems. The first is that, unlike the other substantive international crimes, aggression is a crime of 'leadership' and necessarily requires that it be determined as an initial point that the state, of whom the accused is a 'leader' in some capacity, has committed aggression. This is a wholly different proposition from asserting the responsibility of individuals for genocide, war crimes or crimes against humanity. It is also unclear what differences may exist between the state's act of aggression and the individual's crime of aggression. Secondly, article 5(2) of the ICC Statute provides that the conditions for the exercise of the Court's jurisdiction must be consistent with the relevant provisions of the UN Charter. The Security Council has the competence under Chapter VII of the Charter

²²⁴ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, chapter 13; and Werle, *Principles of International Criminal Law*, part 6. See also Y. Dinstein, *War, Aggression and Self-Defence*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, and see further below, chapter 22, p. 1240.

²²⁵ See Judgment 186, 41 AJIL, 1947, p. 172.

²²⁶ See also the General Treaty for the Renunciation of War (the 'Kellogg-Briand Pact'), 1928, which condemned recourse to war as an instrument of international policy; article 1 of the International Law Commission's Draft Code of Offences against Peace and Security, 1954, and article 1(2) of the revised Draft Code adopted in 1996. Article 16 of the latter instrument provides that a leader who as leader or organiser actively participates in or orders the planning, preparation, initiation or waging of aggression committed by a state shall be responsible for a crime of aggression.

to determine whether an act of aggression has taken place and it has been argued that a prior determination by the Council is necessary before the Court may exercise jurisdiction with regard to individual responsibility for aggression. This has been contested.²²⁷ However, the question of the relationship between the competences of the Council and Court respectively is unsettled. These matters are currently being negotiated by the Assembly of States Parties to the Rome Statute.²²⁸

Conclusion – fair trial provisions

Part of the rapidly developing international law concerning individual responsibility for international crimes relates to the protection of the human rights of the accused. The following provisions constitute the essence of the requirements of fair trial. Article 21 of the ICTY Statute, for example, provides that:

1. All persons shall be equal before the International Tribunal.
2. In the determination of charges against him, the accused shall be entitled to a fair and public hearing, subject to article 22 of the Statute [which concerns the protection of victims and witnesses].
3. The accused shall be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to the provisions of the present Statute.
4. In the determination of any charge against the accused pursuant to the present Statute, the accused shall be entitled to the following minimum guarantees, in full equality:
 - (a) to be informed promptly and in detail in a language which he understands of the nature and cause of the charge against him;
 - (b) to have adequate time and facilities for the preparation of his defence and to communicate with counsel of his own choosing;
 - (c) to be tried without undue delay;
 - (d) to be tried in his presence, and to defend himself in person or through legal assistance of his own choosing; to be informed, if he does not have legal assistance, of this right; and to have legal assistance assigned to

²²⁷ See e.g. Cryer *et al.*, *Introduction to International Criminal Law*, pp. 276 ff. See also A. Carpenter, 'The International Criminal Court and the Crime of Aggression', 64 *Nordic Journal of International Law*, 1995, p. 223; A. Zimmermann, 'The Creation of a Permanent International Criminal Court', 25 *Suffolk Transnational Law Review*, 2005, p. 1, and C. Kress, 'Versailles–Nuremberg–The Hague: Germany and the International Criminal Law', 40 *International Lawyer*, 2006, p. 15.

²²⁸ See e.g. the Fifth Session of the Assembly of States Parties, February 2007, ICC-ASP/5/35, Annex II and the Report of the Special Working Group on the Crime of Aggression, 13 December 2007, www.icc-cpi.int/library/asp/ICC-ASP-6-SWGCA-1_English.pdf.

- him, in any case where the interests of justice so require, and without payment by him in any such case if he does not have sufficient means to pay for it;
- (e) to examine, or have examined, the witnesses against him and to obtain the attendance and examination of witnesses on his behalf under the same conditions as witnesses against him;
 - (f) to have the free assistance of an interpreter if he cannot understand or speak the language used in the International Tribunal;
 - (g) not to be compelled to testify against himself or to confess guilt.

This formulation is essentially repeated in article 20 of the ICTR Statute. Article 55 of the ICC Statute provides that:

1. In respect of an investigation under this Statute, a person:

- (a) Shall not be compelled to incriminate himself or herself or to confess guilt;
- (b) Shall not be subjected to any form of coercion, duress or threat, to torture or to any other form of cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment;
- (c) Shall, if questioned in a language other than a language the person fully understands and speaks, have, free of any cost, the assistance of a competent interpreter and such translations as are necessary to meet the requirements of fairness; and
- (d) Shall not be subjected to arbitrary arrest or detention, and shall not be deprived of his or her liberty except on such grounds and in accordance with such procedures as are established in this Statute.

2. Where there are grounds to believe that a person has committed a crime within the jurisdiction of the Court and that person is about to be questioned either by the Prosecutor, or by national authorities pursuant to a request made under Part 9, that person shall also have the following rights of which he or she shall be informed prior to being questioned:

- (a) To be informed, prior to being questioned, that there are grounds to believe that he or she has committed a crime within the jurisdiction of the Court;
- (b) To remain silent, without such silence being a consideration in the determination of guilt or innocence;
- (c) To have legal assistance of the person's choosing, or, if the person does not have legal assistance, to have legal assistance assigned to him or her, in any case where the interests of justice so require, and without payment by the person in any such case if the person does not have sufficient means to pay for it; and

- (d) To be questioned in the presence of counsel unless the person has voluntarily waived his or her right to counsel.

In addition, article 66 provides for the presumption of innocence and for the fact that it is for the Prosecutor to prove the guilt of the accused beyond reasonable doubt. Article 67 lays down that:

1. In the determination of any charge, the accused shall be entitled to a public hearing, having regard to the provisions of this Statute, to a fair hearing conducted impartially, and to the following minimum guarantees, in full equality:
 - (a) To be informed promptly and in detail of the nature, cause and content of the charge, in a language which the accused fully understands and speaks;
 - (b) To have adequate time and facilities for the preparation of the defence and to communicate freely with counsel of the accused's choosing in confidence;
 - (c) To be tried without undue delay;
 - (d) Subject to article 63, paragraph 2, to be present at the trial, to conduct the defence in person or through legal assistance of the accused's choosing, to be informed, if the accused does not have legal assistance, of this right and to have legal assistance assigned by the Court in any case where the interests of justice so require, and without payment if the accused lacks sufficient means to pay for it;
 - (e) To examine, or have examined, the witnesses against him or her and to obtain the attendance and examination of witnesses on his or her behalf under the same conditions as witnesses against him or her. The accused shall also be entitled to raise defences and to present other evidence admissible under this Statute;
 - (f) To have, free of any cost, the assistance of a competent interpreter and such translations as are necessary to meet the requirements of fairness, if any of the proceedings of or documents presented to the Court are not in a language which the accused fully understands and speaks;
 - (g) Not to be compelled to testify or to confess guilt and to remain silent, without such silence being a consideration in the determination of guilt or innocence;
 - (h) To make an unsworn oral or written statement in his or her defence; and
 - (i) Not to have imposed on him or her any reversal of the burden of proof or any onus of rebuttal.
2. In addition to any other disclosure provided for in this Statute, the Prosecutor shall, as soon as practicable, disclose to the defence evidence in

the Prosecutor's possession or control which he or she believes shows or tends to show the innocence of the accused, or to mitigate the guilt of the accused, or which may affect the credibility of prosecution evidence. In case of doubt as to the application of this paragraph, the Court shall decide.²²⁹

Suggestions for further reading

- A. Cassese, *International Criminal Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2008
- R. Cryer, H. Friman, D. Robinson and E. Wilmshurst, *An Introduction to International Criminal Law and Procedure*, Cambridge, 2007
- W. Schabas, *An Introduction to the International Criminal Court*, 3rd edn, Cambridge, 2007
- The UN International Criminal Tribunals: The Former Yugoslavia, Rwanda and Sierra Leone*, Cambridge 2006

²²⁹ Note among other relevant issues, the principle of command responsibility, whereby a superior is criminally responsible for acts committed by subordinates that he knew or had reason to know had been or were about to be committed and no action was taken: see e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, pp. 303–4; I. Bantekas, 'The Contemporary Law of Superior Responsibility', 93 AJIL, 1999, p. 573, and Kittichaisaree, *International Criminal Law*, p. 251. See also article 87 of Additional Protocol I, 1977; article 7(3) of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, 1993; article 6(3) of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda, 1994 and article 28 of the Statute of the International Criminal Court, 1998. Note the *Čelebići* case, IT-96-21, 16 November 1998, paras. 370 ff.; the *Krnjela* case, IT-97-25-A, 17 September 2003 and the *Blagojević* case, IT-02-60-A, 2007. Further, military necessity may not be pleaded as a defence, see e.g. *In re Lewinski (called von Manstein)*, 16 AD, p. 509, and the claim of superior orders will not provide a defence, although it may be taken in mitigation depending upon the circumstances: see e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, pp. 305–7; Green, *Superior Orders in National and International Law*, Leiden, 1976; Kittichaisaree, *International Criminal Law*, p. 266, and Y. Dinstein, *The Defence of 'Obedience to Superior Orders' in International Law*, Leiden, 1965. See also article 8 of the Nuremberg Charter, 39 AJIL, 1945, Supp., p. 259; Principle IV of the International Law Commission's Report on the Principles of the Nuremberg Tribunal 1950, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1950, vol. II, p. 195; article 7(4) of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, 1993; article 6(4) of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda, 1994 and article 33 of the Statute of the International Criminal Court, 1998.

Recognition

International society is not an unchanging entity, but is subject to the ebb and flow of political life.¹ New states are created and old units fall away. New governments come into being within states in a manner contrary to declared constitutions whether or not accompanied by force. Insurgencies occur and belligerent administrations are established in areas of territory hitherto controlled by the legitimate government. Each of these events creates new facts and the question that recognition is concerned with revolves around the extent to which legal effects should flow from such occurrences. Each state will have to decide whether or not to recognise the particular eventuality and the kind of legal entity it should be accepted as.

Recognition involves consequences both on the international plane and within municipal law. If an entity is recognised as a state in, for example, the United Kingdom, it will entail the consideration of rights and duties that would not otherwise be relevant. There are privileges permitted to

¹ See generally e.g. J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006; *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992; H. Lauterpacht, *Recognition in International Law*, Cambridge, 1947; T. C. Chen, *The International Law of Recognition*, London, 1951; J. Charpentier, *La Reconnaissance Internationale et l'Évolution du Droit des Gens*, Paris, 1956; T. L. Galloway, *Recognising Foreign Governments*, Washington, 1978; J. Verhoeven, *La Reconnaissance Internationale dans la Pratique Contemporaine*, Paris, 1975 and Verhoeven, 'La Reconnaissance Internationale, Déclin ou Renouveau?', *AFDI*, 1993, p. 7; J. Dugard, *Recognition and the United Nations*, Cambridge, 1987; H. Blix, 'Contemporary Aspects of Recognition', 130 *HR*, 1970-II, p. 587; J. Salmon, 'Reconnaissance d'État', 25 *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1992, p. 226; S. Talmon, *Recognition in International Law: A Bibliography*, The Hague, 2000; T. D. Grant, *The Recognition of States: Law and Practice in Debate and Evolution*, London, 1999, and *Third US Restatement on Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, vol. I, pp. 77 ff. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, pp. 556 ff.; P. M. Dupuy, *Droit International Public*, 8th edn, Paris, 2006, p. 95, and L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, pp. 244 ff.

a foreign state before the municipal courts that would not be allowed to other institutions or persons.

It is stating the obvious to point to the very strong political influences that bear upon this topic.² In more cases than not the decision whether or not to recognise will depend more upon political considerations than exclusively legal factors. Recognition is not merely applying the relevant legal consequences to a factual situation, for sometimes a state will not want such consequences to follow, either internationally or domestically.

To give one example, the United States refused for many years to recognise either the People's Republic of China or North Korea, not because it did not accept the obvious fact that these authorities exercised effective control over their respective territories, but rather because it did not wish the legal effects of recognition to come into operation.³ It is purely a political judgment, although it has been clothed in legal terminology. In addition, there are a variety of options open as to what an entity may be recognised as. Such an entity may, for example, be recognised as a full sovereign state, or as the effective authority within a specific area or as a subordinate authority to another state.⁴ Recognition is a statement by an international legal person as to the status in international law of another real or alleged international legal person or of the validity of a particular factual situation. Once recognition has occurred, the new situation is deemed opposable to the recognising state, that is the pertinent legal consequences will flow. As such, recognition constitutes participation in the international legal process generally while also being important within the context of bilateral relations and, of course, domestically.

Recognition of states

There are basically two theories as to the nature of recognition. The constitutive theory maintains that it is the act of recognition by other states that creates a new state and endows it with legal personality and not the process by which it actually obtained independence. Thus, new states are

² See e.g. H. A. Smith, *Great Britain and the Law of Nations*, London, 1932, vol. I, pp. 77–80.

³ See e.g. M. Kaplan and N. Katzenbach, *The Political Foundations of International Law*, New York, 1961, p. 109.

⁴ See e.g. *Carl Zeiss Stiftung v. Rayner and Keeler* [1967] AC 853; 43 ILR, p. 23, where the Court took the view that the German Democratic Republic was a subordinate agency of the USSR, and the recognition of the Ciskei as a subordinate body of South Africa, *Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa Ltd* [1986] 3 All ER 449; 75 ILR, p. 675.

established in the international community as fully fledged subjects of international law by virtue of the will and consent of already existing states.⁵ The disadvantage of this approach is that an unrecognised 'state' may not be subject to the obligations imposed by international law and may accordingly be free from such restraints as, for instance, the prohibition on aggression. A further complication would arise if a 'state' were recognised by some but not other states. Could one talk then of, for example, partial personality?

The second theory, the declaratory theory, adopts the opposite approach and is a little more in accord with practical realities.⁶ It maintains that recognition is merely an acceptance by states of an already existing situation. A new state will acquire capacity in international law not by virtue of the consent of others but by virtue of a particular factual situation. It will be legally constituted by its own efforts and circumstances and will not have to await the procedure of recognition by other states. This doctrine owes a lot to traditional positivist thought on the supremacy of the state and the concomitant weakness or non-existence of any central guidance in the international community.

For the constitutive theorist, the heart of the matter is that fundamentally an unrecognised 'state' can have no rights or obligations in international law. The opposite stance is adopted by the declaratory approach that emphasises the factual situation and minimises the power of states to confer legal personality.

Actual practice leads to a middle position between these two perceptions. The act of recognition by one state of another indicates that the former regards the latter as having conformed with the basic requirements of international law as to the creation of a state. Of course, recognition is highly political and is given in a number of cases for purely political reasons. This point of view was emphasised by the American representative on the Security Council during discussions on the Middle East in May 1948. He said that it would be:

⁵ See e.g. Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 19 ff. and J. Salmon, *La Reconnaissance d'État*, Paris, 1971. See also R. Rich and D. Turk, 'Symposium: Recent Developments in the Practice of State Recognition', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 36.

⁶ See e.g. J. L. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, p. 138; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, p. 87; D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I, pp. 128 ff.; S. Talmon, 'The Constitutive Versus the Declaratory Theory of Recognition: Tertium Non Datur?', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 101, and Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 22 ff. See also the *Tinoco* arbitration, 1 RIAA, p. 369; 2 AD, p. 34 and *Wulfsohn v. Russian Republic* 138 NE 24; 2 AD, p. 39.

highly improper for one to admit that any country on earth can question the sovereignty of the United States of America in the exercise of the high political act of recognition of the *de facto* status of a state.

Indeed, he added that there was no authority that could determine the legality or validity of that act of the United States.⁷ This American view that recognition is to be used as a kind of mark of approval was in evidence with regard to the attitude adopted towards Communist China for a generation.⁸

The United Kingdom, on the other hand, has often tended to extend recognition once it is satisfied that the authorities of the state in question have complied with the minimum requirements of international law, and have effective control which seems likely to continue over the country.⁹ Recognition is constitutive in a political sense, for it marks the new entity out as a state within the international community and is evidence of acceptance of its new political status by the society of nations. This does not imply that the act of recognition is legally constitutive, because rights and duties do not arise as a result of the recognition.

Practice over the last century or so is not unambiguous but does point to the declaratory approach as the better of the two theories. States which for particular reasons have refused to recognise other states, such as in the Arab world and Israel and the USA and certain communist nations,¹⁰ rarely contend that the other party is devoid of powers and obligations before international law and exists in a legal vacuum. The stance is rather that rights and duties are binding upon them, and that recognition has not been accorded for primarily political reasons. If the constitutive theory were accepted it would mean, for example, in the context of the former Arab non-recognition of Israel, that the latter was not bound by international law rules of non-aggression and non-intervention. This has not been adopted in any of the stances of non-recognition of 'states'.¹¹

⁷ See M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1968, vol. II, p. 10.

⁸ See generally D. Young, 'American Dealings with Peking', 45 *Foreign Affairs*, 1966, p. 77, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 551 ff. See also A/CN.4/2, p. 53.

⁹ See Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, p. 6.

¹⁰ See 39 *Bulletin of the US Department of State*, 1958, p. 385.

¹¹ See e.g. the *Pueblo* incident, 62 *AJIL*, 1968, p. 756 and *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 23129; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 604 ff. and 651; 'Contemporary Practice of the UK in International Law', 6 *ICLQ*, 1957, p. 507, and *British Practice in International Law* (ed. E. Lauterpacht), London, 1963, vol. II, p. 90. See also N. Mugerwa, 'Subjects of International Law' in *Manual of International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, pp. 247, 269.

Of course, if an entity, while meeting the conditions of international law as to statehood, went totally unrecognised, this would undoubtedly hamper the exercise of its rights and duties, especially in view of the absence of diplomatic relations, but it would not seem in law to amount to a decisive argument against statehood itself.¹² For example, the Charter of the Organisation of American States adopted at Bogotá in 1948 notes in its survey of the fundamental rights and duties of states that:

the political existence of the state is independent of recognition by other states. Even before being recognised the state has the right to defend its integrity and independence.¹³

And the Institut de Droit International emphasised in its resolution on recognition of new states and governments in 1936 that the

existence of the new state with all the legal effects connected with that existence is not affected by the refusal of one or more states to recognise.¹⁴

In the period following the end of the First World War, the courts of the new states of Eastern and Central Europe regarded their states as coming into being upon the actual declaration of independence and not simply as a result of the Peace Treaties. The tribunal in one case pointed out that the recognition of Poland in the Treaty of Versailles was only declaratory of the state which existed 'par lui-même'.¹⁵ In addition, the Arbitration Commission established by the International Conference on Yugoslavia in 1991 stated in its Opinion No. 1 that 'the existence or disappearance of the state is a question of fact' and that 'the effects of recognition by other states are purely declaratory'.¹⁶

On the other hand, the constitutive theory is not totally devoid of all support in state practice. In some cases, the creation of a new state, or the establishment of a new government by unconstitutional means, or the occupation of a territory that is legally claimed will proceed uneventfully and be clearly accomplished for all to see and with little significant opposition.

¹² See above, chapter 5.

¹³ Article 9. This became article 12 of the Charter as amended in 1967. See also the Montevideo Convention on Rights and Duties of States, 1933, article 3.

¹⁴ 39 *Annuaire de L'Institut de Droit International*, 1936, p. 300. See also *Third US Restatement*, pp. 77–8.

¹⁵ *Deutsche Continental Gas-Gesellschaft v. Polish State* 5 AD, p. 11.

¹⁶ 92 ILR, pp. 162, 165. See also the decision of the European Court of Human Rights in *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, Series A, No. 310, 1995, at p. 14; 103 ILR, p. 621, and *Chuan Pu Andrew Wang and Others v. Office of the Federal Prosecutor*, Swiss Supreme Court, First Public Law Chamber, decision of 3 May 2004, No. 1A.3/2004; partly published as BGE 130 II 217, para. 5.3.

However, in many instances, the new entity or government will be insecure and it is in this context that recognition plays a vital role. In any event, and particularly where the facts are unclear and open to different interpretations, recognition by a state will amount to a declaration by that state of how it understands the situation, and such an evaluation will be binding upon it. It will not be able to deny later the factual position it has recognised, unless, of course, circumstances radically alter in the meantime. In this sense, recognition can be constitutive. Indeed, the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission noted in Opinion No. 8 that 'while recognition of a state by other states has only declarative value, such recognition, along with membership of international organisations, bears witness to these states' conviction that the political entity so recognised is a reality and confers on it certain rights and obligations under international law'.¹⁷ By way of contrast, the fact of non-recognition of a 'new state' by a vast majority of existing states will constitute tangible evidence for the view that such an entity has not established its conformity with the required criteria of statehood.¹⁸

Another factor which leans towards the constitutive interpretation of recognition is the practice in many states whereby an unrecognised state or government cannot claim the rights available to a recognised state or government before the municipal courts. This means that the act of recognition itself entails a distinct legal effect and that after recognition a state or government would have enforceable rights within the domestic jurisdiction that it would not have had prior to the recognition.¹⁹

This theoretical controversy is of value in that it reveals the functions of recognition and emphasises the impact of states upon the development of international law. It points to the essential character of international law, poised as it is between the state and the international community. The declaratory theory veers towards the former and the constitutive doctrine towards the latter.

There have been a number of attempts to adapt the constitutive theory.²⁰ Lauterpacht maintained, for example, that once the conditions prescribed by international law for statehood have been complied with, there is a duty

¹⁷ 92 ILR, pp. 199, 201.

¹⁸ See *Democratic Republic of East Timor v. State of the Netherlands* 87 ILR, pp. 73, 74.

¹⁹ See below, p. 471.

²⁰ Note the reference to the 'relativism inherent in the constitutive theory of recognition' with regard to the situation where some states recognised the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia as the continuator of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia and others did not: see the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, Dissenting Opinion of Judge Al-Khasawneh, para. 8.

on the part of existing states to grant recognition. This is because, in the absence of a central authority in international law to assess and accord legal personality, it is the states that have to perform this function on behalf, as it were, of the international community and international law.²¹

This operation is both declaratory, in that it is based upon certain definite facts (i.e. the entity fulfils the requirements of statehood) and constitutive in that it is the acceptance by the recognising state of the particular community as an entity possessing all the rights and obligations that are inherent in statehood. Before the act of recognition, the community that is hoping to be admitted as a state will only have such rights and duties as have been expressly permitted to it, if any.

The Lauterpacht doctrine is an ingenious bid to reconcile the legal elements in a coherent theory. It accepts the realities of new creations of states and governments by practical (and occasionally illegal) means, and attempts to assimilate this to the supremacy of international law as Lauterpacht saw it. However, in so doing it ignores the political aspects and functions of recognition, that is, its use as a method of demonstrating or withholding support from a particular government or new community. The reality is that in many cases recognition is applied to demonstrate political approval or disapproval. Indeed, if there is a duty to grant recognition, would the entity involved have a right to demand this where a particular state (or states) is proving recalcitrant? If this were so, one would appear to be faced with the possibility of a non-state with as yet no rights or duties enforcing rights against non-recognising states.

Nevertheless, state practice reveals that Lauterpacht's theory has not been adopted.²² The fact is that few states accept that they are obliged in every instance to accord recognition. In most cases they will grant recognition, but that does not mean that they have to, as history with regard to some Communist nations and with respect to Israel illustrates. This position was supported in Opinion No. 10 of the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission in July 1992, which emphasised that recognition was 'a discretionary act that other states may perform when they choose and in a manner of their own choosing, subject only to compliance with the imperatives of general international law'.²³

The approach of the United States was emphasised in 1976. The Department of State noted that:

²¹ *Recognition*, pp. 24, 55, 76–7.

²² See e.g. H. Waldock, 'General Course on Public International Law', 106 HR, 1962, p. 154. See also Mugerwa, 'Subjects', pp. 266–90.

²³ 92 ILR, pp. 206, 208.

[i]n the view of the United States, international law does not require a state to recognise another entity as a state; it is a matter for the judgment of each state whether an entity merits recognition as a state. In reaching this judgment, the United States has traditionally looked to the establishment of certain facts. These facts include effective control over a clearly defined territory and population; an organised governmental administration of that territory and a capacity to act effectively to conduct foreign relations and to fulfil international obligations. The United States has also taken into account whether the entity in question has attracted the recognition of the international community of states.²⁴

The view of the UK government was expressed as follows:

The normal criteria which the government apply for recognition as a state are that it should have, and seem likely to continue to have, a clearly defined territory with a population, a government who are able of themselves to exercise effective control of that territory, and independence in their external relations. Other factors, including some United Nations resolutions, may also be relevant.²⁵

Recent practice suggests that ‘other factors’ may, in the light of the particular circumstances, include human rights and other matters. The European Community adopted a Declaration on 16 December 1991 entitled ‘Guidelines on the Recognition of New States in Eastern Europe and in the Soviet Union’ in which a common position on the process of recognition of the new states was adopted. It was noted in particular that recognition required:

- respect for the provisions of the Charter of the United Nations and the commitments subscribed to in the Final Act of Helsinki and in the Charter of Paris,²⁶ especially with regard to the rule of law, democracy and human rights;
- guarantees for the rights of ethnic and national groups and minorities in accordance with the commitments subscribed to in the framework of the CSCE;²⁷
- respect for the inviolability of all frontiers which can only be changed by peaceful means and by common agreement;

²⁴ DUSPIL, 1976, pp. 19–20.

²⁵ 102 HC Deb., col. 977, Written Answer, 23 October 1986. See also 169 HC Deb., cols. 449–50, Written Answer, 19 March 1990. As to French practice, see e.g. *Journal Officiel, Débats Parl.*, AN, 1988, p. 2324.

²⁶ See above, chapter 7, p. 372. ²⁷ See above, chapter 7, p. 376.

- acceptance of all relevant commitments with regard to disarmament and nuclear non-proliferation as well as to security and regional stability;
- commitment to settle by agreement, including where appropriate by recourse to arbitration, all questions concerning state succession and regional disputes.²⁸

On the same day that the Guidelines were adopted, the European Community also adopted a Declaration on Yugoslavia,²⁹ in which the Community and its member states agreed to recognise the Yugoslav republics fulfilling certain conditions. These were that such republics wished to be recognised as independent; that the commitments in the Guidelines were accepted; that provisions laid down in a draft convention under consideration by the Conference on Yugoslavia were accepted, particularly those dealing with human rights and the rights of national or ethnic groups; and that support would be given to the efforts of the Secretary-General of the UN and the Security Council and the Conference on Yugoslavia. The Community and its member states also required that the particular Yugoslav republic seeking recognition would commit itself prior to recognition to adopting constitutional and political guarantees ensuring that it had no territorial claims towards a neighbouring Community state. The United States took a rather less robust position, but still noted the relevance of commitments and assurances given by the new states of Eastern Europe and the former USSR with regard to nuclear safety, democracy and free markets within the process of both recognition and the establishment of diplomatic relations.³⁰

Following a period of UN administration authorised by Security Council resolution 1244 (1999),³¹ the Yugoslav (later Serbian) province of Kosovo declared independence on 17 February 2008. This was preceded by

²⁸ UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 559–60. On 31 December 1991, the European Community issued a statement noting that Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Moldova, Turkmenistan, Ukraine and Uzbekistan had given assurances that the requirements in the Guidelines would be fulfilled. Accordingly, the member states of the Community declared that they were willing to proceed with the recognition of these states, *ibid.*, p. 561. On 15 January 1992, a statement was issued noting that Kyrgyzstan and Tadjikistan had accepted the requirements in the Guidelines and that they too would be recognised, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 637.

²⁹ UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 560–1.

³⁰ See the announcement by President Bush on 25 December 1991, 2(4 & 5) *Foreign Policy Bulletin*, 1992, p. 12, as cited in Henkin *et al.*, *International Law*, pp. 252–3. See also, as to the importance of democratic considerations, S. D. Murphy, 'Democratic Legitimacy and the Recognition of States and Governments', 48 ICLQ, 1999, p. 545.

³¹ See above, chapter 5, p. 204.

the Comprehensive Proposal for the Kosovo Status Settlement formulated by Martti Ahtisaari which had in March 2007 called for independence for Kosovo with international supervision.³² This was rejected by Serbia. The international community was divided as to the question of recognition of Kosovo's independence. It was recognised swiftly by the US, the UK, Germany and the majority of EU states, Japan and others. Russia and Serbia, on the other hand, made it clear that they opposed recognition, as did Spain and Greece. Accordingly, in the current circumstances, while many countries recognise Kosovo, many do not and entry into the UN is not possible until, for example, Russia is prepared to lift its opposition in view of its veto power.³³ For those states that have recognised Kosovo, the latter will be entitled to all the privileges and responsibilities of statehood in the international community and within the legal systems of the recognising states. However, for those that have not, the state and diplomatic agents of Kosovo will not be entitled to, for example, diplomatic and state immunities, while the international status of Kosovo will be controversial and disputed. While recognition may cure difficulties in complying with the criteria of statehood, a situation where the international community is divided upon recognition will, especially in the absence of UN membership, ensure the continuation of uncertainty.

There are many different ways in which recognition can occur and it may apply in more than one kind of situation. It is not a single, constant idea but a category comprising a number of factors. There are indeed different entities which may be recognised, ranging from new states, to new governments, belligerent rights possessed by a particular group and territorial changes. Not only are there various objects of the process of recognition, but recognition may itself be *de facto* or *de jure* and it may arise in a variety of manners.

Recognition is an active process and should be distinguished from cognition, or the mere possession of knowledge, for example, that the entity involved complies with the basic international legal stipulations as to statehood. Recognition implies both cognition of the necessary facts and an intention that, so far as the acting state is concerned, it is willing that the legal consequences attendant upon recognition should operate.

³² See S/2007/168 and S/2007/168/Add.1.

³³ One month after the declaration of independence, twenty-eight states had recognised the independence of Kosovo, including sixteen of the twenty-seven EU member states and six of the UN Security Council's fifteen members: see 'Kosovo's First Month', International Crisis Group Europe Briefing No. 47, 18 March 2008, p. 3.

For example, the rules as to diplomatic and sovereign immunities should apply as far as the envoys of the entity to be recognised are concerned. It is not enough for the recognising state simply to be aware of the facts, it must desire the coming into effect of the legal and political results of recognition. This is inevitable by virtue of the discretionary nature of the act of recognition, and is illustrated in practice by the lapse in time that often takes place between the events establishing a new state or government and the actual recognition by other states. Once given, courts have generally regarded recognition as retroactive so that the statehood of the entity recognised is accepted as of the date of statehood (which is a question of fact), not from the date of recognition.³⁴

Recognition of governments³⁵

The recognition of a new government is quite different from the recognition of a new state. As far as statehood is concerned, the factual situation will be examined in terms of the accepted criteria.³⁶ Different considerations apply where it is the government which changes. Recognition will only really be relevant where the change in government is unconstitutional. In addition, recognition of governments as a category tends to minimise the fact that the precise capacity or status of the entity so recognised may be characterised in different ways. Recognition may be of a *de facto*³⁷ government or administration or of a government or administration in effective control of only part of the territory of the state in question. Recognition constitutes acceptance of a particular situation

³⁴ See e.g. Chen, *Recognition*, pp. 172 ff. See also the views of the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission as to the date of succession of the former Yugoslav republics, Opinion No. 11, 96 ILR, p. 719. Note that retroactivity of recognition is regarded by Oppenheim as a rule of convenience rather than of principle: see *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 161.

³⁵ See e.g. I. Brownlie, 'Recognition in Theory and Practice', 53 BYIL, 1982, p. 197; C. Warbrick, 'The New British Policy on Recognition of Governments', 30 ICLQ, 1981, p. 568; M. J. Peterson, 'Recognition of Governments Should Not Be Abolished', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 31, and Peterson, *Recognition of Governments: Legal Doctrine and State Practice*, London, 1997; N. Ando, 'The Recognition of Governments Reconsidered', 28 *Japanese Annual of International Law*, 1985, p. 29; C. Symmons, 'United Kingdom Abolition of the Doctrine of Recognition: A Rose by Another Name', *Public Law*, 1981, p. 248; S. Talmon, 'Recognition of Governments: An Analysis of the New British Policy and Practice', 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 231, and Talmon, *Recognition of Governments in International Law*, Oxford, 1998; B. R. Roth, *Governmental Illegitimacy in International Law*, Oxford, 1999; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 150; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 415, and Galloway, *Recognising Foreign Governments*.

³⁶ See above, chapter 5, p. 197. ³⁷ See further below, p. 459.

by the recognising state both in terms of the relevant factual criteria and in terms of the consequential legal repercussions, so that, for example, recognition of an entity as the government of a state implies not only that this government is deemed to have satisfied the required conditions, but also that the recognising state will deal with the government as the governing authority of the state and accept the usual legal consequences of such status in terms of privileges and immunities within the domestic legal order.

Political considerations have usually played a large role in the decision whether or not to grant recognition. However, certain criteria have emerged to cover recognition of illegal changes in government. Such criteria amounted to an acceptance of the realities of the transfer of power and suggested that once a new government effectively controlled the country and that this seemed likely to continue, recognition should not be withheld. The United Kingdom on a number of occasions adopted this approach.³⁸ It was declared by the Under-Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs in 1970 that the test employed was whether or not the new government enjoyed, 'with a reasonable prospect of permanence, the obedience of the mass of the population . . . effective control of much of the greater part of the territory of the state concerned'.³⁹

It is this attitude which prompted such policies as the recognition of the communist government of China and the Russian-installed government of Hungary in 1956 after the failure of the uprising. However, this general approach cannot be regarded as an absolute principle in view of the British refusal over many years to recognise as states North Vietnam, North Korea and the German Democratic Republic.⁴⁰ The effective control of a new government over the territory of the state is thus an important guideline to the problem of whether to extend recognition or not, providing such control appears well established and likely to continue. But it was no more than that and in many cases appeared to yield to political considerations.

The *Tinoco* arbitration⁴¹ constitutes an interesting example of the 'effective control' concept. In 1919, the government of Tinoco in Costa Rica was overthrown and the new authorities repudiated certain

³⁸ See the Morrison statement, 485 HC Deb., cols. 2410–11, 21 March 1951.

³⁹ 799 HC Deb., col. 23, 6 April 1970. See also Foreign Office statements, 204 HL Deb., col. 755, 4 July 1957 and 742 HC Deb., cols. 6–7, Written Answer, 27 February 1967.

⁴⁰ See e.g. D. Greig, 'The Carl-Zeiss Case and the Position of an Unrecognised Government in English Law', 83 LQR, 1967, pp. 96, 128–30 and *Re Al-Fin Corporation's Patent* [1970] Ch. 160; 52 ILR, p. 68.

⁴¹ 1 RIAA, p. 369 (1923); 2 AD, p. 34.

obligations entered into by Tinoco with regard to British nationals. Chief Justice Taft, the sole arbitrator, referred to the problems of recognition or non-recognition as relating to the Tinoco administration. He decided that since the administration was in effective control of the country, it was the valid government irrespective of the fact that a number of states, including the United Kingdom, had not recognised it. This was so despite his opinion that:

the non-recognition by other nations of a government claiming to be a national personality, is usually appropriate evidence that it has not attained the independence and control entitling it by international law to be classed as such.⁴²

Where recognition has been refused because of the illegitimacy or irregularity of origin of the government in question, rather than because of the lack of effectiveness of its control in the country, such non-recognition loses some of its evidential weight. In other words, where the degree of authority asserted by the new administration is uncertain, recognition by other states will be a vital factor. But where the new government is firmly established, non-recognition will not affect the legal character of the new government. The doctrine of effective control is an indication of the importance of the factual nature of any situation. But in those cases where recognition is refused upon the basis of the improper origins of the new government, it will have less of an impact than if recognition is refused because of the absence of effective control. Taft's view of the nature of recognition is an interesting amalgam of the declaratory and constitutive theories, in that recognition can become constitutive where the factual conditions (i.e. the presence or absence of effective control) are in dispute, but otherwise is purely declaratory or evidential.

A change in government, however accomplished, does not affect the identity of the state itself. The state does not cease to be an international legal person because its government is overthrown. That is not at issue. The recognition or non-recognition of a new administration is irrelevant to the legal character of the country. Accordingly one can see that two separate recognitions are involved and they must not be confused. Recognition of a state will affect its legal personality, whether by creating or acknowledging it, while recognition of a government affects the status of the administrative authority, not the state.

It is possible, however, for recognition of state and government to occur together in certain circumstances. This can take place upon the creation

⁴² 1 RIAA, p. 380; 2 AD, p. 37.

of a new state. Israel, to take one example, was recognised by the United States and the United Kingdom by the expedient of having its government recognised *de facto*.⁴³ Recognition of the government implies recognition of the state, but it does not work the other way.

It should be noted that recognition of a government has no relevance to the establishment of new persons in international law. Where it is significant is in the realm of diplomatic relations. If a government is unrecognised, there is no exchange of diplomatic envoys and thus problems can arise as to the enforcement of international rights and obligations.

Although the effective control doctrine is probably accepted as the most reliable guide to recognition of governments, there have been other theories put forward, the most prominent amongst them being the Tobar doctrine or the so-called doctrine of legitimacy. This suggested that governments which came into power by extra-constitutional means should not be recognised, at least until the change had been accepted by the people.⁴⁴ This policy was applied particularly by the United States in relation to Central America and was designed to protect stability in that delicate area adjacent to the Panama Canal. Logically, of course, the concept amounts to the promotion of non-recognition in all revolutionary situations and it is, and was, difficult to reconcile with reality and political consideration. In American eyes it became transmuted into the Wilson policy of democratic legitimacy. Where the revolution was supported by the people, it would be recognised. Where it was not, there would be no grant of recognition. It was elaborated with respect to the Soviet Union until 1933, but gradually declined until it can now be properly accepted merely as a political qualification for recognition to be considered by the recognising state.⁴⁵

A doctrine advocating the exact opposite, the automatic recognition of governments in all circumstances, was put forward by Estrada, the Mexican Secretary of Foreign Relations.⁴⁶ But this suffers from the same disadvantage as the legitimacy doctrine. It attempts to lay down a clear test for recognition in all instances excluding political considerations and

⁴³ See e.g. Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, p. 168.

⁴⁴ See e.g. Mugerwa, 'Subjects', p. 271, and 2 AJIL, 1908, Supp., p. 229.

⁴⁵ See e.g. G. H. Hackworth, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, DC, 1940, vol. I, pp. 181 ff. See also 17 AJIL, 1923, Supp., p. 118; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 137–9, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, p. 69.

⁴⁶ See e.g. 25 AJIL, 1931, Supp., p. 203; P. Jessup, 'The Estrada Doctrine', 25 AJIL, 1931, p. 719, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, p. 85. See also Talmon, 'Recognition of Governments', p. 263; Chen, *Recognition*, p. 116; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 134–5, and C. Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, Paris, 1977, vol. III, p. 555.

exigencies of state and is thus unrealistic, particularly where there are competing governments.⁴⁷ It has also been criticised as minimising the distinction between recognition and maintenance of diplomatic relations.⁴⁸

The problem, of course, was that recognition of a new government that has come to power in a non-constitutional fashion was taken to imply approval. Allied with the other factors sometimes taken into account in such recognition situations,⁴⁹ an unnecessarily complicated process had resulted. Accordingly, in 1977 the United States declared that:

US practice has been to de-emphasise and avoid the use of recognition in cases of changes of governments and to concern ourselves with the question of whether we wish to have diplomatic relations with the new governments... The Administration's policy is that establishment of relations does not involve approval or disapproval but merely demonstrates a willingness on our part to conduct our affairs with other governments directly.⁵⁰

In 1980, the UK government announced that it would no longer accord recognition to governments as distinct from states.⁵¹ This was stated to be primarily due to the perception that recognition meant approval, a perception that was often embarrassing, for example, in the case of regimes violating human rights. There were, therefore, practical advantages in not according recognition as such to governments. This change to a policy of not formally recognising governments had in fact taken place in certain

⁴⁷ See e.g. Peterson, 'Recognition', p. 42, and C. Rousseau, 'Chroniques des Faits Internationaux', 93 RGDI, 1989, p. 923.

⁴⁸ Warbrick, 'New British Policy', p. 584.

⁴⁹ For example, the democratic requirement noted by President Wilson, President Rutherford Hayes' popular support condition and Secretary of State Seward's criterion of ability to honour international obligations: see statement by US Department of State, DUSPIL, 1977, pp. 19, 20. See also *Third US Restatement*, para. 203, note 1. The Organisation of American States adopted a resolution in 1965 recommending that states contemplating recognition of a new government should take into account whether that government proposes to hold elections within a reasonable time, 5 ILM, 1966, p. 155.

⁵⁰ DUSPIL, 1977, p. 20. See also DUSPIL, 1981–8, vol. I, 1993, p. 295. Note that Deputy Secretary of State Christopher stated in 1977 that unscheduled changes of government were not uncommon in this day and age and that 'withholding diplomatic relations from these regimes after they have obtained effective control penalises us', *ibid.*, p. 18. See also, as regards Afghanistan and the continuation of diplomatic relations, 72 AJIL, 1978, p. 879. Cf. the special circumstances of the recognition of the government of China, DUSPIL, 1978, pp. 71–3 and *ibid.*, 1979, pp. 142 ff. But cf. Petersen, 'Recognition'.

⁵¹ See 408 HL Deb., cols. 1121–2, 28 April 1980. See also Symmons, 'United Kingdom Abolition', p. 249.

civil law countries rather earlier. Belgium⁵² and France⁵³ appear, for example, to have adopted this approach in 1965. By the late 1980s, this approach was also adopted by both Australia⁵⁴ and Canada,⁵⁵ and indeed by other countries.⁵⁶

The change, however, did not remove all problems, but rather shifted the focus from formal recognition to informal 'dealings'. The UK announced that it would continue to decide the nature of dealings with unconstitutional regimes:

in the light of [an] assessment of whether they are able of themselves to exercise effective control of the territory of the state concerned, and seem likely to continue to do so.⁵⁷

The change, therefore, is that recognition of governments is abolished but that the criterion for dealing with such regimes is essentially the same as the former test for the recognition of governments.⁵⁸ In that context, regard should also be had to the phrase 'of themselves'.⁵⁹

*De facto and de jure recognition*⁶⁰

In addition to the fact that there are different entities to be recognised, recognition itself may take different forms. It may be either *de facto* or *de*

⁵² See 11 *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1973, p. 351.

⁵³ See 69 RGDI, 1965, p. 1089. See also 83 RGDI, 1979, p. 808; G. Charpentier, 'Pratique Française du Droit International', AFDI, 1981, p. 911, and Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, p. 555.

⁵⁴ See J. G. Starke, 'The New Australian Policy of Recognition of Foreign Governments', 62 *Australian Law Journal*, 1988, p. 390.

⁵⁵ See 27 Canadian YIL, 1989, p. 387. See also *Re Chateau-Gai Wines Ltd and Attorney-General for Canada* [1970] Ex CR 366; 55 ILR, p. 38.

⁵⁶ See e.g. the Netherlands, 22 Netherlands YIL, 1991, p. 237, and New Zealand, *Attorney-General for Fiji v. Robt Jones House Ltd* [1989] 2 NZLR 69 at 70–1; 80 ILR, p. 1. The European Union has stated that 'it does not recognise governments, and even less political personalities, but states, according to the most common international practice', *Bulletin of the European Union*, 1999–7/8, p. 60 and UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 424.

⁵⁷ 408 HL Deb., cols. 1121–2, 28 April 1980. This has been reaffirmed on a number of occasions: see e.g. UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 477 and UKMIL, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 577.

⁵⁸ See *Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa* [1987] 1 QB 599; 75 ILR, p. 675.

⁵⁹ See, as regards the different approaches adopted to the Cambodian and Ugandan experiences, Symmons, 'United Kingdom Abolition', p. 250, and UKMIL, 50 BYIL, 1979, p. 296. See also above, chapter 4, p. 192. See, as to recognition of belligerency and insurgency, e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 148–53; Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, p. 270, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 161 ff.

⁶⁰ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 154.

jure. A more correct way of putting this might be to say that a government (or other entity or situation) may be recognised *de facto* or *de jure*.

Recognition *de facto* implies that there is some doubt as to the long-term viability of the government in question. Recognition *de jure* usually follows where the recognising state accepts that the effective control displayed by the government is permanent and firmly rooted and that there are no legal reasons detracting from this, such as constitutional subservience to a foreign power. *De facto* recognition involves a hesitant assessment of the situation, an attitude of wait and see, to be succeeded by *de jure* recognition when the doubts are sufficiently overcome to extend formal acceptance. To take one instance, the United Kingdom recognised the Soviet government *de facto* in 1921 and *de jure* in 1924.⁶¹ A slightly different approach is adopted in cases of civil war where the distinction between *de jure* and *de facto* recognition is sometimes used to illustrate the variance between legal and factual sovereignty. For example, during the 1936–9 Spanish Civil War, the United Kingdom, while recognising the Republican government as the *de jure* government, extended *de facto* recognition to the forces under General Franco as they gradually took over the country. Similarly, the government of the Italian conquering forces in Ethiopia was recognised *de facto* by the UK in 1936, and *de jure* two years later.⁶²

By this method a recognising state could act in accordance with political reality and its own interests while reserving judgment on the permanence of the change in government or its desirability or legality. It is able to safeguard the affairs of its citizens and institutions by this, because certain legal consequences will flow in municipal law from the recognition.⁶³

There are in reality few meaningful distinctions between a *de facto* and a *de jure* recognition, although only a government recognised *de jure* may enter a claim to property located in the recognising state.⁶⁴ Additionally, it is generally accepted that *de facto* recognition does not of itself include the exchange of diplomatic relations.

Premature recognition⁶⁵

There is often a difficult and unclear dividing line between the acceptable recognition of a new state, particularly one that has emerged or is emerging

⁶¹ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 161. See also the Morrison statement, above, note 38.

⁶² See below, pp. 473 and 474. ⁶³ See below, p. 471.

⁶⁴ See e.g. *Haile Selassie v. Cable and Wireless Ltd (No. 2)* [1939] 1 Ch. 182; 9 AD, p. 94.

⁶⁵ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 143 ff. and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 558.

as a result of secession, and intervention in the domestic affairs of another state by way of premature or precipitate recognition, such as, for example, the view taken by the Nigerian federal government with respect to the recognition of 'Biafra' by five states.⁶⁶ In each case, the state seeking to recognise will need to consider carefully the factual situation and the degree to which the criteria of statehood (or other relevant criteria with regard to other types of entity with regard to which recognition is sought) have been fulfilled. It is therefore a process founded upon a perception of fact. In the case of Croatia, it could be argued that the recognition of that state by the European Community and its member states (together with Austria and Switzerland) on 15 January 1992 was premature.⁶⁷ Croatia at that time, and for several years thereafter, did not effectively control some one-third of its territory. In addition, the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission had taken the view in Opinion No. 5 on 11 January 1992 that Croatia did not meet fully the conditions for recognition laid down in the European Community Guidelines of 16 December 1991,⁶⁸ since the Constitutional Act adopted by Croatia did not fully incorporate the required guarantees relating to human rights and minority rights.⁶⁹ It could also be argued that the recognition of Bosnia-Herzegovina on 6 April 1992 by the European Community and member states and on 7 April 1992 by the USA was premature, particularly since the government of that state effectively controlled less than one-half of its territory, a situation that continued until the Dayton Peace Agreement of November 1995.⁷⁰ On the other hand, it could be argued that in the special

⁶⁶ See e.g. J. Stremlau, *The International Politics of the Nigerian Civil War, 1967–70*, Princeton, 1977, pp. 127–9, and D. Ijalaye, 'Was "Biafra" at Any Time a State in International Law?', 65 AJIL, 1971, p. 51. See also Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 7–8.

⁶⁷ See e.g. R. Müllerson, *International Law, Rights and Politics*, London, 1994, p. 130, and R. Rich, 'Recognition of States: The Collapse of Yugoslavia and the Soviet Union', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 36.

⁶⁸ See above, p. 451.

⁶⁹ 92 ILR, pp. 179, 181. Note that the President of Croatia on 15 January 1992 announced that Croatia would abide by the necessary conditions and on 8 May 1992 its Constitution was amended. The amended Constitution was considered by the Arbitration Commission on 4 July 1992, which concluded that the requirements of general international law with regard to the protection of minorities had been satisfied, *ibid.*, p. 209. Note, however, the critical views of the UN Human Rights Committee with regard to the distinctions made in the Croatian Constitution between ethnic Croats and other citizens: see CCPR/C/79/Add.15, p. 3. Croatia became a member of the UN on 22 May 1992. See also M. Weller, 'The International Response to the Dissolution of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 569.

⁷⁰ See e.g. Weller, 'International Response'. Cf. the views of the UK Minister of State at the Foreign Office, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 645. Note that Bosnia became a member of the UN on 22 May 1992.

circumstances of Former Yugoslavia, the international community (particularly by means of membership of the UN which is restricted to states) was prepared to accept a loosening of the traditional criteria of statehood, so that essentially international recognition compensated for lack of effectivity.

Recognition may also be overdue, in the sense that it occurs long after it is clear as a matter of fact that the criteria of statehood have been satisfied, but in such cases, different considerations apply since recognition is not compulsory and remains a political decision by states.⁷¹

Implied recognition⁷²

Recognition itself need not be express, that is in the form of an open, unambiguous and formal communication, but may be implied in certain circumstances.⁷³ This is due to the fact that recognition is founded upon the will and intent of the state that is extending the recognition. Accordingly, there are conditions in which it might be possible to declare that in acting in a certain manner, one state has by implication recognised another state or government. Because this facility of indirect or implied recognition is available, states may make an express declaration to the effect that a particular action involving another party is by no means to be interpreted as comprehending any recognition. This attitude was maintained by Arab countries with regard to Israel, and in certain other cases.⁷⁴ It automatically excludes any possibility of implied recognition but

⁷¹ See e.g. with regard to the delays in recognising Macedonia, Henkin *et al.*, *International Law*, p. 253, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 565. Israel, of course, remained unrecognised by its Arab neighbours until long after its establishment in 1948. It was recognised in 1979 by Egypt and in 1995 by Jordan.

⁷² See e.g. Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 169; Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 369–408, and Chen, *Recognition*, pp. 201–16. See also Talmon, 'Recognition of Governments', pp. 255 ff., and M. Lachs, 'Recognition and Modern Methods of International Co-operation', 35 BYIL, 1959, p. 252.

⁷³ Note that article 7 of the Montevideo Convention on Rights and Duties of States, 1933 provides that 'the recognition of a state may be express or tacit. The latter results from any act which implies the intention of recognising the new state.' See also R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law by the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963, pp. 140 ff.

⁷⁴ See e.g. UK and North Vietnam, Cmd 9763, p. 3, note 1, and Israel and Arab countries, International Convention on the Elimination of all Forms of Racial Discrimination, 1965: see *Human Rights International Instruments*, UN, ST/HR/4/rev.4, 1982. Note that Egypt withdrew its declarations regarding non-recognition of Israel with regard to this Convention on 18 January 1980, *ibid.*, p. 86.

does suggest that without a definite and clear waiver, the result of some international actions may be recognition of a hitherto unrecognised entity in certain circumstances.

The point can best be explained by mentioning the kind of conditions which may give rise to the possibility of a recognition where no express or formal statement has been made. A message of congratulations to a new state upon attaining sovereignty will imply recognition of that state, as will the formal establishment of diplomatic relations,⁷⁵ but the maintenance of informal and unofficial contacts (such as those between the United States and Communist China during the 1960s and early 1970s in Warsaw) will not.⁷⁶ The issuing of a consular *exequatur*, the accepted authorisation permitting the performance of consular functions, to a representative of an unrecognised state will usually amount to a recognition of that state, though not in all cases.⁷⁷ A British Consul has operated in Taiwan, but the UK does not recognise the Taiwan government.⁷⁸ It is possible that the conclusion of a bilateral treaty between the recognising and unrecognised state, as distinct from a temporary agreement, might imply recognition, but the matter is open to doubt since there are a number of such agreements between parties not recognising each other. One would have to study the circumstances of the particular case to clarify the issue.⁷⁹

⁷⁵ See O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 154–5. Note that the UK stated that in the case of Namibia 'there was no formal recognition of statehood, but it was implicit in the establishment of diplomatic relations in March 1990'; UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 642. Instructing an ambassador to make suitable, friendly contact with the new administration in question might also suffice: see UKMIL, 50 BYIL, 1979, p. 294.

⁷⁶ See e.g. *Pan American World Airways Inc. v. Aetna Casualty and Surety Co.* 13 ILM, 1974, pp. 1376, 1397.

⁷⁷ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 171, note 9.

⁷⁸ Discussions with an unrecognised entity conducted by consular officers will not of itself imply recognition: see e.g. H. de Smith, *Great Britain and the Law of Nations*, London, 1932, vol. I, p. 79, and *Civil Air Transport Inc. v. Central Air Transport Corporation* [1953] AC 70, 88–9. The establishment of an office in the UK, for example, of an unrecognised entity is not as such prohibited nor does it constitute recognition: see e.g. with regard to the PLO, 483 HL Deb., cols. 1248–52, 27 January 1987 and UKMIL, 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 531. Note that under section 1 of the Diplomatic and Consular Premises Act 1987, the permission of the Foreign Secretary is required if the premises in question are to be regarded as diplomatic or consular.

⁷⁹ See e.g. *Republic of China v. Merchants' Fire Assurance Corporation of New York* 30 F.2d 278 (1929); 5 AD, p. 42 and *Clerget v. Banque Commerciale pour l'Europe du Nord* 52 ILR, p. 310. See, with regard to the special position as between the German Federal Republic and the German Democratic Republic, *Re Treaty on the Basis of Relations Between the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic* 78 ILR, p. 150. See also Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 567 ff.

The making of claims by a state against an entity will not necessarily imply recognition.⁸⁰

Recognition is not normally to be inferred from the fact that both states have taken part in negotiations and signed a multilateral treaty,⁸¹ for example the United Nations Charter. Practice shows that many of the member states or their governments are not recognised by other member states.⁸² Although Israel and many Arab countries are UN members, this did not affect Arab non-recognition of the Israeli state.⁸³ However, where the state concerned has voted in favour of membership in the UN of the entity in question, it is a natural inference that recognition has occurred. The UK, for example, regarded its vote in favour of UN membership for the former Yugoslav republic of Macedonia as amounting to recognition of that entity as a state.⁸⁴ Indeed, irrespective of recognition by individual states, there is no doubt that membership of the UN is powerful evidence of statehood since being a state is a necessary precondition to UN membership by virtue of article 4 of the UN Charter.⁸⁵

In the case of common participation in an international conference, similar considerations apply, although the element of doubt has often stimulated non-recognising states to declare expressly that their presence and joint signature on any agreement issuing forth from the meeting is in no way to be understood as implying recognition. Such has been the case particularly with the Arab states over the years with regard to Israel.

State practice has restricted the possible scope of operation of this concept of implied recognition to a few instances only and all the relevant surrounding circumstances will have to be carefully evaluated before one can deduce from conduct the intention to extend recognition. States like to retain their control of such an important political instrument as recognition and are usually not keen to allow this to be inferred from the

⁸⁰ See e.g. with regard to Formosa/Taiwan, 6 ICLQ, 1957, p. 507 and with regard to Turkish-occupied northern Cyprus, 957 HC Deb., col. 247, Written Answer, 8 November 1978.

⁸¹ See e.g. UKMIL, 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 339 and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 563 ff. See also *Civil Aeronautics Administration v. Singapore Airlines Ltd* [2004] 1 SLR 570; [2004] SGCA 3, para. 35; 133 ILR, pp. 371, 383.

⁸² See the Memorandum on the Legal Aspects of the Problem of Representation in the United Nations, S/1466, 1950 and 4 *International Organisation*, 1950, pp. 356, 359.

⁸³ See e.g. Q. Wright, 'Some Thoughts about Recognition', 44 AJIL, 1950, p. 548. See also, with regard to the Ukraine and Byelorussia, members of the UN prior to the demise of the USSR of which they were constituent republics, UKMIL, 55 BYIL, 1978, p. 339.

⁸⁴ See 223 HC Deb., col. 241, Written Answer, 22 April 1993 and UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 601. Note that a similar view was taken with regard to the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 559.

⁸⁵ See the *Conditions of Membership of the United Nations* case, ICJ Reports, 1948, pp. 57 ff.; 15 AD, p. 333.

way they behave. They prefer recognition to be, in general, a formal act accorded after due thought.

Conditional recognition

The political nature of recognition has been especially marked with reference to what has been termed conditional recognition. This refers to the practice of making the recognition subject to fulfilment of certain conditions, for example, the good treatment of religious minorities as occurred with regard to the independence of some Balkan countries in the late nineteenth century, or the granting of most-favoured-nation status to the recognised state. One well-known instance of this approach was the Litvinov Agreement of 1933 whereby the United States recognised the Soviet government upon the latter undertaking to avoid acts prejudicial to the internal security of the USA, and to come to a settlement of various financial claims.⁸⁶

However, breach of the particular condition does not invalidate the recognition. It may give rise to a breach of international law and political repercussions but the law appears not to accept the notion of a conditional recognition as such. The status of any conditions will depend upon agreements specifically made by the particular parties.⁸⁷ It is, however, important to distinguish conditional recognition in this sense from the evolution of criteria for recognition generally, although the two categories may in practice overlap.⁸⁸

Collective recognition⁸⁹

The expediency of collective recognition has often been noted. This would amount to recognition by means of an international decision, whether

⁸⁶ See e.g. *United States v. Pink* 315 US 203, 229 (1942), Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 120 ff.; 10 AD, p. 48, and A. Kiss, *Répertoire de la Pratique Française en Matière de Droit International Public*, Paris, 1962–72, vol. III, pp. 40 ff.

⁸⁷ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, chapter 19. See also the Treaty of Berlin, 1878 concerning Bulgaria, Montenegro, Serbia and Romania and the provisions dealing with freedom of religion, articles V, XXVII, XXXV and XLIII.

⁸⁸ See further above, p. 451, with regard to the approach of the European Community to the emergence of new states in Eastern Europe and out of the former USSR and Yugoslavia. This constituted a co-ordinated stand with regard to criteria for recognition by the Community and its member states rather than collective recognition as such.

⁸⁹ See e.g. Higgins, *Development of International Law*; Dugard, *Recognition*; Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, p. 400; Chen, *Recognition*, p. 211, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 177 ff.

by an international organisation or not. It would, of course, signify the importance of the international community in its collective assertion of control over membership and because of this it has not been warmly welcomed, nor can one foresee its general application for some time to come. The idea has been discussed particularly since the foundation of the League of Nations and was re-emphasised with the establishment of the United Nations. However, it rapidly became clear that member states reserved the right to extend recognition to their own executive authorities and did not wish to delegate it to any international institution. The most that could be said is that membership of the United Nations constitutes powerful evidence of statehood. But that, of course, is not binding upon other member states who are free to refuse to recognise any other member state or government of the UN.⁹⁰

Withdrawal of recognition⁹¹

Recognition once given may in certain circumstances be withdrawn. This is more easily achieved with respect to *de facto* recognition, as that is by its nature a cautious and temporary assessment of a particular situation. Where a *de facto* government loses the effective control it once exercised, the reason for recognition disappears and it may be revoked. It is in general a preliminary acceptance of political realities and may be withdrawn in accordance with a change in political factors.⁹² *De jure* recognition, on the other hand, is intended to be more of a definitive step and is more difficult to withdraw.

Of course, where a government recognised *de jure* has been overthrown a new situation arises and the question of a new government will have to be faced, but in such instances withdrawal of recognition of the previous administration is assumed and does not have to be expressly stated, providing always that the former government is not still in existence and carrying on the fight in some way. Withdrawal of recognition of one government without recognising a successor is a possibility and indeed was the approach adopted by the UK and France, for example, with regard to Cambodia in 1979.⁹³ However, with the adoption of the new British

⁹⁰ See further above, p. 445. ⁹¹ See Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, p. 349.

⁹² Withdrawal of *de facto* recognition does not always entail withdrawal of *de jure* recognition: see, with regard to Latvia, *Re Feivel Pikelnys Estate*, 32 BYIL, 1955–6, p. 288.

⁹³ See 975 HC Deb., col. 723, 6 December 1979, and C. Warbrick, 'Kampuchea: Representation and Recognition', 30 ICLQ, 1981, p. 234. See also AFDI, 1980, p. 888.

policy on recognition with regard to governments,⁹⁴ the position is now that the UK government will neither recognise nor withdraw recognition of regimes.⁹⁵

Withdrawal of recognition in other circumstances is not a very general occurrence but in exceptional conditions it remains a possibility. The United Kingdom recognised the Italian conquest of Ethiopia *de facto* in 1936 and *de jure* two years later. However, it withdrew recognition in 1940, with the intensification of fighting and the dispatch of military aid.⁹⁶ Recognition of belligerency will naturally terminate with the defeat of either party, while the loss of one of the required criteria of statehood would affect recognition. It is to be noted that the 1979 recognition of the People's Republic of China as the sole legal government of China entailed the withdrawal of recognition or 'derecognition' of the Republic of China (Taiwan). This was explained to mean that, 'so far as the formal foreign relations of the United States are concerned, a government does *not* exist in Taiwan any longer'.⁹⁷

Nevertheless, this was not to affect the application of the laws of the United States with respect to Taiwan in the context of US domestic law.⁹⁸ To some extent in this instance the usual consequences of non-recognition have not flowed, but this has taken place upon the background of a formal and deliberate act of policy.⁹⁹ It does show how complex the topic of recognition has become.

The usual method of expressing disapproval with the actions of a particular government is to break diplomatic relations. This will adequately demonstrate aversion as did, for example, the rupture in diplomatic relations between the UK and the USSR in 1927, and between some Arab countries and the United States in 1967, without entailing the legal consequences and problems that a withdrawal of recognition would initiate. But one must not confuse the ending of diplomatic relations with a withdrawal of recognition.

⁹⁴ See above, p. 458. ⁹⁵ 424 HL Deb., col. 551, 15 October 1981.

⁹⁶ See *Azazh Kebbede v. Italian Government* 9 AD, p. 93.

⁹⁷ US reply brief in the Court of Appeals in *Goldwater v. Carter* 444 US 996 (1979), quoted in DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 143–4.

⁹⁸ Taiwan Relations Act, Pub. L. 96–8 Stat. 22 USC 3301–3316, s. 4.

⁹⁹ Also of interest is the UK attitude to the 'republic of Somaliland'. This territory is part of Somalia but proclaimed independence in 1991. It is totally unrecognised by any state, but the UK maintains 'continuing contacts' with it and works 'very closely' with it: see HL Deb., vol. 677, col. 418, 16 January 2006 and HL Deb., vol. 683, col. 212, 14 June 2006. See also M. Schoiswohl, *Status and (Human Rights) Obligations of Non-Recognized De Facto Regimes in International Law: The Case of 'Somaliland'*, Leiden, 2004.

Since recognition is ultimately a political issue, no matter how circumscribed or conditioned by the law, it logically follows that, should a state perceive any particular situation as justifying a withdrawal of recognition, it will take such action as it regards as according with its political interests.

Non-recognition¹⁰⁰

There has been developing since the 1930s a doctrine of non-recognition where, under certain conditions, a factual situation will not be recognised because of strong reservations as to the morality or legality of the actions that have been adopted in order to bring about the factual situation. It is a doctrine that has also been reinforced by the principle that legal rights cannot derive from an illegal situation (*ex injuria jus non oritur*).¹⁰¹

This approach was particularly stimulated by the Japanese invasion of Manchuria in 1931. The US Secretary of State declared in 1932 that the illegal invasion would not be recognised as it was contrary to the 1928 Pact of Paris (the Kellogg–Briand Pact) which had outlawed war as an instrument of national policy. The doctrine of not recognising any situation, treaty or agreement brought about by non-legal means was named the Stimson doctrine after the American Secretary of State who put it forward. It was reinforced not long afterwards by a resolution of the Assembly of the League of Nations stressing that League members should not recognise any situation, treaty or agreement brought about by means contrary to the League's Covenant or the Pact of Paris.¹⁰²

However, state practice until the Second World War was not encouraging. The Italian conquest of the Empire of Ethiopia was recognised and the German takeover of Czechoslovakia accepted. The Soviet Union made a series of territorial acquisitions in 1940, ranging from areas of Finland to the Baltic States (of Lithuania, Estonia and Latvia) and Bessarabia. These

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 416–20, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 183 ff. See also R. Langer, *Seizure of Territory*, Princeton, 1947; Hackworth, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 334; I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963, chapter 25; Dugard, *Recognition*, pp. 24 ff. and 81 ff., and Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 120 ff. See also S. Talmon *La Non Reconnaissance Collective des États Illégaux*, Paris, 2007.

¹⁰¹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 183–4, and the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 46–7; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 36–7.

¹⁰² LNOJ, Sp. Supp. no. 101, p. 8. This principle was reiterated in a number of declarations subsequently: see e.g. 34 AJIL, 1940, Supp., p. 197. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 143–6.

were recognised *de facto* over the years by Western powers (though not by the United States).¹⁰³

The doctrine was examined anew after 1945. Article 2(4) of the UN Charter prohibits the threat or use of force *inter alia* against the territorial integrity of states, while the draft Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States, 1949, emphasised that territorial acquisitions by states were not to be recognised by other states where achieved by means of the threat or use of force or in any other manner inconsistent with international law and order. The Declaration on Principles of International Law, 1970, also included a provision to the effect that no territorial acquisition resulting from the threat or use of force shall be recognised as legal,¹⁰⁴ and Security Council resolution 242 (1967) on the solution to the Middle East conflict emphasised 'the inadmissibility of the acquisition of territory by war'.¹⁰⁵

Rhodesia unilaterally proclaimed its independence in November 1965 and in the years of its existence did not receive official recognition from any state at all, although it did maintain diplomatic relations with South Africa and Portugal prior to the revolution of 1974. The day following the Rhodesian declaration of independence, the Security Council passed a resolution calling upon all states not to accord it recognition and to refrain from assisting it.¹⁰⁶ The Council imposed selective mandatory economic sanctions on Rhodesia and these were later made comprehensive.¹⁰⁷ Similar action was also taken with regard to the Bantustans, territories of South Africa declared by that state to be independent.¹⁰⁸ The Security Council also adopted resolution 541 in 1983, which deplored the purported

¹⁰³ O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 143–6.

¹⁰⁴ See also article 11 of the Montevideo Convention on the Rights and Duties of States, 1933; article 17 of the Bogotá Charter of the OAS, 1948, and article 52 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969. Note also article 5(3) of the Consensus Definition of Aggression, 1974, adopted by the General Assembly in resolution 3314 (XXIX).

¹⁰⁵ See also Security Council resolutions 476 (1980) and 478 (1980) declaring purported changes in the status of Jerusalem by Israel to be null and void, and resolution 491 (1981) stating that Israel's extension of its laws, jurisdiction and administration to the Golan Heights was without international legal effect.

¹⁰⁶ Security Council resolution 216 (1965). See also Security Council resolutions 217 (1965), 277 (1970) and 288 (1970).

¹⁰⁷ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 221 (1961), 232 (1966) and 253 (1968). See also M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa*, Oxford, 1986, p. 160; R. Zacklin, *The United Nations and Rhodesia*, Oxford, 1974, and J. Nkala, *The United Nations, International Law and the Rhodesian Crisis*, Oxford, 1985.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. General Assembly resolution 31/6A and the Security Council statements of 21 September 1979 and 15 December 1981, Shaw, *Title to Territory*, p. 149. See also J. Dugard, *International Law, A South African Perspective*, Kenwyn, 1994, chapter 5.

secession of part of Cyprus occupied by Turkey in 1974 and termed the proposed Turkish Cypriot state 'legally invalid'.¹⁰⁹ In 1990, the Security Council adopted resolution 662, which declared the Iraqi annexation of Kuwait 'null and void' and called on all states and institutions not to recognise the annexation.¹¹⁰ The principle of non-recognition of title to territory acquired through aggression in violation of international law was also reaffirmed in the *Brcko Inter-Entity Boundary* award with regard to aggression in Bosnia.¹¹¹

The role of non-recognition as an instrument of sanction as well as a means of pressure and a method of protecting the wronged inhabitants of a territory was discussed more fully in the Advisory Opinion of the International Court of Justice in the *Namibia* case, 1971, dealing with South Africa's presence in that territory. The Court held that since the continued South African occupancy was illegal, member states of the United Nations were obliged to recognise that illegality and the invalidity of South Africa's acts concerning Namibia and were under a duty to refrain from any actions implying recognition of the legality of, or lending support or assistance to, the South African presence and administration.¹¹²

The legal effects of recognition

In this section some of the legal results that flow from the recognition or non-recognition of an entity, both in the international sphere and within the municipal law of particular states, will be noted. Although recognition may legitimately be regarded as a political tool, it is one that nevertheless entails important consequences in the legal field.

Internationally

In the majority of cases, it can be accepted that recognition of a state or government is a legal acknowledgement of a factual state of affairs. Nevertheless, it should not be assumed that non-recognition of, for example,

¹⁰⁹ See above, chapter 5, p. 235. See also *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 60–1; 120 ILR, p. 10.

¹¹⁰ See below, chapter 22, p. 1253. ¹¹¹ 36 ILM, 1997, pp. 396, 422.

¹¹² ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 54, 56; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 44, 46. Non-member states of the UN were similarly obliged, *ibid.* The non-recognition obligation did not extend, however, to certain acts of a humanitarian nature the effect of which could only be ignored to the detriment of the inhabitants of the territory, *ibid.*, p. 56 and *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 90–8; 120 ILR, p. 10. See also above, chapter 5, p. 225.

a state will deprive that entity of rights and duties before international law, excepting, of course, those situations where it may be possible to say that recognition is constitutive of the legal entity.

In general, the political existence of a state is independent of recognition by other states, and thus an unrecognised state must be deemed subject to the rules of international law. It cannot consider itself free from restraints as to aggressive behaviour, nor can its territory be regarded as *terra nullius*. States which have signed international agreements are entitled to assume that states which they have not recognised but which have similarly signed the agreement are bound by that agreement. For example, the United Kingdom treated the German Democratic Republic as bound by its signature of the 1963 Nuclear Test Ban Treaty even when the state was not recognised by the UK.

Non-recognition, with its consequent absence of diplomatic relations, may affect the unrecognised state in asserting its rights or other states in asserting its duties under international law, but will not affect the existence of such rights and duties. The position is, however, different under municipal law.

Internally

Because recognition is fundamentally a political act, it is reserved to the executive branch of government. This means that the judiciary must as a general principle accept the discretion of the executive and give effect to its decisions. The courts cannot recognise a state or government. They can only accept and enforce the legal consequences which flow from the executive's political decision, although this situation has become more complex with the change in policy from express recognition of governments to acceptance of dealings with such entities.

To this extent, recognition is constitutive, because the act of recognition itself creates legal results within the domestic jurisdiction. In the United Kingdom and the United States particularly, the courts feel themselves obliged to accept the verdict of the executive branch of government as to whether a particular entity should be regarded as recognised or not. If the administration has recognised a state or government and so informs the judiciary by means of a certificate, the position of that state or government within the municipal structure is totally transformed.

It may sue in the domestic courts and be granted immunity from suit in certain instances. Its own legislative and executive acts will be given effect to in the courts of the recognising state and its own diplomatic

representatives will be able to claim the various immunities accorded to the official envoys of a recognised state. In addition, it will be entitled to possession in the recognising state of property belonging to its predecessor.

The UK¹¹³

The English courts have adopted the attitude over many years that an entity unrecognised by the Foreign Office would be treated before the courts as if it did not exist and accordingly it would not be able to claim immunity before the courts.¹¹⁴ This meant in one case that ships of the unrecognised 'Provisional Government of Northern Russia' would not be protected by the courts from claims affecting them.¹¹⁵ Similarly an unrecognised state or government is unable to appear before the courts as a plaintiff in an action. This particular principle prevented the revolutionary government of Berne in 1804 from taking action to restrain the Bank of England from dealing with funds belonging to the previous administration of the city.¹¹⁶

The leading case in English law on the issue of effects of recognition of an entity within the domestic sphere is *Luther v. Sagor*.¹¹⁷ This concerned the operations and produce of a timber factory in Russia owned by the plaintiffs, which had been nationalised in 1919 by the Soviet government. In 1920 the defendant company purchased a quantity of wood from the USSR and this was claimed in England by the plaintiffs as their property since it had come from what had been their factory. It was argued by them that the 1919 Soviet decree should be ignored before the English courts since the United Kingdom had not recognised the Soviet government. The lower court agreed with this contention and the matter then came to the Court of Appeal.¹¹⁸

In the meantime the UK recognised the Soviet government *de facto* and the Foreign Office informed the Court of Appeal of this in writing. The result was that the higher court was bound to take note of the Soviet decree and accordingly the plaintiffs lost their case, since a court must give effect to the legislation of a recognised state or government. The Court also held that the fact that the Soviet government was recognised

¹¹³ See e.g. Talmon, 'Recognition of Governments', pp. 275 ff.; Greig, 'Carl-Zeiss Case', and J. G. Merrills, 'Recognition and Construction', 20 ICLQ, 1971, p. 476.

¹¹⁴ See e.g. *Halsbury's Laws of England*, 4th edn, London, 1977, vol. XVIII, p. 735.

¹¹⁵ *The Annette* [1919] P. 105; 1 AD, p. 43.

¹¹⁶ *The City of Berne v. The Bank of England* (1804) 9 Ves. Jun. 347.

¹¹⁷ [1921] 1 KB 456; 1 AD, p. 47. ¹¹⁸ [1921] 3 KB 532; 1 AD, p. 49.

de facto and not *de jure* did not affect the issue. Another interesting point is that since the Foreign Office certificate included a statement that the former Provisional Government of Russia recognised by the UK had been dispersed during December 1917, the Court inferred the commencement of the Soviet government from that date.

The essence of the matter was that the Soviet government was now accepted as the sovereign government of the USSR as from December 1917. And since recognition once given is retroactive and relates back to the date that the authority of the government was accepted as being established, and not the date on which recognition is granted, the Soviet decree of 1919 was deemed to be a legitimate act of a recognised government. This was so even though at that date the Soviet government was not recognised by the United Kingdom.

The purpose of the retroactivity provision¹¹⁹ is to avoid possible influence in the internal affairs of the entity recognised, since otherwise legislation made prior to recognition might be rejected. However, this will depend always upon the terms of the executive certificate by which the state informs its courts of the recognition. Should the Foreign Office insist that the state or government in question is to be recognised as a sovereign state or government as of the date of the action, the courts would be bound by this.

As is the case with legislation, contracts made by an unrecognised government will not be enforced in English courts. Without the required action by the political authorities, an unrecognised entity does not exist as a legal person before the municipal courts. The case of *Luther v. Sagor* suggested that in general the legal consequences of a *de facto* recognition would be the same as a *de jure* one. This was emphasised in *Haile Selassie v. Cable and Wireless Ltd (No. 2)*,¹²⁰ but regarded as restricted to acts in relation to persons or property in the territory which the *de facto* government has been recognised as effectively controlling.

In other words, a different situation would ensue with regard to persons or property situated outside the territory of the state or government. In the *Haile Selassie* case, the Emperor of Ethiopia was suing a British company for money owing to him under an agreement. The problem was that when the action was brought, the UK had recognised the Italian forces as the *de facto* authority in Ethiopia while Haile Selassie was still recognised as the *de jure* sovereign. The Court held that since the case concerned a debt

¹¹⁹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 161, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 728–45.

¹²⁰ [1939] 1 Ch. 182; 9 AD, p. 94.

recoverable in England and not the validity of acts with regard to persons or property in Ethiopia, the *de jure* authority, Emperor Haile Selassie, was entitled to the sum due from the company, and the *de facto* control of the Italians did not affect this.

However, before the defendant's appeal was heard, the United Kingdom extended *de jure* recognition to the Italian authorities in Ethiopia. The Court of Appeal accepted that this related back to, and was deemed to operate as from the date of, the *de facto* recognition. Since this had occurred prior to the case starting, it meant that the Italian government was now to be recognised as the *de jure* government of Ethiopia, before and during the time of the hearing of the action. Accordingly, Haile Selassie was divested of any right whatsoever to sue for the recovery of the money owing.

This problem of the relationship between a *de facto* government and a *de jure* government as far as English courts were concerned, manifested itself again during the Spanish Civil War. The case of the *Arantzazu Mendi*¹²¹ concerned a private steamship registered in Bilbao in the Basque province of Spain. In June 1937, following the capture of that region by the forces of General Franco, the opposing Republican government issued a decree requisitioning all ships registered in Bilbao. Nine months later the Nationalist government of Franco also passed a decree taking control over all Bilbao vessels. In the meantime, the *Arantzazu Mendi* itself was in London when the Republican government issued a writ to obtain possession of the ship. The owners opposed this while accepting the Nationalists' requisition order.

It was accepted rule of international law that a recognised state cannot be sued or otherwise brought before the courts of another state. Accordingly, the Nationalists argued that since their authority had been recognised *de facto* by the UK government over the areas they actually controlled, their decree was valid and could not be challenged in the English courts. Therefore, the action by the Republican government must be dismissed.

The case came before the House of Lords, where it was decided that the Nationalist government, as the *de facto* authority of much of Spain including the region of Bilbao, was entitled to be regarded as a sovereign state and was able to benefit from the normal immunities which follow therefrom. Thus, the action by the Republican government failed.

¹²¹ [1939] AC 256; 9 AD, p. 60.

The House of Lords pointed out that it did not matter that the territory over which the *de facto* authority was exercising sovereign powers was from time to time increased or diminished.¹²² This case marks the high-point in the attribution of characteristics to a *de facto* authority and can be criticised for its over-generous assessment of the status of such an entity.¹²³

The problems faced by the English court when the rights and obligations of a *de jure* government and a *de facto* government, claiming the same territory, appear to be in conflict have been briefly noted. Basically, the actions of a *de facto* authority with regard to people and property within this sphere of control will be recognised in an English court, but where property is situated and recoverable in England, the *de jure* sovereign will have precedence. A similarly complicated situation arises where the interests of two recognised *de jure* governments of the same state are involved, as one supersedes the other. Problems can arise concerning the issue of retroactivity, that is, how far the court will relate back actions of a *de jure* government, since recognition is normally retroactive to the moment of inception of the particular state or government.

The matter was discussed in the *Gdynia Ameryka Linie v. Boguslawski* case.¹²⁴ During the Second World War the Polish government-in-exile stationed in London was recognised by the UK as the *de jure* government of Poland. However, on 28 June 1945 the communist provisional government was established with effective control of the country and at midnight on 5 July the UK recognised that government as the *de jure* government of Poland. A couple of days prior to this recognition, the Polish government-in-exile made an offer to Polish seamen of compensation in the event of leaving the merchant navy service. The money was to be paid by the particular employers to seamen not wanting to work for the communist provisional government. In the *Boguslawski* case the employers refused to pay the compensation to seamen requesting it, and argued that the UK recognition *de jure* of the provisional government was retroactive to 28 June, this being the date that the government effectively took control of the country. If this was the case, then acts of the government-in-exile after 28 June ceased to be of effect and thus the offers of compensation could not be enforced in the English courts.

The House of Lords emphasised the general proposition that recognition operates retroactively. However, they modified the statement by

¹²² See e.g. Lord Atkin, [1939] AC 256, 264–5.

¹²³ See e.g. Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 288–94. ¹²⁴ [1953] AC 11; 19 ILR, p. 72.

declaring that the courts had to give effect not only to acts done by the new government after recognition, but also to acts done before the recognition 'in so far as those acts related to matters under its control at the time when the acts were done'.¹²⁵ It was stated that while the recognition of the new government had certain retroactive effects, the recognition of the old government remained effective down to the date when it was in fact withdrawn. Problems might have arisen had the old government, before withdrawal of recognition, attempted to take action with respect to issues under the control of the new government. However, that was not involved in this case.

In other words, and in the circumstances of the case, the principle of retroactivity of recognition was regarded as restricted to matters within the effective control of the new government. Where something outside the effective control of the new government is involved, it would appear that the recognition does not operate retroactively and that prior to the actual date of recognition one would have to accept and put into effect the acts of the previous *de jure* government.

This could lead to many complicated situations, especially where a court is faced with conflicting courses of action, something which is not hard to envisage when one *de jure* government has been superseded by another. It could permit abuses of government such as where a government, knowing itself to be about to lose recognition, awards its supporters financial or other awards in decrees that may be enforced in English courts. What would happen if the new government issued contrary orders in an attempt to nullify the effect of the old government's decrees is something that was not examined in the *Boguslawski* case.

Another case which came before the courts in the same year was *Civil Air Transport Inc. v. Central Air Transport Corporation*,¹²⁶ and it similarly failed to answer the question mentioned above. It involved the sale of aircraft belonging to the nationalist government of China, which had been flown to the British Crown Colony of Hong Kong. Such aircraft were sold to an American company after the communist government established effective control over the country but before it had been recognised by the UK. The Court accepted that the nationalist government had been entitled to the aircraft and pointed out that:

¹²⁵ Lord Reid, [1953] AC 11, 44–5; 19 ILR, pp. 81, 83.

¹²⁶ [1953] AC 70; 19 ILR, pp. 85, 93, 110. See also F. A. Mann, 'Recognition of Sovereignty', 16 MLR, 1953, p. 226.

retroactivity of recognition operates to validate acts of a *de facto* Government which has subsequently become the new *de jure* Government, and not to invalidate acts of the previous *de jure* Government.¹²⁷

It is to be noted that the communist government did not attempt to nullify the sale to the American company. Had it done so, a new situation would have been created, but it is as yet uncertain whether that would have materially altered the legal result.

The general doctrine adhered to by the UK with regard to recognition (and now diplomatic dealings) is that it will be accorded upon the evidence of effective control. It is used to acknowledge factual situations and not as a method of exhibiting approval or otherwise. However, this is not so in all cases and there are a number of governments in effective control of their countries and unrecognised by the UK. One major example was the former German Democratic Republic. Since the prime consequence of non-recognition is that the English courts will not give effect to any laws of an unrecognised entity, problems are thus likely to arise in ordinary international political and commercial life.

The issue came before the courts in the *Carl Zeiss Stiftung v. Rayner and Keeler Ltd (No. 2)* case.¹²⁸ It concerned the Carl Zeiss foundation which was run by a special board, reconstituted in 1952 as the Council of Gera. The problem was that it was situated in the German Democratic Republic (GDR) and the establishment of the Council of Gera as the governing body of the Carl Zeiss foundation was effected by a reorganisation of local government in the GDR. When Carl Zeiss brought a claim before the English courts, the issue was at once raised as to whether, in view of the UK non-recognition of the GDR, the governing body of the foundation could be accepted by the courts. The Court of Appeal decided that since the Foreign Office certified that the UK recognised 'the State and Government of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics as *de jure* entitled to exercise governing authority in respect of that zone'¹²⁹ (i.e. the GDR, being the former Soviet zone of occupation), it was not possible to give effect to any rules or regulations laid down by the GDR. The House of Lords, however, extricated the English courts system from a rather difficult position by means of an elaborate fiction.

It stated that as a Foreign Office certificate is binding on the courts as to the facts it contains, it logically followed that the courts must recognise

¹²⁷ [1953] AC 70, 90; 19 ILR, pp. 110, 113.

¹²⁸ [1967] AC 853; 43 ILR, p. 42. See also Greig, 'Carl-Zeiss Case'.

¹²⁹ [1966] 1 Ch. 596; 43 ILR, p. 25.

the USSR as the *de jure* governing authority of East Germany, irrespective of the creation of the GDR. The courts were not entitled to enter into a political examination of the actual situation but were obliged to accept and give effect to the facts set out in the Foreign Office certificate. Thus, the Soviet Union was the *de jure* sovereign and the GDR government must be accepted as a subordinate and dependent body.

Accordingly, the Court could recognise the existence of the Carl Zeiss Stiftung by virtue of the UK recognition of the *de jure* status of the Soviet Union, the GDR as an administrative body being relevant only as a legal creature of the USSR.

The problem brought out in the *Carl Zeiss* case and sidestepped there was raised again in a series of cases concerning Rhodesia, following the unilateral declaration of independence by the Smith regime in 1965. Basically, if a government or state which exercises effective control over its own territory is unrecognised by the UK a strict enforcement of the 'no recognition, no existence' rule could lead to much hardship and inconvenience. Accordingly, in *Adams v. Adams*¹³⁰ a Rhodesian divorce decree was not recognised in an English court. However, in *Hesperides Hotels Ltd v. Aegean Turkish Holidays*,¹³¹ concerning an action in trespass with respect to hotels owned by Greek Cypriots but run by Turkish Cypriots following the Turkish invasion of 1974, Lord Denning stated *obiter* that he believed that the courts could recognise the laws and acts of an unrecognised body in effective control of territory, at least with regard to laws regulating the day-to-day affairs of the people.¹³² It is certainly an attractive approach, provided it is carefully handled and strictly limited to determinations of a humanitarian and non-sovereign nature.¹³³ In *Caglar v. Bellingham*, it was noted that while the existence of a foreign unrecognised government could be acknowledged in matters relating to commercial obligations or matters of private law between individuals or matters of routine administration such as registration of births, marriages and deaths, the courts would not acknowledge the existence of an unrecognised state if to do so would involve them in acting inconsistently with the foreign

¹³⁰ [1971] P. 188; 52 ILR, p. 15.

¹³¹ [1978] QB 205; 73 ILR, p. 9. See also M. N. Shaw, 'Legal Acts of an Unrecognised Entity', 94 LQR, 1978, p. 500.

¹³² [1978] QB 205, 218; 73 ILR, pp. 9, 15. See also Steyn J, *Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa Ltd* [1986] 3 WLR 583, 589, 592; 75 ILR, p. 675.

¹³³ See further the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 56; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 46, and *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 90–8; 120 ILR, p. 10.

policy or diplomatic stance of the UK.¹³⁴ In *Emin v. Yeldag*, the Court held that private acts taking place within an unrecognised state could be regarded as valid within the English legal system provided that there was no statutory prohibition¹³⁵ and that such acceptance did not compromise the UK government in the conduct of foreign relations.¹³⁶ Indeed, where the issue concerns the lawful acts of a person recognised as existing in English law, they will be justiciable before the English courts and will not be tainted by illegality because the unrecognised state can be associated with the actions.¹³⁷

In many cases, however, the problems with regard to whether an entity is or is not a 'state' arise in connection with the interpretation of a particular statutory provision. The approach of the courts has been to focus upon the construction of the relevant instrument rather than upon the Foreign Office certificate or upon any definition in international law of statehood.¹³⁸

Some of the consequential problems of non-recognition were addressed in the Foreign Corporations Act 1991. This provides that a corporation incorporated in a territory not recognised by the UK government as a state would be regarded as having legal personality within the UK where the laws of that territory were applied by a settled court system. In other words, the territory would be treated for this purpose as if it were a recognised state, thereby enabling its legislation to be applied in this circumstance on the normal conflict of rules basis. The point should, however, be stressed that the legislation was not intended at all to impact upon recognition issues as such.¹³⁹

¹³⁴ 108 ILR, p. 510, at 534.

¹³⁵ Such as in *Adams v. Adams* [1970] 3 All ER 572 in view of the relationship between the UK and Southern Rhodesia.

¹³⁶ [2002] 1 FLR 956. This contradicted the earlier case of *B v. B* [2000] FLR 707, where a divorce obtained in the unrecognised 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus' was not recognised. See also *Parent and Others v. Singapore Airlines Ltd and Civil Aeronautics Administration* 133 ILR, p. 264.

¹³⁷ See *North Cyprus Tourism Centre Ltd v. Transport for London* [2005] EWHC 1698 (Admin), para. 50.

¹³⁸ See e.g. *Re Al-Fin Corporation's Patent* [1970] Ch. 160; 52 ILR, p. 68; *Reel v. Holder* [1981] 1 WLR 1226; 74 ILR, p. 105 and *Caglar v. Bellingham* 108 ILR, p. 510 at 528, 530 and 539, where the statutory term 'foreign state' was held to mean a state recognised by the UK.

¹³⁹ This legislation was adopted essentially to deal with the situation following *Arab Monetary Fund v. Hashim (No. 3)* [1991] 2 WLR, whereby the legal personality of a company not incorporated in a territory recognised as a state would not be recognised in English law. See UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 565–8. See also the decision of the Special Commissioners in *Caglar v. Bellingham*, 108 ILR, p. 510 at 530, where it was emphasised that the intention of

Since the UK decision to abandon recognition of governments in 1980, the question arises as to the attitude of the courts on this matter. In particular, it appears that they may be called upon to examine the nature of the UK government's dealings with a new regime in order to determine its status for municipal law purposes.¹⁴⁰

In *Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa*¹⁴¹ the Court was in fact called upon to decide the status of Ciskei. This territory, part of South Africa, was one of the Bantustans granted 'independence' by South Africa. This was accomplished by virtue of the Status of Ciskei Act 1981. The preliminary issue that came before the Court in a commercial dispute was whether Ciskei had *locus standi* to sue or be sued in England. The Foreign and Commonwealth Office certified that Ciskei was not recognised as an independent sovereign state either *de facto* or *de jure* and that representations were made to South Africa in relation to matters occurring in Ciskei. The Court of Appeal held that it was able to take account of such declarations and legislation as were not in conflict with the certificates.

The effect of that, noted Lord Donaldson, was that the Status of Ciskei Act 1981 could be taken into account, except for those provisions declaring the territory independent and relinquishing South African sovereignty. This led to the conclusion that the Ciskei legislature was in fact exercising power by virtue of delegation from the South African authorities.¹⁴² Accordingly, the government of Ciskei could sue or be sued in the English courts 'as being a subordinate body set up by the Republic of South Africa to act on its behalf'.¹⁴³ Clearly the Court felt that the situation was analogous to the *Carl Zeiss* case. Whether this was in fact so is an open question. It is certainly open to doubt whether the terms of the certificates in the cases were on all fours. In the *Gur* case, the executive was far more cautious and non-committal. Indeed, one of the certificates actually stated that the UK government did not have a formal position regarding the exercise of governing authority over the territory of Ciskei,¹⁴⁴ whereas in *Carl Zeiss* the certificate noted expressly that the USSR was recognised as *de jure* entitled to exercise governing authority in respect

the legislation was not to affect at all the government's policy on recognition, but to sever the connection with public international law and deal with issues of private international law.

¹⁴⁰ See 409 HL Deb., cols. 1097–8 and Symmons, 'United Kingdom Abolition', pp. 254–60.

¹⁴¹ [1987] 1 QB 599; 75 ILR, p. 675. ¹⁴² [1987] 1 QB 599, 623; 75 ILR, p. 696.

¹⁴³ [1987] 1 QB 599, 624. See also Nourse LJ, *ibid.*, pp. 624–66; 75 ILR, pp. 696–9.

¹⁴⁴ [1987] 1 QB 599, 618–19; 75 ILR, p. 690.

of the territory (the GDR).¹⁴⁵ The gap was bridged by construction and inference.

More widely, it is unclear to what extent the change in policy on recognition of governments has actually led to a change in attitude by the courts. There is no doubt that the attitude adopted by the government in certifying whether or not diplomatic dealings were in existence with regard to the entity in question is crucial. An assertion of such dealing would, it appears, be determinative.¹⁴⁶ The problem arises where the Foreign Office statement is more ambiguous than the mere assertion of dealings with the entity. The consequence is that a greater burden is imposed on the courts as an answer as to status is sought. On the one hand, the *Gur* case suggests that the courts are not willing to examine for themselves the realities of any given situation, but would seek to infer from the terms of any certificate what the answer ought to be.¹⁴⁷ On the other hand, Hobhouse J in the High Court in *Republic of Somalia v. Woodhouse Drake and Carey (Suisse) SA*¹⁴⁸ took the wider view that in deciding whether a regime was the government of a state, the court would have to take into account the following factors: (a) whether it is the constitutional government of the state; (b) the degree, nature and stability of administrative control, if any, that it of itself exercises over the territory of the state; (c) whether the UK government has any dealings with it, and if so the nature of those dealings; and (d) in marginal cases, the extent of international recognition that it has as the government of the state.¹⁴⁹ Part of the answer as to why a different emphasis is evident is no doubt due to the fact that in the latter case, there were competing bodies claiming to be the government of Somalia and the situation on the ground as a matter of fact was deeply confused. It should also be noted that in the *Republic of Somalia* case, the court took the view that Foreign Office statements were no more than part of the evidence in the case, although likely to be the best evidence as to whether the government had dealings with the entity in question.¹⁵⁰

¹⁴⁵ [1966] 1 Ch. 596; 43 ILR, p. 25.

¹⁴⁶ See e.g. the *Arantzazu Mendi* [1939] AC 256, 264; 9 AD, p. 60, and *Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa* [1987] 1 QB 599, 625; 75 ILR, p. 675. See also *Republic of Somalia v. Woodhouse Drake and Carey (Suisse) SA* [1993] QB 54, 65–6; 94 ILR, p. 620.

¹⁴⁷ See e.g. F. A. Mann, 'The Judicial Recognition of an Unrecognised State', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 349, and Beck, 'A South African Homeland Appears in the English Court: Legitimation of the Illegitimate?', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 350.

¹⁴⁸ [1993] QB 54; 94 ILR, p. 608. ¹⁴⁹ [1993] QB 54, 68; 94 ILR, p. 622.

¹⁵⁰ [1993] QB 54, 65; 94 ILR, p. 619. This was reaffirmed in *Sierra Leone Telecommunications Co. Ltd v. Barclays Bank* [1998] 2 All ER 821; 114 ILR, p. 466. See also K. Reece Thomas,

The USA

The situation in the United States with regard to the recognition or non-recognition of foreign entities is similar to that pertaining in the UK, with some important differences. Only a recognised state or government can in principle sue in the US courts.¹⁵¹ This applies irrespective of the state of diplomatic relations, providing there is no war between the two.¹⁵² However, an unrecognised state or government may in certain circumstances be permitted access before the American courts. This would appear to depend on the facts of each case and a practical appreciation of the entity in question.¹⁵³ For example, in *Transportes Aereos de Angola v. Ronair*,¹⁵⁴ it was held that in the particular circumstances where the US State Department had clearly stated that allowing the plaintiff (a corporation owned by the unrecognised government of Angola) access to the Court would be consistent with the foreign policy interests of the United States, the jurisdictional bar placed upon the Court would be deemed to have been lifted.

As in the UK, a declaration by the executive will be treated as binding the courts, but in the USA the courts appear to have a greater latitude. In the absence of the 'suggestion' clarifying how far the process of non-recognition is to be applied, the courts are more willing than their UK counterparts to give effect to particular acts of an unrecognised body. Indeed, in the *Carl Zeiss* case Lords Reid and Wilberforce referred in approving terms to the trend evident in decisions of US courts to give recognition to the 'actual facts or realities found to exist in the territory in question', in the interests of justice and common sense. Such recognition did not apply to every act, but in Lord Wilberforce's words, it did apply to 'private rights, or acts of everyday occurrence, or perfunctory acts of administration'.¹⁵⁵ How far this extends, however, has never been precisely defined.

It was the difficulties engendered by the American Civil War that first stimulated a reappraisal of the 'no recognition, no existence' doctrine. It

'Non-recognition, Personality and Capacity: The Palestine Liberation Organisation and the Palestine Authority in English Law', 29 *Anglo-American Law Review*, 2000, p. 228.

¹⁵¹ See e.g. *Republic of Vietnam v. Pfizer* 556 F.2d 892 (1977); 94 ILR, p. 199.

¹⁵² See *Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Sabbatino* 376 US 398, 412; 35 ILR, p. 2 and *National Oil Corporation v. Libyan Sun Oil Co.* 733 F.Supp. 800 (1990); 94 ILR, p. 209.

¹⁵³ See above, p. 234, regarding Taiwan after 1 January 1979. See also *Wulfsohn v. Russian Republic* 234 NY 372 (1924); 2 AD, p. 39.

¹⁵⁴ 544 F.Supp. 858, 863–4 (1982); 94 ILR, pp. 202, 208–9.

¹⁵⁵ [1967] AC 853, 954; 43 ILR, pp. 23, 66.

was not possible to ignore every act of the Confederate authorities and so the idea developed that such rules adopted by the Confederate states as were not hostile to the Union or the authority of the Central Government, or did not conflict with the terms of the US Constitution, would be treated as valid and enforceable in the courts system.¹⁵⁶ The doctrine was developed in a case before the New York Court of Appeals, when, discussing the status of the unrecognised Soviet government, Judge Cardozo noted that an unrecognised entity which had maintained control over its territory, 'may gain for its acts and decrees a validity quasi-governmental, if violence to fundamental principles of justice or to our public policy might otherwise be done'.¹⁵⁷

This thesis progressed rapidly in the period immediately preceding the American recognition of the USSR and led in *Salimoff v. Standard Oil Co. of New York*¹⁵⁸ to the enforcement of a Soviet oil nationalisation decree, with the comment that: 'to refuse to recognise that Soviet Russia is a government regulating the internal affairs of the country, is to give to fictions an air of reality which they do not deserve'.

This decision, diametrically opposed to the *Lutherv. Sagor* approach,¹⁵⁹ constituted a step towards the abolition of differences between the judicial treatment of the acts of recognised and unrecognised governments.

However, the limits of this broad doctrine were more carefully defined in *The Maret*,¹⁶⁰ where the Court refused to give effect to the nationalisation of an Estonian ship by the government of the unrecognised Soviet Republic of Estonia. However, the ship in dispute was located in an American port at the date of the nationalisation order, and there appears to be a difference in treatment in some cases depending upon whether the property was situated inside or outside the country concerned.

One can mention, in contrast to *The Maret*, the case of *Upright v. Mercury Business Machines*,¹⁶¹ in which the non-recognition of the German Democratic Republic was discussed in relation to the assignment of a bill to the plaintiff by a state-controlled company of the GDR. The judge of the New York Supreme Court declared, in upholding the plaintiff's claim, that a foreign government, although unrecognised by the executive:

¹⁵⁶ See e.g. *Texas v. White* 74 US 700 (1868).

¹⁵⁷ *Sokoloff v. National City Bank of New York* 239 NY 158 (1924); 2 AD, p. 44.

¹⁵⁸ 262 NY 220 (1933); 7 AD, pp. 22, 26.

¹⁵⁹ [1921] 1 KB 456; 1 AD, p. 47; above, p. 472.

¹⁶⁰ 145 F.2d 431 (1944); 12 AD, p. 29.

¹⁶¹ 213 NYS (2d) 417 (1961); 32 ILR, p. 65.

may nevertheless have *de facto* existence which is judicially cognisable. The acts of such a *de facto* government may affect private rights and obligations arising either as a result of activity in, or with persons or corporations within, the territory controlled by such *de facto* government.

However, the creation of judicial entities by unrecognised states will not be allowed to circumvent executive policy. In *Kunstsammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon*,¹⁶² the KZW was an East German governmental agency until 1969, when it was transformed into a separate juristic person in order to avoid the problems relating to unrecognised states in the above litigation. This concerned the recovery of pictures stolen from a museum during the American occupation of Germany.

As a branch of an unrecognised state, the KZW could not of course be permitted to sue in an American court, but the change of status in 1969 was designed to circumvent this. The Court, however, refused to accept this and emphasised that to allow the KZW to intervene in the case 'would render our government's non-recognition of the German Democratic Republic a meaningless gesture'.¹⁶³ Further, in *Autocephalous Church of Cyprus v. Goldberg*, the Court of Appeals held that it would not give effect to confiscatory decrees adopted by the unrecognised 'Turkish Federated State of Cyprus', later called the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus'.¹⁶⁴

In *Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould*,¹⁶⁵ the Court was faced with an action in which the unrecognised Iranian government sought to enforce an award. However, the US intervened and filed a statement of interest supporting Iran's argument and this proved of significant influence. This general approach was reinforced in *National Petrochemical v. The M/T Stolt Sheaf*,¹⁶⁶ where the Court stressed that the executive must have the power to deal with unrecognised governments and that therefore the absence of formal recognition did not necessarily result in a foreign government being barred from access to US courts.¹⁶⁷ However, where the executive has issued a non-recognition certificate and makes known its view that in the instant case the unrecognised party

¹⁶² 358 F.Supp. 747 (1972); 61 ILR, p. 143.

¹⁶³ 358 F.Supp. 747, 757; 61 ILR, p. 154. See also *Federal Republic of Germany v. Elicofon*, 14 ILM, 1976, p. 806, following the US recognition of the GDR in which KZW was permitted to intervene in the litigation in progress. See also *Transportes Aereos de Angola v. Ronair* 544 F.Supp. 858.

¹⁶⁴ 917 F.2d 278 (1990); 108 ILR, p. 488.

¹⁶⁵ 1988 *Iranian Assets Litig. Rep.* 15, 313. See also 82 AJIL, 1988, p. 591.

¹⁶⁶ 860 F.2d 551 (1988); 87 ILR, p. 583. ¹⁶⁷ 860 F.2d 551, 554.

should not be permitted access to the courts, the courts appear very willing to comply.¹⁶⁸

It is somewhat difficult to reconcile the various American cases or to determine the extent to which the acts of an unrecognised state or government may be enforced in the courts system of the United States. But two factors should be particularly noted. First of all, the declaration of the executive is binding. If that intimates that no effect is to be given to acts of the unrecognised entity, the courts will be obliged to respect this. It may also be the case that the State Department 'suggestions' will include some kind of hint or indication which, while not clearly expressed, may lead the courts to feel that the executive is leaning more one way than another in the matter of the government's status, and this may influence the courts. For example, in the *Salimoff*¹⁶⁹ case the terms of the certificate tended to encourage the court to regard the Soviet government as a recognised government, whereas in the case of *The Maret*¹⁷⁰ the tone of the executive's statement on the Soviet Republic of Estonia was decidedly hostile to any notion of recognition or enforcement of its decrees.

The second point is the location of the property in question. There is a tendency to avoid the enforcement of acts and decrees affecting property situated outside the unrecognised state or government and in any event the location of the property often introduces additional complications as regards municipal law provision.¹⁷¹

There is some uncertainty in the United States as to the operation of the retroactivity doctrine, particularly as it affects events occurring outside the country. There is a line of cases suggesting that only those acts of the unrecognised government performed in its own territory could be validated by the retroactive operation of recognition¹⁷² while, on the other hand, there are cases illustrating the opposite proposition decided by the Supreme Court.¹⁷³

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. *Republic of Panama v. Republic National Bank of New York* 681 F.Supp. 1066 (1988); 86 ILR, p. 1 and *Republic of Panama v. Citizens & Southern International Bank* 682 F.Supp. 1144 (1988); 86 ILR, p. 10. See also T. Fountain, 'Out From the Precarious Orbit of Politics: Reconsidering Recognition and the Standing of Foreign Governments to Sue in US Courts', 29 Va. JIL, 1989, p. 473.

¹⁶⁹ 262 NY 220 (1933); 7 AD, p. 22. ¹⁷⁰ 145 F.2d 431 (1944); 12 AD, p. 29.

¹⁷¹ See e.g. *Civil Air Transport Inc. v. Central Air Transport Corporation* [1953] AC 70; 19 ILR, p. 85.

¹⁷² See e.g. *Lehigh Valley Railroad Co. v. Russia* 21 F.2d 396 (1927); 4 AD, p. 58.

¹⁷³ See e.g. *US v. Pink* 315 US 203 (1942); 10 AD, p. 48, and *US v. Belmont* 301 US 324 (1937); 8 AD, p. 34.

Suggestions for further reading

- J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006
J. Dugard, *Recognition and the United Nations*, Cambridge, 1987
H. Lauterpacht, *Recognition in International Law*, Cambridge, 1947
S. Talmon, *Recognition of Governments in International Law*, Oxford, 1998

Territory

The concept of territory in international law

International law is based on the concept of the state. The state in its turn lies upon the foundation of sovereignty, which expresses internally the supremacy of the governmental institutions and externally the supremacy of the state as a legal person.¹

But sovereignty itself, with its retinue of legal rights and duties, is founded upon the fact of territory. Without territory a legal person cannot be a state.² It is undoubtedly the basic characteristic of a state and the one most widely accepted and understood. There are currently some 200 distinct territorial units, each one subject to a different territorial sovereignty and jurisdiction.

Since such fundamental legal concepts as sovereignty and jurisdiction can only be comprehended in relation to territory, it follows that the legal nature of territory becomes a vital part in any study of international law. Indeed, the principle whereby a state is deemed to exercise exclusive power over its territory can be regarded as a fundamental axiom of

¹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, chapter 5; J. Castellino and S. Allen, *Title to Territory in International Law: A Temporal Analysis*, Aldershot, 2002; G. Distefano, *L'Ordre International entre Légalité et Effectivité: Le Titre Juridique dans le Contentieux Territorial*, Paris, 2002; R. Y. Jennings, *The Acquisition of Territory in International Law*, Manchester, 1963; J. H. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 1970, vol. III, pp. 297 ff.; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, pp. 464 ff. and pp. 529 ff.; M. N. Shaw, 'Territory in International Law', 13 *Netherlands YIL*, 1982, p. 61; N. Hill, *Claims to Territory in International Law and Relations*, London, 1945; J. Gottman, *The Significance of Territory*, Charlottesville, 1973; S. Akweenda, *International Law and the Protection of Namibia's Territorial Integrity*, The Hague, 1997; S. P. Sharma, *Territorial Acquisition, Disputes and International Law*, The Hague, 1997; W. Schoenborn, 'La Nature Juridique du Territoire', 30 *HR*, 1929, p. 85, and K. H. Kaikobad, *Interpretation and Revision of International Boundary Decisions*, Cambridge, 2007.

² See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 563.

classical international law.³ The development of international law upon the basis of the exclusive authority of the state within an accepted territorial framework meant that territory became 'perhaps the fundamental concept of international law'.⁴ Most nations indeed developed through a close relationship with the land they inhabited.⁵

The central role of territory in the scheme of international law may be seen by noting the development of legal rules protecting its inviolability. The principle of respect for the territorial integrity of states is well founded as one of the linchpins of the international system, as is the norm prohibiting interference in the internal affairs of other states.⁶ A number of factors, however, have tended to reduce the territorial exclusivity of the state in international law. Technological and economic changes have had an impact as interdependence becomes more evident and the rise of such transnational concerns as human rights and self-determination have tended to impinge upon this exclusivity.⁷ The growth of international organisations is another relevant factor, as is the development of the 'common heritage' concept in the context of the law of the sea and air law.⁸ Nevertheless, one should not exaggerate the effects upon international law doctrine today of such trends.⁹ Territorial sovereignty remains as a key concept in international law.

Since the law reflects political conditions and evolves, in most cases, in harmony with reality, international law has had to develop a series of rules governing the transfer and control of territory. Such rules, by the

³ See L. Delbez, 'Du Territoire dans ses Rapports avec l'État', 39 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1932, p. 46. See also Hill, *Claims to Territory*, p. 3.

⁴ D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I, p. 403. See also Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 87, and Judge Huber, *The Island of Palmas case*, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 838 (1928).

⁵ See generally, Gottman, *Significance*.

⁶ See e.g. articles 2(4) and 2(7) of the UN Charter; the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law adopted by the UN General Assembly, resolution 2625 (XXV), and article 1 of the 1974 Consensus Definition of Aggression adopted by the General Assembly, resolution 3314 (XXIX).

⁷ See e.g. R. Falk, 'A New Paradigm for International Legal Studies: Prospects and Proposals', 84 *Yale Law Journal*, 1975, pp. 969, 973, 1020. See also H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950, and C. W. Jenks, *The Common Law of Mankind*, London, 1958.

⁸ See e.g. the Treaty on Outer Space, 1967 and the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982. See also Shaw, 'Territory', pp. 65–6; and below, p. 541.

⁹ See e.g. the *Asylum case*, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 266, 275; 17 ILR, pp. 280, 283. The International Court emphasised in the *Malaysia/Singapore case*, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 122, the 'central importance in international law and relations of state sovereignty over territory and of the stability and certainty of that sovereignty'.

very nature of international society, have often (although not always) had the effect of legitimising the results of the exercise of power. The lack of a strong, central authority in international law has emphasised, even more than municipal legal structures, the way that law must come to terms with power and force.

The rules laid down by municipal legislation and judicial decisions regarding the transfer and control of land within a particular state are usually highly detailed, for they deal with one of the basic resources and wealth-creating factors of the nation. Land law has often reflected the power balance within a society, with feudal arrangements being succeeded by free market contracts and latterly the introduction of comprehensive provisions elaborating the rights and duties of landlords and their tenants, and the development of more sophisticated conveyancing techniques. A number of legal interests are capable of existing over land and the possibility exists of dividing ownership into different segments.¹⁰ The treatment of territory in international law has not reached this sophisticated stage for a number of reasons, in particular the horizontal system of territorial sovereignty that subsists internationally as distinct from the vertical order of land law that persists in most municipal systems. There is thus a critical difference in the consequences that result from a change in the legal ownership of land in international law and in municipal law.

In international law a change in ownership of a particular territory involves also a change in sovereignty, in the legal authority governing the area. This means that the nationality of the inhabitants is altered, as is the legal system under which they live, work and conduct their relations, whereas in municipal law no such changes are involved in an alteration of legal ownership. Accordingly international law must deal also with all the various effects of a change in territorial sovereignty and not confine its attentions to the mere mechanism of acquisition or loss of territory.¹¹

Territorial sovereignty

Judge Huber noted in the *Island of Palmas* case¹² that:

sovereignty in relation to a portion of the surface of the globe is the legal condition necessary for the inclusion of such portion in the territory of any particular state.

¹⁰ See e.g. R. Megarry and H. W. R. Wade, *The Law of Real Property*, 5th edn, London, 1984.

¹¹ See below, chapter 17, dealing with the problems of state succession.

¹² 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 838 (1928); 4 AD, pp. 103, 104. See also the Report of the Commission of Jurists in the *Aaland Islands* case, LNOJ, Supp. no. 3, p. 6.

Briefly defined territorial sovereignty in terms of the existence of rights over territory rather than the independence of the state itself or the relation of persons to persons. It was a way of contrasting 'the fullest rights over territory known to the law' with certain minor territorial rights, such as leases and servitudes.¹³ Territorial sovereignty has a positive and a negative aspect. The former relates to the exclusivity of the competence of the state regarding its own territory,¹⁴ while the latter refers to the obligation to protect the rights of other states.¹⁵

The international rules regarding territorial sovereignty are rooted in the Roman law provisions governing ownership and possession, and the classification of the different methods of acquiring territory is a direct descendant of the Roman rules dealing with property.¹⁶ This has resulted in some confusion. Law, being so attached to contemporary life, cannot be easily transposed into a different cultural milieu.¹⁷ And, as shall be noted, the Roman method of categorising the different methods of acquiring territory faces difficulties when applied in international law.

The essence of territorial sovereignty is contained in the notion of title. This term relates to both the factual and legal conditions under which territory is deemed to belong to one particular authority or another. In other words, it refers to the existence of those facts required under international law to entail the legal consequences of a change in the juridical status of a particular territory.¹⁸ As the International Court noted in the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case,¹⁹ the word 'title' comprehends both any evidence which may establish the existence of a right and the actual source of that right.²⁰

One interesting characteristic that should be noted and which again points to the difference between the treatment of territory under

¹³ *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, p. 162.

¹⁴ See Judge Huber, *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 838 (1928); 4 AD, pp. 103, 104.

¹⁵ 2 RIAA, p. 839. See also Shaw, 'Territory', pp. 73 ff., and S. Bastid, 'Les Problèmes Territoriaux dans la Jurisprudence de la Cour Internationale', 107 HR, 1962, pp. 360, 367.

¹⁶ See e.g. Schoenborn, 'Nature Juridique', p. 96. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 403–4. Note in particular the Roman law distinction between *imperium* and *dominium*: Shaw, 'Territory', p. 74.

¹⁷ See, as regards the theories concerning the relationship between states and territory, Shaw, 'Territory', pp. 75–9.

¹⁸ See e.g. Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 4. See also I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, p. 119.

¹⁹ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 564; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 459.

²⁰ This was reaffirmed in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier (El Salvador/Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 351, 388; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 301.

international law and municipal law is that title to territory in international law is more often than not relative rather than absolute.²¹ Thus, a court, in deciding to which of contending states a parcel of land legally belongs, will consider all the relevant arguments and will award the land to the state which relatively speaking puts forward the better (or best) legal case.²² Title to land in municipal law is much more often the case of deciding in uncertain or contentious circumstances which party complies with the legal requirements as to ownership and possession, and in that sense title is absolute. It is not normally a question of examining the facts to see which claimant can under the law put forward a better claim to title. Further, not all rights or links will amount to territorial sovereignty. Personal ties of allegiance may exist but these may not necessarily lead to a finding of sovereignty.²³ The special characteristics of the territory need to be taken into account, as does the particular structure of the sovereignty in question.²⁴

Disputes as to territory in international law may be divided into different categories. The contention may be over the status of the country itself, that is, all the territory comprised in a particular state, as for example Arab claims against Israel at one time and claims formerly pursued by Morocco against Mauritania.²⁵ Or the dispute may refer to a certain area on the borders of two or more states, as for example Somali claims against the north-east of Kenya and south-east of Ethiopia.²⁶ Similarly, claims to territory may be based on a number of different grounds, ranging from the traditional method of occupation or prescription to the newer concepts such as self-determination, with various political and legal factors, for example, geographical contiguity, historical demands and economic

²¹ See e.g. the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95.

²² See the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 47, 52; 20 ILR, p. 94. The Court noted in the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 120, that the passing of sovereignty may be by way of agreement between states, either in the form of a treaty or tacitly arising from the conduct of the parties. The emphasis was to be placed on the intention of the parties.

²³ *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 48, 64 and 68; 59 ILR, p. 14. See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 86. But see as to the confirmatory value of such ties, the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 74–5. Note that there is a critical difference between territorial sovereignty on the one hand and the regular rights of property on the other, *ibid.*, paras. 138–9 and 222.

²⁴ See e.g. the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 41–3; 59 ILR, p. 14; the *Rann of Kutch* case, 50 ILR, p. 2; the *Dubai/Sharjah* award, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 587 and the *Eritrea/Yemen* case, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 116.

²⁵ See below, p. 524. ²⁶ See below, p. 525.

elements, possibly being relevant. These issues will be noted during the course of this chapter.

Apart from territory actually under the sovereignty of a state, international law also recognises territory over which there is no sovereign. Such territory is known as *terra nullius*. In addition, there is a category of territory called *res communis* which is (in contrast to *terra nullius*) generally not capable of being reduced to sovereign control. The prime instance of this is the high seas, which belong to no-one and may be used by all. Another example would be outer space. The concept of common heritage of mankind has also been raised and will be examined in this chapter.

New states and title to territory²⁷

The problem of how a state actually acquires its own territory in international law is a difficult one and one that may ultimately only be explained in legal-political terms. While with long-established states one may dismiss the question on the basis of recognition and acceptance, new states pose a different problem since, under classical international law, until a new state is created, there is no legal person in existence competent to hold title. None of the traditional modes of acquisition of territorial title satisfactorily resolves the dilemma, which has manifested itself particularly in the post-Second World War period with the onset of decolonisation. The international community has traditionally approached the problem of new states in terms of recognition, rather than in terms of acquisition of title to territory. This means that states have examined the relevant situation and upon ascertainment of the factual conditions have accorded recognition to the new entity as a subject of international law. There has been relatively little discussion of the method by which the new entity itself acquires the legal rights to its lands. The stress has instead been on compliance with factual requirements as to statehood coupled with the acceptance of this by other states.²⁸

One approach to this problem has been to note that it is recognition that constitutes the state, and that the territory of the state is, upon recognition, accepted as the territory of a valid subject of international law irrespective

²⁷ See Jennings, *Acquisition*, pp. 36 ff.; J. G. Starke, 'The Acquisition of Title to Territory by Newly Emerged States', 41 BYIL, 1965–6, p. 411; J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006, and M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 168–73.

²⁸ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 677.

of how it may have been acquired.²⁹ While this theory is not universally or widely accepted,³⁰ it does nevertheless underline how the emphasis has been upon recognition of a situation and not upon the method of obtaining the rights in law to the particular territory.³¹

One major factor that is relevant is the crucial importance of the doctrine of domestic jurisdiction. This constitutes the legal prohibition on interference within the internal mechanisms of an entity and emphasises the supremacy of a state within its own frontiers. Many of the factual and legal processes leading up to the emergence of a new state are therefore barred from international legal scrutiny and this has proved a deterrent to the search for the precise method by which a new entity obtains title to the territory in question.³²

In recent years, however, the scope of the domestic jurisdiction rule has been altered. Discussions in international conferences and institutions, such as the United Nations, have actively concerned themselves with conditions in non-independent countries and it has been accepted that territorial sovereignty in the ordinary sense of the words does not really exist over mandate or trust territories.³³ This is beginning to encourage a re-examination of the procedures of acquiring title. However, the plea of domestic jurisdiction does at least illustrate the fact that not only international law but also municipal law is involved in the process of gaining independence.

There are basically two methods by which a new entity may gain its independence as a new state: by constitutional means, that is by agreement with the former controlling administration in an orderly devolution of power, or by non-constitutional means, usually by force, against the will of the previous sovereign.

The granting of independence according to the constitutional provisions of the former power may be achieved either by agreement between the former power and the accepted authorities of the emerging state, or by a purely internal piece of legislation by the previous sovereign. In many cases a combination of both procedures is adopted. For example, the independence of Burma was preceded by a Burmese–United Kingdom

²⁹ *Ibid.* ³⁰ See above, chapter 9.

³¹ See e.g. Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 37, and Starke, 'Acquisition of Title', p. 413.

³² See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 168–9.

³³ See e.g. *International Status of South-West Africa*, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 128; 17 ILR, p. 47; the *South West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, p. 6; 37 ILR, p. 243; the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 2, and the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 14. See further above, chapter 5, p. 224.

agreement and treaty (June and October, 1947) and by the Burma Independence Act of 1947 passed by the British legislature, providing for Burmese independence to take effect on 4 January 1948. In such cases what appears to be involved is a devolution or transfer of sovereignty from one power to another and the title to the territory will accordingly pass from the previous sovereign to the new administration in a conscious act of transference.

However, a different situation arises where the new entity gains its independence contrary to the wishes of the previous authority, whether by secession or revolution. It may be that the dispossessed sovereign may ultimately make an agreement with the new state recognising its new status, but in the meantime the new state might well be regarded by other states as a valid state under international law.³⁴

The principle of self-determination is also very relevant here. Where a state gains its sovereignty in opposition to the former power, new facts are created and the entity may well comply with the international requirements as to statehood, such as population, territory and government. Other states will then have to make a decision as to whether or not to recognise the new state and accept the legal consequences of this new status. But at this point a serious problem emerges.

For a unit to be regarded as a state under international law it must conform with the legal conditions as to settled population, a definable area of land and the capacity to enter into legal relations. However, under traditional international law, until one has a state one cannot talk in terms of title to the territory, because there does not exist any legal person capable of holding the legal title. So to discover the process of acquisition of title to territory, one has first to point to an established state. A few ideas have been put forward to explain this. One theory is to concentrate upon the factual emergence of the new state and to accept that since a new state is in existence upon a certain parcel of land, international law should look no further but accept the reality of possession at the moment of independence as denoting ownership, that is, legal title.³⁵ While in most cases this would prove adequate as far as other states are concerned, it can lead to problems where ownership is claimed of an area not in possession and it does little to answer the questions as to the international legal explanation of territorial sovereignty. Another approach is to turn to the

³⁴ Shaw, *Title to Territory*. See also D. Greig, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1976, p. 156.

³⁵ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 677, and Starke, 'Acquisition of Title', p. 413.

constitutive theory of recognition, and declare that by recognition not only is a new state in the international community created, but its title to the territory upon which it is based is conclusively determined.³⁶ The disadvantage of this attitude is that it presupposes the acceptance of the constitutive theory by states in such circumstances, something which is controversial.³⁷

One possibility that could be put forward here involves the abandonment of the classical rule that only states can acquire territorial sovereignty, and the substitution of a provision permitting a people to acquire sovereignty over the territory pending the establishment of the particular state. By this method the complicated theoretical issues related to recognition are avoided. Some support for this view can be found in the provision in the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law that the territory of a colony or other non-self-governing entity possesses, under the United Nations Charter, a status separate and distinct from that of the administering power, which exists until the people have exercised the right of self-determination.³⁸ However, the proposition is a controversial one and must remain tentative.³⁹

The acquisition of additional territory

The classical technique of categorising the various modes of acquisition of territory is based on Roman law and is not adequate.⁴⁰ Many of the leading cases do not specify a particular category or mode but tend to adopt an overall approach. Five modes of acquisition are usually detailed: occupation of *terra nullius*, prescription, cession, accretion and subjugation (or conquest); and these are further divided into original and derivative modes.⁴¹

Boundary treaties and boundary awards

Boundary treaties, whereby either additional territory is acquired or lost or uncertain boundaries are clarified by agreement between the states concerned, constitute a root of title in themselves. They constitute a special

³⁶ Starke, 'Acquisition of Title', p. 413. See also Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 37.

³⁷ See above, chapter 9, p. 445.

³⁸ See the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 31; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 21.

³⁹ See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 171–3. ⁴⁰ See O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 405.

⁴¹ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 677, and Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 127 ff.

kind of treaty in that they establish an objective territorial regime valid *erga omnes*.⁴² Such a regime will not only create rights binding also upon third states, but will exist outside of the particular boundary treaty and thus will continue even if the treaty in question itself ceases to apply.⁴³ The reason for this exceptional approach is to be found in the need for the stability of boundaries.⁴⁴ Further, the establishment or confirmation of a particular boundary line by way of referring in a treaty to an earlier document (which may or may not be binding of itself) laying down a line is also possible and as such invests the line in question with undoubted validity.⁴⁵ Indeed, this earlier document may also be a map upon which a line has been drawn.

Accordingly, many boundary disputes in fact revolve around the question of treaty interpretation. It is accepted that a treaty should be interpreted in the light of Articles 31 and 32 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, 'in good faith, in accordance with the ordinary meaning to be given to its terms in their context and in the light of its object and purpose'.⁴⁶ Essentially the aim is to find the 'common will' of the parties, a concept which includes consideration of the subsequent conduct of the parties.⁴⁷ Since many of the boundary treaties that need to be interpreted long pre-date the coming into force of the Vienna Convention,⁴⁸ the problem of the applicability of its provisions has arisen. Courts have taken the view that the Convention in this respect at least represents customary international law, thus apparently obviating the problem.⁴⁹

More generally, the difficulty in seeking to interpret both general concepts and geographical locations used in early treaties in the

⁴² See *Eritrea/Yemen* 114 ILR, p. 48.

⁴³ See *Libya/Chad*, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 37; 100 ILR, p. 1.

⁴⁴ *Ibid.* and the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 34; 33 ILR, p. 48.

⁴⁵ See *Libya/Chad*, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 23; 33 ILR, p. 48. See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, paras. 50–1.

⁴⁶ *Libya/Chad*, pp. 21–2.

⁴⁷ See the *Argentina/Chile Frontier Award (La Palena)* 38 ILR, pp. 10, 89 and the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, decision of 13 April 2002, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34. See also, with regard to acquiescence, below, p. 515.

⁴⁸ See article 4 providing that the Convention applies only to treaties concluded after the coming into force of the Convention itself (27 January 1980).

⁴⁹ See e.g. *Libya/Chad*, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 21–2; the *Beagle Channel* case, 52 ILR, pp. 93, 124 and the *Botswana/Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1059–60. But cf. the Separate Opinion of Judge Oda, *ibid.*, p. 1118. See also D. W. Greig, *Intertemporality and the Law of Treaties*, British Institute of International and Comparative Law, 2001, pp. 108 ff.

light of modern scientific knowledge has posed difficulties. In the *Botswana/Namibia* case, the Court, faced with the problem of identifying the 'main channel' of the River Chobe in the light of an 1890 treaty, emphasised that 'the present-day state of scientific knowledge' could be used in order to illuminate terms of that treaty.⁵⁰ In the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, the Boundary Commission referred to the principle of contemporaneity, by which it meant that a treaty should be interpreted by reference to the circumstances prevailing when the treaty was concluded. In particular, the determination of a geographical name (whether of a place or of a river) depended upon the contemporary understanding of the location to which that name related at the time of the treaty. However, in seeking to understand what that was, reference to subsequent practice and to the objects of the treaty was often required.⁵¹ In interpreting a boundary treaty, in particular in seeking to resolve ambiguities, the subsequent practice of the parties will be relevant. Even where such subsequent practice cannot in the circumstances constitute an authoritative interpretation of the treaty, it may be deemed to 'be useful' in the process of specifying the frontier in question.⁵² However, where the boundary line as specified in the pertinent instrument is clear, it cannot be changed by a court in the process of interpreting delimitation provisions.⁵³

Like boundary treaties, boundary awards may also constitute roots or sources of legal title to territory.⁵⁴ A decision by the International Court or arbitral tribunal allocating title to a particular territory or determining the boundary line as between two states will constitute establishment or confirmation of title that will be binding upon the parties themselves and for all practical purposes upon all states in the absence of maintained protest.⁵⁵ It is also possible that boundary allocation decisions that do not constitute international judicial or arbitral awards may be binding,

⁵⁰ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1060. But see here the Declaration of Judge Higgins noting that the task of the Court was to 'decide what general idea the parties had in mind, and then make reality of that general idea through the use of contemporary knowledge' rather than to decide *in abstracto* 'by a mechanistic appreciation of relevant indicia', *ibid.*, p. 1114. See also the *Argentina/Chile Award (La Laguna del Desierto)* 113 ILR, pp. 1, 76. In the *Cameroon v. Nigeria* case, the Court, in seeking to determine the location of the mouth of the River Ebeji, emphasised that 'the Court must seek to ascertain the intention of the parties at the time', ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 346.

⁵¹ Decision of 13 April 2002, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34.

⁵² *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 345. ⁵³ *Ibid.*, p. 370.

⁵⁴ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 132.

⁵⁵ See e.g. the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 401; 97 ILR, p. 112.

providing that it can be shown that the parties consented to the initial decision.⁵⁶

*Accretion*⁵⁷

This describes the geographical process by which new land is formed and becomes attached to existing land, as for example the creation of islands in a river mouth or the change in direction of a boundary river leaving dry land where it had formerly flowed. Where new land comes into being within the territory of a state, it forms part of the territory of the state and there is no problem. When, for example, an island emerged in the Pacific after an under-sea volcano erupted in January 1986, the UK government noted that: 'We understand the island emerged within the territorial sea of the Japanese island of Iwo Jima. We take it therefore to be Japanese territory.'⁵⁸

As regards a change in the course of a river forming a boundary, a different situation is created depending whether it is imperceptible and slight or a violent shift (*avulsion*). In the latter case, the general rule is that the boundary stays at the same point along the original river bed.⁵⁹ However, where a gradual move has taken place the boundary may be shifted.⁶⁰ If the river is navigable, the boundary will be the middle of the navigable channel, whatever slight alterations have occurred, while if the river is not navigable the boundary will continue to be the middle of the river itself. This aspect of acquiring territory is relatively unimportant in international law but these rules have been applied in a number of cases involving disputes between particular states of the United States of America.⁶¹

⁵⁶ See e.g. the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 577 (where the Court of Arbitration termed such procedures 'administrative decisions', *ibid.*) and *Qatar/Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, paras. 110 ff.

⁵⁷ See e.g. C. C. Hyde, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Boston, 1947, vol. I, pp. 355–6; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 428–30, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 696–8.

⁵⁸ 478 HL Deb., col. 1005, Written Answer, 17 July 1986. See also A. J. Day, *Border and Territorial Disputes*, 2nd edn, London, 1987, p. 277, regarding a new island appearing after a cyclone in 1970 on a river boundary between India and Bangladesh. Title is disputed. See also *Georgia v. South Carolina* 111 L.Ed.2d 309; 91 ILR, p. 439.

⁵⁹ See e.g. *Georgia v. South Carolina* 111 L.Ed.2d 309, 334; 91 ILR, pp. 439, 458. See also the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 546.

⁶⁰ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 546.

⁶¹ See e.g. *The Anna* 5 C.Rob. 373 (1805); *Arkansas v. Tennessee* 246 US 158 (1918); *Louisiana v. Mississippi* 282 US 458 (1940); *Georgia v. South Carolina* 111 L.Ed.2d 309; 91 ILR,

*Cession*⁶²

This involves the peaceful transfer of territory from one sovereign to another (with the intention that sovereignty should pass) and has often taken place within the framework of a peace treaty following a war. Indeed the orderly transference of sovereignty by agreement from a colonial or administering power to representatives of the indigenous population could be seen as a form of cession.

Because cession has the effect of replacing one sovereign by another⁶³ over a particular piece of territory, the acquiring state cannot possess more rights over the land than its predecessor had. This is an important point, so that where a third state has certain rights, for example, of passage over the territory, the new sovereign must respect them. It is expressed in the land law phrase that the burden of obligations runs with the land, not the owner. In other words, the rights of the territorial sovereign are derived from a previous sovereign, who could not, therefore, dispose of more than he had.

This contrasts with, for example, accretion which is treated as an original title, there having been no previous legal sovereign over the land.

The *Island of Palmas* case⁶⁴ emphasised this point. It concerned a dispute between the United States and the Netherlands. The claims of the United States were based on an 1898 treaty with Spain, which involved the cession of the island. It was emphasised by the arbitrator and accepted by the parties that Spain could not thereby convey to the Americans greater rights than it itself possessed.

The basis of cession lies in the intention of the relevant parties to transfer sovereignty over the territory in question.⁶⁵ Without this it cannot legally operate. Whether an actual delivery of the property is also required for

p. 439, and the *Chamizal* arbitration, 5 AJIL, 1911, p. 782. See also E. Lauterpacht, 'River Boundaries: Legal Aspects of the Shatt-Al-Arab Frontier', 9 ICLQ, 1960, pp. 208, 216; L. J. Bouchez, 'The Fixing of Boundaries in International Boundary Rivers', 12 ICLQ, 1963, p. 789; S. McCaffrey, *The Law of International Watercourses*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2007, and the *Botswana/Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 1045.

⁶² See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 679–86, and O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 436–40.

⁶³ See *Christian v. The Queen* [2006] UKPC 47, para. 11, 130 ILR 696, 700, 711, where the Privy Council noted that cession 'contemplates a transfer of sovereignty by one sovereign power to another'.

⁶⁴ 2 RIAA, p. 829 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103.

⁶⁵ Sovereignty over the territorial sea contiguous to and the airspace above the territory concerned would pass with the land territory: see the *Grisbadarna* case, 11 RIAA, p. 147 (1909) and the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93. This suggests the corollary

a valid cession is less certain. It will depend on the circumstances of the case. For example, Austria ceded Venice to France in 1866, and that state within a few weeks ceded the territory to Italy. The cession to the Italian state through France was nonetheless valid.⁶⁶ In the *Iloilo* case,⁶⁷ it was held that the cession of the Philippines to the United States took place, on the facts of the case, upon the ratification of the Treaty of Paris of 1898, even though American troops had taken possession of the town of Iloilo two months prior to this.

Although instances of cession usually occur in an agreement following the conclusion of hostilities,⁶⁸ it can be accomplished in other circumstances, such as the purchase of Alaska by the United States in 1867 from Russia or the sale by Denmark of territories in the West Indies in 1916 to the United States. It may also appear in exchanges of territories or pure gifts of territory.⁶⁹

Conquest and the use of force

How far a title based on force can be regarded as a valid, legal right recognisable by other states and enforceable within the international system is a crucial question. Ethical considerations are relevant and the principle that an illegal act cannot give birth to a right in law is well established in municipal law and is an essential component of an orderly society.

However, international law has sometimes to modify its reactions to the consequences of successful violations of its rules to take into account the exigencies of reality. The international community has accepted the results of illegal aggression in many cases by virtue of recognition.

Conquest, the act of defeating an opponent and occupying all or part of its territory, does not of itself constitute a basis of title to the land.⁷⁰ It

that a cession of the territorial sea or airspace would include the relevant land territory: see *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 680. But see Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 117–18.

⁶⁶ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 681. Note also that in 1859 Austria ceded Lombardy to France, which then ceded it to Sardinia without having taken possession: see O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 438. Cf. *The Fama* 5 C.Rob. 106, 115 (1804).

⁶⁷ 4 RIAA, p. 158 (1925); 3 AD, p. 336.

⁶⁸ Note now that article 52 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 provides that a treaty is void if its conclusion has been procured by the threat or use of force in violation of the principles of international law embodied in the Charter of the United Nations. However, prior treaties of cession are subject to the rule of intertemporal law: see below, p. 508.

⁶⁹ See, for further examples, *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 681–2.

⁷⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 699. See also S. Korman, *The Right of Conquest*, Oxford, 1996.

does give the victor certain rights under international law as regards the territory, the rights of belligerent occupation,⁷¹ but the territory remains subject to the legal title of the ousted sovereign.⁷² Sovereignty as such does not merely pass by conquest to the occupying forces, although complex situations may arise where the legal status of the territory occupied is, in fact, in dispute prior to the conquest.⁷³

Conquest, of course, may result from a legal or an illegal use of force. By the Kellogg–Briand Pact of 1928, war was outlawed as an instrument of national policy, and by article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter all member states must refrain from the threat or use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state. However, force will be legitimate when exercised in self-defence.⁷⁴ Whatever the circumstances, it is not the successful use of violence that in international law constituted the valid method of acquiring territory. Under the classical rules, formal annexation of territory following upon an act of conquest would operate to pass title. It was a legal fiction employed to mask the conquest and transform it into a valid method of obtaining land under international law.⁷⁵ However, it is doubtful whether an annexation proclaimed while war is still in progress would have operated to pass a good title to territory. Only after a war is concluded could the juridical status of the disputed territory be finally determined. This follows from the rule that has developed to the effect that the control over the relevant territory by the state purporting to annex must be effective and that there must be no reasonable chance of the former sovereign regaining the land.

These points were emphasised by the Nuremberg War Crimes Tribunal after the Second World War, in discussing the various purported German annexations of 1939 and 1940. The Tribunal firmly declared that annexations taking place before the conclusion of a war were ineffective and invalid in international law.⁷⁶ Intention to annex was a crucial aspect

⁷¹ See e.g. M. S. McDougal and F. P. Feliciano, *Law and Minimum World Public Order*, New Haven, 1961, pp. 733–6 and 739–44, and J. Stone, *Legal Controls of International Conflict*, London, 1959, pp. 744–51. See also E. Benveniste, *The International Law of Occupation*, Princeton, 1993.

⁷² See generally *The Arab–Israeli Conflict* (ed. J. N. Moore), Princeton, 4 vols., 1974–89.

⁷³ But cf. Y. Blum, ‘The Missing Reversioner’, in *ibid.*, vol. II, p. 287.

⁷⁴ See article 51 of the UN Charter and below, chapter 20.

⁷⁵ See e.g. *Oppenheim’s International Law*, p. 699. See also O’Connell, *International Law*, pp. 431–6.

⁷⁶ O’Connell, *International Law*, p. 436. See also e.g. *Re Goering* 13 AD, p. 203 (1946).

of the equation so that, for example, the conquest of Germany by the Allies in 1945 did not give rise to an implied annexation by virtue of the legislative control actually exercised (as it could have done) because the Allies had specifically ruled out such a course in a joint declaration.⁷⁷ It is, however, clear today that the acquisition of territory by force alone is illegal under international law. This may be stated in view of article 2(4) of the UN Charter and other practice. Security Council resolution 242, for example, emphasised the 'inadmissibility of the acquisition of territory by war', while the 1970 Declaration of Principles of International Law adopted by the UN General Assembly provides that:

the territory of a state shall not be the object of acquisition by another state resulting from the threat or use of force. No territorial acquisition resulting from the threat or use of force shall be recognised as legal.⁷⁸

In Security Council resolution 662 (1990), adopted unanimously, the Council decided that the declared Iraqi annexation of Kuwait 'under any form and whatever pretext has no legal validity and is considered null and void'. All states and institutions were called upon not to recognise the annexation and to refrain from actions which might be interpreted as indirect recognition.⁷⁹

Acquisition of territory following an armed conflict would require further action of an international nature in addition to domestic legislation to annex. Such further necessary action would be in the form either of a treaty of cession by the former sovereign or of international recognition.⁸⁰

The exercise of effective control

It is customary in the literature to treat the modes of occupation and prescription as separate categories. However, there are several crucial factors

⁷⁷ Cmd 6648 (1945). See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 699–700.

⁷⁸ See also article 5(3) of the Consensus Definition of Aggression adopted in 1974 by the UN General Assembly. Similarly, by article 52 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, a treaty providing for the transfer of territory may be void for duress.

⁷⁹ See *The Kuwait Crisis – Basic Documents* (eds. E. Lauterpacht, C. Greenwood, M. Weller and D. Bethlehem), Cambridge, 1991, p. 90.

⁸⁰ See, for example, Security Council resolution 497 (1981), condemning Israel's decision to extend its laws, jurisdiction and administration to the occupied Golan Heights. The UN has also condemned Israel's policy of establishing settlements in the occupied territories: see e.g. Security Council resolution 465 (1980). See further below, chapter 20, with regard to self-determination and the use of force.

that link the concepts, so that the acquisition of territory by virtue of these methods, based as they are upon the exercise of effective control, is best examined within the same broad framework. The traditional definition of these two modes will be noted first.

Occupation is a method of acquiring territory which belongs to no one (*terra nullius*) and which may be acquired by a state in certain situations. The occupation must be by a state and not by private individuals, it must be effective and it must be intended as a claim of sovereignty over the area. The high seas cannot be occupied in this manner for they are *res communis*, but vacant land may be subjected to the sovereignty of a claimant state. It relates primarily to uninhabited territories and islands, but may also apply to certain inhabited lands.

The issue was raised in the *Western Sahara* case before the International Court of Justice.⁸¹ The question was asked as to whether the territory in question had been *terra nullius* at the time of colonisation. It was emphasised by the Court that the concept of *terra nullius* was a legal term of art used in connection with the mode of acquisition of territory known as 'occupation'.⁸² The latter mode was defined legally as an original means of peaceably acquiring sovereignty over territory otherwise than by cession or succession.⁸³ In an important statement, the Court unambiguously asserted that the state practice of the relevant period (i.e. the period of colonisation) indicated that territories inhabited by tribes or peoples having a social and political organisation were not regarded as *terrae nullius*.⁸⁴ Further, international case-law has recognised that sovereign title may be suspended for a period of time in circumstances that do not lead to the status of *terra nullius*. Such indeterminacy could be resolved by the relevant parties at a relevant time.⁸⁵

In fact the majority of territories brought under European control were regarded as acquired by means of cessions, especially in Asia and

⁸¹ ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 14. See also M. N. Shaw, 'The *Western Sahara* case', 49 BYIL, 1978, pp. 119, 127–34.

⁸² ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 39; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 56. ⁸³ *Ibid.*

⁸⁴ *Ibid.* This ran counter to some writers of the period: see e.g. M. F. Lindley, *The Acquisition and Government of Backward Territory in International Law*, London, 1926, pp. 11–20; J. Westlake, *Chapters on the Principles of International Law*, London, 1894, pp. 141–2; Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 20, and Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 687, footnote 4.

⁸⁵ See *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 51. See also N. S. M. Antunes, 'The *Eritrea-Yemen* Arbitration: First Stage – The Law of Title to Territory Re-averred', 48 ICLQ, 1999, p. 362, and A. Yannis, 'The Concept of Suspended Sovereignty in International Law and Its Implications in International Politics', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 1037.

Africa.⁸⁶ However, there were instances of title by occupation, for example Australia, and many sparsely inhabited islands.

Occupation, both in the normal sense of the word and in its legal meaning, was often preceded by discovery, that is the realisation of the existence of a particular piece of land.⁸⁷ But mere realisation or sighting was never considered (except for periods in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries and this is not undisputed) as sufficient to constitute title to territory. Something more was required and this took the form of a symbolic act of taking possession, whether it be by the raising of flags or by solemn proclamations or by more sophisticated ritual expressions. As time passed, the conditions changed and the arbitrator in the *Island of Palmas* case pointed to the modern effect of discovery as merely giving an inchoate title which had to be completed within a reasonable time by the effective occupation of the relevant region. Discovery only put other states on notice that the claimant state had a prior interest in the territory which, to become legally meaningful, had to be supplemented by effective occupation within a certain period.⁸⁸

Prescription⁸⁹ is a mode of establishing title to territory which is not *terra nullius* and which has been obtained either unlawfully or in circumstances wherein the legality of the acquisition cannot be demonstrated. It is the legitimisation of a doubtful title by the passage of time and the presumed acquiescence of the former sovereign, and it reflects the need for stability felt within the international system by recognising that territory in the possession of a state for a long period of time and uncontested cannot be taken away from that state without serious consequences for the international order. It is the legitimisation of a fact. If it were not for some such doctrine, the title of many states to their territory would be jeopardised.⁹⁰ The International Court in the *Botswana/Namibia* case,

⁸⁶ See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, chapter 1, and C. H. Alexandrowicz, *The European–African Confrontation*, Leiden, 1973.

⁸⁷ See e.g. Oppenheim's *International Law*, pp. 689–90, and F. A. F. Von der Heydte, 'Discovery, Symbolic Annexation and Virtual Effectiveness in International Law', 29 AJIL, 1935, p. 448. See also A. S. Keller, O. J. Lissitzyn and F. J. Mann, *Creation of Rights of Sovereignty Through Symbolic Acts, 1400–1800*, New York, 1938.

⁸⁸ 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 846 (1928); 4 AD, pp. 103, 108.

⁸⁹ See generally e.g. D. H. Johnson, 'Acquisitive Prescription in International Law', 27 BYIL, 1950, p. 332, and H. Post, 'International Law Between Dominium and Imperium' in *Reflections on Principles and Practice of International Law* (eds. T. D. Gill and W. P. Heere), The Hague, 2000, p. 147.

⁹⁰ As noted in the *Grisbadarna* case, 'it is a settled principle of the law of nations that a state of things which actually exists and has existed for a long time should be changed as little as possible', J. B. Scott, *Hague Court Reports*, New York, 1916, vol. I, pp. 121, 130.

while making no determination of its own, noted that the two parties were agreed that acquisitive prescription was recognised in international law and further agreed on the criteria to be satisfied for the establishment of such a title, viz. the possession must be *à titre de souverain*, peaceful and uninterrupted, public and endure for a certain length of time. The Court did not contradict this position.⁹¹

Prescription differs from occupation in that it relates to territory which has previously been under the sovereignty of a state. In spite of this, both concepts are similar in that they may require evidence of sovereign acts by a state over a period of time. And although distinct in theory, in practice these concepts are often indistinct since sovereignty over an area may lapse and give rise to doubts whether an abandonment has taken place,⁹² rendering the territory *terra nullius*.

In fact, most cases do not fall into such clear theoretical categories as occupation or prescription. Particular modes of acquisition that can be unambiguously related to the classic definitions tend not to be specified. Most cases involve contesting claims by states, where both (or possibly all) the parties have performed some sovereign acts. As in the instance of occupation, so prescription too requires that the possession forming the basis of the title must be by virtue of the authority of the state or *à titre de souverain*, and not a manifestation of purely individual effort unrelated to the state's sovereign claims. And this possession must be public so that all interested states can be made aware of it.

This latter requirement also flows logically from the necessity for the possession to be peaceful and uninterrupted, and reflects the vital point that prescription rests upon the implied consent of the former sovereign to the new state of affairs. This means that protests by the dispossessed sovereign may completely block any prescriptive claim.⁹³

In the *Chamizal* arbitration⁹⁴ between the United States and Mexico, the Rio Grande River forming the border between the parties changed course and the United States claimed the ground between the old and the new river beds partly on the basis of peaceful and uninterrupted possession. This claim was dismissed in view of the constant protests by Mexico and

⁹¹ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1101 ff.

⁹² For abandonment of territory, the fact of the loss plus the intention to abandon is required. This is very rare: see e.g. the *Delagoa Bay* case, C. Parry, *British Digest of International Law*, Cambridge, 1965, vol. V, p. 535, and the *Frontier Land* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 209; 27 ILR, p. 62. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 138–9.

⁹³ See Johnson, 'Acquisitive Prescription', pp. 343–8.

⁹⁴ 5 AJIL 1911, p. 782. See also the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 47, 106–8; 20 ILR, pp. 94, 142–4.

in the light of a Convention signed by both parties that there existed a dispute as to the boundary which had to be resolved. The fact that Mexico did not go to war over the issue was not of itself sufficient to make the possession of the tract of land by the United States peaceful.

Thus acquiescence in the case of prescription, whether express or implied from all the relevant circumstances, is essential, whereas in the case of occupation it is merely an evidential point reinforcing the existence of an effective occupation, but not constituting the essence of the legal claim.

Precisely what form the protest is to take is open to question but resort to force is not acceptable in modern international law, especially since the 1928 Kellogg–Briand Pact and article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter.⁹⁵ The bringing of a matter before the United Nations or the International Court of Justice will be conclusive as to the existence of the dispute and thus of the reality of the protests, but diplomatic protests will probably be sufficient. This, however, is not accepted by all academic writers, and it may well be that in serious disputes further steps should be taken such as severing diplomatic relations or proposing arbitration or judicial settlement.⁹⁶ What is clear is that anything less than sustained and credible protests may well risk the title of the dispossessed party.

The requirement of a ‘reasonable period’ of possession is similarly imprecise and it is not possible to point to any defined length of time.⁹⁷ It will depend, as so much else, upon all the circumstances of the case, including the nature of the territory and the absence or presence of any competing claims.

In the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case,⁹⁸ concerning disputed sovereignty over a group of islets and rocks in the English Channel, claimed by both France and the United Kingdom, the International Court of Justice exhaustively examined the history of the region since 1066. However, its decision was based primarily on relatively recent acts relating to the exercise of jurisdiction and local administration as well as the nature of

⁹⁵ See above, p. 500, and below, chapter 20.

⁹⁶ See e.g. Johnson, ‘Acquisitive Prescription’, pp. 353–4, and I. MacGibbon, ‘Some Observations on the Part of Protest in International Law’, 30 BYIL, 1953, p. 293. Cf. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 149, who notes that ‘if acquiescence is the crux of the matter (and it is believed that it is) one cannot dictate what its content is to be’.

⁹⁷ In the *British Guiana and Venezuela Boundary* case, the parties agreed to adopt a fifty-year adverse holding rule, 89 BFSP, 1896, p. 57.

⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 47; 20 ILR, p. 94.

legislative enactments referable to the territory in question. And upon these grounds, British sovereignty was upheld. The sovereign acts of the United Kingdom relating to the islets far outweighed any such activities by the French authorities and accordingly the claims of the latter were dismissed.

As in other cases, judgment was given not on the basis of clearly defined categories of occupation or prescription, but rather in the light of the balance of competing state activities.

De Visscher has attempted to render the theoretical classifications more consonant with the practical realities by the introduction of the concept of historical consolidation.⁹⁹ This idea is founded on proven long use, which reflects a complex of interests and relations resulting in the acquisition of territory (including parts of the sea). Such a grouping of interests and relations is considered by the courts in reaching a decision as of more importance than the mere passage of time, and historical consolidation may apply to *terra nullius* as well as to territories previously occupied. Thus it can be distinguished from prescription. It differs from occupation in that the concept has relevance to the acquisition of parts of the sea, as well as of land. And it may be brought into existence not only by acquiescence and consent, but also by the absence of protest over a reasonable period by relevant states.¹⁰⁰

However, de Visscher's discussion, based on the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case,¹⁰¹ does fail to note the important distinction between the acquisition of territory in accordance with the rules of international law, and the acquisition of territory as a permitted exception to the generally accepted legal principles. The passage in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case relied upon¹⁰² is really concerned with general acquiescence with regard to a maritime area, while the criticism has been made¹⁰³ that de Visscher has over-emphasised the aspect of 'complex of interests and relations which *in themselves* have the effect of attaching a territory or an expanse of sea to a given state'.¹⁰⁴ Effectiveness, therefore, rather than consolidation would be the appropriate term. Both occupation and prescription rely primarily upon effective possession and control. The element of time is here also relevant as it affects the effectiveness of control.

⁹⁹ *Theory and Reality in Public International Law*, 1968, p. 209. See below, p. 520.

¹⁰⁰ *Ibid.* ¹⁰¹ ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 138; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 100. ¹⁰² *Ibid.*

¹⁰³ See Jennings, *Acquisition*, pp. 25–6. See also D. H. Johnson, 'Consolidation as a Root of Title in International Law', *Cambridge Law Journal*, 1955, pp. 215, 223.

¹⁰⁴ De Visscher, *Theory and Reality*, p. 209, emphasis added. See further below, p. 515.

Intertemporal law¹⁰⁵

One question that arises is the problem of changing conditions related to particular principles of international law, in other words the relevant time period at which to ascertain the legal rights and obligations in question. This can cause considerable difficulties since a territorial title may be valid under, for example, sixteenth-century legal doctrines but ineffective under nineteenth-century developments. The general rule in such circumstances is that in a dispute the claim or situation in question (or relevant treaty, for example)¹⁰⁶ has to be examined according to the conditions and rules in existence at the time it was made and not at a later date. This meant, for example, that in the *Island of Palmas* case,¹⁰⁷ the Spanish claim to title by discovery, which the United States declared it had inherited, had to be tested in the light of international legal principles in the sixteenth century when the discovery was made. This aspect of the principle is predicated upon a presumption of, and need for, stability.¹⁰⁸

But it was also noted in this case that while the creation of particular rights was dependent upon the international law of the time, the continued existence of such rights depended upon their according with the evolving conditions of a developing legal system, although this stringent test would not be utilised in the case of territories with an 'established order of things'.¹⁰⁹ This proviso has in practice been carefully and flexibly interpreted within the context of all the relevant rules relating to the acquisition of territory, including recognition and acquiescence.¹¹⁰ However,

¹⁰⁵ See e.g. the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 38–9; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 55. See also Shaw, 'Western Sahara Case', pp. 152–3; Jennings, *Acquisition*, pp. 28–31; T. O. Elias, 'The Doctrine of Intertemporal Law', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 285; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 124–5; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1281–2; G. Fitzmaurice, *The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice*, Cambridge, 1986, vol. I, p. 135, and H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989 (Part One)', 60 BYIL, 1989, pp. 4, 128. See also R. Higgins, 'Time and the Law: International Perspectives on an Old Problem', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 501, and Greig, *Intertemporality*.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. the *Right of Passage* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 6, 37; 31 ILR, pp. 23, 50.

¹⁰⁷ 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 845 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 46 and 115; *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 2002, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34 and *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 404–5.

¹⁰⁹ 2 RIAA, pp. 839–45. See P. Jessup, 'The Palmas Island Arbitration', 22 AJIL, 1928, p. 735. See also M. Sørensen, 'Le Problème Dit du Droit Intertemporal dans l'Ordre International', *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, Basle, 1973, pp. 4 ff., and subsequent discussions, *ibid.*, at pp. 50 ff., and the Resolution adopted by the Institut de Droit International, *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1975, pp. 536 ff.

¹¹⁰ Note that the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law provides that the concept of non-acquisition of territory by force was not to be affected *inter alia* by any international agreement made prior to the Charter and valid under international law.

the Court in the *Aegean Sea Continental Shelf* case¹¹¹ declared that the phrase ‘disputes relating to the territorial status of Greece’ contained in a Greek reservation to the 1928 Kellogg–Briand Pact had to be interpreted ‘in accordance with the rules of international law as they exist today, and not as they existed in 1931’. The evolution of international law concerning the continental shelf, therefore, had to be considered, so that the territorial status of Greece was taken to include its continental shelf, although that concept was completely unknown in the 1920s. How far this aspect of the principle of international law may be extended is highly controversial. The better view is to see it as one element in the bundle of factors relevant to the determination of effective control, but one that must be applied with care.¹¹²

Critical date

In certain situations there may exist a determining moment at which it might be inferred that the rights of the parties have crystallised so that acts after that date cannot alter the legal position.¹¹³ Such a moment might be the date of a particular treaty where its provisions are at issue¹¹⁴ or the date of occupation of territory.¹¹⁵ It is not correct that there will or should always be such a critical date in territorial disputes, but where there is, acts undertaken after that date will not be taken into consideration, unless such acts are a normal continuation of prior acts and are not undertaken for the purpose of improving the legal position of the party relying on them.¹¹⁶

The concept of a critical date is of especial relevance with regard to the doctrine of *uti possidetis*, which posits that a new state has the boundaries of the predecessor entity, so that the moment of independence itself is

¹¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1978, pp. 3, 33–4; 60 ILR, pp. 562, 592. See Elias, ‘Intertemporal Law’, pp. 296 ff. See also the Indian argument regarding the invalidity of Portugal’s title to Goa, SCOR, S/PV-987, 11, 18 December 1961.

¹¹² See, as to time and the interpretation of treaties, above, p. 496.

¹¹³ L. F. E. Goldie, ‘The Critical Date’, 12 ICLQ, 1963, p. 1251. See also G. Fitzmaurice, ‘The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1951–4: Points of Substance, Part II’, 32 BYIL, 1955–6, p. 20; Y. Blum, *Historic Titles in International Law*, The Hague, 1965, pp. 208–22, and Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 125. See also M. N. Shaw, ‘The Heritage of States: The Principle of *Uti Possidetis Juris* Today’, 67 BYIL, 1996, pp. 75, 130, and Shaw, ‘Title, Control and Closure? The Experience of the Eritrea–Ethiopia Boundary Commission’, 56 ICLQ, 2007, pp. 755, 760 ff.

¹¹⁴ See e.g. the *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, p. 845.

¹¹⁵ See e.g. the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, p. 45.

¹¹⁶ See the *Indonesia/Malaysia* case, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 682. See also *Argentina/Chile* 38 ILR, pp. 10, 79–80 and *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 117. Note also the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 32–6.

invariably the critical date.¹¹⁷ This does not preclude the possibility that the relevant territorial situation or rights had crystallised at an earlier time, in the sense of having become established and not altered subsequently.¹¹⁸ Where there is more than one state involved, then the date of later independence¹¹⁹ or possibly the dates of the independence of the respective states,¹²⁰ may be taken depending on the circumstances.¹²¹ Further, it is possible for there to be different critical dates for different circumstances (for example, land and maritime disputes within the same case).¹²² However, the date of independence may simply mark the date of succession to boundaries which have been established with binding force by earlier instruments.¹²³

The moment of independence may not be 'critical' for these purposes for several possible reasons. There may be a dispute between the parties as to whether the date of independence or the date of the last exercise of jurisdiction for administrative organisational purposes by the former sovereign is the more appropriate date¹²⁴ or the *uti possidetis* line may in some circumstances only be determined upon a consideration of materials appearing later than the date of independence,¹²⁵ or such a 'critical date' may have been moved to a later date than that of independence by a subsequent treaty¹²⁶ or by an adjudication award.¹²⁷ The importance of the critical date concept, thus, is relative and depends entirely upon the circumstances of the case.¹²⁸

¹¹⁷ The *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 568; 80 ILR, p. 440. This may be reinforced by the terms of the *compromis* itself. For example, in the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, the parties referred specifically to the principle of respect for borders existing at the moment of independence, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 43 and see further below, p. 525.

¹¹⁸ *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 102–3. ¹¹⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 43.

¹²⁰ See the *Benin/Niger* case, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 90, 120. See also the views of the Arbitration Commission of the Conference on Yugoslavia in Opinion No. 11 as to the varying dates of succession (and independence) of the successor states of the Former Yugoslavia: see 96 ILR, pp. 719, 722.

¹²¹ See the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 570; 80 ILR, p. 440, and the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 590–4 for examples where the concept was held to be of little or no practical value.

¹²² See e.g. *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 123.

¹²³ As in the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 6; 100 ILR, p. 1.

¹²⁴ See the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 570; 80 ILR, p. 440.

¹²⁵ See the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 56 ff.; 97 ILR, p. 112.

¹²⁶ See the *Beagle Channel* case, 21 RIAA, pp. 55, 82–3; 52 ILR, p. 93.

¹²⁷ The *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 401; 97 ILR, p. 112. See also the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 570; 80 ILR, p. 440, and the Separate Opinion of Judge Ajibola, the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 91; 100 ILR, p. 1.

¹²⁸ See e.g. the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 570; 80 ILR, p. 440, for an example where the concept was held to be of little or no practical value. A similar view

Sovereign activities (*effectivités*)

The exercise of effective authority, therefore, is the crucial element. As Huber argued, 'the actual continuous and peaceful display of state functions is in case of dispute the sound and natural criterion of territorial sovereignty'.¹²⁹

However, control, although needing to be effective, does not necessarily have to amount to possession and settlement of all of the territory claimed. Precisely what acts of sovereignty are necessary to found title will depend in each instance upon all the relevant circumstances of the case, including the nature of the territory involved, the amount of opposition (if any) that such acts on the part of the claimant state have aroused, and international reaction.

Indeed in international law many titles will be deemed to exist not as absolute but as relative concepts. The state succeeding in its claim for sovereignty over *terra nullius* over the claims of other states will in most cases have proved not an absolute title, but one relatively better than that maintained by competing states and one that may take into account issues such as geography and international responses.¹³⁰ The Court noted in the *Eastern Greenland* case that 'It is impossible to read the records of the decisions in cases as to territorial sovereignty without observing that in many cases the tribunal has been satisfied with very little in the way of the actual exercise of sovereign rights, provided that the other state could not make out a superior claim. This is particularly true in the case of claims to sovereignty over areas in thinly populated or unsettled countries.'¹³¹ However, the arbitral tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen* emphasised that the issue did not turn solely upon relativity since 'there must be some absolute minimum requirement' for the acquisition of territorial sovereignty.¹³²

was taken in the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 590–4 and the *Eritrea/Yemen Arbitration*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 32.

¹²⁹ 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 840 (1928). The Tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen* noted that 'The modern international law of the acquisition (or attribution) of territory generally requires that there be: an intentional display of power and authority over the territory, by the exercise of jurisdiction and state functions, on a continuous and peaceful basis', 114 ILR, pp. 1, 69.

¹³⁰ See the *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 840 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103. See also the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95; the *Clipperton Island* case, 26 AJIL, 1932, p. 390; 6 AD, p. 105, and the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 47; 20 ILR, p. 94.

¹³¹ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, pp. 45–6. See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 198, and *Indonesia/Malaysia*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 682. Note also the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 62–7.

¹³² 114 ILR, pp. 1, 118. Other obvious factors in such situations would include consideration of the geographical position, *ibid.*, p. 119.

In the *Island of Palmas* arbitration¹³³ the dispute concerned sovereignty over a particular island in the Pacific. The United States declared that, since by a treaty of 1898 Spain had ceded to it all Spanish rights possessed in that region and since that included the island discovered by Spain, the United States of America therefore had a good title. The Netherlands, on the other hand, claimed the territory on the basis of the exercise of various rights of sovereignty over it since the seventeenth century. The arbitrator, Max Huber, in a judgment which discussed the whole nature of territorial sovereignty, dismissed the American claims derived from the Spanish discovery as not effective to found title.¹³⁴ Huber declared that the Netherlands possessed sovereignty on the basis of 'the actual continuous and peaceful display of state functions' evidenced by various administrative acts performed over the centuries.¹³⁵ It was also emphasised that manifestations of territorial sovereignty may assume different forms, according to conditions of time and place. Indeed, 'the intermittence and discontinuity compatible with the maintenance of the right necessarily differ according as inhabited or uninhabited regions are involved'. Additionally, geographical factors were relevant.¹³⁶

The *Clipperton Island* arbitration¹³⁷ concerned a dispute between France and Mexico over an uninhabited island. The arbitrator emphasised that the actual, and not the nominal, taking of possession was a necessary condition of occupation, but noted that such taking of possession may be undertaken in different ways depending upon the nature of the territory concerned. In this case, a proclamation of sovereignty by a French naval officer later published in Honolulu was deemed sufficient to create a valid title. Relevant to this decision was the weakness of the Mexican claims to the guano-rich island, as well as the uninhabited and inhospitable nature of the territory.

These two cases, together with the *Eastern Greenland* case,¹³⁸ reveal that the effectiveness of the occupation may indeed be relative and may in certain rare circumstances be little more than symbolic. In the *Eastern Greenland* case before the Permanent Court of International Justice, both Norway and Denmark claimed sovereignty over Eastern Greenland.

¹³³ 2 RIAA, p. 829 (1928). ¹³⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 846. ¹³⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 867–71.

¹³⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 840. See also, in this context, the American claim to the Howland, Baker and Jarvis Islands in the Pacific Ocean, where it was argued that the administration of the islands as part of the US Wildlife Refuge System constituted sufficient occupation, DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 92–4.

¹³⁷ 26 AJIL, 1932, p. 390; 6 AD, p. 105.

¹³⁸ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95.

Denmark had colonies in other parts of Greenland and had granted concessions in the uninhabited Eastern sector. In addition, it proclaimed that all treaties and legislation regarding Greenland covered the territory as a whole, as for example its establishment of the width of the territorial sea, and it sought to have its title to all of the territory recognised by other states. The Court felt that these acts were sufficient upon which to base a good title and were superior to various Norwegian actions such as the wintering of expeditions and the erection of a wireless station in Eastern Greenland, against which Denmark had protested. It is also to be noted that it was not until 1931 that Norway actually claimed the territory.

Such activity in establishing a claim to territory must be performed by the state in the exercise of sovereign powers (*à titre de souverain*)¹³⁹ or by individuals whose actions are subsequently ratified by their state,¹⁴⁰ or by corporations or companies permitted by the state to engage in such operations and thus performed on behalf of the sovereign.¹⁴¹ Otherwise, any acts undertaken are of no legal consequence.¹⁴² Another relevant factor, although one of uncertain strength, is the requirement of the intention by the state in performing various activities to assert claim in its sovereign capacity. In other words the facts are created pursuant to the will of the state to acquire sovereignty. This point was stressed in the *Eastern Greenland* case,¹⁴³ but appears not to have been considered as of first importance in the *Island of Palmas* case¹⁴⁴ or in the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case,¹⁴⁵ where concern centred upon the nature and extent of the actual actions carried out by the contending states. Whatever the precise role of this subjective element, some connection between the actions undertaken and the assertion of sovereignty is necessary.

Account will also be taken of the nature of the exercise of the sovereignty in question, so that in the *Rann of Kutch* case, it was noted that:

¹³⁹ That is, those made as a 'public claim of right or assertion of sovereignty ... as well as legislative acts', *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 69. See also the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 47, 65 and 69; 20 ILR, p. 94. Such acts need to relate clearly to the territory in question, *Indonesia/Malaysia*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 682–3.

¹⁴⁰ The Court has emphasised that 'activities by private persons cannot be seen as *effectivités* if they do not take place on the basis of official regulations or under governmental authority', *Indonesia/Malaysia*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 683.

¹⁴¹ *Botswana/Namibia*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1105.

¹⁴² See Judge McNair, the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 184; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 113, and McNair, *International Law Opinions*, Cambridge, 1956, vol. I, p. 21. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 417–19.

¹⁴³ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95.

¹⁴⁴ 2 RIAA, p. 829 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103. ¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 47; 20 ILR, p. 94.

the rights and duties which by law and custom are inherent in and characteristic of sovereignty present considerable variations in different circumstances according to time and place, and in the context of various political systems.¹⁴⁶

Similarly, the Court was willing to take into account the special characteristics of the Moroccan state at the relevant time in the *Western Sahara* case¹⁴⁷ in the context of the display of sovereign authority, but it was the exercise of sovereignty which constituted the crucial factor. While international law does appear to accept a notion of geographical or natural unity of particular areas, whereby sovereignty exercised over a certain area will raise the presumption of title with regard to an outlying portion of the territory comprised within the claimed unity,¹⁴⁸ it is important not to overstate this. It operates to raise a presumption and no more and that within the wider concept of display of effective sovereignty which need not apply equally to all parts of the territory.¹⁴⁹ Neither geographical unity nor contiguity are as such sources of title with regard to all areas contained within the area in question, nor is the proximity of islands to the mainland determinative as such of the question of legal title.¹⁵⁰ The Tribunal in the *Eritrea/Yemen* case felt able to consider separately the legal situation with regard to sub-groups existing within such natural unities,¹⁵¹ as did the Boundary Commission in the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case.¹⁵² However, the significance in law of state activities or *effectivités* will depend upon the existence or not of a legal title to the territory. Where there is such a valid legal title, this will have pre-eminence and *effectivités* may play a confirmatory role. However, where the *effectivités* are in contradiction to the title, the latter will have pre-eminence. In the absence of any legal title, then *effectivités* must invariably be taken into consideration, while where the legal title is not capable of exactly defining the relevant territorial limits, *effectivités* then play an essential role in showing how the title is interpreted in practice.¹⁵³ Accordingly, examples

¹⁴⁶ Annex I, 7 ILM, 1968, pp. 633, 674; 50 ILR, p. 2.

¹⁴⁷ ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 43–4; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 60. See also the *Dubai/Sharjah Border Arbitration*, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 585–90.

¹⁴⁸ *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 120 ff., and see Fitzmaurice, *Law and Procedure*, vol. I, pp. 312 ff.

¹⁴⁹ See the *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, p. 840.

¹⁵⁰ See *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 161.

¹⁵¹ 114 ILR, pp. 1, 120 ff. ¹⁵² *Eritrea/Ethiopia* 130 ILR, pp. 1, 84 ff.

¹⁵³ *Burkina Faso/Mali*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 586–7; 80 ILR, p. 440, and the *El Salvador/Honduras* case where the Chamber also noted that these principles applied to both

of state practice may confirm or complete but not contradict legal title established, for example, by boundary treaties.¹⁵⁴ In the absence of any clear legal title to any area, state practice comes into its own as a law-establishing mechanism. But its importance is always contextual in that it relates to the nature of the territory and the nature of competing state claims.¹⁵⁵

The role of subsequent conduct: recognition, acquiescence and estoppel

Subsequent conduct may be relevant in a number of ways: first, as a method of determining the true interpretation of the relevant boundary instrument in the sense of the intention of the parties;¹⁵⁶ secondly, as a method of resolving an uncertain disposition or situation, for example, whether a particular area did or did not fall within the colonial territory in question for purposes of determining the *uti possidetis* line¹⁵⁷ or thirdly, as a method of modifying such an instrument or pre-existing arrangement. The *Eritrea/Ethiopia* Boundary Commission explained the general principle that ‘the effect of subsequent conduct may be so clear in relation to matters that appear to be the subject of a given treaty that the application of an otherwise pertinent treaty provision may be varied, or may even cease to control the situation, regardless of its original meaning’.¹⁵⁸ The various manifestations of the subsequent conduct of relevant parties have a common foundation in that they all rest to a stronger or weaker extent upon the notion of consent.¹⁵⁹ They reflect expressly or impliedly the presumed will of a state, which in turn may in some situations prove of great importance in the acquisition of title to territory. However, there are significant theoretical differences between the three concepts (recognition, acquiescence and estoppel), even if in practice the dividing lines are often blurred. In any event, they flow to some extent from the fundamental principles of good faith and equity.

colonial and post-colonial *effectivités*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 398; 97 ILR, p. 266. See also *Benin/Niger*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 120, 127 and 149.

¹⁵⁴ See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 353–5.

¹⁵⁵ See also the general statement of principle in *Eritrea/Ethiopia* 130 ILR, pp. 1, 42. As to the role of equity in territorial disputes, see above, chapter 3, p. 108.

¹⁵⁶ See Article 31(3)(b) of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969. See also the *Argentina/Chile* case, 38 ILR, pp. 10, 89.

¹⁵⁷ See the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 401, 558 ff.

¹⁵⁸ *Eritrea/Ethiopia*, 130 ILR, p. 35. See also Shaw, ‘Title, Control and Closure?’, pp. 776 ff.

¹⁵⁹ Consent, of course, is the basis of cession: see above, p. 499.

Recognition is a positive act by a state accepting a particular situation and, even though it may be implied from all the relevant circumstances, it is nevertheless an affirmation of the existence of a specific factual state of affairs,¹⁶⁰ even if that accepted situation is inconsistent with the term in a treaty.¹⁶¹ Acquiescence, on the other hand, occurs in circumstances where a protest is called for and does not happen¹⁶² or does not happen in time in the circumstances.¹⁶³ In other words, a situation arises which would seem to require a response denoting disagreement and, since this does not transpire, the state making no objection is understood to have accepted the new situation.¹⁶⁴ The idea of estoppel in general is that a party which has made or consented to a particular statement upon which another party relies in subsequent activity to its detriment or the other's benefit cannot thereupon change its position.¹⁶⁵ This rests also upon the notion of preclusion.¹⁶⁶

While, of course, the consent of a ceding state to the cession is essential, the attitude adopted by other states is purely peripheral and will not affect the legality of the transaction. Similarly, in cases of the acquisition of title over *terra nullius*, the acquiescence of other states is not strictly relevant although of useful evidential effect.¹⁶⁷ However, where two or more states have asserted competing claims, the role of consent by third parties is

¹⁶⁰ See e.g. the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, pp. 46, 51–2; 6 AD, pp. 95, 100, and the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 49–57; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 66. See also G. Schwarzenberger, 'Title to Territory: Response to a Challenge', 51 AJIL, 1957, p. 308.

¹⁶¹ See e.g. the *Taba* case, 80 ILR, pp. 224, 297–8 and 306.

¹⁶² See Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 151, and I. MacGibbon, 'The Scope of Acquiescence in International Law', 31 BYIL, 1954, p. 143.

¹⁶³ See the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier (El Salvador/Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 577; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 493, and *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 84.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 35; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 34, where the Court noted that 'If a serious dispute had indeed existed regarding frontiers, eleven years after the conclusion of the 1955 Treaty, one would expect it to have been reflected in the 1966 Treaty.' See also the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 231 ff.

¹⁶⁵ See the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 29 ff.; 33 ILR, p. 48; the *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 303, and the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 130 ILR, pp. 68 ff.

¹⁶⁶ See e.g. the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 305; 71 ILR, p. 74. The Court in the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 228, emphasised that a party relying on an estoppel must show among other things that, 'it has taken distinct acts in reliance on the other party's statement'.

¹⁶⁷ Note that the Tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen* emphasised that 'Repute is also an important ingredient for the consolidation of title', 114 ILR, pp. 1, 136.

much enhanced. In the *Eastern Greenland* case,¹⁶⁸ the Court noted that Denmark was entitled to rely upon treaties made with other states (apart from Norway) in so far as these were evidence of recognition of Danish sovereignty over all of Greenland.

Recognition and acquiescence are also important in cases of acquisition of control contrary to the will of the former sovereign. Where the possession of the territory is accompanied by emphatic protests on the part of the former sovereign, no title by prescription can arise, for such title is founded upon the acquiescence of the dispossessed state, and in such circumstances consent by third states is of little consequence. However, over a period of time recognition may ultimately validate a defective title, although much will depend upon the circumstances, including the attitude of the former sovereign. Where the territory involved is part of the high seas (i.e. *res communis*), acquiescence by the generality of states may affect the subjection of any part of it to another's sovereignty, particularly by raising an estoppel.¹⁶⁹

Acquiescence and recognition¹⁷⁰ are also relevant where the prescriptive title is based on what is called immemorial possession, that is, the origin of the particular situation is shrouded in doubt and may have been lawful or unlawful but is deemed to be lawful in the light of general acquiescence by the international community or particular acquiescence by a relevant other state. Accordingly, acquiescence may constitute evidence reinforcing a title based upon effective possession and control, rendering it definitive.¹⁷¹

Estoppel is a legal technique whereby states deemed to have consented to a state of affairs cannot afterwards alter their position.¹⁷² Although

¹⁶⁸ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, pp. 46, 51–2; 6 AD, pp. 95, 100.

¹⁶⁹ See the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86.

¹⁷⁰ Note also the role of recognition in the context of new states and territory, above, p. 445.

¹⁷¹ See the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier (El Salvador/Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 579; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 495. The Court, for example, in the *Indonesia/Malaysia* case felt that it 'cannot disregard' the failure of Indonesia or its predecessor, the Netherlands, to protest at the construction of lighthouses and other administrative activities on territory claimed to be Indonesian and noted that 'such behaviour is unusual', ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 685.

¹⁷² See e.g. D. W. Bowett, 'Estoppel before International Tribunals and its Relation to Acquiescence', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 176; Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure', p. 29; A. Martin, *L'Estoppel en Droit International Public*, Paris, 1979; C. Dominicé, 'A Propos du Principe de l'Estoppel en Droit des Gens' in *Recueil d'Études de Droit International en Hommage à Paul Guggenheim*, Geneva, 1968, p. 327, and I. Sinclair, 'Estoppel and Acquiescence' in *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. A. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996, p. 104.

it cannot found title by itself, it is of evidential and often of practical importance. Estoppel may arise either by means of a prior recognition or acquiescence, but the nature of the consenting state's interest is vital. Where, for example, two states put forward conflicting claims to territory, any acceptance by one of the other's position will serve as a bar to a renewal of contradictory assertions. This was illustrated in the *Eastern Greenland* case,¹⁷³ where the Court regarded the Norwegian acceptance of treaties with Denmark, which incorporated Danish claims to all of Greenland, as preventing Norway from contesting Danish sovereignty over the area.

The leading case on estoppel is the *Temple of Preah Vihear*¹⁷⁴ which concerned a border dispute between Cambodia and Thailand. The frontier was the subject of a treaty in 1904 between Thailand and France (as sovereign over French Indo-China which included Cambodia) which provided for a delimitation commission. The border was duly surveyed but was ambiguous as to the siting of the Preah Vihear temple area. Thailand called for a map from the French authorities and this placed the area within Cambodia. The Thai government accepted the map and asked for further copies.¹⁷⁵ A number of other incidents took place, including a visit by a Thai prince to the temple area for an official reception with the French flag clearly flying there, which convinced the International Court that Thailand had tacitly accepted French sovereignty over the disputed area.¹⁷⁶ In other words, Thailand was estopped by its conduct from claiming that it contested the frontier in the temple area. However, it is to be noted that estoppel in that case was one element in a complexity of relevant principles which included prescription and treaty interpretation. The case also seemed to show that in situations of uncertainty and ambiguity, the doctrines of acquiescence and estoppel come into their own,¹⁷⁷ but it would not appear correct to refer to estoppel as a rule of substantive law.¹⁷⁸ The extent to which silence as such may create an estoppel is unclear and much will depend upon the surrounding circumstances, in particular the notoriety of the situation, the length of silence maintained in the light of that notoriety and the type of conduct that would be seen as reasonable

¹⁷³ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, pp. 46, 68; 6 AD, pp. 95, 102.

¹⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 6; 33 ILR, p. 48. See D. H. Johnson, 'The Case Concerning the Temple of Preah Vihear', 11 ICLQ, 1962, p. 1183, and J. P. Cot, 'Cour Internationale de Justice: Affaire du Temple de Préah Vihéar', AFDI, 1962, p. 217.

¹⁷⁵ ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 23; 33 ILR, pp. 48, 62.

¹⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 30–2; 33 ILR, p. 68.

¹⁷⁷ See also the *Award of the King of Spain* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 192; 30 ILR, p. 457.

¹⁷⁸ See e.g. Jennings, *Acquisition*, pp. 47–51.

in the international community in order to safeguard a legal interest.¹⁷⁹ The existence of an estoppel should not, however, be lightly assumed.¹⁸⁰

Subsequent conduct itself would in the material sense include the examples of the exercise of sovereign activity, various diplomatic and similar exchanges and records, and maps. So far as the status of maps is concerned, this will depend upon the facts of their production as an item of evidence. It was noted in the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case that 'maps are only extrinsic evidence of varying reliability or unreliability which may be used, along with other evidence of a circumstantial kind, to establish or reconstitute the real facts'.¹⁸¹ In such circumstances, courts have often exhibited a degree of caution, taking into account, for example, that some maps may be politically self-serving and that topographic knowledge at the time the map is made may be unreliable.¹⁸² However, maps annexed to treaties illustrating the boundary so delimited will be accepted as authoritative.¹⁸³ Where there is a conflict between the text of an instrument and an annexed map, all the relevant circumstances will need to be considered in order to arrive at a correct understanding of the intentions of the authors of the relevant delimitation instrument.¹⁸⁴ Beyond this, it is possible that cartographic material, prepared in order to help draft a delimitation instrument, may itself be used as assistance in seeking to determine the intentions of the parties where the text itself is ambiguous, while more generally the effect of a map will in other circumstances vary according to

¹⁷⁹ See e.g. the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 139; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 101, the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 26; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 55, the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 308; 71 ILR, pp. 74, 135, and the *ELSI* case, ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 15, 44; 84 ILR, pp. 311, 350. See also M. Koskenniemi, 'L'Affaire du Passage par le Great Belt', AFDI, 1992, p. 905.

¹⁸⁰ In *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)*, the Court emphasised that, 'An estoppel would only arise if by its acts or declarations Cameroon had consistently made it fully clear that it had agreed to settle the boundary dispute submitted to the Court by bilateral avenues alone. It would further be necessary that, by relying on such an attitude, Nigeria had changed its position to its own detriment or had suffered some prejudice', ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 303.

¹⁸¹ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 582; 80 ILR, p. 440. Note that the Court in the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 267–72, noted that a map may give a good indication of the official position of the party concerned, particularly where it is an admission against interest.

¹⁸² See the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 130 ILR, pp. 38 ff. See also the *Eritrea/Yemen* case, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 94 ff.

¹⁸³ 114 ILR, pp. 1, 94 ff., and *Eritrea/Ethiopia*, 130 ILR, pp. 39 and 45 ff. Note that a treaty provision may provide for an avowedly incorrect geographical feature on an annexed map as part of the boundary line: see *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 372.

¹⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 383–4. See also p. 385.

a number of factors ranging from its provenance and cartographic quality to its consistency with other maps and the use made of it by the parties.¹⁸⁵

One argument has been that peaceful possession coupled with acts of administration may in the absence of protest found the basis of title by way of 'historical consolidation'.¹⁸⁶ However, the International Court has emphasised that this doctrine is 'highly controversial and cannot replace the established modes of acquisition of title under international law'. It was also noted that a period of such activity of some twenty years was 'far too short, even according to the theory relied on it'.¹⁸⁷

Conclusions

It will be clear from the above that apart from the modes of acquisition that rely purely on the consent of the state and the consequences of sovereignty (cession or accretion), the method of acquiring additional territory is by the sovereign exercise of effective control. Both occupation and prescription are primarily based upon effective possession and, although the time element is a factor in prescription, this in fact is really concerned with the effectiveness of control.

The principle of effective control applies in different ways to different situations, but its essence is that 'the continuous and peaceful display of territorial sovereignty . . . is as good as title'.¹⁸⁸ Such control has to be deliberate sovereign action, but what will amount to effectiveness is relative and will depend upon, for example, the geographical nature of the region, the existence or not of competing claims and other relevant factors, such as international reaction.¹⁸⁹ It will not be necessary for such control to be equally effective throughout the region.¹⁹⁰ The doctrine of effectiveness has displaced earlier doctrines relating to discovery and symbolic annexation as in themselves sufficient to generate title.¹⁹¹ Effectiveness has also a temporal as well as a spatial dimension as the doctrine of intertemporal

¹⁸⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 366 ff. See also the *Eritrea/Ethiopia* case, 130 ILR, pp. 39 ff.

¹⁸⁶ See e.g. the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 138, and De Visscher, *Theory and Reality*, p. 209.

¹⁸⁷ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 352. See above, p. 507.

¹⁸⁸ Judge Huber, *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 839 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103.

¹⁸⁹ See further above, p. 511. ¹⁹⁰ See above, p. 512.

¹⁹¹ See in this context article 35 of the General Act of the Congress of Berlin, 1885, in which the parties recognised the obligation to 'ensure the establishment of authority in the regions occupied by them on the coast of the African continent'.

law has emphasised, while clearly the public or open nature of the control is essential. The acquiescence of a party directly involved is also a very important factor in providing evidence of the effectiveness of control. Where a dispossessed sovereign disputes the control exercised by a new sovereign, title can hardly pass. Effectiveness is related to the international system as a whole, so that mere possession by force is not the sole determinant of title. This factor also emphasises and justifies the role played by recognition.

Bilateral recognition is important as evidence of effective control and should be regarded as part of that principle. International recognition, however, involves not only a means of creating rules of international law in terms of practice and consent of states, but may validate situations of dubious origin. A series of recognitions may possibly validate an unlawful acquisition of territory and could similarly prevent effective control from ever hardening into title.¹⁹² The significance of UN recognition is self-evident, so that the UN Security Council itself could adopt a binding resolution ending a territorial dispute by determining the boundary in question.¹⁹³

Sovereign territory may not only be acquired, it may also be lost in ways that essentially mirror the modes of acquisition. Territory may be lost by express declaration or conduct such as a treaty of cession or acceptance of secession; by loss of territory by erosion or natural geographic activity or by acquiescence through prescription. Further, territory may be abandoned, but in order for this to operate both the physical act of abandonment and the intention to surrender title are required.¹⁹⁴

¹⁹² See e.g. Security Council resolution 216 (1965) concerning Rhodesia; General Assembly resolution 31/6A and Security Council Statements of 21 September 1979 and 15 December 1981 concerning the South African Bantustans; Security Council resolution 541 (1983) with regard to the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus' and Security Council resolution 662 (1990) concerning the Iraqi annexation of Kuwait.

¹⁹³ See particularly Security Council resolution 687 (1991) in which the international boundary between Kuwait and Iraq was deemed to be that agreed by both parties in 'Minutes' agreed in 1963. This boundary was then formally guaranteed by the Council in Section A, paragraph 4 of this resolution. See e.g. M. H. Mendelson and S. C. Hulton, 'The Iraq-Kuwait Boundary', 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 135. See also Security Council resolution 833 (1993) and S/26006.

¹⁹⁴ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 138; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 716–18, and G. Marston, 'The British Acquisition of the Nicobar Islands, 1869', 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 245. See also e.g. the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 47; 6 AD, p. 95 and the *Malaysia/Singapore* case, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 117, 196, 223, 230 and 275.

Territorial integrity, self-determination and sundry claims

There are a number of other concepts which may be of some relevance in territorial situations ranging from self-determination to historical and geographical claims. These may not necessarily be legal principles as such but rather purely political or moral expressions. Although they may be extremely persuasive within the international political order, they would not necessarily be juridically effective. One of the core principles of the international system is the need for stability and finality in boundary questions and much flows from this.¹⁹⁵ Case-law has long maintained this principle.¹⁹⁶ Reflective of this concept is the principle of territorial integrity.

The principle of the territorial integrity of states is well established and is protected by a series of consequential rules prohibiting interference within the domestic jurisdiction of states as, for example, article 2(7) of the United Nations Charter, and forbidding the threat or use of force against the territorial integrity and political independence of states, particularly article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter. This principle has been particularly emphasised by Third World states and also by other regions.¹⁹⁷

However, it does not apply where the territorial dispute centres upon uncertain frontier demarcations. In addition, the principle appears to conflict on the face of it with another principle of international law, that of the self-determination of peoples.¹⁹⁸

This principle, noted in the United Nations Charter and emphasised in the 1960 Colonial Declaration, the 1966 International Covenants on Human Rights and the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law, can be regarded as a rule of international law in the light of, *inter alia*, the number and character of United Nations declarations and resolutions and actual state practice in the process of decolonisation. However, it has been interpreted as referring only to the inhabitants of non-independent

¹⁹⁵ See K. H. Kaikobad, 'Some Observations on the Doctrine of the Continuity and Finality of Boundaries', 54 BYIL, 1983, p. 119, and Shaw, 'Heritage of States', pp. 75, 81.

¹⁹⁶ See e.g. the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 34; 33 ILR, p. 48; the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 37; 100 ILR, p. 1; the *Beagle Channel* case, 21 RIAA, pp. 55, 88; 52 ILR, p. 93, and the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 578.

¹⁹⁷ See generally, Shaw, *Title to Territory*, chapter 5. But see, as regards Europe, Principle III of the Helsinki Final Act, 14 ILM, 1975, p. 1292 and the Guidelines on Recognition of New States in Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union adopted by the European Community and its member states on 16 December 1991, 92 ILR, p. 173.

¹⁹⁸ See *Burkina Faso/Mali*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 565; 80 ILR, p. 469.

territories.¹⁹⁹ Practice has not supported its application as a principle conferring the right to secede upon identifiable groups within already independent states.²⁰⁰ The Canadian Supreme Court in the *Reference Re Secession of Quebec* case declared that 'international law expects that the right to self-determination will be exercised by peoples within the framework of existing sovereign states and consistently with the maintenance of the territorial integrity of those states',²⁰¹ and that the right to unilateral secession 'arises only in the most extreme of cases and, even then, under carefully defined circumstances'.²⁰² The only arguable exception to this rule that the right to external self-determination applies only to colonial situations (and arguably situations of occupation) might be where the group in question is subject to 'extreme and unremitting persecution' coupled with the 'lack of any reasonable prospect for reasonable challenge',²⁰³ but even this is controversial not least in view of definitional difficulties.²⁰⁴ The situation of secession is probably best dealt with in international law within the framework of a process of claim, effective control and international recognition.

Accordingly the principle of self-determination as generally accepted fits in with the concept of territorial integrity,²⁰⁵ as it cannot apply once a colony or trust territory attains sovereignty and independence, except, arguably, in extreme circumstances. Probably the most prominent exponent of the relevance of self-determination to post-independence situations has

¹⁹⁹ As to the application of the principle to Gibraltar, see UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 443.

²⁰⁰ See J. Crawford, 'State Practice and International Law in Relation to Secession', 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 85; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 525, and *Self-Determination in International Law: Quebec and Lessons Learned* (ed. A. Bayefsky), The Hague, 2000. See also above, chapter 5, p. 256. Self-determination does have a continuing application in terms of human rights situations within the territorial framework of independent states (i.e. internal self-determination), *ibid.*

²⁰¹ (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 436; 115 ILR, p. 536.

²⁰² (1998) 161 DLR (4th) 385, 438.

²⁰³ A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995, p. 120. See also T. Musgrave, *Self-Determination and National Minorities*, Oxford, 1997, pp. 188 ff.; J. Castellino, *International Law and Self-Determination*, The Hague, 2000, and K. Knop, *Diversity and Self-Determination in International Law*, Cambridge, 2002, pp. 65 ff. See also Judge Wildhaber's Concurring Opinion (joined by Judge Ryssdal) in *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Judgment of 18 December 1996, 108 ILR, pp. 443, 470–3. See also *Secession: International Law Perspectives* (ed. M. G. Kohen), Cambridge, 2006.

²⁰⁴ The Court in the *Quebec* case, citing Cassese, *Self-Determination*, suggested that the right to external self-determination (i.e. secession) might apply to cases of foreign occupation and as a last resort where a people's right to internal self-determination (i.e. right to public participation, etc.) was blocked, *ibid.*, pp. 438 ff.

²⁰⁵ This analysis is supported by *Burkina Faso/Mali*, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 554; 80 ILR, p. 459.

been Somalia with its claims to those parts of Ethiopia and Kenya populated by Somali tribes, but that country received very little support for its demands.²⁰⁶

Self-determination cannot be used to further larger territorial claims in defiance of internationally accepted boundaries of sovereign states, but it may be of some use in resolving cases of disputed frontier lines on the basis of the wishes of the inhabitants. In addition, one may point to the need to take account of the interests of the local population where the determination of the boundary has resulted in a shift in the line, at least in the view of one of the parties.²⁰⁷ Geographical claims have been raised throughout history.²⁰⁸ France for long maintained that its natural frontier in the east was the west bank of the Rhine, and the European powers in establishing their presence upon African coastal areas often claimed extensive hinterland territories. Much utilised also was the doctrine of contiguity, whereby areas were claimed on the basis of the occupation of territories of which they formed a geographical continuation. However, such claims, although relevant in discussing the effectivity and limits of occupation, are not able in themselves to found title, and whether or not such claims will be taken into account at all will depend upon the nature of the territory and the strength of competing claims.²⁰⁹ A rather special case is that of islands close to the coast of the mainland. The Tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen* stated that: 'There is a strong presumption that islands within the twelve-mile coastal belt will belong to the coastal state', to be rebutted only by evidence of a superior title.²¹⁰

²⁰⁶ Shaw, *Title to Territory*, chapter 5. See also the Moroccan approach, *ibid.*

²⁰⁷ See, with regard to the preservation of acquired rights, *El Salvador/Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 400; 97 ILR, p. 112. See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 370 and 373–4. In particular, the Court stated in relation to the Bakassi peninsula and Lake Chad regions which contain Nigerian populations, that 'the implementation of the present judgment will afford the parties a beneficial opportunity to co-operate in the interests of the population concerned, in order notably to enable it to continue to have access to educational and health services comparable to those it currently enjoys', *ibid.*, p. 452. The Court also referred to the commitment of the Cameroon Agent made during the Oral Pleadings to protect Nigerians living in the areas recognised as belonging to Cameroon, *ibid.*, p. 452 and para. V(C) of the Dispositif.

²⁰⁸ Shaw, *Title to Territory*, p. 195; Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 74, and Hill, *Claims to Territory*, pp. 77–80.

²⁰⁹ See the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95, and the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 42–3; 59 ILR, pp. 14, 59. See generally, B. Feinstein, 'Boundaries and Security in International Law and Practice', 3 Finnish YIL, 1992, p. 135.

²¹⁰ 114 ILR, pp. 1, 124 and 125. But see *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 161, where the Court noted that 'proximity [of islands to the mainland] as such is not necessarily determinative of legal title'.

Of some similarity are claims based upon historical grounds.²¹¹ This was one of the grounds upon which Iraq sought to justify its invasion and annexation of the neighbouring state of Kuwait in August 1990,²¹² although the response of the United Nations demonstrated that such arguments were unacceptable to the world community as a whole.²¹³ Morocco too has made extensive claims to Mauritania, Western Sahara and parts of Algeria as territories historically belonging to the old Moroccan empire.²¹⁴ But such arguments are essentially political and are of but little legal relevance. The International Court of Justice in the *Western Sahara* case²¹⁵ of 1975 accepted the existence of historical legal ties between the tribes of that area and Morocco and Mauritania, but declared that they were not of such a nature as to override the right of the inhabitants of the colony to self-determination and independence.²¹⁶

*The doctrine of uti possidetis*²¹⁷

The influence of the principle of territorial integrity may be seen in the Latin American idea of *uti possidetis*, whereby the administrative divisions

²¹¹ See e.g. Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 193–4; Jennings, *Acquisition*, pp. 76–8, and Hill, *Claims to Territory*, pp. 81–91.

²¹² See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37635, 1990. Note that Iraq made a similar claim to Kuwait in the early 1960s, although not then taking military action: see Jennings, *Acquisition*, p. 77, note 2.

²¹³ See e.g. Security Council resolution 662 (1990); Lauterpacht *et al.*, *The Kuwait Crisis: Basic Documents*, p. 90.

²¹⁴ Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 193–4. Note also the claims advanced by Indonesia to West Irian, *ibid.*, p. 22.

²¹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 14.

²¹⁶ See also *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 37 ff. The Tribunal also discounted the notion of reversion of title, *ibid.*, pp. 40 and 115.

²¹⁷ See e.g. H. Ghebreyebet, *Identifying Units of Statehood and Determining International Boundaries*, Frankfurt am Main, 2006; A. O. Cukwurah, *The Settlement of Boundary Disputes in International Law*, Manchester, 1967, p. 114; P. De La Pradelle, *La Frontière*, Paris, 1928, pp. 86–7; D. Bardonnet, 'Les Frontières Terrestres et la Relativité de leur Tracé', 153 HR, 1976 V, p. 9; Shaw, 'Heritage of States', p. 75; M. Kohen, *Possession Contestée et Souveraineté Territoriale*, Geneva, 1997, chapter 6, and *ibid.*, 'Uti Possidetis, Prescription et Pratique Subséquent à un Traité dans l'Affaire de l'Île de Kasikili/Sedudu devant la Cour Internationale de Justice', 43 German YIL, 2000, p. 253; G. Nesi, *L'Uti Possidetis Iuris nel Diritto Internazionale*, Padua, 1996; S. Lalonde, *Determining Boundaries in a Conflicted World*, Ithaca, 2002; Luis Sánchez Rodríguez, 'L'Uti Possidetis et les Effectivités dans les Contentieux Territoriaux et Frontaliers', 263 HR, 1997, p. 149; J. M. Sorel and R. Mehdi, 'L'Uti Possidetis Entre la Consécration Juridique et la Pratique: Essai de Réactualisation', AFDI, 1994, p. 11; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 669–70; T. Bartoš, 'Uti Possidetis. Quo Vadis?', 18 Australian YIL, 1997, p. 37; 'L'Applicabilité de l'Uti Possidetis Iuris dans les Situations de Sécession ou de Dissolution d'États', Colloque, RBDI, 1998, p. 5, and *Démembrements d'États et Délimitations Territoriales* (ed. O. Corten), Brussels, 1999.

of the Spanish empire in South America were deemed to constitute the boundaries for the newly independent successor states, thus theoretically excluding any gaps in sovereignty which might precipitate hostilities and encourage foreign intervention.²¹⁸ It is more accurately reflected in the practice of African states, explicitly stated in a resolution of the Organisation of African Unity in 1964, which declared that colonial frontiers existing as at the date of independence constituted a tangible reality and that all member states pledged themselves to respect such borders.²¹⁹

Practice in Africa has reinforced the approach of emphasising the territorial integrity of the colonially defined territory, witness the widespread disapproval of the attempted creation of secessionist states whether in the former Belgian Congo, Nigeria or Sudan. Efforts to prevent the partition of the South African controlled territory of Namibia into separate Bantustans as a possible prelude to a dissolution of the unity of the territory are a further manifestation of this.²²⁰

The question of *uti possidetis* was discussed by a Chamber of the International Court in *Burkina Faso v. Republic of Mali*,²²¹ where the *compromis* (or special agreement) by which the parties submitted the case to the Court specified that the settlement of the dispute should be based upon respect for the principle of the 'intangibility of frontiers inherited from colonisation'.²²² It was noted, however, that the principle had in fact developed into a general concept of contemporary customary international law and was unaffected by the emergence of the right of peoples to self-determination.²²³ In the African context particularly, the obvious purpose of the principle was 'to prevent the independence

²¹⁸ See the *Colombia–Venezuela* arbitral award, 1 RIAA, pp. 223, 228 (1922); 1 AD, p. 84; the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93, and *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 544; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 299–300.

²¹⁹ AHG/Res.16(1). See Security Council resolution 1234 (1999) which refers directly to OAU resolution 16(1) and see also article 4(i) of the Protocol Relating to the Establishment of the Peace and Security Council of the African Union, 2002, and the preamble to the Protocol on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation adopted by the Southern African Development Community in 2001: see further below, chapter 18, p. 1026. See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 185–7. See also the Separate Opinion by Judge Ajibola in the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, pp. 6, 83 ff.; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 81 ff.

²²⁰ Shaw, *Title to Territory*, chapter 5. The principle has also been noted in Asian practice: see e.g. the *Temple of Preah Vihear* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 6; 33 ILR, p. 48, and the *Rann of Kutch* case, 7 ILM, 1968, p. 633; 50 ILR, p. 2.

²²¹ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 554; 80 ILR, p. 459.

²²² ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 557; 80 ILR, p. 462.

²²³ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 565; 80 ILR, p. 469.

and stability of new states being endangered by fratricidal struggles provoked by the challenging of frontiers following the withdrawal of the administering power'.²²⁴ The application of the principle has the effect of freezing the territorial title existing at the moment of independence to produce what the Chamber described as the 'photograph of the territory' at the critical date.²²⁵ The Chamber, however, went further than emphasising the application of the principle to Africa. It declared that the principle applied generally and was logically connected with the phenomenon of independence wherever it occurred in order to protect the independence and stability of new states.²²⁶ *Uti possidetis* was defined as follows:

The essence of the principle lies in its primary aim of securing respect for the territorial boundaries at the moment when independence is achieved. Such territorial boundaries might be no more than delimitations between different administrative divisions or colonies all subject to the same sovereign. In that case, the application of the principle of *uti possidetis* resulted in administrative boundaries being transformed into international frontiers in the full sense of the term.²²⁷

The application of this principle beyond the purely colonial context was underlined particularly with regard to the former USSR²²⁸ and the former Yugoslavia. In the latter case, the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission established by the European Community and accepted by the states of the former Yugoslavia made several relevant comments. In Opinion No. 2, the Arbitration Commission declared that 'whatever the circumstances, the right to self-determination must not involve changes to existing

²²⁴ *Ibid.*

²²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 568; 80 ILR, p. 473. See, as to the notion of critical date, above, p. 509.

²²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 565; 80 ILR, p. 470.

²²⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 566; 80 ILR, p. 459. This was reaffirmed by the Court in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 386–7; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 299–300. The Court in the latter case went on to note that '*uti possidetis juris* is essentially a retrospective principle, investing as international boundaries administrative limits intended originally for quite other purposes', *ibid.*, p. 388; 79 ILR, p. 301. See M. N. Shaw, 'Case Concerning the Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute', 42 ICLQ, 1993, p. 929. See also *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 151 ff.

²²⁸ See e.g. R. Yakemtchouk, 'Les Conflits de Territoires and de Frontières dans les États de l'Ex-URSS', AFDI, 1993, p. 401. See also, with regard to the application of *uti possidetis* to the dissolution of the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, J. Malenovsky, 'Problèmes Juridiques Liés à la Partition de la Tchécoslovaquie', *ibid.*, p. 328.

frontiers at the time of independence (*uti possidetis juris*) except where the states concerned agree otherwise.²²⁹ In Opinion No. 3, the Arbitration Commission emphasised that, except where otherwise agreed, the former boundaries²³⁰ became frontiers protected by international law. This conclusion, it was stated, derived from the principle of respect for the territorial status quo and from the principle of *uti possidetis*.²³¹ It is thus arguable that, at the least, a presumption exists that, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, internally defined units within a pre-existing sovereign state will come to independence within the spatial framework of that territorially defined unit.²³²

Beyond uti possidetis

The principle of *uti possidetis* is not able to resolve all territorial or boundary problems.²³³ Where there is a relevant applicable treaty, then this will

²²⁹ 92 ILR, p. 168. See also A. Pellet, 'Note sur la Commission d'Arbitrage de la Conférence Européenne pour la Paix en Yougoslavie', AFDI, 1991, p. 329, and Pellet, 'Activité de la Commission d'Arbitrage de la Conférence Européenne pour la Paix en Yougoslavie', AFDI, 1992, p. 220.

²³⁰ The Arbitration Commission was here dealing specifically with the internal boundaries between Serbia and Croatia and Serbia and Bosnia-Herzegovina.

²³¹ 92 ILR, p. 171. The Arbitration Commission specifically cited here the views of the International Court in the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case: see above, p. 526. Note also that the Under-Secretary of State of the Foreign and Commonwealth Office stated in January 1992 that 'the borders of Croatia will become the frontiers of independent Croatia, so there is no doubt about that particular issue. That has been agreed amongst the Twelve, that will be our attitude towards those borders. They will just be changed from being republican borders to international frontiers', UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 719.

²³² See e.g. M. N. Shaw, 'Peoples, Territorialism and Boundaries', 3 EJIL, 1997, pp. 477, 504, but cf. S. Ratner, 'Drawing a Better Line: *Uti Possidetis* and the Borders of New States', 90 AJIL, 1996, pp. 590, 613 ff. and M. Craven, 'The European Community Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia', 65 BYIL, 1995, pp. 333, 385 ff.

²³³ See generally K. H. Kaikobad, *Interpretation and Revision of International Boundary Decisions*, Cambridge, 2007; M. Kohen, 'La Relation Titres/Effectivités dans le Contentieux Territorial à la Lumière de la Jurisprudence Récente', 108 RGDIP, 2004, p. 561; M. Mendelson, 'The Cameroon–Nigeria Case in the International Court of Justice: Some Territorial Sovereignty and Boundary Delimitation Issues', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 223; B. H. Oxman, 'The Territorial Temptation: A Siren Song at Sea', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 830, and S. R. Ratner, 'Land Feuds and Their Solutions: Finding International Law Beyond the Tribunal Chamber', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 808. Note that the International Court has emphasised that the principle of *uti possidetis* applies to territorial as well as boundary problems: see the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 387; 97 ILR, p. 266, 300.

dispose of the matter completely.²³⁴ Indeed, once defined in a treaty, an international frontier achieves permanence so that even if the treaty itself were to cease to be in force, the continuance of the boundary would be unaffected and may only be changed with the consent of the states directly concerned.²³⁵ On the other hand, where the line which is being transformed into an international boundary by virtue of the principle cannot be conclusively identified by recourse to authoritative material, then the principle of *uti possidetis* must allow for the application of other principles and rules. Essentially these other principles focus upon the notion of *effectivités* or effective control.

The issue was extensively analysed by the International Court in the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case²³⁶ and later in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras; Nicaragua Intervening)* case.²³⁷ The Court noted the possible relevance of colonial *effectivités*, immediate post-colonial *effectivités* and more recent *effectivités*. Each of these might be relevant in the context of seeking to determine the *uti possidetis* pre-independence line. In the case of colonial *effectivités*, i.e. the conduct of the colonial administrators as proof of the effective exercise of territorial jurisdiction in the area during the colonial period, the Court in the former case distinguished between certain situations. Where the act concerned corresponded to the title comprised in the *uti possidetis juris*, then the *effectivités* simply confirmed the exercise of the right derived from a legal title. Where the act did not correspond with the law as described, i.e. the territory subject to the dispute was effectively administered by a state other than the one possessing the legal title, preference would be given to the holder of the title. In other words, where there was a clear *uti possidetis* line, this would prevail over inconsistent practice. Where, however, there was no clear legal title, then the *effectivités* 'play an essential role in showing how the title is interpreted in practice'.²³⁸ It would then

²³⁴ See the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 38–40; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 37–9. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 663. Note that by virtue of article 11 of the Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978, a succession of states does not as such affect a boundary established by a treaty or obligations or rights established by a treaty and relating to the regime of a boundary. Article 62 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 provides that the doctrine of *rebus sic stantibus* does not apply to boundary treaties: see below, chapter 16, p. 950.

²³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 37; 100 ILR, p. 36. ²³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 554; 80 ILR, p. 440.

²³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 351; 97 ILR, p. 266. See also Shaw, 'Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute'.

²³⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 586–7; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 490–1.

become a matter for evaluation by the Court with regard to each piece of practice adduced. This approach was reaffirmed in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute* case with regard to the grant of particular lands to individuals or to Indian communities or records of such grants.²³⁹ Where the colonial *effectivités* were insufficient to establish the position of the relevant administrative line, the principle of *uti possidetis* could not operate.²⁴⁰ The Court also noted in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute* case that it could have regard in certain instances to documentary evidence of post-independence *effectivités* when it considered that they afforded indications with respect to the *uti possidetis* line, provided that there was a relationship between the *effectivités* concerned and the determination of the boundary in question.²⁴¹ Such post-independence practice could be examined not only in relation to the identification of the *uti possidetis* line but also in the context of seeking to establish whether any acquiescence could be demonstrated both as to where the line was and as to whether any changes in that line could be proved to have taken place.²⁴² This post-independence practice could even be very recent practice and was not confined to immediate post-independence practice.

Where the *uti possidetis* line could be determined neither by authoritative decisions by the appropriate authorities at the relevant time nor by subsequent practice with regard to a particular area, recourse to equity²⁴³ might be necessary. What this might involve would depend upon the circumstances. In the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, it meant that a particular frontier pool would be equally divided between the parties;²⁴⁴ in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute* case, it meant that resort could be had to an unratified delimitation of 1869.²⁴⁵ It was also noted that the suitability of topographical features in providing an identifiable and convenient boundary was a material aspect.²⁴⁶

²³⁹ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 389; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 302.

²⁴⁰ See e.g. *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 167.

²⁴¹ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 399; 97 ILR, p. 266.

²⁴² See e.g. ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 408, 485, 514, 525, 563 and 565; 97 ILR, pp. 321, 401, 430, 441, 479 and 481. See also *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 168 ff. Such post-colonial *effectivités* could show whether either of the contending states had displayed sufficient evidence of sovereign authority in order to establish legal title, *ibid.*

²⁴³ I.e. equity *infra legem* or within the context of existing legal principles.

²⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 633; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 535.

²⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 514–15; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 430–1.

²⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 396; 97 ILR, p. 309.

*International boundary rivers*²⁴⁷

Special rules have evolved in international law with regard to boundary rivers. In general, where there is a navigable channel, the boundary will follow the middle line of that channel (the *thalweg* principle).²⁴⁸ Where there is no such channel, the boundary line will, in general, be the middle line of the river itself or of its principal arm.²⁴⁹ These respective boundary lines would continue as median lines (and so would shift also) if the river itself changed course as a result of gradual accretion on one bank or degradation of the other bank. Where, however, the river changed course suddenly and left its original bed for a new channel, the international boundary would continue to be the middle of the deserted river bed.²⁵⁰ It is possible for the boundary to follow one of the banks of the river, thus putting it entirely within the territory of one of the states concerned where this has been expressly agreed, but this is unusual.²⁵¹

²⁴⁷ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 664–6; S. W. Boggs, *International Boundaries*, New York, 1940; L. J. Bouchez, 'International Boundary Rivers', 12 ICLQ, 1963, p. 789; A. Patry, 'Le Régime des Cours d'Eau Internationaux', 1 Canadian YIL, 1963, p. 172; R. Baxter, *The Law of International Waterways*, Harvard, 1964; Verzijl, *International Law*, vol. III, pp. 537 ff.; H. Dipla, 'Les Règles de Droit International en Matière de Délimitation Fluviale: Remise en Question?', 89 RGDIP, 1985, p. 589; H. Ruiz Fabri, 'Règles Coutumières Générales et Droit International Fluvial', AFDI, 1990, p. 818; F. Schroeter, 'Les Systèmes de Délimitation dans les Fleuves Internationaux', AFDI, 1992, p. 948, and L. Caflisch, 'Règles Générales du Droit des Cours d'Eaux Internationaux', 219 HR, 1989, p. 75.

²⁴⁸ See e.g. the *Botswana/Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 1062 and the *Benin/Niger* case, ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 149. See also *State of New Jersey v. State of Delaware* 291 US 361 (1934) and the *Laguna (Argentina/Chile)* case, 113 ILR, pp. 1, 209. See, as to the use of the *thalweg* principle with regard to wadis (dried river beds), Mendelson and Hutton, 'Iraq–Kuwait Boundary', pp. 160 ff.

²⁴⁹ See e.g. the *Argentina–Chile Frontier* case, 38 ILR, pp. 10, 93. See also article 2A(1) of Annex I(a) of the Israel–Jordan Treaty of Peace, 1994.

²⁵⁰ See e.g. the *Chamizal* case, 11 RIAA, p. 320.

²⁵¹ See e.g. the Iran–Iraq agreements of 1937 and 1975. See E. Lauterpacht, 'River Boundaries: Legal Aspects of the Shatt-al-Arab Frontier', 9 ICLQ, 1960, p. 208; K. H. Kaikobad, *The Shatt-al-Arab Boundary Question*, Oxford, 1980, and Kaikobad, 'The Shatt-al-Arab River Boundary: A Legal Reappraisal', 56 BYIL, 1985, p. 49. See, as to the question of equitable sharing of international watercourses, McCaffrey, *The Law of International Watercourses*; Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 259; the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 54; 116 ILR, p. 1; the Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997, and the Separate Opinion of Judge Kooijmans, *Botswana/Namibia*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1148 ff. See also P. Wouters, 'The Legal Response to International Water Conflicts: The UN Watercourses Convention and Beyond', 42 German YIL, 1999, p. 293. Note that in March 2003, the establishment of a Water Cooperation Facility

*The Falkland Islands*²⁵²

The long dispute between the UK and Argentina over the Falkland Islands (or Las Malvinas) well illustrates the complex factors involved in resolving issues as to title to territory. The islands were apparently discovered by a British sea captain in 1592, but it is only in 1764 that competing acts of sovereignty commenced. In that year the French established a settlement on East Falklands and in 1765 the British established one on West Falklands. In 1767 the French sold their settlement to Spain. The British settlement was conquered by the Spaniards in 1770 but returned the following year. In 1774 the British settlement was abandoned for economic reasons, but a plaque asserting sovereignty was left behind. The Spaniards left in 1811. In 1816, the United Provinces of the River Plate (Argentina) declared their independence from Spain and four years later took formal possession of the islands. In 1829 the British protested and two years later an American warship evicted Argentinian settlers from the islands, following action by the Argentinian Governor of the territory against American rebels. In 1833 the British captured the islands and have remained there ever since. The question has arisen therefore as to the basis of British title. It was originally argued that this lay in a combination of discovery and occupation, but this would be questionable in the circumstances.²⁵³ It would perhaps have been preferable to rely on conquest and subsequent annexation for, in the 1830s, this was perfectly legal as a method of acquiring territory,²⁵⁴ but for political reasons this was not claimed. By the 1930s the UK approach had shifted to prescription as the basis of title,²⁵⁵ but of course this was problematic in the light of Argentinian protests made intermittently throughout the period since 1833.

to mediate in disputes between countries sharing a single river basis was announced: see <http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/sci/tech/2872427.stm>.

²⁵² See e.g. J. Goebel, *The Struggle for the Falklands*, New Haven, 1927; F. L. Hoffmann and O. M. Hoffmann, *Sovereignty in Dispute*, Boulder, CO, 1984; The Falkland Islands Review, Cmnd 8787 (1983); Chatham House, *The Falkland Islands Dispute – International Dimensions*, London, 1982; W. M. Reisman, 'The Struggle for the Falklands', 93 *Yale Law Journal*, 1983, p. 287, and M. Hassan, 'The Sovereignty Dispute over the Falkland Islands', 23 *Va. JIL*, 1982, p. 53. See also House of Commons Foreign Affairs Committee, Session 1983/4, 5th Report, 2681, and Cmnd 9447 (1985), and Foreign and Commonwealth Office statement to the House of Commons Foreign Affairs Committee on 5 June 2006, UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 760 ff.

²⁵³ See A. D. McNair, *International Law Opinions*, Cambridge, 1956, vol. I, pp. 299–300.

²⁵⁴ See e.g. Lindley, *Acquisition*, pp. 160–5 and above, p. 500.

²⁵⁵ See e.g. P. Beck, *Guardian*, 26 July 1982, p. 7.

The principle of self-determination as applicable to a recognised British non-self-governing territory has recently been much relied upon by the UK government,²⁵⁶ but something of a problem is posed by the very small size of the territory's population (some 1,800) although this may not be decisive.

It would appear that conquest formed the original basis of title, irrespective of the British employment of other principles. This, coupled with the widespread recognition by the international community, including the United Nations, of the status of the territory as a British Colony would appear to resolve the legal issues, although the matter is not uncontroversial.

'The common heritage of mankind'

The proclamation of certain areas as the common heritage of mankind has raised the question as to whether a new form of territorial regime has been, or is, in process of being created.²⁵⁷ In 1970, the UN General Assembly adopted a Declaration of Principles Governing the Seabed and Ocean Floor in which it was noted that the area in question and its resources were the common heritage of mankind. This was reiterated in articles 136 and 137 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea, in which it was provided that no sovereign or other rights would be recognised with regard to the area (except in the case of minerals recovered in accordance with the Convention) and that exploitation could only take place in accordance with the rules and structures established by the Convention.²⁵⁸ Article XI of the 1979 Moon Treaty emphasises that the moon and its natural resources are the common heritage of mankind, and thus incapable of national appropriation and subject to a particular regime of exploitation.²⁵⁹ As is noted in the next section, attempts were being made to establish a common heritage regime over the Antarctic. There are certain common characteristics relating to the concept. Like *res communis*,

²⁵⁶ See e.g. the Prime Minister, HC Deb., col. 946, 13 May 1982.

²⁵⁷ See e.g. K. Baslar, *The Concept of the Common Heritage of Mankind in International Law*, The Hague, 1998; Brownlie, *Principles*, chapter 12; A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, pp. 92 ff.; B. Larschan and B. C. Brennan, 'The Common Heritage of Mankind Principle in International Law', 21 *Columbia Journal of International Law*, 1983, p. 305; R. Wolfrum, 'The Principle of the Common Heritage of Mankind', 43 *ZaöRV*, 1983, p. 312; S. Gorove, 'The Concept of "Common Heritage of Mankind"', 9 *San Diego Law Review*, 1972, p. 390, and C. Joyner, 'Legal Implications of the Common Heritage of Mankind', 35 *ICLQ*, 1986, p. 190.

²⁵⁸ See further below, chapter 11, p. 628.

²⁵⁹ See further below, p. 548.

the areas in question are incapable of national appropriation. Sovereignty is not an applicable principle and the areas in question would not be 'owned', nor would any jurisdictional rights exist outside the framework of the appropriate common heritage regime institutional arrangements. However, while a *res communis* regime permits freedom of access, exploration and exploitation, a common heritage regime as envisaged in the examples noted above would strictly regulate exploration and exploitation, would establish management mechanisms and would employ the criterion of equity in distributing the benefits of such activity.

It is too early to predict the success or failure of this concept. The 1982 Law of the Sea Convention entered into force in 1994, while the Moon Treaty has the bare minimum number of ratifications and its exploitation provisions are not yet operative. As a legal concept within the framework of the specific treaties concerned, it provides an interesting contrast to traditional *jus communis* rules, although the extent of the management structures required to operate the regime may pose considerable problems.²⁶⁰

The polar regions²⁶¹

The Arctic region is of some strategic importance, constituting as it does a vast expanse of inhospitable territory between North America and Russia.

²⁶⁰ Questions have arisen as to whether the global climate could be regarded as part of the common heritage of mankind. However, international environmental treaties have not used such terminology, but have rather used the phrase 'common concern of mankind', which is weaker and more ambiguous: see e.g. the Convention on Biological Diversity, 1992. See A. Boyle, 'International Law and the Protection of the Global Atmosphere' in *International Law and Global Climate Change* (eds. D. Freestone and R. Churchill), London, 1991, chapter 1, and P. Birnie and A. Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002, p. 143. See also below, chapter 15.

²⁶¹ See e.g. D. R. Rothwell, *The Polar Regions and the Development of International Law*, Cambridge, 1996; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 448–50; T. W. Balch, 'The Arctic and Antarctic Regions and the Law of Nations', 4 AJIL, 1910, p. 265; G. Triggs, *International Law and Australian Sovereignty in Antarctica*, Sydney, 1986; R. D. Hayton, 'Polar Problems and International Law', 52 AJIL, 1958, p. 746, and M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1962, vol. II, pp. 1051–61. See also W. Lakhtine, 'Rights over the Arctic', 24 AJIL, 1930, p. 703; Mouton, 'The International Regime of the Polar Regions', 101 HR, 1960, p. 169; F. Auburn, *Antarctic Law and Politics*, Bloomington, 1982; *International Law for Antarctica* (eds. F. Francioni and T. Scovazzi), 2nd edn, The Hague, 1997; A. D. Watts, *International Law and the Antarctic Treaty System*, Cambridge, 1992; E. J. Sahurie, *The International Law of Antarctica*, 1992; C. Joyner, *Antarctica and the Law of the Sea*, The Hague, 1992; *The Antarctic Legal Regime* (eds. C. Joyner and S. Chopra), Dordrecht, 1988; *The Antarctic Environment and International Law* (eds. P. Sands, J. Verhoeven and M. Bruce), London, 1992, and E. Franckx, *Maritime Claims in the Arctic*, The Hague, 1993.

It consists to a large extent of ice packs beneath which submarines may operate.

Denmark possesses Greenland and its associated islands within the region,²⁶² while Norway has asserted sovereign rights over Spitzbergen and other islands. The Norwegian title is based on occupation and long exploitation of mineral resources and its sovereignty was recognised by nine nations in 1920, although the Soviet Union had protested.²⁶³

More controversial are the respective claims made by Canada²⁶⁴ and the former USSR.²⁶⁵ Use has been made of the concept of contiguity to assert claims over areas forming geographical units with those already occupied, in the form of the so-called sector principle. This is based on meridians of longitude as they converge at the North Pole and as they are placed on the coastlines of the particular nations, thus producing a series of triangular sectors with the coasts of the Arctic states as their baselines.

The other Arctic states of Norway, Finland, Denmark and the United States have abstained from such assertions. Accordingly, it is exceedingly doubtful whether the sector principle can be regarded as other than a political proposition.²⁶⁶ Part of the problem is that such a large part of this region consists of moving packs of ice. The former USSR made some claims to relatively immovable ice formations as being subject to its national sovereignty,²⁶⁷ but the overall opinion remains that these are to be treated as part of the high seas open to all.²⁶⁸

Occupation of the land areas of the Arctic region may be effected by states by relatively little activity in view of the decision in the *Eastern Greenland case*²⁶⁹ and the nature of the territory involved.

Claims have been made by seven nations (Argentina, Australia, Chile, France, New Zealand, Norway and the United Kingdom) to the Antarctic

²⁶² See G. H. Hackworth, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, DC, 1940, vol. I.

²⁶³ *Ibid.*, pp. 465 ff. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 499.

²⁶⁴ Hackworth, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 463. But note Canadian government statements denying that the sector principle applies to the ice: see e.g. 9 ILM, 1970, pp. 607, 613. See also I. Head, 'Canadian Claims to Territorial Sovereignty in the Arctic Regions', 9 *McGill Law Journal*, 1962–3, p. 200.

²⁶⁵ Hackworth, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 461. Such claims have been maintained by Russia: see e.g. <http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2007/09/070921-arctic-russia.html> and see below, chapter 11, p. 588.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 693.

²⁶⁷ See e.g. Lakhtine, 'Rights over the Arctic', p. 461.

²⁶⁸ See e.g. Balch, 'Arctic and Antarctic Regions', pp. 265–6.

²⁶⁹ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 46; 6 AD, p. 95.

region, which is an ice-covered landmass in the form of an island.²⁷⁰ Such claims have been based on a variety of grounds, ranging from mere discovery to the sector principle employed by the South American states, and most of these are of rather dubious quality. Significantly, the United States of America has refused to recognise any claims at all to Antarctica, and although the American Admiral Byrd discovered and claimed Marie Byrd Land for his country, the United States refrained from adopting the claim.²⁷¹ Several states have recognised the territorial aspirations of each other in the area, but one should note that the British, Chilean and Argentinian claims overlap.²⁷²

However, in 1959 the Antarctic Treaty was signed by all states concerned with territorial claims or scientific exploration in the region.²⁷³ Its major effect, apart from the demilitarisation of Antarctica, is to suspend, although not to eliminate, territorial claims during the life of the treaty. Article IV(2) declares that:

no acts or activities taking place while the present treaty is in force shall constitute a basis for asserting, supporting or denying a claim to territorial sovereignty in Antarctica or create any rights of sovereignty in Antarctica. No new claim or enlargement of an existing claim to territorial sovereignty in Antarctica shall be asserted while the present treaty is in force.

Since the treaty does not provide for termination, an ongoing regime has been created which, because of its inclusion of all interested parties, appears to have established an international regime binding on all.²⁷⁴ Subsequent meetings of the parties have resulted in a number of recommendations, including proposals for the protection of

²⁷⁰ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 450–3; Mouton, 'International Regime', and G. Triggs, 'Australian Sovereignty in Antarctica – Part I', 13 *Melbourne University Law Review*, 1981, p. 123, and Triggs, *International Law and Australian Sovereignty in Antarctica*. See also UKMIL, 54 BYIL, 1983, pp. 488 ff.

²⁷¹ See Hackworth, *Digest*, vol. I, p. 457. See also DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 107–11, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. II, pp. 250–4, 1254–6 and 1262.

²⁷² See e.g. Cmd 5900.

²⁷³ See *Handbook of the Antarctic Treaty System*, US Department of State, 9th edn, 2002, also available at www.state.gov/g/oes/rls/rpts/ant/.

²⁷⁴ Note that the Federal Fiscal Court of Germany stated in the *Antarctica Legal Status* case that Antarctica was not part of the sovereign territory of any state, 108 ILR, p. 654. See, as to the UK view that the British Antarctic Territory is the oldest territorial claim to a part of the continent, although most of it was counter-claimed by either Chile or Argentina, UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 603. Nevertheless, it was accepted that the effect of the Antarctic Treaty was to set aside disputes over territorial sovereignty, *ibid.*

flora and fauna in the region, and other environmental preservation measures.²⁷⁵

Of the current forty-three parties to the treaty, twenty-eight have consultative status. Full participation in the work of the consultative meetings of the parties is reserved to the original parties to the treaty and those contracting parties which demonstrate substantial scientific research activity in the area. Antarctic treaty consultative meetings take place annually.²⁷⁶

The issue of a mineral resources regime has been under discussion since 1979 by the consultative parties and a series of special meetings on the subject held.²⁷⁷ This resulted in the signing in June 1988 of the Convention on the Regulation of Antarctic Minerals Resource Activities.²⁷⁸ The Convention provided for three stages of mineral activity, being defined as prospecting, exploration and development. Four institutions were to be established, once the treaty came into force (following sixteen ratifications or accessions, including the US, the former USSR and claimant states). The Commission was to consist of the consultative parties, any other party to the Convention engaged in substantive and relevant research in the area and any other party sponsoring mineral resource activity. A Scientific, Technical and Environmental Advisory Committee consisting of all parties to the Convention was to be established, as were Regulatory Committees, in order to regulate exploration and development activity in a specific area. Such committees would consist of ten members of the Commission, including the relevant claimant and additional claimants up to a maximum of four, the US, the former USSR and representation of developing countries. A system for Special Meetings of Parties, consisting of all parties to the Convention, was also provided for. Several countries signed the Convention.²⁷⁹ However, opposition to the Convention began to grow. The signing of the 1988 Convention on mineral resource activities stimulated opposition and in resolution 43/83, adopted by the General Assembly that year, 'deep regret' was expressed that such a convention should have been signed despite earlier resolutions calling for a

²⁷⁵ See e.g. the 1980 Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources. See also M. Howard, 'The Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources: A Five Year Review', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 104.

²⁷⁶ The most recent being in New Delhi in 2007 and Kiev in 2008: see e.g. www.scar.org/Treaty/ATCM%20meeting%20list.

²⁷⁷ See e.g. *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 32834 and 21(9) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 45.

²⁷⁸ See e.g. C. Joyner, 'The Antarctic Minerals Negotiating Process', 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 888.

²⁷⁹ See e.g. the Antarctic Minerals Act 1989, which provided for a UK licensing system for exploration and exploitation activities in Antarctica.

moratorium on negotiations to create a minerals regime in the Antarctic. France and Australia proposed at the October 1989 meeting of the signatories of the Antarctic Treaty that all mining be banned in the area, which should be designated a global 'wilderness reserve'.²⁸⁰

At a meeting of the consultative parties to the Antarctic Treaty in April 1991 the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty was adopted, article 7 of which prohibited any activity relating to mineral resources other than scientific research. This prohibition is to continue unless there is in force a binding legal regime on Antarctic mineral resource activities that includes an agreed means of determining whether and, if so, under which conditions any such activities would be acceptable. A review conference with regard to the operation of the Protocol may be held after it has been in force for fifty years if so requested.²⁸¹ In addition, a Committee for Environmental Protection was established.²⁸² This effectively marked the end of the limited mining approach, which had led to the signing of the Convention on the Regulation of Antarctic Mineral Resource Activities. The Protocol came into force in 1998 and may be seen as establishing a comprehensive integrated environmental regime for the area.²⁸³

Leases and servitudes²⁸⁴

Various legal rights exercisable by states over the territory of other states, which fall short of absolute sovereignty, may exist. Such rights are attached to the land and so may be enforced even though the ownership of the particular territory subject to the rights has passed to another sovereign. They are in legal terminology formulated as rights *in rem*.

²⁸⁰ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 36989, 1989. ²⁸¹ Article 25.

²⁸² *Guardian*, 30 April 1991, p. 20. See also C. Redgwell, 'Environmental Protection in Antarctica: The 1991 Protocol', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 599.

²⁸³ See e.g. D. R. Rothwell, 'Polar Environmental Protection and International Law: The 1991 Antarctic Protocol', 11 EJIL, 2000, p. 591. Four of the annexes (on environmental impact assessment, conservation of flora and fauna, waste disposal and marine pollution) to the Protocol came into force in 1998 and the fifth (on the Antarctic protected area system) in 2002. A Malaysian initiative at the UN to consider making Antarctica a 'common heritage of mankind' appears to have foundered: see e.g. Redgwell, 'Environmental Protection', and General Assembly resolutions 38/77 and 39/152, and A/39/583.

²⁸⁴ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 670 ff.; H. Reid, *International Servitudes*, Chicago, 1932, and F. A. Vali, *Servitudes in International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1958. See also Parry, *Digest*, vol. IIB, 1967, pp. 373 ff., and article 12, Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978.

Leases of land rose into prominence in the nineteenth century as a way of obtaining control of usually strategic points without the necessity of actually annexing the territory. Leases were used extensively in the Far East, as for example Britain's rights over the New Territories amalgamated with Hong Kong,²⁸⁵ and sovereignty was regarded as having passed to the lessee for the duration of the lease, upon which event it would revert to the original sovereign who made the grant.

An exception to this usual construction of a lease in international law as limited to a defined period occurred with regard to the Panama Canal, with the strip of land through which it was constructed being leased to the United States in 1903 'in perpetuity'. However, by the 1977 Panama Canal Treaty, sovereignty over the Canal Zone was transferred to Panama. The United States had certain operating and defensive rights until the treaty ended in 1999.²⁸⁶

A servitude exists where the territory of one state is under a particular restriction in the interests of the territory of another state. Such limitations are bound to the land as rights *in rem* and thus restrict the sovereignty of the state concerned, even if there is a change in control of the relevant territory, for instance upon merger with another state or upon decolonisation.²⁸⁷

Examples of servitudes would include the right to use ports or rivers in, or a right of way across, the territory so bound, or alternatively an obligation not to fortify particular towns or areas in the territory.²⁸⁸

Servitudes may exist for the benefit of the international community or a large number of states. To give an example, in the *Aaland Islands* case in 1920, a Commission of Jurists appointed by the Council of the League of Nations declared that Finland since its independence in 1918 had succeeded to Russia's obligations under the 1856 treaty not to fortify the islands. And since Sweden was an interested state in that the islands are situated near Stockholm, it could enforce the obligation although not a party to the 1856 treaty. This was because the treaty provisions had established a special international regime with obligations enforceable

²⁸⁵ See 50 BFSP, 1860, p. 10 and 90 BFSP, 1898, p. 17. See now 23 ILM, 1984, pp. 1366 ff. for the UK–China agreement on Hong Kong. See also Cmnd 9543 (1985) and the 1985 Hong Kong Act, providing for the termination of British sovereignty and jurisdiction over the territory as from 1 July 1997.

²⁸⁶ See e.g. 72 AJIL, 1978, p. 225. This superseded treaties of 1901, 1903, 1936 and 1955 governing the Canal. See also A. Rubin, 'The Panama Canal Treaties', YBWA, 1981, p. 181.

²⁸⁷ See the *Right of Passage* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 6; 31 ILR, p. 23.

²⁸⁸ See e.g. J. B. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, p. 191.

by interested states and binding upon any state in possession of the islands.²⁸⁹ Further, the Tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen* noted that the traditional open fishing regime in the southern Red Sea together with the common use of the islands in the area by the populations of both coasts was capable of creating historic rights accruing to the two states in dispute in the form of an international servitude.²⁹⁰ The award in this case emphasised that the findings of sovereignty over various islands in the Red Sea entailed 'the perpetuation of the traditional fishing regime in the region'.²⁹¹

The situation of the creation of an international status by treaty, which is to be binding upon all and not merely upon the parties to the treaty, is a complex one and it is not always clear when it is to be presumed. However, rights attached to territory for the benefit of the world community were created with respect to the Suez and Panama Canals. Article 1 of the Constantinople Convention of 1888²⁹² declared that 'the Suez Maritime Canal shall always be free and open in time of war as in time of peace, to every vessel of commerce or of war without distinction of flag' and this international status was in no way affected by the Egyptian nationalisation of the Canal Company in 1956. Egypt stressed in 1957 that it was willing to respect and implement the terms of the Convention, although in fact it consistently denied use of the canal to Israeli ships and vessels bound for its shores or carrying its goods.²⁹³ The canal was reopened in 1975 following the disengagement agreement with Israel, after a gap of eight years.²⁹⁴ Under article V of the 1979 Peace Treaty between Israel and Egypt, it was provided that ships of Israel and cargoes destined for or coming from Israel were to enjoy 'the right of free passage through the Suez Canal... on the basis of the Constantinople Convention of 1888, applying to all nations'.

In the *Wimbledon* case,²⁹⁵ the Permanent Court of International Justice declared that the effect of article 380 of the Treaty of Versailles, 1919 maintaining that the Kiel Canal was to be open to all the ships of all countries at peace with Germany was to convert the canal from an internal to an international waterway 'intended to provide under treaty guarantee easier access to the Baltic for the benefit of all nations of the world'.

²⁸⁹ LNOJ, Sp. Supp. no. 3, 1920, pp. 3, 16–19. ²⁹⁰ 114 ILR, pp. 1, 40–1.

²⁹¹ *Ibid.*, p. 137. ²⁹² See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 582–7.

²⁹³ See Security Council Doc. S/3818, 51 AJIL, 1957, p. 673.

²⁹⁴ See DUSPIL, 1974, pp. 352–4 and 760.

²⁹⁵ PCIJ, Series A, No. 1, 1923, p. 24; 2 AD, p. 99. See generally Baxter, *Law of International Waterways*.

Some of the problems relating to the existence of servitudes have arisen by virtue of the *North Atlantic Fisheries* arbitration.²⁹⁶ This followed a treaty signed in 1818 between the United Kingdom and the United States, awarding the inhabitants of the latter country 'forever . . . the liberty to take fish of every kind' from the southern coast of Newfoundland. The argument arose as to Britain's capacity under the treaty to issue fishing regulations binding American nationals. The arbitration tribunal decided that the relevant provision of the treaty did not create a servitude, partly because such a concept was unknown by American and British statesmen at the relevant time (i.e. 1818). However, the terms of the award do leave open the possibility of the existence of servitudes, especially since the tribunal did draw a distinction between economic rights (as in the case) and a grant of sovereign rights which could amount to a servitude in international law.²⁹⁷

The law of outer space²⁹⁸

There were a variety of theories prior to the First World War with regard to the status of the airspace above states and territorial waters²⁹⁹ but the outbreak of that conflict, with its recognition of the security implications

²⁹⁶ 11 RIAA, p. 167 (1910). ²⁹⁷ See, as to landlocked states, below, chapter 11, p. 607.

²⁹⁸ See e.g. C. Q. Christol, *The Modern International Law of Outer Space*, New York, 1982, and Christol, *Space Law*, Deventer, 1991; *Space Law* (ed. P. S. Dempsey), Oxford, 2004; F. Lyall and P. B. Larsen, *Space Law*, Aldershot, 2007; J. E. S. Fawcett, *Outer Space*, Oxford, 1984; S. Gorove, 'International Space Law in Perspective', 181 HR, 1983, p. 349, and Gorove, *Developments in Space Law*, Dordrecht, 1991; M. Marcoff, *Traité de Droit International Public de l'Espace*, Fribourg, 1973, and Marcoff, 'Sources du Droit International de l'Espace', 168 HR, p. 9; N. Matte, *Aerospace Law*, Montreal, 1969; *Le Droit de l'Espace* (ed. J. Dutheil de la Rochère), Paris, 1988; P. M. Martin, *Droit International des Activités Spatiales*, Masson, 1992; B. Cheng, 'The 1967 Space Treaty', *Journal de Droit International*, 1968, p. 532, Cheng, 'The Moon Treaty', 33 *Current Legal Problems*, 1980, p. 213, Cheng, 'The Legal Status of Outer Space', *Journal of Space Law*, 1983, p. 89, Cheng, 'The UN and the Development of International Law Relating to Outer Space', 16 *Thesaurus Acroasium*, Thessaloniki, 1990, p. 49, and Cheng, *Studies in International Space Law*, Oxford, 1997. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, chapter 7; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1254; R. G. Steinhardt, 'Outer Space' in *United Nations Legal Order* (eds. O. Schachter and C. C. Joyner), Cambridge, 1995, vol. II, p. 753; *Manual on Space Law* (eds. N. Jasentulajana and R. Lee), New York, 4 vols., 1979; *Space Law – Basic Documents* (eds. K. H. Böckstiegel and M. Berkö), Dordrecht, 1991; *Outlook on Space Law* (eds. S. G. Lafferanderie and D. Crowther), The Hague, 1997; G. H. Reynolds and R. P. Merges, *Outer Space*, 2nd edn, Boulder, CO, 1997.

²⁹⁹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 650–1, and N. Matte, *Treatise on Air–Aeronautical Law*, Montreal, 1981, chapters 4 and 5.

of use of the air, changed this and the approach that then prevailed, with little dissension, was based upon the extension of state sovereignty upwards into airspace. This was acceptable both from the defence point of view and in the light of evolving state practice regulating flights over national territory.³⁰⁰ It was reflected in the 1919 Paris Convention for the Regulation of Aerial Navigation, which recognised the full sovereignty of states over the airspace above their land and territorial sea.³⁰¹ Accordingly, the international law rules protecting sovereignty of states apply to the airspace as they do to the land below. As the International Court noted in the *Nicaragua* case, 'The principle of respect for territorial sovereignty is also directly infringed by the unauthorised overflight of a state's territory by aircraft belonging to or under the control of the government of another state.'³⁰² The Court noted in the *Benin/Niger* case that 'a boundary represents the line of separation between areas of state sovereignty, not only on the earth's surface but also in the subsoil and in the superjacent column of air'.³⁰³

There is no right of innocent passage through the airspace of a state.³⁰⁴ Aircraft may only traverse the airspace of states with the agreement of those states, and where that has not been obtained an illegal intrusion will be involved which will justify interception, though not (save in very exceptional cases) actual attack.³⁰⁵ However, the principle of the complete sovereignty of the subjacent state is qualified not only by the various multi-lateral and bilateral conventions which permit airliners to cross and land in the territories of the contracting states under recognised conditions

³⁰⁰ Matte, *Treatise*, pp. 91–6.

³⁰¹ Article 1. Each party also undertook to accord in peacetime freedom of innocent passage to the private aircraft of other parties so long as they complied with the rules made by or under the authority of the Convention. Articles 5–10 provided that the nationality of aircraft would be based upon registration and that registration would take place in the state of which their owners were nationals. An International Commission for Air Navigation was established. See also the 1928 American Convention on Commercial Aviation.

³⁰² ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 128; 76 ILR, p. 1. ³⁰³ ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 142.

³⁰⁴ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 652. It should, however, be noted that articles 38 and 39 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provide for a right of transit passage through straits used for international navigation between one part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and another part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone for aircraft as well as ships. Note also that under article 53 of this Convention, aircraft have a right of overflight with regard to designated air routes above archipelagic waters.

³⁰⁵ See also *Pan Am Airways v. The Queen* (1981) 2 SCR 565; 90 ILR, p. 213, with regard to the exercise of sovereignty over the airspace above the high seas.

and in the light of the accepted regulations, but also by the development of the law of outer space.

Ever since the USSR launched the first earth satellite in 1957, space exploration has developed at an ever-increasing rate.³⁰⁶ Satellites now control communications and observation networks, while landings have been made on the moon and information-seeking space probes dispatched to survey planets like Venus and Saturn. The research material gathered upon such diverse matters as earth resources, ionospheric activities, solar radiation, cosmic rays and the general structure of space and planet formations has stimulated further efforts to understand the nature of space and the cosmos.³⁰⁷ This immense increase in available information has also led to the development of the law of outer space, formulating generally accepted principles to regulate the interests of the various states involved as well as taking into account the concern of the international community as a whole.

The definition and delimitation of outer space

It soon became apparent that the *usque ad coelum* rule, providing for state sovereignty over territorial airspace to an unrestricted extent, was not viable where space exploration was concerned. To obtain the individual consents of countries to the passage of satellites and other vehicles orbiting more than 100 miles above their surface would prove cumbersome in the extreme and in practice states have acquiesced in such traversing. This means that the sovereignty of states over their airspace is limited in height at most to the point where the airspace meets space itself. Precisely where this boundary lies is difficult to say and will depend upon technological and other factors, but figures between 50 and 100 miles have been put forward.³⁰⁸

As conventional aircraft are developed to attain greater heights, so states will wish to see their sovereignty extend to those heights and, as well as genuine uncertainty, this fear of surrendering what may prove to be in

³⁰⁶ Note the role played by the UN Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space established in 1958 and consisting currently of sixty-nine states. The Committee has a Legal Sub-Committee and a Scientific and Technical Sub-Committee: see, in particular, Christol, *Modern International Law*, pp. 13–20, and www.unoosa.org/oosa/COPUOS/copuos.html.

³⁰⁷ See e.g. Fawcett, *Outer Space*, chapter 7.

³⁰⁸ The UK has noted, for example, that, 'for practical purposes the limit [between airspace and outer space] is considered to be as high as any aircraft can fly', 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 520.

the future valuable sovereign rights has prevented any agreement on the delimitation of this particular frontier.³⁰⁹

The regime of outer space

Beyond the point separating air from space, states have agreed to apply the international law principles of *res communis*, so that no portion of outer space may be appropriated to the sovereignty of individual states. This was made clear in a number of General Assembly resolutions following the advent of the satellite era in the late 1950s. For instance, UN General Assembly resolution 1962 (XVII), adopted in 1963 and entitled the Declaration of Legal Principles Governing the Activities of States in the Exploration and Use of Outer Space, lays down a series of applicable legal principles which include the provisions that outer space and celestial bodies were free for exploration and use by all states on a basis of equality and in accordance with international law, and that outer space and celestial bodies were not subject to national appropriation by any means.³¹⁰ In addition, the Declaration on International Co-operation in the Exploration and Use of Outer Space adopted in resolution 51/126, 1996, called for further international co-operation, with particular attention being given to the benefit for and the interests of developing countries and countries with incipient space programmes stemming from such international co-operation conducted with countries with more advanced space capabilities.³¹¹ Such resolutions constituted in many cases and in the circumstances expressions of state practice and *opinio juris* and were thus part of customary law.³¹²

³⁰⁹ See generally Christol, *Modern International Law*, chapter 10, and see also e.g. UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 689. A variety of suggestions have been put forward regarding the method of delimitation, ranging from the properties of the atmosphere to the lowest possible orbit of satellites. They appear to fall within either a spatial or a functional category: see *ibid.*, and UN Doc. A/AC.105/C.2/7/Add.1, 21 January 1977. Some states have argued for a 110 km boundary: see e.g. USSR, 21(4) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 37; others feel it is premature to establish such a fixed delimitation, e.g. USA and UK, *ibid.* See also 216 HL Deb., col. 975, 1958–9, and D. Goedhuis, 'The Problems of the Frontiers of Outer Space and Airspace', 174 HR, 1982, p. 367.

³¹⁰ See also General Assembly resolutions 1721 (XVI) and 1884 (XVIII).

³¹¹ See also 'The Space Millennium: The Vienna Declaration on Space and Human Development' adopted by the Third United Nations Conference on the Exploration and Peaceful Uses of Outer Space (UNISPACE III), Vienna, 1999: see www.oosa.unvienna.org/unisp-3/.

³¹² See above, chapter 3, and B. Cheng, 'United Nations Resolutions on Outer Space: "Instant" International Customary Law?', 5 IJIL, 1965, p. 23.

The legal regime of outer space was clarified by the signature in 1967 of the Treaty on Principles Governing the Activities of States in the Exploration and Use of Outer Space, including the Moon and Other Celestial Bodies. This reiterates that outer space, including the moon and other celestial bodies, is not subject to national appropriation by any means and emphasises that the exploration and use of outer space must be carried out for the benefit of all countries. The Treaty does not establish as such a precise boundary between airspace and outer space but it provides the framework for the international law of outer space.³¹³ Article 4 provides that states parties to the Treaty agree:

not to place in orbit around the earth any objects carrying nuclear weapons or any other kinds of weapons of mass destruction, install such weapons on celestial bodies, or station such weapons in outer space in any other manner.

There are, however, disagreements as to the meaning of this provision.³¹⁴ The article bans only nuclear weapons and weapons of mass destruction from outer space, the celestial bodies and from orbit around the earth, but article 1 does emphasise that the exploration and use of outer space 'shall be carried out for the benefit and in the interests of all countries' and it has been argued that this can be interpreted to mean that any military activity in space contravenes the Treaty.³¹⁵

Under article 4, only the moon and other celestial bodies must be used exclusively for peaceful purposes, although the use of military personnel for scientific and other peaceful purposes is not prohibited. There are minimalist and maximalist interpretations as to how these provisions are to be understood. The former, for example, would argue that only aggressive military activity is banned, while the latter would prohibit all military behaviour.³¹⁶ Article 6 provides for international responsibility

³¹³ See e.g. Christol, *Modern International Law*, chapter 2. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 828.

³¹⁴ The issue became particularly controversial in the light of the US Strategic Defence Initiative ('Star Wars'), which aimed to develop a range of anti-satellite and anti-missile weapons based in space. The UN Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space considered the issue, although without the participation of the US, which objected to the matter being considered: see e.g. 21(6) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 18.

³¹⁵ See e.g. Marcoff, *Traité*, pp. 361 ff.

³¹⁶ See e.g. Christol, *Modern International Law*, pp. 25–6. See also Goedhuis, 'Legal Issues Involved in the Potential Military Uses of Space Stations' in *Liber Amicorum for Rt Hon. Richard Wilberforce* (eds. M. Bos and I. Brownlie), Oxford, 1987, p. 23, and Gorove, *Developments*, part VI.

for national activities in outer space, including the moon and other celestial bodies, whether such activities are carried on by governmental agencies or by non-governmental entities, and for assuring that national activities are carried out in conformity with the Treaty. The activities of non-governmental entities in outer space, including the moon and other celestial bodies, require authorisation and continuing supervision by the appropriate state party to the Treaty. When activities are carried on in outer space, including the moon and other celestial bodies, by an international organisation, responsibility for compliance with the Treaty is to be borne both by the international organisation and by the states parties to the Treaty participating in such organisation.³¹⁷

Under article 8, states retain jurisdiction and control over personnel and vehicles launched by them into space and under article 7 they remain responsible for any damage caused to other parties to the Treaty by their space objects.³¹⁸

This aspect of space law was further developed by the Convention on International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects signed in 1972, article XII of which provides for the payment of compensation in accordance with international law and the principles of justice and equity for any damage caused by space objects. Article II provides for absolute liability to pay such compensation for damage caused by a space object on the surface of the earth or to aircraft in flight, whereas article III provides for fault liability for damage caused elsewhere or to persons or property on board a space object.³¹⁹ This Convention was invoked by Canada in 1979 following the damage allegedly caused by Soviet Cosmos 954.³²⁰ As

³¹⁷ See e.g. B. Cheng, 'Article VI of the 1967 Treaty Revisited', 1 *Journal of Space Law*, 1998, p. 7.

³¹⁸ See further Cheng, *Studies in Space Law*, chapters 17 and 18.

³¹⁹ See e.g. the Exchange of Notes between the UK and Chinese governments with regard to liability for damages arising during the launch phase of the Asiasat Satellite in 1990 in accordance with *inter alia* the 1967 and 1972 Conventions, UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 689.

³²⁰ The claim was for \$6,401,174.70. See 18 ILM, 1979, pp. 899 ff. See also Christol, *Modern International Law*, pp. 59 ff., and Christol, 'International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 346. B. Cheng has drawn attention to difficulties concerning the notion of damage here as including environmental damage: see International Law Association, Report of the Sixty-ninth Conference, London, 2000, p. 581. Note also that under article 3 of the 1967 Treaty, all states parties to the Treaty agree to carry on activities 'in accordance with international law', which clearly includes rules relating to state responsibility. See also Gorove, *Developments*, part V, and B. Hurwitz, *State Liability for Outer Space Activities in Accordance with the 1972 Convention on International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects*, Dordrecht, 1992.

a reinforcement to this evolving system of state responsibility, the Convention on the Registration of Objects Launched into Outer Space was opened for signature in 1975, coming into force in 1976. This laid down a series of stipulations for the registration of information regarding space objects, such as, for example, their purpose, location and parameters, with the United Nations Secretary-General.³²¹ In 1993, the UN General Assembly adopted Principles Relevant to the Use of Nuclear Power Sources in Outer Space.³²² Under these Principles, the launching state is, prior to the launch, to ensure that a thorough and comprehensive safety assessment is conducted and made publicly available. Where a space object appears to malfunction with a risk of re-entry of radioactive materials to the earth, the launching state is to inform states concerned and the UN Secretary-General and respond promptly to requests for further information or consultations sought by other states. Principle 8 provides that states shall bear international responsibility for national activities involving the use of nuclear power sources in outer space, whether such activities are carried out by governmental agencies or by non-governmental agencies. Principle 9 provides that each state which launches or procures the launching of a space object and each state from whose territory or facility a space object is launched shall be internationally liable for damage caused by such space object or its component parts.

The Agreement on the Rescue of Astronauts, the Return of Astronauts and the Return of Objects Launched into Outer Space was signed in 1968 and sets out the legal framework for the provision of emergency assistance to astronauts. It provides for immediate notification of the launching authority or, if that is not immediately possible, a public announcement regarding space personnel in distress as well as the immediate provision of assistance. It also covers search and rescue operations as well as a guarantee of prompt return. The Convention also provides for recovery of space objects.³²³

³²¹ The International Law Association adopted in 1994 the 'Buenos Aires International Instrument on the Protection of the Environment from Damage Caused by Space Debris'. This provides that each state or international organisation party to the Instrument that launches or procures the launching of a space object is internationally liable for damage arising therefrom to another state, persons or objects, or international organisation party to the Instrument as a consequence of space debris produced by any such object: see Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference at Buenos Aires, London, 1994, p. 7.

³²² Resolution 47/68.

³²³ The UK Outer Space Act 1986, for example, provides a framework for private sector space enterprises by creating a licensing system for outer space activities and by establishing a system for indemnification for damage suffered by third parties or elsewhere. The Act also

In 1979, the Agreement Governing the Activities of States on the Moon and other Celestial Bodies was adopted.³²⁴ This provides for the demilitarisation of the moon and other celestial bodies, although military personnel may be used for peaceful purposes, and reiterates the principle established in the 1967 Outer Space Treaty. Under article IV, the exploration and the use of the moon shall be the province of all mankind and should be carried out for the benefit of all. Article XI emphasises that the moon and its natural resources are the common heritage of mankind and are not subject to national appropriation by any means. That important article emphasises that no private rights of ownership over the moon or any part of it or its natural resources in place may be created, although all states parties have the right to exploration and use of the moon. The states parties also agreed under article XI(5) and (7) to establish an international regime to govern the exploitation of the resources of the moon, when this becomes feasible.³²⁵ The main purposes of the international regime to be established are to include:

- a. the orderly and safe development of the natural resources of the moon;
- b. the rational management of those resources;
- c. the expansion of opportunities in the use of those resources; and
- d. an equitable sharing by all states parties in the benefits derived from those resources, whereby the interests and needs of the developing countries, as well as the efforts of those countries which have

establishes a statutory register of the launch of space objects. Note also that the US has signed a number of agreements with other states providing for assistance abroad in the event of an emergency landing of the space shuttle. These agreements also provide for US liability to compensate for damage and loss caused as a result of an emergency landing, in accordance with the 1972 Treaty: see Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, p. 2269. In 1988 an Agreement on Space Stations was signed between the US, the governments of the member states of the European Space Agency, Japan and Canada. This provides *inter alia* for registration of flight elements as space objects under the Registration Convention of 1975, each state retaining jurisdiction over the elements it so registers and personnel in or on the space station who are its nationals. There is also an interesting provision (article 22) permitting the US to exercise criminal jurisdiction over misconduct committed by a non-US national in or on a non-US element of the manned base or attached to the manned base, which endangers the safety of the manned base or the crew members thereon. Before proceeding to trial with such a prosecution, the US shall consult with the partner state whose nationality the alleged perpetrator holds, and shall either have received the agreement of that partner to the prosecution or failed to have received an assurance that the partner state intends to prosecute.

³²⁴ This came into force in July 1984: see C. Q. Christol, 'The Moon Treaty Enters into Force', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 163.

³²⁵ See e.g. Cheng, 'Moon Treaty', pp. 231–2, and Christol, *Modern International Law*, chapters 7 and 8.

contributed either directly or indirectly to the exploration of the moon, shall be given special consideration.

Several points are worth noting. First, the proposed international regime is only to be established when exploitation becomes feasible. Secondly, it appears that until the regime is set up, there is a moratorium on exploitation, although not on 'exploration and use', as recognised by articles XI(4) and VI(2). This would permit the collection of samples and their removal from the moon for scientific purposes. Thirdly, it is to be noted that private ownership rights of minerals or natural resources not in place are permissible under the Treaty.³²⁶

*Telecommunications*³²⁷

Arguably the most useful application of space exploitation techniques has been the creation of telecommunications networks. This has revolutionised communications and has an enormous educational as well as entertainment potential.³²⁸

The legal framework for the use of space in the field of telecommunications is provided by the various INTELSAT (international telecommunications satellites) agreements which enable the member states of the International Telecommunications Union to help develop and establish the system, although much of the work is in fact carried out by American corporations, particularly COMSAT. In 1971 the communist countries established their own network of telecommunications satellites, called INTER-SPUTNIK. The international regime for the exploitation of the orbit/spectrum resource³²⁹ has built upon the 1967 Treaty, the 1973 Telecommunications Convention and Protocol and various International Telecommunication Union Radio Regulations. Regulation of the radio spectrum is undertaken at the World Administrative Radio Conferences and by the principal organs of the ITU.

³²⁶ See below, chapter 11, p. 628, regarding the 'common heritage' regime envisaged for the deep seabed under the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea.

³²⁷ See e.g. A. Matteesco-Matté, *Les Télécommunications par Satellites*, Paris, 1982; M. L. Smith, *International Regulation of Satellite Communications*, Dordrecht, 1990, and J. M. Smits, *Legal Aspects of Implementing International Telecommunications Links*, Dordrecht, 1992.

³²⁸ See e.g. the use by India of US satellites to beam educational television programmes to many thousands of isolated settlements that would otherwise not have been reached, DUSPIL, 1976, pp. 427–8.

³²⁹ See Christol, *Space Law*, chapter 11.

However, there are a number of problems associated with these ventures, ranging from the allocation of radio wave frequencies to the dangers inherent in direct broadcasting via satellites to willing and unwilling states alike. Questions about the control of material broadcast by such satellites and the protection of minority cultures from 'swamping' have yet to be answered, but are being discussed in various UN organs, for instance UNESCO and the Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space.³³⁰

Two principles are relevant in this context: freedom of information, which is a right enshrined in many international instruments,³³¹ and state sovereignty. A number of attempts have been made to reconcile the two.

In 1972, UNESCO adopted a Declaration of Guiding Principles on the Use of Satellite Broadcasting, in which it was provided that all states had the right to decide on the content of educational programmes broadcast to their own peoples, while article IX declared that prior agreement was required for direct satellite broadcasting to the population of countries other than the country of origin of the transmission. Within the UN support for the consent principle was clear, but there were calls for a proper regulatory regime, in addition.³³²

In 1983, the General Assembly adopted resolution 37/92 entitled 'Principles Governing the Use by States of Artificial Earth Satellites for International Direct Television Broadcasting.' This provides that a state intending to establish or authorise the establishment of a direct television broadcasting satellite service must first notify the proposed receiving state or states and then consult with them. A service may only be established after this and on the basis of agreements and/or arrangements in conformity with the relevant instruments of the International Telecommunications Union. However, the value of these principles is significantly reduced in the light of the fact that nearly all the Western states voted against the resolution.³³³

ITU regulations call for technical co-ordination between the sending and receiving states as to frequency and orbital positioning before any

³³⁰ See Christol, *Modern International Law*, chapter 12, and N. Matte, 'Aerospace Law: Telecommunications Satellites', 166 HR, 1980, p. 119. See also the study requested by the 1982 Conference, A/AC.107/341, and the European Convention on Transfrontier Television, 1988 and EEC Directive 89/552 on the Pursuit of Television Broadcasting Activities. See also Gorove, *Developments*, part II, chapter 5.

³³¹ See e.g. article 19, International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966; article 10, Universal Declaration of Human Rights, 1948, and article 10, European Convention on Human Rights, 1950.

³³² See e.g. N. M. Matte, *Space Activities and Emerging International Law*, London, 1985, p. 438. See also A/8771 (1972).

³³³ These included France, West Germany, the UK, USA and Japan.

direct broadcasting by satellite can be carried out and thus do not affect regulation of the conduct of the broadcast activity as such, although the two elements are clearly connected.³³⁴

The question of remote sensing has also been under consideration for many years by several bodies, including the UN Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space. Remote sensing refers to the detection and analysis of the earth's resources by sensors carried in aircraft and spacecraft and covers, for example, meteorological sensing, ocean observation, military surveillance and land observation. It clearly has tremendous potential, but the question of the uses of the information received is highly controversial.³³⁵ In 1986, the General Assembly adopted fifteen principles relating to remote sensing.³³⁶ These range from the statement that such activity is to be carried out for the benefit and in the interests of all countries, taking into particular account the needs of developing countries, to the provision that sensing states should promote international co-operation and environmental protection on earth. There is, however, no requirement of prior consent from states that are being sensed,³³⁷ although consultations in order to enhance participation are called for there. One key issue relates to control over the dissemination of information gathered by satellite. Some have called for the creation of an equitable regime for the sharing of information³³⁸ and there is concern over the question of access to data about states by those, and other, states. The USSR and France, for example, jointly proposed the concept of the inalienable right of states to dispose of their natural resources and of information concerning those resources,³³⁹ while the US in particular pointed to the practical problems this would cause and the possible infringement of freedom of information. The UN Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space

³³⁴ See Matte, *Space Activities and Emerging International Law*, pp. 453 ff. See also J. Chapman and G. I. Warren, 'Direct Broadcasting Satellites: The ITU, UN and the Real World', 4 *Annals of Air and Space Law*, 1979, p. 413.

³³⁵ See e.g. Christol, *Modern International Law*, chapter 13, and 21(4) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 32. See also the Study on Remote Sensing, A/AC.105/339 and Add.1, 1985, and Gorove, *Developments*, part VII.

³³⁶ General Assembly resolution 41/65.

³³⁷ Note that the 1967 Outer Space Treaty provides for freedom of exploration and use, although arguments based *inter alia* on permanent sovereignty over natural resources and exclusive sovereignty over airspace have been put forward: see e.g. A/AC.105/171, Annex IV (1976) and A/AC.105/C.2/SR.220 (1984).

³³⁸ See e.g. A. E. Gotlieb, 'The Impact of Technology on the Development of Contemporary International Law', 170 HR, p. 115.

³³⁹ A/AC.105/C.2/L.99 (1974).

has been considering the problem for many years and general agreement has proved elusive.³⁴⁰ The Principles on Remote Sensing provide that the sensed state shall have access to the primary and processed data produced upon a non-discriminatory basis and on reasonable cost terms. States conducting such remote sensing are to bear international responsibility for their activities.

The increase in the use of satellites for all of the above purposes has put pressure upon the geostationary orbit. This is the orbit 22,300 miles directly above the equator, where satellites circle at the same speed as the earth rotates. It is the only orbit capable of providing continuous contact with ground stations via a single satellite. The orbit is thus a finite resource.³⁴¹ However, in 1976, Brazil, Colombia, the Congo, Ecuador, Indonesia, Kenya, Uganda and Zaire signed the Bogotá Declaration under which they stated that 'the segments of geostationary synchronous orbit are part of the territory over which equatorial states exercise their sovereignty'.³⁴²

Other states have vigorously protested against this and it therefore cannot be taken as other than an assertion and a bargaining counter.³⁴³ Nevertheless, the increase in satellite launches and the limited nature of the geostationary orbit facility call for urgent action to produce an acceptable series of principles governing its use.³⁴⁴

Suggestions for further reading

- A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995
- B. Cheng, *Studies in International Space Law*, Oxford, 1997
- J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006
- J. Crawford, 'State Practice and International Law in Relation to Secession', 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 85
- R. Y. Jennings, *The Acquisition of Territory in International Law*, Manchester, 1963
- F. Lyall and P. B. Larsen, *Space Law*, Aldershot, 2007
- M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa*, Oxford, 1986

³⁴⁰ See e.g. A/AC.105/320, Annex IV (1983).

³⁴¹ See e.g. article 33 of the 1973 International Telecommunications Convention, and Christol, *Modern International Law*, pp. 451 ff. See also the Study on the Feasibility of Closer Spacing of Satellites in the Geostationary Orbit, A/AC.105/340 (1985) and A/AC105/404 (1988). See also Gorove, *Developments*, part II, chapters 3 and 4.

³⁴² Gorove, *Developments*, pp. 891–5. See also ITU Doc. WARC-155 (1977) 81-E.

³⁴³ See e.g. DUSPIL, 1979, p. 1187–8.

³⁴⁴ Note also the Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment, 2001 and the draft protocol on matters specific to space property.

The law of the sea

The seas have historically performed two important functions: first, as a medium of communication, and secondly as a vast reservoir of resources, both living and non-living. Both of these functions have stimulated the development of legal rules.¹ The fundamental principle governing the law of the sea is that ‘the land dominates the sea’ so that the land territorial situation constitutes the starting point for the determination of the maritime rights of a coastal state.²

The seas were at one time thought capable of subjection to national sovereignties. The Portuguese in particular in the seventeenth century proclaimed huge tracts of the high seas as part of their territorial domain, but these claims stimulated a response by Grotius who elaborated the doctrine of the open seas, whereby the oceans as *res communis*

¹ See e.g. *UN Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982* (eds. M. Nordquist *et al.*), The Hague, 6 vols., 1985–2003; D. Anderson, *Modern Law of the Sea: Selected Essays*, The Hague, 2007; *Law of the Sea, Environmental Law and Settlement of Disputes* (eds. T. M. Ndiaye and R. Wolfrum), The Hague, 2007; *Law of the Sea: Progress and Prospects* (eds. D. Freestone, R. Barnes and D. Ong), Oxford, 2006; L. B. Sohn and J. E. Noyes, *Cases and Materials on the Law of the Sea*, Ardsley, 2004; E. D. Brown, *The International Law of the Sea*, Aldershot, 2 vols., 1994; *Oppenheim’s International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, chapter 6; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 1139; T. Treves, ‘Codification du Droit International et Pratique des États dans le Droit de la Mer’, 223 HR, 1990 IV, p. 9; R. R. Churchill and A. V. Lowe, *The Law of the Sea*, 3rd edn, Manchester, 1999; R. J. Dupuy and D. Vignes, *Traité du Nouveau Droit de la Mer*, Brussels, 1985; *Le Nouveau Droit International de la Mer* (eds. D. Bardonnnet and M. Virally), Paris, 1983; D. P. O’Connell, *The International Law of the Sea*, Oxford, 2 vols., 1982–4; *New Directions in the Law of the Sea*, Dobbs Ferry, vols. I–VI (eds. R. Churchill, M. Nordquist and S. H. Lay), 1973–7; *ibid.*, VII–XI (eds. M. Nordquist and K. Simmons), 1980–1, and S. Oda, *The Law of the Sea in Our Time*, Leiden, 2 vols., 1977. See also the series *Limits in the Seas*, published by the Geographer of the US State Department.

² See e.g. *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 97; *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 51 and *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 113 and 126.

were to be accessible to all nations but incapable of appropriation.³ This view prevailed, partly because it accorded with the interests of the North European states, which demanded freedom of the seas for the purposes of exploration and expanding commercial intercourse with the East.

The freedom of the high seas rapidly became a basic principle of international law, but not all the seas were so characterised. It was permissible for a coastal state to appropriate a maritime belt around its coastline as territorial waters, or territorial sea, and treat it as an indivisible part of its domain. Much of the history of the law of the sea has centred on the extent of the territorial sea or the precise location of the dividing line between it and the high seas and other recognised zones. The original stipulation linked the width of the territorial sea to the ability of the coastal state to dominate it by military means from the confines of its own shore. But the present century has witnessed continual pressure by states to enlarge the maritime belt and thus subject more of the oceans to their exclusive jurisdiction.

Beyond the territorial sea, other jurisdictional zones have been in process of development. Coastal states may now exercise particular jurisdictional functions in the contiguous zone, and the trend of international law today is moving rapidly in favour of even larger zones in which the coastal state may enjoy certain rights to the exclusion of other nations, such as fishery zones, continental shelves and, more recently, exclusive economic zones. However, in each case whether a state is entitled to a territorial sea, continental shelf or exclusive economic zone is a question to be decided by the law of the sea.⁴

This gradual shift in the law of the sea towards the enlargement of the territorial sea (the accepted maximum limit is now a width of 12 nautical miles in contrast to 3 nautical miles some forty years ago), coupled with the continual assertion of jurisdictional rights over portions of what were regarded as high seas, reflects a basic change in emphasis in the attitude of states to the sea.

The predominance of the concept of the freedom of the high seas has been modified by the realisation of resources present in the seas and seabed beyond the territorial seas. Parallel with the developing tendency to assert ever greater claims over the high seas, however, has been the move towards

³ *Mare Liberum*, 1609. See also O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 9 ff. The closed seas approach was put by e.g. J. Selden, *Mare Clausum*, 1635.

⁴ *El Salvador/Honduras (Nicaragua Intervening)*, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 126; 97 ILR, p. 214.

proclaiming a 'common heritage of mankind' regime over the seabed of the high seas. The law relating to the seas, therefore, has been in a state of flux for several decades as the conflicting principles have manifested themselves.

A series of conferences have been held, which led to the four 1958 Conventions on the Law of the Sea and then to the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea.⁵ The 1958 Convention on the High Seas was stated in its preamble to be 'generally declaratory of established principles of international law', while the other three 1958 instruments can be generally accepted as containing both reiterations of existing rules and new rules.

The pressures leading to the Law of the Sea Conference, which lasted between 1974 and 1982 and involved a very wide range of states and international organisations, included a variety of economic, political and strategic factors. Many Third World states wished to develop the exclusive economic zone idea, by which coastal states would have extensive rights over a 200-mile zone beyond the territorial sea, and were keen to establish international control over the deep seabed, so as to prevent the technologically advanced states from being able to extract minerals from this vital and vast source freely and without political constraint. Western states were desirous of protecting their navigation routes by opposing any weakening of the freedom of passage through international straits particularly, and wished to protect their economic interests through free exploitation of the resources of the high seas and the deep seabed. Other states and groups of states sought protection of their particular interests.⁶ Examples here would include the landlocked and geographically disadvantaged states, archipelagic states and coastal states. The effect of this kaleidoscopic range of interests was very marked and led to the 'package deal' concept of the final draft. According to this approach, for example, the Third World accepted passage through straits and enhanced continental shelf rights beyond the 200-mile limit from the coasts in return for the internationalisation of deep sea mining.⁷

The 1982 Convention contains 320 articles and 9 Annexes. It was adopted by 130 votes to 4, with 17 abstentions. The Convention entered

⁵ The 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone came into force in 1964; the 1958 Convention on the High Seas came into force in 1962; the 1958 Convention on Fishing and Conservation of Living Resources came into force in 1966 and the 1958 Convention on the Continental Shelf came into force in 1964.

⁶ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 15 ff.

⁷ See e.g. H. Caminos and M. R. Molitor, 'Progressive Development of International Law and the Package Deal', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 871.

into force on 16 November 1994, twelve months after the required 60 ratifications. In order primarily to meet Western concerns with regard to the International Seabed Area (Part XI of the Convention), an Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the 1982 Convention was adopted on 29 July 1994.⁸

Many of the provisions in the 1982 Convention repeat principles enshrined in the earlier instruments and others have since become customary rules, but many new rules were proposed. Accordingly, a complicated series of relationships between the various states exists in this field, based on customary rules and treaty rules.⁹ All states are *prima facie* bound by the accepted customary rules, while only the parties to the five treaties involved will be bound by the new rules contained therein, and since one must envisage some states not adhering to the 1982 Conventions, the 1958 rules will continue to be of importance.¹⁰ During the twelve-year period between the signing of the Convention and its coming into force, the influence of its provisions was clear in the process of law creation by state practice.¹¹

The territorial sea

*Internal waters*¹²

Internal waters are deemed to be such parts of the seas as are not either the high seas or relevant zones or the territorial sea, and are accordingly classed as appertaining to the land territory of the coastal state. Internal waters, whether harbours, lakes or rivers, are such waters as are to be found on the landward side of the baselines from which the width of the territorial and other zones is measured,¹³ and are assimilated with the territory of

⁸ See further below, p. 632.

⁹ See the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 39; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 68; the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (UK v. Iceland)* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 1; 55 ILR, p. 238 and the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, 1978; 54 ILR, p. 6. See also above, chapter 3, p. 77.

¹⁰ Note that by article 311(1) of the 1982 Convention, the provisions of this Convention will prevail as between the states parties over the 1958 Conventions.

¹¹ See e.g. J. R. Stevenson and B. H. Oxman, 'The Future of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 488.

¹² See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 5; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 9; V. D. Degan, 'Internal Waters', Netherlands YIL, 1986, p. 1 and Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 3.

¹³ Article 5(1) of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and article 8(1) of the 1982 Convention. Note the exception in the latter provision with regard to archipelagic states, below, p. 565. See also *Regina v. Farnquist* (1981) 54 CCC (2d) 417; 94 ILR, p. 238.

the state. They differ from the territorial sea primarily in that there does not exist any right of innocent passage from which the shipping of other states may benefit. There is an exception to this rule where the straight baselines enclose as internal waters what had been territorial waters.¹⁴

In general, a coastal state may exercise its jurisdiction over foreign ships within its internal waters to enforce its laws, although the judicial authorities of the flag state (i.e. the state whose flag the particular ship flies) may also act where crimes have occurred on board ship. This concurrent jurisdiction may be seen in two cases.

In *R v. Anderson*,¹⁵ in 1868, the Court of Criminal Appeal in the UK declared that an American national who had committed manslaughter on board a British vessel in French internal waters was subject to the jurisdiction of the British courts, even though he was also within the sovereignty of French justice (and American justice by reason of his nationality), and thus could be correctly convicted under English law. The US Supreme Court held in *Wildenhus'* case¹⁶ that the American courts had jurisdiction to try a crew member of a Belgian vessel for the murder of another Belgian national when the ship was docked in the port of Jersey City in New York.¹⁷

A merchant ship in a foreign port or in foreign internal waters is automatically subject to the local jurisdiction (unless there is an express agreement to the contrary), although where purely disciplinary issues related to the ship's crew are involved, which do not concern the maintenance of peace within the territory of the coastal state, then such matters would by courtesy be left to the authorities of the flag state to regulate.¹⁸ Although some writers have pointed to theoretical differences between the common law and French approaches, in practice the same fundamental proposition applies.¹⁹

¹⁴ Article 5(2) of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and article 8(2) of the 1982 Convention. See below, p. 559.

¹⁵ 1 Cox's Criminal Cases 198.

¹⁶ 120 US 1 (1887). See also *Armament Dieppe SA v. US* 399 F.2d 794 (1968).

¹⁷ See the Madrid incident, where US officials asserted the right to interview a potential defector from a Soviet ship in New Orleans, 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 622.

¹⁸ See e.g. *NNB v. Ocean Trade Company* 87 ILR, p. 96, where the Court of Appeal of The Hague held that a coastal state had jurisdiction over a foreign vessel where the vessel was within the territory of the coastal state and a dispute arose affecting not only the internal order of the ship but also the legal order of the coastal state concerned. The dispute concerned a strike on board ship taken on the advice of the International Transport Workers' Federation.

¹⁹ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 65 ff. See also J. L. Lenoir, 'Criminal Jurisdiction over Foreign Merchant Ships', 10 *Tulane Law Review*, 1935, p. 13. See, with regard to the right of access to ports and other internal waters, A. V. Lowe, 'The Right of

However, a completely different situation operates where the foreign vessel involved is a warship. In such cases, the authorisation of the captain or of the flag state is necessary before the coastal state may exercise its jurisdiction over the ship and its crew. This is due to the status of the warship as a direct arm of the sovereign of the flag state.²⁰

*Baselines*²¹

The width of the territorial sea is defined from the low-water mark around the coasts of the state. This is the traditional principle under customary international law and was reiterated in article 3 of the Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone in 1958 and article 5 of the 1982 Convention, and the low-water line along the coast is defined 'as marked on large-scale charts officially recognised by the coastal state'.²²

In the majority of cases, it will not be very difficult to locate the low-water line which is to act as the baseline for measuring the width of the territorial sea.²³ By virtue of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and the 1982 Law of the Sea Convention, the low-water line of a low-tide elevation²⁴ may now be used as a baseline for measuring the breadth of the territorial sea if it is situated wholly or partly within the the territorial sea

Entry into Maritime Ports in International Law', 14 *San Diego Law Review*, 1977, p. 597, and O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, chapter 22. See also the Dangerous Vessels Act 1985.

²⁰ See *The Schooner Exchange v. McFaddon* 7 Cranch 116 (1812). See also 930 HC Deb., col. 450, Written Answers, 29 April 1977.

²¹ See e.g. W. M. Reisman and G. S. Westerman, *Straight Baselines in International Maritime Boundary Delimitation*, New York, 1992; J. A. Roach and R. W. Smith, *United States Responses to Excessive Maritime Claims*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 1996, and L. Sohn, 'Baseline Considerations' in *International Maritime Boundaries* (eds. J. I. Charney and L. M. Alexander), Dordrecht, 1993, vol. I, p. 153.

²² See *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 97 and *Eritrea/Yemen (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation)*, 119 ILR, pp. 417, 458. See also Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 2; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 5; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 607, and M. Mendelson, 'The Curious Case of *Qatar v. Bahrain* in the International Court of Justice', 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 183.

²³ See the *Dubai/Sharjah Border Award* 91 ILR, pp. 543, 660–3, where the Arbitral Tribunal took into account the outermost permanent harbour works of the two states as part of the coast for the purpose of drawing the baselines.

²⁴ See article 11(1), Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958 and article 13(1), Law of the Sea Convention, 1982. A low-tide elevation is a naturally formed area of land which is surrounded by and above water at low tide, but submerged at high tide. See e.g. G. Marston, 'Low-Tide Elevations and Straight Baselines', 46 BYIL, 1972–3, p. 405, and D. Bowett, 'Islands, Rocks, Reefs and Low-Tide Elevations in Maritime Boundary Delimitations' in Charney and Alexander, *International Maritime Boundaries*, vol. I, p. 131.

measured from the mainland or an island. However, a low-tide elevation wholly situated beyond the territorial sea will generate no territorial sea of its own.²⁵ When a low-tide elevation is situated in the overlapping area of the territorial sea of two states, both are in principle entitled to use this as part of the relevant low-water line in measuring their respective territorial sea.²⁶ However, the International Court has taken the view that low-tide elevations may not be regarded as part of the territory of the state concerned and thus cannot be fully assimilated with islands.²⁷ A low-tide elevation with a lighthouse or similar installation built upon it may be used for the purpose of drawing a straight baseline.²⁸

Sometimes, however, the geography of the state's coasts will be such as to cause certain problems: for instance, where the coastline is deeply indented or there are numerous islands running parallel to the coasts, or where there exist bays cutting into the coastlines. Special rules have evolved to deal with this issue, which is of importance to coastal states, particularly where foreign vessels regularly fish close to the limits of the territorial sea. A more rational method of drawing baselines might have the effect of enclosing larger areas of the sea within the state's internal waters, and thus extend the boundaries of the territorial sea further than the traditional method might envisage.

This point was raised in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case,²⁹ before the International Court of Justice. The case concerned a Norwegian decree delimiting its territorial sea along some 1,000 miles of its coastline. However, instead of measuring the territorial sea from the low-water line, the Norwegians constructed a series of straight baselines linking the outermost parts of the land running along the skjaergaard (or fringe of islands and rocks) which parallels the Norwegian coastline. This had the effect of enclosing within its territorial limits parts of what would normally have been the high seas if the traditional method had been utilised. As a result, certain disputes involving British fishing boats arose, and the United

²⁵ Article 13(2) of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982. Further, low-tide elevations situated within 12 miles of another such elevation but beyond the territorial sea of the state may not themselves be used for the determination of the breadth of the territorial sea, the so-called 'leap-frogging method', *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 102. See also *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 141, but see *Eritrea/Yemen*, 114 ILR, pp. 1, 138.

²⁶ *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 101.

²⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 40, 102 and *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 141.

²⁸ See article 7(4) of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982. See also article 47(4) with regard to archipelagic baselines.

²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86.

Kingdom challenged the legality of the Norwegian method of baselines under international law. The Court held that it was the outer line of the skjaergaard that was relevant in establishing the baselines, and not the low-water line of the mainland. This was dictated by geographic realities. The Court noted that the normal method of drawing baselines that are parallel to the coast (the *tracé parallèle*) was not applicable in this case because it would necessitate complex geometrical constructions in view of the extreme indentations of the coastline and the existence of the series of islands fringing the coasts.³⁰

Since the usual methods did not apply, and taking into account the principle that the territorial sea must follow the general direction of the coasts, the concept of straight baselines drawn from the outer rocks could be considered.³¹ The Court also made the point that the Norwegian system had been applied consistently over many years and had met no objections from other states, and that the UK had not protested until many years after it had first been introduced.³² In other words, the method of straight baselines operated by Norway:

had been consolidated by a constant and sufficiently long practice, in the face of which the attitude of governments bears witness to the fact that they did not consider it to be contrary to international law.³³

Thus, although noting that Norwegian rights had been established through actual practice coupled with acquiescence, the Court regarded the straight baseline system itself as a valid principle of international law in view of the special geographic conditions of the area. The Court provided criteria for determining the acceptability of any such delimitations. The drawing of the baselines had not to depart from the general direction of the coast, in view of the close dependence of the territorial sea upon the land domain; the baselines had to be drawn so that the sea area lying within them had to be sufficiently closely linked to the land domain to be subject to the regime of internal waters, and it was permissible to consider

³⁰ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 128; 18 ILR, p. 91. Note also the Court's mention of the *courbe tangente* method of drawing arcs of circles from points along the low-water line, *ibid*.

³¹ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 129; 18 ILR, p. 92. Other states had already used such a system: see e.g. H. Waldock, 'The Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries Case', 28 BYIL, 1951, pp. 114, 148. See also I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, pp. 176 ff.

³² ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 138; 18 ILR, p. 101. Cf. Judge McNair, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 171–80; 18 ILR, p. 123.

³³ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 139; 18 ILR, p. 102.

in the process 'certain economic interests peculiar to a region, the reality and importance of which are evidenced by long usage'.³⁴

These principles emerging from the *Fisheries* case were accepted by states as part of international law within a comparatively short period.

Article 4 of the Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958 declared that the straight baseline system could be used in cases of indented coastlines or where there existed a skjaergaard, provided that the general direction of the coast was followed and that there were sufficiently close links between the sea areas within the lines and the land domain to be subject to the regime of internal waters. In addition, particular regional economic interests of long standing may be considered where necessary.³⁵

A number of states now use the system, including, it should be mentioned, the United Kingdom as regards areas on the west coast of Scotland.³⁶ However, there is evidence that, perhaps in view of the broad criteria laid down, many states have used this system in circumstances that are not strictly justifiable in law.³⁷ However, the Court made it clear in *Qatar v. Bahrain* that

the method of straight baselines, which is an exception to the normal rules for the determination of baselines, may only be applied if a number of conditions are met. This method must be applied restrictively. Such conditions are primarily that either the coastline is deeply indented and cut into, or that there is a fringe of islands along the coast in its immediate vicinity.³⁸

Further, the Court emphasised that the fact that a state considers itself a multiple-island state or a *de facto* archipelago does not allow it to

³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 133; 18 ILR, p. 95.

³⁵ See also article 7 of the 1982 Convention. Note that straight baselines may not be drawn to and from low-tide elevations, unless lighthouses or similar installations which are permanently above sea level have been built on them: see article 4(3), 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and article 7(4), 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea. See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 100–1 and 102.

³⁶ Territorial Waters Order in Council, 1964, article 3, s. 1, 1965, Part III, s. 2, p. 6452A. See also the Territorial Sea (Limits) Order 1989 regarding the Straits of Dover. See generally, as regards state practice, Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 38–41, who note that some fifty-five to sixty-five states have used straight baselines, and M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, vol. IV, pp. 21–35.

³⁷ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 39. See also the objection of the European Union to the use by Iran and Thailand of straight baselines along practically their entire coastlines, UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, pp. 540–2, and US objections to the use of straight baselines by Thailand, DUSPIL, 2000, p. 703.

³⁸ ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 40, 103.

deviate from the normal rules for the determination of baselines unless the relevant conditions are met.³⁹

Where the result of the straight baseline method is to enclose as internal waters areas previously regarded as part of the territorial sea or high seas, a right of innocent passage shall be deemed to exist in such waters by virtue of article 5(2) of the 1958 Convention.⁴⁰

*Bays*⁴¹

Problems also arise as to the approach to be adopted with regard to bays, in particular whether the waters of wide-mouthed bays ought to be treated as other areas of the sea adjacent to the coast, so that the baseline of the territorial sea would be measured from the low-water mark of the coast of the bay, or whether the device of the straight baseline could be used to 'close off' the mouth of the bay of any width and the territorial limit measured from that line.

It was long accepted that a straight closing line could be used across the mouths of bays, but there was considerable disagreement as to the permitted width of the bay beyond which this would not operate.⁴² The point was settled in article 7 of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea. This declared that:

if the distance between the low-water marks of the natural entrance points of a bay does not exceed twenty-four miles, a closing line may be drawn between these two low-water marks, and the waters enclosed thereby shall be considered as internal waters,

otherwise a straight baseline of 24 miles may be drawn.⁴³

This provision, however, does not apply to historic bays. These are bays the waters of which are treated by the coastal state as internal in view of historic rights supported by general acquiescence rather than any specific

³⁹ *Ibid.* The Court rejected Bahrain's claim that certain maritime features east of its main islands constituted a fringe of islands: *ibid.*

⁴⁰ See also article 8(2) of the 1982 Convention.

⁴¹ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 28; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 41 ff., and O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 209. See also G. Westerman, *The Juridical Bay*, Oxford, 1987.

⁴² See e.g. the *North Atlantic Coast Fisheries* case, 11 RIAA, p. 167 (1910) and the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86, to the effect that no general rules of international law had been uniformly accepted.

⁴³ See also article 10 of the 1982 Convention.

principle of international law.⁴⁴ A number of states have claimed historic bays: for example, Canada with respect to Hudson Bay (although the US has opposed this)⁴⁵ and certain American states as regards the Gulf of Fonseca.⁴⁶ The question of this Gulf came before the International Court in the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras; Nicaragua intervening)*.⁴⁷ The Court noted that the states concerned and commentators were agreed that the Gulf was a historic bay, but this was defined in terms of the particular historical situation of that Gulf, especially as it constituted a pluri-state bay, for which there were no agreed and codified general rules of the kind well established for single-state bays.⁴⁸ In the light of the particular historical circumstances and taking particular note of the 1917 decision, the Court found that the Gulf, beyond a long-accepted 3-mile maritime belt for the coastal states, constituted historic waters subject to the co-ownership or a condominium of the three coastal states.⁴⁹ The Court continued by noting that the vessels of other states would enjoy a right of innocent passage in the waters beyond the coastal belt in order to ensure access to any one of the three coastal states.⁵⁰ Having decided that the three states enjoyed a condominium within the Gulf, the Court concluded that there was a tripartite presence at the closing line of the Gulf.⁵¹

The United States Supreme Court has taken the view that where waters are outside the statutory limits for inland waters, the exercise of sovereignty required to establish title to a historic bay amounted to the exclusion of all foreign vessels and navigation from the area claimed. The continuous authority exercised in this fashion had to be coupled with the acquiescence of states. This was the approach in the *US v. State*

⁴⁴ See the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 74; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 67.

⁴⁵ See Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. IV, pp. 250–7.

⁴⁶ See *El Salvador v. Nicaragua* 11 AJIL, 1917, p. 674.

⁴⁷ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 351; 97 ILR, p. 266.

⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 589; 97 ILR, p. 505. But cf. the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Oda, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 745; 97 ILR, p. 661.

⁴⁹ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 601; 97 ILR, p. 517. See also generally C. Symmons, *Historic Waters in the Law of the Sea: A Modern Re-appraisal*, The Hague, 2007.

⁵⁰ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 605; 97 ILR, p. 521.

⁵¹ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 608–9; 97 ILR, pp. 524–5. See also M. N. Shaw, 'Case Concerning the Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (*El Salvador/Honduras: Nicaragua Intervening*)', Judgment of 11 September 1992', 42 ICLQ, 1993, p. 929, and A. Gioia, 'The Law of Multinational Bays and the Case of the Gulf of Fonseca', Netherlands YIL, 1993, p. 81.

of *Alaska* case⁵² concerning the waters of Cook Inlet. The Supreme Court held that Alaska had not satisfied the terms and that the Inlet had not been regarded as a historic bay under Soviet, American or Alaskan sovereignty. Accordingly, it was the federal state and not Alaska which was entitled to the subsurface of Cook Inlet.⁵³

In response to the Libyan claim to the Gulf of Sirte (Sidra) as a historic bay and the consequent drawing of a closing line of nearly 300 miles in length in 1973, several states immediately protested, including the US and the states of the European Community.⁵⁴ The US in a note to Libya in 1974 referred to 'the international law standards of past open, notorious and effective exercise of authority, and the acquiescence of foreign nations'⁵⁵ and has on several occasions sent naval and air forces into the Gulf in order to maintain its opposition to the Libyan claim and to assert that the waters of the Gulf constitute high seas.⁵⁶ Little evidence appears, in fact, to support the Libyan contention.

*Islands*⁵⁷

As far as islands are concerned, the general provisions noted above regarding the measurement of the territorial sea apply. Islands are defined in the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea as consisting of 'a naturally-formed area of land, surrounded by water, which is above water at high tide',⁵⁸ and they can generate a territorial sea, contiguous zone, exclusive

⁵² 422 US 184 (1975). See also L. J. Bouchez, *The Regime of Bays in International Law*, Leiden, 1963, and the *Tunisia-Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 74; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 67.

⁵³ See also *United States v. California* 381 US 139 (1965); *United States v. Louisiana (Louisiana Boundary Case)* 394 US 11 (1969); *United States v. Maine (Rhode Island and New York Boundary Case)* 471 US 375 (1985) and *Alabama and Mississippi Boundary Case, United States v. Louisiana* 470 US 93 (1985).

⁵⁴ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 45, and UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, pp. 579-80. See also F. Francioni, 'The Gulf of Sidra Incident (*United States v. Libya*) and International Law', 5 *Italian Yearbook of International Law*, 1980-1, p. 85.

⁵⁵ See 68 AJIL, 1974, p. 510. See also Cumulative DUSPIL 1981-8, Washington, 1994, vol. II, p. 1810.

⁵⁶ See e.g. UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, pp. 581-2.

⁵⁷ See e.g. H. W. Jayewardene, *The Regime of Islands in International Law*, Dordrecht, 1990; D. W. Bowett, *The Legal Regime of Islands in International Law*, New York, 1979; C. Symmons, *The Maritime Zone of Islands in International Law*, The Hague, 1979; J. Simonides, 'The Legal Status of Islands in the New Law of the Sea', 65 *Revue de Droit International*, 1987, p. 161, and R. O'Keefe, 'Palm-Fringed Benefits: Island Dependencies in the New Law of the Sea', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 408.

⁵⁸ Article 10(1). See also article 121(1) of the 1982 Convention.

economic zone and continental shelf where relevant.⁵⁹ Where there exists a chain of islands which are less than 24 miles apart, a continuous band of territorial sea may be generated.⁶⁰ However, article 121(3) of the 1982 Convention provides that 'rocks which cannot sustain human habitation or economic life of their own shall have no exclusive economic zone or continental shelf'.⁶¹ Article 121(3) begs a series of questions, such as the precise dividing line between rocks and islands and as to the actual meaning of an 'economic life of their own', and a number of states have made controversial claims.⁶² Whether this provision over and above its appearance in the Law of the Sea Convention is a rule of customary law is unclear.⁶³

*Archipelagic states*⁶⁴

Problems have arisen as a result of efforts by states comprising a number of islands to draw straight baselines around the outer limits of their islands,

⁵⁹ Article 121(2) of the 1982 Convention. See also the *Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 37, 64–5; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 432–3. Article 10(2) of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea referred only to the territorial sea of islands.

⁶⁰ See *Eritrea/Yemen (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation)*, 119 ILR, pp. 417, 463.

⁶¹ See the *Jan Mayen* report, 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 797, 803; 62 ILR, pp. 108, 114, and the Declaration by Judge Evensen in the *Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 37, 84–5; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 452–3. Note, as regards Rockall and the conflicting UK, Irish, Danish and Icelandic views, Symmons, *Maritime Zone*, pp. 117–18, 126; E. D. Brown, 'Rockall and the Limits of National Jurisdiction of the United Kingdom', 2 *Marine Policy*, 1978, pp. 181–211 and 275–303, and O'Keefe, 'Palm-Fringed Benefits'. See also 878 HC Deb., col. 82, Written Answers, and *The Times*, 8 May 1985, p. 6 (Danish claims) and the *Guardian*, 1 May 1985, p. 30 (Icelandic claims). UK sovereignty over the uninhabited island of Rockall was proclaimed in 1955 and confirmed by the Island of Rockall Act 1972, UKMIL, 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 589. The UK Minister of State declared that the 12-mile territorial sea around Rockall was consistent with the terms of the 1982 Convention and that there was no reason to believe that this was not accepted by the international community, apart from the Republic of Ireland, UKMIL, 60 BYIL, 1989, p. 666. The UK claim to a 200-mile fishing zone around Rockall made in the Fishery Limits Act 1976 was withdrawn in 1997 consequent upon accession to the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 and the 12-mile territorial sea confirmed: see UKMIL, 68 BYIL, 1997, pp. 599–600 and UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 601.

⁶² See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 163–4, and J. I. Charney, 'Rocks that Cannot Sustain Human Habitation', 93 AJIL, 1999, p. 873.

⁶³ Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 164.

⁶⁴ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 8; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 6; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 6; Bowett, *Legal Regime*, chapter 4; C. F. Amerasinghe, 'The Problem of Archipelagos in the International Law of the Sea', 23 ICLQ, 1974, p. 539, and D. P. O'Connell, 'Mid-Ocean Archipelagos in International Law', 45 BYIL, 1971, p. 1.

thus 'boxing in' the whole territory. Indonesia in particular has resorted to this method, against the protests of a number of states since it tends to reduce previously considered areas of the high seas extensively used as shipping lanes to the sovereignty of the archipelago state concerned.⁶⁵

There has been a great deal of controversy as to which international law principles apply in the case of archipelagos and the subject was not expressly dealt with in the 1958 Geneva Convention.⁶⁶ Article 46(a) defines an archipelagic state as 'a state constituted wholly by one or more archipelagos and may include other islands', while article 46(b) defines archipelagos as 'a group of islands, including parts of islands, interconnecting waters and other natural features which are so closely interrelated that such islands, waters and other natural features form an intrinsic geographical, economic and political entity, or which historically have been regarded as such'. This raises questions as to whether states that objectively fall within the definition are therefore automatically to be regarded as archipelagic states. The list of states that have not declared that they constitute archipelagic states, although they would appear to conform with the definition, would include the UK and Japan.⁶⁷ Bahrain contended in *Qatar v. Bahrain* that it constituted a 'de facto archipelago or multiple island state' and that it could declare itself an archipelagic state under the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982, enabling it to take advantage of the straight baselines rule contained in article 47. The Court, however, noted that such a claim did not fall within Bahrain's formal submissions and thus it did not need to take a position on the issue.⁶⁸ Article 47 provides that an archipelagic state may draw straight archipelagic baselines joining the outermost points of the outermost islands and drying reefs of the archipelago, which would then serve as the relevant baselines for other purposes. There are a number of conditions before this may be done, however, and article 47 provides as follows:

⁶⁵ O'Connell, 'Mid-Ocean Archipelagos', pp. 23–4, 45–7 and 51, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. IV, p. 284. See also the Indonesian Act No. 4 of 18 February 1960 Concerning Indonesian Waters, extracted in Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, p. 98; the Philippines Act to Define the Baselines of the Territorial Sea of the Philippines, Act No. 3046 of 17 June 1961, and the Philippines Declaration with respect to the 1982 Convention, *ibid.*, pp. 100–1 (with objections from the USSR and Australia, *ibid.*, pp. 101–2). See, as to the US objection to the Philippines Declaration, Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, p. 1066, and to claims relating to the Faroes, Galapagos, Portugal and Sudan, Roach and Smith, *United States Responses*, pp. 112 ff.

⁶⁶ But see, as regards 'coastal archipelagos', article 4 of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea.

⁶⁷ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 121.

⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 2001, paras. 181–3.

1. An archipelagic state may draw straight archipelagic baselines joining the outermost points of the outermost islands and drying reefs of the archipelago provided that within such baselines are included the main islands and in areas in which the ratio of the area of the water to the area of the land, including atolls, is between 1 to 1 and 9 to 1.
2. The length of such baselines shall not exceed 100 nautical miles, except that up to 3 per cent of the total number of baselines enclosing any archipelago may exceed that length, up to a maximum length of 125 nautical miles.
3. The drawing of such baselines shall not depart to any appreciable extent from the general configuration of the archipelago.
4. Such baselines shall not be drawn from low-tide elevations, unless light-houses or similar installations which are permanently above sea level have been built on them or where a low-tide elevation is situated wholly or partly at a distance not exceeding the breadth of the territorial sea from the nearest island.
5. The system of such baselines shall not be applied by an archipelagic state in such a manner as to cut off from the high seas or the exclusive economic zone the territorial sea of another state.
6. If a part of the archipelagic waters of an archipelagic state lies between two parts of an immediately adjacent neighbouring state, existing rights and all other legitimate interests which the latter state has traditionally exercised in such waters and all rights stipulated by agreement between those states shall continue and be respected.
7. For the purpose of computing the ratio of water to land under paragraph 1, land areas may include waters lying within the fringing reefs of islands and atolls, including that part of a steep-sided oceanic plateau which is enclosed or nearly enclosed by a chain of limestone islands and drying reefs lying on the perimeter of the plateau.
8. The baselines drawn in accordance with this article shall be shown on charts of a scale or scales adequate for ascertaining their position. Alternatively, lists of geographic co-ordinates of points, specifying the geodetic datum, may be substituted.
9. The archipelagic states shall give due publicity to such charts or lists of geographical co-ordinates and shall deposit a copy of each such chart or list with the Secretary-General of the United Nations.

All the waters within such baselines are archipelagic waters⁶⁹ over which the state has sovereignty,⁷⁰ but existing agreements, traditional fishing

⁶⁹ Article 50 provides that within its archipelagic waters, the archipelagic state may draw closing lines for the delimitation of internal waters.

⁷⁰ Article 49.

rights and existing submarine cables must be respected.⁷¹ In addition, ships of all states shall enjoy the rights of innocent passage through archipelagic waters⁷² and all the ships and aircraft are to enjoy a right of archipelagic sea lanes passage through such lanes and air routes designated by the archipelagic state for 'continuous and expeditious passage'.⁷³

In response to a reported closure in 1988 of the Straits of Sunda and Lombok by Indonesia, the US stressed that the archipelagic provisions of the 1982 Convention reflected customary international law and that those straits were subject to the regime of archipelagic sea lanes passage. Accordingly, it was pointed out that any interference with such passage would violate international law.⁷⁴

*The width of the territorial sea*⁷⁵

There has historically been considerable disagreement as to how far the territorial sea may extend from the baselines. Originally, the 'cannon-shot' rule defined the width required in terms of the range of shore-based artillery, but at the turn of the nineteenth century, this was transmuted into the 3-mile rule. This was especially supported by the United States and the United Kingdom, and any detraction had to be justified by virtue of historic rights and general acquiescence as, for example, the Scandinavian claim to 4 miles.⁷⁶

However, the issue was much confused by the claims of many coastal states to exercise certain jurisdictional rights for particular purposes: for example, fisheries, customs and immigration controls. It was not until after the First World War that a clear distinction was made between claims to enlarge the width of the territorial sea and claims over particular zones.

Recently the 3-mile rule has been discarded as a rule of general application to be superseded by contending assertions. The 1958 Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea did not include an article on the subject because of disagreements among the states, while the 1960 Geneva Conference failed to accept a United States–Canadian proposal for a

⁷¹ Article 51. ⁷² Article 52.

⁷³ Article 53. For recent state practice, see Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 125 ff.

⁷⁴ 83 AJIL, 1989, pp. 559–61. See also Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, p. 2060.

⁷⁵ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 43; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 71 ff., and O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 4. See also Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 611.

⁷⁶ See e.g. H. S. K. Kent, 'Historical Origins of the Three-mile Limit', 48 AJIL, 1954, p. 537, and *The Anna* (1805) 165 ER 809. See also *US v. Kessler* 1 Baldwin's C C Rep. 15 (1829).

6-mile territorial sea coupled with an exclusive fisheries zone for a further 6 miles by only one vote.⁷⁷

Article 3 of the 1982 Convention, however, notes that all states have the right to establish the breadth of the territorial sea up to a limit not exceeding 12 nautical miles from the baselines. This clearly accords with the evolving practice of states.⁷⁸ The UK adopted a 12-mile limit in the Territorial Sea Act 1987, for instance, as did the US by virtue of Proclamation No. 5928 in December 1988.⁷⁹

*The juridical nature of the territorial sea*⁸⁰

The territorial sea appertains to the territorial sovereignty of the coastal state and thus belongs to it automatically. For example, all newly independent states (with a coast) come to independence with an entitlement to a territorial sea.⁸¹ There have been a number of theories as to the precise legal character of the territorial sea of the coastal state, ranging from treating the territorial sea as part of the *res communis*, but subject to certain rights exercisable by the coastal state, to regarding the territorial sea as part of the coastal state's territorial domain subject to a right of innocent passage by foreign vessels.⁸² Nevertheless, it cannot be disputed that the coastal state enjoys sovereign rights over its maritime belt and extensive jurisdictional control, having regard to the relevant rules of international law. The fundamental restriction upon the sovereignty of the coastal state is the right of other nations to innocent passage through the territorial sea, and this distinguishes the territorial sea from the internal waters of the state, which are fully within the unrestricted jurisdiction of the coastal nation.

⁷⁷ See O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 163–4.

⁷⁸ The notice issued by the Hydrographic Department of the Royal Navy on 1 January 2008 shows that 156 states or territories claim a 12-mile territorial sea, with 16 states or territories claiming less than this and only 7 states claiming more than 12 miles: see www.ukho.gov.uk/content/amdAttachments/2008/annual_nms/12.pdf. A table of National Maritime Claims issued by the UN shows that, as of 24 October 2007, 141 states claimed a territorial sea of 12 miles or under, with 8 states claiming a larger territorial sea: see A/56/58 and www.un.org/Depts/los/LEGISLATIONANDTREATIES/PDFFILES/.

⁷⁹ As to delimitation of the territorial sea, see below, p. 591.

⁸⁰ See Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 6; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 3. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 186 ff., and Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 4.

⁸¹ *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 234.

⁸² O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 60–7.

Articles 1 and 2 of the Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958⁸³ provide that the coastal state's sovereignty extends over its territorial sea and to the airspace and seabed and subsoil thereof, subject to the provisions of the Convention and of international law. The territorial sea forms an undeniable part of the land territory to which it is bound, so that a cession of land will automatically include any band of territorial waters.⁸⁴

The coastal state may, if it so desires, exclude foreign nationals and vessels from fishing within its territorial sea and (subject to agreements to the contrary) from coastal trading (known as cabotage), and reserve these activities for its own citizens.

Similarly the coastal state has extensive powers of control relating to, amongst others, security and customs matters. It should be noted, however, that how far a state chooses to exercise the jurisdiction and sovereignty to which it may lay claim under the principles of international law will depend upon the terms of its own municipal legislation, and some states will not wish to take advantage of the full extent of the powers permitted them within the international legal system.⁸⁵

The right of innocent passage

The right of foreign merchant ships (as distinct from warships) to pass unhindered through the territorial sea of a coast has long been an accepted principle in customary international law, the sovereignty of the coast state notwithstanding. However, the precise extent of the doctrine is blurred and open to contrary interpretation, particularly with respect to the requirement that the passage must be 'innocent'.⁸⁶ Article 17 of the 1982 Convention lays down the following principle: 'ships of all states, whether coastal or land-locked, enjoy the right of innocent passage through the territorial sea'.

The doctrine was elaborated in article 14 of the Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958, which emphasised that the coastal state must not

⁸³ See also article 2 of the 1982 Convention.

⁸⁴ See the *Grisbadarna* case, 11 RIAA, p. 147 (1909) and the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93. See also Judge McNair, *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 160; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 113.

⁸⁵ See also *R v. Keyn* (1876) 2 Ex.D. 63 and the consequential Territorial Waters Jurisdiction Act 1878.

⁸⁶ See Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 53 ff.; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 82 ff., and O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 7. See also Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 615.

hamper innocent passage and must publicise any dangers to navigation in the territorial sea of which it is aware. Passage is defined as navigation through the territorial sea for the purpose of crossing that sea without entering internal waters or of proceeding to or from that sea without entering internal waters or of proceeding to or from internal waters. It may include temporary stoppages, but only if they are incidental to ordinary navigation or necessitated by distress or *force majeure*.⁸⁷

The coastal state may not impose charges for such passage unless they are in payment for specific services,⁸⁸ and ships engaged in passage are required to comply with the coastal state's regulations covering, for example, navigation in so far as they are consistent with international law.⁸⁹

Passage ceases to be innocent under article 14(4) of the 1958 Convention where it is 'prejudicial to the peace, good order or security of the coastal state' and in the case of foreign fishing vessels when they do not observe such laws and regulations as the coastal state may make and publish to prevent these ships from fishing in the territorial sea. In addition, submarines must navigate on the surface and show their flag.

Where passage is not innocent, the coastal state may take steps to prevent it in its territorial sea and, where ships are proceeding to internal waters, it may act to forestall any breach of the conditions to which admission of such ships to internal waters is subject. Coastal states have the power temporarily to suspend innocent passage of foreign vessels where it is essential for security reasons, provided such suspension has been published and provided it does not cover international straits.

Article 19(2) of the 1982 Convention has developed the notion of innocent passage contained in article 14(4) of the 1958 Convention by the provision of examples of prejudicial passage such as the threat or use of force; weapons practice; spying; propaganda; breach of customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations; wilful and serious pollution; fishing; research or survey activities and interference with coastal communications or other facilities. In addition, a wide-ranging clause includes 'any activity not having a direct bearing on passage'. This would appear to have altered the burden of proof from the coastal state to the other party with regard to innocent passage, as well as being somewhat difficult to define. By virtue of article 24 of the 1982 Convention, coastal states must not hamper the

⁸⁷ See article 18 of the 1982 Convention. Passage includes crossing the territorial sea in order to call at roadsteads or port facilities outside internal waters: article 18(1) and see the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 12, 111; 76 ILR, p. 1.

⁸⁸ Article 26 of the 1982 Convention. ⁸⁹ See article 21(4) of the 1982 Convention.

innocent passage of foreign ships, either by imposing requirements upon them which would have the practical effect of denying or impairing the right or by discrimination. Article 17 of the Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958 provided that foreign ships exercising the right of innocent passage were to comply with the laws and regulations enacted by the coastal state, in particular those relating to transport and navigation. This was developed in article 21(1) of the 1982 Convention, which expressly provided that the coastal state could adopt laws and regulations concerning innocent passage with regard to:

- (a) the safety of navigation and the regulation of maritime traffic;
- (b) the protection of navigational aids and facilities and other facilities or installations;
- (c) the protection of cables and pipelines;
- (d) the conservation of the living resources of the sea;
- (e) the prevention of infringement of the fisheries laws and regulations of the coastal state;
- (f) the preservation of the environment of the coastal state and the prevention, reduction and control of pollution thereof;
- (g) marine scientific research and hydrographic surveys;
- (h) the prevention of infringement of the customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary laws and regulations of the coastal state.

Breach of such laws and regulations will render the offender liable to prosecution, but will not make the passage non-innocent as such, unless article 19 has been infringed.⁹⁰

One major controversy of considerable importance revolves around the issue of whether the passage of warships in peacetime is or is not innocent.⁹¹ The question was further complicated by the omission of an article on the problem in the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea, and the discussion of innocent passage in a series of articles headed 'Rules applicable to all ships'. This has led some writers to assert that this includes warships by inference, but other authorities maintain that such an important issue could not be resolved purely by omission and inference, especially in view of the reservations by many states to the Convention rejecting the principle of innocent passage for warships and in the light

⁹⁰ Under article 22 of the 1982 Convention, the coastal state may establish designated sea lanes and traffic separation schemes in its territorial sea. See UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 688 for details of traffic separation schemes around the UK.

⁹¹ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 274–97. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 618.

of comments in the various preparatory materials to the 1958 Geneva Convention.⁹²

It was primarily the Western states, with their preponderant naval power, that historically maintained the existence of a right of innocent passage for warships, to the opposition of the then communist and Third World nations. However, having regard to the rapid growth in their naval capacity and the ending of the Cold War, Soviet attitudes underwent a change.⁹³

In September 1989, the US and the USSR issued a joint 'Uniform Interpretation of the Rules of International Law Governing Innocent Passage'.⁹⁴ This reaffirmed that the relevant rules of international law were stated in the 1982 Convention. It then provided that:

[a]ll ships, including warships, regardless of cargo, armament or means of propulsion, enjoy the right of innocent passage through the territorial sea in accordance with international law, for which neither prior notification nor authorisation is required.

The statement noted that where a ship in passage through the territorial sea was not engaged in any of the activities laid down in article 19(2), it was 'in innocent passage' since that provision was exhaustive. Ships in passage were under an obligation to comply with the laws and regulations of the coastal state adopted in conformity with articles 21, 22, 23 and 25 of the 1982 Convention, provided such laws and regulations did not have the effect of denying or impairing the exercise of the right of innocent passage.

This important statement underlines the view that the list of activities laid down in article 19(2) is exhaustive so that a ship passing through the territorial sea not engaging in any of these activities is in innocent passage. It also lends considerable weight to the view that warships have indeed

⁹² O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 290–2. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 188–9.

⁹³ See also Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 54–6. The issue was left open at the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea and does not therefore appear in the 1982 Convention. Note, however, that Western and communist states both proposed including a reference to warships in early sessions of the Conference: see UNCLOS III, Official Records, vol. III, pp. 183, 203, 192 and 196. See also article 29(2) of the 1975 Informal Single Negotiating Text. The right of warships to innocent passage was maintained by the US following an incident during which four US warships sailed through Soviet territorial waters off the Crimean coast: see *The Times*, 19 March 1986, p. 5.

⁹⁴ See 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 239.

a right of innocent passage through the territorial sea and one that does not necessitate prior notification or authorisation.⁹⁵

*Jurisdiction over foreign ships*⁹⁶

Where foreign ships are in passage through the territorial sea, the coastal state may only exercise its criminal jurisdiction as regards the arrest of any person or the investigation of any matter connected with a crime committed on board ship in defined situations. These are enumerated in article 27(1) of the 1982 Convention, reaffirming article 19(1) of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea, as follows:

(a) if the consequences of the crime extend to the coastal state; or (b) if the crime is of a kind likely to disturb the peace of the country or the good order of the territorial sea; or (c) if the assistance of the local authorities has been requested by the master of the ship or by a diplomatic agent or consular officer of the country of the flag state; or (d) if such measures are necessary for the suppression of illicit traffic in narcotic drugs or psychotropic substances.⁹⁷

However, if the ship is passing through the territorial sea having left the internal waters of the coastal state, then the coastal state may act in any manner prescribed by its laws as regards arrest or investigation on board ship and is not restricted by the terms of article 27(1). But the authorities of the coastal state cannot act where the crime was committed before the ship entered the territorial sea, providing the ship is not entering or has not entered internal waters.

Under article 28 of the 1982 Convention, the coastal state should not stop or divert a foreign ship passing through its territorial sea for the purpose of exercising civil jurisdiction in relation to a person on board ship, nor levy execution against or arrest the ship, unless obligations are involved which were assumed by the ship itself in the course of, or for the

⁹⁵ See also Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, pp. 1844 ff., and UKMIL, 65 BYIL, 1994, pp. 642–7. See also Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, p. 1854 with regard to the claim by some states that the passage of nuclear-powered ships or ships carrying nuclear substances through territorial waters requires prior authorisation or prior consent. See also UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 632–3 with regard to UK views on claims concerning prior authorisation or consent with regard to the passage of ships carrying hazardous wastes.

⁹⁶ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapters 23 and 24. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 620, and Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 62. Note that these rules are applicable to foreign ships and government commercial ships.

⁹⁷ The latter phrase was added by article 27(1) of the 1982 Convention.

purpose of, its voyage through waters of the coastal state, or unless the ship is passing through the territorial sea on its way from internal waters. The above rules do not, however, prejudice the right of a state to levy execution against or to arrest, for the purpose of any civil proceedings, a foreign ship lying in the territorial sea or passing through the territorial sea after leaving internal waters.⁹⁸

Warships and other government ships operated for non-commercial purposes are immune from the jurisdiction of the coastal state, although they may be required to leave the territorial sea immediately for breach of rules governing passage and the flag state will bear international responsibility in cases of loss or damage suffered as a result.⁹⁹

International straits¹⁰⁰

Article 16(4) of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea declares that:

there shall be no suspension of the innocent passage of foreign ships through straits which are used for international navigation between one part of the high seas and another part of the high seas or the territorial sea of a foreign state.

This provision should be read in conjunction with the decision in the *Corfu Channel* case.¹⁰¹ In this case, British warships passing through the straits were fired upon by Albanian guns. Several months later, an augmented force of cruisers and destroyers sailed through the North Corfu Channel and two of them were badly damaged after striking mines. This impelled the British authorities to sweep the Channel three weeks later,

⁹⁸ See also article 20 of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone.

⁹⁹ Articles 29–32 of the 1982 Convention. See also articles 21–3 of the 1958 Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone.

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 7; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 5; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 8; R. Lapidoth, *Les Détroits en Droit International*, Paris, 1972; T. L. Koh, *Straits in International Navigation*, London, 1982; J. N. Moore, 'The Regime of Straits and the Third United Nations Conference on the Law of the Sea', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 77; W. M. Reisman, 'The Regime of Straits and National Security', *ibid.*, p. 48; H. Caminos, 'Le Régime des Détroits dans la Convention des Nations Unies de 1982 sur le Droit de la Mer', 205 HR, 1987 V, p. 9; S. N. Nandan and D. H. Anderson, 'Straits Used for International Navigation: A Commentary on Part III of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982', 60 BYIL, 1989, p. 159; *Openheim's International Law*, p. 633; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1168, and B. B. Jia, *The Regime of Straits in International Law*, Oxford, 1998.

¹⁰¹ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155.

and to clear it of some twenty mines of German manufacture. The Court, in a much-quoted passage, emphasised that:

states in time of peace have a right to send their warships through straits used for international navigation between two parts of the high seas without the previous authorisation of a coastal state, provided that the passage is innocent.¹⁰²

It was also noted that the minesweeping operation was in no way 'innocent' and was indeed a violation of Albania's sovereignty, although the earlier passages by British naval vessels were legal.¹⁰³

The 1982 Convention established a new regime for straits used for international navigation. The principle is reaffirmed that the legal status of the waters of the straits in question is unaffected by the provisions dealing with passage.¹⁰⁴

A new right of transit passage is posited with respect to straits used for international navigation between one part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone and another part of the high seas or an exclusive economic zone.¹⁰⁵ It involves the exercise of the freedom of navigation and overflight solely for the purpose of continuous and expeditious transit of the strait and does not preclude passage through the strait to enter or leave a state bordering that strait.¹⁰⁶ States bordering the straits in question are not to hamper or suspend transit passage.¹⁰⁷

There are three exceptions to the right: under article 36 where a route exists through the strait through the high seas or economic zone of similar navigational convenience; under article 38(1) in the case of a strait formed by an island of a state bordering the strait and its mainland, where there exists seaward of the island a route through the high seas or economic zone of similar navigational convenience; and under article 45 where straits connect an area of the high seas or economic zone with the territorial

¹⁰² *Ibid.*, p. 28; 16 AD, p. 161. The Court emphasised that the decisive criterion regarding the definition of 'strait' was the geographical situation of the strait as connecting two parts of the high seas, coupled with the fact that it was actually used for international navigation, *ibid.* Note that article 16(4) added to the customary rights the right of innocent passage from the high seas to the territorial sea of a state. This was of particular importance to the question of access through the straits of Tiran to the Israeli port of Eilat: see further below, note 115.

¹⁰³ *Ibid.*, pp. 30–1, 33; 16 AD, pp. 163, 166. Note the final settlement of the case, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 781.

¹⁰⁴ Articles 34 and 35.

¹⁰⁵ Article 37. See also R. P. Anand, 'Transit Passage and Overflight in International Straits', 26 IJIL, 1986, p. 72, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 636.

¹⁰⁶ Article 38. ¹⁰⁷ Article 44.

sea of a third state. Ships and aircraft in transit must observe the relevant international regulations and refrain from all activities other than those incidental to their normal modes of continuous and expeditious transit, unless rendered necessary by *force majeure* or by distress.¹⁰⁸ Thus, although there is no formal requirement for 'innocent' transit passage, the effect of articles 38 and 39 would appear to be to render transit passage subject to the same constraints. Under article 45, the regime of innocent passage will apply with regard to straits used for international navigation excluded from the transit passage provisions by article 38(1) and to international straits between a part of the high seas or economic zone and the territorial sea of a foreign state. In such cases, there shall be no suspension of the right to innocent passage.¹⁰⁹ The regime of transit passage specifically allows for the passage of aircraft and probably for underwater submarines, while there are fewer constraints on conduct during passage and less power for the coastal state to control passage than in the case of innocent passage.¹¹⁰ Transit passage cannot be suspended for security or indeed any other reasons.¹¹¹

It is unclear whether the right of transit passage has passed into customary law. Practice is as yet ambiguous.¹¹² Some states have provided explicitly for rights of passage through international straits. When the UK extended its territorial sea in 1987 to 12 miles, one of the consequences was that the high sea corridor through the Straits of Dover disappeared. The following year an agreement was signed with France which related to the delimitation of the territorial sea in the Straits of Dover and a joint declaration was issued in which both governments recognised:

rights of unimpeded transit passage for merchant vessels, state vessels and, in particular, warships following their normal mode of navigation, as well as the right of overflight for aircraft, in the Straits of Dover. It is understood that, in accordance with the principles governing this regime under the rules of international law, such passage will be exercised in a continuous and expeditious manner.¹¹³

¹⁰⁸ Article 39. Under articles 41 and 42, the coastal state may designate sea lanes and traffic separation schemes through international straits.

¹⁰⁹ Article 45(2).

¹¹⁰ See articles 38–42. See also, as to the differences between the regimes of innocent passage through the territorial sea, transit passage and archipelagic sea lanes passage, Nandan and Anderson, 'Straits', p. 169.

¹¹¹ Article 44.

¹¹² See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 113, but cf. O. Schachter, 'International Law in Theory and Practice', 178 HR, 1982, pp. 9, 281.

¹¹³ Cmnd 557. See also 38 ICLQ, 1989, pp. 416–17 and AFDI, 1988, p. 727.

A number of straits are subject to special regimes, which are unaffected by the above provisions.¹¹⁴ One important example is the Montreux Convention of 1936 governing the Bosphorus and Dardanelles Straits. This provides for complete freedom of transit or navigation for merchant vessels during peacetime and for freedom of transit during daylight hours for some warships giving prior notification to Turkey.¹¹⁵

The contiguous zone¹¹⁶

Historically some states have claimed to exercise certain rights over particular zones of the high seas. This has involved some diminution of the principle of the freedom of the high seas as the jurisdiction of the coastal state has been extended into areas of the high seas contiguous to the territorial sea, albeit for defined purposes only. Such restricted jurisdiction zones have been established or asserted for a number of reasons: for instance, to prevent infringement of customs, immigration or sanitary laws of the coastal state, or to conserve fishing stocks in a particular area, or to enable the coastal state to have exclusive or principal rights to the resources of the proclaimed zone.

In each case they enable the coastal state to protect what it regards as its vital or important interests without having to extend the boundaries of its territorial sea further into the high seas. It is thus a compromise between the interests of the coastal state and the interests of other maritime nations

¹¹⁴ Article 35(c).

¹¹⁵ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 114 ff. See also UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, p. 581, and F. A. Vali, *The Turkish Straits and NATO*, Stanford, 1972. Note that the dispute as to the status of the Strait of Tiran and the Gulf of Aqaba between Israel and its Arab neighbours was specifically dealt with in the treaties of peace. Article 5(2) of the Israel–Egypt Treaty of Peace, 1979 and article 14(3) of the Israel–Jordan Treaty of Peace, 1994 both affirm that the Strait and Gulf are international waterways open to all nations for unimpeded and non-suspendable freedom of navigation and overflight. As to the US–USSR Agreement on the Bering Straits Region, see 28 ILM, 1989, p. 1429. See also, as to the Great Belt dispute between Finland and Denmark, M. Koskenniemi, ‘L’Affaire du Passage par le Grand-Belt’, AFDI, 1992, p. 905. See, as to other particular straits, e.g. S. C. Truver, *Gibraltar and the Mediterranean*, Alphen, 1982; M. A. Morris, *The Strait of Magellan*, Dordrecht, 1989; G. Alexander, *The Baltic Straits*, Alphen, 1982, and M. Leiffer, *Malacca, Singapore and Indonesia*, Alphen, 1978.

¹¹⁶ See A. V. Lowe, ‘The Development of the Concept of the Contiguous Zone’, 52 BYIL, 1981, p. 109; Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 9; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 7, and O’Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, chapter 27. See also S. Oda, ‘The Concept of the Contiguous Zone’, ICLQ, 1962, p. 131; *Oppenheim’s International Law*, p. 625, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh et al., *Droit International Public*, p. 1174.

seeking to maintain the status of the high seas, and it marks a balance of competing claims. The extension of rights beyond the territorial sea has, however, been seen not only in the context of preventing the infringement of particular domestic laws, but also increasingly as a method of maintaining and developing the economic interests of the coastal state regarding maritime resources. The idea of a contiguous zone (i.e. a zone bordering upon the territorial sea) was virtually formulated as an authoritative and consistent doctrine in the 1930s by the French writer Gidel,¹¹⁷ and it appeared in the Convention on the Territorial Sea. Article 24 declared that:

In a zone of the high seas contiguous to its territorial sea, the coastal state may exercise the control necessary to:

- (a) Prevent infringement of its customs, fiscal, immigration or sanitary regulations within its territory or territorial sea;
- (b) Punish infringement of the above regulations committed within its territory or territorial sea.

Thus, such contiguous zones were clearly differentiated from claims to full sovereignty as parts of the territorial sea, by being referred to as part of the high seas over which the coastal state may exercise particular rights. Unlike the territorial sea, which is automatically attached to the land territory of the state, contiguous zones have to be specifically claimed.

While sanitary and immigration laws are relatively recent additions to the rights enforceable over zones of the high seas and may be regarded as stemming by analogy from customs regulations, in practice they are really only justifiable since the 1958 Convention. On the other hand, customs zones have a long history and are recognised in customary international law as well. Many states, including the UK and the USA, have enacted legislation to enforce customs regulations over many years, outside their territorial waters and within certain areas, in order to suppress smuggling which appeared to thrive when faced only with territorial limits of 3 or 4 miles.¹¹⁸

Contiguous zones, however, were limited to a maximum of 12 miles from the baselines from which the territorial sea is measured. So if the

¹¹⁷ A. Gidel, 'La Mer Territoriale et la Zone Contigue', 48 HR, 1934, pp. 137, 241.

¹¹⁸ E.g. the British Hovering Acts of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. See O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, pp. 1034–8, and the similar US legislation, *ibid.*, pp. 1038 ff.

coastal state already claimed a territorial sea of 12 miles, the question of contiguous zones would not arise.

This limitation, plus the restriction of jurisdiction to customs, sanitary and immigration matters, is the reason for the decline in the relevance of contiguous zones in international affairs in recent years. Under article 33 of the 1982 Convention, however, a coastal state may claim a contiguous zone (for the same purpose as the 1958 provisions) up to 24 nautical miles from the baselines. In view of the accepted 12 miles territorial sea limit, such an extension was required in order to preserve the concept. One crucial difference is that while under the 1958 system the contiguous zone was part of the high seas, under the 1982 Convention it would form part of the exclusive economic zone complex.¹¹⁹ This will clearly have an impact upon the nature of the zone.

The exclusive economic zone¹²⁰

This zone has developed out of earlier, more tentative claims, particularly relating to fishing zones,¹²¹ and as a result of developments in the negotiating processes leading to the 1982 Convention.¹²² It marks a compromise between those states seeking a 200-mile territorial sea and those wishing a more restricted system of coastal state power.

One of the major reasons for the call for a 200-mile exclusive economic zone has been the controversy over fishing zones. The 1958 Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea did not reach agreement on the creation of fishing zones and article 24 of the Convention does not give exclusive

¹¹⁹ See article 55, which states that the exclusive economic zone is 'an area beyond and adjacent to the territorial seas'. The notice issued by the Hydrographic Department of the Royal Navy on 1 January 2008 shows that eighty-one states or territories claim a contiguous zone: see www.ukho.gov.uk/content/amdAttachments/2008/annual_nms/12.pdf.

¹²⁰ See e.g. *The Exclusive Economic Zone and the United Nations Law of the Sea Convention, 1982–2000* (eds. E. Franckx and P. Gautier), Brussels, 2003; Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapters 10 and 11; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 9; D. J. Attard, *The Exclusive Economic Zone in International Law*, Oxford, 1986; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 15; Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 782, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh et al., *Droit International Public*, p. 1175. See also F. Orrego Vicuña, 'La Zone Économique Exclusive', 199 HR, 1986 IV, p. 9; Orrego Vicuña, *The Exclusive Economic Zone, Regime and Legal Nature under International Law*, Cambridge, 1989; B. Kwiatowska, *The 200 Mile Exclusive Economic Zone in the New Law of the Sea*, Dordrecht, 1989; R. W. Smith, *Exclusive Economic Zone Claims. An Analysis and Primary Documents*, Dordrecht, 1986, and F. Rigaldies, 'La Zone Économique Exclusive dans la Pratique des États', Canadian YIL, 1997, p. 3.

¹²¹ O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 14. ¹²² *Ibid.*, pp. 559 ff.

fishing rights in the contiguous zone. However, increasing numbers of states have claimed fishing zones of widely varying widths. The European Fisheries Convention, 1964, which was implemented in the UK by the Fishing Limits Act 1964, provided that the coastal state has the exclusive right to fish and exclusive jurisdiction in matters of fisheries in a 6-mile belt from the baseline of the territorial sea; while within the belt between 6 and 12 miles from the baseline, other parties to the Convention have the right to fish, provided they had habitually fished in that belt between January 1953 and December 1962. This was an attempt to reconcile the interests of the coastal state with those of other states who could prove customary fishing operations in the relevant area. In view of the practice of many states in accepting at one time or another a 12-mile exclusive fishing zone, either for themselves or for some other states, it seems clear that there has already emerged an international rule to that effect. Indeed, the International Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases¹²³ stated that the concept of the fishing zone, the area in which a state may claim exclusive jurisdiction independently of its territorial sea for this purpose, had crystallised as customary law in recent years and especially since the 1960 Geneva Conference, and that 'the extension of that fishing zone up to a twelve mile limit from the baselines appears now to be generally accepted'. That much is clear, but the question was whether international law recognised such a zone in excess of 12 miles.

In 1972, concerned at the proposals regarding the long-term effects of the depletion of fishing stocks around her coasts, Iceland proclaimed unilaterally a 50-mile exclusive fishing zone. The UK and the Federal Republic of Germany referred the issue to the ICJ and specifically requested the Court to decide whether or not Iceland's claim was contrary to international law.

The Court did not answer that question, but rather held that Iceland's fishing regulations extending the zone were not binding upon the UK and West Germany, since they had in no way acquiesced in them. However, by implication the ICJ based its judgment on the fact that there did not exist any rule of international law permitting the establishment of a 50-mile fishing zone. Similarly, it appeared that there was no rule prohibiting claims beyond 12 miles and that the validity of such claims would depend upon all relevant facts of the case and the degree of recognition by other states.

¹²³ ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 8, 175; 55 ILR, p. 238.

The Court emphasised instead the notion of preferential rights, which it regarded as a principle of customary international law. Such rights arose where the coastal state was 'in a situation of special dependence on coastal fisheries'.¹²⁴ However, this concept was overtaken by developments at the UN Conference and the 1982 Convention. Article 55 of the 1982 Convention provides that the exclusive economic zone is an area beyond and adjacent to the territorial sea, subject to the specific legal regime established under the Convention.

Under article 56, the coastal state in the economic zone has *inter alia*:

- (a) sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring and exploiting, conserving and managing the natural resources, whether living¹²⁵ or non-living, of the waters superjacent to the seabed and of the seabed and its subsoil and with regard to other activities for the economic exploitation and exploration of the zone, such as the production of energy from the water, currents and winds;
- (b) jurisdiction with regard to (i) the architecture and use of artificial islands, installations and structures;¹²⁶ (ii) marine scientific research;¹²⁷ (iii) the protection and preservation of the marine environment.¹²⁸

Article 55 provides that the zone starts from the outer limit of the territorial sea, but by article 57 shall not extend beyond 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured. Accordingly, in reality, the zone itself would be no more than 188 nautical miles where the territorial sea was 12 nautical miles, but rather more where the territorial sea of the coastal state was less than 12 miles. Where the relevant waters between neighbouring states are less than 400 miles, delimitation becomes necessary.¹²⁹ Islands generate economic zones, unless they consist of no more than rocks which cannot sustain human habitation.¹³⁰

Article 58 lays down the rights and duties of other states in the exclusive economic zone. These are basically the high seas freedom of navigation, overflight and laying of submarine cables and pipelines. It is also provided that in exercising their rights and performing their duties, states should have due regard to the rights, duties and laws of the coastal state.

¹²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 23–9; 55 ILR, p. 258.

¹²⁵ See also articles 61–9. ¹²⁶ See also article 60.

¹²⁷ See further Part XIII of the Convention and see Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 15.

¹²⁸ See further Part XII of the Convention and see Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 14.

¹²⁹ See further below, p. 590.

¹³⁰ Article 121(3). See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 97 and above, p. 565.

In cases of conflict over the attribution of rights and jurisdiction in the zone, the resolution is to be on the basis of equity and in the light of all the relevant circumstances.¹³¹ Article 60(2) provides that in the exclusive economic zone, the coastal state has jurisdiction to apply customs laws and regulations in respect of artificial islands, installations and structures. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea took the view in *M/V Saiga (No. 2) (Admissibility and Merits)* that a coastal state was not competent to apply its customs laws in respect of other parts of the economic zone.¹³² Accordingly, by applying its customs laws to a customs radius which included parts of the economic zone, Guinea had acted contrary to the Law of the Sea Convention.¹³³

A wide variety of states have in the last two decades claimed exclusive economic zones of 200 miles.¹³⁴ A number of states that have not made such a claim have proclaimed fishing zones.¹³⁵ It would appear that such is the number and distribution of states claiming economic zones, that the existence of the exclusive economic zone as a rule of customary law is firmly established. This is underlined by the comment of the International Court of Justice in the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case¹³⁶ that 'the institution of the exclusive economic zone . . . is shown by the practice of states to have become a part of customary law'.¹³⁷

In addition to such zones, some other zones have been announced by states over areas of the seas. Canada has, for example, claimed a 100-mile-wide zone along her Arctic coastline as a special, pollution-free zone.¹³⁸

¹³¹ Article 59. ¹³² 120 ILR, pp. 143, 190. ¹³³ *Ibid.*, p. 192.

¹³⁴ The Hydrographic Department of the Royal Navy noted that as of 1 January 2008, 126 states and territories had proclaimed 200-mile economic zones: see www.ukho.gov.uk/content/amdAttachments/2008/annual_nms/12.pdf. No state has appeared to claim an economic zone of a different width. See also the US Declaration of an exclusive economic zone in March 1983, which did not, however, assert a right of jurisdiction over marine scientific research over the zone, 22 ILM, 1983, pp. 461 ff. On 22 September 1992, eight North Sea littoral states and the European Commission adopted a Ministerial Declaration on the Coordinated Extension of Jurisdiction in the North Sea in which it was agreed that these states would establish exclusive economic zones if they had not already done so, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 755.

¹³⁵ The Hydrographic Department of the Royal Navy noted that as of 1 January 2008, forty-five states and territories had proclaimed fishery zones of varying breadths up to 200 miles: see www.ukho.gov.uk/content/amdAttachments/2008/annual_nms/12.pdf.

¹³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 13; 81 ILR, p. 238.

¹³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 33; 81 ILR, p. 265. See also the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 74; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 67.

¹³⁸ See O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, pp. 1022–5. See also the Canadian Arctic Water Pollution Prevention Act 1970. The US has objected to this jurisdiction: see e.g. *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 23961 and 24129. The Canadian claim was reiterated in September 1985, *ibid.*, p. 33984.

Certain states have also asserted rights over what have been termed security or neutrality zones,¹³⁹ but these have never been particularly well received and are rare.

In an unusual arrangement, pursuant to a US–USSR Maritime Boundary Agreement of 1 June 1990, it was provided that each party would exercise sovereign rights and jurisdiction derived from the exclusive economic zone jurisdiction of the other party in a ‘special area’ on the other party’s side of the maritime boundary in order to ensure that all areas within 200 miles of either party’s coast would fall within the resource jurisdiction of one party or the other. It would appear that jurisdiction over three special areas within the USSR’s 200-mile economic zone and one special area within the US’s 200-mile economic zone were so transferred.¹⁴⁰

The continental shelf¹⁴¹

The continental shelf is a geological expression referring to the ledges that project from the continental landmass into the seas and which are covered with only a relatively shallow layer of water (some 150–200 metres) and which eventually fall away into the ocean depths (some thousands of metres deep). These ledges or shelves take up some 7 to 8 per cent of the total area of ocean and their extent varies considerably from place to place. Off the western coast of the United States, for instance, it is less than 5 miles wide, while, on the other hand, the whole of the underwater area of the North Sea and Persian Gulf consists of shelf.

The vital fact about the continental shelves is that they are rich in oil and gas resources and quite often are host to extensive fishing grounds.

¹³⁹ O’Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 578, note 95 regarding North Korea’s proclamation of a 50-mile security zone in 1977. See also Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, vol. II, pp. 1750 ff. detailing US practice objecting to peacetime security or military zones. Note also the establishment of the ‘exclusion zone’ around the Falkland Islands in 1982: see 22 HC Deb., cols. 296–7, 28 April 1982. See e.g. R. P. Barston and P. W. Birnie, ‘The Falkland Islands/Islas Malvinas Conflict. A Question of Zones’, 7 *Marine Policy*, 1983, p. 14.

¹⁴⁰ 84 AJIL, 1990, pp. 885–7.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapters 10 and 11; O’Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 13; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 8; Z. J. Slouka, *International Custom and the Continental Shelf*, The Hague, 1968; C. Vallée, *Le Plateau Continental dans le Droit International Positif*, Paris, 1971; V. Marotta Rangel, ‘Le Plateau Continental dans la Convention de 1982 sur le Droit de la Mer’, 194 HR, 1985 V, p. 269, and H. Lauterpacht, ‘Sovereignty over Submarine Areas’, 27 BYIL, 1950, p. 376. See also Oppenheim’s *International Law*, p. 764, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1183.

This stimulated a round of appropriations by coastal states in the years following the Second World War, which gradually altered the legal status of the continental shelf from being part of the high seas and available for exploitation by all states until its current recognition as exclusive to the coastal state.

The first move in this direction, and the one that led to a series of similar and more extensive claims, was the Truman Proclamation of 1945.¹⁴² This pointed to the technological capacity to exploit the riches of the shelf and the need to establish a recognised jurisdiction over such resources, and declared that the coastal state was entitled to such jurisdiction for a number of reasons: first, because utilisation or conservation of the resources of the subsoil and seabed of the continental shelf depended upon co-operation from the shore; secondly, because the shelf itself could be regarded as an extension of the land mass of the coastal state, and its resources were often merely an extension into the sea of deposits lying within the territory; and finally, because the coastal state, for reasons of security, was profoundly interested in activities off its shores which would be necessary to utilise the resources of the shelf.

Accordingly, the US government proclaimed that it regarded the 'natural resources of the subsoil and seabed of the continental shelf beneath the high seas but contiguous to the coasts of the United States as appertaining to the United States, subject to its jurisdiction and control'. However, this would in no way affect the status of the waters above the continental shelf as high seas.

This proclamation precipitated a whole series of claims by states to their continental shelves, some in similar terms to the US assertions, and others in substantially wider terms. Argentina and El Salvador, for example, claimed not only the shelf but also the waters above and the airspace. Chile and Peru, having no continental shelf to speak of, claimed sovereignty over the seabed, subsoil and waters around their coasts to a limit of 200 miles, although this occasioned vigorous protests by many states.¹⁴³ The problems were discussed over many years, leading to the 1958 Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf.¹⁴⁴

¹⁴² Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. IV, p. 756.

¹⁴³ *Ibid.*, pp. 794–9 and see also Oppenheim's *International Law*, pp. 768–9.

¹⁴⁴ Note that in the *Abu Dhabi* case, the arbitrator declared that the doctrine of the continental shelf in 1951 was not yet a rule of international law, 18 ILR, p. 144. See also to the same effect (with regard to 1949), *Reference Re: The Seabed and Subsoil of the Continental Shelf Offshore Newfoundland*, 5 DLR (46), p. 385; 86 ILR, p. 593 per Supreme Court of Canada (1984).

In the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases,¹⁴⁵ the Court noted that:

the rights of the coastal state in respect of the area of continental shelf that constitutes a natural prolongation of its land territory into and under the sea exist *ipso facto* and *ab initio*, by virtue of its sovereignty over the land, and as an extension of it in an exercise of sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring the seabed and exploiting its natural resources. In short there is here an inherent right.

The development of the concept of the exclusive economic zone has to some extent confused the issue, since under article 56 of the 1982 Convention the coastal state has sovereign rights over all the natural resources of its exclusive economic zone, including the seabed resources.¹⁴⁶ Accordingly, states possess two sources of rights with regard to the seabed,¹⁴⁷ although claims with regard to the economic zone, in contrast to the continental shelf, need to be specifically made. It is also possible, as will be seen, that the geographical extent of the shelf may be different from that of the 200-mile economic zone.

Definition

Article 1 of the 1958 Convention on the Continental Shelf defined the shelf in terms of its exploitability rather than relying upon the accepted geological definition, noting that the expression referred to the seabed and subsoil of the submarine areas adjacent to the coast but outside the territorial sea to a depth of 200 metres or 'beyond that limit to where the depth of the superjacent waters admits of the exploitation of the natural resources of the said areas'.

This provision caused problems, since developing technology rapidly reached a position to extract resources to a much greater depth than 200 metres, and this meant that the outer limits of the shelf, subject to the jurisdiction of the coastal state, were consequently very unclear. Article 1 was, however, regarded as reflecting customary law by the Court in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* case.¹⁴⁸ It is also important to note that the basis of title to continental shelf is now accepted as the geographical

¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 22; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 51. ¹⁴⁶ See above, p. 582.

¹⁴⁷ Note that the International Court in the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 33; 81 ILR, pp. 238, 265, stated that the two concepts were 'linked together in modern law'.

¹⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 39; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 68.

criterion, and not reliance upon, for example, occupation or effective control. The Court emphasised this and declared that:

The submarine areas concerned may be deemed to be actually part of the territory over which the coastal state already has dominion in the sense that although covered with water, they are a prolongation or continuation of that territory, an extension of it under the sea.¹⁴⁹

This approach has, however, been somewhat modified. Article 76(1) of the 1982 Convention provides as to the outer limit of the continental shelf that:

[t]he continental shelf of a coastal state comprises the seabed and subsoil of the submarine areas that extend beyond its territorial sea throughout the natural prolongation of its land territory to the outer edge of the continental margin, or to a distance of 200 nautical miles from the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea is measured where the outer edge of continental margin does not extend up to that distance.¹⁵⁰

Thus, an arbitrary, legal and non-geographical definition is provided. Where the continental margin actually extends beyond 200 miles, geographical factors are to be taken into account in establishing the limit, which in any event shall not exceed either 350 miles from the baselines or 100 miles from the 2,500-metre isobath.¹⁵¹ Where the shelf does not extend as far as 200 miles from the coast, natural prolongation is complemented as a guiding principle by that of distance.¹⁵² Not surprisingly, this complex formulation has caused difficulty¹⁵³ and, in an attempt to provide a mechanism to resolve problems, the Convention established a Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf, consisting of

¹⁴⁹ ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 31; 41 ILR, p. 60.

¹⁵⁰ See article 76(3) for a definition of the continental margin. See also D. N. Hutchinson, 'The Seaward Limit to Continental Shelf', 56 BYIL, 1985, p. 133, and Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 140.

¹⁵¹ Article 76(4), (5), (6), (7), (8) and (9). See also Annex II to the Final Act concerning the special situation for a state where the average distance at which the 200-metre isobath occurs is not more than 20 nautical miles and the greater proportion of the sedimentary rock of the continental margin lies beneath the rise.

¹⁵² See the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 13, 33–4; 81 ILR, pp. 238, 265–6. See also the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 61; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 54 and the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 277; 71 ILR, pp. 57, 104.

¹⁵³ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 149, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1187. There are particular problems, for instance, with regard to the meaning of the terms 'oceanic ridges', 'submarine ridges' and 'submarine elevations' appearing in article 76(3) and (6).

twenty-one experts elected by the states parties. Article 4 of Annex II to the Convention provides that a coastal state intending to establish the outer limits to its continental shelf beyond 200 nautical miles is obliged to submit particulars of such limits to the Commission along with supporting scientific and technical data as soon as possible but in any case within ten years of the entry into force of the Convention for that state. The limits of the shelf established by a coastal state on the basis of these recommendations are final and binding.¹⁵⁴ The first submission to the Commission was made by the Russian Federation on 21 December 2001.¹⁵⁵ In support of this claim, Russian explorers planted the national flag on the seabed below the North Pole on 2 August 2007, arguing that parts of underwater mountains underneath the Pole were extensions of the Eurasian continent.¹⁵⁶ A joint submission in respect of the area of the Celtic Sea and the Bay of Biscay was made by France, Ireland, Spain and the UK on 19 May 2006,¹⁵⁷ while on 21 April 2008, the Commission confirmed Australia's continental shelf claim made in 2004.¹⁵⁸

Islands generate continental shelves, unless they consist of no more than rocks which cannot sustain human habitation.¹⁵⁹

*The rights and duties of the coastal state*¹⁶⁰

The coastal state may exercise 'sovereign rights' over the continental shelf for the purposes of exploring it and exploiting its natural resources under article 77 of the 1982 Convention. Such rights are exclusive in that no other state may undertake such activities without the express consent of the coastal state. These sovereign rights (and thus not territorial title as such since the Convention does not talk in terms of 'sovereignty') do not depend upon occupation or express proclamation.¹⁶¹ The Truman concept of resources, which referred only to mineral resources, has been extended

¹⁵⁴ Article 76(8). See also www.un.org/Depts/los/clcs_new/clcs_home.htm.

¹⁵⁵ See UN Press Release, SEA/1729, 21 December 2001.

¹⁵⁶ See ASIL Insight, vol. 11, issue 27, 8 November 2007.

¹⁵⁷ See e.g. UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 767–8, and H. Llewellyn, 'The Commission on the Limits of the Continental Shelf: Joint Submission by France, Ireland, Spain, and the United Kingdom', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 677.

¹⁵⁸ See UN Press Release, SEA/1899, 21 April 2008.

¹⁵⁹ Article 121(3). See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 97, and above, p. 565.

¹⁶⁰ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 773 and Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 151.

¹⁶¹ See also article 2 of the Continental Shelf Convention, 1958.

to include organisms belonging to the sedentary species.¹⁶² However, this vague description did lead to disputes between France and Brazil over lobster, and between the USA and Japan over the Alaskan King Crab in the early 1960s.¹⁶³ The sovereign rights recognised as part of the continental shelf regime specifically relate to natural resources, so that, for example, wrecks lying on the shelf are not included.¹⁶⁴ The Convention expressly states that the rights of the coastal state do not affect the status of the superjacent waters as high seas, or that of the airspace above the waters.¹⁶⁵ This is stressed in succeeding articles which note that, subject to its right to take reasonable measures for exploration and exploitation of the continental shelf, the coastal state may not impede the laying or maintenance of cables or pipelines on the shelf. In addition, such exploration and exploitation must not result in any unjustifiable interference with navigation, fishing or the conservation of the living resources of the sea.¹⁶⁶

The coastal state may, under article 80 of the 1982 Convention,¹⁶⁷ construct and maintain installations and other devices necessary for exploration on the continental shelf and is entitled to establish safety zones around such installations to a limit of 500 metres, which must be respected by ships of all nationalities. Within such zones, the state may take such measures as are necessary for their protection. But although under the jurisdiction of the coastal state, these installations are not to be considered as islands. This means that they have no territorial sea of their own and their presence in no way affects the delimitation of the territorial waters of the coastal state. Such provisions are, of course, extremely

¹⁶² See article 77(4) of the 1982 Convention and article 2(4) of the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention.

¹⁶³ See e.g. O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 501–2.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 152; E. Boesten, *Archaeological and/or Historical Valuable Shipwrecks in International Waters*, The Hague, 2002, and C. Forrest, 'An International Perspective on Sunken State Vessels as Underwater Cultural Heritage', 34 *Ocean Development and International Law*, 2003, p. 41. See also articles 149 (protection of cultural objects found in the International Seabed Area) and 303 (wrecks and the rights of coastal states in the contiguous zone).

¹⁶⁵ Article 78 of the 1982 Convention and article 3 of the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention. Note that the reference to 'high seas' in the latter is omitted in the former for reasons related to the new concept of the exclusive economic zone.

¹⁶⁶ Articles 78 and 79 of the 1982 Convention and articles 4 and 5 of the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention.

¹⁶⁷ Applying *mutatis mutandis* article 60, which deals with the construction of artificial islands, installations and structures in the exclusive economic zone. See also article 5 of the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention.

important when considering the status of oil rigs situated, for example, in the North Sea. To treat them as islands for legal purposes would cause difficulties.¹⁶⁸

Where the continental shelf of a state extends beyond 200 miles, article 82 of the 1982 Convention provides that the coastal state must make payments or contributions in kind in respect of the exploitation of the non-living resources of the continental shelf beyond the 200-mile limit. The payments are to be made annually after the first five years of production at the site in question on a sliding scale up to the twelfth year, after which they are to remain at 7 per cent. These payments and contributions are to be made to the International Seabed Authority, which shall distribute them amongst state parties on the basis of 'equitable sharing criteria, taking into account the interests and needs of developing states particularly the least developed and the landlocked among them'.¹⁶⁹

Maritime delimitation¹⁷⁰

While delimitation is in principle an aspect of territorial sovereignty, where other states are involved, agreement is required. However valid in domestic law, unilateral delimitations will not be binding upon third

¹⁶⁸ See also N. Papadakis, *The International Legal Regime of Artificial Islands*, Leiden, 1977.

¹⁶⁹ Note also that by article 82(3) a developing state which is a net importer of the mineral resource in question is exempt from such payments and contributions.

¹⁷⁰ See e.g. *UN Handbook on the Delimitation of Maritime Boundaries*, New York, 2000; N. Antunes, *Towards the Conceptualisation of Maritime Delimitation*, The Hague, 2003; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 10; E. D. Brown, *Sea-Bed Energy and Mineral Resources and the Law of the Sea*, London, 1984–6, vols. I and III; M. D. Evans, *Relevant Circumstances and Maritime Delimitation*, Oxford, 1989, and P. Weil, *The Law of Maritime Delimitation – Reflections*, Cambridge, 1989. See also *International Maritime Boundaries* (eds. J. I. Charney and L. M. Alexander), Washington, vols. I–III, 1993–8, and *ibid.* (eds. J. I. Charney and R. W. Smith), vol. IV, 2002 and *ibid.* (eds. D. A. Colson and R. W. Smith), vol. V, 2005, The Hague; M. Kamga, *Délimitation Maritime sur la Côte Atlantique Africaine*, Brussels, 2006; *Maritime Delimitation* (eds. R. Lagoni and D. Vignes), Leiden, 2006; Y. Tanaka, *Predictability and Flexibility in the Law of Maritime Delimitation*, Oxford, 2006; D. A. Colson, 'The Delimitation of the Outer Continental Shelf between Neighbouring States', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 91; V. D. Degan, 'Consolidation of Legal Principles on Maritime Delimitation', 6 Chinese YIL, 2007, p. 601; L. D. M. Nelson, 'The Roles of Equity in the Delimitation of Maritime Boundaries', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 837; J. I. Charney, 'Progress in International Maritime Boundary Delimitation Law', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 227, and Charney, 'Central East Asian Maritime Boundaries and the Law of the Sea', 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 724; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 776, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 1178 and 1187 ff.

states.¹⁷¹ The International Court noted in *Nicaragua v. Honduras* that the establishment of a permanent maritime boundary was 'a matter of grave importance and agreement is not easily to be presumed'.¹⁷² It was also pointed out that the principle of *uti possidetis* applied in principle to maritime spaces.¹⁷³

In so far as the delimitation of the territorial sea between states with opposite or adjacent coasts is concerned,¹⁷⁴ article 15 of the 1982 Convention, following basically article 12 of the Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958, provides that where no agreement has been reached, neither state may extend its territorial sea beyond the median line every point of which is equidistant from the nearest point on the baselines from which the territorial sea is measured.¹⁷⁵ However, particular geographical circumstances may make it difficult to establish clear baselines and this may make it therefore impossible to draw an equidistance line.¹⁷⁶ In such an exceptional case, the Court would consider alternative lines drawn by the states, for example bisector lines.¹⁷⁷

The provision as to the median line, however, does not apply where it is necessary by reason of historic title or other special circumstances to delimit the territorial sea of the two states in a different way. The Court in *Qatar v. Bahrain* noted that article 15 was to be regarded as having a customary law character¹⁷⁸ and may be referred to as the 'equidistance/special circumstances' principle. The Court went on to declare that, 'The most logical and widely practised approach is first to draw provisionally an

¹⁷¹ See the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 132. The International Court noted in the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 299; 77 ILR, pp. 57, 126, that 'no maritime delimitation between states with opposite or adjacent coasts may be effected unilaterally by one of those states. Such delimitation must be sought and effected by means of an agreement, following negotiations conducted in good faith and with the genuine intention of achieving a positive result. Where, however, such agreement cannot be achieved, delimitation should be effected by recourse to a third party possessing the necessary competence.'

¹⁷² ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 253. ¹⁷³ *Ibid.*, para. 156 and see above, p. 525.

¹⁷⁴ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 182 ff.

¹⁷⁵ See also *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 94. The International Court in *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 269, noted that 'the methods governing territorial sea delimitations have needed to be, and are, more clearly articulated in international law than those used for the other, more functional maritime areas'.

¹⁷⁶ See *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 277 ff. The Court in *Qatar v. Bahrain* noted that an equidistance line could only be drawn where the baselines were known, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 94.

¹⁷⁷ *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 287.

¹⁷⁸ See also e.g. the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 663.

equidistance line and then to consider whether that line must be adjusted in the light of the existence of special circumstances.¹⁷⁹

This was underlined in the arbitration award in *Guyana v. Suriname*, which emphasised that article 15 placed 'primacy on the median line as the delimitation line between the territorial seas of opposite or adjacent states'.¹⁸⁰ The tribunal noted that international courts were not constrained by a finite list of special circumstances, but needed to assess on a case-by-case basis with reference to international case-law and state practice.¹⁸¹ Navigational interests, for example, could constitute such special circumstances.¹⁸² The tribunal also held that a 3-mile territorial sea delimitation line did not automatically extend outwards in situations where the territorial sea was extended to 12 miles, but rather that a principled method had to be found that took into account any special circumstances, including historical arrangements made.¹⁸³

Separate from the question of the delimitation of the territorial sea, but increasingly convergent with it, is the question of the delimitation of the continental shelf and of the exclusive economic zone between opposite or adjacent states. The starting point of any delimitation of these areas is the entitlement of the state to a given maritime area. Such entitlement in the case of the continental shelf was originally founded upon the concept of natural prolongation of the land territory into the sea,¹⁸⁴ but with the emergence of the exclusive economic zone a new approach was introduced based upon distance from the coast.¹⁸⁵ The two concepts in fact became close.

Article 6 of the Continental Shelf Convention, 1958 declared that in the absence of agreement and unless another boundary line was justified by special circumstances, the continental shelf boundary should be determined 'by application of the principle of equidistance from the nearest points of the baselines from which the breadth of the territorial sea of each state is measured', that is to say by the introduction of the equidistance or median line which would operate in relation to the sinuosities of the particular coastlines.

¹⁷⁹ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 94. See also *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 268.

¹⁸⁰ Award of 17 September 2007, para. 296. See also UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 764.

¹⁸¹ Award of 17 September 2007, paras. 302–3. See also the *Jan Mayen* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 38, 61–4.

¹⁸² Award of 17 September 2007, para. 306. ¹⁸³ *Ibid.*, paras. 311 ff.

¹⁸⁴ The *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 22.

¹⁸⁵ See *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006, para. 224.

This provision was considered in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases¹⁸⁶ between the Federal Republic of Germany on the one side and Holland and Denmark on the other. The problem was that the application of the equidistance principle of article 6 would give Germany only a small share of the North Sea continental shelf, in view of its concave northern shoreline between Holland and Denmark. The question arose as to whether the article was binding upon the Federal Republic of Germany at all, since it had not ratified the 1958 Continental Shelf Convention.

The Court held that the principles enumerated in article 6 did not constitute rules of international customary law and therefore Germany was not bound by them.¹⁸⁷ The Court declared that the relevant rule was that:

delimitation is to be effected by agreement in accordance with equitable principles, and taking account of all the relevant circumstances, in such a way as to leave as much as possible to each party all those parts of the continental shelf that constitute a natural prolongation of its land territory into and under the sea, without encroachment on the natural prolongation of the land territory of the others.¹⁸⁸

The Court, therefore, took the view that delimitation was based upon a consideration and weighing of relevant factors in order to produce an equitable result. Included amongst the range of factors was the element of a reasonable degree of proportionality between the lengths of the coastline and the extent of the continental shelf.¹⁸⁹ In the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case,¹⁹⁰ both states were parties to the 1958 Convention, so that article 6 applied.¹⁹¹ It was held that article 6 contained one overall rule, 'a combined equidistance-special circumstances rule', which in effect:

gives particular expression to a general norm that, failing agreement, the boundary between states abutting on the same continental shelf is to be determined on equitable principles.¹⁹²

¹⁸⁶ ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 3; 41 ILR, p. 29. ¹⁸⁷ See above, chapter 3, p. 85.

¹⁸⁸ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 53; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 83.

¹⁸⁹ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 52; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 82.

¹⁹⁰ Cmnd 7438 (1978); 54 ILR, p. 6. See also D. W. Bowett, 'The Arbitration between the United Kingdom and France Concerning the Continental Shelf Boundary in the English Channel of South-Western Approaches', 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 1.

¹⁹¹ Although subject to a French reservation regarding the Bay of Granville to which the UK had objected, Cmnd 7438, p. 50; 54 ILR, p. 57.

¹⁹² Cmnd 7438, p. 48; 54 ILR, p. 55.

The choice of method of delimitation, whether equidistance or any other method, depended upon the pertinent circumstances of the case. The fundamental norm under both customary law and the 1958 Convention was that the delimitation had to be in accordance with equitable principles.¹⁹³ The Court took into account 'special circumstances' in relation to the situation of the Channel Islands which justified a delimitation other than the median line proposed by the UK.¹⁹⁴ In addition, the situation of the Scilly Isles was considered and they were given only 'half-effect' in the delimitation in the Atlantic area since

what equity calls for is an appropriate abatement of the disproportionate effects of a considerable projection on the Atlantic continental shelf of a somewhat attenuated projection of the coast of the United Kingdom.¹⁹⁵

In the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case,¹⁹⁶ the Court, deciding on the basis of custom as neither state was a party to the 1958 Convention, emphasised that 'the satisfaction of equitable principles is, in the delimitation process, of cardinal importance'. The concept of natural prolongation was of some importance depending upon the circumstances, but not on the same plane as the satisfaction of equitable principles.¹⁹⁷ The Court also employed the 'half-effect' principle for the Kerkennah Islands,¹⁹⁸ and emphasised that each continental shelf dispute had to be considered on its own merits having regard to its peculiar circumstances, while no attempt should be made to 'overconceptualise the application of the principles and rules relating to the continental shelf'.¹⁹⁹ The view of the Court that 'the principles are subordinate to the goal' and that '[t]he principles to be indicated . . . have to be selected according to their appropriateness for reaching an equitable result'²⁰⁰ led to criticism that the carefully drawn restriction on equity in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases²⁰¹ had been

¹⁹³ Cmnd 7438, pp. 59–60; 54 ILR, p. 66.

¹⁹⁴ Cmnd 7438, p. 94; 54 ILR, p. 101. This arose because of the presence of the British islands close to the French coast, which if given full effect would substantially reduce the French continental shelf. This was *prima facie* a circumstance creative of inequity, *ibid*.

¹⁹⁵ Cmnd 7438, pp. 116–17; 54 ILR, p. 123.

¹⁹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 18; 67 ILR, p. 4. See also L. L. Herman, 'The Court Giveth and the Court Taketh Away', 33 ICLQ, 1984, p. 825.

¹⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 47; 67 ILR, p. 40. See also ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 60; 67 ILR, p. 53.

¹⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 89; 67 ILR, p. 82. This was specified in far less constrained terms than in the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, pp. 116–17; 54 ILR, p. 123. See e.g. Judge Gros' Dissenting Opinion, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 150; 67 ILR, p. 143.

¹⁹⁹ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 92; 67 ILR, p. 85. ²⁰⁰ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 59; 67 ILR, p. 52.

²⁰¹ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 49–50; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 79.

overturned and the element of predictability minimised. The dangers of an equitable solution based upon subjective assessments of the facts, regardless of the law of delimitation, were pointed out by Judge Gros in his Dissenting Opinion.²⁰²

The Court in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases²⁰³ in general discussed the relevance of the use of equitable principles in the context of the difficulty of applying the equidistance rule in specific geographical situations where inequity might result. In such a case, recourse may be had to equitable principles, provided a reasonable result was reached.

In the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case,²⁰⁴ it was emphasised that:

the appropriateness of the equidistance method or any other method for the purpose of effecting an equitable delimitation is a function or reflection of the geographical and other relevant circumstances of each particular case.

The methodological aspect here is particularly important, based as it is upon the requisite geographical framework.

Article 83 of the 1982 Convention provides simply that delimitation 'shall be effected by agreement on the basis of international law . . . in order to achieve an equitable solution'. This was emphasised by the Court in *Tunisia/Libya*, where it was stated that the 'principles and rules applicable to the delimitation of the continental shelf areas are those which are appropriate to bring about an equitable result'.²⁰⁵ In the *Gulf of Maine* case,²⁰⁶ which dealt with the delimitation of both the continental shelf and fisheries zones of Canada and the United States,²⁰⁷ the Chamber of the ICJ produced two principles reflecting what general international law prescribes in every maritime delimitation. First, there could be no unilateral delimitations. Delimitations had to be sought and effected by agreement between the parties or, if necessary, with the aid of third parties. Secondly, it held that 'delimitation is to be effected by the application of equitable criteria and by the use of practical methods capable of ensuring, with regard to the geographic configuration of the area and other relevant

²⁰² ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 153; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 146.

²⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 35–6; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 64.

²⁰⁴ Cmdnd 7438, p. 59; 54 ILR, p. 66. ²⁰⁵ ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 49.

²⁰⁶ ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 246; 71 ILR, p. 74. See also J. Schneider, 'The Gulf of Maine Case: The Nature of an Equitable Result', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 539.

²⁰⁷ A 'single maritime boundary' was requested by the parties, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 253; 71 ILR, p. 80.

circumstances, an equitable result'.²⁰⁸ The Court took as its starting point the criterion of the equal division of the areas of convergence and overlapping of the maritime projections of the coastlines of the states concerned, a criterion regarded as intrinsically equitable. This, however, had to be combined with the appropriate auxiliary criteria in the light of the relevant circumstances of the area itself. As regards the practical methods necessary to give effect to the above criteria, like the criteria themselves these had to be based upon geography and the suitability for the delimitation of both the seabed and the superjacent waters. Thus, it was concluded, geometrical methods would serve.²⁰⁹ It will be noted that the basic rule for delimitation of the continental shelf is the same as that for the exclusive economic zone,²¹⁰ but the same boundary need not necessarily result.²¹¹ The Chamber in the *Gulf of Maine* case indeed strongly emphasised 'the unprecedented aspect of the case which lends it its special character', in that a single line delimiting both the shelf and fisheries zone was called for by the parties.

Criteria found equitable with regard to a continental shelf delimitation need not necessarily possess the same properties with regard to a dual delimitation.²¹² The above principles were reflected in the arbitral award in the *Guinea/Guinea-Bissau Maritime Delimitation* case in 1985.²¹³ The Tribunal emphasised that the aim of any delimitation process was to achieve an equitable solution having regard to the relevant circumstances.²¹⁴ In the instant case, the concepts of natural prolongation and economic factors were in the circumstances of little assistance.²¹⁵ In the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case,²¹⁶ the International Court, in deciding the case according to customary law since Libya was not a party to the 1958

²⁰⁸ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 299–300; 71 ILR, pp. 126–7. This was regarded as the fundamental norm of customary international law governing maritime delimitation, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 300.

²⁰⁹ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 328–9; 71 ILR, p. 155. Note that the Chamber gave 'half-effect' to Seal Island for reasons of equity, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 337; 71 ILR, p. 164.

²¹⁰ Article 74 of the 1982 Convention.

²¹¹ See e.g. the Australia–Papua New Guinea Maritime Boundaries Treaty of 1978, cited in Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 160.

²¹² ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 326; 71 ILR, p. 153.

²¹³ See 25 ILM, 1986, p. 251; 77 ILR, p. 636. The tribunal consisted of Judge Lachs, President, and Judges Mbaye and Bedjaoui.

²¹⁴ 25 ILM, 1986, p. 289; 77 ILR, pp. 675–6.

²¹⁵ 25 ILM, 1986, pp. 300–2; 77 ILR, p. 686. It should be noted that the delimitation concerned a single line delimiting the territorial waters, continental shelves and economic zones of the respective countries.

²¹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 13; 81 ILR, p. 239.

Convention on the Continental Shelf, emphasised the distance criterion. This arose because of the relevance of the economic zone concept, which was now held to be part of customary law, and the fact that an economic zone could not exist without rights over the seabed and subsoil similar to those enjoyed over a continental shelf. Thus the 200-mile limit of the zone had to be taken into account with regard to the delimitation of the continental shelf.²¹⁷ The fact that the law now permitted a state to claim a shelf of up to 200 miles from its coast, irrespective of geological characteristics, also meant that there was no reason to ascribe any role to geological or geographical factors within that distance.²¹⁸

Since the basis of title to the shelf up to the 200-mile limit is recognised as the distance criterion, the Court felt that the drawing of a median line between opposite states was the most judicious manner of proceeding with a view to the eventual achievement of an equitable result. This provisional step had to be tested in the light of equitable principles in the context of the relevant circumstances.²¹⁹ The Court also followed the example of the *Tunisia/Libya* case²²⁰ in examining the role of proportionality and in treating it as a test of the equitableness of any line.

However, the Court did consider the comparability of coastal lengths in the case as part of the process of reaching an equitable boundary, and used the disparity of coastal lengths of the parties as a reason for adjusting the median line so as to attribute a larger shelf area to Libya.²²¹ The general geographical context in which the islands of Malta exist as a relatively small feature in a semi-enclosed sea was also taken into account in this context.²²²

The Court in its analysis also referred to a variety of well-known examples of equitable principles, including abstention from refashioning nature, non-encroachment by one party on areas appertaining to the other, respect due to all relevant circumstances and the notions that equity did not necessarily mean equality and that there could be no question of distributive justice.²²³ The Court, however, rejected Libya's argument that a state with a greater landmass would have a greater claim to the shelf

²¹⁷ The Court emphasised that this did not mean that the concept of the continental shelf had been absorbed by that of the economic zone, but that greater importance had to be attributed to elements, such as distance from the coast, which are common to both, ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 33; 81 ILR, p. 265.

²¹⁸ *Ibid.* ²¹⁹ ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 47; 81 ILR, p. 279.

²²⁰ See above, p. 595. ²²¹ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 48–50; 81 ILR, p. 280.

²²² ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 52; 81 ILR, p. 284.

²²³ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 39–40; 81 ILR, p. 271.

and dismissed Malta's view that the relative economic position of the two states was of relevance.²²⁴

In conclusion, the Court reiterated in the operative provisions of its judgment, the following circumstances and factors that needed to be taken into account in the case:

- (1) the general configuration of the coasts to the parties, their oppositeness, and their relationship to each other within the general context;
- (2) the disparity in the lengths of the relevant coasts of the parties and the distance between them;
- (3) the need to avoid in the delimitation any excessive disproportion between the extent of the continental shelf areas appertaining to the coastal state and the length of the relevant part of its coast, measured in the general direction of the coastlines.²²⁵

In the *St Pierre and Miquelon* case,²²⁶ the Court of Arbitration emphasised that the delimitation process commenced with the identification of the geographical context of the dispute in question and indeed pointed out that geographical features were at the heart of delimitation.²²⁷ The identification of the relevant coastlines in each particular case, however, generates specific problems. Accordingly, the way in which the geographical situation is described may suggest particular solutions, so that the seemingly objective process of geographical identification may indeed constitute a crucial element in the adoption of any particular juridical answer. In the *St Pierre and Miquelon* case, the Court divided the area into two zones, the southern and western zones. In the latter case, any seaward extension of the islands beyond their territorial sea would cause some degree of encroachment and cut-off to the seaward projection towards the south from points located on the southern shore of Newfoundland. The Court felt here that any enclaving of the islands within their territorial sea would be inequitable and the solution proposed was to grant the islands an additional 12 miles from the limits of the territorial sea as an exclusive economic zone.²²⁸ In the case of the southern zone, where the islands had a coastal opening seawards unobstructed by any opposite or

²²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 40–1; 81 ILR, p. 272. The Court also noted that an equitable boundary between the parties had in the light of the general geographical situation to be south of a notional median line between Libya and Sicily, ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 51; 81 ILR, p. 283.

²²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 56–8; 81 ILR, p. 288. ²²⁶ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1145; 95 ILR, p. 645.

²²⁷ 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 1160–1; 95 ILR, pp. 660–3.

²²⁸ 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 1169–70; 95 ILR, p. 671.

laterally aligned Canadian coast, the Court held that France was entitled to an outer limit of 200 nautical miles, provided that such a projection was not allowed to encroach upon or cut off a parallel frontal projection of the adjacent segments of the Newfoundland southern coast. In order to achieve this, the Court emphasised the importance of the breadth of the coastal opening of the islands towards the south, thus resulting in a 200-mile, but narrow, corridor southwards from the islands as their economic zone.²²⁹ Having decided upon the basis of geographical considerations, the Court felt it necessary to assure itself that the delimitation proposed was not 'radically inequitable'.²³⁰ This it was able to do on the basis of facts submitted by the parties. The Court also considered the criterion of proportionality and satisfied itself that there was no disproportion in the areas appertaining to each of the parties.²³¹

In the *Jan Mayen (Denmark v. Norway)* case,²³² the question of the delimitation of the continental shelf between the islands of Greenland and Jan Mayen was governed in the circumstances by article 6 of the 1958 Convention, accepted as substantially identical to customary law in requiring an equitable delimitation.²³³ The International Court noted that since a delimitation between opposite coasts was in question, one needed to begin by taking provisionally the median line and then enquiring whether 'special circumstances'²³⁴ required another boundary line.²³⁵ In particular, one needed to take into account the disparity between the respective coastal lengths of the relevant area and, since in this case that of Greenland was more than nine times that of Jan Mayen, an unqualified use of equidistance would produce a manifestly disproportionate result.²³⁶ In addition,

²²⁹ 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 1170–1; 95 ILR, pp. 671–3.

²³⁰ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1173; 95 ILR, p. 675. The phrase comes from the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 342; 71 ILR, pp. 74, 169, where it was defined as 'likely to entail catastrophic repercussions for the livelihood and economic well-being of the population of the parties concerned'.

²³¹ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1176; 95 ILR, p. 678. ²³² ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 37; 99 ILR, p. 395.

²³³ ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 58; 99 ILR, p. 426. But see the Separate Opinion of Judge Oda, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 102–14; 99 ILR, pp. 470–82.

²³⁴ The Court noted that the category of 'special circumstances' incorporated in article 6 was essentially the same as the category of 'relevant circumstances' developed in customary international law since both were designed to achieve an equitable solution, ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 62; 99 ILR, p. 430. Special circumstances were deemed to be those that 'might modify the result produced by an unqualified application of the equidistance principle', while relevant circumstances could be described as 'a fact necessary to be taken into account in the delimitation process', *ibid.*

²³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 59–61; 99 ILR, pp. 427–9.

²³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 65–9; 99 ILR, pp. 433–7.

the question of equitable access to fish stocks for vulnerable fishing communities needed to be considered. Since the principal resource in the area was capelin, which was centred on the southern part of the area of overlapping claims, the adoption of a median line would mean that Denmark could not be assured of equitable access to the capelin. This was a further reason for adjusting the median line towards the Norwegian island of Jan Mayen.²³⁷ However, there was no need to consider the presence of ice as this did not materially affect access to fishery resources,²³⁸ nor the limited population of Jan Mayen, socio-economic factors or security matters in the circumstances.²³⁹

In discussing the variety of applicable principles, a distinction has traditionally been drawn between opposite and adjacent states for the purposes of delimitation. In the former case, the Court has noted that there is less difficulty in applying the equidistance method than in the latter, since the distorting effect of an individual geographical feature in the case of adjacent states is more likely to result in an inequitable delimitation. Accordingly, greater weight is to be placed upon equidistance in a delimitation of the shelf between opposite states in the context of equitable considerations,²⁴⁰ than in the case of adjacent states where the range of applicable equitable principles may be more extensive and the relative importance of each particular principle less clear. Article 83 of the 1982 Convention, however, makes no distinction between delimitations on the basis of whether the states are in an opposite or adjacent relationship. The same need to achieve an equitable solution on the basis of international law is all that is apparent and recent moves to a presumption in favour of equidistance in the case of opposite coasts may well apply also to adjacent states.

²³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 70–2; 99 ILR, pp. 438–40. But see the Separate Opinion of Judge Schwebel, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 118–20; 99 ILR, pp. 486–8.

²³⁸ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 72–3; 99 ILR, pp. 440–1.

²³⁹ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 73–5; 99 ILR, pp. 441–3. But see the Separate Opinion of Judge Oda, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 114–17; 99 ILR, pp. 482–5. Note also the discussion of equity in such situations in the Separate Opinion of Judge Weeramantry, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 211 ff.; 99 ILR, pp. 579 ff.

²⁴⁰ See *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 36–7; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 65; the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, pp. 58–9; 54 ILR, p. 65; the *Tunisia-Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 88; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 81; the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 325; 71 ILR, p. 74, and the *Jan Mayen* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 37; 99 ILR, p. 395. See also article 6 of the Continental Shelf Convention, 1958.

The weight to be given to the criterion of proportionality between the length of the coastline and the area of continental shelf has also been the subject of some consideration and opinions have varied. It is a factor that must be cautiously applied.²⁴¹

Article 74 of the 1982 Convention provides that delimitation of the exclusive economic zone between states with opposite or adjacent coasts is to be effected by agreement on the basis of international law,²⁴² 'in order to achieve an equitable solution'. Since this phrase is identical to the provision on delimitation of the continental shelf,²⁴³ it is not surprising that cases have arisen in which states have sought a single maritime boundary, applying both to the continental shelf and the economic zone.

In the *Gulf of Maine* case,²⁴⁴ the Chamber of the International Court took the view that the criteria for a single maritime boundary²⁴⁵ were those that would apply to both the continental shelf and economic zones (in this case a fisheries zone) and not criteria that relate to only one of these areas.²⁴⁶ Nevertheless, the overall requirement for the establishment of

²⁴¹ The Court in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, in discussing this issue, called for a reasonable degree of proportionality, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 52; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 82, while in the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case the Tribunal emphasised that it was disproportion rather than proportionality that was relevant in the context of the equities, Cmnd 7438, pp. 60–1; 54 ILR, pp. 6, 67. But cf. the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 75; 67 ILR, pp. 4, 75. See also the *Libya/Malta Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 48–50; 81 ILR, p. 280.

²⁴² As referred to in article 38 of the Statute of the ICJ.

²⁴³ Article 83. Note that the International Court declared that 'the identity of the language which is employed, even though limited of course to the determination of the relevant principles and rules of international law, is particularly significant', the *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 295; 71 ILR, pp. 74, 122. The Court declared in the *Jan Mayen Maritime Delimitation (Denmark v. Norway)* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 37, 59; 99 ILR, pp. 395, 427, that the statement in article 74(1) and the corresponding provision in article 83(1) with regard to the aim of any delimitation process being an equitable solution, 'reflects the requirements of customary law as regards the delimitation both of continental shelf and of exclusive economic zones'. The Tribunal in *Eritrea/Yemen (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation)* stated in relation to articles 74 and 83 that these provisions resulted from a last-minute endeavour at the conference to get agreement on a very controversial matter and so 'were consciously designed to decide as little as possible', 119 ILR, pp. 417, 454.

²⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 246; 71 ILR, p. 74.

²⁴⁵ The Court has emphasised that the notion of a single maritime line stems from state practice and not from treaty law, thus underlining its position in customary law: see *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 93; *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 440–1; *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006, para. 235 and *Guyana v. Suriname*, Award of 17 September 2007, para. 334.

²⁴⁶ *Gulf of Maine* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 326; 71 ILR, p. 153.

such a boundary is the need to achieve an equitable solution and this brings into consideration a range of factors that may or may not be deemed relevant or decisive by the Court. It is in the elucidation of such factors that difficulties have been encountered and it would be over-optimistic to assert that the situation is clear, although very recent cases have moved towards a degree of predictability. In the *Gulf of Maine* case, the Court emphasised that the relevant criteria had to be essentially determined 'in relation to what may be properly called the geographical features of the area', but what these are is subject to some controversy and did not appear to cover scientific and other facts relating to fish stocks, oil exploration, scientific research or common defence arrangements.²⁴⁷ In the *Guinea/Guinea-Bissau Maritime Delimitation* case,²⁴⁸ the Tribunal was called upon to draw a single line dividing the territorial sea, economic zone and continental shelf of the two states concerned. In the case of the latter two zones, the Tribunal noted that the use of the equidistance method was unsatisfactory since it exaggerated the importance of insignificant coastal features. Rather one had to consider the whole coastline of West Africa.²⁴⁹ The Tribunal also considered that the evidence with regard to the geological and geomorphological features of the continental shelf was unsatisfactory,²⁵⁰ while general economic factors were rejected as being unjust and inequitable, since they were based upon an evaluation of data that was constantly changing.²⁵¹ The question of a single maritime boundary arose again in the *St Pierre and Miquelon (Canada/France)* case,²⁵² where the Tribunal was asked to establish a single delimitation as between the parties governing all rights and jurisdiction that the parties may exercise under international law in these maritime areas. In such cases, the Tribunal, following the *Gulf of Maine* decision, took the view that in a single or all-purpose delimitation, article 6 of the Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958, which governed the delimitation of the continental shelf, did not have mandatory force as regards the establishment of that single maritime line.²⁵³

²⁴⁷ ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 278; 71 ILR, p. 105. ²⁴⁸ 77 ILR, p. 635.

²⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 679–81. ²⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 685–7. ²⁵¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 688–9.

²⁵² 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1145; 95 ILR, p. 645. See also M. D. Evans, 'Less Than an Ocean Apart: The St Pierre and Miquelon and Jan Mayen Islands and the Delimitation of Maritime Zones', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 678; K. Highet, 'Delimitation of the Maritime Areas Between Canada and France', 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 452, and H. Ruiz Fabri, 'Sur la Délimitation des Espaces Maritimes entre le Canada et la France', 97 RGDIP, 1993, p. 67.

²⁵³ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1163; 95 ILR, p. 663.

However, where there did not exist a special agreement between the parties asking the Court to determine a single maritime boundary applicable both to the continental shelf and the economic zone, the Court declared in the *Jan Mayen Maritime Delimitation (Denmark v. Norway)* case²⁵⁴ that the two strands of the applicable law had to be examined separately. These strands related to the effect of article 6 of the Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958 upon the continental shelf and the rules of customary international law with regard to the fishery zone.²⁵⁵

Recent cases have seen further moves towards clarity and simplicity. In *Eritrea/Yemen (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation)*, the Tribunal noted that it was a generally accepted view that between coasts that are opposite to each other, the median or equidistance line normally provided an equitable boundary in accordance with the requirements of the 1982 Convention.²⁵⁶ It also reaffirmed earlier case-law to the effect that proportionality was not an independent mode or principle of delimitation, but a test of the equitableness of a delimitation arrived at by other means.²⁵⁷ The Tribunal also considered the role of mid-sea islands in a delimitation between opposite states and noted that to give them full effect would produce a disproportionate effect.²⁵⁸ Indeed, no effect was given to some of the islands in question.²⁵⁹

In *Qatar v. Bahrain*, the Court emphasised the close relationship between continental shelf and economic zone delimitations²⁶⁰ and held that the appropriate methodology was first to provisionally draw an equidistance line and then to consider whether circumstances existed which must lead to an adjustment of that line.²⁶¹ Further, it was noted that 'the equidistance/special circumstances' rule, applicable to territorial sea

²⁵⁴ ICJ Reports, 1993, p. 37; 99 ILR, p. 395. See also M. D. Evans, 'Case Concerning Maritime Delimitation in the Area Between Greenland and Jan Mayen (*Denmark v. Norway*)', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 697.

²⁵⁵ But see the Separate Opinion of Judge Oda, who took the view that the regime of the continental shelf was independent of the concept of the exclusive economic zone and that the request to draw a single maritime boundary was misconceived, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 96–7; 99 ILR, pp. 464–5.

²⁵⁶ 119 ILR, pp. 417, 457.

²⁵⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 465. See also the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 52; 41 ILR, p. 29 and the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438; 54 ILR, p. 6.

²⁵⁸ 119 ILR, p. 454.

²⁵⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 461. Note that the Tribunal rejected the enclaving of some islands as had occurred in the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, *ibid.*, p. 463.

²⁶⁰ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 110. ²⁶¹ *Ibid.*, p. 111.

delimitation, and the 'equidistance/relevant circumstances' rule as developed since 1958 in case-law and practice regarding the delimitation of the continental shelf and the exclusive economic zone were 'closely related'.²⁶² The Court did not consider the existence of pearling banks to be a circumstance justifying a shift in the equidistance line²⁶³ nor was the disparity in length of the coastal fronts of the states.²⁶⁴ It was also considered that for reasons of equity in order to avoid disproportion, no effect could be given to Fasht al Jarim, a remote projection of Bahrain's coastline in the Gulf area, which constituted a maritime feature located well out to sea and most of which was below water at high tide.²⁶⁵

This approach was reaffirmed by the Court in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, where it was noted that 'the applicable criteria, principles and rules of delimitation' concerning a line 'covering several zones of coincident jurisdiction' could be expressed in 'the so-called equitable principles/relevant circumstances method'. This method, 'which is very similar to the equidistance/special circumstances method' concerning territorial sea delimitation, 'involves first drawing an equidistance line, then considering whether there are factors calling for the adjustment or shifting of that line in order to achieve an "equitable result"'.²⁶⁶ Such a line had to be constructed on the basis of the relevant coastlines of the states in question and excluded taking into account the coastlines of third states and the coastlines of the parties not facing each other.²⁶⁷ Further, the Court emphasised that 'equity is not a method of delimitation, but solely an aim that should be borne in mind in effecting the delimitation',²⁶⁸ thus putting an end to a certain trend in previous decades to put the whole emphasis in delimitation upon an equitable solution, leaving substantially open the question of what factors to take into account and how to rank them. The geographical configuration of the maritime area in question was an important element in this case and the Court stressed that while certain geographical peculiarities of maritime areas could be taken into account, this would be solely as relevant circumstances for the purpose, if necessary, of shifting the provisional delimitation line. In the present case, the Court did not consider the configuration of the coastline a relevant circumstance justifying altering the equidistance line.²⁶⁹ Similarly the Court did not feel it necessary to take

²⁶² *Ibid.*, p. 111. ²⁶³ *Ibid.*, p. 112.

²⁶⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 114. This was in view of the recognition that Bahrain had sovereignty over the Hawar Islands, a factor which mitigated any serious disparity.

²⁶⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 115. ²⁶⁶ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 441. ²⁶⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 442.

²⁶⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 443. ²⁶⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 443–5.

into account the existence of Bioko, an island off the coast of Cameroon but belonging to a third state, Equatorial Guinea, nor was it concluded that there existed 'a substantial difference in the lengths of the parties' respective coastlines' so as to make it a factor to be considered in order to adjust the provisional delimitation line.²⁷⁰

In the *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago* arbitration award of 11 April 2006, it was noted that equitable considerations *per se* constituted an imprecise concept in the light of the need for stability and certainty in the outcome of the legal process and it was emphasised that the search for predictable, objectively determined criteria for delimitation underlined that the role of equity lies within and not beyond the law.²⁷¹ The process of achieving an equitable result was constrained by legal principle, as both equity and stability were integral parts of the delimitation process.²⁷² The tribunal concluded that the determination of the line of delimitation followed a two-step approach. First, a provisional line of equidistance is constructed and this constitutes the practical starting point. Secondly, this line is examined in the light of relevant circumstances, which are case specific, so as to determine whether it is necessary to adjust the provisional equidistance line in order to achieve an equitable result. This approach was termed the 'equidistance/relevant circumstances' principle so that certainty would thus be combined with the need for an equitable result.²⁷³

Conclusion

Accordingly, there is now a substantial convergence of applicable principles concerning maritime delimitation, whether derived from customary law or treaty. In all cases, whether the delimitation is of the territorial sea, continental shelf or economic zone (or of the latter two together), the appropriate methodology to be applied is to draw a provisional equidistance line as the starting position and then see whether any relevant or special circumstances exist which may warrant a change in that line in order to

²⁷⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 446. See also, as to the relevance of oil practice by the parties, *ibid.*, pp. 447–8, and *Eritrea/Yemen (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation)*, 119 ILR, pp. 417, 443 ff.

²⁷¹ Award of 11 April 2006, para. 230. See also B. Kwiatkowska, 'The 2006 Barbados/Trinidad and Tobago Maritime Delimitation (Jurisdiction and Merits) Award', in Ndiaye and Wolfrum, *Law of the Sea, Environmental Law and Settlement of Disputes*, p. 917.

²⁷² Award of 11 April 2006, paras. 243 and 244.

²⁷³ *Ibid.*, para. 242. See also para. 317. This approach was approved in *Guyana v. Suriname*, Award of 17 September 2007, paras. 340–1.

achieve an equitable result. The presumption in favour of that line is to be welcomed as a principle of value and clarity.

As to the meaning of special or relevant circumstances, or the criteria that need to be taken into account, case-law provides a range of clear indications. Equity is not a method of delimitation and nature cannot be totally refashioned, but some modification of the provisional equidistance line may be justified for the purpose of, for example, 'abating the effects of an incidental special feature from which an unjustifiable difference of treatment could result'.²⁷⁴ The following principles may be noted. First, the delimitation should avoid the encroachment by one party on the natural prolongation of the other or its equivalent in respect of the economic zone and should avoid to the extent possible the interruption of the maritime projection of the relevant coastlines.²⁷⁵ Secondly, the configuration of the coast may be relevant where the drawing of an equidistance line may unduly prejudice a state whose coast is particularly concave or convex within the relevant area of the delimitation when compared with that of its neighbours. But the threshold for this is relatively high.²⁷⁶ Thirdly, a 'substantial difference in the lengths of the parties' respective coastlines may be a factor to be taken into consideration' in mitigation of an equidistance line so as to avoid a disproportionate and inequitable result.²⁷⁷ Fourthly, the presence of islands or other similar maritime features may be relevant to the equities of the situation and may justify a modification of the provisional equidistance line.²⁷⁸ Fifthly, security considerations may be taken into account, but the precise effects of this are unclear. Sixthly, resource-related criteria, such as the distribution of fish stocks, have been treated cautiously and have not generally been accepted as a relevant circumstance.²⁷⁹ Finally, the prior conduct of the parties may be relevant, for example, where there is sufficient practice to show that a provisional boundary has been agreed. In the *Tunisia/Libya* case, the Court held that a line close to the coast which neither party had crossed when granting offshore oil and gas concessions and which thus constituted a *modus*

²⁷⁴ The *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 50.

²⁷⁵ *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006, para. 232.

²⁷⁶ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 445–6.

²⁷⁷ See e.g. *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 446–7 and *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006, para. 240.

²⁷⁸ See e.g. the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, 54 ILR, p. 6 and *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 114 ff.

²⁷⁹ *Gulf of Maine*, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 246, 342 and *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006, paras. 228 and 241.

vivendi was highly relevant,²⁸⁰ although in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, the Court emphasised that only if such concessions were based on express or tacit agreement between the parties could they be taken into account for the purposes of a delimitation.²⁸¹

Landlocked states²⁸²

Article 3 of the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958 provided that 'in order to enjoy freedom of the seas on equal terms with coastal states, states having no sea coast should have free access to the sea'.²⁸³ Article 125 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea is formulated as follows:

1. Land-locked states shall have the right of access to and from the sea for the purpose of exercising the rights provided for in this Convention including those relating to the freedom of the high seas and the common heritage of mankind. To this end, land-locked states shall enjoy freedom of transit through the territory of transit states by all means of transport.

2. The terms and modalities for exercising freedom of transit shall be agreed between the land-locked states and the transit state concerned through bilateral, subregional or regional agreements.

3. Transit states, in the exercise of their full sovereignty over their territory, shall have the right to take all measures necessary to ensure that the rights and facilities provided for in this Part for land-locked states shall in no way infringe their legitimate interests.

It will thus be seen that there is no absolute right of transit, but rather that transit depends upon arrangements to be made between the land-locked and transit states. Nevertheless, the affirmation of a right of access to the sea coast is an important step in assisting landlocked states. Articles 127 to 130 of the 1982 Convention set out a variety of terms for the

²⁸⁰ ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18, 71, 84 and 80–6.

²⁸¹ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 447–8. See also *Guyana v. Suriname*, Award of 17 September 2007, paras. 378 ff.

²⁸² See e.g. S. C. Vasciannie, *Land-Locked and Geographically Disadvantaged States in the International Law of the Sea*, Oxford, 1990; J. Symonides, 'Geographically Disadvantaged States in the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea', 208 HR, 1988, p. 283; M. I. Glassner, *Bibliography on Land-Locked States*, 4th edn, The Hague, 1995; L. Caflisch, 'Land-locked States and their Access to and from the Sea', 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 71, and I. Delupis, 'Land-locked States and the Law of the Sea', 19 *Scandinavian Studies in Law*, 1975, p. 101. See also Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 18.

²⁸³ See also the Convention on Transit Trade of Land-Locked States, 1965.

operation of transit arrangements, while article 131 provides that ships flying the flag of landlocked states shall enjoy treatment equal to that accorded to other foreign ships in maritime ports. Ships of all states, whether coastal states or landlocked states, have the right of innocent passage in the territorial sea and freedom of navigation in the waters beyond the territorial sea.²⁸⁴

It is also to be noted that landlocked states have the right to participate upon an equitable basis in the exploitation of an appropriate part of the surplus of the living resources of the economic zones of coastal states of the same subregion or region, taking into account relevant economic and geographical factors.²⁸⁵ Geographically disadvantaged states have the same right.²⁸⁶ The terms and modalities of such participation are to be established by the states concerned through bilateral, subregional or regional agreements, taking into account a range of factors, including the need to avoid effects detrimental to fishing communities or fishing industries of the coastal state and the nutritional needs of the respective states.²⁸⁷

With regard to provisions concerning the international seabed regime, article 148 of the 1982 Convention provides that the effective participation of developing states in the International Seabed Area shall be promoted, having due regard to their special interests and needs, and in particular to the special need of the landlocked and geographically disadvantaged among them to overcome obstacles arising from their disadvantaged location, including remoteness from the Area and difficulty of access to and from it.²⁸⁸

²⁸⁴ See e.g. article 14(1) of the Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea, 1958; articles 2(1) and 4 of the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958 and articles 17, 38(1), 52(1), 53(2), 58(1), 87 and 90 of the 1982 Convention.

²⁸⁵ Article 69(1) of the 1982 Convention.

²⁸⁶ Article 70(1). Geographically disadvantaged states are defined in article 70(2) as 'coastal states, including states bordering enclosed or semi-enclosed seas, whose geographical situation makes them dependent upon the exploitation of the living resources of the exclusive economic zones of other states in the subregion or region for adequate supplies of fish for the nutritional purposes of their populations or parts thereof, and coastal states which can claim no exclusive economic zone of their own'.

²⁸⁷ See articles 69(2) and 70(2). Note also articles 69(4) and 70(5) restricting such rights of participation of developed landlocked states to developed coastal states of the same subregion or region. By article 71, the provisions of articles 69 and 70 do not apply in the case of a coastal state whose economy is overwhelmingly dependent on the exploitation of the living resources of its exclusive economic zone.

²⁸⁸ See also articles 152, 160 and 161.

The high seas²⁸⁹

The closed seas concept proclaimed by Spain and Portugal in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, and supported by the Papal Bulls of 1493 and 1506 dividing the seas of the world between the two powers, was replaced by the notion of the open seas and the concomitant freedom of the high seas during the eighteenth century.

The essence of the freedom of the high seas is that no state may acquire sovereignty over parts of them.²⁹⁰ This is the general rule, but it is subject to the operation of the doctrines of recognition, acquiescence and prescription, where, by long usage accepted by other nations, certain areas of the high seas bounding on the territorial waters of coastal states may be rendered subject to that state's sovereignty. This was emphasised in the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case.²⁹¹

The high seas were defined in Article 1 of the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958 as all parts of the sea that were not included in the territorial sea or in the internal waters of a state. This reflected customary international law, although as a result of developments the definition in article 86 of the 1982 Convention includes: all parts of the sea that are not included in the exclusive economic zone, in the territorial sea or in the internal waters of a state, or in the archipelagic waters of an archipelagic state.

Article 87 of the 1982 Convention (developing article 2 of the 1958 Geneva Convention on the High Seas) provides that the high seas are open to all states and that the freedom of the high seas is exercised under the conditions laid down in the Convention and by other rules of international law. It includes *inter alia* the freedoms of navigation, overflight, the laying of submarine cables and pipelines,²⁹² the construction of artificial islands and other installations permitted under international law,²⁹³ fishing, and the conduct of scientific research.²⁹⁴ Such freedoms are to be exercised with due regard for the interests of other states in their exercise of the

²⁸⁹ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 14; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, chapter 21, and Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 11. See also Oppenheim's *International Law*, pp. 710 ff. and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1194.

²⁹⁰ See article 2 of the 1958 High Seas Convention and article 89 of the 1982 Convention.

²⁹¹ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86. See above, p. 559.

²⁹² Subject to Part VI of the Convention, dealing with the continental shelf.

²⁹³ Subject to Part VI of the Convention, dealing with the continental shelf.

²⁹⁴ Subject to Part VI of the Convention, dealing with the continental shelf, and Part XIII, dealing with marine scientific research.

freedom of the high seas, and also with due regard for the rights under the Convention regarding activities in the International Seabed Area.²⁹⁵

Australia and New Zealand alleged before the ICJ, in the *Nuclear Tests* case,²⁹⁶ that French nuclear testing in the Pacific infringed the principle of the freedom of the seas, but this point was not decided by the Court. The 1963 Nuclear Test Ban Treaty prohibited the testing of nuclear weapons on the high seas as well as on land, but France was not a party to the treaty, and it appears not to constitute a customary rule binding all states, irrespective of the treaty.²⁹⁷ Nevertheless, article 88 of the 1982 Convention provides that the high seas shall be reserved for peaceful purposes.

Principles that are generally acknowledged to come within article 2 include the freedom to conduct naval exercises on the high seas and the freedom to carry out research studies.

The freedom of navigation²⁹⁸ is a traditional and well-recognised facet of the doctrine of the high seas, as is the freedom of fishing.²⁹⁹ This was reinforced by the declaration by the Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases³⁰⁰ that Iceland's unilateral extension of its fishing zones from 12 to 50 miles constituted a violation of article 2 of the High Seas Convention, which is, as the preamble states, 'generally declaratory of established principles of international law'. The freedom of the high seas applies not only to coastal states but also to states that are landlocked.³⁰¹

The question of freedom of navigation on the high seas in times of armed conflict was raised during the Iran–Iraq war, which during its

²⁹⁵ See below, p. 628.

²⁹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253 and 457; 57 ILR, pp. 350, 605. See also the Order of the International Court of Justice of 22 September 1995 in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France)* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, p. 288, where the Court refused to accede to a request by New Zealand to re-examine the 1974 judgment in view of the resumption by France of underground nuclear testing in the South Pacific.

²⁹⁷ Note, however, the development of regional agreements prohibiting nuclear weapons: see the Treaty of Tlatelolco for the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons in Latin America, 1967, which extends the nuclear weapons ban to the territorial sea, airspace and any other space over which a state party exercises sovereignty in accordance with its own legislation; the Treaty of Rarotonga establishing a South Pacific Nuclear-Free Zone, 1985; the African Nuclear Weapon-Free Treaty, 1996 and the Treaty on the Southeast Asia Nuclear Weapon-Free Zone, 1995.

²⁹⁸ See the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, p. 155, and *Nicaragua v. United States*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 111–12; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 445.

²⁹⁹ See the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 116, 183; 18 ILR, pp. 86, 131. See also below, p. 623.

³⁰⁰ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 3. ³⁰¹ See above, p. 607.

latter stages involved attacks upon civilian shipping by both belligerents. Rather than rely on the classical and somewhat out-of-date rules of the laws of war at sea,³⁰² the UK in particular analysed the issue in terms of the UN Charter. The following statement was made:³⁰³

The UK upholds the principle of freedom of navigation on the high seas and condemns all violations of the law of armed conflicts including attacks on merchant shipping. Under article 51 of the UN Charter, a state actively engaged in armed conflict (as in the case of Iran and Iraq) is entitled in exercise of its inherent right of self-defence to stop and search a foreign merchant ship on the high seas if there is reasonable ground for suspecting that the ship is taking arms to the other side for use in the conflict. This is an exceptional right: if the suspicion proves to be unfounded and if the ship has not committed acts calculated to give rise to suspicion, then the ship's owners have a good claim for compensation for loss caused by the delay. This right would not, however, extend to the imposition of a maritime blockade or other forms of economic warfare.

*Jurisdiction on the high seas*³⁰⁴

The foundation of the maintenance of order on the high seas has rested upon the concept of the nationality of the ship, and the consequent jurisdiction of the flag state over the ship. It is, basically, the flag state that will enforce the rules and regulations not only of its own municipal law but of international law as well. A ship without a flag will be deprived of many of the benefits and rights available under the legal regime of the high seas.

Each state is required to elaborate the conditions necessary for the grant of its nationality to ships, for the registration of ships in its territory and for the right to fly its flag.³⁰⁵ The nationality of the ship will depend upon the flag it flies, but article 91 of the 1982 Convention also stipulates that there must be a 'genuine link' between the state and the ship.³⁰⁶ This

³⁰² See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 17, and C. J. Colombos, *International Law of the Sea*, 6th edn, London, 1967, part II.

³⁰³ *Parliamentary Papers*, 1987–8, HC, Paper 179–II, p. 120 and UKMIL, 59 BYIL, 1988, p. 581.

³⁰⁴ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 731.

³⁰⁵ Article 5 of the 1958 High Seas Convention and article 91 of the 1982 Convention.

³⁰⁶ Article 5 of the High Seas Convention, 1958 had added to this the requirement that 'in particular the state must effectively exercise its jurisdiction and control in administrative, technical and social matters over ships flying its flag'. This requirement appears in article 94 of the 1982 Convention.

provision, which reflects 'a well-established rule of general international law',³⁰⁷ was intended to check the use of flags of convenience operated by states such as Liberia and Panama which would grant their nationality to ships requesting such because of low taxation and the lack of application of most wage and social security agreements. This enabled the ships to operate at very low costs indeed. However, what precisely the 'genuine link' consists of and how one may regulate any abuse of the provisions of article 5 are unresolved questions. Some countries, for example the United States, maintain that the requirement of a 'genuine link' really only amounts to a duty to exercise jurisdiction over the ship in an efficacious manner, and is not a pre-condition for the grant, or the acceptance by other states of the grant, of nationality.³⁰⁸

An opportunity did arise in 1960 to discuss the meaning of the provision in the *IMCO* case.³⁰⁹ The International Court was called upon to define the 'largest ship-owning nations' for the purposes of the constitution of a committee of the Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organisation. It was held that the term referred only to registered tonnage so as to enable Liberia and Panama to be elected to the committee. Unfortunately, the opportunity was not taken of considering the problems of flags of convenience or the meaning of the 'genuine link' in the light of the true ownership of the ships involved, and so the doubts and ambiguities remain.

The UN Conference on Conditions of Registration of Ships, held under the auspices of the UN Conference on Trade and Development, convened in July 1984 and an agreement was signed in 1986. It attempts to deal with the flags of convenience issue, bearing in mind that nearly one-third of the world's merchant fleet by early 1985 flew such flags. It specifies that flag states should provide in their laws and regulations for the ownership of ships flying their flags and that those should include appropriate provision for participation by nationals as owners of such ships, and that such provisions should be sufficient to permit the flag state to exercise effectively its jurisdiction and control over ships flying its flag.³¹⁰

The issue of the genuine link arose in the context of the Iran–Iraq war and in particular Iranian attacks upon Kuwaiti shipping. This prompted

³⁰⁷ See the 1999 decision of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in *M/V Saiga* (No. 2), 120 ILR, pp. 143, 175.

³⁰⁸ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 213 ff.

³⁰⁹ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 150; 30 ILR, p. 426.

³¹⁰ *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 33952.

Kuwait to ask the UK and the USA to reflag Kuwaiti tankers. The USA agreed in early 1987 to reflag eleven such tankers under the US flag and to protect them as it did other US-flagged ships in the Gulf.³¹¹ The UK also agreed to reflag some Kuwaiti tankers, arguing that only satisfaction of Department of Trade and Industry requirements was necessary.³¹² Both states argued that the genuine link requirement was satisfied and, in view of the ambiguity of state practice as to the definition of genuine link in such instances, it is hard to argue that the US and UK acted unlawfully. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in *M/V Saiga* (No. 2) has underlined that determination of the criteria and establishment of the procedures for granting and withdrawing nationality to ships are matters within the exclusive jurisdiction of the flag state, although disputes concerning such matters may be subject to the dispute settlement procedures of the 1982 Convention. The question of the nationality of a ship was a question of fact to be determined on the basis of evidence adduced by the parties.³¹³ The conduct of the flag state, 'at all times material to the dispute', was an important consideration in determining the nationality or registration of a ship.³¹⁴ The Tribunal has also confirmed that the requirement of a genuine link was in order to secure effective implementation of the duties of the flag state and not to establish criteria by reference to which the validity of the registration of ships in a flag state may be challenged by other states.³¹⁵

Ships are required to sail under the flag of one state only and are subject to its exclusive jurisdiction (save in exceptional cases). Where a ship does sail under the flags of more than one state, according to convenience, it may be treated as a ship without nationality and will not be able to claim any of the nationalities concerned.³¹⁶ A ship that is stateless, and does not fly a flag, may be boarded and seized on the high seas. This point was accepted by the Privy Council in the case of *Naim Molvan v.*

³¹¹ See 26 ILM, 1987, pp. 1429–30, 1435–40 and 1450–2. See also 37 ICLQ, 1988, pp. 424–45, and M. H. Nordquist and M. G. Wachenfeld, 'Legal Aspects of Reflagging Kuwaiti Tankers and Laying of Mines in the Persian Gulf', 31 German YIL, 1988, p. 138.

³¹² See e.g. 119 HC Deb., col. 645, 17 July 1987.

³¹³ 120 ILR, pp. 143, 175–6. See also the decision by the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in the *Grand Prince* case, 2001, paras. 81 ff., 125 ILR, pp. 272, 297 ff. See www.itlos.org/start2_en.html.

³¹⁴ *M/V Saiga*, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 176 and the *Grand Prince* case, 2001, para. 89, 125 ILR, pp. 272, 299.

³¹⁵ *M/V Saiga*, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 179.

³¹⁶ Article 6 of the 1958 Convention and article 92 of the 1982 Convention.

Attorney-General for Palestine,³¹⁷ which concerned the seizure by the British navy of a stateless ship attempting to convey immigrants into Palestine.

The basic principle relating to jurisdiction on the high seas is that the flag state alone may exercise such rights over the ship.³¹⁸ This was elaborated in the *Lotus* case,³¹⁹ where it was held that 'vessels on the high seas are subject to no authority except that of the state whose flag they fly'.³²⁰ This exclusivity is without exception regarding warships and ships owned or operated by a state where they are used only on governmental non-commercial service. Such ships have, according to articles 95 and 96 of the 1982 Convention, 'complete immunity from the jurisdiction of any state other than the flag state'.³²¹

Exceptions to the exclusivity of flag-state jurisdiction

However, this basic principle is subject to exceptions regarding other vessels, and the concept of the freedom of the high seas is similarly limited by the existence of a series of exceptions.

Right of visit

Since the law of the sea depends to such an extent upon the nationality of the ship, it is well recognised in customary international law that warships have a right of approach to ascertain the nationality of ships. However, this right of approach to identify vessels does not incorporate the right to board or visit ships. This may only be undertaken, in the absence of hostilities between the flag states of the warship and a merchant vessel and in the absence of special treaty provisions to the contrary, where the ship is engaged in piracy or the slave trade, or, though flying a foreign flag or no flag at all, is in reality of the same nationality as the warship or of no nationality. But the warship has to operate carefully in such circumstances,

³¹⁷ [1948] AC 351; 13 AD, p. 51. See also e.g. *US v. Dominguez* 604 F.2d 304 (1979); *US v. Cortes* 588 F.2d 106 (1979); *US v. Monroy* 614 F.2d 61 (1980) and *US v. Marino-Garcia* 679 F.2d 1373 (1982). In the latter case, the Court referred to stateless vessels as 'international pariahs', *ibid.*, p. 1383.

³¹⁸ See article 6 of the 1958 Convention and article 92 of the 1982 Convention.

³¹⁹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 25; 4 AD, p. 153. See also *Sellers v. Maritime Safety Inspector* [1999] 2 NZLR 44, 46–8; 120 ILR, p. 585.

³²⁰ Note that duties of the flag state are laid down in articles 94, 97, 98, 99, 113 and 115 of the 1982 Convention.

³²¹ See articles 8 and 9 of the High Seas Convention, 1958.

since it may be liable to pay compensation for any loss or damage sustained if its suspicions are unfounded and the ship boarded has not committed any act justifying them. Thus, international law has settled for a narrow exposition of the right of approach, in spite of earlier tendencies to expand this right, and the above provisions were incorporated into article 22 of the High Seas Convention. Article 110 of the 1982 Convention added to this list a right of visit where the ship is engaged in unauthorised broadcasting and the flag state of the warship has under article 109 of the Convention jurisdiction to prosecute the offender.

Piracy³²²

The most formidable of the exceptions to the exclusive jurisdiction of the flag state and to the principle of the freedom of the high seas is the concept of piracy. Piracy is strictly defined in international law and was declared in article 101 of the 1982 Convention to consist of any of the following acts:

- (a) Any illegal acts of violence, detention or any act of depredation, committed for private ends by the crew or the passengers of a private ship or private aircraft and directed: (i) on the high seas, against another ship or aircraft, or against persons or property on board such ship or aircraft; (ii) against a ship, aircraft, persons or property in a place outside the jurisdiction of any state; (b) Any act of voluntary participation in the operation of a ship or of an aircraft with knowledge of facts making it a pirate ship or aircraft; (c) Any act of inciting or of intentionally facilitating an act described in subparagraph (a) or (b).³²³

The essence of piracy under international law is that it must be committed for private ends. In other words, any hijacking or takeover for political reasons is automatically excluded from the definition of piracy. Similarly, any acts committed on the ship by the crew and aimed at the ship itself or property or persons on the ship do not fall within this category.

Any and every state may seize a pirate ship or aircraft whether on the high seas or on *terra nullius* and arrest the persons and seize the property on board. In addition, the courts of the state carrying out the seizure

³²² See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 299; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 746, and B. H. Dubner, *The Law of International Sea Piracy*, The Hague, 1979.

³²³ See also article 15 of the High Seas Convention, 1958. Note that article 105 of the 1982 Convention deals with the seizure of pirate boats or aircraft, while article 106 provides for compensation in the case of seizure without adequate grounds. See also *Athens Maritime Enterprises Corporation v. Hellenic Mutual War Risks Association* [1983] 1 All ER 590; 78 ILR, p. 563.

have jurisdiction to impose penalties, and may decide what action to take regarding the ship or aircraft and property, subject to the rights of third parties that have acted in good faith.³²⁴ The fact that every state may arrest and try persons accused of piracy makes that crime quite exceptional in international law, where so much emphasis is placed upon the sovereignty and jurisdiction of each particular state within its own territory. The first multilateral treaty concerning the regional implementation of the Convention's provisions on piracy was the Regional Cooperation Agreement on Combating Piracy and Armed Robbery against Ships in Asia in 2005, which calls for the establishment of an information-sharing centre in Singapore and extends the regulation of piracy beyond the high seas to events taking place in internal waters, territorial seas and archipelagic waters.³²⁵

The slave trade³²⁶

Although piracy may be suppressed by all states, most offences on the high seas can only be punished in accordance with regulations prescribed by the municipal legislation of states, even where international law requires such rules to be established. Article 99 of the 1982 Convention provides that every state shall take effective measures to prevent and punish the transport of slaves in ships authorised to fly its flag and to prevent the unlawful use of its flag for that purpose. Any slave taking refuge on board any ship, whatever its flag, shall *ipso facto* be free.³²⁷ Under article 110, warships may board foreign merchant ships where they are reasonably suspected of engaging in the slave trade; offenders must be handed over to the flag state for trial.³²⁸

³²⁴ See article 19 of the 1958 Convention and article 105 of the 1982 Convention. See also the Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts Against the Safety of Maritime Navigation, 1988 and Protocol, 1989. Note that on 18 April 2008, a French court charged six Somalis with piracy following the release of hostages taken from a French yacht that they had allegedly seized in the Gulf of Aden. The Somalis were apprehended by French forces and removed to France with the permission of the President of Somalia: see www.news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/world/Europe/7355598.stm.

³²⁵ See 44 ILM, 2005, p. 829.

³²⁶ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 309.

³²⁷ See also article 13 of the High Seas Convention, 1958.

³²⁸ See also article 22 of the High Seas Convention, 1958. Several international treaties exist with the aim of suppressing the slave trade and some provide for reciprocal rights of visits and search on the high seas: see e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 171–2. Note also that under article 108 of the 1982 Convention all states are to co-operate in the suppression of the illicit drug trade.

Unauthorised broadcasting³²⁹

Under article 109 of the 1982 Convention, all states are to co-operate in the suppression of unauthorised broadcasting from the high seas. This is defined to mean transmission of sound or TV from a ship or installation on the high seas intended for reception by the general public, contrary to international regulations but excluding the transmission of distress calls. Any person engaged in such broadcasting may be prosecuted by the flag state of the ship, the state of registry of the installation, the state of which the person is a national, any state where the transmission can be received or any state where authorised radio communication is suffering interference.

Any of the above states having jurisdiction may arrest any person or ship engaging in unauthorised broadcasting on the high seas and seize the broadcasting apparatus.³³⁰

Hot pursuit³³¹

The right of hot pursuit of a foreign ship is a principle designed to ensure that a vessel which has infringed the rules of a coastal state cannot escape punishment by fleeing to the high seas. In reality it means that in certain defined circumstances a coastal state may extend its jurisdiction onto the high seas in order to pursue and seize a ship which is suspected of infringing its laws. The right, which has been developing in one form or another since the nineteenth century,³³² was comprehensively elaborated in article 111 of the 1982 Convention, building upon article 23 of the High Seas Convention, 1958.

It notes that such pursuit may commence when the authorities of the coastal state have good reason to believe that the foreign ship has violated its laws. The pursuit must start while the ship, or one of its boats, is within the internal waters, territorial sea or contiguous zone of the coastal state and may only continue outside the territorial sea or contiguous zone if it is uninterrupted. However, if the pursuit commences while the foreign

³²⁹ See e.g. J. C. Woodliffe, 'The Demise of Unauthorised Broadcasting from Ships in International Waters', 1 *Journal of Estuarine and Coastal Law*, 1986, p. 402, and Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 312.

³³⁰ See also article 110 of the 1982 Convention. In addition, see the European Agreement for the Prevention of Broadcasting transmitted from Stations outside National Territories.

³³¹ See e.g. N. Poulantzas, *The Right of Hot Pursuit in International Law*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 2002, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 739. See also W. C. Gilmore, 'Hot Pursuit: The Case of *R v. Mills and Others*', 44 *ICLQ*, 1995, p. 949.

³³² See e.g. the *I'm Alone* case, 3 *RIAA*, p. 1609 (1935); 7 *AD*, p. 203.

ship is in the contiguous zone, then it may only be undertaken if there has been a violation of the rights for the protection of which the zone was established. The right may similarly commence from the archipelagic waters. In addition, the right will apply *mutatis mutandis* to violations in the exclusive economic zone or on the continental shelf (including safety zones around continental shelf installations) of the relevant rules and regulations applicable to such areas.

Hot pursuit only begins when the pursuing ship has satisfied itself that the ship pursued or one of its boats is within the limits of the territorial sea or, as the case may be, in the contiguous zone or economic zone or on the continental shelf. It is essential that prior to the chase a visual or auditory signal to stop has been given at a distance enabling it to be seen or heard by the foreign ship and pursuit may only be exercised by warships or military aircraft or by specially authorised government ships or planes. The right of hot pursuit ceases as soon as the ship pursued has entered the territorial waters of its own or a third state. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea has emphasised that the conditions laid down in article 111 are cumulative, each one of them having to be satisfied in order for the pursuit to be lawful.³³³ In stopping and arresting a ship in such circumstances, the use of force must be avoided if at all possible and, where it is unavoidable, it must not go beyond what is reasonable and necessary in the circumstances.³³⁴

Collisions

Where ships are involved in collisions on the high seas, article 11 of the High Seas Convention declares, overruling the decision in the *Lotus* case,³³⁵ that penal or disciplinary proceedings may only be taken against the master or other persons in the service of the ship by the authorities of either the flag state or the state of which the particular person is a national. It also provides that no arrest or detention of the ship, even for investigation purposes, can be ordered by other than the authorities of the flag state. This was reaffirmed in article 97 of the 1982 Convention.

³³³ *M/V Saiga*, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 194.

³³⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 196. See also the *I'm Alone* case, 3 RIAA, p. 1609 (1935); 7 AD, p. 203, and the *Red Crusader* case, 35 ILR, p. 485. Note that article 22(1)f of the Straddling Stocks Convention, 1995 provides that an inspecting state shall avoid the use of force except when and to the degree necessary to ensure the safety of the inspectors and where the inspectors are obstructed in the execution of their duties. In addition, the force used must not exceed that reasonably required in the circumstances.

³³⁵ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 25; 4 AD, p. 153.

Treaty rights and agreements³³⁶

In many cases, states may by treaty permit each other's warships to exercise certain powers of visit and search as regards vessels flying the flags of the signatories to the treaty.³³⁷ For example, most of the agreements in the nineteenth century relating to the suppression of the slave trade provided that warships of the parties to the agreements could search and sometimes detain vessels suspected of being involved in the trade, where such vessels were flying the flags of the treaty states. The Convention for the Protection of Submarine Cables of 1884 gave the warships of contracting states the right to stop and ascertain the nationality of merchant ships that were suspected of infringing the terms of the Convention, and other agreements dealing with matters as diverse as arms trading and liquor smuggling contained like powers. Until recently, the primary focus of such activities in fact concerned drug trafficking.³³⁸ However, the question of the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) is today of great importance.³³⁹ This issue has been tackled by a mix of international treaties, bilateral treaties, international co-operation and Security Council action. Building on the Security Council statement in 1992 identifying the proliferation of WMD as a threat to international peace and security,³⁴⁰ the US announced the Proliferation Security Initiative in May 2003. A statement of Interdiction Principles agreed by participants in the initiative in September 2003 provided for the undertaking of effective measures to interdict the transfer or transport of WMD, their delivery systems and related materials to and from states and non-state actors of proliferation concern. Such measures were to include the boarding and

³³⁶ See e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 218 ff.

³³⁷ This falls within article 110, which notes that 'Except where acts of interference derive from powers conferred by treaty...'

³³⁸ See the UK-US Agreement on Vessels Trafficking in Drugs, 1981 and *US v. Biermann*, 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 99; 84 ILR, p. 206. See also e.g. the Vienna Convention Against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances, 1988 and the Council of Europe Agreement on Illicit Traffic by Sea, 1995. But see as to enforcement of the Straddling Stocks Convention, below, p. 623.

³³⁹ See e.g. M. Byers, 'Policing the High Seas: The Proliferation Security Initiative', 98 AJIL, 2004, p. 526; D. Joyner, 'The Proliferation Security Initiative: Nonproliferation, Counterproliferation and International Law', 30 Yale JIL, 2005, p. 507; D. Guilfoyle, 'Interdicting Vessels to Enforce the Common Interest: Maritime Countermeasures and the Use of Force', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 69, and Guilfoyle, 'Maritime Interdiction of Weapons of Mass Destruction', 12 *Journal of Conflict and Security Law*, 2007, p. 1. See also the statement of the UK Foreign Office Minister of 25 April 2006, UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 773-4.

³⁴⁰ S/23500, 31 January 1992.

search of any vessel flying the flag of one of the participants, with their consent, in internal waters, territorial seas or beyond the territorial seas, where such vessel is reasonably suspected of carrying WMD materials to or from states or non-state actors of proliferation concern.³⁴¹ In addition, the US has signed a number of bilateral WMD interdiction agreements, providing for consensual boarding of vessels.³⁴²

In a further development, Security Council resolution 1540 (2004) required all states *inter alia* to prohibit and criminalise the transfer of WMD and delivery systems to non-state actors, although there is no direct reference to interdiction.³⁴³ In addition, a Protocol adopted in 2005 to the Convention on the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Maritime Navigation provides essentially for the criminalisation of knowingly transporting WMD and related materials by sea and provides for enforcement by interdiction on the high seas.³⁴⁴

Pollution³⁴⁵

Article 24 of the 1958 Convention on the High Seas called on states to draw up regulations to prevent the pollution of the seas by the discharge of oil or the dumping of radioactive waste, while article 1 of the Convention on the Fishing and Conservation of the Living Resources of the High Seas, of the same year, declared that all states had the duty to adopt, or co-operate with other states in adopting, such measures as may be necessary for the conservation of the living resources of the high seas. Although these provisions have not proved an unqualified success, they have been reinforced by an interlocking series of additional agreements covering the environmental protection of the seas.

The International Convention relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, signed in 1969 and in force as of June 1975, provides that the parties to the Convention may take such measures on the high seas:

³⁴¹ Participants include the US, UK, Australia, Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Singapore, Spain and Turkey: see Guilfoyle, 'Maritime Interdiction', p. 12.

³⁴² Including with Liberia, Panama, Croatia, Cyprus and Belize: see Guilfoyle, 'Maritime Interdiction', p. 22.

³⁴³ See below, chapter 22, pp. 1208 and 1240.

³⁴⁴ Guilfoyle, 'Maritime Interdiction', pp. 28 ff.

³⁴⁵ See Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 15; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 15, and O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. II, chapter 25. See also below, chapter 15.

as may be necessary to prevent, mitigate or eliminate grave and imminent danger to their coastline or related interests from pollution or threat of pollution of the sea by oil, following upon a maritime casualty or acts related to such a casualty, which may reasonably be expected to result in major harmful consequences.

This provision came as a result of the *Torrey Canyon* incident in 1967³⁴⁶ in which a Liberian tanker foundered off the Cornish coast, spilling massive quantities of oil and polluting large stretches of the UK and French coastlines. As a last resort to prevent further pollution, British aircraft bombed the tanker and set it ablaze. The Convention on Intervention on the High Seas provided for action to be taken to end threats to the coasts of states, while the Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, also signed in 1969 and which came into effect in June 1975, stipulated that the owners of ships causing oil pollution damage were to be liable to pay compensation.

The latter agreement was supplemented in 1971 by the Convention on the Establishment of an International Fund for Compensation for Oil Pollution Damage which sought to provide for compensation in circumstances not covered by the 1969 Convention and aid shipowners in their additional financial obligations.

These agreements are only a small part of the web of treaties covering the preservation of the sea environment. Other examples include the 1954 Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Seas by Oil, with its series of amendments designed to ban offensive discharges; the 1972 Oslo Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping from Ships and Aircraft and the subsequent London Convention on the Dumping of Wastes at Sea later the same year; the 1973 Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships; and the 1974 Paris Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution from Land-Based Sources.³⁴⁷

Under the 1982 Convention nearly fifty articles are devoted to the protection of the marine environment. Flag states still retain the competence to legislate for their ships, but certain minimum standards are imposed

³⁴⁶ 6 ILM, 1967, p. 480. See also the *Amoco Cadiz* incident in 1978, e.g. Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 241, and the *Aegean Sea* and *Braer* incidents in 1992–3, e.g. G. Plant, “Safer Ships, Cleaner Seas”: Lord Donaldson’s Inquiry, UK Government’s Response and International Law’, 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 939.

³⁴⁷ Also a variety of regional and bilateral agreements have been signed, Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, pp. 263–4.

upon them.³⁴⁸ It is also provided that states are responsible for the fulfilment of their international obligations concerning the protection and preservation of the marine environment and are liable in accordance with international law. States must also ensure that recourse is available in accordance with their legal systems for prompt and adequate compensation or other relief regarding damage caused by pollution of the marine environment by persons under their jurisdiction.³⁴⁹

States are under a basic obligation to protect and preserve the marine environment.³⁵⁰ Article 194 of the 1982 Convention also provides that:

1. States shall take, individually or jointly as appropriate, all measures consistent with this Convention that are necessary to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from any source, using for this purpose the best practicable means at their disposal and in accordance with their capabilities, and they shall endeavour to harmonise their policies in this connection.

2. States shall take all measures necessary to ensure that activities under their jurisdiction or control are so conducted as not to cause damage by pollution to other States and their environment, and that pollution arising from incidents or activities under their jurisdiction or control does not spread beyond the areas where they exercise sovereign rights in accordance with this Convention.

3. The measures taken pursuant to this Part shall deal with all sources of pollution of the marine environment. These measures shall include, *inter alia*, those designed to minimise to the fullest possible extent:

- (a) the release of toxic, harmful, or noxious substances, especially those which are persistent, from land-based sources, from or through the atmosphere or by dumping;
- (b) pollution from vessels, in particular measures for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, preventing intentional and unintentional discharges, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of vessels;
- (c) pollution from installations and devices used in exploitation of the natural resources of the seabed and subsoil, in particular measures for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of such installations or devices;

³⁴⁸ See article 211. See also generally articles 192–237, covering *inter alia* global and regional co-operation, technical assistance, monitoring and environmental assessment, and the development of the enforcement of international and domestic law preventing pollution.

³⁴⁹ Article 235. ³⁵⁰ Article 192.

- (d) pollution from other installations and devices operating in the marine environment, in particular for preventing accidents and dealing with emergencies, ensuring the safety of operations at sea, and regulating the design, construction, equipment, operation and manning of such installations or devices.

4. In taking measures to prevent, reduce or control pollution of the marine environment, states shall refrain from unjustifiable interference with activities carried out by other states in the exercise of their rights and in pursuance of their duties in conformity with this Convention.³⁵¹

Straddling stocks³⁵²

The freedom to fish on the high seas is one of the fundamental freedoms of the high seas, but it is not total or absolute.³⁵³ The development of

³⁵¹ See also the Mox case, the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea, Provisional Measures Order of 3 December 2001, www.itlos.org/start2_en.html; the OSPAR award of 2 July 2003, see www.pca-cpa.org/upload/files/OSPAR%20Award.pdf; the arbitral tribunal's suspension of proceedings, Order No. 3 of 24 June 2003 and Order No. 4 of 14 November 2003, see www.pca-cpa.org/upload/files/MOX%20Order%20no3.pdf and www.pca-cpa.org/upload/files/MOX%20Order%20No4.pdf and 126 ILR, pp. 257 ff. and 310 ff. See also the decision of the European Court of Justice of 30 May 2006, Case C-459/03, *Commission v. Ireland*, 45 ILM, 2006, p. 1074, where the Court found that by instituting proceedings against the UK under the Law of the Sea Convention dispute settlement mechanisms, Ireland had breached its obligations under articles 10 and 292 of the European Community Treaty and articles 192 and 193 of the European Atomic Energy Treaty.

³⁵² See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 226; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 305; F. Orrego Vicuña, *The Changing International Law of High Seas Fisheries*, Cambridge, 1999; W. T. Burke, *The New International Law of Fisheries*, Oxford, 1994; H. Gherari, 'L'Accord de 4 août 1995 sur les Stocks Chevauchants et les Stocks de Poisson Grands Migrateurs', 100 RGDIP, 1996, p. 367; B. Kwiatowska, 'Creeping Jurisdiction beyond 200 Miles in the Light of the 1982 Law of the Sea Convention and State Practice', 22 *Ocean Development and International Law*, 1991, p. 167; E. Miles and W. T. Burke, 'Pressures on the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea 1982 Arising from New Fisheries Conflicts: The Problem of Straddling Stocks', 20 *Ocean Development and International Law*, 1989, p. 352; E. Meltzer, 'Global Overview of Straddling and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks: The Nonsustainable Nature of High Seas Fisheries', 25 *Ocean Development and International Law*, 1994, p. 256; P. G. G. Davies and C. Redgwell, 'The International Legal Regulation of Straddling Fish Stocks', 67 BYIL, 1996, p. 199; D. H. Anderson, 'The Straddling Stocks Agreement of 1995 – An Initial Assessment', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 463, and D. Freestone and Z. Makuch, 'The New International Environmental Law of Fisheries: The 1995 United Nations Straddling Stocks Agreement', 7 *Yearbook of International Environmental Law*, 1996, p. 3.

³⁵³ See article 2 of the High Seas Convention, 1958 and articles 1 and 6 of the Geneva Convention on Fishing and Conservation of the Living Resources of the High Seas, 1958, and article 116 of the 1982 Convention. In particular, the freedom to fish is subject to a state's treaty obligations, to the interests and rights of coastal states and to the requirements of

exclusive economic zones has meant that the area of high seas has shrunk appreciably, so that the bulk of fish stocks are now to be found within the economic zones of coastal states. In addition, the interests of such coastal states have extended to impinge more clearly upon the regulation of the high seas.

Article 56(1) of the 1982 Convention provides that coastal states have sovereign rights over their economic zones for the purpose of exploring and exploiting, conserving and managing the fish stocks of the zones concerned. Such rights are accompanied by duties as to conservation and management measures in order to ensure that the fish stocks in exclusive economic zones are not endangered by over-exploitation and that such stocks are maintained at, or restored to, levels which can produce the maximum sustainable yield.³⁵⁴ Where the same stock or stocks of associated species occur within the exclusive economic zones of two or more coastal states, these states shall seek either directly or through appropriate subregional or regional organisations to agree upon the measures necessary to co-ordinate and ensure the conservation and development of such stocks.³⁵⁵ Article 116(b) of the 1982 Convention states that the freedom to fish on the high seas is subject to the rights and duties as well as the interests of coastal states as detailed above, while the 1982 Convention lays down a general obligation upon states to co-operate in taking such measures for their respective nationals as may be necessary for the conservation of the living resources of the high seas and a variety of criteria are laid down for the purpose of determining the allowable catch and establishing other conservation measures.³⁵⁶

A particular problem is raised with regard to straddling stocks, that is stocks of fish that straddle both exclusive economic zones and high seas, for if the latter were not in some way regulated, fishery stocks regularly present in the exclusive economic zone could be depleted by virtue of unrestricted

conservation. See generally on international fisheries law, www.oceanlaw.net/ and above, p. 581, with regard to the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case.

³⁵⁴ Article 61. See also article 62.

³⁵⁵ Article 63(1). This is without prejudice to the other provisions of this Part of the 1982 Convention.

³⁵⁶ See articles 117–20. A series of provisions in the 1982 Convention apply with regard to particular species, e.g. article 64 concerning highly migratory species (such as tuna); article 65 concerning marine mammals (such as whales, for which see also the work of the International Whaling Commission); article 66 concerning anadromous species (such as salmon); article 67 concerning catadromous species (such as eels) and article 68 concerning sedentary species (which are regarded as part of the natural resources of a coastal state's continental shelf: see article 77(4)).

fishing of those stocks while they were present on the high seas. Article 63(2) of the 1982 Convention stipulates that where the same stock or stocks of associated species occur both within the exclusive economic zone and in an area beyond and adjacent to the zone (i.e. the high seas), the coastal state and the states fishing for such stocks in the adjacent area shall seek, either directly or through appropriate subregional or regional organisations, to agree upon the measures necessary for the conservation of these stocks in the adjacent area.

The provisions in the 1982 Convention, however, were not deemed to be fully comprehensive³⁵⁷ and, as problems of straddling stocks grew more apparent,³⁵⁸ a Straddling Stocks Conference was set up in 1993 and produced an agreement two years later. The Agreement emphasises the need to conserve and manage straddling fish stocks and highly migratory species and calls in particular for the application of the precautionary approach.³⁵⁹ Coastal states and states fishing on the high seas shall pursue co-operation in relation to straddling and highly migratory fish stocks either directly or through appropriate subregional or regional organisations and shall enter into consultations in good faith and without delay at the request of any interested state with a view to establishing appropriate arrangements to ensure conservation and management of the stocks.³⁶⁰ Much emphasis is placed upon subregional and regional organisations and article 10 provides that in fulfilling their obligation to co-operate through such organisations or arrangements, states shall *inter alia* agree on measures to ensure the long-term sustainability of straddling and highly migratory fish stocks and agree as appropriate upon participatory rights such as allocations of allowable catch or levels of fishing effort. In particular, the establishment of co-operative mechanisms for effective

³⁵⁷ See e.g. Burke, *New International Law of Fisheries*, pp. 348 ff., and B. Kwiatowska, 'The High Seas Fisheries Regime: At a Point of No Return?', 8 *International Journal of Marine and Coastal Law*, 1993, p. 327.

³⁵⁸ E.g. with regard to the Grand Banks of Newfoundland, the Bering Sea, the Barents Sea, the Sea of Okhotsk and off Patagonia and the Falklands, see Anderson, 'Straddling Stocks Agreement', p. 463.

³⁵⁹ See articles 5 and 6 of the Straddling Stocks Agreement. See also, with regard to this approach, below, chapter 15, p. 868. See generally on the agreement which came into force on 11 December 2001, www.un.org/Depts/los/convention_agreements/convention_overview_fish_stocks.htm.

³⁶⁰ Article 8. Note that by article 1(3) the agreement 'applies *mutatis mutandis* to other fishing entities whose vessels fish on the high seas'. This was intended to refer to Taiwan: see e.g. Orrego Vicuña, *High Seas Fisheries*, p. 139, and Anderson, 'Straddling Stocks Agreement', p. 468.

monitoring, control, surveillance and enforcement, decision-making procedures facilitating the adoption of such measures of conservation and management, and the promotion of the peaceful settlement of disputes are called for. The focus in terms of implementation is upon the flag state. Article 18 provides that flag states shall take such measures as may be necessary to ensure that their vessels comply with subregional and regional conservation and management measures, while article 19 provides that flag states must enforce such measures irrespective of where violations occur and investigate immediately any alleged violation. Article 21 deals specifically with subregional and regional co-operation in enforcement and provides that in any area of the high seas covered by such an organisation or arrangement, a state party which is also a member or participant in such an organisation or arrangement may board and inspect fishing vessels flying the flag of another state party to the Agreement. This applies whether that state party is or is not a member of or a participant in such a subregional or regional organisation or arrangement. The boarding and visiting powers are for the purpose of ensuring compliance with the conservation and management measures established by the organisation or arrangement. Where, following a boarding and inspection, there are clear grounds for believing that a vessel has engaged in activities contrary to the relevant conservation and management measures, the inspecting state shall secure evidence and promptly notify the flag state. The flag state must respond within three working days and either fulfil its investigation and enforcement obligations under article 19 or authorise the inspecting state to investigate. In the latter case, the flag state must then take enforcement action or authorise the inspecting state to take such action. Where there are clear grounds for believing that the vessel has committed a serious violation and the flag state has failed to respond or take action as required, the inspectors may remain on board and secure evidence and may require the master to bring the vessel into the nearest appropriate port.³⁶¹ Article 23 provides that a port state has the right and duty to take measures in accordance with international law to promote the effectiveness of subregional, regional and global conservation and management measures.³⁶²

One of the major regional organisations existing in this area is the North Atlantic Fisheries Organisation (NAFO), which came into being

³⁶¹ See also article 22.

³⁶² Note that by article 17(3) the fishing entities referred to in article 1(3) may be requested to co-operate with the organisations or arrangements in question.

following the Northwest Atlantic Fisheries Convention, 1978. The organisation has established a Fisheries Commission with responsibility for conservation measures in the area covered by this Convention. The European Community is a party to the Convention, although it has objected on occasions to NAFO's total catch quotas and the share-out of such quotas among state parties. In particular, a dispute developed with regard to the share-out of Greenland halibut, following upon a decision by NAFO to reduce the EC share of this fishery in 1995.³⁶³ The EC formally objected to this decision using NAFO procedures and established its own halibut quota, which was in excess of the NAFO quota. In May 1994, Canada had amended its Coastal Fisheries Protection Act 1985 in order to enable it to take action to prevent further destruction of straddling stocks and by virtue of which any vessel from any nation fishing at variance with good conservation rules could be rendered subject to Canadian action. In early 1995, regulations were issued in order to protect Greenland halibut outside Canada's 200-mile limit from overfishing. On 9 March 1995, Canadian officers boarded a Spanish vessel fishing on the high seas on the Grand Banks some 245 miles off the Canadian coast. The captain was arrested and the vessel seized and towed to a Canadian harbour. Spain commenced an application before the International Court, but this failed on jurisdictional grounds.³⁶⁴ In April 1995, an agreement between the EC and Canada was reached, under which the EC obtained an increased quota for Greenland halibut and Canada stayed charges against the vessel and agreed to repeal the provisions of the regulation banning Spanish and Portuguese vessels from fishing in the NAFO regulatory area. Improved control and enforcement procedures were also agreed.³⁶⁵ Problems have also arisen in other areas: for example, the 'Donut Hole', a part of the high seas in the Bering Sea surrounded by the exclusive economic zones of Russia and the US,³⁶⁶ and the 'Peanut Hole', a part of the high seas in the Sea of Okhotsk surrounded by Russia's economic zone. In 2001, the Convention on the Conservation and Management of Highly Migratory Fish Stocks in the Western and Central Pacific Ocean was signed. This agreement establishes a Commission to determine *inter alia* the

³⁶³ See e.g. P. G. G. Davies, 'The EC/Canadian Fisheries Dispute in the Northwest Atlantic', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 927.

³⁶⁴ ICJ Reports, 1998, p. 432.

³⁶⁵ See European Commission Press Release, WE/15/95, 20 April 1995.

³⁶⁶ See the Convention on the Conservation and Management of Pollock Resources in the Central Bering Sea, 1994.

total allowable catch within the area and to adopt standards for fishing operations.³⁶⁷

The international seabed³⁶⁸

Introduction

In recent years the degree of wealth contained beneath the high seas has become more and more apparent. It is estimated that some 175 billion dry tonnes of mineable manganese nodules are in existence, scattered over some 15 per cent of the seabed. This far exceeds the land-based reserves of the metals involved (primarily manganese, nickel, copper and cobalt).³⁶⁹ While this source of mineral wealth is of great potential importance to the developed nations possessing or soon to possess the technical capacity to mine such nodules, it poses severe problems for developing states, particularly those who are dependent upon the export earnings of a few categories of minerals. Zaire, for example, accounts for over one third of total cobalt production, while Gabon and India each account for around 8 per cent of total manganese production.³⁷⁰ By the early 1990s, there appeared to be six major deep sea mining consortia with the participation of numerous American, Japanese, Canadian, British, Belgian, German, Dutch and French companies.³⁷¹ The technology to mine is at an advanced stage and some basic investment has been made, although it is unlikely that there will be considerable mining activity for several years to come.

³⁶⁷ Note also the existence of other agreements with regard to specific species of fish, e.g. the International Convention for the Conservation of Atlantic Tuna, 1966; the Convention for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, 1993 and the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission Agreement, 1993.

³⁶⁸ See e.g. Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 17; O'Connell, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, chapter 12; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 12; E. Luard, *The Control of the Seabed*, Oxford, 1974; B. Buzan, *Seabed Politics*, New York, 1976; T. G. Kronmiller, *The Lawfulness of Deep Seabed Mining*, New York, 2 vols., 1980; E. D. Brown, *Sea-Bed Energy and Mineral Resources and the Law of the Sea*, London, 3 vols., 1986; A. M. Post, *Deepsea Mining and the Law of the Sea*, The Hague, 1983; A. D. Henchoz, *Règlementations Nationales et Internationales de l'Exploration et de l'Exploitation des Grands Fonds Marins*, Zurich, 1992; Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 812, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 1210.

³⁶⁹ See e.g. *Seabed Mineral Resource Development*, UN Dept. of International Economic and Social Affairs, 1980, ST/ESA/107, pp. 1–2.

³⁷⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 3. Zaire is now called the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

³⁷¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 10–12.

In 1969, the UN General Assembly adopted resolution 2574 (XXIV) calling for a moratorium on deep seabed activities and a year later a Declaration of Principles Governing the Seabed and Ocean Floor and the Subsoil Thereof, beyond the Limits of National Jurisdiction ('the Area') was adopted. This provided that the Area and its resources were the 'common heritage of mankind' and could not be appropriated, and that no rights at all could be acquired over it except in conformity with an international regime to be established to govern its exploration and exploitation.

The 1982 Law of the Sea Convention (Part XI)

Under the Convention, the Area³⁷² and its resources are deemed to be the common heritage of mankind and no sovereign or other rights may be recognised. Minerals recovered from the Area in accordance with the Convention are alienable, however.³⁷³ Activities in the Area are to be carried out for the benefit of mankind as a whole by or on behalf of the International Seabed Authority (the Authority) established under the Convention.³⁷⁴ The Authority is to provide for the equitable sharing of such benefits.³⁷⁵ Activities in the Area are to be carried out under article 153 by the Enterprise (i.e. the organ of the Authority established as its operating arm) and by states parties or state enterprises, or persons possessing the nationality of state parties or effectively controlled by them, acting in association with the Authority. The latter 'qualified applicants' will be required to submit formal written plans of work to be approved by the Council after review by the Legal and Technical Commission.³⁷⁶

This plan of work is to specify two sites of equal estimated commercial value. The Authority may then approve a plan of work relating to one of these sites and designate the other as a 'reserved site' which may only

³⁷² Defined in article 1 as the 'seabed and ocean floor and subsoil thereof beyond national jurisdiction'. This would start at the outer edge of the continental margin or at least at a distance of 200 nautical miles from the baselines.

³⁷³ Articles 136 and 137.

³⁷⁴ See below, p. 633. Note that certain activities in the Area do not need the consent of the Authority, e.g. pipeline and cable laying and scientific research not concerning seabed resources: see articles 112, 143 and 256.

³⁷⁵ Article 140. See also article 150.

³⁷⁶ See also Annex III, articles 3 and 4. Highly controversial requirements for transfer of technology are also included, *ibid.*, article 5.

be exploited by the Authority, via the Enterprise or in association with developing states.³⁷⁷

Resolution I of the Conference established a Preparatory Commission to make arrangements for the operation of the Authority and the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea.³⁷⁸

Resolution II of the Conference made special provision for eight 'pioneer investors', four from France, Japan, India and the USSR and four from Belgium, Canada, the Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, the UK and the USA, and possibly others from developing states, to be given pioneer status. Each investor must have invested at least \$30 million in preparation for seabed mining, at least 10 per cent of which must be invested in a specific site. Sponsoring states must provide certification that this has happened.³⁷⁹ Such pioneer investors are to be able to carry out exploration activities pending entry into force of the Convention with priority over the other applicants (apart from the Enterprise) in the allocation of exploitation contracts.³⁸⁰ India, France, Japan and the USSR were registered as pioneer investors in 1987 on behalf of various consortia.³⁸¹ China was registered as a pioneer investor in March 1991,³⁸² while the multinational Interoceanmetal Joint Organisation was registered as a pioneer investor in August that year.³⁸³ Several sites have

³⁷⁷ *Ibid.*, articles 8 and 9. The production policies of the Authority are detailed in article 151 of the Convention.

³⁷⁸ 21(4) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, pp. 44 ff. See also 25 ILM, 1986, p. 1329 and 26 ILM, 1987, p. 1725.

³⁷⁹ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 230.

³⁸⁰ See 21(4) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, pp. 45–7.

³⁸¹ See LOS/PCN/97–99 (1987). See also the Understanding of 5 September 1986 making various changes to the rules regarding pioneer operations, including extending the deadline by which the \$30 million investment had to be made and establishing a Group of Technical Experts, LOS/PCN/L.41/Rev.1. See also Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 448–54. An Understanding of 30 August 1990 dealt with training costs, transfer of technology, expenditure on exploration and the development of a mine site for the Authority, *ibid.*, pp. 454–5, while an Understanding of 22 February 1991 dealt with the avoidance of overlapping claims signed by China on the one hand and seven potential pioneer investor states on the other (Belgium, Canada, Italy, the Netherlands, Germany, the UK and the US), *ibid.*, p. 455.

³⁸² Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 455.

³⁸³ *Ibid.*, p. 456. This organisation consisted of Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, Poland, the Russian Federation and Cuba. See, for the full list of registered pioneer investors, www.isa.org.jm/en/default.htm. The first fifteen-year contracts for exploration for polymetallic nodules in the deep seabed were signed at the headquarters of the International Seabed Authority in Jamaica in March 2001, *ibid.*

been earmarked for the Authority, all on the Clarion–Clipperton Ridge in the North-Eastern Equatorial Pacific.

The regime for the deep seabed, however, was opposed by the United States in particular and, as a consequence, it voted against the adoption of the 1982 Convention. The UK also declared that it would not sign the Convention until a satisfactory regime for deep seabed mining was established.³⁸⁴ Concern was particularly expressed regarding the failure to provide assured access to seabed minerals, lack of a proportionate voice in decision-making for countries most affected, and the problems that would be caused by not permitting the free play of market forces in the development of seabed resources.³⁸⁵

The Reciprocating States Regime

As a result of developments in the Conference on the Law of the Sea, many states began to enact domestic legislation with the aim of establishing an interim framework for exploration and exploitation of the seabed pending an acceptable international solution. The UK Deep Sea Mining (Temporary Provisions) Act 1981, for example, provided for the granting of exploration licences (but not in respect of a period before 1 July 1981) and exploitation licences (but not for a period before 1 January 1988).³⁸⁶

A 1982 Agreement³⁸⁷ called for consultations to avoid overlapping claims under national legislation and for arbitration to resolve any dispute.³⁸⁸ The Preparatory Commission, however, adopted a declaration in 1985 stating that any claim, agreement or action regarding the Area and its resources undertaken outside the Commission itself, which was

³⁸⁴ See e.g. *The Times*, 16 February 1984, p. 4, and 33 HC Deb., col. 404, 2 December 1982.

³⁸⁵ See e.g. the US delegate, *UN Chronicle*, June 1982, p. 16.

³⁸⁶ The Act also provided for a Deep Sea Mining Levy to be paid by the holder of an exploitation licence into a Deep Sea Mining Fund and for mutual recognition of licences. A number of countries adopted similar, unilateral legislation, e.g. the US in 1980, 19 ILM, 1980, p. 1003; 20 ILM, 1981, p. 1228 and 21 ILM, 1982, p. 867; West Germany, 20 ILM, 1981, p. 393 and 21 ILM, 1982, p. 832; the USSR, 21 ILM, 1982, p. 551; France, 21 ILM, 1982, p. 808, and Japan, 22 ILM, 1983, p. 102: see Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, pp. 456 ff.

³⁸⁷ The 1982 Agreement Concerning Interim Arrangements Relating to Polymetallic Nodules of the Deep Seabed (France, Federal Republic of Germany, UK, US), 21 ILM, 1982, p. 950.

³⁸⁸ See also the Provisional Understanding Regarding Deep Seabed Mining (Belgium, France, Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, Japan, Netherlands, UK, US), 23 ILM, 1984, p. 1354.

incompatible with the 1982 Convention and its related resolutions, 'shall not be recognised'.³⁸⁹

*The 1994 Agreement on Implementation of the Seabed Provisions of the Convention on the Law of the Sea*³⁹⁰

Attempts to ensure the universality of the 1982 Convention system and thus prevent the development of conflicting deep seabed regimes began in earnest in 1990 in consultations sponsored by the UN Secretary-General, with more flexibility being shown by states.³⁹¹ Eventually, the 1994 Agreement emerged. The states parties undertake in article 1 to implement Part XI of the 1982 Convention in accordance with the Agreement. By article 2, the Agreement and Part XI are to be interpreted and applied together as a single instrument and, in the event of any inconsistency, the provisions in the former document are to prevail. States can only express their consent to become bound by the Agreement if they at the same time or previously express their consent to be bound by the Convention. Thus, conflicting systems operating with regard to the seabed became impossible. The Agreement also provides in article 7 for provisional application if it had not come into force on 16 November 1994 (the date on which the Convention came into force).³⁹² The Agreement was thus able to be provisionally applied by states that had consented to its adoption in the General Assembly, unless they had otherwise notified the depositary (the UN Secretary-General) in writing; by states and entities signing the agreement, unless they had otherwise notified the depositary in writing; by states and entities which had consented to its provisional application

³⁸⁹ See *Law of the Sea Bulletin*, no. 6, October 1985, p. 85. But see the 1987 Agreement on the Resolution of Practical Problems, 26 ILM, 1987, p. 1502. This was an attempt by the states involved to prevent overlapping claims.

³⁹⁰ 33 ILM, 1994, p. 1309. See also B. H. Oxman, 'The 1994 Agreement and the Convention', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 687; L. B. Sohn, 'International Law Implications of the 1994 Agreement', *ibid.*, p. 696; J. I. Charney, 'US Provisional Application of the 1994 Deep Seabed Agreement', *ibid.*, p. 705; D. H. Anderson, 'Further Efforts to Ensure Universal Participation in the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 886, and Report of the UN Secretary-General, A/50/713, 1 November 1995.

³⁹¹ See e.g. D. H. Anderson, 'Efforts to Ensure Universal Participation in the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea', 42 ICLQ, 1993, p. 654, and Brown, *International Law of the Sea*, vol. I, p. 462.

³⁹² The Agreement came into force on 28 July 1996, being thirty days after the date on which forty states had established their consent to be bound under procedures detailed in articles 4 and 5.

by so notifying the depositary in writing; and by states which had acceded to the Agreement.

The Annex to the Agreement addresses a number of issues raised by developed states. In particular, it is provided that all organs and bodies established under the Convention and Agreement are to be cost-effective and based upon an evolutionary approach taking into account the functional needs of such organs or bodies; a variety of institutional arrangements are detailed with regard to the work of the International Seabed Authority (section 1); the work of the Enterprise is to be carried out initially by the Secretariat of the Authority and the Enterprise shall conduct its initial deep seabed mining operations through joint ventures that accord with sound commercial principles (section 2); decision-making in the Assembly and Council of the Authority is to comply with a series of specific rules³⁹³ (section 3); the Assembly upon the recommendation of the Council may conduct a review at any time of matters referred to in article 155(1) of the Convention, notwithstanding the provisions of that article as a whole (section 4); and transfer of technology to the Enterprise and developing states is to be sought on fair and reasonable commercial terms on the open market or through joint-venture arrangements (section 5).³⁹⁴

*The International Seabed Authority*³⁹⁵

The Authority is the autonomous organisation which the states parties to the 1982 Convention have agreed is to organise and control activities in the Area, particularly with a view to administering its resources.³⁹⁶ It became fully operational in June 1996. The principal organs of the Authority are the Assembly, the Council and the Secretariat. Also to be noted are the Legal and Technical Commission and the Finance Committee. The

³⁹³ Note especially the increase in the role of the Council vis-à-vis the Assembly with regard to general policy matters. Note also that the Agreement guarantees a seat on the Council for the state 'on the date of entry into force of the Convention having the largest economy in terms of gross domestic product', i.e. the US (section 3, para. 15a), and establishes groups of states on the Council of states with particular interests (section 3, paras. 10 and 15).

³⁹⁴ Thus, the provisions in the Convention on the mandatory transfer of technology are not to apply (section 5, para. 2). Note also that provisions in the Convention regarding production ceilings and limitations, participation in commodity agreements, etc. are not to apply (section 6, para. 7).

³⁹⁵ Details of the Authority may be found at www.isa.org.jm/en/default.htm.

³⁹⁶ Article 157.

Assembly is composed of all members of the Authority, i.e. all states parties to the Convention, and at July 2007 there were 155.³⁹⁷ The Assembly is the supreme organ of the Authority with powers to elect *inter alia* the Council, Secretary-General and the members of the Governing Boards of the Enterprise and its Director-General, to establish subsidiary organs and to assess the contributions of members to the administrative budget. It has the power to establish the general policy of the Authority.³⁹⁸ The Council consists of thirty-six members elected by the Assembly in accordance with certain criteria.³⁹⁹ The Council is the executive organ of the Authority and has the power to establish the specific policies to be pursued by the Authority.⁴⁰⁰ The Council has two organs, an Economic Planning Commission and a Legal and Technical Commission.⁴⁰¹ The

³⁹⁷ See www.isa.org.jm/en/about/members/states. See also article 159(1).

³⁹⁸ Article 160. However, the effect of the 1994 Agreement on Implementation has been to reduce the power of the Assembly in favour of the Council by providing in Annex, section 3 that decisions of the Assembly in areas for which the Council also has competence or on any administrative, budgetary or financial matter be based upon the recommendations of the Council, and if these recommendations are not accepted, the matter has to be returned to the Council. Further, this section also provides that, as a general rule, decision-making in the organs of the Authority should be by consensus.

³⁹⁹ Article 161(1) provides for members to be elected in the following order: (a) four members from among those states parties which, during the last five years for which statistics are available, have either consumed more than 2 per cent of total world consumption or have had net imports of more than 2 per cent of total world imports of the commodities produced from the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, and in any case one state from the Eastern European (Socialist) region, as well as the largest consumer; (b) four members from among the eight states parties which have the largest investments in preparation for and in the conduct of activities in the Area, either directly or through their nationals, including at least one state from the Eastern European (Socialist) region; (c) four members from among states parties which, on the basis of production in areas under their jurisdiction, are major net exporters of the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, including at least two developing states whose exports of such minerals have a substantial bearing upon their economies; (d) six members from among developing states parties, representing special interests. The special interests to be represented shall include those of states with large populations, states which are landlocked or geographically disadvantaged, states which are major importers of the categories of minerals to be derived from the Area, states which are potential producers of such minerals, and least developed states; (e) eighteen members elected according to the principle of ensuring an equitable geographical distribution of seats in the Council as a whole, provided that each geographical region shall have at least one member elected under this subparagraph. For this purpose, the geographical regions shall be Africa, Asia, Eastern European (Socialist), Latin America and Western European and Others.

⁴⁰⁰ Article 162. In some cases, Council decisions have to be adopted by consensus and in others by two-thirds majority vote: see article 161.

⁴⁰¹ Articles 163–5. As to the secretariat, see articles 166–9.

organ of the Authority actually carrying out activities in the Area is the Enterprise.⁴⁰²

Settlement of disputes⁴⁰³

The 1982 Convention contains detailed and complex provisions regarding the resolution of law of the sea disputes. Part XV, section 1 lays down the general provisions. Article 279 expresses the fundamental obligation to settle disputes peacefully in accordance with article 2(3) of the UN Charter and using the means indicated in article 33,⁴⁰⁴ but the parties are able to choose methods other than those specified in the Convention.⁴⁰⁵ States of the European Union, for example, have agreed to submit fisheries disputes amongst member states to the European Court of Justice under the EC Treaty.

Article 283 of the Convention provides that where a dispute arises, the parties are to proceed 'expeditiously to an exchange of views regarding its settlement by negotiation or other peaceful means' and article 284 states that the parties may resort if they wish to conciliation procedures, in which case a conciliation commission will be established, whose report will be non-binding.⁴⁰⁶ Where no settlement is reached by means freely chosen by the parties, the compulsory procedures laid down in Part XV, section 2 become operative.⁴⁰⁷ Upon signing, ratifying or acceding to the Convention, or at any time thereafter, a state may choose one of the following means of dispute settlement: the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea,⁴⁰⁸ the International Court of Justice,⁴⁰⁹ an arbitral tribunal

⁴⁰² See article 170 and Annex IV.

⁴⁰³ See e.g. N. Klein, *Dispute Settlement in the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea*, Cambridge, 2005; J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, chapter 8; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 19; J. Collier and A. V. Lowe, *The Settlement of Disputes in International Law*, Oxford, 1999, chapter 5; A. E. Boyle, 'Dispute Settlement and the Law of the Sea Convention: Problems of Fragmentation and Jurisdiction', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 37; R. Ranjeva, 'Le Règlement des Différends' in *Traité du Nouveau Droit de la Mer* (eds. R. J. Dupuy and D. Vignes), Paris, 1985, p. 1105; J. P. Quéneudec, 'Le Choix des Procédures de Règlement des Différends selon la Convention des NU sur le Droit de la Mer' in *Mélanges Virally*, Paris, 1991, p. 383, and A. O. Adede, *The System for the Settlement of Disputes under the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea*, Dordrecht, 1987.

⁴⁰⁴ See further below, chapter 18. ⁴⁰⁵ Article 280.

⁴⁰⁶ See Annex V, Section I. ⁴⁰⁷ See articles 286 and 287.

⁴⁰⁸ Annex VI. ⁴⁰⁹ See below, chapter 19.

under Annex VII⁴¹⁰ or a special arbitral tribunal under Annex VIII for specific disputes.⁴¹¹

There are some exceptions to the obligation to submit a dispute to one of these mechanisms in the absence of a freely chosen resolution process by the parties. Article 297(1) provides that disputes concerning the exercise by a coastal state of its sovereign rights or jurisdiction in the exclusive economic zone may only be subject to the compulsory settlement procedure in particular cases.⁴¹² Article 297(2) provides that while disputes concerning marine scientific research shall be settled in accordance with section 2 of the Convention, the coastal state is not obliged to accept the submission to such compulsory settlement of any dispute arising out of the exercise by the coastal state of a right or discretion to regulate, authorise and conduct marine scientific research in its economic zone or on its continental shelf or a decision to order suspension or cessation of such research.⁴¹³ Article 297(3) provides similarly that while generally disputes with regard to fisheries shall be settled in accordance with section 2, the coastal state shall not be obliged to accept the submission to compulsory settlement of any dispute relating to its sovereign rights with respect to the

⁴¹⁰ This procedure covers both disputes concerning states and those concerning international organisations, such as the European Union. A five-person tribunal is chosen by the parties from a panel to which each state party may make up to four nominations. Annex VII arbitrations have included *Australia and New Zealand v. Japan (Southern Bluefin Tuna)*, Award of 4 August 2000, 119 ILR, p. 508; *Ireland v. UK (Mox)* 126 ILR, pp. 257 ff. and 310 ff.; *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, Award of 11 April 2006 and *Guyana v. Suriname*, Award of 17 September 2007. The latter cases may be found on the Permanent Court of Arbitration website, www.pca-cpa.org.

⁴¹¹ I.e. relating to fisheries, protection and preservation of the marine environment, marine scientific research, or navigation, including pollution from vessels and by dumping: see article 1, Annex VIII. The nomination process is slightly different from Annex VII situations.

⁴¹² That is, with regard to an allegation that a coastal state has acted in contravention of the provisions of the Convention in regard to the freedoms and rights of navigation, overflight or the laying of submarine cables and pipelines, or in regard to other internationally lawful uses of the sea specified in article 58; or when it is alleged that a state in exercising these freedoms, rights or uses has acted in contravention of the Convention or of laws or regulations adopted by the coastal state in conformity with the Convention and other rules of international law not incompatible with the Convention; or when it is alleged that a coastal state has acted in contravention of specified international rules and standards for the protection and preservation of the marine environment which are applicable to the coastal state and which have been established by the Convention or through a competent international organisation or diplomatic conference in accordance with the Convention.

⁴¹³ In such a case, the dispute is to be submitted to the compulsory conciliation provisions under Annex V, section 2, provided that the conciliation commission shall not call in question the exercise by the coastal state of its discretion to designate specific areas as referred to in article 246, paragraph 6, or of its discretion to withhold consent in accordance with article 246, paragraph 5.

living resources in the exclusive economic zone or their exercise, including its discretionary powers for determining the allowable catch, its harvesting capacity, the allocation of surpluses to other states and the terms and conditions established in its conservation and management laws and regulations.⁴¹⁴ There are also three situations with regard to which states may opt out of the compulsory settlement procedures.⁴¹⁵

The Convention also provides for a Seabed Disputes Chamber of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea,⁴¹⁶ which under article 187 shall have jurisdiction with regard to matters concerning the Deep Seabed and the International Seabed Authority. By article 188, inter-state disputes concerning the exploitation of the international seabed are to be submitted only to the Seabed Disputes Chamber.

One problem that has arisen has been where a dispute arises under one or more conventions including the 1982 Law of the Sea Convention, and the impact that this may have upon dispute settlement. In the *Southern Bluefin Tuna* case between Australia and New Zealand on the one hand and Japan on the other,⁴¹⁷ the arbitration tribunal had to consider the effect of the 1993 Convention for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, the binding settlement procedures of which require the consent of all parties to the dispute. However, these states were also parties to the 1982 Convention, the provisions of which concerning highly migratory fish stocks (which included the southern bluefin tuna) referred to compulsory arbitration.⁴¹⁸ The parties were unable to agree within the Commission established by the 1993 Convention and the applicants invoked the compulsory arbitration provisions of the 1982 Convention. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea indicated provisional measures⁴¹⁹ and the matter went to arbitration. Japan argued that the dispute was one under the 1993 Convention so that its consensual settlement procedures were applicable⁴²⁰ and not the compulsory procedures under the 1982 Convention. The tribunal held that the dispute was one common to both Conventions and that there was only one dispute. Article 281(1) of the 1982 Convention provides essentially for the priority of procedures agreed to by the parties, so that the 1982 Convention's provisions would

⁴¹⁴ In such a case, the dispute in certain cases is to be submitted to the compulsory conciliation provisions under Annex V, section 2: see further article 297(3)(b).

⁴¹⁵ Disputes concerning delimitation and claims to historic waters; disputes concerning military and law enforcement activities, and disputes in respect of which the Security Council is exercising its functions: see article 298(1).

⁴¹⁶ See Annex VI, section 4. ⁴¹⁷ 119 ILR, p. 508. ⁴¹⁸ See Part XV and Annex VII.

⁴¹⁹ 117 ILR, p. 148. The International Tribunal called for arbitration and stated that the latter tribunal would *prima facie* have jurisdiction.

⁴²⁰ See article 16 of the 1993 Convention.

only apply where no settlement had been reached using the other means agreed by the parties and the agreement between the parties does not exclude any further procedure. Since article 16 of the 1993 Convention fell within the category of procedures agreed by the parties and thus within article 281(1), the intent and thus the consequence of article 16 was to remove proceedings under that provision from the reach of the compulsory procedures of the 1982 Convention.⁴²¹ Accordingly, the extent to which the compulsory procedures of the 1982 Convention apply depends on the circumstances and, in particular, the existence and nature of any other agreement between the parties relating to peaceful settlement.⁴²²

Outside the framework of the 1982 Convention, states may adopt a variety of means of resolving disputes, ranging from negotiations, inquiries,⁴²³ conciliation⁴²⁴ and arbitration⁴²⁵ to submission to the International Court of Justice.⁴²⁶

*The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea*⁴²⁷

The Tribunal was established as one of the dispute settlement mechanisms under Part XV of the Law of the Sea Convention. The Statute of the

⁴²¹ See 119 ILR, pp. 549–52.

⁴²² See also B. Oxman, 'Complementary Agreements and Compulsory Jurisdiction', 95 AJIL, 2001, p. 277. Note that the Arbitral Tribunal established under Annex VII of the Convention in the *Mox* case, between Ireland and the UK, suspended hearings on 13 June 2003 due to uncertainty as to whether relevant provisions of the Convention fell within the competence of the European Community or member states: see Order No. 3 of 24 June 2003 and Order No. 4 of 14 November 2003, 126 ILR, pp. 257 ff. and 310 ff. See also the decision of the European Court of Justice of 30 May 2006, Case C-459/03, *Commission v. Ireland*.

⁴²³ E.g. the *Red Crusader* incident, 35 ILR, p. 485. See further on these mechanisms, below, chapters 18 and 19.

⁴²⁴ E.g. the *Jan Mayen Island Continental Shelf* dispute, 20 ILM, 1981, p. 797; 62 ILR, p. 108.

⁴²⁵ E.g. the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438; 54 ILR, p. 6.

⁴²⁶ E.g. the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 84; the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 16; 41 ILR, p. 29 and others referred to in this chapter.

⁴²⁷ See e.g. P. C. Rao and R. Khan, *The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea: Law and Practice*, The Hague, 2001; P. C. Rao and P. Gautier, *Rules of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea: A Commentary*, The Hague, 2006; M. M. Marsit, *Le Tribunal du Droit de la Mer*, Paris, 1999; A. E. Boyle, 'The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea and the Settlement of Disputes' in *The Changing World of International Law in the 21st Century* (eds. J. Norton, M. Andenas and M. Footer), The Hague, 1998; D. Anderson, 'The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea', in *Remedies in International Law* (eds. M. D. Evans and S. V. Konstanidis), Oxford, 1998, p. 71; J. Collier and V. Lowe, *The Settlement of Disputes in International Law*, Oxford, 1999, chapter 5; Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, chapter 19; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 8; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 912, and G. Eiriksson, *The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea*, The Hague, 2000. See also www.itlos.org.

Tribunal⁴²⁸ provides that it shall be composed of twenty-one independent members enjoying the highest reputation for fairness and integrity and of recognised competence in the field of the law of the sea, while the representation of the principal legal systems of the world and equitable geographical distribution are to be assured.⁴²⁹ Judges are elected for nine-year terms by the states parties to the Convention.⁴³⁰ The Statute also allows for the appointment of ad hoc judges. Article 17 provides that where the Tribunal includes a member of the nationality of one of the parties to the dispute, any other party may choose a person to participate as a member of the Tribunal. Where in a dispute neither or none of the parties have a judge of the same nationality, they may choose a person to participate as a member of the Tribunal.⁴³¹ The Tribunal may also, at the request of a party or of its own motion, decide to select no fewer than two scientific or technical experts to sit with it, but without the right to vote.⁴³²

The Tribunal, based in Hamburg, is open to states parties to the Convention⁴³³ and to entities other than states parties in accordance with Part XI of the Convention, concerning the International Seabed Area, thereby including the International Seabed Authority, state enterprises and natural and juridical persons in certain circumstances,⁴³⁴ or in any case submitted pursuant to any other agreement conferring jurisdiction on the Tribunal which is accepted by all the parties to that case.⁴³⁵ The jurisdiction of the Tribunal comprises all disputes and all applications submitted to it in accordance with the Convention and all matters specifically provided for in any other agreement which confers jurisdiction on the Tribunal.⁴³⁶ The provisions of the Convention and other rules of international law not

⁴²⁸ Annex VI of the Convention.

⁴²⁹ Article 2 of the Statute. A quorum of eleven judges is required to constitute the Tribunal, article 13.

⁴³⁰ Article 5.

⁴³¹ See also articles 8, 9 and 18–22 of the Rules of the Tribunal 1997 (as amended in March and September 2001). Note, in particular, that under article 22 of the Rules, a non-state entity may choose an ad hoc judge in certain circumstances.

⁴³² Article 289 of the Convention and article 15 of the Rules.

⁴³³ Article 292(1) of the Convention and article 20(1) of the Statute. This would include the European Community (now Union): see article 1(2) of the Convention.

⁴³⁴ See in particular articles 153 and 187 of the Convention. See also A. Serdy, 'Bringing Taiwan into the International Fisheries Fold: The Legal Personality of a Fishing Entity', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 183.

⁴³⁵ Article 20(2) of the Statute.

⁴³⁶ Article 21. Where the parties to a treaty in force covering law of the sea matters so agree, any disputes concerning the interpretation or application of such treaty may be submitted to the Tribunal, article 22.

incompatible with the Convention constitute the applicable law of the Tribunal.⁴³⁷

Pursuant to Part XI, section 5 of the Convention and article 14 of the Statute, a Seabed Disputes Chamber of the Tribunal has been formed with jurisdiction to hear disputes regarding activities in the international seabed area. The Chamber is composed of eleven judges representing the principal legal systems of the world and with equitable geographical distribution.⁴³⁸ Ad hoc chambers consisting of three judges may be established if a party to a dispute so requests. The composition is determined by the Seabed Disputes Chamber with the approval of the parties to the dispute.⁴³⁹ The Chamber shall apply the provisions of the Convention and other rules of international law not incompatible with the Convention,⁴⁴⁰ together with the rules, regulation and procedures of the International Seabed Authority adopted in accordance with the Convention and the terms of contracts concerning activities in the International Seabed Area in matters relating to those contracts.⁴⁴¹ The Seabed Disputes Chamber has jurisdiction to give advisory opinions at the request of the Assembly or the Council of the International Seabed Authority on legal questions arising within the scope of their activities and such opinions shall be given as a matter of urgency.⁴⁴² In addition, the Tribunal may create such chambers of three or more persons as it considers necessary⁴⁴³ and a five-person Chamber of Summary Procedure.⁴⁴⁴

⁴³⁷ Article 293 of the Convention and article 23 of the Statute.

⁴³⁸ See article 35. The Chamber shall be open to the states parties, the International Seabed Authority and the other entities referred to in Part XI, section 5 of the Convention. Ad hoc judges may be chosen: see articles 23–5 of the Rules.

⁴³⁹ Articles 187 and 188 of the Convention and article 36 of the Statute. See also article 27 of the Rules.

⁴⁴⁰ Article 293 of the Convention.

⁴⁴¹ Article 38 of the Statute. The decisions of the Seabed Chamber shall be enforceable in the territories of the states parties in the same manner as judgments or orders of the highest court of the state party in whose territory the enforcement is sought, article 39. Articles 115–23 of the Rules deal with procedural issues in contentious cases before the Chamber.

⁴⁴² See articles 159(10) and 191. See also articles 130–7 of the Rules.

⁴⁴³ See article 15(1). A Chamber for Fisheries Disputes (1997), a Chamber for Marine Environment Disputes (1997) and a Chamber for Maritime Delimitation Disputes (2007) have been formed under this provision. Under article 15(2), the Tribunal may form a chamber for dealing with a specific dispute if the parties so wish and a Chamber was formed in December 2000 to deal with the *Swordfish Stocks* dispute between Chile and the European Community. See also articles 29 and 30 and 107–9 of the Rules.

⁴⁴⁴ Article 15(3). This may hear cases on an accelerated procedure basis and provisional measures applications when the full Tribunal is not sitting: see article 25(2). See also article 28 of the Rules.

The Tribunal⁴⁴⁵ and the Seabed Disputes Chamber have the power to prescribe provisional measures in accordance with article 290 of the Convention.⁴⁴⁶ Article 290 provides *inter alia* that if a dispute has been duly submitted to the Tribunal, which considers that *prima facie* it has jurisdiction, any provisional measures considered appropriate under the circumstances to preserve the respective rights of the parties to the dispute or to prevent serious harm to the marine environment pending the final decision may be prescribed. Such provisional measures may be modified or revoked as soon as the circumstances justifying them have changed or ceased to exist. Further, the Tribunal or, with respect to activities in the International Seabed Area, the Seabed Disputes Chamber, may prescribe, modify or revoke provisional measures if it considers that *prima facie* the tribunal which is to be constituted would have jurisdiction and that the urgency of the situation so requires. Once constituted, the tribunal to which the dispute has been submitted may modify, revoke or affirm those provisional measures. The Convention also makes it clear that provisional measures are binding, requiring the parties to the dispute to comply promptly with any provisional measures prescribed under article 290.⁴⁴⁷

Where a party does not appear before the Tribunal, the other party may request that the Tribunal continue the hearings and reach a decision.⁴⁴⁸ Before so doing, the Tribunal must satisfy itself not only that it has jurisdiction, but also that the claim is well founded in fact and law.⁴⁴⁹ A party may present a counter-claim in its counter-memorial, provided that it is directly concerned with the subject-matter of the claim of the other party and that it comes within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal.⁴⁵⁰ The Statute provides also for third-party intervention, where a state party considers that it has an interest of a legal nature which may be affected by the decision in any dispute. It is for the Tribunal to decide on this request and, if

⁴⁴⁵ See also the Resolution on Internal Judicial Practice, 31 October 1997, and articles 40–2 of the Rules.

⁴⁴⁶ Article 25(1) of the Statute. See also articles 89–95 of the Rules. See e.g. S. Rosenne, *Provisional Measures in International Law: The International Court of Justice and the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea*, The Hague, 2004.

⁴⁴⁷ See article 290(6) of the Convention. Article 95(1) of the Rules declares that each party is required to submit to the Tribunal a report and information on compliance with any provisional measures prescribed.

⁴⁴⁸ See generally Part III of the Rules concerning the procedure of the Tribunal. As to preliminary proceedings and preliminary objections, see article 294 of the Convention and articles 96 and 97 of the Rules.

⁴⁴⁹ Article 28. ⁴⁵⁰ See article 98 of the Rules.

such a request is granted, the decision of the Tribunal in the dispute shall be binding upon the intervening state party in so far as it relates to matters in respect of which that state party intervened.⁴⁵¹ This is different from the equivalent provision relating to the International Court of Justice and thus should avoid the anomalous position of the non-party intervenor.⁴⁵² There is, however, a right to intervene in cases where the interpretation or application of the Convention is in question.⁴⁵³ Decisions of the Tribunal are final and binding as between the parties to the dispute.⁴⁵⁴

The Tribunal also has jurisdiction to give advisory opinions on a legal question if an international agreement related to the purposes of the Convention specifically provides for the submission to the Tribunal of a request for such an opinion.⁴⁵⁵

The Tribunal has heard a number of cases since its first case in 1997. Most of these cases have concerned article 292 of the Convention which provides that where a state party has detained a vessel flying the flag of another state party and has not complied with the prompt release requirement upon payment of a reasonable bond or other financial security, the question of release from detention may be submitted to the Tribunal.⁴⁵⁶ In the *Camouco* case,⁴⁵⁷ for example, the Tribunal discussed the scope of the article and held that it would not be logical to read into it the requirement of exhaustion of local remedies. Article 292 provided for an independent remedy and no limitation should be read into it that would have the effect of defeating its very object and purpose.⁴⁵⁸ The Tribunal found a violation of article 292 in the case of the *Volga*, where it was held that the bond set for the release of the vessel in question, while reasonable in terms of the financial condition, was not reasonable in that the non-financial conditions set down by the Respondent with regard to the vessel carrying a vessel monitoring system (VMS) and the submission of information about the owner of the ship could not be considered as

⁴⁵¹ Article 31. See also articles 99–104 of the Rules. ⁴⁵² See below, chapter 19, p. 1097.

⁴⁵³ Article 32.

⁴⁵⁴ Article 33. In the case of a dispute as to the meaning or scope of the decision, the Tribunal shall construe it upon the request of any party. See also articles 126–9 of the Rules.

⁴⁵⁵ Article 138 of the Rules. In such cases, articles 130–7 of the Rules concerning the giving of advisory opinions by the Seabed Disputes Chamber shall apply *mutatis mutandis*.

⁴⁵⁶ See e.g. Y. Tanaka, 'Prompt Release in the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea: Some Reflections on the Itlos Jurisprudence', 51 NILR, 2004, p. 237, and D. R. Rothwell and T. Stephens, 'Illegal Southern Ocean Fishing and Prompt Release: Balancing Coastal and Flag State Rights and Interests', 53 ICLQ, 2004, p. 171.

⁴⁵⁷ Case No. 5, judgment of 7 February 2000. See 125 ILR, p. 164.

⁴⁵⁸ *Ibid.*, paras. 57 and 58.

components of the bond or other financial security for the purposes of article 292 of the Convention. It was also held that the circumstances of the seizure of the vessel were not relevant to a consideration of a breach of article 292, while the proceeds of the catch were irrelevant to the bond issue.⁴⁵⁹ In the *Hoshinmaru (Japan v. Russia)* case, the Tribunal held that it was not reasonable that a bond should be set on the basis of the maximum penalties applicable to the owner and the Master, nor was it reasonable that the bond should be calculated on the basis of the confiscation of the vessel, given the circumstances of the case. In setting a reasonable bond for the release of the vessel the Tribunal stated that the amount of the bond should be proportionate to the gravity of the alleged offences.⁴⁶⁰

The *Mox* case⁴⁶¹ was a case where the parties (Ireland and the UK) appeared before the Tribunal at the provisional measures stage under article 290(5), while later moving to an arbitral tribunal for the merits. The Tribunal prescribed provisional measures requiring the parties to exchange information regarding the possible consequences for the Irish Sea arising out of the commissioning of the Mox nuclear plant, to monitor the risks or the effects of the operation of the plant and to devise, as appropriate, measures to prevent any pollution of the marine environment which might result from the operation of the plant. In so doing, the Tribunal specifically mentioned statements made by the UK concerning *inter alia* transportation of radioactive material, which the Tribunal characterised as ‘assurances’ and which it placed ‘on record’.⁴⁶²

The *Saiga (No. 2) (Saint Vincent and the Grenadines v. Guinea)* case⁴⁶³ has been one of the most important decisions to date made by the Tribunal.⁴⁶⁴ Issues addressed included the impermissibility of extending customs jurisdiction into the exclusive economic zone, the failure to comply with the rules underpinning the right of hot pursuit under article 111 of the Law of the Sea Convention, the use of force and admissibility issues such as the registration of the vessel and the need for a ‘genuine link’.⁴⁶⁵

⁴⁵⁹ 126 ILR, p. 433. See also as to prompt release issues, the *Juno Trader* 128 ILR, p. 267.

⁴⁶⁰ See www.itlos.org/start2_en.html (6 August 2007).

⁴⁶¹ Case No. 10, Order of 3 December 2001. See 126 ILR, pp. 257 ff. and 310 ff.

⁴⁶² *Ibid.*, paras. 78–80. See also as to provisional measures, the *Land Reclamation (Malaysia v. Singapore)* case, 126 ILR, p. 487.

⁴⁶³ Case No. 2, judgment of 1 July 1999. See 120 ILR, p. 143.

⁴⁶⁴ See e.g. B. H. Oxman and V. Bantz, ‘The M/V “Saiga” (No. 2) (St Vincent and the Grenadines v. Guinea)’, 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 40, and L. de la Fayette, ‘The M/V Saiga (No. 2) Case’, 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 467.

⁴⁶⁵ See above, p. 611.

The Tribunal's part in the *Southern Bluefin Tuna* case⁴⁶⁶ was limited to the grant of provisional measures.⁴⁶⁷ Thereafter the matter went to arbitration.⁴⁶⁸ As far as the Tribunal was concerned, this was the first case applying article 290(5) of the Law of the Sea Convention regarding the grant of provisional measures pending the constitution of an arbitral tribunal to which the dispute had been submitted. The Tribunal thus had to satisfy itself that *prima facie* the arbitral tribunal would have jurisdiction.⁴⁶⁹ This the Tribunal was able to do and the measures it prescribed included setting limits on the annual catches of the fish in question. The Tribunal's judgment in the application for prompt release in the *Grand Prince* case⁴⁷⁰ focused on jurisdiction and, in particular, whether the requirements under article 91 of the Law of the Sea Convention regarding nationality of ships had been fulfilled.⁴⁷¹ The Tribunal emphasised that, like the International Court, it had to satisfy itself that it had jurisdiction to hear the application and thus possessed the right to deal with all aspects of jurisdiction, whether or not they had been expressly raised by the parties.⁴⁷² The Tribunal concluded that the documentary evidence submitted by the applicant failed to establish that it was the flag state of the vessel when the application was made, so that the Tribunal did not have jurisdiction to hear the case.⁴⁷³

Suggestions for further reading

D. Anderson, *Modern Law of the Sea: Selected Essays*, The Hague, 2007

R. Churchill and A. V. Lowe, *The Law of the Sea*, 3rd edn, Manchester, 1999

International Maritime Boundaries (eds. J. I. Charney and L. M. Alexander), Washington, vols. I–III, 1993–8, *ibid.* (eds. J. I. Charney and R. W. Smith), vol. IV, 2002 and *ibid.* (eds. D. A. Colson and R. W. Smith), vol. V, 2005, The Hague

Law of the Sea: Progress and Prospects (eds. D. Freestone, R. Barnes and D. Ong), Oxford, 2006

⁴⁶⁶ Case Nos. 3 and 4, Order of 27 August 1999. See 117 ILR, p. 148.

⁴⁶⁷ See e.g. R. Churchill, 'The Southern Bluefin Tuna Cases', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 979, and B. Kwiatkowska, 'The Southern Bluefin Tuna Cases', 15 *International Journal of Marine and Coastal Law*, 2000, p. 1 and 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 150.

⁴⁶⁸ 119 ILR, p. 508. See e.g. A. E. Boyle, 'The Southern Bluefin Tuna Arbitration', 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 447.

⁴⁶⁹ See the Order, paras. 40 ff.; 117 ILR, pp. 148, 160. See also above, p. 637.

⁴⁷⁰ Case No. 8, judgment of 20 April 2001. See 125 ILR, p. 272.

⁴⁷¹ *Ibid.*, paras. 62 ff. ⁴⁷² *Ibid.*, para. 79. ⁴⁷³ *Ibid.*, para. 93.

Jurisdiction

Jurisdiction concerns the power of the state under international law to regulate or otherwise impact upon people, property and circumstances and reflects the basic principles of state sovereignty, equality of states and non-interference in domestic affairs.¹ Jurisdiction is a vital and indeed central feature of state sovereignty, for it is an exercise of authority which may alter or create or terminate legal relationships and obligations. It may be achieved by means of legislative, executive or judicial action. In each case, the recognised authorities of the state as determined by the legal system of that state perform certain functions permitted them which affect the life around them in various ways. In the UK, Parliament passes binding statutes, the courts make binding decisions and the administrative machinery of government has the power and jurisdiction (or legal authority) to enforce the rules of law. It is particularly necessary to distinguish between the capacity to make law, whether by legislative or executive or judicial action (prescriptive jurisdiction or the jurisdiction to prescribe) and the capacity to ensure compliance with such law whether by executive

¹ See e.g. C. E. Amerasinghe, *Jurisdiction of International Tribunals*, The Hague, 2003; *Universal Jurisdiction: National Courts and the Prosecution of Serious Crimes under International Law* (ed. S. Macedo), Philadelphia, 2004; L. Reydam, *Universal Jurisdiction: International and Municipal Legal Perspectives*, Oxford, 2002; *La Saisine des Jurisdictions Internationales* (eds. H. Ruiz Fabri and J.-M. Sorel), Paris, 2006; Y. Shany, *The Competing Jurisdictions of International Courts and Tribunals*, Oxford, 2003; M. Hirst, *Jurisdiction and the Ambit of the Criminal Law*, Oxford, 2003; M. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction in International Law', 46 BYIL, 1972–3, p. 145; F. A. Mann, 'The Doctrine of Jurisdiction in International Law', 111 HR, 1964, p. 1, and Mann, 'The Doctrine of Jurisdiction in International Law Revisited After Twenty Years', 186 HR, 1984, p. 9; D. W. Bowett, 'Jurisdiction: Changing Problems of Authority over Activities and Resources', 53 BYIL, 1982, p. 1; R. Y. Jennings, 'Extraterritorial Jurisdiction and the United States Antitrust Laws', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 146; *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, pp. 456 ff.; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapters 14 and 15; O. Schachter, *International Law in Theory and Practice*, Dordrecht, 1991, chapter 12, and R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 4. See also *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, 1987, vol. I, part IV.

action or through the courts (enforcement jurisdiction or the jurisdiction to enforce). Jurisdiction, although primarily territorial, may be based on other grounds, for example nationality, while enforcement is restricted by territorial factors.

To give an instance, if a man kills somebody in Britain and then manages to reach the Netherlands, the British courts have jurisdiction to try him, but they cannot enforce it by sending officers to the Netherlands to apprehend him. They must apply to the Dutch authorities for his arrest and dispatch to Britain. If, on the other hand, the murderer remains in Britain then he may be arrested and tried there, even if it becomes apparent that he is a German national. Thus, while prescriptive jurisdiction (or the competence to make law) may be exercised as regards events happening within the territorial limits irrespective of whether or not the actors are nationals, and may be founded on nationality as in the case of a British subject suspected of murder committed abroad who may be tried for the offence in the UK (if he is found in the UK, of course), enforcement jurisdiction is another matter entirely and is essentially restricted to the presence of the suspect in the territorial limits.²

However, there are circumstances in which it may be possible to apprehend a suspected murderer, but the jurisdictional basis is lacking. For example, if a Frenchman has committed a murder in Germany he cannot be tried for it in Britain, notwithstanding his presence in the country, although, of course, both France and Germany may apply for his extradition and return to their respective countries from Britain.

Thus, while jurisdiction is closely linked with territory it is not exclusively so tied. Many states have jurisdiction to try offences that have taken place outside their territory, and in addition certain persons, property and situations are immune from the territorial jurisdiction in spite of being situated or taking place there. Diplomats, for example, have extensive immunity from the laws of the country in which they are working³ and various sovereign acts by states may not be questioned or overturned in the courts of a foreign country.⁴

The whole question of jurisdiction is complex, not least because of the relevance also of constitutional issues and conflict of laws rules. International law tries to set down rules dealing with the limits of a state's exercise

² Reference has also been made to the jurisdiction to adjudicate, whereby persons or things are rendered subject to the process of a state's court system: see *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, p. 232.

³ See below, chapter 13, p. 750. ⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 697.

of governmental functions while conflict of laws (or private international law) will attempt to regulate in a case involving a foreign element whether the particular country has jurisdiction to determine the question, and secondly, if it has, then the rules of which country will be applied in resolving the dispute.

The grounds for the exercise of jurisdiction are not identical in the cases of international law and conflict of laws rules. In the latter case, specific subjects may well be regulated in terms of domicile or residence (for instance as regards the recognition of foreign marriages or divorces) but such grounds would not found jurisdiction where international law matters were concerned.⁵ Although it is by no means impossible or in all cases difficult to keep apart the categories of international law and conflict of laws, nevertheless the often different definitions of jurisdiction involved are a confusing factor.

One should also be aware of the existence of disputes as to jurisdictional competence within the area of constitutional matters. These problems arise in federal court structures, as in the United States, where conflicts as to the extent of authority of particular courts may arise.

While the relative exercise of powers by the legislative, executive and judicial organs of government is a matter for the municipal legal and political system, the extraterritorial application of jurisdiction will depend upon the rules of international law, and in this chapter we shall examine briefly the most important of these rules.

The principle of domestic jurisdiction⁶

It follows from the nature of the sovereignty of states that while a state is supreme internally, that is within its own territorial frontiers, it must not intervene in the domestic affairs of another nation. This duty of non-intervention within the domestic jurisdiction of states provides for the shielding of certain state activities from the regulation of international law. State functions which are regarded as beyond the reach of international legal control and within the exclusive sphere of state management include the setting of conditions for the grant of nationality

⁵ See generally, G. C. Cheshire and P. M. North, *Private International Law*, 13th edn, London, 1999. Questions may also arise as to the conditions required for leave for service abroad: see e.g. *Al-Adsani v. Government of Kuwait and Others* 100 ILR, p. 465.

⁶ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 290 ff., and M. S. Rajan, *United Nations and Domestic Jurisdiction*, 2nd edn, London, 1961. See further above, chapter 4.

and the elaboration of the circumstances in which aliens may enter the country.

However, the influence of international law is beginning to make itself felt in areas hitherto regarded as subject to the state's exclusive jurisdiction. For example, the treatment by a country of its own nationals is now viewed in the context of international human rights regulations, although in practice the effect of this has often been disappointing.⁷

Domestic jurisdiction is a relative concept, in that changing principles of international law have had the effect of limiting and reducing its extent⁸ and in that matters of internal regulation may well have international repercussions and thus fall within the ambit of international law. This latter point has been emphasised by the International Court of Justice. In the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case⁹ it was stressed that:

[a]lthough it is true that the act of delimitation [of territorial waters] is necessarily a unilateral act, because only the coastal state is competent to undertake it, the validity of the delimitation with regard to other states depends upon international law.¹⁰

The principle was also noted in the *Nottebohm* case,¹¹ where the Court remarked that while a state may formulate such rules as it wished regarding the acquisition of nationality, the exercise of diplomatic protection upon the basis of nationality was within the purview of international law. In addition, no state may plead its municipal laws as a justification for the breach of an obligation of international law.¹²

Accordingly, the dividing line between issues firmly within domestic jurisdiction on the one hand, and issues susceptible to international legal regulation on the other, is by no means as inflexible as at first may appear.

Article 2(7) of the UN Charter declares that:

[n]othing contained in the present Charter shall authorise the United Nations to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state or shall require the members to submit such matters to settlement under the present Charter.

⁷ See above, chapters 6 and 7.

⁸ Whether a matter is or is not within the domestic jurisdiction of states is itself a question for international law: see *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, 1923, pp. 7, 23–4; 2 AD, pp. 349, 352.

⁹ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86. ¹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 132; 18 ILR, p. 95.

¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 4, 20–1; 22 ILR, pp. 349, 357. ¹² See above, chapter 4, p. 133.

This paragraph, intended as a practical restatement and reinforcement of domestic jurisdiction, has constantly been reinterpreted in the decades since it was first enunciated. It has certainly not prevented the United Nations from discussing or adopting resolutions relating to the internal policies of member states and the result of over fifty years of practice has been the further restriction and erosion of domestic jurisdiction.

In the late 1940s and 1950s, the European colonial powers fought a losing battle against the United Nations debate and adoption of resolutions concerning the issues of self-determination and independence for their colonies. The involvement of the United Nations in human rights matters is constantly deepening and, until their disappearance, South Africa's domestic policies of apartheid were continually criticised and condemned. The expanding scope of United Nations concern has succeeded in further limiting the extent of the doctrine of domestic jurisdiction.¹³ Nevertheless, the concept does retain validity in recognising the basic fact that state sovereignty within its own territorial limits is the undeniable foundation of international law as it has evolved, and of the world political and legal system.¹⁴

Legislative, executive and judicial jurisdiction

Legislative jurisdiction¹⁵ refers to the supremacy of the constitutionally recognised organs of the state to make binding laws within its territory. Such acts of legislation may extend abroad in certain circumstances.¹⁶ The state has legislative exclusivity in many areas. For example, a state lays down the procedural techniques to be adopted by its various organs, such as courts, but can in no way seek to alter the way in which foreign courts operate. This is so even though an English court might refuse to recognise a judgment of a foreign court on the grounds of manifest bias. An English law cannot then be passed purporting to alter the procedural conditions under which the foreign courts operate.

¹³ See e.g. R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963. See also the view of the British Foreign Secretary on 27 January 1993 that article 2(7) was 'increasingly eroded as humanitarian concerns prevail over the respect for each nation's right to manage or mis-manage its affairs and its subjects', UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 599.

¹⁴ Note also the importance of the doctrine of the exhaustion of domestic remedies: see above, chapter 6, p. 273.

¹⁵ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 179 ff. ¹⁶ See further below, p. 688.

International law accepts that a state may levy taxes against persons not within the territory of that state, so long as there is some kind of real link between the state and the proposed taxpayer, whether it be, for example, nationality or domicile.¹⁷ A state may nationalise foreign-owned property situated within its borders,¹⁸ but it cannot purport to take over foreign-owned property situated abroad. It will be obvious that such a regulation could not be enforced abroad, but the reference here is to the prescriptive jurisdiction, or capacity to pass valid laws.

The question of how far a court will enforce foreign legislation is a complicated one within, basically, the field of conflict of laws, but in practice it is rare for one state to enforce the penal or tax laws of another state.¹⁹

Although legislative supremacy within a state cannot be denied, it may be challenged. A state that adopts laws that are contrary to the provisions of international law, for example as regards the treatment of aliens or foreign property within the country, will render itself liable for a breach of international law on the international scene, and will no doubt find itself faced with protests and other action by the foreign state concerned. It is also possible that a state which abuses the rights it possesses to legislate for its nationals abroad may be guilty of a breach of international law. For example, if France were to order its citizens living abroad to drive only French cars, this would most certainly infringe the sovereignty and independence of the states in which such citizens were residing and would constitute an illegitimate exercise of French legislative jurisdiction.²⁰

Executive jurisdiction relates to the capacity of the state to act within the borders of another state.²¹ Since states are independent of each other and possess territorial sovereignty,²² it follows that generally state

¹⁷ Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 179–80. ¹⁸ See below, chapter 14, p. 827.

¹⁹ See e.g. Cheshire and North, *Private International Law*, chapter 8. English courts in general will not enforce the penal laws of foreign states. It will be for the court to decide what a foreign penal law is. See also *Huntington v. Attrill* [1893] AC 150, and Marshall CJ, *The Antelope* 10 Wheat 123 (1825). As far as tax laws are concerned, see *Government of India v. Taylor* [1955] AC 491; 22 ILR, p. 286. See in addition *Attorney-General of New Zealand v. Ortiz* [1982] 3 All ER 432; 78 ILR, p. 608, particularly Lord Denning, and *ibid.* [1983] 3 All ER 93 (House of Lords); 78 ILR, p. 631. See also *Williams & Humbert v. W & H Trade Marks* [1985] 2 All ER 619 and [1986] 1 All ER 129 (House of Lords); 75 ILR, p. 269, and *Re State of Norway's Application* [1986] 3 WLR 452 and [1989] 1 All ER 745, 760–2 (House of Lords). See also above, p. 186.

²⁰ See Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 36–62. ²¹ See Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', p. 147.

²² See e.g. *Lotus case*, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 18; 4 AD, p. 153, and the *Island of Palmas case*, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 838 (1928); 4 AD, p. 103.

officials may not carry out their functions on foreign soil (in the absence of express consent by the host state)²³ and may not enforce the laws of their state upon foreign territory. It is also contrary to international law for state agents to apprehend persons or property abroad. The seizure of the Nazi criminal Eichmann by Israeli agents in Argentina in 1960 was a clear breach of Argentina's territorial sovereignty and an illegal exercise of Israeli jurisdiction.²⁴ Similarly, the unauthorised entry into a state of military forces of another state is clearly an offence under international law.

Judicial jurisdiction²⁵ concerns the power of the courts of a particular country to try cases in which a foreign factor is present. There are a number of grounds upon which the courts of a state may claim to exercise such jurisdiction. In criminal matters these range from the territorial principle to the universality principle and in civil matters from the mere presence of the defendant in the country to the nationality and domicile principles. It is judicial jurisdiction which forms the most discussed aspect of jurisdiction and criminal questions are the most important manifestation of this.

Civil jurisdiction²⁶

Although jurisdiction in civil matters is enforced in the last resort by the application of the sanctions of criminal law, there are a number of differences between civil and criminal issues in this context.

In general it is fair to say that the exercise of civil jurisdiction has been claimed by states upon far wider grounds than has been the case in criminal matters, and the resultant reaction by other states much more muted.²⁷ This is partly due to the fact that public opinion is far more easily roused where a person is tried abroad for criminal offences than if a person is involved in a civil case.

In common law countries, such as the United States and Britain, the usual basis for jurisdiction in civil cases remains service of a writ upon the defendant within the country, even if the presence of the defendant

²³ This cannot, of course, be taken too far. An official would still be entitled, for example, to sign a contract: see Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', p. 147.

²⁴ See further below, p. 680. ²⁵ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 152 ff.

²⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 170 ff.; Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 49–51, and Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 298. See also Bowett, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 1–4.

²⁷ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 152 ff.

is purely temporary and coincidental.²⁸ In continental European countries on the other hand, the usual ground for jurisdiction is the habitual residence of the defendant in the particular state.

Many countries, for instance the Netherlands, Denmark and Sweden, will allow their courts to exercise jurisdiction where the defendant in any action possesses assets in the state, while in matrimonial cases the commonly accepted ground for the exercise of jurisdiction is the domicile or residence of the party bringing the action.²⁹

In view of, for example, the rarity of diplomatic protests and the relative absence of state discussions, some writers have concluded that customary international law does not prescribe any particular regulations as regards the restriction of courts' jurisdiction in civil matters.³⁰

Criminal jurisdiction³¹

International law permits states to exercise jurisdiction (whether by way of legislation, judicial activity or enforcement) upon a number of grounds.³² There is no obligation to exercise jurisdiction on all, or any particular one, of these grounds. This would be a matter for the domestic system to decide. The importance of these jurisdictional principles is that they are accepted by all states and the international community as being consistent with international law. Conversely, attempts to exercise jurisdiction upon another ground would run the risk of not being accepted by another state.

The territorial principle

The territorial basis for the exercise of jurisdiction reflects one aspect of the sovereignty exercisable by a state in its territorial home, and is the indispensable foundation for the application of the series of legal

²⁸ See e.g. *Maharaneef of Baroda v. Wildenstein* [1972] 2 All ER 689. See also the Civil Jurisdiction and Judgments Act 1982.

²⁹ See, for example, the 1970 Hague Convention on the Recognition of Divorces and Legal Separations.

³⁰ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', p. 177. Cf. Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 49–51, and see also Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 298, and Bowett, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 3–4.

³¹ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 152 ff.; Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 82 ff., and D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. II, pp. 823–31.

³² It was noted in the *Wood Pulp* case that 'the two undisputed bases on which state jurisdiction is founded in international law are territoriality and nationality', [1998] 4 CMLR 901 at 920; 96 ILR, p. 148.

rights that a state possesses.³³ That a country should be able to legislate with regard to activities within its territory and to prosecute for offences committed upon its soil is a logical manifestation of a world order of independent states and is entirely understandable since the authorities of a state are responsible for the conduct of law and the maintenance of good order within that state. It is also highly convenient since in practice the witnesses to the crime will be situated in the country and more often than not the alleged offender will be there too.³⁴

Thus, all crimes committed (or alleged to have been committed) within the territorial jurisdiction of a state may come before the municipal courts and the accused if convicted may be sentenced. This is so even where the offenders are foreign citizens.³⁵ The converse of the concept of territorial jurisdiction is that the courts of one country do not, as a general principle, have jurisdiction with regard to events that have occurred or are occurring in the territory of another state.³⁶ Further, there is a presumption that legislation applies within the territory of the state concerned and not outside.³⁷ One state cannot lay down criminal laws for another in

³³ See Lord Macmillan, *Compañía Naviera Vascongado v. Cristina SS* [1938] AC 485, 496–7; 9 AD, pp. 250, 259. Note also Bowett's view that the 'dynamism and adaptability of the principle in recent years has been quite remarkable', 'Jurisdiction', p. 5, and Marshall CJ in *The Schooner Exchange v. McFaddon* 7 Cranch 116, 136 (1812) to the effect that '[t]he jurisdiction of the nation within its own territory is necessarily exclusive and absolute'. Donaldson LJ also pointed to the general presumption in favour of the territoriality of jurisdiction, *R v. West Yorkshire Coroner, ex parte Smith* [1983] QB 335, 358; 78 ILR, p. 550. See also, for the view that the concept of jurisdiction is essentially territorial, *Banković v. Belgium*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 12 December 2001, paras. 63, 67 and 71; 123 ILR, pp. 110, 111 and 113, and *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26, para. 109, per Lord Brown; 133 ILR, p. 736.

³⁴ See e.g. the Separate Opinion of Judge Guillaume in *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 36; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 92.

³⁵ See e.g. *Holmes v. Bangladesh Binani Corporation* [1989] 1 AC 1112, 1137; 87 ILR, pp. 365, 380–1, per Lord Griffiths and Lord Browne-Wilkinson in *Ex parte Pinochet (No. 3)* [2000] 1 AC 147, 188; 119 ILR, p. 139.

³⁶ See e.g. *Kaunda v. President of South Africa* (CCT 23/04) [2004] ZACC 5 (4 August 2004) and *R v. Cooke* [1998] 2 SCR 597.

³⁷ See as to the UK, e.g. F. Bennion, *Statutory Interpretation*, 4th London, edn, 2002, p. 282. See also *Clark (Inspector of Taxes) v. Oceanic Contractors Inc.* [1983] 2 AC 130, 145, per Lord Scarman; *Al Sabah v. Grupo Torras SA* [2005] UKPC 1, [2005] 2 AC 333, para. 13, per Lord Walker of Gestingthorpe for the Privy Council; *Lawson v. Serco Limited* [2006] UKHL 3, [2006] ICR 250, para. 6, per Lord Hoffmann; *Agassi v. Robinson (Inspector of Taxes)* [2006] UKHL 23, [2006] 1 WLR 1380, paras. 16, 20, per Lord Scott of Foscote and Lord Walker of Gestingthorpe, and *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26, paras. 11 ff. per Lord Bingham. But note that in *Masri v. Consolidated Contractors* [2008] EWCA Civ 303 at para. 31, it was said that, 'nowadays the presumption has little

the absence of consent, nor may it enforce its criminal legislation in the territory of another state in the absence of consent.³⁸

The principal ground for the exercise of criminal jurisdiction is, therefore, territoriality,³⁹ although it is not the only one. There are others, such as nationality, but the majority of criminal prosecutions take place in the territory where the crime has been committed. However, the territorial concept is more extensive than at first appears since it encompasses not only crimes committed wholly on the territory of a state but also crimes in which only part of the offence has occurred in the state: one example being where a person fires a weapon across a frontier killing somebody in the neighbouring state. Both the state where the gun was fired and the state where the injury actually took place have jurisdiction to try the offender, the former under the subjective territorial principle of territoriality and the latter under the objective territorial principle. Of course, which of the states will in the event exercise its jurisdiction will depend upon where the offender is situated, but the point remains that both the state where the offence was commenced and the state where the offence was concluded may validly try the offender.⁴⁰ For example, the Scottish Solicitor General made it clear that Scottish courts had jurisdiction with regard to the alleged bombers of the airplane which exploded over the Scottish town of Lockerbie as the locus of the

force and it is simply a matter of construction'. See also *Société Eram Shipping Co. Ltd v. Cie Internationale de Navigation* [2004] 1AC 260, para. 54 (per Lord Hoffmann) and *Office of Fair Trading v. Lloyds TSB Bank plc* [2007] UKHL 48.

³⁸ See e.g. the Separate Opinion of Judge Guillaume, *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 36; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 92. However, in a situation of belligerent occupation, the occupier may exercise certain criminal enforcement powers with regard to the local population: see the Fourth Geneva Convention on the Protection of Civilian Persons, articles 64–78.

³⁹ See the statement by a Home Office Minister, noting that 'As a general rule, our courts have jurisdiction to try offences that are committed within this country's territory only. This is because generally speaking the Government believes that trials are best conducted in the jurisdiction in which they occurred not least because there are very real difficulties associated with the obtaining of evidence necessary to effectively prosecute here offences that are committed in foreign jurisdictions. The Government have no plans to depart from this general rule', HC Deb., vol. 445 col. 1419, Written Answer, 2 May 2006, UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 756.

⁴⁰ See e.g. the *Lotus* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, pp. 23, 30; 4 AD, pp. 153, 159, and Judge Moore, *ibid.*, p. 73; the Harvard Research Draft Convention on Jurisdiction with Respect to Crime, 29 AJIL, 1935, Supp., p. 480 (article 3), and Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 152–3. See Lord Wilberforce, *DPP v. Doot* [1973] AC 807, 817; 57 ILR, pp. 117, 119 and *R v. Berry* [1984] 3 All ER 1008. See also *Strassheim v. Dailey* 221 US 280 (1911); *US v. Columbia-Colella* 604 F.2d 356 and *US v. Perez-Herrera* 610 F.2d 289.

offences.⁴¹ Such a situation would also apply in cases of offences against immigration regulations and in cases of conspiracy where activities have occurred in each of two, or more, countries.⁴² Accordingly, courts are likely to look at all the circumstances in order to determine in which jurisdiction the substantial or more significant part of the crime in question was committed.⁴³

The nature of territorial sovereignty in relation to criminal acts was examined in the *Lotus* case.⁴⁴ The relevant facts may be summarised as follows. The French steamer, the *Lotus*, was involved in a collision on the high seas with the *Boz-Kourt*, a Turkish collier. The latter vessel sank and eight sailors and passengers died as a result. Because of this the Turkish authorities arrested the French officer of the watch (at the time of the incident) when the *Lotus* reached a Turkish port. The French officer was charged with manslaughter and France protested strongly against this action, alleging that Turkey did not have the jurisdiction to try the offence. The case came before the Permanent Court of International Justice, which was called upon to decide whether there existed an international rule prohibiting the Turkish exercise of jurisdiction.

Because the basis of international law is the existence of sovereign states, the Court regarded it as axiomatic that restrictions upon the

⁴¹ Before the International Court in oral pleadings at the provisional measures phase of the *Lockerbie* case, CR 92/3, pp. 11–12, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 722. The trial of the two accused took place in the Netherlands, but in a facility that was deemed to be a Scottish court, with Scottish judges and lawyers and under Scots law: see e.g. A. Aust, 'Lockerbie: The Other Case', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 278, and for the verdict, see 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 405.

⁴² See e.g. *Board of Trade v. Owen* [1957] AC 602, 634 and *DPP v. Stonehouse* [1977] 2 All ER 909, 916; 73 ILR, p. 252. In *R v. Abu Hamza*, *The Times*, 30 November 2006, the Court of Appeal (Criminal Division) held that it was an offence for a person to incite a foreign national in England and Wales to commit murder abroad. See also the Home Secretary speaking as to the Criminal Justice Bill on 14 April 1993, and noting that the effect of the proposed legislation would be to ensure that where a fraud had a significant connection with the UK, British courts would have jurisdiction, whether or not the final element of the crime occurred within the country, UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, pp. 646–7. See G. Gilbert, 'Crimes Sans Frontières: Jurisdictional Problems in English Law', 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 415, 430 ff. Note also Akehurst, who would restrict the operation of the doctrine so that jurisdiction could only be claimed by the state where the primary effect is felt, 'Jurisdiction', p. 154.

⁴³ See e.g. *La Forest J in Libman v. The Queen* (1985) 21 CCC (3d) 206 and Lord Griffiths in *Somchai Liangsiriprasert v. The United States* [1991] 1 AC 225; 85 ILR, p. 109.

⁴⁴ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927; 4 AD, p. 153. See e.g. Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 33–6, 39, 92–3; J. W. Verzijl, *The Jurisprudence of the World Court*, Leiden, vol. I, 1965, pp. 73–98, and Schachter, 'International Law', p. 250. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 478.

independence of states could not be presumed.⁴⁵ However, a state was not able to exercise its power outside its frontiers in the absence of a permissive rule of international law. But, continued the Court, this did not mean that 'international law prohibits a state from exercising jurisdiction in its own territory, in respect of any case which relates to acts which have taken place abroad and in which it cannot rely on some permissive rule of international law'. In this respect, states had a wide measure of discretion limited only in certain instances by prohibitive rules.⁴⁶ Because of this, countries had adopted a number of different rules extending their jurisdiction beyond the territorial limits so that 'the territoriality of criminal law, therefore, is not an absolute principle of international law and by no means coincides with territorial sovereignty'.⁴⁷ The Court rejected the French claim that the flag state had exclusive jurisdiction over the ship on the high seas, saying that no rule to that effect had emerged in international law, and stated that the damage to the Turkish vessel was equivalent to affecting Turkish territory so as to enable that country to exercise jurisdiction on the objective territorial principle, unrestricted by any rule of international law prohibiting this.⁴⁸

The general pronouncements by the Court leading to the dismissal of the French contentions have been criticised by writers for a number of years, particularly with respect to its philosophical approach in treating states as possessing very wide powers of jurisdiction which could only be restricted by proof of a rule of international law prohibiting the action concerned.⁴⁹ It is widely accepted today that the emphasis lies the other way around.⁵⁰ It should also be noted that the *Lotus* principle as regards collisions at sea has been overturned by article 11(1) of the High Seas Convention, 1958, which emphasised that only the flag state or the state of which the alleged offender was a national has jurisdiction over sailors regarding incidents occurring on the high seas. The territorial principle covers crimes committed not only upon the land territory of the state but also upon the territorial sea and in certain cases upon the contiguous and

⁴⁵ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, pp. 18–19; 4 AD, p. 155.

⁴⁶ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 19; 4 AD, p. 156.

⁴⁷ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 20. ⁴⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 24; 4 AD, p. 158.

⁴⁹ See e.g. G. Fitzmaurice, 'The General Principles of International Law Considered from the Standpoint of the Rule of Law', 92 HR, 1957, pp. 1, 56–7, and H. Lauterpacht, *International Law: Collected Papers*, Cambridge, 1970, vol. I, pp. 488–9.

⁵⁰ See e.g. the *Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 116; 18 ILR, p. 86 and the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 4; 22 ILR, p. 349.

other zones and on the high seas where the state is the flag state of the vessel.⁵¹

As modern communications develop, so states evolve new methods of dealing with new problems. In the case of the Channel Tunnel, for example, providing a land link between the UK and France, these countries entered into an agreement whereby each state was permitted to exercise jurisdiction within the territory of the other. The Protocol concerning Frontier Controls and Policing, Co-operation in Criminal Justice, Public Safety and Mutual Assistance relating to the Channel Fixed Link was signed on 25 November 1991.⁵² Under this Protocol, French and UK frontier control officers are empowered to work in specified parts of one another's territory. These areas are termed 'control zones' and are located at Cheriton, Coquelles, on board through trains and at international railway stations. The frontier control laws and regulations of one state thus apply and may be enforced in the other. In particular, the officers of the adjoining state shall in their exercise of national powers be permitted in the control zone in the host state to detain or arrest persons in accordance with the frontier control laws and regulations of the adjoining state. Article 38(2) of the Protocol provides that within the Fixed Link (i.e. the Tunnel), each state shall have jurisdiction and shall apply their own law when it cannot be ascertained with certainty where an offence has been committed or when an offence committed in the territory of one state is related to an offence committed on the territory of the other state or when an offence has begun in or has been continued in its own territory.⁵³ However, it is also provided that the state which first receives the person suspected of having committed such an offence shall have priority in exercising jurisdiction.

Another example of such cross-state territorial jurisdictional arrangements may be found in the Israel–Jordan Treaty of Peace, 1994. Annex I(b) and (c) of the Treaty, relating to the Naharayim/Baqura Area and the Zofar/Al-Ghamr Area respectively, provides for a special regime on a temporary basis. Although each area itself is recognised as under Jordan's sovereignty, with Israeli private land ownership rights and property

⁵¹ See above, chapter 11.

⁵² The Protocol was brought into force in the UK by the Channel Tunnel (International Arrangements) Order 1993: see e.g. UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 647. See also the Protocol of 29 May 2000, UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 589, and the *Eurotunnel* case, partial award of 30 January 2007, 132 ILR, p. 1.

⁵³ This is in addition to the normal territorial jurisdiction of the states within their own territory up to the frontier in the Tunnel under the sea, article 38(1).

interests, Jordan undertakes to grant unimpeded entry to, exit from, land usage and movement within the area to landowners and to their invitees or employees and not to apply its customs or immigration legislation to such persons. In particular, Jordan undertakes to permit with minimum formality the entry of uniformed Israeli police officers for the purpose of investigating crime or dealing with other incidents solely involving the landowners, their invitees or employees. Jordan undertakes also not to apply its criminal laws to activities in the area involving only Israeli nationals, while Israeli laws applying to the extraterritorial activities of Israelis may be applied to Israelis and their activities in the area. Israel could also take measures in the area to enforce such laws.⁵⁴

Thus although jurisdiction is primarily and predominantly territorial, it is not inevitably and exclusively so and states are free to consent to arrangements whereby jurisdiction is exercised outside the national territory and whereby jurisdiction by other states is exercised within the national territory.⁵⁵

A rather more unusual situation developed with regard to persons detained by the US in Guantanamo Bay Naval Base, situated in a part of the island of Cuba leased to the US pursuant to agreements made in 1903 and 1934. Following the conflict in Afghanistan in 2001 and thereafter, persons were taken to and held in Guantanamo Bay, which the US initially argued lay outside federal jurisdiction, being under US control but not sovereignty.⁵⁶ The Supreme Court, however, in *Rasul v. Bush* held that District Courts did have jurisdiction to hear petitions challenging the legality of detention of foreign nationals who had been detained abroad in connection with an armed conflict and held at Guantanamo Bay.⁵⁷

⁵⁴ See also e.g. the treaties of 1903 and 1977 between the US and Panama concerning jurisdictional rights over the Panama Canal Zone and the NATO Status of Forces Agreement, 1951 regulating the exercise of jurisdiction of NATO forces based in other NATO states. The Boundary Commission in *Eritrea/Ethiopia* noted that it was not unknown for states to locate a checkpoint or customs post in the territory of a neighbouring state, Decision of 13 April 2002, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 112.

⁵⁵ Jurisdiction, and its concomitant international responsibility for acts done in the exercise of that jurisdiction, may also exist on the basis of the acts of officials committed abroad and on the basis of actual control of the territory in question in specific contexts. See e.g. *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 310, 1995, p. 20; 103 ILR, p. 621. For the European Convention on Human Rights, see above, chapter 7 and for international responsibility, see below, chapter 14.

⁵⁶ Relying upon *Johnson v. Eisenträger* 339 US 763 (1950).

⁵⁷ 542 US 466 (2004). Congress then passed the Detainee Treatment Act of 2005, which denied jurisdiction concerning an application for habeas corpus with regard to an alien detainee at Guantanamo Bay. In *Hamdan v. Rumsfeld* 548 US 557, 576–7, the Court

*The nationality principle*⁵⁸

Since every state possesses sovereignty and jurisdictional powers and since every state must consist of a collection of individual human beings, it is essential that a link between the two be legally established. That link connecting the state and the people it includes in its territory is provided by the concept of nationality.⁵⁹

By virtue of nationality, a person becomes entitled to a series of rights ranging from obtaining a valid passport enabling travel abroad to being able to vote. In addition, nationals may be able to undertake various jobs (for example in the diplomatic service) that a non-national may be barred from. Nationals are also entitled to the protection of their state and to various benefits prescribed under international law. On the other hand, states may not mistreat the nationals of other states nor, ordinarily, conscript them into their armed forces, nor prosecute them for crimes committed outside the territory of the particular state.

held this provision inapplicable to pending cases. The Military Commissions Act of 2006 subsequently provided for denial of jurisdiction with regard to detained aliens determined to be an enemy combatant with effect from 11 September 2001, i.e. including applications pending at the time of the adoption of this Act. However, in *Boumediene v. Bush* 553 US – (2008), US Supreme Court, 12 June 2008, Slip Opinion, it was held that the doctrine of habeas corpus did apply, thus permitting applications by detained enemy combatants to the federal courts challenging their detention. Justice Kennedy, writing for the majority, while noting that, ‘In considering both the procedural and substantive standards used to impose detention to prevent acts of terrorism, proper deference must be accorded to the political branches’, declared that, ‘The laws and Constitution are designed to survive, and remain in force, in extraordinary times.’ *Ibid.*, pp. 67 and 70.

⁵⁸ Akehurst, ‘Jurisdiction’, pp. 156–7; Harvard Research Draft Convention on Jurisdiction with Respect to Crime, 29 AJIL, 1935, Supp., pp. 519 ff.; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, DC, 1967, vol. VIII, pp. 1–22, 64–101, 105–13, 119–87; R. Donner, *The Regulation of Nationality in International Law*, 2nd edn, New York, 1995; D. Campbell and J. Fisher, *International Immigration and Nationality Law*, The Hague, 1993; M. J. Verwilghen, ‘Conflits de Nationalité, Plurinationalité et Apatridie’, 277 HR, 1999, p. 9; J. F. Rezek, ‘Le Droit International de la Nationalité’, 198 HR, 1986 III, p. 333; H. Silving, ‘Nationality in Comparative Law’, 5 *American Journal of Comparative Law*, 1956, p. 410, and Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 301 and chapter 19. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, pp. 492 ff., and below, chapter 14, p. 808.

⁵⁹ Note that several instruments provide for a right to a nationality: see e.g. the Universal Declaration on Human Rights, 1948; the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966; the Convention on the Rights of the Child, 1989 and the European Convention on Nationality, 1997. See also A. Grossman, ‘Nationality and the Unrecognised State’, 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 849.

The concept of nationality is important since it determines the benefits to which persons may be entitled and the obligations (such as conscription) which they must perform. The problem is that there is no coherent, accepted definition of nationality in international law and only conflicting descriptions under the different municipal laws of states. Not only that, but the rights and duties attendant upon nationality vary from state to state.

Generally, international law leaves the conditions for the grant of nationality to the domestic jurisdiction of states.

This was the central point in the *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* case.⁶⁰ This concerned a dispute between Britain and France over French nationality decrees which had the effect of giving French nationality to the children of certain British subjects. The Court, which had been requested to give an advisory opinion by the Council of the League of Nations, declared that:

[t]he question of whether a certain matter is or is not solely within the jurisdiction of a state is an essentially relative question, it depends upon the development of international relations. Thus, in the present state of international law, questions of nationality are, in the opinion of this court, in principle within this reserved domain.⁶¹

However, although states may prescribe the conditions for the grant of nationality, international law is relevant, especially where other states are involved. As was emphasised in article 1 of the 1930 Hague Convention on the Conflict of Nationality Laws:

it is for each state to determine under its own law who are its nationals. This law shall be recognised by other states in so far as it is consistent with international conventions, international custom and the principles of law generally recognised with regard to nationality.

The International Court of Justice noted in the *Nottebohm* case⁶² that, according to state practice, nationality was:

a legal bond having as its basis a social fact of attachment, a genuine connection of existence, interests and sentiments, together with the existence of reciprocal rights and duties.

⁶⁰ PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, 1923; 2 AD, p. 349.

⁶¹ PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, 1923, p. 24.

⁶² ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 4, 23; 22 ILR, pp. 349, 360. See also below, p. 813.

It was a legal manifestation of the link between the person and the state granting nationality and a recognition that the person was more closely connected with that state than with any other.⁶³

Since the concept of nationality provides the link between the individual and the benefits of international law, it is worth pointing to some of the basic ideas associated with the concept, particularly with regard to its acquisition.⁶⁴

In general, the two most important principles upon which nationality is founded in states are first by descent from parents who are nationals (*jus sanguinis*) and second by virtue of being born within the territory of the state (*jus soli*).

It is commonly accepted that a child born of nationals of a particular state should be granted the nationality of that state by reason of descent. This idea is particularly utilised in continental European countries, for example, France, Germany and Switzerland, where the child will receive the nationality of his father, although many municipal systems do provide that an illegitimate child will take the nationality of his mother. On the other hand, in common law countries such as Britain and the US the doctrine of the *jus sanguinis* is more restricted, so that where a father has become a national by descent it does not always follow that that fact alone will be sufficient to make the child a national.

The common law countries have tended to adopt the *jus soli* rule, whereby any child born within the territorial limits of the state automatically becomes a national thereof.⁶⁵ The British Nationality Act of 1948, for example, declared that 'every person born within the United Kingdom and Colonies . . . shall be a citizen of the United Kingdom and Colonies by birth'.⁶⁶ There is an exception to this, however, which applies to virtually every country applying the *jus soli* rule, and that is with regard to persons entitled to immunity from the jurisdiction of the state. In other words, the children of diplomatic personnel born within the country do

⁶³ See below, chapter 14, p. 815, as to dual nationality and state responsibility for injuries to aliens.

⁶⁴ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 378; P. Weiss, *Nationality and Statelessness in International Law*, 2nd edn, Germantown, 1979, and H. F. Van Panhuys, *The Role of Nationality in International Law*, Leiden, 1959.

⁶⁵ See e.g. *United States v. Wong Kim Ark* 169 US 649 (1898).

⁶⁶ But see now the British Nationality Act of 1981.

not automatically acquire its nationality.⁶⁷ Precisely how far this exception extends varies from state to state. Some countries provide that this rule applies also to the children of enemy alien fathers⁶⁸ born in areas under enemy occupation.⁶⁹

Nationality may also be acquired by the wives of nationals, although here again the position varies from state to state. Some states provide for the automatic acquisition of the husband's nationality, others for the conditional acquisition of nationality and others merely state that the marriage has no effect as regards nationality. Problems were also caused in the past by the fact that many countries stipulated that a woman marrying a foreigner would thereby lose her nationality.

The Convention of 1957 on the Nationality of Married Women provides that contracting states accept that the marriage of one of their nationals to an alien shall not automatically affect the wife's nationality, although a wife may acquire her husband's nationality by special procedures should she so wish.

It should be noted also that article 9 of the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women, 1979 provides that states parties shall grant women equal rights with men to acquire, change or retain their nationality and that in particular neither marriage to an alien nor change of nationality by the husband during marriage shall automatically change the nationality of the wife, render her stateless or force upon her the nationality of the husband. It is also provided that women shall have equal rights with men with respect to the nationality of their children. As far as children themselves are concerned, article 24(3) of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966 stipulated that every child has the right to acquire a nationality, while this is reaffirmed in article 7 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child, 1989.

Nationality may be obtained by an alien by virtue of a naturalisation process usually involving a minimum period of residence, but the conditions under which this takes place vary considerably from country to country.⁷⁰

⁶⁷ See e.g. *In re Thenault* 47 F.Supp. 952 (1942) and article 12, Convention on Conflict of Nationality Law, 1930. See also article II, Optional Protocol on Acquisition of Nationality (UN Conference on Diplomatic Law), 1961.

⁶⁸ But see *Inglis v. Sailor's Snug Harbour* 3 Peters 99 (1830), US Supreme Court.

⁶⁹ Note the various problems associated with possible extensions of the *jus soli* rule, e.g. regarding births on ships: see Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 379 ff. See also *Lam Mow v. Nagle* 24 F.2d 316 (1928); 4 AD, pp. 295, 296.

⁷⁰ See e.g. Weiss, *Nationality*, p. 101.

Civil jurisdiction, especially as regards matters of personal status, in a number of countries depends upon the nationality of the parties involved. So that, for example, the appropriate matrimonial law in any dispute for a Frenchman anywhere would be French law. However, common law countries tend to base the choice of law in such circumstances upon the law of the state where the individual involved has his permanent home (domicile).

Many countries, particularly those with a legal system based upon the continental European model, claim jurisdiction over crimes committed by their nationals, notwithstanding that the offence may have occurred in the territory of another state.⁷¹ Common law countries tend, however, to restrict the crimes over which they will exercise jurisdiction over their nationals abroad to very serious ones.⁷² In the UK this is generally limited to treason, murder and bigamy committed by British nationals abroad.⁷³ Under section 21 of the Antarctic Act 1994, when a British national does or omits to do anything in Antarctica which would have constituted an offence if committed in the UK, then such person will be deemed to have committed an offence and be liable to be prosecuted and punished if convicted. In addition, the War Crimes Act 1991 provides for

⁷¹ See e.g. Gilbert, 'Crimes', p. 417. See also *Re Gutierrez* 24 ILR, p. 265, *Public Prosecutor v. Antoni* 32 ILR, p. 140 and *Serre et Régnier, Recueil Dalloz Sirey (jurisprudence)*, 1991, p. 395.

⁷² See the statement by a Home Office Minister, noting that 'We have exceptionally, however, assumed extra-territorial jurisdiction over some serious crime, such as murder, where the factors in favour of the ability to prosecute here outweigh those against', HC Deb., vol. 445, col. 1419, Written Answer, 2 May 2006, UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 756. Note, however, the comment by Lord Rodger that 'there can be no objection in principle to Parliament legislating for British citizens outside the United Kingdom, provided that the particular legislation does not offend against the sovereignty of other states', *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26, para. 46; 133 ILR, p. 716.

⁷³ See e.g. the Official Secrets Acts 1911 (s. 10), 1970 (s. 8) and 1989 (s. 15); the Offences Against the Person Act 1861 ss. 9 and 57; the Merchant Shipping Act 1894 s. 686(1) and *R v. Kelly* [1982] AC 665; 77 ILR, p. 284 and the Suppression of Terrorism Act 1978 s. 4. See P. Arnell, 'The Case for Nationality-Based Jurisdiction', 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 955. This has now been extended to cover various sexual offences committed abroad: see the Sexual Offences (Conspiracy and Incitement) Act 1996; the Sex Offenders Act 1997 and the Sexual Offences Act 2003 s. 72, and certain offences of bribery and corruption committed overseas by UK companies or nationals: see the Anti-Terrorism Crime and Security Act 2001, Part 12. Note that in *Skiriotis v. Florida* 313 US 69, 73 (1941); 10 AD, pp. 258, 260, Hughes CJ declared that 'the United States is not debarred by any rule of international law from governing the conduct of its own citizens upon the high seas or even in foreign countries when the rights of other nations or their nationals are not infringed'. See also DUSPIL, 1976, pp. 449–57, regarding legislation to subject US nationals and citizens to US district court jurisdiction for crimes committed outside the US, particularly regarding Antarctica.

jurisdiction against a person who was on 8 March 1990 or subsequently became a British citizen or resident in the UK. Proceedings for murder, manslaughter or culpable homicide may be brought against that person in the UK, irrespective of his nationality at the time of the alleged offence, if the offence was committed during the Second World War in a place that was part of Germany or under German occupation and constituted a violation of the laws and customs of war.⁷⁴ Further, the common law countries have never protested against the extensive use of the nationality principle to found jurisdiction in criminal matters by other states.

It should be finally noted that by virtue of article 91 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea, ships have the nationality of the state whose flag they are entitled to fly. Each state is entitled to fix the conditions for the grant of its nationality to ships, for the registration of ships in its territory and for the right to fly its flag. However, there must be a genuine link between the state and the ship.⁷⁵ By article 17 of the Chicago Convention on International Civil Aviation, 1944, aircraft have the nationality of the state in which they are registered, although the conditions for registration are a matter for domestic law.⁷⁶

*The passive personality principle*⁷⁷

Under this principle, a state may claim jurisdiction to try an individual for offences committed abroad which have affected or will affect nationals of the state.

The leading case on this particular principle is the *Cutting* case in 1886⁷⁸ which concerned the publication in Texas of a statement defamatory of a Mexican by an American citizen. Cutting was arrested while in Mexico and convicted of the offence (a crime under Mexican law) with Mexico maintaining its right to jurisdiction upon the basis of the passive personality principle. The United States strongly protested against this, but there

⁷⁴ See also, with regard to the nationality of ships and aircraft, above, chapter 11, p. 611, and below, p. 677, and as to the nationality of corporations, below, chapter 14, p. 815. See further, as to the nationality of claims, below, chapter 14, p. 808.

⁷⁵ See also article 5 of the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958.

⁷⁶ See article 19.

⁷⁷ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 162–6; Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', pp. 40–1; E. Beckett, 'The Exercise of Criminal Jurisdiction over Foreigners', 6 BYIL, 1925, p. 44 and Beckett, 'Criminal Jurisdiction over Foreigners', 8 BYIL, 1927, p. 108; W. W. Bishop, 'General Course of Public International Law, 1965', 115 HR, 1965, pp. 151, 324, and Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 65. See also the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, pp. 5, 49–57, 304.

⁷⁸ J. B. Moore, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1906, vol. II, p. 228.

was an inconclusive end to the incident, the charges being withdrawn by the injured party.⁷⁹

A strong attack on this principle was made by Judge Moore, in a Dissenting Opinion in the *Lotus* case,⁸⁰ since the Turkish criminal code provided for jurisdiction where harm resulted to a Turkish national. However, the Court did not resolve the issue and concentrated upon the objective territorial jurisdiction principle.⁸¹

The overall opinion has been that the passive personality principle is rather a dubious ground upon which to base claims to jurisdiction under international law and it has been strenuously opposed by the US⁸² and the UK, although a number of states apply it.

However, article 9 of the International Convention against the Taking of Hostages, 1979, in detailing the jurisdictional bases that could be established with regard to the offence, included the national state of a hostage 'if that state considers it appropriate'.⁸³ The possibility of using the passive personality concept was taken up by the US in 1984 in the Comprehensive Crime Control Act⁸⁴ *inter alia* implementing the Convention and in the provision extending the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the US to include '[a]ny place outside the jurisdiction of any nation with respect to an offence by or against a national of the United States'.⁸⁵ In 1986, following the *Achille Lauro* incident,⁸⁶ the US adopted the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Anti-Terrorism Act,⁸⁷ inserting into the criminal

⁷⁹ See *US Foreign Relations*, 1886, p. viii; 1887, p. 757; and 1888, vol. II, p. 1114.

⁸⁰ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, p. 92; 4 AD, p. 153.

⁸¹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 10, 1927, pp. 22–3. See also O'Connell, *International Law*, vol. II, pp. 901–2, and Higgins, *Problems and Process*, pp. 65–6.

⁸² See, for example, US protests to Greece, concerning the service of summonses by Greek Consuls in the US on US nationals involved in accidents with Greek nationals occurring in the United States, DUSPIL, 1973, pp. 197–8 and DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 339–40.

⁸³ See *Rees v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [1986] 2 All ER 321. See generally, J. J. Lambert, *Terrorism and Hostages in International Law*, Cambridge, 1990. See also article 3(1)c of the Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons, 1973 and article 5(1)c of the Convention against Torture, 1984.

⁸⁴ See new section 1203 of the Criminal Code, 18 USC para. 1203, Pub. L. No. 98-473, ch. 19, para. 2002(a), 98 Stat. 1976, 2186.

⁸⁵ Pub. L. No. 98-473, para. 1210, 98 Stat. at 2164. Note also article 689(1) of the French Code of Criminal Procedure adopted in 1975.

⁸⁶ See below, p. 679.

⁸⁷ Pub. L. No. 99-399, tit. XII, para. 1202(a), 100 Stat. 853, 896. See e.g. C. Blakesley, 'Jurisdictional Issues and Conflicts of Jurisdiction' in *Legal Responses to International Terrorism* (ed. M. C. Bassiouni), Charlottesville, 1988. See also article 689 of the French Code of Criminal Procedure 1975.

code a new section which provided for US jurisdiction over homicide and physical violence outside the US where a national of the US is the victim. The section is less sweeping than it appears, since the written certification of the Attorney General is required, before a prosecution may commence by the US, to the effect that the offence was intended to coerce, intimidate or retaliate against a government or a civilian population.

In *US v. Yunis (No. 2)*⁸⁸ the issue concerned the apprehension of a Lebanese citizen by US agents in international waters and his prosecution in the US for alleged involvement in the hijacking of a Jordanian airliner. The only connection between the hijacking and the US was the fact that several American nationals were on that flight. The Court accepted that both the universality principle⁸⁹ and the passive personality principle provided an appropriate basis for jurisdiction in the case. It was stated that although the latter principle was the most controversial of the jurisdictional principles in international law, 'the international community recognises its legitimacy'.⁹⁰ It was pointed out that although the US had historically opposed the passive personality principle, it had been accepted by the US and the international community in recent years in the sphere of terrorist and other internationally condemned crimes.⁹¹ Judges Higgins, Kooijmans and Buergenthal in their Joint Separate Opinion in the *Congo v. Belgium (Arrest Warrant)* case noted that in this particular context, the passive personality principle 'today meets with relatively little opposition'.⁹²

*The protective principle*⁹³

This principle provides that states may exercise jurisdiction over aliens who have committed an act abroad which is deemed prejudicial to the

⁸⁸ 681 F.Supp. 896 (1988); 82 ILR, p. 344. See also *US v. Yunis (No. 3)* 924 F.2d 1086, 1091; 88 ILR, pp. 176, 181.

⁸⁹ See below, p. 668. ⁹⁰ 681 F.Supp. 896, 901; 82 ILR, p. 349.

⁹¹ 681 F.Supp. 896, 902; 82 ILR, p. 350. Note that a comment to paragraph 402 of the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, vol. I, p. 240, states that the passive personality principle 'is increasingly accepted as applied to terrorist and other organised attacks on a state's nationals by reason of their nationality, or to assassinations of a state's diplomatic representatives or other officials'. See also *US v. Benitez* 741 F.2d 1312, 1316 (1984), cert. denied, 471 US 1137, 105 S. Ct. 2679 (1985).

⁹² ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 63, 76–7; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 118, 132.

⁹³ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 157–9; Harvard Research, pp. 543–63, and M. Sahovic and W. W. Bishop, 'The Authority of the State: Its Range with Respect to Persons and Places' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, pp. 311, 362–5. See also M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and V. Vlasic, *Law and Public Order in Space*, New Haven, 1963, pp. 699–701.

security of the particular state concerned. It is a well-established concept, although there are uncertainties as to how far it extends in practice and particularly which acts are included within its net.⁹⁴

The principle is justifiable on the basis of protection of a state's vital interests, since the alien might not be committing an offence under the law of the country where he is residing and extradition might be refused if it encompassed political offences. However, it is clear that it is a principle that can easily be abused, although usually centred upon immigration and various economic offences, since far from protecting important state functions it could easily be manipulated to subvert foreign governments. Nevertheless, it exists partly in view of the insufficiency of most municipal laws as far as offences against the security and integrity of foreign states are concerned.⁹⁵

This doctrine seems to have been applied in the British case of *Joyce v. Director of Public Prosecutions*,⁹⁶ involving the infamous pro-Nazi propagandist 'Lord Haw-Haw'. Joyce was born in America, but in 1933 fraudulently acquired a British passport by declaring that he had been born in Ireland. In 1939, he left Britain and started working for German radio. The following year, he claimed to have acquired German nationality. The case turned on whether the British court had jurisdiction to try him after the war, on a charge of treason. The House of Lords decided that jurisdiction did exist in this case. Joyce had held himself out to be a British subject and had availed himself of the protection (albeit fraudulently) of a British passport. Accordingly he could be deemed to owe allegiance to the Crown, and be liable for a breach of that duty. The fact that the treason occurred outside the territory of the UK was of no consequence since states were not obliged to ignore the crime of treason committed against them outside their territory. Joyce was convicted and suffered the penalty for his actions.⁹⁷

⁹⁴ See e.g. *In re Urios* 1 AD, p. 107 and article 694(1) of the French Code of Criminal Procedure.

⁹⁵ See e.g. *Rocha v. US* 288 F.2d 545 (1961); 32 ILR, p. 112; *US v. Pizzarusso* 388 F.2d 8 (1968), and *US v. Rodriguez* 182 F.Supp. 479 (1960). See also the *Italian South Tyrol Terrorism* case, 71 ILR, p. 242.

⁹⁶ [1946] AC 347; 15 AD, p. 91.

⁹⁷ See, with regard to US practice, *Rocha v. US* 288 F.2d 545 (1961); *US v. Pizzarusso* 388 F.2d 8 (1968) and *US v. Layton* 509 F.Supp. 212 (1981). See also *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, vol. I, pp. 237 ff. and the Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Anti-Terrorism Act 1986. The US has also asserted jurisdiction on the basis of the protective principle over aliens on the high seas: see the Maritime Drug Law Enforcement Act 1986 and *US v. Gonzalez* 776 F.2d 931 (1985) and see also S. Murphy, 'Extraterritorial Application of US Laws to Crimes on Foreign Vessels', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 183.

The protective principle is often used in treaties providing for multiple jurisdictional grounds with regard to specific offences.⁹⁸

*The universality principle*⁹⁹

Under this principle, each and every state has jurisdiction to try particular offences. The basis for this is that the crimes involved are regarded as particularly offensive to the international community as a whole. There are two categories that clearly belong to the sphere of universal jurisdiction, which has been defined as the competence of the state to prosecute alleged offenders and to punish them if convicted, irrespective of the place of commission of the crime and regardless of any link of active or passive nationality or other grounds of jurisdiction recognised by international law.¹⁰⁰ These are piracy¹⁰¹ and war crimes. However, there are a growing number of other offences which by international treaty may be subject to the jurisdiction of contracting parties and which form a distinct category closely allied to the concept of universal jurisdiction.

War crimes, crimes against peace and crimes against humanity

In addition to piracy, war crimes are now accepted by most authorities as subject to universal jurisdiction, though of course the issues

⁹⁸ See e.g. the Hostages Convention, 1979; the aircraft hijacking conventions and the Safety of United Nations and Associated Personnel Convention, 1994: see below, pp. 676 ff.

⁹⁹ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 160–6; Bowett, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 11–14; Harvard Research, pp. 563–92; Jennings, 'Extraterritorial Jurisdiction', p. 156; Gilbert, 'Crimes', p. 423; K. C. Randall, 'Universal Jurisdiction under International Law', 66 *Texas Law Review*, 1988, p. 785; M. C. Bassiouni, *Crimes Against Humanity in International Criminal Law*, Dordrecht, 1992; L. Reydam, *Universal Jurisdiction*, Oxford, 2003; Redress Report on Legal Redress for Victims of International Crimes, March 2004; M. Inazumi, *Universal Jurisdiction in Modern International Law for Prosecuting Serious Crimes under International Law*, Antwerp, 2005; R. O'Keefe, 'Universal Jurisdiction: Clarifying the Basic Concept', 2 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2004, p. 735; A. H. Butler, 'The Doctrine of Universal Jurisdiction: A Review of the Literature', 11 *Criminal Law Forum*, 2001, p. 353; M. Henzelin, *Le Principe de l'Universalité en Droit Pénal International*, Brussels, 2000, and L. Benvenides, 'The Universal Jurisdiction Principle: Nature and Scope', 1 *Anuario Mexicano de Derecho Internacional*, 2001, p. 58. See also the *Princeton Principles on Universal Jurisdiction*, Princeton, 2001 and the Cairo Arusha Principles on Universal Jurisdiction in Respect of Gross Human Rights Violations, Inazumi, *Universal Jurisdiction*, p. 5. Note also H. Kissinger, 'The Pitfalls of Universal Jurisdiction', *Foreign Affairs*, July/August 2001.

¹⁰⁰ See the resolution adopted by the Institut de Droit International on 26 August 2005, para. 1.

¹⁰¹ As to piracy, see above, chapter 8, p. 398 and chapter 11, p. 615

involved are extremely sensitive and highly political.¹⁰² While there is little doubt about the legality and principles of the war crimes decisions emerging after the Second World War, a great deal of controversy arose over suggestions of war crimes with regard to American personnel connected with the Vietnam war,¹⁰³ Pakistani soldiers involved in the Bangladesh war of 1971 and persons concerned with subsequent conflicts.

Article 6 of the Charter of the International Military Tribunal of 1945 referred to crimes against peace, violations of the law and customs of war and crimes against humanity as offences within the jurisdiction of the Tribunal for which there was to be individual responsibility.¹⁰⁴ This article can now be regarded as part of international law. In a resolution unanimously approved by the General Assembly of the United Nations in 1946, the principles of international law recognised by the Charter of the Nuremberg Tribunal and the judgment of the Tribunal were expressly confirmed.¹⁰⁵ The General Assembly in 1968 adopted a Convention on the Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations to War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity, reinforcing the general conviction that war crimes form a distinct category under international law, susceptible to universal jurisdiction,¹⁰⁶ while the four Geneva 'Red Cross' Conventions of 1949 also contain provisions for universal jurisdiction over grave breaches.¹⁰⁷ Such grave breaches include wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, unlawful deportation of protected

¹⁰² See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', p. 160; A. Cowles, 'Universality of Jurisdiction over War Crimes', 33 *California Law Review*, 1945, p. 177; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 303–5; Bowett, 'Jurisdiction', p. 12; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 56; Mann, 'Doctrine of Jurisdiction', p. 93, and Bassiouni, *Crimes against Humanity*, p. 510. See also the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, pp. 5 and 277 and the UN War Crimes Commission, 15 *Law Reports of Trials of War Criminals*, 1949, p. 26. However, cf. the Separate Opinion of Judge Guillaume in *Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 42; 128 ILR, p. 98 (restricting universal jurisdiction to piracy) and the Joint Separate Opinion, *ibid.*, pp. 3, 78; 128 ILR, p. 134 (universal jurisdiction may possibly exist with regard to the Geneva Conventions of 1949 on war crimes, etc.). See further above, chapter 8.

¹⁰³ See e.g. *Calley v. Calloway* 382 F.Supp. 650 (1974), rev'd 519 F.2d 184 (1975), cert. denied 425 US 911 (1976).

¹⁰⁴ See also article 228 of the Treaty of Versailles, 1919.

¹⁰⁵ Resolution 95 (I). See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1950, vol. II, p. 195; 253 HL Deb., col. 831, 2 December 1963; the *British Manual of Military Law*, Part III, 1958, para. 637; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 561 ff., and P. Weiss, 'Time Limits for the Prosecution of Crimes against International Law', 53 BYIL, 1982, pp. 163, 188 ff.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. Weiss, 'Time Limits'.

¹⁰⁷ See article 49 of the First Geneva Convention; article 50 of the Second Geneva Convention; article 129 of the Third Geneva Convention and article 146 of the Fourth Geneva

persons and the taking of hostages. The list was extended in Protocol I of 1977 to the 1949 Conventions to include, for example, attacking civilian populations.¹⁰⁸

Nuremberg practice demonstrates that crimes against peace consist of the commission by the authorities of a state of acts of aggression. In theory this is not controversial, but in practice serious problems are likely to arise within the framework of universal jurisdiction.¹⁰⁹ However, whether this category can be expanded to include support for international terrorism is open to question. Crimes against humanity clearly cover genocide and related activities. They differ from war crimes in applying beyond the context of an international armed conflict, but cover essentially the same substantive offences.¹¹⁰ The UN Secretary-General's Report on the Establishment of an International Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia¹¹¹ noted in the commentary to article 5 of what became the Statute of the Tribunal¹¹² that 'crimes against humanity are aimed at any civilian population and are prohibited regardless of whether they are committed in an armed conflict, international or internal in character' and that 'crimes against humanity refer to inhumane acts of a very serious nature, such as wilful killing, torture or rape, committed as part of a widespread or systematic attack against any civilian population on national, political, ethnic, racial or religious grounds'.¹¹³ The 1998 Rome Statute for the International Criminal Court provides that jurisdiction is limited to the 'most serious crimes of concern to the international community as a whole' being genocide, crimes against humanity, war crimes and aggression,¹¹⁴ and that a person who commits a crime within the jurisdiction of the Court 'shall be individually responsible and liable for punishment' in accordance with the Statute.¹¹⁵

Convention. See also e.g. G. I. A. D. Draper, *The Red Cross Conventions*, London, 1958, p. 105. Cf. Bowett, 'Jurisdiction', p. 12.

¹⁰⁸ See further above, chapter 8, and below, chapter 21.

¹⁰⁹ See e.g. *R v. Jones* [2006] UKHL 16; 132 ILR, p. 668, and see above, chapter 4, p. 146.

¹¹⁰ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 562; L. C. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000, chapter 18; E. Schwelb, 'Crimes Against Humanity', 23 BYIL, 1946, p. 178. See also the Commentary to article 20 of the Draft Statute for an International Criminal Court which refers to the concept as a term of art, Report of the International Law Commission, A/49/10, 1994, p. 75.

¹¹¹ S/25704, 1993, at paragraphs 47–8. ¹¹² Security Council resolution 827 (1993).

¹¹³ See article 3 of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda, 1994, Security Council resolution 955 (1994). See also the *Barbie* case, 100 ILR, p. 330 and the *Touvier* case, *ibid.*, p. 337.

¹¹⁴ Article 5. ¹¹⁵ Article 25.

The International Law Commission adopted a Draft Code of Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind in 1996.¹¹⁶ Article 8 provides that each state party shall take such measures as may be necessary to establish its jurisdiction over the crimes laid down in the Draft, while article 9 provides that a state in whose territory an individual alleged to have committed a crime against the peace and security of mankind is present shall either extradite or prosecute that individual. The Commentary to this article declares that the national courts of states parties would be entitled to exercise the 'broadest possible jurisdiction' over the crimes 'under the principle of universal jurisdiction'.¹¹⁷ The Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, for which there is individual responsibility, comprise aggression (article 16);¹¹⁸ genocide (article 17); crimes against humanity (article 18); crimes against UN and associated personnel (article 19); and war crimes (article 20).¹¹⁹

The fact that a particular activity may be seen as an international crime does not of itself establish universal jurisdiction and state practice does not appear to have moved beyond war crimes, crimes against peace and crimes against humanity in terms of permitting the exercise of such jurisdiction. In particular, references made to, for example, apartheid, mercenaries and environmental offences in the 1991 Draft but omitted in the Draft Code adopted in 1996 must be taken as *de lege ferenda*.

In so far as universal jurisdiction as manifested in domestic courts is concerned, the starting point is the *Eichmann* case¹²⁰ decided by the District Court of Jerusalem and the Supreme Court of Israel in 1961. Eichmann was prosecuted and convicted under an Israeli law of 1951 for

¹¹⁶ Report of the International Law Commission, A/51/10, 1996, p. 9. This had been under consideration since 1982: see General Assembly resolution 36/106 of 10 December 1981. A Draft Code was formulated in 1954 by the ILC and submitted to the UN General Assembly: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1954, vol. II, p. 150. The General Assembly postponed consideration of it until a definition of aggression had been formulated, resolution 897 (IX). This was achieved in 1974: see resolution 3314 (XXIX). A Draft Code was provisionally adopted in 1991: see A/46/10 and 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1584.

¹¹⁷ Report of the International Law Commission, A/51/10, 1996, p. 51. This does not apply to the crime of aggression.

¹¹⁸ Article 8 provides that jurisdiction concerning individuals will rest with an international criminal court.

¹¹⁹ Additional crimes referred to in the 1991 Draft also included recruitment, use, financing and training of mercenaries; international terrorism; illicit traffic in narcotic drugs and wilful and severe damage to the environment.

¹²⁰ 36 ILR, pp. 5 and 277. See also the *Barbie* cases, 78 ILR, pp. 78, 125, 136 and *Demjanjuk v. Petrovsky* 776 F.2d 571 (1985); 79 ILR, p. 534. See also *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 36189 regarding the *Demjanjuk* case in Israel.

war crimes, crimes against the Jewish people and crimes against humanity. The District Court declared that far from limiting states' jurisdiction with regard to such crimes, international law was actually in need of the legislative and judicial organs of every state giving effect to its criminal interdictions and bringing the criminals to trial. The fact that the crimes were committed prior to the establishment of the state of Israel did not prevent the correct application of its powers pursuant to universal jurisdiction under international law. Israel's municipal law merely reflected the offences existing under international law.

It is a matter for domestic law whether the presence of the accused is required for the exercise of the jurisdiction of the particular domestic court. Different states adopt different approaches. The Belgian Court of Cassation took the view in its decision of 12 February 2003 in *HSA et al. v. SA et al.* that the presence of the accused was not necessary.¹²¹ But this was in the context of the Belgian Statute of 1993, as amended in 1999, which provided for a wide jurisdiction in the case of genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes. This Statute was amended on 23 April 2003 to provide that the alleged serious violation of international law in question shall be one committed against a person who at the time of the commission of the acts is a Belgian national or legally resident in Belgium for at least three years and that any prosecution, including a preliminary investigation phase, may only be undertaken at the request of the Federal Prosecutor. In addition, the Federal Prosecutor may decide not to proceed where it appears that in the interests of the proper administration of justice and in compliance with Belgium's international obligations, the case would be better placed before an international court or the court of the place where the acts were committed or the courts of the state of nationality of the alleged offender or the courts of the place where he may be found.¹²² The Statute was further amended on 5 August 2003, requiring a foreigner wishing to submit an application to be resident in Belgium for a minimum of three years.¹²³ It appears that Belgium has in effect ceased to permit prosecutions under the universal jurisdiction model in the absence of the accused.¹²⁴ This is consistent with the approach of the Institut de Droit International which has stated that 'the exercise of

¹²¹ Relating to the indictment of defendants Ariel Sharon, Amos Yaron and others concerning events in the Shabra and Shatilla camps in Lebanon in 1982, No. P. 02.1139, F/1.

¹²² See article 16(2), 42 ILM, 2003, pp. 1258 ff.

¹²³ *Moniteur Belge*, 7 August 2003, pp. 40506–15.

¹²⁴ See e.g. Inazumi, *Universal Jurisdiction*, p. 97. See also S. Ratner, 'Belgium's War Crimes Statute: A Postmortem', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 888.

universal jurisdiction requires the presence of the alleged offender in the territory of the prosecuting state or on board a vessel flying its flag or an aircraft which is registered under its laws or other lawful forms of control over the alleged offender'.¹²⁵

The Supreme Court of Spain decided on 25 February 2003 in the *Guatemalan Genocide* case that jurisdiction would cover only acts of genocide in which Spanish nationals were victims.¹²⁶ However, this decision was overturned on 26 September 2005 by the Constitutional Court which decided that the domestic jurisdiction provision with regard to crimes against humanity was not limited to cases involving Spanish nationals who were victims of genocide and that no tie to Spain was needed in order to initiate a complaint.¹²⁷

Treaties providing for jurisdiction

In addition to the accepted universal jurisdiction to apprehend and try pirates and war criminals, there are a number of treaties which provide for the suppression by the international community of various activities, ranging from the destruction of submarine cables to drug trafficking and slavery.¹²⁸ These treaties provide for the exercise of state jurisdiction but not for universal jurisdiction. Some conventions establish what might be termed a quasi-universal jurisdiction in providing for the exercise of jurisdiction upon a variety of bases by as wide a group of states parties as possible coupled with an obligation for states parties to establish such jurisdiction in domestic law. In many instances the offence involved will constitute *jus cogens*. The view is sometimes put forward that where a norm of *jus cogens* exists, particularly where the offence is regarded as especially serious, universal jurisdiction as such may be created.¹²⁹ More correct is the approach that in such circumstances international law recognises that domestic legal orders may validly establish and exercise jurisdiction over the alleged offenders. Such circumstances thus include the presence of

¹²⁵ Resolution adopted on 26 August 2005, para. 3(b).

¹²⁶ Judgment No. 327/2003. See also the same court's decision a few months later in the *Peruvian Genocide* case, where it was held that Spanish courts could not exercise universal jurisdiction over claims of genocide and other serious crimes alleged to have been committed by Peruvian officials from 1986, Judgment No. 712/2003.

¹²⁷ Judgment No. 237/2005. See e.g. N. Roht-Arriaza, 'Guatemala Genocide Case. Judgment no. STC 237/2005', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 207.

¹²⁸ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 160–1.

¹²⁹ See e.g. Millett LJ in *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3) [2000] 1 AC 147, 275; 119 ILR, p. 229. See also R. Van Alebeek, 'The *Pinochet* Case: International Human Rights Law on Trial', 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 29.

the accused in the state concerned and in this way may be differentiated from universal jurisdiction as such, where, for example, a pirate may be apprehended on the high seas and then prosecuted in the state. Therefore, the type of jurisdiction at issue in such circumstances cannot truly be described as universal, but rather as quasi-universal.¹³⁰ Judges Higgins, Kooijmans and Buergenthal in their Joint Separate Opinion in *Congo v. Belgium* referred to this situation rather as an 'obligatory territorial jurisdiction over persons' or 'the jurisdiction to establish a territorial jurisdiction over persons for extraterritorial events' rather than as true universal jurisdiction.¹³¹

There are a number of treaties that follow the quasi-universal model, that is providing for certain defined offences to be made criminal offences within the domestic orders of states parties; accepting an obligation to arrest alleged offenders found on the national territory and then prosecuting those persons on the basis of a number of stated jurisdictional grounds, ranging from territoriality to nationality and passive personality grounds. Such treaties normally also provide for mutual assistance and for the offences in question to be deemed to be included as extraditable offences in any extradition treaty concluded between states parties. The agreements in question include, for example, the UN Torture Convention, 1984¹³² and treaties relating to hostage-taking, currency counterfeiting, hijacking and drug trafficking. Such treaties are then normally implemented nationally.¹³³

It is interesting to note that the International Law Commission's Draft Statute for an International Criminal Court proposed that the court would have jurisdiction in certain conditions with regard to a range of 'treaty crimes',¹³⁴ but this suggestion was not found acceptable in later discussions

¹³⁰ The phrase 'conditional universal jurisdiction' has also been suggested: see A. Cassese, 'When may Senior State Officials be Tried for International Crimes?', 13 EJIL, 2002, pp. 853, 856.

¹³¹ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 74–5; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 130–1. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Guillaume, who uses the term 'subsidiary universal jurisdiction' to refer to the international conventions in question providing for the trial of offenders arrested on national territory and not extradited: *ibid.*, p. 40; 128 ILR, p. 96.

¹³² See further above, chapter 6, p. 326.

¹³³ See e.g. the UK Taking of Hostages Act 1982.

¹³⁴ That is those arising out of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 and Protocol I thereto; the Hague Convention, 1970; the Montreal Convention, 1971; the Apartheid Convention, 1973; the Internationally Protected Persons Convention, 1973; the Hostages Convention, 1979; the Torture Convention, 1984; the Safety of Maritime Navigation Convention and Protocol, 1988 and the Convention against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and

and does not appear in the 1998 Rome Statute. It is helpful to look at some of these treaties. The Convention against Torture, 1984 provides that each state party shall ensure that all acts of torture are offences under domestic criminal law¹³⁵ and shall take such measures as may be necessary to establish its jurisdiction over torture offences where committed in any territory under its jurisdiction or on board a ship or aircraft registered in the state concerned or when the alleged offender is a national or when the victim is a national if that state considers it appropriate.¹³⁶ Further, each state party agrees to either extradite or prosecute alleged offenders,¹³⁷ while agreeing that the offences constitute extraditable offences within the context of extradition agreements concluded between states parties.¹³⁸ This Convention was the subject of consideration in *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3), where the majority of the House of Lords held that torture committed outside the UK was not a crime punishable under UK law until the provisions of the Convention against Torture were implemented by s. 134 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988.¹³⁹ Lord Millett, however, took the view that torture was a crime under customary international law with universal jurisdiction and that since customary international law was part of the common law,¹⁴⁰ English courts 'have and always have had extraterritorial criminal jurisdiction in respect of universal jurisdiction under customary international law'.¹⁴¹ The Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons, including Diplomatic Agents, was adopted in 1973 by the General Assembly of the United Nations and came into force in 1977. This stipulates that contracting states should make acts such as assaults upon the person, premises and transport of such persons a crime under their domestic law.¹⁴² This, of course, would require little if any revision of existing penal statutes. Each state is to establish its jurisdiction over these crimes when committed in its territory or on board ships or aircraft registered in its territory, or when the alleged offender is a national or when the crimes have been committed against an internationally protected person functioning on behalf of that state.¹⁴³ A person is regarded as internationally protected where he is a head of

Psychotropic Substances, 1988: see Report of the International Law Commission, A/49/10, 1994, pp. 141 ff.

¹³⁵ Article 4. ¹³⁶ Article 5. ¹³⁷ Article 7. ¹³⁸ Article 8.

¹³⁹ [2000] 1 AC 147, 148, 159–60, 188–90, 202, 218–19 and 233; 119 ILR, p. 135.

¹⁴⁰ See above, chapter 4, p. 141.

¹⁴¹ [2000] 1 AC 147, 276; 119 ILR, p. 135. See also e.g. R. O'Keefe, 'Customary International Crimes in English Courts', 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 293.

¹⁴² Article 2. See e.g. the UK Internationally Protected Persons Act 1978. ¹⁴³ Article 3.

state or government, or foreign minister abroad, or state representative or official of an international organisation.¹⁴⁴

The International Convention against the Taking of Hostages, 1979 came into force in 1983 and, like the Internationally Protected Persons Treaty, requires each state party to make the offence punishable under national law,¹⁴⁵ and provides that states parties must either extradite or prosecute an alleged offender found on their territory and incorporate the offence of hostage-taking into existing and future extradition treaties. The grounds upon which a state party may exercise jurisdiction are laid down in article 5 and cover offences committed in its territory or on board a ship or aircraft registered in that state; by any of its nationals, or if that state considers it appropriate, by stateless persons having their habitual residence in its territory; in order to compel that state to do or abstain from doing any act; or with respect to a hostage who is a national of that state, if that state considers it appropriate.

The Convention on the Safety of United Nations and Associated Personnel, 1994 provides that attacks upon UN or associated personnel or property be made a crime under national law by each state party¹⁴⁶ and that jurisdiction should be established with regard to such offences when the crime is committed in the territory of that state or on board a ship or aircraft registered in that state or when the alleged offender is a national of that state. States parties may also establish their jurisdiction over any such crimes when committed by a stateless person whose habitual residence is in the state concerned, or with regard to a national of that state, or in an attempt to compel that state to do or to abstain from doing any act.¹⁴⁷ In addition, the state in whose territory the alleged offender is present shall either prosecute or extradite such person.¹⁴⁸

As far as the hijacking of and other unlawful acts connected with aircraft is concerned, the leading treaties are the Tokyo Convention on Offences and Certain Other Acts Committed on Board Aircraft, 1963, the Hague Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Seizure of Aircraft, 1970 and the Montreal Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Civil Aviation, 1971. The latter two instruments arose as a result of the wave of aircraft hijacking and attacks upon civilian planes that took place in the late 1960s, and tried to deal with the problem of how to apprehend and punish the perpetrators of such deeds.

¹⁴⁴ Article 1.

¹⁴⁵ See e.g. the UK Taking of Hostages Act 1982.

¹⁴⁶ Article 9.

¹⁴⁷ Article 10.

¹⁴⁸ Article 14.

The Tokyo Convention applies to both general offences and acts which, whether or not they are offences, may or do jeopardise the safety of the aircraft or of persons or property therein or which jeopardise good order and discipline on board. It provides for the jurisdiction of the contracting state over aircraft registered therein while the aircraft is in flight, or on the surface of the high seas or on any other area outside the territory of any state. Contracting states are called upon to take the necessary measures to establish jurisdiction by municipal law over such aircraft in such circumstances. In addition, the Convention permits interference with an aircraft in flight in order to establish criminal jurisdiction over an offence committed on board in certain specific circumstances by contracting states not being the state of registration. The circumstances specified are where the offence has effect on the territory of such state; has been committed by or against a national or permanent resident of such state; is against the security of such state; consists of a breach of any rules or regulations relating to the flight or manoeuvre of aircraft in force in such state or where the exercise of jurisdiction is necessary to ensure the observance of any obligation of such state under a multilateral international agreement.¹⁴⁹ No obligation to extradite is provided for.

The Hague Convention provides that any person who, on board an aircraft in flight, is involved in the unlawful seizure of that aircraft (or attempts the same), commits an offence which contracting states undertake to make punishable by severe penalties. Each contracting state is to take such measures as may be necessary to establish its jurisdiction over the offence or related acts of violence when the offence is committed on board an aircraft registered in that state, when the aircraft in question lands in its territory with the alleged offender still on board or when the offence is committed on board an aircraft leased without a crew to a lessee who has his principal place of business, or if the lessee has no such place of business, his permanent residence, in that state. The Convention also provides that contracting states in the territory of which an alleged offender is found must either extradite or prosecute him.

The Montreal Convention contains similar rules as to jurisdiction and extradition as the Hague Convention but is aimed at controlling and punishing attacks and sabotage against civil aircraft in flight and on the ground

¹⁴⁹ Article 4. See S. Shuber, *Jurisdiction over Crimes on Board Aircraft*, The Hague, 1973; N. D. Joyner, *Aerial Hijacking as an International Crime*, Dobbs Ferry, 1974, and E. McWhinney, *Aerial Piracy and International Terrorism*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1987. See also the US Anti-Hijacking Act of 1974.

rather than dealing with hijacking directly.¹⁵⁰ A Protocol to the Montreal Convention was signed in 1988. This provides for the suppression of unlawful acts of violence at airports serving international civil aviation which cause or are likely to cause serious injury, and acts of violence which destroy or seriously damage the facilities of an airport serving international civil aviation or aircraft not in service located thereon or disrupt the service of the airport.¹⁵¹

The wide range of jurisdictional bases is to be noted, although universality as such is not included. Nevertheless, condemnation of this form of activity is widespread and it is likely that hijacking has become an international crime of virtually universal jurisdiction in practice.¹⁵² Further, it is possible that international terrorism may in time be regarded as a crime of universal jurisdiction.¹⁵³

Of course questions as to enforcement will arise where states fail either to respect their obligations under the above Conventions or, if they are not parties to them, to respect customary law on the reasonable assumption that state practice now recognises hijacking as an unlawful act.¹⁵⁴ A number of possibilities exist, in addition to recourse to the United Nations

¹⁵⁰ Note that neither the Tokyo nor the Hague Conventions apply to aircraft used in military, customs or police services: see articles 1(4) and 3(2) respectively.

¹⁵¹ Note the Hindawi episode, where the European Community imposed sanctions upon Syria in a situation where it emerged during a court case in the UK that an attempt to smuggle a bomb onto an Israeli airliner in 1986 in London had been supported by Syrian intelligence: see *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 34771–2 and 34883–4.

¹⁵² See *US v. Yunis* (No. 2) 681 F.Supp. 896, 900–1 (1988); 82 ILR, pp. 344, 348. See also *US v. Yunis* (No. 3) 924 F.2d 1086, 1091 (1991); 88 ILR, pp. 176, 181.

¹⁵³ Note that in *Flatow v. Islamic Republic of Iran*, the US District Court stated that ‘international terrorism is subject to universal jurisdiction’, 999 F.Supp. 1, 14 (1998); 121 ILR, p. 618. See also the Convention on the Protection of All Persons from Enforced Disappearance, 2006, which requires all states parties to make enforced disappearance a criminal offence and further defines the widespread or systematic practice of enforced disappearance as a crime against humanity. States parties must take the necessary measures to establish jurisdiction on the basis of territoriality, nationality or, where the state deems it appropriate, the passive personality principle and must then either prosecute or extradite. The offence of enforced disappearance is deemed to be included as an extraditable offence in any extradition treaty existing between states parties before the entry into force of the Convention and states parties undertake to include it as an extraditable offence in future treaties, while the offence is not to be regarded as a political offence or as an offence connected with a political offence or as an offence inspired by political motives. Accordingly, a request for extradition based on such an offence may not be refused on these grounds alone. Further, no person may be sent to a state where there are substantial grounds for believing that he or she may be the subject of an enforced disappearance.

¹⁵⁴ See e.g. General Assembly resolution 2645 (XXV) and Security Council resolution 286 (1970).

and the relevant international air organisations.¹⁵⁵ Like-minded states may seek to impose sanctions upon errant states. The 1978 Bonn Declaration, for example, agreed that 'in cases where a country refuses the extradition or prosecution of, those who have hijacked an aircraft and/or does not return such aircraft' action would be taken to cease all flights to and from that country and its airlines.¹⁵⁶ Bilateral arrangements may also be made, which provide for the return of, or prosecution of, hijackers.¹⁵⁷ States may also, of course, adopt legislation which enables them to prosecute alleged hijackers found in their territory,¹⁵⁸ or more generally seeks to combat terrorism. The 1984 US Act to Combat International Terrorism, for example, provides for rewards for information concerning a wide range of terrorist acts primarily (although not exclusively) within the territorial jurisdiction of the US.¹⁵⁹

Other acts of general self-help have also been resorted to. In 1973, for example, Israeli warplanes intercepted a civil aircraft in Lebanese airspace in an unsuccessful attempt to apprehend a guerrilla leader held responsible for the killing of civilians aboard hijacked aircraft. Israel was condemned for this by the UN Security Council¹⁶⁰ and the International Civil Aviation Organisation.¹⁶¹

On the night of 10–11 October 1985, an Egyptian civil aircraft carrying the hijackers of the Italian cruise ship *Achille Lauro* was intercepted over the Mediterranean Sea by US Navy fighters and compelled to land in Sicily. The US justified its action generally by reference to the need to combat international terrorism, while the UK Foreign Secretary noted it was relevant to take into account the international agreements on hijacking and hostage-taking.¹⁶² However, nothing in these Conventions, it is suggested, would appear to justify an interception of a civilian aircraft over the high

¹⁵⁵ See above, chapter 10, p. 542.

¹⁵⁶ See UKMIL, 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 423. The states making the Declaration were the UK, France, US, Canada, West Germany, Italy and Japan.

¹⁵⁷ See e.g. the US–Cuban Memorandum of Understanding on Hijacking of Aircraft and Vessels and Other Offences, 1973.

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. the US Anti-Hijacking Act of 1974 and the UK Civil Aviation Act 1982 s. 92 and the Aviation Security Act 1982.

¹⁵⁹ See further, as to international terrorism, below, chapter 20, p. 1159.

¹⁶⁰ Resolution 337 (1973). ¹⁶¹ ICAO Doc. 9050-LC/169-1, at p. 196 (1973).

¹⁶² See *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 34078 and *The Times*, 6 February 1986, p. 4. In this context, one should also note the hijack of a TWA airliner in June 1985, the murder of a passenger and the prolonged detention in the Lebanon of the remaining passengers and the crew: see *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 34130. See also A. Cassese, *Violence and Law in the Modern Age*, Cambridge, 1988, chapter 4.

seas or over any area other than the territory of the intercepting state and for specified reasons. The apprehension of terrorists is to be encouraged, but the means must be legitimate. On 4 February 1986, the Israeli Air Force intercepted a Libyan civil aircraft en route from Libya to Syria in an attempt to capture terrorists, arguing that the aircraft in question was part of a terrorist operation.¹⁶³

Nevertheless, there may be circumstances where an action taken by a state as a consequence of hostile hijacking or terrorist operations would be justifiable in the context of self-defence.¹⁶⁴

Illegal apprehension of suspects and the exercise of jurisdiction¹⁶⁵

It would appear that unlawful apprehension of a suspect by state agents acting in the territory of another state is not a bar to the exercise of jurisdiction. Such apprehension would, of course, constitute a breach of international law and the norm of non-intervention involving state responsibility,¹⁶⁶ unless the circumstances were such that the right of self-defence could be pleaded.¹⁶⁷ It could be argued that the seizure, being a violation of international law, would only be compounded by permitting the abducting state to exercise jurisdiction,¹⁶⁸ but international practice on the whole demonstrates otherwise.¹⁶⁹ In most cases a distinction is clearly drawn between the apprehension and jurisdiction to prosecute and one should also distinguish situations where the apprehension has

¹⁶³ See *The Times*, 5 February 1986, p. 1.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. as to the 1976 Entebbe incident, below, chapter 20, p. 1143.

¹⁶⁵ See e.g. F. Morgenstern, 'Jurisdiction in Seizures Effectuated in Violation of International Law', 29 BYIL, 1952, p. 256; P. O'Higgins, 'Unlawful Seizure and Irregular Extradition', 36 BYIL, 1960, p. 279; A. Lowenfeld, 'US Law Enforcement Abroad: The Constitution and International Law', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 880, Lowenfeld, 'US Law Enforcement Abroad: The Constitution and International Law, Continued', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 444, Lowenfeld, 'Kidnapping by Government Order: A Follow-Up', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 712, and Lowenfeld, 'Still More on Kidnapping', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 655. See also F. A. Mann, 'Reflections on the Prosecution of Persons Abducted in Breach of International Law' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 407, and Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 69.

¹⁶⁶ See e.g. article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter and *Nicaragua v. US*, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 110; 76 ILR, p. 349. See further below, chapter 20.

¹⁶⁷ Note, in particular, the view of the Legal Adviser of the US Department of State to the effect that '[w]hile international law therefore permits extraterritorial "arrests" in situations which permit a valid claim of self-defence, decisions about any extraterritorial arrest entail grave potential implications for US personnel, for the United States, and for our relations with other states', 84 AJIL, 1990, pp. 725, 727.

¹⁶⁸ See Mann, 'Jurisdiction', p. 415.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. the *Eichmann* case, 36 ILR, pp. 5 and 277.

taken place on or over the high seas from cases where it has occurred without consent on the territory of another state. A further distinction that has been made relates to situations where the abduction has taken place from a state with which the apprehending state has an extradition treaty which governs the conditions under which movement of alleged offenders occurs between the two. A final distinction may be drawn as between cases depending upon the type of offences with which the offender is charged, so that the problem of the apprehension interfering with the prosecution may be seen as less crucial in cases where recognised international crimes are alleged.¹⁷⁰ Of course, any such apprehension would constitute a violation of the human rights of the person concerned, but whether that would impact upon the exercise of jurisdiction as such is the key issue here.

Variations in approaches are evident between states. The US Court of Appeals in *US v. Toscanino*¹⁷¹ held that the rule that jurisdiction was unaffected by an illegal apprehension¹⁷² should not be applied where the presence of the defendant has been secured by force or fraud, but this approach has, it seems, been to a large extent eroded. In *US ex rel. Lujan v. Gengler*¹⁷³ it was noted that the rule in *Toscanino* was limited to cases of 'torture, brutality and similar outrageous conduct'.¹⁷⁴ The issue came before the US Supreme Court in *Sosa v. Alvarez-Machain*,¹⁷⁵ in which the view was taken that the issue essentially revolved around a strict interpretation of the relevant extradition treaty between Mexico and the US. The Court noted that where the terms of an extradition treaty in force between the states concerned prohibited abduction then jurisdiction could not be exercised. Otherwise the rule in *Ker* would apply and the prosecution would proceed. This applied even though there were some differences between the cases, in that, unlike the situation in *Ker*, the US government had been involved in the abduction

¹⁷⁰ See Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 69. ¹⁷¹ 500 F.2d 267 (1974); 61 ILR, p. 190.

¹⁷² See, in particular, *Ker v. Illinois* 119 US 436 (1886) and *Frisbie v. Collins* 342 US 519 (1952). These cases have given rise to the reference to the Ker-Frisbie doctrine.

¹⁷³ 510 F.2d 62 (1975); 61 ILR, p. 206. See also *US v. Lira* 515 F.2d 68 (1975); Lowenfeld, 'Kidnapping', p. 712; *Afounch v. Attorney-General* 10 AD, p. 327, and *Re Argoud* 45 ILR, p. 90.

¹⁷⁴ This approach was reaffirmed in *US v. Yunis* both by the District Court, 681 F.Supp. 909, 918-21 (1988) and by the Court of Appeals, 30 ILM, 1991, pp. 403, 408-9.

¹⁷⁵ 119 L Ed 2d 441 (1992); 95 ILR, p. 355. See also M. Halberstam, 'In Defence of the Supreme Court Decision in *Alvarez-Machain*', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 736, and M. J. Glennon, 'State-Sponsored Abduction: A Comment on *United States v. Alvarez-Machain*', *ibid.*, p. 746.

and the state from whose territory the apprehension took place had protested.¹⁷⁶

In the UK, the approach has appeared to alter somewhat. In *R v. Plymouth Justices, ex parte Driver*,¹⁷⁷ it was noted that once a person was in lawful custody within the jurisdiction, the court had no power to inquire into the circumstances in which he had been brought into the jurisdiction. However, in *R v. Horseferry Road Magistrates' Court, ex parte Bennett*,¹⁷⁸ the House of Lords declared that where an extradition treaty existed with the relevant country under which the accused could have been returned, 'our courts will refuse to try him if he has been forcibly brought within our jurisdiction in disregard of those procedures by a process to which our own police, prosecuting or other executive authorities have been a knowing party'.¹⁷⁹ The approach in this case was extended in *R v. Latif* to cover entrapment.¹⁸⁰ However, where an accused was taking legal action to quash a decision to proceed with an extradition request, the fact that he had been lured into the jurisdiction was not sufficient to vitiate the proceedings since safeguards as to due process existed in the light of the Home Secretary's discretion and under the law of the state to whom he was to be extradited.¹⁸¹ Further, in *Ex parte Westfallen*, the High Court took the view that where there had been no illegality, abuse of power or

¹⁷⁶ 119 L Ed 2d 451; 95 ILR, p. 363. See also the Dissenting Opinion, which took the view that the abduction had in fact violated both international law and the extradition treaty, 119 L Ed 2d 456–79; 95 ILR, pp. 369–79. The accused was eventually acquitted and returned to Mexico: see *Alvarez-Machain v. United States* 107 F.3d 696, 699 (9th Cir. 1996). He also commenced an action for compensation. In that action the US Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit stated that his abduction was a violation of the law of nations in that international human rights law had been breached: see *Alvarez-Machain v. United States* 41 ILM, 2002, pp. 130, 133.

¹⁷⁷ [1986] 1 QB 95; 77 ILR, p. 351. See also *Ex parte Susannah Scott* (1829) 9 B & C 446; *Sinclair v. HM Advocate* (1890) 17 R (J) 38 and *R v. Officer Commanding Depot Battalion RASC Colchester, ex parte Elliott* [1949] 1 All ER 373. Cf. *R v. Bow Street Magistrates, ex parte Mackerson* (1981) 75 Cr App R 24.

¹⁷⁸ [1993] 3 WLR 90; 95 ILR, p. 380.

¹⁷⁹ [1993] 3 WLR 105; 95 ILR, p. 393, per Lord Griffiths. See also Lord Bridge, [1993] 3 WLR 110; 95 ILR, p. 399 and Lord Slynn, [1993] 3 WLR 125; 95 ILR, p. 416. The House of Lords was also influenced by the decision of the South Africa Supreme Court in *State v. Ebrahim*, 95 ILR, p. 417, where the conviction and sentence before a South African court of a person were set aside as a consequence of his illegal abduction by state officials from Swaziland. This view was based both on Roman-Dutch and South African common law and on international law.

¹⁸⁰ [1996] 1 WLR 104, see Lord Steyn, at 112–13. See also *R v. Mullen* [1999] 2 Cr App R 143.

¹⁸¹ See *In re Schmidt* [1995] 1 AC 339; 111 ILR, p. 548 (House of Lords).

violation of international law or of the domestic law of the foreign states involved, the decisions under challenge could not be impugned nor the subsequent criminal proceedings be vitiated.¹⁸²

The US Alien Tort Claims Act¹⁸³

Under this Act, the First Congress established original district court jurisdiction over all causes where an alien sues for a tort 'committed in violation of the law of nations or a treaty of the United States'.¹⁸⁴ In *Filartiga v. Pena-Irala*,¹⁸⁵ the US Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit interpreted this provision to permit jurisdiction over a private tort action by a Paraguayan national against a Paraguayan police official for acts of torture perpetrated in that state, it being held that torture by a state official constituted a violation of international law. This amounted to an important move in the attempt to exercise jurisdiction in the realm of international human rights violations, although one clearly based upon a domestic statute permitting such court competence. The relevant issues in such actions would thus depend upon the definition of the 'law of nations' in particular cases.¹⁸⁶

In *Tel-Oren v. Libyan Arab Republic*,¹⁸⁷ however, the Court dismissed an action under the same statute brought by survivors and representatives of persons murdered in an armed attack on an Israeli bus in 1978 for lack of subject-matter jurisdiction. The three judges differed in their reasoning. Judge Edwards held that the law of nations did not impose liability on non-state entities like the PLO. Judge Bork, in a departure from the *Filartiga* principles, declared that 'an explicit grant of a cause of action [had to exist] before a private individual [will] be allowed to enforce principles of international law in a federal tribunal',¹⁸⁸ while Senior Judge Robb held that the case was rendered non-justiciable by the political question doctrine.

¹⁸² [1998] 1 WLR 652, 665–7. See also C. Warbrick, 'Judicial Jurisdiction and Abuse of Process', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 489.

¹⁸³ 28 USC, para. 1350 (1982), originally enacted as part of the Judiciary Act of 1789. See also 28 USC, para. 1331, and above, chapter 4, p. 159.

¹⁸⁴ Cassese notes that the extensive civil jurisdiction claimed under this Act has not been challenged by other states, 'When may Senior State Officials', p. 859.

¹⁸⁵ 630 F.2d 876 (2d Cir. 1980); 77 ILR, p. 169. See also 577 F.Supp. 860 (1984); 77 ILR, p. 185, awarding punitive damages.

¹⁸⁶ In establishing the content of the 'law of nations', the courts must interpret international law as it exists today, 630 F.2d 876, 881 (1980); 77 ILR, pp. 169, 175.

¹⁸⁷ 726 F.2d 774 (1984); 77 ILR, p. 204. See also 'Agora', 79 AJIL, 1985, pp. 92 ff. for a discussion of the case.

¹⁸⁸ 726 F.2d 801; 77 ILR, p. 230.

Further restrictions upon the *Filartiga* doctrine have also been manifested. It has, for example, been held that the Alien Tort Claims Act does not constitute an exception to the principle of sovereign immunity so that a foreign state could not be sued,¹⁸⁹ while it has also been held that US citizens could not sue for violations of the law of nations under the Act.¹⁹⁰

In *Sanchez-Espinoza v. Reagan*,¹⁹¹ suit was brought against a variety of present and former US executive officials for violation *inter alia* of domestic and international law with regard to the US support of the 'Contra' guerrillas fighting against the Nicaraguan government. The Alien Tort Claims Act was cited, but the Court of Appeals noted that the statute arguably only covered private, non-governmental acts that violated a treaty or customary international law and, relying on *Tel-Oren*, pointed out that customary international law did not cover private conduct 'of this sort'.¹⁹² Thus the claim for damages could only be sustained to the extent that the defendants acted in an official capacity and, even if the Alien Tort Claims Act applied to official state acts, the doctrine of domestic sovereign immunity precluded the claim. In *Kadić v. Karadžić*,¹⁹³ the US Court of Appeals emphasised the 'liability of private persons for certain violations of customary international law and the availability of the Alien Tort Act to remedy such violations'.¹⁹⁴ In particular, it was noted that the proscription of genocide and war crimes and other violations of international humanitarian law applied to both state and non-state actors, although torture and summary execution (when not perpetrated in the course of genocide or war crimes) were proscribed by international law only when committed by state officials or under colour of law.¹⁹⁵ Even in this case, it may be that all that was required was 'the semblance of official authority' rather than establishing statehood under the formal criteria of international law.¹⁹⁶ The Court also held that the Torture Victim Protection Act 1992, which provides a cause of action for torture and extrajudicial killing by an individual 'under actual or apparent authority, or colour of law, of any foreign nation', was not itself a jurisdictional statute and depended upon the establishment of jurisdiction under either

¹⁸⁹ *Sideman v. Republic of Argentina* 965 F.2d 699 (1992).

¹⁹⁰ *Handel v. Artukovic* 601 F.Supp. 1421 (1985); 79 ILR, p. 397.

¹⁹¹ 770 F.2d 202 (1985); 80 ILR, p. 586. ¹⁹² 770 F.2d 206-7; 80 ILR, pp. 590-1.

¹⁹³ 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1592. ¹⁹⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 1600. ¹⁹⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 1602-6.

¹⁹⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 1607.

the Alien Tort Act or under the general federal question jurisdiction of section 1331.¹⁹⁷

The Alien Tort Act was relied upon again in the *Amerada Hess* case which concerned the bombing of a ship in international waters by Argentina during the Falklands war and where it was claimed that the federal courts had jurisdiction under the Act. A divided Court of Appeals¹⁹⁸ held that the Act provided, and the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act did not preclude,¹⁹⁹ federal subject-matter jurisdiction over suits in tort by aliens against foreign sovereigns for violations of international law. However, the Supreme Court unanimously disagreed.²⁰⁰ It was noted that the Act did not expressly authorise suits against foreign states and that at the time the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act was enacted, the 1789 Act had never provided the jurisdictional basis for a suit against a foreign state.²⁰¹ Since the Congress had decided to deal comprehensively with sovereign immunity in the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, it appeared to follow that this Act alone provided the basis for federal jurisdiction over foreign states. This basis was thus exclusive. The Court did note, however, that the Alien Tort Claims Act was unaffected by the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act in so far as non-state defendants were concerned.²⁰² In *Alvarez-Machain v. United States*, the accused in the case noted above²⁰³ commenced an action for compensation under the Act following his acquittal. The Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit rejected the claim that the Act required that the international law principle violated should also constitute a norm of *jus cogens*. The Court also rejected the contention that the applicant could sue for the violation of Mexican sovereignty implicit in his abduction. However, it affirmed that the applicant's rights to freedom of movement, to remain in his country and to security of his person (which are part of the 'law of nations') were violated, while his detention was arbitrary since

¹⁹⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 1607–8. Note, however, that since the Antiterrorism and Effective Death Penalty Act 1996 amending the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, an exception to immunity is created with regard to states, designated by the Department of State as terrorist states, which committed a terrorist act, or provided material support and resources to an individual or entity which committed such an act, which resulted in the death or personal injury of a US citizen.

¹⁹⁸ *Amerada Hess Shipping Corp. v. Argentine Republic* 830 F.2d 421 (1987); 79 ILR, p. 8.

¹⁹⁹ See below, chapter 13, p. 707.

²⁰⁰ *Argentine Republic v. Amerada Hess Shipping Corp.* 109 S. Ct. 683 (1989); 81 ILR, p. 658.

²⁰¹ 109 S. Ct. 689; 81 ILR, pp. 664–5.

²⁰² 109 S. Ct. 690. See also *Smith v. Libya* 101 F.3d 239 (1996); 113 ILR, p. 534.

²⁰³ See above, p. 681.

not pursuant to a Mexican warrant. Accordingly, compensation under the Act could be claimed.²⁰⁴

The Alien Tort Claims Act was further discussed by the Supreme Court in *Sosa v. Alvarez-Machain*, where it was held that the Alien Tort Claims Act was a jurisdictional statute creating no new causes of action and enacted on the understanding that the common law would provide a cause of action for the modest number of international law violations thought to carry personal liability at the time, being offences against ambassadors, violation of safe conducts and piracy.²⁰⁵

*Extradition*²⁰⁶

The practice of extradition enables one state to hand over to another state suspected or convicted criminals who have fled to the territory of the former. It is based upon bilateral treaty law and does not exist as an obligation upon states in customary law.²⁰⁷ It is usual to derive from existing treaties on the subject certain general principles, for example that of double criminality, i.e. that the crime involved should be a crime in both states concerned,²⁰⁸ and that of specialty, i.e. a person surrendered may be tried and punished only for the offence for which extradition had been sought and granted.²⁰⁹ In general, offences of a political

²⁰⁴ 41 ILM, 2002, p. 130. See also the decision of 3 June 2003.

²⁰⁵ 542 US 692, 714 ff. (2004) and see above, chapter 4, p. 160. Note that in *Rasul v. Bush*, the Supreme Court held that it was immaterial that the petitioners invoking the Alien Tort statute were being held in military custody in Guantanamo Bay, 542 US 466 (2004).

²⁰⁶ See e.g. I. A. Shearer, *Extradition in International Law*, Leiden, 1971; M. C. Bassiouni, *International Extradition and World Public Order*, Leiden, 1974; C. Nicholls, C. Montgomery and J. B. Knowles, *The Law of Extradition and Mutual Assistance*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2007; I. Stanbrook and C. Stanbrook, *The Law and Practice of Extradition*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2000; M. Forde, *The Law of Extradition in the UK*, London, 1995; A. Jones and A. Doobay, *Jones and Doobay on Extradition and Mutual Assistance*, London, 2004; G. Gilbert, *Aspects of Extradition Law*, Dordrecht, 1991, and Gilbert, *Transnational Fugitive Offenders in International Law: Extradition and Other Mechanisms*, The Hague, 1998; L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schochter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, p. 1111 and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 958. See also Study of the Secretariat on Succession of States in Respect of Bilateral Treaties, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1970, vol. II, pp. 102, 105.

²⁰⁷ See e.g. the Joint Declaration of Judges Evensen, Tarassov, Guillaume and Aguilar Maudsley, the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 24; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 507 and the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Bedjaoui, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 38; 94 ILR, p. 521.

²⁰⁸ But see now the House of Lords decisions in *Government of Denmark v. Nielsen* [1984] 2 All ER 81; 74 ILR, p. 458 and *United States Government v. McCaffery* [1984] 2 All ER 570.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 961.

character have been excluded,²¹⁰ but this would not cover terrorist activities.²¹¹ As noted above, it is common for many treaties laying down multiple bases for the exercise of jurisdiction to insist that states parties in whose territory the alleged offender is present either prosecute or extradite such person.²¹² In addition, many treaties provide for the automatic inclusion within existing bilateral extradition treaties between states parties to such treaties of the offence concerned.²¹³ Many states will not allow the extradition of nationals to another state,²¹⁴ but this is usually in circumstances where the state concerned has wide powers to prosecute nationals for offences committed abroad. Further, the relevance of human rights law to the process should be noted in that extradition to a state that may torture or inhumanely treat the person concerned would, for example, violate the European Convention on Human Rights.²¹⁵

²¹⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 962.

²¹¹ See e.g. the European Convention on the Suppression of Terrorism, 1977, article 1 of which provides a list of offences which are not to be regarded as political offences or inspired by political motives, an approach which is also adopted in article 11 of the Convention for the Suppression of Terrorist Bombing, 1997. See also the *McMullen* case, 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 434; the *Eain* case, *ibid.*, p. 435; *Re Piperno*, *ibid.*, p. 683 and *US v. Mackin* 668 F.2d 122 (1981); 79 ILR, p. 459. A revised directive on international extradition was issued by the US Department of State in 1981: see 76 AJIL, 1982, pp. 154–9. Note also the view of the British Home Secretary, *The Times*, 25 June 1985, p. 1, that the political offences ‘loophole’ as it applied to violent offences was not suitable to extradition arrangements between the democratic countries ‘sharing the same high regard for the fundamental principles of justice and operating similar independent judicial systems’. The UK law relating to extradition was consolidated in the Extradition Act 1989. Note in addition the Extradition Act 2003, providing *inter alia* for fast-track extradition procedures within the European Union, extended by the UK in the Extradition Act 2003 (Designation of Part 2 Territories) Order 2003 to the US despite an asymmetrical arrangement with the US under the UK–US Extradition Treaty, 2003: see e.g. Nicholls *et al.*, *Law of Extradition*, pp. 10 ff. and *Norris v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2006] UWHC 280 (Admin) and *Norris v. USA* [2008] UKHL 16. See also *Government of Belgium v. Postlethwaite* [1987] 2 All ER 985 and *R v. Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, ex parte Secretary of State for the Home Department* [1988] 1 WLR 1204.

²¹² See above, p. 673.

²¹³ See e.g. article 8 of the Hague Convention for the Suppression of the Unlawful Seizure of Aircraft, 1970, article 8 of the Montreal Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Civil Aviation, 1971, article 8 of the Internationally Protected Persons Convention, 1973 and article 4 of the European Convention for the Suppression of Terrorism, 1977.

²¹⁴ See e.g. article 3(1) of the French Extradition Law of 1927, and article 16 of the Basic Law of the Federal Republic of Germany.

²¹⁵ See e.g. the *Soering* case, European Court of Human Rights, 1989, Series A, No. 161; 98 ILR, p. 270 and *Saadi v. Italy*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 28 February 2008.

Extraterritorial jurisdiction²¹⁶

Claims have arisen in the context of economic issues whereby some states, particularly the United States, seek to apply their laws outside their territory²¹⁷ in a manner which may precipitate conflicts with other states.²¹⁸ Where the claims are founded upon the territorial and nationality theories of jurisdiction, problems do not often arise, but claims made upon the basis of the so-called 'effects' doctrine have provoked considerable controversy. This goes beyond the objective territorial principle to a situation where the state assumes jurisdiction on the grounds that the behaviour of a party is producing 'effects' within its territory. This is so even though all the conduct complained of takes place in another state.²¹⁹ The effects doctrine has been energetically maintained particularly by the US in the area of antitrust regulation.²²⁰ The classic statement of the American

²¹⁶ See e.g. *Extraterritorial Jurisdiction* (ed. A. V. Lowe), London, 1983; D. Rosenthal and W. Knighton, *National Laws and International Commerce*, London, 1982; K. M. Meessen, 'Antitrust Jurisdiction under Customary International Law', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 783; A. V. Lowe, 'Blocking Extraterritorial Jurisdiction: The British Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 257; Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction', pp. 190 ff.; *Extraterritorial Application of Law and Responses Thereto* (ed. C. Olmstead), Oxford, 1984; B. Stern, 'L'Extra-territorialité "Revisité": Où Il est Question des Affaires Alvarez-Machain, Pâte de Bois et de Quelques Autres', AFDI, 1992, p. 239; Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 73, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 466. See also P. Torremans, 'Extraterritorial Application of EC and US Competition Law', 21 *European Law Review*, 1996, p. 280.

²¹⁷ Note that there is a general presumption against the extraterritorial application of legislation: see e.g. the House of Lords decision in *Holmes v. Bangladesh Biman Corporation* [1989] 1 AC 1112, 1126; 87 ILR, pp. 365, 369, per Lord Bridge, and *Air India v. Wiggins* [1980] 1 WLR 815, 819; 77 ILR, pp. 276, 279, per Lord Bridge, and the US Supreme Court decision in *EEOC v. Arabian American Oil Company and Aramco Services* 113 L Ed 2d 274, 282 (1991); 90 ILR, pp. 617, 622.

²¹⁸ The UK government has stated that it opposes all assertions of extraterritorial jurisdiction by other states on UK individuals and/or companies: see Ministerial Statement, HL Deb., vol. 673, cWA277–8, 21 July 2005, UKMIL, 76 BYIL, 2006, p. 850.

²¹⁹ The true 'effects' doctrine approach should be distinguished from other heads of jurisdiction such as the objective territorial principle, where part of the offence takes place within the jurisdiction: see e.g. *US v. Noriega* 808 F.Supp. 791 (1992); 99 ILR, p. 143. In many cases the disputes have centred upon nationality questions, the US regarding subsidiaries of US companies abroad as of US nationality even where such companies have been incorporated abroad, while the state of incorporation has regarded them as of its nationality and thus subject not to US law but to its law: see e.g. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, p. 73.

²²⁰ See e.g. the US Sherman Antitrust Act 1896, 15 USC, paras. 1 ff. See also the controversies engendered by the US freezing of Iranian assets in 1979 and the embargo imposed under the Export Administration Act in 1981 and 1982 on equipment intended for use on the Siberian gas pipeline, R. Edwards, 'Extraterritorial Application of the US Iranian Assets Control Regulations', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 870; J. Bridge, 'The Law and Politics of United

doctrine was made in *US v. Aluminum Co. of America*,²²¹ in which the Court declared that:

any state may impose liabilities, even upon persons not within its allegiance, for conduct outside its borders that has consequences within its borders which the state reprehends.²²²

The doctrine was to some extent modified by the requirement of intention and the view that the effect should be substantial, but the wide-ranging nature of the concept aroused considerable opposition outside the US, as did American attempts to take evidence abroad under very broad pre-trial discovery provisions in US law²²³ and the possibility of treble damage awards.²²⁴ The US courts, perhaps in view of the growing opposition of foreign states, modified their approach in the *Timberlane Lumber Co. v. Bank of America*²²⁵ and *Mannington Mills v. Congoleum Corporation*²²⁶ cases. It was stated that in addition to the effects test, of the earlier cases, the courts had to take into account a balancing test, 'a jurisdictional rule of reason', involving a consideration of other nations' interests and the full nature of the relationship between the actors concerned and the US.²²⁷ A series of factors that needed to be considered in the process of balancing was put forward in the latter case.²²⁸ The view taken by the

States Foreign Policy Export Controls', 4 *Legal Studies*, 1984, p. 2, and A. V. Lowe, 'Public International Law and the Conflict of Laws', 33 *ICLQ*, 1984, p. 575.

²²¹ 148 F.2d 416 (1945).

²²² *Ibid.*, p. 443. This approach was reaffirmed in a series of later cases: see e.g. *US v. Timken Roller Bearing Co.* 83 F.Supp. 284 (1949), affirmed 341 US 593 (1951); *US v. The Watchmakers of Switzerland Information Center, Inc.* cases, 133 F.Supp. 40 and 134 F.Supp. 710 (1963); 22 ILR, p. 168, and *US v. General Electric Co.* 82 F.Supp. 753 (1949) and 115 F.Supp. 835 (1953). See also *Hazeltine Research Inc. v. Zenith Radio Corporation* 239 F.Supp. 51 (1965), affirmed 395 US 100 (1969).

²²³ See e.g. the statement of the UK Attorney General that 'the wide investigating procedures under the United States antitrust legislation against persons outside the United States who are not United States citizens constitute an "extraterritorial" infringement of the proper jurisdiction and sovereignty of the United Kingdom'; *Rio Tinto Zinc v. Westinghouse Electric Corporation* [1978] 2 WLR 81; 73 ILR, p. 296. See also Lowe, *Extraterritorial Jurisdiction*, pp. 159–60 and 165–71. But see *Société Internationale v. Rogers* 357 US 197 (1958); 26 ILR, p. 123; *US v. First National City Bank* 396 F.2d 897 (1968); 38 ILR, p. 112; *In re Westinghouse Electric Corporation* 563 F.2d 992 (1977) and *In re Uranium Antitrust Litigation* 480 F.Supp. 1138 (1979).

²²⁴ See e.g. Meessen, 'Antitrust Jurisdiction', p. 794.

²²⁵ 549 F.2d 597 (1976); 66 ILR, p. 270. ²²⁶ 595 F.2d 1287 (1979); 66 ILR, p. 487.

²²⁷ See particularly K. Brewster, *Antitrust and American Business Abroad*, New York, 1958.

²²⁸ 595 F.2d 1287, 1297 (1979); 66 ILR, pp. 487, 496. See also the *Timberlane* case, 549 F.2d 597, 614 (1976); 66 ILR, pp. 270, 285. The need for judicial restraint in applying the effects doctrine in the light of comity was emphasised by the State Department: see 74 *AJIL*,

Third Restatement of Foreign Relations Law,²²⁹ it should be noted, is that a state may exercise jurisdiction based on effects in the state, when the effect or intended effect is substantial and the exercise of jurisdiction is reasonable. It is noted that the principle of reasonableness calls for limiting the exercise of jurisdiction so as to minimise conflict with the jurisdiction of other states, particularly the state where the act takes place.²³⁰ However, the assumption by the courts of a basically diplomatic function, that is, weighing and considering the interests of foreign states, stimulated criticism.²³¹

The US courts modified their approach. In *Laker Airways v. Sabena*,²³² the Court held *inter alia* that once US antitrust law was declared applicable, it could not be qualified or ignored by virtue of comity. The judicial interest balancing under the *Timberlane* precedent should not be engaged in since the courts on both sides of the Atlantic were obliged to follow the directions of the executive. Accordingly, the reconciliation of conflicting interests was to be undertaken only by diplomatic negotiations. Quite how such basic and crucial differences of opinion over the effects doctrine can be resolved is open to question and international fora have been suggested as the most appropriate way forward.²³³

In the *Hartford Fire Insurance Co. v. California* case before the US Supreme Court,²³⁴ Judge Souter writing for the majority stated that it

1980, pp. 179–83. See also the US Foreign Trade Antitrust Improvements Act 1982, where jurisdiction was said to be dependent on ‘direct, substantial and reasonably foreseeable effect’.

²²⁹ Para. 402, p. 239 and para. 403, p. 250.

²³⁰ See also the US Department of Justice, *Antitrust Enforcement Guidelines for International Operations*, 1988, pp. 31–2. But see now the Supreme Court’s decision in *Hartford Fire Insurance Co. v. California* 113 S. Ct. 2891 (1993), discussed below.

²³¹ See e.g. H. Maier, ‘Interest Balancing and Extraterritorial Jurisdiction’, 31 *American Journal of Comparative Law*, 1983, p. 579, and Maier, ‘Resolving Extraterritorial Conflicts or There and Back Again’, 25 *Va. JIL*, 1984, p. 7; W. Fugate, ‘Antitrust Aspect of the Revised Restatement of Foreign Relations Law’, *ibid.*, p. 49, and Bowett, ‘Jurisdiction’, pp. 21–2. See also Lowe, *Extraterritorial Jurisdiction*, pp. 58–62.

²³² 731 F.2d 909 (1984). However, cf. the continuation of the *Timberlane* litigation, 749 F.2d 1378 (1984), which reaffirms the approach of the first *Timberlane* case.

²³³ See e.g. Bowett, ‘Jurisdiction’, pp. 24–6 and Meessen, ‘Antitrust Jurisdiction’, pp. 808–10. See also Lowe, *Extraterritorial Jurisdiction*, part 3.

²³⁴ 113 S. Ct. 2891 (1993). See e.g. A. F. Lowenfeld, ‘Conflict, Balancing of Interest, and the Exercise of Jurisdiction to Prescribe: Reflections of the *Insurance Antitrust Case*’, 89 *AJIL*, 1995, p. 42; P. R. Trimble, ‘The Supreme Court and International Law: The Demise of *Restatement* Section 403’, *ibid.*, p. 53, and L. Kramer, ‘Extraterritorial Application of American Law after the *Insurance Antitrust Case*: A Reply to Professors Lowenfeld and Trimble’, *ibid.*, p. 750.

was well established that the relevant US legislation (the Sherman Act) 'applies to foreign conduct that was meant to produce and did in fact produce some substantial effect in the United States'.²³⁵ It was felt that a person subject to regulation by two states (here the UK with regard to the London reinsurance market and the US) could comply with the laws of both and there was no need in this case to address other considerations concerning international comity.²³⁶ The Dissenting Opinion in this case took the view that such exercise of extraterritorial jurisdiction was subject to the test of reasonableness,²³⁷ a view that the majority did not embrace.

Foreign states had started reacting to the effects doctrine by the end of the 1970s and early 1980s by enacting blocking legislation. Under the UK Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980, for example, the Secretary of State in dealing with extraterritorial actions by a foreign state may prohibit the production of documents or information to the latter's courts or authorities. In addition, a UK national or resident may sue in an English court for recovery of multiple damages paid under the judgment of a foreign court.²³⁸

The Protection of Trading Interests Act was used in connection with the action by the liquidator of Laker Airways to sue various major airlines, the Midland Bank and McDonnell Douglas in the US for conspiracy to violate the antitrust laws of the United States. Two of the airlines, British Airways and British Caledonian, sought to prevent this suit in the US by bringing an action to restrain the liquidator in the UK. Thus, the effects doctrine was not actually in issue in the case, which centred upon the application of the US antitrust law in connection with alleged conspiratorial activities in the US. The UK government, holding the view that the Bermuda II agreement regulating transatlantic airline activity²³⁹ prohibited antitrust actions against UK airlines, issued instructions under the 1980 Act forbidding compliance with any requirement imposed

²³⁵ 113 S. Ct. 2891, at 2909. ²³⁶ *Ibid.*, at 2911. ²³⁷ *Ibid.*, at 2921.

²³⁸ See Lowe, 'Conflict of Law', pp. 257–82; 50 BYIL, 1979, pp. 357–62 and 21 ILM, 1982, pp. 840–50. See also the Australian Foreign Proceedings (Prohibition of Certain Evidence) Act 1976, the Danish Limitation of Danish Shipowners' Freedom to Give Information to Authorities of Foreign Countries 1967 and the Finnish Law Prohibiting a Shipowner in Certain Cases to Produce Documents 1968. In some cases, courts have applied aspects of domestic law to achieve the same aim: see e.g. the *Fruehauf* case, 5 ILM, 1966, p. 476. Several states have made diplomatic protests at extraterritorial jurisdictional claims: see e.g. *Report of the 51st Session of the International Law Association*, 1964, pp. 565 ff.

²³⁹ See *The Use of Airspace and Outer Space* (ed. Chia-Jui Cheng), The Hague, 1993, pp. 25 ff.

pursuant to US antitrust measures, including the provision of information.²⁴⁰ The Court of Appeal felt that the order and directions required them in essence to prevent the *Laker* action in the US,²⁴¹ but the House of Lords disagreed.²⁴² It was held that the order and directions did not affect the appellant's right to pursue the claim in the US because the 1980 Act was concerned with 'requirements' and 'prohibitions' imposed by a foreign court,²⁴³ so that the respondents would not be prohibited by the direction from paying damages on a 'judgment' given against them in the US.²⁴⁴ In fact the Court refused to restrain the US action.

The Court also refused to grant judicial review of the order and directions, since the appellant had failed to show that no reasonable minister would have issued such order and directions, this being the requisite test in ministerial decisions concerning international relations.²⁴⁵ The case, however, did not really turn on the 1980 Act, but it was the first time the issue had come before the courts.²⁴⁶

The dispute over extraterritoriality between the US and many other states has been apparent across a range of situations since the freezing of Iranian assets and the Siberian pipeline episode. The operation of the Western supervision of technological exports to the communist bloc through COCOM was also affected, while that system still existed, since the US sought to exercise jurisdiction with respect to exports from third states to communist states.²⁴⁷ The adoption of legislation in the US imposing sanctions on Cuba, Iran and Libya has also stimulated opposition in view of the extraterritorial reach of such measures. The extension of

²⁴⁰ The Protection of Trading Interests (US Anti-trust Measures) Order 1983. Two directions were issued as well.

²⁴¹ *British Airways Board v. Laker Airways Ltd* [1983] 3 All ER 375; 74 ILR, p. 36.

²⁴² [1984] 3 All ER 39; 74 ILR, p. 65. But see also *Midland Bank plc v. Laker Airways Ltd* [1986] 2 WLR 707; 118 ILR, p. 540.

²⁴³ S. 1(3). ²⁴⁴ [1984] 3 All ER 39, 55–6; 74 ILR, p. 84.

²⁴⁵ [1984] 3 All ER 39, 54–5; 74 ILR, p. 83. See also *Associated Provincial Picture Houses Ltd v. Wednesbury Corp.* [1947] 2 All ER 680.

²⁴⁶ See also the statement by the Minister of State, Department of Trade and Industry, listing the statutory instruments, orders and directions made under the Protection of Trading Interests Act, 220 HC Deb., cols. 768–70, Written Answers, 12 March 1993; UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, pp. 644–6.

²⁴⁷ See the US and UK agreement in 1984 to consult should problems appear to arise with regard to the application of US export controls to individuals or businesses in the UK, or if the UK were contemplating resorting to the Protection of Trading Interests Act in relation to such controls, 68 HC Deb., col. 332, Written Answer, 23 November 1984, and 88 HC Deb., col. 373, Written Answer, 6 December 1985. See also Current Legal Developments, 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 398.

sanctions against Cuba in the Cuban Democracy Act of 1992, for example, prohibited the granting of licences under the US Cuban Assets Control Regulations for certain transactions between US-owned or controlled firms in the UK and Cuba, and this led to the adoption of an order under the Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980 by the UK government.²⁴⁸ The adoption of the Helms-Burton legislation in March 1996, amending the 1992 Act by further tightening sanctions against Cuba, provided *inter alia* for the institution of legal proceedings before the US courts against foreign persons or companies deemed to be 'trafficking' in property expropriated by Cuba from American nationals.²⁴⁹ In addition, the legislation enables the US to deny entry into the country of senior executives (and their spouses and minors) of companies deemed by the US State Department to be so 'trafficking'. This legislation, together with the adoption of the D'Amato Act in mid-1996,²⁵⁰ led to protests from many states, including the UK and Canada.²⁵¹ The Inter-American Juridical Committee of the Organisation of American States, 'directed' by the OAS General Assembly 'to examine and decide upon the validity under international law' of the Helms-Burton legislation,²⁵² unanimously concluded that:

the exercise of such jurisdiction over acts of 'trafficking in confiscated property' does not conform with the norms established by international law for the exercise of jurisdiction in each of the following respects:

a) A prescribing state does not have the rights to exercise jurisdiction over acts of 'trafficking' abroad by aliens unless specific conditions are fulfilled which do not appear to be satisfied in this situation.

²⁴⁸ See UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 643. The proposed adoption of this legislation led to UK protests as well: see UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 726 ff.

²⁴⁹ This part of the legislation was suspended by the President for six months as from July 1996: see, as to the legislation, 35 ILM, 1996, p. 357.

²⁵⁰ Intended to impose sanctions on persons or entities participating in the development of the petroleum resources of Iran or Libya. As to the legislation concerning Iran and Libya, see 35 ILM, 1996, p. 1273.

²⁵¹ Canada also announced that legislation would be introduced under the Foreign Extraterritorial Measures Act 1985 to help protect Canadian companies against the US Act: see Canadian Foreign Affairs Ministry Press Release No. 115, 17 June 1996. Note that the UN General Assembly, in resolution 50/10 (1995), called upon the US to end its embargo against Cuba. See also A. F. Lowenfeld, 'Congress and Cuba: The Helms-Burton Act', 90 AJIL, 1996, p. 419; B. M. Clagett, 'Title III of the Helms-Burton Act is Consistent with International Law', *ibid.*, p. 434; S. K. Alexander, 'Trafficking in Confiscated Cuban Property', 16 *Dickinson Journal of International Law*, 1998, p. 523, and A. V. Lowe, 'US Extraterritorial Jurisdiction: The Helms-Burton and D'Amato Acts', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 378.

²⁵² OAS Doc. OEA/SER.P AG/doc.3375/96, 4 June 1996.

b) A prescribing state does not have the rights to exercise jurisdiction over acts of 'trafficking' abroad by aliens under circumstances where neither the alien nor the conduct in question has any connection with its territory and where no apparent connection exists between such acts and the protection of its essential sovereign interests.²⁵³

The European Community, in particular, took a strong stance on the US approach. It declared in a letter to the Congressional Committee considering changes in the US export control legislation in March 1984 that:

US claims to jurisdiction over European subsidiaries of US companies and over goods and technology of US origin located outside the US are contrary to the principles of international law and can only lead to clashes of both a political and legal nature. These subsidiaries, goods and technology must be subject to the laws of the country where they are located.²⁵⁴

There was an attempt to solve such extraterritoriality conflicts in the Agreement Regarding the Application of Competition Laws signed by the European Commission on 23 September 1991 with the US.²⁵⁵ This called *inter alia* for notification and co-ordination of such activities, with emphasis placed upon the application of comity. However, the European Court of Justice held that the Commission had acted *ultra vires* in concluding such an agreement.²⁵⁶ The Agreement was re-introduced in the Decision of the Council and the Commission of 10 April 1995, which rectified certain competence problems arising as a result of the decision.²⁵⁷ Nevertheless, it remains of uncertain value, not least because the question of private law suits in the US is not dealt with. The root problems of conflict have not been eradicated at all.

The adoption in 1992 of US legislation amending the Cuban Assets Control Regime stimulated a *démarche* from the European Community protesting against the extraterritorial application of US law,²⁵⁸ as did the adoption of the Helms-Burton Act of 1996.²⁵⁹ However, the EU-US

²⁵³ CJI/SO/II/doc.67/96 rev. 5, para. 9, 23 August 1996; 35 ILM, 1996, pp. 1329, 1334. It should be noted that under article 98 of the Charter of the OAS, Opinions of the Committee have no binding effect.

²⁵⁴ Cited in Current Legal Developments, 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 399. See also UKMIL, 56 BYIL, 1985, pp. 480–1.

²⁵⁵ See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1487. See also Torremans, 'Extraterritorial', pp. 289 ff.

²⁵⁶ Case C-327/91, *French Republic v. Commission of the European Communities* [1994] ECR I-3641.

²⁵⁷ [1995] OJ L 95/45. ²⁵⁸ See UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 725.

²⁵⁹ See e.g. European Commission Press Release WE 27/96, 18 July 1996 and 35 ILM, 1996, p. 397. See also Council Regulation No. 2271/96, 36 ILM, 1997, p. 127, and the Canadian

Memorandum of Understanding of 1997 provided for the continued suspension by the US of Title III so long as the EU continued efforts to promote democracy in Cuba.²⁶⁰

However, the European Community itself has wrestled with the question of exercising jurisdiction over corporations not based in the Community in the field of competition law.²⁶¹ In *ICI v. Commission*,²⁶² the European Court of Justice established jurisdiction with regard to a series of restrictive agreements to fix the price of dyestuffs on the ground that the defendant undertakings had corporate subsidiaries that were based within the Community, and declined to follow the Advocate General's suggestion²⁶³ that jurisdiction should be founded upon direct and immediate, reasonably foreseeable and substantial effect.

The *Wood Pulp* case²⁶⁴ concerned a number of non-EC companies and an association of US companies alleged to have entered into a price-fixing arrangement. The European Commission had levied fines on the jurisdictional basis that the effects of the price agreements and practices were direct, substantial and intended within the EC.²⁶⁵ An action was then commenced before the European Court of Justice for annulment of the Commission's decision under article 173 of the EEC Treaty. Advocate General Darmon argued that international law permitted a state (and therefore the EC) to apply its competition laws to acts done by foreigners abroad if those acts had direct, substantial and foreseeable effects within the state concerned.²⁶⁶

The Court, however, took the view that the companies concerned had acted within the EC and were therefore subject to Community law. It was noted that where producers from third states sell directly to purchasers within the Community and engage in price competition in order to win orders from those customers, that constitutes competition within

Foreign Extraterritorial Measures Act 1996 (countering the Helms-Burton Act), *ibid.*, p. 111.

²⁶⁰ 36 ILM, 1997, p. 529. On 18 May 1998, the Understanding with Respect to Disciplines for the Strengthening of Investment Protection was reached whereby the EU agreed to suspend action in the World Trade Organisation against the extraterritorial aspects of Helms-Burton in exchange for an EU-wide exemption by the US from the extraterritorial elements of the Act: see UKMIL, 76 BYIL, 2006, pp. 850–1.

²⁶¹ But not the UK: see e.g. *Attorney General's Reference (No. 1 of 1982)* [1983] 3 WLR 72, where the Court of Appeal refused to extend the scope of local jurisdiction over foreign conspiracies based on the effects principle.

²⁶² [1972] ECR 619; 48 ILR, p. 106. ²⁶³ [1972] ECR 619, 693–4.

²⁶⁴ *Ahlstrom Oy v. Commission* [1988] 4 CMLR 901. ²⁶⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 916.

²⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 932.

the Community, and, where such producers sell at prices that are actually co-ordinated, that restricts competition within the Community within the meaning of article 85 of the EEC Treaty. It was stressed that the decisive factor was the place where the price-fixing agreement was actually implemented, not where the agreement was formulated.²⁶⁷ In other words, the Court founded its jurisdiction upon an interpretation of the territoriality principle, if somewhat stretched. It did not take the opportunity presented to it by the opinion of the Advocate General of accepting the effects principle of jurisdiction. Nevertheless, the case does appear to suggest that price-fixing arrangements intended to have an effect within the Community that are implemented there would be subject to the jurisdiction of the Community, irrespective of the nationality of the companies concerned and of the place where the agreement was reached.²⁶⁸

Suggestions for further reading

M. Akehurst, 'Jurisdiction in International Law', 46 BYIL, 1972–3, p. 145

R. Donner, *The Regulation of Nationality in International Law*, 2nd edn, New York, 1995

F. A. Mann, 'The Doctrine of Jurisdiction in International Law Revisited After Twenty Years', 186 HR, 1984, p. 9

L. Reydam, *Universal Jurisdiction: International and Municipal Legal Perspectives*, Oxford, 2002

²⁶⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 940–1. Note that the Court held that the association of US companies (KEA) was not subject to Community jurisdiction on the ground that it had not played a separate role in the implementation within the Community of the arrangements in dispute, *ibid.*, pp. 942–3.

²⁶⁸ See e.g. D. Lange and J. B. Sandage, 'The *Wood Pulp* Decision and its Implications for the Scope of EC Competition Law', 26 *Common Market Law Review*, 1989, p. 137, and L. Collins, *European Community Law in the United Kingdom*, 4th edn, London, 1990, p. 7. See also S. Weatherill and P. Beaumont, *EU Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1999, chapter 22.

Immunities from jurisdiction

In the previous chapter, the circumstances in which a state may seek to exercise its jurisdiction in relation to civil and criminal matters were considered. In this chapter the reverse side of this phenomenon will be examined, that is those cases in which jurisdiction cannot be exercised as it normally would because of special factors. In other words, the concern is with immunity from jurisdiction and those instances where there exist express exceptions to the usual application of a state's legal powers.

The concept of jurisdiction revolves around the principles of state sovereignty, equality and non-interference. Domestic jurisdiction as a notion attempts to define an area in which the actions of the organs of government and administration are supreme, free from international legal principles and interference. Indeed, most of the grounds for jurisdiction can be related to the requirement under international law to respect the territorial integrity and political independence of other states.

Immunity from jurisdiction, whether as regards the state itself or as regards its diplomatic representatives, is grounded in this requirement. Although constituting a derogation from the host state's jurisdiction, in that, for example, the UK cannot exercise jurisdiction over foreign ambassadors within its territory, it is to be construed nevertheless as an essential part of the recognition of the sovereignty of foreign states, as well as an aspect of the legal equality of all states.

Sovereign immunity¹

Sovereignty until comparatively recently was regarded as appertaining to a particular individual in a state and not as an abstract manifestation

¹ See generally e.g. H. Fox, *The Law of State Immunity*, Oxford, 2002; A. Dickinson, R. Lindsay and J. P. Loonam, *State Immunity: Selected Materials and Commentary*, Oxford, 2004; I. Pingel-Lenuzza, *Les Immunités des États en Droit International*, Brussels, 1998; J. Bröhmer, *State Immunity and the Violation of Human Rights*, The Hague, 1997; G. M. Badr,

of the existence and power of the state.² The sovereign was a definable person, to whom allegiance was due. As an integral part of this mystique, the sovereign could not be made subject to the judicial processes of his country. Accordingly, it was only fitting that he could not be sued in foreign courts. The idea of the personal sovereign would undoubtedly have been undermined had courts been able to exercise jurisdiction over foreign sovereigns. This personalisation was gradually replaced by the abstract concept of state sovereignty, but the basic mystique remained. In addition, the independence and equality of states made it philosophically as well as practically difficult to permit municipal courts of one country to manifest their power over foreign sovereign states, without their consent.³ Until recently, the international law relating to sovereign (or state) immunity relied virtually exclusively upon domestic case-law and latterly legislation, although the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972 was a notable exception. However, in 2004 the UN adopted the Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities of States and Their Property.⁴

State Immunity, The Hague, 1984; S. Sucharitkul, *State Immunities and Trading Activities in International Law*, Leiden, 1959, and Sucharitkul, 'Immunities of Foreign States before National Authorities', 149 HR, 1976, p. 87; I. Sinclair, 'The Law of Sovereign Immunity: Recent Developments', 167 HR, 1980, p. 113; A. Aust, 'The Law of State Immunity', 53 ICLQ, 2004, p. 255; UN Legislative Series, *Materials on Jurisdictional Immunities of States and Their Property*, New York, 1982; 10 Netherlands YIL, 1979; J. Candrian, *L'Immunité des États face aux Droits de l'Homme et à la Protection des Biens Culturels*, Zurich, 2005; *Droit des Immunités et Exigencies du Procès Équitable* (ed. I. Pingel), Paris, 2004; H. Lauterpacht, 'The Problem of Jurisdictional Immunities of Foreign States', 28 BYIL, 1951, p. 220; R. Higgins, 'Certain Unresolved Aspects of the Law of State Immunity', 29 NILR, 1982, p. 265; J. Crawford, 'International Law of Foreign Sovereigns: Distinguishing Immune Transactions', 54 BYIL, 1983, p. 75; C. J. Lewis, *State and Diplomatic Immunity*, 3rd edn, London, 1990; C. H. Schreuer, *State Immunity: Some Recent Developments*, Cambridge, 1988; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 450, and *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, p. 341. See also the cases on sovereign immunity collected in ILR, volumes 63–5; ILA, Report of the Sixtieth Conference, 1982, p. 325 and Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, 1994, p. 452; *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, vol. 64 I, 1991, p. 84, and Report of the International Law Commission, 1991, A/46/10, p. 8.

² See A. Watts, 'The Legal Position in International Law of Heads of State, Heads of Governments and Foreign Ministers', 247 HR, 1994 III, p. 13.

³ See also *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3) [2000] 1 AC 147, 201 (per Lord Browne-Wilkinson) and 268–9 (per Lord Millett); 119 ILR, pp. 152, 221–3.

⁴ See e.g. E. Denza, 'The 2005 UN Convention on State Immunity in Perspective', 55 ICLQ, 2006, p. 395; R. Gardiner, 'UN Convention on State Immunity: Form and Function', 55 ICLQ, 2006, p. 407; G. Hafner and L. Lange, 'La Convention des Nations Unies sur les Immunités Jurisdictionnelles des États et de Leurs Biens', 50 AFDI, 2004, p. 45, and H. Fox, 'In Defence of State Immunity: Why the UN Convention on State Immunity is Important', 55 ICLQ, 2006, p. 399.

The classic case illustrating the relationship between territorial jurisdiction and sovereign immunity is *The Schooner Exchange v. McFaddon*,⁵ decided by the US Supreme Court. Chief Justice Marshall declared that the jurisdiction of a state within its own territory was exclusive and absolute, but it did not encompass foreign sovereigns. He noted that the:

perfect equality and absolute independence of sovereigns . . . have given rise to a class of cases in which every sovereign is understood to waive the exercise of a part of that complete exclusive territorial jurisdiction, which has been stated to be the attribute of every nation.⁶

Lord Browne-Wilkinson stated in *Ex parte Pinochet (No. 3)* that,

It is a basic principle of international law that one sovereign state (the forum state) does not adjudicate on the conduct of a foreign state. The foreign state is entitled to procedural immunity from the processes of the forum state. This immunity extends to both criminal and civil liability.⁷

Lord Millett in *Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe* put the point as follows:

State immunity . . . is a creature of customary international law and derives from the equality of sovereign states. It is not a self-imposed restriction on the jurisdiction of its courts which the United Kingdom has chosen to adopt. It is a limitation imposed from without upon the sovereignty of the United Kingdom itself.⁸

Sovereign immunity is closely related to two other legal doctrines, non-justiciability and act of state. Reference has been made earlier to the interaction between the various principles,⁹ but it is worth noting here that the concepts of non-justiciability and act of state posit an area of international activity of states that is simply beyond the competence of the domestic tribunal in its assertion of jurisdiction, for example, that the courts would not adjudicate upon the transactions of foreign sovereign states.¹⁰ On the

⁵ 7 Cranch 116 (1812).

⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 137. It therefore followed that, 'national ships of war entering the port of a friendly power open for their reception, are to be considered as exempted by the consent of that power from its jurisdiction'. Such rules would not apply to private ships which are susceptible to foreign jurisdiction abroad. See also *Republic of the Philippines v. Pimentel* 553 US (2008), US Supreme Court, 12 June 2008, Slip Opinion, pp. 11–12.

⁷ [2000] 1 AC 147, 201; 119 ILR, p. 152. ⁸ [2000] 1 WLR 1573, 1588; 119 ILR, p. 367.

⁹ See above, chapter 4, p. 179.

¹⁰ See e.g. *Buttes Gas and Oil Co. v. Hammer (No. 3)* [1982] AC 888; 64 ILR, p. 332; *Buck v. Attorney-General* [1965] 1 Ch. 745; 42 ILR, p. 11 and Goff J, *Fº Congreso del Partido* [1978] 1 QB 500, 527–8; 64 ILR, pp. 154, 178–9. See also Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', p. 198.

other hand, the principle of jurisdictional immunity asserts that in particular situations a court is prevented from exercising the jurisdiction that it possesses. Thus, immunity from jurisdiction does not mean exemption from the legal system of the territorial state in question. The two concepts are distinct. In *International Association of Machinists & Aerospace Workers v. OPEC*,¹¹ it was declared that the two concepts were similar in that they reflect the need to respect the sovereignty of foreign states, but that they differed in that the former went to the jurisdiction of the court and was a principle of international law, whereas the latter constituted a prudential doctrine of domestic law having internal constitutional roots. Accordingly, the question of sovereign immunity is a procedural one and one to be taken as a preliminary issue,¹² logically preceding the issue of act of state.¹³

In practice, however, the distinction is not always so evident and arguments presented before the court founded both upon non-justiciability and sovereign immunity are to be expected. It is also an interesting point to consider the extent to which the demise of the absolute immunity approach has affected the doctrine of non-justiciability.

As far as the act of state doctrine is concerned in particular in this context, some disquiet has been expressed by courts that the application of that principle may in certain circumstances have the effect of reintroducing the absolute theory of sovereign immunity. In *Letelier v. Republic of Chile*,¹⁴ for example, Chile argued that even if its officials had ordered

See further above, p. 182. Note also that 'a claim to state immunity is essentially a public claim that demands open litigation', *Harb v. King Fahd* [2005] EWCA Civ 632, para. 28, per Thorpe LJ.

¹¹ 649 F.2d 1354, 1359; 66 ILR, pp. 413, 418. Reaffirmed in *Asociacion de Reclamantes v. The United Mexican States* 22 ILM, 1983, pp. 625, 641–2. See also *Ramirez v. Weinberger* 23 ILM, 1984, p. 1274; *Goldwater v. Carter* 444 US 996 (1979) and *Empresa Exportadora de Azucar v. Industria Azucarera Nacional SA* [1983] 2 LL. R 171; 64 ILR, p. 368.

¹² This has been reaffirmed by the International Court of Justice in its Advisory Opinion in the *Difference Relating to Immunity from Legal Process* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 62, 88; 121 ILR, pp. 405, 432–3. Mance LJ stated in the Court of Appeal decision in *Jones v. Saudi Arabia* that 'claims to state immunity should be resolved at an early stage in the proceedings', [2004] EWCA Civ 1394, para. 10; 129 ILR, p. 653. See also *Republic of the Philippines v. Pimentel* 553 US-(2008), US Supreme Court, 12 June 2008, Slip Opinion, p. 11, holding that consideration of the merits of the case where sovereign immunity was pleaded would itself constitute an infringement of sovereign immunity.

¹³ See e.g. *Siderman v. Republic of Argentina* 965 F.2d 699 (1992); 103 ILR, p. 454.

¹⁴ 488 F.Supp. 665 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 378. Note that the US Court of Appeals has held that the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 does not supersede the act of state doctrine: see *Helen Liu v. Republic of China* 29 ILM, 1990, p. 192.

the assassination of Letelier in the US, such acts could not be the subject of discussion in the US courts as the orders had been given in Chile. This was not accepted by the Court since to do otherwise would mean emasculating the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act by permitting a state to bring back the absolute immunity approach 'under the guise of the act of state doctrine'.¹⁵ In somewhat different circumstances, Kerr LJ signalled his concern in *Maclaine Watson v. The International Tin Council*¹⁶ that the doctrine of non-justiciability might be utilised to bypass the absence of sovereign immunity with regard to a state's commercial activities.

Of course, once a court has determined that the relevant sovereign immunity legislation permits it to hear the case, it may still face the act of state argument. Such legislation implementing the restrictive immunity approach does not supplant the doctrine of act of state or non-justiciability,¹⁷ although by accepting that the situation is such that immunity does not apply the scope for the non-justiciability plea is clearly much reduced.¹⁸

The absolute immunity approach

The relatively uncomplicated role of the sovereign and of government in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries logically gave rise to the concept of absolute immunity, whereby the sovereign was completely immune from foreign jurisdiction in all cases regardless of circumstances. However, the unparalleled growth in the activities of the state, especially with regard to commercial matters, has led to problems and in most countries to a modification of the above rule. The number of governmental agencies and public corporations, nationalised industries and other state organs created a reaction against the concept of absolute immunity, partly because it would enable state enterprises to have an advantage over private companies. Accordingly many states began to adhere to the doctrine of restrictive immunity, under which immunity was available as regards governmental activity, but not where the state was engaging in commercial activity. Governmental acts with regard to which immunity would be granted are termed acts *jure imperii*, while those relating to private or trade activity are termed acts *jure gestionis*.

¹⁵ 488 F.Supp. 665, 674. ¹⁶ [1988] 3 WLR 1169, 1188; 80 ILR, pp. 191, 209.

¹⁷ See *International Association of Machinists & Aerospace Workers v. OPEC* 649 F.2d 1354, 1359–60; 66 ILR, pp. 413, 418. See also *Liu v. Republic of China* 29 ILM, 1990, pp. 192, 205.

¹⁸ See the interesting discussion of the relationship between non-justiciability and immunity by Evans J in *Australia and New Zealand Banking Group v. Commonwealth of Australia*, 1989, transcript, pp. 59–60.

The leading practitioner of the absolute immunity approach has been the United Kingdom, and this position was established in a number of important cases.¹⁹

In the *Parlement Belge* case,²⁰ the Court of Appeal emphasised that the principle to be deduced from all the relevant preceding cases was that every state

declines to exercise by means of its courts any of its territorial jurisdiction over the person of any sovereign or ambassador of any other state, or over the public property of any state which is destined to public use . . . though such sovereign, ambassador or property be within its jurisdiction.²¹

The wide principle expressed in this case gave rise to the question as to what kind of legal interest it was necessary for the foreign sovereign to have in property so as to render it immune from the jurisdiction of the British courts.

Commonly regarded as the most extreme expression of the absolute immunity doctrine is the case of the *Porto Alexandre*.²² This concerned a Portuguese requisitioned vessel against which a writ was issued in an English court for non-payment of dues for services rendered by tugs near Liverpool. The vessel was exclusively engaged in private trading operations, but the Court felt itself constrained by the terms of the *Parlement Belge* principle to dismiss the case in view of the Portuguese government interest.

Differences of opinion as to the application of the immunity rules were revealed in the House of Lords in the *Cristina* case.²³ This followed a Spanish Republican government decree requisitioning ships registered in Bilbao which was issued while the *Cristina* was on the high seas. On its arrival in Cardiff the Republican authorities took possession of the ship, whereupon its owners proceeded to issue a writ claiming possession. The case turned on the argument to dismiss the case, by the Republican government, in view of its sovereign immunity. The majority of the House

¹⁹ But note a series of early cases which are not nearly so clear in their adoption of a broad absolute immunity doctrine: see e.g. *The Prins Frederik* (1820) 2 Dod. 451; *Duke of Brunswick v. King of Hanover* (1848) 2 HLC 1 and *De Haber v. Queen of Portugal* (1851) 17 QB 171. See also Phillimore J in *The Charkieh* (1873) LR 4A and E 59.

²⁰ (1880) 5 PD 197.

²¹ Brett LJ, *ibid.*, pp. 214–15. Note, of course, that the principle relates to public property destined for public, not private, use.

²² [1920] P. 30; 1 AD, p. 146. See e.g. Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', p. 126. See also *The Jupiter* [1924] P. 236, 3 AD, p. 136.

²³ [1938] AC 485; 9 AD, p. 250.

of Lords accepted this in view of the requisition decree taking over the ship.

However, two of the Lords criticised the *Porto Alexandre* decision and doubted whether immunity covered state trading vessels,²⁴ while Lord Atkin took more of a fundamentalist absolute approach.²⁵

In *Krajina v. Tass Agency*²⁶ the Court of Appeal held that the Agency was a state organ of the USSR and was thus entitled to immunity from local jurisdiction. This was followed in *Baccus SRL v. Servicio Nacional del Trigo*,²⁷ where the Court felt that the defendants, although a separate legal person under Spanish law, were in effect a department of state of the Spanish government. How the entity was actually constituted was regarded as an internal matter, and it was held entitled to immunity from suit.

A different view from the majority was taken by Lord Justice Singleton who, in a Dissenting Opinion, condemned what he regarded as the extension of the doctrine of sovereign immunity to separate legal entities.²⁸

There is some limitation to the absolute immunity rule to the extent that a mere claim by a foreign sovereign to have an interest in the contested property would have to be substantiated before the English court would grant immunity. Since this involves some submission by the foreign sovereign to the local jurisdiction, immunity is not unqualifiedly absolute. Once the court is clear that the claim by the sovereign is not merely illusory or founded on a manifestly defective title, it will dismiss the case. This was brought out in *Juan Ysmael v. Republic of Indonesia*²⁹ in which the asserted interest in a vessel by the Indonesian government was regarded as manifestly defective so that the case was not dismissed on the ground of sovereign immunity.³⁰

American cases, however, have shown a rather different approach, one that distinguishes between ownership on the one hand and possession and control on the other. In two cases particularly, immunity was refused

²⁴ See e.g. Lord Macmillan, [1938] AC 485, 498; 9 AD, p. 260.

²⁵ [1938] AC 485, p. 490. See also *Berizzi Bros. C. v. SS Pesaro* 271 US 562 (1926); 3 AD, p. 186 and *The Navemar* 303 US 68 (1938); 9 AD, p. 176.

²⁶ [1949] 2 All ER 274; 16 AD, p. 129. See also Cohen LJ, [1949] 2 All ER 274, 281.

²⁷ [1957] 1 QB 438; 23 ILR, p. 160. ²⁸ [1957] 1 QB 438, 461; 23 ILR, p. 169.

²⁹ [1955] AC 72; 21 ILR, p. 95. See also *USA and France v. Dollfus Mieg et Compagnie* [1952] AC 582; 19 ILR, p. 163.

³⁰ See Higgins, 'Unresolved Aspects', p. 273, who raises the question as to whether this test would be rigorous in an era of restrictive immunity. See also R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 5.

where the vessels concerned, although owned by the states claiming immunity, were held subject to the jurisdiction since at the relevant time they were not in the possession or control of these states.³¹

Since the courts will not try a case in which a foreign state is the defendant, it is necessary to decide what a foreign state is in each instance. Where doubts are raised as to the status of a foreign entity and whether or not it is to be regarded as a state for the purposes of the municipal courts, the executive certificate issued by the UK government will be decisive.

The case of *Duff Development Company v. Kelantan*³² is a good example of this point. Kelantan was a Malay state under British protection. Both its internal and external policies were subject to British direction and it could in no way be described as politically independent. However, the UK government had issued an executive certificate to the effect that Kelantan was an independent state and that the Crown neither exercised nor claimed any rights of sovereignty or jurisdiction over it. The House of Lords, to whom the case had come, declared that once the Crown recognised a foreign ruler as sovereign, this bound the courts and no other evidence was admissible or needed. Accordingly, Kelantan was entitled to sovereign immunity from the jurisdiction of the English courts.

The restrictive approach

A number of states in fact started adopting the restrictive approach to immunity, permitting the exercise of jurisdiction over non-sovereign acts, at a relatively early stage.³³ The Supreme Court of Austria in 1950, in a comprehensive survey of practice, concluded that in the light of the increased activity of states in the commercial field the classic doctrine of absolute immunity had lost its meaning and was no longer a rule of international

³¹ *The Navemar* 303 US 68 (1938); 9 AD, p. 176 and *Republic of Mexico v. Hoffman* 324 US 30 (1945); 12 AD, p. 143.

³² [1924] AC 797; 2 AD, p. 124. By s. 21 of the State Immunity Act 1978, an executive certificate is deemed to be conclusive as to, for example, statehood in this context. See also *Trawnik v. Gordon Lennox* [1985] 2 All ER 368 as to the issue of a certificate under s. 21 on the status of the Commander of UK Forces in Berlin.

³³ See e.g. Belgium and Italy, Lauterpacht, 'Problem'; Badr, *State Immunity*, chapter 2; Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity' and I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, pp. 323 ff. See also the Brussels Convention on the Immunity of State-owned Ships, 1926, which assimilated the position of such ships engaged in trade to that of private ships regarding submission to the jurisdiction, and the 1958 Conventions on the Territorial Sea and on the High Seas. See now articles 31, 32, 95 and 96 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea.

law.³⁴ In 1952, in the Tate letter, the United States Department of State declared that the increasing involvement of governments in commercial activities coupled with the changing views of foreign states to absolute immunity rendered a change necessary and that thereafter 'the Department [will] follow the restrictive theory of sovereign immunity'.³⁵ This approach was also adopted by the courts, most particularly in *Victory Transport Inc. v. Comisaria General de Abastecimientos y Transportes*.³⁶ In this case, the Court, in the absence of a State Department 'suggestion' as to the immunity of the defendants, a branch of the Spanish Ministry of Commerce, affirmed jurisdiction since the chartering of a ship to transport wheat was not strictly a political or public act. The restrictive theory approach was endorsed by four Supreme Court Justices in *Alfred Dunhill of London Inc. v. Republic of Cuba*.³⁷

As far as the UK was concerned, the adoption of the restrictive approach occurred rather later.³⁸

In the *Philippine Admiral* case,³⁹ the vessel, which was owned by the Philippine government, had writs issued against it in Hong Kong by two shipping corporations. The Privy Council, hearing the case on appeal from the Supreme Court of Hong Kong, reviewed previous decisions on sovereign immunity and concluded that it would not follow the *Porto Alexandre* case.⁴⁰ Lord Cross gave four reasons for not following the earlier case. First, that the Court of Appeal wrongly felt that they were bound by the *Parlement Belge*⁴¹ decision. Secondly, that the House of Lords in *The Cristina*⁴² had been divided on the issue of immunity for state-owned vessels engaged in commerce. Thirdly, that the trend of opinion was against the absolute immunity doctrine; and fourthly that it was 'wrong' to apply the doctrine since states could in the Western world be sued in their

³⁴ *Dralle v. Republic of Czechoslovakia* 17 ILR, p. 155. This case was cited with approval by the West German Supreme Constitutional Court in *The Empire of Iran* 45 ILR, p. 57 and by the US Court of Appeals in *Victory Transport Inc. v. Comisaria General de Abastecimientos y Transportes* 35 ILR, p. 110.

³⁵ 26 *Department of State Bulletin*, 984 (1952).

³⁶ 35 ILR, p. 110. See also e.g. *National City Bank of New York v. Republic of China* 22 ILR, p. 210 and *Rich v. Naviera Vacuba* 32 ILR, p. 127.

³⁷ 15 ILM, 1976, pp. 735, 744, 746–7; 66 ILR, pp. 212, 221, 224.

³⁸ See, for some early reconsiderations, Lord Denning in *Rahimtoola v. Nizam of Hyderabad* [1958] AC 379, 422; 24 ILR, pp. 175, 190.

³⁹ [1976] 2 WLR 214; 64 ILR, p. 90. Sinclair describes this as a 'historic landmark', 'Sovereign Immunity', p. 154. See also R. Higgins, 'Recent Developments in the Law of Sovereign Immunity in the United Kingdom', 71 AJIL, 1977, pp. 423, 424.

⁴⁰ [1920] P. 30; 1 AD, p. 146. ⁴¹ (1880) 5 PD 197. ⁴² [1938] AC 485; 9 AD, p. 250.

own courts on commercial contracts and there was no reason why foreign states should not be equally liable to be sued.⁴³ Thus, the Privy Council held that in cases where a state-owned merchant ship involved in ordinary trade was the object of a writ, it would not be entitled to sovereign immunity and the litigation would proceed.

In the case of *Thai-Europe Tapioca Service Ltd v. Government of Pakistan*,⁴⁴ a German-owned ship on charter to carry goods from Poland to Pakistan had been bombed in Karachi by Indian planes during the 1971 war. Since the agreement provided for disputes to be settled by arbitration in England, the matter came eventually before the English courts. The cargo had previously been consigned to a Pakistani corporation, and that corporation had been taken over by the Pakistani government. The shipowners sued the government for the sixty-seven-day delay in unloading that had resulted from the bombing. The government pleaded sovereign immunity and sought to have the action dismissed.

The Court of Appeal decided that since all the relevant events had taken place outside the jurisdiction and in view of the action being *in personam* against the foreign government rather than against the ship itself, the general principle of sovereign immunity would have to stand.

Lord Denning declared in this case that there were certain exceptions to the doctrine of sovereign immunity. It did not apply where the action concerned land situated in the UK or trust funds lodged in the UK or debts incurred in the jurisdiction for services rendered to property in the UK, nor was there any immunity when a commercial transaction was entered into with a trader in the UK 'and a dispute arises which is properly within the territorial jurisdiction of our courts'.⁴⁵

This unfortunate split approach, absolute immunity for actions *in personam* and restrictive immunity for actions *in rem* did not, however, last long. In *Trendtex Trading Corporation Ltd v. Central Bank of Nigeria*,⁴⁶ all three judges of the Court of Appeal accepted the validity of the restrictive approach as being consonant with justice, comity and international practice.⁴⁷ The problem of precedent was resolved for two of the judges by declaring that international law knew no doctrine of *stare decisis*.⁴⁸ The

⁴³ [1976] 2 WLR 214, 232; 64 ILR, pp. 90, 108. Note that Lord Cross believed that the absolute theory still obtained with regard to actions *in personam*, [1976] 2 WLR 214, 233.

⁴⁴ [1975] 1 WLR 1485; 64 ILR, p. 81. ⁴⁵ [1975] 1 WLR 1485, 1490–1; 64 ILR, p. 84.

⁴⁶ [1977] 2 WLR 356; 64 ILR, p. 122.

⁴⁷ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 366–7 (Denning MR), 380 (Stephenson LJ) and 385–6 (Shaw LJ).

⁴⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 365–6 and 380. But cf. Stephenson LJ, *ibid.*, p. 381. See further above, chapter 4, p. 145.

clear acceptance of the restrictive theory of immunity in *Trendtex* was reaffirmed in later cases,⁴⁹ particularly by the House of Lords in the *I^o Congreso del Partido* case⁵⁰ and in *Alcom Ltd v. Republic of Colombia*.⁵¹

The majority of states now have tended to accept the restrictive immunity doctrine⁵² and this has been reflected in domestic legislation.⁵³ In particular, the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976,⁵⁴ provides in section 1605 for the grounds upon which a state may be subject to the jurisdiction (as general exceptions to the jurisdictional immunity of a foreign state), while the UK State Immunity Act 1978⁵⁵ similarly provides for a general rule of immunity from the jurisdiction of the courts with a range of exceptions thereto.⁵⁶

⁴⁹ See e.g. *Hispano Americana Mercantil SA v. Central Bank of Nigeria* [1979] 2 LL. R 277; 64 ILR, p. 221.

⁵⁰ [1981] 2 All ER 1064; 64 ILR, p. 307, a case concerned with the pre-1978 Act common law. See also *Planmount Ltd v. Republic of Zaire* [1981] 1 All ER 1110; 64 ILR, p. 268.

⁵¹ [1984] 2 All ER 6; 74 ILR, p. 179. See also *Jones v. Saudi Arabia* [2006] UKHL 26, para. 8 (per Lord Bingham); 129 ILR, pp. 716.

⁵² See e.g. the *Administration des Chemins de Fer du Gouvernement Iranien* case, 52 ILR, p. 315 and the *Empire of Iran* case, 45 ILR, p. 57; see also Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity'; Badr, *State Immunity*; and UN, *Materials*. Note also *Abbott v. Republic of South Africa* before the Spanish Constitutional Court, 86 ILR, p. 512; *Manauta v. Embassy of Russian Federation* 113 ILR, p. 429 (Argentinian Supreme Court); *US v. Friedland* 182 DLR (4th) 614; 120 ILR, p. 417 and *CGM Industrial v. KPMG* 1998 (3) SA 738; 121 ILR, p. 472.

⁵³ See e.g. the Singapore State Immunity Act 1979; the Pakistan State Immunity Ordinance 1981; the South African Foreign States Immunities Act 1981; the Canadian State Immunity Act 1982 and the Australian Foreign States Immunities Act 1985. See also article 5 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities of States and Their Property, 2004. Note that this Convention, which is not in force as at the date of writing, does not apply to criminal proceedings.

⁵⁴ See e.g. G. Delaume, 'Public Debt and Sovereign Immunity: The Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976', 71 AJIL, 1977, p. 399; Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', pp. 243 ff., and D. Weber, 'The Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976', 3 *Yale Studies in World Public Order*, 1976, p. 1. Note that in *Republic of Austria v. Altmann*, the US Supreme Court held that the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act applied to acts which occurred prior to its enactment and even prior to the adoption by the US of the restrictive immunity approach in 1952, 541 US 677 (2004).

⁵⁵ See e.g. D. W. Bowett, 'The State Immunity Act 1978', 37 *Cambridge Law Journal*, 1978, p. 193; R. C. A. White, 'The State Immunity Act 1978', 42 MLR, 1979, p. 72; Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', pp. 257 ff., and M. N. Shaw, 'The State Immunity Act 1978', *New Law Journal*, 23 November 1978, p. 1136.

⁵⁶ See also the 1972 European Convention on State Immunity. The Additional Protocol to the European Convention, which establishes a European Tribunal in matters of State Immunity to determine disputes under the Convention, came into force on 22 May 1985, to be composed initially of the same members as the European Court of Human Rights: see Council of Europe Press Release, C(85)39. See generally UN, *Materials*, Part I 'National Legislation', and Badr, *State Immunity*, chapter 3. See also the Inter-American

The former Soviet Union and some other countries generally adhered to the absolute immunity theory, although in practice entered into many bilateral agreements permitting the exercise of jurisdiction in cases where a commercial contract had been signed on the territory of the other state party.⁵⁷

Sovereign and non-sovereign acts

With the acceptance of the restrictive theory, it becomes crucial to analyse the distinction between those acts that will benefit from immunity and those that will not. In the *Victory Transport* case,⁵⁸ the Court declared that it would (in the absence of a State Department suggestion)⁵⁹ refuse to grant immunity, unless the activity in question fell within one of the categories of strictly political or public acts: viz. internal administrative acts, legislative acts, acts concerning the armed forces or diplomatic activity and public loans.

However, the basic approach of recent legislation⁶⁰ has been to proclaim a rule of immunity and then list the exceptions, so that the onus of proof falls on the other side of the line.⁶¹ This approach is mirrored in article 5

Draft Convention on Jurisdictional Immunity of States, 22 ILM, 1983, p. 292. Note that the large number of cases precipitated by the 1979 Iran Hostages Crisis and the US freezing of assets were argued on the basis of the restrictive theory, before being terminated: see e.g. R. Edwards, 'Extraterritorial Application of the US Iranian Assets Control Regulations', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 870. See also *Dames and Moore v. Regan* 101 S. Ct. 1972 (1981); 72 ILR, p. 270.

⁵⁷ See, for a number of examples, UN, *Materials*, pp. 134–50. See also M. M. Boguslavsky, 'Foreign State Immunity: Soviet Doctrine and Practice', 10 Netherlands YIL, 1979, p. 167. See, as to Philippines practice, *US v. Ruiz and De Guzman* 102 ILR, p. 122; *US v. Guinto, Valencia and Others*, *ibid.*, p. 132 and *The Holy See v. Starbright Sales Enterprises*, *ibid.*, p. 163.

⁵⁸ 336 F.2d 354 (1964); 35 ILR, p. 110. See also P. Lalive, 'L'Immunité de Jurisdiction des États et des Organisations Internationales', 84 HR, 1953, p. 205, and Lauterpacht, 'Problem', pp. 237–9.

⁵⁹ Note that since the 1976 Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, the determination of such status is a judicial, not executive, act.

⁶⁰ See e.g. s. 1 of the State Immunity Act 1978; s. 1604 of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 and s. 9 of the Australian Foreign States Immunities Act 1985. See also *Saudi Arabia v. Nelson* 123 L Ed 2d 47 (1993); 100 ILR, p. 544.

⁶¹ See also article 15 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972. Article II of the Revised Draft Articles for a Convention on State Immunity adopted by the International Law Association in 1994, Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, 1994, p. 22, provides that: 'In principle, a foreign state shall be immune from the adjudicatory jurisdiction of a forum state for acts performed by it in the exercise of its sovereign authority, i.e. *jure imperii*. It shall not be immune in the circumstances provided in article III.'

of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities of States and Their Property, 2004, which notes that:⁶²

A state enjoys immunity in respect of itself and its property, from the jurisdiction of the courts of another state subject to the provisions of the present Convention.

In such circumstances, the way in which the 'state' is defined for sovereign immunity purposes becomes important. Article 2(1)b of the Convention declares that 'state' means: (i) the state and its various organs of government; (ii) constituent units of a federal state or political subdivisions of the state, which are entitled to perform acts in the exercise of sovereign authority, and are acting in that capacity; (iii) agencies or instrumentalities of the state or other entities, to the extent that they are entitled to perform and are actually performing acts in the exercise of sovereign authority of the state; and (iv) representatives of the state acting in that capacity.⁶³

With the adoption of the restrictive theory of immunity, the appropriate test becomes whether the activity in question is of itself sovereign (*jure imperii*) or non-sovereign (*jure gestionis*). In determining this, the predominant approach has been to focus upon the nature of the transaction rather than its purpose.⁶⁴

However, it should be noted that article 2(2) of the Convention provides that:

⁶² There is extensive state practice on whether immunity should be seen as a derogation from territorial sovereignty and thus to be justified in each particular case, or as a rule of international law as such, thus not requiring substantiation in each and every case: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, part 2, pp. 142 ff.

⁶³ Note that the provision in point (iv) is somewhat confusing in the light of article 3 which states that the Convention is without prejudice to the privileges and immunities of diplomatic and consular missions, special missions and missions to international organisations, and the immunities granted to heads of state.

⁶⁴ See e.g. s. 1603(d) of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976. The section-by-section analysis of the Act emphasises that 'the fact that goods or services to be procured through a contract are to be used for a public purpose is irrelevant; it is the initially commercial nature of an activity or transaction that is critical', reproduced in UN, *Materials*, pp. 103, 107. See also the *Empire of Iran* case, 45 ILR, pp. 57, 80–1; *Trendtex Trading Corporation Ltd v. Central Bank of Nigeria* [1977] 2 WLR 356; 64 ILR, p. 122; *Non-resident Petitioner v. Central Bank of Nigeria* 16 ILM, 1977, p. 501 (a German case); *Planmount Ltd v. Republic of Zaire* [1981] 1 All ER 1110; 64 ILR, p. 268 and *Saudi Arabia v. Nelson* 123 L Ed 2d 47 (1993); 100 ILR, p. 544 (US Supreme Court). See also article I of the Revised Draft Articles for a Convention on State Immunity adopted by the International Law Association in 1994, Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, 1994, p. 23.

In determining whether a contract or transaction is a 'commercial transaction' ... reference should be made primarily to the nature of the contract or transaction, but its purpose should also be taken into account if the parties to the contract or transaction have so agreed, or if, in the practice of the state of the forum, that purpose is relevant to determining the non-commercial character of the contract or transaction.

The reason for the modified 'nature' test was in order to provide an adequate safeguard and protection for developing countries, particularly as they attempt to promote national economic development. The ILC Commentary notes that a two-stage approach is posited, to be applied successively. First, reference should be made primarily to the nature of the contract or transaction and, if it is established that it is non-commercial or governmental in nature, no further enquiry would be needed. If, however, the contract or transaction appeared to be commercial, then reference to its purpose should be made in order to determine whether the contract or transaction was truly sovereign or not. States should be given an opportunity to maintain that in their practice a particular contract or transaction should be treated as non-commercial since its purpose is clearly public and supported by reasons of state. Examples given include the procurement of medicaments to fight a spreading epidemic, and food supplies.⁶⁵ This approach, a modification of earlier drafts,⁶⁶ is not uncontroversial and some care is required. It would, for example, be unhelpful if the purpose criterion were to be adopted in a manner which would permit it to be used to effect a considerable retreat from the restrictive immunity approach. This is not to say, however, that no consideration whatsoever of the purpose of the transaction in question should be undertaken.

Lord Wilberforce in *I° Congreso del Partido*⁶⁷ emphasised that in considering whether immunity should be recognised one had to consider the whole context in which the claim is made in order to identify the 'relevant act' which formed the basis of that claim. In particular, was it an act *jure gestionis*, or in other words 'an act of a private law character such as a private citizen might have entered into'?⁶⁸ This use of the private law/public law dichotomy, familiar to civil law systems, was particularly noticeable, although different states draw the distinction at

⁶⁵ Report of the International Law Commission, 1991, pp. 29–30.

⁶⁶ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1983, vol. II, part 2. ⁶⁷ [1983] AC 244, 267; 64 ILR, pp. 307, 318.

⁶⁸ [1983] AC 244, 262; 64 ILR, p. 314.

different points.⁶⁹ It should also be noted, however, that this distinction is less familiar to common law systems. In addition, the issues ascribed to the governmental sphere as distinct from the private area rest upon the particular political concept proclaimed by the state in question, so that a clear and comprehensive international consensus regarding the line of distinction is unlikely.⁷⁰ The characterisation of an act as *jure gestionis* or *jure imperii* will also depend upon the perception of the issue at hand by the courts. Lord Wilberforce also noted that while the existence of a governmental purpose or motive could not convert what would otherwise be an act *jure gestionis* or an act of private law into one done *jure imperii*,⁷¹ purpose may be relevant if throwing some light upon the nature of what was done.⁷²

The importance of the contextual approach at least as the starting point of the investigation was also emphasised by the Canadian Supreme Court in *United States of America v. The Public Service Alliance of Canada and Others (Re Canada Labour Code)*.⁷³ It was noted that the contextual approach was the only reasonable basis for applying the restrictive immunity doctrine for the alternative was to attempt the impossible, 'an antiseptic distillation of a "once-and-for-all" characterisation of the activity in question, entirely divorced from its purpose'.⁷⁴ The issue was also considered by the Supreme Court of Victoria, Australia, in *Reid v. Republic of Nauru*,⁷⁵ which stated that in some situations the separation of act, motive and purpose might not be possible. The motive or purpose underlying particular conduct may constitute part of the definition of the act itself in some cases, while in others the nature or quality of the act performed might not be ascertainable without reference to the context within which it is carried out. The Court also made the point that a relevant factor was the perception held or policy adopted in each particular country as to the attributes of sovereignty itself.⁷⁶ The point that 'unless we can inquire into the purpose of such acts, we cannot determine their nature' was also made by the US Court of Appeals in *De Sanchez v. Banco Central de Nicaragua and Others*.⁷⁷

⁶⁹ See e.g. Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', pp. 210–13, and the *Empire of Iran* case, 45 ILR, pp. 57, 80. See also article 7 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972.

⁷⁰ See e.g. Crawford, 'International Law', p. 88, and Lauterpacht, 'Problem', pp. 220, 224–6.

⁷¹ [1983] AC 244, 267; 64 ILR, p. 318. ⁷² [1983] AC 244, 272; 64 ILR, p. 323.

⁷³ (1992) 91 DLR (4th) 449; 94 ILR, p. 264. ⁷⁴ [1992] 91 DLR (4th) 463; 94 ILR, p. 278.

⁷⁵ [1993] 1 VR 251; 101 ILR, p. 193. ⁷⁶ [1993] 1 VR 253; 101 ILR, pp. 195–6.

⁷⁷ 770 F.2d 1385, 1393 (1985); 88 ILR, pp. 75, 85.

The particular issue raised in the *Congreso* case was whether immunity could be granted where, while the initial transaction was clearly commercial, the cause of the breach of the contract in question appeared to be an exercise of sovereign authority. In that case, two vessels operated by a Cuban state-owned shipping enterprise and delivering sugar to a Chilean company were ordered by the Cuban government to stay away from Chile after the Allende regime had been overthrown. The Cuban government pleaded sovereign immunity on the grounds that the breach of the contract was occasioned as a result of a foreign policy decision. The House of Lords did not accept this and argued that once a state had entered the trading field, it would require a high standard of proof of a sovereign act for immunity to be introduced. Lord Wilberforce emphasised that:

in order to withdraw its action from the sphere of acts done *jure gestionis*, a state must be able to point to some act clearly done *jure imperii*⁷⁸

and that the appropriate test was to be expressed as follows:

it is not just that the purpose or motive of the act is to serve the purposes of the state, but that the act is of its own character a governmental act, as opposed to an act which any private citizen can perform.⁷⁹

In the circumstances of the case, that test had not been satisfied. One of the two ships, the *Playa Larga*, had been owned at all relevant times by the Cuban government, but the second ship, the *Marble Islands*, was owned by a trading enterprise not entitled to immunity. When this ship was on the high seas, it was taken over by the Cuban government and ordered to proceed to North Vietnam, where its cargo was eventually donated to the people of that country. The Court was unanimous in rejecting the plea of immunity with regard to the *Playa Larga*, but was split over the second ship.

Two members of the House of Lords, Lord Wilberforce and Lord Edmund-Davies, felt that the key element with regard to the *Marble Islands*, as distinct from the *Playa Larga*, where the government had acted as owner of the ship and not as governmental authority, was that the Republic of Cuba directed the disposal of the cargo in North Vietnam. This was not part of any commercial arrangement which was conducted by the demise charterer, who was thus responsible for the civil wrongs

⁷⁸ [1981] 2 All ER 1064, 1075; 64 ILR, p. 320.

⁷⁹ *Ibid.*, quoting the judge at first instance, [1978] 1 All ER 1169, 1192; 64 ILR, p. 179.

committed. The acts of the government were outside this framework and accordingly purely governmental.⁸⁰

However, the majority held that the Cuban government had acted in the context of a private owner in discharging and disposing of the cargo in North Vietnam and had not regarded itself as acting in the exercise of sovereign powers. Everything had been done in purported reliance upon private law rights in that the demise charterers had sold the cargo to another Cuban state enterprise by ordinary private law sale and in purported reliance upon the bill of lading which permitted the sale in particular instances. It was the purchaser that donated the cargo to the Vietnamese people.⁸¹

In many respects, nevertheless, the minority view is the more acceptable one, in that in reality it was the Cuban government's taking control of the ship and direction of it and its cargo that determined the issue and this was done as a deliberate matter of state policy. The fact that it was accomplished by the private law route rather than, for example, by direct governmental decree should not settle the issue conclusively. In fact, one thing that the case does show is how difficult it is in reality to distinguish public from private acts.⁸²

In *Littrell v. United States of America* (No. 2),⁸³ Hoffman LJ in the Court of Appeal emphasised that it would be facile in the case, which concerned medical treatment for a US serviceman on an American base in the UK, to regard the general military context as such as determinative. One needed to examine carefully all the relevant circumstances in order to decide whether a sovereign or a non-sovereign activity had been involved. Important factors to be considered included where the activity actually took place, whom it involved and what kind of act itself was involved.⁸⁴ In *Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe*, the House of Lords dealt with a case concerning

⁸⁰ [1981] 2 All ER 1064, 1077 and 1081; 64 ILR, pp. 321, 327.

⁸¹ [1981] 2 All ER 1079–80, 1082 and 1083; 64 ILR, pp. 325, 328, 329.

⁸² Note that if the State Immunity Act 1978 had been in force when the cause of action arose in this case, it is likely that the claim of immunity would have completely failed: see s. 10. See also *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Co.* [1995] 1 WLR 1147, where the House of Lords separated out a series of events and held that an initial sovereign act did not characterise the situation as a whole: see below, p. 714.

⁸³ [1995] 1 WLR 82, 95; 100 ILR, p. 438. Note that the case, as it concerned foreign armed forces in the UK, fell outside the State Immunity Act 1978 and was dealt with under common law.

⁸⁴ See also *Hicks v. US* 120 ILR, p. 606, where the Employment Appeal Tribunal held that the primary purpose of recreation facilities at an airbase was to increase the effectiveness of the central military activity of that base which was clearly a sovereign activity.

the activities of a US citizen and civilian teaching at a US military base in the UK who argued that a memorandum written by the defendant was libellous.⁸⁵ Relying upon Hoffman LJ's approach, the House of Lords emphasised that the context in which the act concerned took place was the provision of education within a military base, an activity designed 'as part of the process of maintaining forces and associated civilians on the base by US personnel to serve the needs of the US military authorities'.⁸⁶ Accordingly, the defendant was entitled to immunity.

The problem of sovereign immunity with regard to foreign bases was also addressed by the Canadian Supreme Court in *United States of America v. The Public Service Alliance of Canada (Re Canada Labour Code)*.⁸⁷ The Court emphasised that employment at the base was a multifaceted activity and could neither be labelled as such as sovereign or commercial in nature. One had to determine which aspects of the activity were relevant to the proceedings at hand and then to assess the impact of the proceedings on these attributes as a whole.⁸⁸ The closer the activity in question was to undisputable sovereign acts, such as managing and operating an offshore military base, the more likely it would be that immunity would be recognised. In *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Co.*,⁸⁹ Lord Goff, giving the leading judgment in the House of Lords, adopted Lord Wilberforce's statement of principle in *Congreso* and held that 'the ultimate test of what constitutes an act *jure imperii* is whether the act in question is of its own character a governmental act, as opposed to an act which any private citizen can perform'.⁹⁰ Further, the Court held that the fact that an initial act was an act *jure imperii* did not determine as such the characterisation of subsequent acts.⁹¹

⁸⁵ Similarly a US citizen and civilian.

⁸⁶ [2000] 1 WLR 1573, 1577 (per Lord Hope, who stated that 'the context is all important', *ibid.*).

⁸⁷ (1992) 91 DLR (4th) 449; 94 ILR, p. 264. ⁸⁸ (1992) 91 DLR (4th) 466; 94 ILR, p. 281.

⁸⁹ [1995] 1 WLR 1147, 1160; 103 ILR, p. 340. For later proceedings in this case, see 116 ILR, p. 534 (High Court); [2000] 2 All ER (Comm.) 360; [2001] 2 WLR 1117 (Court of Appeal) and [2002] UKHL 19 (House of Lords).

⁹⁰ Note that in *Sengupta v. Republic of India* 65 ILR, pp. 325, 360, it was emphasised that in deciding whether immunity applied, one had to consider whether it was the kind of contract an individual might make, whether it involved the participation of both parties in the public functions of the state, the nature of the alleged breach and whether the investigation of the claim would involve an investigation into the public or sovereign acts of the foreign state.

⁹¹ [1995] 1 WLR 1147, 1162–3. See further below, p. 731.

*State immunity and violations of human rights*⁹²

With the increasing attention devoted to the relationship between international human rights law and domestic systems, the question has arisen as to whether the application of sovereign immunity in civil suits against foreign states for violations of human rights law has been affected. To date state practice suggests that the answer to this is negative. In *Saudi Arabia v. Nelson*, the US Supreme Court noted that the only basis for jurisdiction over a foreign state was the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 and, unless a matter fell within one of the exceptions, the plea of immunity would succeed.⁹³ It was held that although the alleged wrongful arrest, imprisonment and torture by the Saudi government of Nelson would amount to abuse of the power of its police by that government, 'a foreign state's exercise of the power of its police has long been understood for the purposes of the restrictive theory as peculiarly sovereign'.⁹⁴ However, the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act was amended in 1996 by the Antiterrorism and Effective Death Penalty Act which created an exception to immunity with regard to states, designated by the Department of State as terrorist states, which committed a terrorist act, including hostage-taking, or provided material support and resources to an individual or entity which committed such an act which resulted in the death or personal injury of a US citizen.⁹⁵ In *Simpson v. Libya*, the US Court of Appeals held that the hostage exception to immunity applied where three conditions had been met: where the state in question had been designated as a 'state sponsor of terrorism'; where it had been provided with a reasonable

⁹² See e.g. Bröhmer, *State Immunity*; S. Marks, 'Torture and the Jurisdictional Immunity of Foreign States', 1997 CLJ, p. 8; R. van Alebeek, 'The Pinochet Case', 71 BYIL, 2000, pp. 49 ff., and van Alebeek, *Immunities of States and Their Officials in International Criminal Law and International Human Rights Law*, Oxford, 2008; K. Reece Thomas and J. Small, 'Human Rights and State Immunity: Is There Immunity From Civil Liability for Torture?', 50 NILR, 2003, p. 1; K. Parlett, 'Immunity in Civil Proceedings for Torture: The Emerging Exception', 2 *European Human Rights Law Review*, 2006, p. 49; H. Fox, 'State Immunity and the International Crime of Torture', 2 *European Human Rights Law Review*, 2006, p. 142; Redress, *Immunity v Accountability*, London, 2005, and L. Caplan, 'State Immunity, Human Rights and Jus Cogens: A Critique of the Normative Hierarchy Theory', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 741.

⁹³ 123 L Ed 2d 47, 61 (1993); 100 ILR, pp. 544, 553.

⁹⁴ 123 L Ed 2d 47, 57. See also e.g. *Controller and Auditor General v. Sir Ronald Davidson* [1996] 2 NZLR 278 and *Princz v. Federal Republic of Germany* 26 F.3d 1166 (DC Cir. 1994).

⁹⁵ This provision is retroactive. See *Flatow v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 999 F.Supp. 1 (1998); 121 ILR, p. 618 and *Alejandro v. Republic of Cuba* 996 F.Supp. 1239 (1997); 121 ILR, p. 603.

opportunity to arbitrate the claim; and where the claimant or victim was a citizen of the US. The Court found it unnecessary for the plaintiff to have to show that the hostage-taker had issued a demand showing his intended purposes to a third party, since the definition of hostage-taking focused on the state of mind of the hostage-taker himself. Accordingly, third-party awareness of a hostage-taker's intent was not a required element.⁹⁶

In *Bouzari v. Iran*, the Superior Court of Justice of Ontario, Canada, noted, in the light of the Canadian State Immunity Act 1982, that 'regardless of the state's ultimate purpose, exercises of police, law enforcement and security powers are inherently exercises of governmental authority and sovereignty'⁹⁷ and concluded that an international custom existed to the effect that there was an ongoing rule providing state immunity for acts of torture committed outside the forum state.⁹⁸ The English Court of Appeal in *Al-Adsani v. Government of Kuwait*⁹⁹ held that the State Immunity Act provided for immunity for states apart from specific listed express exceptions, and there was no room for implied exceptions to the general rule even where the violation of a norm of *jus cogens* (such as the prohibition of torture) was involved. The Court rejected an argument that the term 'immunity' in domestic legislation meant immunity from sovereign acts that were in accordance with international law, thus excluding torture for which immunity could not be claimed. In *Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe*, the House of Lords held that recognition of sovereign immunity did not involve a violation of the rights of due process contained in article 6 of the European Convention on Human Rights since it was argued that immunity derives from customary international law while the obligations under article 6 derived from a treaty freely entered into by the UK. Accordingly, 'The United Kingdom cannot, by its own act of acceding to the Convention and without the consent of the United States, obtain a power of adjudication over the United States which international law denies it.'¹⁰⁰ The European Court of Human Rights in *Al-Adsani v. UK*

⁹⁶ 470 F.3d 356 (2006). ⁹⁷ 124 ILR, pp. 427, 435.

⁹⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 443. The Court dismissed arguments that either the Convention against Torture or the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights imposed an obligation on states to create a civil remedy with regard to acts of torture committed abroad, or that such an obligation existed as a rule of *jus cogens*: see at pp. 441 and 443.

⁹⁹ (1996) 1 LL. R 104; 107 ILR, p. 536. But see Evans LJ in *Al-Adsani v. Government of Kuwait* 100 ILR, p. 465, which concerned leave to serve proceedings upon the government of Kuwait and in which it had been held that there was a good arguable case that, under the State Immunity Act, there was no immunity for a state in respect of alleged acts of torture.

¹⁰⁰ [2000] 1 WLR 1573, 1588 (per Lord Millett); 119 ILR, p. 384.

analysed this issue, that is whether state immunity could exist with regard to civil proceedings for torture in the light of article 6 of the European Convention.¹⁰¹ The Court noted that the grant of sovereign immunity to a state in civil proceedings pursued the legitimate aim of complying with international law to promote comity and good relations between states through the respect of another state's sovereignty and that the European Convention on Human Rights should be interpreted in harmony with other rules of international law, including that relating to the grant of state immunity.¹⁰² The Court concluded that it could not discern in the relevant materials before it, 'any firm basis for concluding that, as a matter of international law, a state no longer enjoys immunity from civil suit in the courts of another state where acts of torture are alleged'¹⁰³ and held that immunity thus still applied in such cases.¹⁰⁴

In *Jones v. Saudi Arabia*, the House of Lords, faced with claims that individuals had been systematically tortured while in official custody in Saudi Arabia, held that under Part 1 of the State Immunity Act 1978, an approach reflecting that adopted in international law (particularly in the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities), a foreign state was immune unless one of the exceptions provided for in the legislation applied. None of the exceptions mentioned injuries caused by torture abroad.¹⁰⁵ Further, the fact that torture was prohibited by a *jus cogens* rule of international law did not suffice to remove the immunity granted by international law to a state nor to confer jurisdiction to hear civil claims in respect of torture committed outside of the state where it was sought to exercise jurisdiction.¹⁰⁶ Particular emphasis was placed on the distinction between the prohibition of torture as a substantive rule of law and the existence of the rule of immunity which constitutes a procedural bar to the exercise of jurisdiction and does not contradict the prohibition.¹⁰⁷ Lord Hoffmann underlined that as a matter of international practice, no procedural rule of international law had developed enabling states to

¹⁰¹ Judgment of 21 November 2001; 123 ILR, p. 24.

¹⁰² *Ibid.*, paras. 54 and 55. ¹⁰³ *Ibid.*, para. 61.

¹⁰⁴ *Ibid.*, para. 66. This decision was later affirmed in *Kalogeropoulos v. Greece and Germany*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 12 December 2002; 129 ILR, p. 537.

¹⁰⁵ [2006] UKHL 26, para. 9 (per Lord Bingham); 129 ILR, p. 717.

¹⁰⁶ *Ibid.*, paras. 24–8; 129 ILR, pp. 726–8.

¹⁰⁷ See e.g. para. 24 (Lord Bingham) and para. 44 (Lord Hoffmann), 129 ILR, pp. 726 and 732, both citing Fox, *State Immunity*, p. 525 to this effect, who further noted that the existence of immunity merely diverted any breach of the prohibition 'to a different method of settlement'.

assume civil jurisdiction over other states in cases in which torture was alleged.¹⁰⁸

In the case of criminal proceedings, the situation is rather different. Part I of the State Immunity Act (the substantive part) does not apply to criminal proceedings, although Part III (concerning certain status issues) does. In *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3),¹⁰⁹ the House of Lords held by six votes to one that General Pinochet was not entitled to immunity in extradition proceedings (which are criminal proceedings) with regard to charges of torture and conspiracy to torture where the alleged acts took place after the relevant states (Chile, Spain and the UK) had become parties to the Convention against Torture, although the decision focused on head of state immunity and the terms of the Convention.¹¹⁰

Commercial acts

Of all state activities for which immunity is no longer to be obtained, that of commercial transactions is the primary example and the definition of such activity is crucial.¹¹¹

Section 3(3) of the State Immunity Act 1978 defines the term 'commercial transaction' to mean:

- (a) any contract for the supply of goods or services;
- (b) any loan or other transaction for the provision of finance and any guarantee or indemnity in respect of any such transaction or of any other financial obligation; and
- (c) any other transaction or activity (whether of a commercial, industrial, financial, professional or other similar character) into which a state enters or in which it engages otherwise than in the exercise of sovereign authority.

¹⁰⁸ *Ibid.*, paras. 45 ff.; 129 ILR, pp. 732 ff. Note that the controversial case of *Ferrini v. Federal Republic of Germany* before the Italian Court of Cassation is to contrary effect, (2004) Cass sez un 5044/04: see P. De Sena and F. De Vittor, 'State Immunity and Human Rights: The Italian Supreme Court Decision on the *Ferrini* Case', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 89; Fox, 'State Immunity and the Crime of Torture', and Lords Bingham and Hoffmann in *Jones v. Saudi Arabia* at paras. 22 and 63 respectively.

¹⁰⁹ [2000] 1 AC 147; 119 ILR, p. 135.

¹¹⁰ See further below, p. 735. Note, however, that Lords Hope, Millett and Phillips held that there was no immunity for widespread and systematic acts of official torture, [2000] 1 AC 147, 246–8, 275–7, 288–92; 119 ILR, pp. 198–201, 228–31, 242–7.

¹¹¹ In his discussion of the development of the restrictive theory of sovereign or state immunity in *Alcom v. Republic of Colombia* [1984] 2 All ER 6, 9; 74 ILR, pp. 180, 181, Lord Diplock noted that the critical distinction was between what a state did in the exercise of its sovereign authority and what it did in the course of commercial activities. The former enjoyed immunity, the latter did not. See also Schreuer, *State Immunity*, chapter 2.

Thus a wide range of transactions are covered¹¹² and, as Lord Diplock pointed out,¹¹³ the 1978 Act does not adopt the straightforward dichotomy between acts *jure imperii* and those *jure gestionis*. Any contract falling within section 3 would be subject to the exercise of jurisdiction and the distinction between sovereign and non-sovereign acts in this context would not be relevant, except in so far as transactions falling within section 3(3)c were concerned, in the light of the use of the term 'sovereign authority'. The Act contains no reference to the public/private question, but the *Con-greso* case (dealing with the pre-Act law) would seem to permit examples from foreign jurisdictions to be drawn upon in order to determine the nature of 'the exercise of sovereign authority'.

Section 3(1) of the State Immunity Act provides that a state is not immune as respects proceedings relating to:

- (a) a commercial transaction entered into by the state; or
- (b) an obligation of the state which by virtue of a contract (whether a commercial transaction or not) falls to be performed wholly or partly in the United Kingdom.¹¹⁴

The scope of section 3(1)a was discussed by the Court in *Australia and New Zealand Banking Group v. Commonwealth of Australia*.¹¹⁵ This case arose out of the collapse of the International Tin Council in 1985. The ensuing litigation sought, by various routes, to ascertain whether the member states of the ITC (which was itself an international organisation with separate personality) could be held liable themselves for the debts of that organisation – a prospect vigorously opposed by the states concerned. The case in question concerned an attempt by the brokers and banks to hold the member states of the ITC liable in tort for losses caused by misrepresentation and fraudulent trading.

It was argued by the defendants that as far as section 3(1) was concerned, the activity in question had to be not only commercial within the Act's definition but also undertaken 'otherwise than in the exercise of sovereign authority'. Evans J saw little difference in practice between the two terms in the context.¹¹⁶ The defendants also argued that the term

¹¹² Thus, for example, the defence of sovereign immunity was not available in an action relating to a contract for the repair of an ambassador's residence, *Planmount Ltd v. Republic of Zaire* [1981] 1 All ER 1110; 64 ILR, p. 268.

¹¹³ *Alcom v. Republic of Colombia* [1984] 2 All ER 6, 10; 74 ILR, p. 183.

¹¹⁴ Note that by s. 3(3), s. 3(1) does not apply to a contract of employment between a state and an individual.

¹¹⁵ 1989, transcript, pp. 52 ff. ¹¹⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 54.

'activity' meant something more than a single act or sequence of acts. Evans J did not accept this, but did emphasise that the activity in question had to be examined in context. It was held that both the trading and loan contracts under discussion in the case were commercial and that, if it could be demonstrated that the member states of the ITC had authorised them, such authorisation would amount to commercial activity within the meaning of section 3.¹¹⁷ However, in practice the distinction between commercial activities undertaken by a state and activities undertaken under the colour of sovereign authority may be a difficult one to draw. In *AIC Ltd v. Nigeria*, the High Court decided that proceedings to register a foreign judgment were not proceedings relating to a commercial transaction even if the foreign judgment concerned proceedings relating to such a transaction, so that the exception to immunity did not apply.¹¹⁸ In *KJ International v. MV Oscar Jupiter*, the Supreme Court of South Africa held that a commercial transaction was not necessarily a transaction with a commercial purpose and that where a ship had been transferred by the Romanian government to one company which had then transferred it to another, the activities of the latter could not be seen as commercial transactions of the government. Accordingly, no loss of immunity would take place for this reason. However, the transfer of the ship by the Romanian government to the Moldovan government to be operated by the latter for profit did constitute a commercial transaction, so that immunity was lost.¹¹⁹ In *Svenska Petroleum v. Lithuania*, the Court of Appeal emphasised that the distinction between a commercial transaction and a transaction entered into by a state in the exercise of its sovereign authority drawn in s. 3 of the State Immunity Act, which was virtually identical to article 2(1)c of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities which was accepted as reflecting the current international thinking on the topic,¹²⁰ was not an easy matter to determine.¹²¹ It was held that s. 3 was one of a group of sections dealing with the courts' adjudicative jurisdiction and that it was therefore natural to interpret the phrase in that context as being directed to the subject-matter of the proceedings themselves rather than the source of the legal relationship which had given rise to them.¹²² Accordingly, the

¹¹⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 56–7.

¹¹⁸ [2003] EWHC 1357; 129 ILR, p. 571. This was approved by the Court of Appeal in *Svenska Petroleum v. Lithuania* [2006] EWCA Civ 1529, para. 137.

¹¹⁹ 131 ILR, p. 529.

¹²⁰ Citing Lord Bingham in *Jones v. Saudi Arabia* [2006] UKHL 26, para. 8, and see below, p. 725.

¹²¹ [2006] EWCA Civ 1529, paras. 132–3. ¹²² *Ibid.*, para. 137.

government of Lithuania was not immune from proceedings to enforce an arbitration award.

The scope of section 3(1)b was discussed by the Court of Appeal in *Maclaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry*,¹²³ which concerned the direct action by the brokers and banks against the member states of the ITC in respect of liability for the debts of the organisation on a contractual basis. It was held that the 'contract' referred to need not have been entered into by the state as such. That particular phrase was absent from section 3(1)b. Accordingly, the member states would not have been able to benefit from immunity in the kind of secondary liability of a guarantee nature that the plaintiffs were *inter alia* basing their case upon.¹²⁴ This view was adopted in the tort action against the member states¹²⁵ in the more difficult context where the obligation in question was a tortious obligation on the part of the member states, that is the authorisation or procuring of a misrepresentation inducing the creditors concerned to make a contract with another party (the ITC).¹²⁶

Section 1603(d) of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 defines 'commercial activity' as 'a regular course of commercial conduct or a particular commercial transaction or act'. It is also noted that the commercial character of an activity is to be determined by reference to the nature of the activity rather than its purpose. The courts have held that the purchases of food were commercial activities¹²⁷ as were purchases of cement,¹²⁸ the sending by a government ministry of artists to perform in the US under a US impresario¹²⁹ and activities by state airlines.¹³⁰

The issuance of foreign governmental Treasury notes has also been held to constitute a commercial activity, but one which once validly statute-barred by passage of time cannot be revived or altered.¹³¹

¹²³ [1988] 3 WLR 1033; 80 ILR, p. 49.

¹²⁴ [1988] 3 WLR 1104–5 (Kerr LJ) and 1130 (Nourse LJ); 80 ILR, pp. 119, 148.

¹²⁵ *Australia and New Zealand Banking Group v. Commonwealth of Australia*, 1989, transcript, pp. 57–9.

¹²⁶ It should be noted that Evans J reached his decision on this point only with considerable hesitation and reluctance, *ibid.*, p. 59.

¹²⁷ See e.g. *Gemini Shipping v. Foreign Trade Organisation for Chemicals and Foodstuffs* 63 ILR, p. 569 and *ADM Milling Co. v. Republic of Bolivia* 63 ILR, p. 56.

¹²⁸ *NAC v. Federal Republic of Nigeria* 63 ILR, p. 137.

¹²⁹ *United Euram Co. v. USSR* 63 ILR, p. 228. ¹³⁰ *Argentine Airlines v. Ross* 63 ILR, p. 195.

¹³¹ *Schmidt v. Polish People's Republic* 742 F.2d 67 (1984). See also *Jackson v. People's Republic of China* 596 F.Supp. 386 (1984); *Amoco Overseas Oil Co. v. Compagnie Nationale Algérienne* 605 F.2d 648 (1979); 63 ILR, p. 252 and *Corporacion Venezolana de Fomento v. Vintero Sales* 629 F.2d 786 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 477.

In *Callejo v. Bancomer*,¹³² a case in which a Mexican bank refused to redeem a certificate of deposit, the District Court dismissed the action on the ground that the bank was an instrumentality of the Mexican government and thus benefited from sovereign immunity, although the Court of Appeals decided the issue on the basis that the act of state doctrine applied since an investigation of a sovereign act performed wholly within the foreign government's territory would otherwise be required. In other cases, US courts have dealt with the actions of Mexican banks consequent upon Mexican exchange control regulations on the basis of sovereign immunity.¹³³ However, the Supreme Court in *Republic of Argentina v. Weltover Inc.*¹³⁴ held that the act of issuing government bonds was a commercial activity and the unilateral rescheduling of payment of these bonds also constituted a commercial activity. The Court, noting that the term 'commercial' was largely undefined in the legislation, took the view that its definition related to the meaning it had under the restrictive theory of sovereign immunity and particularly as discussed in *Alfred Dunhill v. Republic of Cuba*.¹³⁵ Accordingly, 'when a foreign government acts, not as regulator of a market, but in the manner of a private player within it, the foreign sovereign's actions are "commercial" within the meaning of the FSIA . . . the issue is whether the particular actions that the foreign state performs (whatever the motives behind them) are the *type* of actions by which a private party engages in "trade or traffic or commerce"'. In this case, the bonds in question were debt instruments that could be held by

¹³² 764 F.2d 1101 (1985). See also *Chisholm v. Bank of Jamaica* 643 F.Supp. 1393 (1986); 121 ILR, p. 487. Note that in *Dole Food Co. v. Patrickson*, the US Supreme Court, in its decision of 22 April 2003, held that in order to constitute an instrumentality under the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act, the foreign state concerned must itself own a majority of a corporation's shares. Indirect subsidiaries would not benefit from immunity since such companies cannot come within the statutory language granting instrumentality status to an entity a 'majority of whose shares or other ownership interest is owned by a foreign state or political subdivision thereof': see s. 1603(b)(2). Only direct ownership would satisfy the statutory requirement. The statutory reference to ownership of 'shares' showed that Congress intended coverage to turn on formal corporate ownership and a corporation and its shareholders were distinct entities. Further, instrumentality status was to be determined as at the time of the filing of the complaint: see Case No. 01-593, pp. 4-8.

¹³³ See e.g. *Braka v. Nacional Financiera*, No. 83-4161 (SDNY 9 July 1984) and *Frankel v. Banco Nacional de Mexico*, No. 82-6457 (SDNY 31 May 1983), cited in 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 172, note 5.

¹³⁴ 119 L Ed 2d 394 (1992); 100 ILR, p. 509.

¹³⁵ 425 US 682 (1976); 66 ILR, p. 212. Here, the plurality stated that a foreign state engaging in commercial activities was exercising only those powers that can be exercised by private citizens, 425 US 704.

private persons and were negotiable and could be traded on the international market.¹³⁶ This approach was followed in *Guevera v. Peru* by the Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit, which held that a foreign state's offer of a reward in exchange for information concerning a fugitive fell within the 'commercial activity' exception to immunity.¹³⁷

The purchase of military equipment by Haiti for use by its army¹³⁸ and a military training agreement whereby a foreign soldier was in the US were held not to be commercial activities.¹³⁹ It has also been decided that Somalia's participation in an Agency for International Development programme constituted a public or governmental act,¹⁴⁰ while the publication of a libel in a journal distributed in the US was not a commercial activity where the journal concerned constituted an official commentary of the Soviet government.¹⁴¹ Section 1604(a)4 also provides for an exception to immunity where 'rights in immovable property situated in the United States are in issue' and the Supreme Court in *Permanent Mission of India to the US v. City of New York* held that this provided jurisdiction over a suit brought by New York City to establish tax liens on real property owned by the governments of India and Mongolia.¹⁴²

Many cases before the US courts have, however, centred upon the jurisdictional requirements of section 1605(a), which states that a foreign state is not immune in any case in which the action is based upon a commercial activity carried on in the US by a foreign state; or upon an act performed in the US in connection with a foreign state's commercial activity elsewhere; or upon an act outside the territory of the US in connection with a foreign state's commercial activity elsewhere, when that act causes a direct effect in the US.¹⁴³

¹³⁶ 119 L Ed 2d 394, 405; 100 ILR, p. 515. Reaffirmed in *Saudi Arabia v. Nelson* 123 L Ed 2d 47, 61 (1993); 100 ILR, pp. 545, 553.

¹³⁷ DC Docket No. 04-23223-CV-MGC, 1 November 2006.

¹³⁸ *Aerotrade Inc. v. Republic of Haiti* 63 ILR, p. 41.

¹³⁹ *Castro v. Saudi Arabia* 63 ILR, p. 419.

¹⁴⁰ *Transamerican Steamship Corp. v. Somali Democratic Republic* 590 F.Supp. 968 (1984) and 767 F.2d 998. This is based upon the legislative history of the 1976 Act: see the HR Rep. No. 1487, 94th Cong., 2d Sess. 16 (1976).

¹⁴¹ *Yessenin-Volpin v. Novosti Press Agency* 443 F.Supp. 849 (1978); 63 ILR, p. 127. See also Schreuer, *State Immunity*, pp. 42–3, providing a list of criteria with respect to identifying commercial transactions.

¹⁴² 127 S. Ct. 2352 (2007).

¹⁴³ See e.g. *International Shoe Co. v. Washington* 326 US 310 (1945); *McGee v. International Life Insurance Co.* 355 US 220 (1957); *Libyan-American Oil Co. v. Libya* 482 F.Supp. 1175 (1980); 62 ILR, p. 220; *Perez et al. v. The Bahamas* 482 F.Supp. 1208 (1980); 63 ILR,

In *Zedan v. Kingdom of Saudi Arabia*,¹⁴⁴ for example, the US Court of Appeals in discussing the scope of section 1605(a)(2) emphasised that the commercial activity in question taking place in the US had to be substantial, so that a telephone call in the US which initiated a sequence of events which resulted in the plaintiff working in Saudi Arabia was not sufficient. Additionally, where an act is performed in the US in connection with a commercial activity of a foreign state elsewhere, this act must in itself be sufficient to form the basis of a cause of action,¹⁴⁵ while the direct effect in the US provision of an act abroad in connection with a foreign state's commercial activity elsewhere was subject to a high threshold. As the Court noted,¹⁴⁶ in cases where this clause was held to have been satisfied, 'something legally significant actually happened in the United States'.¹⁴⁷ However, in *Republic of Argentina v. Weltover Inc.*,¹⁴⁸ the Court rejected the suggestion that section 1605(a)(2) contained any unexpressed requirement as to substantiality or foreseeability and supported the Court of Appeals' view that an effect was direct if it followed as an immediate consequence of the defendant's activity.¹⁴⁹ In the case, it was sufficient that the respondents had designated their accounts in New York as the place of payment and Argentina had made some interest payments into them prior to the rescheduling decision.

Article 10 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities provides that there is no immunity where a state engages in a 'commercial transaction' with a foreign natural or juridical person (but not another state) in a situation where by virtue of the rules of private international law a dispute comes before the courts of another state, unless the parties to the commercial transaction otherwise expressly agree. However, the

p. 350 and *Thos. P. Gonzalez Corp v. Consejo Nacional de Produccion de Costa Rica* 614 F.2d 1247 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 370, aff'd 652 F.2d 186 (1982).

¹⁴⁴ 849 F.2d 1511 (1988).

¹⁴⁵ *Ibid.* Note that the Supreme Court in *Saudi Arabia v. Nelson* 123 L Ed 2d 47, 58–9; 100 ILR, pp. 545, 550–1, held that the phrase 'based on' appearing in the section, meant 'those elements of a claim that, if proven, would entitle a plaintiff to relief under his theory of the case'.

¹⁴⁶ 849 F.2d 1515.

¹⁴⁷ Referring to the cases of *Transamerican Steamship Corp. v. Somali Democratic Republic* 767 F.2d 998, 1004, where demand for payment in the US by an agency of the Somali government and actual bank transfers were held to be sufficient, and *Texas Trading & Milling Corp. v. Federal Republic of Nigeria* 647 F.2d 300, 312; 63 ILR, pp. 552, 563, where refusal to pay letters of credit issued by a US bank and payable in the US to financially injured claimants was held to suffice.

¹⁴⁸ 119 L Ed 2d 394 (1992); 100 ILR, p. 509.

¹⁴⁹ 119 L Ed 2d 407; 100 ILR, p. 517, citing 941 F.2d at 152.

immunity of a state is unaffected where a state enterprise or other entity established by a state which has an independent legal personality and is capable of suing or being sued and acquiring, owning or possessing and disposing of property, including property which that state has authorised it to operate or manage, is involved in a proceeding which relates to a commercial transaction in which that entity is engaged.

Article 2(1)c of the Convention provides that the term 'commercial transaction' means:

- (i) any commercial contract or transaction for the sale of goods or the supply of services;
- (ii) any contract for a loan or other transaction of a financial nature, including any obligation of guarantee or of indemnity in respect of any such loan or transaction;
- (iii) any other contract or transaction of a commercial, industrial, trading or professional nature, but not including a contract of employment of persons.¹⁵⁰

Contracts of employment

Section 4(1) of the State Immunity Act 1978 provides that a state is not immune as respects proceedings relating to a contract of employment between the state and an individual where the contract was made in the UK or where the work is to be performed wholly or in part there.¹⁵¹ The section does not apply if at the time of the proceedings the individual is a national of the state concerned¹⁵² or at the time the contract was made the individual was neither a national nor habitual resident of the UK or the parties to the contract have otherwise agreed in writing. However, these provisions do not apply with regard to members of a diplomatic mission or consular post,¹⁵³ a fact that has rendered section 4(1) significantly weaker.¹⁵⁴ There have been a number of cases concerning immunity and contracts of employment, particularly with regard to employment at foreign embassies. In *Sengupta v. Republic of India*, for example, a broad

¹⁵⁰ See as to earlier drafts of this provision, Report of the International Law Commission, 1991, pp. 13 and 69, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1986, vol. II, part 2, p. 8.

¹⁵¹ See e.g. H. Fox, 'Employment Contracts as an Exception to State Immunity: Is All Public Service Immune?', 66 BYIL, 1995, p. 97, and R. Garnett, 'State Immunity in Employment Matters', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 81.

¹⁵² See e.g. *Arab Republic of Egypt v. Gamal Eldin* [1996] 2 All ER 237.

¹⁵³ S. 16(1)a.

¹⁵⁴ See e.g. *Saudi Arabia v. Ahmed* [1996] 2 All ER 248; 104 ILR, p. 629.

decision prior to the 1978 Act, the Employment Appeal Tribunal held on the basis of customary law that immunity existed with regard to a contract of employment dispute since the workings of the mission in question constituted a form of sovereign activity.¹⁵⁵

The position in other countries is varied. In *United States of America v. The Public Service Alliance of Canada (Re Canada Labour Code)*, for example, it was held that the conduct of labour relations at a foreign military base was not a commercial activity so that the US was entitled to sovereign immunity in proceedings before a labour tribunal,¹⁵⁶ while in *Norwegian Embassy v. Quattri*, for example, the Italian Court of Cassation referred to an international trend of restricting immunity with regard to employment contracts. The Court held that under customary international law immunity was available, but this was restricted to acts carried out in the exercise of the foreign state's public law functions. Accordingly, no immunity existed with regard to acts carried out by the foreign state in the capacity of a private individual under the internal law of the receiving state. An example of this would be employment disputes where the employees' duties were of a merely auxiliary nature and not intrinsic to the foreign public law entity.¹⁵⁷ In *Barrandon v. USA*, the French Court of Cassation (1992) and subsequently the Court of Appeal of Versailles (1995) held that immunity was a privilege not guaranteed by an international treaty to which France was a party and could only be invoked by a state which believed it was entitled to rely upon it. Immunity from jurisdiction was limited to acts of sovereign power (*puissance publique*) or acts performed in the interest of a public service. In the instant case, the plaintiff, a nurse and medical secretary at the US embassy, had performed functions clearly in the interest of a public service of the respondent state and immunity was therefore applicable.¹⁵⁸ However, on appeal the Court of Cassation (1998) reversed this decision and held that her tasks did not give her any special responsibility for the performance of the public

¹⁵⁵ 65 ILR, p. 325. See also *Military Affairs Office of the Embassy of the State of Kuwait v. Caramba-Coker*, EAT 1054/02/RN, Employment Appeals Tribunal (2003) and *Aziz v. Republic of Yemen* [2005] EWCA Civ 745.

¹⁵⁶ (1992) 91 DLR (4th) 449; 94 ILR, p. 264.

¹⁵⁷ 114 ILR, p. 525. See also *Canada v. Cargnello* 114 ILR, p. 559. See also a number of German cases also holding that employment functions forming part of the core sphere of sovereign activity of the foreign states would attract immunity, otherwise not, *X v. Argentina* 114 ILR, p. 502; the *French Consulate Disabled Employee* case, 114 ILR, p. 508 and *Muller v. USA* 114 ILR, p. 513.

¹⁵⁸ 113 ILR, p. 464.

service of the embassy, so that her dismissal was an ordinary act of administration so that immunity was not applicable.¹⁵⁹ Practice is far from consistent. Courts in a number of states have accepted immunity claims in such state immunity/employment situations,¹⁶⁰ while courts in others have rejected such claims.¹⁶¹

Other non-immunity areas

Domestic and international instruments prohibit sovereign immunity in cases of tortious activity.¹⁶² Article 11 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972, for example, refers to 'redress for injury to the person or damage to tangible property, if the facts which occasioned the injury or damage occurred in the territory of the state of the forum, and if the author of the injury or damage was present in that territory at the time when those facts occurred'.

Section 5 of the UK State Immunity Act provides that a state is not immune as respects proceedings in respect of death or personal injury, or damage to or loss of tangible property, caused by an act or omission in the UK,¹⁶³ while section 1605(a)(5) of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976, although basically similar, does include exceptions relating to the exercise of the state's discretionary functions and to claims arising out of malicious prosecution, abuse of process, libel, slander, misrepresentation, deceit or interference with contractual rights. In *Letelier v. Chile*,¹⁶⁴ the Court rejected a claim that the torts exception in this

¹⁵⁹ 116 ILR, p. 622. The case was remitted to the Court of Appeal for decision.

¹⁶⁰ See e.g. the *Brazilian Embassy Employee* case, 116 ILR, p. 625 (Portuguese Supreme Court) and *Ramos v. USA* 116 ILR, p. 634 (High Court of Lisbon).

¹⁶¹ See e.g. *Landano v. USA* 116 ILR, p. 636 (Labour Court of Geneva); *Nicoud v. USA* 116 ILR, p. 650 (Labour Court of Geneva); *M v. Arab Republic of Egypt* 116 ILR, p. 656 (Swiss Federal Tribunal); *R v. Republic of Iraq* 116 ILR, p. 664 (Swiss Federal Tribunal); *François v. State of Canada* 115 ILR, p. 418 (Labour Court of Brussels); *Kingdom of Morocco v. DR* 115 ILR, p. 421 (Labour Court of Brussels); *De Queiroz v. State of Portugal* 115 ILR, p. 430 (Labour Court of Brussels); *Zambian Embassy v. Sendanayake* 114 ILR, p. 532 (Italian Court of Cassation), and *Carbonar v. Magurno* 114 ILR, p. 534 (Italian Court of Cassation).

¹⁶² See e.g. Schreuer, *State Immunity*, chapter 3.

¹⁶³ See also s. 6 of the Canadian State Immunity Act 1982; s. 6 of the South African Foreign Sovereign Immunity Act 1981; s. 7 of the Singapore State Immunity Act 1979; and s. 13 of the Australian Foreign States Immunities Act 1985. See also article 12 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities.

¹⁶⁴ 488 F.Supp. 665 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 378.

legislation referred only to private acts and held that it could apply to political assassinations.¹⁶⁵

Sections 6-11 of the UK Act detail the remainder of the wide-ranging non-immunity areas and include proceedings relating to immovable property (section 6)¹⁶⁶ except with regard to proceedings concerning a state's title to or right to possession of property used for the purposes of a diplomatic mission;¹⁶⁷ patents, trademarks, designs, plant breeders' rights or copyrights (section 7); proceedings relating to a state's membership of a body corporate, an unincorporated body or partnership, with members other than states which is incorporated or constituted under UK law or is controlled from or has its principal place of business in the UK (section 8); where a state has agreed in writing to submit to arbitration and with respect to proceedings in the UK courts relating to that arbitration (section 9); Admiralty proceedings with regard to state-owned ships used or intended for use for commercial purposes (section 10); and proceedings relating to liability for various taxes, such as VAT (section 11). This, together with generally similar provisions in the legislation of other states,¹⁶⁸ demonstrates how restricted the concept of sovereign acts is now becoming in practice in the context of sovereign immunity, although definitional problems remain.

*The personality issue – instrumentalities and parts of the state*¹⁶⁹

Whether the absolute or restrictive theory is applied, the crucial factor is to determine the entity entitled to immunity. If the entity, in very general terms, is not part of the apparatus of state, then no immunity can arise. Shaw LJ in *Trendtex Trading Corporation Ltd v. Central Bank of*

¹⁶⁵ Note that the Greek Special Supreme Court in *Margellos v. Federal Republic of Germany* held that in customary international law a foreign state continued to enjoy immunity in respect of a tort committed in another state in which its armed forces had participated, 129 ILR, p. 526. See also article 31 of the European Convention on State Immunity. See also the *Distomo Massacre* case, 129 ILR, p. 556.

¹⁶⁶ The winding-up of a company is not protected by immunity where the state is not directly implicated: see s. 6(3) and *Re Rafidain* [1992] BCLC 301; 101 ILR, p. 332.

¹⁶⁷ S. 16(1)b.

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. s. 1605 of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 and ss. 10–21 of the Australian Foreign States Immunities Act 1985. Note in particular the inclusion in the US legislation of an exception to immunity with regard to rights in property taken in violation of international law, s. 1605(a)(3), which does not appear in other domestic legislation.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. Schreuer, *State Immunity*, chapter 5.

*Nigeria*¹⁷⁰ cautioned against too facile an attribution of immunity particularly in the light of the growth of governmental functions, since its acceptance resulted in a significant disadvantage to the other party.

A department of government would, however, be entitled to immunity, even if it had a separate legal personality under its own law.¹⁷¹ The issue was discussed in detail in the *Trendtex* case. It was emphasised that recourse should be had to all the circumstances of the case. The fact of incorporation as a separate legal identity was noted in *Baccus SRL v. Servicio Nacional del Trigo*¹⁷² and both Donaldson J at first instance and Denning MR emphasised this.¹⁷³ The question arises in analysing whether a body is a corporation or not, and indeed whether it is or is not an arm of government, as to which law is relevant. Each country may have its own rules governing incorporation, and similarly with regard to government departments. Should English law therefore merely accept the conclusions of the foreign law? The majority of the Court in *Baccus* was of the view that foreign law was decisive in questions relating to incorporation and whether corporateness was consistent with the recognition of immunity, and to a certain extent this was accepted in *Trendtex*. Shaw LJ declared that 'the constitution and powers of Nigerian corporation must be viewed in the light of the domestic law of Nigeria'.¹⁷⁴ However, the status on the international scene of the entity in question must be decided, it was held, by the law of the country in which the issue as to its status has been raised. The Court had to determine whether the Nigerian Bank could constitute a government department as understood in English law.¹⁷⁵ It was also noted that where a material difference existed between English law and the foreign law, this would be taken into account, but the Court was satisfied that this was not the case in *Trendtex*.

This position of pre-eminence for English law must not be understood to imply the application of decisions of English courts relating to immunities granted internally. These could be at best only rough guides to be utilised depending on the circumstances of each case. If the view taken by the foreign law was not conclusive, neither was the attitude adopted by the foreign government. It was a factor to be considered, again, but no more than that. In this, the Court followed *Krajina v. Tass Agency*.¹⁷⁶ The point

¹⁷⁰ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 383; 64 ILR, pp. 122, 147.

¹⁷¹ *Baccus SRL v. Servicio Nacional del Trigo* [1957] 1 QB 438; 23 ILR, p. 160.

¹⁷² [1957] 1 QB 438, 467. ¹⁷³ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 370; 64 ILR, p. 133.

¹⁷⁴ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 385; 64 ILR, p. 149. ¹⁷⁵ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 385; 64 ILR, p. 175.

¹⁷⁶ [1949] 2 All ER 274.

was also made that the evidence provided by Nigerian officials, including the High Commissioner, that the Bank was a government organ, was not conclusive. This was because the officials might very well be applying a test of governmental control which would not be decisive for the courts of this country.¹⁷⁷

Of more importance was the legislative intention of the government in creating and regulating the entity and the degree of its control. Stephenson LJ in fact based his decision upon this point. An express provision in the creative legislation to the effect that the Bank was an arm of government was not necessary, but the Bank had to prove that the intention to make it an organ of the Nigerian state was of necessity to be implied from the enabling Central Bank of Nigeria Act 1958 and subsequent decrees. This the Bank had failed to do and Stephenson LJ accordingly allowed the appeal.¹⁷⁸ It could be argued that the judge was placing too much stress upon this aspect, particularly in the light of the overall approach of the Court in applying the functional rather than the personality test. In many ways, Stephenson LJ was also looking at the attributes of the Bank but from a slightly different perspective. He examined the powers and duties of the entity and denied it immunity since the intention of the government to establish the Bank as an arm of itself could not be clearly demonstrated. The other judges were concerned with the functions of the Bank as implying governmental status *per se*.

The Court clearly accepted the functional test as the crucial guide to the determination of sovereign immunity. In this it was following the modern approach which has precipitated the change in emphasis from the personality of the entity for which immunity is claimed to the nature of the subject matter. This functional test looks to the powers, duties and control of the entity within the framework of its constitution and activities.

In such difficult borderline decisions, the proposition put forward by Shaw LJ is to be welcomed. He noted that:

where the issue of status trembles on a fine edge, the absence of any positive indication that the body in question was intended to possess sovereign status and its attendant privileges must perforce militate against the view that it enjoys that status or is entitled to those privileges.¹⁷⁹

¹⁷⁷ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 370 and 374; 64 ILR, p. 137, 139.

¹⁷⁸ [1977] 2 WLR 356, 374–6. See also Shaw LJ, *ibid.*, p. 384; 64 ILR, p. 149.

¹⁷⁹ *Ibid.*

In *Czarnikow Ltd v. Rolimpex*,¹⁸⁰ the House of Lords accepted as correct the findings of the arbitrators that although Rolimpex had been established by the Polish government and was controlled by it, it was not so closely connected with the government as to be an organ or department of the state. It had separate legal personality and had considerable freedom in day-to-day commercial activities.

Under section 14(1) of the State Immunity Act of 1978, a state is deemed to include the sovereign or other head of state in his public capacity,¹⁸¹ the government and any department of that government, but not any entity 'which is distinct from the executive organs of the government of the state and capable of suing or being sued'. This modifies the *Baccus* and *Trendtex* approaches to some extent. Such a separate entity would only be immune if the proceedings related to acts done 'in the exercise of sovereign authority' and the circumstances are such that a state would have been so immune.¹⁸² In determining such a situation, all the relevant circumstances should be taken into consideration.¹⁸³ In *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways Co.*, the House of Lords, in discussing the position of the Iraqi Airways Company (IAC), analysed the relevant transactions as a whole but felt able to separate out differing elements and treat them discretely. In brief, aircraft of the plaintiffs (KAC) had been seized by IAC consequent upon the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait in 1990 and pursuant to orders from the Iraqi government. Revolutionary Command Council¹⁸⁴ resolution 369 purported to dissolve KAC and transfer all of its assets to IAC. From that point on, IAC treated the aircraft in question as part of its own fleet. The issue was whether the fact that the initial appropriation was by governmental action meant that the plea of immunity continued to be available to IAC. The House of Lords held that it was not. Once resolution 369 came into effect the situation changed and immunity was no longer applicable since the retention and use of the aircraft were not acts done in the exercise of sovereign authority. A characterisation of the appropriation of the property as a sovereign act could not be determinative of the characterisation of its subsequent retention and use.¹⁸⁵

The US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976 provides in section 1603 that 'foreign state' includes a political subdivision of such a state

¹⁸⁰ [1979] AC 351, 364 (Lord Wilberforce) and 367 (Viscount Dilhorne).

¹⁸¹ See further below, p. 735. ¹⁸² S. 14(2).

¹⁸³ See e.g. *Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe* [2000] 1 WLR 1573.

¹⁸⁴ Essentially the Iraqi government.

¹⁸⁵ [1995] 1 WLR 1147, 1163 (per Lord Goff). Cf. Lord Mustill at 1174 who argued that the context should be taken as a whole so that immunity continued.

and its agencies or instrumentalities. This is defined to mean any entity which is a separate legal person and which is an organ of a foreign state or political subdivision thereof or a majority of whose shares or other ownership interest is owned by a foreign state or political subdivision thereof and which is neither a citizen of a state of the United States nor created under the laws of any third country.¹⁸⁶ This issue of personality has occasioned problems and some complex decisions.¹⁸⁷

In *First National City Bank v. Banco Para el Comercio Exterior de Cuba* (*Bancec*),¹⁸⁸ for example, the Supreme Court suggested a presumption of separateness for state entities, under which their separate legal personalities were to be recognised unless applicable equitable principles mandated otherwise or the parent entity so completely dominated the subsidiary as to render it an agent of the parent.¹⁸⁹

The meaning of the term 'government' as it appears in section 14(1) of the State Immunity Act was discussed in *Propend Finance v. Sing*. The Court of Appeal held that it must be given a broad meaning and, in particular, that it should be construed in the light of the concept of sovereign authority. Accordingly, 'government' meant more than it would in other contexts in English law where it would mean simply the government of the United Kingdom. In particular it would include the performance of police functions as part of governmental activity. Further, individual employees or officers of a foreign state were entitled to the same protection as that which envelops the state itself. The Court thus concluded that both the Australian Federal Police superintendent and Commissioner, the defendants in the case, were covered by state immunity.¹⁹⁰ The view that the agent of a foreign state would enjoy immunity in respect of his acts of a sovereign or governmental nature was reaffirmed in *Re P* (No. 2). The Court accepted that the removal from the country of the family of a diplomat based in the UK and their return to the US at the end of his mission was in compliance with a direct order from his government. This

¹⁸⁶ See e.g. *Gittler v. German Information Centre* 408 NYS 2d 600 (1978); 63 ILR, p. 170; *Carey v. National Oil Co.* 453 F.Supp. 1097 (1978); 63 ILR, p. 164 and *Yessenin-Volpin v. Novosti Press Agency* 443 F.Supp. 849 (1978); 63 ILR, p. 127. See also Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', pp. 248–9 and 258–9. Note, in addition, articles 6 and 7 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972.

¹⁸⁷ See also article 2(1)b of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities: see above, p. 725.

¹⁸⁸ 462 US 611 (1983); 80 ILR, p. 566.

¹⁸⁹ See also *Foremost-McKesson Inc. v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 905 F.2d 438 (1990).

¹⁹⁰ 111 ILR, pp. 611, 667–71.

was held to constitute an act of a governmental nature and thus subject to state immunity.¹⁹¹ In *Jones v. Saudi Arabia*, the House of Lords, overturning the Court of Appeal decision to the contrary on this point, held that there was 'a wealth of authority to show that . . . the foreign state is entitled to claim immunity for its servants as it could if sued itself. The foreign state's right to immunity cannot be circumvented by suing its servants or agents.'¹⁹²

One particular issue that has caused controversy in the past relates to the status of component units of federal states.¹⁹³ There have been cases asserting immunity¹⁹⁴ and denying immunity¹⁹⁵ in such circumstances. In *Mellenger v. New Brunswick Development Corporation*,¹⁹⁶ Lord Denning emphasised that since under the Canadian Constitution

Each provincial government, within its own sphere, retained its independence and autonomy directly under the Crown . . . It follows that the Province of New Brunswick is a sovereign state in its own right and entitled if it so wishes to claim sovereign immunity.

However, article 28 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972 provides that constituent states of a federal state do not enjoy immunity, although this general principle is subject to the proviso that federal state parties may declare by notification that their constituent states may invoke the benefits and carry out the obligations of the Convention.¹⁹⁷

The State Immunity Act follows this pattern in that component units of a federation are not entitled to immunity. However, section 14(5) provides that the Act may be made applicable to the 'constituent territories of a

¹⁹¹ [1998] 1 FLR 1027, 1034–5; 114 ILR, p. 485. See also J. C. Barker, 'State Immunity, Diplomatic Immunity and Act of State: A Triple Protection Against Legal Action?', 47 ICLQ, 1998, p. 950.

¹⁹² [2006] UKHL 26, para. 10 (per Lord Bingham); 129 ILR, p. 717. This applied to acts done to such persons as servants or agents, officials or functionaries of the state, *ibid*.

¹⁹³ See e.g. I. Bernier, *International Legal Aspects of Federalism*, London, 1973, pp. 121 ff. and Sucharitkul, *State Immunities*, p. 106.

¹⁹⁴ See e.g. *Feldman c. État de Bahia*, *Pasicrisie Belge*, 208, II, 55; *État de Cêara c. Dorr et autres* 4 AD, p. 39; *État de Cêara c. D'Archer de Montgascon*, 6 AD, p. 162 and *Dumont c. État d'Amazonas* 15 AD, p. 140. See also *État de Hesse c. Jean Neger* 74 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1970, p. 1108.

¹⁹⁵ See e.g. *Sullivan v. State of Sao Paulo* 122 F.2d 355 (1941); 10 AD, p. 178.

¹⁹⁶ [1971] 2 All ER 593, 595; 52 ILR, pp. 322, 324. See also *Swiss-Israel Trade Bank v. Salta* 55 ILR, p. 411.

¹⁹⁷ See e.g. I. Sinclair, 'The European Convention on State Immunity', 22 ICLQ, 1973, pp. 254, 279–80.

federal state by specific Order in Council'.¹⁹⁸ Where no such order is made, any such 'constituent territory' would be entitled to immunity only if it conformed with section 14(2), being a separate entity acting in the exercise of sovereign authority and in circumstances in which the state would be immune.¹⁹⁹ While the matter is thus determined in so far as the Act operates in the particular circumstances, s. 16(4) states that Part I of the Act does not apply to criminal proceedings. In the case of *Alamieyeseigha v. CPS*, the Court did not accept that the state of Bayelsa, a constituent unit of the Nigerian Federation, and its Governor were entitled to state immunity with regard to criminal proceedings, a claim made on the basis of *Mellenger*.²⁰⁰ Key to the decision was the fact that Bayelsa state had no legal powers to conduct foreign relations on its own behalf, external affairs being exclusively reserved to the federal government under the Nigerian Constitution. As further and decisive evidence, the Court referred to the certificate from the UK Foreign Office to the effect that Bayelsa was a constituent territory of the Federal Republic of Nigeria.²⁰¹

Article 2(1)b of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities, it should be noted, includes within its definition of state, 'constituent units of a federal state'.²⁰² The issue of the status of the European Community in this context was raised in the course of the ITC litigation as the EEC was a party to the sixth International Tin Agreement, 1982 under which the ITC was constituted. The Court of Appeal in *Maclaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry*²⁰³ held that the EEC's claim to sovereign immunity was untenable. It had been conceded that the EEC was not a state and thus could not rely on the State Immunity Act 1978, but it was argued that the Community was entitled to immunity analogous to sovereign immunity under the rules of common law. This approach was held by Kerr

¹⁹⁸ An Order in Council has been made with respect to the constituent territories of Austria, SI 1979 no. 457, and Germany, SI 1993 no. 2809. The Act may also be extended to dependent territories: see e.g. the State Immunity (Overseas Territories) Order 1979, SI 1979 no. 458 and the State Immunity (Jersey) Order 1985, SI 1985 no. 1642.

¹⁹⁹ See e.g. *BCCI v. Price Waterhouse* [1997] 4 All ER 108; 111 ILR, p. 604.

²⁰⁰ [2005] EWHC 2704. ²⁰¹ *Ibid.*, paras. 38 ff.

²⁰² See also the Report of the International Law Commission, 1991, p. 13. Note that article I of the Revised Draft Articles for a Convention on State Immunity adopted by the International Law Association in 1994 defines the term 'foreign state' to include the government of the state, any other state organs and agencies and instrumentalities of the state not possessing legal personality distinct from the state. No specific reference to units of federal states is made.

²⁰³ [1988] 3 WLR 1033; 80 ILR, p. 49.

LJ to be 'entirely misconceived'.²⁰⁴ Although the EEC had personality in international law and was able to exercise powers and functions analogous to those of sovereign states, this did not lead on to immunity as such. This was because sovereign immunity was 'a derogation from the normal exercise of jurisdiction by the courts and should be accorded only in clear cases',²⁰⁵ while the concept itself was based upon the equality of states. The EEC Treaty, 1957 and the Merger Treaty, 1965 themselves made no claim for general immunity and nothing else existed upon which such a claim could be based.²⁰⁶

*The personality issue – immunity for government figures*²⁰⁷

The question of immunity *ratione personae* arises particularly and most strongly in the case of heads of state. Such immunity issues may come into play either with regard to international tribunals or within domestic orders. Taking the first, it is clear that serving heads of state, and other governmental officials, may be rendered susceptible to the jurisdiction of international tribunals, depending, of course, upon the terms of the constitutions of such tribunals. The provisions of, for example, the Versailles Treaty, 1919 (article 227); the Charter of the International Military Tribunal at Nuremberg, 1945 (article 7); the Statutes of the Yugoslav and Rwanda International Criminal Tribunals (articles 7 and 6 respectively); the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court, 1998 (article 27) and the Statute for the Special Court for Sierra Leone, 2002 (article 6(2)) all expressly state that individual criminal responsibility will exist irrespective of any official status, including that of head of state. This was reaffirmed by the Special Court for Sierra Leone in its decision concerning the claim for immunity made by Charles Taylor.²⁰⁸

²⁰⁴ [1988] 3 WLR 1107; 80 ILR, p. 122.

²⁰⁵ *Victory Transport v. Comisaria General de Abastecimientos y Transportes* 336 F.2d 354 (1964), cited with approval by Ackner LJ in *Empresa Exportadora de Azucar v. Industria Azucarera Nacional* [1983] 2 LL. R 171, 193 and Lord Edmund-Davies in *I° Congreso del Partido* [1983] 1 AC 244, 276.

²⁰⁶ [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1108–12; 80 ILR, pp. 49, 123. Nourse and Ralph Gibson LLJ agreed with Kerr LJ completely on this issue, *ibid.*, pp. 1131 and 1158; 80 ILR, pp. 150, 180.

²⁰⁷ See e.g. Y. Simbeye, *Immunity and International Criminal Law*, Aldershot, 2004, and A. Borghi, *L'Immunité des Dirigeants Politiques en Droit International*, Geneva, 2003.

²⁰⁸ Case No. SCSL-2003-01-I, Decision on Immunity from Jurisdiction, 31 May 2004, 128 ILR, p. 239.

The situation of immunity before domestic courts is more complex.²⁰⁹ First, the question of the determination of the status of head of state before domestic courts is primarily a matter for the domestic order of the individual concerned. In *Republic of the Philippines v. Marcos (No. 1)*,²¹⁰ for example, the US Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit held that the Marcoses, the deposed leader of the Philippines and his wife, were not entitled to claim sovereign immunity. In a further decision, the Court of Appeals for the Fourth Circuit held in *In re Grand Jury Proceedings, Doe No. 770*²¹¹ that head of state immunity was primarily an attribute of state sovereignty, not an individual right, and that accordingly full effect should be given to the revocation by the Philippines government of the immunity of the Marcoses.²¹² Also relevant would be the attitude adopted by the executive in the state in which the case is being brought. In *US v. Noriega*,²¹³ the District Court noted that head of state immunity was grounded in customary international law, but in order to assert such immunity, a government official must be recognised as head of state and this had not happened with regard to General Noriega.²¹⁴ This was confirmed by the Court of Appeals for the Eleventh Circuit, who noted that the judiciary deferred to the executive in matters concerning jurisdiction over foreign sovereigns and their instrumentalities, and, in the Noriega situation, the executive had demonstrated the view that he should not be granted head of state status. This was coupled with the fact that he had never served as constitutional ruler of Panama and that state had not sought immunity for him; further the charges related to his private enrichment.²¹⁵ In *First American Corporation v. Al-Nahyan*, the District Court noted that the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act did not affect the right of the US government to file a Suggestion of Immunity asserting

²⁰⁹ See e.g. the observations submitted by the UK government to the European Court of Human Rights concerning *Association SOS Attentats v. France*, regarding the immunity of President Gaddafi of Libya in criminal and civil proceedings in France, UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 735 ff.

²¹⁰ 806 F.2d 344 (1986); 81 ILR, p. 581. See also e.g. *Re Honecker* 80 ILR, p. 365.

²¹¹ 817 F.2d 1108 (1987); 81 ILR, p. 599.

²¹² See also *Doe v. United States of America* 860 F.2d 40 (1988); 121 ILR, p. 567.

²¹³ 746 F.Supp. 1506, 1519 (1990); 99 ILR, pp. 143, 161.

²¹⁴ See also Watts, 'Legal Position', pp. 52 ff. See also H. Fox, 'The Resolution of the Institute of International Law on the Immunities of Heads of State and Government', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 119.

²¹⁵ 117 F.3d 1206 (1997); 121 ILR, p. 591. See also *Flatow v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 999 F.Supp. 1 (1998); 121 ILR, p. 618.

immunity with regard to a head of state and this would be binding on the courts.²¹⁶

Secondly, international law has traditionally made a distinction between the official and private acts of a head of state.²¹⁷ In the case of civil proceedings, this means that a head of state may be susceptible to the jurisdiction where the question concerns purely private acts as distinct from acts undertaken in exercise or ostensible exercise of public authority.²¹⁸

Thirdly, serving heads of state benefit from absolute immunity from the exercise of the jurisdiction of a foreign domestic court.²¹⁹ This was reaffirmed in *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3). Lord Browne-Wilkinson, for example, noted that, 'This immunity enjoyed by a head of state in power and an ambassador in post is a complete immunity attaching to the person of the head of state or ambassador and rendering him immune from all actions or prosecutions whether or not they relate to matters done for the benefit of the state.'²²⁰ Lord Hope referred to the '*jus cogens* character of the immunity enjoyed by serving heads of state *ratione personae*.'²²¹ This approach affirming the immunity of a serving head of state is endorsed by the decision of the French Cour de Cassation in the *Ghaddafi* case.²²² In *Tachiona v. USA*, the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit, although deciding the issue as to the immunity of President Mugabe of Zimbabwe on the basis of diplomatic immunity, expressly doubted that the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act was meant to change the common

²¹⁶ 948 F.Supp. 1107 (1996); 121 ILR, p. 577.

²¹⁷ See e.g. Draft Articles with Commentary on Jurisdictional Immunities, ILC Report, 1991, A/46/10, pp. 12, 15, 18 and 22.

²¹⁸ See e.g. *Republic of the Philippines v. Marcos* (No. 1), 806 F.2d 344 (1986); 81 ILR, p. 581; *Jimenez v. Aristeguieta* 33 ILR, p. 353; *Lafontant v. Aristide* 103 ILR, pp. 581, 585 and *Mobutu and Republic of Zaire v. Société Logrine* 113 ILR, p. 481. See also Watts, 'Legal Position', pp. 54 ff.

²¹⁹ See e.g. Watts, 'Legal Position', p. 54. See also *Djibouti v. France*, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 170 ff.

²²⁰ [2000] 1 AC 147, 201–2; 119 ILR, p. 135.

²²¹ [2000] 1 AC 244. See also Lord Goff at 210; Lord Saville at 265 and Lord Millett at 269. See also the decision of 12 February 2003 of the Belgian Court of Cassation in *HSA et al. v. SA et al.*, No. P. 02.1139. F/1, affirming the immunity of Prime Minister Sharon of Israel.

²²² Arrêt no. 1414, 14 March 2001, Cass. Crim. 1. See e.g. S. Zappalà, 'Do Heads of State in Office Enjoy Immunity from Jurisdiction for International Crimes? The *Ghaddafi* Case Before the French Cour de Cassation', 12 EJIL, 2001, p. 595. See also *Tatchell v. Mugabe*, unreported decision of the Bow Street Magistrates' Court, 14 January 2004, affirming the absolute immunity of President Mugabe, the Head of State of Zimbabwe.

law of head of state immunity,²²³ a proposition affirmed in earlier case-law.²²⁴

Fourthly, the immunity of a former head of state differs in that it may be seen as moving from a status immunity (*ratione personae*) to a functional immunity (*ratione materiae*), so that immunity will only exist for official acts done while in office. The definition of official acts is somewhat unclear, but it is suggested that this would exclude acts done in clear violation of international law. It may be concluded at the least from the judgment in *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3) that the existence of the offence in question as a crime under international law by convention will, when coupled in some way by a universal or extraterritorial mechanism of enforcement, operate to exclude a plea of immunity *ratione materiae* at least in so far as states parties to the relevant treaty are concerned.²²⁵ This may be a cautious reading and the law in this area is likely to evolve further.

The question as to whether immunities *ratione personae* apply to other governmental persons has been controversial.²²⁶ The International Law Commission, for example, in its commentary on the Draft Articles on Jurisdictional Immunities (which led to the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities) distinguished between the special position as regards immunities *ratione personae* of personal sovereigns (which would include heads of state) and diplomatic agents and that of other representatives of the government who would have only immunities *ratione materiae*.²²⁷

²²³ 386 F.3d 205 (2004).

²²⁴ See *Wei Ye v. Jiang Zemin* 383 F.3d 620 (2004), noting also that the State Department's suggestion as to immunity was conclusive.

²²⁵ [2000] 1 AC 147 at e.g. 204–5 (Lord Browne-Wilkinson); 246 (Lord Hope); 262 (Lord Hutton); 266–7 (Lord Saville); 277 (Lord Millett); 290 (Lord Phillips); 119 ILR, p. 135. Note that by virtue of s. 20 of the State Immunity Act cross-referring to the Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 incorporating the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, 1961, the immunities of a head of state were assimilated to those of the head of a diplomatic mission. Article 39(2) of the Vienna Convention provides that once a diplomat's functions have come to an end, immunity will only exist as regards acts performed 'in the exercise of his functions'.

²²⁶ Note that as far as UK law is concerned, the provisions of s. 20(1) of the State Immunity Act do not apply so that the analogy with diplomatic agents is not relevant: see previous footnote.

²²⁷ See the Report of the International Law Commission, 1991, pp. 24–7. See also Watts, 'Legal Position', pp. 53 and 102, who adopts a similar position. Lord Millett in *Ex parte Pinochet* (No. 3) took the view that immunity *ratione personae* was 'only narrowly available. It is confined to serving heads of state and heads of diplomatic missions, their families and servants. It is not available to serving heads of government who are not also heads of state ...', [2000] 1 AC 147 at 268; 119 ILR, p. 135.

However, in its judgment in the *Congo v. Belgium* case, the International Court of Justice stated that, 'in international law it is firmly established that . . . certain holders of high-ranking office in a state, such as the head of state, head of government and minister for foreign affairs, enjoy immunities from jurisdiction in other states, both civil and criminal'.²²⁸ The Court took the view that serving Foreign Ministers would benefit from immunity *ratione personae* on the basis that such immunities were in order to ensure the effective performance of their functions on behalf of their states.²²⁹ The extent of such immunities would be dependent upon the functions exercised, but they were such that 'throughout the duration of his or her office, he or she when abroad enjoys full immunity from criminal jurisdiction and inviolability',²³⁰ irrespective of whether the acts in question have been performed in an official or a private capacity.²³¹ This absolute immunity from the jurisdiction of foreign courts would also apply with regard to war crimes or crimes against humanity.²³² Immunities derived from customary international law would remain opposable to national courts even where such courts exercised jurisdiction under various international conventions requiring states parties to extend their criminal jurisdiction to cover the offences in question.²³³ The Court concluded by noting that after a person ceased to hold the office of Foreign Minister, the

²²⁸ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 20; 128 ILR, p. 76. See also A. Cassese, 'When May Senior State Officials Be Tried for International Crimes?', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 853. See also *Djibouti v. France*, ICJ Reports, 2008, paras. 181 ff.

²²⁹ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 21–2. ²³⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 22. ²³¹ *Ibid.* ²³² *Ibid.*, p. 24.

²³³ *Ibid.*, pp. 24–5. See, as to such conventions, above, chapter 12, p. 673. See also the application brought by the Government of the Republic of the Congo against France on 9 December 2002. France consented to the Court's jurisdiction on 11 April 2003. In its Application, the Republic of the Congo seeks the annulment of the investigation and prosecution measures taken by the French judicial authorities further to a complaint for crimes against humanity and torture filed by various associations against *inter alia* the President of the Republic of the Congo, Mr Denis Sassou Nguesso, and the Congolese Minister of the Interior, Mr Pierre Oba, together with other individuals including General Norbert Dabira, Inspector-General of the Congolese Armies. The Application further states that, in connection with these proceedings, an investigating judge of the Meaux *tribunal de grande instance* issued a warrant for the President of the Republic of the Congo to be examined as a witness. The Republic of the Congo declares this to be a violation of international law. See also the order of the ICJ of 17 June 2003 refusing an indication of provisional measures in this case. Rwanda introduced an application against France on 18 April 2007 concerning international arrest warrants issued by the latter's judicial authorities against three Rwandan officials on 20 November 2006 and a request sent to the United Nations Secretary-General that President Paul Kagame of Rwanda should stand trial at the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (ICTR). France has to date not given its consent to this application and there is no other jurisdictional basis.

courts of other countries may prosecute with regard to acts committed before or after the period of office and also 'in respect of acts committed during that period of office in a private capacity'.²³⁴ This appears to leave open the question of prosecution for acts performed in violation of international law (such as, for example, torture), unless these are deemed to fall within the category of private acts.

It is also uncertain as to how far the term used by the Court, 'holders of high-ranking office in a state', might extend and practice is unclear.²³⁵

Waiver of immunity

It is possible for a state to waive its immunity from the jurisdiction of the court. Express waiver of immunity from jurisdiction, however, which must be granted by an authorised representative of the state,²³⁶ does not of itself mean waiver of immunity from execution.²³⁷ In the case of implied waiver, some care is required. Section 2 of the State Immunity Act provides for loss of immunity upon submission to the jurisdiction, either by a prior written agreement²³⁸ or after the particular dispute has arisen. A state is deemed to have submitted to the jurisdiction where the state has instituted proceedings or has intervened or taken any step in the

²³⁴ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 25–6. But see the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Al-Khasawneh.

²³⁵ See above, note 228. See also *Application for Arrest Warrant Against General Shaul Mofaz*, decision of the Bow Street Magistrates' Court, 12 February 2004, where it was held that a serving Defence Minister of another state would benefit from immunities before the English court, 128 ILR, p. 709.

²³⁶ See e.g. *R v. Madan* [1961] QB 1, 7. Although this was a case on diplomatic immunity which preceded the 1964 Diplomatic Privileges Act incorporating the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, 1961, the Court of Appeal in *Aziz v. Republic of Yemen* [2005] EWCA Civ 745, para. 48, held the statement to be of general application, including with regard to a consideration of waiver of state immunity under the 1978 Act.

²³⁷ See e.g. article 20 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities. Note, however, that the issue will turn upon the interpretation of the terms of the waiver: see *A Company v. Republic of X* [1990] 2 LL. R 520; 87 ILR, p. 412. However, it is suggested that the principle that waiver of immunity from jurisdiction does not of itself constitute a waiver of immunity from the grant of relief by the courts is of the nature of a presumption, thus placing the burden of proof to the contrary upon the private party and having implications with regard to the standard of proof required. See also *Sabah Shipyard v. Pakistan* [2002] EWCA Civ. 1643 at paras. 18 ff.

²³⁸ Overruling *Kahan v. Pakistan Federation* [1951] 2 KB 1003; 18 ILR, p. 210. Submission to the jurisdiction by means of a provision in a contract must be in clear, express language. The choice of UK law as the governing law of the contract did not amount to such a submission: see *Mills v. USA* 120 ILR, p. 612.

proceedings.²³⁹ Article 8 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities is essentially to the same effect.²⁴⁰

If a state submits to proceedings, it is deemed to have submitted to any counter-claim arising out of the same legal relationship or facts as the claim.²⁴¹ A provision in an agreement that it is to be governed by the law of the UK is not to be taken as a submission. By section 9 of the State Immunity Act, a state which has agreed in writing to submit a dispute to arbitration is not immune from proceedings in the courts which relate to the arbitration.²⁴² In *Svenska Petroleum v. Lithuania*, the Court of Appeal held that a failure to challenge an award made without jurisdiction did not of itself amount to an agreement in writing on Lithuania's part to submit the dispute to arbitration.²⁴³ However, the Court noted that there was no basis for construing section 9 of the State Immunity Act (particularly when viewed in the context of the provisions of section 13 dealing with execution) as excluding proceedings relating to the enforcement of a foreign arbitral award. It was emphasised that arbitration was a consensual procedure and the principle underlying section 9 was that, if a state had

²³⁹ But not where the intervention or step taken is only for the purpose of claiming immunity, or where the step taken by the state is in ignorance of facts entitling it to immunity if those facts could not reasonably have been ascertained and immunity is claimed as soon as reasonably practicable, s. 2(5). See also article 1 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972.

²⁴⁰ This provides that: '1. A state cannot invoke immunity from jurisdiction in a proceeding before a court of another state if it has: (a) itself instituted the proceeding; or (b) intervened in the proceeding or taken any other step relating to the merits. However, if the state satisfies the court that it could not have acquired knowledge of facts on which a claim to immunity can be based until after it took such a step, it can claim immunity based on those facts, provided it does so at the earliest possible moment. 2. A state shall not be considered to have consented to the exercise of jurisdiction by a court of another state if it intervenes in a proceeding or takes any other step for the sole purpose of: (a) invoking immunity; or (b) asserting a right or interest in property at issue in the proceeding. 3. The appearance of a representative of a state before a court of another state as a witness shall not be interpreted as consent by the former state to the exercise of jurisdiction by the court. 4. Failure on the part of a state to enter an appearance in a proceeding before a court of another state shall not be interpreted as consent by the former state to the exercise of jurisdiction by the court'.

²⁴¹ See also article 1 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972 and article 9 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities.

²⁴² See also article 12 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972 and article 17 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities.

²⁴³ [2006] EWCA Civ 1529, para. 113. See also *Donegal v. Zambia* [2007] EWHC 197 (Comm), holding that written submissions to the jurisdiction with regard to a compromise agreement amounted to a waiver of immunity.

agreed to submit to arbitration, it had thus rendered itself amenable to such process as might be necessary to render the arbitration effective.²⁴⁴

The issue of waiver is also a key factor in many US cases. Section 1605(a)(1) of the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 provides that a foreign state is not immune where it has waived its immunity either expressly or by implication, notwithstanding any withdrawal of the waiver which the foreign state may purport to effect, except in accordance with the terms of the waiver.²⁴⁵ The Court of Appeals has held, however, that the implied waiver provision did not extend to conduct constituting a violation of *jus cogens*.²⁴⁶

*Pre-judgment attachment*²⁴⁷

Section 1610(d) of the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976 prohibits the attachment of the property of a foreign state before judgment unless that state has explicitly waived its immunity from attachment prior to judgment and the purpose of the attachment is to secure satisfaction of a judgment that has been or may be entered against the foreign state. A variety of cases in the US has arisen over whether general waivers contained in treaty provisions may be interpreted as permitting pre-judgment attachment, in order to prevent the defendant from removing his assets from the jurisdiction. The courts generally require clear evidence of the intention to waive pre-judgment attachment, although that actual phrase need not necessarily be used.²⁴⁸

²⁴⁴ [2006] EWCA Civ 1529, paras. 117 and 123. See also *The Akademik Fyodorov* 131 ILR, p. 460.

²⁴⁵ See e.g. *Siderman v. Republic of Argentina* 965 F.2d 699 (1992); 103 ILR, p. 454. It should also be noted that a substantial number of bilateral treaties expressly waive immunity from jurisdiction. This is particularly the case where the states maintaining the absolute immunity approach are concerned: see e.g. UN, *Materials*, part III. See also *USA v. Friedland* (1998) 40 OR (3d) 747; 120 ILR, p. 418.

²⁴⁶ *Smith v. Libya* 101 F.3d 239 (1996); 113 ILR, p. 534. See also *Hirsch v. State of Israel* 962 F.Supp. 377 (1997); 113 ILR, p. 543.

²⁴⁷ See e.g. J. Crawford, 'Execution of Judgments and Foreign Sovereign Immunity', 75 AJIL, 1981, pp. 820, 867 ff., and Schreuer, *State Immunity*, p. 162.

²⁴⁸ See e.g. *Behring International Inc. v. Imperial Iranian Air Force* 475 F.Supp. 383 (1979); 63 ILR, p. 261; *Reading & Bates Corp. v. National Iranian Oil Company* 478 F.Supp. 724 (1979); 63 ILR, p. 305; *New England Merchants National Bank v. Iran Power Generation and Transmission Company* 19 ILM, 1980, p. 1298; 63 ILR, p. 408; *Security Pacific National Bank v. Government of Iran* 513 F.Supp. 864 (1981); *Libra Bank Ltd v. Banco Nacional de Costa Rica* 676 F.2d 47 (1982); 72 ILR, p. 119; *S & S Machinery Co. v. Masinexportimport* 706 F.2d 411 (1981); 107 ILR, p. 239, and *O'Connell Machinery v. MV Americana* 734 F.2d 115 (1984); 81 ILR, p. 539. See also article 23 of the European Convention on State

Under the UK State Immunity Act 1978, no relief may be given against a state by way of injunction or order for specific performance, recovery of land or recovery of any property without the written consent of that state.²⁴⁹ The question has therefore arisen as to whether a *Mareva* injunction,²⁵⁰ ordering that assets remain within the jurisdiction pending the outcome of the case, may be obtained, particularly since this type of injunction is interlocutory and obtained without notice (*ex parte*). It is suggested that an application for a *Mareva* injunction may indeed be made without notice since immunity may not apply in the circumstances of the case. In applying for such an injunction, a plaintiff is under a duty to make full and frank disclosure and the standard of proof is that of a 'good and arguable case', explaining, for example, why it is contended that immunity would not be applicable. It is then for the defendant to seek to discharge the injunction by arguing that these criteria have not been met. The issue as to how the court should deal with such a situation was discussed in *A Company v. Republic of X*.²⁵¹ Saville J noted that the issue of immunity had to be finally settled at the outset so that when a state sought to discharge a *Mareva* injunction on the grounds of immunity, the court could not allow the injunction to continue on the basis that the plaintiff has a good arguable case that immunity does not exist, for if immunity did exist 'then the court simply has no power to continue the injunction'. Accordingly, a delay between the granting of the injunction *ex parte* and the final determination by the court of the issue was probably unavoidable.²⁵² The situation is generally the same in other countries.²⁵³

Immunity prohibiting such action. Article 18 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities provides that 'no pre-judgment measures of constraint, such as attachment or arrest, against property of a state may be taken in connection with a proceeding before a court of another state unless and except to the extent that: (a) the state has expressly consented to the taking of such measures as indicated: (i) by international agreement; (ii) by an arbitration agreement or in a written contract; or (iii) by a declaration before the court or by a written communication after a dispute between the parties has arisen; or (b) the state has allocated or earmarked property for the satisfaction of the claim which is the object of that proceeding'.

²⁴⁹ S. 13(2).

²⁵⁰ See *Mareva Compania Naviera v. International Bulkcarriers* [1975] 2 LL. R 509. See also S. Gee, *Mareva Injunctions & Anton Piller Relief*, 2nd edn, London, 1990, especially at p. 22.

²⁵¹ [1990] 2 LL. R 520; 87 ILR, p. 412.

²⁵² [1990] 2 LL. R 525; 87 ILR, p. 417, citing *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1988] 3 WLR 1033 at 1103–4 and 1157–8.

²⁵³ But see the case of *Condor and Filvem v. Minister of Justice* 101 ILR, p. 394 before the Italian Constitutional Court in 1992.

*Immunity from execution*²⁵⁴

Immunity from execution is to be distinguished from immunity from jurisdiction, particularly since it involves the question of the actual seizure of assets appertaining to a foreign state. As such it poses a considerable challenge to relations between states and accordingly states have proved unwilling to restrict immunity from enforcement judgment in contradistinction to the situation concerning jurisdictional immunity. Consent to the exercise of jurisdiction does not imply consent to the execution or enforcement of any judgment obtained.²⁵⁵

Article 23 of the European Convention on State Immunity, 1972 prohibits any measures of execution or preventive measures against the property of a contracting state in the absence of written consent in any particular case. However, the European Convention provides for a system of mutual enforcement of final judgments rendered in accordance with its provisions²⁵⁶ and an Additional Protocol provides for proceedings to be taken before the European Tribunal of State Immunity, consisting basically of members of the European Court of Human Rights. Article 19 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities provides that no post-judgment measures of constraint, such as attachment, arrest or execution, against property of a state may be taken in connection with a proceeding before a court of another state unless, and except to the extent that, the state has expressly consented to the taking of such measures as indicated by international agreement; an arbitration agreement or in a written contract; or by a declaration before the court or by a written communication after a dispute between the parties has arisen; or where the state has allocated or earmarked property for the satisfaction of the claim which is the object of that proceeding; or where it has been established that the property is specifically in use or intended for use by the state for other than government non-commercial purposes and is in the territory of the state of the forum, provided that post-judgment measures of constraint may only be taken against property

²⁵⁴ See e.g. Schreuer, *State Immunity*, chapter 6; Sinclair, 'Sovereign Immunity', chapter 4; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 453; Crawford, 'Execution of Judgments'; A. Reinisch, 'European Court Practice Concerning State Immunity from Enforcement Measures', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 803; H. Fox, 'Enforcement Jurisdiction, Foreign State Property and Diplomatic Immunity', 34 ICLQ, 1985, p. 115, and various articles in 10 Netherlands YIL, 1979.

²⁵⁵ See e.g. article 20 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional Immunities.

²⁵⁶ Article 20 of the European Convention on State Immunity.

that has a connection with the entity against which the proceeding was directed.

Section 13(2)b of the UK State Immunity Act provides, for instance, that 'the property of a state shall not be subject to any process for the enforcement of a judgment or arbitration award or, in an action *in rem*, for its arrest, detention or sale'. Such immunity may be waived by written consent but not by merely submitting to the jurisdiction of the courts,²⁵⁷ while there is no immunity from execution in respect of property which is for the time being in use or intended for use for commercial purposes.²⁵⁸ It is particularly to be noted that this latter stipulation is not to apply to a state's central bank or other monetary authority.²⁵⁹ Thus, a *Trendtex* type of situation could not arise again in the same form. It was emphasised in *AIC Ltd v. Federal Government of Nigeria* that this absolute immunity accorded to the property of a foreign state's central bank applied irrespective of the source of the funds in the account or the purpose for which the account was maintained,²⁶⁰ while in *AIG Capital Partners Inc. v. Republic of Kazakhstan*, it was noted that the term 'property' in the Act had to be given a broad meaning and included all real and personal property, including any right or interest, whether legal, equitable or contractual. The property in question appertained to the central bank if held in its name, irrespective of the capacity in which the bank held it or the purpose for which it was held.²⁶¹

It is also interesting that the corresponding provision in the US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976 is more restrictive with regard to immunity from execution.²⁶² The principle that existence of immunity from

²⁵⁷ S. 13(3). See also s. 14 of the South African Foreign Sovereign Immunity Act 1981; s. 14 of the Pakistan State Immunity Ordinance 1981; s. 15 of the Singapore State Immunity Act 1979 and s. 31 of the Australian Foreign States Immunities Act 1985.

²⁵⁸ S. 13(4).

²⁵⁹ S. 14(4), which provides that, 'Property of a state's central bank or other monetary authority shall not be regarded for the purposes of subsection (4) of section 13 above as in use or intended for use for commercial purposes; and where any such bank or authority is a separate entity subsections (1) to (3) of that section shall apply to it as if references to a state were references to the bank or authority.' See also Fox, *State Immunity*, p. 393, and W. Blair, 'The Legal Status of Central Bank Investments under English Law' [1998] CLJ, pp. 374, 380–1.

²⁶⁰ [2003] EWHC 1357, paras. 46 ff.; 129 ILR, p. 571.

²⁶¹ [2005] EWHC 2239 (Comm), paras. 33 ff.; 129 ILR, p. 589.

²⁶² S. 1610. Thus, for example, there would be no immunity with regard to property taken in violation of international law. See also *First National City Bank v. Banco Para El Comercio Exterior de Cuba* 462 US 611 (1983); 80 ILR, p. 566; *Letelier v. Republic of Chile* 748 F.2d 790 (1984) and *Foxworth v. Permanent Mission of the Republic of Uganda to the United*

jurisdiction does not automatically entail immunity from execution has been reaffirmed in the case-law on a number of occasions.²⁶³

In 1977, the West German Federal Constitutional Court in the *Philippine Embassy* case²⁶⁴ declared that:

forced execution of judgment by the state of the forum under a writ of execution against a foreign state which has been issued in respect of non-sovereign acts . . . of that state, or property of that state which is present or situated in the territory of the state of the forum, is inadmissible without the consent of the foreign state if . . . such property serves sovereign purposes of the foreign state.

In particular it was noted that:

claims against a general current bank account of the embassy of a foreign state which exists in the state of the forum and the purpose of which is to cover the embassy's costs and expenses are not subject to forced execution by the state of the forum.²⁶⁵

This was referred to approvingly by Lord Diplock in *Alcom Ltd v. Republic of Colombia*,²⁶⁶ a case which similarly involved the attachment of a bank account of a diplomatic mission. The House of Lords unanimously accepted that the general rule in international law was not overturned in the State Immunity Act. In *Alcom*, described as involving a question of law of 'outstanding international importance',²⁶⁷ it was held that such a bank account would not fall within the section 13(4) exception relating to commercial purposes, unless it could be shown by the person seeking to attach the balance that 'the bank account was earmarked by the foreign state solely . . . for being drawn on to settle liabilities incurred in

Nations 796 F.Supp. 761 (1992); 99 ILR, p. 138. See also G. R. Delaume, 'The Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act and Public Debt Litigation: Some Fifteen Years Later', 88 AJIL, 1994, pp. 257, 266. Note that in 1988, the legislation was amended to include a provision that, with regard to measures of execution following confirmation of an arbitral award, all the commercial property of the award debtor was open to execution: new s. 1610(a)(6), *ibid.*

²⁶³ See e.g. *Abbott v. South Africa* 113 ILR, p. 411 (Spanish Constitutional Court); *Centre for Industrial Development v. Naidu* 115 ILR, p. 424 and *Flatow v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 999 F.Supp. 1 (1998); 121 ILR, p. 618. See also *The Akademik Fyodorov*, 131 ILR, pp. 460, 485–6.

²⁶⁴ See UN, *Materials*, p. 297; 65 ILR, pp. 146, 150.

²⁶⁵ UN, *Materials*, pp. 300–1; 65 ILR, p. 164.

²⁶⁶ [1984] 2 All ER 6; 74 ILR, p. 180, overturning the Court of Appeal Decision, [1984] 1 All ER 1; 74 ILR, p. 170.

²⁶⁷ [1984] 2 All ER 14; 74 ILR, p. 189.

commercial transactions.²⁶⁸ The onus of proof lies upon the applicant. It is also to be noted that under section 13(5) of the Act, a certificate by a head of mission to the effect that property was not in use for commercial purposes was sufficient evidence of that fact, unless the contrary was proven.²⁶⁹ The question of determining property used for commercial purposes is a significant and complex one that will invariably depend upon an analysis of various factors, as seen in the light of the law of the forum state,²⁷⁰ for example the present and future use of the funds and their origin.²⁷¹

In *Banamar v. Embassy of the Democratic and Popular Republic of Algeria*,²⁷² the Italian Supreme Court reaffirmed the rule that customary international law forbids measures of execution against the property of foreign states located in the territory of the state seeking to exercise jurisdiction and used for sovereign purposes, and held that it lacked jurisdiction to enforce a judgment against a foreign state by ordering execution against bank accounts standing in the name of that state's embassy. This approach appears to have been modified in *Condor and Filvem v. Minister of Justice*²⁷³ before the Italian Constitutional Court in 1992. The Court held that it could no longer be affirmed that there existed an international customary rule forbidding absolutely coercive measures against the property of foreign states. In order for immunity against execution not to apply, it is necessary not only to demonstrate that the activity or transaction concerned was *jure gestionis*, but also to show that the property to which the request for execution refers is not destined to accomplish public functions (*jure imperii*) of the foreign state.²⁷⁴

However, the Spanish Constitutional Court in *Abbott v. South Africa* held that bank accounts held by foreign states used for the purposes of ordinary diplomatic or consular activity were immune from attachment or execution even where the funds were also used for commercial

²⁶⁸ [1984] 2 All ER 13; 74 ILR, p. 187. But cf. *Birch Shipping Corporation v. Embassy of the United Republic of Tanzania* 507 F.Supp. 311 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 524. But see the decision of the Swiss Federal Tribunal in 1990 in *Z v. Geneva Supervisory Authority for the Enforcement of Debts and Bankruptcy*, 102 ILR, p. 205, holding that funds allocated for the diplomatic service of a foreign state were immune from attachment.

²⁶⁹ Such certificate had been issued by the Colombian Ambassador. See below, p. 750, with regard to diplomatic immunities.

²⁷⁰ See the West German Federal Constitutional Court decision in the *National Iranian Oil Co.* case, 22 ILM, 1983, p. 1279.

²⁷¹ See e.g. *Eurodif Corporation v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 23 ILM, 1984, p. 1062.

²⁷² 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 573; 87 ILR, p. 56. See also *Libya v. Rossbeton SRL*, 87 ILR, p. 63.

²⁷³ 101 ILR, p. 394. ²⁷⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 401–2.

purposes,²⁷⁵ while the Austrian Supreme Court held in *Leasing West GmbH v. Algeria* that a general bank account of a foreign embassy allocated partly but not exclusively for diplomatic purposes was immune from enforcement proceedings without the consent of the state concerned. Attachment could only take place if the account could be shown to be used exclusively for private purposes.²⁷⁶

The burden and standard of proof

Since section 1 of the State Immunity Act stipulates that a state is immune from the jurisdiction of the courts of the UK except as provided in the following sections, it is clear that the burden of proof lies upon the plaintiff to establish that an exception to immunity applies.²⁷⁷ However, the court is under a duty to ensure that effect is given to the immunity conferred by the State Immunity Act 1978 and of its own motion if necessary.²⁷⁸

As far as the standard of proof is concerned, the Court of Appeal in *Maclaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry*²⁷⁹ held that whenever a claim of immunity is made, the court must deal with it as a preliminary issue and on the normal test of balance of probabilities.²⁸⁰ It would be insufficient to apply the 'good arguable case' test usual in Order 11²⁸¹ cases with regard to leave to serve.²⁸² To have decided otherwise would have meant that the state might have lost its claim for immunity upon the more impressionistic 'good arguable case' basis, which in practice is decided upon affidavit evidence only, and would have been precluded from pursuing its claim at a later stage since that could well be construed

²⁷⁵ 113 ILR, pp. 411, 423–4. ²⁷⁶ 116 ILR, p. 526.

²⁷⁷ See also Staughton J in *Rayner v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1987] BCLC 667; *Donegal v. Zambia* [2007] EWHC 197 (Comm), para. 428, and Fox, *State Immunity*, p. 177.

²⁷⁸ Mummery J stated that, 'The overriding duty of the court, of its own motion, is to satisfy itself that effect has been given to the immunity conferred by the State Immunity Act 1978. That duty binds all tribunals and courts, not just the court or tribunal which heard the original proceedings. If the tribunal in the original proceedings has not given effect to the immunity conferred by the Act, then it must be the duty of the appeal tribunal to give effect to it by correcting the error': see *United Arab Emirates v. Abdelghafar* [1995] ICR 65, 73–4; 104 ILR, pp. 647, 654–5. See also *Military Affairs Office of the Embassy of Kuwait v. Caramba-Coker*, Appeal No. EAT/1054/02/RN, Employment Appeal Tribunal (2003).

²⁷⁹ [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1103 and 1157; 80 ILR, pp. 49, 118, 179.

²⁸⁰ This would be done procedurally under Order 12, Rule 8 of the Rules of the Supreme Court, 1991. See also *A Company v. Republic of X* 87 ILR, pp. 412, 417.

²⁸¹ Rules of the Supreme Court, 1991.

²⁸² See e.g. *Vitkovice Horni v. Korner* [1951] AC 869.

as submission to the jurisdiction under section 2(3) of the State Immunity Act.

The question of service of process upon a foreign state arose in *Westminster City Council v. Government of the Islamic Republic of Iran*,²⁸³ where Peter Gibson J held that without prior service upon the Iranian government, the court was unable to deal with the substantive issue before it which concerned the attempt by the Westminster City Council to recover from the Iranian government charges incurred by it in rendering the Iranian embassy safe after it had been stormed in the famous 1980 siege. In the absence of diplomatic relations between the UK and Iran at that time and in the absence of Iranian consent, there appeared to be no way to satisfy the requirement in section 12 of the State Immunity Act that 'any writ or other document required to be served for instituting proceedings against a state shall be served by being transmitted through the Foreign and Commonwealth Office to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the state'. The question also arose in *Kuwait Airways Corporation v. Iraqi Airways*.²⁸⁴ Since at the relevant time there was no British diplomatic presence in Baghdad, the necessary documents were lodged pursuant to Order 11, Rule 7 at the Central Office, whence they were sent to the Foreign and Commonwealth Office and thence to the Iraqi Embassy in London with a request for transmission to Baghdad. The House of Lords held that since the writ was not forwarded to the Iraqi Ministry of Foreign Affairs in Baghdad, the writ was not served as required under section 12(1) of the 1978 Act.²⁸⁵

Conclusion

Although sovereign immunity is in various domestic statutes proclaimed as a general principle, subject to wide-ranging exceptions, it is, of course, itself an exception to the general rule of territorial jurisdiction. The enumeration of non-immunity situations is so long, that the true situation of a rapidly diminishing exception to jurisdiction should be appreciated. In many instances, it has only been with practice that it has become apparent how much more extensive the submission to jurisdiction has become under domestic legislation. In *Letelier v. Republic of Chile*,²⁸⁶ for example, section 1605(a)5 providing for foreign state liability for injury,

²⁸³ [1986] 3 All ER 284; 108 ILR, p. 557. ²⁸⁴ [1995] 1 WLR 1147; 103 ILR, p. 340.

²⁸⁵ [1995] 1 WLR 1156 (per Lord Goff). See also *AN International Bank Plc v. Zambia* 118 ILR, p. 602.

²⁸⁶ 488 F.Supp. 665 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 378.

death and loss of property occurring in the US was used to indict the secret service of Chile with regard to the murder of a former Chilean Foreign Minister in Washington. Similarly in *Verlinden v. Central Bank of Nigeria*,²⁸⁷ the Supreme Court permitted a Dutch company to sue the Central Bank of Nigeria in the US,²⁸⁸ although the *Tel-Oren*²⁸⁹ case may mark a modification of this approach. The amendment to the Act providing for jurisdiction in cases of state-sponsored terrorism has also been a significant development.²⁹⁰

The principle of diplomatic immunity may often be relevant in a sovereign immunity case. This is considered in the next section.

Diplomatic law²⁹¹

Rules regulating the various aspects of diplomatic relations constitute one of the earliest expressions of international law. Whenever in history there

²⁸⁷ 22 ILM, 1983, p. 647; 79 ILR, p. 548.

²⁸⁸ Nevertheless, it would appear that the Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act of 1976 does require some minimum jurisdictional links: see generally *International Shoe Co. v. Washington* 326 US 310 (1945) and *Perez v. The Bahamas* 482 F.Supp. 1208 (1980); 63 ILR, p. 350, cf. State Immunity Act of 1978.

²⁸⁹ 726 F.2d 774 (1984); 77 ILR, p. 193. See further above, p. 683.

²⁹⁰ See above, p. 715.

²⁹¹ See e.g. E. Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008; P. Cahier, *Le Droit Diplomatique Contemporain*, Geneva, 1962; M. Hardy, *Modern Diplomatic Law*, Manchester, 1968; Do Naslimento e Silva, *Diplomacy in International Law*, Leiden, 1973; L. S. Frey and M. L. Frey, *The History of Diplomatic Immunity*, Ohio, 1999; Satow's *Guide to Diplomatic Practice* (ed. P. Gore-Booth), 5th edn, London, 1979; B. Sen, *A Diplomat's Handbook of International Law and Practice*, 3rd edn, The Hague, 1988; J. Brown, 'Diplomatic Immunity: State Practice under the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations', 37 ICLQ, 1988, p. 53; Société Française de Droit International, *Aspects Récents du Droit des Relations Diplomatiques*, Paris, 1989; G. V. McClanahan, *Diplomatic Immunity*, London, 1989; B. S. Murty, *The International Law of Diplomacy*, Dordrecht, 1989; L. Dembinski, *The Modern Law of Diplomacy*, Dordrecht, 1990; J. Salmon, *Manuel de Droit Diplomatique*, Brussels, 1994, and Salmon, 'Immunités et Actes de la Fonction', AFDI, 1992, p. 313; J. C. Barker, *The Abuse of Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities*, Aldershot, 1996, and Barker, *The Protection of Diplomatic Personnel*, Aldershot, 2006; C. E. Wilson, *Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities*, Tucson, 1967; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1970, vol. VII; *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, pp. 455 ff.; House of Commons Foreign Affairs Committee, *The Abuse of Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges*, 1984 and the UK Government Response to the Report, Cmnd 9497, and *Memorandum on Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities in the United Kingdom*, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 688. See also R. Higgins, 'The Abuse of Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities: Recent United Kingdom Experience', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 641, and Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, p. 86; A. James, 'Diplomatic Relations and Contacts', 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 347; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 739, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, chapters 10 and 11.

has been a group of independent states co-existing, special customs have developed on how the ambassadors and other special representatives of other states were to be treated.²⁹²

Diplomacy as a method of communication between various parties, including negotiations between recognised agents, is an ancient institution and international legal provisions governing its manifestations are the result of centuries of state practice. The special privileges and immunities related to diplomatic personnel of various kinds grew up partly as a consequence of sovereign immunity and the independence and equality of states, and partly as an essential requirement of an international system. States must negotiate and consult with each other and with international organisations and in order to do so need diplomatic staffs. Since these persons represent their states in various ways, they thus benefit from the legal principle of state sovereignty. This is also an issue of practical convenience.

Diplomatic relations have traditionally been conducted through the medium of ambassadors²⁹³ and their staffs, but with the growth of trade and commercial intercourse the office of consul was established and expanded. The development of speedy communications stimulated the creation of special missions designed to be sent to particular areas for specific purposes, often with the head of state or government in charge. To some extent, however, the establishment of telephone, telegraph, telex and fax services has lessened the importance of the traditional diplomatic personnel by strengthening the centralising process. Nevertheless, diplomats and consuls do retain some useful functions in the collection of information and pursuit of friendly relations, as well as providing a permanent presence in foreign states, with all that that implies for commercial and economic activities.²⁹⁴

The field of diplomatic immunities is one of the most accepted and uncontroversial of international law topics, as it is in the interest of all states ultimately to preserve an even tenor of diplomatic relations, although not all states act in accordance with this. As the International Court noted in the *US Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran* case:²⁹⁵

²⁹² See e.g. G. Mattingley, *Renaissance Diplomacy*, London, 1955, and D. Elgavish, 'Did Diplomatic Immunity Exist in the Ancient Near East?', 2 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 2000, p. 73. See also Watts, 'Legal Position'.

²⁹³ See, as to the powers of ambassadors, *First Fidelity Bank NA v. Government of Antigua and Barbuda Permanent Mission* 877 F.2d 189 (1989); 99 ILR, p. 125.

²⁹⁴ See generally *Satow's Guide*, chapter 1. ²⁹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 3; 61 ILR, p. 504.

the rules of diplomatic law, in short, constitute a self-contained regime, which on the one hand, lays down the receiving state's obligations regarding the facilities, privileges and immunities to be accorded to diplomatic missions and, on the other, foresees their possible abuse by members of the mission and specifies the means at the disposal of the receiving state to counter any such abuse.²⁹⁶

The Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, 1961

This treaty, which came into force in 1964,²⁹⁷ emphasises the functional necessity of diplomatic privileges and immunities for the efficient conduct of international relations²⁹⁸ as well as pointing to the character of the diplomatic mission as representing its state.²⁹⁹ It both codified existing laws and established others.³⁰⁰ Questions not expressly regulated by the Convention continue to be governed by the rules of customary international law.³⁰¹ The International Court has recently emphasised that the Convention continues to apply notwithstanding the existence of a state of armed conflict between the states concerned.³⁰²

There is no right as such under international law to diplomatic relations, and they exist by virtue of mutual consent.³⁰³ If one state does not

²⁹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 40; 61 ILR, p. 566. See also, affirming that the rules of diplomatic law constitute a self-contained regime, the decision of the German Federal Constitutional Court of 10 June 1997, *Former Syrian Ambassador to the German Democratic Republic* 115 ILR, p. 597.

²⁹⁷ The importance of the Convention was stressed in the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 330–430; 61 ILR, p. 556. Many of its provisions are incorporated into English law by the Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964.

²⁹⁸ See also 767 *Third Avenue Associates v. Permanent Mission of the Republic of Zaire to the United Nations* 988 F.2d 295 (1993); 99 ILR, p. 194.

²⁹⁹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1958, vol. II, pp. 94–5. The extraterritorial theory of diplomatic law, according to which missions constituted an extension of the territory of the sending state, was of some historic interest but not of practical use, *ibid.* See also *Radwan v. Radwan* [1973] Fam. 24; 55 ILR, p. 579 and *McKeel v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 722 F.2d 582 (1983); 81 ILR, p. 543. Note that in *US v. Kostadinov* 734 F.2d 906, 908 (1984); 99 ILR, pp. 103, 107, the term 'mission' in the Convention was defined not as the premises occupied by diplomats, but as a group of people sent by one state to another.

³⁰⁰ See e.g. the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 24; 61 ILR, p. 550.

³⁰¹ Preamble to the Convention.

³⁰² *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 274. See also the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 40; and the decisions of the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission on 19 December 2005, in the Partial Award, Diplomatic Claim, Ethiopia's Claim 8, para. 24 and the Partial Award, Diplomatic Claim, Eritrea's Claim 20, para. 20.

³⁰³ Article 2.

wish to enter into diplomatic relations, it is not legally compelled so to do. Accordingly, the Convention specifies in article 4 that the sending state must ensure that the consent (or *agrément*) of the receiving state has been given for the proposed head of its mission, and reasons for any refusal of consent do not have to be given. Similarly, by article 9 the receiving state may at any time declare any member of the diplomatic mission *persona non grata* without having to explain its decision, and thus obtain the removal of that person.³⁰⁴ However, the principle of consent as the basis of diplomatic relations may be affected by other rules of international law. For example, the Security Council in resolution 748 (1992), which imposed sanctions upon Libya, decided that 'all states shall: (a) significantly reduce the number and level of the staff at Libyan diplomatic missions and consular posts and restrict or control the movement within their territory of all such staff who remain ...'.

The main functions of a diplomatic mission are specified in article 3 and revolve around the representation and protection of the interests and nationals of the sending state, as well as the promotion of information and friendly relations. Article 41(1) also emphasises the duty of all persons enjoying privileges and immunities to respect the laws and regulations of the receiving state and the duty not to interfere in the internal affairs of that state.

Article 13 provides that the head of the mission is deemed to have taken up his functions in the receiving state upon presentation of credentials. Heads of mission are divided into three classes by article 14, viz. ambassadors or nuncios accredited to heads of state and other heads of mission of equivalent rank; envoys, ministers and internuncios accredited to heads of state; and *chargés d'affaires* accredited to ministers of foreign affairs.³⁰⁵ It is customary for a named individual to be in charge of a diplomatic mission. When, in 1979, Libya designated its embassies as 'People's Bureaux' to be run by revolutionary committees, the UK insisted upon and obtained the nomination of a named person as the head of the mission.³⁰⁶

³⁰⁴ See e.g. the Ethiopian demand that Eritrea reduce its diplomatic staff at the commencement of the armed conflict between the states: see Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, decision of 19 December 2005, Partial Award, Eritrea's Claim 20, paras. 40 ff.

³⁰⁵ The rules as to heads of missions are a modern restatement of the rules established in 1815 by the European powers: see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 110.

³⁰⁶ Comment by Sir Antony Acland, Minutes of Evidence Taken Before the Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 20. See also DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 571–3.

The inviolability of the premises of the mission

In order to facilitate the operations of normal diplomatic activities, article 22 of the Convention specifically declares that the premises of the mission are inviolable and that agents of the receiving state are not to enter them without the consent of the mission. This appears to be an absolute rule³⁰⁷ and in the Sun Yat Sen incident in 1896, the Court refused to issue a writ of habeas corpus with regard to a Chinese refugee held against his will in the Chinese legation in London.³⁰⁸ Precisely what the legal position would be in the event of entry without express consent because, for example, of fire-fighting requirements or of danger to persons within that area, is rather uncertain under customary law, but under the Convention any justification pleaded by virtue of implied consent would be regarded as at best highly controversial.³⁰⁹ The receiving state is under a special duty to protect the mission premises from intrusion or damage or 'impairment of its dignity'.³¹⁰ The US Supreme Court, for example, while making specific reference to article 22 of the Vienna Convention, emphasised in *Boos v. Barry* that, 'The need to protect diplomats is grounded in our Nation's important interest in international relations . . . Diplomatic personnel are essential to conduct the international affairs so crucial to the well-being of this Nation.'³¹¹ It was also noted that protecting foreign diplomats in the US ensures that similar protection would be afforded to US diplomats abroad.³¹² The Supreme Court upheld a District of Columbia statute which made it unlawful to congregate within 500 feet of diplomatic premises and refuse to disperse after having been so ordered by the police, and stated that, 'the "prohibited quantum of disturbance" is whether normal

³⁰⁷ See e.g. 767 *Third Avenue Associates v. Permanent Mission of the Republic of Zaire to the United Nations* 988 F.2d 295 (1993); 99 ILR, p. 194.

³⁰⁸ A. D. McNair, *International Law Opinions*, Oxford, 1956, vol. I, p. 85. The issue was resolved by diplomatic means.

³⁰⁹ The original draft of the article would have permitted such emergency entry, but this was rejected: see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 144 ff. In 1973 an armed search of the Iraqi Embassy in Pakistan took place and considerable quantities of arms were found. As a result the Iraqi ambassador and an attaché were declared *personae non gratae*, *ibid.*, p. 149. As to further examples, see *ibid.*, pp. 149–50. A search by US troops of the residence of the Nicaraguan ambassador in Panama in 1989 was condemned in a draft Security Council resolution by a large majority, but was vetoed by the US, *ibid.* Nevertheless, Denza concludes that, 'In the last resort, however, it cannot be excluded that entry without the consent of the sending State may be justified in international law by the need to protect human life', *ibid.*, p. 150.

³¹⁰ See e.g. the statement of US President Johnson after a series of demonstrations against the US Embassy in Moscow in 1964–5, 4 ILM, 1965, p. 698.

³¹¹ 99 L.Ed.2d 333, 345–6 (1988); 121 ILR, p. 551. ³¹² *Ibid.*

embassy activities have been or are about to be disrupted'.³¹³ By the same token, the premises of a mission must not be used in a way which is incompatible with the functions of the mission.³¹⁴

In 1979, the US Embassy in Tehran, Iran was taken over by several hundred demonstrators. Archives and documents were seized and fifty diplomatic and consular staff were held hostage. In 1980, the International Court declared that, under the 1961 Convention (and the 1963 Convention on Consular Relations):

Iran was placed under the most categorical obligations, as a receiving state, to take appropriate steps to ensure the protection of the United States Embassy and Consulates, their staffs, their archives, their means of communication and the free movement of the members of their staffs.³¹⁵

These were also obligations under general international law.³¹⁶ The Court in particular stressed the seriousness of Iran's behaviour and the conflict between its conduct and its obligations under 'the whole corpus of the international rules of which diplomatic and consular law is comprised, rules the fundamental character of which the Court must here again strongly affirm'.³¹⁷ In *Congo v. Uganda*, the International Court held that attacks on the Ugandan Embassy in Kinshasa, the capital of Congo, and attacks on persons on the premises by Congolese armed forces constituted a violation of article 22.³¹⁸ In addition, the Court emphasised that the Vienna

³¹³ 99 L.Ed.2d 351. See also *Minister for Foreign Affairs and Trade v. Magno* 112 ALR 529 (1992-3); 101 ILR, p. 202.

³¹⁴ Article 41(3) of the Vienna Convention. Note that in *Canada v. Edelson*, 131 ILR, p. 279, the Israeli Supreme Court held that a dispute over a lease granted to Canada, as represented by the Canadian Ambassador, raised issues of state immunity rather than diplomatic immunity. It was further held that there was no state immunity with regard to the lease of buildings for a residence for the Ambassador as leasing was a private law act.

³¹⁵ The *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 30-1; 61 ILR, p. 556. This the Iranians failed to do, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 31-2. The Court emphasised that such obligations concerning the inviolability of the members of a diplomatic mission and of the premises, property and archives of the mission continued even in cases of armed conflict or breach of diplomatic relations, *ibid.*, p. 40. See also DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 577 ff.; K. Gryzbowski, 'The Regime of Diplomacy and the Tehran Hostages', 30 ICLQ, 1981, p. 42, and L. Gross, 'The Case Concerning United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran: Phase of Provisional Measures', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 395.

³¹⁶ See e.g. *Belgium v. Nicod and Another* 82 ILR, p. 124.

³¹⁷ The *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 42; 61 ILR, p. 568. The Court particularly instanced articles 22, 25, 26 and 27 and analogous provisions in the 1963 Consular Relations Convention, *ibid.*

³¹⁸ ICJ Reports, 2005, paras. 337-8 and 340.

Convention not only prohibits any infringements of the inviolability of the mission by the receiving state itself but also puts the receiving state under an obligation to prevent others, such as armed militia groups, from doing so.³¹⁹

On 8 May 1999, during the Kosovo campaign, the Chinese Embassy in Belgrade was bombed by the US. The US declared that it had been a mistake and apologised. In December 1999, the US and China signed an Agreement providing for compensation to be paid by the former to the latter of \$28m. At the same time, China agreed to pay \$2.87m to the US to settle claims arising out of rioting and attacks on the US Embassy in Beijing, the residence of the US consulate in Chengdu and the consulate in Guangzhou.³²⁰

On 17 April 1984, a peaceful demonstration took place outside the Libyan Embassy in London. Shots from the Embassy were fired that resulted in the death of a policewoman. After a siege, the Libyans inside left and the building was searched in the presence of a Saudi Arabian diplomat. Weapons and other relevant forensic evidence were found.³²¹ The issue raised here, in the light of article 45(a) which provides that after a break in diplomatic relations, 'the receiving state must . . . respect and protect the premises of the mission', is whether that search was permissible. The UK view is that article 45(a) does not mean that the premises continue to be inviolable³²² and this would clearly appear to be correct. There is a distinction between inviolability under article 22 and respect and protection under article 45(a).

The suggestion has also been raised that the right of self-defence may also be applicable in this context. It was used to justify the search of personnel leaving the Libyan Embassy³²³ and the possibility was noted

³¹⁹ *Ibid.*, para. 342, citing the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 30–2. See also the condemnation by the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission of the entry, ransacking and seizure by Ethiopian security agents of the Eritrean Embassy residence, as well as vehicles and other property, without Eritrea's consent, Partial Award, Diplomatic Claim, Eritrea's Claim 20, para. 46.

³²⁰ See DUSPIL, 2000, pp. 421–8. In addition, the US had earlier made a number of *ex gratia* payments to the individuals injured and to the families of those killed in the Embassy bombing, *ibid.*, p. 428. See also Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 166.

³²¹ See Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. xxvi.

³²² Memorandum by the Foreign and Commonwealth Office, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 5.

³²³ *Ibid.*, p. 9. Such a search was declared essential for the protection of the police, *ibid.* Note the reference to self-defence is both to domestic and international law, *ibid.*

that in certain limited circumstances it may be used to justify entry into an embassy.³²⁴

A rather different issue arises where mission premises have been abandoned. The UK enacted the Diplomatic and Consular Premises Act in 1987, under which states wishing to use land as diplomatic or consular premises are required to obtain the consent of the Secretary of State. Once such consent has been obtained (although this is not necessary in the case of land which had this status prior to the coming into force of the Act), it could be subsequently withdrawn. The Secretary of State has the power to require that the title to such land be vested in him where that land has been lying empty, or without diplomatic occupants, and could cause damage to pedestrians or neighbouring buildings because of neglect, providing that he is satisfied that to do so is permissible under international law (section 2). By section 3 of the Act, the Secretary of State is able to sell the premises, deduct certain expenses and transfer the residue to the person divested of his interest.

This situation occurred with respect to the Cambodian Embassy in London, whose personnel closed the building after the Pol Pot takeover of Cambodia in 1975, handing the keys over to the Foreign Office.³²⁵ In 1979, the UK withdrew its recognition of the Cambodian government after the Vietnamese invasion and since that date had had no dealings with any authority as the government of that country. Squatters moved in shortly thereafter. These premises were made subject to section 2 of the Diplomatic and Consular Premises Act in 1988³²⁶ and the Secretary of State vested the land in himself. This was challenged by the squatters and in *R v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, ex parte Samuel*,³²⁷ Henry J held that the Secretary of State had acted correctly and in accordance with the duty imposed under article 45 of the Vienna Convention. The Court of Appeal dismissed an appeal,³²⁸ holding that the

³²⁴ See the comments of the Legal Adviser to the FCO, Minutes of Evidence, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 28. Of course, entry can be made into the building with the consent of the receiving state, as for example when Iran requested the UK to eject militants who had taken over their London embassy in 1980.

³²⁵ See C. Warbrick, 'Current Developments', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 965.

³²⁶ See s. 2 of the Diplomatic and Consular Premises (Cambodia) Order, SI 1988 no. 30.

³²⁷ *The Times*, 10 September 1988.

³²⁸ *The Times*, 17 August 1989; 83 ILR, p. 232. Note that in *Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs v. Tomlin*, *The Times*, 4 December 1990; [1990] 1 All ER 920, the Court of Appeal held that in this situation, the extended limitation period of thirty years under s. 15(1) of and Schedule 1 to the Limitation Act 1980 was applicable and the squatters could not rely on twelve years' adverse possession.

relevant section merely required that the Secretary of State be satisfied that international law permitted such action.³²⁹

In *Westminster City Council v. Government of the Islamic Republic of Iran*,³³⁰ the issue concerned the payment of expenses arising out of repairs to the damaged and abandoned Iranian Embassy in London in 1980. The council sought to register a land charge, but the question of the immunity of the premises under article 22 of the Vienna Convention was raised. Although the Court felt that procedurally it was unable to proceed,³³¹ reference was made to the substantive issue and it was noted that the premises had ceased to be diplomatic premises in the circumstances and thus the premises were not 'used' for the purpose of the mission as required by article 22, since that phrase connoted the present tense. The inviolability of diplomatic premises, however, must not be confused with extraterritoriality. Such premises do not constitute part of the territory of the sending state.³³²

Whether a right of diplomatic asylum exists within general international law is doubtful and in principle refugees are to be returned to the authorities of the receiving state in the absence of treaty or customary rules to the contrary. The International Court in the *Asylum* case between Colombia and Peru³³³ emphasised that a decision to grant asylum involves a derogation from the sovereignty of the receiving state 'and constitutes an intervention in matters which are exclusively within the competence of that state. Such a derogation from territorial sovereignty cannot be recognised unless its legal basis is established in each particular case.' Where treaties exist regarding the grant of asylum, the question will arise as to the respective competences of the sending and receiving state or the state granting asylum and the territorial state. While the diplomats of the sending state may provisionally determine whether a refugee meets any condition laid down for the grant of asylum under an applicable treaty this would not bind the receiving state, for 'the principles of international law do not recognise any rule of unilateral and definitive qualification by

³²⁹ Note that in the US, embassies temporarily abandoned due to broken relations may be sequestered and turned to other uses pending resumption of relations. This has been the case with regard to Iranian, Cambodian and Vietnamese properties that have been in the custody of the Office of Foreign Missions: see McClanahan, *Diplomatic Immunity*, pp. 53 and 110. See also the US Foreign Missions Act 1982.

³³⁰ [1986] 3 All ER 284; 108 ILR, p. 557. ³³¹ See above, p. 748.

³³² See e.g. *Persinger v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 729 F.2d 835 (1984). See also *Swiss Federal Prosecutor v. Kruszyk* 102 ILR, p. 176.

³³³ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 266, 274–5.

the state granting asylum'.³³⁴ It may be that in law a right of asylum will arise for 'urgent and compelling reasons of humanity',³³⁵ but the nature and scope of this is unclear.

The diplomatic bag

Article 27 provides that the receiving state shall permit and protect free communication on behalf of the mission for all official purposes. Such official communication is inviolable and may include the use of diplomatic couriers and messages in code and in cipher, although the consent of the receiving state is required for a wireless transmitter.³³⁶

Article 27(3) and (4) deals with the diplomatic bag,³³⁷ and provides that it shall not be opened or detained³³⁸ and that the packages constituting the diplomatic bag 'must bear visible external marks of their character and may contain only diplomatic documents or articles intended for official use'.³³⁹ The need for a balance in this area is manifest. On the one hand, missions require a confidential means of communication, while on the other the need to guard against abuse is clear. Article 27, however, lays the emphasis upon the former.³⁴⁰ This is provided that article 27(4) is complied with. In the Dikko incident on 5 July 1984, a former Nigerian minister was kidnapped in London and placed in a crate to be flown to Nigeria. The crate was opened at Stansted Airport, although accompanied by a person claiming diplomatic status. The crate³⁴¹ did not contain an official seal and was thus clearly not a diplomatic bag.³⁴² When, in March

³³⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 274. ³³⁵ *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1084.

³³⁶ There was a division of opinion at the Vienna Conference between the developed and developing states over this issue. The former felt that the right to instal and use a wireless did not require consent: see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 214 ff.

³³⁷ Defined in article 3(2) of the Draft Articles on the Diplomatic Courier and the Diplomatic Bag adopted by the International Law Commission in 1989 as 'the packages containing official correspondence, and documents or articles intended exclusively for official use, whether accompanied by diplomatic courier or not, which are used for the official communication referred to in article 1 and which bear visible external marks of their character' as a diplomatic bag: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1989, vol. II, part 2, p. 15.

³³⁸ Article 27(3). ³³⁹ Article 27(4).

³⁴⁰ This marked a shift from earlier practice: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1989, vol. II, part 2, p. 15.

³⁴¹ An accompanying crate contained persons allegedly part of the kidnapping operation.

³⁴² See Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, pp. xxxiii–xxxiv. Note also the incident in 1964 when an Israeli was found bound and drugged in a crate marked 'diplomatic mail' at Rome Airport. As a result, the Italians declared one Egyptian official at the Embassy *persona non grata* and expelled two others, *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 20580. In 1980, a crate bound for the Moroccan Embassy in London split open at Harwich to reveal \$500,000 worth of drugs, *The Times*, 13 June 1980. In July 1984, a lorry belonging to the

2000, diplomatic baggage destined for the British High Commission in Harare was detained and opened by the Zimbabwe authorities, the UK government protested vigorously and announced the withdrawal of its High Commissioner for consultations.³⁴³

In view of suspicions of abuse, the question has arisen as to whether electronic screening, not involving opening or detention, of the diplomatic bag is legitimate. The UK appears to take the view that electronic screening of this kind would be permissible, although it claims not to have carried out such activities, but other states do not accept this.³⁴⁴ It is to be noted that after the Libyan Embassy siege in April 1984, the diplomatic bags leaving the building were not searched.³⁴⁵ However, Libya had entered a reservation to the Vienna Convention, reserving its right to open a diplomatic bag in the presence of an official representative of the diplomatic mission concerned. In the absence of permission by the authorities of the sending state, the diplomatic bag was to be returned to its place of origin. Kuwait and Saudi Arabia made similar reservations which were not objected to.³⁴⁶ This is to be contrasted with a Bahraini reservation to article 27(3) which would have permitted the opening of diplomatic bags in certain circumstances.³⁴⁷ The Libyan reservation could have been relied upon by the UK in these conditions.

It is also interesting to note that after the Dikko incident, the UK Foreign Minister stated that the crates concerned were opened because of the suspicion of human contents. Whether the crates constituted diplomatic bags or not was a relevant consideration with regard to a right to search, but:

the advice given and the advice which would have been given had the crate constituted a diplomatic bag took fully into account the overriding duty to preserve and protect human life.³⁴⁸

USSR was opened for inspection by West German authorities on the grounds that a lorry itself could not be a bag. The crates inside the lorry were accepted as diplomatic bags and not opened, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. xiii, note 48.

³⁴³ See UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, pp. 586–7.

³⁴⁴ See the Legal Adviser, FCO, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 23. See also 985 HC Deb., col. 1219, 2 June 1980, and Cmnd 9497. See further *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1988, vol. II, part 1, p. 157, and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 238 ff.

³⁴⁵ Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. xxx.

³⁴⁶ See Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 229 ff. The UK did not object and regarded the reservations in fact as reflective of customary law prior to the Convention, Memorandum of the FCO, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 4.

³⁴⁷ This was objected to, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 4, and see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 230–1.

³⁴⁸ See Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, p. 50.

This appears to point to an implied exception to article 27(3) in the interests of humanity. It is to be welcomed, provided, of course, it is applied solely and strictly in these terms.

The issue of the diplomatic bag has been considered by the International Law Commission, in the context of article 27 and analogous provisions in the 1963 Consular Relations Convention, the 1969 Convention on Special Missions and the 1975 Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations. Article 28 of the Draft Articles on the Diplomatic Courier and the Diplomatic Bag, as finally adopted by the International Law Commission in 1989, provides that the diplomatic bag shall be inviolable wherever it may be. It is not to be opened or detained and 'shall be exempt from examination directly or through electronic or other technical device'. However, in the case of the consular bag, it is noted that if the competent authorities of the receiving or transit state have serious reason to believe that the bag contains something other than official correspondence and documents or articles intended exclusively for official use, they may request that the bag be opened in their presence by an authorised representative of the sending state. If this request is refused by the authorities of the sending state, the bag is to be returned to its place of origin.³⁴⁹ It was thought that this preserved existing law. Certainly, in so far as the consular bag is concerned, the provisions of article 35(3) of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations are reproduced, but the stipulation of exemption from electronic or other technical examination does not appear in the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations and the view of the Commission that this is mere clarification³⁵⁰ is controversial.³⁵¹

As far as the diplomatic courier is concerned, that is, a person accompanying a diplomatic bag, the Draft Articles provide for a regime of privileges, immunities and inviolability that is akin to that governing diplomats. He is to enjoy personal inviolability and is not liable to any form of arrest or detention (draft article 10), his temporary accommodation is inviolable (draft article 17), and he will benefit from immunity from the criminal and civil jurisdiction of the receiving or transit state in

³⁴⁹ Draft article 28(2). See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1989, vol. II, part 2, pp. 42–3. See also S. McCaffrey, 'The Forty-First Session of the International Law Commission', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 937.

³⁵⁰ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1989, vol. II, part 2, p. 43.

³⁵¹ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, pp. 231 ff.; *ibid.*, 1981, vol. II, pp. 151 ff. and *ibid.*, 1985, vol. II, part 2, pp. 30 ff. See also A/38/10 (1983) and the Memorandum by Sir Ian Sinclair, member of the ILC, dealing with the 1984 session on this issue, Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report*, pp. 79 ff.

respect of all acts performed in the exercise of his functions (draft article 18). In general, his privileges and immunities last from the moment he enters the territory of the receiving or transit state until he leaves such state (draft article 21).³⁵²

Diplomatic immunities – property

Under article 22 of the Vienna Convention, the premises of the mission are inviolable³⁵³ and, together with their furnishings and other property thereon and the means of transport, are immune from search, requisition, attachment or execution. By article 23, a general exception from taxation in respect of the mission premises is posited. The Court in the *Philippine Embassy* case explained that, in the light of customary and treaty law, ‘property used by the sending state for the performance of its diplomatic functions in any event enjoys immunity even if it does not fall within the material or spatial scope’ of article 22.³⁵⁴ It should also be noted that the House of Lords in *Alcom Ltd v. Republic of Colombia*³⁵⁵ held that under the State Immunity Act 1978 a current account at a commercial bank in the name of a diplomatic mission would be immune unless the plaintiff could show that it had been earmarked by the foreign state solely for the settlement of liabilities incurred in commercial transactions. An account used to meet the day-to-day running expenses of a diplomatic mission would therefore be immune. This approach was also based upon the obligation contained in article 25 of the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, which provided that the receiving state ‘shall accord full facilities for the performance of the functions of the mission’. The House of Lords noted that the negative formulation of this principle meant that neither the executive nor the legal branch of government in the receiving state must act in such manner as to obstruct the mission in carrying out its functions.³⁵⁶

Section 16(1)b of the State Immunity Act provides, however, that the exemption from immunity in article 6 relating to proceedings involving immovable property in the UK did not extend to proceedings concerning ‘a state’s title to or its possession of property used for the purposes of a

³⁵² See e.g. McClanahan, *Diplomatic Immunity*, p. 64, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1985, vol. II, part 2, pp. 36 ff.

³⁵³ By article 30(1) of the Convention, the private residence of a diplomatic agent shall enjoy the same inviolability and protection as the premises of the mission.

³⁵⁴ See UN, *Materials*, pp. 297, 317; 65 ILR, pp. 146, 187.

³⁵⁵ [1984] 2 All ER 6; 74 ILR, p. 180.

³⁵⁶ [1984] 2 All ER 9; 74 ILR, p. 182. See also Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 156–9 and 202.

diplomatic mission'. It was held in *Intpro Properties (UK) Ltd v. Sauvel*³⁵⁷ by the Court of Appeal that the private residence of a diplomatic agent, even where used for embassy social functions from time to time, did not constitute use for the purposes of a diplomatic mission and that in any event the proceedings did not concern the French government's title to or possession of the premises, but were merely for damages for breach of a covenant in a lease. Accordingly, there was no immunity under section 16.

It is to be noted that by article 24 of the Vienna Convention, the archives and documents of the mission are inviolable at any time and wherever they may be.³⁵⁸ Although 'archives and documents' are not defined in the Convention, article 1(1)k of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations provides that the term 'consular archives' includes 'all the papers, documents, correspondence, books, films, tapes and registers of the consular post together with the ciphers and codes, the card-indexes and any article of furniture intended for their protection or safekeeping'. The term as used in the Diplomatic Relations Convention cannot be less than this.³⁵⁹

The question of the scope of article 24 was discussed by the House of Lords in *Shearson Lehman v. Maclaine Watson (No. 2)*,³⁶⁰ which concerned the intervention by the International Tin Council in a case on the grounds that certain documents it was proposed to adduce in evidence were inadmissible. This argument was made in the context of article 7 of the International Tin Council (Immunities and Privileges) Order 1972 which stipulates that the ITC should have the 'like inviolability of official archives as . . . is accorded in respect of the official archives of a diplomatic mission'. Lord Bridge interpreted the phrase 'archives and documents of the mission' in article 24 as referring to the archives and documents 'belonging to or held by the mission'.³⁶¹ Such protection was not confined to executive or judicial action by the host state, but would cover, for example, the situation where documents were put into circulation by virtue of theft or other improper means.³⁶²

³⁵⁷ [1983] 2 All ER 495; 64 ILR, p. 384.

³⁵⁸ This goes beyond previous customary law: see e.g. *Rose v. R* [1947] 3 DLR 618. See also *Renchard v. Humphreys & Harding Inc.* 381 F.Supp. 382 (1974); the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 36, and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 189 ff.

³⁵⁹ See e.g. Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 195. ³⁶⁰ [1988] 1 WLR 16; 77 ILR, p. 145.

³⁶¹ [1988] 1 WLR 24; 77 ILR, p. 150.

³⁶² [1988] 1 WLR 27; 77 ILR, p. 154. See also *Fayed v. Al-Tajir* [1987] 2 All ER 396; 86 ILR, p. 131.

Diplomatic immunities – personal

The person of a diplomatic agent³⁶³ is inviolable under article 29 of the Vienna Convention and he may not be detained or arrested.³⁶⁴ This principle is the most fundamental rule of diplomatic law and is the oldest established rule of diplomatic law.³⁶⁵ In resolution 53/97 of January 1999, for example, the UN General Assembly strongly condemned acts of violence against diplomatic and consular missions and representatives,³⁶⁶ while the Security Council issued a presidential statement, condemning the murder of nine Iranian diplomats in Afghanistan.³⁶⁷ States recognise that the protection of diplomats is a mutual interest founded on functional requirements and reciprocity.³⁶⁸ The receiving state is under an obligation to ‘take all appropriate steps’ to prevent any attack on the person, freedom or dignity of diplomatic agents.³⁶⁹

After a period of kidnappings of diplomats, the UN Convention on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons, Including Diplomatic Agents was adopted in 1973. This provides that states parties must make attacks upon such persons a crime in internal law with appropriate penalties and take such measures as may be necessary to establish jurisdiction over these crimes. States parties are obliged

³⁶³ Defined in article 1(e) as the head of the mission or a member of the diplomatic staff of the mission. See above, p. 735, with regard to head of state immunities. See also e.g. *US v. Noriega* 746 F.Supp. 1506, 1523–5; 99 ILR, pp. 145, 165–7.

³⁶⁴ Note that by article 26 the receiving state is to ensure to all members of the mission freedom of movement and travel in its territory, subject to laws and regulations concerning prohibited zones or zones regulated for reasons of national security.

³⁶⁵ See Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 256 ff.

³⁶⁶ See also resolution 42/154 and Secretary-General’s Reports A/INF/52/6 and Add.1 and A/53/276 and Corr.1.

³⁶⁷ SC/6573 (15 September 1998). See also the statement of the UN Secretary-General, SG/SM/6704 (14 September 1998).

³⁶⁸ See e.g. the US Supreme Court in *Boos v. Barry* 99 L Ed 2d 333, 346 (1988); 121 ILR, pp. 499, 556.

³⁶⁹ Note that in *Harb v. King Fahd* [2005] EWCA Civ 632, para. 40, the Court of Appeal held that article 29 was not breached by the court hearing an issue relating to sovereign immunity in open court where the sovereign in question wished a challenge to an application for maintenance to be held in private. In *Mariam Aziz v. Aziz and Sultan of Brunei* [2007] EWCA Civ 712, paras. 88 ff., it was held by the Court of Appeal that while under international law a state is obliged to take steps to prevent physical attacks on, or physical interference with, a foreign head of state in the jurisdiction, it was doubted whether the rule extended to preventing conduct by individuals which was simply offensive or insulting to a foreign head of state abroad.

to extradite or prosecute offenders.³⁷⁰ The most blatant example of the breach of the obligation to protect diplomats was the holding of the US diplomats as hostages in Iran in 1979–80, where the International Court held that the inaction of the Iranian government faced with the detention of US diplomatic and consular staff over an extended period constituted a ‘clear and serious violation’ of article 29.³⁷¹ In *Congo v. Uganda*, the International Court held that the maltreatment by Congo forces of persons within the Ugandan Embassy constituted a violation of article 29 in so far as such persons were diplomats, while the maltreatment of Ugandan diplomats at the airport similarly breached the obligations laid down in article 29.³⁷²

However, in exceptional cases, a diplomat may be arrested or detained on the basis of self-defence or in the interests of protecting human life.³⁷³

Article 30(1) provides for the inviolability of the private residence³⁷⁴ of a diplomatic agent, while article 30(2) provides that his papers, correspondence and property³⁷⁵ are inviolable. Section 4 of the Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 stipulates that where a question arises as to whether a person is or is not entitled to any privilege or immunity under the Act, which incorporates many of the provisions of the Vienna Convention, a certificate issued by or under the authority of the Secretary of State stating any fact relating to that question shall be conclusive evidence of that fact.

³⁷⁰ See articles 2, 3, 6 and 7. Such crimes are by article 8 deemed to be extraditable offences in any extradition treaty between states parties. See *Duff v. R* [1979] 28 ALR 663; 73 ILR, p. 678.

³⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 32, 35–7; 61 ILR, p. 530.

³⁷² ICJ Reports, 2005, paras. 338–40. See also the decision of the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission on 19 December 2005 in Partial Award, Diplomatic Claim, Ethiopia’s Claim 8, that Eritrea was liable for violating article 29 by arresting and briefly detaining the Ethiopian Chargé d’Affaires in September 1998 and October 1999 without regard to his diplomatic immunity.

³⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 40. See also Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 267.

³⁷⁴ As distinct from the premises of the mission. Such residence might be private leased or leased by the sending state for use as such residential premises and may indeed be temporary only. Temporary absence would not lead to a loss of immunity, but permanent absence would: see e.g. *Agbor v. Metropolitan Police Commissioner* [1969] 2 All ER 707 and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 270 ff. S. 9 of the Criminal Law Act 1977 makes it a criminal offence knowingly to trespass on any premises which are the private residence of a diplomatic agent.

³⁷⁵ Except that this is limited by article 31(3): see below, p. 767. Possession alone of property would be sufficient, it appears, to attract inviolability: see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 277.

As far as criminal jurisdiction is concerned, diplomatic agents enjoy complete immunity from the legal system of the receiving state,³⁷⁶ although there is no immunity from the jurisdiction of the sending state.³⁷⁷ This provision noted in article 31(1) reflects the accepted position under customary law. The only remedy the host state has in the face of offences alleged to have been committed by a diplomat is to declare him *persona non grata* under article 9.³⁷⁸ Specific problems have arisen with regard to motoring offences.³⁷⁹

Article 31(1) also specifies that diplomats³⁸⁰ are immune from the civil and administrative jurisdiction of the state in which they are serving, except in three cases:³⁸¹ first, where the action relates to private immovable property situated within the host state (unless held for mission purposes);³⁸² secondly, in litigation relating to succession matters in which

³⁷⁶ See e.g. *Dickinson v. Del Solar* [1930] 1 KB 376; 5 AD, p. 299; the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 37; 61 ILR, p. 530 and *Skeen v. Federative Republic of Brazil* 566 F.Supp. 1414 (1983); 121 ILR, p. 481. See also Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 280 ff.

³⁷⁷ Article 31(4).

³⁷⁸ See e.g. the incident in Washington DC in 1999, when an attaché of the Russian Embassy was declared *persona non grata* for suspected 'bugging' of the State Department, 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 534.

³⁷⁹ However, the US has tackled the problem of unpaid parking fines by adopting s. 574 of the Foreign Operations, Export Financing and Related Programs Appropriations Act 1994, under which 110 per cent of unpaid parking fines and penalties must be withheld from that state's foreign aid. In addition, the State Department announced in December 1993 that registration renewal of vehicles with unpaid or unadjudicated parking tickets more than one year old would be withheld, thus rendering the use of such vehicles illegal in the US: see 'Contemporary Practice of the United States Relating to International Law', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 312. It is also required under the US Diplomatic Relations Act 1978 that diplomatic missions, their members and families hold liability insurance and civil suits against insurers are permitted. Note that the UK has stated that persistent failure by diplomats to respect parking regulations and to pay fixed penalty parking notices 'will call into question their continued acceptability as members of diplomatic missions in London', UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 700. See also Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 288–9 and UKMIL, 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 741 ff.

³⁸⁰ Note that a diplomat who is a national or permanent resident of the receiving state will only enjoy immunity from jurisdiction and inviolability in respect of official acts performed in the exercise of his functions, article 38.

³⁸¹ Article 31(1)a, b and c. Note that there is no immunity from the jurisdiction of the sending state, article 31(4).

³⁸² See *Intpro Properties (UK) Ltd v. Sauvel* [1983] 2 All ER 495; 64 ILR, p. 384. In the *Deputy Registrar* case, 94 ILR, pp. 308, 311, it was held that article 31(1)a was declaratory of customary international law. In *Hildebrand v. Champagne* 82 ILR, p. 121, it was held that this provision did not cover the situation where a claim was made for payment for charges under a lease. See also *Largueche v. Tancredi Feni* 101 ILR, p. 377 and *De Andrade v. De Andrade* 118 ILR, pp. 299, 306–7. Article 13 of the UN Convention on Jurisdictional

the diplomat is involved as a private person (for example as an executor or heir); and, finally, with respect to unofficial professional or commercial activity engaged in by the agent.³⁸³ In a document issued by the Foreign Office in 1987, entitled *Memorandum on Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities in the United Kingdom*,³⁸⁴ it was noted that a serious view was taken of any reliance on diplomatic immunity from civil jurisdiction to evade a legal obligation and that such conduct could call into question the continued acceptability in the UK of a particular diplomat.³⁸⁵ By article 31(2), a diplomat cannot be obliged to give evidence as a witness, while by article 31(3), no measures of execution may be taken against such a person except in the cases referred to in article 31(1)a, b and c and provided that the measures concerned can be taken without infringing the inviolability of his person or of his residence. Diplomatic agents are generally exempt from the social security provisions in force in the receiving state,³⁸⁶ from all dues and taxes, personal or real, regional or municipal except for indirect taxes,³⁸⁷ from personal and public services³⁸⁸ and from customs duties and inspection.³⁸⁹ The personal baggage of a diplomat is exempt from inspection unless there are serious grounds for presuming that it contains articles not covered by the specified exemptions in article 36(1). Inspections can only take place in the presence of the diplomat or his authorised representative.³⁹⁰

Article 37 provides that the members of the family of a diplomatic agent forming part of his household³⁹¹ shall enjoy the privileges and immunities specified in articles 29 to 36 if not nationals of the receiving state.³⁹² In UK practice, members of the family include spouses and minor children

Immunities provides for an exception to state immunity for proceedings which relate to the determination of any right or interest of the state in, or its possession or use of, or any obligation of the state arising out of its interest in, or its possession or use of, immovable property situation in the forum state.

³⁸³ See *Portugal v. Goncalves* 82 ILR, p. 115. This exception does not include ordinary contracts incidental to life in the receiving state, such as a contract for domestic services: see *Tabion v. Mufti* 73 F.3d 535 and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 301 ff. See also *De Andrade v. De Andrade* 118 ILR, pp. 299, 306–7, noting that the purchase by a diplomat of the home unit as an investment was not a commercial activity within the meaning of the provision.

³⁸⁴ See UKMIL, 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 549.

³⁸⁵ Annex F, reproducing a memorandum dated February 1985, *ibid.*, p. 558. See Annex F of the 1992 Memorandum, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 698.

³⁸⁶ Article 33. ³⁸⁷ Article 34 and see subsections b to g for certain other exceptions.

³⁸⁸ Article 35. ³⁸⁹ Article 36(1). ³⁹⁰ Article 36(2).

³⁹¹ See Brown, 'Diplomatic Immunity', pp. 63–6 and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 391 ff.

³⁹² The rationale behind this is to ensure the diplomat's independence and ability to function free from harassment: see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 393–4.

(i.e. under the age of eighteen); children over eighteen not in permanent paid employment (such as students); persons fulfilling the social duties of hostess to the diplomatic agent; and the parent of a diplomat living with him and not engaged in paid permanent employment.³⁹³

Members of the administrative and technical staff (and their households), if not nationals or permanent residents of the receiving state, may similarly benefit from articles 29–35,³⁹⁴ except that the article 31(1) immunities do not extend beyond acts performed in the course of their duties, while members of the service staff, who are not nationals or permanent residents of the receiving state, benefit from immunity regarding acts performed in the course of official duties.³⁹⁵

Immunities and privileges start from the moment the person enters the territory of the receiving state on proceeding to take up his post or, if already in the territory, from the moment of official notification under article 39.³⁹⁶ In *R v. Governor of Pentonville Prison, ex parte Teja*,³⁹⁷ Lord Parker noted that it was fundamental to the claiming of diplomatic immunity that the diplomatic agent ‘should have been in some form accepted or received by this country’.³⁹⁸ This view was carefully interpreted by the Court of Appeal in *R v. Secretary of State for the Home Department, ex parte Bagga*³⁹⁹ in the light of the facts of the former case so that, as Parker LJ held, if a person already in the country is employed as a secretary, for example, at an embassy, nothing more than notification is required before that person would be entitled to immunities. While it had been held in

³⁹³ *Ibid.*, pp. 394–5. Since the Civil Partnership Act 2004, household would include same sex partners. See, for the slightly different US practice, *ibid.*, pp. 395–6. The term ‘spouse’ may be interpreted to include more than one wife in a polygamous marriage forming part of the household of the diplomat and may include a partner not being married to the diplomat, *ibid.*, pp. 394–6.

³⁹⁴ The privileges specified in article 36(1) in relation to exemption from customs duties and taxes apply only to articles imported at the time of first installation.

³⁹⁵ Customary law prior to the Vienna Convention was most unclear on immunities of such junior diplomatic personnel and it was recognised that these provisions in article 37 constituted a development in such rules: see e.g. Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 401 ff. and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1958, vol. II, pp. 101–2. See also *S v. India* 82 ILR, p. 13.

³⁹⁶ See also article 10, which provides that the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the receiving state shall be notified of the appointment of members of the mission, their arrival and their final departure or the termination of their functions with the mission. There are similar requirements with regard to family members and private servants. See also *Lutgarda Jimenez v. Commissioners of Inland Revenue* [2004] UK SPC 00419 (23 June 2004), and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 88 ff.

³⁹⁷ [1971] 2 QB 274; 52 ILR, p. 368. ³⁹⁸ [1971] 2 QB 282; 52 ILR, p. 373.

³⁹⁹ [1991] 1 QB 485; 88 ILR, p. 404.

*R v. Lambeth Justices, ex parte Yusufu*⁴⁰⁰ that article 39, in the words of Watkins LJ, provided 'at most some temporary immunity between entry and notification to a person who is without a diplomat', the court in *Bagga* disagreed strongly.⁴⁰¹ Immunity clearly did not depend upon notification and acceptance,⁴⁰² but under article 39 commenced upon entry. Article 40 provides for immunity where the person is in the territory in transit between his home state and a third state to which he has been posted.⁴⁰³ Where, however, a diplomat is in a state which is neither the receiving state nor a state of transit between his state and the receiving state, there will be no immunity.⁴⁰⁴ Immunities and privileges normally cease when the person leaves the country or on expiry of a reasonable period in which to do so.⁴⁰⁵ However, by article 39(2) there would be continuing immunity with regard to those acts that were performed in the exercise of his functions as a member of the mission. It follows from this formulation that immunity would not continue for a person leaving the receiving state for any act which was performed outside the exercise of his functions as a member of a diplomatic mission even though he was immune from prosecution at the time. This was the view taken by the US Department of State with regard to an incident where the ambassador of Papua New Guinea was responsible for a serious automobile accident involving damage to five cars and injuries to two persons.⁴⁰⁶ The ambassador was withdrawn from the US and assurances sought by Papua New Guinea that any criminal investigation of the incident or indictment of the former ambassador under US domestic law would be quashed were rejected. The US refused to accept the view that international law precluded the prosecution of the former diplomat for non-official acts committed during his period of accreditation.⁴⁰⁷ In *Propend Finance v. Sing*, the Court took a broad view

⁴⁰⁰ [1985] Crim. LR 510; 88 ILR, p. 323.

⁴⁰¹ [1991] 1 QB 485, 498; 88 ILR, pp. 404, 412.

⁴⁰² [1991] 1 QB 499; 88 ILR, p. 413, 'save possibly in the case of a head of mission or other person of diplomatic rank', *ibid.* See also *Lutgarda Jimenez v. Commissioners of Inland Revenue* [2004] UK SPC 00419 (23 June 2004), and Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, p. 431.

⁴⁰³ See Brown, 'Diplomatic Immunity', p. 59, and *Bergman v. de Sieyès* 170 F.2d 360 (1948). See also *R v. Governor of Pentonville Prison, ex parte Teja* [1971] 2 QB 274; 52 ILR, p. 368. Note that such immunity only applies to members of his family if they were accompanying him or travelling separately to join him or return to their country, *Vafadar* 82 ILR, p. 97.

⁴⁰⁴ See e.g. *Public Prosecutor v. JBC* 94 ILR, p. 339.

⁴⁰⁵ Article 39, and see *Shaw v. Shaw* [1979] 3 All ER 1; 78 ILR, p. 483.

⁴⁰⁶ See 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 937.

⁴⁰⁷ See the *Tabatabai* case, 80 ILR, p. 388; *US v. Guinand* 688 F.Supp. 774 (1988); 99 ILR, p. 117; *Empson v. Smith* [1965] 2 All ER 881; 41 ILR, p. 407 and *Shaw v. Shaw* [1979] 3

of diplomatic functions, including within this term police liaison functions so that immunity continued under article 39(2).⁴⁰⁸

In the *Former Syrian Ambassador to the GDR* case, the German Federal Constitutional Court held that article 39(2) covered the situation where the ambassador in question was accused of complicity in murder by allowing explosives to be transferred from his embassy to a terrorist group. He was held to have acted in the exercise of his official functions. It was argued that diplomatic immunity from criminal proceedings knew of no exception for particularly serious crimes, the only resort being to declare him *persona non grata*.⁴⁰⁹ The Court, in perhaps a controversial statement, noted that article 39(2), while binding on the receiving state, was not binding on third states.⁴¹⁰ Accordingly the continuing immunity of the former ambassador to the German Democratic Republic under article 39(2) was not binding upon the Federal Republic of Germany.

Although a state under section 4 of the State Immunity Act of 1978 is subject to the local jurisdiction with respect to contracts of employment made or wholly or partly to be performed in the UK, section 16(1)a provides that this is not to apply to proceedings concerning the employment of the members of a mission within the meaning of the Vienna Convention⁴¹¹ and this was reaffirmed in *Sengupta v. Republic of India*,⁴¹² a case concerning a clerk employed at the Indian High Commission in London.⁴¹³

All ER 1; 78 ILR, p. 483. See also Y. Dinstein, 'Diplomatic Immunity from Jurisdiction *Ratione Materiae*', 15 ICLQ, 1966, p. 76.

⁴⁰⁸ 111 ILR, pp. 611, 659–61. See also *Re P (No. 2)* [1998] 1 FLR 1027; 114 ILR, p. 485.

⁴⁰⁹ 121 ILR, pp. 595, 607–8.

⁴¹⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 610–12. See B. Fassbender, 'S v. Berlin Court of Appeal and District Court of Berlin-Tiergarten', 92 AJIL, 1998, pp. 74, 78.

⁴¹¹ Or to members of a consular post within the meaning of the 1963 Consular Relations Convention enacted by the Consular Relations Act of 1968.

⁴¹² 64 ILR, p. 352. See further above, p. 725.

⁴¹³ Diplomatic agents are also granted exemptions from certain taxes and customs duties. However, this does not apply to indirect taxes normally incorporated in the price paid; taxes on private immovable property in the receiving state unless held on behalf of the sending state for purposes of the mission; various estate, succession or inheritance duties; taxes on private income having its source in the receiving state; charges for specific services, and various registration, court and record fees with regard to immovable property other than mission premises: see article 34 of the Vienna Convention. See also *UK Memorandum*, p. 693.

Waiver of immunity

By article 32 of the 1961 Vienna Convention, the sending state may waive the immunity from jurisdiction of diplomatic agents and others possessing immunity under the Convention.⁴¹⁴ Such waiver must be express.⁴¹⁵ Where a person with immunity initiates proceedings, he cannot claim immunity in respect of any counter-claim directly connected with the principal claim.⁴¹⁶ Waiver of immunity from jurisdiction in respect of civil or administrative proceedings is not to be taken to imply waiver from immunity in respect of the execution of the judgment, for which a separate waiver is necessary.

In general, waiver of immunity has been unusual, especially in criminal cases.⁴¹⁷ In a memorandum entitled *Department of State Guidance for Law Enforcement Officers With Regard to Personal Rights and Immunities of Foreign Diplomatic and Consular Personnel*⁴¹⁸ the point is made that waiver of immunity does not 'belong' to the individual concerned, but is for the benefit of the sending state. While waiver of immunity in the face of criminal charges is not common, 'it is routinely sought and occasionally granted'. However, Zambia speedily waived the immunity of an official at its London embassy suspected of drugs offences in 1985.⁴¹⁹

In *Fayed v. Al-Tajir*,⁴²⁰ the Court of Appeal referred to an apparent waiver of immunity by an ambassador made in pleadings by way of defence. Kerr LJ correctly noted that both under international and English law, immunity was the right of the sending state and that therefore 'only the sovereign can waive the immunity of its diplomatic representatives. They cannot do so themselves.'⁴²¹ It was also pointed out that the defendant's defence filed in the proceedings brought against him was not an appropriate vehicle for waiver of immunity by a state.⁴²² In *A Company v. Republic of X*,⁴²³ Saville J noted that whether or not there was a

⁴¹⁴ See Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 330 ff.

⁴¹⁵ See e.g. *Public Prosecutor v. Orhan Olmez* 87 ILR, p. 212.

⁴¹⁶ See e.g. *High Commissioner for India v. Ghosh* [1960] 1 QB 134; 28 ILR, p. 150.

⁴¹⁷ See McClanahan, *Diplomatic Immunity*, p. 137, citing in addition an incident where the husband of an official of the US Embassy in London was suspected of gross indecency with a minor, where immunity was not waived, but the person concerned was returned to the US. But see Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, pp. 345 ff., noting the examples of waivers of immunity.

⁴¹⁸ Reproduced in 27 ILM, 1988, pp. 1617, 1633.

⁴¹⁹ McClanahan, *Diplomatic Immunity*, pp. 156–7. ⁴²⁰ [1987] 2 All ER 396.

⁴²¹ *Ibid.*, p. 411. ⁴²² *Ibid.*, pp. 408 (Mustill LJ) and 411–12 (Kerr LJ).

⁴²³ [1990] 2 LL. R 520, 524; 87 ILR, pp. 412, 416, citing *Kahan v. Pakistan Federation* [1951] 2 KB 1003; 18 ILR, p. 210.

power to waive article 22 immunities (and he was unconvinced that there existed such a power), no mere *inter partes* agreement could bind the state to such a waiver, but only an undertaking or consent given to the Court itself at the time when the Court is asked to exercise jurisdiction over or in respect of the subject matter of the immunities. In view of the principle that immunities adhere to the state and not the individual concerned, such waiver must be express and performed clearly by the state as such.

*Consular privileges and immunities: the Vienna Convention
on Consular Relations, 1963*⁴²⁴

Consuls represent their state in many administrative ways, for instance, by issuing visas and passports and generally promoting the commercial interests of their state. They have a particular role in assisting nationals in distress with regard to, for example, finding lawyers, visiting prisons and contacting local authorities, but they are unable to intervene in the judicial process or internal affairs of the receiving state or give legal advice or investigate a crime.⁴²⁵ They are based not only in the capitals of receiving states, but also in the more important provincial cities. However, their political functions are few and they are accordingly not permitted the same degree of immunity from jurisdiction as diplomatic agents.⁴²⁶ Consuls must possess a commission from the sending state and the authorisation (*exequatur*) of a receiving state.⁴²⁷ They are entitled to the same exemption from taxes and customs duties as diplomats.

Article 31 emphasises that consular premises are inviolable and may not be entered by the authorities of the receiving state without consent. Like diplomatic premises, they must be protected against intrusion or

⁴²⁴ See e.g. L. T. Lee, *Consular Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Durham, 1991, and Lee, *Vienna Convention on Consular Relations*, Durham, 1966; M. A. Ahmad, *L'Institution Consulaire et le Droit International*, Paris, 1973, and *Satow's Guide*, book III. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 757; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1142 ff., and *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 474 ff. The International Court in the *Iranian Hostages* case stated that this Convention codified the law on consular relations, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 24; 61 ILR, pp. 504, 550. See also the Consular Relations Act 1968.

⁴²⁵ See e.g. the UK Foreign Office leaflet entitled 'British Consular Services Abroad' quoted in UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 530, and see also *Ex parte Ferhut Butt* 116 ILR, pp. 607, 618.

⁴²⁶ See further above, p. 725, with regard to employment and sovereign immunity disputes, a number of which concerned consular activities.

⁴²⁷ Articles 10, 11 and 12.

impairment of dignity,⁴²⁸ and similar immunities exist with regard to archives and documents⁴²⁹ and exemptions from taxes.⁴³⁰ Article 35 provides for freedom of communication, emphasising the inviolability of the official correspondence of the consular post and establishing that the consular bag should be neither opened nor detained. However, in contrast to the situation with regard to the diplomatic bag,⁴³¹ where the authorities of the receiving state have serious reason to believe that the bag contains other than official correspondence, documents or articles, they may request that the bag be opened and, if this is refused, the bag shall be returned to its place of origin.

Article 36(1) constitutes a critical provision and, as the International Court emphasised in the *LaGrand (Germany v. USA)* case, it 'establishes an interrelated regime designed to facilitate the implementation of the system of consular protection'.⁴³² Article 36(1)a provides that consular officers shall be free to communicate with nationals of the sending state and to have access to them, while nationals shall have the same freedom of communication with and access to consular officers. In particular, article 36(1)b provides that if the national so requests, the authorities of the receiving state shall without delay inform the consular post of the sending state of any arrest or detention. The authorities in question shall inform the national of the sending state without delay of his or her rights. Similarly, any communication from the detained national to the consular post must be forwarded without delay. The International Court held that article 36(1) created individual rights for the persons concerned which could be invoked by the state, which, by virtue of the Optional Protocol on Compulsory Settlement of Disputes attached to the Convention, may be brought before the Court.⁴³³ The International Court has subsequently underlined that violations of individual rights under this provision may also violate the rights of the state itself, while such violations could also constitute violations of the individual.⁴³⁴

The Court held that the US had breached its obligations under article 36(1)⁴³⁵ by not informing the *LaGrand* brothers of their rights under

⁴²⁸ But note Security Council resolution 1193 (1998) condemning the Taliban authorities in Afghanistan for the capture of the Iranian consulate-general. See also *R (B) v. Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs* [2004] EWCA Civ 1344; 131 ILR, p. 616.

⁴²⁹ Article 33. ⁴³⁰ Article 32. ⁴³¹ See above, p. 759.

⁴³² ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 492; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 31. See also the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 39; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 142.

⁴³³ ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 494; 134 ILR, p. 33.

⁴³⁴ The *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 36; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 139.

⁴³⁵ ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 514; 134 ILR, p. 52. In an Advisory Opinion of 1 October 1999, the Inter-American Court of Human Rights concluded that the duty to notify detained

that provision ‘without delay’.⁴³⁶ The International Court reaffirmed its approach in the *Avena* case, brought by Mexico against the US on substantially similar grounds to the *LaGrand* case.⁴³⁷

Article 41 provides that consular officers may not be arrested or detained except in the case of a grave crime and following a decision by the competent judicial authority. If, however, criminal proceedings are instituted against a consul, he must appear before the competent authorities. The proceedings are to be conducted in a manner that respects his official position and minimises the inconvenience to the exercise of consular functions. Under article 43 their immunity from jurisdiction is restricted in both criminal and civil matters to acts done in the official exercise of consular functions.⁴³⁸ In *Koeppel and Koeppel v. Federal Republic of Nigeria*,⁴³⁹ for example, it was held that the provision of refuge by the Nigerian Consul-General to a Nigerian national was an act performed in the exercise of a consular function within the meaning of article 43 and thus attracted consular immunity.

*The Convention on Special Missions, 1969*⁴⁴⁰

In many cases, states will send out special or ad hoc missions to particular countries to deal with some defined issue in addition to relying upon the permanent staffs of the diplomatic and consular missions. In such circumstances, these missions, whether purely technical or politically

foreign nationals of the right to seek consular assistance under article 36(1) constituted part of the corpus of human rights, Series A 16, OC-16/99, 1999 and 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 555. See above, chapter 7, p. 389. Note that the International Court in the *LaGrand* case felt it unnecessary to deal with this argument, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 494–5. As to the right of access to nationals, see also the Yugoslav incident of summer 2000, where the UK protested at the absence of information with regard to the arrest by Yugoslavia of British citizens seconded to the UN Mission in Kosovo: see UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 608.

⁴³⁶ The Court has noted that the obligation on the detaining authorities to provide the necessary information under article 36(1)b arises once it is realised that the detainee is a foreign national or when there are grounds to think that the person is probably a foreign national, the *Avena* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 43 and 49; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 146 and 153.

⁴³⁷ ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 12. See as to the obligations of the US in the two cases as found by the International Court, below, chapter 19, p. 1103. See also as to the response of the US courts to these cases, above, chapter 4, pp. 135 and 164, note 178.

⁴³⁸ See e.g. *Princess Zizianoff v. Kahn and Bigelow* 4 AD, p. 384. See generally, as to consular functions, DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 655 ff. Note that waiver of consular immunities under article 45, in addition to being express, must also be in writing.

⁴³⁹ 704 F.Supp. 521 (1989); 99 ILR, p. 121.

⁴⁴⁰ See e.g. Hardy, *Modern Diplomatic Law*, p. 89, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 1125 ff. The Convention came into force in June 1985.

important, may rely on certain immunities which are basically derived from the Vienna Conventions by analogy with appropriate modifications. By article 8, the sending state must let the host state know of the size and composition of the mission, while according to article 17 the mission must be sited in a place agreed by the states concerned or in the Foreign Ministry of the receiving state.

By article 31 members of special missions have no immunity with respect to claims arising from an accident caused by a vehicle, used outside the official functions of the person involved, and by article 27 only such freedom of movement and travel as is necessary for the performance of the functions of the special mission is permitted.

The question of special missions was discussed in the *Tabatabai* case before a series of German courts.⁴⁴¹ The Federal Supreme Court noted that the Convention had not yet come into force and that there were conflicting views as to the extent to which it reflected existing customary law. However, it was clear that there was a customary rule of international law which provided that an ad hoc envoy, charged with a special political mission by the sending state, may be granted immunity by individual agreement with the host state for that mission and its associated status and that therefore such envoys could be placed on a par with members of the permanent missions of states.⁴⁴² The concept of immunity protected not the diplomat as a person, but rather the mission to be carried out by that person on behalf of the sending state. The question thus turned on whether there had been a sufficiently specific special mission agreed upon by the states concerned, which the Court found in the circumstances.⁴⁴³ In *US v. Sissoko*, the District Court held that the Convention on Special Missions, to which the US was not a party, did not constitute customary international law and was thus not binding upon the Court.⁴⁴⁴

*The Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations of a Universal Character, 1975*⁴⁴⁵

This treaty applies with respect to the representation of states in any international organisation of a universal character, irrespective of whether

⁴⁴¹ See 80 ILR, p. 388. See also Böckslaff and Koch, 'The Tabatabai Case: The Immunity of Special Envoys and the Limits of Judicial Review', 25 German YIL, 1982, p. 539.

⁴⁴² 80 ILR, pp. 388, 419. ⁴⁴³ *Ibid.*, p. 420.

⁴⁴⁴ 999 F.Supp. 1469 (1997); 121 ILR, p. 600. See also *Re Bo Xilai* 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 601.

⁴⁴⁵ See e.g. J. G. Fennessy, 'The 1975 Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations of a Universal Character', 70 AJIL, 1976, p. 62.

or not there are diplomatic relations between the sending and the host states.

There are many similarities between this Convention and the 1961 Vienna Convention. By article 30, for example, diplomatic staff enjoy complete immunity from criminal jurisdiction, and immunity from civil and administrative jurisdiction in all cases, save for the same exceptions noted in article 31 of the 1961 Convention. Administrative, technical and service staff are in the same position as under the latter treaty (article 36).

The mission premises are inviolable and exempt from taxation by the host state, while its archives, documents and correspondence are equally inviolable.

The Convention has received an unenthusiastic welcome, primarily because of the high level of immunities it provides for on the basis of a controversial analogy with diplomatic agents of missions.⁴⁴⁶ The range of immunities contrasts with the general situation under existing conventions such as the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations, 1946.⁴⁴⁷

The immunities of international organisations

As far as customary rules are concerned, the position is far from clear and it is usually dealt with by means of a treaty, providing such immunities to the international institution sited on the territory of the host state as are regarded as functionally necessary for the fulfilment of its objectives.

Probably the most important example is the General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations of 1946, which sets out the immunities of the United Nations and its personnel and emphasises the inviolability of its premises, archives and documents.⁴⁴⁸

⁴⁴⁶ It should be noted that among those states abstaining in the vote adopting the Convention were France, the US, Switzerland, Austria, Canada and the UK, all states that host the headquarters of important international organisations: see Fennessy, '1975 Vienna Convention', p. 62.

⁴⁴⁷ See in particular article IV. See also, for a similar approach in the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the Specialised Agencies, 1947, article V.

⁴⁴⁸ See further below, chapter 23, p. 1318. See, as to the privileges and immunities of foreign armed forces, including the NATO Status of Forces Agreement, 1951, which provides for a system of concurrent jurisdiction, S. Lazareff, *Status of Military Forces under Current International Law*, Leiden, 1971; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 362 ff., and J. Woodliffe, *The Peacetime Use of Foreign Military Installations under Modern International Law*, Dordrecht, 1992.

Suggestions for further reading

- E. Denza, *Diplomatic Law*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008
- A. Dickinson, R. Lindsay and J. P. Loonam, *State Immunity: Selected Materials and Commentary*, Oxford, 2004
- H. Fox, *The Law of State Immunity*, Oxford, 2002
- C. H. Schreuer, *State Immunity: Some Recent Developments*, Cambridge, 1988
- I. Sinclair, 'The Law of Sovereign Immunity: Recent Developments', 167 HR, 1980, p. 113
- A. Watts, 'The Legal Position in International Law of Heads of State, Heads of Governments and Foreign Ministers', 247 HR, 1994 III, p. 13

State responsibility

State responsibility is a fundamental principle of international law, arising out of the nature of the international legal system and the doctrines of state sovereignty and equality of states. It provides that whenever one state commits an internationally unlawful act against another state, international responsibility is established between the two. A breach of an international obligation gives rise to a requirement for reparation.¹

Accordingly, the focus is upon principles concerned with second-order issues, in other words the procedural and other consequences flowing from a breach of a substantive rule of international law.² This has led to a number of issues concerning the relationship between the rules of

¹ See generally J. Crawford, *The International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility*, Cambridge, 2002; *Obligations Multilatérales, Droit Impératif et Responsabilité Internationale des États* (ed. P. M. Dupuy), Paris, 2003; *Issues of State Responsibility before International Judicial Institutions* (eds. M. Fitzmaurice and D. Sarooshi), Oxford, 2003; M. Forteau, *Droit de la Sécurité Collective et Droit de la Responsabilité Internationale de l'État*, Paris, 2006; N. H. B. Jørgensen, *The Responsibility of States for International Crimes*, Oxford, 2003; *International Responsibility Today: Essays in Memory of Oscar Schachter* (ed. M. Ragazzi), The Hague, 2005; S. Villalpando, *L'Émergence de la Communauté Internationale dans la Responsabilité des États*, Paris, 2005; C. Eagleton, *The Responsibility of States in International Law*, New York, 1928; *International Law of State Responsibility for Injuries to Aliens* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1983; R. B. Lillich, 'Duties of States Regarding the Civil Rights of Aliens', 161 HR, 1978, p. 329, and Lillich, *The Human Rights of Aliens in Contemporary International Law*, Charlottesville, 1984; I. Brownlie, *System of the Law of Nations: State Responsibility, Part I*, Oxford, 1983; Bin Cheng, *General Principles of Law as Applied by International Courts and Tribunals*, London, 1953; *United Nations Codification of State Responsibility* (eds. M. Spinedi and B. Simma), New York, 1987; Société Française de Droit International, *La Responsabilité dans le Système International*, Paris, 1991; B. Stern, 'La Responsabilité Internationale Aujourd'hui ... Demain ...' in *Mélanges Apollis*, Paris, 1992; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 729, and *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, chapter 4. See also the Secretary-General's Compilation of Decisions of International Courts, Tribunals and Other Bodies, A/62/62, 1 February 2007, as supplemented by A/62/62/Add.1, 17 April 2007.

² See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1973, vol. II, pp. 169–70. The issue of state responsibility for injuries caused by lawful activities will be noted in chapter 15.

state responsibility and those relating to other areas of international law. The question as to the relationship between the rules of state responsibility and those relating to the law of treaties arose, for example, in the *Rainbow Warrior* Arbitration between France and New Zealand in 1990.³ The arbitration followed the incident in 1985 in which French agents destroyed the vessel *Rainbow Warrior* in harbour in New Zealand. The UN Secretary-General was asked to mediate and his ruling in 1986⁴ provided *inter alia* for French payment to New Zealand and for the transference of two French agents to a French base in the Pacific, where they were to stay for three years and not to leave without the mutual consent of both states.⁵ However, both the agents were repatriated to France before the expiry of the three years for various reasons, without the consent of New Zealand. The 1986 Agreement contained an arbitration clause and this was invoked by New Zealand. The argument put forward by New Zealand centred upon the breach of a treaty obligation by France, whereas that state argued that only the law of state responsibility was relevant and that concepts of *force majeure* and distress exonerated it from liability.

The arbitral tribunal decided that the law relating to treaties was relevant, but that the legal consequences of a breach of a treaty, including the determination of the circumstances that may exclude wrongfulness (and render the breach only apparent) and the appropriate remedies for breach, are subjects that belong to the customary law of state responsibility.⁶

It was noted that international law did not distinguish between contractual and tortious responsibility, so that any violation by a state of any obligation of whatever origin gives rise to state responsibility and consequently to the duty of reparation.⁷ In the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, the International Court reaffirmed the point that

A determination of whether a convention is or is not in force, and whether it has or has not been properly suspended or denounced, is to be made pursuant to the law of treaties. On the other hand, an evaluation of the extent to which the suspension or denunciation of a convention, seen as incompatible with the law of treaties, involves the responsibility of the state which proceeded to it, is to be made under the law of state responsibility.⁸

The Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia also addressed the issue of the relationship between state responsibility and other branches of

³ 82 ILR, p. 499. ⁴ See 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 325 and 74 ILR, p. 256.

⁵ See also the Agreement between France and New Zealand of 9 July 1986, 74 ILR, p. 274.

⁶ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 551. ⁷ *Ibid.* See further below, p. 801.

⁸ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38; 116 ILR, p. 1.

international law in Opinion No. 13, when asked a question as to whether any amounts due in respect of war damage might affect the distribution of assets and debts in the succession process affecting the successor states of the Former Yugoslavia. The Commission, in producing a negative answer, emphasised that the question of war damage was one that fell within the sphere of state responsibility, while the rules relating to state succession fell into a separate area of international law. Accordingly, the two issues had to be separately decided.⁹

Matters regarding the responsibility of states are necessarily serious and it is well established that a party asserting a fact must prove it.¹⁰ The Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission has taken the position that ‘clear and convincing evidence’ would be required in order to support findings as to state responsibility,¹¹ while the International Court has held that claims against a state involving ‘charges of exceptional gravity’ must be proved by evidence that is ‘fully conclusive’.¹²

In addition to the wide range of state practice in this area, the International Law Commission worked extensively on this topic. In 1975 it took a decision for the draft articles on state responsibility to be divided into three parts: part I to deal with the origin of international responsibility, part II to deal with the content, forms and degrees of international responsibility and part III to deal with the settlement of disputes and the implementation of international responsibility.¹³ Part I was provisionally adopted by the Commission in 1980¹⁴ and the Draft Articles were finally adopted on 9 August 2001.¹⁵ General Assembly resolution 56/83 of

⁹ 96 ILR, pp. 726, 728.

¹⁰ See e.g. *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 204.

¹¹ See e.g. Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Eritrea’s Claim 17, 1 July 2003, paras. 46 and 49, and Partial Award, Civilian Claims, Ethiopia’s Claim 5, 17 December 2004, para. 35.

¹² *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 209. See as to evidence and the International Court, below, chapter 19, p. 1088.

¹³ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1975, vol. II, pp. 55–9. See also P. Allott, ‘State Responsibility and the Unmaking of International Law’, 29 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1988, p. 1; S. Rosenne, *The ILC’s Draft Articles on State Responsibility*, Dordrecht, 1991; ‘Symposium: The ILC’s State Responsibility Articles’, 96 *AJIL*, 2002, p. 773; ‘Symposium: Assessing the Work of the International Law Commission on State Responsibility’, 13 *EJIL*, 2002, p. 1053, and P. M. Dupuy, ‘Quarante Ans de Codification de Droit de la Responsabilité Internationale des États: Un Bilan’, 107 *RGDIP*, 2003, p. 305.

¹⁴ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, part 2, pp. 30 ff.

¹⁵ *ILC Commentary* 2001, A/56/10, 2001. This Report contains the Commentary of the ILC to the Articles, which will be discussed in the chapter. The Commentary may also be found in Crawford, *Articles*. Note that the ILC Articles do not address issues of either the responsibility of international organisations or the responsibility of individuals: see articles 57 and 58.

12 December 2001 annexed the text of the articles and commended them to governments, an unusual procedure which must be seen as giving particular weight to the status of the articles.¹⁶

The nature of state responsibility

The essential characteristics of responsibility hinge upon certain basic factors: first, the existence of an international legal obligation in force as between two particular states; secondly, that there has occurred an act or omission which violates that obligation and which is imputable to the state responsible, and finally, that loss or damage has resulted from the unlawful act or omission.¹⁷

These requirements have been made clear in a number of leading cases. In the *Spanish Zone of Morocco* claims,¹⁸ Judge Huber emphasised that:

responsibility is the necessary corollary of a right. All rights of an international character involve international responsibility. Responsibility results in the duty to make reparation if the obligation in question is not met.¹⁹

and in the *Chorzów Factory* case,²⁰ the Permanent Court of International Justice said that:

it is a principle of international law, and even a greater conception of law, that any breach of an engagement involves an obligation to make reparation.

Article 1 of the International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility reiterates the general rule, widely supported by practice,²¹ that every internationally wrongful act of a state entails responsibility.

¹⁶ See also General Assembly resolution 59/35. Assembly resolution 62/61 of 8 January 2008 further commended the Articles on State Responsibility to states and decided to examine the question of a convention on the topic. See also S. Rosenne, 'State Responsibility: *Festina Lente*', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 363, and J. Crawford and S. Olleson, 'The Continuing Debate on a UN Convention on State Responsibility', 54 ICLQ, 2005, p. 959.

¹⁷ See e.g. H. Mosler, *The International Society as a Legal Community*, Dordrecht, 1980, p. 157, and E. Jiménez de Aréchaga, 'International Responsibility' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, pp. 531, 534.

¹⁸ 2 RIAA, p. 615 (1923); 2 AD, p. 157. ¹⁹ 2 RIAA, p. 641.

²⁰ PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928, p. 29; 4 AD, p. 258. See also the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, pp. 4, 23; 16 AD, p. 155; the *Spanish Zone of Morocco* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 615, 641 and the *Mayagna (Sumo) Indigenous Community of Awás Tingni v. Nicaragua*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 31 August 2001 (Ser. C) No. 79, para. 163.

²¹ See e.g. ILC Commentary 2001, p. 63.

Article 2 provides that there is an internationally wrongful act of a state when conduct consisting of an action or omission is attributable to the state under international law and constitutes a breach of an international obligation of the state.²² This principle has been affirmed in the case-law.²³ It is international law that determines what constitutes an internationally unlawful act, irrespective of any provisions of municipal law.²⁴ Article 12 stipulates that there is a breach of an international obligation²⁵ when an act of that state is not in conformity with what is required of it by that obligation, regardless of its origin or character.²⁶ A breach that is of a continuing nature extends over the entire period during which the act continues and remains not in conformity with the international obligation in question,²⁷ while a breach that consists of a composite act will also extend over the entire period during which the act or omission continues and remains not in conformity with the international obligation.²⁸ A state assisting another state²⁹ to commit an internationally wrongful act will also be responsible if it so acted with knowledge of the circumstances and where it would be wrongful if committed by that state.³⁰ State responsibility may co-exist with individual responsibility. The two are not mutually exclusive.³¹

²² See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1976, vol. II, pp. 75 ff. and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 68.

²³ See e.g. *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 9, p. 21 and the *Rainbow Warrior* case, 82 ILR, p. 499.

²⁴ Article 3. See generally *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, pp. 90 ff.; *ibid.*, 1980, vol. II, pp. 14 ff. and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 74. See also *Noble Ventures v. Romania*, ICSID award of 12 October 2005, para. 53 and above, chapter 4, p. 133 ff.

²⁵ By which the state is bound at the time the act occurs, Article 13 and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 133. This principle reflects the general principle of intertemporal law: see e.g. the *Island of Palmas* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 845 and above, chapter 9, p. 508.

²⁶ See the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros (Hungary v. Slovakia) Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38; 116 ILR, p. 1 and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 124.

²⁷ See article 14. See also e.g. the *Rainbow Warrior* case, 82 ILR, p. 499; the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros (Hungary v. Slovakia) Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 54; *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 431; *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Merits, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 18 December 1996, paras. 41–7 and 63–4; 108 ILR, p. 443 and *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, paras. 136, 150, 158, 175, 189 and 269; 120 ILR, p. 10.

²⁸ Article 15.

²⁹ Or directing or controlling it, see article 17; or coercing it, see article 18.

³⁰ Article 16. See also the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 420.

³¹ See article 58. See also the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 173, and A. Nollkaemper, 'Concurrence between Individual Responsibility and State Responsibility in International Law', 52 ICLQ, 2003, p. 615.

*The question of fault*³²

There are contending theories as to whether responsibility of the state for unlawful acts or omissions is strict or whether it is necessary to show some fault or intention on the part of the officials concerned. The principle of objective responsibility (the so-called 'risk' theory) maintains that the liability of the state is strict. Once an unlawful act has taken place, which has caused injury and which has been committed by an agent of the state, that state will be responsible in international law to the state suffering the damage irrespective of good or bad faith. To be contrasted with this approach is the subjective responsibility concept (the 'fault' theory) which emphasises that an element of intentional (*dolus*) or negligent (*culpa*) conduct on the part of the person concerned is necessary before his state can be rendered liable for any injury caused.

The relevant cases and academic opinions are divided on this question, although the majority tends towards the strict liability, objective theory of responsibility.

In the *Neer* claim³³ in 1926, an American superintendent of a Mexican mine was shot. The USA, on behalf of his widow and daughter, claimed damages because of the lackadaisical manner in which the Mexican authorities pursued their investigations. The General Claims Commission dealing with the matter disallowed the claim, in applying the objective test.

In the *Caire* claim,³⁴ the French–Mexican Claims Commission had to consider the case of a French citizen shot by Mexican soldiers for failing to supply them with 5,000 Mexican dollars. Verzijl, the presiding commissioner, held that Mexico was responsible for the injury caused in accordance with the objective responsibility doctrine, that is 'the responsibility for the acts of the officials or organs of a state, which may devolve upon it even in the absence of any "fault" of its own'.³⁵

A leading case adopting the subjective approach is the *Home Missionary Society* claim³⁶ in 1920 between Britain and the United States. In this

³² See e.g. Crawford, *Articles*, p. 12; H. Lauterpacht, *Private Law Sources and Analogies of International Law*, Cambridge, 1927, pp. 135–43; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 766; Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, pp. 425 ff. and Brownlie, *System*, pp. 38–46, and Aréchaga, 'International Responsibility', pp. 534–40. See also J. G. Starke, 'Imputability in International Delinquencies', 19 BYIL, 1938, p. 104, and Cheng, *General Principles*, pp. 218–32.

³³ 4 RIAA, p. 60 (1926); 3 AD, p. 213. ³⁴ 5 RIAA, p. 516 (1929); 5 AD, p. 146.

³⁵ 5 RIAA, pp. 529–31. See also *The Jessie*, 6 RIAA, p. 57 (1921); 1 AD, p. 175.

³⁶ 6 RIAA, p. 42 (1920); 1 AD, p. 173.

case, the imposition of a 'hut tax' in the protectorate of Sierra Leone triggered off a local uprising in which Society property was damaged and missionaries killed. The tribunal dismissed the claim of the Society (presented by the US) and noted that it was established in international law that no government was responsible for the acts of rebels where it itself was guilty of no breach of good faith or negligence in suppressing the revolt. It should, therefore, be noted that the view expressed in this case is concerned with a specific area of the law, viz. the question of state responsibility for the acts of rebels. Whether one can analogueise from this generally is open to doubt.

In the *Corfu Channel* case,³⁷ the International Court appeared to lean towards the fault theory³⁸ by saying that:

it cannot be concluded from the mere fact of the control exercised by a state over its territory and waters that that state necessarily knew, or ought to have known, of any unlawful act perpetrated therein, nor yet that it necessarily knew, or should have known, the authors. This fact, by itself and apart from other circumstances, neither involves *prima facie* responsibility nor shifts the burden of proof.³⁹

On the other hand, the Court emphasised that the fact of exclusive territorial control had a bearing upon the methods of proof available to establish the knowledge of that state as to the events in question. Because of the difficulties of presenting direct proof of facts giving rise to responsibility, the victim state should be allowed a more liberal recourse to inferences of fact and circumstantial evidence.⁴⁰

However, it must be pointed out that the Court was concerned with Albania's knowledge of the laying of mines,⁴¹ and the question of *prima facie* responsibility for *any* unlawful act committed within the territory of the state concerned, irrespective of attribution, raises different issues. It cannot be taken as proof of the acceptance of the fault theory. It may be concluded that doctrine and practice support the objective theory and that this is right, particularly in view of the proliferation of state organs

³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155.

³⁸ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 509.

³⁹ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 18; 16 AD, p. 157. Cf. Judges Krylov and Ecer, *ibid.*, pp. 71–2 and 127–8. See also Judge Azevedo, *ibid.*, p. 85.

⁴⁰ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 18. ⁴¹ See Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 427–9.

and agencies.⁴² The Commentary to the ILC Articles emphasised that the Articles did not take a definitive position on this controversy, but noted that standards as to objective or subjective approaches, fault, negligence or want of due diligence would vary from one context to another depending upon the terms of the primary obligation in question.⁴³

*Imputability*⁴⁴

Imposing upon the state absolute liability wherever an official is involved encourages that state to exercise greater control over its various departments and representatives. It also stimulates moves towards complying with objective standards of conduct in international relations.

State responsibility covers many fields. It includes unlawful acts or omissions directly committed by the state and directly affecting other states: for instance, the breach of a treaty, the violation of the territory of another state, or damage to state property. An example of the latter heading is provided by the incident in 1955 when Bulgarian fighter planes shot down an Israeli civil aircraft of its state airline, El Al.⁴⁵ Another example of state responsibility is illustrated by the *Nicaragua* case,⁴⁶ where the International Court of Justice found that acts imputable to the US included the laying of mines in Nicaraguan internal or territorial waters and certain attacks on Nicaraguan ports, oil installations and a naval base by its agents.⁴⁷ In the *Corfu Channel* case,⁴⁸ Albania was held responsible for the consequences of mine-laying in its territorial waters on the basis

⁴² The question of intention is to be distinguished from the problem of causality, i.e. whether the act or omission in question actually caused the particular loss or damage: see e.g. the *Lighthouses* case, 23 ILR, p. 352.

⁴³ ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 69–70.

⁴⁴ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1973, vol. II, p. 189. See also Brownlie, *System*, pp. 36–7 and chapter 7; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 773; L. Condorelli, 'L'Imputation à l'État d'un Fait Internationallement Illicite', 188 HR, 1984, p. 9, and R. Higgins, 'The Concept of "the State": A Variable Geometry and Dualist Perceptions' in *Mélanges Abi-Saab*, The Hague, 2001, p. 547.

⁴⁵ See the *Aerial Incident* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 127, 130. See also the incident where a Soviet fighter plane crashed in Belgium. The USSR accepted responsibility for the loss of life and damage that resulted and compensation was paid: see 91 ILR, p. 287, and J. Salmon, 'Chute sur le Territoire Belge d'un Avion Militaire Soviétique de 4 Juillet 1989, Problèmes de Responsabilité', *Revue de Droit International*, 1990, p. 510.

⁴⁶ *Nicaragua v. United States*, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

⁴⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 48–51 and 146–9; 76 ILR, pp. 382, 480.

⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155.

of knowledge possessed by that state as to the presence of such mines, even though there was no finding as to who had actually laid the mines. In the *Rainbow Warrior* incident,⁴⁹ the UN Secretary-General mediated a settlement in which New Zealand received *inter alia* a sum of \$7 million for the violation of its sovereignty which occurred when that vessel was destroyed by French agents in New Zealand.⁵⁰ The state may also incur responsibility with regard to the activity of its officials in injuring a national of another state, and this activity need not be one authorised by the authorities of the state.

The doctrine depends on the link that exists between the state and the person or persons actually committing the unlawful act or omission. The state as an abstract legal entity cannot, of course, in reality 'act' itself. It can only do so through authorised officials and representatives. The state is not responsible under international law for all acts performed by its nationals. Since the state is responsible only for acts of its servants that are imputable or attributable to it, it becomes necessary to examine the concept of imputability (also termed attribution). Imputability is the legal fiction which assimilates the actions or omissions of state officials to the state itself and which renders the state liable for damage resulting to the property or person of an alien.

Article 4 of the ILC Articles provides that the conduct of any state organ (including any person or entity having that status in accordance with the internal law of the state) shall be considered as an act of the state concerned under international law where the organ exercises legislative, executive, judicial or any other function, whatever position it holds in the organisation of the state and whatever its character as an organ of the central government or of a territorial unit of the state. This approach reflects customary law. As the International Court noted in *Difference Relating to Immunity from Legal Process of a Special Rapporteur*, 'According to a well-established rule of international law, the conduct of any organ of a state must be regarded as an act of that state.'⁵¹ The International Court

⁴⁹ See 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 325 and 74 ILR, pp. 241 ff. See also above, p. 778.

⁵⁰ Note also the *USS Stark* incident, in which a US guided missile frigate on station in the Persian Gulf was attacked by Iraqi aircraft in May 1987. The Iraqi government agreed to pay compensation of \$27 million: see 83 AJIL, 1989, pp. 561–4.

⁵¹ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 62, 87; 121 ILR, pp. 405, 432. See also e.g. the *OSPAR (Ireland v. UK)* case, Final Award, 2 July 2003, para. 144; 126 ILR, 334, 379, the *Massey* case, 4 RIAA, p. 155 (1927); 4 AD, p. 250 and the *Salvador Commercial Company* case, 15 RIAA, p. 477 (1902). As an example of the state organ concerned being from the judiciary, see the *Sunday Times* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, vol. 30, 1979; 58 ILR,

in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case regarded it as 'one of the cornerstones of the law of state responsibility, that the conduct of any state organ is to be considered an act of the state under international law, and therefore gives rise to the responsibility of the state if it constitutes a breach of an obligation of the state'. It was a rule of customary international law.⁵² It would clearly cover units and sub-units within a state.⁵³

Article 5, in reaction to the proliferation of government agencies and parastatal entities, notes that the conduct of a person or of an entity not an organ of the state under article 4 but which is empowered by the law of that state to exercise elements of governmental authority shall be considered an act of the state under international law, provided the person or entity is acting in that capacity in the particular instance. This provision is intended *inter alia* to cover the situation of privatised corporations which retain certain public or regulatory functions. Examples of the application of this article might include the conduct of private security firms authorised to act as prison guards or where private or state-owned airlines exercise certain immigration controls⁵⁴ or with regard to a railway company to which certain police powers have been granted.⁵⁵

Article 5 issues may also arise where an organ or an agent of a state are placed at the disposal of another international legal entity in a situation where both the state and the entity exercise elements of control over the organ or agent in question. This occurs most clearly where a military contingent is placed by a state at the disposal of the UN for peace-keeping purposes. Both the state and the UN will exercise a certain jurisdiction over the contingent. The question arose in *Behrami v. France* before the European Court of Justice as to whether troops from certain NATO states forming part of KFOR and concerned in the particular instance with demining operations in the province of Kosovo could fall under the jurisdiction of the Court or whether the appropriate responsible organ was KFOR operating under the authority of the United Nations, a body not susceptible

p. 491, and from the legislature, see e.g. the *Young, James and Webster* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, vol. 44, 1981; 62 ILR, p. 359.

⁵² ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 385.

⁵³ Thus, not only would communes, provinces and regions of a unitary state be concerned, see e.g. the *Heirs of the Duc de Guise* case, 13 RIAA, p. 161 (1951); 18 ILR, p. 423, but also the component states of a federal state, see e.g. the *LaGrand (Provisional Measures)* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 9, 16; 118 ILR, pp. 39, 46, the *Davy* case, 9 RIAA, p. 468 (1903); the *Janes* case, 4 RIAA, p. 86 (1925); 3 AD, p. 218 and the *Pellat* case, 5 AD, p. 145. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1971, vol. II, part I, pp. 257 ff. and ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 84 ff.

⁵⁴ ILC Commentary 2001, p. 92. ⁵⁵ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, pp. 281–2.

to the jurisdiction of the Court. The Court held that the key question was whether the UN Security Council retained ultimate authority and control so that operational command only was delegated and that this was so in the light of resolution 1244. Accordingly, responsibility for the impugned action was attributable to the UN, so that jurisdiction did not exist with regard to the states concerned for the European Court.⁵⁶

Article 6 provides that the conduct of an organ placed at the disposal of a state by another state shall be considered as an act of the former state under international law, if that organ was acting in the exercise of elements of the governmental authority of the former state. This would, for example, cover the UK Privy Council acting as the highest judicial body for certain Commonwealth countries.⁵⁷

Ultra vires acts

An unlawful act may be imputed to the state even where it was beyond the legal capacity of the official involved, providing, as Verzijl noted in the *Caire* case,⁵⁸ that the officials 'have acted at least to all appearances as competent officials or organs or they must have used powers or methods appropriate to their official capacity'.

This was reaffirmed in the *Mossé* case,⁵⁹ where it was noted that:

Even if it were admitted that . . . officials . . . had acted . . . outside the statutory limits of the competence of their service, it should not be deduced, without further ado, that the claim is not well founded. It would still be necessary to consider a question of law . . . namely whether in the international order the state should be acknowledged responsible for acts performed by officials within the apparent limits of their functions, in accordance with a line of conduct which was not entirely contrary to the instructions received.

In *Youman's* claim,⁶⁰ militia ordered to protect threatened American citizens in a Mexican town instead joined the riot, during which the Americans were killed. These unlawful acts by the militia were imputed to the state of Mexico, which was found responsible by the General Claims Commission. In the *Union Bridge Company* case,⁶¹ a British official of the Cape

⁵⁶ Judgment of 2 May 2007, paras. 134 ff. See also *Bosphorus Airways v. Ireland*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 30 June 2005. As to the Kosovo situation, see above, chapter 9, p. 452.

⁵⁷ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, p. 288 and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 98.

⁵⁸ 5 RIAA, pp. 516, 530 (1929); 5 AD, pp. 146, 148.

⁵⁹ 13 RIAA, p. 494 (1953); 20 ILR, p. 217. ⁶⁰ 4 RIAA, p. 110 (1926); 3 AD, p. 223.

⁶¹ 6 RIAA, p. 138 (1924); 2 AD, p. 170.

Government Railway mistakenly appropriated neutral property during the Boer War. It was held that there was still liability despite the honest mistake and the lack of intention on the part of the authorities to appropriate the material in question. The key was that the action was within the general scope of duty of the official. In the *Sandline* case, the Tribunal emphasised that, 'It is a clearly established principle of international law that acts of a state will be regarded as such even if they are *ultra vires* or unlawful under the internal law of the state . . . their [institutions, officials or employees of the state] acts or omissions when they purport to act in their capacity as organs of the state are regarded internationally as those of the state even though they contravene the internal law of the state.'⁶²

Article 7 of the ILC Articles provides that the conduct of an organ or of a person or entity empowered to exercise elements of governmental authority shall be considered an act of the state under international law if acting in that capacity, even if it exceeds its authority or contravenes instructions.⁶³ This article appears to lay down an absolute rule of liability, one not limited by reference to the apparent exercise of authority and, in the context of the general acceptance of the objective theory of responsibility, is probably the correct approach.⁶⁴

Although private individuals are not regarded as state officials so that the state is not liable for their acts, the state may be responsible for failing to exercise the control necessary to prevent such acts. This was emphasised in the *Zafiro* case⁶⁵ between Britain and America in 1925. The Tribunal held the latter responsible for the damage caused by the civilian crew of a naval ship in the Philippines, since the naval officers had not adopted effective preventative measures.

State control and responsibility

Article 8 of the ILC Articles provides that the conduct of a person or group of persons shall be considered as an act of state under international

⁶² 117 ILR, pp. 552, 561. See also *Azinian v. United Mexican States* 121 ILR, pp. 1, 23; *SPP(ME) Ltd v. Egypt* 106 ILR, p. 501 and *Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States* 119 ILR, pp. 615, 634.

⁶³ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 99 and see also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1975, vol. II, p. 67.

⁶⁴ See e.g. the *Caire* case, 5 RIAA, p. 516 (1929); 5 AD, p. 146; the *Velásquez Rodríguez* case, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, Series C, No. 4, 1989, para. 170; 95 ILR, pp. 259, 296 and *Ilaşcu v. Moldova and Russia*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 8 July 2004, para. 319. See also T. Meron, 'International Responsibility of States for Unauthorised Acts of Their Officials', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 851.

⁶⁵ 6 RIAA, p. 160 (1925); 3 AD, p. 221. See also *Re Gill* 5 RIAA, p. 157 (1931); 6 AD, p. 203.

law if the person or group of persons is in fact acting on the instructions of, or under the direction or control of, that state in carrying out the conduct. The first proposition is uncontroversial, but difficulties have arisen in seeking to define the necessary direction or control required for the second proposition. The Commentary to the article emphasises that, 'Such conduct will be attributable to the state only if it directed or controlled the specific operation and the conduct complained of was an integral part of the operation.'⁶⁶ Recent case-law has addressed the issue.

In the *Nicaragua* case, the International Court declared that in order for the conduct of the *contra* guerrillas to have been attributable to the US, who financed and equipped the force, 'it would in principle have to be proved that that state had effective control of the military or paramilitary operation in the course of which the alleged violations were committed'.⁶⁷ In other words, general overall control would have been insufficient to ground responsibility. However, in the *Tadić* case, the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia adopted a more flexible approach, noting that the degree of control might vary according to the circumstances and a high threshold might not always be required.⁶⁸ In this case, of course, the issue was of individual criminal responsibility. Further, the situation might be different where the state deemed responsible was in clear and uncontested effective control of the territory where the violation occurred. The International Court of Justice in the *Namibia* case stated that, 'Physical control of a territory and not sovereignty or legitimacy of title, is the basis of state liability for acts affecting other states.'⁶⁹ This was reaffirmed in *Loizidou v. Turkey*, where the European Court of Human Rights noted that, bearing in mind the object and purpose of the European Convention on Human Rights,

the responsibility of a contracting party may also arise when as a consequence of military action – whether lawful or unlawful – it exercises effective control of an area outside its national territory. The obligation to secure, in such an area, the rights and freedoms set out in the Convention, derives from the fact of such control whether it be exercised directly, through its armed forces, or through a subordinate local administration.⁷⁰

⁶⁶ ILC Commentary 2001, p. 104. ⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 64–5; 76 ILR, p. 349.

⁶⁸ 38 ILM, 1999, pp. 1518, 1541. ⁶⁹ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 17, 54; 42 ILR, p. 2.

⁷⁰ Preliminary Objections, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 310, 1995, pp. 20, 24; 103 ILR, p. 621, and the merits judgment, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 18 December 1996, para. 52; 108 ILR, p. 443. See also *Cyprus v. Turkey*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 10 May 2001, para. 76; 120 ILR, p. 10.

The International Court returned to the issue in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case and reaffirmed its approach in the *Nicaragua* case. It noted that the Appeal Chamber's judgment in *Tadić* did not concern issues of state responsibility nor a question that was indispensable for the exercise of its jurisdiction. It held that the 'overall control' test was not appropriate for state responsibility and that the test under customary law was that reflected in article 8 whereby the state would be responsible for the acts of persons or groups (neither state organs nor equated with such organs) where an organ of the state gave the instructions or provided the direction pursuant to which the perpetrators of the wrongful act acted or where it exercised effective control over the action during which the wrong was committed.⁷¹

Article 9 of the ILC Articles provides that the conduct of a person or a group of persons shall be considered as an act of the state under international law if the person or group was in fact exercising elements of the governmental authority in the absence or default of the official authorities and in circumstances such as to call for the exercise of those elements of authority.⁷²

Mob violence, insurrections and civil wars

Where the governmental authorities have acted in good faith and without negligence, the general principle is one of non-liability for the actions of rioters or rebels causing loss or damage.⁷³ The state, however, is under a duty to show due diligence. Quite what is meant by this is difficult to quantify and more easily defined in the negative.⁷⁴ It should also be noted that special provisions apply to diplomatic and consular personnel.⁷⁵

Article 10 of the ILC Articles provides that where an insurrectional movement is successful either in becoming the new government of a state or in establishing a new state in part of the territory of the pre-existing

⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 403–6.

⁷² See e.g. the *Yeager* case, 17 Iran–US CTR, 1987, pp. 92, 104.

⁷³ See e.g. the *Home Missionary Society* case, 6 RIAA, pp. 42, 44 (1920); 1 AD, p. 173; the *Youmans* case, 4 RIAA, p. 110 (1926); 3 AD, p. 223 and the *Herd* case, 4 RIAA, p. 653 (1930). See also P. Dumberry, 'New State Responsibility for Internationally Wrongful Acts by an Insurrectional Movement', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 605.

⁷⁴ E.g. Judge Huber, the *Spanish Zone of Morocco* claims, 2 RIAA, pp. 617, 642 (1925); 2 AD, p. 157. See Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 436 ff. and the *Sambaggio* case, 10 RIAA, p. 499 (1903). See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1957, vol. II, pp. 121–3, and G. Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1957, pp. 653 ff.

⁷⁵ See above, chapter 13, pp. 764 ff.

state, it will be held responsible for its activities prior to its assumption of authority.⁷⁶

The issue of the responsibility of the authorities of a state for activities that occurred prior to its coming to power was raised before the Iran–US Claims Tribunal. In *Short v. The Islamic Republic of Iran*,⁷⁷ the Tribunal noted that the international responsibility of a state can be engaged where the circumstances or events causing the departure of an alien are attributable to it, but that not all departures of aliens from a country in a period of political turmoil would as such be attributable to that state.⁷⁸ In the instant case, it was emphasised that at the relevant time the revolutionary movement had not yet been able to establish control over any part of Iranian territory and the government had demonstrated its loss of control. Additionally, the acts of supporters of a revolution cannot be attributed to the government following the success of the revolution, just as acts of supporters of an existing government are not attributable to the government. Accordingly, and since the claimant was unable to identify any agent of the revolutionary movement the actions of whom forced him to leave Iran, the claim for compensation failed.⁷⁹ In *Yeager v. The Islamic Republic of Iran*,⁸⁰ the Tribunal awarded compensation for expulsion, but in this case it was held that the expulsion was carried out by the Revolutionary Guards after the success of the revolution. Although the Revolutionary Guards were not at the time an official organ of the Iranian state, it was determined that they were exercising governmental authority with the knowledge and acquiescence of the revolutionary state, making Iran liable for their acts.⁸¹

Falling somewhat between these two cases is *Rankin v. The Islamic Republic of Iran*,⁸² where the Tribunal held that the claimant had not proved that he had left Iran after the revolution as a result of action by the Iranian government and the Revolutionary Guards as distinct from leaving because of the general difficulties of life in that state during the revolutionary period. Thus Iranian responsibility was not engaged.

Where a state subsequently acknowledges and adopts conduct as its own, then it will be considered as an act of state under international law entailing responsibility, even though such conduct was not attributable

⁷⁶ See E. M. Borchard, *The Diplomatic Protection of Citizens Abroad*, New York, 1927, p. 241 and the *Bolivian Railway Company* case, 9 RIAA, p. 445 (1903). See also the ILC Commentary 2001, p. 112.

⁷⁷ 16 Iran–US CTR, p. 76; 82 ILR, p. 148.

⁷⁸ 16 Iran–US CTR, p. 83; 82 ILR, pp. 159–60.

⁷⁹ 16 Iran–US CTR, p. 85; 82 ILR, p. 161.

⁸⁰ 17 Iran–US CTR, p. 92; 82 ILR, p. 178.

⁸¹ 17 Iran–US CTR, p. 104; 82 ILR, p. 194.

⁸² 17 Iran–US CTR, p. 135; 82 ILR, p. 204.

to the state beforehand.⁸³ In the *Iranian Hostages* case, for example, the International Court noted that the initial attack on the US Embassy by militants could not be imputable to Iran since they were clearly not agents or organs of the state. However, the subsequent approval of the Ayatollah Khomeini and other organs of Iran to the attack and the decision to maintain the occupation of the Embassy translated that action into a state act. The militants thus became agents of the Iranian state for whose acts the state bore international responsibility.⁸⁴

*Circumstances precluding wrongfulness*⁸⁵

Where a state consents to an act by another state which would otherwise constitute an unlawful act, wrongfulness is precluded provided that the act is within the limits of the consent given.⁸⁶ The most common example of this kind of situation is where troops from one state are sent to another at the request of the latter.⁸⁷ Wrongfulness is also precluded where the act constitutes a lawful measure of self-defence taken in conformity with the Charter of the UN.⁸⁸ This would also cover force used in self-defence as defined in the customary right as well as under article 51 of the Charter, since that article refers in terms to the 'inherent right' of individual and collective self-defence.⁸⁹ Further, the ILC Commentary makes it clear that the fact that an act is taken in self-defence does not necessarily mean that all wrongfulness is precluded, since the principles relating to human rights and humanitarian law have to be respected. The International Court, in particular, noted in its advisory opinion in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* that, 'Respect for the environment is one of the elements that go to assessing whether an action is in conformity with the principles of necessity and proportionality' and thus in accordance with the right to self-defence.⁹⁰

⁸³ Article 11 and see ILC Commentary 2001, p. 118.

⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 34–5; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 560. See also above, chapter 13, p. 755.

⁸⁵ See e.g. M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1970, vol. VII, pp. 837 ff.; *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, part 1, pp. 21 ff.; *ibid.*, 1980, vol. II, pp. 26 ff. and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 169. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 782, and A. V. Lowe, 'Precluding Wrongfulness or Responsibility: A Plea for Excuses', 10 EJIL, 1999, p. 405.

⁸⁶ See article 20 of the ILC Articles. See further ILC Commentary 2001, p. 173.

⁸⁷ See e.g. the dispatch of UK troops to Muscat and Oman in 1957, 574 HC Deb., col. 872, 29 July 1957, and to Jordan in 1958, SCOR, 13th Sess., 831st meeting, para. 28.

⁸⁸ Article 21 and see also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 177.

⁸⁹ See further below, chapter 20, p. 1131.

⁹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 242; 110 ILR, p. 163.

Article 22 of the ILC Articles provides that the wrongfulness of an act is precluded if and to the extent that the act constitutes a countermeasure.⁹¹ International law originally referred in this context to reprisals, whereby an otherwise unlawful act is rendered legitimate by the prior application of unlawful force.⁹² The term ‘countermeasures’ is now the preferred term for reprisals not involving the use of force.⁹³ Countermeasures may be contrasted with the provisions laid down in article 60 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, which deals with the consequences of a material breach of a treaty in terms of the competence of the other parties to the treaty to terminate or suspend it.⁹⁴ While countermeasures do not as such affect the legal validity of the obligation which has been breached by way of reprisal for a prior breach, termination of a treaty under article 60 would under article 70 free the other parties to it from any further obligations under that treaty.

The International Court stated in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case that,

In order to be justifiable, a countermeasure must meet certain conditions... In the first place it must be taken in response to a previous international wrongful act of another state and must be directed against that state... Secondly, the injured state must have called upon the state committing the wrongful act to discontinue its wrongful conduct or to make reparation for it... In the view of the Court, an important consideration is that the effects of a countermeasure must be commensurate with the injury suffered, taking account of the rights in question... [and] its purpose must be to induce the wrongdoing state to comply with its obligations under international law, and... the measure must therefore be reversible.⁹⁵

⁹¹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 180. See also Crawford, *Articles*, pp. 47 ff.

⁹² See e.g. the *Naulilaa* case, 2 RIAA, p. 1025 (1928); 4 AD, p. 466 and the *Cysne* case, 2 RIAA, p. 1056; 5 AD, p. 150.

⁹³ See e.g. the *US–France Air Services Agreement* case, 54 ILR, pp. 306, 337. See also Report of the International Law Commission, 1989, A/44/10 and *ibid.*, 1992, A/47/10, pp. 39 ff. See also C. Annacker, ‘Part Two of the International Law Commission’s Draft Articles on State Responsibility’, 37 German YIL, 1994, pp. 206, 234 ff.; M. Dawidowicz, ‘Public Law Enforcement Without Public Law Safeguards? An Analysis of State Practice on Third-Party Countermeasures and Their Relationship to the UN Security Council’, 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 333; E. Zoller, *Peacetime Unilateral Remedies: An Analysis of Countermeasures*, New York, 1984, and O. Y. Elagab, *The Legality of Non-Forcible Counter-Measures in International Law*, Oxford, 1988.

⁹⁴ See further below, chapter 16, p. 948.

⁹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 55–7; 116 ILR, p. 1. Note that the ILC took the view that the duty to choose measures that are reversible is not absolute, ILC Commentary 2001, p. 332. See also the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 102; 76 ILR, p. 1.

In other words, lawful countermeasures must be in response to a prior wrongful act and taken in the light of a refusal to remedy it, directed against the state committing the wrongful act and proportionate. Further, there is no requirement that the countermeasures taken should be with regard to the same obligation breached by the state acting wrongfully. Thus, the response to a breach of one treaty may be action taken with regard to another treaty, provided that the requirements of necessity and proportionality are respected.⁹⁶

The ILC Articles deal further with countermeasures in Chapter II. Article 49 provides that an injured state⁹⁷ may only take countermeasures against a state responsible for the wrongful act in order to induce the latter to comply with the obligations consequent upon the wrongful act.⁹⁸ Countermeasures are limited to the non-performance for the time being of international obligations of the state taking the measures and shall, as far as possible, be taken in such a way as to permit the resumption of performance of the obligation in question.⁹⁹ Article 50 makes it clear that countermeasures shall not affect the obligation to refrain from the threat or use of force as embodied by the UN Charter, obligations for the protection of human rights, obligations of a humanitarian character prohibiting reprisals and other obligations of *jus cogens*.¹⁰⁰ By the same token, obligations under any applicable dispute settlement procedure between the two states continue,¹⁰¹ while the state taking countermeasures must respect the inviolability of diplomatic or consular agents, premises, archives and documents.¹⁰² Article 51 emphasises the requirement for proportionality, noting that countermeasures must be commensurate with the injury suffered, taking into account the gravity of the internationally wrongful act and the rights in question.¹⁰³ Article 52 provides that before taking countermeasures, the injured state must call upon the responsible

⁹⁶ See ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 326–7. ⁹⁷ See further below, p. 796.

⁹⁸ See further below, p. 800. ⁹⁹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 328.

¹⁰⁰ See Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Eritrea's Claim 17, 1 July 2003, para. 159, noting that Ethiopia's suspension of prisoner of war exchanges could not be justified as a countermeasure as it affected obligations of a human rights or humanitarian nature.

¹⁰¹ See e.g. 'Symposium on Counter-Measures and Dispute Settlement,' 5 EJIL, 1994, p. 20, and Report of the International Law Commission, 1995, A/50/10, pp. 173 ff. See also Annacker, 'Part Two,' pp. 242 ff.

¹⁰² See further ILC Commentary 2001, p. 333.

¹⁰³ See the *US–France Air Services Agreement Arbitration* 54 ILR, pp. 303, 337. See also the ILC Commentary 2001, p. 341 and the Report of the ILC on its 44th Session, 1992, A/47/10, p. 70.

state to fulfil its obligations and notify that state of any decision to take countermeasures while offering to negotiate. However, the injured state may take such countermeasures as are necessary to preserve its rights. Where the wrongful acts have ceased or the matter is pending before a court or tribunal with powers to take binding decisions, then countermeasures should cease (or where relevant, not be taken).¹⁰⁴ Countermeasures shall be terminated as soon as the responsible state has complied with its obligations.¹⁰⁵

Force majeure has long been accepted as precluding wrongfulness,¹⁰⁶ although the standard of proof is high. In the *Serbian Loans* case,¹⁰⁷ for example, the Court declined to accept the claim that the First World War had made it impossible for Serbia to repay a loan. In 1946, following a number of unauthorised flights of US aircraft over Yugoslavia, both states agreed that only in cases of emergency could such entry be justified in the absence of consent.¹⁰⁸ Article 23 of the ILC Articles provides for the preclusion of wrongfulness where the act was due to the occurrence of an irresistible force or of an unforeseen event beyond the control of the state, making it materially impossible in the circumstances to perform obligation.¹⁰⁹ In the *Gill* case,¹¹⁰ for example, a British national residing in Mexico had his house destroyed as a result of sudden and unforeseen action by opponents of the Mexican government. The Commission held that failure to prevent the act was due not to negligence but to genuine inability to take action in the face of a sudden situation.

The emphasis, therefore, is upon the happening of an event that takes place without the state being able to do anything to rectify the event or avert its consequences. There had to be a constraint which the state was

¹⁰⁴ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 345. ¹⁰⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 349.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1961, vol. II, p. 46 and ILC Commentary 2001, p. 183.

¹⁰⁷ PCIJ, Series A, No. 20, 1929, p. 39. See also the *Brazilian Loans* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 20, 1929, p. 120; 5 AD, p. 466.

¹⁰⁸ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, p. 60 and ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 189–90. This example would cover both *force majeure* and distress (discussed below). Note also that article 18(2) provides that stopping and anchoring by ships during their passage through the territorial sea of another state is permissible where rendered necessary by distress or *force majeure*. See also article 14(3) of the Convention on the Territorial Sea and Contiguous Zone, 1958.

¹⁰⁹ However, this principle does not apply if the situation of *force majeure* is due wholly or partly to the conduct of the state invoking it or the state has assumed the risk of that situation occurring, article 23(2). See also *Libyan Arab Foreign Investment Company v. Republic of Burundi* 96 ILR, pp. 279, 318.

¹¹⁰ 5 RIAA, p. 159 (1931); 6 AD, p. 203.

unable to avoid or to oppose by its own power.¹¹¹ In other words, the conduct of the state is involuntary or at least involves no element of free choice.¹¹²

The issue of *force majeure* was raised by France in the *Rainbow Warrior* arbitration in 1990.¹¹³ It was argued that one of the French agents repatriated to France without the consent of New Zealand had to be so moved as a result of medical factors which amounted to *force majeure*. The Tribunal, however, stressed that the test of applicability of this doctrine was one of 'absolute and material impossibility' and a circumstance rendering performance of an obligation more difficult or burdensome did not constitute a case of *force majeure*.¹¹⁴

Article 24 provides that wrongfulness is precluded if the author of the conduct concerned had no other reasonable way in a situation of distress of saving the author's life or the lives of other persons entrusted to his care.¹¹⁵ This would cover, for example, the agreement in the 1946 US–Yugoslav correspondence that only in an emergency would unauthorised entry into foreign airspace be justified,¹¹⁶ or the seeking of refuge in a foreign port without authorisation by a ship's captain in storm conditions.¹¹⁷

The difference between distress and *force majeure* is that in the former case there is an element of choice. This is often illusory since in both cases extreme peril exists and whether or not the situation provides an opportunity for real choice is a matter of some difficulty.¹¹⁸ The Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior* arbitration¹¹⁹ noted that three conditions were required to be satisfied in order for this defence to be applicable to the French action in repatriating its two agents: first, the existence of exceptional circumstances of extreme urgency involving medical and other considerations of an elementary nature, provided always that a prompt recognition of the existence of those exceptional circumstances is subsequently obtained from the other interested party or is clearly demonstrated; secondly, the re-establishment of the original situation as soon as the reasons of emergency invoked to justify the breach of the obligation (i.e. the repatriation) had disappeared; thirdly, the existence of a good faith effort to try to

¹¹¹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, p. 133. ¹¹² ILC Commentary 2001, p. 183.

¹¹³ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 551. ¹¹⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 553.

¹¹⁵ ILC Commentary 2001, p. 189. This would not apply if the situation of distress is due wholly or partly to the conduct of the state invoking it or the act in question is likely to create a comparable or greater peril, article 24(2).

¹¹⁶ See above, p. 541.

¹¹⁷ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, p. 134 and ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 189–90.

¹¹⁸ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, pp. 133–5. ¹¹⁹ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 555.

obtain the consent of New Zealand according to the terms of the 1986 Agreement.¹²⁰ It was concluded that France had failed to observe these conditions (except as far as the removal of one of the agents on medical grounds was concerned).

Article 25 provides that necessity may not be invoked unless the act was the only means for the state to safeguard an essential interest against a 'grave and imminent peril' and the act does not seriously impair an essential interest of the other state or states or of the international community as a whole. Further, necessity may not be invoked if the international obligation in question excludes the possibility or the state has itself contributed to the situation of necessity.¹²¹ An example of this kind of situation is provided by the *Torrey Canyon*,¹²² where a Liberian oil tanker went aground off the UK coast but outside territorial waters, spilling large quantities of oil. After salvage attempts, the UK bombed the ship. The ILC took the view that this action was legitimate in the circumstances because of a state of necessity.¹²³ It was only after the incident that international agreements were concluded dealing with this kind of situation.¹²⁴

The Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior* case took the view that the defence of state necessity was 'controversial'.¹²⁵ However, the International Court in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case considered that it was 'a ground recognised in customary international law for precluding the wrongfulness of an act not in conformity with an international obligation', although it could only be accepted 'on an exceptional basis'.¹²⁶ The Court referred to the conditions laid down in an earlier version of, and essentially reproduced in, article 25 and stated that such conditions must be cumulatively satisfied.¹²⁷ In *M/V Saiga* (No. 2), the International

¹²⁰ See above, p. 779. ¹²¹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 194.

¹²² Cmnd 3246, 1967. See also below, chapter 15, p. 900, note 322.

¹²³ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, p. 39. See also the *Company General of the Orinoco* case, 10 RIAA, p. 280.

¹²⁴ See e.g. the International Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969.

¹²⁵ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 554–5. The doctrine has also been controversial in academic writings: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, part 1, pp. 47–9. See also J. Barboza, 'Necessity (Revisited) in International Law' in *Essays in Honour of Judge Manfred Lachs* (ed. J. Makarczyk), The Hague, 1984, p. 27, and R. Boed, 'State of Necessity as a Justification for Internationally Wrongful Conduct', 3 *Yale Human Rights and Development Journal*, 2000, p. 1.

¹²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 40; 116 ILR, p. 1. See also *R v. Director of the Serious Fraud Office and BAE Systems* [2008] EWHC 714 (Admin), paras. 143 ff.

¹²⁷ ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 41. In addition, the state could not be the sole judge of whether these strictly defined conditions had been met. See also the *Construction of a Wall* advisory opinion, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 194–5; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 113–15.

Tribunal for the Law of the Sea discussed the doctrine on the basis of the ILC draft as approved by the International Court, but found that it did not apply as no evidence had been produced by Guinea to show that its essential interests were in grave and imminent peril and, in any event, Guinea's interests in maximising its tax revenue from the sale of gas oil to fishing vessels could be safeguarded by means other than extending its customs law to parts of the exclusive economic zone.¹²⁸

*Invocation of state responsibility*¹²⁹

Article 42 of the ILC Articles stipulates that a state is entitled as an injured state¹³⁰ to invoke¹³¹ the responsibility of another state if the obligation breached is owed to that state individually or to a group of states, including that state or the international community as a whole, and the breach of the obligation specially affects that state or is of such a character as radically to change the position of all the other states to which the obligation is owed with respect to the further performance of the obligation. Responsibility may not be invoked if the injured state has validly waived the claim or is to be considered as having, by reason of its conduct, validly acquiesced in the lapse of the claim.¹³² Any waiver would need to be clear and unequivocal,¹³³ while the question of acquiescence would have to be judged carefully in the light of the particular circumstances.¹³⁴ Where several states are injured by the same wrongful act, each state may separately invoke responsibility,¹³⁵ and where several states are responsible, the responsibility of each may be invoked.¹³⁶

¹²⁸ 120 ILR, pp. 143, 191–2.

¹²⁹ See e.g. Annacker, 'Part Two', pp. 214 ff. See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 294.

¹³⁰ The provisions concerning the injured state were particularly complex in earlier formulations: see e.g. article 40 of Part II of the ILC Draft Articles of 1996. See also Crawford, *Articles*, pp. 23 ff.

¹³¹ I.e. taking measures of a formal kind, such as presenting a claim against another state or commencing proceedings before an international court or tribunal but not simply protesting: see ILC Commentary 2001, p. 294.

¹³² Article 45. See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 307.

¹³³ See the *Nauru (Preliminary Objection)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 247; 97 ILR, p. 1.

¹³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 253–4.

¹³⁵ Article 46. See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 311.

¹³⁶ Article 47. See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 313, noting that the general rule in international law is that of separate responsibility of a state for its own wrongful acts. There is neither a rule of joint and separate responsibility nor a prohibition of this. It will depend on the circumstances. See the *Eurotunnel* case, 132 ILR, pp. 1, 59–60. Note that the UK has taken the position that with regard to combined operations in Iraq, 'each nation

In the *Barcelona Traction* case, the International Court referred to the obligations of a state towards the international community as a whole as distinct from those owed to another state.¹³⁷ Article 48 builds upon this principle and provides that a state other than an injured state may invoke the responsibility of another state if either the obligation is owed to a group of states including that state, and is established for the protection of a collective interest of the group, or the obligation breached is owed to the international community as a whole. In such cases, cessation of the wrongful act and assurances and guarantees of non-repetition may be claimed,¹³⁸ as well as reparation.¹³⁹

The consequences of internationally wrongful acts

Cessation

The state responsible for the internationally wrongful act is under an obligation to cease that act, if it is continuing, and to offer appropriate assurances and guarantees of non-repetition if circumstances so require.¹⁴⁰ The Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior* case held that in order for cessation to arise, the wrongful act had to have a continuing character and the violated rule must still be in force at the date the order is given.¹⁴¹ The obligation to offer assurances of non-repetition was raised by Germany and discussed by the Court in the *LaGrand* case.¹⁴² The Court held that a US commitment to ensure implementation of specific measures was sufficient to meet Germany's request for a general assurance of non-repetition,¹⁴³ while with regard to Germany's request for specific assurances, the Court noted that should the US fail in its obligation of consular notification, it would then be incumbent upon that state to allow the review and reconsideration of any conviction and sentence of a German

would be directly liable for the consequences of actions taken by its own forces', HC Deb., vol. 436, col. 862W, 12 July 2005, UKMIL, 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 875.

¹³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 32; 46 ILR, p. 178.

¹³⁸ As per article 30. ¹³⁹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 318.

¹⁴⁰ Article 30 and see ILC Commentary 2001, p. 216. See also C. Derman, 'La Cessation de l'Acte Illicite', *Revue Belge de Droit International Public*, 1990 I, p. 477.

¹⁴¹ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 573.

¹⁴² ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 466; 134 ILR, p. 1. Cf. the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 68; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 171.

¹⁴³ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 512–13, 134 ILR, pp. 1, 50–1. This was reaffirmed in the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 69; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 172.

national taking place in these circumstances by taking account of the violation of the rights contained in the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations.¹⁴⁴

Reparation¹⁴⁵

The basic principle with regard to reparation, or the remedying of a breach of an international obligation for which the state concerned is responsible,¹⁴⁶ was laid down in the *Chorzów Factory* case, where the Permanent Court of International Justice emphasised that,

The essential principle contained in the actual notion of an illegal act is that reparation must, as far as possible, wipe out all the consequences of the illegal act and re-establish the situation which would, in all probability, have existed if that act had not been committed.¹⁴⁷

This principle was reaffirmed in a number of cases, including, for example, by the International Court in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case¹⁴⁸ and in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case,¹⁴⁹ and by the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in *M/V Saiga (No. 2)*.¹⁵⁰

¹⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 513–41; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 51–2. See, as to consular notification, above, chapter 13, p. 773.

¹⁴⁵ See e.g. M. Whiteman, *Damages in International Law*, Washington, 3 vols., 1937–43; F. A. Mann, 'The Consequences of an International Wrong in International and National Law', 48 BYIL, 1978, p. 1; de Aréchaga, 'International Responsibility', pp. 564 ff., and de Aréchaga, 'International Law in the Past Third of the Century', 159 HR, 1978, pp. 1, 285–7. See also Cheng, *General Principles*, pp. 233 ff.; Brownlie, *System*, part VIII, and C. Gray, *Judicial Remedies in International Law*, Oxford, 1987.

¹⁴⁶ See e.g. C. Dominicé, 'Observations sur les Droits de l'État Victime d'un Fiat Internationallement Illicite' in *Droit International* (ed. P. Weil), Paris, 1982, vol. I, p. 25, and B. Graefrath, 'Responsibility and Damage Caused: Relationship between Responsibility and Damage', HR, 1984 II, pp. 19, 73 ff.

¹⁴⁷ PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928, pp. 47–8. In an earlier phase of the case, the Court stated that, 'It is a principle of international law that the breach of an engagement involves an obligation to make reparation in an adequate form. Reparation therefore is the indispensable complement of a failure to apply a convention', PCIJ, Series A, No. 9, 1927, p. 21. See also the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 45; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 571, where the Court held that Iran was under a duty to make reparation to the US.

¹⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 80; 116 ILR, p. 1.

¹⁴⁹ ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 460. See also the *Construction of a Wall* advisory opinion, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 198; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 117–18 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 257.

¹⁵⁰ 120 ILR, pp. 143, 199. See also *S.D. Myers v. Canada* 121 ILR, pp. 72, 127–8; *Aloeboetoe v. Suriname*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1993, Series C, No. 15 at para. 43; 116 ILR, p. 260; *Loayza Tamayo v. Peru (Reparations)*, Inter-American Court of Human

Article 31 of the Articles on State Responsibility provides that the responsible state is under an obligation to make full reparation for the injury caused by the internationally wrongful act and that injury includes any damage, whether material or moral, caused by the internationally wrongful act of a state. The obligation to make reparation is governed in all its aspects by international law, irrespective of domestic law provisions.¹⁵¹ Article 34 provides that full reparation for the injury caused by the internationally wrongful act shall take the form of restitution, compensation and satisfaction, either singly or in combination.¹⁵²

Restitution in kind is the obvious method of performing the reparation, since it aims to re-establish the situation which existed before the wrongful act was committed.¹⁵³ While restitution has occurred in the past,¹⁵⁴ it is more rare today, if only because the nature of such disputes has changed. A large number of cases now involve expropriation disputes, where it is politically difficult for the state concerned to return expropriated property to multinational companies.¹⁵⁵ Recognising some of these problems, article 35 provides for restitution as long as and to the extent that it is not

Rights, 1998, Series C, No. 42 at para. 84; 116 ILR, p. 388, and *Suarez-Rosero v. Ecuador (Reparations)*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1999, Series C, No. 44 at para. 39; 118 ILR, p. 92, regarding this as 'one of the fundamental principles of general international law, repeatedly elaborated upon by the jurisprudence'. See also the decision of 14 March 2003 of an UNCITRAL Arbitral Tribunal in *CME Czech Republic BV v. The Czech Republic*, Final Award.

¹⁵¹ See e.g. *Suarez-Rosero v. Ecuador (Reparations)*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1999, Series C, No. 44 at para. 42; 118 ILR, p. 92. See also article 32 of the ILC Articles.

¹⁵² See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 235 and *Suarez-Rosero v. Ecuador (Reparations)*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1999, Series C, No. 44 at para. 42; 118 ILR, p. 92. Note further that interest is payable on any principal sum payable when necessary to achieve full reparation and will run from the date the principal sum should have been paid until the date it is paid, article 38 and see ILC Commentary 2001, p. 268. Article 39 provides that in the determination of reparation, account shall be taken of the contribution to the injury by wilful or negligent action or omission of the injured state or any person or entity in relation to whom reparation is sought: see also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 275 and the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 487 and 508; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 26 and 46.

¹⁵³ See e.g. Annacker, 'Part Two', pp. 221 ff.

¹⁵⁴ See e.g. the post-1945 Peace Treaties with Hungary, Romania and Italy. See also the *Spanish Zone of Morocco* case, 2 RIAA, p. 617 (1925); 2 AD, p. 157; the *Martini* case, 2 RIAA, p. 977 (1930); 5 AD, p. 153; the *Palmagiero Gold Fields* case, 5 RIAA, p. 298 (1931) and the *Russian Indemnity* case, 11 RIAA, p. 431 (1912). Brownlie notes that in certain cases, such as the illegal possession of territory or acquisition of objects of special cultural, historical or religious significance, restitution may be the only legal remedy, *System*, p. 210, and the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 36–7; 33 ILR, pp. 48, 73.

¹⁵⁵ See e.g. the *Aminoil* case, 66 ILR, pp. 529, 533.

materially impossible and does not involve a burden out of all proportion to the benefit deriving from restitution instead of compensation.¹⁵⁶ In the *Rainbow Warrior* arbitration,¹⁵⁷ New Zealand sought *inter alia* an Order that the French Government return its agents from France to their previous place of confinement in the Pacific as required by the original agreement of 9 July 1986. New Zealand termed this request '*restitutio in integrum*'. France argued that 'cessation' of the denounced behaviour was the appropriate terminology and remedy, although in the circumstances barred by time.¹⁵⁸ The Tribunal pointed to the debate in the International Law Commission on the differences between the two concepts¹⁵⁹ and held that the French approach was correct.¹⁶⁰ The obligation to end an illegal situation was not reparation but a return to the original obligation, that is cessation of the illegal conduct. However, it was held that since the primary obligation was no longer in force (in the sense that the obligation to keep the agents in the Pacific island concerned expired under the initial agreement on 22 July 1989), an order for cessation of the illegal conduct could serve no purpose.¹⁶¹

The question of the appropriate reparation for expropriation was discussed in several cases. In the *BP* case,¹⁶² the tribunal emphasised that there was

no explicit support for the proposition that specific performance, and even less so *restitutio in integrum*, are remedies of public international law available at the option of a party suffering a wrongful breach by a co-contracting party... the responsibility incurred by the defaulting party for breach of an obligation to perform a contractual undertaking is a duty to pay damages... the concept of *restitutio in integrum* has been employed merely as a vehicle for establishing the amount of damages.¹⁶³

However, in the *Texaco* case,¹⁶⁴ which similarly involved Libyan nationalisation of oil concessions, the arbitrator held that restitution in kind under international law (and indeed under Libyan law) constituted

¹⁵⁶ See also ILC Commentary 2001, p. 237.

¹⁵⁷ 82 ILR, p. 499. ¹⁵⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 571.

¹⁵⁹ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, pp. 79 ff. ¹⁶⁰ 82 ILR, p. 572.

¹⁶¹ *Ibid.*, p. 573. Note that article 30 of the ILC Articles provides that the injured state is entitled, where appropriate, to obtain assurances or guarantees of non-repetition of the wrongful act.

¹⁶² 53 ILR, p. 297. This concerned the expropriation by Libya of BP oil concessions.

¹⁶³ *Ibid.*, p. 347. ¹⁶⁴ 17 ILM, 1978, p. 1; 53 ILR, p. 389.

the normal sanction for non-performance of contractual obligations and that it is inapplicable only to the extent that restoration of the *status quo ante* is impossible.¹⁶⁵

This is an approach that in political terms, particularly in international contract cases, is unlikely to prove acceptable to states since it appears a violation of sovereignty. The problems, indeed, of enforcing such restitution awards against a recalcitrant state may be imagined.¹⁶⁶

The International Court noted in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project (Hungary/Slovakia)* case that it was a ‘well-established rule of international law that an injured state is entitled to obtain compensation from the state which has committed an internationally wrongful act for the damage caused by it’.¹⁶⁷ Article 36(1) provides that in so far as damage caused by an internationally wrongful act is not made good by restitution, the state responsible is under an obligation to give compensation.¹⁶⁸ Article 36(2) states that the compensation to be provided shall cover any financially assessable damage including loss of profits in so far as this is established.¹⁶⁹ The aim is to deal with economic losses actually caused. Punitive or exemplary damages go beyond the concept of reparation as such¹⁷⁰ and were indeed held in *Velásquez Rodríguez v. Honduras*

¹⁶⁵ 17 ILM, 1978, p. 36; 53 ILR, pp. 507–8. In fact the parties settled the dispute by Libya supplying \$152 million worth of crude oil, 17 ILM, 1998, p. 2.

¹⁶⁶ These points were explained by the arbitrator in the *Liamco* case, 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 1, 63–4; 62 ILR, pp. 141, 198. See also the *Aminoil* case, 21 ILM, 1982, p. 976; 66 ILR, p. 519. See further e.g. A. Fatouros, ‘International Law and the International Contract’, 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 134. The issue of compensation for expropriated property is discussed further below, p. 827.

¹⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 81; 116 ILR, p. 1. See also the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 198; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 117–18, and the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 460. In the latter case, the Court referred to article 36.

¹⁶⁸ In the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 81; 116 ILR, p. 1, the Court held that both states were entitled to claim and obliged to provide compensation. Accordingly, the parties were called upon to renounce or cancel all financial claims and counter-claims. See more generally D. Shelton, *Remedies in International Human Rights Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, and C. N. Brower and J. D. Brueschke, *The Iran–United States Claims Tribunal*, The Hague, 1998, chapters 14–18.

¹⁶⁹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 243. See also the Report of the International Law Commission on the Work of its Forty-Fifth Session, A/48/10, p. 185.

¹⁷⁰ See generally Whiteman, *Damages*, and Aréchaga, ‘International Responsibility’, p. 571. See also N. Jorgensen, ‘A Reappraisal of Punitive Damages in International Law’, 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 247; *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1956, vol. II, pp. 211–12, and Annacker, ‘Part Two’, pp. 225 ff.

(*Compensation*) to be a principle 'not applicable in international law at this time'.¹⁷¹

Compensation is usually assessed on the basis of the 'fair market value' of the property lost, although the method used to calculate this may depend upon the type of property involved.¹⁷² Loss of profits may also be claimed where, for example, there has been interference with use and enjoyment or unlawful taking of income-producing property or in some cases with regard to loss of future income.¹⁷³

Damage includes both material and non-material (or moral) damage.¹⁷⁴ Monetary compensation may thus be paid for individual pain and suffering and insults. In the *I'm Alone*¹⁷⁵ case, for example, a sum of \$25,000 was suggested as recompense for the indignity suffered by Canada, in having a ship registered in Montreal unlawfully sunk. A further example of this is provided by the France–New Zealand Agreement of 9 July 1986, concerning the sinking of the vessel *Rainbow Warrior* by French agents in New Zealand, the second paragraph of which provided for France to pay the sum of \$7 million as compensation to New Zealand for 'all the damage which it has suffered'.¹⁷⁶ It is clear from the context that it covered more than material damage.¹⁷⁷ In the subsequent arbitration in 1990, the Tribunal declared that

an order for the payment of monetary compensation can be made in respect of the breach of international obligations involving... serious moral and legal damage, even though there is no material damage.¹⁷⁸

However, the Tribunal declined to make an order for monetary compensation, primarily since New Zealand was seeking alternative remedies.¹⁷⁹

Satisfaction constitutes a third form of reparation. This relates to non-monetary compensation and would include official apologies, the punishment of guilty minor officials or the formal acknowledgement of the unlawful character of an act.¹⁸⁰ The Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior*

¹⁷¹ Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1989, Series C, No. 7, pp. 34, 52; 95 ILR, p. 306.

¹⁷² See on this the analysis in the ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 255 ff. See also the UNCITRAL Arbitral Tribunal decision of 14 March 2003 in *CME Czech Republic BV v. The Czech Republic*, Final Award.

¹⁷³ *Ibid.*, pp. 260 ff. ¹⁷⁴ See article 31(2).

¹⁷⁵ 3 RIAA, p. 1609 (1935); 7 AD, p. 203. ¹⁷⁶ 74 ILR, pp. 241, 274.

¹⁷⁷ See the Arbitral Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior* case, 82 ILR, pp. 499, 574.

¹⁷⁸ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 575. ¹⁷⁹ *Ibid.*

¹⁸⁰ See Annacker, 'Part Two', pp. 230 ff.; C. Barthe, 'Réflexions sur la Satisfaction en Droit International', 49 AFDI, 2003, p. 105; de Aréchaga, 'International Responsibility', p. 572;

arbitration¹⁸¹ pointed to the long-established practice of states and international courts of using satisfaction as a remedy for the breach of an international obligation, particularly where moral or legal damage had been done directly to the state. In the circumstances of the case, it concluded that the public condemnation of France for its breaches of treaty obligations to New Zealand made by the Tribunal constituted 'appropriate satisfaction'.¹⁸² The Tribunal also made an interesting 'Recommendation' that the two states concerned establish a fund to promote close relations between their respective citizens and additionally recommended that the French government 'make an initial contribution equivalent to \$2 million to that fund'.¹⁸³

In some cases, a party to a dispute will simply seek a declaration that the activity complained of is illegal.¹⁸⁴ In territorial disputes, for example, such declarations may be of particular significance. The International Court, however, adopted a narrow view of the Australian submissions in the *Nuclear Tests* case,¹⁸⁵ an approach that was the subject of a vigorous dissenting opinion.¹⁸⁶ Article 37 of the ILC Articles provides that a state responsible for a wrongful act is obliged to give satisfaction for the injury thereby caused in so far as it cannot be made good by restitution or compensation. Satisfaction may consist of an acknowledgement of the breach, an expression of regret, a formal apology or another appropriate modality.¹⁸⁷ An example of such another modality might be an assurance or guarantee of non-repetition.¹⁸⁸

D. W. Bowett, 'Treaties and State Responsibility' in *Mélanges Virally*, Paris, 1991, pp. 137, 144; and Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, p. 653. See also the *I'm Alone* case, 3 RIAA, pp. 1609, 1618 (1935); 7 AD, p. 206 and the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 35; 16 AD, pp. 155, 167.

¹⁸¹ 82 ILR, p. 499. ¹⁸² 82 ILR, p. 577.

¹⁸³ *Ibid.*, p. 578. See also the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 463.

¹⁸⁴ See e.g. *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia*, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, p. 18 (1926) and the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 35; 16 AD, p. 155. Note also that under article 41 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950, the European Court of Human Rights may award 'just satisfaction', which often takes the form of a declaration by the Court that a violation of the Convention has taken place: see e.g. the *Neumeister* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 17 (1974); 41 ILR, p. 316. See also the *Pauwels* case, *ibid.*, No. 135 (1989); the *Lamy* case, *ibid.*, No. 151 (1989) and the *Huber* case, *ibid.*, No. 188 (1990).

¹⁸⁵ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 398.

¹⁸⁶ ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 312–19; 57 ILR, p. 457.

¹⁸⁷ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 263. Satisfaction is not to be disproportionate to the injury and not in a form which is humiliating to the responsible state, article 37(3).

¹⁸⁸ See above, p. 800.

Serious breaches of peremptory norms (jus cogens)

One of the major debates taking place with regard to state responsibility concerns the question of international crimes. A distinction was drawn in article 19 of the ILC Draft Articles 1996 between international crimes and international delicts within the context of internationally unlawful acts. It was provided that an internationally wrongful act which results from the breach by a state of an international obligation so essential for the protection of fundamental interests of the international community that its breach was recognised as a crime by that community as a whole constitutes an international crime. All other internationally wrongful acts were termed international delicts.¹⁸⁹ Examples of such international crimes provided were aggression, the establishment or maintenance by force of colonial domination, slavery, genocide, apartheid and massive pollution of the atmosphere or of the seas. However, the question as to whether states can be criminally responsible has been highly controversial.¹⁹⁰ Some have argued that the concept is of no legal value and cannot be justified in principle, not least because the problem of exacting penal sanctions from states, while in principle possible, could only be creative of instability.¹⁹¹ Others argued that, particularly since 1945, the attitude towards certain crimes by states has altered so as to bring them within the realm of international law.¹⁹² The Rapporteur in his commentary to draft article 19 pointed to three specific changes since 1945 in this context to justify its inclusion: first, the development of the concept of *jus cogens* as a set of principles from which no derogation is permitted;¹⁹³ secondly, the rise of individual criminal responsibility directly under international law; and thirdly, the UN Charter and its provision for enforcement action against a state in the event of threats to or breaches of the peace or acts of

¹⁸⁹ See M. Mohr, 'The ILC's Distinction between "International Crimes" and "International Delicts" and Its Implications' in Spinedi and Simma, *UN Codification*, p. 115, and K. Marek, 'Criminalising State Responsibility', 14 *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1978–9, p. 460.

¹⁹⁰ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 533 ff. See also G. Gilbert, 'The Criminal Responsibility of States', 39 *ICLQ*, 1990, p. 345, and N. Jorgensen, *The Responsibility of States for International Crimes*, Oxford, 2000. As to individual criminal responsibility, see above, chapter 8.

¹⁹¹ See e.g. I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963, pp. 150–4.

¹⁹² See e.g. de Aréchaga, 'International Law'.

¹⁹³ See e.g. article 53 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 and below, p. 944.

aggression.¹⁹⁴ However, the ILC changed its approach¹⁹⁵ in the light of the controversial nature of the suggestion and the Articles as finally approved in 2001 omit any mention of international crimes of states, but rather seek to focus upon the particular consequences flowing from a breach of obligations *erga omnes* and of peremptory norms (*jus cogens*).¹⁹⁶

Article 41 provides that states are under a duty to co-operate to bring to an end, through lawful means, any serious breach¹⁹⁷ by a state of an obligation arising under a peremptory norm of international law¹⁹⁸ and not to recognise as lawful any such situation.¹⁹⁹

*Diplomatic protection and nationality of claims*²⁰⁰

The doctrine of state responsibility with regard to injuries to nationals rests upon twin pillars, the attribution to one state of the unlawful acts and omissions of its officials and its organs (legislative, judicial and executive) and the capacity of the other state to adopt the claim of the injured party. Indeed article 44 of the ILC Articles provides that the responsibility of a state may not be invoked if the claim is not brought in accordance with any applicable rule relating to nationality of claims.²⁰¹

Nationality is the link between the individual and his or her state as regards particular benefits and obligations. It is also the vital link between the

¹⁹⁴ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1976, vol. II, pp. 102–5. Note also the Report of the International Law Commission, 1994, A/49/10, pp. 329 ff. and *ibid.*, 1995, A/50/10, pp. 93 ff.

¹⁹⁵ See Crawford, *Articles*, pp. 17 ff. for a critical analysis of draft article 19 and a discussion of subsequent developments.

¹⁹⁶ See above, chapter 3, p. 123.

¹⁹⁷ Article 40(2) describes a breach as serious if it involves a gross or systematic failure by the responsible state to fulfil the obligation.

¹⁹⁸ Examples given of peremptory norms are the prohibitions of aggression, slavery and the slave trade, genocide, racial discrimination and apartheid, and torture, and the principle of self-determination: see ILC Commentary 2001, pp. 283–4.

¹⁹⁹ See, as to examples of non-recognition, above, chapter 9, p. 468. Article 41(3) is in the form of a saving clause, providing that the article is without prejudice to other consequences referred to in Part Two of the Articles and to such further consequences that such a breach may have under international law.

²⁰⁰ See e.g. *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 511; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 808; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 459 ff., and A. Vermeer-Künzli, 'A Matter of Interest: Diplomatic Protection and State Responsibility *Erga Omnes*', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 553. See also F. Orrego Vicuña, 'Interim Report on the Changing Law of Nationality of Claims', International Law Association, Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference, London, 2000, p. 631.

²⁰¹ See ILC Commentary 2001, p. 304.

individual and the benefits of international law. Although international law is now moving to a stage whereby individuals may acquire rights free from the interposition of the state, the basic proposition remains that in a state-oriented world system, it is only through the medium of the state that the individual may obtain the full range of benefits available under international law, and nationality is the key.²⁰²

The principle of diplomatic protection originally developed in the context of the treatment by a state of foreign nationals. However, the International Court has pointed out that, 'Owing to the substantive development of international law over recent decades in respect of the rights it accords to individuals, the scope *ratione materiae* of diplomatic protection, originally limited to alleged violations of the minimum standard of treatment of aliens, has subsequently widened to include, *inter alia*, internationally guaranteed human rights'.²⁰³

The International Law Commission adopted Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection in 2006.²⁰⁴ Article 1 provides that, for the purposes of the draft articles,

diplomatic protection consists of the invocation by a state, through diplomatic action or other means of peaceful settlement, of the responsibility of another state for an injury caused by an internationally wrongful act of that state to a natural or legal person that is a national of the former state with a view to the implementation of such responsibility.²⁰⁵

A state is under a duty to protect its nationals and it may take up their claims against other states. Diplomatic protection includes, in a broad sense, consular action, negotiation, mediation, judicial and arbitral proceedings, reprisals, a retort, severance of diplomatic relations, and economic pressures.²⁰⁶ There is under international law, however, no obligation for states to provide diplomatic protection for their nationals

²⁰² See further on nationality, above, chapter 12, p. 659. Note also the claim for reparations made by Croatia in its application of 2 July 1999 to the International Court against Yugoslavia in the *Application of the Genocide Convention* case both on behalf of the state and 'as *parens patriae* for its citizens', Application, pp. 20–1.

²⁰³ *Diallo (Guinea v. Democratic Republic of the Congo)*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 39.

²⁰⁴ See Report of the ILC on its 58th Session, A/61/10, 2006, p. 13.

²⁰⁵ See the *Diallo (Guinea v. Democratic Republic of the Congo)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 39, where the Court noted that article 1 reflected customary law.

²⁰⁶ *Kaunda v. President of South Africa* CCT 23/04, [2004] ZACC 5, paras. 26–7 and *Van Zyl v. Government of RSA* [2007] SCA 109 (RSA), para. 1.

abroad,²⁰⁷ although it can be said that nationals have a right to request their government to consider diplomatic protection and that government is under a duty to consider that request rationally.²⁰⁸

In addition, once a state does this, the claim then becomes that of the state. This is a result of the historical reluctance to permit individuals the right in international law to prosecute claims against foreign countries, for reasons relating to state sovereignty and non-interference in internal affairs.

This basic principle was elaborated in the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case.²⁰⁹ The Permanent Court of International Justice pointed out that:

By taking up the case of one of its subjects and by resorting to diplomatic action or international judicial proceedings on his behalf, a state is in reality asserting its own rights, its right to ensure, in the person of its subjects, respect for the rules of international law . . .

Once a state has taken up a case on behalf of one of its subjects before an international tribunal, in the eyes of the latter the state is sole claimant.²¹⁰ It follows that the exercise of diplomatic protection cannot be regarded as intervention contrary to international law by the state concerned. Coupled with this right of the state is the constraint that a state may in principle adopt the claims only of its own nationals. Diplomatic protection may not extend to the adoption of claims of foreign subjects,²¹¹ although it has been suggested 'as an exercise in progressive development of the law' that a state

²⁰⁷ See e.g. *HMHK v. Netherlands* 94 ILR, p. 342 and *Comercial F SA v. Council of Ministers* 88 ILR, p. 691. See also *Kaunda v. President of South Africa* CCT 23/04, [2004] ZACC 5, paras. 29 and 34, noting that diplomatic protection is not recognised in international law as a human right, but a prerogative of the state to be exercised at its discretion (per Chief Justice Chaskalson).

²⁰⁸ See *Van Zyl v. Government of RSA* [2007] SCA 109 (RSA), para. 6.

²⁰⁹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, 1924, p. 12. See the *Panevezys-Saldutiskis* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 76; 9 AD, p. 308. See also Vattel, who noted that 'whoever ill-treats a citizen indirectly injures the state, which must protect that citizen', *The Law of Nations*, 1916 trans., p. 136.

²¹⁰ See e.g. *Lonrho Exports Ltd v. ECGD* [1996] 4 All ER 673, 687; 108 ILR, p. 596.

²¹¹ However, note article 20 of the European Community Treaty, under which every person holding the nationality of a member state (and thus a citizen of the European Union under article 17) is entitled to receive diplomatic protection by the diplomatic or consular authority of any member state on the same conditions as nationals of that state when in the territory of a third state where the country of his or her nationality is not represented.

may adopt the claim of a stateless person or refugee who at the dates of the injury and presentation of the claim is lawfully and habitually resident in that state.²¹² Such diplomatic protection is not a right of the national concerned, but a right of the state which it may or may not choose to exercise.²¹³ It is not a duty incumbent upon the state under international law. As the Court noted in the *Barcelona Traction* case,

within the limits prescribed by international law, a state may exercise diplomatic protection by whatever means and to whatever extent it thinks fit, for it is its own right that the state is asserting. Should the natural or legal person on whose behalf it is acting consider that their rights are not adequately protected, they have no remedy in international law.²¹⁴

The UK takes the view that the taking up of a claim against a foreign state is a matter within the prerogative of the Crown, but various principles are outlined in its publication, 'Rules regarding the Taking up of International Claims by Her Majesty's Government', stated to be based on international law.²¹⁵ This distinguishes between formal claims and informal representations. In the former case, Rule VIII provides that, 'If, in exhausting any municipal remedies, the claimant has met with prejudice or obstruction, which are a denial of justice, HMG [Her Majesty's Government] may intervene on his behalf in order to secure justice.' In the latter case, the UK will consider making representations if, when all legal remedies have been exhausted, the British national has evidence of a miscarriage or denial of justice. This may apply to cases where fundamental violations of the national's human rights had demonstrably altered the course of justice. The UK has also stated that it would consider making

²¹² See article 8 of the Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection. In *R v. Al-Rawi* [2006] EWCA Civ 1279, para. 89, the Court of Appeal held that there was no basis for accepting that non-British nationals enjoyed an *Abbasi* expectation that the UK government would consider making representations to a foreign state on their behalf. Article 8 was not regarded as part of customary international law, *ibid.*, paras. 118–20. Note the special position of a national working for an international organisation, where there may be a danger to the independence of the official where diplomatic protection is exercised: see e.g. the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 183.

²¹³ See e.g. the *Interhandel* case, ICJ Reports, 1957, pp. 6, 27; *Administrative Decision No. V* 7 RIAA, p. 119; 2 AD, pp. 185, 191 and *US v. Dulles* 222 F.2d 390. See also DUSPIL, 1973, pp. 332–4.

²¹⁴ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 44; 46 ILR, p. 178.

²¹⁵ See 37 ICLQ, 1988, p. 1006 and UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 526.

direct representations to third governments where it is believed that they were in breach of their international obligations.²¹⁶

The issue was discussed by the Court of Appeal in *Abbasi v. Secretary of State*.²¹⁷ It was noted that there was no authority which supported the imposition of an enforceable duty on the UK authorities to protect its citizens; however, the Foreign Office had a discretion whether to exercise the right it had to protect British citizens and had indicated what a citizen may expect of it through, for example, the Rules regarding the Taking up of International Claims. The Court concluded that, in view of the Rules and official statements made,²¹⁸ there was a 'clear acceptance by the government of a role in relation to protecting the rights of British citizens abroad, where there is evidence of miscarriage or denial of justice'.²¹⁹ While the expectations raised by such Rules and statements were limited and the discretion wide, there was no reason why any decision or inaction by the government should not be judicially reviewable under English law, if it could be shown that such decision or inaction were irrational or contrary to legitimate expectation. It might thus be said that there existed an obligation to consider the position of any particular British citizen and consider the extent to which some action might be taken on his behalf.²²⁰ This legitimate expectation of the citizen was that his or her request would be 'considered', and that in that consideration 'all relevant factors will be thrown into the balance'.²²¹ The Court held that the 'extreme case' where judicial review would lie in relation to diplomatic protection would be if the Foreign and Commonwealth Office were, contrary to its stated practice, to refuse even to consider whether to make diplomatic representations on behalf of a subject whose fundamental rights were being violated.²²²

The scope of a state to extend its nationality²²³ to whomsoever it wishes is unlimited, except perhaps in so far as it affects other states. Article 1 of the Hague Convention on Certain Questions Relating to the Conflict of Nationality Laws, 1930, for example, provides that,

²¹⁶ UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, pp. 528–9. ²¹⁷ [2002] EWCA Civ. 1598; 126 ILR, p. 685.

²¹⁸ See UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, pp. 528–9. ²¹⁹ [2002] EWCA Civ. 1598, para. 92.

²²⁰ *Ibid.*, para. 106. ²²¹ *Ibid.*, paras. 98–9.

²²² *Ibid.*, para. 104. The Court noted that, 'In such, unlikely, circumstances we consider that it would be appropriate for the court to make a mandatory order to the Foreign Secretary to give due consideration to the applicant's case', *ibid.*

²²³ Whether acquired by birth, descent, succession of states, naturalisation, or in another manner not inconsistent with international law: see article 4 of the ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection.

It is for each state to determine under its own law who are its nationals. This law shall be recognised by other states in so far as it is consistent with international conventions, international custom, and the principles of law generally recognised with regard to nationality . . . ²²⁴

In the *Nottebohm* case,²²⁵ the International Court of Justice decided that only where there existed a genuine link between the claimant state and its national could the right of diplomatic protection arise. However, the facts of that case are critical to understanding the pertinent legal proposition. The Government of Liechtenstein instituted proceedings claiming restitution and compensation for Nottebohm against Guatemala for acts of the latter which were alleged to be contrary to international law. Guatemala replied that Nottebohm's right to Liechtenstein nationality and thus its diplomatic protection was questionable. The person in question was born in Germany in 1881 and, still a German national, applied for naturalisation in Liechtenstein in 1939. The point was, however, that since 1905 (and until 1943 when he was deported as a result of war measures) Nottebohm had been permanently resident in Guatemala and had carried on his business from there. The Court noted that Liechtenstein was entirely free, as was every state, to establish the rules necessary for the acquisition of its nationality, but the crux of the matter was whether Guatemala was obliged to recognise the grant of Liechtenstein nationality. The exercise of diplomatic protection by a state regarding one of its nationals brought the whole issue of nationality out of the sphere of domestic jurisdiction and onto the plane of international law.²²⁶ The Court emphasised that, according to state practice, nationality was a legal manifestation of the link between the person and the state granting nationality and the recognition

²²⁴ See *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco*, PCIJ Reports, 1923, Series B, No. 4, p. 24. See also article 3(2) of the European Convention on Nationality, 1997. This would include the rules of international human rights law: see e.g. *Proposed Amendments to the Naturalisation Provision of the Political Constitution of Costa Rica*, Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1984, Series A, No. 4, para. 38; 79 ILR, p. 282.

²²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 4; 22 ILR, p. 349. The Court emphasised that to exercise protection, e.g. by applying to the Court, was to place oneself on the plane of international law, *ibid.*, p. 16. See the *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, 1923, pp. 7, 21; 2 AD, p. 349, where it was noted that while questions of nationality were in principle within the domestic jurisdiction of states, the right of a state to use its discretion was limited by obligations undertaken towards other states. See also the *Flegenheimer* claim, 14 RIAA, p. 327 (1958); 25 ILR, p. 91, and article 1 of the 1930 Hague Convention on Nationality. See further on nationality and international law, above, chapter 12, p. 659.

²²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 20–1; 22 ILR, p. 357.

that the person was more closely connected with that state than with any other.²²⁷

Having brought out these concepts, the Court emphasised the tenuous nature of Nottebohm's links with Liechtenstein and the strength of his connection with Guatemala. Nottebohm had spent only a very short period of time in Liechtenstein and one of his brothers lived in Vaduz. Beyond that and the formal naturalisation process, there were no other links with that state. On the other hand, he had lived in Guatemala for some thirty years and had returned there upon obtaining his papers from Vaduz. Since the Liechtenstein nationality 'was granted without regard to the concept ... adopted in international relations' in the absence of any genuine connection, the Court held that Liechtenstein was not able to extend its diplomatic protection to Nottebohm as regards Guatemala.²²⁸ The case has been subject to criticism relating to the use of the doctrine of 'genuine connection' by the Court. The doctrine had until then been utilised with regard to the problems of dual nationality, so as to enable a decision to be made on whether one national state may sue the other on behalf of the particular national. Its extension to the issue of diplomatic protection appeared to be a new move altogether.²²⁹

The ILC in its Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection adopted in 2006 did not require establishment of a genuine link as a requirement of nationality²³⁰ and the Commentary argues that the *Nottebohm* case should be limited to its facts alone.²³¹

The nationality must exist at the date of the injury, and should continue until at least the date of the formal presentation of the claim, although this latter point may depend upon a variety of other facts, for example any agreement between the contending states as regards the claim.²³²

²²⁷ ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 23; 22 ILR, p. 359.

²²⁸ ICJ Reports, 1955, pp. 25–6; 22 ILR, p. 362.

²²⁹ See generally, Brownlie, *Principles*, chapter 19, and R. Y. Jennings, 'General Course on Principles of International Law', 121 HR, 1967, pp. 323, 459.

²³⁰ Article 4 provides that a state of nationality means a state whose nationality that person has acquired, in accordance with the law of that state, by birth, descent, naturalisation, succession of states or in any other manner, not inconsistent with international law.

²³¹ Report of the ILC on its 58th Session, A/61/10, 2006, pp. 32–3. See also the *Flegenheimer* claim, 14 RIAA, p. 327 (1958); 25 ILR, p. 91.

²³² See e.g. Borchard, *Diplomatic Protection*, pp. 660 ff.; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. VIII, 1967, pp. 1243–7, and the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 4; 22 ILR, p. 349. See also the view of the US State Department that it has consistently declined to espouse claims which have not been continuously owned by US nationals: see 76 AJIL, 1982, pp. 836–9, and the Rules regarding International Claims issued by the UK Foreign and Commonwealth Office, 1985, to the same effect: see 37 ICLQ, 1988, p. 1006. See also I. Sinclair, 'Nationality

Where an individual possesses dual or multiple nationality, any state of which he is a national may adopt a claim of his against a third state²³³ and there appears no need to establish a genuine link between the state of nationality and the dual or multiple national.²³⁴ In the case of more than one state of nationality, the rule appears to be that the state with which he has the more effective connection may be able to espouse his claim as against the other state. In the *Mergé* case,²³⁵ it was emphasised that the principle based on the sovereign equality of states, which excludes diplomatic protection in the case of dual nationality, must yield before the principle of effective nationality whenever such nationality is that of the claimant state. However, where such predominance is not proved, there would be no such yielding. In other words, the test for permitting protection by a state of a national against another state of which he is also a national is the test of effectiveness. This approach was reaffirmed by the Iran–US Claims Tribunal, where the Full Tribunal held that it had jurisdiction over claims against Iran by a dual national when the ‘dominant and effective nationality’ at the relevant time was American.²³⁶ Article 7 of the ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection provides that a state of nationality may not exercise diplomatic protection in respect of a person against a state of which the person is also a national unless the nationality of the former state is predominant, both at the time of the injury and at the date of the official presentation of the claim.

As far as a corporation is concerned, it appears that there must be some tangible link between it and the state seeking to espouse its claim. Different

of Claims: British Practice’, 27 BYIL, 1950, p. 125. Note that article 5(2) of the ILC Draft Articles provides that protection may be offered even where the person was not a national at the date of the injury, provided that the person had the nationality of a predecessor state or lost his or her previous nationality and acquired, for a reason unrelated to the bringing of the claim, the nationality of the former state in a manner not inconsistent with international law.

²³³ 14 RIAA, p. 236 (1955); 22 ILR, p. 443. See also the *Canevaro* case, 11 RIAA, p. 397 (1912). See article 6(1) of the ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection. See also article 3 of the Hague Convention on Certain Questions Relating to the Conflict of Nationality Laws, 1930.

²³⁴ See e.g. the *Salem* case, 2 RIAA, p. 1161 (1932); 6 AD, p. 188; the *Mergé* claim, 14 RIAA, p. 236 (1955); 22 ILR, p. 443 and *Dallal v. Iran* 3 Iran–US CTR, 1983, p. 23.

²³⁵ 14 RIAA, p. 236 (1955); 22 ILR, p. 443. See also the *Canevaro* case, 11 RIAA, p. 397 (1912). Cf. the *Salem* case, 2 RIAA, p. 1161 (1932); 6 AD, p. 188.

²³⁶ *Islamic Republic of Iran v. USA*, Case No. A/18, 5 Iran–US CTR, p. 251; 75 ILR, p. 176; *Esphahanian v. Bank Tejarat* 2 Iran–US CTR, p. 157; 72 ILR, p. 478, and *Malek v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 19 Iran–US CTR, p. 48. See also *Saghi v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 447 and the decision of the Canadian Supreme Court in *Schavernoich v. Foreign Claims Commission* 1 SCR 1092 (1982); 90 ILR, p. 220.

cases have pointed to various factors, ranging from incorporation of the company in the particular state to the maintenance of the administrative centre of the company in the state and the existence of substantial holdings by nationals in the company.²³⁷

The Court in the *Barcelona Traction* case²³⁸ remarked that the traditional rule gave the right of diplomatic protection of a corporation to the state under the laws of which it is incorporated and in whose territory it has its registered office. Any application of the *Nottebohm* doctrine of the 'genuine connection' was rejected as having no general acceptance. Nevertheless, it remains true that some meaningful link must bind the state to the company which seeks its protection. The position as regards the shareholders in a company was discussed in that case. It concerned a dispute between Belgium and Spain relating to a company established in 1911 in Canada, which was involved in the production of electricity in Spain and the majority of whose shares were owned by Belgian nationals. After the Second World War, the Spanish authorities took a number of financial measures which resulted in harm to the company, and in 1948 it was declared bankrupt. The case concerned a Belgian claim in respect of injury to the shareholders, who were Belgian nationals, because of the steps that Spain had adopted. Spain replied by denying that Belgium had any standing in the case since the injury had been suffered by the company and not the shareholders.

The Court rejected the Belgian claim on the grounds that it did not have a legal interest in the matter. Although shareholders may suffer if wrong is done to a company, it is only the rights of the latter that have been infringed and thus entitle it to institute action. If, on the other hand (as did not happen here), the direct rights of the shareholders were affected, for example as regards dividends, then they would have an independent right of action; but otherwise, only if the company legally ceased to exist. The Court emphasised that the general rule of international law stated that where an unlawful act was committed against a company representing foreign capital, only the national state of the company could sue. In this case Canada had chosen not to intervene in the dispute. To accept the idea of the diplomatic protection of shareholders would, in the opinion of the International Court of Justice, result in the creation of an atmosphere of confusion and insecurity in economic relations especially since the shares

²³⁷ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 463 ff., and Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, pp. 387–412. See also *Sola Tiles Inc. v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 83 ILR, p. 460.

²³⁸ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 42; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 216.

of international companies are 'widely scattered and frequently change hands'.²³⁹

Article 9 of the ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection provides that the nationality of a corporation is the state where it was incorporated, although when the corporation is controlled by nationals of another state or states and has no substantial business activities in the state of incorporation, and the seat of management and the financial control of the corporation are both located in another state, that state shall be regarded as the state of nationality. Article 11 provides that the state of nationality of shareholders shall not be entitled to provide diplomatic protection to shareholders where the injury is to the corporation, unless the corporation has ceased to exist according to the law of the state of incorporation for a reason unrelated to the injury; or the corporation had, at the date of injury, the nationality of the state alleged to be responsible for causing the injury, and incorporation in that state was required by it as a precondition for doing business there.²⁴⁰

The International Court returned to the question of corporations in the *Diallo* case,²⁴¹ noting that,

What matters, from the point of view of international law, is to determine whether or not these have a legal personality independent of their members. Conferring independent corporate personality on a company implies granting it rights over its own property, rights which it alone is capable of protecting. As a result, only the state of nationality may exercise diplomatic protection on behalf of the company when its rights are injured by a wrongful act of another state. In determining whether a company possesses independent and distinct legal personality, international law looks to the rules of the relevant domestic law.²⁴²

In so far as the shareholders of such corporations in the context of diplomatic protection were concerned, the Court emphasised that,

The exercise by a state of diplomatic protection on behalf of a natural or legal person, who is *associé* or shareholder, having its nationality, seeks to engage the responsibility of another state for an injury caused to that person by an internationally wrongful act committed by that state. Ultimately, this is no

²³⁹ ICJ Reports, 1970, p. 49; 46 ILR, p. 223. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Oda, the *Elettronica Sicula (US v. Italy)* case, ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 15, 84; 84 ILR, pp. 311, 390.

²⁴⁰ However, where the injury is a direct one to shareholders as distinct from the corporation, their state of nationality is entitled to exercise diplomatic protection in respect of them: see article 12.

²⁴¹ ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 60 ff. ²⁴² *Ibid.*, para. 61.

more than the diplomatic protection of a natural or legal person as defined by Article 1 of the ILC draft Articles; what amounts to the internationally wrongful act, in the case of *associés* or shareholders, is the violation by the respondent state of their direct rights in relation to a legal person, direct rights that are defined by the domestic law of that state, as accepted by both Parties, moreover. On this basis, diplomatic protection of the direct rights of *associés* of a SPRL or shareholders of a public limited company is not to be regarded as an exception to the general legal régime of diplomatic protection for natural or legal persons, as derived from customary international law.²⁴³

The United Kingdom, according to the set of Rules regarding the Taking up of International Claims produced by the Foreign Office in 1985,²⁴⁴ may intervene in *Barcelona Traction* situations where a national has an interest as a shareholder or otherwise, and the company is defunct, although this is regarded as an exceptional instance. The United Kingdom may also intervene where it is the national state of the company that actively wrongs the company in which a United Kingdom national has an interest as a shareholder or in some other respect; otherwise the UK would normally take up such a claim only in concert with the government of the state of incorporation of the company.²⁴⁵ Further, practice varies as between states²⁴⁶ and under different treaty regimes.²⁴⁷

²⁴³ *Ibid.*, para. 64. The Court also examined whether the general rule that where an unlawful act was committed against a foreign company only the national state of the company could sue still remained and concluded that it did, *ibid.*, paras. 87 ff.

²⁴⁴ See above, p. 811. The increase in the number of bilateral investment treaties in the 1970s may be partly explained as the response to the post-*Barcelona Traction* need to protect shareholders. See e.g. M. Sornarajah, 'State Responsibility and Bilateral Investment Treaties', 20 *Journal of World Trade Law*, 1986, pp. 79, 87. Note that in the *Diallo* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 88, the Court noted that questions as to the rights of companies and their shareholders were in contemporary international law more a matter for bilateral and multilateral treaties for the protection of foreign investments and that the role of diplomatic protection 'had somewhat faded'.

²⁴⁵ See also the position adopted by the UK in the *III Finance Ltd v. Aegis Consumer Finance Inc.* litigation before the US courts to the effect that entities incorporated in any territory for which the UK is internationally responsible are the UK citizens for the purposes of the US federal alienage jurisdiction statute in question, UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, pp. 552 ff., and similarly in the *Chase Manhattan Bank v. Traffic Stream (BVI) Infrastructure Ltd* litigation, UKMIL, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 603.

²⁴⁶ See e.g. W. K. Geck, 'Diplomatic Protection' in *Encyclopedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 1992, vol. X, p. 1053.

²⁴⁷ See e.g. the Algiers Declaration concerning the settlement of US–Iranian claims, 20 ILR, 1981, p. 230; the Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes, 1965, article 25 and *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, vol. I, pp. 127–8.

The position with regard to ships is rather different. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea in *M/V Saiga* (No. 2) emphasised that under the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 it is the flag state that bears the rights and obligations with regard to the ship itself so that 'the ship, every thing on it and every person involved or interested in its obligations are treated as an entity linked to the flag state. The nationalities of these persons are not relevant.'²⁴⁸

*The exhaustion of local remedies*²⁴⁹

Customary international law provides that before international proceedings are instituted or claims or representations made, the remedies provided by the local state should have been exhausted.²⁵⁰ There is a theoretical dispute as to whether the principle of exhaustion of local remedies is a substantive or procedural rule or some form of hybrid concept,²⁵¹ but the purpose of the rule is both to enable the state to have an opportunity to redress the wrong that has occurred within its own legal order and to reduce the number of international claims that might be brought. Another factor, of course, is the respect that is to be accorded to the sovereignty and jurisdiction of foreign states by not pre-empting the operation of their legal systems. Article 44 of the ILC Articles on State Responsibility provides that the responsibility of a state may not be

²⁴⁸ 120 ILR, pp. 143, 184–5 and see e.g. article 292 of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982. See also the *Grand Prince* (*Belize v. France*) case, ITLOS, judgment of 20 April 2001, 125 ILR, p. 272.

²⁴⁹ See further above, chapter 6, p. 273. See also the *Panevezys Railway* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 76 (1939); 9 AD, p. 308; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. III, p. 1558; Borchard, *Diplomatic Protection*, pp. 817–18; A. A. Cançado Trindade, *The Application of the Rule of Exhaustion of Local Remedies in International Law*, Cambridge, 1983; C. Law, *The Local Remedies Rule in International Law*, Geneva, 1961; C. F. Amerasinghe, *Local Remedies in International Law*, Cambridge, 2nd edn, 2004, and J. Kokott, 'Interim Report on the Exhaustion of Local Remedies', International Law Association, Report of the Sixty-Ninth Conference, London, 2000, p. 606.

²⁵⁰ See e.g. the *Interhandel* (*Switzerland v. USA*) case, ICJ Reports, 1959, pp. 6, 27 and the *Diallo* (*Guinea v. Democratic Republic of Congo*) case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 42 and 44. See also *Ex parte Ferhut Butt* 116 ILR, pp. 607, 614–15 (High Court) and 619 (Court of Appeal). The requirement also arises in a number of treaties: see e.g. article 35, European Convention on Human Rights; article 46, Inter-American Convention on Human Rights; article 5, Optional Protocol I, International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights; and article 295 of the Law of the Sea Convention.

²⁵¹ See e.g. the discussions in *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1977, vol. II, part 2, pp. 30 ff. and Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, pp. 131 ff. See also Kokott, 'Interim Report', pp. 612 ff.

invoked if the claim is one to which the rule of exhaustion of local remedies applies and any available and effective local remedy has not been exhausted.²⁵²

Article 14 of the ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection reiterates the customary rule, noting that no international claim in respect of an injury to a national may be presented before that national has exhausted local remedies, which are defined as legal remedies open to an injured person before the judicial or administrative courts or bodies, whether ordinary or special, of the state alleged to be responsible for causing the injury. Article 15 provides that local remedies do not need to be exhausted where there are no reasonably available local remedies to provide effective redress, or the local remedies provide no reasonable possibility of such redress; there is undue delay in the remedial process which is attributable to the state alleged to be responsible; there was no relevant connection between the injured person and the state alleged to be responsible at the date of injury; the injured person is manifestly precluded from pursuing local remedies; or the state alleged to be responsible has waived the requirement that local remedies be exhausted.²⁵³

The general rule was well illustrated in the *Ambatielos* arbitration²⁵⁴ between Greece and Britain. The former brought proceedings arising out of a contract signed by Ambatielos, which were rejected by the tribunal since the remedies available under English law had not been fully utilised. In particular, he had failed to call a vital witness and he had not appealed to the House of Lords from the decision of the Court of Appeal.

The requirement to exhaust local²⁵⁵ remedies applies only to available effective remedies. It will not be sufficient to dismiss a claim merely because the person claiming had not taken the matter to appeal, where the appeal would not have affected the basic outcome of the case. This was stressed in the *Finnish Ships* arbitration²⁵⁶ where shipowners brought

²⁵² ILC Commentary 2001, p. 305.

²⁵³ The International Court noted in the *Diallo* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 47, that administrative remedies can only be taken into consideration for purposes of the local remedies rule if they are aimed at vindicating a right and not at obtaining a favour, unless they constitute an essential prerequisite for the admissibility of subsequent contentious proceedings.

²⁵⁴ 12 RIAA, p. 83 (1956); 23 ILR, p. 306.

²⁵⁵ The terms domestic or municipal remedies are also used.

²⁵⁶ 2 RIAA, p. 1479 (1934); 7 AD, p. 231.

a claim before the Admiralty Transport Arbitration Board, but did not appeal against the unfavourable decision. It was held that since the appeal could only be on points of law, which could not overturn the vital finding of fact that there had been a British requisition of ships involved, any appeal would have been ineffective. Accordingly the claims of the shipowners would not be dismissed for non-exhaustion of local remedies.

In the *Interhandel* case,²⁵⁷ the United States seized the American assets of a company owned by the Swiss firm Interhandel, in 1942, which was suspected of being under the control of a German enterprise. In 1958, after nine years of litigation in the US courts regarding the unblocking of the Swiss assets in America, Switzerland took the matter to the International Court of Justice. However, before a decision was reached, the US Supreme Court readmitted Interhandel into the legal proceedings, thus disposing of Switzerland's argument that the company's suit had been finally rejected. The Court dismissed the Swiss government's claim since the local remedies available had not been exhausted. Criticism has been levelled against this judgment on the ground that litigation extending over practically ten years could hardly be described as constituting an 'effective' remedy. However, the fact remains that the legal system operating in the United States had still something to offer the Swiss company even after that time.

The local remedies rule does not apply where one state has been guilty of a direct breach of international law causing immediate injury to another state, as for instance where its diplomatic agents are assaulted. But it does apply where the state is complaining of injury to its nationals.²⁵⁸ The local remedies rule may be waived by treaty stipulation, as for example in Article V of the US–Mexico General Claims Convention of 1923 and Article XI of the Convention on International Liability for Damage caused by Space Objects, 1972.

The issue of local remedies was clarified in the *Elettronica Siculo SpA (ELSI)* case,²⁵⁹ which referred to the concept as 'an important principle

²⁵⁷ ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 6; 27 ILR, p. 475. The Court declared that the 'rule that local remedies must be exhausted before international proceedings may be instituted is a well-established principle of customary international law', ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 27; 27 ILR, p. 490. See also Rules VII and VIII of the International Claims Rules of the FCO, above, p. 811; Pleadings, *Israel v. Bulgaria*, ICJ Reports, 1959, pp. 531–2, and T. Meron, 'The Incidence of the Rule of Exhaustion of Local Remedies', 25 BYIL, 1959, p. 95. Note, in addition, the *North American Dredging Co.* claim, 4 RIAA, p. 26 (1926); 3 AD, p. 4.

²⁵⁸ See e.g. the *Heathrow Airport User Charges Arbitration*, 102 ILR, pp. 215, 277 ff.

²⁵⁹ ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 15; 84 ILR, p. 311.

of customary international law'.²⁶⁰ The case concerned an action brought by the US against Italy alleging injuries to the Italian interests of two US corporations. Italy claimed that local remedies had not been exhausted, while the US argued that the doctrine did not apply since the case was brought under the Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation, 1948 between the two states which provided for the submission of disputes relating to the treaty to the International Court, with no mention of local remedies. The Chamber of the Court, however, firmly held that while the parties to an agreement could if they so chose dispense with the local remedies requirement in express terms, it 'finds itself unable to accept that an important principle of customary international law should be held to have been tacitly dispensed with'.²⁶¹ In other words, the presumption that local remedies need to be exhausted can only be rebutted by express provision to the contrary.

The Chamber also dealt with a claim by the US that the doctrine did not apply to a request for a declaratory judgment finding that the treaty in question had been violated. This claim in effect was based on the view that the doctrine would not apply in cases of direct injury to a state. The Chamber felt unable to find in the case a dispute over alleged violation of the treaty resulting in direct injury to the US that was both distinct from and independent of the dispute with regard to the two US corporations.²⁶² It was stressed that the matter 'which colours and pervades the US claim as a whole' was the alleged damage to the two US corporations.²⁶³ In the light of this stringent test, it therefore seems that in such mixed claims involving the interests both of nationals and of the state itself one must assume that the local remedies rule applies.

The claim that local remedies had not in fact been exhausted in the case because the two US corporations had not raised the treaty issue before the Italian courts was rejected. It was held that it was sufficient if the essence of the claim had been brought before the competent tribunals. Accordingly, identity of claims as distinct from identity of issues is not required. The Chamber was not convinced that there clearly remained some remedy which the corporations, independently of their Italian subsidiary (ELSI), ought to have pursued and exhausted.²⁶⁴

²⁶⁰ ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 42; 84 ILR, p. 348. ²⁶¹ *Ibid.*

²⁶² ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 42–4; 84 ILR, pp. 348–50.

²⁶³ ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 43; 84 ILR, p. 349.

²⁶⁴ ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 46–8; 84 ILR, pp. 352–4. See e.g. M. H. Adler, 'The Exhaustion of the Local Remedies Rule After the International Court of Justice's Decision in *ELSI*', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 641, and F. A. Mann, 'Foreign Investment in the International Court of

The treatment of aliens²⁶⁵

The question of the protection of foreign nationals is one of those issues in international law most closely connected with the different approaches adopted to international relations by the Western and Third World nations. Developing countries, as well as communist countries formerly, have long been eager to reduce what they regard as the privileges accorded to capitalist states by international law. They lay great emphasis upon the sovereignty and independence of states and resent the economic influence of the West. The Western nations, on the other hand, have wished to protect their investments and nationals abroad and provide for the security of their property.

The diplomatic protection of nationals abroad developed as the number of nationals overseas grew as a consequence of increasing trading activities and thus the relevant state practice multiplied. In addition, since the US–UK Jay Treaty of 1794 numerous mixed claims commissions were established to resolve problems of injury to aliens,²⁶⁶ while a variety of national claims commissions were created to distribute lump sums received from foreign states in settlement of claims.²⁶⁷ Such international and national claims procedures together with diplomatic protection therefore enabled nationals abroad to be aided in cases of loss or injury in state responsibility situations.²⁶⁸

Justice: The *ELSI* Case', 86 AJIL, 1992, pp. 92, 101–2. See also the *M/V Saiga* (No. 2) case, 120 ILR, pp. 143, 182–4 and the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 487–8; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 26–7.

²⁶⁵ See references in footnote 1. See also Guha Roy, 'Is the Law of Responsibility of States for Injury to Aliens a Part of Universal International Law?', 55 AJIL, 1961, p. 863; A. Fatouros, 'International Law and the Third World', 50 *Virginia Law Review*, 1964, p. 783; I. Shihata, *Legal Treatment of Foreign Investment*, Dordrecht, 1993; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 903, and *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, vol. II, p. 184. See also the Principles Concerning Admission and Treatment of Aliens adopted by the Asian–African Legal Consultative Committee at its fourth session: www.aalco.org/Principle%20Concerning%20admission%20and%20Treatment%20of%20aliens.htm.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. A. M. Stuyt, *Survey of International Arbitrations, 1794–1889*, 3rd edn, Dordrecht, 1990.

²⁶⁷ See e.g. *International Claims* (eds. R. B. Lillich and B. Weston), Charlottesville, 1982, and R. B. Lillich and B. Weston, *International Claims: Their Settlements by Lump-Sum Agreements*, Charlottesville, 2 vols., 1975. See also the US–People's Republic of China Claims Settlement Agreement of 1979, DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 1213–15, and Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. VIII, pp. 933–69.

²⁶⁸ Note the establishment of the UN Compensation Commission following the ending of the Gulf War in 1991 to enable the settlement of claims arising out of that conflict: see below, chapter 22, p. 1249.

The relevant standard of treatment

The developed states of the West have argued historically that there exists an 'international minimum standard' for the protection of foreign nationals that must be upheld irrespective of how the state treats its own nationals, whereas other states maintained that all the state need do is treat the alien as it does its own nationals (the 'national treatment standard'). The reason for the evolution of the latter approach is to be found in the increasing resentment of Western economic domination rather than in the necessary neglect of basic standards of justice. The Latin American states felt, in particular, that the international minimum standard concept had been used as a means of interference in internal affairs.²⁶⁹ Accordingly, the Calvo doctrine was formulated. This involved a reaffirmation of the principle of non-intervention coupled with the assertion that aliens were entitled only to such rights as were accorded nationals and thus had to seek redress for grievances exclusively in the domestic arena.²⁷⁰ It was intended as a shield against external interference. The international standard concept itself developed during the nineteenth century and received extensive support in case-law.

In the *Neer* case,²⁷¹ for example, where the American superintendent of a mine in Mexico had been killed, the Commission held 'that the propriety of governmental acts should be put to the test of international standards', while in the *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case,²⁷² the Court recognised the existence of a common or generally accepted international law respecting the treatment of aliens, which is applicable to them despite municipal legislation. In the *Garcia* case,²⁷³ the US-Mexican Claims Commission emphasised that there existed an international standard concerning the taking of human life, and in the *Roberts* claim,²⁷⁴ reference was made to the test as to whether aliens were treated in accordance with ordinary standards of civilisation. If the principle is clear, the contents or definition of that principle are far from clear. In the *Neer* claim,²⁷⁵ the Commission stated that the treatment of an alien, in order to constitute an international delinquency,

²⁶⁹ See e.g. Guha Roy, 'Law of Responsibility'; J. Castañeda, 'The Underdeveloped Nations and the Development of International Law', 15 *International Organisation*, 1961, p. 38, and R. P. Anand, *New States and International Law*, Delhi, 1972.

²⁷⁰ See e.g. Lillich, 'Duties', p. 349. ²⁷¹ 4 RIAA, p. 60 (1926); 3 AD, p. 213.

²⁷² PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926; 3 AD, p. 429.

²⁷³ 4 RIAA, p. 119 (1926). See also the *Chattin* case, 4 RIAA, p. 282 (1927); 4 AD, p. 248.

²⁷⁴ 4 RIAA, p. 77 (1926); 3 AD, p. 227.

²⁷⁵ 4 RIAA, pp. 60, 61–2 (1926); 3 AD, p. 213. See similarly the *Chattin* case, 4 RIAA, p. 282 (1927); 4 AD, p. 248.

should amount to an outrage, to bad faith, to wilful neglect of duty, or to an insufficiency of governmental action so far short of international standards that every reasonable and impartial man would readily recognise its insufficiency.

In other words, a fairly high threshold is specified before the minimum standard applies. Some indeed have argued that the concept never involved a definite standard with a fixed content, but rather a 'process of decision',²⁷⁶ a process which would involve an examination of the responsibility of the state for the injury to the alien in the light of all the circumstances of the particular case.²⁷⁷ The issue of the content of such a standard has often been described in terms of the concept of denial of justice.²⁷⁸ In effect, that concept refers to the improper administration of civil and criminal justice as regards an alien.²⁷⁹ It would include the failure to apprehend and prosecute those wrongfully causing injury to an alien, as in the *Janes* claim,²⁸⁰ where an American citizen was killed in Mexico. The identity of the murderer was known, but no action had been taken for eight years. The widow was awarded \$12,000 in compensation for the non-apprehension and non-punishment of the murderer. It would also include unreasonably long detention and harsh and unlawful treatment in prison.²⁸¹

A progressive attempt to resolve the divide between the national and international standard proponents was put forward by Garcia-Amador in a report on international responsibility to the International Law Commission in 1956. He argued that the two approaches were now synthesised in the concept of the international recognition of the essential rights of man.²⁸² He formulated two principles: first, that aliens had to enjoy the same rights and guarantees as enjoyed by nationals, which should not in any case be less than the fundamental human rights recognised and defined in international instruments; secondly, international responsibility would only be engaged if internationally recognised fundamental human rights were affected.²⁸³ This approach did not prove attractive to the ILC at that time in the light of a number of problems. However, human rights

²⁷⁶ M. S. McDougal *et al.*, *Studies in World Public Order*, New Haven, 1960, p. 869.

²⁷⁷ See Lillich, 'Duties', p. 350.

²⁷⁸ See e.g. A. V. Freeman, *The International Responsibility of States for Denial of Justice*, London, 1938.

²⁷⁹ See *AMCO v. Indonesia (Merits)* 89 ILR, pp. 405, 451.

²⁸⁰ 4 RIAA, p. 82 (1926); 3 AD, p. 218.

²⁸¹ See e.g. the *Roberts* claim, 4 RIAA, p. 77 (1926); 3 AD, p. 227 and the *Quintanilla* claim, 4 RIAA, p. 101 (1926); 3 AD, p. 224.

²⁸² *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1956, vol. II, pp. 173, 199–203.

²⁸³ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1957, vol. II, pp. 104, 112–13.

law has developed considerably in recent years²⁸⁴ and can now be regarded as establishing certain minimum standards of state behaviour with regard to civil and political rights. It is noticeable, for example, that the relevant instruments do not refer to nationals and aliens specifically, but to all individuals within the territory and subject to the jurisdiction of the state without discrimination.²⁸⁵ One should also note the special efforts being made to deal with non-nationals, in particular the UN Declaration on the Human Rights of Individuals who are not Nationals of the Country in which they Live,²⁸⁶ and the continuing concern with regard to migrant workers.²⁸⁷

Some differences as regards the relative rights and obligations of nationals and aliens are, of course, inevitable. Non-nationals do not have political rights and may be banned from employment in certain areas (e.g. the diplomatic corps), although they remain subject to the local law. It is also unquestioned that a state may legitimately refuse to admit aliens, or may accept them subject to certain conditions being fulfilled. Whether a state may expel aliens with equal facility is more open to doubt.

A number of cases assert that states must give convincing reasons for expelling an alien. In, for example, the *Boffolo* case,²⁸⁸ which concerned an Italian expelled from Venezuela, it was held that states possess a general right of expulsion, but it could only be resorted to in extreme circumstances and accomplished in a manner least injurious to the person affected. In addition, the reasons for the expulsion must be stated before an international tribunal when the occasion demanded. Many municipal systems provide that the authorities of a country may deport aliens without reasons having to be stated. The position under customary international law is therefore somewhat confused. As far as treaty law is concerned, article 13 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights stipulates that an alien lawfully in the territory of a state party to the Convention

²⁸⁴ See above, chapters 6 and 7.

²⁸⁵ See e.g. article 2 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966 and article 1 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950.

²⁸⁶ General Assembly resolution 40/144. See also E/CN.4/Sub.2/392 (1977) and R. B. Lillich and S. Neff, 'The Treatment of Aliens and International Human Rights Norms', 21 *German YIL*, 1978, p. 97.

²⁸⁷ See further above, chapter 6, p. 333.

²⁸⁸ 10 *RIAA*, p. 528 (1903). See also *Dr Breger's case*, Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. VIII, p. 861; R. Plender, *International Migration Law*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1988, and G. Goodwin-Gill, *International Law and the Movement of Persons Between States*, Oxford, 1978.

may be expelled therefrom only in pursuance of a decision reached in accordance with law and shall, except where compelling reasons of national security otherwise require, be allowed to submit the reasons against his expulsion and to have his case reviewed by and be represented for the purpose before, the competent authority.

Article 3 of the European Convention on Establishment, 1956, provides that nationals of other contracting states lawfully residing in the territory may be expelled only if they endanger national security or offend against public order or morality, and Article 4 of the Fourth Protocol (1963) of the European Convention on Human Rights declares that 'collective expulsion of aliens is prohibited'.²⁸⁹ The burden of proving the wrongfulness of the expelling state's action falls upon the claimant alleging expulsion and the relevant rules would also apply where, even though there is no direct law or regulation forcing the alien to leave, his continued presence in that state is made impossible because of conditions generated by wrongful acts of the state or attributable to it.²⁹⁰ Where states have expelled aliens, international law requires their national state to admit them.²⁹¹

The expropriation of foreign property²⁹²

The expansion of the Western economies since the nineteenth century in particular stimulated an outflow of capital and consequent heavy

²⁸⁹ Note also article 1 of Protocol 7 (1984) of the European Convention on Human Rights to the same general effect as article 13. See, as regards refugees, the 1951 Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees and the 1967 Protocol, and G. Goodwin-Gill, *The Refugee in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 1996.

²⁹⁰ See *Rankin v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 17 Iran-US CTR, pp. 135, 142; 82 ILR, pp. 204, 214. See also Goodwin-Gill, *International Law and the Movement of Persons*; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 498 ff., and M. Pellonpää, *Expulsion in International Law*, Helsinki, 1984.

²⁹¹ This is a general principle, but cf. Lord Denning in the *Thakrar* case, [1974] QB 684; 59 ILR, p. 450. Note that the Lord Chancellor, in dealing with the expulsion of British aliens from East Africa, accepted that in international law a state was under a duty as between other states to accept expelled nationals: see 335 HL Deb., col. 497, 14 September 1972. See also *Van Duyn v. Home Office* [1974] ECR 1337; 60 ILR, p. 247.

²⁹² See e.g. G. White, *Nationalisation of Foreign Property*, London, 1961; B. Wortley, *Expropriation of Public International Law*, 1959; A. F. Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2008, part VI; M. Sornarajah, *The International Law on Foreign Investment*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2004, and Sornarajah, *The Settlement of Foreign Investment Disputes*, The Hague, 2000; I. Brownlie, 'Legal Status of Natural Resources', 162 HR, 1979, p. 245; R. Higgins, 'The Taking of Property by the State: Recent Developments in International Law', 176 HR, 1982, p. 267, and *The Valuation of Nationalised Property in International Law* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 3 vols., 1972–5. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 911 ff.; P. Muchlinski, *Multinational Enterprises and the Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford,

investment in the developing areas of the world. This resulted in substantial areas of local economies falling within the ownership and control of Western corporations. However, with the granting of independence to the various Third World countries and in view of the nationalisation measures taken by the Soviet Union after the success of the communist revolution, such properties and influence began to come under pressure.

In assessing the state of international law with regard to the expropriation of the property of aliens, one is immediately confronted with two opposing objectives, although they need not be irreconcilable in all cases. On the one hand, the capital-exporting countries require some measure of protection and security before they will invest abroad and, on the other hand, the capital-importing countries are wary of the power of foreign investments and the drain of currency that occurs, and are often stimulated to take over such enterprises. Nationalisation for one reason or another is now a common feature not only in communist and Afro-Asian states, but also in Western Europe. The need to acquire control of some key privately owned property is felt by many states to be an essential requirement in the interests of economic and social reform. Indeed it is true to say that extensive sectors of the economies of most West European states were at some stages under national control after having been taken into public ownership.

Since it can hardly be denied that nationalisation is a perfectly legitimate measure for a state to adopt and clearly not illegal as such under international law,²⁹³ the problem arises where foreign property is involved. Not to expropriate such property in a general policy of nationalisation might be seen as equivalent to proposing a privileged status within the country for foreign property, as well as limiting the power of the state within its own jurisdiction. There is no doubt that under international law, expropriation of alien property is legitimate.²⁹⁴ This is not disputed. However, certain conditions must be fulfilled.²⁹⁵

1999, pp. 491 ff.; A. Mouri, *The International Law of Expropriation as Reflected in the Work of the Iran-US Claims Tribunal*, Dordrecht, 1994; P. M. Norton, 'A Law of the Future or a Law of the Past? Modern Tribunals and the International Law of Expropriation', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 474; N. Schrijver, *Sovereignty over Natural Resources*, Cambridge, 1997, and F. Beveridge, *The Treatment and Taxation of Foreign Investment under International Law*, Manchester, 2000.

²⁹³ See e.g. *De Sanchez v. Banco Central de Nicaragua and Others* 770 F.2d 1385, 1397; 88 ILR, pp. 75, 89.

²⁹⁴ See e.g. *AMCO v. Indonesia (Merits)* 89 ILR, pp. 405, 466.

²⁹⁵ See e.g. the World Bank Guidelines on the Treatment of Foreign Direct Investment, 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1363.

The question, of course, arises as to the stage at which international law in fact becomes involved in such a situation. Apart from the relevance of the general rules relating to the treatment of aliens noted in the preceding section, the issue will usually arise out of a contract between a state and a foreign private enterprise. In such a situation, several possibilities exist. It could be argued that the contract itself by its very nature becomes 'internationalised' and thus subject to international law rather than (or possibly in addition to) the law of the contracting state. The consequences of this would include the operation of the principle of international law that agreements are to be honoured (*pacta sunt servanda*) which would constrain the otherwise wide competence of a state party to alter unilaterally the terms of a relevant agreement. This proposition was adopted by the Arbitrator in the *Texaco v. Libya* case in 1977,²⁹⁶ where it was noted that this may be achieved in various ways: for example, by stating that the law governing the contract referred to 'general principles of law', which was taken to incorporate international law; by including an international arbitration clause for the settlement of disputes; and by including a stabilisation clause in an international development agreement, preventing unilateral variation of the terms of the agreement.²⁹⁷ However, this approach is controversial and case-law is by no means consistent.²⁹⁸ International law will clearly be engaged where the expropriation is unlawful, either because of, for example, the discriminatory manner in which it is carried out or the offering of inadequate or no compensation.²⁹⁹

²⁹⁶ 53 ILR, p. 389.

²⁹⁷ See e.g. C. Greenwood, 'State Contracts in International Law – The Libyan Oil Arbitrations', 53 BYIL, 1982, pp. 27, 41 ff. See also A. Fatouros, 'International Law and the Internationalised Contract', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 134.

²⁹⁸ See e.g. J. Paulsson, 'The ICSID *Klöckner v. Cameroon* Award: The Duties of Partners in North–South Economic Development Agreements', 1 *Journal of International Arbitration*, 1984, p. 145; the *Aminoil* case, 21 ILM, 1982, p. 976; 66 ILR, p. 519, and D. W. Bowett, 'State Contracts with Aliens: Contemporary Developments on Compensation for Termination or Breach', 59 BYIL, 1988, p. 49.

²⁹⁹ See in particular article 1 of Protocol I of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950 as regards the protection of the right to property and the prohibition of deprivation of possessions 'except in the public interest and subject to the conditions provided for by law and by the general principles of international law'. See e.g. the following cases: *Marckx*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 31; 58 ILR, p. 561; *Sporrong and Lönnroth*, ECHR, Series A, No. 52; 68 ILR, p. 86; *Loizidou v. Turkey*, Judgment of 18 December 1996; 108 ILR, p. 444. See also e.g. *Jacobs and White European Convention on Human Rights* (eds. C. Ovey and R. C. A. White), 4th edn, Oxford, 2006, chapter 15. However, it has been held that the reference to international law did not apply to the taking

The property question

Higgins has pointed to 'the almost total absence of any analysis of conceptual aspects of property'.³⁰⁰ Property would clearly include physical objects and certain abstract entities, for example, shares in companies, debts and intellectual property. The 1961 Harvard Draft Convention on the International Responsibility of States for Injuries to Aliens³⁰¹ discusses the concept of property in the light of 'all movable and immovable property, whether tangible or intangible, including industrial, literary and artistic property as well as rights and interests in property'. In the *Liamco* case the arbitration specifically mentioned concession rights as forming part of incorporeal property,³⁰² a crucial matter as many expropriation cases in fact involve a wide variety of contractual rights.³⁰³

*The nature of expropriation*³⁰⁴

Expropriation involves a taking of property,³⁰⁵ but actions short of direct possession of the assets in question may also fall within the category. The 1961 Harvard Draft would include, for example, 'any such unreasonable interference with the use, enjoyment or disposal of property as to justify an inference that the owner thereof will not be able to use, enjoy or dispose of the property within a reasonable period of time after the inception of such interference'.³⁰⁶ In 1965, for example, after a series of Indonesian decrees, the UK government stated that:

by a state of the property of its own nationals: see *Lithgow*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 102; 75 ILR, p. 438; *James*, ECHR, Series A, No. 98; 75 ILR, p. 397 and *Mellacher*, ECHR, Series A, No. 169. See also Brock, 'The Protection of Property Rights Under the European Convention on Human Rights', *Legal Issues of European Integration*, 1986, p. 52.

³⁰⁰ Higgins, 'Taking of Property', p. 268. ³⁰¹ 55 AJIL, 1961, p. 548 (article 10(7)).

³⁰² 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 1, 53; 62 ILR, pp. 141, 189. See also the *Shufeldt* case, 2 RIAA, pp. 1083, 1097 (1930); 5 AD, p. 179.

³⁰³ See also below, p. 839, concerning the definition of 'investments' in bilateral investment treaties. See also article 1(6) of the European Energy Charter Treaty, 1994.

³⁰⁴ See e.g. R. Dolzer and C. Schreuer, *Principles of International Investment Law*, Oxford, 2008, chapter 6.

³⁰⁵ The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) Arbitration Tribunal noted that the term 'expropriation', 'carries with it the connotation of a "taking" by a government-type authority of a person's "property" with a view to transferring ownership of that property to another person, usually the authority that exercised its *de jure* or *de facto* power to do the "taking"', *S.D. Myers v. Canada* 121 ILR, pp. 72, 122.

³⁰⁶ 55 AJIL, 1961, pp. 553–4 (article 10(3)a).

in view of the complete inability of British enterprises and plantations to exercise and enjoy any of their rights of ownership in relation to their properties in Indonesia, Her Majesty's Government has concluded that the Indonesian Government has expropriated this property.³⁰⁷

In *Starrett Housing Corporation v. Government of the Islamic Republic of Iran* before the Iran–US Claims Tribunal,³⁰⁸ it was emphasised by the Tribunal that:

measures taken by a state can interfere with property rights to such an extent that these rights are rendered so useless that they must be deemed to have been expropriated, even though the state does not purport to have expropriated them and the legal title to the property formally remains with the original owner.

In that case, it was held that a taking had occurred by the end of January 1980 upon the appointment by the Iranian Housing Ministry of a temporary manager of the enterprise concerned, thus depriving the claimants of the right to manage and of effective control and use.³⁰⁹ However, a series of events prior to that date, including armed incursions and detention of personnel, intimidation and interference with supplies and needed facilities, did not amount to a taking of the property, since investors in foreign countries assume certain risks with regard to disturbances and even revolution. The fact that the risks materialise, held the Tribunal, did not mean that property rights affected by the events could be deemed to have been taken.³¹⁰ There is clearly an important, but indistinct, dividing line here.

It has also been held that the seizure of a controlling stock interest in a foreign corporation is a taking of control of the assets and profits of the enterprise in question.³¹¹ In *Biloune v. Ghana Investment Centre*, an

³⁰⁷ BPIL, 1964, p. 200. See also 4 ILM, 1965, pp. 440–7. Note also *Shanghai Power Co. v. US* 4 Cl. Ct. 237 (1983), where it was held that the settlement of the plaintiff's claim by the US government in an agreement with China for less than its worth did not constitute a taking for which compensation was required in the context of the Fifth Amendment.

³⁰⁸ Interlocutory Award, 4 Iran–US CTR, p. 122; 85 ILR, p. 349.

³⁰⁹ 4 Iran–US CTR, p. 154; 85 ILR, p. 390. See also *Harza Engineering Co. v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 1 Iran–US CTR, p. 499; 70 ILR, p. 117, and *AIG v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 4 Iran–US CTR, p. 96. See also *SEDCO v. NIOC* 84 ILR, p. 483.

³¹⁰ 4 Iran–US CTR, p. 156; 85 ILR, p. 392. Cf. the Concurring Opinion by Judge Holtzmann on this issue, 4 Iran–US CTR, pp. 159, 178; 85 ILR, p. 414.

³¹¹ *Kalamazoo Spice Extraction Company v. The Provisional Military Government of Socialist Ethiopia* 86 ILR, p. 45 and 90 ILR, p. 596. See also *Agip SpA v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR, p. 319 and *Benvenuti and Bonfant v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo*, *ibid.*, p. 345.

investor began construction work relying upon government representations although without building permits; a stop order was then issued based upon the absence of such permit. The Tribunal held that an indirect expropriation had taken place because the totality of the circumstances had the effect of causing the irreparable cessation of work on the project.³¹²

Where the taking constitutes a process rather than one clear act, there will be a problem of determining when the process has reached the point at which an expropriation in fact has occurred.³¹³ This issue may be important, for example, in determining the valuation date for compensation purposes. In *Santa Elena v. Costa Rica*, the Tribunal stated that 'a property has been expropriated when the effect of the measures taken by the state has been to deprive the owner of title, possession or access to the benefit and economic use of his property... This is a matter of fact for the Tribunal to assess in the light of the circumstances of the case.'³¹⁴

The expropriation of a given property may also include a taking of closely connected ancillary rights, such as patents and contracts, which had not been directly nationalised.³¹⁵

³¹² 95 ILR, pp. 183, 207–10. See also *Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States* 119 ILR, pp. 615, 639–40, a case under the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), article 1110 of which prohibits direct and indirect expropriation, where the Tribunal noted that expropriation included 'covert or incidental interference with the use of property which has the effect of depriving the owner, in whole or in significant part, of the use of reasonably to be expected economic benefit of property even if not necessarily to the obvious benefit of the host state', para. 108. See also *CME v. Czech Republic* 9 ICSID Reports, p. 121 and *Middle East Cement Shipping v. Egypt* 7 ICSID Reports, p. 178.

³¹³ See e.g. *Generation Ukraine v. Ukraine* 44 ILM 2005, p. 404, paras. 20.22 and 20.26, noting that the plea of 'creeping expropriation' proceeded on the basis of an investment existing at a particular time that was eroded by a series of acts attributable to the state to the extent that it is violative of the relevant international standard of protection against expropriation. See also *Siemens v. Argentina*, Award of 6 February 2007, and W. M. Reisman and R. D. Sloane, 'Indirect Expropriation and Its Valuation in the BIT Generation', 74 BYIL, 2003, p. 115.

³¹⁴ 39 ILM, 2000, pp. 1317, 1329.

³¹⁵ PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926. See also the *Norwegian Shipowners' Claims* case, 1 RIAA, p. 307 (1922) and the *Sporrong and Lönnroth* case before the European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 52 (1982); 68 ILR, p. 86. See also *Papamichalopoulos v. Greece*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 260 (1993), p. 15. Note in addition *Revere Copper v. Opic* 56 ILR, p. 258. See G. C. Christie, 'What Constitutes a Taking of Property under International Law?', 38 BYIL, 1962, p. 307; DUSPIL, 1976, p. 444; Brownlie, *System and State Responsibility*, pp. 24–5; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. VIII, pp. 1006 ff., and *Third US Restatement on Foreign Relations Law*, vol. II, pp. 200–1.

Public purposes

The Permanent Court in the *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case noted that expropriation must be for 'reasons of public utility, judicial liquidation and similar measures'.³¹⁶ How far this extends is open to dispute, although it will cover wartime measures.

The issue was raised in the *BP* case,³¹⁷ where the reason for the expropriation of the BP property was the Libyan belief that the UK had encouraged Iran to occupy certain Persian Gulf Islands. The arbitrator explained that the taking violated international law, 'as it was made for purely extraneous political reasons and was arbitrary and discriminatory in character'.³¹⁸ This is ambiguous as to the public purpose issue, and in the *Liamco* case³¹⁹ it was held that 'the public utility principle is not a necessary requisite for the legality of a nationalisation'.³²⁰ It is to be noted, however, that the 1962 General Assembly Resolution on Permanent Sovereignty over Natural Resources mentions this requirement,³²¹ although the 1974 Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States does not.³²² The question may thus still be an open one,³²³ although later practice suggests that general measures taken on a non-discriminatory basis for the public good would not constitute unlawful expropriation. The

³¹⁶ PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926, p. 22. ³¹⁷ 53 ILR, p. 297. ³¹⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 329.

³¹⁹ 20 ILM, 1981, p. 1; 62 ILR, p. 141. ³²⁰ 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 58–9; 62 ILR, p. 194.

³²¹ Paragraph 4 of the 1962 Resolution provides that '[n]ationalization, expropriation or requisitioning shall be based on grounds or reasons of public utility, security or the national interest which are recognized as overriding purely individual or private interests, both domestic and foreign. In such cases the owner shall be paid appropriate compensation in accordance with the rules in force in the state taking such measures in the exercise of its sovereignty and in accordance with international law. In any case where the question of compensation gives rise to a controversy, the national jurisdiction of the state taking such measures shall be exhausted. However, upon agreement by sovereign states and other parties concerned, settlement of the dispute should be made through arbitration or international adjudication.'

³²² Article 2(2)c of the 1974 Charter provides that every state has the right to 'nationalise, expropriate or transfer ownership of foreign property in which case appropriate compensation should be paid by the state adopting such measures, taking into account its relevant laws and regulations and all circumstances that the state considers pertinent. In any case where the question of compensation gives rise to a controversy, it shall be settled under the domestic law of the nationalising state and by its tribunals, unless it is freely and mutually agreed by all states concerned that other peaceful means be sought on the basis of the sovereign equality of states and in accordance with the principle of free choice of means.'

³²³ See also *Agip SpA v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR, pp. 319, 336–9.

Tribunal in *Santa Elena v. Costa Rica* took the view that international law permitted expropriation of foreign-owned property *inter alia* for a public purpose and noted that this might include a taking for environmental reasons.³²⁴

Compensation

The requirement often stipulated is for prompt, adequate and effective compensation, the formula used by US Secretary of State Hull on the occasion of Mexican expropriations.³²⁵ It is the standard maintained in particular by the United States³²⁶ and found in an increasing number of bilateral investment treaties.³²⁷ However, case-law has been less clear. Early cases did not use the Hull formulation³²⁸ and the 1962 Permanent Sovereignty Resolution referred to 'appropriate compensation', a phrase cited with approval by the arbitrator in the *Texaco* case³²⁹ as a rule of customary law in view of the support it achieved. This was underlined in the *Aminoil* case,³³⁰ where the tribunal said that the standard of 'appropriate compensation' in the 1962 resolution 'codifies positive principles'.³³¹ It was stated that the determination of 'appropriate compensation' was better accomplished by an inquiry into all the circumstances relevant to the particular concrete case than through abstract theoretical discussion.³³² However, while the 'appropriate compensation' formula of the 1962 resolution is linked to both national and international law, the 1974 Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States links the formula to domestic law and considerations only. The former instrument is accepted as a reflection

³²⁴ 39 ILM, 2000, pp. 1317, 1329. The fact that the taking was for a laudable environmental reason did not affect the duty to pay compensation, *ibid.* See also *Too v. Greater Modesto Insurance Associates* 23 Iran-US CTR, p. 378; *Methanex v. USA* 44 ILM, 2005, p. 1345 and *Saluka v. Czech Republic*, Partial Award, 17 March 2006.

³²⁵ Hackworth, *Digest*, vol. III, 1940-4, p. 662. See also Muchlinski, *Multinational Enterprises*, pp. 496 ff., and E. Lauterpacht, 'Issues of Compensation and Nationality in the Taking of Energy Investments', 8 *Journal of Energy and Natural Resources Law*, 1990, p. 241.

³²⁶ See e.g. DUSPIL, 1976, p. 444, and D. Robinson, 'Expropriation in the Restatement (Revised)', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 176.

³²⁷ Robinson, 'Expropriation', p. 178. See further below, p. 837.

³²⁸ See e.g. the *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928, p. 46; 4 AD, p. 268 and the *Norwegian Shipowners' Claims* case, 1 RIAA, pp. 307, 339-41 (1922). See also O. Schachter, 'Compensation for Expropriation', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 121.

³²⁹ 17 ILM, 1978, pp. 3, 29; 53 ILR, pp. 389, 489. See also *Banco Nacional de Cuba v. Chase Manhattan Bank* 658 F.2d 875 (1981); 66 ILR, p. 421.

³³⁰ 21 ILM, 1982, p. 976; 66 ILR, p. 519. ³³¹ 21 ILM, 1982, p. 1032; 66 ILR, p. 601.

³³² 21 ILM, 1982, p. 1033.

of custom, while the latter is not.³³³ But in any event, it is unclear whether in practice there would be a substantial difference in result.³³⁴

It should also be noted that section IV(1) of the World Bank Guidelines on the Treatment of Foreign Direct Investment provides that a state may not expropriate foreign private investment except where this is done in accordance with applicable legal procedures, in pursuance in good faith of a public purpose, without discrimination on the basis of nationality and against the payment of appropriate compensation. Section IV(2) notes that compensation will be deemed to be appropriate where it is adequate, prompt and effective.³³⁵ Article 13 of the European Energy Charter Treaty, 1994 provides that expropriation must be for a purpose which is in the public interest, not discriminatory, carried out under due process of law and accompanied by the payment of prompt, adequate and effective compensation.³³⁶

In the sensitive process of assessing the extent of compensation, several distinct categories should be noted. There is generally little dispute about according compensation for the physical assets and other assets of the enterprise such as debts or monies due. Although there are differing methods as to how to value such assets in particular cases,³³⁷ the essential

³³³ See e.g. the *Texaco* case, 17 ILM, 1978, pp. 1, 29–31; 53 ILR, p. 489. Note that the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, p. 196 (para. 712), refers to the requirement of 'just compensation' and not the Hull formula. This is defined as 'an amount equivalent to the value of the property taken and to be paid at the time of taking or within a reasonable time thereafter with interest from the date of taking and in a form economically usable by the foreign national', *ibid.*, p. 197. See also Schachter, 'Compensation', p. 121.

³³⁴ See generally also R. Dolzer, 'New Foundation of the Law of Expropriation of Alien Property', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 533, and M. Sornarajah, 'Compensation for Expropriation', 13 *Journal of World Trade Law*, 1979, p. 108, and Sornarajah, *International Law on Foreign Investment*.

³³⁵ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1382. Note also that article 1110 of the North American Free Trade Agreement, 1992 (NAFTA) provides that no party shall directly or indirectly nationalise or expropriate an investment of an investor of another party in its territory or take a measure tantamount to nationalisation or expropriation except where it is for a public purpose, on a non-discriminatory basis, in accordance with due process of law and upon payment of compensation. The payment of compensation is to be the fair market value of the expropriated investment immediately before the expropriation took place and should not reflect any change in value occurring because the intended expropriation had become known earlier. Valuation criteria shall include going concern value, asset value (including declared tax value of tangible property) and other criteria, as appropriate to determine fair market value. In addition, compensation shall be paid with interest, without delay and be fully realisable. See 32 ILM, 1993, p. 605.

³³⁶ 34 ILM, 1995, p. 391.

³³⁷ See e.g. the *Aminoil* case, 21 ILM, 1982, pp. 976, 1038; 66 ILR, pp. 519, 608–9.

principle is that of fair market value.³³⁸ Interest on the value of such assets will also normally be paid.³³⁹ There is, however, disagreement with regard to the award of compensation for the loss of future profits. In *AMCO v. Indonesia*,³⁴⁰ the Arbitral Tribunal held that:

the full compensation of prejudice, by awarding to the injured party, the *damnum emergens* [loss suffered] and the *lucrum cessans* [expected profits] is a principle common to the main systems of municipal law, and therefore, a general principle of law which may be considered as a source of international law,

although the compensation that could be awarded would cover only direct and foreseeable prejudice and not more remote damage.³⁴¹

In *Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States*, the Tribunal noted that normally the fair market value of a going concern which has a history of profitable operation may be based on an estimate of future profits subject to a discounted cash flow analysis,³⁴² but where the enterprise has not operated for a sufficiently long time to establish a performance record or where it has failed to make a profit, future profits cannot be used so that to determine the fair market value, reference instead to the actual investment made may be appropriate.³⁴³

However, it has been argued that one may need to take into account whether the expropriation itself was lawful or unlawful. In *INA Corporation v. The Islamic Republic of Iran*,³⁴⁴ the Tribunal suggested that in the case of a large-scale, lawful nationalisation, 'international law has undergone

³³⁸ Fair market value means essentially the amount that a willing buyer would pay a willing seller for the shares of a going concern, ignoring the expropriation situation completely: see e.g. *INA Corporation v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 8 Iran-US CTR, pp. 373, 380; 75 ILR, p. 603.

³³⁹ See the Memorandum of the Foreign and Commonwealth Office on the Practice of International Tribunals in Awarding Interest, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 768.

³⁴⁰ 24 ILM, 1985, pp. 1022, 1036-7; 89 ILR, pp. 405, 504. See also the *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928; 4 AD, p. 268; the *Sapphire* case, 35 ILR, p. 136; the *Norwegian Shipowners' Claims* case, 1 RIAA, p. 307 (1922); the *Lighthouses Arbitration* 23 ILR, p. 299, and *Benvenuti and Bonfant v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR pp. 345, 375-9.

³⁴¹ 24 ILM, 1985, pp. 1022, 1037; 89 ILR, p. 505. See also *Sola Tiles Inc. v. Islamic Republic of Iran* 83 ILR, p. 460.

³⁴² 119 ILR, pp. 615, 641. See also *Benvenuti and Bonfant v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR, p. 345 and *AGIP SPA v. The Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR, p. 318.

³⁴³ 119 ILR, pp. 641-2. See also *Phelps Dodge Corporation v. Iran* 10 Iran-US CTR, 1986, pp. 121, 132-3 and *Biloune v. Ghana Investment Centre* 95 ILR, pp. 183, 228-9.

³⁴⁴ 8 Iran-US CTR, p. 373; 75 ILR, p. 595.

a gradual reappraisal, the effect of which may be to undermine the doctrinal value of any “full” or “adequate” (when used as identical to “full”) compensation standard’. However, in a situation involving an investment of a small amount shortly before the nationalisation, international law did allow for compensation in an amount equal to the fair market value of the investment.³⁴⁵ However, Judge Lagergren noted that the ‘fair market value’ standard would normally be discounted in cases of lawful large-scale nationalisations in taking account of ‘all circumstances’.³⁴⁶

In *Amoco International Finance Corporation v. The Islamic Republic of Iran*,³⁴⁷ Chamber Three of the Iran–US Claims Tribunal held that the property in question had been lawfully expropriated and that ‘a clear distinction must be made between lawful and unlawful expropriations, since the rules applicable to the compensation to be paid by the expropriating state differ according to the legal characterisation of the taking’.³⁴⁸ In the case of an unlawful taking, full restitution in kind or its monetary equivalent was required in order to re-establish the situation which would in all probability have existed if the expropriation had not occurred,³⁴⁹ while in the case of lawful taking, the standard was the payment of the full value of the undertaking at the moment of dispossession. The difference was interpreted by the Tribunal to mean that compensation for lost profits was only available in cases of wrongful expropriation. As far as the actual method of valuation was concerned, the Tribunal rejected the ‘discounted cash flow’ method, which would involve the estimation of the likely future earnings of the company at the valuation date and discounting such earnings to take account of reasonably foreseeable risks, since it was likely to amount to restitution as well as being too speculative.³⁵⁰

Bilateral investment treaties

In practice, many of the situations involving commercial relations between states and private parties fall within the framework of bilateral

³⁴⁵ 8 Iran–US CTR, p. 378; 75 ILR, p. 602. ³⁴⁶ 8 Iran–US CTR, p. 390; 75 ILR, p. 614.

³⁴⁷ 15 Iran–US CTR, pp. 189, 246–52; 83 ILR, p. 500.

³⁴⁸ 15 Iran–US CTR, p. 246; 83 ILR, p. 565.

³⁴⁹ See also Judge Lagergren’s Separate Opinion in *INA Corporation v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 8 Iran–US CTR, p. 385; 75 ILR, p. 609.

³⁵⁰ But see e.g. *AIG v. The Islamic Republic of Iran* 4 Iran–US CTR, pp. 96, 109–10, where in a case of lawful expropriation lost profits were awarded. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 508 ff.; Section IV of the World Bank Guidelines, and article 13 of the European Energy Charter Treaty, 1994.

agreements.³⁵¹ These arrangements are intended to encourage investment in a way that protects the basic interests of both the capital-exporting and capital-importing states. Indeed, there has been a remarkable expansion in the number of such bilateral investment treaties.³⁵² The British government, for example, has stated that it is policy to conclude as many such agreements as possible in order to stimulate investment flows. It has also been noted that they are designed to set standards applicable in international law.³⁵³ The provisions of such agreements indeed are remarkably uniform and constitute valuable state practice.³⁵⁴ While normally great care has to be taken in inferring the existence of a rule of customary international law from a range of bilateral treaties, the very number and uniformity of such agreements make them significant exemplars.

Some of these common features of such treaties may be noted. First, the concept of an investment is invariably broadly defined. In article 1(a) of the important UK–USSR bilateral investment treaty, 1989,³⁵⁵ for example, it is provided that:

³⁵¹ See e.g. Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, pp. 554 ff.; E. Denza and D. Brooks, 'Investment Protection Treaties: United Kingdom Experience', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 908; A. Akinsanya, 'International Protection of Direct Foreign Investments in the Third World', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 58; F. A. Mann, 'British Treaties for the Promotion and Protection of Investments', 52 BYIL, 1981, p. 241; D. Vagts, 'Foreign Investment Risk Reconsidered: The View From the 1980s', 2 *ICSID Review – Foreign Investment Law Journal*, 1987, p. 1; P. B. Gann, 'The US Bilateral Investment Treaties Program', 21 *Stanford Journal of International Law*, 1986, p. 373, and I. Pogany, 'The Regulation of Foreign Investment in Hungary', 4 *ICSID Review – Foreign Investment Law Journal*, 1989, p. 39. See also J. Kokott, 'Interim Report on the Role of Diplomatic Protection in the Field of the Protection of Foreign Investment', International Law Association, Report of the Seventieth Conference, New Delhi, 2002, p. 259, and C. McLachlan, 'Investment Treaties and General International Law', 57 ICLQ, 2008, p. 361.

³⁵² Kokott estimates that close to 2,000 are in existence, 'Interim Report', p. 263. See, for earlier figures, 35 ILM, 1996, p. 1130; Denza and Brooks, 'Investment Protection Treaties', p. 913, and UKMIL, 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 621. Lowenfeld estimates that as of 2006, some 2,400 to 2,600 bilateral investment treaties were in effect, *International Economic Law*, p. 554.

³⁵³ See the text of the Foreign Office statement in UKMIL, 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 620. Such agreements are in UK practice usually termed investment promotion and protection agreements (IPPs). In March 2000, it was stated that the UK had entered into ninety-three such treaties, UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 606.

³⁵⁴ See Kokott, 'Interim Report', p. 263. See also R. Dolzer, 'New Foundations of the Law of Expropriation of Alien Property', 75 AJIL, 1981, pp. 553, 565–6, and B. Kishoiyian, 'The Utility of Bilateral Investment Treaties in the Formulation of Customary International Law', 14 *Netherlands Journal of International Law and Business*, 1994, p. 327.

³⁵⁵ Text reproduced in 29 ILM, 1989, p. 366.

the term 'investment' means every kind of asset and in particular, though not exclusively, includes:

- (i) movable and immovable property and any other related property rights such as mortgages;
- (ii) shares in, and stocks, bonds and debentures of, and any other form of participation in, a company or business enterprise;
- (iii) claims to money, and claims to performance under contract having a financial value;
- (iv) intellectual property rights, technical processes, know-how and any other benefit or advantage attached to a business;
- (v) rights conferred by law or under contract to undertake any commercial activity, including the search for, or the cultivation, extraction or exploitation of natural resources.³⁵⁶

Secondly, both parties undertake to encourage and create favourable conditions for investment, to accord such investments 'fair and equitable treatment' and to refrain from impairing by unreasonable or discriminatory measures the management, maintenance, use, enjoyment or disposal of investments in its territory.³⁵⁷ Thirdly, investments by the contracting parties are not to be treated less favourably than those of other states.³⁵⁸ As far as expropriation is concerned, article 5 of the UK-USSR agreement, by way of example, provides that investments of the contracting parties are not to be expropriated:

except for a purpose which is in the public interest and is not discriminatory and against the payment, without delay, of prompt and effective compensation. Such compensation shall amount to the real value of the investment expropriated immediately before the expropriation or before the impending expropriation became public knowledge, whichever is the earlier, shall be made within two months of the date of expropriation, after which interest at a normal commercial rate shall accrue until the date of payment and shall be effectively realisable and be freely transferable. The investor affected shall have a right under the law of the contracting state making the expropriation, to prompt review, by a judicial or other independent authority of that party, of his or its case and of the valuation of his or its investment in accordance with the principles set out in this paragraph.

³⁵⁶ See also, for example, the similar provisions in the UK-Philippines Investment Agreement, 1981 and the UK-Hungary Investment Agreement, 1987. See also article 1(6) of the European Energy Charter Treaty, 1994.

³⁵⁷ See e.g. article 2 of the UK-USSR agreement.

³⁵⁸ See e.g. article 3 of the UK-USSR agreement.

Such practice confirms the traditional principles dealing with the conditions of a lawful expropriation and compensation, noting also the acceptance of the jurisdiction of the expropriating state over the issues of the legality of the expropriation and the valuation of the property expropriated.³⁵⁹ An attempt to produce a Multilateral Agreement on Investment commenced in 1995 within the framework of the Organisation of Economic Co-operation and Development, but foundered in 1998.³⁶⁰

Lump-sum agreements

Many disputes over expropriation of foreign property have in fact been resolved directly by the states concerned on the basis of lump-sum settlements, usually after protracted negotiations and invariably at valuation below the current value of the assets concerned.³⁶¹ For example, the UK–USSR Agreement on the Settlement of Mutual Financial and Property Claims, 1986³⁶² dealt with UK government claims of the order of £500 million in respect of Russian war debt and private claims of British nationals amounting to some £400 million.³⁶³ In the event, a sum in the region of £45 million was made available to satisfy these claims.³⁶⁴ The

³⁵⁹ Note that provisions for compensation for expropriation may also be contained in Treaties of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation as part of a framework arrangement dealing with foreign trade and investment: see e.g. article IV(3) of the Convention of Establishment, 1959 between the US and France, 11 UST 2398.

³⁶⁰ See e.g. S. J. Canner, 'The Multilateral Agreement on Investment', 31 *Cornell International Law Journal*, 1998, p. 657; A. Böhrer, 'The Struggle for a Multilateral Agreement on Investment – An Assessment of the Negotiation Process in the OECD', 41 *German YIL*, 1998, p. 267, and T. Waelde, 'Multilateral Investment Agreements (MITs) in the Year 2000' in *Mélanges Philippe Kahn*, Paris, 2000, p. 389. See also www.oecd.org/EN/document/0,,EN-document-92-3-no-6-27308-92,00.html. Discussions on investment continue within the framework of the World Trade Organisation: see www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/invest_e/invest_e.htm.

³⁶¹ See e.g. Lillich and Weston, *International Claims: Their Settlement by Lump-Sum Agreements*, and Lillich and Weston, 'Lump-Sum Agreements: Their Continuing Contribution to the Law of International Claims', 82 *AJIL*, 1988, p. 69. See also D. J. Bederman, 'Interim Report on Lump Sum Agreements and Diplomatic Protection', *International Law Association, Report of the Seventieth Conference*, New Delhi, 2002, p. 230.

³⁶² Cm 30. Note that this agreement dealt with claims arising before 1939.

³⁶³ As against these claims, the USSR had made extensive claims in the region of £2 billion in respect of alleged losses caused by British intervention in the USSR between 1918 and 1921: see UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, p. 606.

³⁶⁴ The British government waived its entitlement to a share in the settlement in respect of its own claims, *ibid.*, p. 608.

Agreement also provided that money held in diplomatic bank accounts in the UK belonging to the pre-revolutionary Russian Embassy, amounting to some £2.65 million, was released to the Soviet authorities. As is usual in such agreements, each government was solely responsible for settling the claims of its nationals.³⁶⁵ This was accomplished in the UK through the medium of the Foreign Compensation Commission, which acts to distribute settlement sums 'as may seem just and equitable to them having regard to all the circumstances'. A distinction was made as between bond and property claims and principles enunciated with regard to exchange rates at the relevant time.³⁶⁶

The question arises thus as to whether such agreements constitute state practice in the context of international customary rules concerning the level of compensation required upon an expropriation of foreign property. A Chamber of the Iran–US Claims Tribunal in *SEDCO v. National Iranian Oil Co.*³⁶⁷ noted that deriving general principles of law from the conduct of states in lump-sum or negotiated settlements in other expropriation cases was difficult because of the 'questionable evidentiary value... of much of the practice available'. This was because such settlements were often motivated primarily by non-juridical considerations. The Chamber also held incidentally that bilateral investment treaties were also unreliable evidence of international customary standards of compensation. Views differ as to the value to be attributed to such practice,³⁶⁸ but caution is required before accepting bilateral investment treaties and lump-sum agreements as evidence of customary law. This is particularly so with regard to the latter since they deal with specific situations rather than laying down a framework for future activity.³⁶⁹ Nevertheless, it would be equally unwise to disregard them entirely. As with all examples of state practice and behaviour, careful attention must be paid to all the relevant circumstances both of the practice maintained and the principle under consideration.

³⁶⁵ See also the UK–China Agreement on the Settlement of Property Claims 1987, UKMIL, 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 626.

³⁶⁶ See, with respect to the UK–USSR agreement, the Foreign Compensation (USSR) (Registration and Determination of Claims) Order 1986, SI 1986/2222 and the Foreign Compensation (USSR) (Distribution) Order 1987.

³⁶⁷ 10 Iran–US CTR, pp. 180, 185; 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 969.

³⁶⁸ See e.g. Bowett, 'State Contracts with Aliens', pp. 65–6.

³⁶⁹ Note the view of the International Court in the *Barcelona Traction* case that such settlements were *sui generis* and provided no guide as to general international practice, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 4, 40.

Non-discrimination

It has been argued that non-discrimination is a requirement for a valid and lawful expropriation.³⁷⁰ Although it is not mentioned in the 1962 resolution, the arbitrator in the *Liamco*³⁷¹ case strongly argued that a discriminatory nationalisation would be unlawful.³⁷² Nevertheless, in that case, it was held that Libya's action against certain oil companies was aimed at preserving its ownership of the oil and was non-discriminatory. Indeed, the arbitrator noted that the political motive itself was not the predominant motive for nationalisation and would not *per se* constitute sufficient proof of a purely discriminatory measure.³⁷³ While the discrimination factor would certainly be a relevant factor to be considered, it would in practice often be extremely difficult to prove in concrete cases.

*The Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency*³⁷⁴

One approach to the question of foreign investment and the balancing of the interests of the states concerned is provided by the Convention Establishing the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency, 1985, which came into force in 1988.³⁷⁵ This Agency is part of the World Bank group and offers political risk insurance (guarantees) to investors and lenders. Membership is open to all members of the World Bank. Article 2 provides that the purpose of the Agency, which is an affiliate of the World Bank, is to encourage the flow of investment for productive purposes among member countries and, in particular, to developing countries. This is to be achieved in essence by the provision of insurance cover 'against non-commercial risks', such as restrictions on the transfer of currency, measures of expropriation, breaches of government contracts and losses resulting from war or civil disturbances.³⁷⁶

³⁷⁰ See e.g. White, *Nationalisation*, pp. 119 ff. See also A. Maniruzzaman, 'Expropriation of Alien Property and the Principle of Non-Discrimination in the International Law of Foreign Investment', 8 *Journal of Transnational Law and Policy*, 1999, p. 141.

³⁷¹ 20 ILM, 1981, p. 1; 62 ILR, p. 141. ³⁷² 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 58–9; 62 ILR, p. 194.

³⁷³ 20 ILM, 1981, p. 60. See also Section IV of the World Bank Guidelines on the Treatment of Foreign Direct Investment, and article 13 of the European Energy Charter Treaty, 1994.

³⁷⁴ See e.g. S. K. Chatterjee, 'The Convention Establishing the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 76, and I. Shihata, *The Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency and Foreign Investment*, Dordrecht, 1987. The Convention came into force on 12 April 1988: see 28 ILM, 1989, p. 1233 and see also www.miga.org/.

³⁷⁵ See e.g. the UK Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency Act 1988.

³⁷⁶ Article 11.

It is also intended that the Agency would positively encourage investment by means of research and the dissemination of information on investment opportunities. It may very well be that this initiative could in the long term reduce the sensitive nature of the expropriation mechanism.

Suggestions for further reading

- I. Brownlie, *System of the Law of Nations: State Responsibility, Part I*, Oxford, 1983
- J. Crawford, *The International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility*, Cambridge, 2002
- W. K. Geck, 'Diplomatic Protection' in *Encyclopedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 1992, vol. X, p. 1053
- C. Gray, *Judicial Remedies in International Law*, Oxford, 1987
- International Responsibility Today: Essays in Memory of Oscar Schachter* (ed. M. Ragazzi), The Hague, 2005
- 'Symposium: The ILC's State Responsibility Articles', 96 AJIL, 2002, p. 773

International environmental law

Recent years have seen an appreciable growth in the level of understanding of the dangers facing the international environment¹ and an extensive range of environmental problems is now the subject of serious international concern.² These include atmospheric pollution, marine pollution,

¹ See generally P. Birnie and A. Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002; C. Redgwell, *Intergenerational Trusts and Environmental Protection*, Manchester, 1999; P. Sands, *Principles of International Environmental Law*, Manchester, 2nd edn, 2003; E. Benvenisti, *Sharing Transboundary Resources*, Cambridge, 2002; M. Bothe and P. Sand, *La Politique de l'Environnement: De la Réglementation aux Instruments Économique*, The Hague, 2003; *The Oxford Handbook of International Environmental Law* (eds. D. Bodansky, J. Bruneel and E. Hay), Oxford, 2007; R. Romi, *Droit International et Européen de l'Environnement*, Paris, 2005; R. Wolfrum and N. Matz, *Conflicts in International Environmental Law*, Berlin, 2003; A. Kiss and J.-P. Beurier, *Droit International de l'Environnement*, 3rd edn, Paris, 2004; A. Kiss and D. Shelton, *A Guide to International Environmental Law*, The Hague, 2007, and Kiss, 'International Protection of the Environment' in *The Structure and Process of International Law* (eds. R. St J. Macdonald and D. Johnston), The Hague, 1983, p. 1069; J. Barros and D. M. Johnston, *The International Law of Pollution*, New York, 1974; *International Environmental Law* (eds. L. Teclaff and A. Utton), New York, 1974; *Trends in Environmental Policy and Law* (ed. M. Bothe), Gland, 1980; Hague Academy of International Law Colloque 1973, *The Protection of the Environment and International Law* (ed. A. Kiss); *ibid.*, Colloque 1984, *The Future of the International Law of the Environment* (ed. R. J. Dupuy); J. Schneider, *World Public Order of the Environment*, Toronto, 1979; *International Environmental Law* (eds. C. D. Gurumathy, G. W. R. Palmer and B. Weston), St Paul, 1994; E. Brown Weiss, *In Fairness to Future Generations: International Law, Common Patrimony and Intergenerational Equity*, Dobbs Ferry, 1989; A. Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy and International Law: An Environmental Perspective', 60 BYIL, 1989, p. 257, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 1269. See also *Selected Multilateral Treaties in the Field of the Environment*, Cambridge, 2 vols., 1991; A. O. Adede, *International Environmental Law Digest*, Amsterdam, 1993, and P. Sands and P. Galizzi, *Documents in International Environmental Law*, Manchester, 2nd edn, 2003.

² This may be measured by the fact that in July 1993, the International Court of Justice established a special Chamber to deal with environmental questions. It has as yet heard no cases. See R. Ranjeva, 'L'Environnement, La Cour Internationale de Justice et sa Chambre Spéciale pour les Questions d'Environnement', AFDI, 1994, p. 433. Note also the Environmental Annex (Annex IV) to the Israel-Jordan Peace Treaty, 1995 and article 18 of the Treaty, 34 ILM, 1995, p. 43. See also Annex II on Water Related Matters.

global warming and ozone depletion, the dangers of nuclear and other extra-hazardous substances and threatened wildlife species.³ Such problems have an international dimension in two obvious respects. First, pollution generated from within a particular state often has a serious impact upon other countries. The prime example would be acid rain, whereby chemicals emitted from factories rise in the atmosphere and react with water and sunlight to form acids. These are carried in the wind and fall eventually to earth in the rain, often thousands of miles away from the initial polluting event. Secondly, it is now apparent that environmental problems cannot be resolved by states acting individually. Accordingly, co-operation between the polluting and the polluted state is necessitated. However, the issue becomes more complicated in those cases where it is quite impossible to determine from which country a particular form of environmental pollution has emanated. This would be the case, for example, with ozone depletion. In other words, the international nature of pollution, both with regard to its creation and the damage caused, is now accepted as requiring an international response.

The initial conceptual problem posed for international law lies in the state-oriented nature of the discipline. Traditionally, a state would only be responsible in the international legal sense for damage caused where it could be clearly demonstrated that this resulted from its own unlawful activity.⁴ This has proved to be an inadequate framework for dealing with environmental issues for a variety of reasons, ranging from difficulties of proof to liability for lawful activities and the particular question of responsibility of non-state offenders. Accordingly, the international community has slowly been moving away from the classic state responsibility approach to damage caused towards a regime of international co-operation.

A broad range of international participants are concerned with developments in this field. States, of course, as the dominant subjects of the international legal system are deeply involved, as are an increasing number of international organisations, whether at the global, regional or bilateral level. The United Nations General Assembly has adopted a

³ See, as to endangered species, e.g. M. Carwardine, *The WWF Environment Handbook*, London, 1990, and S. Lyster, *International Wildlife Law*, Cambridge, 1985. See also the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species, 1973 covering animals and plants, and the Convention on Biological Diversity, 1992, which *inter alia* calls upon parties to promote priority access on a fair and equitable basis by all parties, especially developing countries, to the results and benefits arising from biotechnologies based upon genetic resources provided by contracting parties.

⁴ See further above, chapter 14.

number of resolutions concerning the environment,⁵ and the UN Environment Programme was established after the Stockholm Conference of 1972. This has proved a particularly important organisation in the evolution of conventions and instruments in the field of environmental protection. It is based in Nairobi and consists of a Governing Council of fifty-eight members elected by the General Assembly. UNEP has been responsible for the development of a number of initiatives, including the 1985 Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer and the 1987 Montreal Protocol and the 1992 Convention on Biodiversity.⁶ An Inter-Agency Committee on Sustainable Development was set up in 1992 to improve co-operation between the various UN bodies concerned with this topic. In the same year, the UN Commission on Sustainable Development was established by the General Assembly and the Economic and Social Council of the UN (ECOSOC). It consists of fifty-three states elected by ECOSOC for three-year terms and it exists in order to follow up the UN Conference on Environment and Development 1992.⁷ The techniques of supervision utilised in international bodies include reporting,⁸ inspection⁹ and standard-setting through the adoption of conventions, regulations, guidelines and so forth. In 1994 it was agreed to transform the Global Environment Facility from a three-year pilot programme¹⁰ into a permanent financial mechanism to award grants and concessional funds to developing countries for global environmental protection projects.¹¹ The Facility focuses upon climate change, the destruction of biological diversity, the pollution of international waters and ozone depletion. Issues of land-degradation¹² also fall within this framework.¹³ In addition, a wide range of non-governmental organisations are also concerned with environmental issues.

⁵ See e.g. resolutions 2398 (XXII); 2997 (XXVII); 34/188; 35/8; 37/137; 37/250; 42/187; 44/244; 44/228; 45/212 and 47/188.

⁶ See generally www.unep.org/.

⁷ See generally www.un.org/esa/sustdev/csd.htm.

⁸ As e.g. under the Prevention of Marine Pollution from Land-Based Sources Convention, 1974 and the Basle Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes, 1989.

⁹ See e.g. the Antarctic Treaty, 1959 and the Protocol on Environmental Protection, 1991. See, with regard to the International Whaling Commission, P. Birnie, *International Regulation of Whaling*, New York, 1985, p. 199.

¹⁰ See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 1735. ¹¹ See 33 ILM, 1994, p. 1273.

¹² See also the UN Convention to Combat Desertification, 1994, *ibid.*, p. 1328.

¹³ See generally www.gefweb.org/.

It has been argued that there now exists an international human right to a clean environment.¹⁴ There are, of course, a range of general human rights provisions that may have a relevance in the field of environmental protection, such as the right to life, right to an adequate standard of living, right to health, right to food and so forth, but specific references to a human right to a clean environment have tended to be few and ambiguous. The preamble to the seminal Stockholm Declaration of the UN Conference on the Human Environment 1972 noted that the environment was 'essential to . . . the enjoyment of basic human rights – even the right to life itself', while Principle 1 stated that 'Man has the fundamental right to freedom, equality and adequate conditions of life, in an environment of a quality that permits a life of dignity and well-being.' Article 24 of the African Charter of Human and Peoples' Rights, 1981 provided that 'all people shall have the right to a general satisfactory environment favourable to their development', while article 11 of the Additional Protocol to the American Convention on Human Rights, 1988 declared that 'everyone shall have the right to live in a healthy environment' and that 'the states parties shall promote the protection, preservation and improvement of the environment'. Article 29 of the Convention on the Rights of the Child, 1989 explicitly referred to the need for the education of the child to be directed *inter alia* to 'the development of respect for the natural environment'.

The final text of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe (CSCE) meeting on the environment in Sofia in 1989 reaffirmed respect for the right of individuals, groups and organisations concerned with the environment to express freely their views, to associate with others and assemble peacefully, to obtain and distribute relevant information and to participate in public debates on environmental issues.¹⁵ It should also be noted that the Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context, 1991 calls for the 'establishment

¹⁴ See, for example, M. Pallemarts, 'International Environmental Law from Stockholm to Rio: Back to the Future?' in *Greening International Law* (ed. P. Sands), London, 1993, pp. 1, 8; *Environnement et Droits de l'Homme* (ed. P. Kromarek), Paris, 1987; G. Alfredsson and A. Ovsioyk, 'Human Rights and the Environment', 60 *Nordic Journal of International Law*, 1991, p. 19; W. P. Gormley, *Human Rights and Environment*, Leiden, 1976; *Human Rights and Environmental Protection* (ed. A. Cançado Trindade), 1992; D. Shelton, 'Whatever Happened in Rio to Human Rights?', 3 *Yearbook of International Environmental Law*, 1992, p. 75; Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 252 ff., and *Human Rights Approaches to Environmental Protection* (eds. M. Anderson and A. E. Boyle), Oxford, 1996. See also M. Déjeant-Pons and M. Pallemarts, *Human Rights and the Environment*, Council of Europe, 2002.

¹⁵ CSCE/SEM.36. See also EC Directive 90/313, 1990.

of an environmental impact assessment procedure that permits public participation' in certain circumstances.

However, the references to human rights in the Rio Declaration on Environment and Development adopted at the UN Conference on Environment and Development in 1992¹⁶ are rather sparse. Principle 1 declares that human beings are 'at the centre of concerns for sustainable development. They are entitled to a healthy and productive life in harmony with nature.' Beyond this tangential reference, human rights concerns were not, it is fair to say, at the centre of the documentation produced by the 1992 conference. In fact, it is fair to say that the focus of the conference was rather upon states and their sovereign rights than upon individuals and their rights.

Nevertheless, moves to associate the two areas of international law are progressing cautiously. In 1994, the final report on Human Rights and the Environment was delivered to the UN Sub-Commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities (as it was then called).¹⁷ The Report contains a set of Draft Principles on Human Rights and the Environment, which includes the notion that 'human rights, an ecologically sound environment, sustainable development and peace are interdependent and indivisible' and that 'all persons have the right to a secure, healthy and ecologically sound environment. This right and other human rights, including civil, cultural, economic, political and social rights, are universal, interdependent and indivisible.' It remains to be seen whether this initiative will bear fruit.¹⁸ The Institut de Droit International, a private but influential association, adopted a resolution on the environment at its Strasbourg Session in September 1997. Article 2 of this noted that 'Every human being has the right to live in a healthy environment'.¹⁹

An important stage has been reached with the adoption of the Aarhus Convention on Access to Information, Public Participation in Decision-Making and Access to Justice in Environmental Matters, 1998,²⁰ which

¹⁶ See generally, as to the Rio Conference, S. Johnson, *The Earth Summit*, Dordrecht, 1993.

¹⁷ E/CN.4/Sub.2/1994/9.

¹⁸ Note also the European Charter on Environment and Health, 1989 and the Dublin Declaration on the Environmental Imperative adopted by the European Council, 1990.

¹⁹ See also L. Loucaides, 'Environmental Protection through the Jurisprudence of the European Convention on Human Rights', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 249.

²⁰ Adopted through the United Nations Economic Commission for Europe. The Convention came into force on 30 October 2001, see generally www.unece.org/env/pp/, and the first meeting of states parties took place in October 2002. Note that governments accepted in January 2003 a Protocol which obliges companies to register annually their releases into

explicitly links human rights and the environment and recognises that 'adequate protection of the environment is essential to human well-being and the enjoyment of basic human rights, including the right to life itself'. Article 1 provides that each contracting party 'shall guarantee the rights of access to information, public participation in decision-making and access to justice in environmental matters' and thereby marks the acceptance by parties of obligations towards their own citizens. Article 9 stipulates that parties should establish a review procedure before a court of law or other independent and impartial body for any persons who consider that their request for information has not been properly addressed, and article 15 provides that 'optional arrangements of a non-confrontational, non-judicial and consultative status' should be established for reviewing compliance with the Convention. Such arrangements are to allow for appropriate public involvement 'and may include the option of considering communications from members of the public on matters relating to this Convention'. Decision 1/7 adopted on 30 October 2002 set up an eight-member Compliance Committee to consider submissions made with regard to allegations of non-compliance with the Convention by one party against another or by members of the public against any contracting party unless that party has opted out of the procedure within one year of becoming a party. The Committee may also prepare a report on compliance with or implementation of the provisions of the Convention and monitor, assess and facilitate the implementation of and compliance with the reporting requirements made under article 10, paragraph 2, of the Convention and specified in Decision 1/8.²¹

The question of the relationship between the protection of the environment and the need for economic development is another factor underpinning the evolution of environmental law. States that are currently attempting to industrialise face the problem that to do so in an environmentally safe way is very expensive and the resources that can be devoted to this are extremely limited. The Stockholm Declaration of the United Nations Conference on the Human Environment 1972 emphasised in Principle 8 that 'economic and social development is essential for ensuring a favourable living and working environment for man and for creating

the environment and transfer to other companies of certain pollutants. This information will then appear in the Pollutant Release and Transfer Register.

²¹ See generally R. R. Churchill and G. Uffstein, 'Autonomous Institutional Arrangements in Multilateral Environmental Agreements: A Little-Noticed Phenomenon in International Law', 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 623.

conditions on earth that are necessary for the improvement of the quality of life', while the sovereign right of states to exploit their own resources was also stressed.²² Principle 2 of the Rio Declaration, adopted at the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development 1992, noted that states have 'the sovereign right to exploit their own resources pursuant to their own environmental and developmental policies', while Principle 3 stated that 'the right to development must be fulfilled so as to equitably meet developmental and environmental needs of present and future generations'. The correct balance between development and environmental protection is now one of the main challenges facing the international community and reflects the competing interests posed by the principle of state sovereignty on the one hand and the need for international co-operation on the other. It also raises the issue as to how far one takes into account the legacy for future generations of activities conducted at the present time or currently planned. Many developmental activities, such as the creation of nuclear power plants for example, may have significant repercussions for many generations to come.²³ The Energy Charter Treaty²⁴ signed at Lisbon in 1994 by OECD and Eastern European and CIS states refers to environmental issues in the context of energy concerns in a rather less than robust fashion. Article 19 notes that contracting parties 'shall strive to minimise in an economically efficient manner harmful environmental impacts'. In so doing, parties are to act 'in a cost-effective manner'. Parties are to 'strive to take precautionary measures to prevent or minimise environmental degradation' and agree that the polluter should 'in principle, bear the cost of pollution, including transboundary pollution, with due regard to the public interest and without distorting investment in the energy cycle or international trade'.

²² Principle 21. See also S. P. Subedi, 'Balancing International Trade with Environmental Protection', 25 *Brooklyn Journal of International Law*, 1999, p. 373; T. Schoenbaum, 'International Trade and Protection of the Environment', 91 *AJIL*, 1997, p. 268, and N. Bernasconi-Osterwalder, D. Magraw, M. J. Oliva, M. Orellana and E. Tuerk, *Environment and Trade: A Guide to WTO Jurisprudence*, London, 2006. Note the OECD Declaration on Integrating Climate Change Adaptation into Development Cooperation, 2006.

²³ See e.g. A. D'Amato, 'Do We Owe a Duty to Future Generations to Preserve the Global Environment?', 84 *AJIL*, 1990, p. 190; Sands, *Principles*, p. 199; E. Weiss, 'Our Rights and Obligations to Future Generations for the Environment', 84 *AJIL*, 1990, p. 198, and Weiss, *Intergenerational Equity*. See also *Minors Oposa v. Secretary of the Department of Environment and Natural Resources*, Supreme Court of the Philippines, 33 *ILM*, 1994, pp. 173, 185, and Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Nuclear Tests Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 341; 106 *ILR*, pp. 1, 63.

²⁴ 33 *ILM*, 1995, p. 360.

One potentially innovative method for linking economic underdevelopment and protection of the environment is the 'debt for nature swaps' arrangement, whereby debts owed abroad may be converted into an obligation upon the debtor state to spend the amount of the debt upon local environment projects.²⁵

State responsibility and the environment²⁶

The basic duty of states

The principles of state responsibility²⁷ dictate that states are accountable for breaches of international law. Such breaches of treaty or customary international law enable the injured state to maintain a claim against the violating state, whether by way of diplomatic action or by way of recourse to international mechanisms where such are in place with regard to the subject matter at issue. Recourse to international arbitration or to the International Court of Justice is also possible provided the necessary jurisdictional basis has been established. Customary international law imposes several important fundamental obligations upon states in the area of environmental protection. The view that international law supports an approach predicated upon absolute territorial sovereignty, so that a state could do as it liked irrespective of the consequences upon other states, has long been discredited. The basic duty upon states is not so to act as to injure the rights of other states.²⁸ This duty has evolved partly out of the regime concerned with international waterways. In the *International Commission on the River Oder* case,²⁹ for example, the Permanent Court of International Justice noted that 'this community of interest in a navigable river becomes the basis of a common legal right, the essential features of which are the perfect equality of all riparian states in the use of the whole course of the river and the exclusion of any preferential privileges

²⁵ See e.g. F. G. Minujin, 'Debt-for-Nature Swaps: A Financial Mechanism to Reduce Debt and Preserve the Environment', 21 *Environmental Policy and Law*, 1991, p. 146, and S. George, *The Debt Boomerang*, London, 1992, pp. 30–1.

²⁶ See e.g. B. D. Smith, *State Responsibility and the Marine Environment*, Oxford, 1988. See also R. Lefeber, *Transboundary Environmental Interference and the Origin of State Liability*, Dordrecht, 1996.

²⁷ See further above, chapter 14.

²⁸ See the doctrine expressed by Judson Harmon, Attorney-General of the United States in 1895, 21 *Op. Att'y. Gen.* 274, 283 (1895), cited in V. P. Nanda, *International Environmental Law and Policy*, New York, 1995, pp. 155–6.

²⁹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 23 (1929); 5 AD, p. 83.

of any riparian state in relation to others'.³⁰ But the principle is of far wider application. It was held in the *Island of Palmas* case³¹ that the concept of territorial sovereignty incorporated an obligation to protect within the territory the rights of other states.

In the *Trail Smelter* arbitration,³² the Tribunal was concerned with a dispute between Canada and the United States over sulphur dioxide pollution from a Canadian smelter, built in a valley shared by British Columbia and the state of Washington, which damaged trees and crops on the American side of the border. The Tribunal noted that:

under principles of international law, as well as the law of the United States, no state has the right to use or permit the use of territory in such a manner as to cause injury by fumes in or to the territory of another or the properties or persons therein, when the case is of serious consequence and the injury is established by clear and convincing evidence.³³

The International Court reinforced this approach, by emphasising in the *Corfu Channel* case³⁴ that it was the obligation of every state 'not to allow knowingly its territory to be used for acts contrary to the rights of other states'.³⁵ The Court also noted in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Nuclear Tests Case* 1974 case in 1995, that its conclusion with regard to French nuclear testing in the Pacific was 'without prejudice to the obligations of states to respect and protect the environment'.³⁶ In addition, in its Advisory Opinion to the UN General Assembly on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, the Court declared that 'the existence of the general obligation of states to ensure that activities within their jurisdiction and control respect

³⁰ PCIJ, Series A, No. 23 (1929), p. 27; 5 AD, p. 84. See also the case concerning the *Auditing of Accounts between the Netherlands and France*, arbitral award of 12 March 2004, para. 97.

³¹ 2 RIAA, pp. 829, 839 (1928).

³² See 33 AJIL, 1939, p. 182 and 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 684; 9 AD, p. 315. See also J. E. Read, 'The Trail Smelter Arbitration', 1 Canadian YIL, 1963, p. 213; R. Kirgis, 'Technological Challenge of the Shared Environment: US Practice', 66 AJIL, 1974, p. 291, and L. Goldie, 'A General View of International Environmental Law – A Survey of Capabilities, Trends and Limits' in *Hague Colloque* 1973, pp. 26, 66–9.

³³ 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 716; 9 AD, p. 317. Canada invoked the *Trail Smelter* principle against the United States when an oil spill at Cherry Point, Washington, resulted in contamination of beaches in British Columbia: see 11 Canadian YIL, 1973, p. 333.

³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, pp. 155, 158.

³⁵ See also the Dissenting Opinion of Judge de Castro in the *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 388; 57 ILR, pp. 350, 533, and the *Lac Lanoux* case, 24 ILR, p. 101.

³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 306; 106 ILR, pp. 1, 28.

the environment of other states or of areas beyond national control is now part of the corpus of international law relating to the environment'.³⁷

This judicial approach has now been widely reaffirmed in international instruments. Article 192 of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 provides that 'states have the obligation to protect and preserve the marine environment', while article 194 notes that 'states shall take all measures necessary to ensure that activities under their jurisdiction and control are so conducted as not to cause damage by pollution to other states and their environment'.³⁸ The shift of focus from the state alone to a wider perspective including the high seas, deep seabed and outer space is a noticeable development.³⁹

It is, however, Principle 21 of the Stockholm Declaration of 1972 that is of especial significance. It stipulates that, in addition to the sovereign right to exploit their own resources pursuant to their own environmental policies, states have 'the responsibility to ensure that activities within their jurisdiction or control do not cause damage to the environment of other states or of areas beyond the limits of national jurisdiction'. Although a relatively modest formulation repeated in Principle 2 of the Rio Declaration 1992 (with the addition of a reference to developmental policies), it has been seen as an important turning-point in the development of international environmental law.⁴⁰ Several issues of importance are raised in the formulation contained in Principle 21 and to those we now turn.

The appropriate standard

It is sometimes argued that the appropriate standard for the conduct of states in this field is that of strict liability. In other words, states are under an absolute obligation to prevent pollution and are thus liable for its effects irrespective of fault.⁴¹ While the advantage of this is the increased

³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1996, para. 29; 35 ILM, 1996, pp. 809, 821. See also the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 6, 67; 116 ILR, p. 1.

³⁸ See also Principle 3 of the UN Environment Programme Principles of Conduct in the Field of the Environment concerning Resources Shared by Two or More States, 1978; the Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States adopted in General Assembly resolution 1974 3281 (XXIX) and General Assembly resolution 34/186 (1979).

³⁹ See Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', p. 271.

⁴⁰ See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, pp. 235–6, terming it the 'cornerstone of international environmental law'. See also the preamble to the Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution, 1979 and the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* advisory opinion, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 241; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 191.

⁴¹ See e.g. Goldie, 'General View', pp. 73–85, and Schneider, *World Public Order*, chapter 6. See also G. Handl, 'State Liability for Accidental Transnational Environmental Damage

responsibility placed upon the state, it is doubtful whether international law has in fact accepted such a general principle.⁴² The leading cases are inconclusive. In the *Trail Smelter* case⁴³ Canada's responsibility was accepted from the start, the case focusing upon the compensation due and the terms of the future operation of the smelter,⁴⁴ while the strict theory was not apparently accepted in the *Corfu Channel* case.⁴⁵ In the *Nuclear Tests* case⁴⁶ the Court did not discuss the substance of the claims concerning nuclear testing in view of France's decision to end its programme.

It is also worth considering the *Gut Dam* arbitration between the US and Canada.⁴⁷ This concerned the construction of a dam by the Canadian authorities, with US approval, straddling the territory of the two states, in order to facilitate navigation in the St Lawrence River, prior to the existence of the Seaway. The dam affected the flow of water in the river basin and caused an increase in the level of water in the river and in Lake Ontario. This, together with the incidence of severe storms, resulted in heavy flooding on the shores of the river and lake and the US government claimed damages. The tribunal awarded a lump sum payment to the US, without considering whether Canada had been in any way negligent or at fault with regard to the construction of the dam. However, one must be cautious in regarding this case as an example of a strict liability approach, since the US gave its approval to the construction of the dam on the condition that US citizens be indemnified for any damage or detriment incurred as a result of the construction or operation of the dam in question.⁴⁸

Treaty practice is variable. The Convention on International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects, 1972 provides for absolute liability for damage caused by space objects on the surface of the earth or to aircraft in flight (article II), but for fault liability for damage caused elsewhere or to persons or property on board a space object (article III).⁴⁹ Most treaties, however, take the form of requiring the exercise of diligent

by Private Persons', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 525; Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 182 ff., and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 881 ff.

⁴² See e.g. Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', pp. 289–97, and Handl, 'State Liability', pp. 535–53.

⁴³ 33 AJIL, 1939, p. 182 and 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 681; 9 AD, p. 315.

⁴⁴ See Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', p. 292, and G. Handl, 'Balancing of Interests and International Liability for the Pollution of International Watercourses: Customary Principles of Law Revisited', 13 Canadian YIL, 1975, pp. 156, 167–8.

⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22–3; 16 AD, pp. 155, 158.

⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 350. ⁴⁷ 8 ILM, 1969, p. 118.

⁴⁸ See Schneider, *World Public Order*, p. 165. Cf. Handl, 'State Liability', pp. 525, 538 ff.

⁴⁹ See e.g. the Canadian claim in the Cosmos 954 incident, 18 ILM, 1992, p. 907.

control of sources of harm, so that responsibility is engaged for breaches of obligations specified in the particular instruments.⁵⁰

The test of due diligence is in fact the standard that is accepted generally as the most appropriate one.⁵¹ Article 194 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982, for example, provides that states are to take 'all measures . . . that are necessary to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment from any source, using for this purpose the best practicable means at their disposal and in accordance with their capabilities'. Accordingly, states in general are not automatically liable for damage caused irrespective of all other factors. However, it is rather less clear what is actually meant by due diligence. In specific cases, such as the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982, for example, particular measures are specified and references made to other relevant treaties. In other cases, the issue remains rather more ambiguous.⁵² The test of due diligence undoubtedly imports an element of flexibility into the equation and must be tested in the light of the circumstances of the case in question. States will be required, for example, to take all necessary steps to prevent substantial pollution and to demonstrate the kind of behaviour expected of 'good government',⁵³ while such behaviour would probably require the establishment of systems of consultation and notification.⁵⁴ It is also important to note that elements of remoteness and foreseeability are part of the framework of the liability of states. The damage that occurs must have been caused by the pollution under consideration. The tribunal in

⁵⁰ See e.g. article 1 of the London Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes, 1972; article 2 of the Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution, 1979; article 2 of the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer, 1985 and articles 139, 194 and 235 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982; articles 7 and 8 of the Convention for the Regulation of Antarctic Mineral Resources Activities, 1988 and article 2 of the Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes, 1992. See also the Commentary by the International Law Commission to article 7 of the Draft Articles on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, Report of the International Law Commission, 46th Session, 1994, pp. 236 ff.

⁵¹ This is the view taken by the ILC in its Commentary on the Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities, 2001, Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, A/56/10, p. 392. See also e.g. Handl, 'State Liability', pp. 539–40; Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', p. 272, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 112 ff.

⁵² See e.g. the Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution Convention, 1979.

⁵³ I.e. the standard of conduct expected from a government mindful of its international obligations: see R. J. Dupuy, 'International Liability for Transfrontier Pollution', in Bothe, *Trends in Environmental Policy and Law*, pp. 363, 369.

⁵⁴ See *Responsibility and Liability of States in Relation to Transfrontier Pollution*, an OECD Report by the Environment Committee, 1984, p. 4.

the *Trail Smelter* case⁵⁵ emphasised the need to establish the injury 'by clear and convincing evidence'.

Damage caused

The first issue is whether indeed any damage must actually have been caused before international responsibility becomes relevant. Can there be liability for risk of damage? It appears that at this stage international law in general does not recognise such a liability,⁵⁶ certainly outside of the category of ultra-hazardous activities.⁵⁷ This is for reasons both of state reluctance in general and with regard to practical difficulties in particular. It would be difficult, although not impossible, both to assess the risk involved and to determine the compensation that might be due.

However, it should be noted that article 1(4) of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 defines pollution of the marine environment as 'the introduction by man, directly or indirectly, of substances or energy into the marine environment ... which results or is likely to result in ... deleterious effects'. In other words, actual damage is not necessary in this context. It is indeed possible that customary international law may develop in this direction, but it is too early to conclude that this has already occurred. Most general definitions of pollution rely upon damage or harm having been caused before liability is engaged.⁵⁸

The next issue is to determine whether a certain threshold of damage must have been caused. In the *Trail Smelter* case,⁵⁹ the Tribunal focused on the need to show that the matter was of 'serious consequence', while article 1 of the Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution, 1979 provides that the pollution concerned must result 'in deleterious effects of such a nature as to endanger human health, harm living resources and ecosystems and material property and impair or interfere with amenities and other legitimate uses of the environment'.⁶⁰ Article 3 of the ILA

⁵⁵ 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 716; 9 AD, p. 317.

⁵⁶ See e.g. Kiss, 'International Protection', p. 1076. ⁵⁷ See below, p. 887.

⁵⁸ See also the commentary to the Montreal Rules adopted by the ILA in 1982, Report of the Sixtieth Conference, p. 159. Note, however, that the International Law Commission's Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities, adopted in 2001, concern activities not prohibited by international law which involve a 'risk of causing significant transboundary harm', Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 380.

⁵⁹ 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 716; 9 AD, p. 317.

⁶⁰ Note also that General Assembly resolution 2995 (XXVII) refers to 'significant harmful results'. See also article 1 of the ILC's Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities, Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 380.

Montreal Rules 1982 stipulates that states are under an obligation to prevent, abate and control transfrontier pollution to such an extent that no substantial injury is caused in the territory of another state.⁶¹ Such formulations do present definitional problems and the qualification as to the threshold of injury required is by no means present in all relevant instruments.⁶² The issue of relativity and the importance of the circumstances of the particular case remain significant factors, but less support can be detected at this stage for linkage to a concept of reasonable and equitable use of its territory by a state occasioning liability for use beyond this.⁶³

As far as the range of interests injured by pollution is concerned, the *Trail Smelter* case⁶⁴ focused upon loss of property. Later definitions of pollution in international instruments have broadened the range to include harm to living resources or ecosystems, interference with amenities and other legitimate uses of the environment or the sea. Article 1(4) of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982, for example, includes impairment of quality for use of sea water and reduction of amenities. Article 1(2) of the Vienna Convention on the Ozone Layer, 1985 defines adverse effects upon the ozone layer as changes in the physical environment including climatic changes 'which have significant deleterious effects on human health or on the composition, resilience and productivity of natural and managed ecosystems or on materials useful to mankind',⁶⁵ while the Climate Change Convention, 1992 defines adverse effects of climate change as 'changes in the physical environment or biota resulting from climate change which have significant deleterious effects on the composition, resilience or productivity of natural and managed ecosystems or on the operation of socio-economic systems or on human health and welfare'.⁶⁶

⁶¹ Note the formulation by L. Oppenheim, *International Law*, 8th edn, London, 1955, vol. I, p. 291, that the interference complained of must be 'unduly injurious to the inhabitants of the neighbouring state'.

⁶² See e.g. Principle 21 of the Stockholm Declaration and article 194 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982.

⁶³ See the views of e.g. R. Quentin-Baxter, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, pp. 112–19, and S. McCaffrey, *ibid.*, 1986, vol. II, part 1, pp. 133–4. See also Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', p. 275, and 'Chernobyl and the Development of International Environmental Law' in *Perestroika and International Law* (ed. W. Butler), London, 1990, pp. 203, 206.

⁶⁴ 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 684; 9 AD, p. 315. See also A. Rubin, 'Pollution by Analogy: The Trail Smelter Arbitration', 50 *Oregon Law Review*, 1971, p. 259.

⁶⁵ See also the OECD Recommendation of Equal Right of Access in Relation to Transfrontier Pollution, 1977 and article 1(15) of the Convention on the Regulation of Antarctic Mineral Resource Activities, 1988.

⁶⁶ Article 1(1).

The Convention on Regulation of Antarctic Mineral Resources, 1988⁶⁷ defines damage to the environment and ecosystem of that polar region as 'any impact on the living or non-living components of that environment or those ecosystems, including harm to atmospheric, marine or terrestrial life, beyond that which is negligible or which has been assessed and judged to be acceptable pursuant to [the] Convention'.⁶⁸ The Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes, 1992 defines 'transboundary impact', which is the subject of provision, in terms of 'any significant adverse effect on the environment resulting from a change in the conditions of transboundary waters caused by a human activity'.⁶⁹ The Council of Europe's Convention on Civil Liability for Environmental Damage, 1993 defines damage to include loss or damage by 'impairment of the environment',⁷⁰ while the environment itself is taken to include natural resources both abiotic and biotic, property forming part of the cultural heritage and 'the characteristic aspects of the landscape'.⁷¹ The type of harm that is relevant clearly now extends beyond damage to property,⁷² but problems do remain with regard to general environmental injury that cannot be defined in material form.⁷³

Liability for damage caused by private persons

A particular problem relates to the situation where the environmental injury is caused not by the state itself but by a private party.⁷⁴ A state is,

⁶⁷ See generally on Antarctica, C. Redgwell, 'Environmental Protection in Antarctica: The 1991 Protocol', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 599, and above, chapter 10, p. 534. Note Annex VI to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, Liability Arising from Environmental Emergencies, 2005. See also, with regard to the Arctic, D. R. Rothwell, 'International Law and the Protection of the Arctic Environment', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 280.

⁶⁸ Article 1(15). See also article 2 of the Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context, 1991 and article 1 of the Code of Conduct on Accidental Pollution of Transboundary Inland Waters, 1990.

⁶⁹ Article 1(2). ⁷⁰ Article 2(7)c.

⁷¹ Article 2(10). See also article 1 of the ILC's Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss in the Case of Transboundary Harm Arising out of Hazardous Activities, 2006, A/61/10, pp. 110, 121.

⁷² Note that the Canadian claim for clean-up costs consequential upon the crash of a Soviet nuclear-powered satellite was settled: see 18 ILM, 1979, p. 902.

⁷³ Note that Security Council resolution 687 (1991) declared that Iraq was liable under international law *inter alia* 'for any direct loss, damage, including environmental damage and the depletion of natural resources' occurring as a result of the unlawful invasion and occupation of Kuwait.

⁷⁴ See e.g. Handl, 'State Liability', and G. Doeker and T. Gehring, 'Private or International Liability for Transnational Environmental Damage – The Precedent of Conventional Liability Regimes', 2 *Journal of Environmental Law*, 1990, p. 1.

of course, responsible for unlawful acts of its officials causing injury to nationals of foreign states⁷⁵ and retains a general territorial competence under international law. In general, states must ensure that their international obligations are respected on their territory. Many treaties require states parties to legislate with regard to particular issues, in order to ensure the implementation of specific obligations. Where an international agreement requires, for example, that certain limits be placed upon emissions of a particular substance, the state would be responsible for any activity that exceeded the limit, even if it were carried out by a private party, since the state had undertaken a binding commitment.⁷⁶ Similarly where the state has undertaken to impose a prior authorisation procedure upon a particular activity, a failure so to act which resulted in pollution violating international law would occasion the responsibility of the state.

In some cases, an international agreement might specifically provide for the liability of the state for the acts of non-state entities. Article 6 of the Outer Space Treaty, 1967, for example, stipulates that states parties bear international responsibility for 'national activities in outer space . . . whether such activities are carried out by governmental agencies or by non-governmental agencies'.⁷⁷

*Prevention of transboundary harm from hazardous activities*⁷⁸

The International Law Commission started considering in 1978 the topic of 'International Liability for the Injurious Consequences of Acts Not Prohibited by International Law'⁷⁹ and the main focus of the work of

⁷⁵ See above, chapter 14. ⁷⁶ See below, p. 873.

⁷⁷ See also article I of the Convention on International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects, 1972 and article XIV of the Moon Treaty, 1979. See further below, p. 893, with regard to civil liability schemes.

⁷⁸ See e.g. J. Barboza, 'International Liability for the Injurious Consequences of Acts not Prohibited by International Law and Protection of the Environment', 247 HR, 1994 III, p. 291; A. Boyle, 'State Responsibility and International Liability for Injurious Consequences of Acts not Prohibited by International Law: A Necessary Distinction?', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 1; M. Akehurst, 'International Liability for Injurious Consequences Arising out of Acts not Prohibited by International Law', 16 Netherlands YIL, 1985, p. 3; D. B. Magraw, 'Transboundary Harm: The International Law Commission's Study of International Liability', 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 305, and C. Tomuschat, 'International Liability for Injurious Consequences Arising out of Acts not Prohibited by International Law: The Work of the International Law Commission' in *International Responsibility for Environmental Harm* (eds. F. Francioni and T. Scovazzi), London, 1991, p. 37. See also Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 105, and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 901 ff.

⁷⁹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1978, vol. II, part 2, p. 149.

the Commission was on environmental harm.⁸⁰ It was argued that international liability differed from state responsibility in that the latter is dependent upon a prior breach of international law,⁸¹ while the former constitutes an attempt to develop a branch of law in which a state may be liable internationally with regard to the harmful consequences of an activity which is in itself not contrary to international law. This was a controversial approach. The theoretical basis and separation from state responsibility were questioned.⁸² The ILC revised its work and eventually adopted Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities in 2001.⁸³

Article 1 of the Draft provides that the articles are to apply to activities not prohibited by international law which involve a 'risk of causing significant transboundary harm through their physical consequences'. The Commentary to the Draft Articles specifies that the notion of risk is to be taken objectively 'as denoting an appreciation of possible harm resulting from an activity which a properly informed observer had or ought to have had'.⁸⁴ Members of the Commission had in the past been divided as to whether the focus of the topic should be upon risk or upon harm;⁸⁵ this now appears settled. Article 2 of the Draft provides that 'risk of causing significant transboundary harm' is to be defined as including 'a high probability of causing significant transboundary harm and a low probability of causing disastrous transboundary harm'.⁸⁶ In other words, the relevant threshold is established by a combination of risk and harm and this threshold must reach a level deemed 'significant'.⁸⁷ The International Law Commission has taken the view that this term, while factually based, means something more than 'detectable', but need not reach the level of 'serious' or 'substantial'.⁸⁸ The state of origin (i.e. where the activities are taking place or are to take place) 'shall take all appropriate measures to

⁸⁰ See e.g. Quentin-Baxter's preliminary report, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, part 1, p. 24.

⁸¹ See above, chapter 14.

⁸² See e.g. Boyle, 'State Responsibility', p. 3, and I. Brownlie, *System of the Law of Nations: State Responsibility, Part I*, Oxford, 1983, p. 50.

⁸³ Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 379. ⁸⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 385.

⁸⁵ See e.g. S. McCaffrey, 'The Fortieth Session of the International Law Commission', 83 AJIL, 1989, pp. 153, 170, and McCaffrey, 'The Forty-First Session of the International Law Commission', 83 AJIL, 1989, pp. 937, 944.

⁸⁶ Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 386.

⁸⁷ *Ibid.*, p. 387. See also article 1 of the Code of Conduct on Accidental Pollution of Transboundary Inland Waters adopted by the Economic Commission for Europe in 1990.

⁸⁸ Report of ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 388.

prevent significant transboundary harm or at any event to minimise the risk thereof'.⁸⁹ The relevant test is that of due diligence, this being that which is generally considered to be appropriate and proportional to the degree of risk of transboundary harm in the particular instance and this test requires the state to keep up to date with technological and scientific developments.⁹⁰

States are to co-operate in good faith in trying to prevent such activities from causing significant transboundary injury and in minimising the effects of the risk, and they are to seek the assistance as necessary of competent international organisations.⁹¹ The state is to take legislative, administrative and other action, including the establishment of suitable monitoring mechanisms to implement the provisions in the draft articles,⁹² and is to require prior authorisation for any activities within the scope of the article.⁹³ In deciding upon such authorisation, the state must base its answer on an assessment of the possible transboundary harm, including any environmental impact assessment.⁹⁴ If a risk is indeed indicated by such an assessment, timely notification must be made to the state likely to be affected⁹⁵ and information provided,⁹⁶ while the states concerned are to enter into consultation with a view to achieving acceptable solutions regarding measures to be adopted in order to prevent or minimise the risk of causing significant transboundary harm or to minimise the risk thereof. Such solutions must be based on an equitable balance of interests.⁹⁷

Article 10 of the Draft lays down a series of relevant factors and circumstances in achieving this 'equitable balance of interests'. These include the degree of risk of significant transboundary harm and the availability of means of preventing or minimising such risk or of repairing the harm; the importance of the activity, taking into account its overall advantages of a social, economic and technical character for the state of origin in relation to the potential harm for the states likely to be affected; the risk of significant harm to the environment and the availability of means of preventing or minimising such risk or restoring the environment; the economic viability of the activity in relation to the costs of prevention demanded by the states likely to be affected and to the possibility of carrying out the activity elsewhere or by other means or replacing it with an alternative activity; the degree to which the states likely to be affected

⁸⁹ Article 3. ⁹⁰ Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 394.

⁹¹ Article 4. ⁹² Article 5. ⁹³ Article 6. ⁹⁴ Article 7.

⁹⁵ Articles 8 and 17. ⁹⁶ Article 8. See also articles 12, 13 and 14. ⁹⁷ Article 9.

are prepared to contribute to the costs of prevention; and the standards of protection which the states likely to be affected apply to the same or comparable activities and the standards applied in comparable regional or international practice.⁹⁸

In 2006, the ILC adopted the Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss in the Case of Transboundary Harm Arising out of Hazardous Activities,⁹⁹ the purpose of which is to ensure prompt and adequate compensation to victims of transboundary damage and to preserve and protect the environment. States are to take all necessary measures to ensure such compensation is available, including the imposition of liability upon operators without requiring proof of fault.¹⁰⁰

The problems of the state responsibility approach

The application of the classical international law approach, founded upon state responsibility for breaches of international obligations and the requirement to make reparation for such breaches, to environmental problems is particularly problematic. The need to demonstrate that particular damage has been caused to one state by the actions of another state means that this model can only with difficulty be applied to more than a small proportion of environmental problems. In many cases it is simply impossible to prove that particular damage has been caused by one particular source, while this bilateral focus cannot really come to terms with the fact that the protection of the environment of the earth is truly a global problem requiring a global or pan-state response and one that cannot be successfully tackled in such an arbitrary and piecemeal fashion. Accordingly, the approach to dealing with environmental matters has shifted from the bilateral state responsibility paradigm to establishment and strengthening of international co-operation.

International co-operation

A developing theme of international environmental law, founded upon general principles, relates to the requirement for states to co-operate in dealing with transboundary pollution issues. Principle 24 of the Stockholm Declaration 1972 noted that 'international matters concerning the

⁹⁸ This article draws upon article 6 of the Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997.

⁹⁹ A/61/10, p. 110. ¹⁰⁰ Principles 3 and 4.

protection and improvement of the environment should be handled in a co-operative spirit', while Principle 7 of the Rio Declaration 1992 emphasised that 'states shall co-operate in a spirit of global partnership to conserve, protect and restore the health and integrity of the Earth's ecosystem'. Principle 13 of the Rio Declaration refers both to national and international activities in this field by stating that:

states shall develop national law regarding liability and compensation for the victims of pollution and other environmental damage. States shall also co-operate in an expeditious and more determined manner to develop further international law regarding liability and compensation for adverse effects of environmental damage caused by activities within their jurisdiction or control to areas beyond their jurisdiction.¹⁰¹

The *Corfu Channel* case¹⁰² established the principle that states are not knowingly to allow their territory to be used for acts contrary to the rights of other states and from this can be deduced a duty to inform other states of known environmental hazards. A large number of international agreements reflect this proposition. Article 198 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982, for example, provides that 'when a state becomes aware of cases in which the marine environment is in imminent danger of being damaged or had been damaged by pollution, it shall immediately notify other states it deems likely to be affected by such damage, as well as the competent international authorities'.¹⁰³ Article 13 of the Basle Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes, 1989 provides that states parties shall, whenever it comes to their knowledge, ensure that in the case of an accident occurring during the transboundary movement of hazardous wastes which are likely to present risks to human health and the environment in other states, those states are immediately informed.¹⁰⁴

It is also to be noted that in 1974 the OECD (the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development) adopted a Recommendation that prior to the initiation of works or undertakings that might create a risk of significant transfrontier pollution, early information should be

¹⁰¹ See also Principle 27. ¹⁰² ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 22; 16 AD, pp. 155, 158.

¹⁰³ See also article 211(7).

¹⁰⁴ See also e.g. article 8 of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973; Annex 6 of the Helsinki Convention on the Protection of the Marine Environment of the Baltic Sea, 1974 and article 9 of the Barcelona Convention for the Protection of the Mediterranean Sea, Protocol of Co-operation in Case of Emergency, 1976.

provided to states that are or may be affected.¹⁰⁵ In 1988, the OECD adopted a Council Decision in which it is provided that states must provide information for the prevention of and the response to accidents at hazardous installations and transmit to exposed countries the results of their studies on proposed installations. A duty to exchange emergency plans is stipulated, as well as a duty to transmit immediate warning to exposed countries where an accident is an imminent threat.¹⁰⁶ The point is also emphasised in the Rio Declaration of 1992. Principle 18 provides that states shall immediately notify other states of any natural disasters or other emergencies that are likely to produce sudden harmful effects on the environment of those states, while Principle 19 stipulates that states shall provide prior and timely notification and relevant information to potentially affected states on activities that may have a significant adverse transboundary environmental effect and shall consult with those states at an early stage and in good faith.¹⁰⁷

One may also point to a requirement of prior consultation. Article 5 of the ILA Montreal Rules provides that states planning to carry out activities which might entail a significant risk of transfrontier pollution shall give early notice to states likely to be affected. This provision builds upon, for example, the *Lac Lanoux* arbitration between France and Spain,¹⁰⁸ which concerned the proposed diversion of a shared watercourse. The arbitral tribunal noted in particular the obligation to negotiate in such circumstances.¹⁰⁹ Some treaties establish a duty of prior notification, one early example being the Nordic Convention on the Protection of the Environment, 1974. Article 5 of the Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution Convention, 1979 provides that consultations shall be held, upon request, at an early stage between the state within whose jurisdiction the activity is to be conducted and states which are actually affected by or exposed to a significant risk of long-range transboundary air pollution.¹¹⁰ The

¹⁰⁵ Title E, para. 6. See also the OECD Recommendation for the Implementation of a Regime of Equal Right of Access and Non-Discrimination in Relation to Transfrontier Pollution, 1977, Title C, para. 8.

¹⁰⁶ C(88)84.

¹⁰⁷ See also article 3 of the Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context, 1991 and Principle 5 of the ILC Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss, 2006, A/61/10, p. 166.

¹⁰⁸ 24 ILR, p. 101.

¹⁰⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 119. See also the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 46–7; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 76.

¹¹⁰ Note also that article 8(b) calls for the exchange of information *inter alia* on major changes in national policies and in general industrial development and on their potential

increasing range of state practice¹¹¹ has led the International Law Association to conclude that 'a rule of international customary law has emerged that in principle a state is obliged to render information on new or increasing pollution to a potential victim state'.¹¹² Article 8 of the ILC's Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities 2001 provides that where an assessment indicates a risk of causing significant transboundary harm, the state of origin is to inform the state likely to be affected with timely notification and information and may not take any decision on authorisation within six months of the response of the state likely to be affected.¹¹³

The evolution of a duty to inform states that might be affected by the creation of a source of new or increasing pollution has been accompanied by consideration of an obligation to make environmental impact assessments.¹¹⁴ This requirement is included in several treaties.¹¹⁵ Article 204 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provides that states should 'observe, measure, evaluate and analyse by recognised scientific methods, the risks or effects of pollution on the marine environment' and in particular 'shall keep under surveillance the effects of any activities which they permit or in which they engage in order to determine whether these activities are likely to pollute the marine environment'. Reports are to be published, while under article 206, when states have reasonable grounds for believing that planned activities under their jurisdiction or control may cause substantial pollution of, or significant and harmful changes

impact, which would be likely to cause significant changes in long-range transboundary air pollution.

¹¹¹ See ILA, Report of the Sixtieth Conference, 1982, pp. 172–3.

¹¹² *Ibid.*, p. 173. See also Institut de Droit International, Resolution on Transboundary Air Pollution, 1987, but cf. Sands, *Principles*, pp. 321–2. Note also e.g. the UNEP Recommendation concerning the Environment Related to Offshore Drilling and Mining within the Limits of National Jurisdiction, 1981 and the Canada–Denmark Agreement for Co-operation Relating to the Marine Environment, 1983.

¹¹³ Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 406. See also Principle 19 of the Rio Declaration, article 3 of the Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context, 1991 and the Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997, below, p. 883.

¹¹⁴ See e.g. the UNEP Principles of Environmental Impact Assessment, 1987. See also Sands, *Principles*, pp. 799 ff.

¹¹⁵ See e.g. the Kuwait Regional Convention for Co-operation on the Protection of the Marine Environment from Pollution, 1978, article XI; the Nordic Environmental Protection Convention, 1974, article 6, and the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctica Treaty, 1991, article 8. See also article 7 of the Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities 2001, Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 402.

to, the marine environment, 'they shall, as far as practicable, assess the potential effects of such activities on the marine environment and shall communicate reports of such assessments'.¹¹⁶

The EEC Council Directive 85/337 provides that member states shall adopt all necessary measures to ensure that, before consent is given, projects likely to have significant effects on the environment are made subject to an assessment with regard to their effects,¹¹⁷ while the issue was taken further in the Convention on Environmental Impact Assessment in a Transboundary Context, 1991. Under this Convention, states parties are to take the necessary legal, administrative and other measures to ensure that prior to a decision to authorise or undertake a proposed activity listed in Appendix I¹¹⁸ that is likely to cause a significant adverse transboundary impact, an environmental impact assessment is carried out. The party of origin must notify any party which may be affected of the proposed activity, providing full information. Once the affected party decides to participate in the environmental impact assessment procedure under the provisions of the Convention, it must supply information to the party of origin of the proposed activity at its request relating to the potentially affected environment under its jurisdiction.¹¹⁹ The documentation to be submitted to the competent authority of the party of origin is detailed in Appendix III and it is comprehensive. Consultations must take place between the party of origin and the affected parties concerning the potential transboundary impact and the measures to reduce or eliminate the impact,¹²⁰ and in taking the final decision on the proposed activity the parties

¹¹⁶ A similar process is underway with regard to the siting of nuclear power installations: see e.g. the agreements between Spain and Portugal, 1980; the Netherlands and the Federal Republic of Germany, 1977; Belgium and France, 1966; and Switzerland and the Federal Republic of Germany, 1982. See also Boyle, 'Chernobyl', at p. 212.

¹¹⁷ See also Directive 2004/35/EC, 21 April 2004, of the European Parliament and of the Council on environmental liability with regard to the prevention and remedying of environmental damage, as amended by Directive 2006/21/EC.

¹¹⁸ These activities include crude oil and certain other refineries; thermal power stations and other combustion installations with a certain minimum power output and nuclear installations; nuclear facilities; major cast iron and steel installations; asbestos plants; integrated chemical installations; construction of motorways, long-distance railway lines and long airport runways; pipelines; large trading ports; toxic and dangerous waste installations; large dams and reservoirs; major mining; offshore hydrocarbon production; major oil and chemical storage facilities; deforestation of large areas.

¹¹⁹ If it decides not so to participate, the environmental impact assessment procedure will continue or not according to the domestic law and practice of the state of origin, article 3(4).

¹²⁰ Article 5.

shall ensure that due account is taken of the outcome of the environmental impact assessment and consultations held.¹²¹ Post-project analyses may also be carried out under article 7.¹²² Other instruments provide for such environmental impact assessments¹²³ and some international organisations have developed their own assessment requirements.¹²⁴ The question of environmental impact assessments was raised by Judge Weeramantry in his Dissenting Opinion in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment in the 1974 Nuclear Tests Case*.¹²⁵ It was noted that the magnitude of the issue brought by New Zealand before the Court (the underground testing by France in the South Pacific of nuclear devices) was such as to make the principle of environmental impact assessments applicable. The Judge declared that 'when a matter is brought before it which raises serious environmental issues of global importance, and a prima facie case is made out of the possibility of environmental damage, the Court is entitled to take into account the Environmental Impact Assessment principle in determining its preliminary approach.'¹²⁶

Other principles of international co-operation in the field of environmental protection are beginning to emerge and inform the development of legal norms. Principle 15 of the Rio Declaration states that 'in order to protect the environment, the precautionary approach shall be widely applied by states according to their capabilities. Where there are threats of serious or irreversible damage, lack of full scientific certainty shall not be used as a reason for postponing cost-effective measures to prevent environmental degradation.' This marks a step away from the traditional approach, which required states to act on the basis of scientific knowledge and constitutes a recognition that in certain circumstances to await formal scientific proof may prevent urgent action being taken in time. The Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer, 1985 and the 1987 Montreal Protocol to that Convention both referred in their respective preambles to 'precautionary measures',¹²⁷ while the Bergen Ministerial Declaration on Sustainable Development, 1990 noted that in order to

¹²¹ Article 6(1). Account must also be taken of concerns expressed by the public of the affected party in the areas likely to be affected under article 3(8).

¹²² See also Appendix V.

¹²³ See e.g. the Antarctic Environment Protocol, 1991.

¹²⁴ See e.g. the World Bank under its Operational Directive 4.00 of 1989.

¹²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 344; 106 ILR, p. 1. ¹²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1995, p. 345.

¹²⁷ See also the preamble to the 1994 Oslo Protocol to the 1979 Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution Convention and EC Regulation 178/2002 (with regard to food).

achieve sustainable development, policies must be based on the precautionary principle. It was emphasised that 'environmental measures must anticipate, prevent and attack the causes of environmental degradation' and part of Principle 15 of the Rio Declaration was repeated. The Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes, 1992 provides in article 2(5)a that the parties would be guided by 'the precautionary principle, by virtue of which action to avoid the potential transboundary impact of the release of hazardous substances shall not be postponed on the ground that scientific research has not fully proved a causal link between these substances, on the one hand and the potential transboundary impact, on the other'. References to the precautionary principle appear also in the Convention on Biodiversity, 1992¹²⁸ and in the Convention on Climate Change, 1992.¹²⁹ The principle was described by Judge Weeramantry as one gaining increasing support as part of the international law of the environment.¹³⁰

Recognition has also emerged of the special responsibility of developed states in the process of environmental protection.¹³¹ Principle 7 of the Rio Declaration stipulates that 'states have common but differentiated responsibilities'. In particular, it is emphasised that 'the developed

¹²⁸ Although the reference in the Preamble does not expressly invoke the term. See generally *International Law and the Conservation of Biological Diversity* (eds. M. Bowman and C. Redgwell), Dordrecht, 1995.

¹²⁹ Article 3(3). See also article 174 (ex article 130r(2)) of the EC Treaty and article 4(3) of the OAU Bamako Convention on the Ban of the Import into Africa and the Control of Transboundary Movement and Management of Hazardous Wastes within Africa, 1991. Note also articles 5 and 6 of the Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks Agreement, 1995.

¹³⁰ In his Dissenting Opinion in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment in the 1974 Nuclear Tests Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 342; 106 ILR, pp. 1, 64. See *The Precautionary Principle and International Law* (eds. D. Freestone and E. Hey), Dordrecht, 1996; P. Martin-Bidou, 'Le Principe de Précaution en Droit International de l'Environnement', 103 RGDI, 1999, p. 631, and *Le Principe de Précaution, Signification et Conséquences* (eds. E. Zaccai and J. N. Missa), Brussels, 2000; Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 115 ff.; Sands, *Principles*, pp. 266 ff.; *Le Principe de Précaution: Aspects de Droit International et Communautaire* (ed. C. Leben), Paris, 2002, and A. Trouwborst, *Evolution and Status of the Precautionary Principle in International Law*, The Hague, 2002. See also the Commentary to the ILC Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities, 2001, Report of the ILC on its 53rd Session, p. 414 and the Guidelines for Applying the Precautionary Principle to Biodiversity Conservation and Natural Resource Management adopted by the International Union for the Conservation of Nature in May 2007.

¹³¹ See e.g. D. French, 'Developing States and International Environmental Law: The Importance of Differentiated Responsibilities', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 35.

countries acknowledge the responsibility that they bear in the international pursuit of sustainable development in view of the pressures their societies place on the global environment and of the technologies and financial resources they command'. Article 3(1) of the Convention on Climate Change provides that the parties should act to protect the climate system 'on the basis of equity and in accordance with their common but differentiated responsibilities and respective capabilities' so that the developed countries would take the lead in combating climate change.¹³²

In addition, the concept of sustainable development has been evolving in a way that circumscribes the competence of states to direct their own development.¹³³ The International Court in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case referred specifically to the concept of sustainable development,¹³⁴ while Principle 3 of the Rio Declaration notes that the right to development must be fulfilled so as to 'equitably meet developmental and environmental needs of present and future generations'¹³⁵ and Principle 4 states that in order to achieve sustainable development, environmental protection shall constitute an integral part of the development process.¹³⁶ Principle 27 called for co-operation in the further development of

¹³² See also articles 4 and 12. Note that the 1990 amendment to the 1987 Montreal Protocol on the Ozone Depleting Substances provides that the capacity of developing countries to comply with their substantive obligations will depend upon the implementation by the developed countries of their financial obligations.

¹³³ See e.g. *Sustainable Development and International Law* (ed. W. Lang), Dordrecht, 1995; *Sustainable Development and Good Governance* (eds. K. Ginther, E. Denters and P. de Waart), Dordrecht, 1995; Sands, *Principles*, pp. 252 ff., and Sands, 'International Law in the Field of Sustainable Development', 65 BYIL, 1994, p. 303; M.-C. Cordonier Segger and C. G. Weeramantry, *Sustainable Justice: Reconciling Economic, Social and Environmental Law*, Leiden, 2005; P. S. Elder, 'Sustainability', 36 *McGill Law Journal*, 1991, p. 832; D. McGoldrick, 'Sustainable Development and Human Rights: An Integrated Conception', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 796; *International Law and Sustainable Development* (eds. A. Boyle and D. Freestone), Oxford, 1999; *Environmental Law, the Economy and Sustainable Development* (eds. R. Revesz, P. Sands and R. Stewart), Cambridge, 2000; Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 84, and X. Fuentes, 'Sustainable Development and the Equitable Utilisation of International Watercourses', 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 119. See also the Report of the ILA Committee on Legal Aspects of Sustainable Development, ILA, Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, 1994, p. 111 and Report of the Seventieth Conference, 2002, p. 308.

¹³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 78; 116 ILR, p. 1. See also the *Shrimp/Turtle* case, WTO Appellate Body, 38 ILM, 1999, p. 121, para. 129.

¹³⁵ See also Principle 1 of the Stockholm Declaration 1972.

¹³⁶ Note that article 2(1)vii of the Agreement Establishing the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, 1990 calls upon the Bank to promote 'environmentally sound and sustainable development'.

international law in the field of sustainable development.¹³⁷ The Climate Change Convention declares in article 3(4) that 'the parties have a right to, and should, promote sustainable development', while the Biodiversity Convention refers on several occasions to the notion of 'sustainable use'.¹³⁸ Quite what is meant by sustainable development is somewhat unclear and it may refer to a range of economic, environmental and social factors.¹³⁹ Clearly, however, some form of balance between these factors will be necessitated.¹⁴⁰

Another emerging principle, more widely accepted in some countries and regions than others, is the notion that the costs of pollution should be paid by the polluter.¹⁴¹ Principle 16 of the Rio Declaration notes that 'the polluter should, in principle, bear the costs of pollution, with due regard to the public interests and without distorting international trade and investment'. The principle has been particularly applied with regard to civil liability for damage resulting from hazardous activities¹⁴² and has particularly been adopted by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development¹⁴³ and the European Community.¹⁴⁴ The polluter-pays principle has been referred to both in the International Convention on Oil Pollution Preparedness, Response and Co-operation, 1990 and in the Convention on the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents, 1992

¹³⁷ See also Agenda 21, adopted at the Rio Conference on Environment and Development, 1992, paras. 8 and 39.

¹³⁸ See e.g. the Preamble and articles 1, 8, 11, 12, 16, 17 and 18. See also the Statement of Principles for a Global Consensus on the Management, Conservation and Sustainable Development of All Types of Forests, adopted at the Rio Conference, 1992.

¹³⁹ See e.g. M. Redclift, 'Reflections on the "Sustainable Development" Debate', 1 *International Journal of Sustainable Development and World Ecology*, 1994, p. 3. Note that the Report of the GATT Panel on the United States Restrictions on the Import of Tuna declares that the objective of sustainable development, which includes the protection and preservation of the environment, has been widely recognised by the contracting parties to the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, 33 ILM, 1994, p. 839.

¹⁴⁰ Note that the General Assembly established the Commission on Sustainable Development in resolution 47/191 in order to ensure an effective follow-up to the 1992 Conference on Environment and Development as well as generally to work for the integration of environment and development issues and to examine the progress of the implementation of Agenda 21 (the programme of action adopted by the Conference) in order to achieve sustainable development.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, pp. 279 ff., and A. Boyle, 'Making the Polluter Pay? Alternatives to State Responsibility in the Allocation of Transboundary Environmental Costs' in Francioni and Scovazzi, *International Responsibility for Environmental Harm*, p. 363.

¹⁴² See further below, p. 893.

¹⁴³ See e.g. the OECD Council Recommendations C(74)223 (1974) and C(89)88 (1989).

¹⁴⁴ See Article 174 of the EC Treaty.

as 'a general principle of international environmental law'.¹⁴⁵ Again, quite how far this principle actually applies is uncertain. It is, in particular, unclear whether all the costs of an environmental clean-up would be covered. State practice appears to demonstrate that such costs should be apportioned between the parties.¹⁴⁶

Atmospheric pollution¹⁴⁷

Perhaps the earliest perceived form of pollution relates to the pollution of the air. The burning of fossil fuels releases into the atmosphere sulphur dioxide and nitrogen oxides which change into acids and are carried by natural elements and fall as rain or snow or solid particles. Such acids have the effect of killing living creatures in lakes and streams and of damaging soils and forests.¹⁴⁸ While the airspace above the territorial domain of a state forms part of that state,¹⁴⁹ the imprecise notion of the atmosphere would combine elements of this territorial sovereignty with areas not so defined. The legal characterisation of the atmosphere, therefore, is confused and uncertain, but one attractive possibility is to refer to it as a shared resource or area of common concern.¹⁵⁰

The question of how one defines the term 'pollution' has been addressed in several international instruments. In a Recommendation adopted in 1974 by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development,¹⁵¹ pollution is broadly defined as 'the introduction by man, directly or indirectly, of substances or energy into the environment resulting in deleterious effects of such a nature as to endanger human health, harm living resources and ecosystems, and impair or interfere with amenities and other legitimate uses of the environment'.¹⁵² This definition was substantially reproduced in the Geneva Convention on Long-Range

¹⁴⁵ See also article 2(5)b of the Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes, 1992 and Principle 4 of the ILC Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss, 2006, A/61/10, p. 151.

¹⁴⁶ See e.g. Boyle, 'Making the Polluter Pay?', p. 365, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 92.

¹⁴⁷ See Sands, *Principles*, pp. 317 ff., and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, chapter 10.

¹⁴⁸ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, pp. 36782 ff. (1989).

¹⁴⁹ See above, chapter 10, p. 541.

¹⁵⁰ See e.g. Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 503.

¹⁵¹ OECD Doc.C(74)224, cited in P. Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, Cambridge, 1988, p. 150.

¹⁵² *Ibid.*, Title A.

Transboundary Air Pollution, 1979¹⁵³ and in the Montreal Rules of International Law Applicable to Transfrontier Pollution adopted by the International Law Association in 1982.¹⁵⁴ Several points ought to be noted at this stage. First, actual damage must have been caused. Pollution likely to result as a consequence of certain activities is not included. Secondly, the harm caused must be of a certain level of intensity, and thirdly, the question of interference with legitimate uses of the environment requires further investigation.

The core obligation in customary international law with regard to atmospheric pollution was laid down in the *Trail Smelter* case,¹⁵⁵ which provided that no state had the right to use or permit the use of its territory in such a manner as to cause injury by fumes in or to the territory of another state or to persons or property therein, where the case was of serious consequence and the injury established by clear and convincing evidence.¹⁵⁶

In 1979, on the initiative of the Scandinavian countries and under the auspices of the UN Economic Commission for Europe, the Geneva Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution was signed.¹⁵⁷ The definition of pollution is reasonably broad,¹⁵⁸ while article 1(b) defines long-range transboundary air pollution as air pollution whose physical origin is situated wholly or in part within the area under the national jurisdiction of one state and which has adverse effects in the area under

¹⁵³ The major difference being the substitution of 'air' for 'environment' in view of the focus of the Convention.

¹⁵⁴ Note that the term 'air' was replaced by 'environment'. See also article 1 of the Paris Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution from Land-Based Sources, 1974 and article 2 of the Barcelona Convention for the Protection of the Mediterranean Sea against Pollution, 1976. The Institut de Droit International, in a draft resolution accompanying its final report on Air Pollution Across National Frontiers, defines pollution as 'any physical, chemical or biological alteration in the composition or quality of the atmosphere which results directly or indirectly from human action or omission and produces injurious or deleterious effects across national frontiers', 62 I *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1987, p. 266.

¹⁵⁵ 35 AJIL, 1941, p. 716; 9 AD, p. 317.

¹⁵⁶ Note also the adoption in 1963 of the Treaty Banning Nuclear Weapon Tests in the Atmosphere, Outer Space and Under Water.

¹⁵⁷ See e.g. A. Rosencranz, 'The ECE Convention of 1979 on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution', 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 975; L. Tollan, 'The Convention on Long-Range Transboundary Air Pollution', 19 *Journal of World Trade Law*, 1985, p. 615, and A. Kiss, 'La Convention sur la Pollution Atmosphérique Transfrontière à Longue Distance', *Revue Juridique de l'Environnement*, 1981, p. 30. See also P. Okowa, *State Responsibility for Transboundary Air Pollution*, Oxford, 2000. See generally www.unece.org/env/lrtapl/.

¹⁵⁸ See above, p. 871.

the jurisdiction of another state at such a distance that it is not generally possible to distinguish the contribution of individual emission sources or groups of sources.

The obligations undertaken under the Convention, however, are modest. States 'shall endeavour to limit and, as far as possible, gradually reduce and prevent air pollution, including long-range transboundary air pollution'.¹⁵⁹ The question of state liability for damage resulting from such pollution is not addressed. The Convention provides that states are to develop policies and strategies by means of exchanges of information and consultation¹⁶⁰ and to exchange information to combat generally the discharge of air pollutants.¹⁶¹ Consultations are to be held upon request at an early stage between contracting parties actually affected by or exposed to a significant risk of long-range transboundary air pollution and contracting parties within which and subject to whose jurisdiction a significant contribution to such pollution originates or could originate, in connection with activities carried on or contemplated therein.¹⁶²

The parties also undertook to develop the existing 'Co-operative programme for the monitoring and evaluation of the long-range transmission of air pollutants in Europe' (EMEP) and in 1984 a Protocol was adopted dealing with the long-term financing of the project. Further Protocols to the Convention have been adopted. In 1985, the Helsinki Protocol was signed, dealing with the reduction of sulphur emissions or their transboundary fluxes by at least 30 per cent as soon as possible and at the latest by 1993, using 1980 levels as the basis for the calculation of reductions. This Protocol requires parties to report annually to the Executive Body of the Convention.¹⁶³ The Sophia Protocol was adopted in 1988 and concerned the control of emissions of nitrogen oxides or their transboundary fluxes. Under this Protocol the contracting parties undertook to reduce their national annual emissions of nitrogen oxides or their transboundary fluxes so that by the end of 1994 these would not exceed those of 1987. Negotiations for further reductions in national annual emissions were provided for, as was the exchange of technology in relevant areas and of information. In 1991, the Protocol concerning the control of emissions of volatile organic compounds and their transboundary fluxes was adopted.

¹⁵⁹ Article 2.

¹⁶⁰ Article 3. Note that under article 6, states undertake to develop the best policies and strategies using the 'best available technology which is economically feasible'.

¹⁶¹ Article 4. See also article 8. ¹⁶² Article 5. See also article 8(b).

¹⁶³ As to EU obligations concerning the curbing of emissions of sulphur dioxide and nitrogen dioxide, see e.g. Directive 99/30/EC and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 761 ff.

Specific targets and timetables are established. However, the Protocol provides for a choice of at least three ways to meet the requirements, to be determined by the parties upon signature and dependent upon the level of volatile organic compounds emissions. In 1994, the Oslo Protocol on Further Reduction of Sulphur Emissions was adopted,¹⁶⁴ specifying sulphur emission ceilings for parties for the years 2000, 2005 and 2010, and accompanied by a reporting requirement to the Executive Body on a periodic basis.¹⁶⁵ An Implementation Committee was provided for in order to review the implementation of the Protocol and compliance by the parties with their obligations.¹⁶⁶ In 1998 two further protocols were concluded, one on persistent organic pollutants and the other on heavy metals. A Protocol of 1999 is intended to abate acidification, eutrophication and ground-level ozone. In 1997 a revised Implementation Committee was established and this has the responsibility to review compliance with all the Protocols of the Convention under a common procedure. It considers questions of non-compliance with a view to finding a 'constructive solution' and reports to the Executive Board.¹⁶⁷

In 2001, the Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants was signed. The Convention provides for the control of the production, trade in, disposal and use of twelve named persistent organic pollutants (although there is a health exception temporarily for DDT). There is a procedure to add other such pollutants to the list and an interim financial mechanism with the Global Environmental Facility (GEF)¹⁶⁸ was established as the principal entity to help developing countries.¹⁶⁹ In May 2005, a conference of states parties established a subsidiary body, the Persistent Organic Pollutants Review Committee,¹⁷⁰ in order to assist in implementation activities.

¹⁶⁴ See 33 ILM, 1994, p. 1540. ¹⁶⁵ Article 5. ¹⁶⁶ Article 7.

¹⁶⁷ See Executive Board Decision 1997/2, annex, as amended in 2001, ECE/EB.AIR/75, annex V. The Executive Board may take decisions concerning the compliance of parties: see e.g. Decision 2002/8 criticising Spain. See, for the Board's decisions, www.uncece.org/env/lrtap/conv/report/eb_decis.htm, and see the Committee's Ninth Report, 2006, ECE/EB.AIR/2006/3 and Adds. 1 and 2.

¹⁶⁸ The Global Environmental Facility was itself set up in 1991 to aid developing countries to fund projects and programmes protecting the global environment. In particular, the Facility supports projects related to biodiversity, climate change, international waters, land degradation, the ozone layer and persistent organic pollutants: see www.gefweb.org/interior.aspx?id=50. See also the Beijing Declaration of the Second Global Environmental Facility 2003, 44 ILM, 2005, p. 1004.

¹⁶⁹ See the Convention website, www.pops.int/.

¹⁷⁰ www.pops.int/documents/meetings/poprc/meeting_docs/reports/report_E.pdf.

In 1986 a Protocol to the Paris Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution from Land-Based Sources¹⁷¹ extended that agreement to atmospheric emissions of pollutants.¹⁷² Article 212 of the Law of the Sea Convention, 1982 requires states to adopt laws and regulations to prevent, reduce and control atmospheric pollution of the marine environment, although no specific standards are set.¹⁷³

Ozone depletion and global warming¹⁷⁴

The problem of global warming and the expected increase in the temperature of the earth in the decades to come has focused attention on the issues particularly of the consumption of fossil fuels and deforestation. In addition, the depletion of the stratospheric ozone layer, which has the effect of letting excessive ultraviolet radiation through to the surface of the earth, is a source of considerable concern. The problem of the legal characterisation of the ozone layer is a significant one. Article 1(1) of the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer, 1985 defines this area as 'the layer of atmospheric ozone above the planetary boundary layer'. This area would thus appear, particularly in the light of the global challenge posed by ozone depletion and climate change, to constitute a distinct unit with an identity of its own irrespective of national sovereignty or shared resources claims. UN General Assembly resolution

¹⁷¹ See below, p. 898.

¹⁷² Note also that in 1987 the Second International Conference on the Protection of the North Sea urged states to ratify the Protocol: see 27 ILM, 1988, p. 835; while in 1990 North Sea states agreed to achieve by 1999 a reduction of 50 per cent or more in atmospheric and river-borne emissions of hazardous substances, provided that best available technology permitted this: see IMO Doc. MEPC 29/INF.26.

¹⁷³ Note that the Canada–United States Air Quality Agreement, 1991 required the reduction of sulphur dioxide and nitrogen oxide emissions from the two states to agreed levels by the year 2000. Compliance monitoring by continuous emission monitoring systems was provided for.

¹⁷⁴ See e.g. *International Law and Global Climate Change* (eds. R. Churchill and D. Freestone), Dordrecht, 1991; *Implementing the Climate Regime. International Compliance* (eds. O. S. Stokke, J. Hovi and G. Ulfstein), London, 2005; P. Lawrence, 'International Legal Regulation for Protection of the Ozone Layer: Some Problems of Implementation', 2 *Journal of Environmental Law*, 1990, p. 17; T. Stoel, 'Fluorocarbon: Mobilising Concern and Action' in *Environmental Protection, The International Dimension* (eds. D. A. Kay and H. K. Jacobson), 1983, p. 45; Engelmann, 'A Look at Some Issues Before an Ozone Convention', 8 *Environmental Policy and Law*, 1982, p. 49; Heimsoeth, 'The Protection of the Ozone Layer', 10 *Environmental Policy and Law*, 1983, p. 34, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 516. See also www.unep.org/ozone/index-en.shtml.

43/53, for example, states that global climate change is 'the common concern of mankind'.¹⁷⁵ Whatever the precise legal status of this area, what is important is the growing recognition that the scale of the challenge posed can only really be tackled upon a truly international or global basis.

In the first serious effort to tackle the problem of ozone depletion, the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer was adopted in 1985, entering into force three years later. This Convention is a framework agreement, providing the institutional structure for the elaboration of Protocols laying down specific standards concerning the production of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), the agents which cause the destruction of the ozone layer. Under the Convention, contracting parties agree to take appropriate measures to protect human health and the environment against adverse effects resulting or likely to result from human activities which modify or are likely to modify the ozone layer.¹⁷⁶ The parties also agree to co-operate in the collection of relevant material and in the formulation of agreed measures, and to take appropriate legislative or administrative action to control, limit, reduce or prevent human activities under their jurisdiction or control 'should it be found that these activities have or are likely to have adverse effects resulting from modification or likely modification of the ozone layer'.¹⁷⁷ A secretariat and disputes settlement mechanism were established.¹⁷⁸ However, overall the Convention is little more than a framework within which further action could be taken.

In 1987 the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer was adopted and this called for a phased reduction of CFCs and a freeze on the use of halons.¹⁷⁹ The control measures of the Protocol are

¹⁷⁵ See also the Noordwijk Declaration of the Conference on Atmospheric Pollution and Climate Change, 1989. See e.g. C. A. Fleischer, 'The International Concern for the Environment: The Concept of Common Heritage' in Bothe, *Trends in Environmental Law and Policy*, p. 321.

¹⁷⁶ Article 2(1). 'Adverse effects' is defined in article 1(2) to mean 'changes in the physical environment or biota, including changes in climate, which have significant deleterious effects on human health or on the composition, resilience and productivity of natural and managed ecosystems or on materials useful to mankind'.

¹⁷⁷ Article 2.

¹⁷⁸ Articles 7 and 11. See also the UN Environment Programme, *Handbook for the Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer*, 7th edn, Nairobi, 2006.

¹⁷⁹ See 26 ILM, 1987, p. 1541 and 28 ILM, 1989, p. 1301. See also R. Benedict, *Ozone Diplomacy*, Cambridge, MA, 1991, and A. C. Aman, 'The Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer: Providing Prospective Remedial Relief for Potential Damage to the Environmental Commons' in Francioni and Scovazzi, *International Responsibility for Environmental Harm*, p. 185. See also UN Environment Programme, *Handbook for the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer*, 7th edn, Nairobi, 2006.

based on the regulation of the production of 'controlled substances'¹⁸⁰ by the freezing of their consumption¹⁸¹ at 1986 levels followed by a progressive reduction, so that by mid-1998 consumption was to be reduced by 20 per cent in comparison with the 1986 figure. From mid-1998 onwards consumption was to be reduced to 50 per cent of the 1986 level.¹⁸² However, this was subsequently felt to have been insufficient and, in 1989, the parties to the Convention and Protocol adopted the Helsinki Declaration on the Protection of the Ozone Layer in which the parties agreed to phase out the production and consumption of CFCs controlled by the Protocol as soon as possible, but not later than the year 2000, and to phase out halons and control and reduce other substances which contribute significantly to ozone depletion as soon as feasible. An Implementation Committee was established under the Montreal Protocol together with a non-compliance procedure, whereby a party querying the carrying out of obligations by another party can submit its concerns in writing to the secretariat. The secretariat with the party complained against will examine the complaint and the matter will then be passed to the Implementation Committee, which will try and secure a friendly settlement and make a report to the meeting of the parties, which can take further measures to ensure compliance with the Protocol.

The parties to the Protocol made a series of Adjustments and Amendments to the Protocol in June 1990,¹⁸³ the main ones being that 1992 consumption and production levels were not to exceed 1986 levels, while 1995 levels were not to exceed 50 per cent with 10 per cent exception to satisfy basic domestic needs; 1997 levels were not to exceed 15 per cent, with 10 per cent exception permitted, and 2000 levels were not to exceed 0 per cent with 15 per cent exception permitted. Broadly similar consumption and production targets have also been laid down with regard to halons. The 1990 Amendments made specific reference to the requirement to take into account the developmental needs of developing countries and the need for the transfer of alternative technologies, and a Multilateral Fund was established. Further Adjustments were made in Copenhagen

¹⁸⁰ I.e. ozone-depleting substances listed in Annex A.

¹⁸¹ This is defined to constitute production plus imports minus exports of controlled substances: see articles 1(5) and (6) and 3.

¹⁸² There are two exceptions, however, first for the purposes of 'industrial rationalisation between parties' and secondly with regard to certain developing countries: see article 5.

¹⁸³ See 30 ILM, 1991, p. 537.

in 1992,¹⁸⁴ introducing changes to the timetable for the phasing out of various substances, listing new controlled substances and adopting new reporting requirements. The Implementation Committee was enlarged and the Multilateral Fund adopted on a permanent basis.¹⁸⁵

Action with regard to the phenomenon of global warming has been a lot slower. General Assembly resolutions 43/53 (1988) and 44/207 (1989) recognised that climate change was a common concern of mankind and determined that necessary and timely action should be taken to deal with this issue. The General Assembly also called for the convening of a conference on world climate change, as did the UNEP Governing Council Decision on Global Climate Change of 25 May 1989. In addition, the Hague Declaration on the Environment 1989, signed by twenty-four states, called for the establishment of new institutional authority under the auspices of the UN to combat any further global warming and for the negotiation of the necessary legal instruments. The UN Framework Convention on Climate Change was adopted in 1992.¹⁸⁶

The objective of the Convention is to achieve stabilisation of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere at a level that would prevent dangerous anthropogenic interference with the climate system and such level should be achieved within a time-frame sufficient to allow ecosystems to adapt naturally to climate change, to ensure food production is not threatened and to enable economic development to proceed in a sustainable manner.¹⁸⁷ The states parties undertake *inter alia* to develop, update and publish national inventories of anthropogenic emissions by sources and removals by sinks¹⁸⁸ of all greenhouse gases not covered by the Montreal Protocol; to formulate, implement and update national and, where appropriate, regional programmes containing measures to mitigate climate

¹⁸⁴ See 32 ILM, 1993, p. 874. Further amendments were made in Montreal, 1997, and Beijing, 1999, increasing the substances covered: see www.unep.ch/ozone/treaties.shtml. See also the Montreal Adjustment on the Production and Consumption of HCFCs 2007.

¹⁸⁵ See also EC Regulation 91/594 of 4 March 1991, providing that after 30 June 1997 there should be no production of CFCs unless the European Commission had determined that such production was essential.

¹⁸⁶ 31 ILM, 1992, p. 849. See e.g. J. Werksman, 'Designing a Compliance System for the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change' in *Improving Compliance with International Environmental Agreements* (eds. J. Cameron, J. Werksman, P. Rodinck *et al.*), London, 1996, p. 85. See also Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 523, and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 357 ff. See also <http://unfccc.int/>.

¹⁸⁷ Article 2.

¹⁸⁸ Defined as any process, activity or mechanism which removes a greenhouse gas, an aerosol or a precursor of a greenhouse gas from the atmosphere, article 1(8).

changes; to promote and co-operate in the development, application and transfer of technologies and processes to control, reduce or prevent such anthropogenic emissions; to promote sustainable management and conservation of sinks and reservoirs of all greenhouse gases not controlled by the Montreal Protocol; to take climate change considerations into account to the extent feasible in their relevant social, economic and environmental policies; and to promote and co-operate in research, exchange of information and education in the field of climate change.¹⁸⁹ Developed country parties, and certain other parties listed in Annex I,¹⁹⁰ commit themselves to take the lead in modifying longer-term trends in anthropogenic emissions and particularly to adopt national policies and take corresponding measures on the mitigation of climate change by limiting anthropogenic emissions of greenhouse gases and protecting and enhancing greenhouse gas sinks and reservoirs.¹⁹¹ Developed country and other Annex I parties must submit within six months of the Convention coming into force and periodically thereafter, detailed information on such matters with the aim of returning anthropogenic emissions to their 1990 levels. This information provided is to be reviewed by the Conference of the parties on a periodic basis.¹⁹² In addition, developed country parties and other developed parties included in Annex II¹⁹³ are to provide the financial resources to enable the developing country parties to meet their obligations under the Convention and generally to assist them in coping with the adverse effects of climate change. The parties agree to give full consideration to actions necessary to assist developing country parties that may be, for example, small island countries, countries with low-lying coastal areas, countries prone to natural disasters, drought and desertification and landlocked and transit states.¹⁹⁴

The Conference of the parties is established as the supreme body of the Convention and has the function *inter alia* to review the implementation of the Convention, periodically examine the obligations of the parties and the institutional arrangements established, promote the exchange of information, facilitate at the request of two or more parties the co-ordination of measures taken to address climate change, promote and

¹⁸⁹ Article 4(1).

¹⁹⁰ For example, former European Soviet Republics such as Belarus, the Ukraine and the Baltic states.

¹⁹¹ Article 4(2)a. ¹⁹² Article 4(2)b.

¹⁹³ Essentially European Union countries, the US, Australia, Canada, New Zealand, Iceland, Japan, Switzerland and Turkey.

¹⁹⁴ Article 4(8).

guide the development of comparable methodologies for the preparation of inventories, assess the implementation of the Convention by the parties, consider and adopt regular reports on implementation and make recommendations on any matters necessary for the implementation of the Convention.¹⁹⁵ In addition, the Convention provides for a secretariat to be established, together with a subsidiary body for scientific and technological advice and a subsidiary body for implementation.¹⁹⁶ The Convention as a whole is a complex document and the range of commitments entered into, particularly by developed country parties, is not wholly clear.

The Convention entered into force in 1994 and the following year the first session of the Conference was held in Berlin.¹⁹⁷ It was agreed that the pledges by the developed country parties to reduce emissions by 2000 to 1990 levels were not adequate and preparations were commenced to draft a further legal instrument by 1997. It was also agreed not to establish new commitments for developing country parties, but rather to assist the implementation of existing commitments. The parties decided to initiate a pilot phase for joint implementation projects, providing for investment from one party in greenhouse gas emissions reduction opportunities in another party. In addition, it was decided to establish a permanent secretariat in Bonn and two subsidiary advisory bodies.

The 1997 Kyoto Protocol¹⁹⁸ commits developed country parties to individual, legally binding targets to limit or reduce their greenhouse gas emissions, adding up to a total cut of at least 5 per cent from 1990 levels in the 'commitment period' of 2008–2012. Developing countries are obliged simply to meet existing commitments. Certain activities since 1990 which have the effect of removing greenhouse gases, such as forestry schemes (so-called 'carbon sinks'), may be offset against emission targets. The Protocol also allows states to aggregate their emissions, thus allowing, for example, European Union members if they wish to be counted together permitting less developed members to increase emissions on the account of other members. In addition, states may receive credits for supporting emission-reducing projects in other developed states ('joint implementation') and in certain circumstances in developing states ('the clean development mechanism'), and the possibility has been provided for trading emission permits, so that some countries

¹⁹⁵ Article 7. ¹⁹⁶ Articles 8–10. ¹⁹⁷ See 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1671.

¹⁹⁸ This came into force on 16 February 2005. See D. Freestone and C. Streck, *Legal Aspects of Implementing the Kyoto Protocol Mechanisms: Making Kyoto Work*, Oxford, 2005.

may purchase the unused emission quotas of other countries ('emissions trading').¹⁹⁹

The Conference of the Parties meets regularly to review the Convention and Protocol. There are two supplementary bodies, one on scientific and technological advice and one on implementation. The financial mechanism of the Convention is operated by the Global Environment Facility, established by the World Bank, UN Environment Programme and UN Development Programme in 1991, while advice is received from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, established by the World Meteorological Organisation and the UN Environmental Programme.²⁰⁰ Annex 1 countries (essentially the developed states) must provide annual inventory reports on greenhouse gas emissions to the secretariat, which are subject to in-depth and technical review.²⁰¹ Developing countries are subject to weaker reporting requirements. There is a Compliance Committee with facilitative and enforcement branches for parties to the Kyoto Protocol (as amended by the Marrakesh Accords 2001).²⁰²

Outer space²⁰³

The Outer Space Treaty, 1967 provides that the exploration and use of outer space is to be carried out for the benefit and in the interests of all states.²⁰⁴ The harmful contamination of space or celestial bodies is to be avoided, as are adverse changes in the environment of the earth resulting from the introduction of extraterrestrial matter.²⁰⁵ Nuclear weapons and other weapons of mass destruction are not to be placed in orbit around the earth, installed on celestial bodies or stationed in outer space, and the moon and other celestial bodies are to be used exclusively for peaceful purposes.²⁰⁶ The Agreement Governing the Activities of States on the

¹⁹⁹ Further advances were made at meetings in Buenos Aires 1998, Bonn 2001 and Marrakesh 2001: see unfccc.int/issues/mechanisms.html.

²⁰⁰ See www.ipcc.ch/.

²⁰¹ The requirements are more stringent with regard to the Kyoto Protocol parties.

²⁰² Note the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, 2007, which analysed the dangers of human-induced climate change. It was endorsed by governments by consensus: see www.ipcc.ch.

²⁰³ See further above, chapter 10, p. 541. See also Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, p. 534, and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 382 ff.

²⁰⁴ Article 1. ²⁰⁵ Article 9.

²⁰⁶ Article 4. See also the Principles Relevant to the Use of Nuclear Power Sources in Outer Space, adopted by the UN General Assembly in resolution 47/68 (1992). Goals for radioactive protection and safety are stipulated.

Moon and Other Celestial Bodies, 1979 provides that the moon and its natural resources are the 'common heritage of mankind' and are to be used exclusively for peaceful purposes.²⁰⁷ Article VII stipulates that in exploring and using the moon, states parties are to take measures to prevent the disruption of the existing balance of its environment whether by introducing adverse changes in that environment or by its harmful contamination through the introduction of extra-environmental matter or otherwise.

There is, in particular, a growing problem with regard to debris located in outer space. Such debris, consisting of millions of objects of varying size in space,²⁰⁸ constitutes a major hazard to spacecraft. While liability for damage caused by objects launched into space is absolute,²⁰⁹ the specific problem of space debris has been addressed in the Buenos Aires International Instrument on the Protection of the Environment from Damage Caused by Space Debris, adopted by the International Law Association at its 1994 Conference.²¹⁰ The draft emphasises the obligations to co-operate in the prevention of damage to the environment, in promoting the development and exchange of technology to prevent, reduce and control space debris and in the flow and exchange of information, and to hold consultations when there is reason to believe that activities may produce space debris likely to cause damage to the environment or to persons or objects or significant risks thereto. The principle proclaimed by the draft is that each state or international organisation party to the instrument that launches or procures the launching of a space object is internationally liable for damage arising therefrom to another party to the instrument as a consequence of space debris produced by any such object.²¹¹

²⁰⁷ See articles III and XI.

²⁰⁸ Such debris may result from pollution from spacecraft, abandoned satellites, orbital explosions and satellite break-ups or hardware released during space launches and other normal manoeuvres. See e.g. L. Roberts, 'Addressing the Problem of Orbital Space Debris: Combining International Regulatory and Liability Regimes', 15 *Boston College International and Comparative Law Review*, 1992, p. 53. See also S. Gorove, 'Towards a Clarification of the Term "Space Objects" – An International Legal and Policy Imperative?', 21 *Journal of Space Law*, 1993, p. 10.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. B. Hurwitz, *Space Liability for Outer Space Activities*, Dordrecht, 1992, and see further above, chapter 10, p. 546.

²¹⁰ Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, Buenos Aires, 1994, pp. 317 ff. This, of course, is not a binding treaty, but a suggested draft from an influential private organisation.

²¹¹ Article 8 of the draft.

International watercourses²¹²

International watercourses are systems of surface waters and ground waters which are situated in more than one state.²¹³ Such watercourses form a unitary whole and normally flow into a common terminus. While there has historically been some disagreement as to the extent of the watercourse system covered, particularly whether it includes the complete river basin with all associated tributaries and groundwater systems, a broader definition is the approach adopted in recent years. Customary law has developed rules with regard to equal riparian rights to international rivers,²¹⁴ but these were not extensive.²¹⁵ The International Law Association, a

²¹² See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, chapter 10, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, chapter 6. See also S. McCaffrey, *The Law of International Watercourses*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2007; O. McIntyre, *Environmental Protection of International Watercourses in International Law*, Aldershot, 2007; A. Rieu-Clarke, *A Fresh Approach to International Law in the Field of Sustainable Development: Lessons from the Law of International Watercourses*, London, 2007; R. Baxter, *The Law of International Waterways*, Cambridge, MA, 1964; C. Bourne, 'International Law and Pollution of International Rivers and Lakes', 21 *University of Toronto Law Journal*, 1971, p. 193; F. Florio, 'Water Pollution and Related Principles of International Law', 17 *Canadian YIL*, 1979, p. 134; J. Lammers, *Pollution of International Watercourses: A Search for Substantive Rules and Principles*, The Hague, 1984; S. McCaffrey, 'The Law of International Watercourses: Some Recent Developments and Unanswered Questions', 17 *Denver Journal of International Law and Policy*, 1989, p. 505; J. G. Polakiewicz, 'La Responsabilité de l'État en Matière de Pollution des Eaux Fluviales ou Souterraines Internationales', *Journal de Droit International*, 1991, p. 283; H. Ruiz Fabri, 'Règles Coutumières Générales et Droit International Fluvial', *AFDI*, 1990, p. 818; J. Sette-Camara, 'Pollution of International Rivers', 186 *HR*, 1984, p. 117, and P. Wouters, 'The Legal Response to Water Conflicts: The UN Watercourses Convention and Beyond', 42 *German YIL*, 1999, p. 293.

²¹³ See e.g. article 1(1) of the UN Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes, 1992 and article 2 of the Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997. See also Report of the International Law Commission on its 46th Session, 1994, p. 197.

²¹⁴ See the *Territorial Jurisdiction of the International Commission of the Oder* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 23, p. 27; 5 AD, p. 83. The Permanent Court noted here that, 'the community of interest in a navigable river becomes the basis of a common legal right, the essential features of which are the perfect equality of all riparian states in the user of the whole course of the river and the exclusion of any preferential privilege of any one riparian state in relation to the others.' This was reaffirmed in the case concerning the *Auditing of Accounts between the Netherlands and France*, arbitral award of 12 March 2004, para. 97. The International Court has noted that, 'Modern development of international law has strengthened this principle for non-navigational uses of international watercourses', the *Gabčíkovo-Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 56; 116 ILR, p. 1.

²¹⁵ See the *Lac Lanoux* case, 24 ILR, p. 101. The tribunal noted, for example, that while the interests of riparian states had to be taken into account by a riparian state proposing changes to the river system, there was no rule precluding the use of hydraulic power of

private organisation of international lawyers, proposed the Helsinki Rules on the Uses of the Waters of International Rivers in 1966,²¹⁶ in which it was noted that each basin state was entitled to a reasonable and equitable share in the beneficial use of the waters and that all states were obliged to prevent new forms of water pollution that would cause substantial injury in the territory of other basin states.²¹⁷

In 1992, the Convention on the Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes was adopted in Helsinki within the framework of the UN Economic Commission for Europe.²¹⁸ Under this Convention, all parties must take all appropriate measures to prevent, control and reduce any significant adverse effect on the environment resulting from a change in the conditions of transboundary waters caused by a human activity. Such effects on the environment include effects on human health and safety, flora, fauna, soil, air, water, climate, landscape and also effects on the cultural heritage.²¹⁹ In taking such measures, states parties are to be guided by the precautionary principle²²⁰ and by the polluter-pays principle, by which the costs of pollution prevention, control and reduction measures are to be borne by the polluter.²²¹ Each party undertakes to set emission limits for discharges from point sources into surface waters based on best available technology²²² and to define, where appropriate, water-quality objectives and adopt water-quality criteria²²³ for the purpose of preventing, controlling and reducing transboundary impact. The measures to be taken must ensure, for example, the application of low- and non-waste technology; the prior licensing of waste-water discharge; the application of biological or equivalent processes to municipal waste water; the use of environmental impact assessments and sustainable water-resources management.²²⁴

The Convention also calls for the parties to establish monitoring programmes, to co-operate in research and development projects and to

international watercourses without a prior agreement between the interested states, *ibid.*, p. 130.

²¹⁶ Report of the Fifty-second Conference, 1966, p. 484.

²¹⁷ See also the Rules on Water Pollution in an International Drainage Basin adopted by the ILA in 1982, Report of the Sixtieth Conference, 1982, p. 535, and the Rules on International Groundwaters adopted in 1986, Report of the Sixty-second Conference, 1986. See also the work of the Institut de Droit International, *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1979, p. 193.

²¹⁸ See also the Protocol on Civil Liability and Compensation for Damage Caused by the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents on Transboundary Waters, 2003.

²¹⁹ Articles 1(2) and 2(1). ²²⁰ See above, p. 867. ²²¹ See above, p. 870.

²²² This is defined in Annex I. ²²³ See Annex III. ²²⁴ Article 3.

exchange relevant information as early as possible.²²⁵ Riparian parties are to enter into bilateral or multilateral agreements or arrangements in order to co-ordinate their activities and to consult together at the request of any one riparian party.²²⁶ Article 7 provides that the parties 'shall support appropriate international efforts to elaborate rules, criteria and procedures in the field of responsibility and liability'.

The Convention on the Law of the Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses, 1997 provides that watercourse states shall in their respective territories utilise an international watercourse in an 'equitable and reasonable manner'. In particular, optimal utilisation must be consistent with adequate protection of the watercourse.²²⁷ Factors relevant to equitable and reasonable utilisation include, in addition to physical factors of a natural character and the social and economic needs of the watercourse states concerned, the 'conservation, protection, development and economy of use of the water resources of the watercourse and the costs of measures taken to that effect'.²²⁸ Article 7 provides that watercourse states shall take all appropriate measures to prevent the causing of significant harm to other watercourse states. Where such harm is caused, consultations are to take place in order to eliminate or mitigate such harm and with regard to compensation where appropriate. Articles 9 and 11 provide for regular exchanges of data and information, while watercourse states are to exchange information and consult in particular on the possible effects of planned measures on the condition of an international watercourse. Before a watercourse state implements or permits the implementation of planned measures which may have a significant adverse effect upon other watercourse states, it is to provide such states with timely notification and sufficient technical data and information for the evaluation of the possible effects of the planned measures.²²⁹ Unless otherwise agreed, the notified states have a period of six months for such evaluation during which exchanges of data and information are to take place and the planned measures are not to be implemented without the consent of the notified states. If no reply to the notification is received, the notifying state may

²²⁵ Articles 4–6 and 11–13. Provisions regarding notification about critical situations and mutual assistance appear in articles 14 and 15.

²²⁶ Articles 9 and 10.

²²⁷ Article 5. This provision was expressly referred to by the International Court in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 80; 116 ILR, p. 1. See also article 8 which emphasises that watercourse states shall co-operate in order to attain optimal utilisation and adequate protection of an international watercourse.

²²⁸ Article 6. ²²⁹ Article 12.

proceed to implement the planned measures. If a reply is received, the states are to consult and negotiate with a view to arriving at an equitable resolution of the situation.²³⁰ Where a watercourse state has serious reason to believe that measures that may have a significant adverse impact are being planned, it may itself set in motion the above procedures.²³¹

Article 20 stipulates that watercourse states shall protect and preserve the ecosystems of international watercourses²³² and shall act to prevent, reduce and control pollution²³³ of an international watercourse that may cause significant harm to other watercourse states or to their environment. Watercourse states are to take all necessary measures to prevent the introduction of species, alien or new, into an international watercourse which may have effects detrimental to the ecosystem of the watercourse resulting in significant harm to other watercourse states.²³⁴

It is thus clear that the international community is coming to terms with the need to protect the environment of international watercourses.²³⁵ How evolving international environmental rules relate to the more traditional principles of international law was one of the issues before the International Court in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case.²³⁶ Hungary and Czechoslovakia entered into a treaty in 1977 by which there would be created on the Danube between the two states a barrage system, a dam, a reservoir, hydro-electric power stations and a 25-kilometre canal for diverting the Danube from its original course through a system of locks. A dispute developed in the light of Hungary's growing environmental concerns. Hungary suspended work on the project in 1989, while Czechoslovakia (now the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic) proceeded with a 'provisional solution' as from 1991, which involved damming the

²³⁰ Articles 11–17.

²³¹ Article 18. Article 19 provides for an expedited procedure where there is the utmost urgency in the implementation of planned measures.

²³² See also article 23 with regard to measures necessary to protect and preserve the marine environment.

²³³ Pollution is here defined as 'any detrimental alteration in the composition or quality of the waters of an international watercourse which results directly or indirectly from human conduct', article 21(1).

²³⁴ Article 22.

²³⁵ Note that a variety of regional and bilateral agreements and arrangements exist with regard to international watercourses: see e.g. the agreements concerning the International Commission of the Rhine, the US–Canadian International Joint Commission and provisions concerning the Zambezi River System and the Niger Basin. See Sands, *Principles*, pp. 459 ff., and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 323 ff.

²³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 7; 116 ILR, p. 1.

Danube at a point on Czechoslovakian territory. In 1992, Hungary announced the termination of the treaty of 1977 and related instruments. The case came before the International Court ultimately by way of a Special Agreement in 1993 between Hungary and Slovakia (the successor to the former Czech and Slovak Federal Republic in so far as the project was concerned). The case essentially revolved around the relationship between the treaty and subsequent environmental concerns. The Court emphasised that newly developed norms of environmental law were relevant for the implementation of the treaty,²³⁷ while 'The awareness of the vulnerability of the environment and the recognition that environmental risks have to be assessed on a continuous basis have become much stronger in the years since the treaty's conclusion.'²³⁸ However, the Court found that the treaty was still in force and Hungary was not entitled to terminate it.²³⁹

Ultra-hazardous activities²⁴⁰

It has been argued that ultra-hazardous activities form a distinct category in the field of international environmental law and one in which the principle of strict or absolute liability operates. The definition of what constitutes such activity, of course, is somewhat uncertain, but the characterisation can be taken to revolve around the serious consequences that are likely to flow from any damage that results, rather than upon the likelihood of pollution occurring from the activity in question. The focus therefore is upon the significant or exceptional risk of severe transnational damage.²⁴¹ The effect of categorising a particular activity as ultra-hazardous would, it appears, be to accept the strict liability principle rather than the due diligence standard commonly regarded as the general rule in pollution

²³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 67. ²³⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 68.

²³⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 76 and 82. Note that in March 2003, the establishment of a Water Co-operation Facility to mediate in disputes between countries sharing a single river basin was announced: see <http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/sci/tech/2872427.stm>.

²⁴⁰ See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, chapter 12, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, chapters 8 and 9. See also D. A. Bagwell, 'Hazardous and Noxious Substances', 62 *Tulane Law Review*, 1988, p. 433; L. F. Goldie, 'Concepts of Strict and Absolute Liability and the Ranking of Liability in Terms of Relative Exposure to Risk', 16 *Netherlands YIL*, 1985, p. 247; Barboza, 'International Liability', pp. 331 ff.; W. Jenks, 'The Scope and Nature of Ultra-Hazardous Liability in International Law', 117 *HR*, 1966, p. 99; Handl, 'State Liability', pp. 553 ff., and R. J. Dupuy, *La Responsabilité des États pour les Dommages d'Origine Technologique et Industrielle*, Paris, 1976, p. 206–9.

²⁴¹ Handl, 'State Liability', p. 554.

situations.²⁴² In other words, the state under whose territory or jurisdiction the activity took place would be liable irrespective of fault. This exception to the general principle can be justified as a method of moving the burden of proof and shifting the loss clearly from the victim to the state. It would also operate as a further incentive to states to take action in areas of exceptional potential harm.

In determining what areas of activity could be characterised as ultra-hazardous, some caution needs to be exercised. There can be little doubt that nuclear activities fall within this category as a general rule, but beyond this there appears to be no agreement. The Convention on International Liability for Damage caused by Space Objects, 1972 specifically provides that a launching state shall be absolutely liable to pay compensation for damage caused by its space objects on the surface of the earth,²⁴³ but this is the only clear example of its kind.

*Nuclear activities*²⁴⁴

The use of nuclear technology brings with it risks as well as benefits and the accident at the Chernobyl nuclear reactor in 1986²⁴⁵ brought home to international opinion just how devastating the consequences of a nuclear mishap could be. Concern in this area had hitherto focused upon the issue of nuclear weapons. In 1963 the Treaty Banning Nuclear Weapons Testing in the Atmosphere, Outer Space and Under Water was signed.²⁴⁶ However, France and China did not become parties to this treaty and continued atmospheric nuclear testing. Australia and New Zealand sought a declaration from the International Court that French atmospheric nuclear testing was contrary to international law, but the Court decided the case on the basis that a subsequent French decision to end such testing was

²⁴² See above, p. 853. ²⁴³ See above, p. 546.

²⁴⁴ See e.g. Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*; Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy' and 'Chernobyl'; J. C. Woodliffe, 'Tackling Transboundary Environmental Hazards in Cases of Emergency: The Emerging Legal Framework' in *Current Issues in European and International Law* (eds. R. White and B. Smythe), London, 1990, and Woodliffe, 'Chernobyl: Four Years On', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 461.

²⁴⁵ See Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, pp. 1–2. See also IAEA, *Summary Report on the Post Accident Review Meeting on the Chernobyl Accident*, Vienna, 1986.

²⁴⁶ See also the Treaty on the Prohibition of the Emplacement of Nuclear Weapons and other Weapons of Mass Destruction on the Sea-Bed, 1971; the Treaty for the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons in Latin America, 1967 and the South Pacific Nuclear Free Zone Treaty, 1985.

binding and thus the issue was moot.²⁴⁷ In response to renewed French nuclear testing in the South Pacific in 1995, albeit underground rather than atmospheric, New Zealand asked the International Court to review the situation pursuant to the 1974 judgment and declare that France was acting illegally as being likely to cause the introduction into the marine environment of radioactive material and in failing to conduct an environmental impact assessment. While the Court referred to 'the obligations of states to respect and protect the natural environment', it declared that the request had to be dismissed as not falling within the relevant paragraph of the 1974 judgment permitting a re-examination of the situation since the latter judgment had concerned atmospheric tests alone.²⁴⁸ Measures to prevent the spread of nuclear weapons were adopted in the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty of 1968, although the possession itself of nuclear weapons does not contravene international law.²⁴⁹

A variety of international organisations are now involved to some extent in the process of developing rules and principles concerning nuclear activities and environmental protection. The International Atomic Energy Agency, to take the prime example, was established in 1956 in order to encourage the development of nuclear power, but particularly since the Chernobyl accident its nuclear safety role has been emphasised. The Convention on Assistance in Cases of Nuclear Emergency, 1986, for example, gave it a co-ordinating function and an obligation to provide appropriate resources where so requested.²⁵⁰ The IAEA has established a series of standards and guidelines including, for example, in the context of the design, construction and operation of nuclear power plants, although such standards do not have the force of law.²⁵¹ Other international organisations also have a role to play in the sphere of nuclear activities.²⁵²

²⁴⁷ See the *Nuclear Tests* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 398.

²⁴⁸ *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 1974 in the Nuclear Tests Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 305–6; 106 ILR, pp. 1, 27–8.

²⁴⁹ See e.g. M. N. Shaw, 'Nuclear Weapons and International Law' in *Nuclear Weapons and International Law* (ed. I. Pogany), London, 1987, p. 1. See also below, chapter 21, p. 1187.

²⁵⁰ See further below, p. 891.

²⁵¹ Note, however, that under the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958, states are to take account of IAEA standards in preventing pollution of the seas from the dumping of nuclear waste.

²⁵² E.g. EURATOM (established in 1957), the Nuclear Energy Agency of the OECD (established in 1957) and the ILO (International Labour Organisation). See Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', pp. 266–8.

The provision of information

There appears to be a general principle requiring that information be provided in certain situations²⁵³ and several bilateral agreements have expressed this in the context of nuclear accidents.²⁵⁴ In general, such agreements provide that each state is to inform the other without delay of any emergency resulting from civil nuclear activities and any other incident that could have radiological consequences for the second state. Reciprocal information systems are set up and warning notification centres established. Such agreements, however, do not cover exchange of military information.²⁵⁵

Following the Chernobyl accident and the failure of the USSR to provide immediate information, the Vienna Convention on Early Notification of a Nuclear Accident, 1986 was rapidly adopted, under the auspices of the IAEA. This provides that in the event of a nuclear accident, the relevant state shall 'forthwith notify, directly or through the International Atomic Energy Agency . . . those states which are or may be physically affected . . . of the nuclear accident, its nature, the time of its occurrence and its exact location'. Additionally, such states must be promptly provided with information relevant to minimising the radiological consequences.²⁵⁶ States are to respond promptly to a request for further information or consultations sought by an affected state.²⁵⁷

It is also to be noted that although the Convention does not apply to military nuclear accidents, the five nuclear weapons states made Statements of Voluntary Application indicating that they would apply the Convention to all nuclear accidents, including those not specified in that agreement.²⁵⁸

Since this Convention was adopted, a variety of bilateral agreements have been signed which have been more wide-ranging than those signed beforehand and which in some cases have gone beyond the provisions specified in the Notification Convention. The agreements signed by the

²⁵³ See above, p. 865. See also Principle 20 of the Stockholm Declaration and Principle 9 of the Rio Declaration.

²⁵⁴ The first was concluded between France and Belgium in 1966 concerning the Ardennes Nuclear Power Station. Other examples include Switzerland–Federal Republic of Germany, 1978 and France–UK, 1983. The latter agreement was supplemented by a formal arrangement between the UK Nuclear Installations Inspectorate and the French equivalent for the continuous exchange of information on safety issues.

²⁵⁵ See Woodliffe, 'Tackling Transboundary Environmental Hazards', at pp. 117–20.

²⁵⁶ Article 2. See also article 5. ²⁵⁷ Article 6.

²⁵⁸ See text in 25 ILM, 1986, p. 1394.

UK with Norway, the Netherlands and Denmark during 1987–8, for example, specify that there is an obligation to notify the other parties if there is an accident or activity in the territory of the notifying state from which a transboundary effect of radiological safety significance is likely and additionally where abnormal levels of radiation are registered that are not caused by release from facilities or activities in the notifying state's territory. Extensive provisions dealing with exchanges of information are also included.²⁵⁹

The provision of assistance²⁶⁰

The earliest treaty providing for assistance in the event of radiation accidents was the Nordic Mutual Assistance Agreement, 1963. This dealt with the general terms of assistance, the advisory and co-ordinating role of the IAEA, financing, liability and privileges and immunities. The United Nations established the UN Disaster Relief Office (UNDRO) in 1972²⁶¹ and this provides assistance in pre-disaster planning. In 1977 the IAEA concluded an agreement with UNDRO with the purpose of co-ordinating their assistance activities in the nuclear accident field and in 1984 published a series of guidelines²⁶² setting out the mechanics of co-operation between states, including references to the problems of costs, liability, privileges and immunities.

In 1986, following the Chernobyl accident and at the same time as the Notification Convention, the Vienna Convention on Assistance in the Case of a Nuclear Accident or Radiological Emergency was adopted. This provides that a state in need of assistance in the event of a nuclear accident or radiological emergency may call for such assistance from any other state party either directly or through the IAEA.²⁶³ This applies whether or not

²⁵⁹ See e.g. Woodliffe, 'Chernobyl', p. 464. See the European Community Council Directive 87/600 of December 1987, which provides for the early exchange of information in the event of a radiological emergency. See also the EC Environmental Information Directive 1990 providing for a right of access to environmental information; article 9 of the Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic, 1992 and Chapter III of the Convention on Civil Liability for Damage Resulting from Activities Dangerous to the Environment, 1993.

²⁶⁰ See e.g. A. O. Adede, *The IAEA Notification and Assistance Conventions in Case of a Nuclear Accident: Landmarks in the History of Multilateral Treaty-Making*, London, 1987.

²⁶¹ A Disaster Relief Coordinator was provided for in General Assembly resolution 2816 (XXVI). See Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, p. 45.

²⁶² Guidelines for Mutual Emergency Assistance Arrangements in Connection with a Nuclear Accident or Radiological Emergency, Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, p. 199.

²⁶³ Article 2(1).

such accident or emergency originated within its territory, jurisdiction or control. States requesting assistance (which may include medical assistance and help with regard to the temporary relocation of displaced persons²⁶⁴) must provide details of the type of assistance required and other necessary information.²⁶⁵ The IAEA must respond to a request for assistance by making available appropriate resources allocated for this purpose and by transmitting promptly the request to other states and international organisations possessing the necessary resources. In addition, if requested by the state seeking assistance, the IAEA will co-ordinate the assistance at the international level. The IAEA is also required to collect and disseminate to the states parties information concerning the availability of experts, equipment and materials and with regard to methodologies, techniques and available research data relating to the response to such situations.²⁶⁶ The general range of assistance that can be provided by the Agency is laid down in some detail.²⁶⁷

In general terms, the Assistance Convention seeks to balance considerations relating to the sovereignty of the requesting state,²⁶⁸ the legitimate rights of the assisting state or states²⁶⁹ and the interests of the international community in rendering rapid assistance to affected states. Whether the balance achieved is a fair one is open to discussion.²⁷⁰

Nuclear safety

The Convention on Nuclear Safety was adopted by the IAEA in 1994. This emphasises that responsibility for nuclear safety rests with the state having jurisdiction over a nuclear installation²⁷¹ and obliges states parties to take legislative and administrative measures to implement Convention obligations²⁷² via a regulatory body²⁷³ and to submit reports to periodic

²⁶⁴ Article 2(5). ²⁶⁵ Article 2(2). ²⁶⁶ Article 5. ²⁶⁷ *Ibid.*

²⁶⁸ Under article 3(a), and unless otherwise agreed, the requesting state has the overall direction, control, co-ordination and supervision of the assistance within its territory.

²⁶⁹ Under article 7, the assisting state is entitled, unless it offers its assistance without costs, to be reimbursed for all the costs incurred by it, which are to be provided promptly, and under article 10(2), unless otherwise agreed, a requesting state is liable to compensate the assisting state for all loss of or damage to equipment or materials and for the death of or injury to personnel of the assisting party or persons acting on its behalf. There is no provision dealing with liability for damage caused by the assisting state. See also article 8 dealing with privileges and immunities.

²⁷⁰ See e.g. Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, p. 47, and Woodliffe, 'Tackling Trans-boundary Environmental Hazards', p. 127.

²⁷¹ Defined as 'a land-based civil nuclear power plant', article 2(1).

²⁷² Articles 4 and 7. ²⁷³ Article 8.

review meetings of all parties.²⁷⁴ The Convention provides that operators of nuclear installations must be licensed²⁷⁵ and it is the operators that remain primarily responsible for the safety of the installations.²⁷⁶ The Convention specifies a number of safety considerations, but these are not in the form of binding obligations upon the parties.²⁷⁷

Civil liability²⁷⁸

In addition to the issue of the responsibility or liability of the state for the activity under consideration, the question of the proceedings that may be taken by the individual victims is also raised. One possible approach is to permit the victim to have access to the legal system of the foreign polluter and thus to all remedies available on a non-discriminatory basis. This would have the effect of transforming the transboundary pollution into a national matter.²⁷⁹ This approach is evident in some treaties.²⁸⁰ The problem is that while placing the foreign victim on a par with nationals within the domestic legal system of the offender, it depends for its value upon the legal system possessing internal legislation of appropriate substantive content. This is not always the case. There are, however, several international agreements dealing specifically with the question of civil liability in the sphere of nuclear activities which operate on the basis of certain common general principles.

The OECD Paris Convention on Third Party Liability in the Field of Nuclear Energy, 1960²⁸¹ provides that the operator of a nuclear installation shall be liable for damage to or loss of life of any person and damage to or loss of any property (other than the nuclear installation and associated property or means of transport). The IAEA Vienna Convention on Civil Liability for Nuclear Damage, 1963 has similar provisions, but is aimed at

²⁷⁴ Articles 5 and 20–5. The IAEA is to provide the secretariat for the meetings of the parties, article 28.

²⁷⁵ Article 7(2)ii. ²⁷⁶ Article 9.

²⁷⁷ Articles 10–19. See also the Joint Convention on the Safety of Spent Fuel and Radioactive Waste Management, 1997, which is based upon the IAEA's Principles of Radioactive Waste Management, 1995 and the Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste, 1990. Its main provisions are similar to those of the Nuclear Safety Convention.

²⁷⁸ See e.g. Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, pp. 476 ff., and Sands, *Principles*, pp. 904 ff.

²⁷⁹ See e.g. Boyle, 'Nuclear Energy', pp. 297–8.

²⁸⁰ See e.g. the Nordic Convention on the Protection of the Environment, 1974. See also OECD Recommendations C(74)224, C(76)55 and C(77)28.

²⁸¹ Together with Protocols of 1964 and 1982.

global participation. However, both the Paris Convention and the Vienna Convention systems have suffered from relatively limited participation and a Joint Protocol was adopted in 1988 linking the Paris and Vienna Convention regimes, so that parties under each of these conventions may benefit from both of them. In 1997 a Protocol to Amend the 1963 Vienna Convention and a Convention on Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage were adopted by over eighty states. These instruments increased the scope of liability of operators to a limit of not less than 300 million Special Drawing Rights (approx 400 million US dollars) and the geographical scope of the Convention. In addition, an improved definition of nuclear damage, to include, for example, environmental damage, was provided.²⁸²

These conventions operate upon similar principles. It is the actual operator of the nuclear installation or ship that is to bear the loss²⁸³ and this is on the basis of absolute or strict liability. Accordingly, no proof of fault or negligence is required. The conventions require operators to possess appropriate liability insurance or other financial security under the conditions laid down by the competent public authorities, unless the operator is itself a state,²⁸⁴ and the relevant states are to ensure that claims up to the liability limits are met.²⁸⁵ This recognition of the residual responsibility of the state is unique.²⁸⁶ The amount of liability of the operator may, however, be limited.²⁸⁷ The relevant conventions also determine

²⁸² See e.g. 36 ILM, 1997, p. 1454, and *ibid.*, p. 1473. See also www.iaea.or.at/worldatom/Documents/Legal/protamend.shtm and www.iaea.or.at/worldatom/Documents/Legal/supcomp.shtml. Note also the Brussels Convention on the Liability of Operators of Nuclear Ships, 1962, which provides that the operator of a nuclear ship shall be absolutely liable for any nuclear damage upon proof that such damage has been caused by a nuclear incident involving the nuclear fuel of, or radioactive products or waste produced in, such ship, and the Convention Relating to Civil Liability in the Field of Maritime Carriage of Nuclear Material, 1971, which provides that a person held liable for damage caused by a nuclear incident shall be exonerated from such liability if the operator of a nuclear installation is liable for such damage under either the Paris or Vienna Conventions.

²⁸³ A carrier or handler of nuclear material may be regarded as such an operator where the latter consents and the necessary legislative framework so provides: see e.g. article 4(d) of the Paris Convention.

²⁸⁴ See e.g. article 10 of the Paris Convention, article VII of the Vienna Convention and article III of the Brussels Convention on Nuclear Ships.

²⁸⁵ *Ibid.*

²⁸⁶ Cf. the Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1969.

²⁸⁷ See articles V and VI of the Vienna Convention as amended in 1997, articles 7 and 8 of the Paris Convention and articles III and V of the Brussels Convention on Nuclear Ships.

which state has jurisdiction over claims against operators or their insurers. In general, jurisdiction lies with the state where the nuclear incident occurred, although where a nuclear incident takes place outside the territory of a contracting party or where the place of the nuclear incident cannot be determined with certainty, jurisdiction will lie with the courts of the contracting party in whose territory the nuclear installation of the operator liable is situated.²⁸⁸ Judgments given by the competent courts are enforceable in the territory of any contracting party.

The issue of inter-state claims is more difficult, as was demonstrated by the aftermath of the Chernobyl accident. Many states have paid compensation to persons affected within their jurisdiction by the fallout from that accident, but while positions have been reserved with regard to claims directly against the former USSR, it seems that problems relating to the obligations actually owed by states and the doubt over the requisite standard of care have prevented such claims from actually being made.²⁸⁹

*Hazardous wastes*²⁹⁰

The increasing problem of the disposal of toxic and hazardous wastes and the practice of dumping in the Third World, with its attendant severe health risks, has prompted international action.²⁹¹ The Oslo Convention for the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping from Ships and Aircraft, 1972²⁹² provides for a ban on the dumping of certain substances²⁹³ and for controls to be placed on the dumping of others.²⁹⁴ The London Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matter, 1972²⁹⁵ prohibits the dumping of wastes except as provided in the Convention itself, and this is strictly controlled.

²⁸⁸ Article 13 of the Paris Convention, article XI of the Vienna Convention and article X of the Brussels Convention on Nuclear Ships.

²⁸⁹ See e.g. Sands, *Chernobyl: Law and Communication*, pp. 26–8.

²⁹⁰ See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, chapter 12, and Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, chapter 8.

²⁹¹ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, pp. 36788–9 (1989). See also Principle 6 of the Stockholm Declaration 1972 and Principle 14 of the Rio Declaration 1992.

²⁹² This is limited essentially to the North-East Atlantic area.

²⁹³ Listed in Annex I. ²⁹⁴ Listed in Annex II. ²⁹⁵ This is a global instrument.

In 1988, the Organisation of African Unity adopted a resolution proclaiming the dumping of nuclear and industrial wastes in Africa to be a crime against Africa and its people. In 1991, the OAU adopted the Bamako Convention on the Ban of the Import into Africa and the Control of Transboundary Movement and Management of Hazardous Wastes within Africa,²⁹⁶ under which parties are to prohibit the import of all hazardous wastes for any reason into Africa by non-parties and to prohibit the dumping at sea of such wastes. The OECD has adopted a number of Decisions and Recommendations concerning the transfrontier movements and exports of hazardous wastes.²⁹⁷ In 1989 the OECD adopted a Recommendation²⁹⁸ noting that the polluter-pays principle should apply to accidents involving hazardous substances. The Basle Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes and Their Disposal, 1989 provides that parties shall prohibit the export of hazardous and other wastes to parties which have prohibited the import of such wastes and have so informed the other parties. In the absence of prohibition by the importing state, export to that state of such wastes is only permissible where consent in writing to the specific import is obtained.²⁹⁹ The Convention also provides that any proposed transboundary movement of hazardous wastes must be notified to the competent authorities of the states concerned by the state of export. The latter shall not allow the generator or exporter of hazardous wastes to commence the transboundary movement without the written consent of the state of import and any state of transit.³⁰⁰

In 1990, the IAEA adopted a Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste,³⁰¹ emphasising that every state should ensure that such movements take place only with the prior notification and consent of the sending, receiving and transit states in accordance with their respective laws and regulations. Appropriate regulatory authorities were called for, as well as the necessary administrative

²⁹⁶ 30 ILM, 1991, p. 773.

²⁹⁷ See e.g. 23 ILM, 1984, p. 214; 25 ILM, 1986, p. 1010 and 28 ILM, 1989, pp. 277 and 259.

²⁹⁸ C(89)88.

²⁹⁹ Article 4. Note also the Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade, 1998.

³⁰⁰ Article 6. ³⁰¹ 30 ILM, 1991, p. 556.

and technical capacity to manage and dispose of such waste in a manner consistent with international safety standards.³⁰²

The Convention on the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents adopted in 1992 applies to industrial accidents in an installation or during transportation resulting from activities involving hazardous substances (identified in Annex I). It does not apply to nuclear accidents, accidents at military installations, dam failures, land-based transport accidents, accidental release of genetically modified organisms, accidents caused by activities in the marine environment or spills of oil or other harmful substances at sea.³⁰³ The Convention provides that parties of origin³⁰⁴ should identify hazardous activities within the jurisdiction and ensure that affected parties are notified of any such proposed or existing activity. Consultations are to take place on the identification of those hazardous activities that may have transboundary effects.³⁰⁵ A variety of preventive measures are posited.³⁰⁶ In particular, the party of origin shall require the operator in charge of such hazardous activity to demonstrate the safe performance of that activity by the provision of information.³⁰⁷ Parties are to develop policies on the siting of new hazardous activities and on significant modifications to existing hazardous activities, while adequate emergency preparedness to respond to industrial accidents is to be established and maintained.³⁰⁸ An industrial accident notification system is established,³⁰⁹ while by article 13 the parties 'shall support appropriate international efforts to elaborate rules, criteria and procedures in the field of responsibility and liability'.³¹⁰

³⁰² See now also the Principles of Radioactive Waste Management, 1995 and the Joint Convention on the Safety of Spent Fuel and Radioactive Waste Management, 1997.

³⁰³ Article 2(2).

³⁰⁴ I.e. parties under whose jurisdiction an industrial accident occurs or is capable of occurring, article 1(g).

³⁰⁵ Article 4. See also Annexes II and III. ³⁰⁶ See article 6 and Annex IV.

³⁰⁷ Article 6(2) and Annex V. ³⁰⁸ Articles 7 and 8 and Annex V.

³⁰⁹ Article 10 and Annex IX.

³¹⁰ See also the Memorandum of Understanding Concerning Establishment of the Inter-Organisation Programme for the Sound Management of Chemicals, 1995 signed by the Food and Agriculture Organisation, the International Labour Organisation, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, the UN Industrial Development Programme, the UN Environment Programme and the World Health Organisation. The areas for co-ordination include the international assessment of chemical risks, information exchange and the prevention of illegal international traffic in toxic and dangerous products: see 34 ILM, 1995, p. 1311.

Marine pollution³¹¹

Marine pollution can arise from a variety of sources, including the operation of shipping, dumping at sea,³¹² activities on the seabed³¹³ and the effects of pollution originating on the land and entering the seas.³¹⁴ There are a large number of treaties, bilateral, regional and multilateral, dealing with such issues and some of the more significant of them in the field of pollution from ships will be briefly noted.

Pollution from ships

The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea by Oil, 1954 basically prohibits the discharge of oil within 50 miles of land and has been essentially superseded by the International Convention for

³¹¹ See e.g. Sands, *Principles*, chapter 9; Birnie and Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, chapter 7; R. Churchill and A. V. Lowe, *The Law of the Sea*, 3rd edn, Manchester, 1999, chapter 15; A. E. Boyle, 'Marine Pollution under the Law of the Sea Convention', 79 *AJIL*, 1985, p. 347; L. Caflisch, 'International Law and Ocean Pollution: The Present and the Future', 8 *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1972, p. 7, and O. Schachter, 'The Value of the 1982 UN Convention on the Law of the Sea: Preserving our Freedoms and Protecting the Environment', 23 *Ocean Development and International Law*, 1992, p. 55.

³¹² See above, p. 620, and Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 363. See also D. Bodansky, 'Protecting the Marine Environment from Vessel-Source Pollution: UNCLOS III and Beyond', 18 *Ecology Law Quarterly*, 1991, p. 719, and Y. Sasamura, 'Prevention and Control of Marine Pollution from Ships', 25 *Law of the Sea Institute Proceedings*, 1993, p. 306.

³¹³ See Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 370.

³¹⁴ Articles 194 and 207 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provide in general terms for states to reduce marine pollution from land-based sources. Note that the Montreal Guidelines on the Protection of the Environment Against Pollution from Land-Based Sources, 1985 built upon article 207. A number of regional conventions (many of them UN Environment Programme Regional Seas Conventions) lay down specific rules dealing with the control of particular substances: see e.g. the Barcelona Convention for the Protection of the Mediterranean Sea Against Pollution, 1976 and its two Protocols of 1980 and 1982; the Kuwait Regional Convention for Co-operation on Protection of the Marine Environment from Pollution, 1978 and Protocols of 1978, 1989 and 1990; the Abidjan Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central Africa Region, 1981 and Protocol of 1981; the Lima Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment and Coastal Areas of the South-East Pacific, 1981 and Protocols; the Cartagena Convention for the Protection and Development of the Marine Environment of the Wider Caribbean Region, 1983 and two Protocols of 1983 and 1990; the Convention on the Protection of the Black Sea Against Pollution, 1992; the Convention for the Protection of the Marine Environment of the North-East Atlantic, 1992 and the Convention on the Protection of the Marine Environment of the Baltic Sea Area, 1992.

the Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973,³¹⁵ which is concerned with all forms of non-accidental pollution from ships apart from dumping. In Annexes and other amendments and Protocols to the Convention,³¹⁶ detailed standards are laid down covering oil, noxious liquid substances in bulk, harmful substances carried by sea in packaged form, sewage and garbage. The Convention covers ships flying the flag of, or operated under the authority of, a state party, but does not apply to warships or state-owned ships used only on governmental non-commercial service.

Article 211(2) of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provides that states are to legislate for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution of the marine environment from vessels flying their flag or of their registry. Such rules are to have the same effect at least as that of generally accepted international rules and standards established through the competent international organisation³¹⁷ or general diplomatic conference. States are also to ensure that the ships of their nationality or of their registry comply with 'applicable international rules and standards' and with domestic rules governing the prevention, reduction and control of pollution.³¹⁸ In addition, coastal states have jurisdiction physically to inspect, and, where the evidence so warrants, commence proceedings against ships in their territorial waters, where there are clear grounds for believing that the ship concerned has violated domestic or international pollution regulations.³¹⁹ It should also be noted that a state in whose port a vessel is may take legal proceedings against that vessel not only where it is alleged to have violated that state's pollution laws or applicable international rules in its territorial sea or economic zone,³²⁰ but also in respect of any discharge outside its internal waters, territorial sea or exclusive economic zone in violation of applicable international rules and standards.³²¹

³¹⁵ Known as the MARPOL Convention. This was modified by Protocols of 1978 and 1997 and has been further amended: see www.imo.org/Conventions/contents.asp?doc_id=678&topic_id=258.

³¹⁶ Note e.g. that Annexes I and II are fully binding, while Annexes III, IV and V are options which a state may declare it does not accept when first becoming a party to the Convention, article 14.

³¹⁷ The International Maritime Organisation: see www.imo.org.

³¹⁸ Article 217. ³¹⁹ Article 220(2). ³²⁰ Article 220(1).

³²¹ Article 218, a provision characterised as 'truly innovatory' by Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 350.

Where an accident takes place, the Convention Relating to Intervention on the High Seas in Cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969³²² permits states parties to take such measures on the high seas as may be necessary to prevent, mitigate or eliminate grave and imminent danger to their coastline or related interests from pollution or threat of pollution of the sea by oil.³²³ An International Convention on Oil Pollution Preparedness, Response and Co-operation was signed in London in November 1990, with the purpose of ensuring prompt and effective action in the event of a pollution incident. It requires ships to carry detailed plans for dealing with pollution emergencies. Pollution incidents must be reported without delay and, in the event of a serious incident, other states likely to be affected must be informed and details given to the International Maritime Organisation. National and regional systems for dealing with such incidents are encouraged and the contracting parties agree to co-operate and provide advisory services, technical support and equipment at the request of other parties.³²⁴

As far as liability is concerned, the Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1969 provides that where oil escaping from a ship causes damage on the territory or territorial sea of a contracting party, the shipowner is strictly liable for such damage, which includes the costs of both preventive measures and further loss or damage caused by such measures.³²⁵ This liability is limited, however, unless the pollution is the

³²² The adoption of this Convention followed the *Torrey Canyon* incident in 1967 in which a ship aground, although on the high seas, was bombed in order to reduce the risk of oil pollution: see Churchill and Lowe, *Law of the Sea*, p. 354. See also the Report of the Home Office, Cmnd 3246 (1967).

³²³ This was extended by a Protocol of 1973 to cover pollution from substances other than oil. Note that the International Convention on Salvage, 1989 seeks to integrate environmental factors into the salvage rewards system.

³²⁴ See e.g. the Bonn Agreement for Co-operation in Dealing with Pollution of the North Sea by Oil, 1969 and the Agreement for Co-operation in Dealing with Pollution of the North Sea by Oil and Other Harmful Substances, 1983. Many of the UN Environment Programme Regional Seas Conventions have Protocols dealing with emergency situations: see e.g. Sands, *Principles*, pp. 399 ff.

³²⁵ Except where the damage results from war or acts of God; is wholly caused by an act or omission done by a third party with intent to cause damage; or where the damage is wholly caused by the negligent or other wrongful act of any government or other authority responsible for the maintenance of navigational aids: see articles II and III. See also the Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage Resulting from Exploration and Exploitation of Seabed Mineral Resources, 1977, which establishes the liability of the operator of an installation under the jurisdiction of a party for pollution damage resulting from incidents taking place beyond the coastal low-water line.

result of the fault of the shipowner.³²⁶ The shipowner must maintain insurance or other financial security to cover its liability. Claims may be brought in the courts of the party in which loss or damage has occurred or preventive measures taken and the judgments of such courts are generally recognisable and enforceable in the courts of all parties. The 1969 Convention was amended by the Protocol on Liability, 1992,³²⁷ which includes in the definition of damage compensation for impairment of the environment provided that this is limited to costs of reasonable measures of reinstatement actually undertaken or to be undertaken.³²⁸ The Convention on the Establishment of an International Fund for Compensation for Oil Pollution Damage was adopted in 1971 and enables compensation to be paid in certain cases not covered by the Civil Liability Convention. The Convention and Protocols of 1976 and 1984 were superseded by a Protocol of 1992 and the Convention ceased to be in force as from 24 May 2002. The 1992 Protocol established a separate, 1992 International Oil Pollution Compensation Fund, known as the 1992 Fund.³²⁹

Suggestions for further reading

- P. Birnie and A. Boyle, *International Law and the Environment*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002
- R. Churchill and A. V. Lowe, *The Law of the Sea*, 3rd edn, Manchester, 1999
- P. Okowa, *State Responsibility for Transboundary Air Pollution*, Oxford, 2000
- The Oxford Handbook of International Environmental Law* (eds. D. Bodansky, J. Bruneel and E. Hay), Oxford, 2007
- P. Sands, *Principles of International Environmental Law*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2003

³²⁶ Article V.

³²⁷ When this entered into force on 30 May 1996, the 1969 Convention became known as the International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1992.

³²⁸ Article 2(3).

³²⁹ Amendments adopted in 2000 raised the amounts of compensation: see generally Sands, *Principles*, pp. 912 ff. See also www.imo.org/Conventions/contents.asp?topic_id=256&doc_id=661.

The law of treaties

Compared with municipal law the various methods by which rights and duties may be created in international law are relatively unsophisticated.¹ Within a state, legal interests may be established by contracts between two or more persons, or by agreements under seal, or under the developed system for transferring property, or indeed by virtue of legislation or judicial decisions. International law is more limited as far as the mechanisms for the creation of new rules are concerned. Custom relies upon a measure of state practice supported by *opinio juris* and is usually, although not invariably, an evolving and timely process. Treaties, on the other hand, are a more direct and formal method of international law creation.

States transact a vast amount of work by using the device of the treaty, in circumstances which underline the paucity of international law procedures when compared with the many ways in which a person within a state's internal order may set up binding rights and obligations. For instance, wars will be terminated, disputes settled, territory acquired,

¹ See generally A. D. McNair, *The Law of Treaties*, Oxford, 1961; J. Klabbbers, *The Concept of Treaty in International Law*, Dordrecht, 1996; A. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2007; M. Fitzmaurice and O. Elias, *Contemporary Issues in the Law of Treaties*, Utrecht, 2005; *Les Conventions de Vienne de 1969 et de 1986 sur le Droit des Traités: Commentaire Article par Article* (eds. O. Corten and P. Klein), Brussels, 3 vols., 2006; *Developments of International Law in Treaty Making* (eds. R. Wolfrum and V. Röben), Berlin, 2005; *Multilateral Treaty Calendar* (ed. C. Wiktor), The Hague, 1998; *Multilateral Treaty-Making* (ed. V. Gowlland-Debas), The Hague, 2000; I. Detter, *Essays on the Law of Treaties*, Stockholm, 1967; T. O. Elias, *The Modern Law of Treaties*, London, 1974; D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I, pp. 195 ff.; I. Sinclair, *The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1984; P. Reuter, *Introduction to the Law of Treaties*, 2nd edn, Geneva, 1995; S. Bastid, *Les Traités dans la Vie Internationale*, Paris, 1985, and S. Rosenne, *Developments in the Law of Treaties 1945–1986*, Cambridge, 1989. See also Oppenheim's *International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, p. 1197; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 117; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapter 27, and M. Fitzmaurice, 'Actors and Factors in the Evolution of Treaty Norms (An Empirical Study)', 4 *Austrian Review of International and European Law*, 1999, p. 1.

special interests determined, alliances established and international organisations created, all by means of treaties. No simpler method of reflecting the agreed objectives of states really exists and the international convention has to suffice both for straightforward bilateral agreements and complicated multilateral expressions of opinions. Thus, the concept of the treaty and how it operates becomes of paramount importance to the evolution of international law.

A treaty is basically an agreement between parties on the international scene. Although treaties may be concluded, or made, between states and international organisations, they are primarily concerned with relations between states. An International Convention on the Law of Treaties was signed in 1969 and came into force in 1980, while a Convention on Treaties between States and International Organisations was signed in 1986.² The emphasis, however, will be on the appropriate rules which have emerged as between states. The 1969 Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties partly reflects customary law³ and constitutes the basic framework for any discussion of the nature and characteristics of treaties. Certain provisions of the Convention may be regarded as reflective of customary international law, such as the rules on interpretation,⁴ material breach⁵ and fundamental change of circumstances.⁶ Others may not be so regarded, and constitute principles binding only upon state parties.

The fundamental principle of treaty law is undoubtedly the proposition that treaties are binding upon the parties to them and must be performed in good faith.⁷ This rule is termed *pacta sunt servanda* and is arguably

² This was based upon the International Law Commission's Draft Articles on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations or between International Organisations, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1982, vol. II, part 2, pp. 9 ff. These articles were approved by the General Assembly and governmental views solicited and received. A plenipotentiary conference was held between 18 February and 21 March 1986 to produce a Convention based on those draft articles. See Assembly resolutions 37/112, 38/139 and 39/86.

³ See e.g. the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 47; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 37 and the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 18; 55 ILR, pp. 183, 198. See also Rosenne, *Developments*, p. 121.

⁴ See e.g. the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977, p. 7; 52 ILR, p. 93; the *La Bretagne* case, 82 ILR, pp. 590, 612; the *Golder* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 18, p. 14; 57 ILR, pp. 201, 213–14 and the *Lithgow* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 102, para. 114; 75 ILR, pp. 438, 482–3.

⁵ See e.g. the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 47; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 37.

⁶ See e.g. the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases (jurisdictional phase), ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 21; 55 ILR, pp. 183, 201.

⁷ Note also the references to good faith in articles 31, 46 and 69 of the 1969 Convention. See the *Nuclear Tests* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 268; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 413; the *Nicaragua*

the oldest principle of international law. It was reaffirmed in article 26 of the 1969 Convention,⁸ and underlies every international agreement for, in the absence of a certain minimum belief that states will perform their treaty obligations in good faith, there is no reason for countries to enter into such obligations with each other.

The term 'treaty' itself is the one most used in the context of international agreements but there are a variety of names which can be, and sometimes are, used to express the same concept, such as protocol, act, charter, covenant, pact and concordat. They each refer to the same basic activity and the use of one term rather than another often signifies little more than a desire for variety of expression.

A treaty is defined, for the purposes of the Convention, in article 2 as:

an international agreement concluded between states in written form and governed by international law, whether embodied in a single instrument or in two or more related instruments and whatever its particular designation.⁹

In addition to excluding agreements involving international organisations, the Convention does not cover agreements between states which are to be governed by municipal law, such as a large number of commercial accords. This does not mean that such arrangements cannot be characterised as international agreements, or that they are invalid, merely that they are not within the purview of the 1969 Convention. Indeed, article 3 stresses that international agreements between states and other subjects of international law or between two or more subjects of international law, or oral agreements, do not lose their validity by being excluded from the framework of the Convention.

case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 392, 418; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 129 and the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, para. 102; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 214. See also J. F. O'Connor, *Good Faith in International Law*, Aldershot, 1991; E. Zoller, *La Bonne Foi en Droit International Public*, Paris, 1977, and H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1960–89 (Part One)', 60 BYIL, 1989, pp. 4, 7.

⁸ See e.g. the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 78–9; 116 ILR, p. 1.

⁹ The same definition is given (substituting states and international organisations for states alone) in the 1986 Convention on Treaties between States and International Organisations and in draft article 2(1) of the ILC Draft Articles on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties, A/CN.4/178, 2007, p. 5. See also H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989: Supplement, 2006, Part Three', 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 1, 3; M. Fitzmaurice, 'The Identification and Character of Treaties and Treaty Obligations between States in International Law', 73 BYIL, 2002, p. 141, and P. Gautier, 'Article 2' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 45.

There are no specific requirements of form in international law for the existence of a treaty,¹⁰ although it is essential that the parties intend to create legal relations as between themselves by means of their agreement.¹¹ This is logical since many agreements between states are merely statements of commonly held principles or objectives and are not intended to establish binding obligations. For instance, a declaration by a number of states in support of a particular political aim may in many cases be without legal (though not political) significance, as the states may regard it as a policy matter and not as setting up juridical relations between themselves. To see whether a particular agreement is intended to create legal relations, all the facts of the situation have to be examined carefully.¹² Examples of non-binding international agreements would include the Final Act of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe, 1975.¹³

The International Court regarded a mandate agreement as having the character of a treaty,¹⁴ while in the *Anglo-Iranian Oil Co.* case¹⁵ doubts were expressed about whether a concession agreement between a private company and a state constituted an international agreement in the sense of a treaty.¹⁶ Optional declarations with regard to the compulsory jurisdiction of the International Court itself under article 36(2) of the Statute of the Court have been regarded as treaty provisions,¹⁷ while declarations made by way of unilateral acts concerning legal or factual situations may have the effect of creating legal obligations.¹⁸ In the latter instance, of course, a treaty as such is not involved.

Where the parties to an agreement do not intend to create legal relations or binding obligations or rights thereby under international law,

¹⁰ See e.g. the *Newfoundland/Nova Scotia* arbitration, 2001, para. 3.15. See also the *Aegean Sea Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1978, pp. 3, 39; 60 ILR, p. 511. See K. Raustiala, 'Form and Substance in International Agreements', 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 581.

¹¹ See e.g. *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, vol. I, p. 149.

¹² Registration of the agreement with the United Nations under article 102 of the UN Charter is one useful indication. However, as the International Court pointed out in the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, non-registration does not affect the actual validity of an international agreement nor its binding quality, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 115, 121; 102 ILR, pp. 1, 18.

¹³ See further above, chapter 7, p. 372.

¹⁴ *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 319, 330; 37 ILR, pp. 3, 12.

¹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1952, pp. 93, 112; 19 ILR, pp. 507, 517.

¹⁶ But see *Texaco v. Libya*, 53 ILR, p. 389.

¹⁷ The *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases, ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 16; 55 ILR, pp. 183, 196.

¹⁸ The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 267; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 412. See also the Ihlen Declaration, held to constitute a binding statement, in the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933; 6 AD, p. 95 and *Burkina Faso v. Mali*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 573–4; 80 ILR, pp. 459, 477. See further above, chapter 3, p. 121.

the agreement will not be a treaty, although, of course, its political effect may still be considerable.¹⁹ Of particular interest are memoranda of understanding, which are not as such legally binding,²⁰ but may be of legal consequence.²¹ In fact a large role is played in the normal course of inter-state dealings by informal non-treaty instruments precisely because they are intended to be non-binding and are thus flexible, confidential and relatively speedy in comparison with treaties.²² They may be amended with ease and without delay and may be terminated by reasonable notice (subject to provision to the contrary). It is this intention not to create a binding arrangement governed by international law which marks the difference between treaties and informal international instruments.²³ The

¹⁹ The test will focus upon the intent of the parties as seen in the language and context of the document concerned, the circumstances of its conclusion and the explanations given by the parties: see the view of the US Assistant Legal Adviser for Treaty Affairs, 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 515. See also O. Schachter, 'The Twilight Existence of Nonbinding International Agreements', 71 AJIL, 1977, p. 296, and Rosenne, *Developments*, p. 91. See e.g. the Helsinki Final Act of 1975, which was understood to be non-binding and thus not a treaty by the parties involved, DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 326–7.

²⁰ The UK Foreign Office has noted that a memorandum of understanding is 'a form frequently used to record informal arrangements between states on matters which are inappropriate for inclusion in treaties or where the form is more convenient than a treaty (e.g. for confidentiality). They may be drawn up as a single document using non-treaty terms, signed on behalf of two or more governments, or consist of an exchange of notes or letters recording an understanding between two governments', UKMIL, 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 534, and see FCO, *Treaties and MOUs: Guidance on Practice and Procedures*, 2nd edn, 2004, www.fco.gov.uk/resources/en/pdf/pdf8/fco-pdf_treatymous. See also Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 3.

²¹ See e.g. the dispute between the USA and the UK as to the legal status of a memorandum of understanding relating to the US–UK Air Services Agreement, 1977 (Bermuda II) in the context of *Heathrow Airport User Charges* Arbitration, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 712 ff. and 88 AJIL, 1994, pp. 738 ff. The Tribunal noted that the memorandum of understanding was not a source of independent legal rights and duties but 'consensual subsequent practice of the parties' and an aid to the interpretation of the Bermuda II Agreement, 102 ILR, pp. 215, 353. In the *Iron Rhine (Belgium/Netherlands)* case, arbitral award of 24 May 2005, paras. 156 ff., the Tribunal noted that the memorandum in question, while not as such binding, in the circumstances of the case was not legally irrelevant.

²² See e.g. Rosenne, *Developments*, pp. 107 ff.; A. Aust, 'The Theory and Practice of Informal International Instruments', 35 ICLQ, 1986, p. 787; R. Baxter, 'International Law in "Her Infinite Variety"', 29 ICLQ, 1980, p. 549, and Roessler, 'Law, *De Facto* Agreements and Declarations of Principles in International Economic Relations', 21 German YIL, 1978, p. 41.

²³ Aust provides as examples the UK memoranda of understanding on deportations with Jordan, Libya and Lebanon in 2005, *Modern Treaty Law*, p. 21. See also *AS & DD (Libya) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2008] EWCA Civ 289 and *Othman (Jordan) v. Secretary of State for the Home Department* [2008] EWCA Civ 290.

International Court addressed this issue in the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case,²⁴ with regard to Minutes dated 25 December 1990 signed by the parties and Saudi Arabia. The Court emphasised that whether an agreement constituted a binding agreement would depend upon 'all its actual terms' and the circumstances in which it had been drawn up,²⁵ and in the situation involved in the case, the Minutes were to be construed as an international agreement creating rights and obligations for the parties since on the facts they enumerated the commitments to which the parties had consented.²⁶ In addition, a treaty may contain a variety of provisions, not all of which constitute legal obligations.²⁷

The 1969 Convention also concerns treaties which are the constituent instruments of international organisations, such as the United Nations Charter, and internal treaties adopted within international organisations.²⁸

The making of treaties²⁹

Formalities

Treaties may be made or concluded by the parties in virtually any manner they wish. There is no prescribed form or procedure, and how a treaty is formulated and by whom it is actually signed will depend upon the intention and agreement of the states concerned. Treaties may be drafted as between states, or governments, or heads of states, or governmental departments, whichever appears the most expedient. For instance, many

²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 112; 102 ILR, p. 1.

²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 121; 102 ILR, p. 18, citing the *Aegean Sea Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1978, p. 39; 60 ILR, p. 511.

²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 121–2; 102 ILR, pp. 18–19. See also K. Widdows, 'What is an International Agreement in International Law?', 50 BYIL, 1979, p. 117, and J. A. Barberis, 'Le Concept de "Traité International" et ses Limites', AFDI, 1984, p. 239.

²⁷ See the *Oil Platforms (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 803, 820; 130 ILR, pp. 174, 201. Note that the use of the word 'treaty' may not necessarily be determinative of its legal status, for example 'treaties' signed with representatives of indigenous peoples during the colonial period giving protectorate or territorial or sovereignty rights to the colonial power: see *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 404 ff. and the *Island of Palmas* case, UNRIIA, vol. II, pp. 858–9. See also I. Brownlie, *Treaties with Indigenous Peoples*, Oxford, 1992.

²⁸ Article 5. See further Rosenne, *Developments*, chapter 4.

²⁹ See e.g. H. Blix, *Treaty-Making Power*, New York, 1960, and E. W. Vierdag, 'The Time of the Conclusion of a Multilateral Treaty: Article 30 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties and Related Provisions', 59 BYIL, 1988, p. 75. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1222, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 125.

of the most important treaties are concluded as between heads of state, and many of the more mundane agreements are expressed to be as between government departments, such as minor trading arrangements.

Where precisely in the domestic constitutional establishment the power to make treaties is to be found depends upon each country's municipal regulations and varies from state to state. In the United Kingdom, the treaty-making power is within the prerogative of the Crown,³⁰ whereas in the United States it resides with the President 'with the advice and consent of the Senate' and the concurrence of two-thirds of the Senators.³¹ International law leaves such matters to domestic law.³²

Nevertheless, there are certain rules that apply in the formation of international conventions. In international law, states have the capacity to make agreements, but since states are not identifiable human persons, particular principles have evolved to ensure that persons representing states indeed have the power so to do for the purpose of concluding the treaty in question. Such persons must produce what is termed 'full powers' according to article 7 of the Convention, before being accepted as capable of representing their countries.³³ 'Full powers' refers to documents certifying status from the competent authorities of the state in question. This provision provides security to the other parties to the treaty that they are making agreements with persons competent to do so.³⁴ However, certain persons do not need to produce such full powers, by virtue of their position and functions. This exception refers to heads of state and government, and foreign ministers for the purpose of performing all acts relating to the conclusion of the treaty; heads of diplomatic missions for the purpose of adopting the text of the treaty between their country and the country to which they are accredited; and representatives accredited to international conferences or organisations for the purpose of adopting the text of the treaty in that particular conference or organisation. The International Court noted in the preliminary objections to jurisdiction phase of the *Genocide*

³⁰ See e.g. S. de Smith and R. Brazier, *Constitutional and Administrative Law*, 6th edn, London, 1989, p. 140.

³¹ See e.g. *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, p. 159. See, with regard to the Presidential power to terminate a treaty, DUSPIL, 1979, pp. 724 ff., and *Goldwater v. Carter* 617 F.2d 697 and 100 S. Ct. 533 (1979). See also L. Henkin, 'Restatement of the Foreign Relations Law of the United States (Revised)', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 954.

³² See e.g. *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 429.

³³ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 29 ff.; Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 5, and M. Jones, *Full Powers and Ratification*, Cambridge, 1946.

³⁴ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 193.

Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia) case that, 'According to international law, there is no doubt that every head of state is presumed to be able to act on behalf of the state in its international relations.'³⁵

Sinclair notes that UK practice distinguishes between 'general full powers' held by the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, Ministers of State and Parliamentary Under-Secretaries in the Foreign and Commonwealth Office and UK Permanent Representatives to the UN, European Communities and General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, which enable any treaty to be negotiated and signed, and 'special full powers' granted to a particular person to negotiate and sign a specific treaty.³⁶

Any act relating to the making of a treaty by a person not authorised as required will be without any legal effect, unless the state involved afterwards confirms the act.³⁷ One example of this kind of situation arose in 1951 with regard to a convention relating to the naming of cheeses. It was signed by a delegate on behalf of both Sweden and Norway, but it appeared that he had authority only from Norway. However, the agreement was subsequently ratified by both parties and entered into effect.³⁸

Consent

Once a treaty has been drafted and agreed by authorised representatives, a number of stages are then necessary before it becomes a binding legal obligation upon the parties involved. The text of the agreement drawn up by the negotiators of the parties has to be adopted and article 9 provides that adoption in international conferences takes place by the vote of two-thirds of the states present and voting, unless by the same majority it is decided to apply a different rule. This procedure follows basically the practices recognised in the United Nations General Assembly³⁹ and carried out in the majority of contemporary conferences. An increasing number of conventions are now adopted and opened for signature by means of UN General Assembly resolutions, such as the 1966 International Covenants on Human Rights and the 1984 Convention against Torture, using normal Assembly voting procedures. Another significant point is the tendency in

³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 622; 115 ILR, p. 1 and see also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 430.

³⁶ Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, p. 32. See also *Satow's Guide to Diplomatic Practice*, 5th edn, London, 1979, p. 62.

³⁷ Article 8. ³⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 195.

³⁹ See article 18 of the UN Charter.

recent conferences to operate by way of consensus so that there would be no voting until all efforts to reach agreement by consensus have been exhausted.⁴⁰ In cases other than international conferences, adoption will take place by the consent of all the states involved in drawing up the text of the agreement.⁴¹

The consent of the states parties to the treaty in question is a vital factor, since states may (in the absence of a rule being also one of customary law) be bound only by their consent. Treaties are in this sense contracts between states and if they do not receive the consent of the various states, their provisions will not be binding upon them. There are, however, a number of ways in which a state may express its consent to an international agreement. It may be signalled, according to article 11, by signature, exchange of instruments constituting a treaty, ratification, acceptance, approval or accession. In addition, it may be accomplished by any other means, if so agreed.

Consent by signature⁴²

A state may regard itself as having given its consent to the text of the treaty by signature in defined circumstances noted by article 12, that is, where the treaty provides that signature shall have that effect, or where it is otherwise established that the negotiating states were agreed that signature should have that effect, or where the intention of the state to give that effect to the signature appears from the full powers of its representative or was expressed during the negotiations.

Although consent by ratification is probably the most popular of the methods adopted in practice, consent by signature does retain some significance, especially in light of the fact that to insist upon ratification in each case before a treaty becomes binding is likely to burden the administrative machinery of government and result in long delays. Accordingly, provision is made for consent to be expressed by signature.⁴³ This would be appropriate for the more routine and less politicised of treaties. The

⁴⁰ See e.g. the Third UN Conference on the Law of the Sea, Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 37–9. See also the UN *Juridical Yearbook*, 1974, pp. 163–4, where the Director of the General Legal Division, Office of Legal Affairs, declared that the term ‘consensus’ in UN organs, ‘was used to describe a practice under which every effort is made to achieve unanimous agreement; and if that could not be done, those dissenting from the general trend were prepared simply to make their position and reservations known and placed on the record’. See also Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, pp. 86 ff.

⁴¹ Article 9(1). This reflects the classic rule, Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, p. 33.

⁴² See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 196.

⁴³ See, for example, the Maroua Declaration, *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 429–30.

act of signature is usually a formal affair. Often in the more important treaties, the head of state will formally add his signature in an elaborate ceremony. In multilateral conventions, a special closing session will be held at which authorised representatives will sign the treaty. However, where the convention is subject to acceptance, approval or ratification, signature will in principle be a formality and will mean no more than that state representatives have agreed upon an acceptable text, which will be forwarded to their particular governments for the necessary decision as to acceptance or rejection.⁴⁴ However, signature has additional meaning in that in such cases and pending ratification, acceptance or approval, a state must refrain from acts which would defeat the object and purpose of the treaty until such time as its intentions with regard to the treaty have been made clear.⁴⁵

Consent by exchange of instruments

Article 13 provides that the consent of states to be bound by a treaty constituted by instruments exchanged between them may be expressed by that exchange when the instruments declare that their exchange shall have that effect or it is otherwise established that those states had agreed that the exchange of instruments should have that effect.

Consent by ratification⁴⁶

The device of ratification by the competent authorities of the state is historically well established and was originally devised to ensure that the representative did not exceed his powers or instructions with regard to the making of a particular agreement. Although ratification (or approval) was originally a function of the sovereign, it has in modern times been made subject to constitutional control.

⁴⁴ The International Court has stated that, 'signed but unratified treaties may constitute an accurate expression of the understanding of the parties at the time of signature', *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 68.

⁴⁵ Article 18. See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 42–4, and *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia*, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926, p. 30. See also H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989 (Part Four)', 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 1, 48 ff., and J. Klabbers, 'How to Defeat a Treaty's Object and Purpose Pending Entry into Force: Towards Manifest Intent', 34 *Vanderbilt Journal of Transnational Law*, 2001, p. 283. Note that having signed the Rome Statute for the International Criminal Court in December 2000, the US withdrew its signature in May 2002: see www.state.gov/r/pa/prs/ps/2002/9968.htm.

⁴⁶ Defined in article 2(1)b as 'the international act... whereby a state establishes on the international plane its consent to be bound by a treaty'. It is thus to be distinguished as a concept from ratification in the internal constitutional sense, although clearly there is an important link: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 197–8. See also Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 582–3.

The advantages of waiting until a state ratifies a treaty before it becomes a binding document are basically twofold, internal and external. In the latter case, the delay between signature and ratification may often be advantageous in allowing extra time for consideration, once the negotiating process has been completed. But it is the internal aspects that are the most important, for they reflect the change in political atmosphere that has occurred in the last 150 years and has led to a much greater participation by a state's population in public affairs. By providing for ratification, the feelings of public opinion have an opportunity to be expressed with the possibility that a strong negative reaction may result in the state deciding not to ratify the treaty under consideration.

The rules relating to ratification vary from country to country. In the United Kingdom, although the power of ratification comes within the prerogative of the Crown, it has become accepted that treaties involving any change in municipal law, or adding to the financial burdens of the government or having an impact upon the private rights of British subjects will be first submitted to Parliament and subsequently ratified. There is, in fact, a procedure known as the Ponsonby Rule which provides that all treaties subject to ratification are laid before Parliament at least twenty-one days before the actual ratification takes place.⁴⁷ Different considerations apply in the case of the United States.⁴⁸ However, the question of how a state effects ratification is a matter for internal law alone and outside international law.

Article 14 of the 1969 Vienna Convention notes that ratification will express a state's consent to be bound by a treaty where the treaty so provides; it is otherwise established that the negotiating states were agreed that ratification should be required; the representative of the state has signed the treaty subject to ratification or the intention of the state to sign the treaty subject to ratification appears from the full powers of its representative or was expressed during negotiations.

Within this framework, there is a controversy as to which treaties need to be ratified. Some writers maintain that ratification is only necessary if it is clearly contemplated by the parties to the treaty,⁴⁹ and this approach has been adopted by the United Kingdom.⁵⁰ On the other hand, it has been suggested that ratification should be required unless the treaty clearly

⁴⁷ See above, chapter 4, p. 152. ⁴⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 161.

⁴⁹ See e.g. G. Fitzmaurice, 'Do Treaties Need Ratification?', 15 BYIL, 1934, p. 129, and O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 222. See also H. Blix, 'The Requirement of Ratification', 30 BYIL, 1953, p. 380.

⁵⁰ See e.g. Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, p. 40, and O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 222.

reveals a contrary intention.⁵¹ The United States, in general, will dispense with ratification only in the case of executive agreements.⁵² Ratification in the case of bilateral treaties is usually accomplished by exchanging the requisite instruments, but in the case of multilateral treaties the usual procedure is for one party to collect the ratifications of all states, keeping all parties informed of the situation. It is becoming more accepted that in such instances, the Secretary-General of the United Nations will act as the depositary for ratifications.⁵³ In some cases, signatures to treaties may be declared subject to 'acceptance' or 'approval'. The terms, as noted in articles 11 and 14(2), are very similar to ratification and similar provisions apply. Such variation in terminology is not of any real significance and only refers to a somewhat simpler form of ratification.

Consent by accession⁵⁴

This is the normal method by which a state becomes a party to a treaty it has not signed either because the treaty provides that signature is limited to certain states, and it is not such a state, or because a particular deadline for signature has passed. Article 15 notes that consent by accession is possible where the treaty so provides, or the negotiating states were agreed or subsequently agree that consent by accession could occur in the case of the state in question. Important multilateral treaties often declare that states or, in certain situations, other specific entities may accede to the treaty at a later date, that is after the date after which it is possible to signify acceptance by signature.⁵⁵

Reservations to treaties⁵⁶

A reservation is defined in article 2 of the Convention as:

a unilateral statement, however phrased or named, made by a state, when signing, ratifying, accepting, approving or acceding to a treaty, whereby it

⁵¹ See e.g. McNair, *Law of Treaties*, p. 133.

⁵² O'Connell, *International Law*, p. 222. See also DUSPIL, 1974, pp. 216–17 and *ibid.*, 1979, pp. 678 ff.

⁵³ See P. T. B. Kohona, 'Some Notable Developments in the Practice of the UN Secretary-General as a Depositary of Multilateral Treaties: Reservations and Declarations', 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 433.

⁵⁴ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 199.

⁵⁵ See e.g. articles 26 and 28 of the Convention on the Territorial Sea and the Contiguous Zone.

⁵⁶ See e.g. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 8; A. Pellet, 'Article 19' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 641; C. Redgwell, 'Universality or Integrity? Some Reflections on Reservations to General Multilateral Treaties', 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 245; G. Gaja, 'Unruly

purports to exclude or to modify the legal effect of certain provisions of the treaty in their application to that state.⁵⁷

Where a state is satisfied with most of the terms of a treaty, but is unhappy about particular provisions, it may, in certain circumstances, wish to refuse to accept or be bound by such provisions, while consenting to the rest of the agreement. By the device of excluding certain provisions, states may agree to be bound by a treaty which otherwise they might reject entirely. This may have beneficial results in the cases of multilateral conventions, by inducing as many states as possible to adhere to the proposed treaty. To some extent it is a means of encouraging harmony amongst states of widely differing social, economic and political systems, by concentrating upon agreed, basic issues and accepting disagreement on certain other matters.

The capacity of a state to make reservations to an international treaty illustrates the principle of sovereignty of states, whereby a state may refuse its consent to particular provisions so that they do not become binding upon it. On the other hand, of course, to permit a treaty to become honeycombed with reservations by a series of countries could well jeopardise the

Treaty Reservations', *Le Droit International à l'Heure de sa Codifications*, Milan, 1987, p. 313; J. K. Gamble, 'Reservations to Multilateral Treaties: A Macroscopic View of State Practice', 74 AJIL, 1980, p. 372; G. Fitzmaurice, 'Reservations to Multilateral Treaties', 2 ICLQ, 1953, p. 1; D. W. Bowett, 'Reservations to Non-restricted Multilateral Treaties', 48 BYIL, 1976–7, p. 67; P. H. Imbert, *Les Réserves aux Traités Multilatéraux*, Paris, 1979; Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, chapter 3; D. W. Greig, 'Reservations: Equity as a Balancing Force?', 16 Australian YIL, 1995, p. 21; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 229 ff.; J. M. Ruda, 'Reservations to Treaties', 146 HR, 1975, p. 95; G. Horn, *Reservations and Interpretative Declarations to Multilateral Treaties*, Leiden, 1988; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1241, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 178. See also A. Pellet, Reports on the Law and Practice Relating to Reservations to Treaties, e.g. Report of the International Law Commission, 2007, A/62/10, pp. 15 ff. The intention is to draw up a Guide to Practice consisting of guidelines which, while not binding in themselves, might guide the practice of states and international organisations with regard to reservations and interpretative declarations on the basis of the Commission's fundamental decision not to call into question the work of the Vienna Conventions. The Draft Guidelines adopted to date may be found at A/62/10, pp. 46 ff.

⁵⁷ Article 2(1)d of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations, 1986 provides that a reservation means 'a unilateral statement, however phrased or named, made by a state or by an international organisation when signing, ratifying, formally confirming, accepting, approving or acceding to a treaty, whereby it purports to exclude or to modify the legal effect of certain provisions of the treaty in their application to that state or to that organisation'. See also the definition contained in draft guideline 1.1 of the ILC Guide to Practice, Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, p. 50.

whole exercise. It could seriously dislocate the whole purpose of the agreement and lead to some complicated inter-relationships amongst states. This problem does not arise in the case of bilateral treaties, since a reservation by one party to a proposed term of the agreement would necessitate a renegotiation.⁵⁸ An agreement between two parties cannot exist where one party refuses to accept some of the provisions of the treaty.⁵⁹ This is not the case with respect to multilateral treaties, and here it is possible for individual states to dissent from particular provisions, by announcing their intention either to omit them altogether, or understand them in a certain way. Accordingly, the effect of a reservation is simply to exclude the treaty provision to which the reservation has been made from the terms of the treaty in force between the parties.⁶⁰

Reservations must be distinguished from other statements made with regard to a treaty that are not intended to have the legal effect of a reservation, such as understandings, political statements or interpretative declarations. In the latter instance, no binding consequence is intended with regard to the treaty in question. What is involved is a political manifestation for primarily internal effect that is not binding upon the other parties.⁶¹ A distinction has been drawn between 'mere' interpretative declarations and 'qualified' interpretative declarations,⁶² with the latter category

⁵⁸ See the statement of British practice to this effect, UKMIL, 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 482.

⁵⁹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 203. See also draft guideline 1.5.1 of the ILC Guide to Practice, Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, p. 55.

⁶⁰ See e.g. *Legality of the Use of Force (Yugoslavia v. USA)*, Provisional Measures Order, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 916, 924 and the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, p. 432.

⁶¹ See e.g. the *Temeltasch* case, 5 *European Human Rights Reports*, 1983, p. 417 on the difference between reservations and interpretative declarations generally and in the context of the European Human Rights Convention. Cf. the *Ette* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 117. See, for examples of UK practice, UKMIL, 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 483. See also L. D. M. Nelson, 'Declarations, Statements and "Disguised Reservations" with respect to the Convention on the Law of the Sea', 50 ICLQ, 2001, p. 767; R. Sapienza, 'Les Déclarations Interprétatives Unilatérales et l'Interprétation des Traités', 103 RGDIP, 1999, p. 601, and P. H. Imbert, 'Reservations to the European Convention on Human Rights before the Strasbourg Commission', 33 ICLQ, 1984, p. 558 and *UN Juridical Yearbook*, 1976, pp. 220–1. Draft guideline 1.2 of the ILC Guide to Practice provides that an interpretative declaration means 'a unilateral statement, however phrased or named, made by a state or an international organisation whereby that state or international organisation purports to specify or clarify the meaning or scope attributed by the declarant to a treaty or to certain of its provisions', Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, p. 52.

⁶² See D. McRae, 'The Legal Effect of Interpretative Declarations', 49 BYIL, 1978, p. 155. See also the *Temeltasch* case, pp. 432–3 and the First Pellet Report, pp. 58 ff.

capable in certain circumstances of constituting reservations.⁶³ Another way of describing this is to draw a distinction between 'simple interpretative declarations' and 'conditional interpretative declarations'.⁶⁴ The latter is described in the ILC Guide to Practice as referring to a situation where the state subjects its consent to be bound by the treaty to a specific interpretation of the treaty, or specific provisions of it.⁶⁵

In the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case,⁶⁶ the Arbitral Tribunal emphasised that French reservations to article 6 of the Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958, challenged by the UK, had to be construed in accordance with the natural meaning of their terms.⁶⁷ The UK contended that the third French reservation to article 6 (which concerned the non-applicability of the principle of equidistance in areas of 'special circumstances' as defined by the French government, naming specifically *inter alia* the Bay of Granville) was in reality only an interpretative declaration. The Tribunal, however, held that although this reservation contained elements of interpretation, it also constituted a specific condition imposed by France on its acceptance of the article 6 delimitation regime. This went beyond mere interpretation as it made the application of that regime dependent upon acceptance by other states of France's designation of the named areas as involving 'special circumstances'. It therefore had the purpose of seeking to exclude or modify the legal effect of certain treaty provisions with regard to their application by the reserving state and thus constituted a reservation.⁶⁸

In the *Belilos* case⁶⁹ in 1988, the European Court of Human Rights considered the effect of one particular interpretative declaration made by Switzerland upon ratification.⁷⁰ The Court held that one had to look

⁶³ Quite what the effect might be of the former is unclear: see e.g. the First Pellet Report, p. 60.

⁶⁴ See e.g. Nelson, 'Declarations', p. 776.

⁶⁵ Draft guideline 1.2.1, Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, p. 52.

⁶⁶ Cmnd 7438 (1979); 54 ILR, p. 6.

⁶⁷ Cmnd 7438, pp. 41–2; 54 ILR, pp. 48–9. It was also stressed that reservations have to be appreciated in the light of the law in force at the time that the reservations (and any objections to them) are made, Cmnd 7438, p. 35; 54 ILR, p. 42.

⁶⁸ Cmnd 7438, p. 43; 54 ILR, p. 50.

⁶⁹ European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 132. See also S. Marks, 'Reservations Unhinged: The *Belilos* Case Before the European Court of Human Rights', 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 300.

⁷⁰ Switzerland made in total two interpretative declarations and two reservations upon ratification of the European Convention on Human Rights. The declaration in question concerned article 6, paragraph 1 of the Convention dealing with the right to fair trial and

behind the title given to the declaration in question and to seek to determine its substantive content. It was necessary to ascertain the original intention of those drafting the declaration and thus recourse to the *travaux préparatoires* was required. In the light of these, the Court felt that Switzerland had indeed intended to 'avoid the consequences which a broad view of the right of access to the courts... would have for the system of public administration and of justice in the cantons and consequently... put forward the declaration as qualifying [its] consent to be bound by the Convention'.⁷¹ Having so decided, the Court held that the declaration in question, taking effect as a reservation, did not in fact comply with article 64 of the Convention, which prohibited reservations of a general character⁷² and required a brief statement of the law in force necessitating the reservation.⁷³ Accordingly, the declaration was invalid. It is hard to escape the conclusion that the Court has accepted a test favourable to states as to the situations under which a declaration may be regarded as a reservation, only to emphasise the requirements of article 64 concerning the validity of reservations to the European Convention. One should therefore be rather cautious before applying the easier test regarding interpretative declarations generally. Nevertheless, there remains a problem of states making interpretative declarations that seek to act as reservations to treaties that prohibit reservations. In such situations, it is likely that the effect of such declarations would be ineffective as against other parties who would therefore be entitled to regard the treaty as in force fully between all the parties, taking no account of the declaration.⁷⁴

In order to determine whether a unilateral statement made constitutes a reservation or an interpretative declaration, the statement will have to be interpreted in good faith in accordance with the ordinary meaning to be given to its terms and within the context of the treaty in question. The intention of the state making the statement at that time will also need to

provided that Switzerland considered that that right was intended solely to ensure ultimate control by the judiciary over the acts or decisions of the public authorities. The issue concerned the right of appeal from the Lausanne Police Board to the Criminal Cassation Division of the Vaud Cantonal Court, which could not in fact hear fresh argument, receive witnesses or give a new ruling on the merits, and whether the declaration prevented the applicant from relying on article 6 in the circumstances.

⁷¹ At pp. 18–19. ⁷² *Ibid.*, pp. 20–1. ⁷³ *Ibid.*, pp. 21–2.

⁷⁴ See e.g. Nelson, 'Declarations', p. 781. See also below, p. 920.

be considered.⁷⁵ In the special case of a bilateral treaty, an interpretative declaration made by one party which is accepted by the other party will constitute an authoritative interpretation of that treaty.⁷⁶

The general rule that became established was that reservations could only be made with the consent of all the other states involved in the process. This was to preserve as much unity of approach as possible to ensure the success of an international agreement and to minimise deviations from the text of the treaty. This reflected the contractual view of the nature of a treaty,⁷⁷ and the League of Nations supported this concept.⁷⁸ The effect of this was that a state wishing to make a reservation had to obtain the consent of all the other parties to the treaty. If this was not possible, that state could either become a party to the original treaty (minus the reservation, of course) or not become a party at all. However, this restrictive approach to reservations was not accepted by the International Court of Justice in the *Reservations to the Genocide Convention* case.⁷⁹ This was an advisory opinion by the Court, requested by the General Assembly after some states had made reservations to the 1948 Genocide Convention, which contained no clause permitting such reservations, and a number of objections were made.

The Court held that:

a state which has made and maintained a reservation which has been objected to by one or more parties to the Convention but not by others, can be regarded as being a party to the Convention if the reservation is compatible with the object and purpose of the Convention.

Compatibility, in the Court's opinion, could be decided by states individually since it was noted that:

if a party to the Convention objects to a reservation which it considers incompatible with the object and purpose of the Convention, it can ... consider that the reserving state is not a party to the Convention.⁸⁰

⁷⁵ See draft guideline 1.3.1 of the ILC Guide to Practice, Report of the ILC on its 54th Session, 2002, p. 53. Draft guideline 1.3.2 also states that the phrasing or name used provides an indication of the purported legal effect, *ibid.*

⁷⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 56.

⁷⁷ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 54–5, and Ruda, 'Reservations', p. 112. See also Redgwell, 'Universality or Integrity', p. 246.

⁷⁸ Report of the Committee of Experts for the Progressive Codification of International Law, 8 LNOJ, pp. 880–1 (1927).

⁷⁹ ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 15; 18 ILR, p. 364. ⁸⁰ ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 29–30.

The Court did emphasise the principle of the integrity of a convention, but pointed to a variety of special circumstances with regard to the Genocide Convention in question, which called for a more flexible interpretation of the principle. These circumstances included the universal character of the UN under whose auspices the Convention had been concluded; the extensive participation envisaged under the Convention; the fact that the Convention had been the product of a series of majority votes; the fact that the principles underlying the Convention were general principles already binding upon states; that the Convention was clearly intended by the UN and the parties to be definitely universal in scope and that it had been adopted for a purely humanitarian purpose so that state parties did not have interests of their own but a common interest. All these factors militated for a flexible approach in this case.

The Court's approach, although having some potential disadvantages,⁸¹ was in keeping with the move to increase the acceptability and scope of treaties and with the trend in international organisations away from the unanimity rule in decision-making and towards majority voting.⁸² The 1969 Convention on the Law of Treaties accepted the Court's views.⁸³

By article 19, reservations may be made when signing, ratifying, accepting, approving or acceding to a treaty, but they cannot be made where the reservation is prohibited by the treaty, or where the treaty provides that only specified reservations may be made and these do not include the reservation in question, or where the reservation is not compatible with the object and purpose of the treaty.⁸⁴

In the instances where a reservation is possible, the traditional rule requiring acceptance by all parties will apply where, by article 20(2), 'it appears from the limited number of the negotiating states and the object and purpose of a treaty that the application of the treaty in its entirety between all the parties is an essential condition of the consent of each one to be bound by the treaty'.

⁸¹ See e.g. Fitzmaurice, 'Reservations'.

⁸² Although the International Law Commission was initially critical, it later changed its mind: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1951, vol. II, pp. 130–1, cf. *ibid.*, 1962, vol. II, pp. 62–5 and 178–9. Note also that the UN General Assembly in 1959 resolved that the Secretary-General as a depositary was to apply the Court's approach to all conventions concluded under UN auspices unless they contained provisions to the contrary.

⁸³ See Redgwell, 'Universality or Integrity', pp. 253 ff.

⁸⁴ See also draft guideline 1.3.1 of the ILC Guide to Practice, A/61/10, 2006, pp. 327 ff.

Article 20(4) then outlines the general rules to be followed with regard to treaties not within article 20(2) and not constituent instruments of international organisations. These are that:

- (a) acceptance by another contracting state of a reservation constitutes the reserving state a party to the treaty in relation to that other state if or when the treaty is in force for those states;
- (b) an objection by another contracting state to a reservation does not preclude the entry into force of the treaty as between the objecting and reserving states unless a contrary intention is definitely expressed by the objecting state;
- (c) an act expressing a state's consent to be bound by the treaty and containing a reservation is effective as soon as at least one other contracting state has accepted the reservation.

The effect of reservations is outlined in article 21. This declares that a reservation established with regard to another party modifies, for the reserving state in its relations with the other party, the provisions of the treaty to which the reservation relates, to the extent of the reservation. The other party is similarly affected in its relations with the reserving state. An example of this was provided by the Libyan reservation to the 1961 Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations with regard to the diplomatic bag, permitting Libya to search the bag with the consent of the state whose bag it was, and insist that it be returned to its state of origin. Since the UK did not object to the reservation, it could have acted similarly with regard to Libya's diplomatic bags.⁸⁵ However, the reservation does not modify the provisions of the treaty for the other parties to the treaty as between themselves.

Article 21(3) provides that where a state objects to a reservation, but not to the entry into force of the treaty between itself and the reserving state, then 'the provisions to which the reservation relates do not apply as between the two states to the extent of the reservation'. This provision was applied by the arbitration tribunal in the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, where it was noted that:

the combined effect of the French reservations and their rejection by the United Kingdom is neither to render article 6 [of the Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, 1958] inapplicable *in toto*, as the French Republic contends, nor to render it applicable *in toto*, as the United Kingdom

⁸⁵ See Foreign Affairs Committee, *Report on the Abuse of Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges*, 1984, pp. 23–4, and above, chapter 13, p. 760.

primarily contends. It is to render the article inapplicable as between the two countries to the extent of the reservations.⁸⁶

A number of important issues, however, remain unresolved. In particular, it is unclear what effect an impermissible reservation has.⁸⁷ One school of thought takes the view that such reservations are invalid,⁸⁸ another that the validity of any reservation is dependent upon acceptance by other states.⁸⁹ While there is a presumption in favour of the permissibility of reservations, this may be displaced if the reservation is prohibited explicitly or implicitly by the treaty or it is contrary to the object and purpose of the treaty.⁹⁰ A further problem is to determine when these conditions under which reservations may be deemed to be impermissible have been met. This is especially difficult where it is contended that the object and purpose of a treaty have been offended. The meaning of the term is not free from uncertainty,⁹¹ although it has been accepted that a reservation to a particular method of dispute settlement laid down in a treaty would not normally be seen as contrary to the object and purpose of a treaty.⁹²

⁸⁶ Cmnd 7438 (1979), p. 45; 54 ILR, p. 52. See also A. E. Boyle, 'The Law of Treaties and the Anglo-French Continental Shelf Arbitration', 29 ICLQ, 1980, p. 498, and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 70–6.

⁸⁷ See e.g. J. K. Koh, 'Reservations to Multilateral Treaties: How International Legal Doctrine Reflects World Vision', 23 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1982, p. 71, and Redgwell, 'Universality or Integrity', p. 263. See also above, p. 915, concerning interpretative declarations being used as 'disguised' reservations where no reservations are permitted under the treaty in question.

⁸⁸ See e.g. Bowett, 'Reservations', pp. 77 and 84. Impermissible reservations are divided into those that may be severed from ratification of or accession to the convention in question and those that are contrary to the object and purpose of the treaty. In the latter case, both the reservation and the whole acceptance of the treaty by the reserving state are to be regarded as nullities. This question of permissibility is the preliminary issue; the question of opposability, or the reaction of other states, is a secondary issue, presupposing the permissibility of the reservation, *ibid.*, p. 88. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1247, note 1.

⁸⁹ See e.g. Ruda, 'Reservations', p. 190. ⁹⁰ See the First Pellet Report, p. 50.

⁹¹ Note that draft guideline 3.1.5 of the ILC Guide to Practice provides that, 'A reservation is incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty if it affects an essential element of the treaty that is necessary to its general thrust, in such a way that the reservation impairs the *raison d'être* of the treaty': see A/62/10, 2007, pp. 66 ff. Draft guideline 3.1.6 states that, 'The object and purpose of the treaty is to be determined in good faith, taking account of the terms of the treaty in their context. Recourse may also be had in particular to the title of the treaty, the preparatory work of the treaty and the circumstances of its conclusion and, where appropriate, the subsequent practice agreed upon by the parties', *ibid.*, pp. 77 ff.

⁹² See e.g. *Yugoslavia v. Spain*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 761, 772; *Yugoslavia v. USA*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 916, 924 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports,

The question is also raised as to the authority able to make such a determination. At the moment, unless the particular treaty otherwise provides,⁹³ whether a reservation is impermissible is a determination to be made by states parties to the treaty themselves. In other words, it is a subjective application of objective criteria.⁹⁴ Once the impermissibility of a reservation has been demonstrated, there are two fundamental possibilities. Either the treaty provision to which the reservation has been attached applies in full to the state that made the impermissible reservation or the consent of the state to the treaty as a whole is vitiated so that the state is no longer a party to the treaty. A further question is whether the other parties to the treaty may accept and thus legitimate an impermissible reservation or whether a determination of impermissibility is conclusive. All that can be said is that state practice on the whole is somewhat inconclusive.

There is a trend with regard to human rights treaties to regard impermissible reservations as severing that reservation so that the provision in question applies in full to the reserving state.⁹⁵ In the *Belilos* case,⁹⁶ the European Court of Human Rights laid particular emphasis upon Switzerland's commitment to the European Convention on Human Rights,⁹⁷ so that the effect of defining the Swiss declaration as a reservation which was then held to be invalid was that Switzerland was bound by the provision (article 6) in full. This view was reaffirmed in the *Loizidou (Preliminary Objections)* case.⁹⁸ The Court analysed the validity of the territorial restrictions attached to Turkey's declarations under former articles 25 and

2006, pp. 6, 32. In a joint separate opinion, five judges suggested that the principle is not necessarily absolute in scope, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 70 ff. See also draft guideline 3.1.13 of the ILC Guide to Practice, A/62/10, 2007, pp. 116 ff.

⁹³ Note e.g. that article 20(2) of the International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination, 1965 provides that a reservation will be regarded as contrary to the object and purpose of the treaty if at least two-thirds of the states parties to the convention object to the reservation.

⁹⁴ See e.g. Ago, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1965, vol. I, p. 161.

⁹⁵ See e.g. Y. Tyagi, 'The Conflict of Law and Policy on Reservations to Human Rights Treaties', 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 181; Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, pp. 146 ff.; *Human Rights as General Norms and a State's Right to Opt Out: Reservations and Objections to Human Rights Conventions* (ed. J. P. Gardner), London, 1997, and K. Korkelia, 'New Challenges to the Regime of Reservations under the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 437. See also the Second Pellet Report, 1996, A/CN.4/4777.Add.1.

⁹⁶ European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 132. See also above, p. 916.

⁹⁷ The Court noted that 'it is beyond doubt that Switzerland is, and regards itself as, bound by the Convention irrespective of the validity of the declaration', *ibid.*, p. 22.

⁹⁸ European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 310 (1995); 103 ILR, p. 621.

46 recognising the competence of the Commission and the Court⁹⁹ and held that they were impermissible under the terms of the Convention. The Court then concluded that the effect of this in the light of the special nature of the Convention as a human rights treaty was that the reservations were severable so that Turkey's acceptance of the jurisdiction of the Commission and the Court remained in place, unrestricted by the terms of the invalid limitations attached to the declarations.¹⁰⁰

The UN Human Rights Committee in its controversial General Comment 24/52 of 2 November 1994¹⁰¹ emphasised the special nature of human rights treaties and expressed its belief that the provisions of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties were 'inappropriate to address the problems of reservations to human rights treaties'. The Committee took the view that provisions contained in the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966, which represented customary international law could not be the subject of reservations, while in the case of reservations to non-derogable provisions not falling into this category, states had 'a heavy onus' to justify such reservations. The Committee also emphasised that the effect of an unacceptable reservation would normally be that the provision operated in full with regard to the party making such a reservation and not that the Covenant would not be in force at all for such a state party. The Committee also regarded itself as the only body able to determine whether a specific reservation was or was not compatible with the object and purpose of the Covenant.¹⁰²

The controversy with regard to this included the issue as to the powers of the Committee and other such monitoring organs as distinct from courts which under their constituent treaties had the competence to

⁹⁹ These were held to constitute 'a disguised reservation', ECHR, Series A, No. 310, p. 22.

¹⁰⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 22–9.

¹⁰¹ CCPR/C/21/Rev.1/Add. 6. See also 15 *Human Rights Law Journal*, 1994, p. 464, and M. Nowak, 'The Activities of the UN Human Rights Committee: Developments from 1 August 1992 to 31 July 1995', 16 *Human Rights Law Journal*, 1995, pp. 377, 380.

¹⁰² See the critical observations made by the governments of the US and the UK with regard to this General Comment, 16 *Human Rights Law Journal*, 1995, pp. 422 ff. Note in particular the US view that 'reservations contained in the United States instruments of ratification are integral parts of its consent to be bound by the Covenant and are not severable. If it were to be determined that any one or more of them were ineffective, the ratification as a whole could thereby be nullified', *ibid.*, p. 423. The UK government took the view that while 'severability of a kind may well offer a solution in appropriate cases', severability would involve excising both the reservation and the parts of the treaty to which it related, *ibid.*, p. 426. It was noted that a state which sought to ratify a human rights treaty subject to a reservation 'which is fundamentally incompatible with participation in the treaty regime' could not be regarded as a party to that treaty, *ibid.*

interpret the same in a binding manner.¹⁰³ The International Law Commission adopted Preliminary Conclusions on Reservations to Normative Multilateral Treaties Including Human Rights Treaties in 1997, in which it reaffirmed the applicability of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties reservations regime to all treaties, including human rights treaties. The ILC accepted that human rights monitoring bodies were competent to comment and express recommendations upon *inter alia* the admissibility of reservations, but declared that this did not affect 'the traditional modalities of control' by contracting parties in accordance with the two Vienna Conventions of 1969 and 1986, nor did it mean that such bodies could exceed the powers given to them for the performance of their general monitoring role. It was particularly emphasised that 'it is the reserving state that has the responsibility of taking action' in the event of inadmissibility and such state could modify or withdraw the reservation or withdraw from the treaty.¹⁰⁴

There is, however, apart from this controversy, the question as to the large number of reservations to human rights treaties, many of which have been criticised as being contrary to the object and purpose of the treaties.¹⁰⁵

In general, reservations are deemed to have been accepted by states that have raised no objections to them at the end of a period of twelve months

¹⁰³ See also e.g. C. Redgwell, 'Reservations to Treaties and Human Rights General Comment No. 24 (52)', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 390.

¹⁰⁴ Report of the ILC on its 49th Session, A/52/10, pp. 126–7. See also the working group on reservations established by the UN human rights treaty organs, A/60/278; HRI/MC/2005/5/Add.1; and HRI/MC/2006/5. Draft guideline 3.1.12 of the ILC Guide to Practice notes that, 'To assess the compatibility of a reservation with the object and purpose of a general treaty for the protection of human rights, account shall be taken of the indivisibility, interdependence and interrelatedness of the rights set out in the treaty as well as the importance that the right or provision which is the subject of the reservation has within the general thrust of the treaty, and the gravity of the impact the reservation has upon it': see A/62/10, 2007, pp. 113 ff.

¹⁰⁵ See e.g. the Convention on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women, 1979, General Recommendations No. 4 (1987), No. 20 (1992) and No. 21 (1994) of the Committee on the Elimination of Discrimination Against Women. See generally B. Clark, 'The Vienna Conventions Reservations Regime and the Convention on Discrimination against Women', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 281, and R. J. Cook, 'Reservations to the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination against Women', 30 Va. JIL, 1990, p. 643. See also Council of Europe Parliamentary Assembly Recommendation 1223 (1993) on Reservations Made by Member States to Council of Europe Conventions; W. A. Schabas, 'Reservations to Human Rights Treaties: Time for Innovation and Reform', 32 Canadian YIL, 1994, p. 39, and I. Ziemele, *Reservations to Human Rights Treaties and the Vienna Convention Regime: Conflict, Harmony or Reconciliation*, Leiden, 2004.

after notification of the reservation, or by the date on which consent to be bound by the treaty was expressed, whichever is the later.¹⁰⁶ Reservations must be in writing and communicated to the contracting states and other states entitled to become parties to the treaty, as must acceptances of, and objections to, reservations.

Most multilateral conventions today will in fact specifically declare their position as regards reservations. Some, however, for example the Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958, make no mention at all of reservations, while others may specify that reservations are possible with regard to certain provisions only.¹⁰⁷ Still others may prohibit altogether any reservations.¹⁰⁸

Reservations to a multilateral treaty may be withdrawn, subject to agreement to the contrary, only when the other states to the treaty have received notification of that withdrawal.¹⁰⁹

Entry into force of treaties

Basically treaties will become operative when and how the negotiating states decide, but in the absence of any provision or agreement regarding this, a treaty will enter into force as soon as consent to be bound by the treaty has been established for all the negotiating states.¹¹⁰ In many cases, treaties will specify that they will come into effect upon a certain date or after a determined period following the last ratification. It is usual where multilateral conventions are involved to provide for entry into force upon ratification by a fixed number of states, since otherwise large multilateral treaties may be prejudiced. The Geneva Convention on the High Seas, 1958, for example, provides for entry into force on the thirtieth day following the deposit of the twenty-second instrument of ratification with the United Nations Secretary-General, while the Convention on the

¹⁰⁶ Article 20(5) of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties. See the Inter-American Court of Human Rights, Advisory Opinion on *The Effect of Reservations on the Entry into Force of the American Convention on Human Rights*, 22 ILM, 1983, p. 37; 67 ILR, p. 559.

¹⁰⁷ E.g. the 1958 Geneva Convention on the Continental Shelf, article 12(1). See also above, p. 917, regarding article 64 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. article 37 of the Convention on Damage Caused by Foreign Aircraft to Third Parties on the Surface, 1952.

¹⁰⁹ See article 22(3) a of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, paras. 41–2. See also draft guideline 2.5.2 and 2.5.8 of the ILC Guide, A/58/10, 2003, pp. 201 ff. and 231 ff.

¹¹⁰ Article 24. See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 44–7. See also Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure (Part four)', pp. 32 ff., and Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 9.

Law of Treaties, 1969 itself came into effect thirty days after the deposit of the thirty-fifth ratification and the Rome Statute for the International Criminal Court required sixty ratifications. Of course, even though the necessary number of ratifications has been received for the treaty to come into operation, only those states that have actually ratified the treaty will be bound. It will not bind those that have merely signed it, unless of course, signature is in the particular circumstances regarded as sufficient to express the consent of the state to be bound.

Article 80 of the 1969 Convention (following article 102 of the United Nations Charter) provides that after their entry into force, treaties should be transmitted to the United Nations Secretariat for registration and publication. These provisions are intended to end the practice of secret treaties, which was regarded as contributing to the outbreak of the First World War, as well as enabling the United Nations Treaty Series, which contains all registered treaties, to be as comprehensive as possible.¹¹¹

The application of treaties¹¹²

Once treaties enter into force, a number of questions can arise as to the way in which they apply in particular situations. In the absence of contrary intention, the treaty will not operate retroactively so that its provisions will not bind a party as regards any facts, acts or situations prior to that state's acceptance of the treaty.¹¹³ Unless a different intention appears from the treaty or is otherwise established, article 29 provides that a treaty is binding upon each party in respect of its entire territory. This is the general rule, but it is possible for a state to stipulate that an international agreement will apply only to part of its territory. In the past, so-called 'colonial application clauses' were included in some treaties by the European colonial powers, which declared whether or not the terms of the particular agreement would extend to the various colonies.¹¹⁴

¹¹¹ Article 102 of the UN Charter also provides that states may not invoke an unregistered treaty before any UN organ. See also above, p. 905, and <http://untreaty.un.org/>.

¹¹² See e.g. Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 217, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1248.

¹¹³ Article 28. See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 212–13 and the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, 1924. Note article 4 of the Convention, which provides that, without prejudice to the application of customary law, the Convention will apply only to treaties concluded by states after the entry into force of the Convention with regard to such states.

¹¹⁴ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 87–92. See also e.g. article 63 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950. Practice would appear to suggest that, in the absence of

With regard to the problem of successive treaties on the same subject matter, article 30 provides that:

1. Subject to article 103 of the Charter of the United Nations,¹¹⁵ the rights and obligations of states parties to successive treaties relating to the same subject-matter shall be determined in accordance with the following paragraphs.
2. When a treaty specifies that it is subject to, or that it is not to be considered as incompatible with, an earlier or later treaty, the provisions of that other treaty prevail.
3. When all the parties to the earlier treaty are parties also to the later treaty but the earlier treaty is not terminated or suspended in operation under article 59,¹¹⁶ the earlier treaty applies only to the extent that its provisions are compatible with those of the later treaty.
4. When the parties to the later treaty do not include all the parties to the earlier one:
 - (a) as between states parties to both treaties the same rule applies as in paragraph 3;
 - (b) as between a state party to both treaties and a state party to only one of the treaties, the treaty to which both states are parties governs their mutual rights and obligations.
5. Paragraph 4 is without prejudice to article 41,¹¹⁷ or to any question of the termination or suspension of the operation of a treaty under article 60¹¹⁸ or to any question of responsibility which may arise for a state from the conclusion or application of a treaty, the provisions of which are incompatible with its obligations towards another state under another treaty.

The problem raised by successive treaties is becoming a serious one with the growth in the number of states and the increasing number of treaties entered into, and the added complication of enhanced activity at the

evidence to the contrary, a treaty would under customary law apply to all the territory of a party, including colonies: see e.g. McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 116–17.

¹¹⁵ This stipulates that in the event of a conflict between the obligations of a member state of the UN under the Charter and their obligations under any other international agreement, the former shall prevail. See also the *Lockerbie (Libya v. UK; Libya v. US)* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 15; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 498.

¹¹⁶ This deals with termination or suspension of a treaty by a later treaty: see further below, p. 947.

¹¹⁷ This deals with agreements to modify multilateral treaties between certain of the parties only: see further below, p. 931.

¹¹⁸ This deals with material breach of a treaty: see further below, p. 947.

regional level.¹¹⁹ The rules laid down in article 30 provide a general guide and in many cases the problem will be resolved by the parties themselves expressly.

Third states

A point of considerable interest with regard to the creation of binding rules of law for the international community centres on the application and effects of treaties upon third states, i.e. states which are not parties to the treaty in question.¹²⁰ The general rule is that international agreements bind only the parties to them. The reasons for this rule can be found in the fundamental principles of the sovereignty and independence of states, which posit that states must consent to rules before they can be bound by them. This, of course, is a general proposition and is not necessarily true in all cases. However, it does remain as a basic line of approach in international law. Article 34 of the Convention echoes the general rule in specifying that 'a treaty does not create either obligations or rights for a third state without its consent'.¹²¹

It is quite clear that a treaty cannot impose obligations upon third states and this was emphasised by the International Law Commission during its deliberations prior to the Vienna Conferences and Convention.¹²² There is, however, one major exception to this and that is where the provisions of the treaty in question have entered into customary law.¹²³ In such a case, all states would be bound, regardless of whether they had been parties to the original treaty or not. One example of this would be the laws relating to warfare adopted by the Hague Conventions earlier this century and now regarded as part of customary international law.¹²⁴

This point arises with regard to article 2(6) of the United Nations Charter which states that:

¹¹⁹ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 93–8, and Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 12. See also McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 219 ff.

¹²⁰ See e.g. Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 98–106; Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 14, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1260. The rule is sometimes referred to by the maxim *pacta tertiis nec nocent nec prosunt*. See also Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure (Part One)', p. 63.

¹²¹ See also below, chapter 17, p. 970, on succession of states in respect of treaties.

¹²² *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 227.

¹²³ Article 38. See above, chapter 3, p. 95 and the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, p. 3; 41 ILR, p. 29. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 230.

¹²⁴ See below, chapter 21, p. 1168.

the organisation shall ensure that states which are not members of the United Nations act in accordance with these principles so far as may be necessary for the maintenance of international peace and security.

It is sometimes maintained that this provision creates binding obligations rather than being merely a statement of attitude with regard to non-members of the United Nations.¹²⁵ This may be the correct approach since the principles enumerated in article 2 of the Charter can be regarded as part of customary international law, and in view of the fact that an agreement may legitimately provide for enforcement sanctions to be implemented against a state guilty of aggression. Article 75 of the Convention provides:

the provisions of the Convention are without prejudice to any obligation in relation to a treaty which may arise for an aggressor state in consequence of measures taken in conformity with the Charter of the United Nations with reference to that state's aggression.

Article 35 notes that an obligation may arise for a third state from a term of a treaty if the parties to the treaty so intend and if the third state expressly accepts that obligation in writing.¹²⁶

As far as rights allocated to third states by a treaty are concerned, the matter is a little different. The Permanent Court of International Justice declared in the *Free Zones* case¹²⁷ that:

the question of the existence of a right acquired under an instrument drawn between other states is . . . one to be decided in each particular case: it must be ascertained whether the states which have stipulated in favour of a third state meant to create for that state an actual right which the latter has accepted as such.

Article 36 of the Vienna Convention provides that:

a right arises for a third state from a provision of a treaty if the parties to the treaty intend the provision to accord that right either to the third state, or to a group of states to which it belongs, or to all states, and the third state assents thereto. Its assent shall be presumed so long as the contrary is not indicated, unless the treaty otherwise provides.

¹²⁵ See e.g. H. Kelsen, *The Law of the United Nations*, London, 1950, pp. 106–10. See also McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 216–18.

¹²⁶ See, as to the creation here of a collateral agreement forming the basis of the obligation, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 227.

¹²⁷ PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 46, 1932, pp. 147–8; 6 AD, pp. 362, 364.

Further, particular kinds of treaties may create obligations or rights *erga omnes* and in such cases, all states would presumptively be bound by them and would also benefit. Examples might include multilateral treaties establishing a particular territorial regime, such as the Suez and Kiel Canals or the Black Sea Straits.¹²⁸ In the *Wimbledon* case,¹²⁹ the Permanent Court noted that ‘an international waterway . . . for the benefit of all nations of the world’ had been established. In other words, for an obligation to be imposed by a treaty upon a third state, the express agreement of that state in writing is required, whereas in the case of benefits granted to third states, their assent is presumed in the absence of contrary intention. This is because the general tenor of customary international law has leaned in favour of the validity of rights granted to third states, but against that of obligations imposed upon them, in the light of basic principles relating to state sovereignty, equality and non-interference.

The amendment and modification of treaties

Although the two processes of amending and modifying international agreements share a common aim in that they both involve the revision of treaties, they are separate activities and may be accomplished in different manners. Amendments refer to the formal alteration of treaty provisions, affecting all the parties to the particular agreement, while modifications relate to variations of certain treaty terms as between particular parties only. Where it is deemed desirable, a treaty may be amended by agreement between the parties, but in such a case all the formalities as to the conclusion and coming into effect of treaties as described so far in this chapter will have to be observed except in so far as the treaty may otherwise provide.¹³⁰ It is understandable that as conditions change, the need may arise to alter some of the provisions stipulated in the international agreement in question. There is nothing unusual in this and it is a normal facet of international relations. The fact that such alterations must be effected with

¹²⁸ See e.g. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, pp. 258–9; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 248, and N. Ragazzi, *The Concept of International Obligations Erga Omnes*, Oxford, 1997. See further, as to *erga omnes* obligations, above, chapter 14, p. 807.

¹²⁹ PCIJ, Series A, No. 1, 1923, p. 22; 2 AD, p. 99. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 228–9, and E. Jiménez de Aréchaga, ‘International Law in the Past Third of a Century’, 159 HR, 1978, pp. 1, 54, and de Aréchaga, ‘Treaty Stipulations in Favour of Third States’, 50 AJIL, 1956, pp. 338, 355–6.

¹³⁰ Article 39. See also Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 106–9; Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 15, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 232.

the same formalities that attended the original formation of the treaty is only logical since legal rights and obligations may be involved and any variation of them involves considerations of state sovereignty and consent which necessitate careful interpretation and attention. It is possible, however, for oral or tacit agreement to amend, providing it is unambiguous and clearly evidenced. Many multilateral treaties lay down specific conditions as regards amendment. For example, the United Nations Charter in article 108 provides that amendments will come into force for all member states upon adoption and ratification by two-thirds of the members of the organisation, including all the permanent members of the Security Council.

Problems can occur where, in the absence of specific amendment processes, some of the parties oppose the amendments proposed by others. Article 40 of the Vienna Convention specifies the procedure to be adopted in amending multilateral treaties, in the absence of contrary provisions in the treaty itself. Any proposed amendment has to be notified to all contracting states, each one of which is entitled to participate in the decision as to action to be taken and in the negotiation and conclusion of any agreements. Every state which has the right to be a party to the treaty possesses also the right to become a party to the amendment, but such amendments will not bind any state which is a party to the original agreement and which does not become a party to the amended agreement,¹³¹ subject to any provisions to the contrary in the treaty itself.

The situation can become a little more complex where a state becomes a party to the treaty after the amendments have come into effect. That state will be a party to the amended agreement, except as regards parties to the treaty that are not bound by the amendments. In this case the state will be considered as a party to the unamended treaty in relation to those states.

Two or more parties to a multilateral treaty may decide to change that agreement as between themselves in certain ways, quite irrespective of any amendment by all the parties. This technique, known as modification, is possible provided it has not been prohibited by the treaty in question and provided it does not affect the rights or obligations of the other parties. Modification, however, is not possible where the provision it is intended to alter is one 'derogation from which is incompatible with the effective execution of the object and purpose of the treaty as a whole'.¹³² A treaty

¹³¹ See article 30(4)b. ¹³² Article 41.

may also be modified by the terms of another later agreement¹³³ or by the establishment subsequently of a rule of *jus cogens*.¹³⁴

Treaty interpretation¹³⁵

One of the enduring problems facing courts and tribunals and lawyers, both in the municipal and international law spheres, relates to the question of interpretation.¹³⁶ Accordingly, rules and techniques have been put forward to aid judicial bodies in resolving such problems.¹³⁷ As far as international law is concerned, there are three basic approaches to treaty interpretation.¹³⁸ The first centres on the actual text of the agreement and emphasises the analysis of the words used.¹³⁹ The second looks to the intention of the parties adopting the agreement as the solution to ambiguous provisions and can be termed the subjective approach in contradistinction to the objective approach of the previous school.¹⁴⁰ The third approach adopts a wider perspective than the other two and emphasises the object and purpose of the treaty as the most important backcloth against which

¹³³ See article 30, and above, p. 927.

¹³⁴ See above, chapter 3, p. 123, and below, p. 944.

¹³⁵ See e.g. Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, chapter 5; J. M. Sorel, 'Article 31' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 1289; Y. Le Bouthillier, 'Article 32' in *ibid.*, p. 1339; A. Papaux, 'Article 33' in *ibid.*, p. 1373; G. Fitzmaurice, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1951–4', 33 BYIL, 1957, p. 203 and 28 BYIL, 1951, p. 1; H. Lauterpacht, 'Restrictive Interpretation and the Principle of Effectiveness in the Interpretation of Treaties', 26 BYIL, 1949, p. 48; M. S. McDougal, H. Lasswell and J. C. Miller, *The Interpretation of Agreements and World Public Order*, Yale, 1967; E. Gordon, 'The World Court and the Interpretation of Constitutive Treaties', 59 AJIL, 1965, p. 794; O'Connell, *International Law*, pp. 251 ff., and Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 602 ff. See also S. Sur, *L'Interprétation en Droit International Public*, Paris, 1974; M. K. Yasseen, 'L'Interprétation des Traités d'après la Convention de Vienne', 151 HR, 1976 III, p. 1; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Practice of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989 (Part Three)', 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 2, 16 ff. and '(Part Four)', 62 BYIL, 1992, p. 3, and Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989; Supplement, 2006: Part Three', 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 1; Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 13; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 252, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1266.

¹³⁶ Note that a unilateral interpretation of a treaty by the organs of one state would not be binding upon the other parties: see McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 345–50, and the *David J. Adams* claim, 6 RIAA, p. 85 (1921); 1 AD, p. 331.

¹³⁷ But see J. Stone, 'Fictional Elements in Treaty Interpretation', 1 *Sydney Law Review*, 1955, p. 344.

¹³⁸ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 114–15, and Fitzmaurice, 'Reservations'.

¹³⁹ See Fitzmaurice, 'Law and Procedure', pp. 204–7.

¹⁴⁰ See e.g. H. Lauterpacht, 'De l'Interprétation des Traités: Rapport et Projet de Résolutions', 43 *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1950, p. 366.

the meaning of any particular treaty provision should be measured.¹⁴¹ This teleological school of thought has the effect of underlining the role of the judge or arbitrator, since he will be called upon to define the object and purpose of the treaty, and it has been criticised for encouraging judicial law-making. Nevertheless, any true interpretation of a treaty in international law will have to take into account all aspects of the agreement, from the words employed to the intention of the parties and the aims of the particular document. It is not possible to exclude completely any one of these components.

Articles 31 to 33 of the Vienna Convention comprise in some measure aspects of all three doctrines. Article 31 lays down the fundamental rules of interpretation and can be taken as reflecting customary international law.¹⁴² Article 31(1) declares that a treaty shall be interpreted 'in good faith in accordance with the ordinary meaning to be given to the terms of the treaty in their context and in the light of its object and purpose'.¹⁴³ The International Court noted in the *Competence of the General Assembly for the Admission of a State to the United Nations* case¹⁴⁴ that 'the first duty of a tribunal which is called upon to interpret and apply the provisions of a treaty is to endeavour to give effect to them in their natural and ordinary meaning in the context in which they occur'.¹⁴⁵ On the basis of this provision, for example, the European Court of Human Rights held in the *Lithgow* case¹⁴⁶ that the use of the phrase 'subject to the conditions provided for ... by the general principles of international law' in article 1 of

¹⁴¹ See e.g. Fitzmaurice, 'Reservations', pp. 7–8 and 13–14, and 'Law and Procedure', pp. 207–9.

¹⁴² The International Court has on a number of occasions reaffirmed that articles 31 and 32 of the Vienna Convention reflect customary law: see e.g. the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 160 ff.; *Indonesia/Malaysia* case, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 645–6; the *Botswana/Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 1045; the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 21–2; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 20–1, and the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 6, 18; 102 ILR, pp. 47, 59. Other courts and tribunals have done likewise: see e.g. the GATT Dispute Settlement Panel Report on United States Restrictions on Imports of Tuna in 1994, 33 ILM, 1994, pp. 839, 892; the case concerning the *Auditing of Accounts between the Netherlands and France*, arbitral award of 12 March 2004, para. 59 and the *Iron Rhine (Belgium/Netherlands)*, arbitral award of 24 May 2005, para. 45. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1271.

¹⁴³ See e.g. the *German External Debts* arbitration, 19 ILM, 1980, pp. 1357, 1377. See also Judge Ajibola's Separate Opinion in the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 71; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 69. As to 'object and purpose', see e.g. the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 102; 134 ILR, p. 41.

¹⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 4, 8; 17 ILR, pp. 326, 328.

¹⁴⁵ See also the *La Bretagne* arbitration (*Canada v. France*), 82 ILR, pp. 590, 620.

¹⁴⁶ European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 102, para. 114; 75 ILR, pp. 438, 482.

Protocol I of the European Convention in the context of compensation for interference with property rights, could not be interpreted as extending the general principles of international law in this field to establish standards of compensation for the nationalisation of property of nationals (as distinct from aliens).¹⁴⁷ The word 'context' is held to include the preamble and annexes of the treaty as well as any agreement or instrument made by the parties in connection with the conclusion of the treaty.¹⁴⁸

The Eritrea–Ethiopia Boundary Commission in its boundary delimitation decision emphasised that the elements contained in article 31(1) were guides to establishing what the parties actually intended or their 'common will'¹⁴⁹ and in this process the principle of 'contemporaneity' is relevant. This means that a treaty should be interpreted by reference to the circumstances prevailing when the treaty was concluded,¹⁵⁰ so that, for instance, expressions and geographical names used in the instrument should be given the meaning that they would have possessed at that time.¹⁵¹ However, as the International Court has noted, this does not prevent it from taking into account in interpreting a treaty, 'the present-day state of scientific knowledge, as reflected in the documentary material submitted to it by the parties'.¹⁵²

It has also been noted that the process of interpretation 'is a judicial function, whose purpose is to determine the precise meaning of a provision, but which cannot change it'.¹⁵³

In addition, any subsequent agreement or practice relating to the treaty must be considered together with the context.¹⁵⁴ Subsequent practice may indeed have a dual role: it may act as an instrument of interpretation and

¹⁴⁷ See also the *James* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 98, para. 61; 75 ILR, pp. 397, 423, and the Advisory Opinions of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights in the *Enforceability of the Right to Reply* case, 79 ILR, pp. 335, 343, and the *Meaning of the Word 'Laws'* case, 79 ILR, pp. 325, 329.

¹⁴⁸ Article 31(2). See also the *US Nationals in Morocco* case, ICJ Reports, 1952, pp. 176, 196; 19 ILR, pp. 255, 272; the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977, p. 12; 52 ILR, p. 93, and the *Young Loan* arbitration, 59 ILR, pp. 495, 530.

¹⁴⁹ 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34. See also Lord McNair in the *Argentina/Chile Frontier* case, 38 ILR, pp. 10, 89.

¹⁵⁰ See *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 346. See also D. W. Greig, *Intertemporality and the Law of Treaties*, London, 2001, and, as to the doctrine of intertemporal law, above, chapter 10, p. 508.

¹⁵¹ *Eritrea–Ethiopia*, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34–5.

¹⁵² *Botswana/Namibia*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1045, 1060.

¹⁵³ See e.g. the *Laguna del Desierto* case, 113 ILR, pp. 1, 44.

¹⁵⁴ Article 31(3)a and b.

it may also mark an alteration in the legal relations between the parties established by the treaty in question.¹⁵⁵

The provision whereby any relevant rules of international law applicable in the relations between the parties shall be taken into account in interpreting a treaty¹⁵⁶ was used somewhat controversially in the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case to justify recourse to the rules concerning the use of force in the context of the Treaty of Amity, Economic Relations and Consular Rights, 1955.¹⁵⁷

Where the interpretation according to the provisions of article 31 needs confirmation, or determination since the meaning is ambiguous or obscure, or leads to a manifestly absurd or unreasonable result, recourse may be had to supplementary means of interpretation under article 32. These means include the preparatory works (*travaux préparatoires*) of the treaty and the circumstances of its conclusion and may be employed in the above circumstances to aid the process of interpreting the treaty in question.¹⁵⁸ Nevertheless, the International Court has

¹⁵⁵ As to the latter, see e.g. the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 6; 33 ILR, p. 48, the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 22; 49 ILR, p. 2, the *Taba* case, 80 ILR, p. 226 and *Eritrea-Ethiopia*, 130 ILR, pp. 1, 34 ff.

¹⁵⁶ Article 31(3)c.

¹⁵⁷ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 182; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 341–2. Judge Higgins in her Separate Opinion noted that, ‘The Court reads this provision as incorporating the totality of the substantive international law (which in paragraph 42 of the Judgment is defined as comprising Charter law) on the use of force. But this is to ignore that Article 31, paragraph 3, requires “the context” to be taken into account: and “the context” is clearly that of an economic and commercial treaty’, *ibid.*, pp. 225, 237; 130 ILR, pp. 383, 395. See also *Iran v. USA*, Case No. A/18, 5 Iran-US CTR, p. 251; 75 ILR, pp. 175, 188, where the Full Tribunal held, citing article 31(3)c, that jurisdiction existed over claims against Iran by dual Iran-US nationals when the dominant and effective nationality of the claimant at the relevant period was that of the US, and *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 310, p. 25; 103 ILR, p. 621.

¹⁵⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 223, doubting the rule in the *River Oder* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 23, 1929; 5 AD, pp. 381, 383, that the *travaux préparatoires* of certain provisions of the Treaty of Versailles could not be taken into account since three of the states before the Court had not participated in the preparatory conference. See also the *Young Loan* case, 59 ILR, pp. 495, 544–5; Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 141–7, and the *Lithgow* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 102, para. 117; 75 ILR, pp. 438, 484. Note that in both the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 27; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 26, and *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 6, 21; 102 ILR, pp. 47, 62, the International Court held that while it was not necessary to have recourse to the *travaux préparatoires* to elucidate the content of the instruments in question, it could turn to them to confirm its reading of the text. See also the *Construction of a Wall* advisory opinion, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 174 ff.; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 92 ff.

underlined that 'interpretation must be based above all upon the text of the treaty'.¹⁵⁹

Case-law provides some interesting guidelines to the above-stated rules. In the *Interpretation of Peace Treaties* case,¹⁶⁰ the Court was asked whether the UN Secretary-General could appoint the third member of a Treaty Commission upon the request of one side to the dispute where the other side (Bulgaria, Hungary and Romania) refused to appoint its own representative. It was emphasised that the natural and ordinary meaning of the terms of the Peace Treaties with the three states concerned envisaged the appointment of the third member after the other two had been nominated. The breach of a treaty obligation could not be remedied by creating a Commission which was not the kind of Commission envisaged by the Treaties. The principle of effectiveness could not be used by the Court to attribute to the provisions for the settlement of disputes in the Peace Treaties a meaning which would be contrary to their letter and spirit. The Court also stressed the nature of the disputes clause as being one that had to be strictly construed. Thus, the character of the provisions to be interpreted is significant in the context of utilising the relevant rules of interpretation. The principle of effectiveness¹⁶¹ will be used, however, in order to give effect to provisions in accordance with the intentions of the parties¹⁶² and in accordance with the rules of international law.¹⁶³

In two areas, it should be noted, the principle of effectiveness allied with the broader purposes approach has been used in an especially dynamic manner. In the case of treaties that also operate as the constitutional documents of an international organisation, a more flexible method of interpretation would seem to be justified, since one is dealing with an instrument that is being used in order to accomplish the stated aims

¹⁵⁹ The *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 22; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 21.

¹⁶⁰ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 221, 226–30; 17 ILR, pp. 318, 320–2. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 220.

¹⁶¹ The International Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case declared that the principle of effectiveness 'has an important role in the law of treaties', ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 432, 455.

¹⁶² See e.g. the *Ambatielos* case, ICJ Reports, 1952, p. 28; 19 ILR, p. 416. See also the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 24; 16 AD, pp. 155, 169 and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 219.

¹⁶³ See e.g. the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 432, 455, the *Right of Passage (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1957, p. 142 and the *Laguna del Desierto* case, 113 ILR, pp. 1, 45.

of that organisation. In addition, of course, the concept and nature of subsequent practice possesses in such cases an added relevance.¹⁶⁴ This approach has been used as a way of inferring powers, not expressly provided for in the relevant instruments, which are deemed necessary in the context of the purposes of the organisation.¹⁶⁵ This programmatic interpretation doctrine in such cases is now well established and especially relevant to the United Nations, where over sixty years of practice related to the principles of the organisation by over 190 states is manifest.

The more dynamic approach to interpretation is also evident in the context of human rights treaties, such as the European Convention on Human Rights, which created a system of implementation.¹⁶⁶ It has been held that a particular legal order was thereby established involving objective obligations to protect human rights rather than subjective, reciprocal rights.¹⁶⁷ Accordingly, a more flexible and programmatic or

¹⁶⁴ Note that by article 5, the Vienna Convention is deemed to apply to any treaty which is the constituent instrument of an international organisation. See also C. F. Amerasinghe, *Principles of the Institutional Law of International Organisations*, Cambridge, 1996, chapter 2, and Amerasinghe, 'Interpretation of Texts in Open International Organisations', 65 BYIL, 1994, p. 175; M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 64–73; S. Rosenne, 'Is the Constitution of an International Organisation an International Treaty?', 12 *Comunicazioni e Studi*, 1966, p. 21, and G. Distefano, 'La Pratique Subséquente des Etats Parties à un Traité', AFDI, 1994, p. 41.

¹⁶⁵ See e.g. the *Reparations* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318; the *Certain Expenses of the UN* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281; the *Competence of the General Assembly for the Admission of a State* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 4; 17 ILR, p. 326, and the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 2. See also Shaw, *Title to Territory*; R. Higgins, 'The Development of International Law by the Political Organs of the United Nations', PASIL, 1965, p. 119, and H. G. Schermers and N. M. Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, 3rd edn, The Hague, 1995, chapter 9. See further below, chapter 23, pp. 1305 ff.

¹⁶⁶ See further above, chapter 7, p. 347. See also J. G. Merrills, *The Development of International Law by the European Court of Human Rights*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1993, chapter 4. Note that the European Court of Human Rights in *Loizidou v. Turkey (Preliminary Objections)*, Series A, No. 310, p. 26 (1995); 103 ILR, p. 621, emphasised the fundamental differences as between the role and purposes of the International Court of Justice and the European Court. See also the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 403 ff.

¹⁶⁷ See e.g. *Austria v. Italy*, 4 *European Yearbook of Human Rights*, 1960, pp. 116, 140 and *Ireland v. UK*, Series A, No. 25, p. 90 (1978). See also the Advisory Opinion of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights on the *Effect of Reservations on the Entry into Force of the American Convention on Human Rights*, 22 ILM, 1983, pp. 37, 47; 67 ILR, pp. 559, 568, which adopted a similar approach.

purpose-oriented method of interpretation was adopted, emphasising that the Convention constituted a living instrument that had to be interpreted 'in the light of present-day conditions'.¹⁶⁸ In addition, the object and purpose of the Convention requires that its provisions be interpreted so as to make its safeguards practical and effective.¹⁶⁹

Indeed, in this context, it was noted in the *Licensing of Journalists* case¹⁷⁰ that while it was useful to compare the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights with other relevant international instruments, this approach could not be utilised to read into the Convention restrictions existing in other treaties. In this situation, 'the rule most favourable to the individual must prevail'.

Article 31(4) provides that a special meaning shall be given to a term if it is established that the parties so intended. It would appear that the standard of proof is fairly high, since a derogation from the ordinary meaning of the term is involved. It is not enough that one party only uses the particular term in a particular way.¹⁷¹

Where a treaty is authenticated in more than one language, as often happens with multilateral agreements, article 33 provides that, in the absence of agreement, in the event of a difference of meaning that the normal processes of interpretation cannot resolve, the meaning which best reconciles the texts, having regard to the object and purpose of the treaty, shall be adopted.¹⁷²

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. the *Tyrer* case, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 26, at p. 15 (1978); 58 ILR, pp. 339, 553; the *Marckx* case, ECHR, Series A, No. 32, at p. 14 (1979); 58 ILR, pp. 561, 583; the *Wemhoff* case, ECHR, Series A, No. 7 (1968); 41 ILR, p. 281, and the *Loizidou* case, ECHR, Series A, No. 310, p. 23; 103 ILR, p. 621. See also H. Waldock, 'The Evolution of Human Rights Concepts and the Application of the European Convention on Human Rights' in *Mélanges Offerts à Paul Reuter*, Paris, 1981, p. 535. Note also the approach taken by the UN Human Rights Committee in its General Comment 24/52 of 2 November 1994 on Reservations: see 15 *Human Rights Law Journal*, 1994, p. 464, and above, p. 923.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. *Soering v. UK*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, No. 161, p. 34 (1989); 98 ILR, p. 270; *Artico v. Italy*, ECHR, Series A, No. 37 (1980) and *Loizidou v. Turkey*, ECHR, Series A, No. 310, p. 23 (1995); 103 ILR, p. 621.

¹⁷⁰ Advisory Opinion of the Inter-American Court of Human Rights, 1985, 75 ILR, pp. 30, 47–8.

¹⁷¹ See the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933, p. 49; 6 AD, p. 95, and the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case, Cmnd 7438, p. 50; 54 ILR, p. 6.

¹⁷² See the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 101; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 40–1, the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, p. 19; 2 AD, p. 27, which called for the more restrictive interpretation in such cases, and the *Young Loan* case, 59 ILR, p. 495. See also Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, pp. 250 ff.

Invalidity, termination and suspension of the operation of treaties¹⁷³

General provisions

Article 42 states that the validity and continuance in force of a treaty may only be questioned on the basis of the provisions in the Vienna Convention. Article 44 provides that a state may only withdraw from or suspend the operation of a treaty in respect of the treaty as a whole and not particular parts of it, unless the treaty otherwise stipulates or the parties otherwise agree. If the appropriate ground for invalidating, terminating, withdrawing from or suspending the operation of a treaty relates solely to particular clauses, it may only be invoked in relation to those clauses where:

- (a) the said clauses are separable from the remainder of the treaty with regard to their application;
- (b) it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that acceptance of those clauses was not an essential basis of consent of the other party or parties to be bound by the treaty as a whole; and
- (c) continued performance of the remainder of the treaty would not be unjust.

Thus the Convention adopts a cautious approach to the general issue of separability of treaty provisions in this context.¹⁷⁴

Article 45 in essence provides that a ground for invalidity, termination, withdrawal or suspension may no longer be invoked by the state where, after becoming aware of the facts, it expressly agreed that the treaty is valid or remains in force or by reason of its conduct may be deemed to have acquiesced in the validity of the treaty or its continuance in force.¹⁷⁵

¹⁷³ Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 302, and Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 1284. See also N. Kontou, *The Termination and Revision of Treaties in the Light of New Customary International Law*, Oxford, 1995, and Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapters 16 and 17.

¹⁷⁴ See Judge Lauterpacht, the *Norwegian Loans* case, ICJ Reports, 1957, pp. 9, 55–9; 24 ILR, pp. 782, 809, and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 165–7.

¹⁷⁵ See e.g. the *Arbitral Award by the King of Spain* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 192, 213–14; 30 ILR, pp. 457, 473, and the *Temple* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 6, 23–32; 33 ILR, pp. 48, 62. See also the *Argentina–Chile* case, 38 ILR, p. 10 and above, chapter 10.

Invalidity of treaties

Municipal law

A state cannot plead a breach of its constitutional provisions as to the making of treaties as a valid excuse for condemning an agreement. There has been for some years disagreement amongst international lawyers as to whether the failure to abide by a domestic legal limitation by, for example, a head of state in entering into a treaty, will result in rendering the agreement invalid or not.¹⁷⁶ The Convention took the view that in general it would not, but that it could in certain circumstances.

Article 46(1) provides that:

state may not invoke the fact that its consent to be bound by a treaty has been expressed in violation of a provision of its internal law regarding competence to conclude treaties as invalidating its consent unless that violation was manifest and concerned a rule of its internal law of fundamental importance.

Violation will be regarded as manifest if it would be 'objectively evident' to any state conducting itself in the matter in accordance with normal practice, and in good faith.¹⁷⁷ For example, where the representative of the state has had his authority to consent on behalf of the state made subject to a specific restriction which is ignored, the state will still be bound by that consent save where the other negotiating states were aware of the restriction placed upon his authority to consent prior to the expression of that consent.¹⁷⁸ This particular provision applies as regards a person authorised to represent a state and such persons are defined in article 7 to include heads of state and government and foreign ministers in addition to persons possessing full powers.¹⁷⁹

The International Court dealt with this question in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, where it had been argued by Nigeria that the Maroua Declaration of 1975 between the two states was not valid as its constitutional rules had not been complied with. The Court noted that the Nigerian head of state had signed the Declaration and that a limitation of his

¹⁷⁶ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 169–71, distinguishing between the constitutionalist and internationalist schools, and K. Holloway, *Modern Trends in Treaty Law*, London, 1967, pp. 123–33. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 240–1.

¹⁷⁷ Article 46(2).

¹⁷⁸ Article 47. See e.g. the *Eastern Greenland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 53, 1933; 6 AD, p. 95, and *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 112, 121–2; 102 ILR, pp. 1, 18–19.

¹⁷⁹ See above, p. 908.

capacity would not be 'manifest' unless at least properly publicised. This was especially so since heads of state are deemed to represent their states for the purpose of performing acts relating to the conclusion of treaties.¹⁸⁰ The Court also noted that 'there is no general legal obligation for states to keep themselves informed of legislative and constitutional developments in other states which are or may become important for the international relations of these states'.¹⁸¹

It should, of course, also be noted that a state may not invoke a provision of its internal law as a justification for its failure to carry out an international obligation. This is a general principle of international law¹⁸² and finds its application in the law of treaties by virtue of article 27 of the 1969 Vienna Convention.

Error

Unlike the role of mistake in municipal laws of contract, the scope in international law of error as invalidating a state's consent is rather limited. In view of the character of states and the multiplicity of persons actually dealing with the negotiation and conclusion of treaties, errors are not very likely to happen, whether they be unilateral or mutual.

Article 48 declares that a state may only invoke an error in a treaty as invalidating its consent to be bound by the treaty, if the error relates to a fact or situation which was assumed by that state to exist at the time when the treaty was concluded and formed an essential basis of its consent to be bound by the treaty. But if the state knew or ought to have known of the error, or if it contributed to that error, then it cannot afterwards free itself from the obligation of observing the treaty by pointing to that error.

This restrictive approach is in harmony with the comments made in a number of cases, including the *Temple* case,¹⁸³ where the International Court of Justice rejected Thailand's argument that a particular map contained a basic error and therefore it was not bound to observe it, since 'the plea of error cannot be allowed as an element vitiating consent if the party advancing it contributed by its own conduct to the error, or could have avoided it, or if the circumstances were such as to put that party on

¹⁸⁰ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 430. ¹⁸¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 430–1.

¹⁸² See e.g. the *Alabama Claims* arbitration, J. B. Moore, *International Arbitrations*, New York, 1898, vol. I, p. 495, and the *Greco-Bulgarian Communities* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 17, p. 32; 5 AD, p. 4. See also the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate under Section 21 of the United Nations Headquarters Agreement* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 12, 34–5; 82 ILR, pp. 225, 252.

¹⁸³ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 6; 33 ILR, p. 48.

notice of a possible error'.¹⁸⁴ The Court felt that in view of the character and qualifications of the persons who were involved on the Thai side in examining the map, Thailand could not put forward a claim of error.

Fraud and corruption

Where a state consents to be bound by a treaty as a result of the fraudulent conduct of another negotiating state, that state may under article 49 invoke the fraud as invalidating its consent to be bound. Where a negotiating state directly or indirectly corrupts the representative of another state in order to obtain the consent of the latter to the treaty, that corruption may under article 50 be invoked as invalidating the consent to be bound.¹⁸⁵

Coercion

Of more importance than error, fraud or corruption in the law of treaties is the issue of coercion as invalidating consent. Where consent has been obtained by coercing the representative of a state, whether by acts or threats directed against him, it shall, according to article 51 of the Convention, be without any legal effect.¹⁸⁶

The problem of consent obtained by the application of coercion against the state itself is a slightly different one. Prior to the League of Nations, it was clear that international law did not provide for the invalidation of treaties on the grounds of the use or threat of force by one party against the other and this was a consequence of the lack of rules in customary law prohibiting recourse to war. With the signing of the Covenant of the League in 1919, and the Kellogg–Briand Pact in 1928 forbidding the resort to war to resolve international disputes, a new approach began to be taken with regard to the illegality of the use of force in international relations.

With the elucidation of the Nuremberg principles and the coming into effect of the Charter of the United Nations after the Second World War, it became clear that international law condemned coercive activities by states.

Article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter provides that:

[a]ll members shall refrain in their international relations from the threat or use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state, or in any other measure inconsistent with the purposes of the United Nations.

¹⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 26; 33 ILR, p. 65.

¹⁸⁵ Such instances are very rare in practice: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 244–5 and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 173–6.

¹⁸⁶ See e.g. *First Fidelity Bank NA v. Government of Antigua and Barbuda Permanent Mission* 877 F. 2d 189, 192 (1989); 99 ILR, pp. 126, 130.

It followed that treaties based on coercion of a state should be regarded as invalid.¹⁸⁷

Accordingly, article 52 of the Convention provides that '[a] treaty is void if its conclusion has been procured by the threat or use of force in violation of the principles of international law embodied in the Charter of the United Nations'. This article was the subject of much debate in the Vienna Conference preceding the adoption of the Convention. Communist and certain Third World countries argued that coercion comprised not only the threat or use of force but also economic and political pressures.¹⁸⁸ The International Law Commission did not take a firm stand on the issue, but noted that the precise scope of the acts covered by the definition should be left to be determined in practice by interpretation of the relevant Charter provisions.¹⁸⁹

The Vienna Conference, however, issued a Declaration on the Prohibition of Military, Political or Economic Coercion in the Conclusion of Treaties, which condemned the exercise of such coercion to procure the formation of a treaty. These points were not included in the Convention itself, which leaves one to conclude that the application of political or economic pressure to secure the consent of a state to a treaty may not be contrary to international law, but clearly a lot will depend upon the relevant circumstances.

In international relations, the variety of influences which may be brought to bear by a powerful state against a weaker one to induce it to adopt a particular line of policy is wide-ranging and may cover not only coercive threats but also subtle expressions of displeasure. The precise nuances of any particular situation will depend on a number of factors, and it will be misleading to suggest that all forms of pressure are as such violations of international law.

The problem was noted by Judge Padilla Nervo in the International Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction case*¹⁹⁰ when he stated that:

there are moral and political pressures which cannot be proved by the so-called documentary evidence, but which are in fact indisputably real and which have, in history, given rise to treaties and conventions claimed to be freely concluded and subjected to the principle of *pacta sunt servanda*.¹⁹¹

¹⁸⁷ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 246–7. See also the *Fisheries Jurisdiction case*, ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 14; 55 ILR, pp. 183, 194.

¹⁸⁸ See Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 177–9.

¹⁸⁹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 246–7.

¹⁹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1973, p. 3; 55 ILR, p. 183.

¹⁹¹ ICJ Reports, 1973, p. 47; 55 ILR, p. 227.

It should also be noted that the phrase 'in violation of the principles of international law embodied in the Charter' was used so that article 52 should by no means be construed as applying solely to members of the United Nations but should be treated as a universal rule.

*Jus cogens*¹⁹²

Article 53 of the Convention provides that:

[a] treaty is void if, at the time of its conclusion, it conflicts with a peremptory norm of general international law. For the purposes of the present Convention, a peremptory norm of general international law is a norm accepted and recognised by the international community of states as a whole as a norm from which no derogation is permitted, and which can be modified only by a subsequent norm of general international law having the same character.

Article 64 declares that '[i]f a new peremptory norm of general international law emerges, any existing treaty which is in conflict with that norm becomes void and terminates'.¹⁹³

As noted in chapter 3,¹⁹⁴ the concept of *jus cogens*, of fundamental and entrenched rules of international law, is well established in doctrine now, but controversial as to content and method of creation. The insertion of articles dealing with *jus cogens* in the 1969 Convention underlines the basic principles with regard to treaties.

Consequences of invalidity

Article 69 provides that an invalid treaty is void and without legal force. If acts have nevertheless been performed in reliance on such a treaty, each party may require any other party to establish as far as possible in their

¹⁹² See e.g. J. Sztucki, *Jus Cogens and the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties*, New York, 1974; C. Rozakis, *The Concept of Jus Cogens in the Law of Treaties*, Leiden, 1976; L. Hannikainen, *Peremptory Norms (Jus Cogens) in International Law*, Helsinki, 1988; E. Suy, 'Article 53' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 1905; A. Gomez Robledo, 'Le *Jus Cogens* International: Sa Genèse, Sa Nature, Ses Fonctions', 172 HR, 1981, p. 9; L. Alexidze, 'Legal Nature of *Jus Cogens* in Contemporary International Law', 172 HR, p. 219; G. Gaja, '*Jus Cogens* Beyond the Vienna Convention', 172 HR, 1981, p. 271; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 202, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 1292. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 247–8, and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, chapter 7.

¹⁹³ See also article 71 and below, p. 945. See also A. Lagerwall, 'Article 64' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 2299.

¹⁹⁴ See above, p. 123.

mutual relations the position that would have existed if the acts had not been performed. Acts performed in good faith before the invalidity was invoked are not rendered unlawful by reason only of the invalidity of the treaty.

Where a treaty is void under article 53, article 71 provides that the parties are to eliminate as far as possible the consequences of any act performed in reliance on any provision which conflicts with *jus cogens* and bring their mutual relations into conformity with the peremptory norm. Where a treaty terminates under article 64, the parties are released from any obligation further to perform the treaty, but this does not affect any right, obligation or legal situation of the parties created through the execution of the treaty prior to its termination, provided that the rights, obligations or situations may be maintained thereafter in conformity with the new peremptory norm.

*The termination of treaties*¹⁹⁵

There are a number of methods available by which treaties may be terminated or suspended.

Termination by treaty provision or consent

A treaty may be terminated or suspended in accordance with a specific provision in that treaty, or otherwise at any time by consent of all the parties after consultation.¹⁹⁶ Where, however, a treaty contains no provision regarding termination and does not provide for denunciation or withdrawal specifically, a state may only denounce or withdraw from that treaty where the parties intended to admit such a possibility or where the right may be implied by the nature of the treaty.¹⁹⁷ In General Comment No. 26 of 1997, the UN Human Rights Committee, noting that the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights had no provision for termination or denunciation, concluded on the basis of the Vienna Convention provisions, that the parties had not intended to admit of such

¹⁹⁵ See e.g. E. David, *The Strategy of Treaty Termination*, New Haven, 1975; A. Vamvoukis, *Termination of Treaties in International Law*, Oxford, 1985, and R. Plender, 'The Role of Consent in the Termination of Treaties', 57 BYIL, 1986, p. 133. See also Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure (Part Four)', pp. 63 ff., and Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 16.

¹⁹⁶ Articles 54 and 57.

¹⁹⁷ Article 56. Examples given by J. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, p. 331, include treaties of alliance and commerce. See also *Nicaragua v. US*, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 420; 76 ILR, pp. 1, 131.

a possibility. The Committee based itself on the fact that states parties were able to withdraw their acceptance of the right of inter-state complaint, while the First Optional Protocol, concerning the right of individual communication, provided in terms for denunciation. The Committee also emphasised that the Covenant, as an instrument codifying universal human rights, was not the type of treaty which, by its nature, implies a right of denunciation.¹⁹⁸

A treaty may, of course, come to an end if its purposes and objects have been fulfilled or if it is clear from its provisions that it is limited in time and the requisite period has elapsed. The Tribunal in the *Rainbow Warrior* case¹⁹⁹ held that the breach of the New Zealand–France Agreement, 1986, concerning the two captured French agents that had sunk the vessel in question,²⁰⁰ had commenced on 22 July 1986 and had run continuously for the three years' period of confinement of the agents stipulated in the agreement. Accordingly, the period concerned had expired on 22 July 1989, so that France could not be said to be in breach of its international obligations after that date. However, this did not exempt France from responsibility for its previous breaches of its obligations, committed while these obligations were in force. Claims arising out of a previous infringement of a treaty which has since expired acquire an existence independent of that treaty.²⁰¹ The termination of a treaty does not affect any right, obligation or legal situation of the parties created through the execution of the treaty prior to its termination.²⁰²

Just as two or more parties to a multilateral treaty may modify as between themselves particular provisions of the agreement,²⁰³ so they may under article 58 agree to suspend the operation of treaty provisions

¹⁹⁸ A/53/40, annex VII. ¹⁹⁹ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 567–8. ²⁰⁰ See above, p. 779.

²⁰¹ See the Dissenting Opinion of Judge McNair in the *Ambatielos* case, ICJ Reports, 1952, pp. 28, 63; 19 ILR, pp. 416, 433.

²⁰² Article 70(1)b of the 1969 Vienna Convention. See below, p. 952. Note that in draft article 3 of the ILC Draft Articles on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties, A/CN.4/178, 2007, p. 7, it is provided that the outbreak of an armed conflict does not necessarily terminate or suspend the operation of treaties as (a) between the parties to the armed conflict and (b) between one or more parties to the armed conflict and a third state. Draft article 10 provides that a state exercising its rights of individual or collective self-defence in accordance with the Charter of the United Nations is entitled to suspend in whole or in part the operation of a treaty incompatible with the exercise of that right, subject to any consequences resulting from a later determination by the Security Council of that state as an aggressor. This formulation is based upon article 7 of the resolution on the effects of armed conflicts on treaties adopted by the Institut de Droit International in 1985, *ibid.*, p. 18.

²⁰³ Article 41 and above, p. 931.

temporarily and as between themselves alone if such a possibility is provided for by the treaty. Such suspension may also be possible under that article, where not prohibited by the treaty in question, provided it does not affect the rights or obligations of the other parties under the particular agreement and provided it is not incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty.

Where all the parties to a treaty later conclude another agreement relating to the same subject matter, the earlier treaty will be regarded as terminated where it appears that the matter is to be governed by the later agreement or where the provisions of the later treaty are so incompatible with those of the earlier one that the two treaties are not capable of being applied at the same time.²⁰⁴

Material breach²⁰⁵

There are two approaches to be considered. First, if one state violates an important provision in an agreement, it is not unnatural for the other states concerned to regard that agreement as ended by it. It is in effect a reprisal or countermeasure,²⁰⁶ a rather unsubtle but effective means of ensuring the enforcement of a treaty. The fact that an agreement may be terminated where it is breached by one party may act as a discouragement to any party that might contemplate a breach of one provision but would be unwilling to forgo the benefits prescribed in others. On the other hand, to render treaties revocable because one party has acted contrary to what might very well be only a minor provision in the agreement taken as a whole, would be to place the states participating in a treaty in rather a vulnerable position. There is a need for flexibility as well as certainty in such situations. Customary law supports the view that something more than a mere breach itself of a term in an agreement would be necessary to give the other party or parties the right to abrogate that agreement. In the *Tacna-Arica* arbitration,²⁰⁷ between Chile and Peru, the arbitrator noted, in referring to an agreement about a plebiscite in former Peruvian territory occupied by Chile, that:

²⁰⁴ Article 59.

²⁰⁵ See e.g. S. Rosenne, *Breach of Treaty*, Cambridge, 1985. See also D. N. Hutchinson, 'Solidarity and Breaches of Multilateral Treaties', 59 BYIL, 1988, p. 151, and M. M. Gomaa, *Suspension or Termination of Treaties on Grounds of Breach*, The Hague, 1996.

²⁰⁶ See above, chapter 14, p. 794.

²⁰⁷ 2 RIAA, p. 921 (1925).

[i]t is manifest that if abuses of administration could have the effect of terminating such an agreement, it would be necessary to establish such serious conditions as the consequence of administrative wrongs as would operate to frustrate the purpose of the agreement.²⁰⁸

The relevant provision of the Vienna Convention is contained in article 60, which codifies existing customary law.²⁰⁹ Article 60(3) declares that a material breach of a treaty consists in either a repudiation of the treaty not permitted by the Vienna Convention or the violation of a provision essential to the accomplishment of the object or purpose of the treaty.²¹⁰ The second part of article 60(3) was applied in the *Rainbow Warrior* case,²¹¹ where the obligation to confine the two French agents in question on a Pacific Island for a minimum period of three years was held to have constituted the object or purpose of the New Zealand–France Agreement, 1986 so that France committed a material breach of this treaty by permitting the agents to leave the island before the expiry of the three-year period.

Where such a breach occurs in a bilateral treaty, then under article 60(1) the innocent party may invoke that breach as a ground for terminating the treaty or suspending its operation in whole or in part. The International Court has made clear that it is only a material breach of the treaty itself, by a state party to it, which entitles the other party to rely on it for grounds of termination.²¹² Further, termination on the basis of a breach which has not yet occurred, such as Hungary's purported termination of a bilateral treaty on the basis of works done by Czechoslovakia which had not at the time resulted in a diversion of the Danube River, would be deemed premature and would not be lawful.²¹³

There is a rather different situation in the case of a multilateral treaty since a number of innocent parties are involved that might not wish the treaty to be denounced by one of them because of a breach by another state. To cover such situations, article 60(2) prescribes that a material breach of a multilateral treaty by one of the parties entitles:

²⁰⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 943–4.

²⁰⁹ See the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38; 116 ILR, p. 1. See also B. Simma and C. J. Tams, 'Article 60' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 2131.

²¹⁰ See the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 46–7; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 37.

²¹¹ 82 ILR, pp. 499, 564–6.

²¹² The *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 65; 116 ILR, p. 1.

²¹³ ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 66.

- (a) the other parties by unanimous agreement to suspend the operation of the treaty in whole or in part or to terminate it either:
 - (i) in the relations between themselves and the defaulting state, or
 - (ii) as between all the parties;
- (b) a party specially affected by the breach to invoke it as a ground for suspending the operation of the treaty in whole or in part in the relations between itself and the defaulting state;
- (c) any party other than the defaulting state to invoke the breach as a ground for suspending the operation of the treaty in whole or in part with respect to itself if the treaty is of such a character that a material breach of its provisions by one party radically changes the position of every party with respect to the further performance of its obligations under the treaty.²¹⁴

It is interesting to note that the provisions of article 60 regarding the definition and consequences of a material breach do not apply, by article 60(5), to provisions relating to the 'protection of the human person contained in treaties of a humanitarian character, in particular to provisions prohibiting any form of reprisals against persons protected by such treaties'. This is because objective and absolute principles are involved and not just reciprocal rights and duties.²¹⁵

Supervening impossibility of performance²¹⁶

Article 61 of the Convention²¹⁷ is intended to cover such situations as the submergence of an island, or the drying up of a river where the consequence of such events is to render the performance of the treaty impossible. Where the carrying out of the terms of the agreement becomes impossible because of the 'permanent disappearance or destruction of an object indispensable for the execution of the treaty', a party may validly terminate or withdraw from it. However, where the impossibility is only temporary, it may be invoked solely to suspend the operation of the treaty. Impossibility cannot be used in this way where it arises from the breach

²¹⁴ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 253–5. See also the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 47; 49 ILR, p. 37, and the *US–France Air Services Agreement* case, 54 ILR, pp. 304, 331.

²¹⁵ See e.g. G. Fitzmaurice, 'General Principles of International Law Considered from the Standpoint of the Rule of Law', 92 HR, 1957, pp. 1, 125–6, and above, chapter 7, p. 348.

²¹⁶ See e.g. McNair, *Law of Treaties*, pp. 685–8, and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, pp. 190–2.

²¹⁷ This is also a codification of customary law: see the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38; 116 ILR, p. 1.

by the party attempting to terminate or suspend the agreement of a treaty or other international obligation owed to any other party to the treaty.²¹⁸

Fundamental change of circumstances²¹⁹

The doctrine of *rebus sic stantibus* is a principle in customary international law providing that where there has been a fundamental change of circumstances since an agreement was concluded, a party to that agreement may withdraw from or terminate it. It is justified by the fact that some treaties may remain in force for long periods of time, during which fundamental changes might have occurred. Such changes might encourage one of the parties to adopt drastic measures in the face of a general refusal to accept an alteration in the terms of the treaty. However, this doctrine has been criticised on the grounds that, having regard to the absence of any system for compulsory jurisdiction in the international order, it could operate as a disrupting influence upon the binding force of obligations undertaken by states. It might be used to justify withdrawal from treaties on rather tenuous grounds.²²⁰

The modern approach is to admit the existence of the doctrine, but severely restrict its scope.²²¹ The International Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case declared that:

[i]nternational law admits that a fundamental change in the circumstances which determined the parties to accept a treaty, if it has resulted in a radical transformation of the extent of the obligations imposed by it, may, under

²¹⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, p. 256. See also the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 63–4; 116 ILR, p. 1.

²¹⁹ See e.g. M. N. Shaw and C. Fournet, 'Article 62' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 2229; D. F. Vagts, 'Rebus Revisited: Changed Circumstances in Treaty Law', 43 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 2004–5, p. 459; M. Bennett and N. Roughan, 'Rebus Sic Stantibus and the Treaty of Waitangi', 37 *Victoria University Wellington Law Review* 2006, 505; C. Hill, *The Doctrine of Rebus Sic Stantibus in International Law*, Leiden, 1934; O. Lissitzyn, 'Treaties and Changed Circumstances (*Rebus Sic Stantibus*)', 61 *AJIL*, 1967, p. 895; P. Cahier, 'Le Changement Fondamental de Circonstances et la Convention de Vienne de 1969 sur le Droit des Traités' in *Mélanges Ago*, Milan, 1987, vol. I, p. 163, and Vamvoukis, *Termination*, part 1. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1966, vol. II, pp. 257 ff. Note the decision in *TWA Inc. v. Franklin Mint Corporation* 23 ILM, 1984, pp. 814, 820, that a private person could not plead the *rebus* rule.

²²⁰ This was apparently occurring in the immediate pre-1914 period: see J. Garner, 'The Doctrine of *Rebus Sic Stantibus* and the Termination of Treaties', 21 *AJIL*, 1927, p. 409, and Sinclair, *Vienna Convention*, p. 193. See also G. Harastzi, 'Treaties and the Fundamental Change of Circumstances', 146 *HR*, 1975, p. 1.

²²¹ See e.g. the *Free Zones* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 46, pp. 156–8; 6 *AD*, pp. 362, 365.

certain conditions, afford the party affected a ground for invoking the termination or suspension of the treaty.²²²

Before the doctrine may be applied, the Court continued, it is necessary that such changes 'must have increased the burden of the obligations to be executed to the extent of rendering the performance something essentially different from that originally undertaken'.²²³

Article 62 of the Vienna Convention, which the International Court of Justice regarded in many respects as a codification of existing customary law,²²⁴ declares that:

1. A fundamental change of circumstances which has occurred with regard to those existing at the time of the conclusion of a treaty, and which was not foreseen by the parties, may not be invoked as a ground for terminating or withdrawing from the treaty unless:
 - (a) the existence of those circumstances constituted an essential basis of the consent of the parties to be bound by the treaty; and
 - (b) the effect of the change is radically to transform the extent of obligations still to be performed under the treaty.
2. A fundamental change of circumstances may not be invoked as a ground for terminating or withdrawing from a treaty:
 - (a) if the treaty establishes a boundary; or
 - (b) if the fundamental change is the result of a breach by the party invoking it either of an obligation under the treaty or of any other international obligation owed to any other party to the treaty.

The article also notes that instead of terminating or withdrawing from a treaty in the above circumstances, a party might suspend the operation of the treaty.

The doctrine was examined in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, where the International Court concluded that:

The changed circumstances advanced by Hungary are, in the Court's view, not of such a nature, either individually or collectively, that their effect would radically transform the extent of the obligations still to be performed in order to accomplish the Project. A fundamental change of circumstances must have been unforeseen; the existence of the circumstances at the time of the Treaty's conclusion must have constituted an essential basis of the consent of the parties to be bound by the Treaty. The negative and conditional

²²² ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 20–1; 55 ILR, p. 183. ²²³ *Ibid.*

²²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1973, p. 18. See also the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 38; 116 ILR, p. 1.

wording of article 62 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties is a clear indication moreover that the stability of treaty relations requires that the plea of fundamental change of circumstances should be applied only in exceptional cases.²²⁵

Consequences of the termination or suspension of a treaty

Article 70 provides that:

1. Unless the treaty otherwise provides or the parties otherwise agree, the termination of a treaty under its provisions or in accordance with the present Convention:
 - (a) releases the parties from any obligation further to perform the treaty;
 - (b) does not affect any right, obligation or legal situation of the parties created through the execution of the treaty prior to its termination.
2. If a state denounces or withdraws from a multilateral treaty, paragraph 1 applies in the relations between that state and each of the other parties to the treaty from the date when such denunciation or withdrawal takes effect.

Article 72 provides that:

1. Unless the treaty otherwise provides or the parties otherwise agree, the suspension of the operation of a treaty under its provisions or in accordance with the present Convention:
 - (a) releases the parties between which the operation of the treaty is suspended from the obligation to perform the treaty in their mutual relations during the period of the suspension;
 - (b) does not otherwise affect the legal relations between the parties established by the treaty.
2. During the period of the suspension the parties shall refrain from acts tending to obstruct the resumption of the operation of the treaty.²²⁶

Dispute settlement²²⁷

Article 66 provides that if a dispute has not been resolved within twelve months by the means specified in article 33 of the UN Charter then further

²²⁵ ICJ Reports, 1997, p. 65. This was followed by the European Court of Justice in *Racke v. Hauptzollamt Mainz* [1998] ECR I-3655, 3705–7. Draft article 3 of the ILC Draft Articles on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties, A/CN.4/178, 2007, p. 7, provides that the outbreak of an armed conflict does not necessarily terminate or suspend the operation of treaties as (a) between the parties to the armed conflict and (b) between one or more parties to the armed conflict and a third state.

²²⁶ See also article 65 with regard to the relevant procedures to be followed.

²²⁷ See e.g. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, chapter 20; H. Ruiz Fabri, 'Article 66' in Corten and Klein, *Conventions de Vienne*, p. 2391, and J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2004. See also below, chapter 18.

procedures will be followed. If the dispute concerns article 53 or 64 (*jus cogens*), any one of the parties may by a written application submit it to the International Court of Justice for a decision unless the parties by common consent agree to submit the dispute to arbitration. If the dispute concerns other issues in the Convention, any one of the parties may by request to the UN Secretary-General set in motion the conciliation procedure laid down in the Annex to the Convention.

Treaties between states and international organisations²²⁸

The International Law Commission completed Draft Articles on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations or between International Organisations in 1982 and the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations was adopted in 1986.²²⁹ Its provisions closely follow the provisions of the 1969 Vienna Convention *mutatis mutandis*. However, article 73 of the 1986 Convention notes that 'as between states parties to the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties of 1969, the relations of those states under a treaty between two or more states and one or more international organisations shall be governed by that Convention'. Whether this provision affirming the superiority of the 1969 Convention for states will in practice prejudice the interests of international organisations is an open question. In any event, there is no doubt that the strong wish of the Conference adopting the 1986 Convention was for uniformity, despite arguments that the position of international organisations in certain areas of treaty law was difficult to assimilate to that of states.²³⁰

Special concern in the International Law Commission focused on the effects that a treaty concluded by an international organisation has upon the member states of the organisation. Article 36 *bis* of the ILC Draft²³¹ provided that:

Obligations and rights arise for states members of an international organization from the provisions of a treaty to which that organization is a party when the parties to the treaty intend those provisions to be the means of

²²⁸ See e.g. G. Gaja, 'A "New" Vienna Convention on Treaties Between States and International Organisations or Between International Organisations: A Critical Commentary', 58 BYIL, 1987, p. 253, and F. Morgenstern, 'The Convention on the Law of Treaties Between States and International Organisations or Between International Organisations' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 435.

²²⁹ See above, footnote 2. ²³⁰ See Morgenstern, 'Convention', pp. 438–41.

²³¹ Described in the ILC Commentary as the article arousing the most controversy, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1982, vol. II, part 2, p. 43.

establishing such obligations and according such rights and have defined their conditions and effects in the treaty or have otherwise agreed thereon, and if:

- (a) the states members of the organization, by virtue of the constituent instrument of that organization or otherwise, have unanimously agreed to be bound by the said provisions of the treaty; and
- (b) the assent of the states members of the organization to be bound by the relevant provisions of the treaty has been duly brought to the knowledge of the negotiating states and negotiating organizations.

Such a situation would arise, for example, in the case of a customs union, which was an international organisation, normally concluding tariff agreements to which its members are not parties. Such agreements would be of little value if they were not to be immediately binding on member states.²³²

However, despite the fact that the European Community was particularly interested in the adoption of this draft article, it was rejected at the Conference.²³³ It was replaced by article 74(3) of the Convention, which provides:

The provisions of the present Convention shall not prejudice any question that may arise in regard to the establishment of obligations and rights for states members of an international organisation under a treaty to which that organisation is a party.

Accordingly, the situation in question would fall to be resolved on the basis of the consent of the states concerned in the specific circumstances and on a case-by-case basis.

The other area of difference between the 1986 and 1969 Conventions concerns the provisions for dispute settlement. Since international organisations cannot be parties to contentious proceedings before the International Court, draft article 66 provided for the compulsory arbitration of disputes concerning issues relating to the principles of *jus cogens*, with the details of the proposed arbitral tribunal contained in the Annex. The provisions of the 1969 Convention relating to the compulsory conciliation of disputes concerning the other articles were incorporated in the draft with little change. The 1986 Convention itself, however, adopted a different approach. Under article 66(2), where an international organisation authorised under article 96 of the UN Charter to request advisory

²³² *Ibid.*, pp. 43–4.

²³³ See e.g. Gaja, “‘New’ Vienna Convention”, p. 264.

opinions is a party to a dispute concerning *jus cogens*, it may apply for an advisory opinion to the International Court, which ‘shall be accepted as decisive by all the parties to the dispute concerned’. If the organisation is not so authorised under article 96, it may follow the same procedure acting through a member state. If no advisory opinion is requested or the Court itself does not comply with the request, then compulsory arbitration is provided for.²³⁴

Suggestions for further reading

A. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2007

M. Fitzmaurice and O. Elias, *Contemporary Issues in the Law of Treaties*, Utrecht, 2005

I. Sinclair, *The Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1984

²³⁴ See also above, chapter 14, p. 778, regarding the relationship between treaties and state responsibility. The issue of state succession to treaties is covered in chapter 17, p. 966.

State succession

Political entities are not immutable. They are subject to change. New states appear and old states disappear.¹ Federations, mergers, dissolutions and secessions take place. International law has to incorporate such events into its general framework with the minimum of disruption and instability. Such changes have come to the fore since the end of the Second World War and the establishment of over 100 new, independent countries.

Difficulties may result from the change in the political sovereignty over a particular territorial entity for the purposes of international law and the world community. For instance, how far is a new state bound by

¹ See generally D. P. O'Connell, *State Succession in Municipal Law and International Law*, Cambridge, 2 vols., 1967; O'Connell, 'Recent Problems of State Succession in Relation to New States', 130 HR, 1970, p. 95; K. Zemanek, 'State Succession after Decolonisation', 116 HR, 1965, p. 180; O. Udokang, *Succession of New States to International Treaties*, New York, 1972; J. H. W. Verzijl, *International Law in Historical Perspective*, Leiden, 1974, vol. VII; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapter 29; UN, *Materials on Succession of States*, New York, 1967 and supplement A/CN.4/263, 1972, and UN, *Materials on Succession of States in Matters Other than Treaties*, New York, 1978; International Law Association, *The Effect of Independence on Treaties*, London, 1965; Z. Mériboute, *La Codification de la Succession d'États aux Traités*, Paris, 1984; S. Torres Bernardez, 'Succession of States' in *International Law: Achievements and Prospects* (ed. M. Bedjaoui), Paris, 1991, p. 381; D. Bardonnet, *La Succession d'États à Madagascar*, Paris, 1970; R. Müllerson, 'The Continuity and Succession of States by Reference to the Former USSR and Yugoslavia', 42 ICLQ, 1993, p. 473; M. Koskenniemi and M. Lehto, 'La Succession d'États dans l'ex-URSS', AFDI, 1992, p. 179; M. Bedjaoui, 'Problèmes Récents de Succession d'États dans les États Nouveaux', 130 HR, 1970, p. 455; *Oppenheim's International Law* (eds. R. Y. Jennings and A. D. Watts), 9th edn, London, 1992, p. 208; J. Crawford, *The Creation of States in International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006; P. Radan, *The Break-up of Yugoslavia and International Law*, London, 2002; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 538; M. N. Shaw, 'State Succession Revisited', 5 Finnish YIL, 1994, p. 34; *Succession of States* (ed. M. Mrak), The Hague, 1999; B. Stern, 'La Succession d'États', 262 HR, 1996, p. 9; *State Succession: Codification Tested against Facts* (eds. P. M. Eisemann and M. Koskenniemi), Dordrecht, 2000, and *State Practice Regarding State Succession and Issues of Recognition* (eds. J. Klabbers et al.), The Hague, 1999.

the treaties and contracts entered into by the previous sovereign of the territory? Does nationality automatically devolve upon the inhabitants to replace that of the predecessor? What happens to the public property of the previous sovereign, and to what extent is the new authority liable for the debts of the old?

State succession in international law cannot be confused with succession in municipal law and the transmission of property and so forth to the relevant heir. Other interests and concerns are involved and the principles of state sovereignty, equality of states and non-interference prevent a universal succession principle similar to domestic law from being adopted. Despite attempts to assimilate Roman law views regarding the continuity of the legal personality in the estate which falls by inheritance,² this approach could not be sustained in the light of state interests and practice. The opposing doctrine, which basically denied any transmission of rights, obligations and property interests between the predecessor and successor sovereigns, arose in the heyday of positivism in the nineteenth century. It manifested itself again with the rise of the decolonisation process in the form of the 'clean slate' principle, under which new states acquired sovereignty free from encumbrances created by the predecessor sovereign.

The issue of state succession can arise in a number of defined circumstances, which mirror the ways in which political sovereignty may be acquired by, for example, decolonisation of all or part of an existing territorial unit, dismemberment of an existing state, secession, annexation and merger. In each of these cases a once-recognised entity disappears in whole or in part to be succeeded by some other authority, thus precipitating problems of transmission of rights and obligations. However, the question of state succession does not infringe upon the normal rights and duties of states under international law. These exist by virtue of the fundamental principles of international law and as a consequence of sovereignty and not as a result of transference from the previous sovereign. The issue of state succession should also be distinguished from questions of succession of governments, particularly revolutionary succession, and consequential patterns of recognition and responsibility.³

In many cases, such problems will be dealt with by treaties, whether multilateral treaties dealing with primarily territorial dispositions as, for example, the Treaty of St Germain, 1919, which resolved some succession questions relating to the dissolution of the Austro-Hungarian

² See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 9 ff.

³ See above, chapters 9 and 14.

Empire,⁴ or bilateral agreements as between, for instance, colonial power and new state, which, however, would not bind third states. The system of devolution agreements signed by the colonial power with the successor, newly decolonised state, was used by, for example, the UK, France and the Netherlands. Such agreements provided in general that all the rights and benefits, obligations and responsibilities devolving upon the colonial power in respect of the territory in question arising from valid international instruments, would therefore devolve upon the new state.⁵ This system, however, was not seen as satisfactory by many new states and several of them resorted to unilateral declarations, providing for a transitional period during which treaties entered into by the predecessor state would continue in force and be subject to review as to which should be accepted and which rejected.⁶ In the case of bilateral treaties, those not surviving under customary law would be regarded as having terminated at the end of the period.

However, the issue of state succession in international law is particularly complex. Many of the rules have developed in specific response to particular political changes and such changes have not always been treated in a consistent manner by the international community.⁷ The Arbitration Commission established by the Conference on Yugoslavia, for instance, emphasised that 'there are few well-established principles of international law that apply to state succession. Application of these principles is largely to be determined case by case, though the 1978 and 1983 Vienna Conventions do offer some guidance',⁸ while the German Federal Supreme Court noted in the *Espionage Prosecution* case that 'the problem of state succession is one of the most disputed areas of

⁴ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 178–82. This treaty provided for the responsibility of the successor states of the Austro-Hungarian Empire for the latter's public debts. See also the Italian Peace Treaty, 1947.

⁵ See e.g. the UK–Burma Agreement of 1947. See also N. Mugerwa, 'Subjects of International Law' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, pp. 247, 300–1, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, p. 186. See also O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 352–73, and Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 633.

⁶ See e.g. the Tanganyika statement of December 1961, quoted in Mugerwa, 'Subjects', p. 302, subsequently followed by similar declarations by, for example, Uganda, Kenya and Burundi. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, p. 192. In Zambia's case, it was stated that the question would be governed by customary international law: see O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, p. 115.

⁷ See Shaw, 'State Succession Revisited'.

⁸ Opinion No. 13, 96 ILR, pp. 726, 728. See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 236, and *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, p. 100.

international law'.⁹ The international aspects of succession are governed through the rules of customary international law. There are two relevant Conventions, the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978, which entered into force in 1996, and the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of State Property, Archives and Debts, 1983, which is not yet in force. However, many of the provisions contained in these Conventions reflect existing international law.

State succession itself may be briefly defined as the replacement of one state by another in the responsibility for the international relations of territory.¹⁰ However, this formulation conceals a host of problems since there is a complex range of situations that stretches from continuity of statehood through succession to non-succession. State succession is essentially an umbrella term for a phenomenon occurring upon a factual change in sovereign authority over a particular territory. In many circumstances it is unclear as to which rights and duties will flow from one authority to the other and upon which precise basis. Much will depend upon the circumstances of the particular case, for example whether what has occurred is a merger of two states to form a new state; the absorption of one state into another, continuing state; a cession of territory from one state to another; secession of part of a state to form a new state; the dissolution or dismemberment of a state to form two or more states, or the establishment of a new state as a result of decolonisation. The role of recognition and acquiescence in this process is especially important.

The relevant date of succession is the date at which the successor state replaces the predecessor state in the responsibility for the international relations of the territory to which the succession relates.¹¹ This is invariably the date of independence. However, problems may arise where successive dates of independence arise with regard to a state that is slowly disintegrating, such as Yugoslavia. The Yugoslav Arbitration Commission noted

⁹ Case No. 2 BGz 38/91, 94 ILR, pp. 68, 77–8.

¹⁰ See article 2 of the Vienna Conventions of both 1978 and 1983 and Opinion No. 1 of the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission, 92 ILR, pp. 162, 165. See also *Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal*, 83 ILR, pp. 1, 22 and the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 598; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 514.

¹¹ See article 2(1)e of the Vienna Convention on Succession of States to Treaties, 1978 and article 11 of the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in respect of State Property, Archives and Debts, 1983. See also Opinion No. 11 of the Yugoslav Arbitration Commission, 96 ILR, p. 719.

that the date of succession was a question of fact to be assessed in the light of all the relevant circumstances.¹²

Continuity and succession

Questions relating to continuity and succession may be particularly difficult.¹³ Where a new entity emerges, one has to decide whether it is a totally separate creature from its predecessor, or whether it is a continuation of it in a slightly different form. For example, it seems to be accepted that India is the same legal entity as British India and Pakistan is a totally new state.¹⁴ Yugoslavia was generally regarded as the successor state to Serbia,¹⁵ and Israel as a completely different being from British mandated Palestine.¹⁶ Cession or secession of territory from an existing state will not affect the continuity of the latter state, even though its territorial dimensions and population have been diminished. Pakistan after the independence of Bangladesh is a good example of this. In such a case, the existing state remains in being, complete with the rights and duties incumbent upon it, save for those specifically tied to the ceded or seceded territory. Where, however, a state is dismembered so that all of its territory falls within the territory of two or more states, these rights and duties will be allocated as between the successor states. In deciding whether continuity or succession has occurred with regard to one of the parties to the process, one has to consider the classical criteria of the creation of statehood,¹⁷ together with assertions as to status made by the parties directly concerned and the attitudes adopted by third states and international organisations.

This issue has arisen recently with regard to events concerning the Soviet Union and Yugoslavia. In the former case, upon the demise of the USSR, the Russian Federation took the position that it was the continuation of that state.¹⁸ This was asserted particularly with regard to membership of the UN.¹⁹ Of great importance was the Decision of the Council of Heads of State of the Commonwealth of Independent States

¹² See Opinion No. 11, 96 ILR, p. 719. However, see also the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues of June 2001, 41 ILM, 2002, p. 3. See further below, p. 989.

¹³ See e.g. M. Craven, 'The Problem of State Succession and the Identity of States under International Law', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 142.

¹⁴ See e.g. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1962, vol. II, pp. 101–3.

¹⁵ See e.g. O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 378–9. See also *Artukovic v. Rison* 784 F.2d 1354 (1986).

¹⁶ O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 155–7. ¹⁷ See above, chapter 5, p. 197.

¹⁸ See e.g. R. Müllerson, *International Law, Rights and Politics*, London, 1994, pp. 140–5, and Y. Blum, 'Russia Takes over the Soviet Union's Seat at the United Nations', 3 EJIL, 1992, p. 354.

¹⁹ See 31 ILM, 1992, p. 138.

on 21 December 1991 supporting Russia's continuance of the membership of the USSR in the UN, including permanent membership of the Security Council, and other international organisations.²⁰ Although not all of the instruments produced by the Commonwealth of Independent States at the end of 1991 were strictly consistent with the continuity principle,²¹ it is clear that Russia's claim to be the continuation of the USSR (albeit within different borders of course) was supported by the other former Republics and was accepted by international practice.²² A rather special situation arose with respect to the Baltic states (Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania), which became independent after the First World War, but were annexed by the Soviet Union in 1940. This annexation had been refused recognition by some states²³ and accepted *de facto* but not *de jure* by some others.²⁴ The Baltic states declared their independence in August 1991.²⁵ The European Community adopted a Declaration on 27 August 1991 welcoming 'the restoration of the sovereignty and independence of the Baltic states which they lost in 1941'.²⁶ The United States recognised the restoration of the independence of the Baltic states on 4 September 1991.²⁷ The implication of this internationally accepted restoration of independence would appear to be that these states do not constitute successor states to the former USSR and would therefore be

²⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 151.

²¹ For example, the Minsk Agreement signed by Russia, Belarus and Ukraine stated that the USSR 'as a subject of international law no longer existed', while the Alma Ata Declaration, signed by all of the former Soviet Republics except for Georgia (which acceded in 1993) and the Baltic states, stated that 'with the establishment of the Commonwealth of Independent States, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics ceases to exist', *ibid.*, pp. 147–9.

²² See e.g. the views expressed by the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 639 and 652–5, and the comments by an official of the FCO submitted to the Outer House of the Court of Session in Scotland in *Coreck Maritime GmbH v. Sevrybokholodflot*, UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 636. As to French practice recognising Russia as the continuation of the USSR, see AFDI, 1993, p. 1038. See also L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, p. 539. Note that there is a distinction between the issue of continuity or succession to membership of international organisations and continuity or succession generally. However, the nature and importance of the UN is such that the question of membership of that organisation is strong evidence of continuity generally.

²³ For example the USA: see *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 193. As to French practice, see AFDI, 1993, p. 1038 and *Gerbaud v. Meden* 18 ILR, p. 288.

²⁴ See, for example, the UK: see *A/S Tallinna Laevauhisus v. Tallinna Shipping Co. (The Vapper)* (1946) 79 LL. R 245 and the statement of the Secretary of State for the Foreign and Commonwealth Office on 16 January 1991, 183 HC Deb., col. 853.

²⁵ See Müllerson, *International Law*, pp. 119–20.

²⁶ See UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, p. 558. ²⁷ See Müllerson, *International Law*, p. 121.

free of such rights and obligations as would be consequential upon such succession.²⁸

In contrast to this situation, the issue of Yugoslavia has been more complicated and tragic. The collapse of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (the SFRY) took place over several months²⁹ as the various constituent republics proclaimed independence.³⁰ The process was regarded as having been completed in the view of the Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia³¹ by the time of its Opinion No. 8 issued on 4 July 1992.³² The Commission noted that a referendum had been held in Bosnia and Herzegovina in February and March 1992 producing a majority in favour of independence, while Serbia and Montenegro had established 'a new state, the "Federal Republic of Yugoslavia"' on 27 April 1992. The Commission noted that the common federal bodies of the SFRY had ceased to function, while Slovenia, Croatia and Bosnia had been recognised by the member states of the European Community and other states and had been admitted to membership of the UN.³³ The conclusion was that the former SFRY had ceased to exist.³⁴ This was particularly reaffirmed in Opinion No. 10.³⁵

Nevertheless, the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) continued to maintain that it constituted not a new state, but the continuation of the former SFRY. This claim was opposed by the other former republics of the SFRY³⁶ and by the international community.³⁷

²⁸ See Shaw, 'State Succession Revisited', pp. 56 ff.

²⁹ See generally M. Weller, 'The International Response to the Dissolution of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 569; Y. Blum, 'UN Membership of the "New" Yugoslavia: Continuity or Break?', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 830, and Müllerson, *International Law*, pp. 125 ff.

³⁰ Slovenia and Croatia on 25 June 1991 (postponed for three months) and Macedonia on 17 September 1991. Bosnia and Herzegovina adopted a resolution on sovereignty on 14 October 1991. The view taken at this point by Opinion No. 1 issued by the Arbitration Commission, established by the Conference on Yugoslavia convened by the European Community on 17 August 1991, was that 'the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia was in process of dissolution', 92 ILR, p. 166. See also M. Craven, 'The EC Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia', 66 BYIL, 1995, p. 333.

³¹ Which consisted of five of the Presidents of Constitutional Courts in EC countries, chaired by M. Badinter.

³² 92 ILR, p. 199.

³³ On 22 May 1992: see General Assembly resolutions, 46/236; 46/237 and 46/238. Note that the 'Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia' was admitted to the UN on 8 April 1993: see Security Council resolution 817 (1993).

³⁴ 92 ILR, p. 202. See also Opinion No. 9, *ibid.*, p. 203. ³⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 206.

³⁶ See e.g. E/CN.4/1995/121 and E/CN.4/1995/122.

³⁷ Note, for example, that both the International Monetary Fund (on 15 December 1992) and the World Bank (on 25 February 1993) found that the former Yugoslavia had ceased

The Security Council, for example, in resolution 777 (1992) declared that 'the state formerly known as the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia has ceased to exist' and that 'the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) cannot continue automatically the membership of the former Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia in the United Nations'.³⁸ However, the Yugoslav position changed in 2000 and it requested admission to the UN as a new member.³⁹ The question as to the legal status of Yugoslavia as between 1992 and 2000 remained a source of some controversy, since its admission to the UN in 2000 could not operate retroactively. The International Court in 2003 described this situation as *sui generis* and fraught with legal difficulties,⁴⁰ but in its judgment in the series of cases brought by Yugoslavia against NATO members following the Kosovo conflict in 1999, the Court concluded that Yugoslavia had been a member of the UN (and thus a party to the Statute of the Court) from 1 November 2000 and that the *sui generis* status of that state could not have amounted to membership of the UN.⁴¹ Accordingly, while in 1996 the Court decided that Yugoslavia could appear before it in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, it held in 2003 that the situation as to Yugoslavia's status was *sui generis* and not without legal difficulty but finally decided in 2004 that Yugoslavia could not bring an action against NATO states as it had not been a member of the UN and thus a party to the Statute in 1999.⁴² In its decision on the merits in the *Genocide Convention* case in 2007, the Court noted that its decision of 1996 constituted *res judicata* and could not be re-opened in the light of its subsequent rulings.⁴³

State succession also covers the situation of unification. One method of unification is by the creation of a totally new state, such as the merger of the Yemen Arab Republic and the People's Democratic Republic of

to exist: see P. R. Williams, 'State Succession and the International Financial Institutions', 43 ICLQ, 1994, pp. 776, 802–3.

³⁸ See also Security Council resolution 757 (1992) and General Assembly resolution 47/1. See also the letter dated 29 September 1992 from the UN Legal Counsel carefully analysing the legal situation in terms of representation, A/47/485, Annex and the *Genocide Convention* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 13–14; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 28–9.

³⁹ It was so admitted on 1 November 2000: see General Assembly resolution 55/12. On 4 February 2003, the name of the country was officially changed from the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia to Serbia and Montenegro and thence to Serbia upon the secession of Montenegro on 28 June 2006: see General Assembly resolution 60/264. See also Crawford, *Creation of States*, pp. 707 ff.

⁴⁰ See *Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 July 1996*, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 7, 31.

⁴¹ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1335 ff.

⁴² See the critical comments on this 'change of position' by the Court by seven judges in their joint declaration, *ibid*, pp. 1353, 1355–7.

⁴³ ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 105 ff.

Yemen. Under the agreement between the two states of 22 April 1990 the establishment of the Republic of Yemen was accomplished by way of a merger of the two existing states into a new entity with a new name.⁴⁴ Unification may also be achieved by the absorption of one state by another in circumstances where the former simply disappears and the latter continues, albeit with increased territory and population. Such was the case with Germany.

Following the conclusion of the Second World War, Germany was divided into the US, USSR, UK and French zones of occupation and a special Berlin area not forming part of any zone.⁴⁵ Supreme authority was exercised initially by the Commanders-in-Chief of the Armed Forces of the Four Allied Powers⁴⁶ and subsequently by the three Allied High Commissioners in Bonn, with parallel developments occurring in the Soviet zone. The Convention on Relations between the Three Powers and the Federal Republic of Germany (FRG), which came into force in 1955, terminated the occupation regime and abolished the Allied High Commission. The Three Allied Powers retained, however, their rights and obligations with regard to Berlin⁴⁷ and relating to 'Germany as a whole, including the reunification of Germany and a peace settlement'.⁴⁸ Recognition of the German Democratic Republic (GDR) was on the same basis, i.e. as a sovereign state having full authority over internal and external affairs subject to the rights and responsibilities of the Four Powers in respect of Berlin and Germany as a whole.⁴⁹ Accordingly, it was accepted that in some sense Germany as a whole continued to exist as a state in international law.⁵⁰ The question of the relationship of the two German states to each other and with respect to the pre-1945 German state has occasioned considerable interest

⁴⁴ Article 1 of the Agreement declared that 'there shall be established between the State of the Yemen Arab Republic and the State of the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen . . . a full and complete union, based on a merger, in which the international personality of each of them shall be integrated in a single international person called "the Republic of Yemen": see 30 ILM, 1991, p. 820.

⁴⁵ See e.g. the *Fourth Report of the Foreign Affairs Committee, Session 1989–90*, June 1990. Note that part of the Soviet zone was placed under Soviet administration (the city of Königsberg, now Kaliningrad and the surrounding area) and the territory of Germany east of the Oder–Neisse line was placed under Polish administration.

⁴⁶ Article 2 of the Agreement on Control Machinery in Germany of 14 November 1944, as amended by the Agreement of 1 May 1945.

⁴⁷ See, in particular, I. Hendry and M. Wood, *The Legal Status of Berlin*, Cambridge, 1987. See also Cmd 8571, 1952 and the Quadripartite Agreement on Berlin, Cmnd 5135, 1971.

⁴⁸ Article 2 of the Relations Convention. Parallel developments took place in the Soviet zone. Note the USSR–German Democratic Republic Treaty of 1955.

⁴⁹ See the Fourth Report, p. 2. ⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 3.

and generated no little complexity, not least because the Federal German Republic always claimed to be the successor of the pre-1945 Germany.⁵¹

On 18 May 1990 a treaty between the two German states was signed establishing a Monetary, Economic and Social Union. In essence this integrated the GDR into the FRG economic system, with the Deutsche Mark becoming legal tender in the GDR and with the Bundesbank becoming the central bank for the GDR as well as for the FRG.⁵² On 31 August 1990, a second treaty was signed between the two German states which provided for unification on 3 October 1990 by the accession of the GDR under article 23 of the Basic Law of the Federal Republic. On 12 September 1990 the Treaty on the Final Settlement With Respect to Germany was signed by the two German states and the Four Allied Powers.⁵³ This latter agreement settled definitively matters arising out of the Second World War. It confirmed the borders of unified Germany as those of the FRG and the GDR (i.e. the post-war Oder–Neisse frontier with Poland), provided for a reduction in the armed forces of Germany and for the withdrawal of Soviet forces from the territory of the GDR. The Four Allied Powers terminated their rights and responsibilities regarding Berlin and Germany as a whole so that the united Germany has full sovereignty over its internal and external affairs.⁵⁴

The Treaty between the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic of 31 August 1990 clearly provided that the latter was simply assimilated into the former. Article 1 of the Treaty stipulated that, ‘upon the accession of the German Democratic Republic to the Federal Republic of Germany in accordance with article 23 of the Basic Law⁵⁵ taking effect on 3 October 1990, the Länder of Brandenburg, Mecklenburg–Western Pomerania, Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt and Thuringia⁵⁶ shall become Länder of the Federal Republic of Germany’. This approach, whereby

⁵¹ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 78–9; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1963, vol. 1, pp. 332–8, and F. A. Mann, ‘Germany’s Present Legal Status Revisited’, 16 ICLQ, 1967, p. 760. See also the decision of the Federal Constitutional Court of the Federal Republic of Germany in *Re Treaty on the Basis of Relations Between the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic* 1972, 78 ILR, p. 149.

⁵² See 29 ILM, 1990, p. 1108. ⁵³ See 29 ILM, 1990, p. 1186.

⁵⁴ Note that by the Declaration of 1 October 1990, the Allied Powers suspended all rights and responsibilities relating to Berlin and to Germany as a whole upon the unification of Germany, pending the entry into force of the Treaty on the Final Settlement: see Annex 2 of the Observations by the Government to the Fourth Report, October 1990, Cm 1246.

⁵⁵ This provided that the Basic Law was to apply in Greater Berlin and specified *Länder* (forming the Federal Republic of Germany), while ‘in other parts of Germany it shall be put into force on their accession’. This method had been used to achieve the accession of the Saarland in 1956.

⁵⁶ I.e. the constituent provinces of the German Democratic Republic.

unified Germany came about by a process of absorption of the constituent provinces of the former German Democratic Republic into the existing Federal Republic of Germany by way of the extension of the constitution of the latter, is reinforced by other provisions in the Unification Treaty. Article 7, for example, provided that the financial system of the FRG 'shall be extended to the territory specified in article 3' (i.e. the *Länder* of the former GDR), while article 8 declared that 'upon the accession taking effect, federal law shall enter into force in the territory specified in article 3'.⁵⁷ International practice also demonstrates acceptance of this approach.⁵⁸ No state objected to this characterisation of the process.⁵⁹ In other words, the view taken by the parties directly concerned and accepted by the international community demonstrates acceptance of the unification as one of the continuity of the Federal Republic of Germany and the disappearance or extinction of the German Democratic Republic.

Succession to treaties⁶⁰

The importance of treaties within the international legal system requires no repetition.⁶¹ They constitute the means by which a variety of legal obligations are imposed or rights conferred upon states in a wide range of matters from the significant to the mundane. Treaties are founded upon the pre-existing and indispensable norm of *pacta sunt servanda* or the

⁵⁷ Note also that under article 11, treaties entered into by the Federal Republic of Germany would continue and extend to the *Länder* of the former German Democratic Republic, while under article 12, the question of the continuation, amendment or expiry of treaties entered into by the former German Democratic Republic was to be discussed individually with contracting parties: see below, p. 971.

⁵⁸ Such as the European Community. See, for example, GATT document L/6759 of 31 October 1990 in which the Commission of the European Community stated that Germany had become united by way of the accession of the GDR to the FRG. See generally T. Oeter, 'German Unification and State Succession', 51 *ZaöRV*, 1991, p. 349; J. Frowein, 'Germany Reunited', *ibid.*, p. 333, and R. W. Piotrowicz and S. K. N. Blay, *The Unification of Germany in International and Domestic Law*, Amsterdam, 1997. See also UK Foreign Office affidavit, UKMIL, 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 520.

⁵⁹ See also *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 210.

⁶⁰ Note particularly the work of the International Law Commission on this topic: see *Yearbook of the International Law Commission*, 1974, vol. II, part I, pp. 157 ff., and the five Reports of Sir Humphrey Waldock (*ibid.*, 1968, vol. II, p. 88; 1969, vol. II, p. 45; 1970, vol. II, p. 25; 1971, vol. II, part I, p. 143 and 1972, vol. II, p. 1) and the Report of Sir Francis Vallat (*ibid.*, 1974, vol. II, part I, p. 1). See also the International Law Association, *The Effect of Independence on Treaties*, London, 1965; A. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law and Practice*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2007, chapter 21, and M. Craven, *The Decolonisation of International Law: State Succession and the Law of Treaties*, Oxford, 2007.

⁶¹ See above, chapter 16.

acceptance of treaty commitments as binding. Treaties may fall within the following categories: multilateral treaties, including the specific category of treaties concerning international human rights; treaties concerned with territorial definition and regimes; bilateral treaties; and treaties that are treated as 'political' in the circumstances.

The rules concerning succession to treaties are those of customary international law together with the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978, which came into force in 1996 and which applies with regard to a succession taking place after that date.⁶²

As far as devolution agreements are concerned, article 8 of the Convention provides that such agreements of themselves cannot affect third states and this reaffirms an accepted principle, while article 9, dealing with unilateral declarations, emphasises that such a declaration by the successor state alone cannot of itself affect the rights and obligations of the state and third states. In other words, it would appear, the consent of the other parties to the treaties in question or an agreement with the predecessor state with regard to bilateral issues is required.

Categories of treaties: territorial, political and other treaties

Treaties may for succession purposes be generally divided into three categories. The first relates to territorially grounded treaties, under which rights or obligations are imposed directly upon identifiable territorial units. The prime example of these are agreements relating to territorial definition. Waldock, in his first Report on Succession of States and Governments in Respect of Treaties in 1968, declared that 'the weight both of opinion and practice seems clearly to be in favour of the view that boundaries established by treaties remain untouched by the mere fact of a succession. The opinion of jurists seems, indeed, to be unanimous on the point ... [and] State practice in favour of the continuance in force of boundaries established by treaty appears to be such as to justify the conclusion that a general rule of international law exists to that effect',⁶³ while Bedjaoui has noted that 'in principle the territory devolves upon the successor State on the basis of the pre-existing boundaries'.⁶⁴

For reasons relating to the maintenance of international stability, this approach has been clearly supported by state practice. The Latin American concept of *uti possidetis juris*, whereby the administrative divisions of the

⁶² See article 7.

⁶³ *Yearbook of the International Law Commission*, 1968, vol. II, pp. 92–3.

⁶⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 112.

former Spanish empire were to constitute the boundaries of the newly independent states in South America in the first third of the nineteenth century was the first internationally accepted expression of this approach.⁶⁵ It was echoed in US practice⁶⁶ and explicitly laid down in resolution 16 of the meeting of Heads of State and Government of the Organisation of African Unity in 1964, by which all member states pledged themselves to respect colonial borders.⁶⁷ The principle of succession to colonial borders was underlined by the International Court in the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case.⁶⁸ The extension of the principle of *uti possidetis* from decolonisation to the creation of new states out of existing independent states is supported by international practice, taking effect as the transformation of administrative boundaries into international boundaries generally.⁶⁹ Of course, much will depend upon the particular situation, including the claims of the states concerned and the attitude adopted by third states and international organisations, particularly the United Nations. This principle regarding the continuity of borders in the absence of consent to the contrary is reinforced by other principles of international law, such as the provision enshrined in article 62(2) of the Vienna Convention on the Law

⁶⁵ See, for example, the *Colombia–Venezuela* arbitral award, 1 RIAA, pp. 223, 228 and the *Beagle Channel* award, 52 ILR, p. 93. See also A. O. Cukwurah, *The Settlement of Boundary Disputes in International Law*, Manchester, 1967, p. 114; O’Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 273 ff., and P. De La Pradelle, *La Frontière*, Paris, 1928, pp. 86–7.

⁶⁶ See the view of the US Secretary of State in 1856 that the US regarded it ‘as an established principle of the public law and of international right that when a European colony in America becomes independent it succeeds to the territorial limits of the colony as it stood in the hands of the present country’, Manning’s *Diplomatic Correspondence*, vol. III (Great Britain), doc. 2767, cited in Cukwurah, *Settlement*, p. 106.

⁶⁷ See, for example, M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 185–7, and other works cited in chapter 10, p. 525.

⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 554, 565; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 469–70. See also the Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia, which noted in Opinion No. 3 with respect to the status of the former internal boundaries between Serbia on the one hand and Croatia and Bosnia and Herzegovina on the other, that ‘except where otherwise agreed, the former boundaries become frontiers protected by international law. This conclusion follows from the principle of respect for the territorial status quo and in particular, from the principle of *uti possidetis*. *Uti possidetis* . . . is today recognised as a general principle’, 92 ILR, pp. 170, 171.

⁶⁹ See also article 5 of the Minsk Agreement establishing the Commonwealth of Independent States of 8 December 1991 and the Alma Ata Declaration of 21 December 1991, which reaffirmed the territorial integrity of the former Republics of the USSR. Note also that under the Treaty on the General Delimitation of the Common State Frontiers of 29 October 1992, the boundary between the two new states of the Czech Republic and Slovakia, emerging out of Czechoslovakia on 1 January 1993, was to be that of the administrative border existing between the Czech and Slovak parts of the former state. See further above, chapter 10, p. 528.

of Treaties, which stipulates that a fundamental change in circumstances may not be invoked as a ground for terminating or withdrawing from a treaty that establishes a boundary.⁷⁰ In addition, article 11 of the Vienna Convention on Succession to Treaties, although in terminology which is cautious and negative, specifies that

A succession of States does not as such affect:

- (a) a boundary established by treaty; or
- (b) obligations and rights established by a treaty and relating to the regime of a boundary.

The International Court dealt with succession to boundary treaties generally in the *Libya/Chad* case, where it was declared that 'once agreed, the boundary stands, for any other approach would vitiate the fundamental principle of the stability of boundaries, the importance of which has been repeatedly emphasised by the Court'.⁷¹ More particularly, the Court emphasised that 'a boundary established by treaty thus achieves a permanence which the treaty itself does not necessarily enjoy. The treaty can cease to be in force without in any way affecting the continuance of the boundary . . . when a boundary has been the subject of agreement, the continued existence of that boundary is not dependent upon the continuing life of the treaty under which the boundary is agreed'.⁷² It is particularly important to underline that the succession takes place, therefore, not as such to the boundary treaty but rather to the boundary as established by the treaty. The Tribunal in the *Eritrea/Yemen* case emphasised that boundary and territorial treaties made between two parties constituted a special category of treaties representing a 'legal reality which necessarily impinges upon third states, because they have effect *erga omnes*'.⁷³

Territorially grounded treaties extend somewhat beyond the establishment of boundaries into the more controversial area of agreements creating other territorial regimes, such agreements being termed 'localised' or 'real' or 'dispositive'.⁷⁴ Examples of such arrangements might include demilitarised zones, rights of transit, port facilities and other servitudes generally.⁷⁵ Despite some reservations by members of the

⁷⁰ See above, chapter 16, p. 950. ⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 37; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 36.

⁷² *Ibid.* ⁷³ 114 ILR, pp. 1, 48.

⁷⁴ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 231 ff. See also Udokang, *Succession*, pp. 327 ff.

⁷⁵ See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 244–8. See also the *Free Zones* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 46, 1932, p. 145; 6 AD, pp. 362, 364 and the *Aaland Islands* case, LNOJ, Sp. Supp. No. 3, 1920, p. 18. See above, chapter 10, p. 538, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, pp. 157 and 196 ff. Note that, by article 12(3), the provisions of article 12 do not apply to treaties

International Law Commission⁷⁶ and governments,⁷⁷ article 12 of the Vienna Convention provides that a succession of states does not as such affect obligations or rights relating to the use of any territory or to restrictions upon its use established by a treaty for the benefit of any foreign state, group of states or all states and considered as attaching to the territory in question. The International Court declared that article 12 reflected a rule of customary law in addressing the issue of territorial regimes in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case and confirmed that treaties concerning water rights or navigation on rivers constituted territorial treaties.⁷⁸ It also noted that since the 1977 treaty in question in that case between Hungary and Czechoslovakia established *inter alia* the navigational regime for an important section of an international waterway, a territorial regime within the meaning of article 12 was created.⁷⁹

Political or 'personal' treaties establish rights or obligations deemed to be particularly linked to the regime in power in the territory in question and to its political orientation. Examples of such treaties would include treaties of alliance or friendship or neutrality.⁸⁰ Such treaties do not bind successor states for they are seen as exceptionally closely tied to the nature of the state which has ceased to exist. However, it is not at all clear what the outer limits are to the concept of political treaties and difficulties over definitional problems do exist. Apart from the categories of territorial and political treaties, where succession rules in general are clear, other treaties cannot be so easily defined or categorised for succession purposes and must be analysed separately.

Succession to treaties generally

Practice seems to suggest 'a tendency'⁸¹ or 'a general inclination'⁸² to succession to 'some categories of multilateral treaties'⁸³ or to 'certain

providing for the establishment of foreign military bases on the territory concerned. See further Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 633 ff., and O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 12–23 and 231 ff.

⁷⁶ See, for example, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. I, pp. 206–7.

⁷⁷ See, for example, *UN Conference on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties*, 1977, Comments of Governments (A/Conf.80/5), pp. 145, 153, 161, 167, 170, 171 and 173.

⁷⁸ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 72; 116 ILR, p. 1.

⁷⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 71–2. See also J. Klabbers, 'Cat on a Hot Tin Roof: The World Court, State Succession and the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros* case', 11 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 1998, p. 345.

⁸⁰ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 2, 80 and 136, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 211.

⁸¹ O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, p. 212.

⁸² Udokang, *Succession*, p. 225.

⁸³ O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, p. 213.

multilateral conventions'.⁸⁴ However, this 'modern-classical' approach is difficult to sustain as a general rule of comprehensive applicability.⁸⁵ One simply has to examine particular factual situations, take note of the claims made by the relevant states and mark the reactions of third states. In the case of bilateral treaties, the starting-point is from a rather different perspective. In such cases, the importance of the individual contractual party is more evident, since only two states are involved and the treaty is thus more clearly reciprocal in nature. Accordingly, the presumption is one of non-succession, depending upon all the particular circumstances of the case. Practice with regard to the US, Panama, Belgium and Finland supports the 'clean slate' approach.⁸⁶

Absorption and merger

Where one state is absorbed by another and no new state is created (such as the 1990 accession to the Federal Republic of Germany of the *Länder* of the German Democratic Republic), the former becomes extinct whereas the latter simply continues albeit in an enlarged form. The basic situation is that the treaties of the former, certainly in so far as they may be deemed 'political',⁸⁷ die with the state concerned,⁸⁸ although territorial treaties defining the boundaries of the entity absorbed will continue to define such boundaries. Other treaties are also likely to be regarded as at an end.⁸⁹ However, treaties of the absorbing state continue and will extend to the territory of the extinguished state. These principles are, of course, subject to contrary intention expressed by the parties in question. For example, in the case of German unification, article 11 coupled with Annex I of the Unification Treaty, 1990 excluded from the extension of treaties of the Federal Republic of Germany to the territory of the former German Democratic Republic a series of treaties dealing primarily with NATO matters.

Article 31(1) of the Vienna Convention on Succession to Treaties provides that where two or more states unite and form one successor state, treaties continue in force unless the successor state and the other state party or states parties otherwise agree or it appears that this would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically

⁸⁴ Udokang, *Succession*, p. 225.

⁸⁵ But see Jenks' view that multilateral law-making treaties devolve upon successor states, 'State Succession in Respect of Law-making Treaties', 29 BYIL, 1952, pp. 105, 108–10.

⁸⁶ See, for example, Udokang, *Succession*, pp. 412–15.

⁸⁷ See here, for example, *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 211; Oeter, 'German Unification', p. 363, and Koskenniemi and Lehto, 'La Succession', p. 203.

⁸⁸ *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 211. ⁸⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 212–13.

change the conditions for its operation. Article 31(2) provides that such treaties would apply only in respect of the part of the territory of the successor state in respect of which the treaty was in force at the date of the succession of states. This is so unless the successor state makes a notification that the multilateral treaty in question shall apply in respect of its entire territory⁹⁰ or, if the multilateral treaty in question is one in which by virtue either of its terms or by reason of the limited number of participants and its object and purpose the participation of any other state must be considered as requiring the consent of all the parties,⁹¹ the successor state and the other states parties otherwise agree. This general principle would apply also in the case of a bilateral treaty, unless the successor state and the other state party otherwise agree.⁹²

While these provisions bear some logic with regard to the situation where two states unite to form a new third state,⁹³ they do not really take into account the special circumstances of unification where one state simply takes over another state in circumstances where the latter is extinguished. In these situations, the model provided by German unification appears to be fully consistent with international law and of value as a precedent. Article 11 of the Unification Treaty of 31 August 1990 provided that all international treaties and agreements to which the FRG was a contracting party were to retain their validity and that the rights and obligations arising therefrom would apply also to the territory of the GDR.⁹⁴ Article 12 provided that international treaties of the GDR were to be discussed with the parties concerned with a view to regulating or confirming their continued application, adjustment or expiry, taking into account protection of confidence, the interests of the state concerned, the

⁹⁰ Unless it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty in respect of the entire territory of the successor state would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the conditions for its operation (article 31(3)).

⁹¹ Article 17(3).

⁹² See the examples of the union of Egypt and Syria to form the United Arab Republic between 1958 and 1961 and the union of Tanganyika and Zanzibar in 1964, where the treaties of the component territories continued in force within those territorial limits: see O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 71–8. The article 31 situation has to be distinguished from the situation involving a 'newly independent state', see article 29 and below, p. 977, and from the article 15 situation, where part of the territory of one state is transferred to another state, below, p. 973.

⁹³ But see above, pp. 967 ff., with regard to boundary treaties and below, p. 981, regarding human rights treaties.

⁹⁴ However, as noted, Annex I to the Treaty provided that certain listed treaties are not to apply to the territory of the former GDR. These treaties relate in essence to NATO activities.

treaty obligations of the FRG as well as the principles of a free, democratic order governed by the rule of law, and respecting the competence of the European Communities. The united Germany would then determine its position after such consultations. It was also stipulated that should the united Germany intend to accede to international organisations or other multilateral treaties of which the GDR, but not the FRG, was a member, agreement was to be reached with the respective contracting parties and the European Communities, where the competence of the latter was affected. The situation thus differs from the scenario envisaged in article 31 of the 1978 treaty.⁹⁵

In the case of mergers to form a new third state, the formulation in article 31 is more relevant and acceptable. Practice appears to support that approach. For example, in the cases of both the Egypt–Syria merger to form the United Arab Republic in 1958⁹⁶ and the union of Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form Tanzania in 1964,⁹⁷ the continuation of treaties in the territories to which they had applied before the respective mergers was stipulated.⁹⁸

Cession of territory from one state to another

When part of the territory of one state becomes part of the territory of another state, the general rule is that the treaties of the former cease to apply to the territory while the treaties of the latter extend to the territory. Article 15 of the Vienna Convention on Succession of States to Treaties, dealing with this ‘moving-frontiers’ rule,⁹⁹ provides for this, with the proviso that where it appears from the treaty concerned or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty to the territory would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the condition for its operation, this extension should not happen. This is basically consistent with state practice. When, for example, the US annexed Hawaii in 1898, its treaties were extended to the islands and

⁹⁵ It should also be noted that the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, Washington, 1987, p. 108, provides that ‘when a state is absorbed by another state, the international agreements of the absorbed state are terminated and the international agreements of the absorbing state become applicable to the territory of the absorbed state’.

⁹⁶ See O’Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 71 ff., and D. Cottrán, ‘Some Legal Aspects of the Formation of the United Arab Republic and the United Arab States’, 8 ICLQ, 1959, p. 346.

⁹⁷ See O’Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 77 ff.

⁹⁸ See also *Ltd Partnership Z v. High Court (Obergericht) of the Canton of Thurgau*, Federal Supreme Court, Insolvency Chamber, 15 June 2005, partly published as BGE 131 III 448.

⁹⁹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, p. 208.

Belgium was informed that US–Belgium commercial agreements were thenceforth to be applied to Hawaii also.¹⁰⁰ Similarly it was held that after 1919, German treaties would not apply to Alsace-Lorraine, while French treaties would thereafter be extended to that territory.¹⁰¹ Article 15 would therefore seem to reiterate existing custom,¹⁰² although there have been indications to the contrary in the past.¹⁰³

Secession from an existing state to form a new state or states

The factual situations out of which a separation or dismemberment takes place are many and varied. They range from a break-up of a previously created entity into its previous constituent elements, as in the 1961 dissolution of the United Arab Republic into the pre-1958 states of Egypt and Syria or the dissolution of the Federation of Mali, to the complete fragmenting of a state into a variety of successors not being co-terminous with previous territorial units, such as the demise of Austria-Hungary in 1919.¹⁰⁴ Where there is a separation or secession from an independent state which continues, in order to create a new state, the former continues as a state, albeit territorially reduced, with its international rights and obligations intact.¹⁰⁵ With regard to the seceding territory itself, the leading view appears to be that the newly created state will commence international life free from the treaty rights and obligations applicable to its former sovereign.¹⁰⁶ Reasons for this include the important point that it is difficult to maintain as a rule of general application that states that have not signed particular treaties are bound by them.

State practice has essentially reinforced the basic proposition. When Belgium seceded from the Netherlands in 1830, it was deemed to start

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 377–8. ¹⁰¹ *Ibid.*, p. 379.

¹⁰² The exception to the 'moving treaty-frontiers' rule reflects the concept that 'political treaties' would not pass, *ibid.*, p. 25. See further above, p. 964, with regard to the reunification of Germany in 1990. See also article IX of Annex 1 of the Anglo-Chinese Agreement, 1984 on Hong Kong, below, p. 1008.

¹⁰³ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 374 ff.

¹⁰⁴ *Ibid.*, chapter 10.

¹⁰⁵ Save, of course, with regard to those that relate solely to the seceding territory.

¹⁰⁶ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 88 ff., and Oppenheim's *International Law*, p. 222. See also the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, p. 108, which provides that 'When part of a state becomes a new state, the new state does not succeed to the international agreements to which the predecessor state was party, unless, expressly or by implication, it accepts such agreements and the other party or parties thereto agree or acquiesce.'

international life with 'a clean slate' and the same approach was adopted with regard to the secession of Cuba from Spain in 1898 and that of Panama from Colombia in 1903. Similarly, when Finland seceded from the Russian Empire after the First World War, the view taken by the UK and the US was that Finland was not bound by the existing Russian treaties dealing with the territory.¹⁰⁷

While essentially this is the position taken by the Vienna Convention on Succession to Treaties with regard to decolonised territories (discussed in the following subsection), article 34 provides that 'any treaty in force at the date of the succession of states in respect of the entire territory of the predecessor state continues in force in respect of each successor state so formed'. Any treaty which applied only to part of the territory of the predecessor state which has become a successor state will continue in force in respect of the latter only. These provisions will not apply if the states concerned otherwise agree or if it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty in respect of the successor state would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the conditions for its operation.¹⁰⁸

As far as the predecessor state is concerned in such a situation (assuming the predecessor state remains in existence), article 35 provides that existing treaties remain in force after the succession in respect of the remaining territory, unless the parties otherwise agree or it is established that the treaty related only to the territory which has separated from the predecessor state or it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty in respect of the predecessor state would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the conditions for its operation.

The approach in the Vienna Convention was adopted on the basis of the International Law Commission draft which had taken the position that 'in modern international law having regard to the need for the maintenance of the system of multilateral treaties and of the stability of treaty relationships, as a general rule the principle of *de jure* continuity should apply'.¹⁰⁹ This may have been an attempt to distinguish decolonised territories (termed 'newly independent states' in the Convention) from other

¹⁰⁷ *Yearbook of the International Law Commission*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, p. 263. See also O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 96–100, and *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 222. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, pp. 265–6.

¹⁰⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, p. 260 ff.

¹⁰⁹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, p. 169. See also UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 482.

examples of independence, but it constitutes a rather different approach from the traditional one and the formulation in article 34 cannot be taken as necessarily reflective of customary law. Much will depend upon the views of the states concerned.

What can be said is that the requirements of international stability in certain areas in particular will stimulate states generally to encourage an approach of succession to multilateral obligations by the newly independent secessionist states. The Guidelines on Recognition of New States in Eastern Europe and the Soviet Union adopted by the European Community on 16 December 1991 certainly noted that the common position of EC member states on recognition required *inter alia* 'acceptance of all relevant commitments with regard to disarmament and nuclear non-proliferation as well as to security and regional stability'.¹¹⁰ But, of course, conditions attached to the essentially political process of recognition are not the same as accepting consequences arising out of succession itself. However, there were certainly indications that the United States was taking the position that Russia and the non-Baltic successor states to the USSR should be regarded as bound by some at least of the Soviet treaties.¹¹¹ This approach was clearly developed in view of the political need to ensure continuity with regard to arms control agreements and mechanisms.¹¹² Of course, the impact of Russia constituting the continuance of the Soviet Union is to maintain in force for the former the obligations of the latter, but there was concern about the control of the nuclear and other weapons subject to treaty regulation which were now situated in the successor states to the USSR. The signing of agreements with the major successor states appears to have mitigated the strength of this particular approach. Indeed, it should be noted that separate agreements with the nuclear successor states of Ukraine, Belarus and Kazakhstan were apparently required in order to ensure the compliance of those states with regard to the arms control treaties binding upon the Soviet Union,¹¹³ although these states

¹¹⁰ See 92 ILR, pp. 173–4.

¹¹¹ See Müllerson, 'Continuity'. See also T. Love, 'International Agreement Obligations after the Soviet Union's Break-up: Current United States Practice and its Consistency with International Law', 26 *Vanderbilt Journal of Transnational Law*, 1993, pp. 373, 396, who notes that the US practice of arguing that treaties are binding upon the republics (apart from the special case of Russia) is inconsistent with the views expressed in the US Restatement, *ibid.*, p. 410. The views of the US Restatement are referred to above, p. 974, note 106.

¹¹² Müllerson, 'Continuity', at pp. 398–401.

¹¹³ See 'US–CIS Protocol to START Treaty', 86 AJIL, 1992, p. 799. See also the Agreement on Joint Measures with Respect to Nuclear Weapons, 31 ILM, 1992, p. 152, and Müllerson, *International Law*, pp. 150–2.

had agreed generally to be bound by international obligations deriving from treaties signed by the USSR.¹¹⁴ The US and Ukraine agreed by an exchange of notes on 10 May 1995 that in so far as bilateral treaties between them were concerned, article 34 of the Convention would be taken as 'a point of departure'. A treaty-by-treaty review by the two states was conducted, as a result of which it was decided that some treaties had become obsolete, others would not be applied and others, specifically listed in the Annex to the note, were to be regarded as still in force.¹¹⁵

Whether in view of the greatly increased network of multilateral treaties and the vastly enhanced interdependence of states founded and manifested upon such agreement, it is possible to say that the international community is moving towards a position of a presumption of continuity, is in reality difficult to establish. Certainly the potentially disruptive effect of the creation of new states needs to be minimised, but it is far too early to be able to declare that continuity or a presumption of continuity is now the established norm.

'Newly independent states'

The post-Second World War period saw the dismantling of the overseas European empires. Based in international legal terms upon the principle of self-determination, which was founded upon a distinction between such territories and the metropolitan authority, decolonisation produced a number of changes in the international legal system.¹¹⁶ The Vienna Convention on Succession to Treaties sought to establish a special category relating to decolonised territories. These were termed 'newly independent states' and defined in article 2(1)f as successor states 'the territory of which immediately before the date of the succession of states was a dependent territory for the international relations of which the predecessor state was responsible'.¹¹⁷ Article 16 laid down the general rule that such states were not bound to maintain in force or to become a party to any treaty by reason only of the fact that the treaty had been in force regarding the territory in question at the date of succession. This approach was deemed to build upon the traditional 'clean slate' principle applying to new states

¹¹⁴ Alma Ata Declaration, 21 December 1991, 21 ILM, 1992, pp. 148, 149.

¹¹⁵ See 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 761. The note specifically excluded matters concerning succession to USA-USSR bilateral arms limitation and related agreements, with regard to which special mechanisms had been established.

¹¹⁶ See above, chapter 5, p. 251.

¹¹⁷ See also the Vienna Convention on Succession to State Property, Archives and Debt, 1983, article 2(1)e.

created out of existing states, such as the United States and the Spanish American Republics when they had obtained independence.¹¹⁸ This was also consistent with the view taken by the UN Secretariat in 1947 when discussing Pakistan's position in relation to the organisation, where it was noted that 'the territory which breaks off, Pakistan, will be a new state; it will not have the treaty rights and obligations of the old state'.¹¹⁹

It should be noted that the provision dealing with bilateral treaties was more vigorously worded, no doubt because the personal and reciprocal nature of such treaties is that more obvious, or in the words of the International Law Commission 'dominant', and also because, unlike the case of multilateral treaties, there is no question of the treaty coming into force between the new state and the predecessor state.¹²⁰ While state practice demonstrates some continuity in areas such as air services agreements and trade agreements, the Commission felt that this did not reflect a customary rule, as distinct from the will of the states concerned, and that the fundamental rule with regard to bilateral treaties was that their continuance in force after independence was a matter for agreement, express or tacit, between the newly independent state and the other state party which had contracted with the predecessor state.¹²¹ Article 24 notes that a bilateral treaty in force for the territory in question is considered to be in force for the newly independent state and the other state party where they expressly so agree or by reason of their conduct they are to be considered as having so agreed.¹²²

There is, of course, a distinction between a new state being obliged to become a party to a treaty binding the predecessor state and having the facility or perhaps even the right to become a party to that treaty. Practice shows that new states may benefit from a 'fast track' method of participating in treaties. For example, new states are not required to adhere to the formal mechanism of accession as if they were existing

¹¹⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, p. 211. See also, as to the theoretical basis of the 'clean slate' principle, the Separate Opinion of Judge Weeramantry, *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia)*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 644; 115 ILR, p. 10.

¹¹⁹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, p. 211.

¹²⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 237. ¹²¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 237–9.

¹²² The above rules also apply to newly independent states (as defined in the Convention) formed from two or more territories: see article 30 (referring to articles 16–29). Where a treaty affects one or more but not all of the territories in question, there is a presumption that on succession it will apply to the newly independent state, *ibid.* See also *Re Bottali* 78 ILR, p. 105 and *M v. Federal Department of Justice and Police* 75 ILR, p. 107.

non-party states¹²³ and article 17 of the Vienna Convention provides that a 'newly independent state' may by a notification of succession establish its status as a party to a multilateral treaty which at the date of succession was in force in respect of the territory to which the succession relates, unless it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty in respect of the newly independent state would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the conditions of its operation. In addition, where it appears from the nature of the treaty itself that the participation of any other state would require the consent of all the parties, such consent must be forthcoming for the new state to participate.¹²⁴

The 'clean slate' principle has also in practice been mitigated by the terms of the process by which many colonies achieved independence. A number of colonial powers, particularly the United Kingdom, adopted the practice of concluding devolution agreements by which certain treaties signed on behalf of the territory becoming independent continued to apply to the newly independent state.¹²⁵ While such agreements would be considered *res inter alios* with regard to third states, they were of value in establishing the appropriate framework for relations between the former colonial power and the new state. Other newly independent states adopted the practice of making unilateral declarations by which they made known their views as to treaty succession. Such unilateral declarations often took the form of specifying that treaties would continue in force for an interim period during which time they would be reviewed,¹²⁶ but they could not in themselves, of course, alter treaty relationships with third states.¹²⁷ Devices such as devolution agreements and unilateral declarations were of value, however, in mitigating the effects that an absolute 'clean slate' approach might otherwise have had.

Dissolution of states

Where an existing state comes to an end as an international person and is replaced by two or more other states, it is accepted that political treaties will not continue but that territorially grounded treaties will continue to attach

¹²³ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 229. ¹²⁴ Article 17(3). See also article 27(2).

¹²⁵ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 352 ff., and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, pp. 182–7. See also article 8 of the Vienna Convention.

¹²⁶ See, for a survey of practice, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, pp. 187–93.

¹²⁷ See article 9 of the Vienna Convention.

to the territories in question now subject to new sovereign arrangements. The situation with regard to other treaties is more uncertain.¹²⁸

State practice concerning dissolution has centred to all intents and purposes upon the dismemberment of 'unions of state', that is the ending of what had originally been a union of two international persons. Examples would include Colombia in 1829–31; Norway/Sweden in 1905; the United Arab Republic in 1960; the Mali Federation in 1960; the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland in 1963¹²⁹ and the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic in 1992.¹³⁰ It is difficult to deduce clear rules of state succession from these episodes since much depended upon the expressed intentions of the states concerned. Perhaps a presumption in favour of continuity of treaties with regard to each component part may be suggested, but this is subject to expressed intention to the contrary.¹³¹

Article 34 of the Vienna Convention provides for treaties in force for all or part of the predecessor state to continue in force with regard to the specific territory unless the states concerned otherwise agree or it appears from the treaty or is otherwise established that the application of the treaty would be incompatible with the object and purpose of the treaty or would radically change the conditions of its operation. Whether this constitutes a rule of customary law also is unclear, but in the vast majority of situations the matter is likely to be regulated by specific agreements. Upon the dissolution of the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, for example, on 1 January 1993, the UK took the position that, as appropriate, treaties and agreements in force to which the UK and that state were parties remained

¹²⁸ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 219–20.

¹²⁹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1974, vol. II, part 1, pp. 260–3, and O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 164 ff.

¹³⁰ This state consisted of two distinct units, the Czech Republic and the Slovak Republic, each with their own parliament. The Constitutional Law on the Dissolution of the Czech and Slovak Republic of 25 November 1992 provided for the dissolution of that state and for the establishment of the successor states of the Czech Republic and Slovakia. At the same time, the two republics issued a joint declaration informing the international community that the two successor states would succeed to all international treaties to which the predecessor state had been a party and that where necessary negotiations would take place, particularly where the impact upon the two republics differed: see J. Malenovsky, 'Problèmes Juridiques Liées à la Partition de la Tchécoslovaquie, y compris Tracé de la Frontière', AFDI, 1993, p. 305.

¹³¹ The case of the dissolution of the Austro-Hungarian Empire in 1918 was a special case, since it could be regarded as a dissolution of the union of Austria and Hungary (where the latter, unlike the former, asserted continuity) coupled with the secession of territories that either joined other states, such as Romania, or were merged into new states, such as Poland or Czechoslovakia.

in force as between the UK and the successor states.¹³² The question of Yugoslavia was more complicated in that until 2000, the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia maintained that it was a continuation of the former Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, while the other former republics maintained that the former SFRY had come to an end to be replaced by a series of new states.

The issue of article 34 and automatic succession arose in the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia)* case, where Bosnia argued that the rule applied with regard to the Genocide Convention and Yugoslavia denied this. The Court, however, did not make a determination on this point.¹³³ The issue arose again in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, where the parties argued as to whether the rule of automatic succession applied or not. The Court similarly declined to make a determination and focused instead on the significance of article 12.¹³⁴

International human rights treaties

A territorial treaty binds successor states by virtue of attaching to the territory itself and establishing a particular regime that transcends the treaty. Can it be maintained that international human rights treaties are analogous and thus 'attach' to the inhabitants concerned within the territory of the predecessor state and thus continue to bind successor states? There is no doubt that human rights treaties constitute a rather specific category of treaties. They establish that obligations are owed directly to individuals and often provide for direct access for individuals to international mechanisms.¹³⁵ The very nature of international human rights treaties varies somewhat from that of traditional international agreements. The International Court in the *Reservations to the Genocide Convention* case emphasised that 'in such a Convention the contracting states do not have any interests of their own; they merely have, one and all, a common interest, namely, the accomplishment of those high purposes which are

¹³² See the letters sent by the UK Prime Minister to the Prime Ministers of the Czech Republic and Slovakia on 1 January 1993, UKMIL, 65 BYIL, 1994, pp. 586 ff.

¹³³ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 611–12; 115 ILR, p. 1. See also M. Craven, 'The Genocide Case, the Law of Treaties and State Succession', 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 127.

¹³⁴ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 71; 116 ILR, p. 1. As to article 12, see above, p. 970.

¹³⁵ See R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, p. 95.

the *raison d'être* of the Convention'.¹³⁶ In the *Barcelona Traction* case,¹³⁷ the Court differentiated between obligations of a state towards the international community as a whole and those arising vis-à-vis another state. The former are obligations that derive 'from the outlawing of aggression and of genocide, as also from the principles and rules concerning the basic rights of the human person, including protection from slavery and racial discrimination'. In view of the importance of such rights, 'all States can be held to have a legal interest in their protection; they are obligations *erga omnes*'. It is also the case that the process of interpretation of international human rights treaties is more dynamic than is the case with regard to other international agreements. Human rights treaties create not merely subjective, reciprocal rights but rather particular legal orders involving objective obligations to protect human rights.¹³⁸

Where a state party to human rights treaties either disintegrates completely or from which another state or states are created, and the classical rules of succession were followed, there is a danger that this might result in a situation where people formerly protected by such treaties are deprived of such protection as a consequence or by-product of state succession.¹³⁹ The practice of the UN Human Rights Committee¹⁴⁰ with regard to the Yugoslav tragedy is particularly interesting here. After the conclusion of its 45th session, the UN Human Rights Committee requested special reports with regard to specific issues (for example, the policy of 'ethnic cleansing', arbitrary detention, torture and advocacy of hatred) from Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia and the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro), noting 'that all the peoples within the territory of the former Yugoslavia are entitled to the guarantees of the Covenant'.¹⁴¹ Representatives of all three states appeared before the Committee to discuss the relevant issues, no objection being made to the competence of the Committee, even though only Croatia had actually notified the Secretary-General of

¹³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 15, 23; 18 ILR, p. 364.

¹³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 4, 32; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 206.

¹³⁸ See, for example, *Austria v. Italy*, 4 European Yearbook of Human Rights, 1960, pp. 116, 140; *Ireland v. UK*, European Court of Human Rights, Series A, vol. 20, 1978, pp. 90–1, and *Effect of Reservations on the Entry into Force of the American Convention on Human Rights*, 67 ILR, pp. 559, 568. See also above, chapter 16, p. 937.

¹³⁹ Note that the editors of *Oppenheim's International Law* take the view that in cases of the separation resulting in the creation of a new state, the latter 'is bound by – or at least entitled to accede to – general treaties of a "law-making" nature, especially those of a humanitarian character, previously binding on it as part of the state from which it has separated', p. 222.

¹⁴⁰ See above, chapter 6, p. 314. ¹⁴¹ CCPR/C/SR.1178/Add.1, pp. 2–3.

its succession to the human rights treaties of the former Yugoslavia.¹⁴² In the formal Comments of the Human Rights Committee upon the initial short reports submitted by the three states,¹⁴³ the Committee emphasised clearly and unambiguously that 'all the peoples within the territory of the former Yugoslavia are entitled to the guarantees of the Covenant'.¹⁴⁴ In its General Comment No. 26 of October 1997, the Committee took the view that 'once the people are accorded the protection of the rights under the Covenant, such protection devolves with territory and continues to belong to them, notwithstanding change in government . . . or State succession'.¹⁴⁵

The Commission on Human Rights adopted resolution 1994/16 on 25 February 1994 in which it 'reiterates its call to successor states which have not yet done so to confirm to appropriate depositories that they continue to be bound by obligations under international human rights treaties' and 'emphasises the special nature of the human rights treaties aimed at the protection of human rights and fundamental freedoms'. In addition, the Commission requested the human rights treaty bodies to continue further the 'continuing applicability of the respective international human rights treaties to successor states' and the Secretary-General 'to encourage successor states to confirm their obligations under the international human

¹⁴² See Müllerson, *International Law*, p. 157. In the ensuing discussion in the Committee, Müllerson (at the time a member) noted that human rights treaties besides being inter-state instruments also conferred rights upon individuals 'who could not be deprived of those rights in the event of state succession', while Serrano Caldera emphasised that 'state succession should be viewed as a matter of the acquired rights of the population of the state that had ratified the Covenant, which were not diluted when a state was divided'. CCPR/C/SR.1178/Add.1, pp. 2, 4 and 9.

¹⁴³ These reports were supplemented by Special Reports from each of the three states in April 1993: see that of Croatia, CCPR/C/87; that of the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro), CCPR/C/88, and that of Bosnia and Herzegovina, CCPR/C/89.

¹⁴⁴ See CCPR/C/79/Add. 14–16, 28 December 1992. Note that at its 49th session, the UN Commission on Human Rights adopted resolution 1993/23 of 5 March 1993 in which it encouraged successor states to confirm to appropriate depositories that they continued to be bound by obligations under relevant international human rights treaties. See also the Report of the UN Secretary-General, E/CN.4/1994/68. On 25 May 1994, the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination sent a communication to those successor states of the USSR that had not yet declared their adherence or succession to the Convention, inviting them to confirm the applicability of compliance with the Convention's provisions: see E/CN.4/1995/80, p. 3.

¹⁴⁵ A/53/40, annex VII. Cf. Aust, *Modern Treaty Law*, pp. 371–2. See also M. Kamminga, 'State Succession in respect of Human Rights Treaties', 6 EJIL, 1995, p. 469, and A. Rasulov, 'Revisiting State Succession to Humanitarian Treaties: Is There a Case for Automaticity?', 14 EJIL, 2003, p. 141.

rights treaties to which their predecessors were a party as from the date of their independence'.¹⁴⁶ In addition, the fifth meeting of persons chairing the human rights treaty bodies in September 1994 took the view that successor states were automatically bound by obligations under international human rights instruments from the respective date of independence and that observance of the obligations should not depend on a declaration of confirmation made by the government of the successor state.¹⁴⁷

The issue of succession to the Genocide Convention in the Yugoslav situation was raised before the International Court specifically in the Preliminary Objections phase of the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia-Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia)* case. The Court held that it was unnecessary to determine this question in the circumstances since both Bosnia and Yugoslavia were clearly parties to the Convention by one means or another by the date of the filing of the Application.¹⁴⁸ The issue was, however, addressed particularly in two Separate Opinions. Judge Shahabuddeen declared that 'to effectuate its object and purpose, the [Genocide] Convention would fall to be construed as implying the expression of a unilateral undertaking by each party to the Convention to treat successor states as continuing as from independence any status which the predecessor state had as a party to the Convention'. It was suggested that it might be possible to extend this object and purpose argument to human rights treaties generally.¹⁴⁹ Judge Weeramantry in his Separate Opinion undertook a close analysis of the underlying principles and concluded by pointing to 'a principle of contemporary international law that there is automatic state succession to so vital a human rights convention as the Genocide Convention'.¹⁵⁰ One of the main reasons for this was the danger of gaps appearing in the system of human rights protection as between the dissolution of the predecessor state and the acceptance of human rights treaty obligations by the successor state or states.

Accordingly, the question of continued application of human rights treaties within the territory of a predecessor state irrespective of a succession is clearly under consideration. Whether such a principle has been clearly established is at the present moment unclear. However, with regard to those human rights which are established as a matter of customary international law, the new state will be bound by these as such.

¹⁴⁶ See also Commission on Human Rights Resolution 1995/18 adopted on 24 February 1995.

¹⁴⁷ E/CN.4/1995/80, pp. 3–4. ¹⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 612.

¹⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 636. ¹⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 645 ff.

Succession with respect to matters other than treaties

*Membership of international organisations*¹⁵¹

Succession to membership of international organisations will proceed (depending upon the terms of the organisation's constitution) according to whether a new state is formed or an old state continues in a slightly different form. In the case of the partition of British India in 1947, India was considered by the UN General Assembly as a continuation of the previous entity, while Pakistan was regarded as a new state, which had then to apply for admission to the organisation.¹⁵² Upon the merger of Egypt and Syria in 1958 to form the United Arab Republic, the latter was treated as a single member of the United Nations, while upon the dissolution of the merger in 1961, Syria simply resumed its separate membership of the organisation.¹⁵³ In the case of the merger of North and South Yemen in 1990, the new state simply replaced the predecessor states as a member of the relevant international organisations. Where the predecessor state is dissolved and new states are created, such states will have to apply anew for membership to international organisations. For example, the new states of the Czech Republic and Slovakia were admitted as new members of the UN on 19 January 1993.¹⁵⁴

The Sixth (Legal) Committee of the General Assembly considered the situation of new states being formed through division of a member state and the membership problem and produced the following principles:¹⁵⁵

1. That, as a general rule, it is in conformity with legal principles to presume that a state which is a member of the Organization of the United Nations does not cease to be a member simply because its Constitution or frontier

¹⁵¹ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. II, pp. 183 ff., and H. G. Schermers and N. M. Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, 3rd edn, The Hague, 1995, pp. 73 ff.

¹⁵² This issue, of a separation of part of an existing state to form a new state, was considered by the UN to be on a par with the separation from the UK of the Irish Free State and from the Netherlands of Belgium, where the remaining portions continued as existing states: see O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 184–7.

¹⁵³ *Ibid.*, pp. 197–8. This situation, which differed from the India–Pakistan precedent of 1947, has been criticised: see e.g. C. Rousseau, 'Sécession de la Syrie et de la RUA', 66 RGDIP, 1962, p. 413. See also E. Cotran, 'Some Legal Aspects of the Formation of the United Arab Republic and the United Arab States', 8 ICLQ, 1959, p. 346.

¹⁵⁴ See Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 73 and 77. See above, p. 960, with regard to the position of the Russian Federation and the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia and membership of the UN.

¹⁵⁵ A/CN.4/149, p. 8, quoted in O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, p. 187.

has been subjected to changes, and that the extinction of the state as a legal personality recognised in the international order must be shown before its rights and obligations can be considered thereby to have ceased to exist.

2. That when a new state is created, whatever may be the territory and the populations which it comprises and whether or not they formed part of a state member of the United Nations, it cannot under the system of the Charter claim the status of a member of the United Nations unless it has been formally admitted as such in conformity with the provisions of the Charter.

3. Beyond that, each case must be judged according to its merits.

*Succession to assets and debts*¹⁵⁶

The relevant international law in this area is based upon customary law. The Vienna Convention on Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts, 1978 is not currently in force, although most of its provisions (apart from those concerning 'newly independent states') are reflective of custom. The primary rule with regard to the allocation of assets (including archives) and debts in succession situations is that the relevant parties should settle such issues by agreement. Virtually all of the rules that are formulated, for example in the Vienna Convention, 1978, are deemed to operate only where such agreement has not taken place.¹⁵⁷ In addition, the Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia declared in Opinion No. 9 that 'the successor states to the SFRY must together settle all aspects of the succession by agreement'¹⁵⁸ and reinforced this approach in Opinion No. 14, declaring that 'the first principle applicable to state succession is that

¹⁵⁶ See generally, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 199 ff.; E. H. Feilchenfeld, *Public Debts and State Succession*, New York, 1931; UN, *Materials on Succession of States in Matters Other than Treaties*, New York, 1978; International Law Association Reports on Aspects of the Law of State Succession 2004 (preliminary) and 2006 (final); A. Stanić, 'Financial Aspects of State Succession: The Case of Yugoslavia', 12 EJIL, 2001, p. 751; C. Rousseau, *Droit International Public*, Paris, 1977, vol. III, p. 374; M. Streinz, 'Succession of States in Assets and Liabilities – A New Regime?', 26 German YIL, 1983, p. 198; P. Monnier, 'La Convention de Vienne sur la Succession d'États en Matière de Biens, Archives et Dettes d'État', AFDI, 1984, p. 221; V. D. Degan, 'State Succession Especially in Respect of State Property and Debts', 4 Finnish YIL, 1993, p. 130; Mrak, *Succession of States*, and E. Nathan, 'The Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of State Property, Archives and Debts' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 489. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2.

¹⁵⁷ See, for example, articles 14, 17, 18, 22, 23, 27, 28, 30, 31, 37, 38, 40 and 41.

¹⁵⁸ 92 ILR, p. 205.

the successor states should consult with each other and agree a settlement of all questions relating to the succession'.¹⁵⁹

State property¹⁶⁰

The classic rule postulates that only the public property of the predecessor state passes automatically to the successor state,¹⁶¹ but this, of course, raises the question of the definition of public property. The distinction between public and private property is to some extent based upon the conceptual differences between public and private law, a distinction unknown to common law countries. Although in many cases there will be a relevant agreement to define what is meant by public property in this context,¹⁶² this does not always occur and recourse to municipal law is often required. This indeed may be necessitated to a large extent also because international law itself simply does not provide many of the required definitions with regard to, for example, public companies or public utility undertakings.¹⁶³

The relevant municipal law for such purposes is that of the predecessor state. It is that law which will define the nature of the property in question and thus in essence decide its destination in the event of a succession.¹⁶⁴ Article 8 of the Vienna Convention, 1983 provides that state property for the purposes of the Convention means 'property, rights and interests which, at the date of the succession of states, were, according to the internal law of the predecessor state owned by that state'¹⁶⁵ and this can be taken as reflective of customary law. The Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia reiterated this position by declaring that 'to determine whether the property, debts and archives belonged to the SFRY, reference should

¹⁵⁹ 96 ILR, p. 731.

¹⁶⁰ Note that private rights are unaffected as such by a succession: see, for example, *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 216, and below, p. 1001.

¹⁶¹ See, for example, the United Nations Tribunal for Libya, 22 ILR, p. 103. See also International Law Association, *Final Report*, p. 1.

¹⁶² See, for example, the treaties concerned with the establishment of Cyprus in 1960, 382 UNTS, pp. 3 ff., and the Treaty of Peace with Italy, 1947, 49 UNTS, annex XIV, p. 225.

¹⁶³ For an example, see the dispute concerning property belonging to the Order of St Mauritz and St Lazarus, AFDI, 1965, p. 323. See also Stern, 'Succession', p. 329.

¹⁶⁴ See the *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, p. 30 and the *German Settlers in Upper Silesia* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 6, p. 6, but cf. the *Peter Pazmany University* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 61, p. 236.

¹⁶⁵ See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1970, vol. II, pp. 136–43 and *ibid.*, 1981, vol. II, p. 23; cf. O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 202–3.

be had to the domestic law of the SFRY in operation at the date of succession'.¹⁶⁶ The relevant date for the passing of the property is the date of succession¹⁶⁷ and this is the date of independence, although difficulties may arise in the context of the allocation of assets and debts where different dates of succession occur for different successor states.¹⁶⁸ Such problems would need to be resolved on the basis of agreement between the relevant parties.¹⁶⁹

The Arbitration Commission was faced with two particular problems. First, the 1974 SFRY Constitution had transferred to the constituent republics ownership of many items of property. This, held the Commission, led to the conclusion that such property could not be held to have belonged to the SFRY whatever their origin or initial financing.¹⁷⁰ Secondly, the Commission was faced with the concept of 'social ownership', a concept regarded as particularly highly developed in the SFRY. In the event, the Commission resolved the dilemma by adopting a mixture of the territorial principle and a functional approach. It was noted that 'social ownership' was 'held for the most part by "associated labour organisations" – bodies with their own legal personality, operating in a single republic and coming within its exclusive jurisdiction. Their property, debts and archives are not to be divided for purposes of state succession: each successor state exercises its sovereign powers in respect of them.'¹⁷¹ However, where other organisations operated 'social ownership' either at the federal level or in two or more republics, 'their property, debts and archives should be divided between the successor states in question if they exercised public prerogatives on behalf of the SFRY of individual republics'. Where such public prerogatives were not being exercised, the organisations should be

¹⁶⁶ Opinion No. 14, 96 ILR, p. 732.

¹⁶⁷ Note that article 10 of the Vienna Convention, 1983 provides that the date of the passing of state property of the predecessor state is that of the date of succession of states 'unless otherwise agreed by the states concerned or decided by an appropriate international body'. Article 21 repeats this principle in the context of state archives and article 35 with regard to state debts.

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. Arbitration Commission Opinion No. 11, 96 ILR, p. 719. Cf. the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues of June 2001, 41 ILM, 2002, p. 3. See also *AY Bank Ltd v. Bosnia and Herzegovina and Others* [2006] EWHC 830 (Ch) and C. Stahn, 'The Agreement on Succession Issues of the Former Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia', 96 AJIL, 2002, p. 379.

¹⁶⁹ See the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001, articles 3 and 7 of Annex A and article 4(3) of Annex B.

¹⁷⁰ Opinion No. 14, 96 ILR, p. 732. ¹⁷¹ *Ibid.*

regarded as private-sector enterprises to which state succession does not apply.¹⁷²

The Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001, however, provides that, 'It shall be for the successor state on whose territory immovable and tangible movable property is situated to determine, for the purposes of this Annex, whether that property was state property of the SFRY in accordance with international law.'¹⁷³

It is a recognised principle of customary international law that the public property of a predecessor state with respect to the territory in question passes to the successor state.¹⁷⁴ Thus, as a general rule, the test of succession of public, or state, property as so characterised under the laws of the predecessor state is a territorial one.

However, one needs to distinguish here between immovable and movable property. State immovable property situated in the territory to which the succession relates passes to the successor state.¹⁷⁵ This is provided for in the Vienna Convention, 1983.¹⁷⁶ It is also evident in state practice,¹⁷⁷ most recently being reaffirmed by the Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia¹⁷⁸ and in the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001.¹⁷⁹

In the case of immovable property situated outside the successor state or states, traditional state practice posits that where the predecessor state continues in existence this property should remain with the predecessor state (subject to agreement to the contrary by the states concerned, of

¹⁷² *Ibid.*

¹⁷³ Article 6 of Annex A. This is to be contrasted with the more usual reference to domestic law at the relevant time.

¹⁷⁴ See, for example, the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 102 ff.; Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 624–5, and O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 199–200. See also the *Peter Pazmany University case*, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 61, 1933, p. 237 and *Haile Selassie v. Cable and Wireless Ltd (No. 2)* [1939] Ch. 182; 9 AD, p. 94. See also *Kunstsammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon* 536 F.Supp. 829, 855 (1981); 94 ILR, pp. 133, 180. Note that under article 11, which basically reflects practice, no compensation is payable for the passing of state property unless otherwise agreed, and article 12 provides that third states' property in the territory of the predecessor state remains unaffected by the succession.

¹⁷⁵ E.g. fixed military installations, prisons, airports, government offices, state hospitals and universities: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 33.

¹⁷⁶ In article 14 (with regard to the transfer of part of a state to another state); article 15(i)a (with regard to 'newly independent states'); article 16 (upon a uniting of states to form one successor state); article 17 (with regard to separation of part of a state to form a new state) and article 18 (with regard to the dissolution of a state).

¹⁷⁷ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 220–1. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 29.

¹⁷⁸ Opinion No. 14, 96 ILR, p. 731. ¹⁷⁹ Article 2(1) of Annex A.

course). Only special circumstances might modify this principle.¹⁸⁰ Where the predecessor state ceases to exist, it would appear that its property abroad should be divided proportionately between the successor states.¹⁸¹

Article 15(1)b of the Convention makes out a special, and highly controversial, case for 'newly independent states'. This provides that 'immovable property, having belonged to the territory to which the succession of states relates, situated outside it and having become state property of the predecessor state during the period of dependence, shall pass to the successor state', while other immovable state property situated outside the territory 'shall pass to the successor state in proportion to the contribution of the dependent territory'. Neither of these propositions can be regarded as part of customary international law and their force would thus be dependent upon the coming into effect of the Convention, should this happen.¹⁸²

As far as movable property connected with the territory in question is concerned,¹⁸³ the territorial principle continues to predominate. O'Connell notes that 'such property as is destined specifically for local use is acquired by the successor state',¹⁸⁴ while the formulation in the Vienna Convention, 1983 is more flexible. This provides that 'movable state property of the predecessor state connected with the activity of the

¹⁸⁰ See, for example, *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 223, note 6.

¹⁸¹ *Ibid.*, at p. 221. Article 18(1)b of the Vienna Convention, 1983 provides that 'immovable state property of the predecessor state situated outside its territory shall pass to the successor states in equitable proportions'. Note that the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001 deals specifically with the allocation of diplomatic and consular premises: see Annex B.

¹⁸² It is to be noted that article 15 does not, unlike other succession situations, refer to agreements between the predecessor and successor states. This was deliberate as the International Law Commission, which drafted the articles upon which the Convention is based, felt that this was required as a recognition of the special circumstances of decolonisation and the fact that many such agreements are unfavourable to the newly independent state: see *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 38. The article is also unusual in that it provides that immovable state property situated outside the territory and movable state property other than that already covered in the article 'to the creation of which the dependent territory has contributed' shall pass to the successor state in proportion to the contribution of the dependent territory. This was intended to introduce the application of equity to the situation and was designed to preserve *inter alia*, 'the patrimony and the historical and cultural heritage of the people inhabiting the dependent territory concerned', *ibid.* It is unclear how far this extends. It may cover contributions to international institutions made where the territory is a dependent territory, but beyond this one can only speculate.

¹⁸³ E.g. currency and state public funds, *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, pp. 35–6.

¹⁸⁴ O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, p. 204.

predecessor state in respect of the territory to which the succession of states applies shall pass to the successor state'.¹⁸⁵ There are, however, likely to be difficulties of precision in specific cases with regard to borderline instances of what may be accepted as either property 'destined specifically for local use' or property 'connected with the activity of the predecessor State in ... the territory'. The view taken by the Arbitration Commission in Opinion No. 14 appears to be even more flexible for it simply notes that 'public property passes to the successor state on whose territory it is situated'.¹⁸⁶ However, particular kinds of property may be dealt with differently. For example, the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues provides that the rule is not to apply to tangible state property of great importance to the cultural heritage of one of the successor states and which originated there, even though situated elsewhere at the date of independence. Such property is to go to the state whose cultural heritage it is.¹⁸⁷ Secondly, military property is to be made the subject of special arrangements.¹⁸⁸

The situation with regard to movable property outside of the territory in question is more complicated. Article 17(1)c of the Vienna Convention, 1983 provides that such property (in the case of separation of part of a state) 'shall pass to the successor state in an equitable proportion'. This must be regarded as a controversial proposition since it appears to modify the dominant territorial approach to the succession of state property.¹⁸⁹ However, in the case of the dissolution of the predecessor state, the argument in favour of an equitable division of movable property not linked to the territory in respect of which the succession occurs is much stronger.¹⁹⁰ The Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia limited itself to noting the general principle that state property, debts and archives of the SFRY (other than immovable property within each of the successor states) should be divided between the successor states¹⁹¹ and that while each category of

¹⁸⁵ Article 17. See also articles 14(2)b, 15(1)d and 18(1)c.

¹⁸⁶ 96 ILR, p. 731. See also article 3(1) of Annex A of the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001.

¹⁸⁷ Article 3(2) of Annex A. ¹⁸⁸ Article 4(1).

¹⁸⁹ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, p. 204. Cf. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, pp. 46–7.

¹⁹⁰ See article 18(1)d of the Vienna Convention, 1983. See also the decision of the Austrian Supreme Court in *Republic of Croatia et al. v. Girocredit Bank AG der Sparkassen* 36 ILM, 1997, p. 1520.

¹⁹¹ Opinion No. 14, 96 ILR, pp. 731–2. See now the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001 as discussed.

assets and liabilities need not be divided equitably, the overall outcome had to be an equitable division.¹⁹²

The state succession situation which in general poses the least problem is that of absorption or merger, since the absorbing or newly created state respectively will simply take over the assets and debts of the extinguished state. The issues were, however, discussed in detail in the context of German unification. Article 21 of the Unification Treaty provides that the assets of the German Democratic Republic which served directly specified administrative tasks were to become Federal assets¹⁹³ and were to be used to discharge public tasks in the territory of the former GDR. Article 22 dealt with public assets of legal entities in that territory, including the land and assets in the agricultural sectors which did not serve directly specified administrative tasks.¹⁹⁴ Such financial assets were to be administered in trust by the Federal Government and be appointed by federal law equally between the Federal Government on the one hand and the *Länder* of the former GDR on the other, with the local authorities receiving an appropriate share of the *Länder* allocation. The Federal Government was to use its share to discharge public tasks in the territory of the former GDR, while the distribution of the *Länder* share to the individual *Länder* was to take place upon the basis of population ratio. Publicly owned assets used for the housing supply became the property of the local authorities together with the assumption by the latter of a proportionate share of the debts, with the ultimate aim of privatisation.

In fact, state practice demonstrates that with the exception of some clear and basic rules, all will depend upon the particular agreement reached in the particular circumstances. In the case of the former Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, the two successor states agreed to divide the assets

¹⁹² Opinion No. 13, *ibid.*, p. 728. The Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001 provides that where the allocation of property results in a 'significantly unequal distribution' of SFRY state property, then the matter may be raised with the Joint Committee established under article 5 of the Annex.

¹⁹³ Unless they were earmarked on 1 October 1989 predominantly for administrative tasks which under the Basic Law of the FRG are to be discharged by the *Länder*, local authorities or other public administrative bodies, in which case they will accrue to the appropriate institution of public administration. Administrative assets used predominantly for tasks of the former Ministry of State Security/Office for National Security are to accrue to the Trust Agency established under the Law on the Privatisation and Reorganisation of Publicly Owned Assets (Trust Law) of 17 June 1990 for the purpose of privatising former publicly owned companies.

¹⁹⁴ These were termed 'financial assets' and deliberately exclude social insurance assets.

and liabilities of the predecessor state¹⁹⁵ in the ratio of two to one (the approximate population ratio of the two new states).¹⁹⁶ In the case of the former Soviet Union, Russia and the successor states signed agreements in 1991 and 1992 apportioning assets and liabilities of the predecessor state with the share of Russia being 61.34 per cent and the Ukraine being 16.37 per cent.¹⁹⁷ In the case of the former Yugoslavia, the Agreement on Succession Issues of 2001, in addition to the provisions referred to above,¹⁹⁸ provided for the distribution of assets on the basis of agreed proportions.¹⁹⁹ Financial assets in the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and World Bank were distributed on a slightly different proportional basis (that became known as the IMF key).²⁰⁰ The IMF key was also used with regard to the distribution of assets in the Bank of International Settlements in an arrangement dated 10 April 2001.²⁰¹

State archives

Archives are state property with special characteristics. Many are difficult by their nature to divide up, but they may be relatively easily reproduced

¹⁹⁵ Apart from immovable property located within each republic which went to the republic concerned in accordance with the territorial principle.

¹⁹⁶ See, for example, Degan, 'State Succession', p. 144.

¹⁹⁷ See Müllerson, *International Law*, p. 144, and Stern, 'Succession', pp. 379 ff. The proportions were reached using four criteria: the participation of the republics concerned in the imports and exports respectively of the former USSR, the proportion of GNP, and the proportion of populations: see W. Czaplinski, 'Equity and Equitable Principles in the Law of State Succession' in Mark, *Succession of States*, pp. 61, 71. However, several successor states refused to accept this and the arrangement never came into being, and in 1993 Russia claimed all of the assets and liabilities of the former USSR, see Stern, 'Succession', p. 405, and a number of bilateral agreements were signed to reflect this, see International Law Association, *Final Report*, pp. 7 ff. A special agreement was reached in 1997 with regard to the division of the Black Sea fleet based in the Crimea in Ukraine, following a number of unsuccessful efforts: Stern 'Succession', p. 386.

¹⁹⁸ See above, pp. 989–91.

¹⁹⁹ These were Bosnia and Herzegovina 15.5 per cent; Croatia 23 per cent; Macedonia 7.5 per cent; Slovenia 16 per cent and Yugoslavia 38 per cent: see article 4 of Annex C. This proportion was also used for all other rights and interests of the SFRY not otherwise covered in the Agreements (such as patents, trade marks, copyrights and royalties), Annex F.

²⁰⁰ This was as follows: Bosnia and Herzegovina 13.20 per cent; Croatia 28.49 per cent; Macedonia 5.40 per cent; Slovenia 16.39 per cent and FRY 36.52 per cent: see IMF Press Release No. 92/92, 15 December 1992. See also P. Williams, 'State Succession and the International Financial Institutions', 43 ICLQ, 1994, pp. 776, 802, n. 168, and I. Shihata, 'Matters of State Succession in the World Bank's Practice' in Mark, *Succession of States*, pp. 75, 87.

²⁰¹ See Appendix to the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001.

and duplicated. Archives are a crucial part of the heritage of a community and may consist of documents, numismatic collections, iconographic documents, photographs and films. The issue has been of great concern to UNESCO, which has called for the restitution of archives as part of the reconstitution and protection of the national cultural heritage and has appealed for the return of an irreplaceable cultural heritage to those that created it.²⁰² In this general context, one should also note articles 149 and 303 of the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea. The former provides that all objects of an archaeological and historical nature found in the International Seabed Area are to be preserved or disposed of for the benefit of mankind as a whole, 'particular regard being paid to the preferential rights of the state or country of origin, or the state of historical and archaeological origin', while the latter stipulates that states have the duty to protect objects of an archaeological and historical nature found at sea and shall co-operate for this purpose.

In general, treaties between European states dealing with cessions of territory included archival clauses providing for the treatment of archives, while such clauses are very rare in cases of decolonisation.²⁰³

Article 20 of the 1983 Vienna Convention provides that state archives in the present context means:

all documents of whatever date and kind, produced or received by the predecessor state in the exercise of its functions which, at the date of the succession of states, belonged to the predecessor state according to its internal law and were preserved by it directly or under its control as archives for whatever purpose.

Generally, such archives will pass as at the date of succession and without compensation, without as such affecting archives in the territory owned by a third state.²⁰⁴

Where part of the territory of a state is transferred by that state to another state, in the absence of agreement, the part of the state archives of the predecessor state which, for normal administration of the territory

²⁰² UNESCO, Records of the General Conference, 18th Session, Resolutions, 1974, pp. 68 ff., 20 C/102, 1978, paras. 18–19; and UNESCO Records of the General Conference, 20th Session, Resolutions, 1978, pp. 92–3. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, part 1, pp. 78–80. Note in addition the call for a New International Cultural Order: see e.g. M. Bedjaoui, *Towards a New International Economic Order*, Paris, 1979, pp. 75 ff. and 245 ff., and General Assembly Resolutions 3026A (XXVII); 3148 (XXVIII); 3187 (XXVIII); 3391 (XXX) and 31/40.

²⁰³ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, part 1, p. 93.

²⁰⁴ Articles 21–4.

concerned, should be at the disposal of the state to which the territory is transferred, shall pass to the successor state, as shall any part of the state archives that relates exclusively or principally to the territory.²⁰⁵ In the case of ‘newly independent states’, the same general provisions apply,²⁰⁶ but with some alterations. Archives having belonged to the territory in question and having become state archives of the predecessor state during the period of dependence are to pass to the successor state. The reference here to archives that became state archives is to pre-colonial material, whether kept by central government, local governments or tribes, religious ministers, private enterprises or individuals.²⁰⁷ One may mention here the Treaty of Peace with Italy of 1947, which provided that Italy was to restore all archives and objects of historical value belonging to Ethiopia or its natives and removed from Ethiopia to Italy since October 1935.²⁰⁸ In the case of Vietnam, the 1950 Franco-Vietnamese agreement provided for the return as of right of all historical archives,²⁰⁹ while a dispute between France and Algeria has been in existence since the latter’s independence over pre-colonial material removed to France.²¹⁰

Article 28(2) provides that the passing or the appropriate reproduction of parts of the state archives of the predecessor state (other than those already discussed above) of interest to the territory concerned is to be determined by agreement, ‘in such a manner that each of these states [i.e. predecessor and successor] can benefit as widely and equitably as possible from those parts of the state archives of the predecessor state’. The reference here is primarily to material relating to colonisation and the colonial period, and in an arrangement of 1975, the French specifically noted the practice of microfilming in the context of France’s acquisition of Algeria.²¹¹ Article 28(3) emphasises that the predecessor state is to provide the newly independent state with the best available evidence from its state archives relating to territorial title and boundary issues. This is important as many post-colonial territorial disputes will invariably revolve around the interpretation of colonial treaties delimiting frontiers and colonial administrative practice concerning the area in contention.²¹²

²⁰⁵ Article 27. ²⁰⁶ Article 28(1)b and c.

²⁰⁷ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 62. ²⁰⁸ 49 UNTS, p. 142.

²⁰⁹ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1979, vol. II, part 1, p. 113. ²¹⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 113–14.

²¹¹ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 64.

²¹² See, for example, the Mali–Upper Volta (Burkina Faso) border dispute, Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 257–8, and the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 554; 80 ILR, p. 459.

Where two or more states unite to form one successor state, the state archives of the former will pass to the latter.²¹³ Where part of a state secedes to form another state, unless the states otherwise agree the part of the state archives of the predecessor state, which for normal administration of the territory concerned should be in that territory, will pass, as will those parts of the state archives that relate directly to the territory that is the subject of the succession.²¹⁴

The same provisions apply in the case of a dissolution of a state, which is replaced by two or more successor states, in the absence of agreement, with the addition that other state archives are to pass to the successor states in an equitable manner, taking into account all relevant circumstances.²¹⁵ These principles were confirmed in the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001,²¹⁶ while it was additionally provided that archives other than those falling within these categories are to be the subject of an agreement between the successor states as to their equitable distribution.²¹⁷

Articles 28, 30 and 31 also contain a paragraph explaining that the relevant agreements over state archives 'shall not infringe the right of the peoples of those states to development, to information about their history and to their cultural heritage'. Despite the controversy over whether such a right does indeed exist in law as a right and precisely how such a provision might be interpreted in practice in concrete situations, the general concept of encouraging awareness and knowledge of a people's heritage is to be supported.²¹⁸

Public debt²¹⁹

This is an area of particular uncertainty and doubt has been expressed as to whether there is a rule of succession in such circumstances.²²⁰ As in other parts of state succession, political and economic imperatives play

²¹³ Article 29. ²¹⁴ Article 30.

²¹⁵ Article 31. Note in particular the dispute between Denmark and Iceland, after the dissolution of their Union, over valuable parchments: see Verzijl, *International Law*, vol. VII, 1974, p. 153, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, pp. 68–9, and the Treaty of St Germain of 1919 with Austria which contained provisions relating to the succession to archives of various new or reconstituted states.

²¹⁶ See Annex D. ²¹⁷ *Ibid.*, article 6.

²¹⁸ See further, with regard to article 3(2) of Annex A of the Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001, above, p. 991.

²¹⁹ See generally, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, chapters 15–17; *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1977, vol. II, part 1, pp. 49 ff., and Zemanek, 'State Succession'.

²²⁰ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 625–6.

a large role and much practice centres upon agreements made between relevant parties.

The public debt (or national debt) is that debt assumed by the central government in the interests of the state as a whole. It constitutes a particularly sensitive issue since third parties are involved who are often reluctant to accept a change in the identity of the debtor. This encourages an approach based on the continuing liability for the debt in question and in situations where a division of debt has taken place for that situation to continue with the successor state being responsible to the predecessor state (where this continues, of course) for its share rather than to the creditor directly. And as article 36 of the Vienna Convention, 1983 notes, a succession of states does not as such affect the rights and obligations of creditors.²²¹

Public debts²²² may be divided into national debts, being debts owned by the state as a whole; local debts, being debts contracted by a sub-governmental territorial unit or other form of local authority, and localised debts, being debts incurred by the central government for the purpose of local projects or areas.²²³

Local debts clearly pass under customary international law to the successor state, since they constitute arrangements entered into by sub-governmental territorial authorities now transferred to the jurisdiction of the successor state and a succession does not directly affect them. In effect, they continue to constitute debts borne by the specific territory in question.²²⁴ Similarly, localised debts, being closely attached to the territory to which the succession relates, also pass to the successor state in conformity with the same territorial principle.²²⁵

There appears to be no definitive answer to the question as to the allocation of the national debt as such. In the case of absorption or merger, the expanding or newly created state respectively will simply take over

²²¹ Note that the Convention does not deal with private creditors, a point which is criticised in the *Third US Restatement on Foreign Relations Law*, p. 106, but article 6 of the Convention constitutes in effect a savings clause here.

²²² Note that the Convention is concerned with state debts which are defined in article 33 as 'any financial obligation of a predecessor state arising in conformity with international law with another state, an international organisation or any other subject of international law'.

²²³ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, chapters 15–17, and *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, p. 76. A variety of other distinctions have also been drawn, *ibid.*

²²⁴ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 416 ff.

²²⁵ *Ibid.* See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, p. 90, and the *Ottoman Public Debt* case, 1 RIAA, p. 529 (1925).

the national debt of the extinguished state.²²⁶ The German unification example is instructive. Article 23 of the Unification Treaty provided that the total national budget debt of the German Democratic Republic was to be assumed by a special Federal fund administered by the Federal Minister of Finance. The Federal Government was to be liable for the obligations of the special fund which was to service the debt and might raise loans *inter alia* to redeem debts and to cover interest and borrowing costs. Until 31 December 1993, the Federal Government and the Trust Agency were each to reimburse one half of the interest payments made by the special fund. As from 1 January 1994, the Federal Government, the Trust Agency and the *Länder* of the former GDR assumed the total debt accrued at that date by the special fund, which was dissolved. The sureties, warranties and guarantees assumed by the GDR were taken over by the Federal Republic, while the interests of the GDR in the Berlin State Bank were transferred to the *Länder* of the former GDR. The liabilities arising from the GDR's responsibility for the Berlin State Bank were assumed by the Federal Government.

In the case of secession or separation where the predecessor state continues to exist, it would appear that the presumption is that the responsibility for the general public debt of the predecessor state remains with the predecessor state after the succession.²²⁷ This would certainly appear to be the case where part of a state is transferred to another state.²²⁸ Generally the paucity of practice leads one to be reluctant to claim that a new rule of international law has been established with regard to such situations, so that the general principle of non-division of the public debt is not displaced. However, successor states may be keen to establish their international creditworthiness by becoming involved in a debt allocation arrangement in circumstances where in strict international law this may not be necessary.²²⁹ Further, the increasing pertinence of the notion of equitable distribution might have an impact upon this question.

A brief review of some practice may serve to illustrate the complexity of the area. When Texas seceded from Mexico in 1840, for example, it denied any liability for the latter's debts, although an *ex gratia* payment was in the circumstances made. However, no part of Colombia's debt was assumed

²²⁶ Article 39 of the Convention provides that where two or more states unite to form a successor state, the state debts of the former states will pass to the successor state.

²²⁷ See the *Ottoman Public Debt* case, 1 RIAA, p. 529.

²²⁸ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1977, vol. II, part I, p. 81.

²²⁹ See Williams, 'State Succession', pp. 786 and 802-3.

by Panama upon its independence in 1903. The arrangements made in the peace treaties of 1919 and 1923 were complex, but it can be noted that while no division of the public debt occurred with regard to some territories emerging from the collapsed empires, in most cases there was a negotiated and invariably complicated settlement. The successor states of the Austro-Hungarian Empire, for example, assumed responsibility for such portions of the pre-war bonded debt as were determined by the Reparations Committee, while Turkey took over a share of the Ottoman public debt on a revenue proportionality basis.²³⁰ When in 1921, the Irish Free State separated from the United Kingdom, it was provided that the public debt of the UK would be apportioned 'as may be fair and equitable', having regard to any claims by way of set-off or counter-claim.

The agreement between India (the continuation of British India) and Pakistan (the new state) provided for the responsibility of the former with regard to all the financial obligations, including loans and guarantees, of British India. India thus remained as the sole debtor of the national debt, while Pakistan's share of this, as established upon the basis of proportionality relating to its share of the assets of British India that it received, became a debt to India.²³¹

With regard to secured debts, the general view appears to be that debts secured by mortgage of assets located in the territory in question survive the transfer of that territory. The Treaties of St Germain and Trianon in 1919, for example (articles 203 and 186 respectively), provided that assets thus pledged would remain so pledged with regard to that part of the national debt that it had been agreed would pass to the particular successor state. Such debts had to be specifically secured and the securities had to be 'railways, salt mines or other property'.²³² However, where debts have been charged to local revenue, the presumption lies the other way.

Much will depend upon the circumstances and it may well be that where the seceding territory constituted a substantial or meaningful part of the predecessor state, considerations of equity would suggest some form of apportionment of the national debt. It was with this in mind, together with the example of the UK–Irish Free State Treaty of 1921, that led the International Law Commission to propose the draft that led to article 40 of the Vienna Convention, 1983.

²³⁰ See, for example, O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 397–401, and Feilchenfeld, *Public Debts*, pp. 431 ff.

²³¹ O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 404–6. ²³² *Ibid.*, p. 411.

Article 40 provides that where part of a state separates to form another state, unless otherwise agreed, the state debt of the predecessor state passes to the successor state 'in an equitable proportion' taking into account in particular the property, rights and interests which pass to the successor state in relation to that debt.²³³ It is doubtful that this proposition constitutes a codification of customary law as such in view of the confused and disparate practice of states to date, but it does reflect a viable approach.

However, in the case of separation where the predecessor state ceases to exist, some form of apportionment of the public debt is required and the provision in article 41 for an equitable division taking into account in particular the property, rights and interests which pass to the successor states in relation to that debt, is reasonable and can be taken to reflect international practice.²³⁴ The basis for any equitable apportionment of debts would clearly depend upon the parties concerned and would have to be regulated by agreement. A variety of possibilities exists, including taxation ratio, extent of territory, population, nationality of creditors, taxable value as distinct from actual revenue contributions, value of assets and contributions of the territory in question to the central administration.²³⁵ The Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues, 2001 provides that 'allocated debts', that is external debts where the final beneficiary of the debt is located on the territory of a specific successor state or group of successor states, are to be accepted by the successor state on the territory of which the final beneficiary is located.²³⁶

In common with the other parts of the 1983 Convention, a specific article is devoted to the situation of the 'newly independent state'. Article 38 provides that 'no state debt of the predecessor state shall pass to the newly independent state' in the absence of an agreement between the

²³³ The same rule applies in the case of the transfer of part of a state to another state: see article 37.

²³⁴ See, for example, *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 221.

²³⁵ In the 1919 peace treaties, the principle of distribution proportional to the future paying capacity of the ceded territories was utilised, measured by reference to revenues contributed in the pre-war years, while in the Treaty of Lausanne, 1923, concerning the consequences of the demise of the Ottoman Empire, the principle considered was that of proportional distribution based solely upon actual past contributions to the amortisation of debts: see O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 454–6. Cf. *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 2, p. 113. The phrase ultimately adopted in the Vienna Convention was: 'taking into account, in particular, the property, rights and interests which pass to the successor state in relation to that state debt'. In other words, stress was laid upon the factor of proportionality of assets to debts.

²³⁶ Article 2(1)b of Annex C.

parties providing otherwise, 'in view of the link between the state debt of the predecessor state connected with its activity in the territory to which the succession of states relates and the property, rights and interests which pass to the newly independent state'. State practice generally in the decolonisation process dating back to the independence of the United States appears to show that there would be no succession to part of the general state debt of the predecessor state, but that this would differ where the debt related specifically to the territory in question.²³⁷ It is unlikely that this provision reflects customary law.

Private rights

The question also arises as to how far a succession of states will affect, if at all, private rights. Principles of state sovereignty and respect for acquired or subsisting rights are relevant here and often questions of expropriation provide the context. As far as those inhabitants who become nationals of the successor state are concerned, they are fully subject to its laws and regulations, and apart from the application of international human rights rules, they have little direct recourse to international law in these circumstances. Accordingly what does become open to discussion is the protection afforded to aliens by international provisions relating to the succession of rights and duties upon a change of sovereignty.

It is within this context that the doctrine of acquired rights²³⁸ has been formulated. This relates to rights obtained by foreign nationals and has been held by some to include virtually all types of legal interests. Its import is that such rights continue after the succession and can be enforced against the new sovereign. Some writers declare this proposition to be a fundamental principle of international law,²³⁹ while others describe it merely as a source of confusion.²⁴⁰ There is a certain amount of disagreement as to its extent. On the one hand, it has been held to mean that the passing of sovereignty has no effect upon such rights, and on the other that

²³⁷ See *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1981, vol. II, part 1, pp. 91–105 and *ibid.*, 1977, vol. II, part 1, pp. 86–107. Note the varied practice of succession to public debts in the colonisation process, *ibid.*, pp. 87–8, and with regard to annexations, *ibid.*, pp. 93–4. See also *West Rand Gold Mining Co. v. R* [1905] 2 KB 391, and O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 373–83.

²³⁸ See, in particular, O'Connell, *State Succession*, chapter 10; *Oppenheim's International Law*, pp. 215 ff., and Brownlie, *Principles*, pp. 626 ff. See also T. H. Cheng, *State Succession and Commercial Obligations*, New York, 2006.

²³⁹ See e.g. O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, pp. 239–40.

²⁴⁰ See e.g. Brownlie, *Principles*, p. 627.

it implies no more than that aliens should be, as far as possible, insulated from the changes consequent upon succession.

The principle of acquired rights was discussed in a number of cases that came before the Permanent Court of International Justice between the two world wars, dealing with the creation of an independent Poland out of the former German, Russian and Austrian Empires. Problems arose specifically with regard to rights obtained under German rule, which were challenged by the new Polish authorities. In the *German Settlers' case*,²⁴¹ Poland had attempted to evict German settlers from its lands, arguing that since many of them had not taken transfer of title before the Armistice they could be legitimately ejected. According to the German system, such settlers could acquire title either by means of leases, or by means of an arrangement whereby they paid parts of the purchase price at regular intervals and upon payment of the final instalment the land would become theirs. The Court held that German law would apply in the circumstances until the final transfer of the territory and that the titles to land acquired in this fashion would be protected under the terms of the 1919 Minorities Treaty. More importantly, the Court declared that even in the absence of such a treaty:

private rights acquired under existing law do not cease on a change of sovereignty... even those who contest the existence in international law of a general principle of state succession do not go so far as to maintain that private rights, including those acquired from the state as the owner of the property, are invalid as against a successor in sovereignty.²⁴²

The fact that there was a political purpose behind the colonisation scheme would not affect the private rights thus secured, which could be enforced against the new sovereign. It is very doubtful that this would be accepted today. The principles emerging from such inter-war cases affirming the continuation of acquired rights have modified the views expressed in the *West Rand Central Gold Mining Company case*²⁴³ to the

²⁴¹ PCIJ, Series B, No. 6, 1923; 2 AD, p. 71. The proposition was reaffirmed in the *Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 7, 1926; 3 AD, p. 429 and the *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 17, 1928; 4 AD, p. 268. See also the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 5, 1924 and *US v. Percheman* 7 Pet. 51 (1830).

²⁴² See also *El Salvador/Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 400, referring to 'full respect for acquired rights', the *German-Poland Border Treaty Constitutionality* case, 108 ILR, p. 656, and cf. *Gosalia v. Agarwal* 118 ILR, p. 429.

²⁴³ [1905] 2 KB 391.

effect that, upon annexation, the new sovereign may choose which of the contractual rights and duties adopted by the previous sovereign it wishes to respect.

The inter-war cases mark the high-water mark of the concept of the continuation of private rights upon succession, but they should not be interpreted to mean that the new sovereign cannot alter such rights. The expropriation of alien property is possible under international law subject to certain conditions.²⁴⁴ What the doctrine does indicate is that there is a presumption of the continuation of foreign acquired rights, though the matter is best regulated by treaty. Only private rights that have become vested or acquired would be covered by the doctrine. Thus, where rights are to come into operation in the future, they will not be binding upon the new sovereign. Similarly, claims to unliquidated damages will not continue beyond the succession. Claims to unliquidated damages occur where the matter in dispute has not come before the judicial authorities and the issue of compensation has yet to be determined by a competent court or tribunal. In the *Robert E. Brown* claim,²⁴⁵ an American citizen's prospecting licence had been unjustifiably cancelled by the Boer republic of South Africa in the 1890s and Brown's claim had been dismissed in the Boer courts. In 1900 the United Kingdom annexed the republic and Brown sought (through the US government) to hold it responsible. This contention was rejected by the arbitration tribunal, which said that Brown's claim did not represent an acquired right since the denial of justice that had taken place by the Boer court's wrongful rejection of his case had prevented the claim from becoming liquidated. The tribunal also noted that liability for a wrongful act committed by a state did not pass to the new sovereign after succession.

The fact that the disappearance of the former sovereign automatically ends liability for any wrong it may have committed is recognised as a rule of international law, although where the new state adopts the illegal actions of the predecessor, it may inherit liability since it itself is in effect committing a wrong. This was brought out in the *Lighthouses* arbitration²⁴⁶ in 1956 between France and Greece, which concerned the latter's liability to respect concessions granted by Turkey to a French company

²⁴⁴ See above, chapter 14, p. 827.

²⁴⁵ 6 RIAA, p. 120 (1923); 2 AD, p. 66. See also the *Hawaiian Claims* case, 6 RIAA, p. 157 (1925); 3 AD, p. 80.

²⁴⁶ 12 RIAA, p. 155 (1956); 23 ILR, p. 659. Cf. the decision of the Namibian Supreme Court in *Minister of Defence, Namibia v. Mwandinghi* 91 ILR, p. 341, taking into account the provisions of the Namibian Constitution.

regarding territory subsequently acquired by Greece. The problem of the survival of foreign nationals' rights upon succession is inevitably closely bound up with ideological differences and economic pressures.²⁴⁷

State succession and nationality²⁴⁸

The issue of state succession and nationality links together not only those two distinct areas, but also the question of human rights. The terms under which a state may award nationality are solely within its control²⁴⁹ but problems may arise in the context of a succession. In principle, the issue of nationality will depend upon the municipal regulations of the predecessor and successor states. The laws of the former will determine the extent to which the inhabitants of an area to be ceded to another authority will retain their nationality after the change in sovereignty, while the laws of the successor state will prescribe the conditions under which the new nationality will be granted. The general rule would appear to be that nationality will change with sovereignty, although it will be incumbent upon the new sovereign to declare the pertinent rules with regard to people born in the territory or resident there, or born abroad of parents who are nationals of the former regime. Similarly, the ceding state may well provide for its former citizens in the territory in question to retain

²⁴⁷ As to state succession to wrongful acts, see e.g. P. Dumberry, *State Succession to International Responsibility*, The Hague, 2007; W. Czaplinski, 'State Succession and State Responsibility', 28 *Canadian YIL*, 1990, p. 339 and M. J. Volkovitch, 'Righting Wrongs: Towards a New Theory of State Succession to Responsibility for International Delicts', 92 *Columbia Law Review*, 1992, p. 2162. See also *Minister of Defence v. Mwandighi* (SA 5/91) [1991] NASC 5; 1992 (2) SA 355 (NmS) (25 October 1991).

²⁴⁸ See O'Connell, *State Succession*, vol. I, chapters 20 and 21; P. Weis, *Nationality and Statelessness in International Law*, 2nd edn, Alphen aan den Rijn, 1979; I. Ziemele, *State Continuity and Nationality: Past, Present and Future as Defined by International Law*, The Hague, 2005; P. Dumberry, 'Obsolete and Unjust: The Rule of Continuous Nationality in the Context of State Succession', 76 *Nordic Journal of International Law*, 2007, p. 153; C. Economidès, 'Les Effets de la Succession d'États sur la Nationalité', 103 *RGDIP*, 1999, p. 577; *Nationalité, Minorités et Succession d'États en Europe de l'Est* (eds. E. Decaux and A. Pellet), Paris, 1996; European Commission for Democracy Through Law, *Citizenship and State Succession*, Strasbourg, 1997; *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 218, and Reports of the International Law Commission, A/50/10, 1995, p. 68; A/51/10, 1996, p. 171; A/52/10, 1997, p. 11; A/53/10, 1998, p. 189 and A/54/10, 1999, p. 12. See also above, chapters 12, p. 659, and 14, p. 808.

²⁴⁹ See e.g. article 1 of the Hague Convention on Certain Questions relating to the Conflict of Nationality Laws, 1930, the *Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 4, p. 24 (1923); 2 AD, p. 349, the *Acquisition of Polish Nationality* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 7, p. 16; 2 AD, p. 292, and the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1955, p. 23; 22 ILR, p. 349.

their nationality, thus creating a situation of dual nationality. This would not arise, of course, where the former state completely disappears.

Some states acquiring territory may provide for the inhabitants to obtain the new nationality automatically while others may give the inhabitants an option to depart and retain their original nationality. Actual practice is varied and much depends on the circumstances, but it should be noted that the 1961 Convention on the Reduction of Statelessness provides that states involved in the cession of territory should ensure that no person becomes stateless as a result of the particular change in sovereignty. There may indeed be a principle in international law to the effect that the successor state should provide for the possibility of nationals of the predecessor state living in or having a substantial connection with the territory taken over by the successor state.²⁵⁰ It may indeed be, on the other hand, that such nationals have the right to choose their nationality in such situations, although this is unclear. The Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia referred in this context to the principle of self-determination as proclaimed in article 1 of the two International Covenants on Human Rights, 1966. The Commission stated that, 'by virtue of that right every individual may choose to belong to whatever ethnic, religious or language community he wishes'. Further, it was noted that:

In the Commission's view one possible consequence of this principle might be for the members of the Serbian population in Bosnia and Herzegovina and Croatia to be recognised under agreements between the Republics as having the nationality of their choice, with all the rights and obligations which that entails with respect to the states concerned.²⁵¹

In 1997 the European Convention on Nationality was adopted.²⁵² Article 19 provides that states parties should seek to resolve issues

²⁵⁰ See *Oppenheim's International Law*, p. 219.

²⁵¹ Opinion No. 2, 92 ILR, pp. 167, 168–9. The Commission concluded by stating that the Republics 'must afford the members of those minorities and ethnic groups [i.e. the Serbian population in Bosnia-Herzegovina and Croatia] all the human rights and fundamental freedoms recognised in international law, including, where appropriate, the right to choose their nationality', *ibid.*, p. 169.

²⁵² See also the Declaration on the Consequences of State Succession for the Nationality of Natural Persons, European Commission for Democracy Through Law, 1996, CDL-NAT (1996)007e-rev-restr. and the Council of Europe Convention on the Avoidance of Statelessness in Relation to State Succession, 2006, which provides that any person with the nationality of the predecessor state who has or would become stateless as a result of state succession has the right to nationality of a state concerned in accordance with the Convention.

concerning nationality and state succession by agreement between themselves. Article 18 stipulates that in deciding on the granting or the retention of nationality in cases of state succession, each state party concerned shall take account, in particular, of the genuine and effective link of the person concerned with the state; the habitual residence of the person concerned at the time of state succession; the will of the person concerned and the territorial origin of the person concerned. In the case of non-nationals, article 20 provides for respect for the principle that nationals of a predecessor state habitually resident in the territory over which sovereignty is transferred to a successor state and who have not acquired its nationality shall have the right to remain in that state.

In 1999, the International Law Commission adopted Draft Articles on Nationality of Natural Persons in Relation to a Succession of States.²⁵³ Article 1 (defined as the 'very foundation' of the draft articles²⁵⁴), reaffirming the right to a nationality, provides that individuals who on the date of succession had the nationality of the predecessor state, irrespective of the mode of acquisition of that nationality, have the right to the nationality of at least one of the states concerned. States are to take all appropriate measures to prevent persons who had the nationality of the predecessor state on the date of succession from becoming stateless as a result of the succession,²⁵⁵ while persons having their habitual residence in the territory concerned are presumed to acquire the nationality of the successor state.²⁵⁶ The intention of the latter provision is to avoid a gap arising between the date of succession and the date of any agreement or legislation granting nationality.²⁵⁷ Article 11 stipulates that each state concerned shall grant a right to opt for its nationality to persons concerned who have appropriate connection with that state if those persons would otherwise become stateless as a result of the succession of states, and that when this right has been exercised, the state whose nationality they have opted for shall attribute its nationality to such persons. Conversely, the state whose nationality they have renounced shall withdraw its nationality from such persons, unless they would thereby become stateless.

²⁵³ See Report of the International Law Commission on its 51st Session, A/54/10, 1999, p. 12.

²⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 29.

²⁵⁵ Article 4. Article 16 provides that persons concerned shall not be arbitrarily deprived of the nationality of the predecessor state nor arbitrarily denied the right to acquire the nationality of the successor state.

²⁵⁶ Article 5. Article 12 states that the status of persons concerned as habitual residents shall not be affected by the succession of states.

²⁵⁷ Report of the International Law Commission on its 51st Session, p. 40.

Article 12 provides that where the acquisition or loss of nationality in relation to the succession of states would impair the unity of a family, the states concerned shall take all appropriate measures to allow that family to remain together or to be reunited.²⁵⁸

The second part of the set of draft articles concerns specific succession situations and their implications for nationality. Article 20 concerns the situation where one state transfers part of its territory to another state. Here the successor state shall attribute its nationality to the persons concerned who have their habitual residence in the transferred territory and the predecessor state shall withdraw its nationality from such persons, unless otherwise indicated by the exercise of the right of option which such persons shall be granted. The predecessor state shall not, however, withdraw its nationality before such persons acquire the nationality of the successor state. Where two or more states unite to form one successor state, the successor state shall attribute its nationality to all persons who on the date of succession held the nationality of the predecessor state.²⁵⁹

In the case both of the dissolution of the predecessor state to form two or more successor states and the separation of parts of a territory to form one or more successor states while the predecessor state continues to exist, the same fundamental rules apply. Articles 22 and 24 respectively provide that each successor state shall, unless otherwise indicated by the exercise of a right of option,²⁶⁰ attribute its nationality to (a) persons concerned having their habitual residence in its territory; and (b) other persons concerned having an appropriate legal connection with a constituent unit of the predecessor state that has become part of that successor state; and to (c) persons not otherwise entitled to a nationality of any state concerned having their habitual residence in a third state, who were born in or, before leaving the predecessor state, had their last habitual residence in what has become the territory of that successor state or having any other

²⁵⁸ A child born after the date of succession who has not acquired any nationality has the right to the nationality of the state concerned on whose territory he/she was born, article 13.

²⁵⁹ Article 21. This the Commission concluded was a rule of customary law: see Report of the International Law Commission on its 51st Session, p. 80.

²⁶⁰ Article 23 provides that successor states shall grant a right of option to persons concerned covered by the provisions of article 22 who are qualified to acquire the nationality of two or more successor states, while each successor state shall grant a right to opt for its nationality to persons concerned who are not covered by the provisions of article 22. Where the predecessor state continues, article 26 provides that both the predecessor and successor states shall grant a right of option to all persons concerned who are qualified to have the nationality of both the predecessor and successor states or of two or more successor states.

appropriate connection with that successor state.²⁶¹ These provisions are meant to prevent a situation, such as occurred with regard to some successor states of the former Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia, where the test of nationality of the successor state centred upon the possession of the citizenship of the former constituent republics rather than upon habitual residence, thus having the effect of depriving certain persons of the nationality of the successor state.²⁶²

Hong Kong²⁶³

Of particular interest in the context of state succession and the decolonisation process has been the situation with regard to Hong Kong. While Hong Kong island and the southern tip of the Kowloon peninsula (with Stonecutters island) were ceded to Britain in perpetuity,²⁶⁴ the New Territories (comprising some 92 per cent of the total land area of the territory) were leased to Britain for ninety-nine years commencing 1 July 1898.²⁶⁵ Accordingly, the British and Chinese governments opened negotiations and in 1984 reached an agreement. This Agreement took the form of a Joint Declaration and Three Annexes²⁶⁶ and lays down the system under which Hong Kong has been governed as from 1 July 1997. A Hong Kong

²⁶¹ In the case of categories (b) and (c), the provision does not apply to persons who have their habitual residence in a third state and also have the nationality of that other or any other state: see article 8.

²⁶² See Report of the International Law Commission on its 51st Session, pp. 83–5, and J. F. Rezek, 'Le Droit International de la Nationalité', 198 HR, 1986, pp. 342–3. Article 25 provides that in the case where the predecessor state continues, then it shall withdraw its nationality from persons concerned who are qualified to acquire the nationality of the successor state in accordance with article 24. It shall not, however, withdraw its nationality before such persons acquire the nationality of the successor state. Unless otherwise indicated by the exercise of a right of option, the predecessor state shall not, however, withdraw its nationality from such persons who: (a) have their habitual residence in its territory; (b) are not covered by subparagraph (a) and have an appropriate legal connection with a constituent unit of the predecessor state that has remained part of the predecessor state; (c) have their habitual residence in a third state, and were born in or, before leaving the predecessor state, had their last habitual residence in what has remained part of the territory of the predecessor state or have any other appropriate connection with that state.

²⁶³ See e.g. R. Mushkat, *One Country, Two International Legal Personalities*, Hong Kong, 1997, and Mushkat, 'Hong Kong and Succession of Treaties', 46 ICLQ, 1997, p. 181.

²⁶⁴ See the Treaty of Nanking, 1842, 30 BFSP, p. 389 and the Convention of Peking, 1860, 50 BFSP, p. 10.

²⁶⁵ 90 BFSP, p. 17. All three treaties were denounced by China as 'unequal treaties'.

²⁶⁶ See 23 ILM, 1984, p. 1366.

Special Administrative Region (SAR) was established, which enjoys a high degree of autonomy, except in foreign and defence affairs. It is vested with executive, legislative and independent judicial power, including that of final adjudication. The laws of Hong Kong remain basically unaffected. The government of the SAR is composed of local inhabitants and the current social and economic systems continue unchanged. The SAR retains the status of a free port and a separate customs territory and remains an international financial centre with a freely convertible currency. Using the name of 'Hong Kong, China', the SAR may on its own maintain and develop economic and cultural relations and conclude relevant agreements with states, regions and relevant international organisations. Existing systems of shipping management continue and shipping certificates relating to the shipping register are issued under the name of 'Hong Kong, China'.

These policies are enshrined in a Basic Law of the SAR to remain unchanged for fifty years. Annex I of the Agreement also provides that public servants in Hong Kong, including members of the police and judiciary, will remain in employment and upon retirement will receive their pension and other benefits due to them on terms no less favourable than before and irrespective of their nationality or place of residence. Airlines incorporated and having their principal place of business in Hong Kong continue to operate and the system of civil aviation management continues. The SAR has extensive authority to conclude agreements in this field. Rights and freedoms in Hong Kong are maintained, including freedoms of the person, of speech, of the press, of assembly, of belief, of movement, to strike and to form and join trade unions. In an important provision, article XIII of Annex I stipulates that the provisions of the International Covenants on Human Rights, 1966 are to continue in force. Accordingly, a high level of succession is provided for, but it is as well to recognise that the Hong Kong situation is unusual.

Suggestions for further reading

- M. Craven, 'The Problem of State Succession and the Identity of States under International Law', 9 EJIL, 1998, p. 142
- D. P. O'Connell, *State Succession in Municipal Law and International Law*, Cambridge, 2 vols., 1967
- M. N. Shaw, 'State Succession Revisited', 5 Finnish YIL, 1994, p. 34
- Succession of States* (ed. M. Mrak), The Hague, 1999

The settlement of disputes by peaceful means

It is fair to say that international law has always considered its fundamental purpose to be the maintenance of peace.¹ Although ethical preoccupations stimulated its development and inform its growth, international law has historically been regarded by the international community primarily as a means to ensure the establishment and preservation of world peace and security. This chapter is concerned with the procedures available within the international order for the peaceful resolution of disputes and conflicts, except for judicial procedures covered elsewhere.²

¹ See generally J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, and Merrills, 'The Mosaic of International Dispute Settlement Procedures: Complementary or Contradictory?', 54 NILR, 2007, p. 361; F. Orrego Vicuña, *International Dispute Settlement in an Evolving Global Society: Constitutionalization, Accessibility, Privatization*, Cambridge, 2004; J. Collier and V. Lowe, *The Settlement of Disputes in International Law*, Cambridge, 1999; United Nations, *Handbook on the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes Between States*, New York, 1992; L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, chapter 10; David Davies Memorial Institute, *International Disputes: The Legal Aspects*, London, 1972; K. V. Raman, *Dispute Settlement Through the UN*, Dobbs Ferry, 1977; O. R. Young, *The Intermediaries*, Princeton, 1967; D. W. Bowett, 'Contemporary Developments in Legal Techniques in the Settlement of Disputes', 180 HR, 1983, p. 171, and B. S. Murty, 'Settlement of Disputes' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 673. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 821; K. Oellers-Frahm and A. Zimmermann, *Dispute Settlement in Public International Law*, Berlin, 2001; C. P. Economides, 'L'Obligation de Règlement Pacifique des Différends Internationaux' in *Mélanges Boutros-Ghali*, Brussels, 1999, p. 405; A. Peters, 'International Dispute Settlement: A Network of Cooperational Duties', 14 EJIL, 2003, p. 1; P. Pazartzis, *Les Engagements Internationaux en Matière de Règlement Pacifique des Différends entre États*, Paris, 1992, and *The UN Decade of International Law: Reflections on International Dispute Settlement* (eds. M. Brus, S. Muller and S. Wiemers), Dordrecht, 1991.

² See above, chapter 6 with regard to regional human rights courts; chapter 8 with regard to international criminal courts and tribunals; chapter 11 with regard to dispute settlement under the Convention on the Law of the Sea and chapter 19 with regard to the International Court of Justice.

Basically the techniques of conflict management fall into two categories: diplomatic procedures and adjudication. The former involves an attempt to resolve differences either by the contending parties themselves or with the aid of other entities by the use of the discussion and fact-finding methods. Adjudication procedures involve the determination by a disinterested third party of the legal and factual issues involved, either by arbitration or by the decision of judicial organs.

The political approach to conflict settlement is divided into two sections, with the measures applicable by the United Nations being separately examined (in chapter 22) as they possess a distinctive character. Although for the sake of convenience each method of dispute settlement is separately examined, it should be noted that in any given situation a range of mechanisms may well be utilised. A good example of this is afforded by the successful settlement of the Chad–Libya boundary dispute. Following a long period of conflict and armed hostilities since the dispute erupted in 1973, the two states signed a Framework Agreement on the Peaceful Settlement of the Territorial Dispute on 31 August 1989 in which they undertook to seek a peaceful solution within one year. In the absence of a political settlement, the parties undertook to take the matter to the International Court.³ After inconclusive negotiations, the dispute was submitted to the International Court by notification of the Framework Agreement by the two parties.⁴ The decision of the Court was delivered on 3 February 1994. The Court accepted the argument of Chad that the boundary between the two states was defined by the Franco-Libyan Treaty of 10 August 1955.⁵ Following this decision, the two states concluded an agreement providing for Libyan withdrawal from the Aouzou Strip by 30 May 1994. The agreement provided for monitoring of this withdrawal by United Nations observers.⁶ The two parties also agreed to establish a joint team of experts to undertake the delimitation of the common frontier in accordance with the decision of the International Court.⁷ On 4 May 1994, the Security Council adopted resolution 915 (1994) establishing

³ See Report of the UN Secretary-General, S/1994/512, 27 April 1994, 33 ILM, 1994, p. 786, and generally M. M. Ricciardi, 'Title to the Aouzou Strip: A Legal and Historical Analysis', 17 *Yale Journal of International Law*, 1992, p. 301.

⁴ Libya on 31 August 1990 and Chad on 3 September 1990: see the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, pp. 6, 14; 100 ILR, pp. 1, 13.

⁵ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 40; 100 ILR, p. 39.

⁶ 100 ILR, p. 102, article 1. See also 33 ILM, 1994, p. 619.

⁷ 100 ILR, p. 103, article 6. See also the letter of the UN Secretary-General to the Security Council, S/1994/432, 13 April 1994, *ibid.*, pp. 103–4.

the UN Aouzou Strip Observer Group (UNASOG) and authorising the deployment of observers and support staff for a period up to forty days.⁸ On 30 May, Libya and Chad signed a Joint Declaration stating that the withdrawal of the Libyan administration and forces had been effected as of that date to the satisfaction of both parties as monitored by UNASOG.⁹ The Security Council terminated the mandate of UNASOG upon the successful conclusion of the mission by resolution 926 (1994) on 13 June that year.¹⁰

However, states are not obliged to resolve their differences at all, and this applies in the case of serious legal conflicts as well as peripheral political disagreements. All the methods available to settle disputes are operative only upon the consent of the particular states.¹¹ This, of course, can be contrasted with the situation within municipal systems. It is reflected in the different functions performed by the courts in the international and domestic legal orders respectively, and it is one aspect of the absence of a stable, central focus within the world community.

The mechanisms dealing with the peaceful settlement of disputes require in the first instance the existence of a dispute. The definition of a dispute has been the subject of some consideration by the International Court,¹² but the reference by the Permanent Court in the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions (Jurisdiction)* case¹³ to 'a disagreement over a point of law or fact, a conflict of legal views or of interests between two persons' constitutes an authoritative indication. A distinction is sometimes made between legal and political disputes, or justiciable and non-justiciable disputes.¹⁴ Although maintained in some international treaties, it is to some extent unsound, in view of the fact that any dispute will involve some political considerations and many overtly political disagreements may be resolved by judicial means. Whether any dispute is to be termed legal or political may well hinge upon the particular circumstances of

⁸ Note that on 14 April, the Security Council adopted resolution 910 (1994) by which the initial UN reconnaissance team was exempted from sanctions operating against Libya by virtue of resolution 748 (1992). The observer group received a similar exemption by virtue of resolution 915 B.

⁹ See Report of the UN Secretary-General, S/1994/672, 6 June 1994, 100 ILR, pp. 111 ff. The Joint Declaration was countersigned by the Chief Military Observer of UNASOG as a witness.

¹⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 114.

¹¹ With the exception of binding Security Council resolutions: see further below, chapter 22, p. 1241.

¹² See further below, chapter 19, p. 1067. ¹³ PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, 1924, p. 11.

¹⁴ See H. Lauterpacht, *The Function of Law in the International Community*, London, 1933, especially pp. 19–20.

the case, the views adopted by the relevant parties and the way in which they choose to characterise their differences. It is in reality extremely difficult to point to objective general criteria clearly differentiating the two.¹⁵ This does not, however, imply that there are not significant differences between the legal and political procedures available for resolving problems. For one thing, the strictly legal approach is dependent upon the provisions of the law as they stand at that point, irrespective of any reforming tendencies the particular court may have, while the political techniques of settlement are not so restricted. It is also not unusual for political and legal organs to deal with aspects of the same basic situation.¹⁶

The role of political influences and considerations in inter-state disputes is obviously a vital one, and many settlements can only be properly understood within the wider international political context. In addition, how a state proceeds in a dispute will be conditioned by political factors. If the dispute is perceived to be one affecting vital interests, for example, the state would be less willing to submit the matter to binding third party settlement than if it were a more technical issue, while the existence of regional mechanisms will often be of political significance.

Article 2(3) of the United Nations Charter provides that:

[a]ll members shall settle their international disputes by peaceful means in such a manner that international peace and security and justice are not endangered.

The 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations and Co-operation among States¹⁷ develops this principle and notes that:

states shall accordingly seek early and just settlement of their international disputes by negotiation, inquiry, mediation, conciliation, arbitration, judicial settlement, resort to regional agencies or arrangements or other peaceful means of their choice.

The same methods of dispute settlement are stipulated in article 33(1) of the UN Charter, although in the context of disputes the continuance of

¹⁵ See further below, p. 1067.

¹⁶ See the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 22–3; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 548–9 and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 435–6; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 146–7.

¹⁷ General Assembly resolution 2625 (XXV). See also the Manila Declaration on the Peaceful Settlement of International Disputes, General Assembly resolution 37/590; resolutions 2627 (XXV); 2734 (XXV); 40/9; the Declaration on the Prevention and Removal of Disputes and Situations which may Threaten International Peace and Security, resolution 43/51 and the Declaration on Fact-finding, resolution 46/59.

which are likely to endanger international peace and security. The 1970 Declaration, which is not so limited, asserts that in seeking an early and just settlement, the parties are to agree upon such peaceful means as they see appropriate to the circumstances and nature of the dispute.

There would appear, therefore, to be no inherent hierarchy with respect to the methods specified and no specific method required in any given situation. States have a free choice as to the mechanisms adopted for settling their disputes.¹⁸ This approach is also taken in a number of regional instruments, including the American Treaty on Pacific Settlement (the Pact of Bogotá), 1948 of the Organisation of American States, the European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes, 1957 and the Helsinki Final Act of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe, 1975. In addition, it is to be noted that the parties to a dispute have the duty to continue to seek a settlement by other peaceful means agreed by them, in the event of the failure of one particular method. Should the means elaborated fail to resolve a dispute, the continuance of which is likely to endanger the maintenance of international peace and security, the parties under article 37(1) of the Charter, 'shall refer it to the Security Council'.¹⁹

Diplomatic methods of dispute settlement

*Negotiation*²⁰

Of all the procedures used to resolve differences, the simplest and most utilised form is understandably negotiation. It consists basically of discussions between the interested parties with a view to reconciling divergent

¹⁸ See article 33(1) of the UN Charter and section I(3) and (10) of the Manila Declaration.

¹⁹ Emphasis added.

²⁰ See UN Handbook, chapter II; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, chapter 2; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 1, and Merrills, 'Mosaic'; and H. Lachs, 'The Law and Settlement of International Disputes' in Brus *et al.*, *Dispute Settlement*, pp. 287–9. See also Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 678–9; A. Watson, *Diplomacy*, London, 1982; F. Kirgis, *Prior Consultation in International Law*, Charlottesville, 1983; P. J. De Waart, *The Element of Negotiation in the Pacific Settlement of Disputes between States*, The Hague, 1973; A. Lall, *Modern International Negotiation*, New York, 1966; G. Geamanu, 'Théorie et Pratique des Négociations en Droit International', 166 HR, 1980 I, p. 365; B. Y. Diallo, *Introduction à l'Étude et à la Pratique de la Négociation*, Paris, 1998; N. E. Ghazali, 'La Négociation Diplomatique dans la Jurisprudence Internationale', *Revue Belge de Droit International*, 1992, p. 323, and D. Anderson, 'Negotiations and Dispute Settlement' in *Remedies in International Law* (ed. M. Evans), Oxford, 1998, p. 111. Note also that operative paragraph 10 of the Manila Declaration emphasises that direct negotiations are a 'flexible and effective means of peaceful settlement'.

opinions, or at least understanding the different positions maintained. It does not involve any third party, at least at that stage, and so differs from the other forms of dispute management. In addition to being an extremely active method of settlement itself, negotiation is normally the precursor to other settlement procedures as the parties decide amongst themselves how best to resolve their differences.²¹ It is eminently suited to the clarification, if not always resolution, of complicated disagreements. It is by mutual discussions that the essence of the differences will be revealed and the opposing contentions elucidated. Negotiations are the most satisfactory means to resolve disputes since the parties are so directly engaged. Negotiations, of course, do not always succeed, since they do depend on a certain degree of mutual goodwill, flexibility and sensitivity. Hostile public opinion in one state may prevent the concession of certain points and mutual distrust may fatally complicate the process, while opposing political attitudes may be such as to preclude any acceptable negotiated agreement.²²

In certain circumstances there may exist a duty to enter into negotiations arising out of particular bilateral or multilateral agreements.²³ Article 283(1) of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provides, for example, that when a dispute arises between states parties concerning the interpretation or application of the Convention, 'the parties to the dispute shall proceed expeditiously to an exchange of views regarding its settlement by negotiation or other peaceful means'.²⁴ Other treaties may

²¹ See Judge Nervo, *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1973, pp. 3, 45; 55 ILR, pp. 183, 225. See also the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, 1924, p. 15, noting that 'Before a dispute can be made the subject of an action at law, its subject matter should have been clearly defined by diplomatic negotiations', and the *Right of Passage (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1957, pp. 105, 148; 24 ILR, pp. 840, 848–9. The Court noted in the *Free Zones of Upper Savoy and the District of Gex* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 22, p. 13; 5 AD, pp. 461, 463, that the judicial settlement of disputes was 'simply an alternative to the direct and friendly settlement of such disputes between the parties'.

²² Note that certain treaties provide for consultations in certain circumstances: see article 84 of the Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations, 1975; article 41 of the Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978 and article 42 of the Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Property, Archives and Debts, 1983.

²³ See the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 3; 55 ILR, p. 238. See also article 8(2) of the Antarctic Treaty, 1959; article 15 of the Moon Treaty, 1979; article 41 of the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978; article 84 of the Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations, 1975 and article 283 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982.

²⁴ This provision has been discussed by the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea. See e.g. the *Southern Bluefin Tuna* cases, 28 ILM, 1999, p. 1624 and the *Mox* case, 41 ILM, 2002,

predicate resort to third-party mechanisms upon the failure of negotiations.²⁵ In addition, although it has been emphasised that: 'Neither in the Charter or otherwise in international law is any general rule to be found to the effect that the exhaustion of diplomatic negotiations constitutes a precondition for a matter to be referred to the Court',²⁶ it is possible that tribunals may direct the parties to engage in negotiations in good faith and may indicate the factors to be taken into account in the course of negotiations between the parties.²⁷ Where there is an obligation to negotiate, this would imply also an obligation to pursue such negotiations as far as possible with a view to concluding agreements.²⁸ The Court held in the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases that:

the parties are under an obligation to enter into negotiations with a view to arriving at an agreement, and not merely to go through a formal process of negotiation as a sort of prior condition . . . they are under an obligation so to conduct themselves that the negotiations are meaningful, which will not be the case when either of them insists upon its own position without contemplating any modification of it.²⁹

p. 405. In the *Land Reclamation* case, 126 ILR, p. 487, it was held that there was no need to continue the exchange of views where it was clear that the exchange could yield no positive result, *ibid.*, para. 48. In *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago*, arbitral award of 11 April 2006, paras. 201–3, it was held that article 283(1) could not reasonably be interpreted to require that, when several years of negotiations had already failed to resolve the dispute, further and separate exchanges of views would be required. It was noted that the requirement of article 283(1) for settlement by negotiation is in relation to the obligation to agree upon a delimitation under articles 74 and 83, subsumed within the negotiations which those articles require already to have taken place.

²⁵ See e.g. the Revised General Act for the Settlement of Disputes 1949; the International Maritime Organisation Treaty, 1948 and the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982.

²⁶ *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 303.

²⁷ See the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 53–4; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 83. See also the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 32; 55 ILR, pp. 238, 267.

²⁸ See the *Railway Traffic between Lithuania and Poland* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 42, p. 116; 6 AD, pp. 403, 405. Section I, paragraph 10 of the Manila Declaration declares that when states resort to negotiations, they should 'negotiate meaningfully, in order to arrive at an early settlement acceptable to the parties'. Article 4(e) of the International Law Association's draft International Instrument on the Protection of the Environment from Damage Caused by Space Debris provides that 'to negotiate in good faith . . . means *inter alia* not only to hold consultations or talks but also to pursue them with a view of reaching a solution': see Report of the Sixty-sixth Conference, Buenos Aires, 1994, p. 319.

²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 47; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 76. The Court has noted that, 'like all similar obligations to negotiate in international law, the negotiations have to be conducted in good faith', *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 423. Questions as to the meaning

The Court in the *German External Debts* case emphasised that although an agreement to negotiate did not necessarily imply an obligation to reach an agreement, 'it does imply that serious efforts towards that end will be made'.³⁰ In the *Lac Lanoux* arbitration, it was stated that 'consultations and negotiations between the two states must be genuine, must comply with the rules of good faith and must not be mere formalities'.³¹ Examples of infringement of the rules of good faith were held to include the unjustified breaking off of conversations, unusual delays and systematic refusal to give consideration to proposals or adverse interests.³²

The point was also emphasised by the International Court in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, where it noted the reference in article VI of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons to 'pursue negotiations in good faith on effective measures relating to cessation of the nuclear arms race at an early date and to nuclear disarmament, and on a treaty on general and complete disarmament under strict and effective international control'. The Court then declared that:

The legal import of that obligation goes beyond that of a mere obligation of conduct: the obligation involved here is an obligation to achieve a precise result – nuclear disarmament in all its aspects – by adopting a particular course of conduct, namely, the pursuit of negotiations on the matter in good faith.³³

Where disputes are by their continuance likely to endanger the maintenance of international peace and security, article 33 of the UN Charter provides that the parties to such disputes shall first of all seek a solution by negotiation, inquiry or mediation, and then resort, if the efforts have not borne fruit, to more complex forms of resolution.³⁴

of 'negotiations' arose in both *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 69, 99 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 46 ff.

³⁰ 47 ILR, pp. 418, 454. ³¹ 24 ILR, pp. 101, 119.

³² *Ibid.*, p. 128. See also the *Tacna-Arica Arbitration*, 2 RIAA, pp. 921 ff.

³³ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 263–4; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 213–14. The Court usually urges the parties to negotiate when making an order granting (or indeed declining) provisional measures: see e.g. the *Great Belt* case, ICJ Reports, 1991, p. 12 and the *Pulp Mills on the River Uruguay* orders of 13 July 2006 and 23 January 2007. See further as to provisional measures, below, chapter 19, p. 1093.

³⁴ See the *North Sea Continental Shelf* cases, ICJ Reports, 1969, pp. 3, 47; 41 ILR, pp. 29, 77 and the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* cases, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 32; 55 ILR, p. 267.

*Good offices and mediation*³⁵

The employment of the procedures of good offices and mediation involves the use of a third party, whether an individual or individuals, a state or group of states or an international organisation, to encourage the contending parties to come to a settlement. Unlike the techniques of arbitration and adjudication, the process aims at persuading the parties to a dispute to reach satisfactory terms for its termination by themselves. Provisions for settling the dispute are not prescribed.

Technically, good offices are involved where a third party attempts to influence the opposing sides to enter into negotiations, whereas mediation implies the active participation in the negotiating process of the third party itself. In fact, the dividing line between the two approaches is often difficult to maintain as they tend to merge into one another, depending upon the circumstances. One example of the good offices method is the role played by the US President in 1906 in concluding the Russian–Japanese War,³⁶ or the function performed by the USSR in assisting in the peaceful settlement of the India–Pakistan dispute in 1965.³⁷ Another might be the part played by France in encouraging US–North Vietnamese negotiations to begin in Paris in the early 1970s.³⁸ A mediator, such as the US Secretary of State in the Middle East in 1973–4,³⁹ has an active and vital function to perform in seeking to cajole the disputing parties into accepting what are often his own proposals. It is his responsibility to reconcile the different claims and improve the atmosphere pervading the discussions. The UN Secretary-General can sometimes play an important role

³⁵ See UN Handbook, p. 33; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 27; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 2; R. R. Probst, 'Good Offices' *In the Light of Swiss International Practice and Experience*, Dordrecht, 1989; *New Approaches to International Mediation* (eds. C. R. Mitchell and K. Webb), New York, 1988; J. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, pp. 373–6, and Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 680–1. See also *International Mediation in Theory and Practice* (eds. S. Touval and I. W. Zartman), Boulder, 1985, and *Mediation in International Relations* (eds. J. Bercovitch and J. Z. Rubin), London, 1992.

³⁶ Murty, 'Settlement', p. 681. Note also the exercise of US good offices in relation to a territorial dispute between France in regard to its protectorate of Cambodia and Thailand, SCOR, First Year, 81st meeting, pp. 505–7.

³⁷ See GAOR, 21st session, supp. no. 2, part I, chapter III.

³⁸ See AFDI, 1972, pp. 995–6. Note also the role played by Cardinal Samoré, a Papal mediator in the Beagle Channel dispute between Argentina and Chile, between 1978 and 1985: see Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 30, and 24 ILM, 1985, pp. 1 ff. See also below, p. 1054.

³⁹ See DUSPIL, 1974, pp. 656–8 and *ibid.*, pp. 759–62.

by the exercise of his good offices.⁴⁰ An example of this was provided in the situation relating to Afghanistan in 1988. The Geneva Agreements of that year specifically noted that a representative of the Secretary-General would lend his good offices to the parties.⁴¹ Good offices may also be undertaken by the Secretary-General jointly with office-holders of regional organisations.⁴²

The Hague Conventions of 1899 and 1907 laid down many of the rules governing these two processes. It was stipulated that the signatories to the treaties had a right to offer good offices or mediation, even during hostilities, and that the exercise of the right was never to be regarded by either of the contending sides as an unfriendly act.⁴³ It was also explained that such procedures were not binding. The Conventions laid a duty upon the parties to a serious dispute or conflict to resort to good offices or mediation as far as circumstances allow, before having recourse to arms.⁴⁴ This, of course, has to be seen in the light of the relevant Charter provisions regarding the use of force, but it does point to the part that should be played by these diplomatic procedures.

*Inquiry*⁴⁵

Where differences of opinion on factual matters underlie a dispute between parties, the logical solution is often to institute a commission of

⁴⁰ See Security Council resolution 367 (1975) requesting the UN Secretary-General to undertake a good offices mission to Cyprus. See the statement by the Secretary-General of the functions of good offices cited in UN Handbook, pp. 35–6. See also B. G. Ramcharan, 'The Good Offices of the United Nations Secretary-General in the Field of Human Rights', 76 AJIL, 1982, p. 130. Note also paragraph 12 of the Declaration on the Prevention and Removal of Disputes and Situations Which May Threaten International Peace and Security, 1988, General Assembly resolution 43/51. See also below, chapter 22, p. 1222.

⁴¹ S/19835, annex. See also Security Council resolution 622 (1988).

⁴² For example with the Chairman of the Organisation of African Unity with regard to the Western Sahara and Mayotte situations, UN Handbook, p. 39, and with the Secretary-General of the Organisation of American States with regard to Central America, *ibid.*

⁴³ Article 3 of Hague Convention No. I, 1899 and Convention No. I, 1907.

⁴⁴ *Ibid.*, article 2.

⁴⁵ See Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 24; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 3, and N. Bar-Yaacov, *The Handling of International Disputes by Means of Inquiry*, London, 1974. See also UN Handbook, pp. 24 ff.; T. Bensalah, *L'Enquête Internationale dans le Règlement des Conflits*, Paris, 1976; P. Ruegger, 'Quelques Réflexions sur le Rôle Actuel et Futur des Commissions Internationales d'Enquête' in *Mélanges Bindschedler*, Paris, 1980, p. 427, and Ruegger, 'Nouvelles Réflexions sur le Rôle des Procédures Internationales d'Enquête dans la Solution des Conflits Internationaux' in *Études en l'Honneur de Robert Ago*, Milan, 1987, p. 327.

inquiry to be conducted by reputable observers to ascertain precisely the facts in contention.⁴⁶ Provisions for such inquiries were first elaborated in the 1899 Hague Conference as a possible alternative to the use of arbitration.⁴⁷ However, the technique is limited in that it can only have relevance in the case of international disputes, involving neither the honour nor the vital interests of the parties, where the conflict centres around a genuine disagreement as to particular facts which can be resolved by recourse to an impartial and conscientious investigation.⁴⁸

Inquiry was most successfully used in the Dogger Bank incident of 1904 where Russian naval ships fired on British fishing boats in the belief that they were hostile Japanese torpedo craft.⁴⁹ The Hague provisions were put into effect⁵⁰ and the report of the international inquiry commission contributed to a peaceful settlement of the issue.⁵¹ This encouraged an elaboration of the technique by the 1907 Hague Conference,⁵² and a wave of support for the procedure.⁵³ The United States, for instance, concluded forty-eight bilateral treaties between 1913 and 1940 with provisions in each one of them for the creation of a permanent inquiry commission. These agreements were known as the 'Bryan treaties'.⁵⁴

⁴⁶ Inquiry as a specific procedure under consideration here is to be distinguished from the general process of inquiry or fact-finding as part of other mechanisms for dispute settlement, such as through the UN or other institutions. See *Fact-Finding Before International Tribunals* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1992.

⁴⁷ See Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, chapter 2. The incident of the destruction of the US battleship *Maine* in 1898, which precipitated the American–Spanish War, was particularly noted as an impetus to the evolution of inquiry as an important 'safety valve' mechanism, *ibid.*, pp. 33–4. This was particularly in the light of the rival national inquiries that came to opposing conclusions in that episode: see the inquiry commission in that case, *Annual Register*, 1898, p. 362.

⁴⁸ Article 9, 1899 Hague Convention for the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes.

⁴⁹ Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, chapter 3. See also Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 47 ff., and J. B. Scott, *The Hague Court Reports*, New York, 1916, p. 403.

⁵⁰ The Commission of Inquiry consisted of four naval officers of the UK, Russian, French and American fleets, plus a fifth member chosen by the other four (in the event an Austro-Hungarian). It was required to examine all the circumstances, particularly with regard to responsibility and blame.

⁵¹ It was found that there was no justification for the Russian attack. In the event, both sides accepted the report and the sum of £65,000 was paid by Russia to the UK, Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, p. 70.

⁵² *Ibid.*, chapter 4. Note also the *Tavignano* inquiry, Scott, *Hague Court Reports*, New York, 1916, p. 413; the *Tiger* inquiry, Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, p. 156, and the *Tubantia* inquiry, Scott, *Hague Court Reports*, New York, 1932, p. 135. See also Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 49 ff., and Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, pp. 141–79.

⁵³ Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, chapter 5.

⁵⁴ These were prefigured by the Taft or Knox Treaties of 1911 (which did not come into operation), *ibid.*, pp. 113–17. The USSR also signed a number of treaties which provide for joint inquiries with regard to frontier incidents, *ibid.*, pp. 117–19.

However, the use of commissions of inquiry in accordance with the Hague Convention of 1907 proved in practice to be extremely rare. The *Red Crusader* inquiry of 1962⁵⁵ followed an interval of some forty years since the previous inquiry. This concerned an incident between a British trawler and a Danish fisheries protection vessel, which subsequently involved a British frigate. Although instituted as a fact-finding exercise, it did incorporate judicial aspects. A majority of the Commission were lawyers and the procedures followed a judicial pattern. In addition, aspects of the report reflected legal findings, such as the declaration that the firing on the trawler by the Danish vessel in an attempt to stop it escaping arrest for alleged illegal fishing, 'exceeded legitimate use of armed force'.⁵⁶ In the *Letelier and Moffitt* case, the only decision to date under one of the Bryan treaties, a US–Chile Commission was established in order to determine the amount of compensation that would be paid by Chile to the US in respect of an assassination alleged to have been carried out by it in Washington DC.⁵⁷ As in the *Red Crusader* inquiry, the Commission in its decision in January 1992 made a number of judicial determinations and the proceedings were conducted less as a fact-finding inquiry and more as an arbitration.⁵⁸

The value of inquiry within specified institutional frameworks, nevertheless, has been evident. Its use has increased within the United Nations generally⁵⁹ and in the specialised agencies.⁶⁰ Inquiry is also part of other

⁵⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 179–95, and Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 53 ff. See also 35 ILR, p. 485; Cmnd 776, and E. Lauterpacht, *The Contemporary Practice of the UK in the Field of International Law*, London, 1962, vol. I, pp. 50–3.

⁵⁶ Lauterpacht, *Contemporary Practice*, p. 53; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 55, and Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, p. 192.

⁵⁷ Chile denied liability but agreed to make an *ex gratia* payment equal to the amount of compensation that would be payable upon a finding of liability, such amount to be determined by the Commission.

⁵⁸ 88 ILR, p. 727, and see Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 56 ff.

⁵⁹ See the announcement by the UN Secretary-General of a mission to Iran and Iraq to investigate the situation of prisoners of war at the request of those states, S/20147. See also Security Council resolution 384 (1975) concerning East Timor. The General Assembly adopted a Declaration on Fact-Finding in resolution 46/59 (1991). See also the operation of the UN Compensation Commission established to resolve claims against Iraq resulting from its invasion of Kuwait in 1990 and described by the UN Secretary-General as performing an 'essentially fact-finding function', S/2259, 1991, para. 20: see Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 42, and Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 61, and the work of the World Bank Inspection Panel. See further below, pp. 1040 and 1042.

⁶⁰ See article 26 of the Constitution of the International Labour Organisation. See also the inquiry by the International Civil Aviation Organisation in 1983 into the shooting down of a Korean airliner, Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 26.

processes of dispute settlement in the context of general fact-finding.⁶¹ But inquiry as a separate mechanism in accordance with the Hague Convention of 1907 has fallen out of favour.⁶² In many disputes, of course, the determination of the relevant circumstances would simply not aid a settlement, whilst its nature as a third-party involvement in a situation would discourage some states.

*Conciliation*⁶³

The process of conciliation involves a third-party investigation of the basis of the dispute and the submission of a report embodying suggestions for a settlement. As such it involves elements of both inquiry and mediation, and in fact the process of conciliation emerged from treaties providing for permanent inquiry commissions.⁶⁴ Conciliation reports are only proposals and as such do not constitute binding decisions.⁶⁵ They are thus different from arbitration awards. The period between the world wars was the heyday for conciliation commissions and many treaties made provision for them as a method for resolving disputes. But the process

⁶¹ Note, for example, article 90 of Protocol I to the Geneva Red Cross Conventions, 1949 providing for the establishment of an International Fact-Finding Commission, and Security Council resolution 780 (1992) establishing a Commission of Experts to investigate violations of international humanitarian law in the Former Yugoslavia: see M. C. Bassiouni, 'The United Nations Commission of Experts Established Pursuant to Security Council Resolution 780 (1992)', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 784.

⁶² Note, however, the Permanent Court of Arbitration's Optional Rules for Fact-Finding Commissions of Inquiry, effective December 1997: see <http://pca-cpa.org/ENGLISH/BD/inquiryenglish.htm>.

⁶³ See UN Handbook, pp. 45 ff.; Lauterpacht, *Function of Law*, pp. 260–9; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 4; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 29; Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 682–3; H. Fox, 'Conciliation' in David Davies Memorial Institute, *International Disputes*, p. 93; J. P. Cot, *La Conciliation Internationale*, Paris, 1968; Bowett, 'Contemporary Developments', chapter 2; V. Degan, 'International Conciliation: Its Past and Future', *Völkerrecht und Rechtsphilosophie*, 1980, p. 261; and R. Donner, 'The Procedure of International Conciliation: Some Historical Aspects', 1 *Journal of the History of International Law*, 1999, p. 103.

⁶⁴ See Murty, 'Settlement'. Merrills notes that by 1940, nearly 200 conciliation treaties had been concluded, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 66.

⁶⁵ See paragraph 6 of the annex to the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969. The Vienna Convention for the Protection of the Ozone Layer, 1985 provides that conciliation awards should be considered in good faith, while article 85(7) of the Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations provides that any party to the dispute may declare unilaterally that it will abide by the recommendations in the report as far as it is concerned. Note that article 14(3) of the Treaty Establishing the Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States, 1981 stipulates that member states undertake to accept the conciliation procedure as compulsory.

has not been widely employed and certainly has not justified the faith evinced in it by states between 1920 and 1938.⁶⁶

Nevertheless, conciliation processes do have a role to play. They are extremely flexible and by clarifying the facts and discussing proposals may stimulate negotiations between the parties. The rules dealing with conciliation were elaborated in the 1928 General Act on the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes (revised in 1949). The function of the commissions was defined to include inquiries and mediation techniques. Such commissions were to be composed of five persons, one appointed by each opposing side and the other three to be appointed by agreement from amongst the citizens of third states. The proceedings were to be concluded within six months and were not to be held in public. The conciliation procedure was intended to deal with mixed legal–factual situations and to operate quickly and informally.⁶⁷

There have of late been a number of proposals to reactivate the conciliation technique, but how far they will succeed in their aim remains to be seen.⁶⁸ A number of multilateral treaties do, however, provide for conciliation as a means of resolving disputes. The 1948 American Treaty of Pacific Settlement; 1957 European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes; the 1964 Protocol on the Commission of Mediation, Conciliation and Arbitration to the Charter of the Organisation of African Unity (now the African Union); the 1969 Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties; the 1981 Treaty Establishing the Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States; the 1975 Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations; the 1978 Vienna

⁶⁶ But note the Chaco Commission, 1929, the Franco-Siamese Conciliation Commission, 1947 and the Franco-Swiss Commission, 1955: see Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 67 ff. See also Bar-Yaacov, *International Disputes*, chapter 7.

⁶⁷ Article 15(1) of the Geneva General Act as amended provides that 'The task of the Conciliation Commission shall be to elucidate the questions in dispute, to collect with that object all necessary information by means of enquiry or otherwise, and to endeavour to bring the parties to an agreement. It may, after the case has been examined, inform the parties of the terms of settlement which seem suitable to it, and lay down the period within which they are to make their decision.'

⁶⁸ See the Regulations on the Procedure of Conciliation adopted by the Institut de Droit International, *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1961, pp. 374 ff. See also the UN Model Rules for the Conciliation of Disputes Between States, 1995, General Assembly resolution 50/50, and the Optional Conciliation Rules adopted by the Permanent Court of Arbitration in 1996: see *Basic Documents: Conventions, Rules, Model Clauses and Guidelines*, The Hague, 1998. Note also the Optional Rules for Conciliation of Disputes Relating to Natural Resources and the Environment adopted by the Permanent Court of Arbitration in April 2002.

Convention on Succession of States in respect of Treaties; the 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea and the 1985 Vienna Convention on the Protection of the Ozone Layer, for example, all contain provisions concerning conciliation.

The conciliation procedure was used in the Iceland–Norway dispute over the continental shelf delimitation between Iceland and Jan Mayen island.⁶⁹ The agreement establishing the Conciliation Commission stressed that the question was the subject of continuing negotiations and that the Commission report would not be binding, both elements characteristic of the conciliation method. The Commission had also to take into account Iceland's strong economic interests in the area as well as other factors. The role of the concept of natural prolongation within continental shelf delimitation was examined as well as the legal status of islands and relevant state practice and court decisions. The solution proposed by the Commission was for a joint development zone, an idea that would have been unlikely to come from a judicial body reaching a decision solely on the basis of the legal rights of the parties. In other words, the flexibility of the conciliation process seen in the context of continued negotiations between the parties was demonstrated.⁷⁰

Such commissions have also been established outside the framework of specific treaties, for example by the United Nations. Instances would include the Conciliation Commission for Palestine under General Assembly resolution 194 (III), 1948, and the Conciliation Commission for the Congo under resolution 1474 (ES-IV) of 1960.

International institutions and dispute settlement⁷¹

*Regional organisations*⁷²

Article 52(1) of Chapter VIII of the UN Charter provides that nothing in the Charter precludes the existence of regional arrangements or agencies

⁶⁹ 20 ILM, 1981, p. 797; 62 ILR, p. 108. The Commission Report was accepted by the parties, 21 ILM, 1982, p. 1222.

⁷⁰ See also the 1929 Chaco Conciliation Commission; the 1947 Franco-Siamese Commission; the 1952 Belgian–Danish Commission; the 1954–5 Franco-Swiss Commission and the 1958 Franco-Mexican Commission. See UN Handbook, p. 48 and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 838.

⁷¹ See below, chapter 22 for peaceful settlement of disputes through the United Nations and chapter 23 generally with regard to international institutions.

⁷² See *Bowett's Law of International Institutions* (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, London, 2001; Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 11; Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 725–8; K. Oellers-Frahm and N. Wühler, *Dispute Settlement in Public International Law*, New York, 1984, pp. 92 ff., and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 838 ff.

for dealing with such matters relating to the maintenance of international peace and security as are appropriate for regional action, provided that such arrangements or agencies and their activities are consistent with the purposes and principles of the UN.⁷³ Article 52(2) stipulates that members of the UN entering into such arrangements or agencies are to make every effort to settle local disputes peacefully through such regional arrangements or by such regional agencies before referring them to the Security Council, and that the Security Council encourages the development of the peaceful settlement of local disputes through such regional arrangements. That having been said, article 52(4) stresses that the application of articles 34 and 35 of the UN Charter relating to the roles of the Security Council and General Assembly remains unaffected.⁷⁴ The supremacy of the Security Council is reinforced by article 53(1) which provides that while the Council may, where appropriate, utilise such regional arrangements or agencies for enforcement action under its authority, 'no enforcement action shall be taken under regional arrangements or by regional agencies without the authorisation of the Security Council'. It should also be noted that by article 24 the Security Council possesses 'primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security', while article 103 of the Charter emphasises that, in the event of a conflict between the obligations of a UN member under the Charter and obligations under any other international agreement, the former are to prevail.⁷⁵ In addition, under article 36, the Security Council may 'at any stage of a dispute . . . recommend appropriate procedures or methods of adjustment',⁷⁶ while article 37 provides that should the parties to a dispute fail to settle it, they 'shall refer it to the Security Council'. Furthermore, should the Council itself deem that the continuance of a dispute is likely to endanger the maintenance of international peace and security, 'it shall decide whether to take action under article 36 or to recommend such terms of settlement as it may consider appropriate'.⁷⁷ Thus, although reference where appropriate to regional organisations or arrangements should take place, this

⁷³ See *The Charter of the United Nations* (ed. B. Simma), 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002, pp. 807 ff. See also H. Saba, 'Les Accords Régionaux dans la Charte des Nations Unies', 80 HR, 1952 I, p. 635; D. E. Acevedo, 'Disputes under Consideration by the UN Security Council or Regional Bodies' in *The International Court of Justice at a Crossroads* (ed. L. F. Damrosch), Dobbs Ferry, 1987; B. Andemicael, *Regionalism and the United Nations*, Dobbs Ferry, 1979; J. M. Yepes, 'Les Accords Régionaux et le Droit International', 71 HR, 1947 II, p. 235.

⁷⁴ See further below, chapter 22, p. 1273.

⁷⁵ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 440; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 151.

⁷⁶ This refers to disputes the continuance of which is likely to endanger the maintenance of international peace and security, article 33.

⁷⁷ Article 37(2).

does not affect the comprehensive role of the UN through the Security Council or General Assembly in dealing in various ways with disputes between states.⁷⁸ While provisions contained in regional instruments may prevent or restrict resort to mechanisms outside those instruments,⁷⁹ this does not constrain in any way the authority or competence of the UN.⁸⁰ In many cases, a matter may be simultaneously before both the UN and a regional organisation and such concurrent jurisdiction does not constitute a jurisdictional problem for the UN.⁸¹ In practice and in relation to the adoption of active measures, the UN is likely to defer to appropriate regional mechanisms while realistic chances exist for a regional settlement.⁸²

Various regional organisations have created machinery for the settlement of disputes.

*The African Union (Organisation of African Unity)*⁸³

The Organisation of African Unity was established in 1963. Article XIX of its Charter referred to the principle of 'the peaceful settlement of disputes

⁷⁸ Note that section I, paragraph 6 of the Manila Declaration on the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes adopted in General Assembly resolution 37/10, 1982, provides that states parties to relevant regional arrangements or agencies shall make every effort to settle disputes through such mechanisms, but that this 'does not preclude states from bringing any dispute to the attention of the Security Council or of the General Assembly in accordance with the Charter of the United Nations'.

⁷⁹ See below, p. 1273.

⁸⁰ See M. Bartos, 'L'ONU et la Co-opération Régionale', 27 RGDIP, 1956, p. 7.

⁸¹ The International Court noted in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 440; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 151, in the context of contended regional discussions, that 'even the existence of active negotiations in which both parties might be involved should not prevent both the Security Council and the Court from exercising their separate functions under the Charter and the Statute of the Court'.

⁸² In such cases, the Security Council is likely to inscribe the dispute on its agenda and, providing the dispute is not one actually endangering international peace and security, refer the matter to the appropriate regional agency under article 52(2) and (3), keeping it under review on the agenda: see UN Handbook, p. 96.

⁸³ See e.g. K. D. Magliveras and G. J. Naldi, *The African Union and the Predecessor Organisation of African Unity*, The Hague, 2004. The Organisation of African Unity was established in 1963 and replaced by the African Union with the coming into force of the Constitutive Act in May 2001. As to the OAU, see generally T. Maluwa, 'The Peaceful Settlement of Disputes among African States, 1963–1983: Some Conceptual Issues and Practical Trends', 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 299; S. G. Amoo and I. W. Zartman, 'Mediation by Regional Organisations: The Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in Chad' in Bercovitch and Rubin, *Mediation in International Relations*, p. 131; B. Boutros Ghali, *L'Organisation de l'Unité Africaine*, Paris, 1968; M. Bedjaoui, 'Le Règlement Pacifique des Différends Africains', AFDI, 1972, p. 85; B. Andemicael, *Le Règlement Pacifique des Différends Survenant entre États Africains*, New York, 1973; E. Jouve, *L'Organisation de l'Unité Africaine*, Paris, 1984; T. O. Elias,

by negotiation, mediation, conciliation or arbitration' and to assist in achieving this a Commission of Mediation, Conciliation and Arbitration was established by the Protocol of 21 July 1964.⁸⁴ The jurisdiction of the Commission was not, however, compulsory and it was not utilised. African states were historically unwilling to resort to judicial or arbitral methods of dispute settlement and in general preferred informal third-party involvement through the medium of the OAU. In the Algeria–Morocco boundary dispute,⁸⁵ for example, the OAU established an ad hoc commission consisting of the representatives of seven African states to seek to achieve a settlement of issues arising out of the 1963 clashes.⁸⁶ Similarly in the Somali–Ethiopian conflict,⁸⁷ a commission was set up by the OAU in an attempt to mediate.⁸⁸ This commission failed to resolve the dispute, although it did reaffirm the principle of the inviolability of frontiers of member states as attained at the time of independence.⁸⁹ In a third case, the Western Sahara dispute,⁹⁰ an OAU committee was established in July 1978, which sought unsuccessfully to reach a settlement in the conflict,⁹¹ while the OAU also established committees to try to mediate in the Chad civil war, again with little success.⁹² Despite mixed success, it became fairly established practice that in a dispute involving African states, initial recourse will be made to OAU mechanisms, primarily ad hoc commissions or committees.

In an attempt to improve the mechanisms available, the OAU approved a Mechanism for Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution in 1993 (termed the Cairo Declaration).⁹³ It was intended to anticipate and

Africa and the Development of International Law, Leiden, 1972; Z. Cervenka, *The Organisation of African Unity and its Charter*, London, 1968, and M. N. Shaw, 'Dispute Settlement in Africa', 37 YBWA, 1983, p. 149.

⁸⁴ Elias, *Africa*, chapter 9.

⁸⁵ See I. Brownlie, *African Boundaries*, London, 1979, p. 55, and M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 196–7.

⁸⁶ See *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 19939–40, and Shaw, 'Dispute Settlement', p. 153.

⁸⁷ See Brownlie, *African Boundaries*, p. 826. See also Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 197–201.

⁸⁸ *Africa Research Bulletin*, May 1973, p. 2845 and *ibid.*, June 1973, pp. 2883–4 and 2850.

⁸⁹ *Ibid.*, August 1980, pp. 5763–4. This is the principle of *uti possidetis*: see further above, chapter 10, p. 525.

⁹⁰ See Shaw, *Title to Territory*, pp. 123 ff.

⁹¹ *Ibid.*, and Shaw, 'Dispute Settlement', pp. 160–2.

⁹² Shaw, 'Dispute Settlement', pp. 158–60.

⁹³ AHG/Dec. 1 (XXVIII) and see the Report of the OAU Secretary-General, Doc. CM/1747 (LVIII) and AHG/Dec. 3 (XXIX), 1993. See also M. C. Djiena-Wembon, 'A Propos du Nouveau Mécanisme de l'OUA sur les Conflits', 98 RGDIP, 1994, p. 377, and R. Ranjeva, 'Reflections on the Proposals for the Establishment of a Pan-African Mechanism for the Prevention and Settlement of Conflicts' in *Towards More Effective Supervision by International Organisations* (eds. N. Blokker and S. Muller), Dordrecht, 1994, vol. I, p. 93.

prevent situations of potential conflict from developing further; however, it was not successful and in 2001 the OAU Assembly decided to incorporate the Central Organ of the Mechanism as one of the organs of the African Union (which had come into force in May that year).⁹⁴ The Protocol Relating to the Establishment of the Peace and Security Council of the African Union was adopted by the First Ordinary Session of the Assembly of the African Union on 9 July 2002.⁹⁵ This instrument creates the Peace and Security Council as a 'standing decision-making organ for the prevention, management and resolution of conflicts', to be supported by the Commission of the African Union,⁹⁶ a Panel of the Wise,⁹⁷ a Continental Early Warning System,⁹⁸ an African Standby Force⁹⁹ and a Special Fund.¹⁰⁰ A series of guiding principles are laid down, including early response to crises, respect for the rule of law and human rights, respect for the sovereignty and territorial integrity of member states and respect for borders inherited on the achievement of independence.¹⁰¹ The Council is composed of fifteen members based on equitable regional representation and rotation¹⁰² and its functions include the promotion of peace, security and stability in Africa; early warning and preventive diplomacy; peacemaking including the use of good offices, mediation, conciliation and inquiry; peace-support operations and intervention; peace-building; and humanitarian action.¹⁰³ Article 9 provides that the Council 'shall take initiatives and action it deems appropriate' with regard to situations of potential and full-blown conflicts and shall use its discretion to effect

⁹⁴ See e.g. C. A. A. Packer and D. Rukare, 'The New African Union and its Constitutive Act', 96 AJIL, 2002, p. 365.

⁹⁵ This is stated to replace the Cairo Declaration 1993 and to supersede the resolution and decisions of the OAU relating to the Mechanism for Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution in Africa which are in conflict with the Protocol: see article 22(1) and (2).

⁹⁶ See further article 10.

⁹⁷ This is to be composed of five highly respected African personalities selected by the chairperson of the Commission after consultation with the member states concerned and shall undertake such action at the request of the Council or chairperson of the Commission or at its own initiative as deemed appropriate for the prevention of conflicts: see article 11.

⁹⁸ This is to include an observation and monitoring centre to be known as 'the situation room' located at the Conflict Management Directorate of the African Union, together with observation and monitoring units of the Regional Mechanisms: see article 12.

⁹⁹ This is to consist of standby multidisciplinary contingents and shall perform functions such as observation missions, peace support missions, interventions, preventive deployment, peace-building and humanitarian assistance: see articles 13–15.

¹⁰⁰ Article 2. ¹⁰¹ Article 4. ¹⁰² Article 5.

¹⁰³ Article 6. See also the list of powers in article 7.

entry, whether through the collective intervention of the Council itself or through its chairperson and/or the chairperson of the Commission, the Panel of the Wise, and/or in collaboration with the regional mechanisms.¹⁰⁴ The Protocol came into force on 26 December 2003.

There are in addition a number of subregional organisations in Africa which are playing an increasing role in conflict resolution. First and foremost is the Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) created in 1975. The constituent instrument was revised in 1993¹⁰⁵ and article 58 of the revised treaty refers to the responsibility of ECOWAS to prevent and settle regional conflicts, with the ECOWAS Cease-fire Monitoring Group (ECOMOG) as the adopted regional intervention force. The mission of ECOWAS is to promote economic integration and its institutions include the Authority of Heads of State and Government; the Council of Ministers; the Community Parliament; the Economic and Social Council; the Community Court of Justice; a secretariat and a co-operation fund. ECOWAS intervened in the Liberian civil war in 1990 via a Cease-Fire Monitoring Group (ECOMOG)¹⁰⁶ and has been concerned with the conflicts in Sierra Leone and Guinea-Bissau.¹⁰⁷ An ECOWAS Mechanism for Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution, Peacekeeping and Security was established in 1999 and a Protocol on Democracy and Good Governance adopted in 2001.¹⁰⁸

The Southern African Development Community (SADC) was established in 1992.¹⁰⁹ In 1996 it decided to establish an Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation and in 2001 it adopted a Protocol on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation.¹¹⁰ Under this Protocol,

¹⁰⁴ See further article 16.

¹⁰⁵ There was a further revision in the Protocol of 2001 adopted at Dakar.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. *Regional Peace-Keeping and International Enforcement: The Liberian Crisis* (ed. M. Weller), Cambridge, 1994, and see further below, chapter 22, p. 1276.

¹⁰⁷ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 1132 (1997) and 1233 (1999).

¹⁰⁸ The Mechanism's highest decision-making body is the Authority, consisting of the heads of state, with powers to act on all matters concerning conflict prevention, management and resolution, peace-keeping, security, humanitarian support, peace-building, control of cross-border crime and proliferation of small arms, see article 6, while a nine-person Mediation and Security Council is mandated to take appropriate decisions under the Protocol on behalf of the Authority, see articles 7–10. See also Security Council resolution 1197 (1998).

¹⁰⁹ See e.g. B. Chigora, 'The SAD Community', 11 *African Journal of International and Comparative Law*, 2000, p. 522. It evolved out of the Southern African Development Co-ordination Conference established in 1979.

¹¹⁰ See www.sadc.int/index.php?lang=english&path=legal/protocols/&page=p_politics_defence_and_security_co-operation.

the objective of the Organ is to promote peace and security in the region and in particular to 'consider enforcement action in accordance with international law and as a matter of last resort where peaceful means have failed'.¹¹¹ A number of structures of the Organ were set up,¹¹² including a chairperson,¹¹³ the troika (the chairperson together with the incoming and outgoing chairpersons), a ministerial committee,¹¹⁴ an Inter-State Politics and Diplomacy Committee¹¹⁵ and an Inter-State Defence and Security Committee.¹¹⁶ The Organ has jurisdiction to seek to resolve any 'significant inter-state conflict'¹¹⁷ or any 'significant intra-state conflict'.¹¹⁸ It may employ a variety of peaceful means, including diplomacy, negotiations, mediation, arbitration and adjudication by an international tribunal and shall establish an early warning system to prevent the outbreak or escalation of a conflict. Where peaceful means fail, the chairperson acting on the advice of the Ministerial Committee may recommend to the Summit of the Community that enforcement action be taken, but such action may only be taken as a matter of last resort and only with the authorisation of the UN Security Council.¹¹⁹

*The Organisation of American States*¹²⁰

Article 23 of the Charter of the OAS, signed at Bogotá in 1948 and as amended by the Protocol of Cartagena de Indias, 1985, provides that international disputes between member states must be submitted to the Organisation for peaceful settlement, although this is not to be interpreted as an impairment of the rights and obligations of member states under

¹¹¹ Article 2(f). ¹¹² Article 3. ¹¹³ See further article 4. ¹¹⁴ See further article 5.

¹¹⁵ See further article 6. ¹¹⁶ See further article 7.

¹¹⁷ I.e. one concerning territorial boundaries or natural resources or in which aggression or military force has occurred or where peace and security of the region or of another state party who is not a party to the conflict is threatened: see article 11(2)a.

¹¹⁸ I.e. one involving large-scale violence, including genocide and gross violation of human rights or a military coup or a civil war or a conflict threatening the peace and security of the region or of another state party, article 11(2)b.

¹¹⁹ Article 11(3).

¹²⁰ See Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 282 ff., and Bowett's *International Institutions*, pp. 205 ff. See also E. Jiménez de Aréchaga, 'La Co-ordination des Systèmes de l'ONU et de l'Organisation des États Américains pour le Règlement Pacifique des Différends et la Sécurité Collective', 111 HR, 1964 I, p. 423, and A. Cançado Trindade, 'Mécismes de Règlement Pacifiques des Différends en Amérique Centrale: De Contadora à Esquipulas II', AFDI, 1987, p. 798.

articles 34 and 35 of the UN Charter.¹²¹ The 1948 American Treaty of Pacific Settlement (the Pact of Bogotá, to be distinguished from the Charter) sets out the procedures in detail, ranging from good offices, mediation and conciliation to arbitration and judicial settlement by the International Court of Justice. This treaty, however, has not been successful¹²² and in practice the OAS has utilised the Inter-American Peace Committee created in 1940 for peaceful resolution of disputes. This was replaced in 1970 by the Inter-American Committee on Peaceful Settlement, a subsidiary organ of the Council. Since the late 1950s the Permanent Council of the OAS, a plenary body at ambassadorial level, has played an increasingly important role.¹²³ One example concerned the frontier incidents that took place on the border between Costa Rica and Nicaragua in 1985. The Council set up a fact-finding committee and, after hearing its report, adopted a resolution calling for talks to take place within the Contadora negotiating process.¹²⁴ The Esquipulas II agreement of 14 November 1987 established an International Verification and Follow-up Commission to be composed of the Foreign Ministers of the Contadora and Support Group States together with the secretaries-general of the UN and OAS.¹²⁵

*The Arab League*¹²⁶

The Arab League, established in 1945, aims at increasing co-operation between the Arab states. Its facilities for peaceful settlement of disputes amongst its members are not, however, very well developed, and in

¹²¹ Note that as originally drafted in the 1948 Charter, article 20 (as it then was) provided that submission to the OAS procedures had to occur prior to referral to the Security Council of the UN.

¹²² Although note the *Nicaragua v. Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 69, 88; 84 ILR, pp. 218, 243, where the Court held that it had jurisdiction by virtue of article XXXI of the Pact of Bogotá.

¹²³ See articles 82–90 of the OAS Charter.

¹²⁴ OAS Permanent Council resolutions CP/Res. 427 (618/85); CP/doc. 1592/85 and A/40/737-S/17549, annex IV.

¹²⁵ The countries involved in the Contadora negotiating process were Colombia, Mexico, Panama and Venezuela, while the Support Group consisted of Argentina, Brazil, Peru and Uruguay. See A/43/729-S/20234.

¹²⁶ See H. A. Hassouna, *The League of Arab States and Regional Disputes*, Leiden, 1975; Bowett, 'Contemporary Development', p. 229; M. Abdennabi, *La Ligue des États Arabes et les Conflits Inter-Arabs* (1962–1980), 1985; B. Boutros Ghali, 'The Arab League 1945–1970', 25 *Revue Égyptienne de Droit International*, 1969, p. 67; and S. Al-Kadhem, 'The Role of the League of Arab States in Settling Inter-Arab Disputes', 32 *Revue Égyptienne de Droit International*, 1976, p. 1. See also www.al-bab.com/arab/docs/league.htm.

practice consist primarily of informal conciliation attempts. One notable exception was the creation in 1961 of an Inter-Arab Force to keep the peace between Iraq and Kuwait.¹²⁷ An Arab Security Force was sent to Lebanon in 1976 to be succeeded by the Arab Deterrent Force between 1976 and 1983. The Arab League was not able to play a significant part in either the Kuwait crisis of 1990–1 or the Iraq crisis of 2002–3.

*Europe*¹²⁸

The European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes adopted by the Council of Europe in 1957 provides that legal disputes (as defined in article 36(2) of the Statute of the International Court of Justice) are to be sent to the International Court, although conciliation may be tried before this step is taken.¹²⁹ Other disputes are to go to arbitration, unless the parties have agreed to accept conciliation.

Within the NATO alliance,¹³⁰ there exist good offices facilities, and inquiry, mediation, conciliation and arbitration procedures may be instituted. In fact, the Organisation proved of some use, for instance in the longstanding 'cod war' between Britain and Iceland, two NATO partners.¹³¹ The Organisation on Security and Co-operation in Europe (OSCE) has gradually been establishing dispute resolution mechanisms.¹³² Under the key documents of this organisation,¹³³ the participating states are to endeavour in good faith to reach a rapid and equitable solution of their disputes by using a variety of means. Under the Valletta Report 1991, as amended by the Stockholm Decision of 1992, any party to a dispute may request the establishment of a Dispute Settlement Mechanism, which

¹²⁷ Note also the pan-Arab 'peacekeeping force' in the Lebanon between 1976 and 1982: see *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 28117 ff. See also I. Pogany, *The Arab League and Peacekeeping in Lebanon*, London, 1987. The Council also appointed committees to deal with the 1963 Algerian–Moroccan and Democratic People's Republic of Yemen–Yemen Arab Republic boundary disputes, H. A. Hassouna, 'The League of Arab States and the United Nations: Relations in the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes', New York, 1979, p. 312. See also Simma, *Charter of the United Nations*, p. 852.

¹²⁸ See L. Caflisch, 'Vers des Mécanismes Pan-Européennes de Règlement Pacifique des Différends', 97 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1993, p. 1.

¹²⁹ Note that some states have entered reservations to this provision.

¹³⁰ See *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 191, and Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 280. See also www.nato.int/.

¹³¹ Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 287. Such procedures were also proposed following the Suez crisis in 1956 and with regard to the Cyprus crisis in 1963: see Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, pp. 855–6.

¹³² See generally above, chapter 7, p. 372, and below, chapter 23, p. 1289.

¹³³ See the Helsinki Final Act 1975; the Charter of Paris 1990 and the Valletta Report of the Meeting of Experts on Peaceful Settlement of Disputes 1991.

once established may offer comments or advice with regard to negotiations between the parties in dispute, or any other appropriate dispute settlement process, and may engage in fact-finding and other conciliation functions. The Convention on Conciliation and Arbitration was signed in 1992 and came into force two years later. Under this Convention, a Court of Conciliation and Arbitration¹³⁴ has been established in Geneva. Conciliation may be undertaken by a Conciliation Commission constituted for each dispute and drawn from a list established under the Convention.¹³⁵ The Commission will draw up a report containing its proposals for the peaceful settlement of the dispute and the parties will then have a period of thirty days during which to examine the proposals. If the parties do not accept the proposed settlement, the report will be forwarded to the OSCE Council through the Senior Council (formerly the Committee of Senior Officials).¹³⁶ The Convention also provided for the establishment of Arbitral Tribunals, similarly constituted for each dispute and drawn from a list.¹³⁷ Such a tribunal would be set up by express agreement between the parties in dispute¹³⁸ or where the state brought to arbitration has agreed in advance to accept the jurisdiction of the Tribunal.¹³⁹ The award of the Tribunal would be final and binding as between the parties.¹⁴⁰

In addition, the OSCE is able to send Missions to various participating states, with their consent, as part of its early warning, conflict prevention and crisis management responsibilities. Such Missions have been sent to Yugoslavia to promote dialogue between the populations of Kosovo, Sanjak and Vojvodina and the authorities of the state; to the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia; to Georgia; Moldova; Tajikistan; Estonia; Ukraine and Chechnya. Additional Missions have operated in Albania and Kosovo,¹⁴¹ Moldova and Georgia.¹⁴² Under the General Framework

¹³⁴ This consists of the conciliators and arbitrators appointed under articles 3 and 4.

¹³⁵ See articles 1 and 2. Each state party is to appoint two conciliators, article 3.

¹³⁶ Article 25.

¹³⁷ Articles 2 and 4. Each state party is to appoint one arbitrator and one alternate.

¹³⁸ Either between two or more states parties to the Convention or between one or more states parties to the Convention and one or more OSCE participating states, article 26(1).

¹³⁹ Article 26.

¹⁴⁰ Article 31. See also UN Handbook, p. 87, and *OSCE Handbook 2000*, Vienna, p. 37 and see www.osce.org/publications/handbook/.

¹⁴¹ See *OSCE Handbook 1996*, pp. 16 ff., and Annual Report for 2001. A series of Sanctions Assistance Missions, operating under the guidance of the OSCE/EU Sanctions Co-ordinator, was sent to various countries in order to assist them in maintaining sanctions imposed by the Security Council in the Yugoslav crisis, *ibid.*, p. 36.

¹⁴² See Annual Report for 2007, pp. 54 and 60. Note also the Minsk Process established by the OSCE in 1995 in order to resolve the dispute between Armenia and Azerbaijan concerning Nagorno-Karabakh: see www.osce.org/item/21979.html.

Agreement for Peace in Bosnia and Herzegovina, initialled at Dayton on 21 November 1995 and signed in Paris on 14 December 1995, the OSCE was made responsible for the supervision of elections,¹⁴³ for providing the framework for the conduct of discussions between the Bosnian parties on confidence and security-building measures and for measures of subregional arms control,¹⁴⁴ and for assisting in the creation of a Bosnian Commission on Human Rights.¹⁴⁵

*International organisations and facilities of limited competence*¹⁴⁶

The various specialised agencies¹⁴⁷ which encourage international co-operation in functional spheres have their own procedures for settling disputes between their members relating to the interpretation of their constitutional instruments. Such procedures vary from organisation to organisation, although the general pattern involves recourse to one of the main organs of the institution upon the failure of negotiations. If this fails to result in a settlement, the matter may be referred to the International Court of Justice or to arbitration unless otherwise agreed.¹⁴⁸ In such cases, recourse to the Court is by way of a request for an Advisory Opinion, although by virtue of constitutional provisions, the judgment of the Court would be accepted as binding and not as advisory.¹⁴⁹ In other cases, the

¹⁴³ See Annex 3 of the Agreement.

¹⁴⁴ Annex 1-B of the Agreement. The subregional arms control involves Yugoslavia, Croatia and Bosnia.

¹⁴⁵ Annex 6 of the Agreement. See also article 22 of the ASEAN Charter, 2007, which calls for the maintenance and establishment of dispute settlement mechanisms to resolve disputes between ASEAN members: see below, chapter 23, p. 1294.

¹⁴⁶ See generally C. A. Colliard, 'Le Règlement des Différends dans les Organisations Intergouvernementales de Caractère Non Politique' in *Mélanges Basdevant*, Paris, 1960, p. 152, and G. Malinverni, *Le Règlement des Différends dans les Organisations Internationales Économiques*, Leiden, 1974. It should also be noted that several international treaties expressly provide mechanisms and methods for the peaceful resolution of disputes arising therefrom: see e.g. with regard to the Convention on the Law of the Sea, above, chapter 11, p. 635, and with regard to the Convention on the Law of Treaties, above, chapter 16, p. 952.

¹⁴⁷ See Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 729–32. See further below, chapter 23, p. 1285.

¹⁴⁸ See article 37 of the International Labour Organisation Constitution; article 14(2) of the UNESCO Constitution; article 75 of the World Health Organisation Constitution; article 17 of the Constitution of the Food and Agriculture Organisation; article XVII of the International Atomic Energy Agency Statute and articles 50 and 82 of the Convention of the International Telecommunications Union.

¹⁴⁹ See C. F. Amerasinghe, *Principles of the Institutional Law of International Organisations*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2005, pp. 199 ff.

opinions to be given by the International Court or by an arbitral tribunal are to be non-binding.¹⁵⁰ A number of organisations provide for other mechanisms of inquiry and dispute settlement.¹⁵¹

There are a number of procedures and mechanisms which seek to resolve disputes in particular areas, usually economic and involving mixed disputes, that is between states and non-state entities. These processes are becoming of considerable significance and many of them are having a meaningful impact upon general international law. This section will briefly survey some of these.

The dispute settlement procedures established under the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade¹⁵² commenced with bilateral consultations under article XXII.¹⁵³ From this point, article XXIII provided for a party to refer a dispute for conciliation¹⁵⁴ where it was felt that 'any benefit accruing to it directly or indirectly' under GATT was being 'nullified or impaired'. A Panel, composed of experts chosen by the Director-General of GATT, then would seek to ascertain the relevant facts and reach a settlement.¹⁵⁵ The approach was pragmatic and focused on achieving a settlement between the parties. The report of the Panel would be sent to the GATT Council, which would usually adopt it by consensus. Where the disputing parties had not implemented the recommendations within a reasonable time, the complaining party was able to take retaliatory action with the authorisation of the Council. Such instances were in fact very rare.¹⁵⁶ In 1989, a series of improvements was adopted pending the conclusion of the Uruguay Round of negotiations. These

¹⁵⁰ See article 22(1) of the UN Industrial Development Organisation (UNIDO) Constitution and article 65 of the International Maritime Organisation Constitution.

¹⁵¹ See the 1962 Special Protocol to the UNESCO Convention against Discrimination in Education which provides for a Conciliation and Good Offices Commission and the 1962 Special Protocol to the ILO Convention against Discrimination in Education which provides for a Conciliation and Good Offices Commission: see Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 729–30, and *Bowett's International Institutions*, chapter 3. See also the World Intellectual Property Organisation Mediation, Arbitration and Expedited Arbitration Rules 1994, 34 ILM, 1995, p. 559.

¹⁵² See further below, chapter 23, p. 1286.

¹⁵³ See UN Handbook, pp. 136 ff.; J. H. Jackson, *The World Trading System*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, MA, 1997, chapter 4, and T. Flory, 'Les Accords du Tokyo Round du GATT et la Réforme des Procédures de Règlement des Différends dans la Système Commercial Interétatique', 86 RGDIP, 1982, p. 235.

¹⁵⁴ Before this stage, a party could seek the good offices of the Director-General of GATT to facilitate a confidential conciliation: see the 1982 GATT Ministerial Declaration.

¹⁵⁵ See in particular the 1979 Understanding on Dispute Settlement.

¹⁵⁶ See Henkin *et al.*, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, p. 1414.

improvements included the provision that the Council would normally accept the report of the Panel within fifteen months of the complaint and provisions relating to mediation, conciliation and arbitration were added.¹⁵⁷

The GATT process was absorbed within the World Trade Organisation, which came into being on 1 January 1995. Annex 2 of the Marrakesh Agreement Establishing the World Trade Organisation, 1994 is entitled 'Understanding on Rules and Procedures Governing the Settlement of Disputes'.¹⁵⁸ Under the WTO scheme, disputes arising out of the agreements contained in the Final Act of the Uruguay Round are dealt with by the WTO General Council acting as the Dispute Settlement Body. Where a member state considers that a measure adopted by another member state has deprived it of a benefit accruing to it directly or indirectly under the GATT or other covered agreements, it may call for consultations with the other party and the latter must reply within ten days and enter into consultations within thirty days of receiving the request. If bilateral consultations have failed to resolve the dispute, the parties may agree to bring the dispute to the WTO Director-General, who may offer good offices, conciliation or mediation assistance. Where consultations fail to produce a settlement after sixty days, the complaining state may turn to the Dispute Settlement Body. This Body may establish a three-member panel, whose report should be produced within six months. Detailed procedures are laid down in the Understanding. The panel report is adopted by the

¹⁵⁷ See E. Canal-Forgues and R. Ostrihansky, 'New Developments in GATT Dispute Settlement Procedures', 24 *Journal of World Trade*, 1990, and J.-G. Castel, 'The Uruguay Round and the Improvements to the GATT Dispute Settlement Rules and Procedures', 38 *ICLQ*, 1989, p. 834.

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. A. F. Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2008, part III; J. H. Jackson, *Sovereignty, the WTO, and Changing Fundamentals of International Law*, Cambridge, 2006, chapter 5; *Dispute Settlement in the WTO* (eds. J. Cameron and K. Campbell), London, 1998; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 99; R. Yerxa and B. Wilson, *Key Issues in WTO Dispute Settlement – The First Ten Years*, Cambridge, 2005; M. Matsushita, T. J. Schoenbaum and P. C. Mavroidis, *The World Trade Organization: Law, Practice, and Policy*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006; T. Broude, *International Governance in the WTO: Judicial Boundaries and Political Capitulation*, London, 2004; D. Z. Cass, *The Constitutionalization of the World Trade Organization: Legitimacy, Democracy, and Community in the International Trading System*, Oxford, 2005; Bowett's *International Institutions*, p. 379; A. H. Qureshi, *International Economic Law*, London, 1999, p. 287; J. Pauwelyn, 'Enforcement and Countermeasures in the WTO', 94 *AJIL*, 2000, p. 335, and J. Cameron and K. R. Gray, 'Principles of International Law in the WTO Dispute Settlement Body', 50 *ICLQ*, 2001, p. 248. See also WTO Secretariat, *The WTO Dispute Settlement Procedures*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2001 and www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/dispu_e.htm.

Dispute Settlement Body within sixty days, unless there is a consensus against adoption or one of the parties notifies an intention to appeal on grounds of law. The standing Appellate Body established by the Dispute Settlement Body consists of seven experts, three of whom may sit to hear appeals at any one time. Appeal proceedings generally are to last no more than sixty (or at most ninety) days. Unless there is a consensus against adoption within thirty days, the Dispute Settlement Body will accept the Appellate Body report.

Within thirty days of the adoption of the report, the parties must agree to comply with the recommendations and if this does not happen within a reasonable period, the party concerned must offer mutually acceptable compensation. If after twenty days, no satisfactory compensation is agreed, the complaining state may request authorisation from the Dispute Settlement Body to suspend concessions or obligations against the other party and this should be granted within thirty days of the end of the reasonable period. In any event, the Dispute Settlement Body will monitor the implementation of rulings or recommendations.¹⁵⁹

There are two particular points to make. First, there have been a significant number of cases initiated before the Dispute Settlement Body¹⁶⁰ and, secondly, the establishment of an Appellate Body, composed of trade law experts, is having an important impact upon the development of international trade law.¹⁶¹ As a reflection of the latter, a number of issues of general international law interest have been dealt with, ranging from consideration of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties and treaty

¹⁵⁹ Rules of Conduct were adopted in December 1996: see WT/DSB/RC/1 and www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/rc_e.htm. See also the Working Procedures for Appellate Review, WT/AB/WP/4 and www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/ab_e.htm. The Doha Ministerial Declaration of November 2001 stated that negotiations on improvements and clarifications of the Dispute Settlement Understanding would take place with a view to agreement by May 2003. However, negotiations are continuing: see e.g. Hong Kong Ministerial Declaration of December 2005, WT/MIN(05)/DEC.

¹⁶⁰ Over 200 by mid-2000: see Cameron and Gray, 'WTO Dispute Settlement', p. 250, and 373 by early March 2008: see www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/dispu_status_e.htm.

¹⁶¹ See e.g. D. M. McRae, 'The Emerging Appellate Jurisdiction in International Trade Law' in Campbell and Cameron, *Dispute Settlement*, p. 1, and Jackson, *Sovereignty, the WTO*, pp. 163 ff. There have been eighty-six notices of appeal as of the end of 2007: see Annual Report of the Appellate Body, 2007, Annex III. Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, p. 211, concludes that the WTO Dispute Settlement Mechanism 'is a great success – more so than any other arrangement for resolving international legal disputes at government level'.

interpretation¹⁶² to questions relating to procedural issues such as burden of proof.¹⁶³

A number of regional dispute mechanisms concerning economic questions have been established. The most developed is the European Union, which has a fully functioning judicial system with the Court of Justice in Luxembourg with wide-ranging jurisdiction.¹⁶⁴ Other relevant, but modest regional economic mechanisms include Mercosur (Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay),¹⁶⁵ Comesa¹⁶⁶ and ECOWAS.¹⁶⁷

The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 1992, linking the US, Mexico and Canada, aims at the free movement and liberalisation of goods, services, people and investment, and also contains dispute settlement provisions.¹⁶⁸ The principal mechanisms are contained in Chapters 11, 14, 19 and 20 of the Agreement. Under Chapter 11¹⁶⁹ investment disputes may be raised by individual investors of one state party against another state party and, if not resolved by negotiations, may be submitted to arbitration either under the World Bank's International Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes (ICSID) or the ICSID Additional Facility or the rules of the United Nations Commission for International

¹⁶² See e.g. the *Standards for Reformulated and Conventional Gasoline* case, 1996, WT/DS2/AB/R and the *Import Prohibition of Certain Shrimp and Shrimp Products* case, 1998, WT/DS58/AB/R. See also D. Palmer and P. C. Mavroidis, 'The WTO Legal System: Sources of Law', 92 AJIL, 1998, p. 398, and Jackson, *Sovereignty, the WTO*, pp. 182 ff.

¹⁶³ See e.g. *Imports of Agricultural, Textile and Industrial Products*, 1999, WT/DS90/AB/R.

¹⁶⁴ As to which see e.g. D. Chalmers, C. Hadjiemmanuil, G. Monti and A. Tomkins, *European Union Law: Text and Materials*, Cambridge, 2006; S. Weatherill and P. Beaumont, *EU Law*, 3rd edn, London, 1999, and Weatherill, *Cases and Materials on EU Law*, 8th edn, Oxford, 2007; and A. Arnall, *The European Court of Justice*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2006.

¹⁶⁵ See the Mercosur Treaty, 1991. The Protocol of Brasilia, 1991 (complemented by Decision 17 1998) establishes a rudimentary dispute settlement system for states parties based upon diplomatic negotiations with arbitration as a last resort. Arbitration was not used until 1999 and the first arbitral award was the *Siscomex* case: see D. Ventura, 'First Arbitration Award in Mercosur – A Community Law in Evolution?', 14 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 2000, p. 447. See also www.mercosur.int/msweb/.

¹⁶⁶ See the Treaty Establishing the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa, 1993.

¹⁶⁷ The Economic Community of West African States: see the treaty of 1975 and revisions of 1993 and 2001 and Protocol 1 on the Community Court of Justice, 1999.

¹⁶⁸ See 32 ILM, 1993, pp. 682 ff. See also *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 222; D. S. Huntington, 'Settling Disputes under the North American Free Trade Agreement', 34 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1993, p. 407; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 111; N. Kinnear, A. Bjorkland and J. Hannaford, *Investment Disputes under NAFTA*, The Hague, 2006, and *NAFTA Investment Law and Arbitration: Past Issues, Current Practice, Future Prospects* (ed. T. Weiler), Ardsley, 2004. See also www.nafta-sec-alena.org/DefaultSite/index_e.aspx.

¹⁶⁹ Articles 1101–14 of the Agreement.

Trade Law (UNCITRAL).¹⁷⁰ Tribunals established under NAFTA must apply both the NAFTA Treaty and applicable rules of international law.¹⁷¹ Interim measures of protection may be ordered and the award of the tribunal is final and binding.¹⁷² Questions relating to interpretation of the Treaty must be remitted to the Free Trade Commission,¹⁷³ whose interpretations are binding.¹⁷⁴ Chapter 19 provides for bi-national panel reviews of anti-dumping, countervailing duty and injury final determinations. These panels may also review amendments made by any of the state parties to their anti-dumping or countervailing duty law.¹⁷⁵

The dispute settlement provisions of Chapter 20 are applicable primarily to inter-state disputes concerning the interpretation or application of the NAFTA, including disputes relating to the financial services provisions of Chapter 14. Should attempts to resolve the particular dispute by consultation within certain time limits, and good offices, mediation and conciliation by the Free Trade Commission within certain time limits fail, the parties may request that the Commission establish a five-person Arbitral Panel.¹⁷⁶

A neutral chairperson is chosen within fifteen days by the parties in dispute (or by one of the parties chosen by lot if there is no agreement) and within a further fifteen days, two panellists of the nationality of the opposing party are chosen by each party.¹⁷⁷ The panel may obtain expert advice and a Scientific Review Board may be created to provide assistance on technical factual questions raised by the parties. The panel provides an Initial Report, within ninety days of the appointment of the last panellist, as to its findings and recommendations. Comments may then be received from the parties and the panel may reconsider its report. Within thirty days of the Initial Report, the panel will send its Final Report to the

¹⁷⁰ See below, p. 1043. ¹⁷¹ See article 1131. ¹⁷² Articles 1134 and 1136.

¹⁷³ Established under article 2001 of Chapter 20 and consisting of cabinet-level representation of the states parties with a general remit to supervise implementation of the agreement and to resolve disputes concerning its interpretation and application. The Commission also established and oversees the NAFTA secretariat comprising national sections, article 2002.

¹⁷⁴ See articles 1131 and 1132. See also e.g. with regard to the terms 'fair and equitable treatment' and 'full protection and security' under article 1105, *Mondev International Ltd v. USA* 6 ICSID Reports, 2002, p. 192, paras. 100 ff.; *United Parcel Service of America v. Canada* 7 ICSID Reports, 2002, p. 288, para. 97; *Loewen Group v. USA* 7 ICSID Reports, 2003, p. 442, paras. 124 ff. and *Methanex v. USA*, award of 3 August 2005, Part II, Chapter H, para. 23.

¹⁷⁵ See articles 1903–5. ¹⁷⁶ See articles 2003–8. ¹⁷⁷ See article 2011.

Commission.¹⁷⁸ The parties must then agree to a settlement of the dispute in the light of the panel's recommendations within thirty days.¹⁷⁹ If this does not happen, the complaining party may suspend the application to the party complained against of benefits of equivalent effect until such time as they have reached agreement on a resolution of the dispute.¹⁸⁰

The World Bank (i.e. the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the International Development Association) established in 1993 an Inspection Panel system providing an independent forum for private citizens who believe that their interests have been or may be harmed by a project financed by the World Bank.¹⁸¹ Upon receipt of a request by such private persons, the three-person Panel decides whether it is within its mandate and, if so, sends it to Bank Management who prepare a response for the Panel. A preliminary review is undertaken by the Panel that includes an independent assessment of the merits of Bank Management's response. A recommendation is then submitted to the Board of the Bank as to whether the claims should be investigated. If the Board approves a recommendation to investigate, the Panel proceeds with the investigation and its findings are then sent to the Board and to Bank Management. The management must then within six weeks submit its recommendations to the Board on what actions the Bank should take in response to the Panel's findings. The Board will then make a final decision as to future action based upon the Panel's findings and the recommendations of Bank Management.¹⁸²

The International Centre for Settlement of Investment Disputes was established under the auspices of the World Bank by the Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and the Nationals of Other States, 1965 and administers ad hoc arbitrations.¹⁸³ It constitutes

¹⁷⁸ See articles 2014–17. ¹⁷⁹ Article 2018. ¹⁸⁰ Article 2019.

¹⁸¹ See e.g. I. Shihata, *The World Bank Inspection Panel*, Oxford, 1994; D. L. Clark, *A Citizen's Guide to the World Bank Inspection Panel*, 2nd edn, Washington, 1999; D. Clark, *Demanding Accountability: Civil Society and the World Bank Inspection Panel*, Lanham, 2003; G. Alfredsson, R. Ring and G. Melander, *The Inspection Panel of the World Bank: A Different Complaints Procedure*, The Hague, 2001; 'Conclusions of the Second Review of the World Bank Inspection Panel', 39 ILM, 2000, p. 243, and A. Gowlland Gualtieri, 'The Environmental Accountability of the World Bank to Non-State Actors', 72 BYIL, 2002, p. 213. See also the Inspection Panel's Annual Report, 2006/7.

¹⁸² As of June 2007, forty-six requests had been sent to the Panel, of these thirty-five resulted in Board approval of the Panel's recommendations: see http://siteresources.worldbank.org/EXTINSPECTIONPANEL/Resources/Summany_of_Inpection_Panel_Cases_%5Dupdated%5D.pdf.

¹⁸³ See Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, pp. 536 ff.; R. Dolzer and C. Schreuer, *Principles of International Investment Law*, Oxford, 2008, pp. 222 ff.; C. Schreuer, *The ICSID*

a framework within which conciliation and arbitration takes place and provides an autonomous system free from municipal law in which states and non-state investors (from member states) may settle disputes. States parties to the Convention¹⁸⁴ undertake to recognise awards made by arbitration tribunals acting under the auspices of the Centre as final and binding in their territories and to enforce them as if they were final judgments of national courts.¹⁸⁵ The jurisdiction of the Centre extends to 'any legal dispute arising directly out of an investment, between a contracting state . . . and a national of another contracting state, which the parties to the dispute consent in writing to submit to the Centre'.¹⁸⁶ Accordingly, states must not only become parties to the Convention, but also agree in writing to the submission of the particular dispute to the settlement procedure, although this may be achieved in a concession agreement between the investor and the state concerned. In fact, bilateral investment treaties between states parties to the Convention frequently provide for recourse to arbitration under the auspices of the Centre in the event of an investment dispute.¹⁸⁷ Further, a number of multilateral treaties now provide for the submission to ICSID of disputes arising.¹⁸⁸ In 1978, the Centre introduced the ICSID Additional Facility which extends its jurisdiction to include disputes where only one of the parties is a contracting state or a national of a contracting state and disputes not arising directly out of an investment, provided the dispute relates to a transaction which has 'features that distinguish it from an ordinary commercial transaction' and further provides for fact-finding proceedings.

Convention: A Commentary, Cambridge, 2001; Broches, 'The Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes', 3 *Columbia Journal of Transnational Law*, 1966, p. 263, and Broches, 'The Convention on the Settlement of Investment Disputes Between States and Nationals of Other States', 136 HR, 1972, p. 350; D. O'Keefe, 'The International Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes', 34 YBWA, 1980, p. 286; *The International Arbitral Process: Public and Private* (ed. J. G. Wetter), Dobbs Ferry, 1979, vol. II, p. 139; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 59, and P. Muchlinski, *Multinational Enterprises and the Law*, Oxford, 1995, pp. 540 ff. See also www.worldbank.org/icsid/.

¹⁸⁴ In becoming parties, states may expressly include or exclude certain kinds of disputes: see article 25(4). As of 2007, there were 144 contracting states (Bolivia denounced the convention in that year), Annual Report, 2007: see www.worldbank.org/icsid/.

¹⁸⁵ Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. II, p. 139. ¹⁸⁶ Article 25(1) of the Convention.

¹⁸⁷ See I. Pogany, 'The Regulation of Foreign Investment in Hungary', 4 *ICSID Review – Foreign Investment Law Journal*, 1989, pp. 39, 51. See also the case of *Asian Agricultural Products v. Sri Lanka* 30 ILM, 1991, p. 577.

¹⁸⁸ See e.g. article 1120 of the NAFTA Treaty, 1992 and *Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States* 119 ILR, p. 615. See also article 26(4) of the European Energy Charter, 1995.

The Convention requires individuals to be nationals of a state other than the one complained against and article 25(2) specifically excludes dual nationals. Nationality is determined according to the rules of the state of nationality claimed and must exist both at the date on which the parties consented to submit such dispute to conciliation or arbitration as well as on the date on which the request was registered. The same principles apply to companies, except that article 25(2)b includes also juridical persons which had the nationality of the contracting state party to the dispute on the date on which consent to submission of the dispute occurred and which 'because of foreign control, the parties agreed should be treated as a national of another contracting state for the purposes of this Convention'. This may be achieved in a bilateral investment treaty and may be implied in the circumstances.¹⁸⁹

Disputes are referred to conciliation commissions or arbitral tribunals constituted under ICSID's auspices. Conciliation has been rare, but arbitration more frequent.¹⁹⁰ The Secretary-General may be asked to establish an Arbitral Tribunal by either party to a dispute that falls within the jurisdiction of ICSID. The parties nominate an uneven number of arbitrators with the chosen arbitrators deciding upon a neutral president of the tribunal. The applicable law is as agreed by the parties and otherwise the law of the contracting state party to the dispute together with such rules of international law as may be applicable.¹⁹¹ Awards are binding and not subject to any appeal or other remedy other than those provided within the Convention system itself.¹⁹² Each contracting state is obliged to recognise ICSID awards and enforce pecuniary obligations imposed as if they were final judgments in its own courts.¹⁹³ A number of significant awards have now been made.¹⁹⁴

¹⁸⁹ See e.g. *AMCO v. Indonesia* 1 ICSID Reports, p. 377.

¹⁹⁰ As of May 2008, 139 cases had been concluded with 125 pending: see www.worldbank.org/icsid/cases/cases.htm.

¹⁹¹ See Chapter IV of the Convention. ¹⁹² Article 53.

¹⁹³ Article 54. However, this is subject to domestic legislation as regards sovereign immunity: see article 55.

¹⁹⁴ See P. Lalive, 'The First "World Bank" Arbitration (*Holiday Inns v. Morocco*) – Some Legal Problems', 51 BYIL, 1980, p. 123. See also *AGIP Spa v. Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo* 67 ILR, p. 318; *Benvenuti and Bonfant v. Government of the Popular Republic of the Congo*, *ibid.*, p. 345, dealing with questions of state responsibility and damages, and *LETSCO v. Government of Liberia* 89 ILR, p. 313 and *Tradex Hellas SA v. Albania*, 1999, ARB/94/2 concerning expropriation. See also *Metalclad Corporation v. United Mexican States* 119 ILR, p. 615, concerning state responsibility, expropriation and compensation

Another procedure of growing importance is the Court of Arbitration of the International Chamber of Commerce.¹⁹⁵ A number of agreements provide for the settlement of disputes by arbitration under the Rules of the International Chamber of Commerce and several cases have been heard.¹⁹⁶ Also to be noted is the set of rules adopted by the UN Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) in 1966.¹⁹⁷

An institution which constitutes a mixed model, combining elements of inter-state arbitration with elements of state-individual arbitration is the Iran–United States Claims Tribunal which was established in The Hague by the Claims Settlement Declaration in 1981.¹⁹⁸ The Tribunal is an international arbitral body set up to adjudicate claims of US nationals against Iran and of Iranian nationals against the United States arising out of alleged violations of property rights as a result of the circumstances surrounding the hostage crisis. The Tribunal also has jurisdiction to hear certain official claims between the US and Iran arising out of contractual arrangements for the purchase and sale of goods and services, and disputes relating to the interpretation and implementation of the Claims Settlement Agreement itself. As another indication of its mixed character, article V of the Claims Settlement Declaration provides that the Tribunal shall apply ‘such choice of law rules and principles of commercial and

and *SGS Société de Surveillance SA v. Pakistan* 129 ILR, p. 360, concerning e.g. relations between domestic courts and ICSID tribunals and the definition of investment.

¹⁹⁵ See Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. II, p. 145. See also www.iccwbo.org/index_court.asp.

¹⁹⁶ See *Dalmia Cement v. National Bank of Pakistan* 67 ILR, p. 611 and the *Westland Helicopters* case, 80 ILR, p. 595.

¹⁹⁷ See e.g. I. Dore, *The UNCITRAL Framework for Arbitration in Contemporary Perspective*, London, 1993, and www.uncitral.org/en-index.htm.

¹⁹⁸ See 1 Iran–US CTR, pp. 3–56; 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 223 ff. See also *The Jurisprudence of the Iran–United States Claims Tribunal* (ed. G. H. Aldrich), Oxford, 1996; Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, pp. 541 ff.; Stewart and Sherman, ‘Development at the Iran–United States Claims Tribunal: 1981–1983’, 24 Va. JIL, 1983, p. 1; D. Lloyd Jones, ‘The Iran–United States Claims Tribunal: Private Rights and State Responsibility’, 24 Va. JIL, 1984, p. 259; *The Iran–US Claims Tribunal 1981–83* (ed. R. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1984; *The Iran–United States Claims Tribunal: Its Contribution to the Law of State Responsibility* (eds. R. Lillich and D. B. Magraw), New York, 1998; S. J. Toope, *Mixed International Arbitration*, Cambridge, 1990, chapter 9; D. D. Caron, ‘The Nature of the Iran–United States Claims Tribunal and the Evolving Structure of International Dispute Resolution’, 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 104; A. Avanessian, *Iran–United States Claims Tribunal in Action*, The Hague, 1993; R. Khan, *The Iran–United States Claims Tribunal*, Dordrecht, 1990; W. Mapp, *The Iran–United States Claims Tribunal: The First Ten Years 1981–1991*, Manchester, 1993, and the *Iran–United States Claims Tribunal Reports*, 1981 to date. See also www.iusct.org/index-english.html.

international law as the Tribunal determines to be applicable, taking into account relevant usages of the trade, contract provisions and changed circumstances’.

In order to ensure payment of awards to US nationals, a Security Account was established with one billion dollars capital from Iranian assets frozen in the US as a result of the hostages crisis. Once the sum falls below \$500 million, Iran is under an obligation to replenish the Account.¹⁹⁹ Under the terms of the Agreement, all claims had to be filed by 19 January 1982.²⁰⁰ The Tribunal has nine judges, three each chosen by Iran and the US and three by the remaining six. It sits in three chambers of three persons each and in important cases in plenary session. It operates under UNCITRAL Rules, save as modified by the parties or the Tribunal.²⁰¹ Awards are final and binding and enforceable in any foreign court in accordance with domestic law.²⁰²

A variety of important issues have been addressed by the Tribunal, including the treatment of dual nationality in claims²⁰³ and in particular issues relating to expropriation.²⁰⁴ Although claims of under \$250,000 are to be represented by the government of the national concerned, claims in excess of this are presented by the individual claimants themselves, while the agents of the two states are present during the hearing with the right of audience.²⁰⁵ Nevertheless, the Tribunal has emphasised on several occasions that the claim remains that of the individual and is not that of the state, as would be normal in classical state responsibility situations.²⁰⁶

Whether this model will be used in other similar situations is an open question, particularly since the trend in the post-war era has tended towards the lump-sum settlement of such disputes.²⁰⁷ But the value of

¹⁹⁹ By early 1989, this had taken place on twenty-six occasions: see 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 915.

²⁰⁰ Approximately 1,000 claims for amounts of \$250,000 or more, and 2,800 claims for amounts of less than \$250,000 were filed within the time limit, which does not apply to disputes between the two Governments concerning the interpretation of the Algiers Declarations. By the end of March 2008, there had been 600 awards and 83 interim and interlocutory awards filed and 133 decisions filed. Altogether 3,936 cases had been finalised by award, decision or order: see Communiqué of 25 April 2008.

²⁰¹ Article III of the Claims Settlement Declaration.

²⁰² Article IV of the Claims Settlement Declaration.

²⁰³ See above, chapter 14, p. 815. ²⁰⁴ See above, chapter 14, p. 827.

²⁰⁵ See H. Fox, ‘States and the Undertaking to Arbitrate’, 37 ICLQ, 1988, pp. 1, 21.

²⁰⁶ See *State Party Responsibility for Awards Rendered Against Its Nationals*, Case A/21, 14 Iran-US CTR, pp. 324, 330.

²⁰⁷ See above, chapter 14, p. 840.

the Tribunal in general terms in resolving the large number of claims in question and in addressing significant issues of international law cannot be denied.

The establishment of the UN Compensation Commission constitutes an interesting and significant development.²⁰⁸ It was created by Security Council resolution 692 (1991) to process claims for compensation for 'any direct loss, damage, including environmental damage and the depletion of natural resources, or injury to foreign Governments, nationals and corporations, as a result of Iraq's unlawful invasion and occupation of Kuwait'.²⁰⁹ It constitutes a subsidiary organ of the Security Council and comprises a Governing Council (being the fifteen members at any given time of the Security Council), a secretariat and Commissioners appointed to review and resolve claims.²¹⁰ In resolution 705 (1991), the Security Council, acting under Chapter VII, decided that compensation to be paid by Iraq should not exceed 30 per cent of the annual value of the exports of petroleum and petroleum products from Iraq.²¹¹ In resolution 706 (1991), the Council authorised states to import a certain amount of Iraqi petroleum and petroleum products in order to pay for essential food and humanitarian purchases by Iraq and provide payments for the UN Compensation Commission via the Compensation Fund.²¹²

²⁰⁸ See e.g. D. Campanelli, 'The United Nations Compensation Commission (UNCC): Reflections on its Judicial Character', 4 *The Law and Practice of International Courts and Tribunals*, 2005, p. 107; V. Heiskanen, 'The United Nations Compensation Commission', 296 HR, 2002, p. 314; Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 41; *The United Nations Compensation Commission: A Handbook* (eds. M. Frigessi di Ratalma and T. Treves), The Hague, 1999; A. Kolliopoulos, *La Commission d'Indemnisation des Nations Unies et le Droit de la Responsabilité Internationale*, Paris, 2001; A. Grattini, 'The UN Compensation Commission: Old Rules, New Procedures on War Reparations', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 161; D. Caron and B. Morris, 'The United Nations Compensation Commission: Practical Justice, Not Retribution', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 183, and M. B. Fox, 'Imposing Liability for Losses from Aggressive War: An Economic Analysis of the UN Compensation Commission', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 201.

²⁰⁹ Paragraph 16 of resolution 687 (1991) established that 'Iraq... is liable under international law for any direct loss, damage, including environmental damage and the depletion of natural resources, or injury to foreign Governments, nationals and corporations, as a result of Iraq's unlawful invasion and occupation of Kuwait' and paragraph 18 of the resolution established a fund to pay compensation for such claims together with a Commission to administer it.

²¹⁰ See Report of the Secretary-General of 2 May 1991, S/22559.

²¹¹ See also Report of the Secretary-General, S/22661, May 1991.

²¹² See also the Report of the Secretary-General, S/23006, 1991 and Security Council resolution 712 (1991).

Iraq at first refused to co-operate,²¹³ but in 1996, the 'oil for food' scheme put forward in resolution 986 (1995) began to function. This resolution provided also that 30 per cent of the proceeds of such oil sales were to be allocated to the Compensation Fund. This percentage was reduced to 25 per cent in resolution 1330 (2000). The Compensation Commission has received an overwhelming number of claims. Some 2.6 million claims from around 100 states were received.²¹⁴ The claims were divided into six categories.²¹⁵ The deadline of 1 January 1995 was set for the filing of category A to D claims; 1 January 1996 for the filing of category E and F claims and 1 February 1997 for category F environmental claims. Provisional Rules were adopted by the Commission in 1992.²¹⁶ Claims are subject to a preliminary assessment by the secretariat and then sent to panels of commissioners sitting in private. Recommendations are then sent to the Governing Council for decision from which there is no appeal. The first compensation awards were made in spring 1995.²¹⁷ By March 2003, 2,597,527 claims had been resolved and \$16,708,302,236 compensation paid.²¹⁸ The Commission has awarded compensation with regard

²¹³ In resolution 778 (1992) the Council called upon states which held frozen assets representing the proceeds of sales of Iraqi petroleum to transfer these to a special escrow account, from which 30 per cent would be transferred to the Compensation Fund.

²¹⁴ See 35 ILM, 1996, p. 942, and Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 43 (the claims included those from some 1 million Egyptian workers). See also www.unog.ch/uncc/theclaims.htm. The claims amounted to over \$300 billion.

²¹⁵ Category 'A' claims cover claims of individuals arising from their departure from Iraq or Kuwait between the date of Iraq's invasion of Kuwait on 2 August 1990 and the date of the ceasefire, 2 March 1991, with compensation for successful claims being set by the Governing Council at the fixed sum of US \$2,500 for individual claimants and US \$5,000 for families. Category 'B' claims cover individual claims for serious personal injury or death of spouse, children or parents, with compensation set at US \$2,500 for individual claimants and up to US \$10,000 for families. Category 'C' claims cover individual claims for damages up to \$100,000. Category 'D' claims cover individual claims for damages above \$100,000. Category 'E' claims cover claims of corporations, other private legal entities and public sector enterprises. Category 'F' claims cover claims made by governments and international organisations for various losses. See e.g. Decision 1, S/22885, annex II, paras. 14–16 and S/23765, annex. In Decision 11, it was decided that members of the Allied Coalition Forces were not eligible for compensation unless in accordance with the adopted criteria, the claimants were prisoners-of-war and the loss or injury arose from mistreatment in violation of international humanitarian law, S/24363, annex II, *ibid*. See also A/AC.26/1994/2, reproduced in 34 ILM, 1995, p. 307.

²¹⁶ See S/AC.26/1992/10 and 31 ILM, 1992, p. 1053.

²¹⁷ S/AC.26/1995/2–5. See also 35 ILM, 1996, p. 956. For examples of claims, see e.g. 109 ILR, p. 1 and the *Egyptian Workers' Claims* 117 ILR, p. 195.

²¹⁸ See www.unog.ch/uncc/status.htm.

to damage caused within Saudi Arabia, Israel, Jordan and Gulf states by Iraqi Scud missiles fired during the conflict.²¹⁹

The Commission constitutes an interesting hybrid between a fact-finding political organ and a quasi-judicial mechanism.²²⁰ It has been noted that panels are required, in the absence of specific guidance by the Security Council or the Governing Council, to apply international law.²²¹ It has had to deal with a remarkable number of claims with great success and has proceeded upon an expedited basis by relying upon computerised handling of smaller claims and without a judicial hearing stage.²²²

Binding methods of dispute settlement

As has been seen, there is a considerable variety of means, mechanisms and institutions established to resolve disputes in the field of international law. However, a special place is accorded to the creation of judicial bodies. Such courts and tribunals may be purely inter-state or permit individuals to appear as applicants or respondents.²²³ They may be permanent or temporary, being established to resolve one particular dispute. In resolving disputes, a variety of techniques is likely to be used and references to judicial bodies should be seen as part of a larger process of peaceful settlement. As Jennings has written, 'the adjudicative process can serve, not only to resolve classical legal disputes, but it can also serve as an important tool of preventive diplomacy in more complex situations'.²²⁴ The following section will deal with arbitration and the following chapter with the International Court of Justice.

²¹⁹ See the Report and Recommendations Concerning the Third Instalment of 'E2' Claims, S/AC.26/1999/R.40, para. 77.

²²⁰ See the Report of the UN Secretary-General of 2 May 1991, S/22559. This Report in particular emphasised that the Compensation Commission was neither a Court nor an Arbitral Tribunal, but 'a political organ that performs an essentially fact-finding function of examining the claims, verifying their validity, evaluating losses, assessing payments and resolving disputed claims'. It was recognised, however, that 'some elements of due process should be built into the procedure', *ibid.*, para. 20: see Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 42, and Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 61. See also the Guidelines adopted by the Governing Council on 2 August 1991, S/22885. Both documents are reproduced in 30 ILM, 1991, pp. 1703 ff. Note that Collier and Lowe refer to the UNCC as prominent amongst 'the most notable recent innovations', *Settlement*, p. 41.

²²¹ See article 31 of the Rules and the *Egyptian Workers' Claims* 117 ILR, pp. 195, 247.

²²² See Collier and Lowe, *Settlement*, p. 43. ²²³ See above, note 2.

²²⁴ R. Y. Jennings, 'Presentation' in *Increasing the Effectiveness of the International Court of Justice* (eds. C. Peck and R. S. Lee), The Hague, 1997, p. 79.

*Arbitration*²²⁵

In determining whether a body established by states to settle a dispute is of a judicial, administrative or political nature, the Tribunal in the *Laguna del Desierto* case emphasised that 'the practice of international law is to look at the nature of the procedure followed by those states before the body in question'.²²⁶

The procedure of arbitration grew to some extent out of the processes of diplomatic settlement and represented an advance towards a developed international legal system. In its modern form, it emerged with the Jay Treaty of 1794 between Britain and America, which provided for the establishment of mixed commissions to solve legal disputes between the parties.²²⁷ The procedure was successfully used in the *Alabama Claims* arbitration²²⁸ of 1872 between the two countries, which resulted in the UK having to pay compensation for the damage caused by a Confederate warship built in the UK. This success stimulated further arbitrations, for example the *Behring Sea*²²⁹ and *British Guiana and Venezuela Boundary*²³⁰ arbitrations at the close of the nineteenth century.²³¹

The 1899 Hague Convention for the Pacific Settlement of Disputes included a number of provisions on international arbitration, the object of

²²⁵ See e.g. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, chapter 5; Wetter, *Arbitral Process*; L. Simpson and H. Fox, *International Arbitration*, London, 1959; L. Malintoppi, 'Methods of Dispute Resolution in Inter-State Litigation: When States Go To Arbitration Rather Than Adjudication', 5 *The Law and Practice of International Courts and Tribunals*, 2006, p. 133; L. Caflisch, 'L'Avenir de l'Arbitrage Interétatique', AFDI, 1979, p. 9; B. S. Murty, 'Settlement'. See also Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 866; Oellers-Frahm and Zimmermann, *Dispute Settlement*; Economides, 'L'Obligation de Règlement Pacifique'; S. Schwebel, *International Arbitration: Three Salient Problems*, Cambridge, 1987; A. M. Stuyt, *Survey of International Arbitrations (1794–1984)*, Dordrecht, 1990; V. Coussirat-Coustere and P. M. Eisemann, *Repertory of International Arbitral Jurisprudence*, Dordrecht, 4 vols., 1989–91; C. Gray and B. Kingsbury, 'Developments in Dispute Settlement: International Arbitration since 1945', 63 BYIL, 1992, p. 97; L. Sohn, 'International Arbitration Today', 108 HR, 1976, p. 1; *International Arbitration* (ed. F. Soons), Dordrecht, 1990, and H. Fox, 'States and the Undertaking to Arbitrate', 37 ICLQ, 1988, p. 1.

²²⁶ 113 ILR, pp. 1, 42.

²²⁷ See Simpson and Fox, *International Arbitration*, pp. 1–4, and R. C. Morris, *International Arbitration and Procedure*, New Haven, 1911. Note also the Treaty of Ghent, 1814, which incorporated the concept of a neutral element within the commission, *ibid.* See also G. Schwarzenberger, 'Present-Day Relevance of the Jay Treaty Arbitrations', 53 *Notre Dame Lawyer*, 1978, p. 715.

²²⁸ J. B. Moore, *International Arbitrations*, Washington, DC, 1898, vol. I, p. 495.

²²⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 755. ²³⁰ 92 BFSP, p. 970.

²³¹ See also 'Projet de Règlement pour la Procédure Arbitrale Internationale', *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1877, p. 126.

which was deemed to be under article 15, 'the settlement of differences between states by judges of their own choice and on the basis of respect for law'. This became the accepted definition of arbitration in international law. It was repeated in article 37 of the 1907 Hague Conventions and adopted by the Permanent Court of International Justice in the case concerning the *Interpretation of Article 3, paragraph 2, of the Treaty of Lausanne*²³² and by the International Court.²³³

International arbitration was held to be the most effective and equitable manner of dispute settlement, where diplomacy had failed. An agreement to arbitrate under article 18 implied the legal obligation to accept the terms of the award. In addition, a Permanent Court of Arbitration was established.²³⁴ It is not really a court since it is not composed of a fixed body of judges. It consists of a panel of persons, nominated by the contracting states²³⁵ (each one nominating a maximum of four), comprising individuals 'of known competency in questions of international law, of the highest moral reputation and disposed to accept the duties of an arbitrator'.²³⁶ Where contracting states wish to go to arbitration, they are entitled to choose the members of the tribunal from the panel. Thus, it is in essence machinery facilitating the establishment of arbitral tribunals. The PCA also consists of an International Bureau, which acts as the registry of the Court and keeps its records, and a Permanent Administrative Council, exercising administrative control over the Bureau. Administrative support was provided in this context by the Bureau in the *Heathrow Airport User Charges* arbitration.²³⁷ The PCA has been used in a variety of cases from an early date.²³⁸

²³² PCIJ, Series B, No. 12, p. 26.

²³³ See *Qatar v. Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 113. See also the *Dubai/Sharjah Border Arbitration* 91 ILR, pp. 543, 574 and 575.

²³⁴ See Murty, 'Settlement', p. 685; M. Hudson, *The Permanent Court of International Justice 1920–1942*, New York, 1943, p. 11; *The Permanent Court of Arbitration: International Arbitration and Dispute Settlement* (eds. P. Hamilton, H. C. Reuena, L. van Scheltinga and B. Shifman), The Hague, 1999; J. Allain, *A Century of International Adjudication: The Rule of Law and its Limits*, The Hague, 2000, chapter 1, and J. Jonkman, 'The Role of the Permanent Court of Arbitration in International Dispute Resolution', 279 HR, 1999, p. 9. See also www.pca-cpa.org/.

²³⁵ There are currently 107. ²³⁶ Article 44 of the Convention as revised in 1907.

²³⁷ See 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 739, note 4.

²³⁸ See e.g. the UK–France Agreement of 1903, providing for referral of differences of a legal nature to the Permanent Court of Arbitration, so long as the 'vital interests' of the parties were not involved, Cd 1837.

Between 1900 and 1932 some twenty disputes went through the PCA procedure, but from that point the numbers began to fall drastically. However, more recently the PCA has started to play an increasingly important role, so much so that an element of 'institutionalisation' of arbitration has been detected by some writers.²³⁹ It has served as the registry in, for example, the two phases of the *Eritrea–Yemen* arbitration²⁴⁰ and for the *Eritrea–Ethiopia* Boundary Commission²⁴¹ and Claims Commission²⁴² and in the *Larsen v. Hawaiian Kingdom* arbitration.²⁴³ It also provided facilities in cases such as the *Mox* arbitration between the UK and Ireland²⁴⁴ and *Saluka Investments v. Czech Republic*.²⁴⁵ The PCA has also adopted, for example, Optional Rules for Arbitrating Disputes between Two States,²⁴⁶ Optional Rules for Arbitrating Disputes between Two Parties of Which Only One is a State,²⁴⁷ Optional Rules of Arbitration Involving International Organisations and States,²⁴⁸ and Optional Rules for Arbitration of Disputes Relating to Natural Resources and/or the Environment in 2001.²⁴⁹ The International Law Commission itself formulated a set of Model Rules on Arbitral Procedure, which was adopted by the General Assembly in 1958.²⁵⁰

Arbitration tribunals may be composed in different ways.²⁵¹ There may be a single arbitrator or a collegiate body. In the latter case, each party will appoint an equal number of arbitrators with the chairman or umpire

²³⁹ See Malintoppi, 'Methods of Dispute Resolution', p. 135. See generally H. Von Mangoldt, 'Arbitration and Conciliation' in Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. V, pp. 243 ff., and D. Johnson, 'International Arbitration Back in Favour?', 34 YBWA, 1980, p. 305.

²⁴⁰ See 114 ILR, p. 1 (Phase One: Territorial Sovereignty) and 119 ILR, p. 417 (Phase Two: Maritime Delimitation).

²⁴¹ Decision of 13 April 2002: see 129 ILR, p. 1.

²⁴² See S/2001/608. As to some Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission decisions, see above, chapter 13, p. 756, note 319.

²⁴³ See 119 ILR, p. 566. ²⁴⁴ See 126 ILR, p. 310. ²⁴⁵ Partial Award of 17 March 2006.

²⁴⁶ In 1992: see 32 ILM, 1993, p. 572. These are based upon the UNCITRAL (United Nations Commission on International Trade Law) Arbitration Rules, adopted by the UN General Assembly on 15 December 1976 in resolution 31/98.

²⁴⁷ With effect from 1993: see <http://pca-cpa.org/ENGLISH/BD/1stateeng.htm>.

²⁴⁸ With effect from 1996: see <http://pca-cpa.org/ENGLISH/BD/2igoenglish.htm>.

²⁴⁹ See www.pca-cpa.org/ENGLISH/EDR/ENRrules.htm.

²⁵⁰ Resolution 1262 (XI). These are, however, merely optional. See also Report of the ILC, 1958, A/3859. Note also the 1928 General Act, the 1929 General Treaty of Inter-American Arbitration and the 1949 Revised General Act. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1953, vol. II, p. 208.

²⁵¹ See e.g. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 95 ff. It is, of course, an issue for the parties to decide.

being appointed by either the parties or the arbitrators already nominated. In many cases, a head of state will be suggested as a single arbitrator and he will then nominate an expert or experts in the field of international law or other relevant disciplines to act for him.²⁵² Under the PCA system, and in the absence of agreement to the contrary, each party selects two arbitrators from the panel, only one of whom may be a national of the state. These arbitrators then choose an umpire, but if they fail to do so, this task will be left to a third party, nominated by agreement. If this also fails to produce a result, a complicated process then ensues culminating in the drawing of lots.

States are not obliged to submit a dispute to the procedure of arbitration, in the absence of their consent.²⁵³ This consent may be expressed in arbitration treaties, in which the contracting states agree to submit certain kinds of disputes that may arise between them to arbitration, or in specific provisions of general treaties, which provide for disputes with regard to the treaty itself to be submitted to arbitration,²⁵⁴ although the number of treaties dealing primarily with the peaceful settlement of disputes has declined since 1945.²⁵⁵ Consent to the reference of a dispute to arbitration with regard to matters that have already arisen is usually expressed by means of a *compromis*, or special agreement, and the terms in which it is couched are of extreme importance. This is because the jurisdiction of the tribunal is defined in relation to the provisions of the treaty or *compromis*, whichever happens to be the relevant document in the particular case. However, in general, the tribunal may determine its competence in interpreting the *compromis* and other documents concerned in the case.²⁵⁶

²⁵² E.g. the *Argentina–Chile* case, 38 ILR, p. 10 and the *Beagle Channel* case, HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93. Note also the *Interpretation of Peace Treaties* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 221; 17 ILR, p. 318.

²⁵³ See e.g. the *Eastern Carelia* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 5, 1923, p. 27; 2 AD, p. 394 and the *Ambatielos* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 19; 20 ILR, p. 547.

²⁵⁴ See *Arbitration and Security: The Systematic Survey of the Arbitration Conventions and Treaties of Mutual Security Deposited with the League of Nations*, Geneva, 1927, and *Systematic Survey of Treaties for the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes 1928–1948*, New York, 1949.

²⁵⁵ See L. Sohn, 'Report on the Changing Role of Arbitration in the Settlement of International Disputes', International Law Association, 1966, pp. 325, 334.

²⁵⁶ In the absence of agreement to the contrary. See e.g. the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 111, 119; 20 ILR, pp. 567, 572. See also article 48 of the Hague Convention, 1899, and article 73 of the Hague Convention, 1907.

The law to be applied in arbitration proceedings is international law,²⁵⁷ but the parties may agree upon certain principles to be taken into account by the tribunal and specify this in the *compromis*. In this case, the tribunal must apply the rules specified. For example, in the *British Guiana and Venezuela Boundary* dispute,²⁵⁸ it was stated that occupation for fifty years should be accepted as constituting a prescriptive title to territory. And in the *Trail Smelter* case,²⁵⁹ the law to be applied was declared to be US law and practice with regard to such questions as well as international law.²⁶⁰

Agreements sometimes specify that the decisions should be reached in accordance with 'law and equity' and this means that the general principles of justice common to legal systems should be taken into account as well as the provisions of international law. Such general principles may also be considered where there are no specific rules covering the situation under discussion.²⁶¹ The rules of procedure of the tribunal are often specified in the *compromis* and decided by the parties by agreement as the process commences. Hague Convention I of 1899 as revised in 1907 contains agreed procedure principles, which would apply in the absence of express stipulation. It is characteristic of arbitration that the tribunal is competent to determine its own jurisdiction and therefore interpret the relevant

²⁵⁷ See e.g. the *Norwegian Shipowners' Claims* case, 1 RIAA, 1921, p. 309 and the *Dubai/Sharjah* case, 91 ILR, pp. 543, 585–8. Note that article 28 of the 1928 General Act for the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes, as revised in 1949, provides that where nothing is laid down in the arbitration agreement as to the law applicable to the merits of the case, the tribunal should apply the substantive rules as laid down in article 38 of the Statute of the International Court of Justice (i.e. international treaties, custom and general principles of law). See further above, chapter 3, p. 70.

²⁵⁸ 92 BFSP, p. 970. ²⁵⁹ 3 RIAA, 1938, p. 1908; 9 AD, p. 315.

²⁶⁰ Note that in international commercial arbitrations, the reference often incorporates municipal law: see e.g. the *BP* case, 53 ILR, p. 297, where the basic reference was to 'the principles of the Law of Libya common to the principles of international law'. See also the wide reference to the Iran–United States Claims Tribunal to decide all cases 'on the basis of respect for law, applying such choice of law rules and principles of commercial and international law as the Tribunal determines to be applicable, taking into account relevant usages of the trade, contract provisions and changed circumstances', above, p. 1043. By way of contrast, the tribunal in the *OSPAR (Ireland v. UK)* case, operating on the basis of article 32 of the OSPAR Convention, held that the only applicable law was the Convention itself, 126 ILR, p. 334.

²⁶¹ See e.g. *Re Competence of the Conciliation Commission* 22 ILR, p. 867 and above, chapter 3, p. 98. See also article 28 of the 1928 General Act as revised in 1949, article 10 of the ILC Model Articles and articles 26 and 28 of the European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes. Note in addition the *Rann of Kutch* case, 50 ILR, p. 520.

instruments determining that jurisdiction.²⁶² Once an arbitral award has been made, it is final and binding upon the parties,²⁶³ but in certain circumstances the award itself may be regarded as a nullity.²⁶⁴ There is disagreement amongst lawyers as to the grounds on which such a decision may be taken. It is, however, fairly generally accepted that where a tribunal exceeds its powers under the *compromis*, its award may be treated as a nullity, although this is not a common occurrence. Such excess of power (*excès de pouvoir*) may be involved where the tribunal decides a question not submitted to it, or applies rules it is not authorised to apply. The main example of the former is the *North-Eastern Boundary* case²⁶⁵ between Canada and the United States, where the arbitrator, after being asked to decide which of two lines constituted the frontier, in fact chose a third line.

It is sometimes argued that invalidity of the *compromis* is a ground of nullity,²⁶⁶ while the corruption of a member of the tribunal or a serious departure from a fundamental rule of procedure are further possibilities as grounds of nullity.²⁶⁷ Article 35 of the Model Rules on Arbitral Procedure drawn up by the International Law Commission, for example, provides for a successful plea of nullity in three cases: excess of power, corruption of a tribunal member or serious departure from a fundamental rule of procedure, including failure to state the reasons for the award.²⁶⁸ 'Essential

²⁶² See the *Nottebohm (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 111, 119; 20 ILR, pp. 567, 571–3. See also Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia, Interlocutory Decision of 4 July 1992, 92 ILR, pp. 194, 197.

²⁶³ Articles 81 and 84, Hague Convention I, 1907. The principle of *res judicata* also applies to arbitration awards: see e.g. the *Trail Smelter* case, 3 RIAA, 1938, p. 1905; 9 AD, p. 324 and the *Orinoco Steamship Co.* case, 11 RIAA, 1910, p. 227.

²⁶⁴ See e.g. W. M. Reisman, *Nullity and Revision*, New Haven, 1971; E. K. Nantwi, *The Enforcement of International Judicial Decisions and Arbitral Awards in Public International Law*, Leiden, 1967, and O. Schachter, 'The Enforcement of International Judicial and Arbitral Decisions', 54 AJIL, 1960, p. 1.

²⁶⁵ See C. C. Hyde, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Boston, 1945, vol. III, p. 1636. See also the *Pelletier* case, *ibid.*, p. 1640; the *Panama–Costa Rica Boundary* case, 11 RIAA, 1900, p. 519 and *US Foreign Relations*, 1914, p. 994; the *Chamizal* case, 11 RIAA, p. 309, and the *Cerruti* arbitrations, 6 AJIL, 1912, p. 965.

²⁶⁶ See e.g. Murty, 'Settlement', pp. 693–4, and A. D. McNair, *The Law of Treaties*, Oxford, 1961, pp. 66–77.

²⁶⁷ See Schachter, 'Enforcement', p. 3. See also, as regards corruption, Moore, *International Arbitrations*, vol. II, pp. 1660–4, and the *Buraimi* arbitration, Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. III, p. 357 and 545 HC Deb., col. 199, 1955.

²⁶⁸ See the *British Guiana and Venezuela Boundary* case, 92 BFSP, p. 160, and Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. III, pp. 81 ff. See also the *Arbitral Award by the King of Spain* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 188, 216; 30 ILR, pp. 457, 476.

error' has also been suggested as a ground of nullity, but the definition of this is far from unambiguous.²⁶⁹ It would appear not to cover the evaluation of documents and evidence,²⁷⁰ but may cover manifest errors²⁷¹ such as not taking into account a relevant treaty or a clear mistake as to the appropriate municipal law.²⁷² Of course, once a party recognises the award as valid and binding, it will not be able to challenge the validity of the award at a later stage.²⁷³ In certain circumstances, it may be open to a party to request a revision or re-opening of the award in order to provide for rectification of an error or consideration of a fact unknown at the time to the tribunal and the requesting party which is of such a nature as to have a decisive influence on the award.²⁷⁴

Arbitration as a method of settling disputes combines elements of both diplomatic and judicial procedures. It depends for its success on a certain amount of goodwill between the parties in drawing up the *compromis* and constituting the tribunal, as well as actually enforcing the award subsequently made. A large part depends upon negotiating processes. On the other hand, arbitration is an adjudicative technique in that the award is final and binding and the arbitrators are required to base their decision on law.²⁷⁵ It will be seen in the following section just how close arbitration is to judicial settlement of disputes by the International Court of Justice, and it is no coincidence that the procedure of arbitration through the PCA began to decline with the establishment and consolidation of the Permanent Court of International Justice in the 1920s.

In recent years, there has been a rise in the number of inter-state arbitrations. The *Rann of Kutch* case,²⁷⁶ the *Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case,²⁷⁷ the *Beagle Channel* case²⁷⁸ and the *Taba* case²⁷⁹ were all the subject of

²⁶⁹ See e.g. Murty, 'Settlement', p. 696, and Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 113 ff.

²⁷⁰ *Arbitral Award by the King of Spain*, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 188, 215–16; 30 ILR, pp. 457, 475. See also, as regards the Argentinian claim of nullity of the *Beagle Channel* award, 17 ILM, 1978, p. 738; 52 ILR, pp. 267–85.

²⁷¹ See the *Trail Smelter* case, 3 RIAA, 1938, pp. 1905, 1957; 9 AD, p. 331.

²⁷² See e.g. the *Schreck* case, Moore, *International Arbitrations*, vol. II, p. 1357.

²⁷³ *Arbitral Award by the King of Spain*, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 188, 213; 30 ILR, p. 473.

²⁷⁴ See e.g. Wetter, *Arbitral Process*, vol. II, pp. 539 ff. See also article 29 of the ILC Model Rules.

²⁷⁵ See the definition of arbitration in *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1953, vol. II, p. 202.

²⁷⁶ 50 ILR, p. 2. See also J. G. Wetter, 'The Rann of Kutch Arbitration', 65 AJIL, 1971, p. 346.

²⁷⁷ Cmnd 7438, 1978; 54 ILR, p. 6. See further above, chapter 11, p. 593.

²⁷⁸ HMSO, 1977; 52 ILR, p. 93. See M. N. Shaw, 'The Beagle Channel Arbitration Award', 6 *International Relations*, 1978, p. 415.

²⁷⁹ 80 ILR, p. 244. See also D. W. Bowett, 'The Taba Award of 29 September 1988', 23 *Israel Law Review*, 1989, p. 429; G. Lagergren, 'The Taba Tribunal 1986–89', 1 *African Journal*

arbitral awards, usually successfully.²⁸⁰ More recent examples include the *Eritrea–Yemen* arbitration,²⁸¹ the *Eritrea–Ethiopia* boundary delimitation case²⁸² and the *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago* maritime delimitation case.²⁸³ It may be that further such issues may be resolved in this fashion, although a lot depends on the evaluation of the parties as to the most satisfactory method of dispute settlement in the light of their own particular interests and requirements.

Arbitration is an extremely useful process where some technical expertise is required, or where greater flexibility and speed than is available before the International Court is desired.²⁸⁴ The states themselves choose the arbitrators, lay down the applicable law and rules of procedure, as well as set the timetable. In addition, the states involved may wish for the proceedings to be confidential, something which is not achievable in the International Court with its public oral hearings and publication of written proceedings. However, the parties pay all the costs of the arbitration, including the fees due to the registrar and arbitrators, while in the International Court, the judges and members of the registry are paid by the UN.²⁸⁵

Arbitration may be the appropriate mechanism to utilise as between states and international institutions, since only states may appear before the ICJ in contentious proceedings. The establishment of arbitral tribunals

of International and Comparative Law, 1989, p. 525, and P. Weil, 'Some Observations on the Arbitral Award in the Taba Case', 23 *Israel Law Review*, 1989, p. 1.

²⁸⁰ Argentina initially rejected the award in the *Beagle Channel* case, but later mediation and negotiations resolved the issue: see 17 ILM, 1978, p. 738 and 24 ILM, 1985, p. 1.

²⁸¹ 114 ILR, p. 1 and 119 ILR, p. 417.

²⁸² See 129 ILR, p. 1. See also M. N. Shaw, 'Title, Control and Closure? The Experience of the Eritrea–Ethiopia Boundary Commission', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 755.

²⁸³ Award of 11 April 2006. See also the *Guyana v. Suriname* maritime delimitation case, award of 17 September 2007, see further on maritime delimitations, above, chapter 11, p. 590.

²⁸⁴ For example in the *Argentina–Chile* case of 1966, the tribunal consisted of a lawyer and two geographical experts, 38 ILR, p. 10. See Malintoppi, 'Methods of Dispute Resolution', and R. Y. Jennings, 'The Differences Between Conducting a Case in the ICJ and in an *Ad Hoc* Tribunal – An Insider's View', *Liber Amicorum Judge Shigeru Oda* (eds. N. Ando, E. McWhinney and R. Wolfrum), The Hague, 2002, p. 893.

²⁸⁵ Note that article 287 of the Convention on the Law of the Sea, 1982 provides that where a state has not chosen by a written declaration one of the dispute settlement methods laid down, it will be deemed to have opted for arbitration under Annex VII of the Convention. In the case of such arbitrations, the parties nominate one each of the five-member tribunal, with the remaining members being chosen by agreement. In the absence of such agreement, the President of the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea will make the necessary appointments: see e.g. the *Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago* arbitration of 11 April 2006 and the *Guyana v. Suriname* arbitration of 17 September 2007.

has often been undertaken in order to deal relatively quietly and cheaply with a series of problems within certain categories, for example, the mixed tribunals established after the First World War to settle territorial questions, or the Mexican Claims commissions which handled various claims against Mexico.²⁸⁶ An attempt was made to tackle issues raised by the situation in the Former Yugoslavia by the establishment of an Arbitration Commission.²⁸⁷ However, the Commission, while issuing a number of Opinions on issues concerning, for example, statehood, recognition, human rights and boundary matters, was not able to act as an arbitration tribunal as between the parties to the conflict.

Like arbitration, judicial settlement is a binding method of dispute settlement, but by means of an established and permanent body. There are a number of international and regional courts deciding disputes between subjects of international law, in accordance with the rules and principles of international law.²⁸⁸ However, by far the most important, both by prestige and jurisdiction, is the International Court of Justice, and this is the subject of the following chapter.

Suggestions for further reading

- J. Collier and V. Lowe, *The Settlement of Disputes in International Law*, Cambridge, 1999
- J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005
- F. Orrego Vicuña, *International Dispute Settlement in an Evolving Global Society: Constitutionalization, Accessibility, Privatization*, Cambridge, 2004
- United Nations, *Handbook on the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes Between States*, New York, 1992

²⁸⁶ See e.g. A. H. Feller, *Mexican Claims Commissions 1923–1934*, New York, 1935.

²⁸⁷ Established pursuant to the Declaration of 27 August 1991 of the European Community: see Bull. EC, 7/8 (1991). See generally, M. Craven, 'The EC Arbitration Commission on Yugoslavia', 66 BYIL, 1995, p. 333.

²⁸⁸ See above, note 2.

The International Court of Justice¹

The impetus to create a world court for the international community developed as a result of the atmosphere engendered by the Hague Conferences of 1897 and 1907. The establishment of the Permanent Court of Arbitration, although neither permanent nor, in fact, a court, marked

¹ See e.g. S. Rosenne, *The Law and Practice of the International Court, 1920–2005*, 4th edn, Leiden, 4 vols., 2006, and Rosenne, *The World Court*, 6th edn, Dordrecht, 2005; *The Statute of the International Court of Justice: A Commentary* (eds. A. Zimmermann, C. Tomuschat and K. Oellers-Frahm), Oxford, 2006; M. S. M. Amr, *The Role of the International Court of Justice as the Principal Judicial Organ of the United Nations*, The Hague, 2003; G. Guillaume, *La Cour Internationale de Justice à l'Aube du XXIe Siècle: Le Regard d'un Juge*, Paris, 2003; *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. A. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996; G. G. Fitzmaurice, *The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice*, Cambridge, 2 vols., 1986; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice (1960–1989)' series of articles in the *British Year Book of International Law* from volume 60, 1989 to volume 70, 2003, and Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989, Supplement 2005: Parts One and Two', 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 1, and Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989, Supplement 2006: Part Three', 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 1; R. Y. Jennings, 'The International Court of Justice after Fifty Years', 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 493, and Jennings, 'The Role of the International Court of Justice', 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 1; G. Guyomar, *Commentaire du Règlement de la CIJ*, Paris, 1983; E. McWhinney, *The World Court and the Contemporary Law-Making Process*, Alphen aan den Rijn, 1979; T. O. Elias, *The International Court of Justice and Some Contemporary Problems*, Alphen aan den Rijn, 1983; J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, Cambridge, 4th edn, 2005, chapters 6 and 7; *The Future of the International Court of Justice* (ed. L. Gross), Dobbs Ferry, 2 vols., 1976; *The International Court of Justice at a Crossroads* (ed. L. Damrosch), Dobbs Ferry, 1987; E. Lauterpacht, *Aspects of the Administration of International Justice*, Cambridge, 1991; T. M. Franck, 'Fairness in the International Legal and Institutional System', 240 HR, 1993 III, pp. 13, 302; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 11; *Increasing the Effectiveness of the International Court of Justice* (eds. C. Peck and R. S. Lee), The Hague, 1997; *The International Court of Justice: Its Future Role after Fifty Years* (eds. A. S. Muller, D. Raič and J. M. Thuránszky), The Hague, 1997; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 889; B. S. Murty, 'Settlement of Disputes' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 673; K. H. Kaikobad, *The International Court of Justice and Judicial Review*, The Hague, 2000, and E. McWhinney, *Judicial Settlement of International Disputes*, Alphen aan den Rijn, 1991.

an important step forward in the consolidation of an international legal system.² However, no lasting concrete steps were taken until after the conclusion of the First World War. The Covenant of the League of Nations called for the formulation of proposals for the creation of a world court and in 1920 the Permanent Court of International Justice (PCIJ) was created. It stimulated efforts to develop international arbitral mechanisms. Together with arbitration, the Permanent Court was intended to provide a reasonably comprehensive system serving the international community. It was intended as a way to prevent outbreaks of violence by enabling easily accessible methods of dispute settlement in the context of a legal and organisational framework to be made available.³

The PCIJ was superseded after the Second World War by the International Court of Justice (ICJ), described in article 92 of the Charter as the 'principal judicial organ' of the United Nations. In essence, it is a continuation of the Permanent Court, with virtually the same statute and jurisdiction, and with a continuing line of cases, no distinction being made between those decided by the PCIJ and those by the ICJ.⁴

The organisation of the Court⁵

The ICJ is composed of fifteen members:

elected regardless of their nationality, from among persons of high moral character, who possess the qualifications required in their respective countries for appointment to the highest judicial offices, or are jurisconsults of recognised competence in international law.⁶

The procedure for the appointment of judges is interesting in that it combines both legal and political elements, while seeking to exclude as far as possible the influence of national states over them. The system established by the Root–Phillimore plan in 1920 is in essence followed. This plan played a large part in the actual creation of the PCIJ and

² See above, chapter 18, p. 1049.

³ For an assessment of its work, see e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. I, pp. 16 ff.

⁴ See e.g. M. Shahabuddeen, *Precedent in the World Court*, Cambridge, 1996, pp. 22 ff.

⁵ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. I, chapter 6 and vol. III, chapter 17. See also H. Thirlway, 'Procedural Law and the International Court of Justice' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 389.

⁶ Article 2, Statute of the ICJ.

succeeded in allaying many suspicions regarding the composition of the proposed Court.⁷

The members of the Court are elected by the General Assembly and Security Council (voting separately) from a list of qualified persons drawn up by the national groups of the Permanent Court of Arbitration, or by specially appointed national groups in the case of UN members that are not represented in the PCA.⁸ This provision was inserted to restrict political pressures in the selection of judges. The elections are staggered and take place once every three years, with respect to five judges each time. In this way some element of continuity amongst the Court is maintained.

In practice, there is close co-ordination between the Assembly and Security Council in electing judges and political factors do obtrude, especially in view of the requirement contained in article 9 of the Statute that the

electors should bear in mind not only that the persons to be elected should individually possess the qualifications required, but also that in the body as a whole the representation of the main forms of civilisation and of the principal legal systems of the world should be assured.

This process has attracted much criticism on the grounds of attendant politicisation but in the circumstances it is difficult to see a way to avoid this completely.⁹ The opinions of individual judges can be crucial, particularly in sensitive cases, and the alteration in the stance adopted by the Court with regard to the *Namibia* case between 1966¹⁰ and 1971¹¹ can be attributed in large measure to changes in the composition of the Court that took place in the intervening period. Candidates must obtain an absolute majority of votes in both the Assembly and the Council,¹² and no two successful applicants may be of the same nationality.¹³

The members of the Court are elected for nine years and may be re-elected.¹⁴ They enjoy diplomatic privileges and immunities when on

⁷ See e.g. Murty, 'Settlement', p. 700. See also L. Lloyd, *Peace Through Law*, London, 1997.

⁸ Articles 4 and 5 of the ICJ Statute. In practice, governments exercise a major influence upon the nominations process of the national groups: see Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, pp. 147 ff.

⁹ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. I, pp. 382 ff., and Rosenne, 'The Composition of the Court' in Gross, *Future of the International Court of Justice*, vol. I, pp. 377, 381–6. See also G. Abi-Saab, 'The International Court as a World Court' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 3.

¹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1966, p. 6; 37 ILR, p. 243.

¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 2. ¹² Article 10, Statute of the ICJ.

¹³ Article 3, Statute of the ICJ. ¹⁴ Article 13, Statute of the ICJ.

official business,¹⁵ and a judge cannot be dismissed unless it is the unanimous opinion of the other members of the Court that he or she has ceased to fulfil the required conditions.¹⁶ These include the requirement that no member may exercise any political or administrative function or engage in any other professional occupation. No member may act as agent, advocate, or counsel in any case and no member may participate in the decision of any case in which he has previously taken part as agent, advocate or counsel for one of the parties, or as a member of a national or international court, or of a commission of inquiry, or in any other capacity.¹⁷ The Court elects a president and vice-president for a three-year term which can be renewed,¹⁸ and it is situated at The Hague.¹⁹

Since the aim of the election procedures relating to the composition of the Court is to produce a judicial body of independent members rather than state representatives, the Statute provides in article 31 that judges of the nationality of each of the parties in a case before the Court shall retain their right to sit in that case. However, the effect of this is somewhat reduced by the provision in that article that the parties to a dispute before the ICJ are entitled to choose a person to sit as judge for the duration of that case, where they do not have a judge of their nationality there

¹⁵ Article 19, Statute of the ICJ. ¹⁶ Article 18, Statute of the ICJ.

¹⁷ Articles 16 and 17, Statute of the ICJ. Note the problem raised particularly in the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 3, 6 and 9, of judges who had previously been involved in the dispute albeit in another capacity. The Court did not accept the need to remove the judges in question. Practice, however, has been variable and, for example, Judges Fleischhauer (former UN Legal Counsel) and Higgins (former member of the Human Rights Committee) felt unable to take part in the *Application of the Genocide Convention* case: see CR 96/5, 29 April 1996, p. 6. In the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 142; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 58–9, and the Court's Order of 30 January 2004, objections made to the participation of Judge Elaraby for playing a 'leading role in recent years in the very Emergency Special Session from which the advisory opinion request has now emerged' and other diplomatic and political involvement in the Middle East question prior to election to the Court were dismissed by the Court, citing the *Namibia* opinion. See also Rosenne, 'Composition', pp. 388–90, and *Law and Practice*, vol. I, pp. 400 ff. and vol. III, pp. 1056 ff.; P. Cœur, 'Article 17' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 337; H. Thirlway, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice 1960–1989', 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 38, and M. N. Shaw, 'The International Court of Justice: A Practical Perspective', 46 ICLQ, 1997, pp. 831, 845–6.

¹⁸ Article 21, Statute of the ICJ.

¹⁹ Article 22, Statute of the ICJ. Note that article 31(5) of the Statute provides that where there are several parties 'in the same interest' they shall be treated *inter alia* for the purposes of appointing ad hoc judges as one party only: see Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, p. 1093, and *Serbia and Montenegro v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 279, 287.

already.²⁰ This procedure of appointing ad hoc judges may be criticised as possibly adversely affecting the character of the Court as an independent organ of legal experts.²¹ The reason for the establishment and maintenance of the provision may be found within the realm of international politics and the need for political legitimacy and can only be understood as such.²² Nevertheless, it may be argued that the procedure increases the judicial resources available to the Court in enabling the appointing state's arguments to be fully appreciated.²³ Judge ad hoc Lauterpacht in the *Application of the Genocide (Provisional Measures)* case in a discussion of the nature of the ad hoc judge, declared that together with the duty of impartiality, the ad hoc judge has the special obligation to ensure that so far as is reasonable, every relevant argument in favour of the party appointing him has been fully appreciated in the course of collegial reflection.²⁴ In practice the institution has not resulted in any disruption of the functioning of the ICJ.²⁵ While it is overwhelmingly the case that ad hoc judges

²⁰ It is possible for states in this position not to appoint ad hoc judges: see e.g. the *Temple of Preah Vihear* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 6; 33 ILR, p. 48. Note that in *Djibouti v. France*, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 6, an ad hoc judge was appointed for France as the French judge on the Court recused himself.

²¹ See e.g. H. Lauterpacht, *The Function of Law in the International Community*, Oxford, 1933, pp. 215 ff. This provision should be distinguished from article 27(2) of the European Convention on Human Rights, which similarly provides for the appointment of an ad hoc judge to the Court. In this case, the Court deals with the provisions of municipal law of the member states of the Council of Europe and measures their conformity with the Convention. It is thus necessary to retain some expertise as to the domestic system in the case in question. Note that it is possible for an ad hoc judge to be of the same nationality as that of one of the permanent judges: see e.g. *Liechtenstein v. Germany*, ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 6, and Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, p. 1092, note 68.

²² See e.g. S. Schwebel, 'National Judges and Judges Ad Hoc of the International Court of Justice', 48 ICLQ, 1998, p. 889; N. Valticos, 'L'Évolution de la Notion de Judge Ad Hoc', 50 *Revue Hellénique de Droit International*, 1997, pp. 11–12; H. Thierry, 'Au Sujet du Juge Ad Hoc', in *Liber Amicorum Judge Ruda* (eds. C. A. Armas Barea et al.), The Hague, 2000, p. 285; P. Kooijmans, 'Article 31' in Zimmermann et al., *Statute of the International Court*, p. 495; Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, pp. 1085 ff., and L. V. Prott, *The Latent Power of Culture and the International Judge*, Abingdon, 1979.

²³ See Franck, 'Fairness', p. 312. See also N. Singh, *The Role and Record of the International Court of Justice*, Dordrecht, 1989, pp. 193–4.

²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 408–9; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 126–7, and see also at the Counter-Claims Order phase of the case, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 243, 278; 115 ILR, p. 206. Judge Lauterpacht's views were cited with approval by Judge ad hoc Franck in his Dissenting Opinion in *Indonesia/Malaysia*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 625, 693.

²⁵ Note that Practice Direction VII of the Court now requires that 'parties, when choosing a judge ad hoc pursuant to Article 31 of the Statute and Article 35 of the Rules of Court, should refrain from nominating persons who are acting as agent, counsel or advocate in another case before the Court or have acted in that capacity in the three years preceding

support the state that has so nominated them, this is not invariably so.²⁶ The Court has also permitted the use of ad hoc judges in advisory proceedings, although only where it has found that an opinion is requested 'upon a legal question' actually pending between two or more states.²⁷

Article 29 of the Statute of the ICJ provides for the establishment of a Chamber of Summary Procedure for the speedy dispatch of business by five judges. It has not as yet been called upon. More controversially, a seven-member Chamber for Environmental Matters was established in July 1993.²⁸ Article 26 permits the creation of Chambers composed of three or more members as the Court may determine for dealing with particular categories of cases²⁹ or to deal with a particular case. This procedure was revised in the 1978 Rules of Court³⁰ and used for the first time in the *Gulf of Maine* case.³¹ The question of the composition of the Chamber is decided by the Court after the parties have been consulted, and in such cases the identity of the judges to comprise the Chamber is clearly of critical value. In the *Gulf of Maine* case it was alleged that Canada and the US threatened to withdraw the case if their wishes as to composition were not carried out.³² Judge Oda has underlined that 'in practical terms, therefore, it is inevitable, if a chamber is to be viable, that its composition must result from a consensus between the parties and the Court', although the

the date of the nomination. Furthermore, parties should likewise refrain from designating as agent, counsel or advocate in a case before the Court a person who sits as judge *ad hoc* in another case before the Court.' Practice Direction VIII provides in addition that 'parties should refrain from designating as agent, counsel or advocate in a case before the Court a person who in the three years preceding the date of the designation was a Member of the Court, judge *ad hoc*, Registrar, Deputy-Registrar or higher official of the Court'.

²⁶ See e.g. the *Application for Revision and Interpretation of the Judgment* made in the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 192; 81 ILR, p. 419, and the *Great Belt (Finland v. Denmark)* case, ICJ Reports, 1991, p. 12; 94 ILR, p. 446.

²⁷ See article 102(3) of the Rules of Court 1978. See the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 30. Cf. the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 16; 49 ILR, p. 2. See also L. Gross, 'The International Court of Justice: Consideration of Requirements for Enhancing its Roles in the International Legal Order' in Gross, *Future of the International Court of Justice*, vol. I, p. 61.

²⁸ See International Court of Justice, *Yearbook 1993–1994*, The Hague, 1994, p. 18. It has not yet been called upon, no doubt partly because whether or not an issue is an environmental one may indeed be very much in dispute between the parties: see R. Higgins, 'Respecting Sovereign States and Running a Tight Ship', 50 ICLQ, 2001, pp. 121, 122.

²⁹ Labour cases and cases relating to transit and communications are specifically mentioned.

³⁰ See articles 15–18 and 90–3 of the Rules of Court.

³¹ ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 3 and *ibid.*, 1984, p. 246; 71 ILR, p. 58. The Chamber consisted of Judge Ago (President) and Judges Gros, Mosler and Schwebel and Judge ad hoc Cohen.

³² See e.g. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, p. 150, and Brauer, 'International Conflict Resolution: The ICJ Chambers and the Gulf of Maine Dispute', 23 Va. JIL, 1982–3, p. 463. See also Singh, *Role and Record*, p. 110.

Chamber is a component of the Court and 'the process of election whereby it comes into being should be as judicially impartial as its subsequent functioning'.³³

Recourse to a Chamber provides the parties with flexibility in the choice of judges to hear the case and to that extent parallels arbitration.³⁴ Of the first two matters before Chambers of the Court, perhaps the more interesting from the perspective of the future development of the ICJ was the *Burkina Faso–Mali* case,³⁵ since African states had hitherto been most reluctant in permitting third-party binding settlement of their disputes. Chambers of the Court have also been utilised in the *Elettronica Sricula* case,³⁶ the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute* between El Salvador and Honduras (Nicaragua intervening),³⁷ the *Application for Revision of the Judgment in El Salvador/Honduras (Nicaragua intervening)*³⁸ and *Benin/Niger*.³⁹

The Rules of the Court, which govern its procedure and operations, were adopted in 1946 and revised in 1972 and 1978.⁴⁰ Articles 79 and 80 of the 1978 Rules were amended in 2000 and 2005.⁴¹ The internal judicial practice of the Court has been the source of discussion in recent years⁴² and some changes have taken place.⁴³ The Court, for example,

³³ ICJ Reports, 1987, pp. 10, 13; 97 ILR, pp. 139, 142.

³⁴ Although concern was expressed about the unity of the jurisprudence of the Court by frequent use of ad hoc Chambers: see H. Mosler, 'The Ad Hoc Chambers of the International Court of Justice' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 449. See also S. Schwebel, 'Chambers of the International Court of Justice formed for Particular Cases', *ibid.*, p. 739; E. Valencia-Ospina, 'The Use of Chambers of the International Court of Justice' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 503; Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, pp. 1068 ff.; P. Palchetti, 'Article 26' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 439, and Franck, 'Fairness', pp. 314 ff. As to the precedential value of decisions of Chambers, see Shahabuddeen, *Precedent*, pp. 171 ff. See also Thirlway, 'Law and Procedure', 2001, pp. 38, 46.

³⁵ See 22 ILM, 1983, p. 1252 and Communiqué of the ICJ No. 85/8, 1 May 1985. The Chamber consisted of Judge Bedjaoui (President) and Judges Lachs and Ruda, with Judges ad hoc Luchaire and Abi-Saab: see ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 554; 80 ILR, p. 441.

³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 15; 84 ILR, p. 311.

³⁷ See ICJ Reports, 1987, p. 10; 97 ILR, pp. 112 and 139 and ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 351.

³⁸ ICJ Reports, 2003, p. 392; 129 ILR, p. 1 ³⁹ ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 90.

⁴⁰ See Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, p. 1074. ⁴¹ See below, pp. 1074 and 1096.

⁴² See e.g. D. Bowett *et al.*, *The International Court of Justice: Process, Practice and Procedures*, London, 1997. See also e.g. Jennings, 'Role', pp. 8 ff.; M. Bedjaoui, 'La "Fabrication" des Arrêts de la Cour Internationale de Justice' in *Mélanges Virally*, Paris, 1991, p. 87, and S. Oda, 'The International Court of Justice Viewed from the Bench', 244 HR, 1993 VII, p. 13. See also Shaw, 'International Court', pp. 862 ff.

⁴³ See the 1976 Resolution on Practice, International Court of Justice, *Acts and Documents Concerning the Organisation of the Court*, The Hague, 1989, p. 165. See also Higgins, 'Respecting Sovereign States'.

now adopts Practice Directions.⁴⁴ The Court has the power to regulate its own procedure.⁴⁵ Written pleadings are governed by articles 44 to 53 of the Rules of Court, which in fact allow the parties considerable latitude. While it is for the Court itself to determine the number, order and timing of filings of pleadings, this is done in consultation with the parties and the Court is ready to allow parties to extend time limits or determine whether, for example, there should be further rounds of pleadings.⁴⁶

The jurisdiction of the Court⁴⁷

General

The International Court is a judicial institution that decides cases on the basis of international law as it exists at the date of the decision. It cannot formally create law as it is not a legislative organ.⁴⁸ The Court has emphasised that, 'it states the existing law and does not legislate. This is so even if, in stating and applying the law, the Court necessarily

⁴⁴ There are currently twelve, the majority seeking essentially to ensure that the parties keep strictly to the Rules concerning pleadings and to restrict the tendency to produce large numbers of annexes. Practice Direction XII provides that written statements and documents submitted by international non-governmental organisations in advisory proceedings shall not be considered as part of the case file, but rather as publications in the public domain and available for consultation.

⁴⁵ See e.g. Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Nuclear Tests Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 320; 106 ILR, pp. 1, 42, where he noted that this power enabled it to devise a procedure *sui generis*.

⁴⁶ The memorial is to contain a statement of relevant facts, a statement of law and the submissions. The counter-memorial is to contain an admission or denial of the facts stated in the memorial, any additional facts if necessary, observations upon the statement of law in the memorial and a statement of law in answer thereto and the submissions: see articles 49(1) and (2) of the Rules. The reply and rejoinder, if authorised by the Court, are to be directed at bringing out the issues still dividing the parties, article 49(3).

⁴⁷ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, and C. Tomuschat, 'Article 36' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 589. See also M. N. Shaw, 'The Security Council and the International Court of Justice: Judicial Drift and Judicial Function' in Muller *et al.*, *International Court of Justice: Future Role*, p. 219; W. M. Reisman, 'The Supervisory Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice: International Arbitration and International Adjudication', 258 HR, 1996, p. 9, and S. A. Alexander, 'Accepting the Compulsory Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice with Reservations', 14 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 2001, p. 89. See also the series of articles by Thirlway on 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice' in the *British Year Book of International Law* from 1989 to date.

⁴⁸ See the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 3, 19; 55 ILR, pp. 238, 254.

has to specify its scope and sometimes note its general trend.⁴⁹ Its views as to what the law is are of the highest authority. However, the matters that come before it are invariably intertwined with political factors. On occasions, such matters are also the subject of consideration before the political organs of the UN or other international organisations or indeed the subject of bilateral negotiations between the parties. This raises issues as to the proper function and role of the Court. The International Court of Justice is by virtue of article 92 of the Charter the 'principal judicial organ of the United Nations'. It is also, as Judge Lachs put it, 'the guardian of legality for the international community as a whole, both within and without the United Nations'.⁵⁰ It has been emphasised that the 'function of the Court is to state the law'⁵¹ and it can only decide on the basis of law.⁵² The issue of judicial function was examined in an important joint declaration by seven judges in *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*,⁵³ one of the cases brought by what was originally the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia against NATO countries arising out of the Kosovo conflict in 1999. It was noted that when choosing between various grounds upon which to accept or reject jurisdiction, there were three criteria to guide the Court. These were, first, consistency with previous case-law in order to provide predictability as 'consistency is the essence of judicial reasoning'; secondly, certitude, whereby the Court should choose the ground most secure in law, and, thirdly, as the principal judicial organ of the United Nations, the Court should be 'mindful of the possible implications and consequences for the other pending cases'.⁵⁴

Nevertheless, political factors cannot but be entwined with questions of law. The Court has noted that while political aspects may be present in any legal dispute brought before it, the Court was only concerned to establish that the dispute in question was a legal dispute 'in the sense of a dispute capable of being settled by the application of principles and rules of international law'.⁵⁵ The fact that other elements are present cannot detract

⁴⁹ *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 237.

⁵⁰ The *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 26; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 509.

⁵¹ The *Northern Cameroons* case, ICJ Reports, 1963, pp. 15, 33; 35 ILR, pp. 353, 369.

⁵² See the *Haya de la Torre* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 71, 79; 18 ILR, p. 349. See also Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 56; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 539.

⁵³ ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 1307. ⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 1353–4.

⁵⁵ The *Armed Actions (Nicaragua v. Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 16, 91; 84 ILR, pp. 218, 246. See also the *Certain Expenses of the United Nations* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 155; 34 ILR, pp. 281, 285, and the *Tadić* case before the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, IT-94-1-AR72, p. 11. See also

from the characterisation of a dispute as a legal dispute.⁵⁶ The Court has also referred to the assessment of the legality of the possible conduct of states with regard to international legal obligations as an 'essentially judicial task'.⁵⁷ Accordingly, 'the task of the Court must be to respond, on the basis of international law, to the particular legal dispute brought before it. As it interprets and applies the law, it will be mindful of context, but its task cannot go beyond that.'⁵⁸

The fact that the same general political situation may come before different organs of the UN has raised the problem of concurrent jurisdiction. The Court, however, has been consistently clear that the fact that the issue before the Court is also the subject of active negotiations between the parties,⁵⁹ or the subject of good offices activity by the UN Secretary-General⁶⁰ or the subject of consideration by the Security Council⁶¹ or regional organisations,⁶² will not detract from the competence of the Court or the exercise of its judicial function. The Court has noted that the Security Council has functions of a political nature, while the Court itself has functions of a legal nature, and that therefore both organs could perform their separate but complementary functions with respect to the same events.⁶³ The Court may also indicate provisional measures of protection at the same time as the UN Secretary-General is organising a fact-finding mission to investigate the same events.⁶⁴ The Court's

R. Higgins, 'Policy Considerations and the International Judicial Process', 17 ICLQ, 1968, pp. 58, 74.

⁵⁶ ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 92; 84 ILR, p. 247. See also the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 7, 19–20; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 545–6 and *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 234; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 184. See, for the view that rather than concentrate upon definitions of legal and political questions, one should focus upon the distinctions between political and legal methods of dispute settlement, R. Y. Jennings, 'Gerald Gray Fitzmaurice', 55 BYIL, 1984, pp. 1, 18, and R. Higgins, 'Policy Considerations', p. 74.

⁵⁷ See the Advisory Opinion on the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 73; 110 ILR pp. 1, 13. See also e.g. the *Certain Expenses* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 155; 34 ILR, pp. 281, 284–5.

⁵⁸ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 190. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Simma, *ibid.*, p. 335.

⁵⁹ See the *Aegean Sea Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1976, pp. 3, 12; 60 ILR, pp. 562, 571.

⁶⁰ See the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 7, 21–2; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 547–8.

⁶¹ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 431–4; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 142–5.

⁶² ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 440 and *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 307.

⁶³ ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 435; 76 ILR, p. 146.

⁶⁴ *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Provisional Measures)*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 22.

essential function is to resolve in accordance with international law disputes placed before it⁶⁵ and to refrain from deciding points not included in the final submissions of the parties.⁶⁶ The provision as to international law relates to the sources of law available for application by the Court and is considered subsequently.⁶⁷ The obligation to decide was referred to by the Court in the *Libya/Malta (Application for Permission to Intervene)* case,⁶⁸ where it was noted that it was the duty of the Court 'to give the fullest decision it may in the circumstances of each case'.⁶⁹ However, this obligation is subject, for example, to jurisdictional limitations (for example, with regard to the rights of third states)⁷⁰ and questions related to judicial propriety.⁷¹

The nature of a legal dispute

Article 36(2) of the Statute of the Court requires that a matter brought before it should be a legal dispute.⁷² Although it is not possible to point to a specific definition, the approach adopted by the Permanent Court in the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions (Jurisdiction)* case⁷³ constitutes

⁶⁵ See e.g. *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 190. See also Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 56; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 539.

⁶⁶ This rule (known as the *non ultra petita* rule) has been termed by Judge Buergenthal in his Separate Opinion in the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 271; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 426, 'a cardinal rule which does not allow the Court to deal with a subject in the *dispositif* [operative paragraphs] of its judgment that the parties to the case have not, in their final submissions, asked it to adjudicate'. See the *Request for the Interpretation of the Judgment in the Asylum Case*, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 395, 402; the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 40, 96–7 and the *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Belgium* case, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 18–19; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 73–5. See also Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, p. 576.

⁶⁷ See below, p. 1086. ⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 3, 25; 70 ILR, pp. 527, 554.

⁶⁹ See also Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 158; 105 ILR, pp. 226, 299. See also generally M. Bedjaoui, 'Expediency in the Decisions of the International Court of Justice', 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 1.

⁷⁰ See e.g. the *Monetary Gold* case, ICJ Reports, 1954, p. 32; 21 ILR, p. 399, and the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 105; 105 ILR, pp. 226, 246.

⁷¹ See further below, p. 1086.

⁷² The Court noted in the *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 270–1; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 415–16, that 'the existence of a dispute is the primary condition for the Court to exercise its judicial function'. It is also a question which is 'essentially preliminary', ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 260; 57 ILR, p. 405.

⁷³ PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, 1924, p. 11. See also the *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 319, 328; 37 ILR, pp. 3, 10; the *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 398; *Liechtenstein v. Germany*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 6, 18 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 40.

the appropriate starting point. The Court declared that a dispute could be regarded as 'a disagreement over a point of law or fact, a conflict of legal views or of interests between two persons'. It is to be distinguished from a situation which might lead to international friction or give rise to a dispute. This is a subtle but important difference since, for the process of settlement to operate successfully, there has to be a specific issue or issues readily identifiable to be resolved.

In the *Interpretation of Peace Treaties* case⁷⁴ the Court noted that 'whether there exists an international dispute is a matter for objective determination' and pointed out that in the instant case 'the two sides hold clearly opposite views concerning the question of the performance or the non-performance of certain treaty obligations' so that 'international disputes have arisen'. A mere assertion is not sufficient; it must be shown that the claim of one party is positively opposed by the other.⁷⁵ This approach was reaffirmed in the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate under Section 21 of the United Nations Headquarters Agreement* case,⁷⁶ where the Court in an advisory opinion noted that the consistent challenge by the UN Secretary-General to the decisions contemplated and then taken by the US Congress and Administration with regard to the closing of the PLO offices in the US (which of necessity included the PLO Mission to the United Nations in New York) demonstrated the existence of a dispute between the US and the UN relating to the Headquarters Agreement. In the *East Timor* case⁷⁷ the Court again reaffirmed its earlier case-law and went on to note that 'Portugal has rightly or wrongly, formulated complaints of fact and law against Australia, which the latter has denied. By virtue of this denial, there is a legal dispute.' This acceptance of a relatively low threshold was underlined in the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia*

⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 65, 74; 17 ILR, pp. 331, 336.

⁷⁵ *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 319, 328; 37 ILR, pp. 3, 10 and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 429–41; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 140. See also *Larsen v. Hawaiian Kingdom* 119 ILR, pp. 566, 587. Note also that Kelsen wrote that 'a dispute is a legal dispute if it is to be settled by the application of legal norms, that is to say, by the application of existing law', *Principles of International Law* (ed. R. W. Tucker), 2nd edn, New York, 1966, p. 526. See also Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 517 ff. Higgins has made the point that generally the Court has taken a robust attitude as to what is a 'legal' matter, *Problems and Process*, p. 195. See also V. Gowlland-Debbas, 'The Relationship between the International Court of Justice and the Security Council in the Light of the *Lockerbie* Case', 88 AJIL, 1994, p. 643.

⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 12, 30; 82 ILR, pp. 225, 248.

⁷⁷ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 99–100.

and *Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia*) case,⁷⁸ where the Court stated that ‘by reason of the rejection by Yugoslavia of the complaints formulated against it by Bosnia-Herzegovina, “there is a legal dispute” between them.’ Such denial of the allegations made against Yugoslavia had occurred ‘whether at the stage of proceedings relating to the requests for the indication of provisional measures, or at the stage of the present proceedings relating to those objections.’⁷⁹ In other words, in order for a matter to constitute a legal dispute, it is sufficient for the respondent to an application before the Court merely to deny the allegations made even if the jurisdiction of the Court is challenged.⁸⁰

While it is for the parties to put forward their views, and particularly for the applicant, in its application, to present to the Court the dispute with which it wishes to seize the Court,⁸¹ it is for the Court itself to determine the subject-matter of the dispute before it.⁸² This will be done by taking into account not only the submission but the application as a whole, the arguments of the applicant before the Court and other documents referred to, including the public statements of the applicant.⁸³ Should the Court conclude that the dispute in question has disappeared by the time the Court makes its decision, because, for example, the object of the claim has been achieved by other means, then the ‘necessary consequences’ will be drawn and no decision may be given.⁸⁴ In all events, the determination on an objective basis of the existence of a dispute is for the Court itself.⁸⁵

⁷⁸ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 615. See also *Liechtenstein v. Germany*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 6, 19.

⁷⁹ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 614.

⁸⁰ See also *El Salvador/Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 555; 97 ILR, p. 112.

⁸¹ Note that article 40(1) of the Statute requires that the application indicate the subject of the dispute and that article 38(2) of the Rules requires that the ‘precise nature of the claim’ be specified in the application.

⁸² See e.g. *Spain v. Canada*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 449; 123 ILR, pp. 189, 209–10 and *Nicaragua v. Colombia*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 38.

⁸³ The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 263; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 408. Note that new claims formulated during the course of proceedings will be declared inadmissible where such claims would, if admitted, transform the subject of the dispute originally brought before the Court in the application: see e.g. *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 108.

⁸⁴ The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 271; 57 ILR, p. 416. See also the *Northern Cameroons* case, ICJ Reports, 1963, pp. 15, 38; 35 ILR, p. 353 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 14–15; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 69–71.

⁸⁵ *Spain v. Canada*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 448; 123 ILR, pp. 189, 208–9.

It is also clear that the exhaustion of diplomatic negotiations is not a prerequisite to going to the Court.⁸⁶

*Contentious jurisdiction*⁸⁷

The jurisdiction of the International Court falls into two distinct parts: its capacity to decide disputes between states, and its capacity to give advisory opinions when requested so to do by particular qualified entities. The latter will be noted in the following section.

The Court has underlined that the question as to the establishment of jurisdiction is a matter for the Court itself. Although a party seeking to assert a fact must prove it, the issue of jurisdiction is a question of law to be resolved by the Court in the light of the relevant facts.⁸⁸ Further, jurisdiction must be determined at the time that the act instituting proceedings was filed, so that if the Court had jurisdiction at that date, it will continue to have jurisdiction irrespective of subsequent events.⁸⁹ Subsequent events may lead to a finding that an application has become moot, but cannot deprive the Court of jurisdiction.⁹⁰ It should also be noted that in dealing with issues of jurisdiction, the Court will not attach as much importance to matters of form as would be the case in domestic law.⁹¹ The Court possesses an inherent jurisdiction to take such action as may be required in order to ensure that the exercise of its jurisdiction over

⁸⁶ *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 303. The question of non-exhaustion of domestic remedies is an admissibility issue: see below, p. 1071.

⁸⁷ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, and R. Szafarz, *The Compulsory Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice*, Dordrecht, 1993.

⁸⁸ See the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 450; 123 ILR, pp. 189, 210–11. See also the *Armed Actions (Nicaragua v. Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 76; 84 ILR, p. 231 and *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1322.

⁸⁹ See e.g. *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 29. However, the Court has held that it would not penalise a defect in procedure which the applicant could easily remedy, *ibid*.

⁹⁰ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 12–13; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 67–8.

⁹¹ See the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 613; 115 ILR, pp. 10, 26. See also the *Mavrommatis Palestine Concessions* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 2, p. 34; 2 AD, p. 27, and the *Northern Cameroons* case, ICJ Reports, 1963, pp. 15, 28; 35 ILR, pp. 353, 363. The Court in *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Provisional Measures)*, ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 105; 106 ILR, p. 144, in fixing relevant time limits for the parties, noted that Cameroon had submitted an additional application after its original application, by which it sought to extend the object of the dispute. It was intended as an amendment to the first application. There is no provision in the Statute and Rules of the

the merits, once established, is not frustrated, and to ensure the orderly settlement of all matters in dispute, to ensure the 'inherent limitations on the exercise of the judicial function' of the Court and to 'maintain its judicial character'.⁹² The Court has also held that where jurisdiction exists over a dispute on a particular matter, no separate basis for jurisdiction is required in order to consider the question of remedies.⁹³

It has been emphasised that the function of a decision on jurisdiction is solely to determine whether the case on the merits may proceed 'and not to engage in a clarification of a controverted issue of a general nature', while a case will not be declined simply on the basis of the alleged motives of one of the parties or because the judgment may have implications in another case.⁹⁴ The Court has freedom to select the ground upon which it will base its judgment and when its jurisdiction is challenged on diverse grounds, it is free to base its decision on one or more grounds of its own choosing, in particular 'the ground which in its judgment is more direct and conclusive'.⁹⁵ Once the Court has reached a decision on jurisdiction, that decision assumes the character of *res judicata*,⁹⁶ that is it becomes final and binding upon the parties. Subject only to the possibility of revision under article 61 of the Statute,⁹⁷ the findings of a judgment are, for the purposes of the case and between the parties, to be taken as correct, and may not be reopened on the basis of claims that doubt has been thrown on them by subsequent events.⁹⁸

As well as the question of the jurisdiction of the Court, which essentially concerns issues as to the consent of the parties, it is necessary that the application be admissible.⁹⁹ Admissibility refers to the application of relevant general rules of international law, such as exhaustion of local remedies in cases concerning diplomatic protection.¹⁰⁰ Objections to

Court for amendment of applications as such, although in this case Nigeria consented to the request and the Court accepted it.

⁹² The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 259; 57 ILR, pp. 398, 404, citing the *Northern Cameroons* case, ICJ Reports, 1963, pp. 15, 29; 35 ILR, pp. 353, 365. See also below, p. 1074.

⁹³ The *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 485; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 24.

⁹⁴ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1323. ⁹⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 1325.

⁹⁶ See the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 117 ff. See further as to *res judicata*, above, chapter 3, p. 101.

⁹⁷ See below, p. 1105.

⁹⁸ The *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 120.

⁹⁹ See e.g. *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1322.

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 276 and the *Diallo (Guinea v. Democratic Republic of the Congo)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras.

admissibility normally take the form of an assertion that, even if the Court has jurisdiction and the facts stated by the applicant state are assumed to be correct, nonetheless there are reasons why the Court should not proceed to an examination of the merits.¹⁰¹ Together they form the necessary prerequisite to the Court proceeding to address the merits of a case. Also of relevance in the pre-merits consideration of an application to the Court is the question of standing or jurisdiction *ratione personae*, a matter which logically arises before a consideration of jurisdiction and admissibility. It refers to the question of the receivability of the request, sometimes termed the process of seisin, which constitutes 'a procedural step independent of the basis of jurisdiction invoked', although the question as to whether the Court has been validly seized is a question of jurisdiction.¹⁰²

Article 34 of the Statute of the Court declares that only states may be parties in cases before the Court. This is of far-reaching importance since it prohibits recourse to the Court by private persons and international organisations, save in so far as some of the latter may be able to obtain advisory opinions. The Court is open to all states that are parties to the Statute. Article 93 of the UN Charter provides that all UN members are *ipso facto* parties to the Statute of the ICJ, and that non-members of the UN may become a party to the Statute on conditions determined by the General Assembly upon the recommendation of the Security Council. In the case of Switzerland, for example, the Assembly and Security Council declared that it could become a party to the Statute of the ICJ provided it accepted the provisions of that Statute, accepted all the obligations of a UN member under Article 94 of the Charter (i.e. undertaking to comply with the decision of the Court), and agreed to pay a certain amount towards the expenses of the Court.¹⁰³ The Security Council has in fact resolved that access to the ICJ for a state not party to the Statute is possible provided that such state has previously deposited with the registrar of the Court a declaration (either general or particular) accepting the jurisdiction of the Court and undertaking to comply in good faith with the decision or decisions of

33 ff. See also Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 817 ff.; Tomuschat, 'Article 36', p. 646 and article 79 of the Rules of Court.

¹⁰¹ See the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 177; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 337.

¹⁰² *Qatar/Bahrain*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 6, 23–4; 102 ILR, pp. 1, 64–5.

¹⁰³ General Assembly resolution 91 (I). Switzerland became a member of the UN in September 2002. See also Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, p. 598. Japan, Liechtenstein, Nauru and San Marino were also in the same position until 1956, 1990, 1999 and 1992 respectively.

the Court.¹⁰⁴ West Germany filed a general declaration with the ICJ on this basis before it joined the UN,¹⁰⁵ while Albania¹⁰⁶ and Italy¹⁰⁷ filed particular declarations with respect to cases with which they were involved.

Article 35(2) of the Statute further provides that the conditions under which the Court shall be open to states other than those parties to the Statute shall be laid down by the Security Council¹⁰⁸ 'subject to the special provisions contained in treaties in force'. The Court has rather restrictively interpreted this condition to refer to treaties in force as at the date of the entry into force of the Statute and providing for the jurisdiction of what was then the new Court.¹⁰⁹ Although only states may be parties before the Court, the Court may request information relevant to cases before it from public international organisations and may receive information presented by these organisations on their own initiative.¹¹⁰

The question as to whether a party has the right to appear before the Court under the Statute is not dependent upon consent and is an issue which the Court itself must enquire into and determine prior to considering any objections to jurisdiction and admissibility.¹¹¹ Article 35(1) of the Statute provides that the Court shall be open to the states parties to the Statute, or as the Court itself has stated, 'The Court can exercise its judicial function only in respect of those states which have access to it under article 35.' Only states which have access to the Court, therefore, are in a position to confer jurisdiction upon it.¹¹² In *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*,¹¹³ the Court concluded that Serbia and Montenegro

¹⁰⁴ Security Council resolution 9 (1946).

¹⁰⁵ The *North Sea Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, Pleadings, vol. I, pp. 6, 8.

¹⁰⁶ The *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155.

¹⁰⁷ The *Monetary Gold* case, ICJ Reports, 1954, p. 19; 21 ILR, p. 399.

¹⁰⁸ Such conditions were laid down in Security Council resolution 9 (1946).

¹⁰⁹ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1350. The Court accepted that no such prior treaties referring to the jurisdiction of the Court had been brought to its attention, *ibid*.

¹¹⁰ Article 34(2), Statute of the ICJ. See also Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 620 ff. Individuals, groups and corporations have no right of access to the Court: see here also H. Lauterpacht, *International Law and Human Rights*, London, 1950, p. 48. Note that Judge Higgins has written that, 'There is some flexibility I think for possible *amicus* briefs by NGOs in advisory opinion cases, and I think that a useful possibility for the Court to explore', 'Respecting Sovereign States', p. 123. See now Practice Direction XII with regard to the provision of written information by international non-governmental organisations in advisory proceedings.

¹¹¹ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1322 and 1326.

¹¹² *Ibid.*, p. 1326.

¹¹³ ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 1307. This was one of a series of cases brought by the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (the precursor to Serbia and Montenegro) against NATO countries in 1999, so that the point in question applied to other respondent states.

could not be regarded as a party to the Statute at the time of the application.¹¹⁴

The Court has certain inherent powers flowing from its role as a judicial organ.¹¹⁵ These would include in certain circumstances the right of its own motion to put an end to proceedings in a case.¹¹⁶ However, this would appear to be restricted to two circumstances: first, in cases before the adoption of article 38(5) of the Rules, where an application is made without a basis of jurisdiction in the hope that the other state would accept it,¹¹⁷ and, secondly, where the Court accedes to the request of respondent states to remove cases from the list on the grounds of being manifestly lacking in jurisdiction.¹¹⁸ This approach by the Court in the *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK* case was criticised by Judge Kooijmans¹¹⁹ and by Judge Higgins, who noted that there was nothing in the case-law to suggest that the exercise of the Court's inherent powers in the absence of discontinuance was limited to the two circumstances referred to by the Court.¹²⁰ Judge Higgins emphasised that, 'The Court's inherent jurisdiction derives from its judicial character and the need for powers to regulate matters connected with the administration of justice, not every aspect of which may have been foreseen in the Rules.' The 'very occasional need' to exercise such inherent powers might arise at any stage, from summary dismissal of a case to jurisdictional questions to merits issues.¹²¹

Under article 79(9) of the Rules, there are three ways in which the Court may dispose of a preliminary objection to jurisdiction. It may uphold the challenge, reject the challenge or declare that the objection does not possess, in the circumstances of the case, an exclusively preliminary character, in which case the matter will be dealt with together with a

¹¹⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 1336–7. As to the relevant details of the case, see above, chapter 17, p. 963.

¹¹⁵ See e.g. C. Brown, 'The Inherent Powers of International Courts and Tribunals', 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 195.

¹¹⁶ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1321. The Rules do not provide for such a procedure.

¹¹⁷ See below, p. 1076, note 131.

¹¹⁸ See e.g. *Yugoslavia v. Spain*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 761, 773–4 and *Yugoslavia v. USA*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 916, 925–6.

¹¹⁹ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1370 ff. ¹²⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 1361.

¹²¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 1361–2. The question, therefore, that Judge Higgins believed that the Court should have addressed was whether it was possible to say that in the case, 'the circumstances are such that it is reasonable, necessary and appropriate for the Court to strike the case off the List as an exercise of inherent power to protect the integrity of the judicial process', *ibid.*, p. 1362.

consideration of the merits.¹²² The Court has stated that in principle, a party raising preliminary objections to its jurisdiction is entitled to have those objections answered in the preliminary stage of the proceedings, unless the Court does not have before it all facts necessary to decide the question raised or if answering the preliminary objection would determine the dispute, or some elements thereof, on the merits.¹²³

Article 36(1)

The Court has jurisdiction under article 36(1) of its Statute in all cases referred to it by parties, and regarding all matters specially provided for in the UN Charter or in treaties or conventions in force.¹²⁴ As in the case of arbitration, parties may refer a particular dispute to the ICJ by means of a special agreement, or *compromis*, which will specify the terms of the dispute and the framework within which the Court is to operate.¹²⁵ This method was used in the *Minquiers and Ecrehos* case,¹²⁶ and in a number of others.¹²⁷

The jurisdiction of the Court is founded upon the consent of the parties,¹²⁸ which need not be in any particular form and in certain

¹²² See e.g. *Nicaragua v. Colombia*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 48. See also the preliminary objections judgment in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1998, p. 275.

¹²³ *Nicaragua v. Columbia*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 51. It is possible, however, for the determination by the Court of its jurisdiction to 'touch upon certain aspects of the merits of the case', *ibid.*

¹²⁴ See also article 40 of the ICJ Statute and article 39 of the Rules of Court.

¹²⁵ See e.g. L. C. Marion, 'La Saisine de la CIJ par Voie de Compromis', 99 RGDIP, 1995, p. 258.

¹²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 47; 20 ILR, p. 94.

¹²⁷ See e.g. the *Belgium/Netherlands Frontier Land* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 209; 27 ILR, p. 62, the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 18; 67 ILR, p. 4 and the *Libya/Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 6; 100 ILR, p. 1.

¹²⁸ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 32; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 366. The Court noted in the *Application for the Interpretation and Revision of the Judgment in the Tunisia/Libya Case*, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 192, 216; 81 ILR, pp. 419, 449, that it was 'a fundamental principle' that 'the consent of states parties to a dispute, is the basis of the Court's jurisdiction in contentious cases', citing here the *Interpretation of Peace Treaties* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 71; 17 ILR, pp. 331, 335. See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 421 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 18. The Court further noted that, 'its jurisdiction is based on the consent of the parties and is confined to the extent accepted by them' and that 'the conditions to which such consent is subject must be regarded as constituting the limits thereon . . . The examination of such conditions relates to its jurisdiction and not to the admissibility of the application', *ibid.*, p. 39. See also *Djibouti v. France*, ICL Reports, 2008, para. 48.

circumstances the Court will infer it from the conduct of the parties. In the *Corfu Channel (Preliminary Objections)* case,¹²⁹ the Court inferred consent from the unilateral application of the plaintiff state (the United Kingdom) coupled with subsequent letters from the other party involved (Albania) intimating acceptance of the Court's jurisdiction. The idea whereby the consent of a state to the Court's jurisdiction may be established by means of acts subsequent to the initiation of proceedings is referred to as the doctrine of *forum prorogatum*.¹³⁰ It will usually arise where one party files an application with the Court unilaterally inviting another state to accept jurisdiction with regard to the particular dispute where jurisdiction would not otherwise exist with regard to the matter at issue. If the other state accedes to this, then the Court will have jurisdiction.¹³¹

The doctrine has been carefully interpreted to avoid giving the impression of a creeping extension by the Court of its own jurisdiction by means of fictions. Consent has to be clearly present, if sometimes inferred, and not merely a technical creation.¹³² The Court has emphasised that such consent has to be 'voluntary and indisputable'.¹³³ In the

¹²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 15; 15 AD, p. 349.

¹³⁰ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 672 ff., and S. Yee, 'Forum Prorogatum in the International Court', 42 German YIL, 1999, p. 147.

¹³¹ See article 38(5) of the Rules. The Republic of the Congo filed an application against France on 9 December 2002 with regard to which the former gave its consent on 11 April 2003: see ICJ Press Release 2003/14 and the Court's Order of 17 June 2003, while France consented to jurisdiction with regard to an application dated 9 January 2006 brought by Djibouti: see the Court's judgment of 4 June 2008, noting that, 'For the Court to exercise jurisdiction on the basis of *forum prorogatum*, the element of consent must be either explicit or clearly to be deduced from the relevant conduct of a State' (para. 62) and that the extent of consent (and thus the jurisdiction of the Court) depended upon the matching of the application made with the expression by the other party of its consent, para. 65. It was emphasised that, 'Where jurisdiction is based on *forum prorogatum*, great care must be taken regarding the scope of the consent as circumscribed by the respondent State', para. 87. On 18 April 2007, Rwanda filed an application against France, but as of the date of writing, France has not given its consent to jurisdiction: see ICJ Press Release 2007/11.

¹³² See e.g. the *Monetary Gold* case, ICJ Reports, 1954, pp. 19, 31; 21 ILR, pp. 399, 406. But cf. the *Treatment in Hungary of Aircraft of the USA* case, ICJ Reports, 1964, pp. 99, 103; the *Aerial Incident (USA v. USSR)* case, ICJ Reports, 1956, pp. 6, 9, 12, 15 and the two *Antarctic* cases, ICJ Reports, 1958, p. 158 and *ibid.*, 1959, p. 276. Note that article 38(2) of the 1978 Rules of the Court stipulates that the application shall specify as far as possible the legal grounds upon which the jurisdiction of the Court is said to be based. See also *Djibouti v. France*, ICJ Reports, 2008, para. 163.

¹³³ *Corfu Channel (Preliminary Objection)*, ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 27. See also *Application of the Genocide Convention*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 621.

Corfu Channel case the UK sought to found the Court's jurisdiction *inter alia* on the recommendation of the Security Council that the dispute be referred to the Court, which it was agreed was a 'decision' binding upon member states of the UN in accordance with article 25 of the Charter.¹³⁴ Accordingly it was maintained by the UK that Albania was obliged to accept the Court's jurisdiction irrespective of its consent. The ICJ did not deal with this point, since it actually inferred consent, but in a joint separate opinion, seven judges of the Court rejected the argument, which was regarded as an attempt to introduce a new meaning of compulsory jurisdiction.¹³⁵ A particularly difficult case with regard to the question as to whether relevant events demonstrated an agreement between the parties to submit a case to the Court is that of *Qatar v. Bahrain*.¹³⁶ The issue centred upon minutes of a meeting signed by the Foreign Ministers of both states (the Doha Minutes) in December 1990. The status of such Minutes was controverted,¹³⁷ but the Court held that they constituted an agreement under international law.¹³⁸ There was also disagreement over the substance of the Minutes and thus the subject matter of the dispute to be placed before the Court. Bahrain defined the issue as including the question of 'sovereignty' over Zubarah, while Qatar merely accepted that that was how Bahrain characterised the issue.¹³⁹ The Court concluded that this was sufficient to lay the whole dispute, including this element, before it.¹⁴⁰ Questions do therefore remain with regard to the extent of the consensual principle after this decision.¹⁴¹

¹³⁴ Although not a member of the UN, Albania had agreed to assume the obligations of a member with regard to the dispute. This application was on the basis of that part of article 36(1) which specifies that the Court's jurisdiction also comprised 'all matters specifically provided for in the Charter' of the UN.

¹³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1948, pp. 15, 31–2; 15 AD, pp. 349, 354.

¹³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 112 and ICJ Reports, 1995, p. 6; 102 ILR, pp. 1 and 47. See M. Evans, 'Case Concerning Maritime Delimitation and Territorial Questions Between Qatar and Bahrain (*Qatar v. Bahrain*)', Jurisdiction and Admissibility', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 691.

¹³⁷ The argument revolving around whether any application to the Court had to be by both parties or whether unilateral application was provided for.

¹³⁸ ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 121; 102 ILR, p. 18.

¹³⁹ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 9–11; 102 ILR, pp. 50–2.

¹⁴⁰ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 17 and 25; 102 ILR, pp. 58 and 66. This was disputed by four of the five dissenting judges, who argued that the Zubarah sovereignty issue had not been properly laid before it, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 49, 55 ff., 72 and 74–5; 102 ILR, pp. 90, 96 ff., 113 and 115–16.

¹⁴¹ See also E. Lauterpacht, '“Partial” Judgements and the Inherent Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 465.

It is a well-established principle that the Court will only exercise jurisdiction over a state with its consent¹⁴² and it 'cannot therefore decide upon legal rights of third states not parties to the proceedings'.¹⁴³ As a consequence of this principle, the Court will not entertain actions between states that in reality implead a third state without its consent. This rule was underlined in the *Monetary Gold* case,¹⁴⁴ where it was noted that where the legal interests of the third party 'would form the very subject-matter of the decision', the Court could not entertain proceedings in the absence of that state. In the *Nicaragua* case, the Court noted that the circumstances of the *Monetary Gold* case 'probably represent the limit of the power of the Court to refuse to exercise its jurisdiction'.¹⁴⁵ This approach was underlined in the *Nauru* case, where the Court emphasised that the absence of a request from a third party to intervene 'in no way precludes the Court from adjudicating upon claims submitted to it, provided that the legal interests of the third state which may possibly be affected do not form the very subject-matter of the decision that is applied for'.¹⁴⁶ The test referred to was whether the determination of the third state's responsibility was a pre-requisite for the claims raised before the Court by one party against the other.¹⁴⁷ In the *East Timor* case,¹⁴⁸ the Court held that it could not rule on the lawfulness of the conduct of another state which was not a party to the case, whatever the nature of the obligations in question (i.e. even if they were *erga omnes* obligations as was the case with regard to the right to self-determination).¹⁴⁹ It was felt that in view of the situation, the Court would have to rule on the lawfulness of Indonesia's conduct with regard to East Timor as a pre-requisite for deciding upon Portugal's claims against Australia¹⁵⁰ and that such a determination would constitute

¹⁴² See e.g. the *Libya/Malta* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 3, 24; 70 ILR, pp. 527, 553, the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 431; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 142, the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 114–16; 97 ILR, pp. 214, 235–7, and the *Nauru* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 259–62; 97 ILR, pp. 1, 26–9.

¹⁴³ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 421.

¹⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1954, pp. 19, 54; 21 ILR, pp. 399, 406. In this case, Italy asked that the governments of the UK, US and France should deliver to it any share of the monetary gold that might be due to Albania under Part III of the Paris Act of 14 January 1946, as satisfaction for alleged damage to Italy by Albania. Albania chose not to intervene in the case.

¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 431; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 142.

¹⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 261; 97 ILR, p. 28.

¹⁴⁷ *Ibid.* See also *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 237–8.

¹⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 101 ff.

¹⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 102.

¹⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 104.

the very subject matter of the judgment requested and thus infringe the *Monetary Gold* principle.¹⁵¹

Apart from those instances where states specifically refer a dispute to it, the Court may also be granted jurisdiction over disputes arising from international treaties where such treaties contain a 'compromissory clause' providing for this.¹⁵² In fact, quite a large number of international treaties, both bilateral and multilateral, do include a clause awarding the ICJ jurisdiction with respect to questions that might arise from the interpretation and application of the agreements.¹⁵³ Examples of the more important of such conventions include the 1948 Genocide Convention, 1965 Convention on Investment Disputes, the 1965 International Convention on the Elimination of all Forms of Racial Discrimination and the 1970 Hague Convention on Hijacking. In the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)* case,¹⁵⁴ the Court founded its jurisdiction upon article IX of the Genocide Convention. In the *US Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran* case (the *Iranian Hostages* case),¹⁵⁵ the Court founded jurisdiction upon article 1 of the Optional Protocols concerning the Compulsory Settlement of Disputes (to which both Iran and the US were parties), which accompany both the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, 1961 and the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations, 1963. Common article 1 of the Protocol provides that disputes arising out of the interpretation or application of the Conventions lie within the compulsory jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice. The Court also founded jurisdiction in the *Nicaragua*¹⁵⁶ case *inter alia* upon a treaty provision, article XXIV(2) of the 1956 US–Nicaragua Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation providing for submission of disputes over the interpretation or application of the treaty to the ICJ unless the parties agree to settlement by some other specific means.

¹⁵¹ *Ibid.*, p. 105. See also *Larsen v. Hawaiian Kingdom* 119 ILR, pp. 566, 588–92.

¹⁵² See also article 40 of the ICJ Statute and article 38 of the Court's Rules.

¹⁵³ See Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, chapter 11. There are almost 300 such treaties, bilateral and multilateral, currently listed on the Court's website: see www.icj-cij.org/icjwww/ibasicdocuments/ibasictext/ibasic treaties and other docs.htm. To these need to be added treaties giving such jurisdiction to the Permanent Court of International Justice: see article 37 of the Court's Statute. See also J. Charney, 'Compromissory Clauses and the Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice', 81 AJIL, 1989, p. 85.

¹⁵⁴ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 595, 615–17 on preliminary objections. See also ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3 and 325; 95 ILR, pp. 18 and 43 (the two Orders on Provisional Measures).

¹⁵⁵ ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 24; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 550.

¹⁵⁶ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 426–9; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 137. See Briggs, '*Nicaragua v. United States*: Jurisdiction and Admissibility', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 373.

In its judgment on jurisdiction and admissibility in the *Case Concerning Border and Transborder Armed Actions (Nicaragua v. Honduras)*,¹⁵⁷ the International Court emphasised that the existence of jurisdiction was a question of law and dependent upon the intention of the parties. The issue of jurisdiction in the case centred, in the view of the Court, upon article 31 of the Pact of Bogotá, 1948, which declared that the parties '[i]n conformity with article 36(2) of the Statute of the International Court of Justice . . . recognise, in relation to any other American state, the jurisdiction of the Court as compulsory *ipso facto* . . . in all disputes of a juridical nature that arise among them' concerning the interpretation of a treaty, any question of international law, the existence of a fact which if established would constitute the breach of an international obligation or the nature or extent of the reparation to be made for the breach of an international obligation. Objections to jurisdiction put forward by Honduras on the grounds that article 31 was not intended to have independent force, and was merely an encouragement to the parties to deposit unilateral declarations of acceptance of the Court's compulsory jurisdiction, and that article 31 would only operate after the exhaustion of conciliation procedures referred to in article 32, were rejected on the basis of interpretation.¹⁵⁸

Article 31 nowhere envisaged that the undertaking contained therein might be amended subsequently by unilateral declaration and the reference to article 36(2) of the Statute was insufficient to have that effect,¹⁵⁹ while the reference in article 32 of the Pact to a right of recourse to the International Court upon the failure of conciliation provided a second basis for the jurisdiction of the Court and not a limitation upon the first.¹⁶⁰ In other words, the commitment contained in article 31 of the Pact was sufficient to enable the Court to exercise jurisdiction.¹⁶¹

Where a treaty in force provides for reference of a matter to the PCIJ or to a tribunal established by the League of Nations, article 37 of the Statute declares that such matter shall be referred to the ICJ, provided the parties

¹⁵⁷ ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 69, 76; 84 ILR, pp. 218, 231.

¹⁵⁸ ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 78–90. The decision to affirm jurisdiction and admissibility was unanimous.

¹⁵⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 85–8. ¹⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 88–90.

¹⁶¹ By article 6 of the Pact, article 31 would not apply to matters already settled by arrangement between the parties, or by arbitral award or by decision of an international court, or which are governed by agreements or treaties in force on the date of the conclusion of the Pact. See *Nicaragua v. Colombia*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 53 ff. and 120, where the Court rejected Colombia's objection to jurisdiction on the basis of article 31.

to the dispute are parties to the Statute. It is basically a bridging provision and provides some measure of continuity between the old Permanent Court and the new International Court.¹⁶² Under article 36(6) of the Statute, the Court has the competence to decide its own jurisdiction in the event of a dispute.¹⁶³

*Article 36(2)*¹⁶⁴

This article has been of great importance in extending the jurisdiction of the International Court. Article 36(2), the so-called 'optional clause', stipulates that:

The states parties to the present Statute may at any time declare that they recognise as compulsory *ipso facto* and without special agreement, in relation to any other state accepting the same obligation, the jurisdiction of the Court in all legal disputes concerning:

- (a) the interpretation of a treaty;
- (b) any question of international law;
- (c) the existence of any fact which, if established, would constitute a breach of an international obligation;
- (d) the nature or extent of the reparation to be made for the breach of an international obligation.

This provision was intended to operate as a method of increasing the Court's jurisdiction, by the gradual increase in its acceptance by more and more states. By the end of 1984, forty-seven declarations were in force and

¹⁶² See e.g. the *Ambatielos* case (Preliminary Objections), ICJ Reports, 1952, p. 28; 19 ILR, p. 416 and the *Barcelona Traction* case (Preliminary Objections), ICJ Reports, 1964, p. 6; 46 ILR, p. 18. Cf. the *Aerial Incident* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 127; 27 ILR, p. 557.

¹⁶³ See I. Shihata, *The Power of the International Court to Determine Its Own Jurisdiction*, The Hague, 1965. This is a characteristic of the judicial function generally: see e.g. the *Effect of Awards* case, ICJ Reports, 1954, pp. 47, 51–2; 21 ILR, pp. 310, 312, and the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, pp. 111, 119; 20 ILR, pp. 567, 572. See also the *Tadić* case before the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, IT-94-1-AR72, pp. 7–9.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, chapter 12. See also J. G. Merrills, 'The Optional Clause Today', 50 BYIL, 1979, p. 87, and Merrills, 'The Optional Clause Revisited', 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 197; L. Gross, 'Compulsory Jurisdiction under the Optional Protocol: History and Practice' in Damrosch, *International Court of Justice at a Crossroads*, p. 19; E. Gordon, "'Legal Disputes" Under Article 36(2) of the Statute', *ibid.*, p. 183; M. Vogiatzi, 'The Historical Evolution of the Optional Clause', 2 *Non-State Actors and International Law*, 2002, p. 41, and M. Fitzmaurice, 'The Optional Clause System and the Law of Treaties', 20 Australian YIL, 2000, p. 127.

deposited with the UN Secretary-General, comprising less than one-third of the parties to the ICJ Statute. By 15 May 2008, this number had risen to sixty-five.¹⁶⁵

The Court discussed the nature of such declarations in the *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)* case and stated that,

Any state party to the Statute, in adhering to the jurisdiction of the Court in accordance with article 36, paragraph 2, accepts jurisdiction in its relations with states previously having adhered to that clause. At the same time, it makes a standing offer to the other states parties to the Statute which have not yet deposited a declaration of acceptance. The day one of those states accepts that offer by depositing in its turn its declaration of acceptance, the consensual bond is established and no further condition needs to be met.¹⁶⁶

Declarations pursuant to article 36(2) are in the majority of cases conditional and, as noted, are dependent upon reciprocity for operation. This means that the Court will only have jurisdiction under article 36(2) to the extent that both the declarations of the two parties in dispute cover the same issue or issues. The doctrine of the lowest common denominator thus operates since the acceptance, by means of the optional clause, by one state of the jurisdiction of the Court is in relation to any other state accepting the same obligation. It is not that declarations in identical terms from the parties are necessary, but both declarations must grant jurisdiction to the Court regarding the dispute in question.

In practice, this can lead to the situation where one party may rely on a condition, or reservation, expressed in the declaration of the other party. This occurred in the *Norwegian Loans* case,¹⁶⁷ between France and Norway. The Court noted that:

since two unilateral declarations are involved, such jurisdiction is conferred upon the Court only to the extent to which the declarations coincide in conferring it. A comparison between the two declarations shows that the French declaration accepts the Court's jurisdiction within narrower limits than the Norwegian declaration; consequently, the common will of the parties, which is the basis of the Court's jurisdiction, exists within these narrower limits indicated by the French reservation.¹⁶⁸

¹⁶⁵ See www.icj-cij.org/icjwww/ibasicdocuments/ibasictext/ibasicdeclarations.htm.

¹⁶⁶ ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 275, 291. ¹⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1957, p. 9; 24 ILR, p. 782.

¹⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 1957, p. 23; 24 ILR, p. 786. But note Judge Lauterpacht's individual opinion, ICJ Reports, 1957, p. 34; 24 ILR, p. 793. See also the *Right of Passage* case, ICJ Reports,

Accordingly, Norway was entitled to invoke the French reservation to defeat the jurisdiction of the Court. However, much will depend upon the precise terms of the declarations. Declarations made under the optional clause in the Statute of the PCIJ and still in force are deemed to continue with respect to the ICJ,¹⁶⁹ but in the *Aerial Incident* case¹⁷⁰ between Israel and Bulgaria, the Court declared that this in fact only applied to states signing the ICJ Statute in 1945 and did not relate to states, like Bulgaria, which became a party to the Statute many years later as a result of admission to the United Nations.

The issue also arose in the jurisdictional phase of the *Nicaragua* case.¹⁷¹ Nicaragua had declared that it would accept the compulsory jurisdiction of the Permanent Court in 1929 but had not ratified this. The US argued that accordingly Nicaragua never became a party to the Statute of the Permanent Court and could not therefore rely on article 36(5). The Court, in an interesting judgment, noted that the Nicaraguan declaration, unconditional and unlimited as to time, had 'a certain potential effect' and that the phrase in article 36(5) 'still in force' could be so interpreted as to cover declarations which had only potential and not binding effect. Ratification of the Statute of the ICJ in 1945 by Nicaragua had the effect, argued the Court, of transforming this potential commitment into an effective one.¹⁷² Since this was so, Nicaragua could rely on the US declaration of 1946 accepting the Court's compulsory jurisdiction as the necessary reciprocal element.¹⁷³

The reservations that have been made in declarations by states under the optional clause, restricting the jurisdiction of the ICJ, vary a great deal from state to state, and are usually an attempt to prevent the Court becoming involved in a dispute which is felt to concern vital interests. One condition made by a number of states, particularly the United States

1957, pp. 125, 145; 24 ILR, pp. 840, 845 and the *Interhandel* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, pp. 6, 23; 27 ILR, pp. 475, 487.

¹⁶⁹ Article 36(5), Statute of the ICJ. ¹⁷⁰ ICJ Reports, 1959, p. 127; 27 ILR, p. 557.

¹⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 403–12; 76 ILR, pp. 104, 114.

¹⁷² The Court also noted that since Court publications had placed Nicaragua on the list of states accepting the compulsory jurisdiction of the ICJ by virtue of article 36(5) and that no states had objected, one could conclude that the above interpretation had been confirmed, *ibid.* The Court also regarded the conduct of the parties as reflecting acquiescence in Nicaragua's obligations when article 36(5) was argued, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 411–15; 76 ILR, p. 122.

¹⁷³ But see the Separate Opinions of Judges Mosler, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 461–3; Oda, *ibid.*, pp. 473–89; Ago, *ibid.*, pp. 517–27 and Jennings, *ibid.*, pp. 533–45, and the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Schwebel, *ibid.*, pp. 562–600; 76 ILR, pp. 172, 184, 228, 244 and 273.

of America, stipulates that matters within the domestic jurisdiction 'as determined by' that particular state are automatically excluded from the purview of the Court.¹⁷⁴ The validity of this type of reservation (known as the 'Connally amendment' from the American initiator of the relevant legislation) has been widely questioned,¹⁷⁵ particularly since it appears to contradict the power of the Court under article 36(6) to determine its own jurisdiction, and in reality it withdraws from the Court the jurisdiction conferred under the declaration itself. Indeed, it is a well-established principle of international law that the definition of domestic jurisdiction is an issue of international and not domestic law.¹⁷⁶

Many reservations relate to requirements of time (*ratione temporis*),¹⁷⁷ according to which acceptances of jurisdiction are deemed to expire automatically after a certain period or within a particular time after notice of termination has been given to the UN Secretary-General. Some states exclude the jurisdiction of the ICJ with respect to disputes arising before or after a certain date in their declarations.¹⁷⁸ Reservations *ratione personae* may also be made, for example the UK reservation concerning disputes between member states of the British Commonwealth.¹⁷⁹ Reservations may also be made *ratione materiae*, excluding disputes where other means of dispute settlement have been agreed.¹⁸⁰ Other restrictive grounds exist.¹⁸¹ However, once the Court is dealing with a dispute, any subsequent

¹⁷⁴ See Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 748 ff.

¹⁷⁵ See e.g. L. Henkin, 'The Connally Reservation Revisited and, Hopefully, Contained', 65 AJIL, 1971, p. 374, and Preuss, 'The International Court of Justice, the Senate and Matters of Domestic Jurisdiction', 40 AJIL, 1946, p. 720. See also Judge Lauterpacht, *Norwegian Loans* case, ICJ Reports, 1957, pp. 9, 43–66; 24 ILR, pp. 782, 800; the *Interhandel* case, ICJ Reports, 1959, pp. 6, 77–8 and 93; 27 ILR, pp. 475, 524, 534, and A. D'Amato, 'Modifying US Acceptance of the Compulsory Jurisdiction of the World Court', 79 AJIL, 1985, p. 385.

¹⁷⁶ See above, chapter 12, p. 647.

¹⁷⁷ See Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 751 ff., and Merrills, 'Revisited', pp. 213 ff.

¹⁷⁸ Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 753 ff. The UK, for example, excluded disputes arising out of events occurring between 3 September 1939 and 2 September 1945 in its 1963 declaration, Cmnd 2248. This was altered in the 1969 declaration, which is expressed to apply only to disputes arising after 24 October 1945, Cmnd 3872.

¹⁷⁹ See Merrills, 'Revisited', pp. 219 ff.

¹⁸⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 224 ff. See the *Nauru* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 245–7; 97 ILR, pp. 1, 12–14. The Court emphasised that declarations made under article 36(2) related only to disputes between states and did not therefore cover disputes arising out of a trusteeship agreement between the Administering Authority and the indigenous population, *ibid.* See also the *Guinea-Bissau/Senegal* case, ICJ Reports, 1990, p. 64 and *ibid.*, 1991, p. 54; 92 ILR, pp. 1 and 30.

¹⁸¹ See e.g. reservations relating to territorial matters, Merrills, 'Revisited', pp. 234 ff.

expiry or termination of a party's declaration will not modify the jurisdiction of the case.¹⁸²

A state may withdraw or modify its declaration.¹⁸³ The US declaration of 1946 provided for termination after a six-month period of notice. What the Court in the jurisdictional phase of the *Nicaragua* case¹⁸⁴ had to decide was whether a modifying notification¹⁸⁵ expressly deemed to apply immediately could have effect over the original declaration. It decided that the six-month notice provision remained valid and could be invoked by Nicaragua against the US, since it was an undertaking that constituted an integral part of the instrument that contained it.

Article 36(2) declarations constitute unilateral acts and the Court will interpret them in order to establish whether or not mutual consent has been given to its jurisdiction and 'in a natural and reasonable way, having due regard to the intention of the state concerned at the time when it accepted the compulsory jurisdiction of the Court'.¹⁸⁶

The Court has emphasised that there is a 'fundamental distinction between the existence of the Court's jurisdiction over a dispute, and the compatibility with international law of the particular acts which are the subject of the dispute'.¹⁸⁷ This is so even with regard to rights and obligations *erga omnes* or peremptory norms of general international law (*jus cogens*). The mere fact that a principle has this elevated character in the international legal system is not enough of itself to confer jurisdiction, for this is dependent upon the consent of the parties.¹⁸⁸ However, the Court has also emphasised that whether or not it finds that it has

¹⁸² See e.g. the *Nottebohm* case, ICJ Reports, 1953, p. 111; 20 ILR, p. 567. See also Judge Shahabuddeen's Separate Opinion, the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in the Nuclear Tests Case*, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 288, 315.

¹⁸³ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 783 ff. A state may waive its jurisdictional reservation, but this must be done unequivocally, *Application for Revision and Interpretation of the Judgment in the Tunisia/Libya Case*, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 192, 216; 81 ILR, pp. 419, 449, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 33; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 367.

¹⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 415–21; 76 ILR, p. 126.

¹⁸⁵ Excluding disputes related to Central America for a two-year period. See e.g. A. Chayes, 'Nicaragua, the United States and the World Court', 85 *Columbia Law Review*, 1985, p. 1445; K. Highet, 'Litigation Implications of the US Withdrawal from the *Nicaragua* case', 79 *AJIL*, 1985, p. 992, and US Department of State Statement on the US Withdrawal from the Proceedings Initiated by Nicaragua in the International Court of Justice, 22 *ILM*, 1985, p. 246.

¹⁸⁶ *Spain v. Canada*, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 454; 123 ILR, pp. 189, 214.

¹⁸⁷ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1351.

¹⁸⁸ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 6, 32 and 52. As to obligations *erga omnes* and *jus cogens*, see above, chapter 3, p. 123.

jurisdiction with regard to a particular dispute, the parties 'remain in all cases responsible for acts attributable to them that violate the rights of other states'.¹⁸⁹

Once the Court has established jurisdiction, its treatment of the substance of the dispute will be framed by the terms of the jurisdiction it has found exists, for the Court as a matter of principle cannot deal with issues that lie outside of the consensual ambit it has determined subsists with regard to the dispute in question.¹⁹⁰ However, the Court has the competence to determine the meaning of its own jurisdiction and may interpret the terms of the relevant *compromis*, or treaty or declaration as it deems appropriate in the circumstances.¹⁹¹ In the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, for example, the Court founded its jurisdiction upon article XXI(2) of the 1955 US–Iran Treaty of Amity, Economic Relations and Consular Rights concerning disputes as to the interpretation or application of that treaty. Article XX(1)d of that treaty provided that the treaty 'shall not preclude the application of measures . . . necessary to fulfill the obligations of a High Contracting Party for the maintenance or restoration of international peace and security, or necessary to protect its essential security interests'. The Court noted, in what may be seen as an expansive approach, that 'the interpretation and application of that article will necessarily entail an assessment of the conditions of legitimate self-defence under international law' and further held that the question of the application of that article 'involves the principle of the prohibition in international law of the use of force, and the qualification to it constituted by the right of self-defence'.¹⁹²

Sources of law, propriety and legal interest

In its deliberations, the Court will apply the rules of international law as laid down in article 38 (treaties, custom, general principles of law).¹⁹³

¹⁸⁹ *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 1307, 1351.

¹⁹⁰ See e.g. the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 183; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 342.

¹⁹¹ See article 36(6) of the Statute and Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. II, pp. 812 ff.

¹⁹² ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 182–3. Note that at the preliminary objections to jurisdiction phase, the Court regarded that provision as 'confined to affording the Parties a possible defence on the merits to be used should the occasion arise', ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 803, 811.

¹⁹³ See further above, chapter 3. Note that the Court may be specifically requested by the parties to consider particular factors. In the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 18,

However, the Court may decide a case *ex aequo et bono*, i.e. on the basis of justice and equity untrammelled by technical legal rules where the parties agree.¹⁹⁴ This has not yet occurred, although it should not be confused with the ability of the ICJ to apply certain equitable considerations in a case within the framework of international law.¹⁹⁵ The question of gaps in international law in addressing a case arose in the Advisory Opinion concerning *The Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*.¹⁹⁶ Although not a contentious case and therefore not as such binding, the fact that the Court was unable to give its view on a crucial issue in international law may have ramifications. The Court took the view that it could not 'conclude definitively whether the threat or use of nuclear weapons would be lawful or unlawful in an extreme circumstance of self-defence, in which the very survival of a state would be at stake'.¹⁹⁷ This appearance of a *non-liquet* is of some concern as a matter of principle, unconnected with the substance of the legal principle in question.¹⁹⁸

Before dealing with the merits of a case, the Court may have to deal with preliminary objections as to its jurisdiction or as to the admissibility of the application.¹⁹⁹ Preliminary objections must be made within three months after the delivery of the Memorial of the applicant state.²⁰⁰ The Court has emphasised that objections to jurisdiction require decision at the preliminary stage of the proceedings.²⁰¹ A decision on preliminary objections to jurisdiction cannot determine merits issues, even where dealt with in connection with preliminary objections. Such reference can only

21; 67 ILR, pp. 3, 14, the *compromis* specifically asked the Court to take into account 'the recent trends admitted at the Third Conference on the Law of the Sea'.

¹⁹⁴ Article 38(2) of the Statute. See also A. Pellet, 'Article 38' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 677 and see above, chapter 3, p. 105.

¹⁹⁵ See e.g. above, chapter 11, p. 590. ¹⁹⁶ ICJ Reports, 1966, p. 226; 110 ILR, 163.

¹⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 226, 263 and 266. This is the subject of a strong rebuttal by Judge Higgins in her Dissenting Opinion, *ibid.*, pp. 583, 584 ff.

¹⁹⁸ See above, chapter 3, p. 98.

¹⁹⁹ 'Or other objection', with regard to which a decision is requested before consideration of the merits: see article 79 of the Rules of Court 1978 and the previous sections of this chapter.

²⁰⁰ Prior to the amendment of article 79 adopted in December 2000, such objections could have been made within the time limit fixed for the delivery of the Counter-Memorial (usually six or nine months). See e.g. *Cameroon v. Nigeria (Preliminary Objections)*, ICJ Reports, 1998, p. 275. See also S. Rosenne, 'The International Court of Justice: Revision of Articles 79 and 80 of the Rules of Court', 14 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 2001, p. 77.

²⁰¹ The *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 30–1; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 364–5.

be provisional.²⁰² Where it has established its right to exercise jurisdiction, the Court may well decline to exercise that right on grounds of propriety. In the *Northern Cameroons* case,²⁰³ the Court declared that:

it may pronounce judgment only in connection with concrete cases where there exists, at the time of adjudication, an actual controversy involving a conflict of legal interests between the parties. The Court's judgment must have some practical consequence in the sense that it can affect existing legal rights or obligations of the parties, thus removing uncertainty from their legal relations.

Further, events subsequent to the filing of the application may render the application without object, so that the Court is not required to give a decision.²⁰⁴

In addition, and following the *South-West Africa* cases (Second Phase) in 1966,²⁰⁵ it may be necessary for the Court to establish that the claimant state has a legal interest in the subject matter of the dispute. The fact that political considerations may have motivated the application is not relevant, so long as a legal dispute is in evidence. Similarly, the fact that a particular dispute has other important aspects is not of itself sufficient to render the application inadmissible.²⁰⁶

Evidence

Unlike domestic courts, the International Court is flexible with regard to the introduction of evidence.²⁰⁷ Strict rules of admissibility common

²⁰² See the *South-West Africa* cases, ICJ Reports, 1966, pp. 3, 37; 37 ILR, pp. 243, 270. It is to be noted that admissibility issues may be discussed at the merits stage: see e.g. the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, p. 90; 105 ILR, p. 226. See also C. M. Chinkin, 'East Timor Moves into the World Court', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 206.

²⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1963, pp. 15, 33–4; 35 ILR, pp. 353, 369.

²⁰⁴ See e.g. the *Armed Actions (Nicaragua v. Honduras)* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 69, 95; 84 ILR, p. 218; the *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 272; 57 ILR, p. 348; the *Lockerbie (Preliminary Objections)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 9, 26; 117 ILR, pp. 1, 24; and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 14–15; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 69–70.

²⁰⁵ ICJ Reports, 1966, p. 6; 37 ILR, p. 243. ²⁰⁶ See above, p. 1065.

²⁰⁷ See e.g. K. Highet, 'Evidence and Proof of Facts' in Damrosch, *International Court of Justice at a Crossroads*, pp. 355, 357, and C. F. Amerasinghe, 'Presumptions and Inferences in Evidence in International Litigation', 3 *The Law and Practice of International Courts and Tribunals*, 2004, p. 394. See also D. V. Sandifer, *Evidence before International Tribunals*, Charlottesville, 1975; S. Schwebel, *Justice in International Law*, Cambridge, 1994, p. 125; K. Highet, 'Evidence, the Court and the *Nicaragua* Case', 81 AJIL, 1987, p. 1;

in domestic legal systems do not exist here.²⁰⁸ The Court has the competence *inter alia* to determine the existence of any fact which if established would constitute a breach of an international obligation.²⁰⁹ It may make all arrangements with regard to the taking of evidence,²¹⁰ call upon the agents to produce any document or to supply any explanations as may be required,²¹¹ or at any time establish an inquiry mechanism or obtain expert opinion.²¹² The Court may indeed make on-site visits.²¹³ However, it has no power to compel production of evidence generally, nor may witnesses be subpoenaed, nor is there any equivalent to proceedings for contempt of court.²¹⁴ The use of experts has been comparatively rare²¹⁵ as has been recourse to witnesses.²¹⁶ Agents are rarely asked to produce documents or supply explanations and there have been only two on-site visits to date.²¹⁷ This has meant that the Court has sought to evaluate claims primarily upon an assessment of the documentary evidence provided, utilising also legal techniques such as inferences and admissions against interest.²¹⁸

The Court will make its own determination of the facts and then apply the relevant rules of international law to those facts it has found to exist and which are necessary in order to respond to the submissions of the

M. Kazazi, *Burden of Proof and Related Issues*, The Hague, 1996, and T. M. Franck, *Fairness in International Law and Institutions*, Oxford, 1995, pp. 335 ff.

²⁰⁸ President Schwebel in his address to the UN General Assembly on 27 October 1997 noted that the Court's 'attitude to evidence is demonstrably flexible': see www.icj-cij.org/icjwww/ipresscom/SPEECHES/Ga1997e.htm. See e.g. the introduction of illegally obtained evidence in the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 32–6; 16 AD, p. 155.

²⁰⁹ Article 36 of the Statute. ²¹⁰ Article 48 of the Statute. ²¹¹ Article 49 of the Statute.

²¹² Article 50 of the Statute. By article 43(5), the Court may hear witnesses and experts, as well as agents, counsel and advocates.

²¹³ Article 44(2) of the Statute and article 66 of the Rules of Court.

²¹⁴ See K. Highet, 'Evidence, the Court and the *Nicaragua* Case', p. 10.

²¹⁵ But see the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155.

²¹⁶ But see *ibid.*, and the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 18; 67 ILR, p. 4; the *Libya/Malta* case, ICJ Reports, 1985, p. 13; 81 ILR, p. 238, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

²¹⁷ First, in the *Diversion of the River Meuse* case, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 70, and secondly in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, ICJ Communiqué No. 97/3, 17 February 1997 and see ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 14; 116 ILR, p. 1.

²¹⁸ See e.g. the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 9; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 535. See also F. A. Mann, 'Foreign Investment in the International Court of Justice: The *ELSI* Case', 86 AJIL, 1992, pp. 92, 94–5, and the *El Salvador/Honduras* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 574; 97 ILR, pp. 112, 490. Note in particular the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349. The difficulties of proving facts in this case were exacerbated by the absence of the respondent state during the proceedings on the merits.

parties, including defences and counter-claims. These findings of facts require an assessment of the evidence, which necessitates the Court deciding which of the material before it is relevant and of probative value with regard to the alleged facts. In so doing, the Court will make its own assessment of the weight, reliability and value of the evidence produced by the parties.²¹⁹ The Court has noted that it will treat with caution evidentiary materials specially prepared for the case in question²²⁰ and also materials emanating from a single source, but would give particular attention to reliable evidence acknowledging facts or conduct unfavourable to the state represented by the person making them.²²¹ Weight would also be given to evidence that has not been challenged by impartial persons for the correctness of what it contains and special attention given to evidence obtained by skilled judicial examination and cross-examination of persons directly involved.²²² However, the evidence of government and military figures of a state involved in litigation before the Court would be treated with 'great reserve'.²²³ The Court has also noted that witness statements produced in the form of affidavits should be treated with caution and in assessing such affidavits, a number of factors would have to be taken into account, including whether they had been made by state officials or private persons not interested in the outcome of the proceedings and whether a particular affidavit attests to the existence of facts or represents only an opinion with regard to certain events. Evidence which is contemporaneous with the period concerned may, however, be of special value. Further, a statement by a competent governmental official with regard to boundary lines is likely to have greater weight than sworn statements of a private person.²²⁴

²¹⁹ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 200.

²²⁰ However, the Court has noted that affidavits prepared for litigation purposes may be received if they attest to personal knowledge of facts by a particular individual, *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 244.

²²¹ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 200 and 206. See also *Nicaragua v. USA*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 41; 76 ILR, p. 349.

²²² *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 201. See also the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 213, where it was held that in principle the Court would accept as highly persuasive relevant findings of fact made by the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia at trial, unless they had been upset on appeal. In addition, any evaluation by the Tribunal based on the facts was entitled to due weight. However, the procedural stages prior to a decision, which did not involve definitive rulings, should not be given weight, *ibid.*, paras. 216 ff.

²²³ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 203.

²²⁴ *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 244.

The Court may also take judicial notice of facts which are public knowledge, primarily through media dissemination, provided that caution was shown and that the reports do not emanate from a single source.²²⁵ In *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, the Court noted the particular importance of consistency and concordance in evaluating press information.²²⁶

The burden of proof lies upon the party seeking to assert a particular fact or facts,²²⁷ although the Court has also stated that there was no burden of proof to be discharged in the matter of jurisdiction.²²⁸ On the other hand, the burden of proof, and a relatively high one, lies upon the applicant state who wishes to intervene. Such state 'must demonstrate convincingly what it asserts, and thus . . . bear the burden of proof', although it need only show that its interest may be affected, not that it will or must be so affected. It must identify the interest of a legal nature in question and show how that interest may be affected.²²⁹ The actual standard of proof required will vary with the character of the particular issue of fact.²³⁰ In the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, the Court emphasised that it had long recognised that 'claims against a state involving charges of exceptional gravity must be proved by evidence that is fully conclusive'.

²²⁵ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 41; 76 ILR, p. 349.

²²⁶ ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 204. As to the value of maps as evidence, see *ibid.*, p. 206 and above, chapter 10, p. 519.

²²⁷ See e.g. the *Nicaragua (Jurisdiction and Admissibility)* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 392, 437; 76 ILR, p. 1; the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 450; the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 41; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 144, and the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 204. Note also the view taken by the Arbitral Tribunal for Dispute over Inter-Entity Boundary in Brcko Area in its Award of 14 February 1997. The Appendix to the Order lays down the Principles Applicable to the Admissibility of Evidence and notes *inter alia* that each party bears the burden of proving its own case and, in particular, facts alleged by it. The party having the burden of proof must not only bring evidence in support of its allegations, but must also convince the Tribunal of their truth. The Tribunal is not bound to adhere to strict judicial rules of evidence, the probative force of evidence being for the Tribunal to determine. Where proof of a fact presents extreme difficulty, the Tribunal may be satisfied with less conclusive, i.e. *prima facie*, evidence: see 36 ILM, 1997, pp. 396, 402–3.

²²⁸ See the *Fisheries Jurisdiction (Spain v. Canada)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 432, 450.

²²⁹ *El Salvador/Honduras (Intervention)*, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 117–18; 97 ILR, pp. 112, 238–9 and *Indonesia/Malaysia (Intervention)*, ICJ Reports, 2001, para. 29. As to third-party intervention, see below, p. 1097.

²³⁰ Judge Higgins in her Separate Opinion in the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 233; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 392, noted that 'the Court's prime objective appears to have been to retain a freedom in evaluating the evidence, relying on the facts and circumstances of each case'. See also Judge Shahabuddeen's Dissenting Opinion in the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 6, 63; 102 ILR, pp. 1, 104.

The Court would need to 'be fully convinced that allegations made in the proceedings, that the crime of genocide or the other acts enumerated in Article III [of the Genocide Convention] have been committed, have been clearly established' and it has noted that the same standard of proof would apply to the proof of attribution for such acts.²³¹

Evidence which has been illegally or improperly acquired may also be taken into account, although no doubt where this happens its probative value would be adjusted accordingly.²³² In the second provisional measures order in the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)* case, for example, the Court was prepared to admit a series of documents even though submitted on the eve of and during the oral hearings despite being 'difficult to reconcile with an orderly progress of the procedure before the Court, and with respect for the principle of equality of the parties'.²³³ In dealing with questions of evidence, the Court proceeds upon the basis that its decision will be based upon the facts occurring up to the close of the oral proceedings on the merits of the case.²³⁴

In so far as the scope of the Court's decision is concerned, it was noted in the *Nicaragua* case that the Court 'is bound to confine its decision to those points of law which are essential to the settlement of the dispute before it'.²³⁵ In so doing, the Court will seek to ascertain 'the true subject of the dispute' taking into consideration the submissions, the applications, oral arguments and other documents placed before it.²³⁶

²³¹ ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 209. See also *Corfu Channel (United Kingdom v. Albania)*, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 17. Judge Higgins in her Separate Opinion in the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 234, noted that 'the graver the charge the more confidence there must be in the evidence relied on'.

²³² See e.g. the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 32–6; 16 AD, p. 155. See also H. Thirlway, 'Dilemma or Chimera? Admissibility of Illegally Obtained Evidence in International Adjudication', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 622, and G. Marston, 'Falsification of Documentary Evidence Before International Tribunals: An Aspect of the *Behring Sea* Arbitration, 1892–3', 71 BYIL, 2000, p. 357. See also the difficulties in the *Qatar v. Bahrain* case, International Court of Justice, Order of 17 February 1999.

²³³ ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 336–7. Article 56 of the Rules provides that after the closure of written proceedings, no further documents may be submitted to the Court by either party except with the consent of the other party or, in the absence of consent, where the Court, after hearing the parties, authorises production where it is felt that the documents are necessary.

²³⁴ The *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 39; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 373. Although note that in the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 13; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 496, the Court referred in detail to Security Council resolution 748 (1992) adopted three days after the close of the oral hearings.

²³⁵ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 110; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 444.

²³⁶ The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 466–7.

*Provisional measures*²³⁷

Under article 41 of the Statute, the Court has the power to indicate, if it considers that circumstances so require, any provisional (or interim) measures which ought to be taken to preserve the respective rights of either party. In deciding upon a request for provisional measures, the Court need not finally satisfy itself that it has jurisdiction on the merits of the case, although it has held that it ought not to indicate such measures unless the provisions invoked by the applicant appear *prima facie* to afford a basis upon which the jurisdiction of the Court might be founded,²³⁸ whether the request for the indication of provisional measures is made by the applicant or by the respondent in the proceedings on the merits.²³⁹ In establishing the Court's *prima facie* jurisdiction to deal with the merits of the case, the question of the nature and extent of the rights for which

²³⁷ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, chapter 24, and Rosenne, *Provisional Measures in International Law: The International Court of Justice and the Tribunal for the Law of the Sea*, Oxford, 2005; K. Oellers-Frahm, 'Article 41' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 923; S. Oda, 'Provisional Measures' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 541; B. Oxman, 'Jurisdiction and the Power to Indicate Provisional Measures' in Damrosch, *International Court of Justice at a Crossroads*, p. 323; C. Gray, *Judicial Remedies in International Law*, Oxford, 1987, pp. 69–74; Elias, *International Court*, chapter 3; J. G. Merrills, 'Interim Measures of Protection and the Substantive Jurisdiction of the International Court', 36 *Cambridge Law Journal*, 1977, p. 86, and Merrills, 'Reflections on the Incidental Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice' in *Remedies in International Law* (eds. M. Evans and S. V. Konstanidis), Oxford, 1998, p. 51; L. Gross, 'The Case Concerning United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran: Phase of Provisional Measures', 74 *AJIL*, 1980, p. 395, and M. Mendelson, 'Interim Measures of Protection in Cases of Contested Jurisdiction', 46 *BYIL*, 1972–3, p. 259. See also articles 73–8 of the Rules of Court 1978.

²³⁸ See e.g. the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 77, 87; 134 ILR, pp. 104, 113; *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Rwanda*, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 241 and the two *Pulp Mills (Argentina v. Uruguay)* applications for provisional measures, ICJ Reports, 2006, pp. 113, 128–9 and ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 24. See also the request for the indication of provisional measures in the *Legality of the Use of Force (Yugoslavia v. Belgium)* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 124, 132; the *Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989 (Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal)* case, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 64, 68; 92 ILR, pp. 9, 13, the *Great Belt case*, ICJ Reports, 1991, pp. 12, 15; 94 ILR, pp. 446, 453, where jurisdiction was not at issue, and *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 21, where it was. The Court in *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)*, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 12; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 27, declared that jurisdiction included both jurisdiction *ratione personae* and jurisdiction *ratione materiae*. Note that Jiménez de Aréchega, a former President of the Court, has written that 'interim measures will not be granted unless a majority of judges believes at the time that there will be jurisdiction over the merits', 'International Law in the Past Third of a Century', 159 *HR*, 1978 I, pp. 1, 161.

²³⁹ The *Pulp Mills (Argentina v. Uruguay)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 23 January 2007, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 24.

protection is being sought in the request for the indication of provisional measures has no bearing, this being addressed once the Court's *prima facie* jurisdiction over the merits of the case has been established.²⁴⁰

The Court, when considering a request for the indication of provisional measures, 'must be concerned to preserve . . . the rights which may subsequently be adjudged by the Court to belong either to the Applicant or to the Respondent',²⁴¹ without being obliged at that stage of the proceedings to rule on those rights.²⁴² Thus, the purpose of exercising the power is to protect 'rights which are the subject of dispute in judicial proceedings'²⁴³ and thus the measures must be such that once the dispute over those rights has been resolved by the Court's judgment on the merits, they would no longer be required.²⁴⁴ These are awarded to assist the Court to ensure the integrity of the proceedings. Such interim measures were granted by the Court in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case,²⁴⁵ to protect British fishing rights in Icelandic-claimed waters, and again in the *Nuclear Tests* case.²⁴⁶ In the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, the Court emphasised that article 41 presupposes 'that irreparable prejudice should not be caused to rights which are the subject of dispute in judicial proceedings'.²⁴⁷ However, it was noted in the *Lockerbie* case²⁴⁸ that the measures requested by Libya 'would be likely to impair the rights which appear *prima facie* to be enjoyed by the United Kingdom by virtue of Security Council resolution 748 (1992)'. The Court has also stated that its power to indicate provisional measures can

²⁴⁰ *Ibid.*, para. 25.

²⁴¹ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, Provisional Measures, Order of 15 March 1996, ICJ Reports, 1996 (I), p. 22, para. 35.

²⁴² *The Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 5 February 2003, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 77, 89; 134 ILR, pp. 104, 115.

²⁴³ *The Aegean Sea Continental Shelf* case, ICJ Reports, 1976, pp. 3, 9; 60 ILR, pp. 524, 530 and the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1979, pp. 7, 19; 61 ILR, pp. 513, 525. See also the *Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989* case, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 64, 69; 92 ILR, pp. 9, 14.

²⁴⁴ *Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989* case, ICJ Reports, 1990, p. 69; 92 ILR, pp. 9, 14.

²⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1972, p. 12; 55 ILR, p. 160. See also the *Anglo-Iranian Oil Co.* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 89; 19 ILR, p. 501.

²⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1973, p. 99; 57 ILR, p. 360. They were also granted in the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1979, pp. 7, 19; 61 ILR, pp. 513, 525 and in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 169; 76 ILR, p. 35. See also the *Great Belt* case, ICJ Reports, 1991, p. 12; 94 ILR, p. 446, *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)*, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3 and 325; 95 ILR, p. 1, and the *Cameroon v. Nigeria* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 13. See also the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 9; 118 ILR, p. 37.

²⁴⁷ ICJ Reports, 1972, pp. 12, 16, 30, 34; 55 ILR, pp. 160, 164; 56 ILR, pp. 76, 80. See also the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1979, pp. 7, 19; 61 ILR, p. 525, *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)*, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 19; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 34 and *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 21–2.

²⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 15; 95 ILR, pp. 478, 498.

be exercised only if there is an 'urgent necessity to prevent irreparable prejudice to such rights, before the Court has given its final decision'²⁴⁹ and that 'the sound administration of justice requires that a request for the indication of provisional measures founded on Article 73 of the Rules of Court be submitted in good time'.²⁵⁰

Provisional measures or recommendations or statements as to relevant international obligations may also be indicated or made by the Court, independently of requests by the parties, with a view to preventing 'the aggravation or extension of the dispute whenever it considers that circumstances so require'.²⁵¹ In *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, the Court referred explicitly not only to the rights of each party, but also by calling on the parties to observe an agreement reached for cessation of hostilities, to take all necessary steps to preserve relevant evidence in the disputed area and to co-operate with a proposed UN fact-finding mission.²⁵² The Court also took care to link with the rights of the parties that were being protected the danger to persons within the disputed area.²⁵³

The question of the legal effects of orders indicating provisional measures was discussed and decided by the Court for the first time in the *LaGrand* case. The Court addressed the issue in the light of the object and purpose of the Statute²⁵⁴ which was to enable it to fulfil its functions and in particular to reach binding decisions. The Court declared that:

The context in which article 41 has to be seen within the Statute is to prevent the Court from being hampered in the exercise of its functions because the respective rights of the parties to a dispute before the Court

²⁴⁹ See e.g. the *Great Belt (Finland v. Denmark)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 29 July 1991, ICJ Reports 1991, pp. 12, 17; *Republic of the Congo v. France*, Provisional Measures, Order of 17 June 2003, ICJ Reports 2003, p. 107, para. 22 and the *Pulp Mills (Argentina v. Uruguay)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 23 January 2007, ICJ Reports, 2007, para. 32. See also *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 22 and the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 77, 90; 134 ILR, pp. 104, 116.

²⁵⁰ The *LaGrand (Germany v. USA)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 3 March 1999, ICJ Reports, 1999 (I), p. 14, para. 19; 118 ILR, p. 44.

²⁵¹ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 23. See also the *Burkina Faso/Mali* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 9; 80 ILR, pp. 440, 456 and the *Pulp Mills (Argentina v. Uruguay)* case, Provisional Measures, Order of 23 January 2007, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 49 and 53.

²⁵² See the *dispositif*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 13, 24–5.

²⁵³ *Ibid.*, p. 23. See also J. D'Aspremont, 'The Recommendations Made by the International Court of Justice', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 185. Note that the Court may make such recommendations even where it refuses to grant an order for provisional measures.

²⁵⁴ Referring to article 33(4) of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, which the Court noted reflected customary law, ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 466, 506.

are not preserved. It follows from the object and purpose of the Statute, as well as from the terms of article 41 when read in this context, that the power to indicate provisional measures entails that such measures should be binding, inasmuch as the power in question is based on the necessity, when the circumstances call for it, to safeguard, and to avoid prejudice to, the right of the parties as determined by the final judgment of the Court. The contention that provisional measures indicated under article 41 might not be binding would be contrary to the object and purpose of that article.²⁵⁵

This clear and unanimous decision that provisional measures orders are binding until judgment on the merits is likely to have a significant impact.²⁵⁶

*Counter-claims*²⁵⁷

Article 80 of the Rules of Court provides that the Court may entertain a counter-claim only if it comes within the jurisdiction of the Court and 'is directly connected with the subject-matter of the claim of the other party'.²⁵⁸ A counter-claim constitutes a separate claim, or 'autonomous legal act', while requiring to be linked to the principal claim.²⁵⁹ It goes beyond a mere defence on the merits to the principal claim, but cannot be used as a means of referring to a court claims which exceed the limits of its jurisdiction as recognised by the parties.²⁶⁰ The Rule does not define what is meant by direct connection and this is a matter for the discretion of the

²⁵⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 502–3. The Court also referred to a related reason, the principle that parties to a case must abstain from any measure capable of exercising a prejudicial effect regarding the execution of the decision to be given and not to allow any step to be taken which might aggravate or extend the dispute, citing the *Electricity Company of Sofia and Bulgaria*, PCIJ, Series A/B, No. 79, p. 199, *ibid.*, p. 503. The Court also noted that the preparatory work leading to the adoption of article 41 did not preclude the conclusion that orders under that article have binding force, *ibid.*, pp. 503 ff.

²⁵⁶ See *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 258 and the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 452 and 468.

²⁵⁷ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, p. 1232, and Rosenne, 'Counter-Claims in the International Court of Justice Revisited' in *Liber Amicorum Judge Ruda* (eds. C. A. Armas *et al.*), The Hague, 2000, p. 457.

²⁵⁸ As revised in 2000. One major difference from the text of the previous Rule 80 is to emphasise the role of the Court. See Rosenne, 'Revision', p. 83. The Rule also provides that 'a counter-claim shall be made in the Counter-Memorial and shall appear as part of the submissions contained therein. The right of the other party to present its views in writing on the counter-claim, in an additional pleading, shall be preserved, irrespective of any decision of the Court, in accordance with Article 45, paragraph 2, of these Rules, concerning the filing of further written pleadings.'

²⁵⁹ *Application of the Genocide Convention (Counter-Claims)*, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 243, 256.

²⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 257.

Court, which has noted that ‘the degree of connection between the claims must be assessed both in fact and in law’.²⁶¹ The direct connection of facts has been referred to in terms of ‘facts of the same nature . . . [that] form part of the same factual complex’²⁶² while in the *Application of the Genocide Convention* case the direct connection of law appeared in that both parties sought the same legal aim, being the establishment of legal responsibility for violations of the Genocide Convention.²⁶³ In the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, the Court held that it was open to the parties to challenge the admissibility of counter-claims in general at the merits stage of the proceedings, even though the counter-claims had previously been found admissible. That was because the earlier incidental proceedings were concerned only with the question of whether the requirements of article 80 of the Rules had been complied with, i.e. that the counter-claim is directly connected with the subject-matter of the principal claim. A more general challenge, going beyond the terms of article 80, was therefore possible at the merits stage.²⁶⁴

*Third-party intervention*²⁶⁵

There is no general right of intervention in cases before the Court by third parties as such, nor any procedure for joinder of new parties by the

²⁶¹ *Ibid.*, p. 258. See also the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA) (Counter-Claims)*, case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 190, 204–5. The Court has also noted that counter-claims do not have to rely on identical instruments to meet the ‘connection’ test of article 80: see *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 275.

²⁶² See *Application of the Genocide Convention (Counter-Claims)*, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 243, 258 and *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, International Court of Justice, Order of 30 June 1999. See also the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA) (Counter-Claims)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 190, 205; *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda (Counter-Claims)*, Order of 29 November 2001, ICJ Reports, 2001, p. 664 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 259 ff.

²⁶³ *Application of the Genocide Convention (Counter-Claims)*, ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 243, 258. In *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, the ‘same legal aim’ was the establishment of legal responsibility for frontier incidents, International Court of Justice, Order of 30 June 1999. See also the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA) (Counter-Claims)* case, ICJ Reports, 1998, pp. 190, 205.

²⁶⁴ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 210. See also *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 261.

²⁶⁵ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, chapter 26, and Rosenne, *Intervention in the International Court of Justice*, Dordrecht, 1993; J. M. Ruda, ‘Intervention Before the International Court of Justice’ in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 487; C. M. Chinkin, ‘Third Party Intervention Before the International Court of Justice’, 80 AJIL, 1986, p. 495; Elias, *International Court*, chapter 4, and P. Jessup, ‘Intervention in the International Court’, 75 AJIL, 1981, p. 903. See also articles 81–6 of the Rules of Court 1978.

Court itself, nor any power by which the Court can direct that third states be made a party to proceedings.²⁶⁶ However, under article 62 of the Statute of the ICJ, any state which considers that it has an interest of a legal nature which may be affected by the decision in a case, may submit a request to be permitted to intervene,²⁶⁷ while under article 63, where the construction of a convention to which states other than those concerned in the case are parties is in question,²⁶⁸ the Registrar of the Court shall notify all such states forthwith. Every state so notified has the right to intervene in the proceedings.²⁶⁹

Essentially, the Court may permit an intervention by a third party even though it be opposed by one or both of the parties to the case. The purpose of such intervention is carefully circumscribed and closely defined in terms of the protection of a state's interest of a legal nature which may be affected by a decision in an existing case, and accordingly intervention cannot be used as a substitute for contentious proceedings, which are based upon consent. Thus the intervener does not as such become a party to the case.²⁷⁰

The Court appeared to have set a fairly high threshold of permitted intervention. In the *Nuclear Tests* case,²⁷¹ Fiji sought to intervene in the dispute between France on the one hand and New Zealand and Australia on the other, but the Court postponed consideration of this and, after its judgment that the issue was moot, it was clearly unnecessary to take any further steps regarding Fiji. Malta sought to intervene in the *Tunisia/Libya Continental Shelf* case²⁷² in the light of its shelf delimitation dispute with Libya in order to submit its views to the Court. The Court felt that the real purpose of Malta's intervention was unclear and

²⁶⁶ See the *Libya/Malta* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 25; 70 ILR, p. 527, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 431; 76 ILR, p. 104.

²⁶⁷ See C. Chinkin, 'Article 62' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 1331. See also article 81 of the Rules of Court. It is for the Court itself to decide upon any request for permission to intervene: see the *Tunisia/Libya (Intervention)* case, ICJ Reports, 1981, pp. 3, 12; 62 ILR, p. 608.

²⁶⁸ See here the *SS Wimbledon* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 1 (1923), 2 AD, p. 4; the *Haya de la Torre* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, pp. 71, 76–7; 18 ILR, pp. 349, 356–7, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 215–16; 76 ILR, pp. 74–5. See also C. Chinkin, 'Article 63' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 1369.

²⁶⁹ See the *Wimbledon* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 1 (1923), pp. 9–13, and the *Haya de la Torre* case, ICJ Reports, 1951, p. 71; 18 ILR, p. 349.

²⁷⁰ *El Salvador/Honduras (Intervention)*, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 134–5; 97 ILR, p. 112. See also E. Lauterpacht, *Aspects*, pp. 26 ff.

²⁷¹ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 398. ²⁷² ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 18; 67 ILR, p. 4.

did not relate to any legal interest of its own directly in issue as between Tunisia and Libya in the proceedings or as between itself and either one of those countries.²⁷³ While Malta did have an interest similar to other states in the area in the case in question, the Court said²⁷⁴ that in order to intervene under article 62 it had to have an interest of a legal nature which might be affected by the Court's decision in the instant case.

However, the Court granted permission for the very first time in the history of both the ICJ and its predecessor to a third state intervening under article 62 of the Statute to Nicaragua in the case concerning the *Land, Island and Maritime Frontier Dispute (El Salvador/Honduras)*. The Court held unanimously that Nicaragua had demonstrated that it had an interest of a legal nature which might be affected by part²⁷⁵ of the judgment of the Chamber on the merits of the case.²⁷⁶ The intervening state does not need to demonstrate a basis of jurisdiction, since the competence of the Court is here not founded upon the consent of the parties as such but is rather derived from the consent given by the parties in becoming parties to the Court's Statute to the Court's exercise of its powers conferred by the Statute.²⁷⁷ The purpose of intervention, it was emphasised, was to protect a state's 'interest of a legal nature' that might be affected by a decision in an existing case already established between other states, the parties to the case, and not to enable a third state to 'tack on a new case'.²⁷⁸

²⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1981, pp. 3, 12; 62 ILR, pp. 612, 621.

²⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1981, p. 19; 62 ILR, p. 628. The Court also refused Italy permission to intervene under article 62 in the *Libya/Malta* case: see ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 3; 70 ILR, p. 527. The Court also refused permission to El Salvador to intervene in the *Nicaragua* case under article 63: see ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 215; 76 ILR, p. 74, inasmuch as it related to the current phase of the proceedings. The Court here more controversially also refused to hold a hearing on the issue, *ibid.*, but see Separate Opinion of five of the judges, ICJ Reports, 1984, p. 219; 76 ILR, p. 78.

²⁷⁵ I.e. concerning the legal regime of the waters within the Gulf of Fonseca only and not the other issues in dispute, such as maritime delimitations and delimitation of the land frontier between El Salvador and Honduras.

²⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1990, p. 92; 97 ILR, p. 112.

²⁷⁷ ICJ Reports, 1990, p. 133; 97 ILR, p. 254. The Court noted that 'the procedure of intervention is to ensure that a state with possibly affected interests may be permitted to intervene even though there is no jurisdictional link and it therefore cannot become a party', ICJ Reports, 1990, p. 135, 97 ILR, p. 256. In the earlier cases it was not felt necessary to decide this issue: see e.g. the *Tunisia/Libya* case, ICJ Reports, 1981, pp. 3, 20; 62 ILR, pp. 612, 629, and the *Libya/Malta* case, ICJ Reports, 1984, pp. 3, 28; 70 ILR, pp. 527, 557.

²⁷⁸ ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 133–4.

The Court in *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, repeating the formulation adopted in *El Salvador/Honduras*,²⁷⁹ stated that it followed from the juridical nature and purpose of intervention that the existence of a valid link of jurisdiction between the intended intervener and the parties was not a requirement for the success of the application. Indeed, 'the procedure of intervention is to ensure that a state with possibly affected interests may be permitted to intervene even though there is no jurisdictional link and it therefore cannot become a party'.²⁸⁰ A jurisdictional link between the intervening state and the parties to the case is, accordingly, only necessary where the former wishes actually to become a party to the case.²⁸¹

In *Indonesia/Malaysia (Philippines Intervening)*, the Court addressed the meaning of 'interest of a legal nature' and concluded that it referred not only to the *dispositif*, or the operative paragraphs, of the judgment but also to the reasons constituting the necessary steps to it.²⁸² In deciding whether to permit an intervention, the Court had to decide in relation to all the circumstances of the case, whether the legal claims which the proposed intervening state has outlined might indeed be affected by the decision in the case between the parties. The state seeking to intervene had to 'demonstrate convincingly what it asserts'²⁸³ and where the state relies on an interest of a legal nature other than in the subject matter of the case itself, it 'necessarily bears the burden of showing with a particular clarity the existence of the interest of a legal nature which it claims to have'.²⁸⁴

The Court in the merits stage of the *El Salvador/Honduras* case,²⁸⁵ noting that Nicaragua as the intervening state could not thereby as such become a party to the proceedings, concluded that that state could not therefore

²⁷⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 135. ²⁸⁰ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 1034–5.

²⁸¹ *El Salvador/Honduras (Intervention)*, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 135; 97 ILR, p. 112.

²⁸² ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 575, 596.

²⁸³ *El Salvador/Honduras (Intervention)*, ICJ Reports, 1990, pp. 92, 117–18; 97 ILR, p. 112. And, on the basis of documentary evidence, see *Indonesia/Malaysia (Philippines Intervening)*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 575, 603. As to the burden and scope of proof generally, see above, p. 1088.

²⁸⁴ *Indonesia/Malaysia (Philippines Intervening)*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 575, 598. The Court concluded that the Philippines had shown in the instruments it had invoked 'no legal interest on its part that might be affected by reasoning or interpretations of the Court in the main proceedings, either because they form no part of the arguments of Indonesia and Malaysia or because their respective reliance on them does not bear on the issue of retention of sovereignty by the Sultanate of Sulu as described by the Philippines in respect of its claim in North Borneo', *ibid.*, pp. 603–4.

²⁸⁵ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 351, 609; 97 ILR, pp. 266, 525.

become bound by the judgment.²⁸⁶ The intervener upon obtaining permission from the Court to intervene acquires the right to be heard, but not the obligation of being bound by the decision.²⁸⁷ Since neither of the parties had given any indication of consent to Nicaragua being recognised to have any status which would enable it to rely on the judgment,²⁸⁸ it followed that the decision of the Court could not bind Nicaragua and thus was not *res judicata* for it.²⁸⁹

Applications to intervene have to be filed 'as soon as possible, and not later than the closure of the written proceedings'.²⁹⁰

*Remedies*²⁹¹

There has been relatively little analysis of the full range of the remedial powers of the Court.²⁹² In the main, an applicant state will seek a declaratory judgment that the respondent has breached international law. Such declarations may extend to provision for future conduct as well as characterisation of past conduct. Requests for declaratory judgments may also be coupled with a request for reparation for losses suffered as a consequence of the illegal activities or damages for injury of various kinds, including non-material damage.²⁹³ Such requests for damages may include not only direct injury to the state in question but also with regard to its citizens or their property.²⁹⁴ The Court may also interpret a relevant international

²⁸⁶ This was partly because article 59 of the Statute of the Court refers to the binding effect of a judgment as between the parties only, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 609; 97 ILR, p. 525.

²⁸⁷ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 610; 97 ILR, p. 526.

²⁸⁸ Since the consent of the existing parties is required for an intervener to become itself a party to the case, *ibid.*

²⁸⁹ *Ibid.*

²⁹⁰ Rule 81(1). See also *Indonesia/Malaysia (Philippines Intervening)*, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 575, 584 ff.

²⁹¹ See also above, chapter 14, p. 800.

²⁹² But see e.g. Gray, *Judicial Remedies*, and I. Brownlie, 'Remedies in the International Court of Justice' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 557. Note that the Court has stated that where jurisdiction exists over a dispute on a particular matter, no separate basis for jurisdiction is required by the Court to consider the remedies a party has requested for the breach of the obligation: see the *LaGrand (Germany v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 485; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 24, and the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 33; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 136–7.

²⁹³ See e.g. the *I'm Alone* case, 3 RIAA, 1935, p. 1609 and the *Rainbow Warrior* case, 74 ILR, pp. 241, 274 and 82 ILR, pp. 499, 575. See also *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 279.

²⁹⁴ Note that the Bosnian application to the Court in the *Application of the Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Yugoslavia)* case included a claim 'to pay Bosnia and Herzegovina, in

legal provision so that individual rights as well as state rights are recognised in a particular case, thus opening the door to a claim for damages on behalf of the former by the national state where there has been a breach of such rights.²⁹⁵ Reparation may conceivably extend to full restitution, or *restitutio in integrum*.²⁹⁶ The Court in the *Great Belt* case allowed for the possibility of an order for the modification or dismantling of disputed works.²⁹⁷ The question of restitution also arose in the *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Belgium* case, where the Court concluded that Belgium was under an obligation to cancel the arrest warrant concerned on the basis of the need for restitution.²⁹⁸

The issue of reparation was also raised in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case,²⁹⁹ where the Court concluded that both parties had committed internationally wrongful acts and that therefore both parties were entitled both to receive and to pay compensation. In the light of such ‘intersecting wrongs’, the Court declared that the issue of compensation could be satisfactorily resolved in the framework of an overall settlement by the mutual renunciation or cancellation of all financial claims and counter-claims.³⁰⁰ The parties may also request the Court’s assistance with regard to matters yet to be decided between the parties. Accordingly, in the *Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* case, the Court, having reached its decision on the past conduct of the parties, proceeded in its judgment to exercise its prescriptive competence, that is ‘to determine what the future conduct of the Parties should be’.³⁰¹

its own right and as *parens patriae* for its citizens, reparations for damages to persons and property as well as to the Bosnian economy and environment caused by the foregoing violations of international law in a sum to be determined by the Court’, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 3, 7; 95 ILR, p. 1.

²⁹⁵ See the *LaGrand* case, ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 514 ff.; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 53, paras. 3 and 4 of the *dispositif* contained in paragraph 128 of the judgment.

²⁹⁶ See the *Chorzów Factory* case, PCIJ, Series A, No. 13, and the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 4; 61 ILR, p. 502, for possible authority for such a power. See also Gray, *Remedies*, pp. 95–6.

²⁹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1991, pp. 12, 19; 94 ILR, p. 446.

²⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 3, 31–2; 128 ILR, pp. 60, 87–8. But see the Joint Separate Opinion of Judges Higgins, Kooijmans and Buergenthal, which expressed the view that ‘As soon as he ceased to be Minister for Foreign Affairs, the illegal consequences attaching to the warrant also ceased’, *ibid.*, pp. 89–90. See also the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Van den Wyngaert, *ibid.*, p. 183.

²⁹⁹ ICJ Reports, 1997, pp. 7, 81 ff.; 116 ILR, p. 1. ³⁰⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 7, 80–1

³⁰¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 75–6. The Court concluded that, ‘It is for the Parties themselves to find an agreed solution that takes account of the objectives of the Treaty, which must be pursued in a joint and integrated way, as well as the norms of international environmental law and the principles of the law of international watercourses’, *ibid.*, p. 78.

The Court may also refer to, and thus incorporate in its judgment, a statement of one of the parties, and in effect treat it as a binding unilateral statement. In the *LaGrand* case, the Court noted the ‘substantial activities’ that the US declared that it was carrying out in order to comply with the Convention in question and concluded that such behaviour ‘expresses a commitment to follow through with the efforts in this regard’ and must be regarded as meeting Germany’s request for a general assurance of non-repetition.³⁰² In *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, the Court referred, both in the text of its judgment and in the *dispositif*, to a statement of the Cameroonian Agent as to the treatment of Nigerians living in his country and stated that it took note with satisfaction of the ‘commitment thus undertaken’.³⁰³

The Court took a further step when, in the *LaGrand* case, it referred to the ‘obligation . . . to review’ of the US in cases of conviction and death sentence imposed upon a foreign national whose rights under the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations had not been respected,³⁰⁴ while in operative paragraph (7) of the *dispositif*, the Court, by a majority of fourteen votes to one, concluded that in such situations, ‘the United States of America, by means of its own choosing, shall allow the review and reconsideration of the conviction and sentence by taking account of the violation of the rights set forth in that Convention’.³⁰⁵

Where the Court reserves the question of reparation to a later stage of proceedings, neither party may call in question such findings of the Court in the earlier judgment as have become *res judicata* and seek to re-litigate these findings. Where the parties seek to negotiate a resolution by direct negotiations, the Court has emphasised that such negotiations have to be

³⁰² ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 512–13 and 513–14; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 50–1 and 51–2. See also the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 69; 134 ILR, pp. 120, 172.

³⁰³ ICJ Reports, 2002, pp. 303, 452 and 457, para. V(C) of the *dispositif*.

³⁰⁴ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 514; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 51–2. See also above, chapter 13, p. 773.

³⁰⁵ ICJ Reports, 2001, pp. 466, 514 ff.; 134 ILR, pp. 1, 51 ff. But see R. Y. Jennings, ‘The *LaGrand* Case’, 1 *The Law and Practice of International Courts and Tribunals*, 2002, pp. 1, 40. See also the *Avena (Mexico v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 12, 69–70, where the Court emphasised as an ‘important point’ that it had been addressing issues of principle with regard to the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations and that its comments with regard to Mexican nationals, the subject of the application, could not be taken to mean that the principles did not apply to all foreign nationals in the US in a similar position. The Court also concluded that it was for the United States to find an appropriate remedy with regard to the individuals in question having the nature of review and reconsideration according to the criteria indicated in the judgment, *ibid.*, p. 70. See as to the response of the US and relevant US case-law, above, chapter 4, p. 164, n. 178. See also the Request for the Interpretation of the *Avena* judgment, Provisional Measures, ICJ Reports, Order of 16 July 2008.

conducted in good faith and in order to find an agreed solution based on the findings of the judgment of the Court in question.³⁰⁶

Enforcement

Once given, the judgment of the Court under article 60 is final and without appeal. Although it has no binding force except between the parties and in respect of the particular case under article 59, such decisions are often very influential in the evolution of new rules of international law.³⁰⁷ The Court itself is not concerned with compliance and takes the view that ‘once the Court has found that a state has entered into a commitment concerning its future conduct it is not the Court’s function to contemplate that it will not comply with it’.³⁰⁸

Under article 94 of the UN Charter, each member state undertakes to comply with the decision of the Court in any case to which it is a party and if this does not occur, the other party may have recourse to the Security Council which may make recommendations or take binding decisions. Examples of non-compliance would include Albania in the *Corfu Channel* case,³⁰⁹ Iceland in the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case³¹⁰ and Iran in the *Iranian Hostages* case.³¹¹ However, since the 1990s the record of compliance has been generally good. For example, despite initial reservations, both Libya³¹² and Nigeria³¹³ accepted the judgments of the Court in favour of their opponents in the litigation in question. The political costs of non-compliance have to be taken into account by potentially recalcitrant states.³¹⁴

³⁰⁶ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 257.

³⁰⁷ See generally Shahabuddeen, *Precedent*.

³⁰⁸ *The Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 477.

³⁰⁹ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4; 16 AD, p. 155. ³¹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 3; 55 ILR, p. 238.

³¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 3; 61 ILR, p. 530. During the 1970s and part of the 1980s there was reluctance by some respondent states to appear before the Court at all: see e.g. the *Fisheries Jurisdiction* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 3; 55 ILR, p. 238; the *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 253; 57 ILR, p. 350; the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 3; 61 ILR, p. 530 and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14. See also article 53 of the Statute and H. Thirlway, *Non-Appearance before the International Court of Justice*, Cambridge, 1985; G. G. Fitzmaurice, ‘The Problem of the “Non-appearing” Defendant Government’, 51 BYIL, 1980, p. 89, and J. Elkind, *Non-Appearance before the ICJ, Functional and Comparative Analysis*, Dordrecht, 1984.

³¹² See the *Libya/ Chad* case, ICJ Reports, 1994, p. 40. See also above, chapter 18, p. 1011.

³¹³ *Cameroon v. Nigeria*, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 303.

³¹⁴ See e.g. C. Paulson, ‘Compliance with Final Judgments of the International Court of Justice since 1987’, 98 AJIL, 2004, p. 434, and A. P. Llamzon, ‘Jurisdiction and Compliance in Recent Decisions of the International Court of Justice’, 18 EJIL, 2007, p. 815.

*Application for interpretation of a judgment*³¹⁵

Article 60 of the Statute provides that, 'The judgment is final and without appeal. In the event of dispute as to the meaning or scope of the judgment, the Court shall construe it upon the request of any party.' Rule 98(1) states that in the event of dispute as to the meaning or scope of a judgment any party may make a request for its interpretation. The object of the request must be solely to obtain clarification of the meaning and the scope of what the Court has decided with binding force and not to obtain an answer to questions not so decided.³¹⁶ Accordingly, a request for interpretation must relate to the operative part of the judgment and not the reasons for the judgment, unless these are inseparable from the operative part.³¹⁷ The need to avoid impairing the finality, and delaying the implementation, of judgments means that the question of the admissibility of the request needs 'particular attention'.³¹⁸

In addition, it is necessary that there should exist a dispute as to the meaning or scope of the judgment as to which see the Request for the Interpretation of the *Avena* judgment, Provisional Measures, order of 16 July 2008, paras. 44 ff.).

*Application for revision of a judgment*³¹⁹

Under article 61 of the Statute, an application for revision of a judgment may only be made when based upon the discovery of some fact of such a nature as to be a decisive factor, which fact was, when the judgment was given, unknown to the Court and also to the party claiming revision,

³¹⁵ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, pp. 1616 ff., and Rosenne, *Interpretation, Revision and Other Recourse from International Judgments and Awards*, Leiden, 2007, and K. H. Kaikobad, *Interpretation and Revision of International Boundary Decisions*, Cambridge, 2007, part III. See also A. Zimmermann and T. Thienel, 'Article 60' in Zimmermann et al., *Statute of the International Court*, p. 1275.

³¹⁶ See *Request for Interpretation of the Judgment of 20 November 1950 in the Asylum case*, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 402; 17 ILR, p. 339 and *Application for Revision and Interpretation of the Judgment of 24 February 1982 in the Case Concerning the Continental Shelf (Tunisia/Libya)*, ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 191, 214–20; 81 ILR, pp. 420, 447.

³¹⁷ See *Request for Interpretation of the Judgment of 11 June 1998 (Cameroon v. Nigeria)*, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 31, 35.

³¹⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 36. The Court noted that, 'The language and structure of article 60 of the Statute reflect the primacy of the principle of *res judicata*. That principle must be maintained', *ibid.* As to *res judicata*, see above, p. 101.

³¹⁹ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, pp. 1623 ff., and Rosenne, *Interpretation*, chapter 6, and Kaikobad, *Interpretation and Revision*, part IV. See also A. Zimmermann and R. Geiss, 'Article 61' in Zimmermann et al., *Statute of the International Court*, p. 1299.

provided that such ignorance was not due to negligence. The application must be made within six months of the discovery of the new fact and within ten years of the date of the judgment. In the *Application for Revision and Interpretation of the Judgment of 24 February 1982 in the Case Concerning the Continental Shelf (Tunisia/Libya)*,³²⁰ the Court decided that the 'new fact' in question, namely the text of a resolution of the Libyan Council of Ministers of 28 March 1968 setting out the western boundary of the Libyan oil concessions in the first sector of the delimitation, was a fact that could have been discovered through the application of normal diligence. If Tunisia was ignorant of the facts, it was due to its own negligence.³²¹ In addition, it could not be said that the new facts alleged were of such a nature as to be a decisive factor as required by article 61.³²² In the *Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 July 1996 Concerning Application of the Genocide Convention (Preliminary Objections)*, the Court noted that the first stage of the procedure was to examine the question of admissibility of the request.³²³ The Court emphasised that article 61 required that the application for revision be based upon the discovery of some fact which was unknown when the judgment was given. Thus the fact must have been in existence at the date of the judgment and discovered subsequently. A fact occurring several years after the judgment would not be regarded as 'new'.³²⁴ Drawing legal consequences from post-judgment facts or reinterpreting a legal situation *ex post facto* would not fall within the terms of article 61. In the *Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 September 1992 Concerning the El Salvador/Honduras (Nicaragua Intervening) Case*,³²⁵ El Salvador sought revision of one sector of the land boundary between it and Honduras that had been determined by the Court in the earlier judgment. The Court detailed the requirements of article 61,³²⁶

³²⁰ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 191, 198–214; 81 ILR, p. 431.

³²¹ ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 206–7; 81 ILR, p. 439.

³²² ICJ Reports, 1985, pp. 213–14; 81 ILR, p. 446.

³²³ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 7, 11. See also the *Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 September 1992 Concerning the El Salvador/Honduras (Nicaragua Intervening) Case*, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 392, 398. The latter case is the first article 61 judgment by a chamber. See e.g. M. N. Shaw, 'Application for Revision of the Judgment of 11 September 1992', 54 ICLQ, 2005, p. 999.

³²⁴ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 7, 30. ³²⁵ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 392, 398–9.

³²⁶ The application should be based upon the 'discovery' of a 'fact'; the fact the discovery of which is relied on must be 'of such a nature as to be a decisive factor'; the fact should have been 'unknown' to the Court and to the party claiming revision when the judgment was given; ignorance of this fact must not be 'due to negligence'; and the application for revision must be 'made at latest within six months of the discovery of the new fact' and before ten years have elapsed from the date of the judgment.

and held that each of the conditions laid down in the provision had to be fulfilled, otherwise the application would be dismissed.³²⁷

Examination of a situation after the judgment

The Court may have the competence to re-examine a situation dealt with by a previous decision where the terms of that decision so provide. This is likely to be rare for it runs the risk of allowing the parties to re-litigate an issue already decided simply because some of the circumstances have changed. In the *Request for an Examination of the Situation in Accordance with Paragraph 63 of the Court's Judgment of 20 December 1974 in the Nuclear Tests (New Zealand v. France) Case*,³²⁸ the Court was asked to act in accordance with paragraph 63 of its 1974 decision in the light of further proposed French nuclear tests in the South Pacific. Paragraph 63 had noted that 'if the basis of this Judgment were to be affected, the Applicant could request an examination of the situation in accordance with the provisions of the Statute'.³²⁹ The 1974 judgment had concluded that there was no need for a decision on New Zealand's claims with regard to French nuclear testing as France had undertaken not to carry out any further atmospheric nuclear testing.

The Court implicitly accepted that 'a special procedure' in the sense of a re-examination of a situation in the light of changed circumstances could be established as a result of the terms of the original decision which did not amount to either an interpretation of the judgment under article 60 or a revision of the judgment under article 61.³³⁰ Such a procedure would in fact have the aim not of seeking changes in the original judgment, but rather of preserving it intact faced with an apparent challenge to it by one of the parties at a later date. As Judge Weeramantry noted, '[t]he Court used its undoubted powers of regulating its own procedure to devise a procedure *sui generis*'.³³¹ However, in the instant case, the Court found that the basis of its 1974 judgment was a French undertaking not to conduct any further atmospheric nuclear tests and that therefore it was only a resumption of nuclear testing in the atmosphere that would affect the

³²⁷ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 392, 399 and 404.

³²⁸ ICJ Reports, 1995, p. 288; 106 ILR, p. 1. ³²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1974, p. 477.

³³⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 303–4. Judge Weeramantry noted that the request for an examination of the situation was 'probably without precedent in the annals of the Court' and one that did not fit in with any of the standard applications recognised by the Rules of the Court for revision or interpretation of a judgment, *ibid.*, p. 320.

³³¹ *Ibid.*, p. 320.

basis of that judgment and that had not occurred.³³² Accordingly, New Zealand's request for an examination of the situation was rejected.

*The advisory jurisdiction of the Court*³³³

In addition to having the capacity to decide disputes between states, the ICJ may give advisory opinions. Article 65 of the Statute declares that 'the Court may give an advisory opinion on any legal question at the request of whatever body may be authorised by or in accordance with the Charter of the United Nations to make such a request', while article 96 of the Charter notes that as well as the General Assembly and Security Council, other organs of the UN and specialised agencies where so authorised by the Assembly may request such opinions on legal questions arising within the scope of their activities.³³⁴

Unlike contentious cases, the purpose of the Court's advisory jurisdiction is not to settle, at least directly or as such, inter-state disputes, but rather to 'offer legal advice to the organs and institutions requesting the opinion'.³³⁵ Accordingly, the fact that the question put to the Court does not relate to a specific dispute does not affect the competence of the

³³² *Ibid.*, pp. 305–6. France was proposing to undertake a series of underground nuclear tests. This it eventually did.

³³³ See e.g. Rosenne, *Law and Practice*, vol. III, chapter 30; D. Negulesco, 'L'Évolution de la Procédure des Avis Consultatifs de la Cour Permanente de Justice Internationale', 57 HR, 1936, p. 1; K. Keith, *The Extent of the Advisory Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice*, Leiden, 1971; M. Pomerance, *The Advisory Jurisdiction of the International Court in the League and UN Eras*, Baltimore, 1973; D. Pratap, *The Advisory Jurisdiction of the International Court*, Oxford, 1972; D. Greig, 'The Advisory Jurisdiction of the International Court and the Settlement of Disputes Between States', 15 ICLQ, 1966, p. 325; R. Higgins, 'A Comment on the Current Health of Advisory Opinions' in Lowe and Fitzmaurice, *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice*, p. 567; G. Abi-Saab, 'On Discretion: Reflections on the Nature of the Consultative Function of the International Court of Justice' in *International Law, the International Court of Justice and Nuclear Weapons* (eds. L. Boisson de Chazournes and P. Sands), Cambridge, 1999, p. 36, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 907.

³³⁴ See J. Frowein and K. Oellers-Frahm, 'Article 65' in Zimmermann *et al.*, *Statute of the International Court*, p. 1401, and K. Oellers-Frahm, 'Article 96 UN Charter', *ibid.*, p. 181. See further as to advisory opinions which are to be recognised as binding, below, chapter 23, p. 1304.

³³⁵ The *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 236; 110 ILR, p. 163. In the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 162–3; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 80, the Court noted that 'advisory opinions have the purpose of furnishing to the requesting organs the elements of law necessary for them in their action'. It was then for the requesting organ to draw conclusions from the Court's findings.

Court, nor does it matter that the question posed is abstract in nature.³³⁶ Similarly, the fact that a legal question also has political aspects will not deprive the Court of its jurisdiction, nor of its function, which is to assess the legality of the possible conduct of states with regard to obligations imposed upon them by international law.³³⁷ In addressing the question put to the Court by a political organ of the UN, the Court will not have regard to the origins or the political history of the request nor to the distribution of votes with regard to the relevant resolution. The fact that any answer given by the Court might become a factor in relation to the subject matter of the request in other fora is also irrelevant in determining the appropriate response of the Court to the request for the advisory opinion.³³⁸ Further, the lack of clarity in the drafting of the question would not deprive the Court of jurisdiction. Such uncertainty could be clarified by the Court as a matter of interpretation. Indeed, the Court may 'broaden, interpret and even reformulate the questions put', seeing its role essentially as identifying the relevant principles and rules, interpreting them and applying them, 'thus offering a reply to the question posed based on law'.³³⁹

Originally, the Court took the broad view that it would not exercise its advisory jurisdiction in respect of a central issue in a dispute between the parties where one of these parties refused to take part in the proceedings.³⁴⁰ However, the scope of this principle, which was intended to reflect the sovereignty and independence of states, has been reduced in a number of subsequent cases before the Court, so that the presumption is that the Court, subject to jurisdictional issues, would answer a request for an advisory opinion. In the *Interpretation of Peace Treaties* case,³⁴¹ for example, which concerned the interpretation of the 1947 peace agreements with

³³⁶ The *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 236; 110 ILR, p. 163. See also the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 154; 129 ILR, p. 37.

³³⁷ The *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 234 and the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 155 and 159–60.

³³⁸ The *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 236.

³³⁹ The *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 153–4 and 160. See also the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 234.

³⁴⁰ See the *Eastern Carelia* case, PCIJ, Series B, No. 5, 1923; 2 AD, p. 394. Note that the Court dealt with the consent of an interested party as a matter not of the competence or jurisdiction of the Court, but of the judicial propriety of giving an opinion: see the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 25 and the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 157–8.

³⁴¹ ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 65, 71; 17 ILR, pp. 331, 335.

Bulgaria, Hungary and Romania, it was stressed that whereas the basis of the Court's jurisdiction in contentious proceedings rested upon the consent of the parties to the dispute, the same did not apply with respect to advisory opinions. Such opinions were not binding upon anyone and were given not to the particular states but to the organs which requested them. The Court declared that 'the reply of the Court, itself an "organ of the United Nations", represents its participation in the activities of the organisation, and in principle should not be refused'. Similarly, the Court emphasised in the *Reservations to the Genocide Convention* case, that the object of advisory opinions was 'to guide the United Nations in respect of its own action'. Thus, the Court would lean towards exercising its jurisdiction, despite the objections of a concerned party, where it would be providing guidance for an international body with respect to the application of an international treaty. In fact, the Court has said that only 'compelling reasons' should lead the Court to refuse to give an opinion on grounds of propriety as distinct from grounds of lack of jurisdiction.³⁴²

In the *Western Sahara* case,³⁴³ the ICJ gave an advisory opinion as regards the nature of the territory and the legal ties therewith of Morocco and Mauritania at the time of colonisation, notwithstanding the objections of Spain, the administering power. The Court distinguished the case from the *Eastern Carelia* dispute on a number of grounds, the most important being that the dispute in the *Western Sahara* case had arisen within the framework of the General Assembly's decolonisation proceedings and the object of the request for the advisory opinion (by the Assembly) was to obtain from the Court an opinion which would aid the Assembly in the decolonisation of the territory.³⁴⁴ Accordingly, the matter fell within the *Peace Treaties/Reservations* cases category of opinions to guide the UN.³⁴⁵ The Court noted that it was the fact that inadequate material was available

³⁴² See e.g. the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 235 and the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 156 and 164.

³⁴³ ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 12; 59 ILR, p. 14.

³⁴⁴ ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 24–5; 59 ILR, p. 42. It was also noted that in the *Eastern Carelia* case, Russia had objected to the Court's jurisdiction and was neither a member of the League (at that time) nor a party to the Statute of the PCIJ, whereas in the *Western Sahara* case, Spain was a UN member and thus a party to the Statute of the ICJ. It had therefore given its consent in general to the exercise by the Court of its advisory jurisdiction. Further, Spain's objection was to the restriction of the reference to the Court to the historical aspects of the Sahara question, *ibid*.

³⁴⁵ The Court emphasised that the central core of the issue was not a dispute between Spain and Morocco, but rather the nature of Moroccan (and Mauritanian) rights at the time of colonisation, ICJ Reports, 1975, p. 27; 59 ILR, p. 44.

for an opinion that impelled the PCIJ to refuse to consider the *Eastern Carelia* issue, notwithstanding that this arose because of a refusal of one of the parties to participate in the proceedings. In the *Western Sahara* case, an abundance of documentary material was available to the Court.³⁴⁶ It is therefore evident that the general rule expressed in the *Eastern Carelia* case has been to a very large extent weakened.³⁴⁷ However, it would not be correct to say that it has been entirely eroded. There may indeed be circumstances where the lack of consent of an interested party may render the giving of an advisory opinion incompatible with the judicial character of the Court.³⁴⁸ Further, the need to have 'sufficient information and evidence' to enable the Court to reach a judicial conclusion still remains.³⁴⁹ However, the primary criterion appears to be whether the request for an advisory opinion is made with the aim of obtaining assistance in the proper exercise of the functions of the requesting organ. This poses the question as to the proper exercise of functions.³⁵⁰

In examining the question posed by the requesting organ, the Court will operate on the same basis as in contentious cases with regard to the nature of evidence, as well as the burden and standard of proof,³⁵¹ regard being had to the different purposes of contentious and advisory proceedings. In addition, the Court has a certain latitude in advisory proceedings as distinct from contentious proceedings, since it is not as such determining the rights and duties of the parties to the case but providing advice to the requesting organ as to the legal issues comprised in the question asked. That would seem to import a responsibility to provide 'a balanced opinion', taking account of the relevant context, particularly

³⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 28–9; 59 ILR, p. 45. See also the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 161–2, where the Court noted the detailed information available to it from UN and other sources.

³⁴⁷ See also the *Difference Relating to Immunity from Legal Process* case, ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 62, 78–9; 121 ILR, p. 405 and the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 156–7, where the Court concluded that it had a duty to satisfy itself each time it was asked to give an advisory opinion as to the propriety of the exercise of its judicial function, by reference to the criterion of 'compelling reasons', *ibid.*, p. 157.

³⁴⁸ See the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 25. See also e.g. the Separate Opinion of Judge Higgins in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 209–10.

³⁴⁹ See the *Western Sahara* case, ICJ Reports, 1975, pp. 12, 28–9. ³⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 210.

³⁵¹ See above, p. 1088. Note that in her Separate Opinion in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 211, 213 and 214, Judge Higgins declared *inter alia* that she found the history of the Arab–Israeli dispute as recounted by the Court 'neither balanced nor satisfactory'. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Kooijmans, *ibid.*, p. 220.

where a dispute between states is apparent in the situation in the sense of referring to all relevant legal issues.³⁵²

With regard to the jurisdiction of the Court to give an opinion, article 96(2) of the Charter provides that, in addition to the Security Council and the General Assembly:

[o]ther organs of the United Nations and specialised agencies which may at any time be so authorised by the General Assembly, may also request advisory opinions of the Court on legal questions arising within the scope of their activities.

The Court in the request for an advisory opinion by the World Health Organisation on the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict*³⁵³ found that three conditions were required in order to found the jurisdiction of the Court in such circumstances: first, that the specialised agency in question must be duly authorised by the General Assembly to request opinions from the Court; secondly, that the opinion requested was on a legal question, and thirdly, that the question must be one arising within the scope of activities of the requesting agency.³⁵⁴ The Court examined the functions of the WHO in the light of its Constitution³⁵⁵ and subsequent practice, and concluded that the organisation was authorised to deal with the effects on health of the use of nuclear weapons and of other hazardous activities and to take preventive measures with the aim of protecting the health of populations in the event of such weapons being used or such activities engaged in. However, the question put to the Court, it was emphasised, concerned not the effects of the use of nuclear weapons on health, but the legality of the use of such weapons in view of their health and environmental effects. Accordingly, the Court held that the question posed in the request for the advisory opinion did not arise within the scope of activities of the organisation as defined in its Constitution.³⁵⁶

³⁵² ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 136. See also the Separate Opinion of Judge Kooijmans, *ibid.*, p. 223 and the Separate Opinion of Judge Owada, *ibid.*, pp. 267 ff. See generally *Agora*, 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 1.

³⁵³ ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 66.

³⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 71–2. See also the *Application for Review of Judgment No. 273 (Mortished)* case, ICJ Reports, 1982, pp. 325, 333–4; 69 ILR, pp. 330, 344–5.

³⁵⁵ See article 2(a) to (v) of the WHO Constitution adopted on 22 July 1946 and amended in 1960, 1975, 1977, 1984 and 1994.

³⁵⁶ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 75 ff.; 110 ILR, p. 1.

The advisory opinion in the *Difference Relating to Immunity from Legal Process* case was the first time the Court had received a request under article VIII, section 30, of the General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the UN, 1946, which allowed for recourse to the Court for an advisory opinion where a difference has arisen between the UN and a member state. The particular interest in this provision is that it stipulates that the opinion given by the Court 'shall be accepted as decisive by the parties'. The importance of advisory opinions delivered by the Court is therefore not to be underestimated.³⁵⁷

The role of the Court

There are a variety of other issues currently facing the Court. As far as access to it is concerned, it has, for example, been suggested that the power to request advisory opinions should be given to the UN Secretary-General³⁵⁸ and to states and national courts,³⁵⁹ while the possibility of permitting international organisations to become parties to contentious proceedings has been raised.³⁶⁰ Perhaps more centrally, the issue of the relationship between the Court and the political organs of the UN, particularly the Security Council, has been raised anew as a consequence of the revitalisation of the latter in recent years and its increasing activity.³⁶¹ The Court possesses no express power of judicial review of UN activities, although it is the principal judicial organ of the organisation and has in that capacity dealt on a number of occasions with the meaning of UN

³⁵⁷ Among other influential Advisory Opinions delivered by the Court are the *Reparations* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318; the *Admissions* case, ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 57; 15 AD, p. 333, and the *Certain Expenses* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281. See also the *WHO–Egypt* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 73; 62 ILR, p. 451; the *Administrative Tribunal* cases, ICJ Reports, 1973, p. 166; 54 ILR, p. 381; ICJ Reports, 1982, p. 325; 69 ILR, p. 330; ICJ Reports, 1987, p. 18; 83 ILR, p. 296 and the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate* case, ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 12; 82 ILR, p. 225.

³⁵⁸ See e.g. Higgins, 'Current Health', p. 569, and S. Schwebel, 'Authorising the Secretary-General of the United Nations to Request Advisory Opinions', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 4. See also UN Secretary-General, *Agenda for Peace*, New York, 1992, A/47/277, para. 38.

³⁵⁹ See e.g. S. Schwebel, 'Preliminary Rulings by the International Court of Justice at the Instance of National Courts', 28 Va. JIL, 1988, p. 495, and S. Rosenne, 'Preliminary Rulings by the International Court of Justice at the Instance of National Courts: A Reply', 29 Va. JIL, 1989, p. 40.

³⁶⁰ See e.g. D. Bowett *et al.*, *The International Court of Justice: Process, Practice and Procedures*, London, 1997.

³⁶¹ See e.g. M. Bedjaoui, *The New World Order and the Security Council*, Dordrecht, 1994. See also below, chapter 22, p. 1268.

resolutions and organs.³⁶² In the *Lockerbie* case,³⁶³ the Court was faced with a new issue, that of examining the relative status of treaty obligations and binding decisions adopted by the Security Council. In its decision on provisional measures, the Court accepted that by virtue of article 103 of the UN Charter obligations under the Charter (including decisions of the Security Council imposing sanctions) prevailed over obligations contained in other international agreements.³⁶⁴

The decisions and advisory opinions of the ICJ (and PCIJ before it) have played a vital part in the evolution of international law.³⁶⁵ Further, the increasing number of applications in recent years have emphasised that the Court is now playing a more central role within the international legal system than thought possible two decades ago.³⁶⁶ Of course, many of the most serious of international conflicts may never come before the Court, due to a large extent to the unwillingness of states to place their vital interests in the hands of binding third-party decision-making, while the growth of other means of regional and global resolution of disputes cannot be ignored.

³⁶² See e.g. the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318, concerning the legal personality of the UN, the *Certain Expenses* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281, by virtue of which the UN was able to take action which did not amount to enforcement action outside of the framework of the Security Council, thus enabling the creation of peacekeeping missions, and the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, p. 56; 94 ILR, p. 2, recognising the succession of the UN to the League of Nations with regard to mandated territories and enshrining the principle of self-determination within international law. See also the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 103–4; 105 ILR, p. 226.

³⁶³ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 3; 94 ILR, p. 478.

³⁶⁴ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 15; 94 ILR, p. 498.

³⁶⁵ Indeed the importance of the pleadings in the evolution of international law has been noted: see e.g. P. Sands, 'Pleadings and the Pursuit of International Law' in *Legal Visions of the 21st Century* (eds. A. Anghie and G. Sturges), The Hague, 1998, while dissenting opinions may also be significant: see e.g. the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Franck in the *Indonesia/Malaysia* case, ICJ Reports, 2002, p. 3. See also, as to the international bar, Shaw, 'A Practical Look at the International Court of Justice' in Evans, *Remedies*, pp. 11, 12 ff.; A. Watts, 'Enhancing the Effectiveness of Procedures of International Dispute Settlement', 5 *Max Planck Yearbook of United Nations Law*, 2001, pp. 21, 24 ff., and the Declaration of Judge Ad Hoc Cot in the '*Grand Prince*' case, International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea, 2001, p. 3; 125 ILR, p. 272.

³⁶⁶ See e.g. K. Highet, 'The Peace Palace Hots Up: The World Court in Business Again?', 85 *AJIL*, 1991, p. 646. See also e.g. A. Pellet, 'Strengthening the Role of the International Court of Justice as the Principal Judicial Organ of the United Nations', 3 *The Law and Practice of International Courts and Tribunals*, 2004, p. 159; P. Kooijmans, 'The ICJ in the 21st Century: Judicial Restraint, Judicial Activism, or Proactive Judicial Policy', 56 *ICLQ*, 2007, p. 741, and R. Higgins, 'A Babel of Judicial Voices? Ruminations from the Bench', 55 *ICLQ*, 2006, p. 791.

Proliferation of courts and tribunals

The proliferation of judicial organs on the international and regional level has been one characteristic of recent decades.³⁶⁷ It has reflected the increasing scope and utilisation of international law on the one hand and an increasing sense of the value of resolving disputes by impartial third-party mechanisms on the other. It is now possible to identify an accepted international practice of turning to such mechanisms as a reasonably effective way of settling differences in a manner that is reflective of the rule of law and the growth of international co-operation. The importance of this practice to the evolution of international law is self-evident, as the development of legal rules and the creation of legal institutions with accompanying compulsory adjudication go hand in hand.

The European Court of Justice, the European Court of Human Rights, the new African Court of Human Rights and the Inter-American Court of Human Rights have been joined by the two Tribunals examining war crimes in Bosnia and Rwanda and by the new International Criminal Court.³⁶⁸ In addition, the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea is in operation³⁶⁹ and a variety of other relevant mechanisms have arisen, ranging from the World Trade Organisation's Dispute Settlement provisions creating an Appellate Body³⁷⁰ to administrative tribunals and economic courts.³⁷¹ Again, the work of arbitration tribunals, whether established to hear one case or a series of similar cases, is of direct relevance.

It is unclear how this may impinge upon the work of the International Court in the long run. Some take the view that proliferation will lead to inconsistency and confusion, others that it underlines the vigour and

³⁶⁷ See e.g. S. Rosenne, 'The Perplexities of Modern International Law', 291 HR, 2002, pp. 13, 125; J. I. Charney, 'The Implications of Expanding International Dispute Settlement Systems: The 1982 Convention on the Law of the Sea', 90 AJIL, 1996, p. 69, and Charney, 'The Multiplicity of International Tribunals and Universality of International Law', 271 HR, 1998, p. 101; Oda, 'The International Court of Justice from the Bench', 244 HR, 1993 VII, pp. 9, 139 ff.

³⁶⁸ See further above, chapters 6, 7 and 8. See also with regard to the fragmentation of international law generally, above, chapter 2, p. 65.

³⁶⁹ See above, chapter 11, p. 638. ³⁷⁰ See above, chapter 18, p. 1036.

³⁷¹ See e.g. the Court of Justice of the European Communities, the Economic Court of the Commonwealth of Independent States, the Court of Justice of the Common Market of Eastern and Southern Africa, and the Court of Justice of the African Union: see Y. Shany, *The Competing Jurisdictions of International Courts and Tribunals*, Oxford, 2003, p. 5. See further as to economic courts and tribunals, above, chapter 18, p. 1034, and as to non-compliance mechanisms in the field of environmental law, above, chapter 15.

relevance of international law in an era of globalisation.³⁷² Evidence to date suggests the latter rather than the former. Inconsistency may sometimes flow from the subject matter of the dispute or the different functions of the courts in question, but it is not necessarily fatal to the development of international law. Of particular note, and only partly because it is somewhat exceptional, has been the difference of view between the International Court on the one hand and the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia and the European Court of Human Rights on the other as to the test of control for the responsibility of a state with regard to the activities of non-state organs over which influence is exercised.³⁷³ The courts and tribunals are now regularly referring to each other's decisions,³⁷⁴ and some issues of international law, such as treaty interpretation principles, are regularly discussed in a range of courts and tribunals.³⁷⁵ It is also true that the same situation may arise before two or more dispute settlement mechanisms.³⁷⁶

³⁷² See e.g. G. Guillaume, 'The Future of International Judicial Institutions', 44 ICLQ, 1995, p. 848; S. Rosenne, 'Establishing the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea', 89 AJIL, 1995, p. 806; T. Buergenthal, 'Proliferation of International Courts and Tribunals: Is it Good or Bad?', 14 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 2001, p. 267; R. Higgins, 'The ICJ, ECJ, and the Integrity of International Law', 52 ICLQ, 2003, pp. 1, 12 ff., and Higgins, 'A Babel of Judicial Voices?'; Shany, *Competing Jurisdictions*; F. K. Tiba, 'What Caused the Multiplicity of International Courts and Tribunals?', 10 *Gonzaga Journal of International Law*, 2006, p. 202; B. Kingsbury, 'Is the Proliferation of International Courts and Tribunals a Systemic Problem?', 31 *New York University Journal of International Law and Politics*, 1999, p. 679; P. M. Dupuy, 'The Danger of Fragmentation or Unification of the International Legal System and the ICJ', 31 *New York University Journal of International Law and Politics*, 1999, p. 791, and J. Charney, 'Is International Law Threatened by Multiple International Tribunals?', 271 HR, 1998, p. 101. See also the speeches on proliferation, of ICJ Presidents Schwebel (1999), www.icj-cij.org/court/index.php?pr=87&pt=3&p1=1&p2=3&p3=1; Guillaume (2001), www.icj-cij.org/court/index.php?pr=82&pt=3&p1=1&p2=3&p3=1; and Higgins (2007), www.icj-cij.org/presscom/files/7/14097pdf.

³⁷³ See above, chapter 14, p. 789.

³⁷⁴ See e.g. the reference to the International Court's judgment in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda* in the International Criminal Court's confirmation of charges in the *Thomas Lubanga Dyilo* case, ICC-01/04-01/06, 29 January 2007, paras. 212 ff., and the reference in *Nicaragua v. Honduras*, ICJ Reports, 2007, paras. 68 ff., to a decision of the Central American Court of Justice. See also the discussion by the International Court of judgments of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, e.g. at paras. 195 ff. The European and Inter-American Courts of Human Rights have long referred to each other's judgments: see generally above, chapter 7.

³⁷⁵ See generally above, chapter 16.

³⁷⁶ E.g. the *Mox* case: see Shany, *Competing Jurisdictions*, p. 9, and see above, chapter 11, p. 643.

Of course, many of the other tribunals concern disputes between individuals and states rather than inter-state disputes and those in specialist areas, such as human rights, investment problems or employment issues. The International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea is beginning to deal with questions that have been before the International Court, such as jurisdiction and nationality and provisional measures issues, but it is also concerned with specific and limited matters, particularly the prompt release of arrested foreign vessels, and non-state parties may become parties to cases before it.³⁷⁷ Nevertheless, all of these courts and tribunals and other organs relate in some way to international law and thus may contribute to its development and increasing scope. Together with a realisation of this increasing spread of institutions must come a developing sense of interest in and knowledge of the work of such courts and tribunals. The special position of the International Court as the principal judicial organ of the UN and as the pre-eminent inter-state forum has led some to suggest a referral or consultative role for it, enabling it to advise other courts and tribunals. While it is difficult to see this as a realistic or practical project, increasing co-operation between the International Court and other judicial bodies is taking place and all the relevant courts and tribunals are well aware of each other's work.³⁷⁸

Suggestions for further reading

- D. Bowett *et al.*, *The International Court of Justice: Process, Practice and Procedures*, London, 1997
- R. Y. Jennings, 'The Role of the International Court of Justice', 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 1
- J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005
- S. Rosenne, *The Law and Practice of the International Court, 1920–2005*, 4th edn, Leiden, 4 vols., 2006

³⁷⁷ See generally above, chapter 11.

³⁷⁸ See the speech by President Higgins to the Legal Advisers of the Ministries of Foreign Affairs, 29 October 2007, www.icj-cij.org/pressscom/files/7/14097.pdf.

International law and the use of force by states

The rules governing resort to force form a central element within international law, and together with other principles such as territorial sovereignty and the independence and equality of states provide the framework for international order.¹ While domestic systems have, on the whole, managed to prescribe a virtual monopoly on the use of force for the governmental institutions, reinforcing the hierarchical structure of authority and control, international law is in a different situation. It must seek to minimise and regulate the resort to force by states, without itself being able to enforce its will. Reliance has to be placed on consent, consensus, reciprocity and good faith. The role and manifestation of force in the world community is, of course, dependent upon political and other non-legal factors as well as upon the current state of the law, but the law must seek to provide mechanisms to restrain and punish the resort to violence.

¹ See e.g. Y. Dinstein, *War, Aggression and Self-Defence*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005; C. Gray, *International Law and the Use of Force*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2004; S. Neff, *War and the Law of Nations: A General History*, Cambridge, 2005; O. Corten, *Le Droit Contre La Guerre*, Paris, 2008; M. Byers, *War Law*, London, 2005; D. Kennedy, *Of Law and War*, Princeton, 2006; T. M. Franck, *Recourse to Force*, Cambridge, 2002; D. W. Bowett, *Self-Defence in International Law*, Manchester, 1958; I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963; J. Stone, *Aggression and World Order*, Berkeley, 1958; J. Stone, *Legal Controls of International Conflict*, 2nd edn, Berkeley, 1959, and Stone, *Conflict Through Consensus*, Berkeley, 1977; M. S. McDougal and F. Feliciano, *Law and Minimum World Public Order*, New Haven, 1961, and McDougal and Feliciano, *The International Law of War*, New Haven, 1994; H. Waldock, 'The Regulation of the Use of Force by Individual States in International Law', 81 HR, 1982, p. 415; J. Murphy, *The United Nations and the Control of International Violence*, Totowa, 1982; R. A. Falk, *Legal Order in a Violent World*, Princeton, 1968; A. Cassese, *Violence and Law in the Modern Age*, Cambridge, 1988; *Law and Force in the New International Order* (eds. L. Damrosch and D. J. Scheffer), Boulder, 1991, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 933.

Law and force from the 'just war' to the United Nations²

The doctrine of the just war arose as a consequence of the Christianisation of the Roman Empire and the ensuing abandonment by Christians of pacificism. Force could be used provided it complied with the divine will. The concept of the just war embodied elements of Greek and Roman philosophy and was employed as the ultimate sanction for the maintenance of an ordered society. St Augustine (354–430)³ defined the just war in terms of avenging of injuries suffered where the guilty party has refused to make amends. War was to be embarked upon to punish wrongs and restore the peaceful status quo but no further. Aggression was unjust and the recourse to violence had to be strictly controlled. St Thomas Aquinas⁴ in the thirteenth century took the definition of the just war a stage further by declaring that it was the subjective guilt of the wrongdoer that had to be punished rather than the objectively wrong activity. He wrote that war could be justified provided it was waged by the sovereign authority, it was accompanied by a just cause (i.e. the punishment of wrongdoers) and it was supported by the right intentions on the part of the belligerents.

With the rise of the European nation-states, the doctrine began to change.⁵ It became linked with the sovereignty of states and faced the paradox of wars between Christian states, each side being convinced of the justice of its cause. This situation tended to modify the approach to the just war. The requirement that serious attempts at a peaceful resolution of the dispute were necessary before turning to force began to appear. This reflected the new state of international affairs, since there now existed a series of independent states, uneasily co-existing in Europe in a primitive balance of power system. The use of force against other states, far from

² See e.g. L. C. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000; G. Best, *War and Law Since 1945*, Oxford, 1994; S. Bailey, *Prohibitions and Restraints in War*, Oxford, 1972; M. Walzer, *Just and Unjust Wars*, 2nd edn, New York, 1977, and T. M. Franck, *Fairness in International Law and Institutions*, Oxford, 1995, chapter 8. See also Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 5 ff.; Dinstein, *War*, chapter 3, and C. Greenwood, 'The Concept of War in Modern International Law', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 283.

³ See J. Eppstein, *The Catholic Tradition of the Law of Nations*, 1935, pp. 65 ff.; Bailey, *Prohibitions*, pp. 6–9, and Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 5.

⁴ *Summa Theologica*, II, ii, 40. See Bailey, *Prohibitions*, p. 9. See also Von Elbe, 'The Evolution of the Concept of the Just War in International Law', 33 AJIL, 1939, p. 669, and C. Parry, 'The Function of Law in the International Community' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, pp. 1, 27.

⁵ Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 7 ff.

strengthening the order, posed serious challenges to it and threatened to undermine it. Thus the emphasis in legal doctrine moved from the application of force to suppress wrongdoers to a concern (if hardly apparent at times) to maintain the order by peaceful means. The great Spanish writer of the sixteenth century, Vitoria,⁶ emphasised that 'not every kind and degree of wrong can suffice for commencing war', while Suarez⁷ noted that states were obliged to call the attention of the opposing side to the existence of a just cause and request reparation before action was taken. The just war was also implied in immunity of innocent persons from direct attack and the proportionate use of force to overcome the opposition.⁸

Gradually it began to be accepted that a certain degree of right might exist on both sides, although the situation was confused by references to subjective and objective justice. Ultimately, the legality of the recourse to war was seen to depend upon the formal processes of law. This approach presaged the rise of positivism with its concentration upon the sovereign state, which could only be bound by what it had consented to. Grotius,⁹ in his systematising fashion, tried to exclude ideological considerations as the basis of a just war, in the light of the destructive seventeenth-century religious conflicts, and attempted to redefine the just war in terms of self-defence, the protection of property and the punishment for wrongs suffered by the citizens of the particular state.

But with positivism and the definitive establishment of the European balance of power system after the Peace of Westphalia, 1648, the concept of the just war disappeared from international law as such.¹⁰ States were sovereign and equal, and therefore no one state could presume to judge whether another's cause was just or not. States were bound to honour agreements and respect the independence and integrity of other countries, and had to try and resolve differences by peaceful methods.

But where war did occur, it entailed a series of legal consequences. The laws of neutrality and war began to operate as between the parties and third states and a variety of legal situations at once arose. The fact that the war may have been regarded as unjust by any ethical standards

⁶ *De Indis et de Jure Belli Relectiones*, ss. 14, 20–3, 29 and 60, cited in Bailey, *Prohibitions*, p. 11.

⁷ See *ibid.*, pp. 11–12. Suarez felt that the only just cause was a grave injustice that could not be avenged or repaired in any other way, *ibid.*

⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 12–15.

⁹ *Ibid.*, chapter 2, and Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 13. See *De Jure Belli ac Pacis*, 1625.

¹⁰ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 14 ff. See also L. Gross, 'The Peace of Westphalia, 1648–1948', 42 AJIL, 1948, p. 20.

did not in any way affect the legality of force as an instrument of the sovereign state nor alter in any way the various rules of war and neutrality that sprang into operation once the war commenced. Whether the cause was just or not became irrelevant in any legal way to the international community (though, of course, important in political terms) and the basic issue revolved around whether in fact a state of war existed.¹¹ The doctrine of the just war arose with the increasing power of Christianity and declined with the outbreak of the inter-Christian religious wars and the establishment of an order of secular sovereign states. Although war became a legal state of affairs which permitted force to be used and in which a series of regulatory conditions were recognised, there existed various other methods of employing force that fell short of war with all the legal consequences as regards neutrals and conduct that that entailed. Reprisals and pacific blockades¹² were examples of the use of force as 'hostile measures short of war'.

These activities were undertaken in order to assert or enforce rights or to punish wrongdoers. There were many instances in the nineteenth century in particular of force being used in this manner against the weaker states of Latin America and Asia.¹³ There did exist limitations under international law of the right to resort to such measures but they are probably best understood in the context of the balance of power mechanism of international relations that to a large extent did help minimise the resort to force in the nineteenth century, or at least restrict its application.

The First World War marked the end of the balance of power system and raised anew the question of unjust war. It also resulted in efforts to rebuild international affairs upon the basis of a general international institution which would oversee the conduct of the world community to ensure that aggression could not happen again. The creation of the League of Nations reflected a completely different attitude to the problems of force in the international order.¹⁴

The Covenant of the League declared that members should submit disputes likely to lead to a rupture to arbitration or judicial settlement or inquiry by the Council of the League. In no circumstances were members to resort to war until three months after the arbitral award or judicial decision or report by the Council. This was intended to provide a

¹¹ Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 26–8. ¹² *Ibid.* ¹³ *Ibid.*, pp. 28 ff.

¹⁴ *Ibid.*, chapter 3. But note Hague Convention II of 1907, which provided that the parties would not have recourse to armed forces for the recovery of contract debts claimed from the government of one country by the government of another as being due to its nationals.

cooling-off period for passions to subside and reflected the view that such a delay might well have broken the seemingly irreversible chain of tragedy that linked the assassination of the Austrian Archduke in Sarajevo with the outbreak of general war in Europe. League members agreed not to go to war with members complying with such an arbitral award or judicial decision or unanimous report by the Council.¹⁵

The League system did not, it should be noted, prohibit war or the use of force, but it did set up a procedure designed to restrict it to tolerable levels. It was a constant challenge of the inter-war years to close the gaps in the Covenant in an effort to achieve the total prohibition of war in international law and this resulted ultimately in the signing in 1928 of the General Treaty for the Renunciation of War (the Kellogg–Briand Pact).¹⁶ The parties to this treaty condemned recourse to war and agreed to renounce it as an instrument of national policy in their relations with one another.¹⁷

In view of the fact that this treaty has never been terminated and in the light of its widespread acceptance,¹⁸ it is clear that prohibition of the resort to war is now a valid principle of international law. It is no longer possible to set up the legal relationship of war in international society. Thus, for example, it is unnecessary to declare war in order to engage legitimately in armed conflict.¹⁹

However, the prohibition on the resort to war does not mean that the use of force in all circumstances is illegal. Reservations to the treaty by some states made it apparent that the right to resort to force in self-defence was still a recognised principle in international law.²⁰ Whether in fact measures short of war such as reprisals were also prohibited or were left untouched by the treaty's ban on war was unclear and subject to conflicting interpretations.²¹

¹⁵ Brownlie, *Use of Force*, chapter 4. See especially articles 10–16 of the Covenant.

¹⁶ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, chapter 4; A. K. Skubiszewski, 'The Use of Force by States' in Sørensen, *Manual of Public International Law*, pp. 739, 742–4, and Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 74–92.

¹⁷ Article I.

¹⁸ It came into force on 24 July 1929 and is still in effect. Many inter-war treaties reaffirmed the obligations imposed by the Pact: see e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 75–6.

¹⁹ See e.g. Yossi Beilin v. *The Prime Minister of Israel* HCJ 6204/06, 2006. See also C. Greenwood, 'Scope of Application of Humanitarian Law' in *Handbook of Humanitarian Law in Armed Conflicts* (ed. D. Fleck), Oxford, 1999, p. 43, and I. Detter, *The Law of War*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2004, pp. 9 ff.

²⁰ See e.g. Cmd 3153, p. 10.

²¹ See Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 87. Cf. Bowett, *Self-Defence*, p. 136.

The UN Charter²²

Article 2(4) of the Charter declares that:

[a]ll members shall refrain in their international relations from the threat or use of force against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state, or in any other manner inconsistent with the purposes of the United Nations.

This provision is regarded now as a principle of customary international law and as such is binding upon all states in the world community.²³ The reference to 'force' rather than war is beneficial and thus covers situations in which violence is employed which fall short of the technical requirements of the state of war.

Article 2(4) was elaborated as a principle of international law in the 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law and analysed systematically. First, wars of aggression constitute a crime against peace for which there is responsibility under international law. Secondly, states must not threaten or use force to violate existing international frontiers (including demarcation or armistice lines) or to solve international disputes. Thirdly, states are under a duty to refrain from acts of reprisal involving the use of force. Fourthly, states must not use force to deprive peoples of their right to self-determination and independence. And fifthly, states must refrain from organising, instigating, assisting or participating in acts of civil strife or terrorist acts in another state and must not encourage the formation of armed bands for incursion into another state's territory. Many of these items are crucial, but ambiguous. Although the Declaration is not of itself a binding legal document, it is important as an interpretation of the relevant Charter provisions.²⁴ Important exceptions to article 2(4) exist in relation to collective measures taken by the United

²² See J. P. Cot, A. Pellet and M. Forteau, *La Charte des Nations Unies: Commentaire Article par Article*, 3rd edn, Paris, 2005, and *The Charter of the United Nations* (ed. B. Simma), 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002.

²³ See e.g. Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', p. 745, and L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, p. 893. See also the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, p. 27; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, p. 437 (N. Schrijver), and Simma, *Charter*, p. 112.

²⁴ See e.g. G. Arangio-Ruiz, *The UN Declaration on Friendly Relations and the System of Sources of International Law*, Alphen aan den Rijn, 1979, and R. Rosenstock, 'The Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations', 65 AJIL, 1971, p. 713. See also General Assembly resolution 42/22, the Declaration on the Enhancement of the Effectiveness of the Principle of Refraining from the Threat or Use of Force in International Relations, 1987.

Nations²⁵ and with regard to the right of self-defence.²⁶ Whether such an exception exists with regard to humanitarian intervention is the subject of some controversy.²⁷

Article 2(6) of the Charter provides that the UN 'shall ensure that states which are not members of the United Nations act in accordance with these Principles so far as may be necessary for the maintenance of international peace and security'. In fact, many of the resolutions adopted by the UN are addressed simply to 'all states'. In particular, for example, Security Council resolution 757 (1992) adopted under Chapter VII of the Charter, and therefore binding upon all member states, imposed comprehensive sanctions upon the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro). However, the invocation in that decision was to 'all states' and not to 'member states'.

'Force'

One point that was considered in the past²⁸ and is now being reconsidered is whether the term 'force' in article 2(4) includes not only armed force²⁹ but, for example, economic force.³⁰ Does the imposition of boycotts or embargoes against particular states or groups of states come within article 2(4), so rendering them illegal?³¹ Although that provision is not modified in any way, the preamble to the Charter does refer to the need to ensure that 'armed force' should not be used except in the common interest, while article 51, dealing with the right to self-defence, specifically refers to armed force, although that is not of itself conclusive as to the permissibility of other forms of coercion.

The 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law recalled the 'duty of states to refrain . . . from military, political, economic or any other form of coercion aimed against the political independence or territorial integrity of any state' and the International Covenants on Human Rights

²⁵ See below, chapter 22, p. 1235. ²⁶ See below, p. 1131. ²⁷ See below, p. 1155.

²⁸ An attempt by Brazil to prohibit 'economic measures' in article 2(4) itself was rejected, 6 UNCIO, Documents, p. 335. See also L. M. Goodrich, E. Hambro and A. P. Simons, *Charter of the United Nations*, 3rd edn, New York, 1969, p. 49.

²⁹ See e.g. the mining of Nicaraguan harbours by the US, the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 128; 76 ILR, p. 349.

³⁰ See Simma, *Charter*, p. 118.

³¹ See e.g. *Economic Coercion and the New International Economic Order* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1976, and *The Arab Oil Weapon* (eds. J. Paust and A. Blaustein), Dobbs Ferry, 1977.

adopted in 1966 emphasised the right of all peoples freely to pursue their economic, social and cultural development. This approach was underlined in the Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States, approved by the General Assembly in 1974, which particularly specified that 'no state may use or encourage the use of economic, political or any other type of measures to coerce another state in order to obtain from it the subordination of the exercise of its sovereign rights'. The question of the legality of the open use of economic pressures to induce a change of policy by states was examined with renewed interest in the light of the Arab oil weapon used in 1973–4 against states deemed favourable to Israel.³² It does seem that there is at least a case to be made out in support of the view that such actions are contrary to the United Nations Charter, as interpreted in numerous resolutions and declarations. But whether such action constitutes a violation of article 2(4) is dubious.³³

It is to be noted that article 2(4) covers threats of force as well as use of force.³⁴ This issue was addressed by the International Court in its Advisory Opinion to the General Assembly on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*. The Court stated that a 'signalled intention to use force if certain events occur' could constitute a threat under article 2(4) where the envisaged use of force would itself be unlawful. Examples given included threats to secure territory from another state or causing it to 'follow or not follow certain political or economic paths'.³⁵ The Court appeared to accept that the mere possession of nuclear weapons did not of itself constitute a threat. However, noting that the policy of nuclear deterrence functioned on the basis of the credibility of the possibility of resorting to those weapons in certain circumstances, it was stated that whether this amounted to a threat would depend upon whether the particular use of force envisaged would be directed against the territorial integrity or political independence of a state or against the purposes of the UN. If

³² Paust and Blaustein, *Arab Oil Weapon*. ³³ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, p. 86.

³⁴ Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 364, notes that a threat of force consists 'in an express or implied promise by a government of a resort to force conditional on non-acceptance of certain demands of that government'. See also N. Stürchler, *The Threat of Force in International Law*, Cambridge, 2007; M. Roscini, 'Threats of Armed Force and Contemporary International Law', 54 NILR, 2007, p. 229; R. Sadurska, 'Threats of Force', 82 AJIL, 1988, p. 239, and N. White and R. Cryer, 'Unilateral Enforcement of Resolution 687: A Threat Too Far?', 29 *California Western International Law Journal*, 1999, p. 243.

³⁵ This was cited with approval by the arbitral tribunal in *Guyana v. Suriname*, award of 17 September 2007, paras. 439 and 445, where an order by Surinamese naval vessels to an oil rig to leave the area within twelve hours or face the consequences was deemed to constitute such a threat.

the projected use of the weapons was intended as a means of defence and there would be a consequential and necessary breach of the principles of necessity and proportionality, this would suggest that a threat contrary to article 2(4) existed.³⁶ One key point here would be the definition of proportionality, in particular would it relate to the damage that might be caused or rather to the scope of the threat to which the response in self-defence is proposed? If the latter is the case, and logic suggests this, then the threat to use nuclear weapons in response to the prior use of nuclear or possibly chemical or bacteriological weapons becomes less problematic.³⁷

The provisions governing the resort to force internationally do not affect the right of a state to take measures to maintain order within its jurisdiction. Accordingly, such a state may forcibly quell riots, suppress insurrections and punish rebels without contravening article 2(4). In the event of injury to alien persons or property, the state may be required to make reparation to the state of the alien concerned,³⁸ but apart from this the prohibition on force in international law is not in general applicable within domestic jurisdictions.³⁹ Accordingly, international law posits a general prohibition on the use of force. In order for force to be legitimate, it must fall within one of the accepted exceptions. These are essentially the right to self-defence⁴⁰ and enforcement action mandated by the United Nations Security Council.⁴¹ Whether force may also be used in cases of extreme humanitarian need is discussed below.⁴²

‘Against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state’

Article 2(4) of the Charter prohibits the use of force ‘against the territorial integrity or political independence of any state, or in any other manner

³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 246–7; 110 ILR, p. 163.

³⁷ Note that article 2(b) of the Draft Articles on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties defines ‘armed conflict’ as ‘a state of war or a conflict which involves armed operations which by their nature or extent are likely to affect the operation of treaties between States parties to the armed conflict or between State parties to the armed conflict and third States, regardless of a formal declaration of war or other declaration by any or all of the parties to the armed conflict’: see I. Brownlie’s Third Report on the Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties, A/CN.4/578, 2007, p. 5.

³⁸ See above, chapter 14, p. 823.

³⁹ But see below, p. 1148, regarding self-determination, and p. 1148, regarding civil wars, and see with regard to non-international armed conflicts, below, chapter 21, p. 1194.

⁴⁰ See below, p. 1131. ⁴¹ See below, chapter 22, p. 1251. ⁴² Below, p. 1155.

inconsistent with the purposes of the United Nations'.⁴³ There is a debate as to whether these words should be interpreted restrictively,⁴⁴ so as to permit force that would not contravene the clause, or as reinforcing the primary prohibition,⁴⁵ but the weight of opinion probably suggests the latter position. The 1965 Declaration on the Inadmissibility of Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States⁴⁶ emphasised that:

[n]o state has the right to intervene, directly or indirectly, for any reason whatsoever, in the internal or external affairs of any other state. Consequently, armed intervention and all other forms of interference or attempted threats against the personality of the state or against its political, economic and cultural elements, are condemned.

This was reaffirmed in the 1970 Declaration on Principles in International Law,⁴⁷ with the proviso that not only were such manifestations condemned, but they were held to be in violation of international law. The International Court of Justice in the *Corfu Channel* case⁴⁸ declared specifically, in response to a British claim to be acting in accordance with a right of intervention in minesweeping the channel to secure evidence for judicial proceedings, that:

the alleged right of intervention [was] the manifestation of a policy of force, such as has, in the past, given rise to most serious abuses and such as cannot ... find a place in international law.

The Court noted that to allow such a right in the present case as a derogation from Albania's territorial sovereignty would be even less admissible:

for, from the nature of things it would be reserved for the most powerful states, and might easily lead to perverting the administration of international justice itself.

⁴³ The International Court has described the prohibition against the use of force as a 'cornerstone of the United Nations Charter', *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 223.

⁴⁴ See e.g. Bowett, *Self-Defence*, p. 152.

⁴⁵ See Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 268. See also Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', pp. 745–6.

⁴⁶ General Assembly resolution 2131 (XX). ⁴⁷ General Assembly resolution 2625 (XXV).

⁴⁸ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 35; 16 AD, pp. 155, 167. See also Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 283–9, and H. Lauterpacht, *The Development of International Law by the International Court*, London, 1958, p. 90.

The essence of international relations, concluded the Court, lay in the respect by independent states of each other's territorial sovereignty.⁴⁹ In addition, the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission took the position that recourse to force would violate international law even where some of the territory concerned was territory to which the state resorting to force had a valid claim. It noted that 'border disputes between states are so frequent that any exception to the threat or use of force for territory that is allegedly occupied unlawfully would create a large and dangerous hole in a fundamental rule of international law'.⁵⁰

Categories of force

Various measures of self-help ranging from economic retaliation to the use of violence pursuant to the right of self-defence have historically been used. Since the establishment of the Charter regime there are basically three categories of compulsion open to states under international law. These are retorsion, reprisal and self-defence.⁵¹

*Retorsion*⁵²

Retorsion is the adoption by one state of an unfriendly and harmful act, which is nevertheless lawful, as a method of retaliation against the injurious legal activities of another state. Examples include the severance of diplomatic relations and the expulsion or restrictive control of aliens, as well as various economic and travel restrictions. Retorsion is a legitimate method of showing displeasure in a way that hurts the other state while remaining within the bounds of legality. The Hickenlooper Amendments to the American Foreign Assistance Act are often quoted as an instance of

⁴⁹ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 109–10; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 443–4, and see further below, p. 1131.

⁵⁰ Partial Award, *Jus Ad Bellum*, Ethiopia's Claims 1–8, 2005, para. 10: see 45 ILM, 2006, pp. 430, 433. This statement was cited by the arbitral tribunal in *Guyana v. Suriname*, award of 17 September 2007, para. 423. See also C. Gray, 'The Eritrea/Ethiopia Claims Commission Oversteps Its Boundaries: A Partial Award?', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 699.

⁵¹ As to the use of force by the UN, see below, chapter 22, p. 1251.

⁵² See e.g. Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 957; Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', p. 753, and G. von Glahn, *Law Among Nations*, 7th edn, Boston, 1996, pp. 533 ff.

retorsion since they required the United States President to suspend foreign aid to any country nationalising American property without proper compensation. This procedure was applied only once, as against Ceylon (now Sri Lanka) in 1963, and has now been effectively repealed by the American Foreign Assistance Act of 1973.⁵³ Retorsion would also appear to cover the instance of a lawful act committed in retaliation to a prior unlawful activity.⁵⁴

*Reprisals*⁵⁵

Reprisals are acts which are in themselves illegal and have been adopted by one state in retaliation for the commission of an earlier illegal act by another state. They are thus distinguishable from acts of retorsion, which are in themselves lawful acts. The classic case dealing with the law of reprisals is the *Nautilaa* dispute⁵⁶ between Portugal and Germany in 1928. This concerned a German military raid on the colony of Angola, which destroyed property, in retaliation for the mistaken killing of three Germans lawfully in the Portuguese territory.

The tribunal, in discussing the Portuguese claim for compensation, emphasised that before reprisals could be undertaken, there had to be sufficient justification in the form of a previous act contrary to international law. If that was established, reprisals had to be preceded by an unsatisfied demand for reparation and accompanied by a sense of proportion between the offence and the reprisal. In fact, the German claim that it had acted lawfully was rejected on all three grounds. Those general rules are still applicable but have now to be interpreted in the light of the prohibition on the use of force posited by article 2(4) of the United Nations Charter. Thus, reprisals short of force (now usually termed countermeasures)⁵⁷ may still be undertaken legitimately, while reprisals involving armed force may be lawful where resorted to in conformity with the right

⁵³ See e.g. R. B. Lillich, 'Requiem for Hickenlooper', 69 AJIL, 1975, p. 97, and C. F. Amerasinghe, 'The Ceylon Oil Expropriations', 58 AJIL, 1964, p. 445.

⁵⁴ See also, with regard to countermeasures, above, chapter 14, p. 794.

⁵⁵ See e.g. Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', pp. 753–5; Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 219–23 and 281–2; D. W. Bowett, 'Reprisals Including Recourse to Armed Force', 66 AJIL, 1972, p. 1, and R. W. Tucker, 'Reprisals and Self-Defence: The Customary Law', 66 AJIL, 1972, p. 581.

⁵⁶ 2 RIAA, p. 1011 (1928); 4 AD, p. 526. See also G. Hackworth, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1943, vol. VI, p. 154.

⁵⁷ See above, chapter 14, p. 794.

of self-defence.⁵⁸ Reprisals as such undertaken during peacetime are thus unlawful, unless they fall within the framework of the principle of self-defence.⁵⁹ Sometimes regarded as an aspect of reprisal is the institution of pacific blockade.⁶⁰ This developed during the nineteenth century and was extensively used as a forceful application of pressure against weaker states. In the absence of war or armed hostilities, the vessels of third states were probably exempt from such blockade, although this was disputed by some writers.

Pacific blockades may be instituted by the United Nations Security Council,⁶¹ but cannot now be resorted to by states since the coming into force of the Charter of the United Nations. The legality of the so-called 'quarantine' imposed by the United States upon Cuba in October 1962 to prevent certain weapons reaching the island appears questionable and should not be relied upon as an extension of the doctrine of pacific blockades.⁶²

⁵⁸ See Dinstein, *War*, p. 222. But see Bowett, 'Reprisals'. See also SCOR, 19th Year, 111th meeting, 8 April 1964, in which the Security Council condemned reprisals as contrary to the UN Charter and deplored the UK bombing of Fort Harib, and R. B. Lillich, 'Forcible Self-Help under International Law', 62 *US Naval War College International Law Studies*, 1980, p. 129. Note that the US State Department has declared that, 'it is clear that the United States has taken the categorical position that reprisals involving the use of force are illegal under international law', 'Memorandum on US Practice with Respect to Reprisals', 73 *AJIL*, 1979, p. 489. As for episodes that appear to be on the borderline between self-defence and reprisals, see e.g. R. A. Falk, 'The Beirut Raid and the International Law of Retaliation', 63 *AJIL*, 1969, p. 415, and Y. Blum, 'The Beirut Raid and the International Double Standard', 64 *AJIL*, 1970, p. 73.

⁵⁹ The International Court declared in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* that, 'armed reprisals in time of peace... are considered to be unlawful... any right to [belligerent] reprisals would, like self-defence, be governed *inter alia* by the principle of proportionality', ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 246; 110 *ILR*, p. 163. Note that reprisals taking place within an armed conflict (belligerent reprisals) are permitted in response to prior violation of the laws of armed conflict by the opposing side: see Y. Dinstein, *The Conduct of Hostilities under the Law of International Armed Conflict*, Cambridge, 2004, pp. 220 ff., and C. Greenwood, 'The Twilight of the Law of Belligerent Reprisals', 20 *Netherlands YIL*, 1989, pp. 35, 38.

⁶⁰ See e.g. Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', pp. 755–7, and Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 223–4.

⁶¹ See below, chapter 22, p. 1241.

⁶² See e.g. Q. Wright, 'The Cuban Quarantine', 57 *AJIL*, 1963, p. 546, and M. S. McDougal, 'The Soviet–Cuban Quarantine and Self-Defence', *ibid.*, p. 597. See also A. Chayes, *The Cuban Missile Crisis*, Oxford, 1974. But note the rather different declaration by the UK of a Total Exclusion Zone during the Falklands conflict, above, chapter 11, p. 584, note 139.

*The right of self-defence*⁶³

The traditional definition of the right of self-defence in customary international law arose out of the *Caroline* case.⁶⁴ This dispute revolved around an incident in 1837 in which British subjects seized and destroyed a vessel in an American port. This had taken place because the *Caroline* had been supplying groups of American nationals, who had been conducting raids into Canadian territory. In the correspondence with the British authorities which followed the incident, the US Secretary of State laid down the essentials of self-defence. There had to exist 'a necessity of self-defence, instant, overwhelming, leaving no choice of means, and no moment for deliberation'. Not only were such conditions necessary before self-defence became legitimate, but the action taken in pursuance of it must not be unreasonable or excessive, 'since the act, justified by the necessity of self-defence, must be limited by that necessity, and kept clearly within it'. These principles were accepted by the British government at that time and are accepted as part of customary international law.⁶⁵

Article 51 of the Charter provides that:

Nothing in the present Charter shall impair the inherent right of individual or collective self-defence if an armed attack occurs against a member of the United Nations, until the Security Council has taken the measures necessary to maintain international peace and security. Measures taken by members in the exercise of this right of self-defence shall be immediately reported

⁶³ See Bowett, *Self-Defence*, and Brownlie, *Use of Force*, chapter 13. See also I. Brownlie, 'The Use of Force in Self-Defence', 37 BYIL, 1961, p. 183; Dinstein, *War*, chapters 7 and 8; Gray, *Use of Force*, chapter 4; Franck, *Recourse*, chapters 3–7; S. Alexandrov, *Self-defence against the Use of Force in International Law*, The Hague, 1996; J. Delivanis, *La Légitime Défense en Droit International*, Paris, 1971; Byers, *War Law*, Part Two; S. Schwebel, 'Aggression, Intervention and Self-Defence in Modern International Law', 136 HR, 1972, p. 411; O. Schachter, 'The Right of States to Use Armed Force', 82 *Michigan Law Review*, 1984, p. 1620, Schachter, 'Self-Defence and the Rule of Law', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 259, and Schachter, *International Law in Theory and Practice*, Dordrecht, 1991, chapter 8; N. Ochoa-Ruiz and E. Salamanca-Aguado, 'Exploring the Limits of International Law relating to the Use of Force in Self-defence', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 499; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, p. 506 (A. Cassese); Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 941, and Simma, *Charter*, p. 788.

⁶⁴ 29 BFSP, p. 1137 and 30 BFSP, p. 195. See also R. Y. Jennings, 'The Caroline and McLeod Cases', 32 AJIL, 1938, p. 82.

⁶⁵ See e.g. the Legal Adviser to the US Department of State, who noted that 'the exercise of the inherent right of self-defence depends upon a prior delict, an illegal act that presents an immediate, overwhelming danger to an actual and essential right of the state. When these conditions are present, the means used must then be proportionate to the gravity of the threat or danger', DUSPIL, 1975, p. 17.

to the Security Council and shall not in any way affect the authority and responsibility of the Security Council under the present Charter to take at any time such action as it deems necessary in order to maintain or restore international peace and security.

There has been extensive controversy as to the precise extent of the right of self-defence⁶⁶ in the light of article 51, with some writers arguing that article 51 in conjunction with article 2(4) was exhaustive⁶⁷ and others maintaining that the opening phrase in article 51 specifying that 'nothing in the present Charter shall impair the inherent right of . . . self-defence' meant that there existed in customary international law a right of self-defence over and above the specific provisions of article 51, which referred only to the situation where an armed attack had occurred.⁶⁸

The International Court of Justice in the *Nicaragua* case,⁶⁹ however, clearly established that the right of self-defence existed as an inherent right under customary international law as well as under the UN Charter. It was stressed that:

Article 51 of the Charter is only meaningful on the basis that there is a 'natural' or 'inherent' right of self-defence and it is hard to see how this can be other than of a customary nature, even if its present content has been confirmed and influenced by the Charter . . . It cannot, therefore, be held that article 51 is a provision which 'subsumes and supervenes' customary international law.

Accordingly, customary law continued to exist alongside treaty law (i.e. the UN Charter) in this field. There was not an exact overlap and the rules did not have the same content. The Court also discussed the notion of an 'armed attack' and noted that this included not only action by regular

⁶⁶ Note that article 21 of the International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility, 2001, provides that, 'The wrongfulness of an act of a State is precluded if the act constitutes a lawful measure of self-defence taken in conformity with the Charter of the United Nations.'

⁶⁷ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 112–13 and 264 ff., and E. Jiménez de Aréchaga, 'International Law in the Past Third of the Century', 159 HR, 1978, pp. 1, 87–98. See also Skubiszewski, 'Use of Force', pp. 765–8, and H. Kelsen, *The Law of the United Nations*, London, 1950, p. 914.

⁶⁸ See e.g. Bowett, *Self Defence*, pp. 185–6; Stone, *Aggression and World Order*, pp. 43, 95–6. See also H. Waldock, 'General Course on Public International Law', 166 HR, 1980, pp. 6, 231–7; Simma, *Charter*, pp. 790 ff.; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 98 ff.; J. Brierly, *The Law of Nations*, 6th edn, Oxford, 1963, pp. 417–18, and D. P. O'Connell, *International Law*, 2nd edn, London, 1970, vol. I, p. 317. See also e.g. 6 UNCIO, Documents, where it is noted that 'the use of arms in legitimate self-defence remains admitted and unimpaired'.

⁶⁹ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 94; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 428.

armed forces across an international border, but additionally the sending by or on behalf of a state of armed bands or groups which carry out acts of armed force of such gravity as to amount to an actual armed attack conducted by regular armed forces or its substantial involvement therein.⁷⁰ In this situation, the focus would then shift to a consideration of the involvement of the state in question so as to render it liable and to legitimate action in self-defence against it.⁷¹

In order to be able to resort to force in self-defence, a state has to be able to demonstrate that it has been the victim of an armed attack and it bears the burden of proof.⁷² The Court has noted that it is possible that the mining of a single military vessel might suffice,⁷³ but an attack on a ship owned, but not flagged, by a state will not be equated with an attack on that state.⁷⁴ However, it is necessary to show that the state seeking to resort to force in self-defence has itself been intentionally attacked. In a series of incidents discussed by the Court in the *Oil Platforms* case, it was noted that none of them appeared to have been aimed specifically and deliberately at the US.⁷⁵ In seeking to determine how serious an attack must be in order to validate a self-defence response, the Court in the *Nicaragua* case⁷⁶ distinguished 'the most grave forms of the use of force (those constituting an armed attack) from other less grave forms' and this was reaffirmed in the *Oil Platforms* case.⁷⁷ It is, nevertheless, extremely difficult to define this more closely.

In many cases, however, it might be difficult to determine the moment when an armed attack had commenced in order to comply with the requirements of article 51 and the resort to force in self-defence. For example, it has been argued that with regard to actions against aircraft,

⁷⁰ The Court noted that this provision, contained in article 3(g) of the Definition of Aggression annexed to General Assembly resolution 3314 (XXIX) of 1974, reflected customary international law, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 103; 76 ILR, p. 437.

⁷¹ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 108 ff.

⁷² The *Oil Platforms (Iran v. US)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 189 and 190; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 348–50.

⁷³ *Ibid.*, p. 195. ⁷⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 191.

⁷⁵ *Ibid.* The incidents included missile attack from a distance that meant it could not have been aimed at a particular vessel (the US *Sea Isle City*) as distinct from 'some target in Kuwaiti waters'; an attack on a non-US flagged vessel; the alleged firing on US helicopters from Iranian gunboats that the Court found unproven; and mine-laying that could not be shown to have been aimed at the US, *ibid.*, pp. 191–2. However, this requirement for a deliberate and intentional attack on the target state, rather than merely an indiscriminate attack, is controversial and open to question.

⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 101.

⁷⁷ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 187; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 346.

an armed attack begins at the moment that the radar guiding the anti-aircraft missile has 'locked on'.⁷⁸ Further, one argument that has been made with regard to Israel's first strike in June 1967 is that the circumstances were such that an armed attack could be deemed to have commenced against it.⁷⁹

Another aspect of the problem as to what constitutes an armed attack is the difficulty of categorising particular uses of force for these purposes. For example, would an attack upon an embassy or diplomats abroad constitute an armed attack legitimating action in self-defence? On 7 August 1998, the US embassies in Kenya and Tanzania were bombed, causing the loss of over 250 lives and appreciable damage to property. On 20 August, the US launched a series of cruise missile attacks upon installations in Afghanistan and Sudan associated with the organisation of Bin Laden deemed responsible for the attacks. In so doing, the US declared itself to be acting in accordance with article 51 of the Charter and in exercise of its right of self-defence.⁸⁰

While it is clear that the right of self-defence applies to armed attacks by other states, the question has been raised whether the right of self-defence applies in response to attacks by non-state entities.⁸¹ Where it is the state itself which has dispatched armed bands to carry out acts of armed force of such gravity as to amount to an actual armed attack conducted by regular armed forces, then force in self-defence can legitimately be used. The difficulties arise in more ambiguous circumstances. In the *Nicaragua* case, the Court did not accept that the right of self-defence extended to situations where a third state had provided assistance to rebels in the form of the provision of weapons or logistical or other support, although this form of assistance could constitute a threat or use of force, or amount to intervention in the internal or external affairs of the state.⁸² This lays open the problem that in certain circumstances a state under attack from groups supported by another state may not be able under this definition to respond militarily if the support given by that other state does not reach the threshold laid down. Judge Jennings referred to this issue in his Dissenting Opinion, noting that, 'it seems dangerous to define unnecessarily strictly the conditions for lawful self-defence, so as to leave a large area where

⁷⁸ See Gray, *Use of Force*, p. 108, footnote 48. ⁷⁹ See below, p. 1138.

⁸⁰ See 'Contemporary Practice of the United States', 93 AJIL, 1999, p. 161. The US stated that the missile strikes 'were a necessary and proportionate response to the imminent threat of further terrorist attacks against US personnel and facilities', *ibid.*, p. 162 and S/1998/780.

⁸¹ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, pp. 204 ff. ⁸² ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 103-4; 76 ILR, pp. 437-8.

both a forcible response to force is forbidden, and yet the United Nations employment of force, which was intended to fill that gap, is absent.⁸³

The line between assistance from a third state to groups (whether characterised as terrorists or rebels or freedom fighters) which would give rise to the legitimate use of force in self-defence against such state and assistance which fell below this is difficult to specify in practice. The International Court in its advisory opinion in the *Construction of a Wall* case⁸⁴ appeared to adopt what at first sight is a very restrictive approach by noting that article 51 recognised 'the existence of an inherent right of self-defence in the case of armed attack by one state against another state' and declaring that the provision did not apply with regard to Israel's actions since these were taken with regard to threats originating from within the occupied territories and not imputable to another state. However, this cannot be read to mean that self-defence does not exist with regard to an attack by a non-state entity emanating from a territory outside of the control of the target state. Further, the legal source of Israeli actions in the occupied territories, whether or not they legitimated the construction of the wall or security barrier in whole or in part, would appear to lie rather in the laws of armed conflict (international humanitarian law) and the competence of an occupying state to take action to maintain public order and protect its own forces.⁸⁵

The Court failed to take the opportunity to revisit the ambiguities of the *Nicaragua* decision in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*.⁸⁶ In this case, the Court found that there was no satisfactory proof of involvement in attacks, direct or indirect, on Uganda by the Congo government and that such attacks did not emanate from armed bands or irregulars sent by or on behalf of the Congo. Such attacks were non-attributable, therefore, on the evidence to the Congo. Since the Court concluded that the legal and factual circumstances for the exercise of a right of self-defence by Uganda against the Congo were not present, 'accordingly' there was no need to address the issue as to whether and under which conditions contemporary international law provides for a right of self-defence against large-scale

⁸³ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 543–4; 76 ILR, p. 877. Franck suggests that Security Council practice following the 11 September 2001 attack on the World Trade Center has followed Judge Jennings' approach: see *Recourse*, p. 63, and below, p. 1159.

⁸⁴ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 194. Cf. the Separate Opinions of Judge Higgins, *ibid.*, p. 215 and Judge Kooijmans, *ibid.*, p. 230.

⁸⁵ See article 43 of the Hague Regulations 1907. See further below, chapter 21, p. 1181.

⁸⁶ ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 168.

attacks by irregular forces.⁸⁷ Since the Court addressed itself only to actions that Uganda might or might not take against the Congo as such, it did not deal with the increasingly important question as to whether action might be taken in self-defence against an armed attack by a non-state actor as distinct from another state.⁸⁸

This is perhaps surprising in view of evolving state practice with regard to international terrorism and, in particular, whether terrorist acts could constitute an 'armed attack' within the meaning of the Charter or indeed customary law.⁸⁹ The day after the 11 September 2001 attacks upon the World Trade Center in New York, the Security Council adopted resolution 1368 in which it specifically referred to 'the inherent right of individual or collective self-defence in accordance with the Charter'. Resolution 1373 (2001) reaffirmed this and, acting under Chapter VII, adopted a series of binding decisions, including a provision that all states shall 'take the necessary steps to prevent the commission of terrorist acts'. Such binding Security Council resolutions declaring international terrorism to be a threat to international peace and security with regard to which the right of self-defence is operative as such lead to the conclusion that large-scale attacks by non-state entities might amount to 'armed attacks' within the meaning of article 51 without the necessity to attribute them to another state and thus justify the use of force in self-defence by those states so attacked.⁹⁰

Further recognition that particular hostile actions by non-state entities could amount to 'attacks' may be found in Security Council resolution 1701 (2006), in which both the 'attacks' by Hizbollah, an armed militia controlling parts of Lebanon, upon Israel (which precipitated the summer 2006 armed conflict) and Israeli 'offensive military operations' were condemned.

On 7 October 2001, the US notified the Security Council that it was exercising its right of self-defence in taking action in Afghanistan against the Al-Qaeda organisation deemed responsible for the 11 September attacks

⁸⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 222–3.

⁸⁸ See the Separate Opinions of Judge Kooijmans, *ibid.*, p. 314 and Judge Simma, *ibid.*, pp. 336 ff.

⁸⁹ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, pp. 201 ff.; Franck, *Recourse*, chapter 4, and Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 165 ff. See also M. Byers, 'Terrorism, the Use of Force and International Law after 11 September', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 401, and L. Condorelli, 'Les Attentats du 11 Septembre et Leur Suite', 105 RGDIP, 2001, p. 829. As to terrorism, see further below, p. 1159.

⁹⁰ See the Separate Opinions of Judge Kooijmans and Judge Simma in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 314 and 337 respectively.

and the Taliban regime in that country which was accused of providing bases for the organisation.⁹¹ The members of the NATO alliance invoked article 5 of the NATO Treaty⁹² and the parties to the Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance, 1947 invoked a comparable provision.⁹³ Both provisions refer specifically both to an 'armed attack' and to article 51 of the Charter. Accordingly, the members of both these alliances accepted that what had happened on 11 September constituted an armed attack within the meaning of article 51 of the Charter. In fact, neither treaty was activated as the US acted on its own initiative with specific allies (notably the UK), relying on the right of self-defence with the support or acquiescence of the international community.⁹⁴

A further issue is whether a right to anticipatory or pre-emptive self-defence exists. This would appear unlikely if one adopted the notion that self-defence is restricted to responses to actual armed attacks. The concept

⁹¹ See S/2001/946. See also 'Contemporary Practice of the United States', 96 AJIL, 2002, p. 237.

⁹² See www.nato.int/terrorism/factsheet.htm. Article 5 provides that: 'The Parties agree that an armed attack against one or more of them in Europe or North America shall be considered an attack against them all and consequently they agree that, if such an armed attack occurs, each of them, in exercise of the right of individual or collective self-defence recognised by article 51 of the Charter of the United Nations, will assist the Party or Parties so attacked by taking forthwith, individually and in concert with the other Parties, such action as it deems necessary, including the use of armed force, to restore and maintain the security of the North Atlantic area.'

⁹³ Article 3(1) provides that, 'The High Contracting Parties agree that an armed attack by any State against an American State shall be considered as an attack against all the American States and, consequently, each one of the said Contracting Parties undertakes to assist in meeting the attack in the exercise of the inherent right of individual or collective self-defence recognized by Article 51 of the Charter of the United Nations.'

⁹⁴ See e.g. Byers, 'Terrorism', pp. 409–10; E. Cannizzaro, 'Entités Non-étatique et Régime Internationale de l'Emploi de la Force – une Étude sur le Cas de la Réaction Israélienne au Liban', 111 *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 2007, p. 333, and K. N. Trapp, 'Back to Basics: Necessity, Proportionality, and the Right of Self-Defence against Non-State Terrorist Actors', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 141. The resolution of the Institut de Droit International adopted on 27 October 2007 states in para. 10 that, 'In the event of an armed attack against a state by non-state actors, article 51 of the Charter as supplemented by customary international law applies as a matter of principle.' Note that the Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence, 55 ICLQ, 2006, pp. 963, 969, provide that the right to self-defence may apply to attacks by non-state actors where the attack is large-scale; if the right to self-defence is exercised in the territory of another state, then that state is unable or unwilling to deal itself with the non-state actors and that it is necessary to use force from outside to deal with the threat in circumstances where the consent of the territorial state cannot be obtained; and the force used in self-defence may only be directed against the government of the state where the attacker is found in so far as is necessary to avert or end the attack.

of anticipatory self-defence is of particular relevance in the light of modern weaponry that can launch an attack with tremendous speed, which may allow the target state little time to react to the armed assault before its successful conclusion, particularly if that state is geographically small.⁹⁵ States have employed pre-emptive strikes in self-defence. Israel, in 1967, launched a strike upon its Arab neighbours, following the blocking of its southern port of Eilat and the conclusion of a military pact between Jordan and Egypt. This completed a chain of events precipitated by the mobilisation of Egyptian forces on Israel's border and the eviction of the United Nations peacekeeping forces from the area by the Egyptian President.⁹⁶ It could, of course, also be argued that the Egyptian blockade itself constituted the use of force, thus legitimising Israeli actions without the need for 'anticipatory' conceptions of self-defence, especially when taken together with the other events.⁹⁷ It is noteworthy that the United Nations in its debates in the summer of 1967 apportioned no blame for the outbreak of fighting and did not condemn the exercise of self-defence by Israel.

The International Court in the *Nicaragua* case⁹⁸ expressed no view on the issue of the lawfulness of a response to an imminent threat of an armed attack since, on the facts of the case, that problem was not raised. The trouble, of course, with the concept of anticipatory self-defence is that it involves fine calculations of the various moves by the other party. A pre-emptive strike embarked upon too early might constitute an aggression. There is a difficult line to be drawn. The problem is that the nature of the international system is such as to leave such determinations to be made by the states themselves, and in the absence of an acceptable, institutional

⁹⁵ Contrast Bowett, *Use of Force*, pp. 118–92, who emphasises that 'no state can be expected to await an initial attack which, in the present state of armaments, may well destroy the state's capacity for further resistance and so jeopardise its very existence', and Franck, *Fairness*, p. 267, who notes that in such circumstances 'the notion of anticipatory self-defence is both rational and attractive', with Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 275, and L. Henkin, *How Nations Behave*, 2nd edn, New York, 1979, pp. 141–5. See also R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963, pp. 216–21; Franck, *Recourse*, chapter 7, and I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, pp. 701 ff.

⁹⁶ See generally, *The Arab-Israeli Conflict* (ed. J. N. Moore), Princeton, 3 vols., 1974.

⁹⁷ Note that Gray writes that Israel did not argue that it acted in anticipatory self-defence but rather in self-defence following the start of the conflict, *Use of Force*, pp. 130–1. See also Dinstein, *War*, p. 192.

⁹⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 103; 76 ILR, p. 437. See also *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 222.

alternative, it is difficult to foresee a modification of this. States generally are not at ease with the concept of anticipatory self-defence, however,⁹⁹ and one possibility would be to concentrate upon the notion of 'armed attack' so that this may be interpreted in a relatively flexible manner.¹⁰⁰ One suggestion has been to distinguish anticipatory self-defence, where an armed attack is foreseeable, from interceptive self-defence, where an armed attack is imminent and unavoidable so that the evidential problems and temptations of the former concept are avoided without dooming threatened states to making the choice between violating international law and suffering the actual assault.¹⁰¹ According to this approach, self-defence is legitimate both under customary law and under article 51 of the Charter where an armed attack is imminent. It would then be a question of evidence as to whether that were an accurate assessment of the situation in the light of the information available at the relevant time. This would be rather easier to demonstrate than the looser concept of anticipatory self-defence and it has the merit of being consistent with the view that the right to self-defence in customary law exists as expounded in the *Caroline* case.¹⁰² In any event, much will depend upon the characterisation of the threat and the nature of the response, for this has to be proportionate.¹⁰³

⁹⁹ See e.g. the Security Council debate on, and condemnation of, Israel's bombing of the Iraqi nuclear reactor in 1981 on the basis of anticipatory self-defence, 20 ILM, 1981, pp. 965–7. See also A. Cassese, *International Law in a Divided World*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 230 ff., who concludes that a consensus is growing to the effect that anticipatory self-defence is allowed but under strict conditions relating to proof of the imminence of an armed attack that would jeopardise the life of the target state and the absence of peaceful means to prevent the attack, *ibid.*, p. 233. However, in *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, p. 362, Cassese states that, 'it is more judicious to consider such action [anticipatory self-defence] as legally prohibited, while admittedly knowing that there may be cases where breaches of the prohibition may be justified on moral and political grounds and the community will eventually condone them or mete out lenient condemnation' (emphasis in original).

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. the Dissenting Opinion of Judge Schwebel, *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 347–8; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 681. But see Dinstein, *War*, pp. 187 ff. Note also the suggestion that attacks on computer networks may also fall within the definition of armed attack if fatalities are caused, e.g. where the computer-controlled systems regulating waterworks and dams are disabled: see Y. Dinstein, 'Computer Network Attacks and Self-Defence', 76 *International Law Studies*, US Naval War College, 2001, p. 99.

¹⁰¹ See Dinstein, *War*, pp. 191–2. ¹⁰² See above, p. 1131.

¹⁰³ However, note that the Report of the UN High Level Panel on Threats, Challenges and Change, A/59/565, 2004, at para. 188, declared that 'a threatened state, according to long established international law, can take military action as long as the threatened attack is imminent, no other means would deflect it and the action is proportionate' (emphasis in original). The response of the UN Secretary-General, *In Larger Freedom*, A/59/2005, para. 124, also stated that imminent threats were covered by the right to self-defence. The

Nevertheless, it is safe to conclude that the concept of self-defence extends to a response to an attack that is reasonably and evidentially perceived to be imminent, however that is semantically achieved. The *Caroline* criteria remain critical.¹⁰⁴

There have, however, been suggestions that the notion of anticipatory self-defence, controversial though that is, could be expanded to a right of 'pre-emptive self-defence' (sometimes termed 'preventive self-defence') that goes beyond the *Caroline* limits enabling the use of force in order to defend against, or prevent, possible attacks. The US note to the UN on 7 October 2001, concerning action in Afghanistan, included the sentence that, 'We may find that our self-defence requires further actions with respect to other organisations and other states.'¹⁰⁵ This approach was formally laid down in the 2002 National Security Strategy of the US¹⁰⁶ and reaffirmed in the 2006 National Security Strategy, which emphasised the role of pre-emption in national security strategy.¹⁰⁷ In so far as it goes beyond the *Caroline* criteria, this doctrine of pre-emption must be seen as going beyond what is currently acceptable in international law.¹⁰⁸

The concepts of necessity and proportionality are at the heart of self-defence in international law.¹⁰⁹ The Court in the *Nicaragua* case stated that there was a 'specific rule whereby self-defence would warrant only

resolution adopted by the Institut de Droit International on 27 October 2007, para. 3, notes that the right to self-defence arises 'in the case of an actual or manifestly imminent armed attack' and that it may be exercised 'only when there is no lawful alternative in practice in order to forestall, stop or repel the armed attack'.

¹⁰⁴ See also the Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence, 55 ICLQ, 2006, pp. 963, 964–5.

¹⁰⁵ S/2001/946. See also Byers, 'Terrorism', p. 411.

¹⁰⁶ 41 ILM, 2002, p. 1478. See also M. E. O'Connell, 'The Myth of Preemptive Self-Defence', ASIL, Task Force on Terrorism, 2002, www.asil.org/taskforce/oconnell.pdf; M. Bothe, 'Terrorism and the Legality of Pre-emptive Force', 14 EJIL, 2003, p. 227, and W. M. Reisman and A. Armstrong, 'Past and Future of the Claim of Preemptive Self-Defense', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 525.

¹⁰⁷ See C. Gray, 'The Bush Doctrine Revisited: The 2006 National Security Strategy of the USA', 5 *Chinese Journal of International Law*, 2006, p. 555.

¹⁰⁸ See e.g. the Report of the UN High Level Panel on Threats, Challenges and Change, A/59/565, 2004, at paras. 189 ff. and the UN Secretary-General's Report, *In Larger Freedom*, A/59/2005, para. 125, both essentially saying that where a threat is less than imminent, resort should be had to the Security Council. The resolution adopted by the Institut de Droit International on 27 October 2007 notes in para. 6 that, 'There is no basis in international law for the doctrine of "preventive" self-defence in the absence of an actual or manifestly imminent armed attack.' See also the Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence, 55 ICLQ, 2006, pp. 963, 968.

¹⁰⁹ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, p. 279, footnote 2; J. Graham, *Necessity, Proportionality and the Use of Force by States*, Cambridge, 2004; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 120 ff., and Dinstein, *War*, pp. 237 ff.

measures which are proportional to the armed attack and necessary to respond to it, a rule well established in customary international law',¹¹⁰ and in the Advisory Opinion it gave to the General Assembly on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* it was emphasised that '[t]he submission of the exercise of the right of self-defence to the conditions of necessity and proportionality is a rule of customary international law'.¹¹¹ Quite what will be necessary¹¹² and proportionate¹¹³ will depend on the circumstances of the case.¹¹⁴ The necessity criterion raises important evidential as well as substantive issues. It is essential to demonstrate that, as a reasonable conclusion on the basis of facts reasonably known at the time, the armed attack that has occurred or is reasonably believed to be imminent requires the response that is proposed. In the *Oil Platforms* case,¹¹⁵ the Court held that it was not satisfied that the US attacks on the oil platforms in question were necessary in order to respond to the attack on the *Sea Isle City* and the mining of the USS *Samuel B Roberts*, noting in particular that there was no evidence that the US had complained to Iran of the military activities of the platforms (contrary to its conduct with regard to other events such as minelaying and attacks on neutral shipping). Further, the US had admitted that one attack on an oil platform had been a 'target of opportunity'. It has been argued that, 'Necessity is a threshold, and the criterion of imminence can be seen to be an aspect of it, inasmuch as it requires that there be no time to pursue non-forcible measures with a reasonable chance of averting or stopping the attack.'¹¹⁶

¹¹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 94 and 103; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 428 and 437.

¹¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 245; 110 ILR, p. 163. The Court affirmed that this 'dual condition' also applied to article 51, whatever the means of force used, *ibid.*

¹¹² See Judge Ago's Eighth Report on State Responsibility to the International Law Commission, where it was noted that the concept of necessity centred upon the availability of other means to halt the attack so that 'the state attacked . . . must not, in the particular circumstances, have had any means of halting the attack other than recourse to armed force', *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1980, vol. II, part 1, p. 69.

¹¹³ Judge Ago noted that the correct relationship for proportionality was not between the conduct constituting the armed attack and the opposing conduct, but rather between the action taken in self-defence and the purpose of halting and repelling the armed attack, so that '[t]he action needed to halt and repulse the attack may well have to assume dimensions disproportionate to those of the attack suffered', *ibid.*, p. 69. See also J. G. Gardam, 'Proportionality and Force in International Law', 87 AJIL, 1993, p. 391.

¹¹⁴ Note that the UK declared that Turkish operations in northern Iraq in 1998 'must be proportionate to the threat', UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 586.

¹¹⁵ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 198.

¹¹⁶ The Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence, 55 ICLQ, 2006, pp. 963, 967.

Quite what response would be regarded as proportionate is sometimes difficult to quantify. It raises the issue as to what exactly is the response to be proportionate to. Is it the actual attack or the threat or likelihood of further attacks? And what if the attack in question is but part of a continuing series of such attacks to which response has thus far been muted or non-existent? In the *Oil Platforms* case, the Court felt it necessary to consider the scale of the whole operation that constituted the US response, which included *inter alia* the destruction of two Iranian frigates and a number of other naval vessels and aircraft, to the mining by an unidentified agency of a single warship without loss of life.¹¹⁷ In *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*,¹¹⁸ the Court, while finding that the preconditions for the exercise of self-defence did not exist in the circumstances, stated that 'the taking of airports and towns [by Ugandan forces] many hundreds of kilometers from Uganda's border would not seem proportionate to the series of transborder attacks it claimed had given rise to the right of self-defence, nor to be necessary to that end'.

Proportionality as a criterion of self-defence may also require consideration of the type of weaponry to be used, an investigation that necessitates an analysis of the principles of international humanitarian law. The International Court in the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons* case took the view that the proportionality principle may 'not in itself exclude the use of nuclear weapons in self-defence in all circumstances', but that 'a use of force that is proportionate under the law of self-defence, must, in order to be lawful, also meet the requirements of the law applicable in armed conflict'. In particular, the nature of such weapons and the profound risks associated with them would be a relevant consideration for states 'believing they can exercise a nuclear response in self-defence in accordance with the requirements of proportionality'.¹¹⁹ One especial difficulty relates to whether in formulating the level of response a series of activities may be taken into account, rather than just the attack immediately preceding the act of self-defence. The more likely answer is that where such activities clearly form part of a sequence or chain of events, then the test of proportionality will be so interpreted as to incorporate this. It also appears inevitable that it will be the state contemplating such action that will first have to make that determination,¹²⁰ although

¹¹⁷ ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 198; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 357–8.

¹¹⁸ ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 223.

¹¹⁹ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 245; 110 ILR, p. 163. See further below, p. 1187.

¹²⁰ See e.g. H. Lauterpacht, *The Function of Law in the International Community*, London, 1933, p. 179.

it will be subject to consideration by the international community as a whole and more specifically by the Security Council under the terms of article 51.¹²¹

It is also important to emphasise that article 51 requires that states report 'immediately' to the Security Council on measures taken in the exercise of their right to self-defence and that action so taken may continue 'until the Security Council has taken the measures necessary to maintain international peace and security'.¹²²

The protection of nationals abroad¹²³

In the nineteenth century, it was clearly regarded as lawful to use force to protect nationals and property situated abroad and many incidents occurred to demonstrate the acceptance of this position.¹²⁴ Since the adoption of the UN Charter, however, it has become rather more controversial since of necessity the 'territorial integrity and political independence' of the target state is infringed,¹²⁵ while one interpretation of article 51 would deny that 'an armed attack' could occur against individuals abroad within

¹²¹ See e.g. D. Grieg, 'Self-Defence and the Security Council: What Does Article 51 Require?', 40 ICLQ, 1991, p. 366.

¹²² Note that the Court pointed out in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 222, that Uganda did not report to the Security Council events that it had regarded as requiring it to act in self-defence. See Dinstein, *War*, p. 218, who argues that failure to report measures taken in the exercise of the right of self-defence 'should not be fatal, provided that the substantive conditions for the exercise of this right are met'.

¹²³ See e.g. M. B. Akehurst, 'The Use of Force to Protect Nationals Abroad', 5 *International Relations*, 1977, p. 3, and Akehurst, 'Humanitarian Intervention' in *Intervention in World Politics* (ed. H. Bull), Oxford, 1984, p. 95; Dinstein, *War*, pp. 231 ff.; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 126 ff.; Franck, *Recourse*, chapter 6; Waldock, 'General Course', p. 467; L. C. Green, 'Rescue at Entebbe – Legal Aspects', 6 *Israel Yearbook on Human Rights*, 1976, p. 312, and M. N. Shaw, 'Some Legal Aspects of the Entebbe Incident', 1 *Jewish Law Annual*, 1978, p. 232. See also T. Schweisfurth, 'Operations to Rescue Nationals in Third States Involving the Use of Force in Relation to the Protection of Human Rights', German YIL, 1980, p. 159; J. R. d'Angelo, 'Resort to Force to Protect Nationals', 21 Va. JIL, 1981, p. 485; J. Paust, 'The Seizure and Recovery of the *Mayaguez*', 85 *Yale Law Journal*, 1976, p. 774; D. W. Bowett, 'The Use of Force for the Protection of Nationals Abroad' in *The Current Legal Regulation of the Use of Force* (ed. A. Cassese), Oxford, 1986, p. 39, and N. Ronzitti, *Rescuing Nationals Abroad Through Military Coercion and Intervention on Grounds of Humanity*, Oxford, 1985.

¹²⁴ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 289 ff.

¹²⁵ There is, of course, a different situation where the state concerned has consented to the action or where nationals are evacuated from a state where law and order has broken down: see Gray, *Use of Force*, p. 129.

the meaning of that provision since it is the state itself that must be under attack, not specific persons outside the jurisdiction.¹²⁶

The issue has been raised in recent years in several cases. In 1964, Belgium and the United States sent forces to the Congo to rescue hostages (including nationals of the states in question) from the hands of rebels, with the permission of the Congolese government,¹²⁷ while in 1975 the US used force to rescue an American cargo boat and its crew captured by Cambodia.¹²⁸ The most famous incident, however, was the rescue by Israel of hostages held by Palestinian and other terrorists at Entebbe, following the hijack of an Air France airliner.¹²⁹ The Security Council debate in that case was inconclusive. Some states supported Israel's view that it was acting lawfully in protecting its nationals abroad, where the local state concerned was aiding the hijackers,¹³⁰ others adopted the approach that Israel had committed aggression against Uganda or used excessive force.¹³¹

The United States has in recent years justified armed action in other states on the grounds partly of the protection of American citizens abroad. It was one of the three grounds announced for the invasion of Grenada in 1984¹³² and one of the four grounds put forward for the intervention in Panama in December 1989.¹³³ However, in both cases the level of threat against the US citizens was such as to raise serious questions concerning the satisfaction of the requirement of proportionality.¹³⁴ The US conducted a bombing raid on Libya on 15 April 1986 as a consequence of alleged Libyan involvement in an attack on US servicemen in West Berlin.

¹²⁶ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 289 ff.

¹²⁷ See M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1968, vol. V, p. 475. See also R. B. Lillich, 'Forcible Self-Help to Protect Human Rights', 53 *Iowa Law Review*, 1967, p. 325.

¹²⁸ Paust, 'Seizure and Recovery'. See also DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 777–83.

¹²⁹ See e.g. Akehurst, 'Use of Force'; Green, 'Rescue at Entebbe', and Shaw, 'Legal Aspects'.

¹³⁰ See e.g. S/PV.1939, pp. 51–5; S/PV.1940, p. 48 and S/PV.1941, p. 31.

¹³¹ See e.g. S/PV.1943, pp. 47–50 and S/PV.1941, pp. 4–10, 57–61 and 67–72. Note that Egypt attempted without success a similar operation in Cyprus in 1978: see *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, p. 29305. In 1980, the US attempted to rescue its nationals held hostage in Iran but failed: see S/13908 and the *Iranian Hostages* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 3, 43; 61 ILR, pp. 530, 569.

¹³² See the statement of Deputy Secretary of State Dam, 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 200. See also W. Gilmore, *The Grenada Intervention*, London, 1984, and below, p. 1151.

¹³³ See the statements by the US President and the Department of State, 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 545.

¹³⁴ In the case of Grenada, it was alleged that some American students were under threat: see Gilmore, *Grenada*, pp. 55–64. In the Panama episode one American had been killed and several harassed: see V. Nanda, 'The Validity of United States Intervention in Panama Under International Law', 84 AJIL, 1990, pp. 494, 497.

This was justified by the US as an act of self-defence.¹³⁵ On 26 June 1993, the US launched missiles at the headquarters of the Iraqi military intelligence in Baghdad as a consequence of an alleged Iraqi plot to assassinate former US President Bush in Kuwait. It was argued that the resort to force was justified as a means of protecting US nationals in the future.¹³⁶ It is difficult to extract from the contradictory views expressed in these incidents the apposite legal principles. While some states affirm the existence of a rule permitting the use of force in self-defence to protect nationals abroad, others deny that such a principle operates in international law. There are states whose views are not fully formed or coherent on this issue. The UK Foreign Minister concluded on 28 June 1993 that:¹³⁷

Force may be used in self-defence against threats to one's nationals if: (a) there is good evidence that the target attacked would otherwise continue to be used by the other state in support of terrorist attacks against one's nationals; (b) there is, effectively, no other way to forestall imminent further attacks on one's nationals; (c) the force employed is proportionate to the threat.

On balance, and considering the opposing principles of saving the threatened lives of nationals and the preservation of the territorial integrity of states, it would seem preferable to accept the validity of the rule in carefully restricted situations consistent with the conditions laid down in the *Caroline* case.¹³⁸ Whether force may be used to protect property abroad is less controversial. It is universally accepted today that it is not lawful to have resort to force merely to save material possessions abroad.

Conclusions

Despite controversy and disagreement over the scope of the right of self-defence, there is an indisputable core and that is the competence of states

¹³⁵ See President Reagan's statement, *The Times*, 16 April 1986, p. 6. The UK government supported this: see *The Times*, 17 April 1986, p. 4. However, there are problems with regard to proportionality in view of the injuries and damage apparently caused in the air raid. One US serviceman was killed in the West Berlin action. The role of the UK in consenting to the use of British bases for the purposes of the raid is also raised. See also UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, pp. 639–42 and 80 AJIL, 1986, pp. 632–6, and C. J. Greenwood, 'International Law and the United States' Air Operation Against Libya', 89 *West Virginia Law Review*, 1987, p. 933.

¹³⁶ See Security Council Debates S/PV. 3245, 1993, and UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, pp. 731 ff. See also D. Kritsiotis, 'The Legality of the 1993 US Missile Strike on Iraq and the Right of Self-Defence in International Law', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 162.

¹³⁷ 227 HC Deb., col. 658; 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 732. ¹³⁸ See above, p. 1131.

to resort to force in order to repel an attack. A clear example of this was provided in the Falklands conflict. Whatever doubts may be entertained about the precise roots of British title to the islands, it is very clear that after the Argentinian invasion of the territory, the UK possessed in law the right to act to restore the *status quo ante* and remove the Argentinian troops.¹³⁹ Security Council resolution 502 (1982), in calling for an immediate withdrawal of Argentinian forces and determining that a breach of the peace existed, reinforced this. It should also be noted that it is accepted that a state is entitled to rely upon the right of self-defence even while its possession of the territory in question is the subject of controversy.¹⁴⁰

*Collective self-defence*¹⁴¹

Historically the right of states to take up arms to defend themselves from external force is well established as a rule of customary international law. Article 51, however, also refers to 'the inherent right of... collective self-defence' and the question therefore arises as to how far one state may resort to force in the defence of another. The idea of collective self-defence, however, is rather ambiguous. It may be regarded merely as a pooling of a number of individual rights of self-defence within the framework of a particular treaty or institution, as some writers have suggested,¹⁴² or it may form the basis of comprehensive regional security systems. If the former were the case, it might lead to legal difficulties should Iceland resort to force in defence of Turkish interests, since actions against Turkey would in no way justify an armed reaction by Iceland pursuant to its individual right of self-defence.

In fact, state practice has adopted the second approach. Organisations such as NATO and the Warsaw Pact were established after the Second World War, specifically based upon the right of collective self-defence under article 51. By such agreements, an attack upon one party is treated as an attack upon all,¹⁴³ thus necessitating the conclusion that collective

¹³⁹ See above, chapter 10, p. 532.

¹⁴⁰ See e.g. Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 382–3. See also above, p. 1128.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, chapter 9, and Gray, *Use of Force*, chapter 5.

¹⁴² See e.g. Bowett, *Self-Defence*, p. 245, cf. Goodrich, Hambro and Simons, *Charter*, p. 348. See also Brownlie, *Use of Force*, pp. 328–9.

¹⁴³ See e.g. article 5 of the NATO Treaty, 1949.

self-defence is something more than a collection of individual rights of self-defence, but another creature altogether.¹⁴⁴

This approach finds support in the *Nicaragua* case.¹⁴⁵ The Court stressed that the right to collective self-defence was established in customary law but added that the exercise of that right depended upon both a prior declaration by the state concerned that it was the victim of an armed attack and a request by the victim state for assistance. In addition, the Court emphasised that 'for one state to use force against another, on the ground that that state has committed a wrongful act of force against a third state, is regarded as lawful, by way of exception, only when the wrongful act provoking the response was an armed attack'.¹⁴⁶

The invasion of Kuwait by Iraq on 2 August 1990 raised the issue of collective self-defence in the context of the response of the states allied in the coalition to end that conquest and occupation. The Kuwaiti government in exile appealed for assistance from other states.¹⁴⁷ Although the armed action from 16 January 1991 was taken pursuant to UN Security Council resolutions,¹⁴⁸ it is indeed arguable that the right to collective self-defence is also relevant in this context.¹⁴⁹

Intervention¹⁵⁰

The principle of non-intervention is part of customary international law and founded upon the concept of respect for the territorial sovereignty

¹⁴⁴ Note article 52 of the UN Charter, which recognises the existence of regional arrangements and agencies, dealing with such matters relating to international peace and security as are appropriate for regional action, provided they are consistent with the purposes and principles of the UN: see further below, chapter 22, p. 1273.

¹⁴⁵ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 103–5; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 437.

¹⁴⁶ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 110. See also *ibid.*, p. 127; 76 ILR, pp. 444 and 461. This was reaffirmed in the *Oil Platforms (Iran v. USA)* case, ICJ Reports, 2003, pp. 161, 186; 130 ILR, pp. 323, 346.

¹⁴⁷ See *Keesing's Record of World Events*, pp. 37631 ff. (1990).

¹⁴⁸ See below, chapter 22, p. 1253.

¹⁴⁹ Note that Security Council resolution 661 (1990) specifically referred in its preamble to 'the inherent right of individual or collective self-defence, in response to the armed attack by Iraq against Kuwait'. See also the *Barcelona Traction* case, ICJ Reports, 1970, pp. 3, 32; 46 ILR, pp. 178, 206.

¹⁵⁰ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, chapter 3; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 947; T. Komarnicki, 'L'Intervention en Droit International Moderne', 62 RGDIP, 1956, p. 521; T. Farer, 'The Regulation of Foreign Armed Intervention in Civil Armed Conflict', 142 HR, 1974 II, p. 291, and J. E. S. Fawcett, 'Intervention in International Law', 103 HR, 1961 II, p. 347.

of states.¹⁵¹ Intervention is prohibited where it bears upon matters in which each state is permitted to decide freely by virtue of the principle of state sovereignty. This includes, as the International Court of Justice noted in the *Nicaragua* case,¹⁵² the choice of political, economic, social and cultural systems and the formulation of foreign policy. Intervention becomes wrongful when it uses methods of coercion in regard to such choices, which must be free ones.¹⁵³ There was 'no general right of intervention in support of an opposition within another state' in international law. In addition, acts constituting a breach of the customary principle of non-intervention will also, if they directly or indirectly involve the use of force, constitute a breach of the principle of the non-use of force in international relations.¹⁵⁴ The principle of respect for the sovereignty of states was another principle closely allied to the principles of the prohibition of the use of force and of non-intervention.¹⁵⁵

*Civil wars*¹⁵⁶

International law treats civil wars as purely internal matters, with the possible exception of self-determination conflicts.¹⁵⁷ Article 2(4) of the UN

¹⁵¹ See the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 4, 35; 16 AD, pp. 155, 167 and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 106; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 440. See also the Declaration on the Inadmissibility of Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States, 1965 and the Declaration on the Principles of International Law, 1970, above, p. 1127.

¹⁵² ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 108; 76 ILR, p. 442. See also S. McCaffrey, 'The Forty-First Session of the International Law Commission', 83 AJIL, 1989, p. 937.

¹⁵³ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 108. ¹⁵⁴ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 109–10; 76 ILR, p. 443.

¹⁵⁵ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 111; 76 ILR, p. 445.

¹⁵⁶ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 60 ff.; *Law and Civil War in the Modern World* (ed. J. N. Moore), Princeton, 1974; *The International Regulation of Civil Wars* (ed. E. Luard), Oxford, 1972; *The International Law of Civil Wars* (ed. R. A. Falk), Princeton, 1971; T. Fraser, 'The Regulation of Foreign Intervention in Civil Armed Conflict', 142 HR, 1974, p. 291, and W. Friedmann, 'Intervention, Civil War and the Rule of International Law', PASIL, 1965, p. 67. See also R. Higgins, 'Intervention and International Law' in Bull, *Intervention in World Politics*, p. 29; C. C. Joyner and B. Grimaldi, 'The United States and Nicaragua: Reflections on the Lawfulness of Contemporary Intervention', 25 Va. JIL, 1985, p. 621, and Schachter, *International Law*, pp. 158 ff.

¹⁵⁷ Note that the Declaration on Principles of International Law concerning Friendly Relations, 1970 emphasised that all states were under a duty to refrain from any forcible action which deprives people of their right to self-determination and that 'in their actions against, and resistance to, such forcible action' such peoples could receive support in accordance with the purpose and principles of the UN Charter. Article 7 of the Consensus Definition of Aggression in 1974 referred ambiguously to the right of peoples entitled to but forcibly deprived of the right to self-determination, 'to struggle to that end and to seek and receive support, in accordance with the principles of the Charter and in conformity' with the 1970

Charter prohibits the threat or use of force in international relations, not in domestic situations. There is no rule against rebellion in international law. It is within the domestic jurisdiction of states and is left to be dealt with by internal law. Should the rebellion succeed, the resulting situation would be dealt with primarily in the context of recognition. As far as third parties are concerned, traditional international law developed the categories of rebellion, insurgency and belligerency.

Once a state has defined its attitude and characterised the situation, different international legal provisions would apply. If the rebels are regarded as criminals, the matter is purely within the hands of the authorities of the country concerned and no other state may legitimately interfere. If the rebels are treated as insurgents, then other states may or may not agree to grant them certain rights. It is at the discretion of the other states concerned, since an intermediate status is involved. The rebels are not mere criminals, but they are not recognised belligerents. Accordingly, the other states are at liberty to define their legal relationship with them. Insurgency is a purely provisional classification and would arise, for example, where a state needed to protect nationals or property in an area under the *de facto* control of the rebels.¹⁵⁸ On the other hand, belligerency is a formal status involving rights and duties. In the eyes of classical international law, other states may accord recognition of belligerency to rebels when certain conditions have been fulfilled. These were defined as the existence of an armed conflict of a general nature within a state, the occupation by the rebels of a substantial portion of the national territory, the conduct of hostilities in accordance with the rules of war and by organised groups operating under a responsible authority and the existence of circumstances rendering it necessary for the states contemplating recognition to define their attitude

Declaration. Article 1(4) of Additional Protocol I to the Geneva 'Red Cross' Conventions of 1949, adopted in 1977, provided that international armed conflict situations 'include armed conflicts in which peoples are fighting against colonial domination and alien occupation and against racist regimes in the exercise of their right to self-determination' as enshrined in the Charter of the UN and the 1970 Declaration. Whether this means that articles 2(4) and 51 of the Charter now apply to self-determination conflicts so that the peoples in question have a valid right to use force in self-defence is controversial and difficult to maintain. However, the use of force to suppress self-determination is now clearly unacceptable, as is help by third parties given to that end, but the provision of armed assistance to peoples seeking self-determination would appear to remain unlawful: see Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 52 ff.; A. Cassese, *Self-Determination of Peoples*, Cambridge, 1995, p. 193; and H. Wilson, *International Law and the Use of Force by National Liberation Movements*, Oxford, 1988. See as to the principle of self-determination, above, chapter 5, p. 251.

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. H. Lauterpacht, *Recognition in International Law*, Cambridge, 1947, pp. 275 ff.

to the situation.¹⁵⁹ This would arise, for example, where the parties to the conflict are exercising belligerent rights on the high seas. Other maritime countries would feel compelled to decide upon the respective status of the warring sides, since the recognition of belligerency entails certain international legal consequences. Once the rebels have been accepted by other states as belligerents they become subjects of international law and responsible in international law for all their acts. In addition, the rules governing the conduct of hostilities become applicable to both sides, so that, for example, the recognising states must then adopt a position of neutrality.

However, these concepts of insurgency and belligerency are lacking in clarity and are extremely subjective. The absence of clear criteria, particularly with regard to the concept of insurgency, has led to a great deal of confusion. The issue is of importance since the majority of conflicts in the years since the conclusion of the Second World War have been in essence civil wars. The reasons for this are many and complex and ideological rivalry and decolonisation within colonially imposed boundaries are amongst them.¹⁶⁰ Intervention may be justified on a number of grounds, including response to earlier involvement by a third party. For instance, the USSR and Cuba justified their activities in the Angolan civil war of 1975–6 by reference to the prior South African intervention,¹⁶¹ while the United States argued that its aid to South Vietnam grew in proportion to the involvement of North Vietnamese forces in the conflict.¹⁶²

The international law rules dealing with civil wars depend upon the categorisation by third states of the relative status of the two sides to the conflict. In traditional terms, an insurgency means that the recognising state may, if it wishes, create legal rights and duties as between itself and the insurgents, while recognition of belligerency involves an acceptance of a position of neutrality (although there are some exceptions to this rule) by the recognising states. But in practice, states very rarely make an express acknowledgement as to the status of the parties to the conflict, precisely in order to retain as wide a room for manoeuvre as possible. This means that the relevant legal rules cannot really operate as intended

¹⁵⁹ See e.g. N. Mugerwa, 'Subjects of International Law' in Sørensen, *Manual of Public International Law*, pp. 247, 286–8. See also R. Higgins, 'International Law and Civil Conflict' in Luard, *International Regulation of Civil Wars*, pp. 169, 170–1.

¹⁶⁰ See e.g. M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986.

¹⁶¹ See e.g. C. Legum and T. Hodges, *After Angola*, London, 1976.

¹⁶² See e.g. *Law and the Indo-China War* (ed. J. N. Moore), Charlottesville, 1972. See also *The Vietnam War and International Law* (ed. R. A. Falk), Princeton, 4 vols., 1968–76.

in classical law and that it becomes extremely difficult to decide whether a particular intervention is justified or not.¹⁶³

Aid to the authorities of a state¹⁶⁴

It would appear that in general outside aid to the government authorities to repress a revolt¹⁶⁵ is perfectly legitimate,¹⁶⁶ provided, of course, it was requested by the government. The problem of defining the governmental authority entitled to request assistance was raised in the Grenada episode. In that situation, the appeal for the US intervention was allegedly made by the Governor-General of the island,¹⁶⁷ but controversy exists as to whether this in fact did take place prior to the invasion and whether the Governor-General was the requisite authority to issue such an appeal.¹⁶⁸ The issue resurfaced in a rather different form regarding the Panama invasion of December 1989. One of the legal principles identified by the US Department of State as the basis for the US action was that of assistance to the 'lawful and democratically elected government in Panama'.¹⁶⁹ The problem with this was that this particular government had been prevented by General Noriega from actually taking office and the issue raised was therefore whether an elected head of state who is prevented from ever acting as such may be regarded as a governmental authority capable of requesting assistance including armed force from another state. This in fact runs counter to the test of acceptance in international law of governmental authority, which is firmly based upon effective control rather than upon the nature of the regime, whether democratic, socialist or otherwise.¹⁷⁰

¹⁶³ But see below, chapter 22, p. 1257, with regard to the increasing involvement of the UN in internal conflicts and the increasing tendency to classify such conflicts as possessing an international dimension.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. L. Doswald-Beck, 'The Legal Validity of Military Intervention by Invitation of the Government', 56 BYIL, 1985, p. 189, and Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 68 ff.

¹⁶⁵ See *Nicaragua v. USA*, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 126, where the Court noted that intervention is 'already allowable at the request of the government of a state'; however, apparently not where the recipient state is forcibly suppressing the right to self-determination of a people entitled to such rights: see above, p. 1148, note 157.

¹⁶⁶ Until a recognition of belligerency, of course, although this has been unknown in modern times: see e.g. Lauterpacht, *Recognition*, pp. 230–3.

¹⁶⁷ See the statement by Deputy Secretary of State Dam, 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 200.

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. J. N. Moore, *Law and the Grenada Mission*, Charlottesville, 1984, and Gilmore, *Grenada*. See also Higgins, *Development of International Law*, pp. 162–4 regarding the Congo crisis of 1960, where that state's President and Prime Minister sought to dismiss each other.

¹⁶⁹ 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 547. ¹⁷⁰ See above, chapter 9, p. 454.

The general proposition, however, that aid to recognised governmental authorities is legitimate,¹⁷¹ would be further reinforced where it could be shown that other states were encouraging or directing the subversive operations of the rebels. In such cases, it appears that the doctrine of collective self-defence would allow other states to intervene openly and lawfully on the side of the government authorities.¹⁷² Some writers have suggested that the traditional rule of permitting third-party assistance to governments would not extend to aid where the outcome of the struggle has become uncertain or where the rebellion has become widespread and seriously aimed at overthrowing the government.¹⁷³ While this may be politically desirable for the third state, it may put at serious risk entirely deserving governments.¹⁷⁴ Practice, however, does suggest that many forms of aid, such as economic, technical and arms provision arrangements, to existing governments faced with civil strife, are acceptable.¹⁷⁵ There is an argument, on the other hand, for suggesting that substantial assistance to a government clearly in the throes of collapse might be questionable as intervention in a domestic situation that is on the point of resolution, but there are considerable definitional problems here.

Aid to rebels¹⁷⁶

The reverse side of the proposition is that aid to rebels is contrary to international law. The 1970 Declaration on Principles of International Law emphasised that:

¹⁷¹ Note that article 20 of the International Law Commission's Articles on State Responsibility, 2001, provides that 'Valid consent by a State to the commission of a given act by another State precludes the wrongfulness of that act in relation to the former State to the extent that the act remains within the limits of that consent.'

¹⁷² But in the light of the principles propounded in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 104, 120–3; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 438, 454–7.

¹⁷³ See e.g. Q. Wright, 'US Intervention in the Lebanon', 53 AJIL, 1959, pp. 112, 122. See also R. A. Falk, *Legal Order in a Violent World*, Princeton, 1968, pp. 227–8 and 273, and Doswald-Beck, 'Legal Validity', p. 251.

¹⁷⁴ However, where consent to the presence of foreign troops has been withdrawn by the government of the state concerned, the continuing presence of those troops may constitute (in the absence of any legitimate exercise of the right of self-defence) an unlawful use of force: see e.g. *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 213 and 224. See also article 3(e) of the Consensus Definition of Aggression, 1974.

¹⁷⁵ See, with regard to the UK continuance of arms sales to Nigeria during its civil war, Higgins, 'International Law and Civil Conflict', p. 173. Note also the US policy of distinguishing between traditional suppliers of arms and non-traditional suppliers of arms in such circumstances. It would support aid provided by the former (as the UK in Nigeria), but not the latter: see DUSPIL, 1976, p. 7.

¹⁷⁶ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 87 ff.

[n]o state shall organise, assist, foment, finance, incite or tolerate subversive, terrorist or armed activities directed towards the violent overthrow of the regime of another state, or interfere in civil strife in another state.¹⁷⁷

The Declaration also provided that:

[e]very state shall refrain from any action aimed at the partial or total disruption of the national unity and territorial integrity of any other state or country.

In the *Nicaragua* case,¹⁷⁸ the Court declared that the principle of non-intervention prohibits a state 'to intervene, directly or indirectly, with or without armed force, in support of an internal opposition in another state' and went on to say that acts which breach the principle of non-intervention 'will also, if they directly or indirectly involve the use of force, constitute a breach of the principle of the non-use of force in international relations'. Further, the Court emphasised in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*¹⁷⁹ that where such an unlawful military intervention reaches a certain magnitude and duration, it would amount to 'a grave violation of the prohibition on the use of force expressed in article 2, paragraph 4, of the Charter'.

In reality, state practice is far from clear.¹⁸⁰ Where a prior, illegal intervention on the government side has occurred, it may be argued that aid to the rebels is acceptable. This was argued by a number of states with regard to the Afghanistan situation, where it was argued that the Soviet intervention in that state amounted to an invasion.¹⁸¹

¹⁷⁷ See also in similar terms the Declaration on the Inadmissibility of Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States, 1965, above, p. 1126. Article 3(g) of the General Assembly's Consensus Definition of Aggression, 1974, characterises as an act of aggression 'the sending by or on behalf of a state of armed bands, groups, irregulars or mercenaries, which carry out acts of armed force against another state'. See also, with regard to US aid to the Nicaraguan 'Contras', Chayes, *Cuban Missile Crisis*, and the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 14; 76 ILR, p. 349.

¹⁷⁸ ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 108 and 109–10. These propositions were reaffirmed by the Court in *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 227.

¹⁷⁹ ICJ Reports, 2005, p. 168.

¹⁸⁰ See e.g. Syrian intervention in the Jordanian civil war of 1970 and in the Lebanon in 1976 and see Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 85 ff.

¹⁸¹ See e.g. *Keesing's Contemporary Archives*, pp. 30339, 30364 and 30385. See also General Assembly resolutions ES-62; 35/37; 36/34; 37/37 and 38/29 condemning the USSR for its armed intervention in Afghanistan. See also Doswald-Beck, 'Legal Validity', pp. 230 ff.

The situation in the Democratic Republic of the Congo

The situation in the Democratic Republic of the Congo in 1999 and after, with intervention against the government by Uganda and Rwanda (seeking initially to act against rebel movements operating against them from Congolese territory and then assisting rebels against the Congo government) and on behalf of the government by a number of states, including Zimbabwe, Angola and Namibia, is instructive.¹⁸² In resolution 1234 (1999), the Security Council recalled the inherent right of individual and collective self-defence in accordance with article 51 and reaffirmed the need for all states to refrain from interfering in the internal affairs of other states. It called upon states to bring to an end the presence of uninvited forces of foreign states.¹⁸³ The Council in resolution 1291 (1999) called for the orderly withdrawal of all foreign forces from the Congo in accordance with the Lusaka Ceasefire Agreement.¹⁸⁴ Security Council resolution 1304 (2000) went further and, acting under Chapter VII, demanded that 'Uganda and Rwanda, which have violated the sovereignty and territorial integrity of the Democratic Republic of the Congo, withdraw all their forces from the territory of the Democratic Republic of the Congo without delay'. An end to all other foreign military presence and activity was also called for in conformity with the provisions of the Lusaka Agreement.¹⁸⁵ The UN also established a mission in the Congo (MONUC) in 1999, whose mandate was subsequently extended.¹⁸⁶ The situation demonstrates the UN approach, reflecting international law, to the effect that while aid by foreign states to the government was acceptable,¹⁸⁷ aid to rebels by foreign states was not. Side by side with this, the UN did recognise the problem posed by foreign militias based in the eastern region of the Democratic Republic of the Congo (particularly the Rwanda

¹⁸² See Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 60–4, 70–1, 247–50 and 258–9. See also P. N. Okowa, 'Congo's War: The Legal Dimension of a Protracted Conflict', 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 203.

¹⁸³ Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 61–2, noting that the Security Council took a clear position that aid to the government was permissible, while intervention or force to overthrow the government was not. The Democratic Republic of the Congo had written to the Security Council accusing Rwanda and Uganda of aggression and justifying its invitation to Angola, Namibia and Zimbabwe as a response to foreign intervention: see *UN Yearbook*, 1998, pp. 82–8 and S/1998/827.

¹⁸⁴ See S/1999/815.

¹⁸⁵ See also Security Council resolutions 1341 (2001) and 1355 (2001). Security Council resolution 1376 (2001) welcomed the withdrawal of some forces, including the full Namibian contingent, from the Congo. See also resolutions 1417 (2002), 1457 (2003) and 1468 (2003). Essentially condemnation was reserved by name for Rwanda and Uganda.

¹⁸⁶ See further below, chapter 22, p. 1264. ¹⁸⁷ See Okowa, 'Congo', p. 224.

Interahamwe who had been involved in the 1994 genocide and the Ugandan Lord's Resistance Army) and called for them to be disarmed.¹⁸⁸

*Humanitarian intervention*¹⁸⁹

This section concerns the question as to whether there can be said to be a right of humanitarian intervention by individual states. The issue of intervention by the UN in situations of humanitarian need and as a consequence of Security Council action is covered in the next chapter.

It has sometimes been argued that intervention in order to protect the lives of persons situated within a particular state and not necessarily nationals of the intervening state is permissible in strictly defined situations. This has some support in pre-Charter law and it may very well have been the case that in the nineteenth century such intervention was accepted under international law.¹⁹⁰ However, it is difficult to reconcile today with article 2(4) of the Charter¹⁹¹ unless one either adopts a rather artificial

¹⁸⁸ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 1756 (2007) and 1794 (2007).

¹⁸⁹ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 31 ff.; Dinstein, *War*, pp. 70 ff.; Franck, *Recourse*, chapter 9; Byers, *War Law*, Part Three; N. J. Wheeler, *Saving Strangers: Humanitarian Intervention in International Society*, Oxford, 2002; R. Goodman, 'Humanitarian Intervention and Pretexts for War', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 107; D. Kennedy, *The Dark Sides of Virtue*, Princeton, 2004; *Humanitarian Intervention* (eds. J. L. Holzgrefe and R. O. Keohane), Cambridge, 2003; S. Chesterman, *Just War or Just Peace: Humanitarian Intervention and International Law*, Oxford, 2001; *Humanitarian Intervention and the United Nations* (ed. R. B. Lillich), Charlottesville, 1973; R. B. Lillich, 'Forcible Self-Help by States to Protect Human Rights', 53 *Iowa Law Review*, 1967, p. 325, and Lillich, 'Intervention to Protect Human Rights', 15 *McGill Law Journal*, 1969, p. 205, and Lillich, 'Humanitarian Intervention Through the United Nations: Towards the Development of Criteria', 53 *ZaöRV*, 1993, p. 557; T. M. Franck and N. S. Rodley, 'After Bangladesh: The Law of Humanitarian Intervention by Military Force', 67 AJIL, 1973, p. 275; J. P. Fonteyne, 'The Customary International Law Doctrine of Humanitarian Intervention', 4 *California Western International Law Journal*, 1974, p. 203; Chilstrom, 'Humanitarian Intervention under Contemporary International Law', 1 *Yale Studies in World Public Order*, 1974, p. 93; N. D. Arnison, 'The Law of Humanitarian Intervention' in *Refugees in the 1990s: New Strategies for a Restless World* (ed. H. Cleveland), 1993, p. 37; D. J. Scheffer, 'Towards a Modern Doctrine of Humanitarian Intervention', 23 *University of Toledo Law Review*, 1992, p. 253; D. Kritsiotis, 'Reappraising Policy Objections to Humanitarian Intervention', 19 *Michigan Journal of International Law*, 1998, p. 1005; N. Tsagourias, *The Theory and Praxis of Humanitarian Intervention*, Manchester, 1999, and F. Tesón, *Humanitarian Intervention: An Inquiry into Law and Morality*, 2nd edn, New York, 1997.

¹⁹⁰ See e.g. H. Ganji, *International Protection of Human Rights*, New York, 1962, chapter 1 and references cited in previous footnote.

¹⁹¹ See, in particular, I. Brownlie, 'Humanitarian Intervention', in Moore, *Law and Civil War*, p. 217.

definition of the 'territorial integrity' criterion in order to permit temporary violations or posits the establishment of the right in customary law. Practice has also been in general unfavourable to the concept, primarily because it might be used to justify interventions by more forceful states into the territories of weaker states.¹⁹² Nevertheless, it is not inconceivable that in some situations the international community might refrain from adopting a condemnatory stand where large numbers of lives have been saved in circumstances of gross oppression by a state of its citizens due to an outside intervention. In addition, it is possible that such a right might evolve in cases of extreme humanitarian need. One argument used to justify the use of Western troops to secure a safe haven in northern Iraq after the Gulf War was that it was taken in pursuance of the customary international law principle of humanitarian intervention in an extreme situation. Security Council resolution 688 (1991) condemned the widespread repression by Iraq of its Kurd and Shia populations and, citing this, the US, UK and France proclaimed 'no-fly zones' in the north and south of the country.¹⁹³ There was no express authorisation from the UN. It was argued by the UK that the no-fly zones were 'justified under international law in response to a situation of overwhelming humanitarian necessity'.¹⁹⁴

The Kosovo crisis of 1999 raised squarely the issue of humanitarian intervention.¹⁹⁵ The justification for the NATO bombing campaign, acting out of area and without UN authorisation, in support of the repressed ethnic Albanian population of that province of Yugoslavia, was that of humanitarian necessity. The UK Secretary of State for Defence stated that,

¹⁹² See e.g. M. B. Akehurst, 'Humanitarian Intervention' in Bull, *Intervention in World Politics*, p. 95.

¹⁹³ See the views expressed by a Foreign Office legal advisor to the House of Commons Foreign Affairs Committee, UKMIL, 63 BYIL, 1992, pp. 827–8. This is to be compared with the views of the Foreign Office several years earlier where it was stated that the best case that could be made was that it was not 'unambiguously illegal': see UKMIL, 57 BYIL, 1986, p. 619. See also Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 33 ff., and below, chapter 22, p. 1254.

¹⁹⁴ UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 590. See also UKMIL, 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 857.

¹⁹⁵ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 37 ff.; N. S. Rodley and B. Çali, 'Kosovo Revisited: Humanitarian Intervention on the Fault Lines of International Law', 7 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2007, p. 275; B. Simma, 'NATO, the UN and the Use of Force: Legal Aspects', 10 *EJIL*, 1999, p. 1; Kofi A. Annan, *The Question of Intervention: Statements by the Secretary-General*, New York, 1999; 'NATO's Kosovo Intervention', various writers, 93 *AJIL*, 1999, pp. 824–62; D. Kritsiotis, 'The Kosovo Crisis and NATO's Application of Armed Force Against the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia', 49 *ICLQ*, 2000, p. 330; P. Hilpod, 'Humanitarian Intervention: Is There a Need for a Legal Reappraisal?', 12 *EJIL*, 2001, p. 437, and 'Kosovo: House of Commons Foreign Affairs Committee 4th Report, June 2000', various memoranda, 49 *ICLQ*, 2000, pp. 876–943.

'In international law, in exceptional circumstances and to avoid a humanitarian catastrophe, military action can be taken and it is on that legal basis that military action was taken.'¹⁹⁶ The Security Council by twelve votes to three rejected a resolution condemning NATO's use of force.¹⁹⁷ After the conflict, and after an agreement had been reached between NATO and Yugoslavia,¹⁹⁸ the Council adopted resolution 1244 (1999) which welcomed the withdrawal of Yugoslav forces from the territory and decided upon the deployment under UN auspices of international civil and military presences. Member states and international organisations were, in particular, authorised to establish the international security presence and the resolution laid down the main responsibilities of the civil presence. There was no formal endorsement of the NATO action, but no condemnation.¹⁹⁹ It can be concluded that the doctrine of humanitarian intervention in a crisis situation was invoked and not condemned by the UN, but it received meagre support.²⁰⁰ It is not possible to characterise the legal situation as going beyond this.²⁰¹

¹⁹⁶ UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 586. A Foreign Office Minister wrote that, 'a limited use of force was justifiable in support of the purposes laid down by the Security Council but without the Council's express authorisation when that was the only means to avert an immediate and overwhelming humanitarian catastrophe', *ibid.*, p. 587 and see also *ibid.*, p. 598. The UK Prime Minister wrote to Parliament in 2004 stating that force may be used by states 'In exceptional circumstances, when it is the only way to avert an overwhelming humanitarian catastrophe, as in Kosovo in 1999', HC Deb., 22 March 2004, vol. 419, col. 561W–562W, UKMIL, 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 853.

¹⁹⁷ SCOR, 3989th meeting, 26 March 1999. ¹⁹⁸ See 38 ILM, 1999, p. 1217.

¹⁹⁹ Note that Yugoslavia made an application in April 1999 to the International Court against ten of the nineteen NATO states, alleging that these states, by participating in the use of force, had violated international law. The Court rejected the application made for provisional measures in all ten cases: see e.g. *Yugoslavia v. Belgium*, ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 124, and upheld preliminary objections as to jurisdiction and admissibility: see e.g. *Serbia and Montenegro v. UK*, ICJ Reports, 2004, p. 1307.

²⁰⁰ See also the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 134–5; 76 ILR, p. 349, where the Court stated that the use of force could not be the appropriate method to monitor or ensure respect for human rights in Nicaragua.

²⁰¹ Note that the UK produced a set of Policy Guidelines on Humanitarian Crises in 2001. This provided *inter alia* that the Security Council should authorise action to halt or avert massive violations of humanitarian law and that, in response to such crises, force may be used in the face of overwhelming and immediate humanitarian catastrophe when the government cannot or will not avert it, when all non-violent methods have been exhausted, the scale of real or potential suffering justifies the risks of military action, if there is a clear objective to avert or end the catastrophe, there is clear evidence that such action would be welcomed by the people at risk and that the consequences for suffering of non-action would be worse than those of intervention. Further, the use of force should be collective, limited in scope and proportionate to achieving the humanitarian objective and consistent with international humanitarian law, UKMIL, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 696.

One variant of the principle of humanitarian intervention is the contention that intervention in order to restore democracy is permitted as such under international law.²⁰² One of the grounds given for the US intervention in Panama in December 1989 was the restoration of democracy,²⁰³ but apart from the problems of defining democracy, such a proposition is not acceptable in international law in view of the clear provisions of the UN Charter. Nor is there anything to suggest that even if the principle of self-determination could be interpreted as applying beyond the strict colonial context²⁰⁴ to cover 'democracy', it could constitute a norm superior to that of non-intervention.

More recently, there has been extensive consideration of the 'responsibility to protect' as a composite concept comprising the responsibilities to prevent catastrophic situations, to react immediately when they do occur and to rebuild afterwards.²⁰⁵ Such an approach may be seen as an effort to redefine the principle of humanitarian intervention in a way that seeks to minimise the motives of the intervening powers and there is no doubt that it reflects an important trend in international society and one that is influential, particularly in the context of UN action. Such responsibilities are deemed to fall both upon states and the international community and notably include the commitment to reconstruction after intervention or initial involvement. As they have been broadly and flexibly proposed, emphasising, for example, the obligation of states to protect human rights on their territory and the primary focus upon the UN with regard to any military action, the sharp edges of the humanitarian intervention doctrine have been blunted, but it remains to be seen how influential this approach may be.²⁰⁶

²⁰² See e.g. J. Crawford, 'Democracy and International Law', 44 BYIL, 1993, p. 113; B. R. Roth, *Governmental Illegitimacy in International Law*, Oxford, 1999; Franck, *Fairness*, chapter 4, and Franck, *The Empowered Self*, Oxford, 1999; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 49 ff., and O. Schachter, 'The Legality of Pro-Democratic Invasion', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 645.

²⁰³ See e.g. *Keesing's Record of World Events*, p. 37112 (1989). See also Nanda, 'Validity', p. 498.

²⁰⁴ See above, chapter 6, p. 289.

²⁰⁵ See e.g. International Commission on Intervention and State Sovereignty, *The Responsibility to Protect*, Ottawa, 2001; Report of the UN High Level Panel on Threats, Challenges and Change, A/59/565, 2004, at paras. 201–3; UN Secretary-General, *In Larger Freedom*, A/59/2005, paras. 16–22; World Summit Outcome, General Assembly resolution 60/1, 2005, paras. 138–9, and C. Stahn, 'Responsibility to Protect: Political Rhetoric or Emerging Legal Norm?', 101 AJIL, 2007, p. 99.

²⁰⁶ It should also be emphasised that the documents cited in the previous footnote are ambiguous as to the right of individual states to intervene by force in the territory of other states.

Terrorism and international law²⁰⁷

The use of terror as a means to achieve political ends is not a new phenomenon, but it has recently acquired a new intensity. In many cases, terrorists deliberately choose targets in uninvolved third states as a means of pressurising the government of the state against which it is in conflict or its real or potential or assumed allies.²⁰⁸ As far as international law is concerned, there are a number of problems that can be identified. The first major concern is that of definition.²⁰⁹ For example, how widely should the offence be defined, for instance should attacks against property as well as attacks upon persons be covered? And to what extent should one take into account the motives and intentions of the perpetrators? Secondly, the relationship between terrorism and the use of force by states in response is posed.²¹⁰ Thirdly, the relationship between terrorism and human rights needs to be taken into account.

Despite political difficulties, increasing progress at an international and regional level has been made to establish rules of international law with regard to terrorism. A twin-track approach has been adopted, dealing both with particular manifestations of terrorist activity and with a general condemnation of the phenomenon.²¹¹ In so far as the first is concerned, the UN has currently adopted thirteen international conventions concerning

²⁰⁷ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 135 ff.; T. Becker, *Terrorism and the State*, Oxford, 2006; *Legal Aspects of International Terrorism* (eds. A. E. Evans and J. Murphy), Lexington, 1978; R. Friedlander, *Terrorism*, Dobbs Ferry, 1979; R. B. Lillich and T. Paxman, 'State Responsibility for Injuries to Aliens Caused by Terrorist Activity', 26 *American Law Review*, 1977, p. 217; *International Terrorism and Political Crimes* (ed. M. C. Bassiouni), 1975; E. McWhinney, *Aerial Piracy and International Terrorism*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1987; A. Cassese, *Terrorism, Politics and Law*, Cambridge, 1989; V. Lowe, "'Clear and Present Danger": Responses to Terrorism', 54 ICLQ, 2005, p. 185; G. Guillaume, 'Terrorism and International Law', 53 ICLQ, 2004, p. 537; J. Pejic, 'Terrorist Acts and Groups: A Role for International Law', 75 BYIL, 2004, p. 71; J. Delbrück, 'The Fight Against Global Terrorism', German YIL, 2001, p. 9, and A. Cassese, 'Terrorism is Also Disrupting Some Crucial Legal Categories of International Law', 95 AJIL, 2001, p. 993. See also the UN website on terrorism, www.un.org/terrorism/.

²⁰⁸ The hijack of TWA Flight 847 on 14 June 1985 by Lebanese Shi'ites is one example of this phenomenon: see e.g. *The Economist*, 22 June 1985, p. 34.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. B. Saul, *Defining Terrorism in International Law*, Oxford, 2006 and articles on the Quest for a Legal Definition, 4 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2006, pp. 894 ff.

²¹⁰ See above, p. 1134.

²¹¹ See, with regard to the failed attempt by the League of Nations in the 1937 Convention for the Prevention and Punishment of Terrorism to establish a comprehensive code, e.g. Murphy, *United Nations*, p. 179. See also T. M. Franck and B. Lockwood, 'Preliminary Thoughts Towards an International Convention on Terrorism', 68 AJIL, 1974, p. 69.

terrorism, dealing with issues such as hijacking, hostages and terrorist bombings.²¹² Many of these conventions operate on a common model, establishing the basis of quasi-universal jurisdiction with an interlocking network of international obligations. The model comprises a definition of the offence in question and the automatic incorporation of such offences within all extradition agreements between states parties coupled with obligations on states parties to make this offence an offence in domestic law, to establish jurisdiction over this offence (usually where committed in the territory of the state or on board a ship or aircraft registered there, or by a national of that state or on a discretionary basis in some conventions where nationals of that state have been victims) and, where the alleged offender is present in the territory, either to prosecute or to extradite to another state that will.²¹³

In addition, the UN has sought to tackle the question of terrorism in a comprehensive fashion. In December 1972, the General Assembly set up an ad hoc committee on terrorism²¹⁴ and in 1994 a Declaration on Measures to Eliminate International Terrorism was adopted.²¹⁵ This condemned 'all acts, methods and practices of terrorism, as criminal and unjustifiable, wherever and by whomever committed', noting that 'criminal acts intended or calculated to provoke a state of terror in the general public, a group or person or persons or particular persons for political purposes are in any circumstance unjustifiable, whatever the considerations of a political, philosophical, ideological, racial, ethnic, religious or any other nature that may be invoked to justify them'. States are also obliged to refrain from organising, instigating, facilitating, financing or tolerating terrorist activities and to take practical measures to ensure that their territories are not used for terrorist installations, training camps or for the

²¹² See the Conventions on Offences Committed on Board Aircraft, 1963; for the Suppression of Unlawful Seizure of Aircraft, 1970; for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Civil Aviation, 1971; on the Prevention and Punishment of Crimes against Internationally Protected Persons including Diplomatic Agents, 1973; against the Taking of Hostages, 1979; on the Physical Protection of Nuclear Material, 1980; for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts of Violence at Airports, Protocol 1988; for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Maritime Navigation, 1988; for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Fixed Platforms on the Continental Shelf, Protocol 1988; on the Marking of Plastic Explosives for the Purpose of Identification, 1991; for the Suppression of Terrorist Bombing, 1997; for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism, 1999 and for the Suppression of Acts of Nuclear Terrorism, 2005.

²¹³ See further above, chapter 12, p. 673.

²¹⁴ See General Assembly resolution 3034 (XXVII).

²¹⁵ General Assembly resolution 49/60.

preparation of terrorist acts against other states. States are further obliged to apprehend and prosecute or extradite perpetrators of terrorist acts and to co-operate with other states in exchanging information and combating terrorism.²¹⁶ The Assembly has also adopted a number of resolutions calling for ratification of the various conventions and for improvement in co-operation between states in this area.²¹⁷ In September 2006, the General Assembly adopted 'The United Nations Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy',²¹⁸ comprising a Plan of Action, including condemnation of terrorism in all its forms and manifestations as it constitutes 'one of the most serious threats to international peace and security'; international co-operation; addressing the conditions conducive to the spread of terrorism; adoption of a variety of measures to prevent and combat terrorism; adoption of measures to build states' capacity to prevent and combat terrorism; and, finally, measures to ensure respect for human rights for all and the rule of law as the fundamental basis of the fight against terrorism.

An Ad Hoc Committee was established in 1996²¹⁹ to elaborate international conventions on terrorism. The Conventions for the Suppression of Terrorist Bombing, 1997 and of the Financing of Terrorism, 1999 resulted, as did a Convention for the Suppression of Acts of Nuclear Terrorism, 2005. The Committee is currently working on drafting a comprehensive convention on international terrorism.²²⁰

The Security Council has also been active in dealing with the terrorism threat.²²¹ In particular, it has characterised international terrorism as a

²¹⁶ A supplementary declaration was adopted in 1996, which emphasised in addition that acts of terrorism and assisting them are contrary to the purposes and principles of the UN. The question of asylum-seekers who had committed terrorist acts was also addressed, General Assembly resolution 51/210. See also resolution 55/158, 2001 and the 2005 World Summit Outcome, resolution 60/1.

²¹⁷ See e.g. resolutions 34/145, 35/168 and 36/33. ²¹⁸ Resolution 60/288.

²¹⁹ General Assembly resolution 51/210.

²²⁰ See e.g. A/59/37, 2004; A/60/37, 2005; A/61/37, 2006; A/62/37, 2007, and A/63/37, 2008 and General Assembly resolutions 57/27, 2003 and 62/71, 2008. See also M. Hmoud, 'Negotiating the Draft Comprehensive Convention on International Terrorism', 4 *Journal of International Criminal Justice*, 2006, p. 1031. Major areas of contention have focused on the definition of terrorism, the scope of the proposed convention and the relationship between the proposed convention and the conventions dealing with specific terrorist crimes, *ibid.*

²²¹ For example, in resolution 579 (1985), it condemned unequivocally all acts of hostage-taking and abduction, and see also the statement made by the President of the Security Council on behalf of members condemning the hijacking of the *Achille Lauro* and generally 'terrorism in all its forms, whenever and by whomever committed', 9 October 1985, S/17554, 24 ILM, 1985, p. 1656.

threat to international peace and security. This approach has evolved. In resolution 731 (1992), the Security Council, in the context of criticism of Libya for not complying with requests for the extradition of suspected bombers of an airplane, referred to 'acts of international terrorism that constitute threats to international peace and security', and in resolution 1070 (1996) adopted with regard to Sudan it reaffirmed that 'the suppression of acts of international terrorism, including those in which states are involved, is essential for the maintenance of international peace and security'.²²²

It was, however, the 11 September 2001 attack upon the World Trade Center that moved this process onto a higher level. In resolution 1368 (2001) adopted the following day, the Council, noting that it was '*Determined* to combat by all means threats to international peace and security caused by terrorist attack', unequivocally condemned the attack and declared that it regarded such attacks 'like any act of international terrorism, as a threat to international peace and security'.²²³ Resolution 1373 (2001) reaffirmed this proposition and the need to combat by all means in accordance with the Charter, threats to international peace and security caused by terrorist acts.²²⁴ Acting under Chapter VII, the Council made a series of binding decisions demanding *inter alia* the prevention and suppression of the financing of terrorist acts, the criminalisation of wilful provision or collection of funds for such purposes and the freezing of financial assets and economic resources of persons and entities involved in terrorism. Further, states were called upon to refrain from any support to those involved in terrorism and take action against such persons, and to co-operate with other states in preventing and suppressing terrorist acts and acting against the perpetrators. The Council also declared that acts, methods and practices of terrorism were contrary to the purposes and principles of the UN and that knowingly financing, planning and inciting terrorist acts were also contrary to the purposes and principles of the UN. Crucially, the Council established a Counter-Terrorism Committee

²²² See also resolution 1189 (1998), concerning the bombings of the US Embassies in East Africa, and resolution 1269 (1999), which reaffirms many of the points made in the 1994 General Assembly Declaration.

²²³ See further above, p. 1134, with regard to recognition of the right to self-defence in this context.

²²⁴ Note also the condemnation of the terrorist bombing in Bali in October 2002: see resolution 1438 (2002); of the taking of hostages in Moscow in October 2002 referred to as a terrorist act: see resolution 1440 (2002); and of the terrorist attacks in Kenya in November 2002: see resolution 1450 (2002).

to monitor implementation of the resolution. States were called upon to report to the Committee on measures they had taken to implement the resolution. The Committee was also mandated to maintain a dialogue with states on the implementation of resolution 1624 (2005) on prohibiting incitement to commit terrorist acts and promoting dialogue and understanding among civilisations.

In resolution 1377 (2001), the Council, in addition to reaffirming earlier propositions, declared that acts of international terrorism 'constitute one of the most serious threats to international peace and security in the twenty-first century' and requested the Counter-Terrorism Committee to assist in the promotion of best-practice in the areas covered by resolution 1373, including the preparation of model laws as appropriate, and to examine the availability of various technical, financial, legislative and other programmes to facilitate the implementation of resolution 1373.²²⁵ The Counter-Terrorism Committee was strengthened in 2004 by the establishment of the Executive Directorate, comprising a number of experts and administrative and support staff.²²⁶ A further committee was established by resolution 1540 (2004) to examine the implementation of the resolution, which requires all states to establish domestic controls to prevent access by non-state actors to nuclear, chemical and biological weapons, and their means of delivery, and to take effective measures to prevent proliferation of such items and establish appropriate controls over related materials.²²⁷

The Counter-Terrorism Committee has now received a large number of reports, and has reviewed and responded to many of them. The Committee has since 2005 been conducting visits to member states.²²⁸

²²⁵ See also resolution 1456 (2003), which *inter alia* called upon the Counter-Terrorism Committee to intensify its work through reviewing states' reports and facilitating international assistance and co-operation. Note the establishment of a Security Council committee (the 1267 committee) to oversee sanctions imposed upon Al-Qaida and the Taliban and associated individuals and entities, resolution 1267 (1999). In resolution 1566 (2004), the Security Council established a working group to recommend practical measures against individuals and groups engaged in terrorist activities not subject to the 1267 committee's review. See also resolution 1822 (2008).

²²⁶ See resolution 1535 (2004). The mandate of the Executive Directorate has been extended to the end of 2010: see resolution 1805 (2008).

²²⁷ See also resolutions 1673 (2006) and 1810 (2008), extending the mandate of the committee to April 2011.

²²⁸ See the website of the Committee, www.un.org/sc/ctc. Note also the case of *Boudellaa et al. v. Bosnia and Herzegovina and the Federation of Bosnia and Herzegovina*, Judgment of 11 October 2002, Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and Herzegovina, paras. 93–8. See further above, chapter 7, p. 379.

In addition to UN activities, a number of regional instruments condemning terrorism have been adopted. These include the European Convention on the Suppression of Terrorism, 1977;²²⁹ the Council of Europe Convention on the Prevention of Terrorism, 2005; the European Union Framework Decision on Terrorism, 2002, the South Asian Association for Regional Co-operation Regional Convention on Suppression of Terrorism, 1987 and Additional Protocol of 2005; the Arab Convention for the Suppression of Terrorism, 1998; the Convention of the Organisation of the Islamic Conference on Combating International Terrorism, 1999; the Commonwealth of Independent States Treaty on Co-operation in Combating Terrorism, 1999; the African Union Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism, 1999 and Protocol of 2005; the ASEAN Convention on Counter Terrorism, 2007, and the Organisation of American States Inter-American Convention against Terrorism, 2002.²³⁰ In addition, the Organisation on Security and Co-operation in Europe adopted a Ministerial Declaration and Plan of Action on Combating Terrorism in 2001.²³¹

Coupled with the increase in international action to suppress international terrorism has been a concern that this should be accomplished in conformity with the principles of international human rights law and international humanitarian law.²³² This has been expressed by the UN Secretary-General²³³ and UN human rights organs.²³⁴ In 2005, the UN

²²⁹ Note that a Protocol amending the Convention was adopted by the Committee of Ministers of the Council of Europe in February 2003. This incorporates new offences into the Convention, being those referred to in the international conventions adopted after 1977.

²³⁰ Note also the establishment of the Inter-American Committee Against Terrorism in 1999, AF/Res. 1650 (XXIX-0/99).

²³¹ See www.osce.org/docs/english/1990-1999/mcs/9buch01e.htm.

²³² See e.g. H. J. Steiner, P. Alston and R. Goodman, *International Human Rights in Context*, 3rd edn, Oxford, 2008, chapter 5, and D. Pokempner, 'Terrorism and Human Rights: The Legal Framework', in *Terrorism and International Law* (eds. M. Schmitt and G. L. Beruto), San Remo, 2003, p. 39.

²³³ See Report of the Secretary-General on the Work of the Organisation, A/57/1, 2002, p. 1, where the Secretary-General stated that, 'I firmly believe that the terrorist menace must be suppressed, but states must ensure that counter-terrorist measures do not violate human rights.'

²³⁴ See e.g. the statement of the Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination of 8 March 2002, A/57/18, pp. 106-7, and the statement by the Committee against Torture of 22 November 2001, CAT/C/XXVII/Misc.7. Note also that on 27 March 2003, the legal expert of the Counter-Terrorism Committee briefed the UN Human Rights Committee: see UN Press Release of that date. See also the report on Terrorism and Human Rights by Special Rapporteur K. K. Koufa to the UN Sub-Commission on the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, 2004, E/CN.4/Sub.2/2004/40. Note that the Security

Commission on Human Rights, for example, appointed a Special Rapporteur on the 'promotion and protection of human rights and fundamental freedoms while countering terrorism'.²³⁵ Particular concerns have focused on 'shoot to kill' policies in the context of combating suicide bombings reportedly adopted by some states²³⁶ and the practice of secret detention and illegal transfer of detainees across international boundaries ('extraordinary rendition').²³⁷ The situation of detainees in the US military base in Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, has been a matter of particular concern.²³⁸ All of these issues have demonstrated the tension between

Council's Counter-Terrorism Committee has emphasised that states in adopting measures to counter terrorism must comply with all their international law obligations, including those relating to human rights law, refugee law and humanitarian law, and issued policy guidance to the Executive Directorate noting that human rights should be incorporated into its communications strategy: see S/AC.40/2006/PG.2.

²³⁵ See resolution 2005/80. This mandate was assumed by the Human Rights Council: see General Assembly resolution 60/251 and see Council resolution 6/28. See further on the Human Rights Council, above, chapter 6, p. 306. The Special Rapporteur produced a report on terrorist-profiling practices and human rights in 2007: see A/HRC/4/26.

²³⁶ See e.g. A/HRC/4/26, pp. 21 ff. and the report of the Special Rapporteur on extrajudicial, summary or arbitrary executions, A/CN.4/2006/53, paras. 44 ff. In particular, the need for resort to force as a last resort and the requirement of proportionality were emphasised: see also the Code of Conduct for Law Enforcement Officers, General Assembly resolution 34/169.

²³⁷ See e.g. L. N. Sadat, 'Ghost Prisoners and Black Sites: Extraordinary Rendition under International Law', 37 *Case Western Reserve Journal of International Law*, 2005–6, p. 309, and J. T. Parry, 'The Shape of Modern Torture: Extraordinary Rendition and Ghost Detainees', 6 *Melbourne Journal of International Law*, 2005, p. 516.

²³⁸ See e.g. Lord Steyn, 'Guantanamo Bay: The Legal Black Hole', 53 *ICLQ*, 2004, p. 1; F. Johns, 'Guantanamo Bay and the Annihilation of the Exception', 16 *EJIL*, 2005, p. 613, and T. Gill and E. van Sliedregt, 'Guantanamo Bay: A Reflection on the Legal Status and Rights of "Unlawful Enemy Combatants"', 1 *Utrecht Law Review*, 2005, p. 28. Note in particular the joint report by the five UN Special Rapporteurs respectively on arbitrary detention, on the independence of judges and lawyers, on torture, on freedom of religion or belief and on the right of everyone to physical and mental health, 16 February 2006, and the reports by the Council of Europe's Committee on Legal Affairs and Human Rights on secret detentions and illegal transfer of detainees involving Council of Europe members of 22 January 2006, AS/Jur (2006) 03 rev. and of 7 June 2007, AS/Jur (2007) 36. The Inter-American Commission on Human Rights granted precautionary measures in favour of detainees in Guantanamo Bay requesting the US to take 'urgent measures necessary to have the legal status of the detainees at Guantanamo Bay determined by a competent tribunal': see Annual Report of the IACHR, 2002, chapter III(C)(1), para. 80, first precautionary measures reiterated and amplified in 2003, 2004 and 2005: see B. D. Tittmore, 'Guantanamo Bay and the Precautionary Measures of the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights: A Case for International Oversight in the Struggle Against Terrorism', 6 *Human Rights Law Review*, 2006, p. 378. See also with regard to US courts and Guantanamo Bay, above, chapter 4, p. 164, note 178.

combating international terrorism and respecting human rights and the need to accomplish the former without jettisoning the latter.

Regional organisations have also been concerned by this dilemma. The Council of Europe adopted international guidelines on human rights and anti-terrorism measures in July 2002,²³⁹ seeking to integrate condemnation of terrorism and efficient combating of the phenomenon with the need to respect human rights. In particular, guideline XVI provides that in the fight against terrorism, states may never act in breach of peremptory norms of international law (*jus cogens*) nor in breach of international humanitarian law. The Inter-American Commission on Human Rights adopted a Report on Terrorism and Human Rights in October 2002.²⁴⁰

Suggestions for further reading

- I. Brownlie, *International Law and the Use of Force by States*, Oxford, 1963
- Y. Dinstein, *War, Aggression and Self-Defence*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005
- T. M. Franck, *Recourse to Force*, Cambridge, 2002
- C. Gray, *International Law and the Use of Force*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2004

²³⁹ Supplemented in March 2005 by guidelines concerning the protection of victims of terrorist acts.

²⁴⁰ OEA/Ser.L/V/II.116, Doc. 5 rev. 1 corr.

International humanitarian law

In addition to prescribing laws governing resort to force (*jus ad bellum*), international law also seeks to regulate the conduct of hostilities (*jus in bello*). These principles cover, for example, the treatment of prisoners of war, civilians in occupied territory, sick and wounded personnel, prohibited methods of warfare and human rights in situations of conflict.¹ This subject was originally termed the laws of war and then the laws of armed conflict. More recently, it has been called international humanitarian law. Although international humanitarian law is primarily derived from a number of international conventions, some of these represent in whole or in part rules of customary international law, and it is possible to say that a number of customary international law principles exist over and above conventional rules,² although international humanitarian law

¹ See e.g. Y. Dinstein, *The Conduct of Hostilities under the Law of International Armed Conflict*, Cambridge, 2004; *Les Nouvelles Frontières du Droit International Humanitaire* (ed. J.-F. Flauss), Brussels, 2003; T. Meron, *The Humanization of International Law*, The Hague, 2006; UK Ministry of Defence, *Manual on the Law of Armed Conflict*, Oxford, 2004; L. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000; I. Detter, *The Law of War*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2000; G. Best, *Humanity in Warfare*, London, 1980, and Best, *War and Law Since 1945*, Oxford, 1994; A. P. V. Rogers, *Law on the Battlefield*, Manchester, 1996; *Handbook of Humanitarian Law in Armed Conflict* (ed. D. Fleck), Oxford, 1995; *Studies and Essays on International Humanitarian Law and Red Cross Principles* (ed. C. Swinarski), Dordrecht, 1984; *The New Humanitarian Law of Armed Conflict* (ed. A. Cassese), Naples, 1979; G. I. A. D. Draper, 'The Geneva Conventions of 1949', 114 HR, p. 59, and Draper 'Implementation and Enforcement of the Geneva Conventions and of the two Additional Protocols', 164 HR, 1979, p. 1; F. Kalshoven, *The Law of Warfare*, Leiden, 1973; M. Bothe, K. Partsch and W. Solf, *New Rules for Victims of Armed Conflict*, The Hague, 1982, and J. Pictet, *Humanitarian Law and the Protection of War Victims*, Dordrecht, 1982. See also *Documents on the Laws of War* (ed. A. Roberts and R. Guelff), 3rd edn, Oxford, 2000; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 962; T. Meron, 'The Humanisation of Humanitarian Law', 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 239, and C. Rousseau, *Le Droit des Conflits Armés*, Paris, 1983.

² See e.g. T. Meron, 'Revival of Customary Humanitarian Law', 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 817, and *Customary International Humanitarian Law* (eds. J.-M. Henckaerts and L. Doswald-Beck), Cambridge, 2005. See also G. H. Aldrich, 'Customary International Humanitarian

is one of the most highly codified parts of international law. Reliance upon relevant customary international law rules is particularly important where one or more of the states involved in a particular conflict is not a party to a pertinent convention. A good example of this relates to the work of the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, which noted that since Eritrea did not become a party to the four Geneva Conventions of 1949 until 14 August 2000, the applicable law before that date for relevant claims was customary international humanitarian law.³ On the other hand, treaty provisions that cannot be said to be part of customary international law⁴ will bind only those states that are parties to them. This is particularly important with regard to some provisions deemed controversial by some states contained in Additional Protocols I and II to the Geneva Conventions, 1949. One additional factor that has emerged recently has been the growing convergence between international humanitarian law and international human rights law. This is discussed below.⁵

Development

The law in this area developed from the middle of the nineteenth century. In 1864, as a result of the pioneering work of Henry Dunant,⁶ who had been appalled by the brutality of the battle of Solferino five years earlier, the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded in Armies in the Field was adopted. This brief instrument was revised in 1906. In 1868 the Declaration of St Petersburg prohibited the use of small explosive or incendiary projectiles. The laws of war were codified at the Hague Conferences of 1899 and 1907.⁷

Law – An Interpretation on Behalf of the International Committee of the Red Cross', 76 BYIL, 2005, p. 503, and J. M. Henckaerts, 'Customary International Humanitarian Law – A Rejoinder to Judge Aldrich', *ibid.*, p. 525.

³ See e.g. Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Eritrea's Claim 17, 1 July 2003, paras. 38 ff. It was, however, accepted that the Conventions 'have largely become expressions of customary international law', *ibid.*, para. 40. See also Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Partial Award, Civilian Claims, Eritrea's Claims 15, 16, 23 and 27–32, 17 December 2004, para. 28.

⁴ As to which, see above, chapter 3, p. 93. ⁵ See below, p. 1180.

⁶ See e.g. C. Moorehead, *Dunant's Dream*, London, 1998.

⁷ See e.g. Green, *Contemporary Law*, chapter 2, and *The Centennial of the First International Peace Conference* (ed. F. Kalshoven), The Hague, 2000. See also Symposium on the Hague Peace Conferences, 94 AJIL, 2000, p. 1. The Nuremberg Tribunal regarded Hague Convention IV and Regulations on the Laws and Customs of War on Land, 1907 as declaratory of customary law: see 41 AJIL, 1947, pp. 172, 248–9. See also the Report of the UN Secretary-General on the Statute for the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia,

A series of conventions were adopted at these conferences concerning land and naval warfare, which still form the basis of the existing rules. It was emphasised that belligerents remained subject to the law of nations and the use of force against undefended villages and towns was forbidden. It defined those entitled to belligerent status and dealt with the measures to be taken as regards occupied territory. There were also provisions concerning the rights and duties of neutral states and persons in case of war,⁸ and an emphatic prohibition on the employment of 'arms, projectiles or material calculated to cause unnecessary suffering'. However, there were inadequate means to implement and enforce such rules with the result that much appeared to depend on reciprocal behaviour, public opinion and the exigencies of morale.⁹ A number of conventions in the inter-war period dealt with rules concerning the wounded and sick in armies in the field and prisoners of war.¹⁰ Such agreements were replaced by the Four Geneva 'Red Cross' Conventions of 1949 which dealt respectively with the amelioration of the condition of the wounded and sick in armed forces in the field, the amelioration of the condition of wounded, sick and shipwrecked members of the armed forces at sea, the treatment of prisoners of war and the protection of civilian persons in time of war.¹¹ The Fourth Convention was an innovation and a significant attempt to protect civilians who, as a result of armed hostilities or occupation, were in the power of a state of which they were not nationals.

The foundation of the Geneva Conventions system is the principle that persons not actively engaged in warfare should be treated humanely.¹² A number of practices ranging from the taking of hostages to torture, illegal

Security Council resolutions 808 (1993) and 823 (1993), S/25704 and 32 ILM, 1993, pp. 1159, 1170, and the Advisory Opinion of the International Court of Justice in *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 258; 110 ILR, p. 163.

⁸ See S. C. Neff, *The Rights and Duties of Neutrals*, Manchester, 2000.

⁹ Note, however, the Martens Clause in the Preamble to the Hague Convention concerning the Laws and Customs of War on Land, which provided that 'in cases not included in the Regulations . . . the inhabitants and the belligerents remain under the protection and the rule of the principles of the law of nations, as they result from the usages established among civilised peoples from the laws of humanity and the dictates of the public conscience'.

¹⁰ See e.g. the 1929 Conventions, one revising the 1864 and 1906 instruments on wounded and sick soldiers, the other on the treatment of prisoners of war.

¹¹ Note that as of May 2008, 194 states are parties to the Geneva Conventions.

¹² See, for example, article 1(2) of Additional Protocol I, 1977, which provides that, 'In case not covered by this Protocol or by other international agreements, civilians and combatants remain under the protection and authority of the principles of international law derived from established custom, from the principles of humanity and from the dictates of public conscience.'

executions and reprisals against persons protected by the Conventions are prohibited, while a series of provisions relate to more detailed points, such as the standard of care of prisoners of war and the prohibition of deportations and indiscriminate destruction of property in occupied territory. In 1977, two Additional Protocols to the 1949 Conventions were adopted.¹³ These built upon and developed the earlier Conventions. While many provisions may be seen as reflecting customary law, others do not and thus cannot constitute obligations upon states that are not parties to either or both of the Protocols.¹⁴ Protocol III was adopted in 2005 and introduced a third emblem to the two previously recognised ones (the Red Cross and the Red Crescent) in the form of a red diamond within which either a Red Cross or Red Crescent, or another emblem which has been in effective use by a High Contracting Party and was the subject of a communication to the other High Contracting Parties and the International Committee of the Red Cross through the depositary prior to the adoption of this Protocol, may be inserted. This allows in particular for the use of the Israeli Red Magen David (Shield of David) symbol.¹⁵

The International Court of Justice has noted that the 'Law of the Hague', dealing primarily with inter-state rules governing the use of force or the 'laws and customs of war' as they were traditionally termed, and the 'Law of Geneva', concerning the protection of persons from the effects of armed conflicts, 'have become so closely interrelated that they are considered to have gradually formed one single complex system, known today as international humanitarian law'.¹⁶

The scope of protection under international humanitarian law

The rules of international humanitarian law seek to extend protection to a wide range of persons, but the basic distinction drawn has been between combatants and those who are not involved in actual hostilities. Common

¹³ See e.g. Swinarski, *Studies and Essays*, part B, and Draper, 'Implementation and Enforcement'. See also B. Wortley, 'Observations on the Revision of the 1949 Geneva "Red Cross" Conventions', 54 BYIL, 1983, p. 143, and G. Aldrich, 'Prospects for US Ratification of Additional Protocol I to the 1949 Geneva Conventions', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 1.

¹⁴ For example, article 44 of Protocol I: see below, p. 1173.

¹⁵ The Red Lion and Sun that used to be used by Iran was also included as a Geneva Convention emblem: see e.g. Detter, *Law of War*, p. 293.

¹⁶ See the Advisory Opinion on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 256; 110 ILR, p. 163. The Court also noted that '[t]he provisions of the Additional Protocols of 1977 give expression and attest to the unity and complexity of that law', *ibid.*

article 2 of the Geneva Conventions provides that the Conventions ‘shall apply to all cases of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties even if the state of war is not recognised by them . . . [and] to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no armed resistance’. The rules contained in these Conventions cannot be renounced by those intended to benefit from them, thus precluding the possibility that the power which has control over them may seek to influence the persons concerned to agree to a mitigation of protection.¹⁷

The wounded and sick

The First Geneva Convention concerns the Wounded and Sick on Land and emphasises that members of the armed forces and organised militias, including those accompanying them where duly authorised,¹⁸ ‘shall be respected and protected in all circumstances’. They are to be treated humanely by the party to the conflict into whose power they have fallen on a non-discriminatory basis and any attempts upon their lives or violence to their person is strictly prohibited. Torture or biological experimentation is forbidden, nor are such persons to be wilfully left without medical assistance and care.¹⁹ The wounded and sick of a belligerent who fall into enemy hands are also to be treated as prisoners of war.²⁰ Further, the parties to a conflict shall take all possible measures to protect the wounded and sick and ensure their adequate care and to ‘search for the dead and prevent their being despoiled’.²¹ The parties to the conflict are to record as soon as possible the details of any wounded, sick or dead persons of the adversary party and to transmit them to the other side through particular means.²² This Convention also includes provisions as to medical units and establishments, noting in particular that these should not be

¹⁷ See article 7 of the first three Conventions and article 8 of the fourth. Note that Security Council resolution 1472, adopted under Chapter VII on 28 March 2003, called on ‘all parties concerned’ to the Iraq conflict of March–April 2003 to abide strictly by their obligations under international law and particularly the Geneva Conventions and the Hague Regulations, ‘including those relating to the essential civilian needs of the people of Iraq’.

¹⁸ See article 13. See also UK, *Manual*, chapter 7.

¹⁹ Article 12. See also Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapter 11.

²⁰ Article 14. Thus the provisions of the Third Geneva Convention will apply to them: see below, p. 1172.

²¹ Article 15. ²² Article 16 and see article 122 of the Third Geneva Convention.

attacked,²³ and deals with the recognised emblems (i.e. the Red Cross, the Red Crescent and, after Protocol III, the Red Diamond).²⁴

The Second Geneva Convention concerns the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea and is very similar to the First Convention, for instance in its provisions that members of the armed forces and organised militias, including those accompanying them where duly authorised, and who are sick, wounded or shipwrecked are to be treated humanely and cared for on a non-discriminatory basis, and that attempts upon their lives and violence and torture are prohibited.²⁵ The Convention also provides that hospital ships may in no circumstances be attacked or captured but respected and protected.²⁶ The provisions in these Conventions were reaffirmed in and supplemented by Protocol I, 1977, Parts I and II. Article 1(4), for example, supplements common article 2 contained in the Conventions and provides that the Protocol is to apply in armed conflicts in which peoples are fighting against colonial domination and alien occupation and against racist regimes as enshrined in the UN Charter and the Declaration on Principles of International Law, 1970.

*Prisoners of war*²⁷

The Third Geneva Convention of 1949 is concerned with prisoners of war, and consists of a comprehensive code centred upon the requirement of humane treatment in all circumstances.²⁸ The definition of prisoners of war in article 4, however, is of particular importance since it has been regarded as the elaboration of combatant status. It covers members of the armed forces of a party to the conflict (as well as members of militias and other volunteer corps forming part of such armed force) and members of

²³ Article 19, even if the personnel of the unit or establishment are armed or otherwise protected, article 22. Chapter IV concerns the treatment of medical personnel.

²⁴ Chapter VII. ²⁵ Articles 12 and 13. See also Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapter 11.

²⁶ Chapter III. See, with regard to the use of hospital ships in the Falklands conflict, H. Levie, 'The Falklands Crisis and the Laws of War' in *The Falklands War* (eds. A. R. Coll and A. C. Arend), Boston, 1985, pp. 64, 67–8. Chapter IV deals with medical personnel, Chapter V with medical transports and Chapter VI with the emblem: see above, p. 1170.

²⁷ See e.g. Dinstein, *Conduct of Hostilities*, pp. 29 ff., and UK, *Manual*, Chapter 8. Note that the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission in its Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Ethiopia's Claim 4, 1 July 2003, para. 32, has held that this Convention substantially reflected customary international law.

²⁸ See also the Regulations annexed to the Hague Convention IV on the Laws and Customs of War on Land, 1907, Section I, Chapter II.

other militias and volunteer corps, including those of organised resistance movements, belonging to a party to the conflict providing the following conditions are fulfilled: (a) being commanded by a person responsible for his subordinates; (b) having a fixed distinctive sign recognisable at a distance; (c) carrying arms openly; (d) conducting operations in accordance with the laws and customs of war.²⁹ This article reflected the experience of the Second World War, although the extent to which resistance personnel were covered was constrained by the need to comply with the four conditions. Since 1949, the use of guerrillas spread to the Third World and the decolonisation experience. Accordingly, pressures grew to expand the definition of combatants entitled to prisoner of war status to such persons, who as practice demonstrated rarely complied with the four conditions. States facing guerrilla action, whether the colonial powers or others such as Israel, objected. Articles 43 and 44 of Protocol I, 1977, provide that combatants are members of the armed forces of a party to an international armed conflict.³⁰ Such armed forces consist of all organised armed units under an effective command structure which enforces compliance with the rules of international law applicable in armed conflict. Article 44(3) further notes that combatants are obliged to distinguish themselves from the civilian population while they are engaged in an attack or in a military operation preparatory to an attack. When an armed combatant cannot so distinguish himself, the status of combatant may be retained provided that arms are carried openly during each military engagement and during such time as the combatant is visible to the adversary while engaged in a military deployment preceding the launching of an attack. This formulation is clearly controversial and was the subject of many declarations in the vote at the conference producing the draft.³¹

²⁹ These conditions appear in article 1 of the Hague Regulations and have been regarded as part of customary law; see G. I. A. D. Draper, 'The Status of Combatants and the Question of Guerilla Warfare', 45 BYIL, 1971, pp. 173, 186. See also the *Tadić* case, Judgment of the Appeals Chamber of 15 July 1999, IT-94-1-A; 124 ILR, p. 61.

³⁰ Article 1(4) of Protocol I includes as international armed conflicts 'armed conflicts in which peoples are fighting against colonial domination and alien occupation and against racist regimes in the exercise of their right of self-determination'. Note that there is no provision for prisoner of war status in non-international armed conflicts: see below, p. 1194.

³¹ See e.g. H. Verthé, *Guérilla et Droit Humanitaire*, 2nd edn, Geneva, 1983, and P. Nahlik, 'L'Extension du Statut de Combattant à la Lumière de Protocol I de Genève de 1977', 164 HR, 1979, p. 171. Where a person is a mercenary, there is no right to combatant or prisoner of war status under article 47. See also the International Convention against the Recruitment, Use, Financing and Training of Mercenaries, 1989: Green, *Armed Conflict*,

Article 5 also provides that where there is any doubt as to the status of any person committing a belligerent act and falling into the hands of the enemy, 'such person shall enjoy the protection of the present Convention until such time as their status has been determined by a competent tribunal'.³² This formulation was changed somewhat in article 45 of Protocol I. This provides that a person who takes part in hostilities and falls into the power of an adverse party 'shall be presumed to be a prisoner of war and therefore shall be protected by the Third Convention'. The term 'unlawful combatant', therefore, refers to a person who fails the tests laid down in articles 43 and 44, after due determination of status, and who would not be entitled to the status of prisoner of war under international humanitarian law. Such a person, who would thus be a civilian, would be protected by the basic humanitarian guarantees laid down in articles 45(3) and 75 of Protocol I and by the general principles of international human rights law in terms of his/her treatment upon capture. However, since such a person would not have the status of a prisoner of war, he would not benefit from the protections afforded by such status and would thus be liable to prosecution under the normal criminal law.³³

pp. 114 ff. However, such persons remain entitled to the basic humanitarian guarantees provided by Protocol I: see articles 45(3) and 75. See also UK, *Manual*, p. 147.

³² See also the *British Manual of Military Law*, Part III, *The Law of Land Warfare*, London, 1958, para. 132, note 3, and the US Department of Army, *Law of Land Warfare*, Field Manual 27-10, 1956, para. 71(c), (d) detailing what a competent tribunal might be. In the case of the UK, the competent tribunal would be a board of inquiry convened in accordance with the Prisoner of War Determination of Status Regulations 1958: see UK, *Manual*, p. 150. See as to the question of persons captured by the US in Afghanistan in 2001-2 and elsewhere, and detained at the US military base at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba, *Rasul v. Bush* 124 S. Ct. 2686 (2004); US Military Commissions Act 2006, 45 ILM, 2006, p. 1246; and *Hamdan v. Rumsfeld* 126 S. Ct. 2749 (2006) and see *Boumediene v. Bush* 553 US — (2008). See also above, chapter 12, p. 658 and chapter 20, p. 1165.

³³ See e.g. A. Cassese, *International Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2005, pp. 409-10, cf. Dinstein, *Conduct of Hostilities*, pp. 29 ff.; M. Finaud, 'L'Abus de la Notion de "Combattant Illégal": Une Atteinte au Droit International Humanitaire', 110 RGDI, 2006, p. 861, and T. M. Franck, 'Criminals, Combatants, or What – An Examination of the Role of Law in Responding to the Threat of Terror', 98 AJIL, 2005, p. 686. Accordingly, captured Taliban fighters who formed part of the army of Afghanistan at the relevant time would have the status of POWs, while captured Al-Qaida operatives would be subject to relevant national criminal law, including war crimes and crimes against humanity. Note that once a civilian takes part in hostilities, he/she loses the protection of the prohibition of attacks upon him/her: see article 51(3), Protocol I. See also *Public Committee Against Torture in Israel v. Government of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 13 December 2006, 101 AJIL, 2007, p. 459, *A and B v. State of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 11 June 2008 and D. Kretzmer, 'Targeted Killing of Suspected Terrorists: Extra-Judicial Executions or Legitimate Means of Defence?', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 171.

The framework of obligations covering prisoners of war is founded upon 'the requirement of treatment of POWs as human beings', while 'At the core of the Convention regime are legal obligations to keep POWs alive and in good health.'³⁴ Article 13 provides that prisoners of war must at all times be humanely treated and must at all times be protected, particularly against acts of violence or intimidation and against 'insults and public curiosity'.³⁵ This means that displaying prisoners of war on television in a humiliating fashion confessing to 'crimes' or criticising their own government must be regarded as a breach of the Convention.³⁶ Measures of reprisal against prisoners of war are prohibited. Article 14 provides that prisoners of war are entitled in all circumstances to respect for their persons and their honour.³⁷

Prisoners of war are bound only to divulge their name, date of birth, rank and serial number. Article 17 provides that 'no physical or mental torture, nor any other form of coercion, may be inflicted . . . to secure from them information of any kind whatever. Prisoners of war who refuse to answer may not be threatened, insulted, or exposed to unpleasant or disadvantageous treatment of any kind.' Once captured, prisoners of war are to be evacuated as soon as possible to camps situated in an area far enough from the combat zone for them to be out of danger,³⁸ while article 23 stipulates that 'no prisoner of war may at any time be sent to, or detained in, areas where he may be exposed to the fire of the combat zone, nor may his presence be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations'.³⁹ Prisoners of war are subject to the

³⁴ See the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission in its Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Ethiopia's Claim 4, 1 July 2003, paras. 53 and 64, where the Commission declared that 'customary international law, as reflected in Geneva Conventions I and III, absolutely prohibits the killing of POWs, requires the wounded and sick to be collected and cared for, the dead to be collected, and demands prompt and humane evacuation of POWs'. See also Best, *War and Law*, p. 135, and Y. Dinstein, 'Prisoners of War' in *Encyclopaedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 1982, pp. 146, 148.

³⁵ See also article 11 of Protocol I.

³⁶ See e.g. the treatment of allied prisoners of war by Iraq in the 1991 Gulf War, *The Economist*, 26 January 1991, p. 24, and in the 2003 Gulf War: see the report of the condemnation by the International Committee of the Red Cross, http://news.bbc.co.uk/1/hi/world/middle_east/2881187.stm.

³⁷ See also article 75 of Protocol I. ³⁸ Article 19.

³⁹ Thus the reported Iraqi practice during the 1991 Gulf War of sending allied prisoners of war to strategic sites in order to create a 'human shield' to deter allied attacks was clearly a violation of the Convention: see e.g. *The Economist*, 26 January 1991, p. 24. See also UKMIL, 62 BYIL, 1991, pp. 678 ff.

laws and orders of the state detaining them.⁴⁰ They may be punished for disciplinary offences and tried for offences committed before capture, for example for war crimes. They may also be tried for offences committed before capture against the law of the state holding them.⁴¹ Other provisions of this Convention deal with medical treatment, religious activities, discipline, labour and relations with the exterior. Article 118 provides that prisoners of war shall be released and repatriated without delay after the cessation of hostilities. The Convention on prisoners of war applies only to international armed conflicts,⁴² but article 3 (which is common to the four Conventions) provides that as a minimum 'persons . . . including members of armed forces, who have laid down their arms and those placed *hors de combat* by sickness, wounds, detention, or any other cause, shall in all circumstances be treated humanely'.

Protection of civilians and occupation

The Fourth Geneva Convention is concerned with the protection of civilians in time of war and builds upon the Hague Regulations (attached to Hague Convention IV on the Law and Customs of War on Land, 1907).⁴³ This Geneva Convention, which marked an extension to the pre-1949 rules, is limited under article 4 to those persons, 'who, at a given moment and in any manner whatsoever, find themselves, in case of a conflict or occupation, in the hands of a party to the conflict or occupying power of which they are not nationals'. The Convention comes into operation immediately upon the outbreak of hostilities or the start of an occupation and ends at the general close of military operations.⁴⁴ Under article 50(1) of Protocol I, 1977, a civilian is defined as any person not a combatant,⁴⁵

⁴⁰ Article 82, Geneva Convention III.

⁴¹ Articles 82 and 85. See Green, *Armed Conflict*, p. 210. See also *US v. Noriega* 746 F. Supp. 1506, 1529 (1990); 99 ILR, pp. 143, 171.

⁴² See below, p. 1190.

⁴³ See e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapters 12 and 15; UK, *Manual*, Chapters 9 and 11; E. Benvenisti, *The International Law of Occupation*, Princeton, 2004 (with new preface), and S. Wills, 'Occupation Law and Multi-National Operations: Problems and Perspectives', 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 256. The Hague Regulations have become part of customary international law: see *Construction of a Wall*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 172; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 91.

⁴⁴ Article 6.

⁴⁵ As defined in article 4 of the Third Geneva Convention, 1949 and article 43, Protocol I, 1977, above, p. 1172. Note, however, the obligation contained in the Optional Protocol to the Convention on the Rights of the Child on the involvement of children in armed conflict, 25 May 2000, to ensure that children under the age of eighteen do not take part in hostilities.

and in cases of doubt a person is to be considered a civilian. The Fourth Convention provides a highly developed set of rules for the protection of such civilians, including the right to respect for person, honour, convictions and religious practices and the prohibition of torture and other cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment, hostage-taking and reprisals.⁴⁶ The wounded and sick are the object of particular protection and respect⁴⁷ and there are various judicial guarantees as to due process.⁴⁸

The protection of civilians in occupied territories is covered in section III of Part III of the Fourth Geneva Convention,⁴⁹ but what precisely occupied territory is may be open to dispute.⁵⁰ Article 42 of the Hague Regulations provides that territory is to be considered as occupied 'when it is actually placed under the authority of the hostile army' and that the occupation only extends to the territory 'where such authority has been established and can be exercised',⁵¹ while article 2(2) of the Convention provides that it is to apply to all cases of partial or total occupation 'of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no resistance'. The International Court in the *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda* case⁵² noted that in order to determine whether a state whose forces are present on the territory of another state is an occupying power, one must examine whether there is sufficient evidence to demonstrate that the said authority was in fact established and exercised by the intervening state in the areas in question. The Court understood this to mean in practice in that case that Ugandan forces in the Congo were stationed there in particular areas and that they had substituted their own authority for that of the Congolese government.

The military occupation of enemy territory is termed 'belligerent occupation' and international law establishes a legal framework concerning the legal relations of occupier and occupied. There are two key conditions for the establishment of an occupation in this sense, first, that the former government is no longer capable of publicly exercising its authority in

⁴⁶ See articles 27–34. The rights of aliens in the territory of a party to a conflict are covered in articles 35–46.

⁴⁷ Article 16. ⁴⁸ See articles 71–6. See also article 75 of Protocol I, 1977.

⁴⁹ See also the Hague Regulations, Section III.

⁵⁰ Iraqi-occupied Kuwait in 1990–1 was, of course, a prime example of the situation covered by this Convention: see e.g. Security Council resolution 674 (1990).

⁵¹ See the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 167 and *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 229, reaffirming article 42 as part of customary international law.

⁵² ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 230.

the area in question and, secondly, that the occupying power is in a position to substitute its own authority for that of the former government.⁵³ An occupation will cease as soon as the occupying power is forced out or evacuates the area.⁵⁴ Article 43 of the Hague Regulations provides the essential framework of the law of occupation. It notes that, 'The authority of the legitimate power having in fact passed into the hands of the occupant, the latter shall take all the measures in his power to restore and ensure, as far as possible, public order and safety, while respecting, unless absolutely prevented, the laws in force in the country.'⁵⁵ This establishes several key elements. First, only 'authority' and not sovereignty passes to the occupier.⁵⁶ The former government retains sovereignty and may be deprived of it only with its consent. Secondly, the basis of authority of the occupier lies in effective control. Thirdly, the occupier has both the obligation and the right to maintain public order in the occupied territory. Fourthly, the existing laws of the territory must be preserved as far as possible.

The situation with regard to the West Bank of Jordan (sometimes known as Judaea and Samaria), for example, demonstrates the problems that may arise. Israel has argued that since the West Bank has never been

⁵³ See e.g. UK, *Manual*, p. 275.

⁵⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 277. See also *R v. Civil Aviation Authority* [2006] EWHC 2465 (Admin), at para. 15; 132 ILR, p. 713, noting that 'The state of Israel has withdrawn from Gaza [in 2005] so that it is not an occupied Palestinian Territory.' Note that Israel handed over certain powers with regard to parts of the West Bank to the Palestinian Authority following the Oslo agreements of 1993: see generally J. Crawford, *The Creation of States*, 2nd edn, 2006, pp. 442 ff.; *New Political Entities in Public and Private International Law* (eds. A. Shapira and M. Tabory), The Hague, 1999; E. Benvenisti, 'The Israeli-Palestinian Declaration of Principles: A Framework for Future Settlement', 4 EJIL, 1993, p. 542, and P. Malanczuk, 'Some Basic Aspects of the Agreements Between Israel and the PLO from the Perspective of International Law', 7 EJIL, 1996, p. 485. Since one assumes that the Palestinian Authority is not an occupying power, the fact that Israel is not in effective day-to-day control over the whole area must impact upon its responsibilities, but it is unlikely that this has affected its legal status as such as belligerent occupant.

⁵⁵ Note that the International Court has emphasised that 'international humanitarian law contains provisions enabling account to be taken of military exigencies in certain circumstances' and that 'the military exigencies contemplated by these texts may be invoked in occupied territories even after the general close of the military operations that lead to their occupation', *Construction of a Wall*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 192. See also M. Sassòli, 'Legislation and Maintenance of Public Order and Civil Life by Occupying Powers', 16 EJIL, 2005, p. 661.

⁵⁶ See e.g. *Prefecture of Voiotia v. Germany (Distomo Massacre)*, Court of Cassation, Greece, 4 May 2000, 129 ILR, pp. 514, 519 and *Mara'abe v. The Prime Minister of Israel*, Israel Supreme Court, 15 September 2005, 129 ILR, pp. 241, 252. See also Benvenisti, *International Law of Occupation*, pp. 5-6, and UK, *Manual*, p. 278.

recognised internationally as Jordanian territory,⁵⁷ it cannot therefore be regarded as its territory to which the Convention would apply. In other words, to recognise that the Convention applies formally would be tantamount to recognition of Jordanian sovereignty over the disputed land.⁵⁸ However, the International Court has stated that the Convention 'is applicable in any occupied territory in the event of an armed conflict arising between two or more High Contracting Parties' so that with regard to the Israel/Palestine territories question, 'the Convention is applicable in the Palestinian territories which before the conflict lay to the east of the Green Line [i.e. the 1949 armistice line] and which, during that conflict, were occupied by Israel, there being no need for any enquiry into the precise legal status of those territories'.⁵⁹ The Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission has pointed out that 'These protections [provided by international humanitarian law] should not be cast into doubt because the belligerents dispute the status of territory . . . respecting international protections in such situations does not prejudice the status of the territory'.⁶⁰ Further, the Commission emphasised that 'neither text [the Hague Regulations and the Fourth Geneva Convention] suggests that only territory the title of which is clear and uncontested can be occupied territory'.⁶¹

⁵⁷ It was annexed by the Kingdom of Transjordan, as it then was, in 1949 at the conclusion of the Israeli War of Independence, but this annexation was recognised only by the UK and Pakistan. See e.g. A. Gerson, *Israel, the West Bank and International Law*, London, 1978.

⁵⁸ Note that Israel does observe the Convention *de facto*: see e.g. *Mara'abe v. The Prime Minister of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 15 September 2005, 129 ILR, pp. 241, 253. This was noted by the International Court in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 174. See also D. Kretzmer, *The Occupation of Justice*, New York, 2002; M. Shamgar, 'The Observance of International Law in the Administered Territories', *Israel Yearbook on Human Rights*, 1977, p. 262; T. Meron, 'West Bank and Gaza', *ibid.*, 1979, p. 108; F. Fleiner-Gerster and H. Meyer, 'New Developments in Humanitarian Law', 34 ICLQ, 1985, p. 267, and E. Cohen, *Human Rights in the Israeli-Occupied Territories*, Manchester, 1985.

⁵⁹ *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 177. It should be noted that Israel has long asserted that it applies the humanitarian parts of the Convention to the occupied territories: see e.g. Shamgar, 'Observance of International Law in the Administered Territories'; and Meron, 'West Bank and Gaza', and *Mara'abe v. The Prime Minister of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 15 September 2005, 129 ILR, pp. 241, 252–3. See also M. N. Shaw, 'Territorial Administration by Non-Territorial Sovereigns' in *The Shifting Allocation of Authority in International Law* (eds. Y. Shany and T. Broudie), Oxford, 2008, pp. 369, 385 ff.

⁶⁰ Partial Award, Central Front, Ethiopia's Claim 2, 28 April 2004, para. 28.

⁶¹ *Ibid.*, para. 29. Note that article 4 of Protocol I provides that, 'The application of the Conventions and of this Protocol, as well as the conclusion of the agreements provided for therein, shall not affect the legal status of the Parties to the conflict. Neither the occupation of a territory nor the application of the Conventions and this Protocol shall affect the legal status of the territory in question.'

Article 47 provides that persons protected under the Convention cannot be deprived in any case or in any manner whatsoever of the benefits contained in the Convention by any change introduced as a result of the occupation nor by any agreement between the authorities of the occupied territory and the occupying power nor by any annexation by the latter of the whole or part of the occupied territory. Article 49 prohibits 'individual or mass forcible transfers' as well as deportations of protected persons from the occupied territory regardless of motive, while the occupying power 'shall not deport or transfer parts of its own civilian population into the territory it occupies'.⁶² Other provisions refer to the prohibition of forced work or conscription of protected persons, and the prohibition of the destruction of real or personal property except where rendered absolutely necessary by military operations, and of any alteration of the status of public or judicial officials.⁶³ The occupying power also has the responsibility to ensure that the local population has adequate food and medical supplies and, if not, to facilitate relief schemes.⁶⁴ Article 70 provides that protected persons shall not be arrested, prosecuted or convicted for acts committed or opinions expressed before the occupation, apart from breaches of the laws of war.⁶⁵

In addition to the traditional rules of humanitarian law, international human rights law is now seen as in principle applicable to occupation situations. The International Court interpreted article 43 of the Hague Regulations to include 'the duty to secure respect for the applicable rules of international human rights law and international humanitarian law, to protect the inhabitants of the occupied territory against acts of violence, and not to tolerate such violence by any third state'.⁶⁶ Further, the Court has stated that the protection offered by human rights conventions

⁶² The International Court has stated that this provision prohibits 'any measures taken by an occupying power in order to organize or encourage transfers of parts of its own population into the occupied territory' and that 'the Israeli settlements in the Occupied Palestinian Territory (including East Jerusalem) have been established in breach of international law', *Construction of a Wall*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 183–4. See also criticisms of Israel's policy of building settlements in territories it has occupied since 1967, UKMIL, 54 BYIL, 1983, pp. 538–9. Note also Kretzmer, *Occupation of Justice*, chapter 5.

⁶³ Articles 51, 53 and 54. Article 64 stipulates that penal laws remain in force, unless a threat to the occupier's security, while existing tribunals continue to function. See also Security Council resolution 1472 (2003) concerning the March–April 2003 military operation by coalition forces in Iraq.

⁶⁴ Articles 55, 56, 59 and 60.

⁶⁵ Section IV consists of regulations for the treatment of internees.

⁶⁶ *Democratic Republic of the Congo v. Uganda*, ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 231 and 242 ff.

does not cease in case of armed conflict, unless there has been a relevant derogation permitted by the convention in question. The Court has also emphasised that many human rights treaties apply to the conduct of states parties where the state is exercising jurisdiction on foreign territory⁶⁷ and that in such cases the matter will fall to be determined by the applicable *lex specialis*, that is international humanitarian law.⁶⁸ In *Democratic Republic of Congo v. Uganda* the Court reaffirmed that ‘international human rights instruments are applicable “in respect of acts done by a state in the exercise of its jurisdiction outside its own territory”, particularly in occupied territories’.⁶⁹ It was concluded that Uganda was internationally responsible for various violations of international human rights law and international humanitarian law, including those committed by virtue of failing to comply with its obligations as an occupying power.⁷⁰

As part of this general approach, the Court has noted that the principle of self-determination applies to the Palestinian people,⁷¹ and that the construction by Israel of a separation barrier (sometimes termed a wall or a fence) between its territory and the occupied West Bank was unlawful to the extent that it was situated within the occupied territories.⁷²

⁶⁷ *Construction of a Wall*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 178 ff. See also Wills, ‘Occupation Law’, pp. 265 ff.

⁶⁸ *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 240.

⁶⁹ ICJ Reports, 2005, pp. 168, 242–3. A series of international human rights instruments was listed as being applicable with regard to the Congo situation, including the International Covenants on Human Rights, the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on Human and Peoples’ Rights, *ibid.*, pp. 243–4.

⁷⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 244–5. Reference was also made to the violation of Article 47 of the Hague Regulations and Article 33 of the Fourth Geneva Convention and of the African Charter on Human and Peoples’ Rights with regard to the exploitation of the natural resources of Congo, *ibid.*, pp. 252 ff.

⁷¹ The Court relied primarily upon the terms of the Israeli–Palestinian Interim Agreement, 1995 and the reference therein to the ‘legitimate rights’ of the Palestinian people, which the Court held included the right to self-determination ‘as the General Assembly has moreover recognized on a number of occasions (see, for example, resolution 58/163 of 22 December 2003)’, *Construction of a Wall*, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 183.

⁷² This was partly because the Court saw this as creating a *fait accompli* on the ground which might become permanent and would then be tantamount to *de facto* annexation, and partly because it was seen as severely impeding the exercise by the Palestinian people of its right to self-determination, *ibid.*, p. 184. The Court also noted that it appeared that the construction of the wall was contrary to provisions in the Hague Regulations and the Fourth Geneva Convention concerning requisition of property and liberty of movement, *ibid.*, pp. 185 ff. Israel’s argument was that the construction of the barrier commenced after a series of suicide car bombings within its territory emanating from the occupied territories and that the barrier was a temporary security measure, *ibid.*, p. 182. See generally the articles on the case collected in ‘Agora’, 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 1.

Further, although an occupying power can plead military exigencies and the requirements of national security or public order in the framework of the international law of occupation, the route of the wall could not be so justified.⁷³

The Israeli Supreme Court in a judgment rendered shortly before the International Court's advisory opinion emphasised that the authority of a military commander to order the construction of each segment of the separation barrier could not be founded upon political as distinct from military considerations and that the barrier could not be motivated by annexation wishes nor in order to draw a political border. Such military authority was inherently temporary since belligerent occupation was inherently temporary.⁷⁴ In a further case, decided one year after the International Court's advisory opinion, the Israeli Supreme Court referred to the balance to be drawn between the legitimate security needs of the state, its military forces and of persons present in the occupied area in question on the one hand, and the human rights of the local population derived from international humanitarian law on the other.⁷⁵ The Court also proceeded on the assumption that the international conventions on human rights applied in the area.⁷⁶ In addressing the question as to how to achieve what was termed the 'delicate balance' between military necessity and humanitarian considerations, the Court referred to the application of general principles of law, one of these being the principle of proportionality. This principle was based on three sub-tests, the first being a call for a fit between goal and means, the second calling for the application of the least harmful means in such a situation, and the third being that the damage caused to an individual by the means employed must be of appropriate proportion to the benefit stemming from it.⁷⁷ Each segment of the route of the barrier had to be assessed in the light of the impact upon the Palestinian residents and whether any impingement was proportional.⁷⁸

⁷³ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 192 and 193.

⁷⁴ *Beit Sourik v. Government of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 30 June 2004, 129 ILR, pp. 189, 205–6.

⁷⁵ *Mara'abe v. Prime Minister of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 15 September 2005, 129 ILR, pp. 241, 264–5. See also Y. Shany, 'Capacities and Inadequacies: A Look at the Two Separation Barrier Cases', 38 *Israel Law Review*, 2005, p. 230.

⁷⁶ *Mara'abe* 129 ILR, pp. 241, 266, but without formally deciding the matter, *ibid.*

⁷⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 266 and 268, reaffirming the decision in *Beit Sourik v. Government of Israel*, Israeli Supreme Court, 30 June 2004, 129 ILR, pp. 189, 215 ff.

⁷⁸ *Mara'abe* 129, ILR, pp. 241, 286. The Court held that the route of the barrier in the area in question in the case had to be reconsidered as it was not shown that the least injurious means test had been satisfied, *ibid.*, pp. 316 ff. The effect of this would be to reduce the

In relation to the application of international human rights treaties outside the territory of the state concerned, the UK Manual of the Law of Armed Conflict concluded that: 'Where the occupying power is a party to the European Convention on Human Rights the standards of that Convention may, depending on the circumstances, be applicable in the occupied territories.'⁷⁹

Moving further beyond the traditional and passive approach with regard to the law of occupation,⁸⁰ the Security Council adopted resolution 1483 (2003) after the coalition military action against Iraq, reaffirming the position of the UK and US as occupying powers in Iraq under international law but placing upon them (and the Coalition Provisional Authority, which included other states) a range of other powers and responsibilities over and above the international law relating to occupation.⁸¹ These included the obligation 'to promote the welfare of the Iraqi people through the effective administration of the territory, including . . . the creation of conditions in which the Iraqi people can freely determine their own political future' and the relevance of the establishment of an internationally recognised, representative government of Iraq. In addition,

size of the fenced-in enclave projecting into the West Bank. Note that the Court explained that the difference between its judgment and the advisory opinion of the International Court stemmed from the difference in facts laid before the two courts, particularly the paucity of facts relating to the security–military necessity to erect the fence arising from the phenomenon of suicide bombing inside Israel put before the International Court, *ibid.*, pp. 287–8.

⁷⁹ At p. 282. See also *Al-Skeini v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 26; 133 ILR, p. 693, where the House of Lords held that the European Convention applied to British military detention facilities but not to soldiers on patrol in Iraq, and *Al-Jedda v. Secretary of State for Defence* [2007] UKHL 58, where the House of Lords held that a binding Security Council resolution authorising the maintenance of public order had precedence over the terms of article 5 of the European Convention. See also *Coard v. United States*, Report No. 109/99, 29 September 1999; 123 ILR, p. 156, for the view expressed by the Inter-American Commission on Human Rights that the US was bound by relevant rules of humanitarian law and human rights law in the Grenada intervention.

⁸⁰ Note the problems posed by long-lasting occupations and the tension between the traditional law of minimal interference with local life and the need to cope with societal changes: see e.g. A. Roberts, 'Prolonged Military Occupation: The Israeli-Occupied Territories Since 1967', 84 AJIL, 1990, p. 44, and Roberts, 'Transformative Military Occupation: Applying the Laws of War and Human Rights', 100 AJIL, 2006, p. 580.

⁸¹ See generally 'Iraq: Law of Occupation', House of Commons Research Paper 03/51, 2 June 2003; E. Benvenisti, 'Water Conflicts During the Occupation of Iraq', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 860; M. Hmoud, 'The Use of Force Against Iraq: Occupation and Security Council Resolution 1483', 36 *Cornell International Law Journal*, 2004, p. 435, and D. Scheffer, 'Beyond Occupation Law', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 842.

a Special Representative for Iraq was appointed, whose functions included the promotion of human rights.

The conduct of hostilities⁸²

International law, in addition to seeking to protect victims of armed conflicts, also tries to constrain the conduct of military operations in a humanitarian fashion. In analysing the rules contained in the 'Law of the Hague', it is important to bear in mind the delicate balance to be maintained between military necessity and humanitarian considerations. A principle of long standing, if not always honoured in practice, is the requirement to protect civilians against the effects of hostilities. As far as the civilian population is concerned during hostilities,⁸³ the basic rule (sometimes termed the principle of distinction)⁸⁴ formulated in article 48 of Protocol I is that the parties to the conflict must at all times distinguish between such population and combatants and between civilian and military objectives and must direct their operations only against military objectives.⁸⁵ Military objectives are limited in article 52(2) to 'those objects which by their nature, location, purpose or use make an effective contribution to military action and whose total or partial destruction, capture or neutralisation, in the circumstances ruling at the time, offers a definite military advantage'. There is thus a principle of proportionality to be considered. Judge Higgins, for example, in referring to this principle, noted that 'even a legitimate target may not be attacked if the collateral civilian casualties would be disproportionate to the specific military gain from the attack'.⁸⁶ Issues have arisen particularly with regard to so-called 'dual use' objects such as bridges, roads and power stations,⁸⁷ and care must be taken to

⁸² See e.g. Dinstein, *Conduct of Hostilities*; UK, *Manual*, chapter 5; Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapters 7 (land), 8 (maritime) and 9 (air). See also Rogers, *Law on the Battlefield*, and Best, *War and Law*, pp. 253 ff. As to armed conflicts at sea, see also *The San Remo Manual on International Law Applicable to Armed Conflicts at Sea* (ed. L. Doswald-Beck), Cambridge, 1995.

⁸³ Apart from the provisions protecting the inhabitants of occupied territories under the Fourth Geneva Convention. See also Security Council resolution 1674 (2006) on the Protection of Civilians in Armed Conflicts, and Security Council Presidential Statement of 27 May 2008, 5/PRST/2008/18.

⁸⁴ See e.g. Dinstein, *Conduct of Hostilities*, p. 55. ⁸⁵ *Ibid.*, chapter 4.

⁸⁶ Dissenting Opinion, *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 587; 110 ILR, pp. 163, 536.

⁸⁷ Note that in the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Partial Award, Western Front, Aerial Bombardment and Related Claims, Eritrea's Claims 1, 3, 5, 9–13, 14, 21, 25 and 26, 19 December 2005, paras. 113 ff., it was held that article 52(2) constituted a statement of

interpret these so that such objects are not indiscriminately attacked on the one hand, while ensuring that, on the other, such objects or facilities are not used by opposing military forces in an attempt to secure immunity from attack, with the inevitable result that civilians may be endangered.⁸⁸ Much will depend upon whether the military circumstances are such that they fall within the definition provided in article 52(2). This will require a balancing of military need and civilian endangerment.

Article 51 provides that the civilian population as such, as well as individual civilians, 'shall not be the object of attack. Acts or threats of violence the primary purpose of which is to spread terror among the civilian population are prohibited.'⁸⁹ Additionally, indiscriminate attacks⁹⁰ are prohibited.⁹¹ Article 57 provides that in the conduct of military operations, 'constant care shall be taken to spare the civilian population, civilians and civilian objects'.

Although reprisals involving the use of force are now prohibited in international law (unless they can be brought within the framework of

customary international law. Whether an aerial attack on a power station fell within the term 'military advantage' could only be understood in the context of military operations between the parties as a whole and not simply in the context of a simple attack, *ibid.* See also UK, *Manual*, pp. 55 ff.

⁸⁸ See, as to the Kosovo conflict 1999, e.g. J. A. Burger, 'International Humanitarian Law and the Kosovo Crisis', 82 *International Review of the Red Cross*, 2000, p. 129; P. Rowe, 'Kosovo 1999: The Air Campaign', *ibid.*, p. 147, and W. J. Fenrick, 'Targeting and Proportionality during the NATO Bombing Campaign Against Yugoslavia', 12 *EJIL*, 2001, p. 489. See also the Review of the NATO Bombing Campaign Against the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia by a review committee of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia recommending that no investigation be commenced by the Office of the Prosecutor: see www.un.org/icty/pressreal/nato061300.htm, and the attempt to bring aspects of the bombing campaign before the European Court of Human Rights: see *Banković v. Belgium*, Judgment of 12 December 2001, 133 *ILR*, p. 94.

⁸⁹ See e.g. the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission, Partial Award, Western Front, Aerial Bombardment and Related Claims, Eritrea's Claims 1, 3, 5, 9–13, 14, 21, 25 and 26, 19 December 2005, para. 27.

⁹⁰ These are defined in article 51(4) as: (a) those which are not directed at a specific military objective; (b) those which employ a method or means of combat which cannot be at a specific military objective; or (c) those which employ a method or means of combat the effects of which cannot be limited as required by Protocol I; and consequently in each such case are of a nature to strike military objectives and civilians or civilian objects without distinction.

⁹¹ See 21(5) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 3 with regard to an appeal by the UN Secretary-General to Iran and Iraq to refrain from attacks on civilian targets. See also Security Council resolution 540 (1983). The above provisions apply to the use by Iraq in the 1991 Gulf War of missiles deliberately fired at civilian targets. The firing of missiles at Israeli and Saudi Arabian cities in early 1991 constituted, of course, an act of aggression against a state not a party to that conflict: see e.g. *The Economist*, 26 January 1991, p. 21.

self-defence),⁹² belligerent reprisals during an armed conflict may in certain circumstances be legitimate. Their purpose is to ensure the termination of the prior unlawful act which precipitated the reprisal and a return to legality. They must be proportionate to the prior illegal act.⁹³ Modern law, however, has restricted their application. Reprisals against prisoners of war are prohibited by article 13 of the Third Geneva Convention, while article 52 of Protocol I provides that civilian objects are not to be the object of attack or of reprisals.⁹⁴ Civilian objects are all objects which are not military objectives as defined in article 52(2).⁹⁵ Cultural objects and places of worship are also protected,⁹⁶ as are objects deemed indispensable to the survival of the civilian population, such as foodstuffs, agricultural areas for the production of foodstuffs, crops, livestock, drinking water installations and supplies, and irrigation works, so long as they are not used as sustenance solely for the armed forces or in direct support of military action.⁹⁷ Attacks are also prohibited against works or installations containing dangerous forces, namely dams, dykes and nuclear generating stations.⁹⁸

The right of the parties to an armed conflict to choose methods of warfare is not unconstrained.⁹⁹ The preamble of the St Petersburg Declaration of 1868, banning explosives or inflammatory projectiles below 400 grammes in weight, emphasises that the ‘only legitimate object which states should endeavour to accomplish during war is to weaken the military forces of the enemy’, while article 48 of Protocol I provides that a distinction must at all times be drawn between civilians and combatants. Article 22 of the Hague Regulations points out that the ‘right of

⁹² See above, chapter 20, p. 1131.

⁹³ See e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, p. 123; C. J. Greenwood, ‘Reprisals and Reciprocity in the New Law of Armed Conflict’ in *Armed Conflict in the New Law* (ed. M. A. Meyer), London, 1989, p. 227, and F. Kalshoven, *Belligerent Reprisals*, Leiden, 1971.

⁹⁴ Similarly wounded, sick, shipwrecked, medical and missing persons; also protected against reprisal are the natural environment and works or installations containing dangerous forces: see articles 20 and 53–6.

⁹⁵ See above, p. 1176.

⁹⁶ See article 53. See also the Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict, 1954 together with the First Protocol, 1954 and the Second Protocol, 1999. The protections as to cultural property are subject to ‘military necessity’: see article 4 of the 1954 Convention and articles 6 and 7 of the 1999 Protocol. Under articles 3 and 22 of the Protocol, protection is extended to non-international armed conflicts: see R. O’Keefe, *The Protection of Cultural Property in Armed Conflict*, Cambridge, 2006, and below, p. 1194.

⁹⁷ Article 54. ⁹⁸ Article 56.

⁹⁹ See UK, *Manual*, chapter 6, and Dinstein, *Conduct of Hostilities*, chapter 3.

belligerents to adopt means of injuring the enemy is not unlimited',¹⁰⁰ while article 23(e) stipulates that it is especially prohibited to 'employ arms, projectiles or material calculated to cause unnecessary suffering'.¹⁰¹ Quite how one may define such weapons is rather controversial and can only be determined in the light of actual state practice.¹⁰² The balance between military necessity and humanitarian considerations is relevant here. The International Court in its Advisory Opinion on the *Legality of the Threat or Use of Nuclear Weapons*¹⁰³ summarised the situation in the following authoritative way:

The cardinal principles contained in the texts constituting the fabric of humanitarian law are the following. The first is aimed at the protection of the civilian population and civilian objects and establishes the distinction between combatants and non-combatants; states must never make civilians the object of attack and must consequently never use weapons that are incapable of distinguishing between civilian and military targets. According to the second principle, it is prohibited to cause unnecessary suffering to combatants; it is accordingly prohibited to use weapons causing them such harm or uselessly aggravating their suffering. In application of that second principle, states do not have unlimited freedom of choice of means in the weapons they use.

The Court emphasised that the fundamental rules flowing from these principles bound all states, whether or not they had ratified the Hague and Geneva Conventions, since they constituted 'intransgressible principles of international customary law'.¹⁰⁴ At the heart of such rules and principles lies the 'overriding consideration of humanity'.¹⁰⁵ Whether the

¹⁰⁰ This is repeated in virtually identical terms in article 35, Protocol I.

¹⁰¹ See article 35(2) of Protocol I and the Preamble to the 1980 Convention on Conventional Weapons: see M. N. Shaw, 'The United Nations Convention on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the Use of Certain Conventional Weapons, 1981', 9 *Review of International Studies*, 1983, p. 109 at p. 113. Note that 'employment of poisonous weapons or other weapons calculated to cause unnecessary suffering' is stated to be a violation of the laws and customs of war by article 3(a) of the Statute of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia: see Report of the UN Secretary-General, S/25704 and Security Council resolution 827 (1993), and see also article 20(d) of the Draft Code of Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, Report of the International Law Commission on the Work of its Forty-eighth Session, 1996, A/51/10, pp. 111–12.

¹⁰² See e.g. the United States Department of the Army, *Field Manual, The Law of Land Warfare*, FM 27–10, 1956, p. 18, and regarding the UK, *The Law of War on Land*, Part III of the *Manual of Military Law*, 1958, p. 41.

¹⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 257; 110 ILR, p. 163. ¹⁰⁴ *Ibid.*

¹⁰⁵ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 257 and 262–3. See also the *Corfu Channel* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 4, 22; 16 AD, p. 155.

actual possession or threat or use of nuclear weapons would be regarded as illegal in international law has been a highly controversial question,¹⁰⁶ although there is no doubt that such weapons fall within the general application of international humanitarian law.¹⁰⁷ The International Court has emphasised that, in examining the legality of any particular situation, the principles regulating the resort to force, including the right to self-defence, need to be coupled with the requirement to consider also the norms governing the means and methods of warfare itself. Accordingly, the types of weapons used and the way in which they are used are also part of the legal equation in analysing the legitimacy of any use of force in international law.¹⁰⁸ The Court analysed state practice and concluded that nuclear weapons were not prohibited either specifically or by express provision.¹⁰⁹ Nor were they prohibited by analogy with poisoned gases prohibited under the Second Hague Declaration of 1899, article 23(a) of the Hague Regulations of 1907 and the Geneva Protocol of 1925.¹¹⁰ Nor were they prohibited by the series of treaties¹¹¹ concerning the acquisition,

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. *Shimoda v. Japan* 32 ILR, p. 626.

¹⁰⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 259–61. See e.g. *International Law, the International Court of Justice and Nuclear Weapons* (eds. L. Boisson de Chazournes and P. Sands), Cambridge, 1999; D. Akande, 'Nuclear Weapons, Unclear Law?', 68 BYIL, 1997, p. 165; *Nuclear Weapons and International Law* (ed. I. Pogany), Aldershot, 1987; Green, *Armed Conflict*, pp. 128 ff., and Green, 'Nuclear Weapons and the Law of Armed Conflict', 17 *Denver Journal of International Law and Policy*, 1988, p. 1; N. Singh and E. McWhinney, *Nuclear Weapons and Contemporary International Law*, Dordrecht, 1988; G. Schwarzenberger, *Legality of Nuclear Weapons*, London, 1957, and H. Meyrowitz, 'Les Armes Nucléaires et le Droit de la Guerre' in *Humanitarian Law of Armed Conflict: Challenges* (eds. A. J. M. Delissen and G. J. Tanja), Dordrecht, 1991.

¹⁰⁸ The Court emphasised, for example, that 'a use of force that is proportionate under the law of self-defence, must, in order to be lawful, also meet the requirements of the law applicable in armed conflict', ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 245; 110 ILR, p. 163. The Court also pointed to the applicability of the principle of neutrality to all international armed conflicts, irrespective of the type of weaponry used, ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 261. See also the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 112; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 446.

¹⁰⁹ ICJ Reports, 1986, p. 247.

¹¹⁰ *Ibid.*, p. 248. Nor by treaties concerning other weapons of mass destruction such as the Bacteriological Weapons Treaty, 1972 and the Chemical Weapons Treaty, 1993, *ibid.*, pp. 248–9.

¹¹¹ E.g. the Peace Treaties of 10 February 1947; the Austrian State Treaty, 1955; the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty, 1963; the Outer Space Treaty, 1967; the Treaty of Tlatelolco of 14 February 1967 on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons in Latin America; the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, 1968 (extended indefinitely in 1995); the Treaty on the Prohibition of the Emplacement of Nuclear Weapons on the Ocean Floor and Sub-soil, 1971; Treaty of Rarotonga of 6 August 1985 on the Nuclear Weapons-Free Zone of the South Pacific; the Treaty of Final Settlement with Respect to Germany, 1990; the Treaty on the

manufacture, deployment and testing of nuclear weapons and the treaties concerning the ban on such weapons in certain areas of the world.¹¹² Nor were nuclear weapons prohibited as a consequence of a series of General Assembly resolutions, which taken together fell short of establishing the necessary *opinio juris* for the creation of a new rule to that effect.¹¹³ In so far as the principles of international humanitarian law were concerned, the Court, beyond noting their applicability, could reach no conclusion. The Court felt unable to determine whether the principle of neutrality or the principles of international humanitarian law or indeed the norm of self-defence prohibited the threat or use of nuclear weapons.¹¹⁴ This rather weak conclusion, however, should be seen in the context of continuing efforts to ban all nuclear weapons testing, the increasing number of treaties prohibiting such weapons in specific geographical areas and the commitment given in 1995 by the five declared nuclear weapons states not to use such weapons against non-nuclear weapons states that are parties to the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty.¹¹⁵ Nevertheless, it does seem clear that the possession of nuclear weapons and their use *in extremis* and in strict accordance with the criteria governing the right to self-defence are not prohibited under international law.¹¹⁶

A number of specific bans on particular weapons has been imposed.¹¹⁷ Examples would include small projectiles under the St Petersburg formula of 1868, dum-dum bullets under the Hague Declaration of 1899 and asphyxiating and deleterious gases under the Hague Declaration of 1899 and the 1925 Geneva Protocol.¹¹⁸ Under the 1980 Conventional Weapons Treaty,¹¹⁹ Protocol I, 1980, it is prohibited to use weapons that cannot be detected by X-rays, while Protocol II, 1980 (minimally amended in 1996), prohibits the use of mines and booby-traps against civilians, Protocol III, 1980, the use of incendiary devices against civilians or against military objectives located within a concentration of civilians where the attack is by

South East Asia Nuclear Weapon-Free Zone, 1995 and the Treaty on an African Nuclear Weapon-Free Zone, 1996.

¹¹² ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 226, 248–53; 110 ILR, p. 163. ¹¹³ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 254–5.

¹¹⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 262–3 and 266. ¹¹⁵ See Security Council resolution 984 (1995).

¹¹⁶ See also the UK, *Manual*, pp. 117 ff., and the US *The Law of Land Warfare*, 1956, s. 35.

¹¹⁷ See e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, pp. 133 ff.

¹¹⁸ See also e.g. the 1972 Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production and Stockpiling of Bacteriological Weapons and the 1993 Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production, Stockpiling and Use of Chemical Weapons and Their Destruction. See 21(3) *UN Chronicle*, 1984, p. 3 with regard to the use of chemical weapons in the Iran–Iraq war.

¹¹⁹ See Shaw, ‘Conventional Weapons’. Note article 1 was amended in 2001.

air-delivered incendiary weapons, Protocol IV, 1995, the use of blinding laser weapons and Protocol V, 2003, concerns the explosive remnants of war. In 1997, the Ottawa Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production and Transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines and on their Destruction was adopted.¹²⁰

Article 35(3) of Additional Protocol I to the 1949 Conventions provides that it is prohibited to employ methods or means of warfare which are intended, or may be expected, to cause widespread, long-term and severe damage to the natural environment.¹²¹ Article 55 further states that care is to be taken in warfare to protect the natural environment against such damage, which may prejudice the health or survival of the population, while noting also that attacks against the natural environment by way of reprisals are prohibited. The Convention on the Prohibition of Military or Any Other Hostile Use of Environmental Modification Techniques, 1977 prohibits such activities having widespread, long-lasting or severe effects as the means of destruction, damage or injury to any other state party.

Armed conflicts: international and internal

The rules of international humanitarian law apply to armed conflicts. Accordingly, no formal declaration of war is required in order for the Conventions to apply. The concept of 'armed conflict' is not defined in the Conventions or Protocols, although it has been noted that 'any difference arising between states and leading to the intervention of members of the armed forces is an armed conflict' and 'an armed conflict exists whenever there is a resort to armed force between states or protracted armed violence between governmental authorities and organized armed groups within a state'.¹²²

¹²⁰ Note the adoption on 30 May 2008 of a Convention banning the use, stockpiling, production and transfer of cluster munitions.

¹²¹ See, for example, the deliberate spillage of vast quantities of oil into the Persian Gulf by Iraq during the 1991 Gulf War: see *The Economist*, 2 February 1991, p. 20. See also Green, *Armed Conflict*, p. 138, and Rogers, *Law of the Battlefield*, chapter 6.

¹²² J. Pictet, *Commentary on the Geneva Conventions of 12 August 1949*, Geneva, 1952, vol. I, p. 29. In the *Tadić* case, IT-94-1, Decision on Jurisdiction, para. 70; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 488, the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia stated that, 'an armed conflict exists whenever there is a resort to armed force between states or protracted armed violence between governmental authorities and organised armed groups or between such groups within a state'.

A distinction has historically been drawn between international and non-international armed conflicts,¹²³ founded upon the difference between inter-state relations, which was the proper focus for international law, and intra-state matters which traditionally fell within the domestic jurisdiction of states and were thus in principle impervious to international legal regulation. However, this difference has been breaking down in recent decades. In the sphere of humanitarian law, this can be seen in the gradual application of such rules to internal armed conflicts.¹²⁴ The notion of an armed conflict itself was raised before the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia in its decision on jurisdictional issues in the *Tadić* case.¹²⁵ It was claimed that no armed conflict as such existed in the Former Yugoslavia with respect to the circumstances of the instant case since the concept of armed conflict covered only the precise time and place of actual hostilities and the events alleged before the Tribunal did not take place during hostilities. The Appeals Chamber of the Tribunal correctly refused to accept a narrow geographical and temporal definition of armed conflicts, whether international or internal. It was stated that:¹²⁶

International humanitarian law applies from the initiation of such armed conflicts and extends beyond the cessation of hostilities until a general conclusion of peace is reached; or, in the case of internal conflicts, a peaceful settlement is achieved. Until that moment, international humanitarian law continues to apply in the whole territory of the warring states or, in the case of internal conflicts, the whole territory under the control of a party, whether or not actual combat takes place.

This definition arose in the specific context of the Former Yugoslavia, where it was unclear whether an international or a non-international armed conflict or some kind of mixture of the two was involved. This was important to clarify since it would have had an effect upon the relevant applicable law. The Security Council did not as such classify the nature of the conflict, simply condemning widespread violations of international humanitarian law, including mass forcible expulsion and deportation of civilians, imprisonment and abuse of civilians and deliberate attacks upon non-combatants, and calling for the cessation.¹²⁷ The Appeals Chamber

¹²³ See e.g. Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapter 3. ¹²⁴ See further below, p. 1194.

¹²⁵ Case No. IT-94-1-AR 72; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 486 ff. ¹²⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 488.

¹²⁷ See e.g. Security Council resolution 771 (1992). See also C. Gray, 'Bosnia and Herzegovina: Civil War or Inter-State Conflict? Characterisation and Consequences', 67 BYIL, 1996, p. 155.

concluded that 'the conflicts in the former Yugoslavia have both internal and international aspects'.¹²⁸ Since such conflicts could be classified differently according to time and place, a particularly complex situation was created. However, many of the difficulties that this would have created were mitigated by an acceptance of the evolving application of humanitarian law to internal armed conflicts.¹²⁹ This development has arisen partly because of the increasing frequency of internal conflicts and partly because of the increasing brutality in their conduct. The growing interdependence of states in the modern world makes it more and more difficult for third states and international organisations to ignore civil conflicts, especially in view of the scope and insistence of modern communications, while the evolution of international human rights law has contributed to the end of the belief and norm that whatever occurs within other states is the concern of no other state or person.¹³⁰ Accordingly, the international community is now more willing to demand the application of international humanitarian law to internal conflicts.¹³¹ In the *Tadić* case, the Appeals Chamber (in considering jurisdictional issues) concluded that article 3 of its Statute, which gave it jurisdiction over 'violations of the laws or customs of war',¹³² provided it with such jurisdiction 'regardless of whether they occurred within an internal or an international armed conflict'.¹³³ In its decision, the Appeals Chamber noted that,

It is indisputable that an armed conflict is international if it takes place between two or more States. In addition, in case of an internal armed conflict breaking out on the territory of a State, it may become international (or, depending upon the circumstances, be international in character alongside

¹²⁸ Case No. IT-94-1-AR; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 494. ¹²⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 495 ff.

¹³⁰ See e.g. General Assembly resolutions 2444 (XXV) and 2675 (XXV), adopted in 1970 unanimously.

¹³¹ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 788 (1992), 972 (1995) and 1001 (1995) with regard to the Liberian civil war; Security Council resolutions 794 (1992) and 814 (1993) with regard to Somalia; Security Council resolution 993 (1993) with regard to Georgia and resolution 1193 (1998) with regard to Afghanistan.

¹³² An historic term now subsumed within the concept of international humanitarian law. Article 3 states that such violations shall include, but not be limited to, the employment of poisonous weapons or other weapons calculated to cause unnecessary suffering; wanton destruction of cities, towns or villages or devastation not justified by military necessity; attack or bombardment of undefended towns, villages or buildings; seizure of or destruction or wilful damage done to institutions dedicated to religion, charity and education, the arts and sciences, historic monuments and works of art and science; and plunder of public or private property.

¹³³ Case No. IT-94-1-AR 72; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 504. See also the *Furundžija* case, Case No. IT-95-17/1 (decision of Trial Chamber II, 10 December 1998); 121 ILR, pp. 213, 253–4.

an internal armed conflict) if (i) another State intervenes in that conflict through its troops, or alternatively if (ii) some of the participants in the internal armed conflict act on behalf of that other State.¹³⁴

The Appeals Chamber concluded that until 19 May 1992 with the open involvement of the Federal Yugoslav Army, the conflict in Bosnia had been international, but the question arose as to the situation when this army was withdrawn at that date. The Chamber examined the legal criteria for establishing when, in an armed conflict which is *prima facie* internal, armed forces may be regarded as acting on behalf of a foreign power thus turning the conflict into an international one. The Chamber examined article 4 of the Third Geneva Convention which defines prisoner of war status¹³⁵ and noted that states have in practice accepted that belligerents may use paramilitary units and other irregulars in the conduct of hostilities only on the condition that those belligerents are prepared to take responsibility for any infringements committed by such forces. In order for irregulars to qualify as lawful combatants, control over them by a party to an international armed conflict was required and thus a relationship of dependence and allegiance. Accordingly, the term 'belonging to a party to the conflict' used in article 4 implicitly refers to a test of control.¹³⁶

In order to determine the meaning of 'control', the decision of the International Court in the *Nicaragua* case was examined¹³⁷ and rejected, the Appeals Chamber preferring a rather weaker test, concluding that in order to attribute the acts of a military or paramilitary group to a state, it must be proved that the state wields overall control over the group, not only by equipping and financing the group, but also by co-ordinating or helping in the general planning of its military activity. However, it was not necessary that, in addition, the state should also issue, either to the head

¹³⁴ Judgment of 15 July 1999, para. 84; 124 ILR, p. 96. ¹³⁵ See above, p. 1172.

¹³⁶ Judgment of 15 July 1999, paras. 94 and 95; 124 ILR, p. 100.

¹³⁷ In that case it was held that in order to establish the responsibility of the US over the 'Contra' rebels, it was necessary to show that the state was not only in effective control of a military or paramilitary group, but also that there was effective control of the specific operation in the course of which breaches may have been committed. In order to establish that the US was responsible for 'acts contrary to human rights and humanitarian law' allegedly perpetrated by the Nicaraguan Contras, it was necessary to prove that the US had specifically 'directed or enforced' the perpetration of those acts: see ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 64–5; 76 ILR, p. 349. The International Court in the *Genocide Convention (Bosnia v. Serbia)* case, ICJ Reports, 2007, reaffirmed its decision in the *Nicaragua* case on this point and distinguished the *Tadić* case: see above, chapter 14, p. 791.

or to members of the group, instructions for the commission of specific acts contrary to international law.¹³⁸

Accordingly, the line between international and internal armed conflicts may be drawn at the point at which it can be shown that a foreign state is either directly intervening within a civil conflict or exercising 'overall control' over a group that is fighting in that conflict.

The Appeals Chamber in the *Kunarac* case discussed the issue of the meaning of armed conflict where the fighting is sporadic and does not extend to all of the territory of the state concerned. The Chamber held that the laws of war would apply in the whole territory of the warring states or, in the case of internal armed conflicts, the whole territory under the control of a party to the conflict, whether or not actual combat takes place there, and continued to apply until a general conclusion of peace or, in the case of internal armed conflicts, a peaceful settlement is achieved. A violation of the laws or customs of war may therefore occur at a time when and in a place where no fighting is actually taking place.¹³⁹

Non-international armed conflict¹⁴⁰

Although the 1949 Geneva Conventions were concerned with international armed conflicts, common article 3 did provide in cases of non-international armed conflicts occurring in the territory of one of the parties a series of minimum guarantees for protecting those not taking an active part in hostilities, including the sick and wounded.¹⁴¹ Precisely where this article applied was difficult to define in all cases. Non-international armed conflicts could, it may be argued, range from full-scale civil wars to relatively minor disturbances. This poses problems for the state in question which may not appreciate the political implications of the application of the Geneva Conventions, and the lack of the reciprocity element due to the absence of another state adds to the problems of enforcement.

¹³⁸ Judgment of 15 July 1999, paras. 131 and 145; 124 ILR, pp. 116 and 121.

¹³⁹ Decision of 12 June 2002, Case No. IT-96-23 and IT-96-23/1, para. 57.

¹⁴⁰ See e.g. UK, *Manual*, chapter 15; L. Moir, *The Law of Internal Armed Conflict*, Cambridge, 2002; Green, *Armed Conflict*, chapter 19, and T. Meron, *Human Rights in Internal Strife*, Cambridge, 1987. See also ICRC, *Increasing Respect for International Humanitarian Law in Non-International Armed Conflicts*, Geneva, 2008.

¹⁴¹ Note that the Court in the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 3, 114; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 448, declared that common article 3 also applied to international armed conflicts as a 'minimum yardstick, in addition to the more elaborate rules which are also to apply to international conflicts.'

Common article 3 lists the following as the minimum safeguards:

1. Persons taking no active part in hostilities to be treated humanely without any adverse distinction based on race, colour, religion or faith, sex, birth or wealth.

To this end the following are prohibited:

- a) violence to life and person, in particular murder, cruel treatment and torture;
- b) hostage-taking;
- c) outrages upon human dignity, in particular humiliating and degrading treatment;
- d) the passing of sentences and the carrying out of executions in the absence of due process.

2. The wounded and the sick are to be cared for.

Common article 3¹⁴² was developed by Protocol II, 1977,¹⁴³ which applies by virtue of article 1 to all non-international armed conflicts which take place in the territory of a state party between its armed forces and dissident armed forces. The latter have to be under responsible command and exercise such control over a part of its territory as to enable them to carry out sustained and concerted military operations and actually implement Protocol II. It does not apply to situations of internal disturbances and tensions, such as riots, isolated and sporadic acts of violence and other acts of a similar nature, not being armed conflicts.¹⁴⁴ The Protocol lists a series of fundamental guarantees and other provisions calling for the

¹⁴² The International Court in the *Nicaragua* case stated that the rules contained in common article 3 reflected 'elementary considerations of humanity', ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 114; 76 ILR, p. 349. See also the *Tadić* case, Case No. IT-94-1-AR; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 506.

¹⁴³ Note, of course, that by article 1(4) of Protocol I, 1977, international armed conflicts are now deemed to include armed conflicts in which peoples are fighting against colonial domination, alien occupation and racist regimes: see D. Forsyth, 'Legal Management of International War', 72 AJIL, 1978, p. 272. Article 96(3), Protocol I, requires the authority representing such peoples to make a special declaration undertaking to apply the Geneva Conventions and Protocol I. The UK made a declaration on ratification of Protocol I to the effect that it would not be bound by any such special declaration unless the UK has expressly recognised that it has been made by a body 'which is genuinely an authority representing a people engaged in an armed conflict': see UK, *Manual*, p. 384. Note also the UK view that 'a high level of intensity of military operations' is required regarding Protocol I so that the Northern Ireland situation, for example, would not have been covered: see 941 HC Deb., col. 237.

¹⁴⁴ See article 1(2), Protocol II and see article 8(2)d of the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court, 1998. Article 8(2)e of the Rome Statute lists a series of acts which if committed in internal armed conflicts are considered war crimes.

protection of non-combatants.¹⁴⁵ In particular, one may note the prohibitions on violence to the life, health and physical and mental well-being of persons, including torture; collective punishment; hostage-taking; acts of terrorism; outrages upon personal dignity, including rape and enforced prostitution; and pillage.¹⁴⁶ Further provisions cover the protection of children;¹⁴⁷ the protection of civilians, including the prohibition of attacks on works or installations containing dangerous forces that might cause severe losses among civilians;¹⁴⁸ the treatment of civilians, including their displacement;¹⁴⁹ and the treatment of prisoners and detainees,¹⁵⁰ and the wounded and sick.¹⁵¹

The Appeals Chamber in its decision on jurisdiction in the *Tadić* case noted that international legal rules had developed to regulate internal armed conflict for a number of reasons, including the frequency of civil wars, the increasing cruelty of internal armed conflicts, the large-scale nature of civil strife making third-party involvement more likely and the growth of international human rights law. Thus the distinction between inter-state and civil wars was losing its value so far as human beings were concerned.¹⁵² Indeed, one of the major themes of international humanitarian law has been the growing move towards the rules of human rights law and vice versa.¹⁵³ There is a common foundation in the principle of respect for human dignity.¹⁵⁴

¹⁴⁵ Note that in non-international armed conflicts the domestic law of the state in which the conflict is taking place continues to apply and that a captured rebel is not entitled to POW status. However, persons captured from either the government or rebel or opposition side are entitled to humane treatment: see e.g. UK, *Manual*, pp. 387 ff.

¹⁴⁶ See article 4. ¹⁴⁷ Article 6. ¹⁴⁸ Article 15. ¹⁴⁹ Article 17. ¹⁵⁰ Article 5.

¹⁵¹ Article 10. Note that the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda has jurisdiction to try violations of common article 3 and Protocol II. These are defined in article 4 of its Statute as including: '(a) Violence to life, health and physical or mental well-being of persons, in particular murder as well as cruel treatment such as torture, mutilation or any form of corporal punishment; (b) Collective punishments; (c) Taking of hostages; (d) Acts of terrorism; (e) Outrages upon personal dignity, in particular humiliating and degrading treatment, rape, enforced prostitution and any form of indecent assault; (f) Pillage; (g) The passing of sentences and the carrying out of executions without previous judgment pronounced by a regularly constituted court, affording all the judicial guarantees which are recognized as indispensable by civilised peoples; and (h) Threats to commit any of the foregoing acts.'

¹⁵² Case No. IT-94-1-AR; 105 ILR, pp. 453, 505 ff. But see Moir, *Internal Armed Conflict*, pp. 188 ff., and Meron, 'The Continuing Role of Custom in the Formation of International Humanitarian Law', 90 AJIL, 1996, pp. 238, 242–3.

¹⁵³ See e.g. Moir, *Internal Armed Conflict*, chapter 5, and R. Provost, *International Human Rights and Humanitarian Law*, Cambridge, 2002. See also above, p. 1180.

¹⁵⁴ See the *Furundžija* case, 121 ILR, pp. 213, 271.

The principles governing internal armed conflicts in humanitarian law are becoming more extensive, while the principles of international human rights law are also rapidly evolving, particularly with regard to the fundamental non-derogable rights which cannot be breached even in times of public emergency.¹⁵⁵ This area of overlap was recognised in 1970 in General Assembly resolution 2675 (XXV) which emphasised that fundamental human rights 'continue to apply fully in situations of armed conflict', while the European Commission on Human Rights in the *Cyprus v. Turkey (First and Second Applications)* case declared that in belligerent operations a state was bound to respect not only the humanitarian law laid down in the Geneva Conventions but also fundamental human rights.¹⁵⁶

The Inter-American Commission of Human Rights in the *La Tablada* case against Argentina noted that the most difficult aspect of common article 3 related to its application at the blurred line at the lower end separating it from especially violent internal disturbances.¹⁵⁷ It was in situations of internal armed conflict that international humanitarian law and international human rights law 'most converge and reinforce each other', so that, for example, common article 3 and article 4 of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights both protected the right to life and prohibited arbitrary execution. However, there are difficulties in resorting simply to human rights law when issues of the right to life arise in combat situations. Accordingly, 'the Commission must necessarily look to and apply definitional standards and relevant rules of humanitarian law as sources of authoritative guidance in its resolution' of such issues.¹⁵⁸

The Commission returned to the issue in *Coard v. USA* and noted that there was 'an integral linkage between the law of human rights and the humanitarian law because they share a "common nucleus of non-derogable rights and a common purpose of protecting human life and dignity", and there may be a substantial overlap in the application of these bodies of law'.¹⁵⁹

However, in addition to the overlap between internal armed conflict principles and those of human rights law in situations where the level of

¹⁵⁵ See e.g. article 15 of the European Convention on Human Rights, 1950; article 4 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, 1966; and article 27 of the Inter-American Convention on Human Rights, 1969. See also above, chapters 6 and 7.

¹⁵⁶ Report of the Commission of 10 July 1976, paras. 509–10.

¹⁵⁷ Report No. 55/97, Case 11.137 and OEA/Ser.L/V/II.98, para. 153.

¹⁵⁸ *Ibid.*, paras. 160–1. ¹⁵⁹ Case No. 10.951; 123 ILR, pp. 156, 169 (footnote omitted).

domestic violence has reached a degree of intensity and continuity, there exists an area of civil conflict which is not covered by humanitarian law since it falls below the necessary threshold of common article 3 and Protocol II.¹⁶⁰ Moves have been underway to bridge the gap between this and the application of international human rights law.¹⁶¹ The International Committee of the Red Cross has been considering the elaboration of a new declaration on internal strife. In addition, a Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards was adopted by a group of experts in 1990.¹⁶² This Declaration emphasises the prohibition of violence to the life, health and physical and mental well-being of persons, including murder, torture and rape; collective punishment; hostage-taking; practising, permitting or tolerating the involuntary disappearance of individuals; pillage; deliberate deprivation of access to necessary food, drinking water and medicine, and threats or incitement to commit any of these acts.¹⁶³ In addition, the Declaration provides *inter alia* that persons deprived of their liberty should be held in recognised places of detention (article 4); that acts or threats of violence to spread terror are prohibited (article 6); that all human beings have the inherent right to life (article 8); that children are to be protected so that, for example, children under fifteen years of age should not be permitted to join armed groups or forces (article 10); that the wounded and sick should be cared for (article 12) and medical, religious and other humanitarian personnel should be protected and assisted (article 14).¹⁶⁴

¹⁶⁰ See A. Hay, 'The ICRC and International Humanitarian Issues', *International Review of the Red Cross*, Jan–Feb 1984, p. 3. See also T. Meron, 'Towards a Humanitarian Declaration on Internal Strife', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 859; Meron, *Human Rights in Internal Strife*, and Meron, 'On the Inadequate Reach of Humanitarian and Human Rights Law and the Need for a New Instrument', 77 AJIL, 1983, p. 589, and T. Meron and A. Rosas, 'A Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 375.

¹⁶¹ As to international human rights law, see generally above, chapter 6. Problems centre upon the situation where humanitarian law does not apply since the threshold criteria for applicability have not been reached; where the state in question is not a party to the relevant instrument; where derogation from the specified standards is involved as a consequence of the declaration of a state of emergency, and where the party concerned is not a government: see A. Eide, A. Rosas and T. Meron, 'Combating Lawlessness in Gray Zone Conflicts Through Minimum Humanitarian Standards', 89 AJIL, 1995, pp. 215, 217.

¹⁶² This was reprinted in the Report of the UN Sub-Commission: see E/CN.4/1995/116 (1995) and UN Commission on Human Rights resolution 1995/29 and E/CN.4/1995/81 and 116. See also T. Meron and A. Rosas, 'Current Development: A Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards', 85 AJIL, 1991, pp. 375, 375–7.

¹⁶³ Article 3.

¹⁶⁴ See also the Declaration for the Protection of War Victims, 1993, A/48/742, Annex.

Enforcement of humanitarian law¹⁶⁵

Parties to the 1949 Geneva Conventions and to Protocol I, 1977, undertake to respect and to ensure respect for the instrument in question,¹⁶⁶ and to disseminate knowledge of the principles contained therein.¹⁶⁷ A variety of enforcement methods also exist, although the use of reprisals has been prohibited.¹⁶⁸ One of the means of implementation is the concept of the Protecting Power, appointed to look after the interests of nationals of one party to a conflict under the control of the other, whether as prisoners of war or occupied civilians.¹⁶⁹ Sweden and Switzerland performed this role during the Second World War. Such a Power must ensure that compliance with the relevant provisions has been effected and that the system acts as a form of guarantee for the protected person as well as a channel of communication for him with the state of which he is a national. The drawback of this system is its dependence upon the consent of the parties involved. Not only must the Protecting Power be prepared to act in that capacity, but both the state of which the protected person is a national and the state holding such persons must give their consent for the system to operate.¹⁷⁰ Since the role is so central to the enforcement and working of humanitarian law, it is a disadvantage for it to be subject to state sovereignty and consent. It only requires the holding state to refuse its co-operation for this structure of implementation to be greatly weakened, leaving only reliance upon voluntary operations. This has occurred on a number of occasions, for example the Chinese refusal to consent to the appointment of a Protecting Power with regard to its conflict with India in 1962, and the Indian refusal, of 1971 and subsequently, with regard to Pakistani prisoners of war in its charge.¹⁷¹ Protocol I also provides for an International Fact-Finding Commission for competence to inquire into grave breaches¹⁷² of the Geneva Conventions and that Protocol or other

¹⁶⁵ See e.g. UK, *Manual*, chapter 16, and Best, *War and Law*, pp. 370 ff.

¹⁶⁶ Common article 1.

¹⁶⁷ See e.g. articles 127 and 144 of the Third and Fourth Geneva Conventions, article 83 of Protocol I and article 19 of Protocol II.

¹⁶⁸ See e.g. articles 20 and 51(6) of Protocol I.

¹⁶⁹ See e.g. Draper, 'Implementation and Enforcement', pp. 13 ff.

¹⁷⁰ See articles 8, 8, 8 and 9 of the Four Geneva Conventions, 1949, respectively.

¹⁷¹ Note that the system did operate in the Falklands conflict, with Switzerland acting as the Protecting Power of the UK and Brazil as the Protecting Power of Argentina: see e.g. Levie, 'Falklands Crisis', pp. 68–9.

¹⁷² See articles 50, 51, 130 and 147 of the four 1949 Conventions respectively and article 85 of Protocol I, 1977. A Commission of Experts was established in 1992 to investigate violations of international humanitarian law in the territory of the Former Yugoslavia:

serious violations, and to facilitate through its good offices the 'restoration of an attitude of respect' for these instruments.¹⁷³ The parties to a conflict may themselves, of course, establish an ad hoc inquiry into alleged violations of humanitarian law.¹⁷⁴

It is, of course, also the case that breaches of international law in this field may constitute war crimes or crimes against humanity or even genocide for which universal jurisdiction is provided.¹⁷⁵ Article 6 of the Charter of the Nuremberg Tribunal, 1945, for example, includes as war crimes for which there is to be individual responsibility the murder, ill-treatment or deportation to slave labour of the civilian population of an occupied territory; the ill-treatment of prisoners of war; the killing of hostages and the wanton destruction of cities, towns and villages.¹⁷⁶

A great deal of valuable work in the sphere of humanitarian law has been accomplished by the International Red Cross.¹⁷⁷ This indispensable organisation consists of the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC), over 100 national Red Cross (or Red Crescent) societies with a League co-ordinating their activities, and conferences of all these elements every four years. The ICRC is the most active body and has a wide-ranging series of functions to perform, including working for the application of the Geneva Conventions and acting in natural and man-made disasters. It has operated in a large number of states, visiting prisoners of war¹⁷⁸ and otherwise functioning to ensure the implementation of humanitarian law.¹⁷⁹ It operates in both international and internal armed conflict

see Security Council resolution 780 (1992). See also the Report of the Commission of 27 May 1994, S/1994/674.

¹⁷³ Article 90, Protocol I, 1977.

¹⁷⁴ Articles 52, 53, 132 and 149 of the four 1949 Conventions respectively.

¹⁷⁵ See e.g. Draper, 'Implementation and Enforcement', pp. 35 ff. Note also that grave breaches are to be the subject of sanction.

¹⁷⁶ See further, with regard to the statutes of the various war crimes tribunals, above, chapters 8 and 12. Note also the UN Compensation Commission dealing with compensation for victims of Iraq's invasion of Kuwait in 1990, above, chapter 18, p. 1045.

¹⁷⁷ See e.g. G. Willemin and R. Heacock, *The International Committee of the Red Cross*, The Hague, 1984, and D. Forsythe, 'The Red Cross as Transnational Movement', 30 *International Organisation*, 1967, p. 607. See also Best, *War and Law*, pp. 347 ff.

¹⁷⁸ See e.g. articles 126 and 142 of the Third and Fourth Geneva Conventions respectively.

¹⁷⁹ The International Court in the *Construction of a Wall* case, ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 175–6; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 94, referred to the 'special position' of the ICRC with regard to the Fourth Geneva Convention, while the Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission in the Partial Award, Prisoners of War, Ethiopia's Claim 4, 1 July 2003, paras. 58 and 61–2, noted that the ICRC had been assigned significant responsibilities in a number of articles of the Third Geneva Convention (with which it was concerned) both as 'a humanitarian organization providing relief and as an organization providing necessary and vital external scrutiny of

situations. One of the largest operations it has undertaken since 1948 related to the Nigerian civil war, and in that conflict nearly twenty of its personnel were killed on duty. The ICRC has since been deeply involved in the Yugoslav situation and indeed, in 1992, contrary to its usual confidentiality approach, it felt impelled to speak out publicly against the grave breaches of humanitarian law taking place. The organisation has also been involved in Somalia (where its activities included visiting detainees held by the UN forces), Rwanda, Afghanistan, Sri Lanka¹⁸⁰ and in Iraq. Due to circumstances, the ICRC must act with tact and discretion and in many cases states refuse their co-operation. It performed a valuable function in the exchange of prisoners after the 1967 and 1973 Middle East wars, although for several years Israel did not accept the ICRC role regarding the Arab territories it occupied.¹⁸¹

Conclusion

The ICRC formulated the following principles as a guide to the relevant legal rules:

1. Persons *hors de combat* and those who do not take a direct part in hostilities are entitled to respect for their lives and physical and moral integrity. They shall in all circumstances be protected and treated humanely without any adverse distinctions.
2. It is forbidden to kill or injure an enemy who surrenders or who is *hors de combat*.
3. The wounded and sick shall be collected and cared for by the party to the conflict which has them in its power. Protection also covers medical personnel, establishments, transports and *matériel*. The emblem of the red cross (red crescent, red lion and sun) is the sign of such protection and must be respected.
4. Captured combatants and civilians under the authority of an adverse party are entitled to respect for their lives, dignity, personal rights and convictions. They shall be protected against all acts of violence and

the treatment of POWs' and further emphasised that the provisions requiring scrutiny of the treatment of, and access to, POWs had become part of customary international law.

¹⁸⁰ See e.g. *Challenges of the Nineties: ICRC Special Report on Activities 1990–1995*, Geneva, 1995. Between 1990 and 1994, over half a million prisoners in over sixty countries were visited by ICRC delegates, *ibid*.

¹⁸¹ See generally *Annual Report of the ICRC*, 1982. See also 'Action by the ICRC in the Event of Breaches of International Humanitarian Law', *International Review of the Red Cross*, March–April 1981, p. 1.

reprisals. They shall have the right to correspond with their families and to receive relief.

5. Everyone shall be entitled to benefit from fundamental judicial guarantees. No one shall be held responsible for an act he has not committed. No one shall be subjected to physical or mental torture, corporal punishment or cruel or degrading treatment.
6. Parties to a conflict and members of their armed forces do not have an unlimited choice of methods and means of warfare. It is prohibited to employ weapons or methods of warfare of a nature to cause unnecessary losses or excessive suffering.
7. Parties to a conflict shall at all times distinguish between the civilian population and combatants in order to spare civilian population and property. Neither the civilian populations as such nor civilian persons shall be the object for attack. Attacks shall be directed solely against military objectives.¹⁸²

In addition, the ICRC has published the following statement with regard to non-international armed conflicts:

A. General Rules

1. The obligation to distinguish between combatants and civilians is a general rule applicable in non-international armed conflicts. It prohibits indiscriminate attacks.
2. The prohibition of attacks against the civilian population as such or against individual civilians is a general rule applicable in non-international armed conflicts. Acts of violence intended primarily to spread terror among the civilian population are also prohibited.
3. The prohibition of superfluous injury or unnecessary suffering is a general rule applicable in non-international armed conflicts. It prohibits, in particular, the use of means of warfare which uselessly aggravate the sufferings of disabled men or render their death inevitable.
4. The prohibition to kill, injure or capture an adversary by resort to perfidy is a general rule applicable in non-international armed conflicts; in a non-international armed conflict, acts inviting the confidence of an adversary to lead him to believe that he is entitled to, or obliged to accord protection under the rules of international law applicable in non-international armed conflicts, with intent to betray that confidence, shall constitute perfidy.

¹⁸² See *International Review of the Red Cross*, Sept.–Oct. 1978, p. 247. See also Green, *Armed Conflict*, pp. 355–6.

5. The obligation to respect and protect medical and religious personnel and medical units and transports in the conduct of military operations is a general rule applicable in non-international armed conflicts.
6. The general rule prohibiting attacks against the civilian population implies, as a corollary, the prohibition of attacks on dwellings and other installations which are used only by the civilian population.
7. The general rule prohibiting attacks against the civilian population implies, as a corollary, the prohibition to attack, destroy, remove or render useless objects indispensable to the survival of the civilian population.
8. The general rule to distinguish between combatants and civilians and the prohibition of attack against the civilian population as such or against individual civilians implies, in order to be effective, that all feasible precautions have to be taken to avoid injury, loss or damage to the civilian population.¹⁸³

Suggestions for further reading

I. Detter, *The Law of War*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2000

Y. Dinstein, *The Conduct of Hostilities under the Law of International Armed Conflict*, Cambridge, 2004

L. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000

UK Ministry of Defence, *Manual on the Law of Armed Conflict*, Oxford, 2004

¹⁸³ See *International Review of the Red Cross*, Sept.–Oct. 1989, p. 404. See also Green, *Armed Conflict*, p. 356. Part B of this Declaration dealing with Prohibitions and Restrictions on the Use of Certain Weapons has been omitted. It may be found at the above references.

The United Nations

The UN system

The United Nations¹ was established following the conclusion of the Second World War and in the light of Allied planning and intentions expressed during that conflict.² The purposes of the UN are set out in article 1 of the Charter as follows:

1. To maintain international peace and security, and to that end, to take effective collective measures for the prevention and removal of threats to the peace, and for the suppression of acts of aggression or other breaches of the peace, and to bring about by peaceful means, and in conformity with the principles of justice and international law, adjustment or settlement of international disputes or situations which might lead to a breach of the peace;
2. To develop friendly relations among nations based on respect for the principle of equal rights and self-determination of peoples, and to take other appropriate measures to strengthen universal peace;
3. To achieve international co-operation in solving international problems of an economic, social, cultural or humanitarian character, and in

¹ See e.g. *The Charter of the United Nations* (ed. B. Simma), 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002; J. P. Cot, A. Pellet and M. Forteau, *La Charte des Nations Unies: Commentaire Article par Article*, 3rd edn, Paris, 2005; S. Chesterman, T. M. Franck and D. M. Malone, *Law and Practice of the United Nations*, Oxford, 2008; *La Charte des Nations Unies, Constitution Mondiale?* (eds. R. Chemain and A. Pellet), Paris 2006; B. Conforti, *The Law and Practice of the United Nations*, 2nd edn, The Hague, 2000; *United Nations Legal Order* (eds. O. Schachter and C. C. Joyner), Cambridge, 2 vols., 1995; *Bowett's Law of International Institutions* (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, London, 2001, chapter 2; *The United Nations and a Just World Order* (eds. R. A. Falk, S. S. Kim and S. H. Mendlovitz), Boulder, 1991; B. Broms, *United Nations*, Helsinki, 1990; E. Luard, *A History of the United Nations*, London, 1982, vol. I; R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963; *United Nations, Divided World* (eds. A. Roberts and B. Kingsbury), 2nd edn, Oxford, 1993; L. M. Goodrich, *The United Nations in a Changing World*, New York, 1974; the *Bertrand Report*, 1985, A/40/988, and L. M. Goodrich, E. Hambro and A. P. Simons, *Charter of the United Nations*, 3rd edn, New York, 1969. See also www.un.org/.

² See UNCIO, San Francisco, 15 vols., 1945.

promoting and encouraging respect for human rights and for fundamental freedoms for all without distinction as to race, sex, language, or religion; and

4. To be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations in the attainment of these common ends.

While the purposes are clearly wide-ranging, they do provide a useful guide to the comprehensiveness of its concerns. The question of priorities as between the various issues noted is constantly subject to controversy and change, but this only reflects the continuing pressures and altering political balances within the organisation. In particular, the emphasis upon decolonisation, self-determination and apartheid mirrored the growth in UN membership and the dismantling of the colonial empires, while increasing concern with economic and developmental issues is now very apparent and clearly reflects the adverse economic conditions in various parts of the world.

The Charter of the United Nations is not only the multilateral treaty which created the organisation and outlined the rights and obligations of those states signing it, it is also the constitution of the UN, laying down its functions and prescribing its limitations.³ Foremost amongst these is the recognition of the sovereignty and independence of the member states. Under article 2(7) of the Charter, the UN may not intervene in matters essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state (unless enforcement measures under Chapter VII are to be applied). This provision has inspired many debates in the UN, and it came to be accepted that colonial issues were not to be regarded as falling within the article 2(7) restriction. Other changes have also occurred, demonstrating that the concept of domestic jurisdiction is not immutable but a principle of international law delineating international and domestic spheres of operations. As a principle of international law it is susceptible of change through international law and is not dependent upon the unilateral determination of individual states.⁴

In addition to the domestic jurisdiction provision, article 2 also lays down a variety of other principles in accordance with which both the UN and the member states are obliged to act. These include the assertion that the UN is based upon the sovereign equality of states and the principles of fulfilment in good faith of the obligations contained in the Charter, the peaceful settlement of disputes and the prohibition on the use of force.

³ See Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, pp. 4 ff.

⁴ See above, chapter 12, p. 647.

It is also provided that member states must assist the organisation in its activities taken in accordance with the Charter and must refrain from assisting states against which the UN is taking preventive or enforcement action.

The UN has six principal organs, these being the Security Council, General Assembly, Economic and Social Council, Trusteeship Council, Secretariat and International Court of Justice.⁵

*The Security Council*⁶

The Council was intended to operate as an efficient executive organ of limited membership, functioning continuously. It was given primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security.⁷ The Security Council consists of fifteen members, five of them being permanent members (USA, UK, Russia, China and France). These permanent members, chosen on the basis of power politics in 1945, have the veto. Under article 27 of the Charter, on all but procedural matters, decisions of the Council must be made by an affirmative vote of nine members, including the concurring votes of the permanent members.

A negative vote by any of the permanent members is therefore sufficient to veto any resolution of the Council, save with regard to procedural questions, where nine affirmative votes are all that is required. The veto was written into the Charter in view of the exigencies of power. The USSR, in particular, would not have been willing to accept the UN as it was envisaged without the establishment of the veto to protect it from the Western bias of the Council and General Assembly at that time.⁸ In practice, the veto was exercised by the Soviet Union on a considerable

⁵ See e.g. *The United Nations at the Millennium* (eds. P. Taylor and A. J. R. Groom), London, 2000. As to the administration of territory by the UN, see above, chapter 5, p. 230.

⁶ See e.g. C. Denis, *Le Pouvoir Normatif du Conseil de Sécurité des Nations Unies: Portée et Limites*, Brussels, 2004; M. Hilaire, *United Nations Law and the Security Council*, Aldershot, 2005; *The UN Security Council from the Cold War to the 21st Century* (ed. D. M. Malone), Boulder, 2004; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 867 ff.; S. Bailey and S. Daws, *The Procedure of the UN Security Council*, Oxford, 1998; S. Bailey, *Voting in the Security Council*, Oxford, 1969, and Bailey, *The Procedure of the Security Council*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 1988; Bowett's *International Institutions*, p. 39, and R. Higgins, 'The Place of International Law in the Settlement of Disputes by the Security Council', 64 AJIL, 1970, p. 1. See also M. C. Wood, 'Security Council Working Methods and Procedure: Recent Developments', 45 ICLQ, 1996, p. 150.

⁷ Articles 23, 24, 25 and 28 of the UN Charter.

⁸ See e.g. H. G. Nicholas, *The United Nations as a Political Institution*, Oxford, 1975, pp. 10–13.

number of occasions, and by the USA less frequently, and by the other members fairly rarely. In more recent years, the exercise of the veto by the US has increased. The question of how one distinguishes between procedural and non-procedural matters has been a highly controversial one. In the statement of the Sponsoring Powers at San Francisco, it was declared that the issue of whether or not a matter was procedural was itself subject to the veto.⁹ This 'double-veto' constitutes a formidable barrier. Subsequent practice has interpreted the phrase 'concurring votes of the permanent members' in article 27 in such a way as to permit abstentions. Accordingly, permanent members may abstain with regard to a resolution of the Security Council without being deemed to have exercised their veto against it.¹⁰

It does not, of course, follow that the five supreme powers of 1945 will continue to be the only permanent members of the Council nor the only ones with a veto.¹¹ However, the complicated mechanisms for amendment of the Charter,¹² coupled with the existence of the veto, make any change difficult. The question of expansion of Council membership has been before the UN for an appreciable period and various proposals have been made.¹³ One proposal would provide for six new permanent seats with

⁹ *Repertory of Practice of UN Organs*, New York, 1955, vol. II, p. 104. See also Simma, *Charter*, p. 489.

¹⁰ See e.g. A. Stavropoulos, 'The Practice of Voluntary Abstentions by Permanent Members of the Security Council under Article 27(3) of the Charter', 61 AJIL, 1967, p. 737. See also the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 22; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 12, recognising this practice as lawful.

¹¹ Of the ten non-permanent seats, five are allocated to Afro-Asian states, one to Eastern Europe, two to Latin America, and two to Western European and other powers: see General Assembly resolution 1991 (XVIII).

¹² See articles 108 and 109 of the Charter, which require *inter alia* the consent of all the permanent members to any amendment to or alteration of the Charter. It may indeed be suggested that the speed with which Russia was accepted as the continuance of the former USSR with regard to the permanent seat on the Security Council partly arose out of a desire by the Council to avoid opening up the question of membership for general debate: see F. Kirgis, *International Organisations in their Legal Setting*, 2nd edn, St Paul, 1993, pp. 188 ff. See also above, chapter 17, p. 960.

¹³ See e.g. the Report of the High Level Panel on Threats, Challenges and Change, 2004, A/59/565, especially paras. 244 ff. detailing the two proposals made (models A and B respectively) and Secretary-General, *In Larger Freedom*, A/59/2005, paras. 167 ff. The General Assembly has also been considering the question of the 'equitable representation on and increase in the membership of the Security Council' and an open-ended working group was established in 1993 to consider the matter further: see General Assembly resolution 48/26. In 2007, the President of the General Assembly appointed five facilitators, who reported that expansion of the Council needed to be based both on the contribution of member states to the maintenance of international peace and security and to the other

no veto and three new non-permanent seats. Another would provide for no new permanent seats but a new category of eight four-year renewable-term seats and one new two-year non-permanent and non-renewable seat. States usually seen as candidates for permanent positions on the Council include Germany, India, Japan and Brazil, but others are also keen to be considered and no consensus is yet in sight.

The Council has currently three permanent committees, being a Committee of Experts on Rules of Procedure, a Committee on Admission of New Members and a Committee on Council meeting away from Headquarters. There are also a number of ad hoc committees, such as the Governing Council of the United Nations Compensation Commission established by Security Council resolution 692 (1991), the Counter-Terrorism Committee¹⁴ and the Committee established by resolution 1540 (2004), which obliges states *inter alia* to refrain from supporting by any means non-state actors from developing, acquiring, manufacturing, possessing, transporting, transferring or using nuclear, chemical or biological weapons and their delivery systems. There are also a number of sanctions committees covering particular states under sanction as well as the committee established under resolution 1267 (1999) concerning persons and bodies associated with Al-Qaida and the Taliban.¹⁵ Further subsidiary bodies include the Peacebuilding Commission, the UN Compensation Commission and the International Criminal Tribunals for the Former Yugoslavia and for Rwanda.

The Security Council acts on behalf of the members of the organisation as a whole in performing its functions, and its decisions (but not its recommendations)¹⁶ are binding upon all member states.¹⁷ Its powers are concentrated in two particular categories, the peaceful settlement of disputes and the adoption of enforcement measures. By these means, the Council conducts its primary task, the maintenance of international peace

purposes of the United Nations and on equitable geographical distribution, while addressing the underrepresentation of developing countries as well as small states, A/61/47, pp. 11 ff. See also Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, chapter 17; A. Blanc Altemir and B. Real, 'La Réforme du Conseil de Sécurité des Nations Unies: Quelle Structure et Quels Membres?', 110 RGDIP, 2006, p. 801, and Y. Blum, 'Proposals for UN Security Council Reform', 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 632.

¹⁴ Established under resolution 1373 (2001). See above, chapter 20, p. 1162.

¹⁵ As amended by a number of subsequent resolutions, including resolution 1735 (2006): see further above, chapter 20, p. 1163, note 225.

¹⁶ Compare, for example, article 36 of the Charter (peaceful settlement) with articles 41, 42 and 44 (enforcement actions).

¹⁷ Article 25 of the Charter.

and security. However, the Council also has a variety of other functions. In the case of trusteeship territories, for example, designated strategic areas fall within the authority of the Security Council rather than the General Assembly,¹⁸ while the admission, suspension and expulsion of member states is carried out by the General Assembly upon the recommendation of the Council.¹⁹ Amendments to the UN Charter require the ratification of all the permanent members of the Council (as well as adoption by a two-thirds vote of the Assembly and ratification by two-thirds of UN members).²⁰ The judges of the International Court are elected by the Assembly and Council.²¹

Until the end of the Cold War, the Council generally did not fulfil the expectations held of it, although resolution 242 (1967) laid down the basis for negotiations for a Middle East peace settlement and is regarded as the most authoritative expression of the principles to be taken into account.²² With the development of the *glasnost* and *perestroika* policies in the Soviet Union in the late 1980s, increasing co-operation with the US ensued and reached its highest point as the Kuwait crisis evolved.²³ After the attacks on the US of 11 September 2001, further activities ensued, including the adoption of resolutions 1368 and 1373 of 2001 condemning international terrorism, reaffirming the right of self-defence and establishing a Counter-Terrorism Committee. However, the failure of the Council to agree upon measures consequent to resolution 1441 (2002) concerning Iraq's possession of weapons of mass destruction contrary to resolution 687 (1991) and others precipitated a major division within the Council. The US and the UK commenced military operations against Iraq in late March 2003 without express Security Council authorisation and against the opposition of other permanent members.²⁴ However, despite this crisis, the Council has begun to assume a more proactive role in

¹⁸ See articles 82 and 83 of the Charter.

¹⁹ See articles 4, 5 and 6 of the Charter. The restoration of the rights and privileges of a suspended member is by the Council, article 5.

²⁰ Article 108. A similar requirement operates with regard to alteration of the Charter by a General Conference of Members: see article 109.

²¹ Article 4 of the Statute of the International Court of Justice.

²² Reaffirmed in resolution 338 (1973). See generally I. Pogany, *The Security Council and the Arab–Israeli Conflict*, Aldershot, 1984, chapter 5, and A. Shapira, 'The Security Council Resolution of November 22, 1967 – Its Legal Nature and Implications', 4 *Israel Law Review*, 1969, p. 229.

²³ See below, p. 1243. See also *The Kuwait Crisis: Basic Documents* (eds. E. Lauterpacht, C. Greenwood, M. Weller and D. Bethlehem), Cambridge, 1991.

²⁴ See further below, p. 1255.

certain areas. The effect of resolutions 1373 (2001) and 1540 (2004) with the establishment of monitoring committees with significant authority, together with the increasing use of sanctions against specific states, has led some to talk of legislative activity.²⁵

The failure of the Council in its primary responsibility to preserve world peace stimulated a number of other developments. It encouraged the General Assembly to assume a residual responsibility for maintaining international peace and security, it encouraged the Secretary-General to take upon himself a more active role and it hastened the development of peacekeeping operations. It also encouraged in some measure the establishment of the military alliances, such as NATO and the Warsaw Pact, which arose as a consequence of the onset of the Cold War and constituted, in effect, regional enforcement systems bypassing the Security Council.

*The General Assembly*²⁶

The General Assembly is the parliamentary body of the UN organisation and consists of representatives of all the member states, of which there are currently 192. Membership of the UN, as provided by article 4 of the Charter, is open to:

all other peace-loving states which accept the obligations contained in the present Charter and, in the judgment of the organisation, are able and willing to carry out these obligations,

and is effected by a decision of the General Assembly upon the recommendation of the Security Council.²⁷ Other changes in membership may

²⁵ See e.g. J. E. Alvarez, 'Hegemonic International Law Revisited', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 873, and S. Talmon, 'The Security Council of World Legislature', 99 AJIL, 2005, p. 175. See further as to these resolutions, above, chapter 20, p. 1208.

²⁶ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, pp. 27 ff.; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 631 ff.; Nicholas, *United Nations*, chapter 5; B. Finley, *The Structure of the United Nations General Assembly*, Dobbs Ferry, 3 vols., 1977, and S. Bailey, *The General Assembly of the United Nations*, London, 1964.

²⁷ An advisory opinion by the International Court held that only the conditions enumerated in article 4 were to be taken into account in considering a request for membership: the *Conditions of Admission of a State to Membership of the United Nations* case, ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 57; 15 AD, p. 333. See also the *Competence of the General Assembly for the Admission of a State to the United Nations* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, p. 4; 17 ILR, p. 326, where the Court held that the General Assembly alone could not effect membership in the absence of a recommendation by the Security Council. See also Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, chapter 5, and Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 511 ff.

take place. For example, in 1991, Byelorussia informed the UN that it had changed its name to Belarus, while the Czech and Slovak Federal Republic ceased to exist on 31 December 1992 to be replaced by two new states (the Czech Republic and Slovakia), accepted as UN members on 19 January 1993. The former German Democratic Republic ceased to exist and its territory was absorbed into the Federal Republic of Germany as from 3 October 1990, while 'The Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia' was admitted to the UN on 8 April 1993 under that unusual appellation. Russia was regarded as the continuator of the Soviet Union, so no action was required. In November 2000, the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia was admitted as a new member and in February 2003 it changed its name to Serbia and Montenegro. In 2006, Montenegro seceded and became a member of the UN in its own right.²⁸ Membership of the UN may be suspended under article 5 of the Charter by the General Assembly, upon the recommendation of the Security Council, where the member state concerned is the object of preventive or enforcement action by the Security Council. Article 6 allows for expulsion of a member by the General Assembly, upon the recommendation of the Security Council, where the member state has persistently violated the Principles contained in the Charter.²⁹

Voting in the Assembly is governed by article 18, which stipulates that each member has one vote only, despite widespread disparities in populations and resources between states, and that decisions on 'important questions', including the admission of new members and recommendations relating to international peace and security, are to be made by a two-thirds majority of members present and voting.³⁰

²⁸ See as to succession issues, Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, pp. 173 ff. and see further as to Yugoslavia and the UN, above, chapter 17, p. 962.

²⁹ See article 2. See also as to the question of the refusal of credentials to General Assembly delegations e.g. Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, pp. 191 ff.; Simma, *Charter*, pp. 253 ff.; D. Ciobanu, 'Credentials of Delegations and Representation of Member States at the United Nations', 25 ICLQ, 1976, p. 351, and M. Halberstam, 'Excluding Israel from the General Assembly by a Rejection of its Credentials', 78 AJIL, 1984, p. 179.

³⁰ See e.g. G. Clarke and L. B. Sohn, *World Peace Through World Law*, Cambridge, 1958, pp. 19–30; *The Strategy of World Order* (eds. R. A. Falk and S. H. Mendlovitz), New York, 1966, vol. III, pp. 272 ff., and L. B. Sohn, *Cases on United Nations Law*, 2nd edn, Brooklyn, 1967, pp. 248 ff. Note also the emergence of bloc voting, whereby, for example, the Afro-Asian states agree to adopt a common stance on particular issues, which has been a constant feature of the work of the Assembly.

Except for certain internal matters, such as the budget,³¹ the Assembly cannot bind its members. It is not a legislature in that sense, and its resolutions are purely recommendatory. Such resolutions, of course, may be binding if they reflect rules of customary international law and they are significant as instances of state practice that may lead to the formation of a new customary rule, but Assembly resolutions in themselves cannot establish binding legal obligations for member states.³² The Assembly is essentially a debating chamber, a forum for the exchange of ideas and the discussion of a wide-ranging category of problems. It meets in annual sessions, but special sessions may be called by the Secretary-General at the request of the Security Council or a majority of UN members.³³ Emergency special sessions may also be called by virtue of the Uniting for Peace machinery.³⁴ Ten such sessions have been convened, covering situations ranging from various aspects of the Middle East situation in 1956, 1958, 1967, 1980 and 1982 and a rolling session commencing in 1997, to Afghanistan in 1980 and Namibia in 1981.

The Assembly has established a variety of organs covering a wide range of topics and activities. It has six main committees that cover respectively disarmament and international security; economic and financial; social, humanitarian and cultural; special political and decolonisation; administrative and budgetary; and legal matters.³⁵ In addition, there is a procedural General Committee dealing with agenda issues and a Credentials Committee. There are also two Standing Committees dealing with inter-sessional administrative and budgetary questions and contributions, and a number of subsidiary, ad hoc and other bodies dealing with relevant topics, including the International Law Commission, the UN Commission on International Trade Law, the UN Institute for Training and Research, the Council for Namibia and the UN Relief and Works

³¹ Article 17 of the Charter. ³² See further above, chapter 3, p. 114.

³³ Article 20 of the Charter. Such special sessions have been held, for example, to discuss the issues of Palestine in 1947–8, Namibia (South West Africa) in 1967, 1978 and 1986, and to debate the world economic order in 1974, 1975 and 1990. Other issues covered include financing the UN Interim Force in Lebanon in 1978, apartheid in 1989, disarmament in 1978, 1982 and 1988, drug abuse in 1990 and 1998, small island developing states in 1999, women in 2000, HIV/AIDS in 2001, children in 2002 and commemoration of the sixtieth anniversary of the liberation of the concentration camps in 2005.

³⁴ See below, p. 1272.

³⁵ See e.g. Broms, *United Nations*, pp. 198 ff. Note that in 1993, the Special Political Committee was merged with the Fourth Committee on Decolonisation: see General Assembly resolution 47/233.

Agency.³⁶ The Human Rights Council, established in 2006, is elected by and reports to the Assembly.³⁷

*Other principal organs*³⁸

Much of the work of the United Nations in the economic and social spheres of activity is performed by the Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC). It can discuss a wide range of matters, but its powers are restricted and its recommendations are not binding upon UN member states. It consists of fifty-four members elected by the Assembly for three-year terms with staggered elections, and each member has one vote.³⁹ The Council may, by article 62, initiate or make studies upon a range of issues and make recommendations to the General Assembly, the members of the UN and to the relevant specialised agencies. It may prepare draft conventions for submission to the Assembly and call international conferences. The Council has created a variety of subsidiary organs, ranging from nine functional commissions,⁴⁰ to five regional commissions⁴¹ and a number of standing committees and expert bodies.⁴² The Council also runs a variety of programmes including the Environment Programme and the Drug Control Programme, and has established a number of other bodies such as the Office of the UN High Commissioner for Refugees and the UN Conference on Trade and Development. Its most prominent function has been in establishing a wide range of economic, social and human rights bodies.⁴³

³⁶ See e.g. *2001 United Nations Handbook*, Wellington, 2001, pp. 27 ff. There is also an Investments Committee and a Board of Auditors.

³⁷ See above, chapter 6, p. 306.

³⁸ See e.g. *2001 United Nations Handbook*, pp. 83 ff., and Broms, *United Nations*, chapter 11. See also *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 55; W. R. Sharp, *The UN Economic Council*, New York, 1969, and above, chapter 6, p. 302.

³⁹ Article 61 of the Charter. Note that under article 69, any member of the UN may be invited to participate in its deliberations without a vote. See also Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 1581 ff.

⁴⁰ These include the Statistical Commission, the Commission on Human Rights which came to an end in 2006, the Commission on the Status of Women and the Commission on Sustainable Development.

⁴¹ On Africa, Asia and the Pacific, Europe, Latin America and the Caribbean, and Western Asia.

⁴² These include the Commission on Transnational Corporations; the Commission on Human Settlements; the Committee on Natural Resources; the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights and the Committee on New and Renewable Sources of Energy and on Energy for Development.

⁴³ ECOSOC is considering a range of reforms, including holding annual ministerial substantive reviews (AMR) to assess the progress made in the implementation of the outcomes

The Trusteeship Council⁴⁴ was established in order to supervise the trust territories created after the end of the Second World War.⁴⁵ Such territories were to consist of mandated territories, areas detached from enemy states as a result of the Second World War and other territories voluntarily placed under the trusteeship system by the administering authority (of which there have been none).⁴⁶ The only former mandated territory which was not placed under the new system or granted independence was South West Africa.⁴⁷ With the independence of Palau, the last remaining trust territory, on 1 October 1994, the Council suspended operation on 1 November that year.⁴⁸

The Secretariat of the UN⁴⁹ consists of the Secretary-General and his staff, and constitutes virtually an international civil service. The staff are appointed by article 101 upon the basis of efficiency, competence and integrity, 'due regard' being paid 'to the importance of recruiting the staff on as wide a geographical basis as possible'. All member states have undertaken, under article 100, to respect the exclusively international character of the responsibilities of the Secretary-General and his staff,

of major UN conferences and summits and internationally agreed development goals: see General Assembly resolution 61/16, 2006, and ECOSOC resolution E/2007/274, 2007.

⁴⁴ See e.g. Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 1887 ff.; Broms, *United Nations*, chapter 12; Bowett's *International Institutions*, p. 63, and C. E. Toussaint, *The Trusteeship System of the United Nations*, New York, 1956.

⁴⁵ By article 83 of the Charter, the functions of the UN relating to strategic areas were to be exercised by the Security Council (where each permanent member has a veto) rather than, as normal for trust territories, under article 85 by the General Assembly with the assistance of the Trusteeship Council. The last trust territory was the strategic trust territory of the Pacific Islands, administered by the US.

⁴⁶ Article 77 of the Charter. ⁴⁷ See above, chapter 5, p. 225.

⁴⁸ See e.g. *Basic Facts About the United Nations*, E.95.I.3.1 and Press Release ORG/1211/Rev.1. Note that the UN Secretary-General has called for its formal termination, but this would require an amendment of the Charter: see A/49/1. See also C. L. Willson, 'Changing the Charter: The United Nations Prepares for the Twenty-First Century', 90 AJIL, 1996, pp. 115, 121–2.

⁴⁹ See e.g. Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, chapter 4; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 2023 ff.; S. Bailey, 'The United Nations Secretariat' in *The Evolution of International Organisations* (ed. E. Luard), London, 1966, p. 92, and Bailey, *The Secretariat of the UN*, London, 1962; T. Meron, *The UN Secretariat*, Lexington, 1977; S. Schwebel, *The Secretary-General of the United Nations*, Cambridge, MA, 1952, and Schwebel, 'The International Character of the Secretariat of the United Nations' and 'Secretary-General and Secretariat' in *Justice in International Law*, Cambridge, 1994, pp. 248 and 297 respectively; A. W. Rovine, *The First Fifty Years: The Secretary General in World Politics, 1920–1970*, Leiden, 1970, and generally *Public Papers of the Secretaries-General of the United Nations* (eds. A. W. Cordier and W. Foote, and A. W. Cordier and M. Harrelson), New York, 8 vols., 1969–77. See also Simma, *Charter*, pp. 1191 ff., and below, p. 1222.

who are neither to seek nor receive instructions from any other authority but the UN organisation itself.

Under article 97, the Secretary-General is appointed by the General Assembly upon the unanimous recommendation of the Security Council and constitutes the chief administrative officer of the UN. He (or she) must accordingly be a personage acceptable to all the permanent members and this, in the light of effectiveness, is vital. Much depends upon the actual personality and outlook of the particular office holder, and the role played by the Secretary-General in international affairs has tended to vary according to the character of the person concerned. An especially energetic part was performed by Dr Hammerskjöld in the late 1950s and very early 1960s until his untimely death in the Congo,⁵⁰ but since that time a rather lower profile has been maintained by the occupants of that position. The current holder of the office is Ban Ki-Moon of the Republic of Korea.

Apart from various administrative functions,⁵¹ the essence of the Secretary-General's authority is contained in article 99 of the Charter, which empowers him to bring to the attention of the Security Council any matter which he feels may strengthen the maintenance of international peace and security, although this power has not often been used.⁵² In practice, the role of Secretary-General has extended beyond the various provisions of the Charter. In particular, the Secretary-General has an important role in exercising good offices in order to resolve or contain international crises.⁵³ Additionally, the Secretary-General is in an important position to mark or possibly to influence developments. The publication of *An Agenda for Peace*⁵⁴ by Dr Boutros-Ghali and of *In Larger Freedom*⁵⁵ by Kofi Annan, for instance, constituted particularly significant events.

⁵⁰ See e.g. Bailey, 'United Nations Secretariat'.

⁵¹ These include servicing a variety of organs, committees and conferences; co-ordinating the activities of the secretariat, the specialised agencies and other inter-governmental organisations; the preparation of studies and reports and responsibility for the preparation of the annual budget of the UN. Note that the Secretary-General also acts as depositary for a wide range of multinational treaties, and under article 98, submits an annual report on the work of the organisation.

⁵² Article 99 was invoked, for example, in 1950 in the Korean war crisis, in 1960 in the Congo crisis and in 1979 with regard to the Iranian hostage issue: see *Yearbook of the UN*, 1979, pp. 307–12. See also S/13646 and S. Schwebel, 'The Origins and Development of Article 99 of the Charter' in *Justice in International Law*, p. 233.

⁵³ See further below, p. 1222.

⁵⁴ The Report of the Secretary-General Pursuant to the Statement Adopted by the Summit Meeting of the Security Council on 31 January 1992, New York, 1992.

⁵⁵ A/59/2005.

In many disputes, the functions assigned to the Secretary-General by the other organs of the United Nations have enabled him to increase the influence of the organisation.⁵⁶ One remarkable example of this occurred in the Congo crisis of 1960 and the subsequent Council resolution authorising the Secretary-General in very wide-ranging terms to take action.⁵⁷ Another instance of the capacity of the Secretary-General to take action was the decision of 1967 to withdraw the UN peacekeeping force in the Middle East, thus removing an important psychological barrier to war, and provoking a certain amount of criticism.

The sixth principal organ of the UN is the International Court of Justice, established in 1946 as the successor to the Permanent Court of International Justice.⁵⁸

The peaceful settlement of disputes⁵⁹

The League of Nations⁶⁰

The provisions set out in the UN Charter are to a large degree based upon the terms of the Covenant of the League of Nations as amended in the light of experience. Article 12 of the Covenant declared that any dispute likely to lead to a conflict between members was to be dealt with in one of three ways: by arbitration, by judicial settlement or by inquiry by the Council of the League. Article 15 noted that the Council was to try to effect a settlement of the dispute in question, but if that failed, it was to publish a report containing the facts of the case and 'the recommendations which are deemed just and proper in regard thereto'. This report was not, however, binding upon the parties, but if it was a unanimous one the League members were not to go to war 'with any party to the dispute

⁵⁶ Article 98. See also J. Pérez de Cuéllar, 'The Role of the UN Secretary-General' in Roberts and Kingsbury, *United Nations, Divided World*, p. 125.

⁵⁷ See below, p. 1226. ⁵⁸ See above, chapter 19.

⁵⁹ See e.g. M. Raman, *Dispute Settlement through the United Nations*, Oxford, 1977; J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, chapter 10; United Nations, *Handbook on the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes Between States*, New York, 1992; N. Bar-Yaacov, *The Handling of International Disputes by Means of Inquiry*, London, 1974, chapter 8; B. S. Murty, 'Settlement of Disputes' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 673; E. Luard, *A History of the United Nations*, London, 1982, vol. I; Falk and Mendlovitz, *Strategy of World Order*, vol. III; *The United Nations* (eds. R. A. Falk and S. Mendlovitz), New York, 1966; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 1047 ff.; N. D. White, *Keeping the Peace*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 1998.

⁶⁰ See generally, e.g. G. Scott, *The Rise and Fall of the League of Nations*, London, 1973, and Falk and Mendlovitz, *Strategy of World Order*, chapter 1.

which complies with the recommendations of the report'. If the report was merely a majority one, League members reserved to themselves 'the right to take such action as they shall consider necessary for the maintenance of right and justice'. In other words, in the latter case the Covenant did not absolutely prohibit the resort to war by members. Where a member resorted to war in disregard of the Covenant, then the various sanctions prescribed in article 16 might apply, although whether the circumstances in which sanctions might be enforced had actually arisen was a point to be decided by the individual members and not by the League itself. Sanctions were in fact used against Italy in 1935–6, but in a half-hearted manner due to political considerations by the leading states at the time.⁶¹

The United Nations system

The UN system is founded in constitutional terms upon a relatively clear theoretical distinction between the functions of the principal organs of the organisation. However, due to political conditions in the international order, the system failed to operate as outlined in the Charter and adjustments had to be made as opportunities presented themselves. The Security Council was intended to function as the executive of the UN, with the General Assembly as the parliamentary forum. Both organs could contribute to the peaceful settlement of disputes through relatively traditional mechanisms of discussion, good offices and mediation. Only the Security Council could adopt binding decisions and those through the means of Chapter VII, while acting to restore international peace and security. But the pattern of development has proved rather less conducive to clear categorisation. An influential attempt to detail the methods and mechanisms available to the UN in seeking to resolve disputes was made by the UN Secretary-General in the immediate aftermath of the demise of the Soviet Union and the unmistakable ending of the Cold War.

In *An Agenda for Peace*,⁶² the Secretary-General, while emphasising that respect for the fundamental sovereignty and integrity of states constituted the foundation-stone of the organisation,⁶³ noted the rapid changes affecting both states individually and the international community as a

⁶¹ See e.g. Scott, *Rise and Fall*, chapter 15.

⁶² This was welcomed by the General Assembly in resolution 47/120. See also the Report of the Secretary-General on the Implementation of the Recommendations in the 1992 Report, A/47/965.

⁶³ *Ibid.*, p. 9.

whole and emphasised the role of the UN in securing peace. The Report sought to categorise the types of actions that the organisation was undertaking or could undertake. *Preventive Diplomacy* was action to prevent disputes from arising between states, to prevent existing disputes from escalating into conflicts and to limit the spread of the latter when they occur. This included efforts such as fact-finding, good offices and goodwill missions.⁶⁴ *Peacemaking* involves action to bring the hostile parties to agreement, utilising the peaceful means elaborated in Chapter VI of the Charter.⁶⁵ *Peacekeeping* is the deployment of a UN presence in the field.⁶⁶ *Peacebuilding* is action to identify and support structures that will assist peace.⁶⁷ *Peace Enforcement* is peacekeeping not involving the consent of the parties, which would rest upon the enforcement provisions of Chapter VII of the Charter.⁶⁸

The attack on the World Trade Center on 11 September 2001 'dramatised the global threat of terrorism', while focusing attention upon 'reconstructing weak or collapsed states'.⁶⁹ The Secretary-General has also emphasised the need to replace the culture of reaction by one of prevention and by developing *inter alia* a thirty to ninety-day deployment capability.⁷⁰

The Security Council

The primary objective of the United Nations as stipulated in article 1 of the Charter is the maintenance of international peace and security and disputes likely to endanger this are required under article 33 to be solved 'by negotiation, inquiry, mediation, conciliation, arbitration, judicial settlement, resort to regional agencies or arrangements or other peaceful means'. Indeed, the Charter declares as one of its purposes in article 1, 'to

⁶⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 13 ff. ⁶⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 20 ff. ⁶⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 28 ff.

⁶⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 32 ff. See the establishment of the Peacebuilding Commission in 2006, General Assembly resolution 60/180 and Security Council resolution 1645 (2005), intended to bring together all relevant actors, to marshal and sustain resources and advise on the proposed integrated strategies for post-conflict peacebuilding and recovery. See the Report of the Commission on its first session, A/62/137-S/2007/458, 25 July 2007, and Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, chapter 9.

⁶⁸ See Report of the Secretary-General on the Work of the Organisation, New York, 1993, p. 96.

⁶⁹ See Report of the Secretary-General on the Work of the Organisation, A/57/1, 2002, p. 1. See also the Secretary-General's *Agenda for Further Change*, A/57/387, 9 September 2002.

⁷⁰ See the *Road Map Towards Implementation of the United Nations Millennium Declaration*, A/56/326, 6 September 2001. The Millennium Report may be found at www.un.org/millennium/sg/report/.

bring about by peaceful means and in conformity with the principles of justice and international law, adjustment or settlement of international disputes or situations which might lead to a breach of the peace'. By article 24,⁷¹ the members of the UN conferred on the Security Council primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security, and by article 25⁷² agreed to accept and carry out the decisions of the Security Council. The International Court in the *Namibia* case⁷³ drew attention to the fact that the provision in article 25 was not limited to enforcement actions under Chapter VII of the Charter but applied to "decisions of the Security Council" adopted in accordance with the Charter'. Accordingly a declaration of the Council taken under article 24 in the exercise of its primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security could constitute a decision under article 25 so that member states 'would be expected to act in consequence of the declaration made on their behalf'.⁷⁴ Whether a particular resolution adopted under article 24 actually constituted a decision binding all member states (and outside the collective security framework of Chapter VII)⁷⁵ was a matter for analysis in each particular case, 'having regard to the terms of the resolution to be interpreted, the discussions leading to it, the Charter provisions invoked and, in general, all circumstances that might assist in determining the legal consequences of the resolution of the Security Council'.⁷⁶ Under the Charter, the role of the Security Council when dealing with the pacific settlement of disputes specifically under Chapter VI differs from when the Council is contemplating action relating to threats to or breaches of the peace, or acts of aggression under Chapter VII. In the former instance there is no power as such to make binding decisions with regard to member states.

In pursuance of its primary responsibility, the Security Council may, by article 34, 'investigate any dispute, or any situation which might lead to

⁷¹ See e.g. Simma, *Charter*, pp. 442 ff. ⁷² *Ibid.*, pp. 452 ff.

⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 52–3; 49 ILR, pp. 1, 42–3.

⁷⁴ This approach is controversial and has not, for example, been accepted by Western states: see e.g. Simma, *Charter*, p. 457. See also R. Higgins, 'The Advisory Opinion on Namibia. Which UN Resolutions are Binding under Article 25 of the Charter?', 21 ICLQ, 1972, p. 270.

⁷⁵ See below, p. 1235.

⁷⁶ ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 53; 49 ILR, p. 43. The question as to whether relevant Security Council resolutions on East Timor could be regarded as binding was raised in the *East Timor* case, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 90, 103; 105 ILR, p. 226, but the Court concluded that the resolutions cited did not go so far as to impose obligations. But cf. the Dissenting Opinion by Judge Weeramantry, ICJ Reports, 1995, pp. 205–8.

international friction or give rise to dispute, in order to determine whether the continuance of the dispute or situation is likely to endanger the maintenance of international peace and security'. In addition to this power of investigation, the Security Council can, where it deems necessary, call upon the parties to settle their dispute by the means elaborated in article 33.⁷⁷ The Council may intervene if it wishes at any stage of a dispute or situation, the continuance of which is likely to endanger international peace and security, and under article 36(1) recommend appropriate procedures or methods of adjustment. But in making such recommendations, which are not binding, it must take into consideration the general principle that legal disputes should be referred by the parties to the International Court of Justice.⁷⁸ Where the parties to a dispute cannot resolve it by the various methods mentioned in article 33, they should refer it to the Security Council by article 37. The Council, where it is convinced that the continuance of the dispute is likely to endanger international peace and security, may recommend not only procedures and adjustment methods, but also such terms of settlement as it may consider appropriate.

Once the Council, however, has determined the existence of a threat to, or a breach of, the peace or act of aggression, it may make decisions which are binding upon member states of the UN under Chapter VII, but until that point it can under Chapter VI issue recommendations only.⁷⁹ Under article 35(1) any UN member state may bring a dispute or a situation which might lead to international friction or give rise to a dispute before the Council, while a non-member state may bring to the attention of the Council any dispute under article 35(2) provided it is a party to the dispute in question and 'accepts in advance, for the purposes of the dispute, the obligations of pacific settlement provided in the present Charter'.

⁷⁷ Note that under article 38, the Security Council may make recommendations to the parties with regard to the peaceful settlement of disputes generally if all the parties to the dispute so request.

⁷⁸ For example, when the Security Council recommended that the UK and Albania should take their case regarding the *Corfu Channel* incident to the International Court: see Security Council resolution 22 (1947) and SCOR, 2nd yr, 127th meeting, 9 April 1947, p. 727. See also Luard, *History*, pp. 209–12. However, this example proved to be exceptional. See also Security Council resolution 395 (1976) calling for negotiations between Turkey and Greece over the Aegean Sea continental shelf dispute and inviting the parties to refer the question to the International Court.

⁷⁹ However, note that under article 37(2) if the Council deems that a continuance of a dispute is likely to endanger international peace and security, it 'shall decide whether to take action under article 36 [i.e. recommend appropriate procedures or methods of adjustment] or to recommend such terms of settlement as it may consider appropriate'.

It is also possible for third parties to bring disputes to the attention of the Council.⁸⁰

In practice, the Security Council has applied all the diplomatic techniques available in various international disputes. This is in addition to open debates and the behind-the-scenes discussions and lobbying that take place. On numerous occasions it has called upon the parties to a dispute to negotiate a settlement and has requested that it be kept informed. The Council offered its good offices in the late 1940s with regard to the Dutch–Indonesian dispute⁸¹ and has had recourse to mediation attempts in many other conflicts, for example with regard to the Kashmir⁸² and Cyprus⁸³ questions.⁸⁴ However, the cases where the Council has recommended procedures or methods of adjustment under article 36 have been comparatively rare. Only in the *Corfu Channel* and *Aegean Sea* disputes did the Council recommend the parties to turn to the International Court. Probably the most famous Security Council resolution recommending a set of principles to be taken into account in resolving a particular dispute is resolution 242 (1967) dealing with the Middle East. This resolution pointed to two basic principles to be applied in establishing a just and lasting peace in the Middle East: first, Israeli withdrawal ‘from territories occupied in the recent conflict’ (i.e. the Six Day War) and, secondly, the termination of all claims of belligerency and acknowledgement of the right of every state in the area to live in peace within secure and recognised frontiers.⁸⁵

The General Assembly⁸⁶

Although the primary responsibility with regard to the maintenance of international peace and security lies with the Security Council, the

⁸⁰ See the succeeding sections as to the General Assembly and the Secretary-General.

⁸¹ See e.g. Luard, *History*, chapter 9, and S/1156. See also S/514 and S/1234, and Murty, ‘Settlement’, p. 721.

⁸² Murty, ‘Settlement’, p. 721. See also Luard, *History*, chapter 14.

⁸³ See e.g. Murty, ‘Settlement’, p. 721. See also T. Ehrlich, *Cyprus 1958–1967*, Oxford, 1974.

⁸⁴ Note also the appointment of Count Bernadotte and Dr Jarring as UN mediators in the Middle East in 1948 and 1967 respectively. See Luard, *History*, chapters 10 and 11, and *The Arab–Israeli Conflict* (ed. J. N. Moore), Princeton, 3 vols., 1974.

⁸⁵ Various other points were referred to in resolution 242, including the need to guarantee freedom of navigation through international waterways in the area, achieve a just settlement of the refugee problem and reinforce the territorial inviolability of every state in the area through measures such as the use of demilitarised zones. Resolution 242 (1967) was reaffirmed in Security Council resolution 338 (1973).

⁸⁶ See e.g. White, *Keeping the Peace*, part II, and M. J. Peterson, *The General Assembly in World Politics*, Boston, 1986.

General Assembly may discuss any question or matter within the scope of the Charter, including the maintenance of international peace and security, and may make recommendations to the members of the UN or the Security Council,⁸⁷ provided the Council is not itself dealing with the same matter.⁸⁸ Under similar conditions, the Assembly may under article 14 'recommend measures for the peaceful adjustment of any situation regardless of origin, which it deems likely to impair the general welfare or friendly relations among nations'. In the *Construction of a Wall* case,⁸⁹ the International Court emphasised that under article 24 the Security Council had a primary and not necessarily an exclusive competence with regard to the maintenance of international peace and security, while the constraint placed by article 12 on the powers of the Assembly to make recommendations for the peaceful adjustment of situations had been interpreted by evolving practice to permit both the Assembly and the Council to deal in parallel with the same matter concerning the maintenance of international peace and security, with the former often taking a broader view.⁹⁰

In practice, the resolutions and declarations of the General Assembly (which are not binding) have covered a very wide field, from colonial disputes to alleged violations of human rights and the need for justice in international economic affairs. The role of the General Assembly increased after 1945 due to two factors: first, the existence of the veto in the Security Council rendered that organ powerless in many important disputes since the permanent members (USA, UK, USSR (now Russia), France and China) rarely agreed with respect to any particular conflict; and secondly, the vast increase in the membership of the UN had the effect of radicalising the Assembly and its deliberations. More recently the increased role of the Security Council has overshadowed that of the Assembly.

The Secretary-General⁹¹

Just as the impotence of the Security Council stimulated a growing awareness of the potentialities of the General Assembly, it similarly underlined

⁸⁷ Articles 10 and 11 of the Charter. ⁸⁸ Article 12.

⁸⁹ ICJ Reports, 2004, pp. 136, 148–9; 129 ILR, pp. 37, 66.

⁹⁰ As to the right of the Assembly to deal with a threat to or breach of the peace or act of aggression if the Security Council fails to act because of the exercise of the veto by a permanent member, see resolution 377(V), the 'Uniting for Peace' resolution, below, p. 1272.

⁹¹ See e.g. Rovine, *First Fifty Years*, and Cordier *et al.*, *Public Papers*.

the role to be played by the United Nations Secretary-General. By article 99 of the Charter, he is entitled to bring to the attention of the Security Council any matter which he thinks may threaten the maintenance of international peace and security and this power is in addition to his function as the chief administrative officer of the United Nations organisation under article 79.⁹² In effect, the Secretary-General has considerable discretion and much has depended upon the views and outlook of the person filling the post at any given time, as well as the general political situation.

The good offices role of the Secretary-General has rapidly expanded.⁹³ In exercising such a role, Secretaries-General have sought to act independently of the Security Council and General Assembly, in the former case, in so far as they have not been constrained by binding resolutions (as for example in the Kuwait situation of 1990–1). The assumption of good offices and mediation activity may arise either because of independent action by the Secretary-General as part of the exercise of his inherent powers⁹⁴ or as a consequence of a request made by the Security Council⁹⁵ or General Assembly.⁹⁶ In some cases, the Secretary-General has acted upon the invitation of the parties themselves,⁹⁷ and on other occasions, the Secretary-General has acted in concert with the relevant regional

⁹² Under article 98, the Secretary-General also performs such other functions as are entrusted to him by the General Assembly, Security Council, Economic and Social Council and the Trusteeship Council.

⁹³ See e.g. T. M. Franck, *Fairness in International Law and Institutions*, Oxford, 1995, chapter 6; Pérez de Cuéllar, 'Role of the UN Secretary-General', p. 125, and T. M. Franck and G. Nolte, 'The Good Offices Function of the UN Secretary-General' in Roberts and Kingsbury, *United Nations, Divided World*, p. 143.

⁹⁴ See e.g. with regard to Abkhazia, Franck, *Fairness*, p. 207, and Central America, *ibid*.

⁹⁵ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 242 (1967) regarding the Middle East; 367 (1975) regarding Cyprus; 384 (1975) regarding East Timor; 435 (1978) regarding Namibia and 713 (1991) regarding Yugoslavia.

⁹⁶ See e.g. with regard to Afghanistan, General Assembly resolution ES-6/2, 1980, and *The Geneva Accords* published by the United Nations, 1988, DPI/935-40420. As to Cambodia, see Franck, *Fairness*, p. 184.

⁹⁷ See e.g. the General Peace Agreement of Rome between the Mozambique government and RENAMO rebels in 1992, which called upon the UN to monitor its implementation. The President of Mozambique called upon the Secretary-General to chair the key implementation commissions and assist in other ways including the dispatch of monitors: see Report of the Secretary-General, S/24635, 1992, and Franck, *Fairness*, p. 188. Note that in his Report on the Work of the Organisation, A/57/1, 2002, the Secretary-General noted that he had used his good offices to facilitate national reconciliation and democratisation in Myanmar (at p. 5), while stating that if requested he 'would positively consider the use of my good offices' in seeking a peaceful solution in Nepal (at p. 4).

organisation.⁹⁸ In many cases, the Secretary-General will appoint a Special Representative to assist in seeking a solution to the particular problem.⁹⁹

The development of good offices and mediation activities first arose as a consequence of the severe restrictions imposed upon UN operations by the Cold War. The cessation of the Cold War led to greatly increased activity by the UN and as a consequence the work of the Secretary-General expanded as he sought to bring to fruition the wide range of initiatives undertaken by the organisation. The experiences of Somalia, Rwanda and Bosnia in the mid-1990s and Iraq from 1991 to the 2003 war have been disappointing for the organisation.

Peacekeeping and observer missions¹⁰⁰

There is no explicit legal basis for peacekeeping activities in the UN Charter. They arose in the absence of the contribution of armed forces and facilities to the UN as detailed in article 43. Accordingly, a series of arrangements and operations have evolved since the inception of the organisation, which taken together have established a clear pattern of acceptable reaction by the UN in particular crisis situations. The broad bases for such activities lie in the general provisions in the Charter governing the powers of the Security Council and General Assembly. The Security Council, for example, may establish such subsidiary organs as it deems necessary for the performance of its functions (article 29) and those functions are laid down in articles 34 (powers of investigation); 36, 37 and 38 (powers to recommend appropriate procedures or methods of dispute settlement); and 39 (powers of recommendation or decision in order to maintain or restore international peace and security). The Security Council may, in particular under article 42, take such action by land, sea or air forces as may be necessary to maintain or restore international peace

⁹⁸ See e.g. with regard to the Secretary-General of the Organisation of American States concerning the Central American peace process from the mid-1980s, Report of the UN Secretary-General, A/42/127-S/18688, 1987.

⁹⁹ See, for the full list, www.un.org/Depts/dpko/SRSG/index.htm.

¹⁰⁰ See e.g. R. Murphy, *UN Peacekeeping in Lebanon, Somalia and Kosovo*, Cambridge, 2007; United Nations, *United Nations Peacekeeping Operations: Principles and Guidelines*, New York, 2008, and UN, *The Blue Helmets: A Review of United Nations Peacekeeping*, 2nd edn, New York, 1990; D. W. Bowett, *UN Forces*, London, 1964; *The Evolution of UN Peacekeeping* (ed. W. J. Durch), London, 1994; White, *Keeping the Peace*; R. Higgins, *United Nations Peacekeeping*, Oxford, 4 vols., 1969–81; S. Morphet, 'UN Peacekeeping and Election Monitoring' in Roberts and Kingsbury, *United Nations, Divided World*, p. 183; A. James, *Peacekeeping in International Politics*, London, 1990, and Simma, *Charter*, pp. 648 ff.

and security. This is the basis for action explicitly taken under Chapter VII of the Charter.¹⁰¹

However, the majority of peacekeeping activities have not been so authorised and it is unlikely that article 42 can be seen as the legal basis for all such activities. The Security Council can entrust functions to the Secretary-General under article 98 and this mechanism has proved significant in practice. The General Assembly has wide powers under articles 10 and 11 to discuss and make recommendations on matters within the scope of the UN Charter, including recommendations concerning the maintenance of international peace and security.¹⁰² Under article 14, the Assembly may recommend measures for the peaceful adjustment of any situation regardless of origin which it deems likely to impair the general welfare or friendly relations among nations. It can, however, take no binding decision in such matters.¹⁰³ The Assembly may also establish such subsidiary organs as it deems necessary for the performance of its functions (article 22) and entrust functions to the Secretary-General (article 98). It is because such operations fall somewhat between Chapter VI (peaceful settlement) and Chapter VII (enforcement) of the Charter, that the term 'Chapter Six and a Half' has been used.¹⁰⁴

Essentially peacekeeping involves the deployment of armed forces under UN control to contain and resolve military conflicts. Although originally intended to deal with inter-state conflicts, more recently peacekeeping forces have been used with respect to civil wars and other intra-state conflicts. Again, primarily military deployments have expanded to include civilian personnel as more and more civil functions have been entrusted to such forces. There have been sixty-three peacekeeping missions to date and there are currently seventeen in operation.¹⁰⁵ Peacekeeping and observer missions operate upon a continuum of UN activities and it is helpful to consider these operations together. Indeed, that continuum has in recent years been extended to incorporate elements of enforcement action.¹⁰⁶

¹⁰¹ The power of the Security Council to resort to force under article 42 is dealt with below, p. 1251.

¹⁰² However, under article 11(2), where action is necessary on any question relating to the maintenance of international peace and security, the matter must be referred to the Security Council.

¹⁰³ See further below, p. 1271.

¹⁰⁴ See e.g. T. Franck, *Recourse to Force*, Cambridge, 2002, p. 39. It seems to have been first used by Secretary-General Hammarskjöld: see www.un.org/Depts/dpko/dpko/index.asp.

¹⁰⁵ See www.un.org/Depts/dpko/dpko/index.asp (April 2008).

¹⁰⁶ See below, p. 1257.

The origin of peacekeeping by the UN may be traced to truce supervision activities. The first such activity occurred in Greece, where the UN Special Committee on the Balkans (UNSCOB) was created in 1947.¹⁰⁷ The UN Truce Supervision Organisation (UNTSO) was established in 1948 to supervise the truce in the 1948 Middle East War.¹⁰⁸ Peacekeeping¹⁰⁹ as such arose as a direct consequence of the problems facing the Security Council during the Cold War. The first peacekeeping activity took place in 1956 as a result of the Suez crisis. The UN Emergency Force (UNEF) was established by the General Assembly¹¹⁰ to position itself between the hostile forces and to supervise the withdrawal of British and French forces from the Suez Canal and Israeli forces from the Sinai peninsula. It was then deployed along the armistice line until May 1967. The second crucial peacekeeping operation took place in the Congo crisis of 1960, which erupted soon after Belgium granted independence to the colony and resulted in mutinies, insurrections and much confused fighting. The Security Council adopted a resolution permitting the Secretary-General to provide military assistance to the Congo government.¹¹¹ This was

¹⁰⁷ See General Assembly resolution 109. The operation lasted until 1954. See also K. Birgisson, 'United Nations Special Committee on the Balkans' in Dürch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 5.

¹⁰⁸ See Security Council resolution 50 (1948), and M. Ghali, 'The United Nations Truce Supervision Organisation' in Dürch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 6. It has expanded to supervise the armistice agreements of 1949 and ceasefire arrangements of June 1967. See also the UN Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan (UNMOGIP) established by Security Council resolution 47 (1948) to supervise the ceasefire in Jammu and Kashmir: see K. Birgisson, 'United Nations Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan' in Dürch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 16.

¹⁰⁹ This has been defined by the Secretary-General as 'the deployment of a United Nations presence in the field, hitherto with the consent of all the parties concerned, normally involving United Nations military and/or police personnel and frequently civilians as well'; *An Agenda for Peace*, p. 11. Another definition was put forward by a former UN Legal Counsel, who noted that peacekeeping operations were 'actions involving the use of military personnel in international conflict situations on the basis of the consent of all parties concerned and without resorting to armed force except in cases of self-defence', E. Suy, 'Peacekeeping Operations' in *A Handbook on International Organisations* (ed. R. J. Dupuy), Dordrecht, 1988, p. 379.

¹¹⁰ See General Assembly resolutions 997, 998 and 1000 (ES-1). The Security Council was unable to act as two permanent members (the UK and France) were directly involved in the crisis and had vetoed draft resolutions. See e.g. M. Ghali, 'United Nations Emergency Force I' in Dürch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 7.

¹¹¹ S/4387, 14 July 1960. By resolution S/4405, 22 July 1960, the Council requested all states to refrain from action which might impede the restoration of law and order or undermine the territorial integrity and political independence of the Congo. By resolution S/4426, 9 August 1960, the Council confirmed the authority given to the

interpreted by Dr Hammarskjöld, the Secretary-General, as a mandate to set up a peacekeeping force on an analogy with UNEF. The exercise of the veto in the Council left the Secretary-General with little guidance as to how to proceed in the situation. Accordingly, he performed many of the tasks that had in 1956 been undertaken by the General Assembly with respect to the Middle East.¹¹² The development of the Congo crisis from mutiny to civil war meant that the United Nations force (ONUC) was faced with many difficult decisions and these had in the main to be taken by the Secretary-General. The role that could be played by the Secretary-General was emphasised in the succeeding crises in Cyprus (1964)¹¹³ and the Middle East (1973)¹¹⁴ and in the consequent establishment of United Nations peacekeeping forces for these areas under the general guidance of the Secretary-General.

The creation of traditional peacekeeping forces, whether in the Middle East in 1967 and again in 1973, in the Congo in 1960 or in Cyprus in 1964, was important in that such forces tended to stabilise particular situations for a certain time. Such United Nations forces are not intended to take enforcement action, but to act as an influence for calm by physically separating warring factions. They are dependent upon the consent of the state upon whose territory they are stationed and can in no way prevent a determined aggression. The various United Nations peacekeeping operations have met with some limited success in temporarily preventing

Secretary-General by earlier resolutions and called on member states to carry out the decisions of the Security Council. See e.g. G. Abi-Saab, *The United Nations Operation in the Congo 1960–1964*, Oxford, 1978; C. Hoskyns, *The Congo Since Independence*, Oxford, 1965; L. Miller, 'Legal Aspects of UN Action in the Congo', 55 AJIL, 1961, p. 1, and W. J. Durch, 'The UN Operation in the Congo' in Durch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 19.

¹¹² See Abi-Saab, *Congo*, pp. 15 ff.

¹¹³ See Security Council resolution 186 (1964). See also Ehrlich, *Cyprus 1958–1967*, J. A. Stegenger, *The United Nations Force in Cyprus*, Columbus, 1968, and K. Birgisson, 'United Nations Peacekeeping Forces in Cyprus' in Durch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 13. The force is known as the UN Force in Cyprus (UNICYP).

¹¹⁴ The Security Council established the UN Emergency Force (UNEF II) to monitor the Israeli–Egyptian disengagement process in 1973: see resolution 340 (1973), and a Disengagement Observer Force with respect to the Israel–Syria disengagement process: see resolution 350 (1974). See generally Pogany, *Arab–Israeli Conflict*, and M. Ghali, 'United Nations Emergency Force II' in Durch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 8. Note also the creation of the UN Interim Force in the Lebanon (UNIFIL) established by the Council in resolution 425 (1978) after Israel's incursion into the Lebanon in 1978: see e.g. M. Ghali, 'United Nations Interim Force in Lebanon' in Durch, *The Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 10.

major disturbances, but they failed to prevent the 1967 Arab–Israeli war¹¹⁵ and the 1974 Turkish invasion of Cyprus.¹¹⁶ One has to be careful not to overestimate their significance in difficult political situations. In addition to the consent of the host state, such forces also require the continuing support of the Security Council and if that is lost or not provided such forces cannot operate.¹¹⁷ Just as crucial as these factors is the provision of sufficient resources by the UN and its member states in order to fulfil the agreed mandate. Events in Bosnia, for example, demonstrated how the absence of adequate resources impacted severely upon operations.

Nevertheless, peacekeeping and observer operations do have a role to play, particularly as a way of ensuring that conflict situations in the process of being resolved do not flare up as a result of misunderstandings or miscalculations. Some recent UN operations in this area demonstrate this.¹¹⁸ The UN Good Offices Mission in Afghanistan and Pakistan was established in the context of the Geneva Accords of 14 April 1988 dealing with the withdrawal of Soviet forces from Afghanistan,¹¹⁹ while the UN Iran–Iraq Military Observer Group was created the same year following the acceptance by the belligerent states of Security Council resolution 598 (1987) calling for a ceasefire.¹²⁰ In 1989, in the context of the resolution of the Namibian problem, the UN Angola Verification Mission (UNAVEM I) commenced operation in order to verify the withdrawal of Cuban forces

¹¹⁵ In fact the hasty withdrawal of the UNEF in May 1967 by the Secretary-General following an Egyptian request did much to precipitate the conflict. See generally Special Report of the Secretary-General on Removal of UNEF from Egyptian territory, A/6669, 1967, and T. M. Franck, *Nation Against Nation*, Oxford, 1985.

¹¹⁶ See e.g. Security Council resolution 359 (1974) criticising the Turkish invasion.

¹¹⁷ The Israel–Egypt Peace Treaty of 1979 envisaged the deployment of a UN force such as UNEF to supervise the limited forces zones established by the parties but, due to Soviet action, the mandate of UNEF II expired in July 1979: see e.g. M. Akehurst, 'The Peace Treaty Between Egypt and Israel', 7 *International Relations*, 1981, pp. 1035, 1046, and M. N. Shaw, 'The Egyptian–Israeli Peace Treaty, 1979', 2 *Jewish Law Annual*, 1980, pp. 180, 185. As a result, a special Multinational Force and Observers unit was established by the parties and the United States, independently of the UN: see 20 *ILM*, 1981, pp. 1190 ff. See also M. Tabor, *The Multinational Force and Observers in the Sinai*, Boulder, 1986, and James, *Peacekeeping*, pp. 122 ff.

¹¹⁸ See generally White, *Keeping the Peace*.

¹¹⁹ See S/19836 and Security Council resolution 622 (1988). This activity continued until 1990: see Morphet, 'UN Peacekeeping', p. 213. See also K. Birgisson, 'United Nations Good Offices Mission in Afghanistan and Pakistan' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 18.

¹²⁰ This was to monitor the ceasefire and lasted until February 1991: see e.g. Morphet, 'UN Peacekeeping', p. 213, and B. Smith, 'United Nations Iran–Iraq Military Observer Group' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 14.

from Angola,¹²¹ while the UN Transition Assistance Group (UNTAG), although originally established in 1978 in Security Council resolution 435 (1978), commenced operations with the Namibian independence process on 1 April 1989.¹²² Efforts to hold a referendum in Western Sahara are being assisted by the UN Mission for the Referendum in Western Sahara (MINURSO),¹²³ while the UN Iraq–Kuwait Observer Mission (UNIKOM) was set up to monitor the demilitarised zone between these two states following the Gulf War.¹²⁴

Further examples of crucial and complex peacekeeping and/or observer activities include observing Eritrea's plebiscite on secession from Ethiopia¹²⁵ and South Africa's elections in 1994,¹²⁶ supervising the demilitarisation of Eastern Slavonia, Baranja and Western Sirmium (Croatia) and *inter alia* overseeing the return of refugees, training a police force,

¹²¹ Security Council resolution 626 (1988). This was completed in 1991. The Security Council then established UNAVEM II to monitor the implementation of the peace accords between the Angolan government and the UNITA rebels: see Security Council resolution 696 (1991), and V. P. Fortna, 'United Nations Angola Verification Mission I' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 21, and Fortna, 'United Nations Angola Verification Mission II' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 22. This ended in February 1995.

¹²² Security Council resolution 632 (1989). UNTAG monitored the withdrawal of South African troops, confined SWAPO forces to their bases in Angola and Zaire and assisted in the election process. The operation ended in March 1990. See V. P. Fortna, 'United Nations Transition Assistance Group in Namibia' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 20. In 1992, the UN Operation in Mozambique (ONUMOZ) was established in order to monitor the peace agreement between the Government and RENAMO rebels: see Security Council resolution 797 (1992). The mission ended in December 1994. See also the UN Observer Group for the Verification of Elections in Nicaragua (ONUVEN) sent to monitor elections in that country following the 1987 Esquipulas Agreement. This was the first electoral observer mission to monitor elections in an independent state: see Security Council 637 (1989). See also Morphet, 'UN Peacekeeping', pp. 216 ff., and Franck, *Fairness*, pp. 105 ff.

¹²³ See e.g. Security Council resolution 690 (1991) and W. J. Dorch, 'United Nations Mission for the Referendum in Western Sahara' in Dorch, *Evolution of UN Peacekeeping*, chapter 23. See also the UN Observer Mission in El Salvador established to verify that the government and rebels in the El Salvador civil war complied with the 1990 peace accord, including human rights provisions: see resolution 693 (1991).

¹²⁴ See Security Council resolution 689 (1991). See also the UN Advance Mission in Cambodia (UNAMIC) established pursuant to peace efforts in the civil war in that country and which was followed by the UN Transitional Authority in Cambodia (UNTAC), which exercised governmental functions in that state: see resolutions 717 (1991) and 745 (1992). See further above, chapter 5, p. 231.

¹²⁵ See General Assembly resolution 47/114, 1992, and A/47/544.

¹²⁶ See Security Council resolution 894 (1994). Over 1,800 electoral observers were sent: see Franck, *Fairness*, p. 107.

organising elections and facilitating the removal of mines from the area,¹²⁷ monitoring the demilitarisation of the Prevlaka Peninsula in Croatia,¹²⁸ assisting the Haitian government in the professionalisation of the police and maintaining a secure environment.¹²⁹

The UN Mission in Ethiopia and Eritrea is a more traditional operation, aimed at overseeing a ceasefire between the two states and assisting them in delimiting and demarcating the boundary.¹³⁰ The UN Observer Mission in Georgia has since 1993 been trying to resolve the Abkhazia conflict in Georgia. Its mandate has been expanded and extended since that time.¹³¹ The UN played an extensive role in the move to Timor–Leste independence. The establishment of the UN Mission in East Timor in 1999 provided a mandate to oversee a transition period pending implementation of the decision of the people of that territory under Indonesian occupation as to their future. After the elections and the vote for independence, pro-Indonesian militias commenced a campaign of violence and, after an agreement with Indonesia, the UN adopted resolution 1264 (1999) establishing a multinational force under Australian command to restore peace and security. The UN Transitional Administration in East Timor was established by resolution 1272 (1999) with powers to administer the territory until independence. At the time of the independence of the territory of Timor–Leste in May 2002, the UN Mission of Support in East Timor was established to replace UNTAET.¹³² A more traditional peacekeeping deployment was that in August 2006 in Lebanon, facilitating

¹²⁷ The UN Transitional Administration for Eastern Slavonia, Baranja and Western Sirmium (UNTAES): see Security Council resolution 1037 (1996). This mission had both a military and a civilian component.

¹²⁸ The UN Mission of Observers in Prevlaka (UNMOP), Security Council resolution 1038 (1996).

¹²⁹ The UN Support Mission in Haiti (UNSMIH): see Security Council resolution 1063 (1996). In June 1996, this mission succeeded the UN Mission in Haiti (UNMIH) created by resolution 867 (1993) to assist the military and police forces in that state. However, it was prevented from deploying. In resolution 940 (1994), the Security Council authorised the creation of a Multi-National Force (MNF): see below, p. 1239, and extended the mandate and scope of UNMIH. After the restoration of the ousted President and the subsequent holding of elections, UNMIH took over responsibility from the MNF (March 1995).

¹³⁰ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 1312 (2000), 1320 (2000) and 1640 (2005). This mandate has been regularly renewed: see most recently resolution 1798 (2008).

¹³¹ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 849 (1993), 881 (1993), 1077 (1996), 1364 (2001), 1393 (2002), 1427 (2002), 1462 (2003) and 1494 (2003).

¹³² See resolution 1410 (2002). See also, with regard to the UN administration of East Timor, above, chapter 5, p. 232. See as to the establishment by the Security Council of a joint UN–African Union force in Darfur in 2007, below, p. 1280.

the withdrawal of Israeli forces and permitting the return of the Lebanese army to southern Lebanon following a period of Hizbollah control in that area.¹³³

The legal framework for the actual conduct of peacekeeping and observer activities reflects their status as UN organs, so that they are, for example, subject to the law governing the UN organisations as a whole, such as that concerning the privileges and immunities of UN personnel¹³⁴ and responsibility.¹³⁵ The UN would be liable for breaches of law committed by members of peacekeeping and observer forces and groups and would, on the other hand, be able to claim compensation for damage and injuries caused to its personnel. Where forces are stationed on the territory of a state, the usual practice is for formal agreements to be entered into between that state and the UN concerning, for example, facilities, logistics, privileges and immunities of persons and property, and dispute settlement procedures. In 1990, the Secretary-General produced a Model Status of Forces Agreement for Peacekeeping Operations,¹³⁶ which covers such matters. It notes, for instance, that the peacekeeping operation and its members are to respect all local laws and regulations, while the government in question undertakes to respect the exclusively international nature of the operation. Jurisdictional and military discipline issues are also dealt with. The UN has also adopted the Convention on the Safety of United Nations and Associated Personnel, 1994 in order to deal with the situation where the UN operation is not an enforcement operation authorised under Chapter VII of the Charter, in combat with local forces and operating under the laws of armed conflict.

The Convention lays down that the UN and the host state should conclude as soon as possible an agreement on the status of the UN operation and all personnel engaged in the operation, including privileges and immunities issues (article 4), and stipulates that the UN and its personnel shall respect local laws and regulations and refrain from any action or activity incompatible with the impartial and international nature of their duties (article 6). The Convention provides that the intentional commission of activities such as the murder or kidnapping of UN or associated personnel, attacks on official premises or private accommodation or means of transportation, are to be made criminal offences under

¹³³ See resolution 1701 (2006).

¹³⁴ See in particular the General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations, 1946.

¹³⁵ See also Simma, *Charter*, pp. 694 ff. ¹³⁶ A/45/594.

national law (article 9), while states parties must take such measures as are necessary to establish jurisdiction in such cases when the crime is committed within their territory (or on board a ship or aircraft registered in that state) or when the alleged offender is a national (article 10). In addition, states parties may establish jurisdiction when the crime has been committed by a stateless person whose habitual residence is in the state concerned or with regard to a national of that state or in an attempt to compel that state to do or abstain from doing any act (article 10).¹³⁷

The question as to whether UN forces are subject to the laws of armed conflict or international humanitarian law¹³⁸ has proved controversial. Since the UN is bound by general international law, it is also bound by the customary rules concerning armed conflict,¹³⁹ although not by the rules contained only in treaties to which the UN is not a party. Can the United Nations in its various operations involving military personnel in either an enforcement or peacekeeping capacity within states be regarded as subject to international humanitarian law? The problem has arisen in the light of whether such UN activities may be properly classified as 'armed conflicts'.¹⁴⁰ The question of the application of international humanitarian law to operations has been a matter of some concern and a model agreement was put forward in 1991. While the issue proved little of a problem with regard to UN enforcement actions, where it has long been accepted that the rules of humanitarian law applied,¹⁴¹ although there may be a countervailing pressure since article 2(2) of the Convention on the Safety of United Nations Personnel provides that the Convention will not apply to a UN enforcement operation 'to which the law of international armed conflict applies', difficulties have arisen where the UN has become involved in operations of a mixed peacekeeping/enforcement character. However, the Model Agreement prepared by the Secretary-General in May 1991 specified that 'United Nations peacekeeping operations shall observe and respect the principles and spirit of the general international conventions applicable to the conduct of military

¹³⁷ The Convention also deals with extradition (articles 13–15) and the fair treatment of alleged offenders (article 17).

¹³⁸ See above, chapter 21.

¹³⁹ See e.g. S. Will, 'Occupation Law and Multi-National Operations: Problems and Perspectives', 77 BYIL, 2006, pp. 256, 277.

¹⁴⁰ See L. Green, *The Contemporary Law of Armed Conflict*, 2nd edn, Manchester, 2000, chapter 20.

¹⁴¹ See e.g. D. W. Bowett, *United Nations Forces*, London, 1964, p. 56.

operations¹⁴² and status of forces agreements signed by the UN with host countries usually contain a provision that humanitarian law applies.¹⁴³

On 6 August 1999, the UN Secretary-General addressed the difficulty and issued a statement declaring that

The fundamental principles and rules of international humanitarian law ... are applicable to United Nations forces when in situations of armed conflict they are actively engaged therein as combatants, to the extent and for the duration of their engagement. They are accordingly applicable in enforcement actions, or in peacekeeping operations when the use of force is permissible in self-defence.¹⁴⁴

Conclusion

The functioning of the United Nations system for the preservation and restoration of world peace has not been a tremendous success in the broadest strategic sense. It constitutes merely one additional factor in international disputes management and one often particularly subject to political pressures. The United Nations has played a minimal part in some of the major conflicts and disputes since its inception, whether it be the Cuban missiles crisis of 1962 or the Vietnam war, the Soviet intervention

¹⁴² These conventions would include the 1949 Geneva Conventions and the 1977 Protocols as well as the Convention on the Protection of Cultural Property, 1954: see Green, *Armed Conflict*, p. 344; C. Greenwood, 'International Humanitarian Law and United Nations Military Operations', 1 *Yearbook of International Humanitarian Law*, 1998, p. 3, and D. Shrags, 'UN Peacekeeping Operations: Applicability of International Humanitarian Responsibility for Operations-Related Damage', 94 *AJIL*, 2000, p. 406.

¹⁴³ See e.g. the agreement with Rwanda in 1993 on the status of the UN Mission in that country, Shrags, 'UN Peacekeeping Operation', p. 325, footnote 16, and S/26927, 1993, para. 7. Note also the resolutions adopted by the Institut de Droit International stating that the laws of armed conflict apply to the UN, 54 (II) *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1971, p. 465, and 56 *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1975, p. 540.

¹⁴⁴ ST/SGB/1999/13 (Bulletin on the Observance by UN Forces of International Humanitarian Law). According to the official *United Nations Peacekeeping Operations: Principles and Guidance*, pp. 15–16, this statement sets out the 'fundamental principles and rules of international law that may be applicable to United Nations peacekeepers'. See also P. Rowe, 'Maintaining Discipline in United Nations Peace Support Operations', 5 *Journal of Conflict and Security Law*, 2000, pp. 45, 52 ff.; A. J. T. Dörenberg, 'Legal Aspects of Peacekeeping Operations', 28 *The Military Law and Law of War Review*, 1989, p. 113; F. Hampson, 'States' Military Operations Authorised by the United Nations and International Humanitarian Law' in *The United Nations and International Humanitarian Law* (eds. L. Condorelli, A. M. LaRosa and S. Scherrer), Paris, 1996, p. 371; Y. Dinstein, *War, Aggression and Self-Defence*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, pp. 162–3, and Will, 'Occupation Law', pp. 274 ff.

in Czechoslovakia and Afghanistan or the Nigerian and Angolan civil wars.

Nevertheless, the position of the United Nations improved with the ending of the Cold War and the substantial changes in the approach of the USSR, soon to be Russia, in particular.¹⁴⁵ More emphasis was laid upon the importance of the UN in the context of an increased co-operation with the US. This began to have a significant impact upon the work and achievements of the UN. The new co-operative approach led to the agreements leading to the independence of Namibia, while substantial progress was made by the five permanent members of the Security Council in working out a solution to the Cambodian problem. The long-running dispute with Iraq and how to deal with its failure to comply fully with Security Council resolution 687 (1991) appeared to mark a further moment of achievement with the adoption of resolution 1441 (2002). However, the unanimity of the Council fractured and, amid deep division, the US and the UK commenced a military action against Iraq in March 2003.¹⁴⁶

The range and extent of activities engaged in by the UN is startling by past experience. UN missions may not only be used now to stabilise a tense situation in the traditional exposition of the peacekeeping approach, they may also be utilised in order to carry out key administrative functions; verify peace agreements both international and internal; monitor the implementation of human rights accords; supervise and monitor elections; train and oversee police forces; oversee withdrawal and demilitarisation arrangements, and assist in demining operations.

The Secretary-General has emphasised that there are three particularly important principles of peacekeeping.¹⁴⁷ These are the consent of the parties, impartiality and the non-use of force. While these three may characterise traditional peacekeeping and observer missions, even as these developed during the 1990s, they do not apply necessarily to a new form of peacekeeping that is mandated under Chapter VII of the Charter.¹⁴⁸ To seek to revitalise the structure, the Secretary-General mandated a Panel on UN Peace Operations to conduct a thorough review. In the Panel Report, a series of recommendations were made.¹⁴⁹ These included encouraging

¹⁴⁵ See e.g. A. Roberts and B. Kingsbury, 'The UN's Role in International Society since 1945' in Roberts and Kingsbury, *United Nations, Divided World*, p. 1.

¹⁴⁶ See further below, p. 1255.

¹⁴⁷ *Supplement to an Agenda for Peace*, A/50/60, 1995, para. 33. See also UN, *United Nations Peacekeeping Operations: Principles and Guidelines*, chapter 3.

¹⁴⁸ See below, p. 1257.

¹⁴⁹ See A/55/305-S/2000/809, 21 August 2000 and 39 ILM, 2000, p. 1432. The Report is also termed the Brahimi Report after its chair.

a more frequent use by the Secretary-General of fact-finding missions to areas of tension in support of short-term crisis-preventive action and a doctrinal shift in the use of civilian police and related rule of law elements in peace operations that emphasises an increased focus on, and team approach to, upholding the rule of law and human rights.¹⁵⁰ The Panel reaffirmed that consent of the local parties, impartiality and the use of forces only in self-defence constitute the 'bedrock principles of peacekeeping', but noted that consent could sometimes be manipulated and that impartiality must take into account adherence to UN principles. Equal treatment where one party is violating such principles could not be acceptable.¹⁵¹ The Panel also called for improved standby arrangements to enable forces to 'meet the need for the robust peacekeeping forces that the Panel has advocated'¹⁵² and 'robust rules of engagement against those who renege on their commitments to a peace accord or otherwise seek to undermine it by violence'.¹⁵³ A variety of other recommendations have also been made and the implementation process commenced.¹⁵⁴ In 2006 the Secretary-General outlined a 'Peace Operations 2010' reform strategy¹⁵⁵ and a major reform of the support aspects of peacekeeping operations was initiated.¹⁵⁶

The collective security system¹⁵⁷

The system established by the United Nations for the maintenance of international peace and security was intended to be comprehensive in its provisions and universal in its application. It has often been termed a

¹⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, paras. 29 ff. ¹⁵¹ *Ibid.*, paras. 48 ff.

¹⁵² *Ibid.*, paras. 86 ff. ¹⁵³ *Ibid.*, para. 55.

¹⁵⁴ See e.g. the Secretary-General's Report on Implementation of 20 October 2000, A/55/502 and the Implementation Reports of 1 June and 21 December 2001, A/55/977 and A/56/732.

¹⁵⁵ A/60/696, paras. 6 ff.

¹⁵⁶ See A/62/11, paras. 51 ff. and Press Release GA/SPD/382, 31 October 2007. As of January 2008, over 100,000 personnel were serving in peace operations, with contributions from 119 states with a budget of \$7 billion. Pakistan (10,616), Bangladesh (9,717) and India (9,345) were the largest uniformed personnel contributors, with the US (26%), Japan (17%) and Germany (9%) being the largest providers to the budget: see UN Peacekeeping Factsheet, DPI/2429/rev.2, February 2008.

¹⁵⁷ See e.g. Chesterman *et al.*, *United Nations*, chapter 10; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 1131 ff.; Denis, *Pouvoir Normatif*; A. Novosseloff, *Le Conseil de Sécurité des Nations Unies et la Maîtrise de la Force Armée*, Brussels, 2003; E. de Wet, *The Chapter VII Powers of the United Nations Security Council*, Oxford, 2004; Franck, *Fairness*, chapter 9; C. Gray, *International Law and the Use of Force*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2004, chapter 7; D. Sarooshi, *The United Nations and the Development of Collective Security*, Oxford, 1999; R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, chapter 15; P. M. Dupuy, 'Sécurité Collective et Organisation de la Paix', 97 RGDIP, 1993, p. 617; G. Gaja, 'Réflexions sur le Rôle du Conseil de Sécurité

collective security system, since a wronged state was to be protected by all, and a wrongdoer punished by all. The history of collective security since 1945 demonstrates how flexibility and textual interpretation have prevented the system from failing completely.

The Security Council

The original scheme by which this was achieved laid great stress upon the role of the Security Council, although this has been modified to some extent in practice. By article 24 of the United Nations Charter, the Council was granted primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security, and its decisions are under article 25 binding upon all member states. It was thus intended to fulfil a dynamic, executive function.

While actions adopted by the Security Council in pursuance of Chapter VI of the Charter, dealing with the pacific settlement of disputes, are purely recommendatory, matters concerning threats to, or breaches of, the peace or acts of aggression, under Chapter VII, give rise to decision-making powers on the part of the Council. This is an important distinction and emphasises the priority accorded within the system to the preservation of peace and the degree of authority awarded to the Security Council to achieve this. The system is completed by article 103 which declares that obligations under the Charter prevail over obligations contained in other international agreements.¹⁵⁸

Determination of the situation

Before the Council can adopt measures relating to the enforcement of world peace, article 39 of the Charter requires that it must first 'determine the existence of any threat to the peace, breach of the peace or act of

dans le Nouvel Ordre Mondial', *ibid.*, p. 297; T. M. Franck and F. Patel, 'UN Police Action in Lieu of War: "The Older Order Changeth"', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 63; C. Gray, 'A Crisis of Legitimacy for the UN Collective Security System?', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 157; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 989, and Simma, *Charter*, pp. 701 ff.

¹⁵⁸ See the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 3; 94 ILR, p. 478. But see the discussion of article 103 by Judge Lauterpacht in the second provisional measures order in the *Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro))* case, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 440; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 158, and by Judge Bedjaoui in the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 47; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 530. See also Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 2133 ff., and A. Toublanc, 'L'Article 103 et la Valeur Juridique de la Charte des Nations Unies', 108 RGDIP, 2004, p. 439.

aggression'. This is the key to the collective security system. Once such a determination has been made, which may be done implicitly by the use of the language contained in article 39 of the Charter,¹⁵⁹ the way is clear for the adoption of recommendations or decisions to deal with the situation. The adoption of Chapter VII enforcement action constitutes an exception to the principle stated in article 2(7) of the Charter, according to which the UN is not authorised 'to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state'.

The question is thus raised at this juncture as to the definition of a threat to, or breach of, the peace or act of aggression. The answer that has emerged in practice is that it depends upon the circumstances of the case and it also depends upon the relationship of the five permanent members of the Council (United Kingdom, United States of America, Russia, China and France) to the issue under consideration, for a negative vote by any of the permanent members is sufficient to block all but procedural resolutions of the Council.¹⁶⁰

Threat to the peace is the broadest category provided for in article 39 and the one least susceptible to precise definition. In a sense it constitutes a safety net for Security Council action where the conditions needed for a breach of the peace or act of aggression do not appear to be present. It is also the category which has marked a rapid evolution as the perception as to what amounts to a threat to international peace and security has broadened. In particular, the concept has been used to cover internal situations that would once have been shielded from UN action by article 2(7) of the Charter.

A threat to the peace was first determined in the 1948 Middle East War, when in resolution 54 (1948), the Security Council found that the situation created by the conflict in the former mandated territory of Palestine where neighbouring Arab countries had entered the territory in order to conduct hostilities against the new state of Israel constituted 'a threat to the peace within the meaning of article 39' and demanded a cease-fire. In resolution 221 (1966) the Council determined that the situation of the minority white regime in Rhodesia constituted a threat to the peace.¹⁶¹

With the cessation of the Cold War, the Security Council has been able to extend its activities under Chapter VII to a remarkable extent. In resolution 713 (1991) the Council determined that the situation in former

¹⁵⁹ Gray, *Use of Force*, p. 197. ¹⁶⁰ Article 27 of the UN Charter.

¹⁶¹ See also Security Council resolution 217 (1965).

Yugoslavia¹⁶² constituted a threat to the peace and in resolution 733 (1992), it was held that the situation in Somalia amounted to a threat to peace. In resolution 794 (1992), the Council underlined that 'the magnitude of the human tragedy caused by the conflict in Somalia, further exacerbated by the obstacles being created to the distribution of humanitarian assistance, constitutes a threat to international peace and security'.¹⁶³ In resolution 788 (1992) the Council decided that the deteriorating civil war situation in Liberia constituted a threat to international peace, while in resolution 955 (1994), it was determined that the genocide in Rwanda constituted a threat to international peace and security. The latter three cases were clearly internal civil war situations and it could be said that the situation in Yugoslavia at the time of the adoption of the 1991 resolution was also a civil war situation, although this is more complex. Further resolutions with regard to former Yugoslavia determined that threats to the peace were involved.¹⁶⁴ In another move of considerable importance, the Council has also determined that 'widespread violations of international humanitarian law' constitute a threat to peace.¹⁶⁵ Resolutions concerning Sierra Leone¹⁶⁶ affirmed that the civil war in that country constituted a threat to international peace, while resolutions concerning the mixed civil war/foreign intervention conflicts in the Democratic Republic of the Congo affirmed that there existed a 'threat to international peace and security in the region'.¹⁶⁷

A further expansion in the meaning in practice of a threat to international peace and security took place with regard to Libya. In resolution 748 (1992) the Council determined that 'the failure by the Libyan Government to demonstrate by concrete actions its renunciation of terrorism and in particular its continued failure to respond fully and effectively to the requests in resolution 731 (1992),¹⁶⁸ constitute a threat to international peace and security'. Again, in resolution 1070 (1996), the Council determined that the failure of Sudan to comply with earlier resolutions

¹⁶² This situation was characterised by fighting 'causing a heavy loss of human life and material damage, and by the consequences for the countries in the region, in particular in the border areas of neighbouring countries', *ibid*.

¹⁶³ See also Security Council resolution 751 (1992).

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 743 (1992), 757 (1992), 787 (1992) and 827 (1993).

¹⁶⁵ See Security Council resolutions 808 (1993), with regard to former Yugoslavia, and 955 (1994), with regard to Rwanda.

¹⁶⁶ See further below, p. 1263. ¹⁶⁷ See further below, p. 1264.

¹⁶⁸ Which called for the extradition of alleged bombers of an airplane over Lockerbie in 1988 to the US or UK.

demanding that it act to extradite to Ethiopia for prosecution suspects on its territory wanted in connection with an assassination attempt against the President of Egypt,¹⁶⁹ constituted a threat to international peace and security. In both cases references to 'international terrorism' were made in the context of a determination of a threat to the peace. This constitutes an important step in combating such a phenomenon for it paves the way for the adoption of binding sanctions in such circumstances. This has been reinforced by resolutions 1368 (2001) and 1373 (2001) adopted in the wake of the 11 September bombings of the World Trade Center in New York and of the Pentagon.¹⁷⁰

The Haiti situation similarly marked a development in the understanding by the Council as to what may amount to a threat to international peace and security. UN observers monitored an election in that country in 1990, but on 30 September 1991 the elected President Aristide was ousted. In a process which demonstrates the growing interaction between UN organs in crisis situations, the Secretary-General appointed a Special Representative for Haiti on 11 December 1991, the General Assembly authorised a joint UN–Organisation of American States civilian mission on human rights (MICIVIH) on 20 April 1993,¹⁷¹ and on 16 June 1993, the Security Council imposed an arms and oil embargo on Haiti with sanctions to enter into force on 23 June unless the Secretary-General and the OAS reported that such measures were no longer warranted.¹⁷² The Security Council referred to the fact that 'the legitimate Government of President Jean-Bernard Aristide' had not been reinstated and noted 'the incidence of humanitarian crises, including mass displacements of population, becoming or aggravating threats to international peace and security'.¹⁷³ The Council determined therefore that 'in these unique and exceptional circumstances', the continuation of the situation constituted a threat to international peace and security. Thus although the Security Council did not go so far as to declare that the removal of a legitimate government constituted of itself a threat to peace, it was clearly the precipitating factor that taken together with other matters could enable a determination to be made under article 39 thus permitting the

¹⁶⁹ Security Council resolutions 1044 (1996) and 1054 (1996).

¹⁷⁰ See above, chapter 20, p. 1162. ¹⁷¹ See General Assembly resolution 47/20 B.

¹⁷² Security Council resolution 841 (1993).

¹⁷³ Note that in Security Council resolution 688 (1991), it had been determined that the consequences of the Iraqi repression of its civilian population in different parts of the country, including areas populated by Kurds, involving considerable refugee flows over the borders of Turkey and Iran threatened international peace and security.

adoption of binding sanctions. The sanctions were suspended following the Governors Island Agreement of 3 July 1993.¹⁷⁴ However, in resolution 873 (1993), the Council determined that the failure by the military authorities in Haiti to fulfil obligations under that agreement constituted a threat to international peace and security, and sanctions were reimposed.¹⁷⁵ As the Appeal Chamber declared in the *Tadić* case:

Indeed, the practice of the Security Council is rich with cases of civil war or internal strife which is classified as a 'threat to the peace' and dealt with under Chapter VII... It can thus be said that there is a common understanding, manifested by the 'subsequent practice' of the membership of the United Nations at large, that the 'threat to the peace' of article 39 may include, as one of its species, internal armed conflicts.¹⁷⁶

Further, in resolution 1540 (2004), the Council affirmed that the proliferation of nuclear, chemical and biological weapons, as well as their means of delivery, constituted a threat to international peace and security and proceeded to establish a sanctions regime monitored by a committee of the Council.

After several decades of discussion and deliberation, a definition of aggression was finally agreed upon by the United Nations General Assembly in 1974.¹⁷⁷ Article 1 provides that aggression is the use of armed force by a state against the sovereignty, territorial integrity or political independence of another state, or in any other manner inconsistent with the United Nations Charter. A number of examples of aggressive acts are given in article 3 and these include the use of weapons by a state against the territory of another state, the blockade of the ports or coasts of a state by the armed forces of another state,¹⁷⁸ and attack by the armed forces of a state on the land, sea or air forces of another state and the sending by, or on behalf of, a state of armed bands to carry out acts of armed force against another state.¹⁷⁹ This elucidation of some of the features of the concept of aggression might prove of some use to the Security Council, but the Council does retain the right to examine all the relevant circumstances,

¹⁷⁴ Security Council resolution 861 (1993).

¹⁷⁵ Security Council resolution 873 (1993). Further sanctions were imposed in resolution 917 (1994). Sanctions were finally lifted by resolution 944 (1994), upon the restoration of President Aristide following a US-led operation in Haiti.

¹⁷⁶ 105 ILR, pp. 419, 466. ¹⁷⁷ General Assembly resolution 3314 (XXIX).

¹⁷⁸ As, for example, the blockade of the Israeli port of Eilat in May 1967, above, chapter 20, p. 1138.

¹⁷⁹ See the *Nicaragua* case, ICJ Reports, 1986, pp. 14, 103–4; 76 ILR, pp. 349, 437.

including the gravity of any particular incident, before deciding on the determination to make pursuant to article 39.¹⁸⁰

Findings as to actual breaches of the peace have occurred four times. In 1950, as a result of the invasion of South Korea by North Korea, the Security Council adopted resolutions determining that a breach of the peace had occurred and calling upon member states to assist South Korea,¹⁸¹ while in resolution 502 (1982) the Council determined that a breach of the peace in the Falkland Islands region had taken place following the Argentine invasion. The third situation which prompted a finding by the Security Council of a breach of the peace was in resolution 598 (1987) dealing with the Iran–Iraq war, while the fourth occasion was in resolution 660 (1990) in which the Council determined that there existed ‘a breach of international peace and security as regards the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait’.

Chapter VII measures¹⁸²

Measures not involving the use of force¹⁸³ Once the Security Council has resolved that a particular dispute or situation involves a threat to the peace or act of aggression, the way is open to take further measures. Such further measures may, however, be preceded by provisional action taken to prevent the aggravation of the situation. This action, provided for by article 40 of the Charter,¹⁸⁴ is without prejudice to the rights or claims of the parties, and is intended as a provisional measure to stabilise a crisis situation. Usual examples of action taken by the Security Council under this provision include calls for ceasefires (as in the Middle East in 1967 and 1973)¹⁸⁵ and calls for the withdrawal of troops from foreign territory.¹⁸⁶ However, the adoption of provisional measures by the Council

¹⁸⁰ The first finding as to aggression by the Security Council was in 1976 with regard to South African action against Angola, Security Council resolution 387 (1976). See also Security Council resolutions 411 (1977) condemning Rhodesian action against Mozambique, 573 (1985) condemning Israel’s action against PLO headquarters in Tunisia and 667 (1990) condemning aggressive acts by Iraq against diplomatic premises and personnel in Kuwait.

¹⁸¹ Security Council resolution S/1501.

¹⁸² See e.g. P. Conlon, ‘Legal Problems at the Centre of United Nations Sanctions’, 65 *Nordic Journal of International Law*, 1996, p. 73.

¹⁸³ See e.g. M. Doxey, *Economic Sanctions and International Enforcement*, London, 1980; J. Combacau, *Le Pouvoir de Sanction de l’ONU*, Paris, 1974; N. Schrijver, ‘The Use of Economic Sanctions by the UN Security Council: An International Perspective’ in *International Economic Law and Armed Conflict* (ed. H. Post), Dordrecht, 1994, and *Economic Sanctions: Panacea or Peace-Building in a Post-Cold War World* (eds. D. Cortright and G. Lopez), Boulder, 1995.

¹⁸⁴ See Simma, *Charter*, p. 729, and Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, p. 1171.

¹⁸⁵ See Security Council resolutions 234 (1967) and 338 (1973).

¹⁸⁶ See e.g. Security Council resolution 509 (1982), with regard to Israel’s invasion of Lebanon.

often has an effect ranging far beyond the confines of a purely temporary action. They may induce a calmer atmosphere leading to negotiations to resolve the difficulties and they may set in train moves to settle the dispute upon the basis laid down in the Security Council resolution which called for the provisional measures.

The action adopted by the Council, once it has decided that there exists with regard to a situation a threat to the peace, breach of the peace or act of aggression, may fall into either of two categories. It may amount to the application of measures not involving the use of armed force under article 41, such as the disruption of economic relations or the severance of diplomatic relations, or may call for the use of such force as may be necessary to maintain or restore international peace and security under article 42.

The Council has not until recently utilised the powers it possesses under article 41 to any great extent. The first major instance of action not including the use of force occurred with respect to the Rhodesian situation following upon the Unilateral Declaration of Independence by the white minority government of that territory in 1965.¹⁸⁷ In two resolutions in 1965, the Council called upon member states not to recognise or assist the illegal regime and in particular to break all economic and arms relations with it.¹⁸⁸ The next year, the Council went further and imposed selective mandatory economic sanctions upon Rhodesia,¹⁸⁹ which were extended in 1968 and rendered comprehensive,¹⁹⁰ although several states did act in defiance of these resolutions.¹⁹¹ Sanctions were

¹⁸⁷ See e.g. Simma, *Charter*, p. 735; Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, p. 1195; Nguyen Quoc Dinh *et al.*, *Droit International Public*, p. 997; R. Zacklin, *The United Nations and Rhodesia*, New York, 1974; J. E. S. Fawcett, 'Security Council Resolutions on Rhodesia', 41 BYIL, 1965-6, p. 103; M. S. McDougal and W. M. Reisman, 'Rhodesia and the United Nations: The Lawfulness of International Concern', 62 AJIL, 1968, p. 1, and J. Nkala, *The United Nations, International Law and the Rhodesia Independence Crisis*, Oxford, 1985. See also V. Gowlland-Debbas, *Collective Responses to Illegal Acts in International Law*, Dordrecht, 1990, and Gowlland-Debbas, 'Security Council Enforcement Action and Issues of State Responsibility', 43 ICLQ, 1994, p. 55.

¹⁸⁸ Security Council resolutions 216 (1965) and 217 (1965).

¹⁸⁹ Security Council resolution 232 (1966). Note that under Security Council resolution 221 (1966) the Council *inter alia* called upon the UK 'to prevent by the use of force if necessary' the arrival in Mozambique of vessels believed to be carrying oil for Rhodesia.

¹⁹⁰ Security Council resolution 253 (1968). See also Security Council resolution 409 (1977).

¹⁹¹ See N. Polakas, 'Economic Sanctions: An Effective Alternative to Military Coercion?', 6 *Brooklyn Journal of International Law*, 1980, p. 289. Note also the importation by the United States of Rhodesian chrome and other minerals under the Byrd Amendment between 1972 and 1977: see DUSPIL, 1977, Washington, pp. 830-4.

terminated in 1979 as a result of the agreement leading to the independence of Zimbabwe.¹⁹²

However, the most comprehensive range of economic sanctions thus far imposed by the Security Council was adopted in the wake of the invasion of Kuwait by Iraq on 2 August 1990.¹⁹³ Security Council resolution 661 (1990), noting that Iraq had failed to withdraw immediately and unconditionally from Kuwait¹⁹⁴ and acting specifically under Chapter VII of the Charter, imposed a wide range of economic sanctions upon Iraq, including the prohibition by states of all imports from and exports to Iraq and occupied Kuwait,¹⁹⁵ and the transfer of funds to Iraq and Kuwait for such purposes. Additionally, the Security Council decided that states should not make available to the Government of Iraq or to any commercial, industrial or public utility undertaking in Iraq or Kuwait any funds or any other financial or economic resources and should prevent their nationals and persons within their territories from remitting any other funds to persons or bodies within Iraq or Kuwait,¹⁹⁶ notwithstanding any existing contract or licence.

The Security Council also established a Committee consisting of all members of the Council to oversee the implementation of these measures.¹⁹⁷ Under Security Council resolution 666 (1990), the Committee was instructed to keep the situation regarding foodstuffs in Iraq and Kuwait under constant review and to bear in mind that foodstuffs (as permitted under the terms of the previous resolutions) should be provided through the UN in co-operation with the International Committee of the Red Cross or other appropriate humanitarian agencies and distributed by them or under their supervision. The Committee was additionally given the task of examining requests for assistance under

¹⁹² Security Council resolution 460 (1979). See also 19 ILM, 1980, pp. 287 ff. Note in addition Security Council resolution 418 (1977), which imposed an arms embargo upon South Africa.

¹⁹³ See Lauterpacht *et al.*, *Kuwait Crisis: Basic Documents; The Kuwait Crisis: Sanctions and their Economic Consequences* (ed. D. Bethlehem), Cambridge, 1991.

¹⁹⁴ As required in Security Council resolution 660 (1990).

¹⁹⁵ Apart from supplies intended strictly for medical purposes and, 'in humanitarian circumstances', foodstuffs, paragraph 3(c).

¹⁹⁶ Except payments exclusively for strictly medical or humanitarian purposes and, in humanitarian circumstances, foodstuffs, paragraph 4.

¹⁹⁷ See e.g. M. Koskeniemi, 'Le Comité des Sanctions Créé par la Résolution 661 (1990) du Conseil de Sécurité', AFDI, 1991, p. 121, and P. Conlon, 'Lessons from Iraq: The Functions of the Iraq Sanctions Committee as a Source of Sanctions Implementation Authority and Practice', 35 Va. JIL, 1995, p. 632.

article 50 of the Charter¹⁹⁸ and making recommendations to the President of the Security Council for appropriate action.¹⁹⁹ The binding economic sanctions imposed on Iraq because of its invasion and purported annexation of Kuwait were tightened in Security Council resolution 670 (1990), in which the Council decided that all states, irrespective of any international agreements or contracts, licences or permits in existence, were to deny permission to any aircraft to take off from their territory if the aircraft was carrying cargo to or from Iraq or Kuwait.²⁰⁰ In addition, states were to deny permission to any aircraft destined to land in Iraq or Kuwait to overfly their territory.²⁰¹

The economic sanctions were reinforced under Security Council resolution 665 (1990) which authorised those UN member states deploying maritime forces in the area in co-operation with the legitimate government of Kuwait 'to use such measures commensurate to the specific circumstances as may be necessary under the authority of the Security Council' in order to enforce the naval blockade on Iraq. The states concerned were requested to co-ordinate their actions 'using as appropriate mechanisms of the Military Staffs Committee'²⁰² and after consultation with the UN Secretary-General to submit reports to the Security Council and the Committee established under resolution 661 (1990). It is unclear whether given a substantial period of operation, this impressive range of sanctions would have sufficed to compel Iraq to withdraw from Kuwait, for on 16 January 1991 force was employed.

Having once established a comprehensive set of economic and financial sanctions together with mechanisms of supervision, it has become easier to put in place similar responses to other situations. On 31 March 1992, the Security Council imposed a relatively restricted range of sanctions upon Libya due to the latter's refusal to renounce terrorism and

¹⁹⁸ Article 50 provides that if preventive or enforcement measures against any state are taken by the Security Council, any other state which finds itself confronted with special economic problems arising from the carrying out of those measures shall have the right to consult the Security Council with regard to a solution to those problems. Note also the reference to article 50 in Security Council resolution 748 (1992), imposing sanctions upon Libya, and resolution 669 (1990). See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, pp. 283–4; J. Carver and J. Hulsmann, 'The Role of Article 50 of the UN Charter in the Search for International Peace and Security', 49 ICLQ, 2000, p. 528, and Cot *et al.*, *Charte*, p. 1313.

¹⁹⁹ Security Council resolution 669 (1990).

²⁰⁰ Other than food in humanitarian circumstances subject to authorisation by the Council or the Committee or supplies intended strictly for medical purposes.

²⁰¹ Unless the aircraft was landing for inspection or the flight had been approved by the Committee or the flight was certified by the UN as solely for the purposes of the UN Iran–Iraq Military Observer Group (UNIIMOG).

²⁰² See below, p. 1251.

respond fully and effectively to the call in Security Council resolution 731 (1992) to extradite suspected bombers to the UK or US.²⁰³ These sanctions imposed a mandatory arms and air embargo upon Libya. It also called upon states to reduce significantly the number and the level of staff at Libyan diplomatic missions and diplomatic posts. A Committee was set up to monitor compliance with the sanctions. Resolution 1192 (1998) provided *inter alia* for the suspension of the sanctions upon the certification by the Secretary-General of the arrival of the accused bombers in the Netherlands for trial. This duly occurred²⁰⁴ and the President of the Council issued a statement on 9 July 1999 noting therefore the suspension of the sanctions.²⁰⁵

On 30 May 1992, the Security Council in resolution 757 (1992) imposed a wide range of economic sanctions upon the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro), having imposed an arms embargo upon all states within the territory of the former Yugoslavia in resolution 713 (1991).²⁰⁶ The resolution, adopted under Chapter VII, prohibited the importation of goods from the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) and the export or trans-shipment of such goods by states or their nationals and the sale or supply of any commodities or products to any person or body in the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia or to any person or body for the purposes of any business carried on in or operated from it. In addition, paragraph 5 of this resolution prohibited states from making available to the authorities in the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) or to any commercial, industrial or public utility undertaking there, any funds or any other financial or economic resources. States were also to prevent their nationals and any persons within their territories from providing to anyone within the Federal Republic any funds or resources at all, except for payments exclusively for strictly medical or humanitarian purposes and foodstuffs.²⁰⁷

These sanctions were essentially extended by Security Council resolution 820 (1993) to areas of Croatia and Bosnia controlled by the Bosnian Serb forces. In addition, the Danube River was included within the sanctions control system and the transport of all goods (apart from medical

²⁰³ Security Council resolution 748 (1992).

²⁰⁴ See S/1999/726. ²⁰⁵ See S/PRST/1999/22.

²⁰⁶ A Sanctions Committee was established under Security Council resolution 724 (1991).

²⁰⁷ See also resolution 787 (1992), which decided that any vessel in which a majority or a controlling interest was held by a person or undertaking in or operating from the Federal Republic was to be considered for the purpose of the sanctions regime as a Yugoslav vessel, irrespective of the flag flown. Further maritime control measures were also adopted under this resolution.

supplies and foodstuffs) across the land borders to or from the ports of the Federal Republic was prohibited.²⁰⁸ Resolution 942 (1994) extended sanctions to cover economic activities carried on within states by any entity owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by any person or entity resident in areas of Bosnia under the control of the Bosnian Serb forces.

As negotiations progressed, the sanctions against the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia were progressively eased.²⁰⁹ After the Dayton peace agreement was initialled, the arms embargo was lifted²¹⁰ and sanctions were suspended indefinitely by resolution 1022 (1995) on 22 November 1995, except with regard to Bosnian Serb forces.²¹¹ Sanctions were fully lifted by resolution 1074 (1996) following the holding of elections in Bosnia as required under the peace agreement and the Sanctions Committee was dissolved. Arms sanctions were reimposed in 1998 due to the Kosovo situation, but lifted in 2001.²¹²

Arms sanctions have also been imposed upon Somalia,²¹³ Rwanda,²¹⁴ Liberia²¹⁵ and Ethiopia and Eritrea.²¹⁶ An arms embargo on Sierra Leone²¹⁷

²⁰⁸ Resolution 820 also decided that states were to impound all vessels, freight vehicles, rolling stock and aircraft in their territories in which a majority or controlling interest was held by a person or undertaking in or operating from the Federal Republic. Paragraph 21 of the resolution called for states to freeze funds of the authorities in the Federal Republic or of commercial, industrial or public utility undertakings there, and of funds controlled directly or indirectly by such authorities or undertakings or by entities, wherever located or organised, owned or controlled by such authorities or undertakings.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 943 (1994), 988 (1995), 992 (1995), 1003 (1995) and 1015 (1995).

²¹⁰ Security Council resolution 1021 (1995).

²¹¹ The resolution also provided for the release of frozen assets, 'provided that any such funds and assets that are subject to any claims, liens, judgments, or encumbrances, or which are the funds of any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity found or deemed insolvent under law or the accounting principles prevailing in such state, shall remain frozen or impounded until released in accordance with applicable law'.

²¹² See resolutions 1160 (1998) and 1367 (2001).

²¹³ See Security Council resolutions 733 (1992), 751 (1992), 1356 (2001), 1407 (2002), 1425 (2002), 1744 (2007) and 1772 (2007).

²¹⁴ See resolutions 918 (1994), 1005 (1995), 1011 (1995), 1013 (1995), 1053 (1996) and 1161 (1998).

²¹⁵ See resolutions 788 (1992) and 985 (1995). Sanctions were terminated by resolution 1343 (2001), but reintroduced in resolution 1521 (2003). See also resolutions 1532 (2004) and 1683 (2006). The regime was most recently extended by resolution 1713 (2006).

²¹⁶ See resolution 1298 (2000). Sanctions were terminated in pursuance of Presidential Statement S/PRST/2001/14 of 15 May 2001. Note that this was the first time that sanctions had been imposed on both sides in a conflict: see C. Gray, 'From Unity to Polarisation: International Law and the Use of Force against Iraq', 13 *EJIL*, 2002, pp. 1, 3.

²¹⁷ See resolutions 1132 (1997) and 1171 (1998).

was extended to cover the import of rough-cut diamonds other than those controlled by the government under the certificate of origin scheme.²¹⁸ An air embargo and a freezing of assets was imposed on the Taliban regime in Afghanistan in 1999.²¹⁹ An arms embargo was imposed on all foreign and Congolese armed groups and militias operating in the territory of North and South Kivu and Ituri, and on groups not party to the Global and All-inclusive Agreement in the Democratic Republic of the Congo in resolution 1493 (2003),²²⁰ while in resolution 1718 (2006) an arms embargo was placed on North Korea, which was called upon to suspend all activities related to its ballistic missile programme, and abandon all nuclear weapons and existing nuclear programmes, and all other existing weapons of mass destruction and ballistic missile programmes in a complete, verifiable and irreversible manner. An arms embargo on the Sudan was imposed in 2004 with regard to all non-governmental entities and individuals, including the Janjaweed Arab militia, operating in North, South and West Darfur,²²¹ while sanctions have also been imposed upon Iran in view of suspicions that it is moving towards the acquisition of nuclear weapons in violation of its obligations under the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty.²²²

²¹⁸ See resolutions 1306 (2000), 1385 (2001) and 1446 (2002). The diamonds sanctions ended in June 2003: see SC/7778. Note also the sanctions imposed on the Ivory Coast, comprising an arms embargo, travel ban on particular individuals, assets freeze on individuals and designated entities and diamond sanctions: see e.g. resolutions 1572 (2004), 1584 (2005), 1643 (2005) and 172 (2007). Sanctions were also imposed on individuals to be determined with regard to Lebanon following the assassination of former prime minister Hariri and others: see resolution 1636 (2005).

²¹⁹ See resolution 1267 (1999). The sanctions regime was intensified in e.g. resolutions 1333 (2000), 1390 (2002), 1455 (2003), 1526 (2004), 1617 (2005) and 1735 (2006). Sanctions currently cover individuals and entities associated with Al-Qaida, Usama bin Laden and/or the Taliban wherever located.

²²⁰ See also resolutions 1533 (2004), 1596 (2005), 1649 (2005) and 1698 (2006), expanding the scope of the arms embargo, imposing additional targeted sanctions measures (travel ban and assets freeze), and broadening the criteria under which individuals could be designated as subject to those measures. In resolution 1807 (2008), the arms embargo was limited to all non-governmental entities and individuals operating in the territory of the Congo, while the travel ban and assets freeze were extended to individuals operating in that country and committing serious violations of international law involving the targeting of women. See also resolution 1804 (2008) affirming the application of sanctions to various Rwandan armed groups operating in the Congo.

²²¹ See resolution 1556 (2004). The scope of the arms embargo was expanded and additional measures imposed, including a travel ban and an assets freeze on designated individuals, in resolution 1591 (2005).

²²² Sanctions include a proliferation-sensitive nuclear and ballistic missile programmes-related embargo; an export ban on arms and related matériel from Iran; and individual

While measures taken under article 41 have traditionally been economic sanctions, other possibilities exist. The Council may, for example, call for action to be taken to reduce the number and level of diplomatic staff of the target state within other states.²²³ More dramatically, the Council has on two occasions established international tribunals to prosecute war criminals by the adoption of binding resolutions under Chapter VII.²²⁴ Further, the Council may adopt a series of determinations concerning legal responsibilities of states that will have considerable consequences.

Security Council Resolution 687 (1991), adopted under Chapter VII of the Charter and agreed to by Iraq as part of the ceasefire arrangement,²²⁵ constitutes the supreme illustration of such a situation. This laid down a series of conditions for the ending of the conflict in the Gulf. The resolution demanded that Iraq and Kuwait respect the inviolability of the international boundary as laid down in the Agreed Minutes signed by Iraq and Kuwait on 4 October 1963. The Council then proceeded to guarantee the inviolability of this international boundary, a development of great significance in the history of the UN. The resolution also provided for the immediate deployment of a UN observer unit to monitor a demilitarised zone to be established extending 10 kilometres into Iraq and 5 kilometres into Kuwait from the international boundary.²²⁶ Iraq was called upon to accept the destruction or removal of all chemical and biological weapons and all ballistic missiles with a range greater than 150 kilometres. A special commission was provided for to ensure that this happened.²²⁷ Iraq was to agree unconditionally not to acquire or develop nuclear weapons. The Security Council resolution reaffirmed that Iraq was liable under international law for any direct loss, damage, including environmental damage and the depletion of natural resources, or injury to foreign governments,

targeted sanctions (a travel ban, a travel notification requirement and an assets freeze on designated persons and entities): see resolutions 1737 (2006), 1747 (2007) and 1803 (2008).

²²³ See e.g. Security Council resolution 748 (1992), with regard to Libya.

²²⁴ See Security Council resolutions 808 (1992) and 827 (1992) with regard to former Yugoslavia, and 955 (1994) with regard to Rwanda. See also the *Milutinović* case before the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, IT-99-37-PT, 6 May 2003.

²²⁵ See S/22456, 6 April 1991. ²²⁶ See further above, p. 1229.

²²⁷ See also Security Council resolutions 707 (1991) and 715 (1991) and the Reports of the Special Commission, e.g. S/23165; S/23268; S/24108 and Corr.1; S/24984; S/25977; S/26910; S/1994/750; S/1994/1138; S/1994/1422 and S/1994/1422/Add.1.

nationals and corporations, as a result of Iraq's unlawful invasion and occupation of Kuwait.²²⁸

The scope and extent of this binding resolution amounts to a considerable development of the Security Council's efforts to resolve disputes. The demands that Iraq give up certain types of weapons and the requirement that repudiation of foreign debt is invalidated would appear to mark a new departure for the Council. In this category would also fall the guarantee given to the inviolability of an international border which is still the subject of dispute between the two parties concerned. In addition to the provisions noted above, the Council established a fund to pay compensation for claims²²⁹ and created a UN Compensation Commission.²³⁰

Sanctions continued after the ceasefire as the Security Council determined that Iraq had failed to comply fully with resolution 687 (1991). Concern centred upon the failure to destroy weapons of mass destruction as required in the resolution. Iraq was also required to place all of its nuclear-weapon-usable materials under the exclusive control of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) and unconditionally agree not to acquire or develop nuclear weapons or nuclear-weapon-usable materials.²³¹ The United Nations Special Commission (UNSCOM) was created to implement the non-nuclear provisions of the resolution and to assist the IAEA in the nuclear areas.

Iraq ceased its partial co-operation with UNSCOM in October 1998. The Security Council adopted resolution 1205 (1998) condemning this as a 'flagrant violation' of resolution 687 (1991). The UNSCOM inspectors were withdrawn in December 1998 and the conclusion of its final report was that Iraq had not provided it with the necessary declarations and notifications as required under Security Council resolution.²³² In resolution 1284 (1999), noting that Iraq had not fully carried out Council resolutions so that sanctions could not be lifted, the Security Council

²²⁸ In a further interesting but controversial provision, the resolution 'decides that all Iraqi statements made since 2 August 1990, repudiating its foreign debt, are null and void, and demands that Iraq scrupulously adhere to all of its obligations concerning servicing and repayment of its foreign debt'.

²²⁹ See paragraph 18 of resolution 687 (1991).

²³⁰ *Ibid.*, paragraph 16 and see Security Council resolution 692 (1991). See further above, chapter 18, p. 1045.

²³¹ Paragraph 12.

²³² See S/1999/1037. See also S/1999/94 detailing the problems faced by UNSCOM and Iraq's partial destruction of proscribed weapons coupled with 'a practice of concealment of proscribed items, including weapons, and a cover up of its activities in contravention of Council resolutions', *ibid.*, para. 5.

established the UN Monitoring, Verification and Inspection Commission (UNMOVIC) to replace UNSCOM.²³³ In resolution 1441 (2002), adopted unanimously, the Security Council pointed to Iraq's failures to comply with resolution 687 (1991) and decided that Iraq remained in 'material breach' of its obligations under Council resolutions. The sanctions regime that continued in force was mitigated by the adoption of the 'oil-for-food' programme instituted under resolution 986 (1995) and administered by the UN.²³⁴

The issue generally of the efficacy of sanctions remains open, but the economic damage that sanctions can do to the general population of a state, particularly where the government concerned does not operate in good faith, may be immense, and this has opened a debate as to whether sanctions may be better focused and targeted or made 'smarter'.²³⁵ One manifestation of this has been the increasing resort to sanctions against particular individuals or entities (as determined by the Security Council sanctions committee established to deal with the matter). This has raised the issue as to the ability of the named persons or entities to challenge their inclusion on the relevant list. Different de-listing (removal) procedures have been established by the various sanctions committees monitoring imposed sanctions, but these have not permitted direct approaches by individuals or entities concerned and this has prompted human rights concerns.²³⁶ Accordingly, the Security Council adopted resolution 1730 (2006), which called for the Secretary-General to establish within the Secretariat (Security Council Subsidiary Organs Branch) a focal point to receive de-listing requests from the pertinent individuals or entities.

²³³ See e.g. C. de Jonge Oudraat, 'UNSCOM: Between Iraq and a Hard Place', 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 139.

²³⁴ See S/1996/356 and, most recently, S/2002/1239. Note that Security Council resolution 1472 (2003), adopted eight days after the military operation against Iraq began, provided for the temporary extension of the oil-for-food arrangements under the changed conditions. The arrangements were also modified in resolutions 1284 (1999) and 1409 (2002). Resolution 1483 (2003) supported the formation of an 'interim administration' for Iraq, following the occupation of that state by the UK and the USA, by the people of Iraq with the help of 'the Authority' (the UK and USA) and all economic sanctions (apart from arms) were lifted: see further below, p. 1256.

²³⁵ See e.g. General Assembly resolution 51/242 and UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, p. 549. See also Gray, *Use of Force*, p. 209, and Forum, 13 EJIL, 2002, p. 43.

²³⁶ See e.g. E. Rosand, 'The Security Council's Efforts to Monitor the Implementation of Al-Qaida/Taliban Sanctions', 98 AJIL, 2004, p. 745, and B. Fassbender, *Targeted Sanctions and Due Process*, 2006, a study commissioned by the UN Office of Legal Affairs, www.un.org/law/counsel/Fassbender_study.pdf. See also C. Tomuschat, *Human Rights*, Oxford, 2003, p. 90, and K. Wellens, *Remedies against International Organizations*, Cambridge, 2002, p. 89.

Such requests are to be sent to the designating governments concerned (and governments of citizenship and residence), who may approach the sanctions committee directly or through the focal point, proposing that the individuals or entities be removed from the sanctions list. It will then be for the sanctions committee to take the decision.²³⁷

Measures involving the use of force Where the Council feels that the measures short of armed force as prescribed under article 41 have been or would be inadequate, it may take ‘such action by air, sea or land forces as may be necessary to maintain or restore international peace and security’. Article 42 also provides that such action may extend to demonstrations, blockades and other armed operations by members of the United Nations. In order to be able to function effectively in this sphere, article 43 provides for member states to conclude agreements with the Security Council to make available armed forces, assistance and facilities, while article 45 provides that member states should hold immediately available national air-force contingents for combined international enforcement action in accordance with article 43 agreements. In this manner it was intended to create a United Nations corps to act as the arm of the Council to suppress threats to, or breaches of, the peace or acts of aggression.

Article 47 provides for the creation of a Military Staffs Committee, composed of the Chiefs of Staff of the five permanent members or their representatives, to advise and assist the Security Council on military requirements and to be responsible for the strategic direction of any armed force placed at the disposal of the Security Council. Indeed, article 46 provides that plans for the application of armed force ‘shall be made by the Security Council with the assistance of the Military Staffs Committee’. However, during the Kuwait crisis of 1990–1, the Military Staffs Committee played an important co-ordinating role, while under Security Council resolution 665 (1990) it was given a more general co-ordination function.

²³⁷ Where no comments are received within three months, the sanctions committee will be so informed and any member may request de-listing. The Secretary-General informed the Security Council on 30 March 2007 that the focal point had been established, S/2007/178. Note that in the *Yusuf* and *Kadi* cases it was argued that the persons concerned had been wrongly listed and that EU Regulation 881/2002, implementing the UN sanctions, should be annulled with regard to them: see the judgment of 21 September 2005 of the European Court of First Instance, T-306/01 and T/315/01 (which refused to review the Regulation) and the opinion of the advocate-general of the European Court of Justice, C-402/05 P of 16 January 2008, which proposed that the judgment of the Court of First Instance be set aside and the Regulation in so far as it related to the persons concerned annulled. The matter is currently before the European Court of Justice.

Because of great power disputes and other factors, none of the projected agreements has been signed and article 43 remains ineffective. This has weakened article 42 to the extent that the envisaged procedure for its implementation has had to be abandoned. This has meant that the UN through a process of interpretation by subsequent conduct has been obliged to reconfigure the collective security regime.

The first example of enforcement action in practice was the United Nations' reaction to the North Korean invasion of the South in 1950,²³⁸ and this only occurred because of a fortuitous combination of circumstances. In June 1950 North Korean forces crossed the 28th Parallel dividing North from South Korea and thus precipitated armed conflict. Almost immediately the Security Council debated the issue and, after declaring that a breach of the peace had taken place, called upon member states to assist the United Nations in achieving a North Korean withdrawal. Two days later, another resolution was adopted which recommended that United Nations members should furnish all necessary assistance to the South Korean authorities, while the third in the trio of Security Council resolutions on this issue authorised the United States to designate the commander of the unified forces established for the purpose of aiding the South Koreans and permitted the use of the United Nations flag by such forces.²³⁹

The only reason that these resolutions were in fact passed by the Council was the absence of the USSR in protest at the seating of the Nationalist Chinese delegation.²⁴⁰ This prevented the exercise of the veto by the Soviet Union and permitted the creation of an authoritative United Nations umbrella for the US-commanded forces combating the North Korean armies. The USSR returned to the Council at the start of August 1950 and effectively blocked further action by the Council on this issue, but they could not reverse what had been achieved, despite claims that the resolutions were not constitutionally valid in view of the Soviet boycott.²⁴¹

However, although termed United Nations forces, the contingents from the sixteen states which sent troops were under effective United States control, pursuant to a series of agreements concluded by that country with each of the contributing states, and were not in any real sense directed by the United Nations other than operating under a general Security

²³⁸ See e.g. Dinstein, *War*, pp. 292 ff.; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 199 ff., and Franck, *Fairness*, p. 223.

²³⁹ Security Council resolutions 82 (1950), 83 (1950) and 84 (1950).

²⁴⁰ See e.g. L. Sohn, *Cases on United Nations Law*, 2nd edn, Brooklyn, 1967, pp. 479 ff.

²⁴¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 481 ff. See also *ibid.*, pp. 509 ff. with regard to the situation following the Chinese involvement in the conflict.

Council authorisation. This improvised operation clearly revealed the deficiencies in the United Nations system of maintaining the peace since the Charter collective security system as originally envisaged could not operate, but it also demonstrated that the system could be reinterpreted so as to function.²⁴²

The second example occurred following the invasion of Kuwait by Iraq on 2 August 1990.²⁴³ Resolution 660 (1990), adopted unanimously the same day by the Security Council, condemned the invasion and called for an immediate and unconditional withdrawal. Resolution 662 (1990) declared that the purported Iraqi annexation of Kuwait had no legal validity and was null and void. States and international organisations were called upon to refrain from any action or dealing that might be interpreted as an indirect recognition of the annexation. The Council, specifically acting under Chapter VII of the UN Charter, demanded in resolution 664 (1990) that Iraq permit the immediate departure of the nationals of third countries²⁴⁴ and in resolution 667 (1990) condemned Iraqi aggressive acts against diplomatic premises and personnel in Kuwait, including the abduction of foreign nationals present in those premises, and demanded the protection of diplomatic premises and personnel.²⁴⁵ Eventually, the Security Council, feeling that the response of Iraq to all the foregoing resolutions and measures adopted had been unsatisfactory, adopted resolution 678 (1990) on 29 November 1990. This allowed Iraq a further period of grace within which to comply with earlier resolutions and withdraw from Kuwait. This 'final opportunity' was to end on 15 January 1991. After this date, member states co-operating with the Government of Kuwait were authorised to use all necessary means to uphold and implement Security Council resolution 660 (1990) and to restore international peace and security in the area. All states were requested to provide appropriate support for the actions undertaken in pursuance of this resolution. The armed action commenced on 16 January 1991 by a coalition of states²⁴⁶

²⁴² Franck has written, referring to the 'adaptive capacity' of the UN, that the 'gradual emancipation of article 42 as a free-standing authority for deploying collective force, *ad hoc*, had prevented the collapse of the Charter system in the absence of the standby militia envisioned by article 43', *Recourse*, p. 23.

²⁴³ See Lauterpacht *et al.*, *Kuwait Crisis: Basic Documents*. See also O. Schachter, 'United Nations Law in the Gulf Conflict', 85 AJIL, 1991, p. 452.

²⁴⁴ See also Security Council resolution 674 (1990).

²⁴⁵ See generally *Keesing's Record of World Events*, pp. 37631 ff. and pp. 37694 ff. (1990).

²⁴⁶ The following states supplied armed forces and/or warships or aircraft for the enforcement of the UN resolutions: USA, UK, France, Egypt, Syria, Saudi Arabia, Morocco, the Netherlands, Australia, Italy, Spain, Argentina, Belgium, Canada, Pakistan, Norway,

under the leadership of the United States can thus be seen as a legitimate use of force authorised by the UN Security Council under its enforcement powers elaborated in Chapter VII of the UN Charter and binding upon all member states of the UN by virtue of article 25.²⁴⁷ This is to be seen in the context of the purposes laid down by the Council in binding resolutions, that is the immediate and unconditional withdrawal of Iraq from Kuwait and the restoration of international peace and security in the area, and within the framework of the exercise of enforcement action in the light of the absence of article 43 arrangements.

However, the question has arisen whether the process of reinterpreting the Charter by subsequent conduct has moved beyond the authorisation by the Council to member states to take action in the absence of specifically designated UN forces operating under the aegis of the Military Staffs Committee. In particular, is it possible to argue that in certain situations such authorisation may be implied rather than expressly granted?²⁴⁸ Following the Gulf War, revolts against the central government in Iraq led to widespread repression by Iraqi forces against the Shias in the south and the Kurds in the north of the country. Security Council resolution 688 (1991), which was not adopted under Chapter VII and did not authorise the use of force, condemned such repression 'the consequences of which threaten international peace and security' and insisted that Iraq allow immediate access by international humanitarian organisations to those in need in the country. In the light of the repression, the US, UK and France sent troops into northern Iraq to create a safe haven for humanitarian operations. They were speedily withdrawn and replaced by a small number of UN Guards operating with the consent of Iraq.²⁴⁹ In addition, the Western states declared a 'no-fly' zone over southern Iraq in August 1992, having established one over northern Iraq in April 1991. The justification of these zones was argued to be that of supporting resolution 688.²⁵⁰ Further, it was maintained that the right of self-defence

Denmark, USSR, Bangladesh, Senegal, Niger, Czechoslovakia and the Gulf Co-operation Council (Kuwait, Qatar, Bahrain, Oman and the United Arab Emirates): see *Sunday Times* 'War in the Gulf' Briefing, 27 January 1991, p. 9.

²⁴⁷ As well as a legitimate use of force in collective self-defence: see above, chapter 20, p. 1146.

²⁴⁸ See e.g. Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 264 ff.

²⁴⁹ See e.g. White, *Keeping the Peace*, p. 192, and F. L. Kirgis, *International Organisations in their Legal Setting*, 2nd edn, St Paul, 1993, pp. 854 ff.

²⁵⁰ See e.g. the statement of the Minister of State at the Foreign Office on 27 January 1993, UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, p. 739, and see also *ibid.*, at p. 728 and UKMIL, 65 BYIL, 1994, p. 683. See also the statement of President Bush of the US cited in Kirgis, *International Organisations*, p. 856. Note that on 3 September 1996, in response to the entry of Iraqi

existed with regard to flights over the zones, thus permitting proportionate responses to Iraqi actions.²⁵¹ Whether resolution 688 can indeed be so interpreted is unclear. What is clear is that such actions were not explicitly mandated by the UN. It is also to be noted that the UK in particular has also founded such actions upon the need to prevent a humanitarian crisis as supported by resolution 688. In March 2001, for example, it was noted that the no-fly zones were established 'in support of resolution 688' and 'are justified under international law in response to a situation of overwhelming humanitarian necessity'.²⁵²

More dramatically, the use of force based impliedly on Security Council resolutions occurred in March 2003, when the UK and the US commenced military action against Iraq.²⁵³ The legal basis for this action was deemed to rest upon the 'combined effect of resolutions 678, 687 and 1441'.²⁵⁴ Resolution 1441 (2002)²⁵⁵ *inter alia* recognised that Iraq's non-compliance with Council resolutions and proliferation of weapons of mass destruction posed a threat to international peace and security and recalled that resolution 678 authorised member states to use all necessary means to restore international peace and security. Citing Chapter VII, the resolution decided that Iraq was and remained in material breach of resolutions

troops and tanks into the northern 'no-fly' Kurdish zone in order to aid one of the Kurdish groups against another, US aircraft launched a series of air strikes against Iraq and extended the southern 'no-fly' zone from the 32nd to the 33rd parallel. In so doing the US government cited Security Council resolution 688 (1991): see *The Economist*, 7 September 1996, pp. 55–6. See also Gray, 'Unity to Polarisation', p. 9.

²⁵¹ UKMIL, 64 BYIL, 1993, pp. 728 and 740 with regard to Western air raids against Iraqi targets on 13 January 1993. See also UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, p. 592 and UKMIL, 70 BYIL, 1999, pp. 565, 568 and 590.

²⁵² See UKMIL, 72 BYIL, 2001, p. 694. See also above, chapter 20, p. 1156.

²⁵³ Note that in December 1998, UK and US airplanes attacked targets in Iraq in response to the withdrawal by that state of co-operation with UN weapons inspectors and based this action on resolutions 1154 (1998) and 1205 (1998) adopted under Chapter VII. The resolutions did not authorise force, but the former noted that any violation by Iraq of its obligations to accord 'immediate, unconditional and unrestricted access' to UNSCOM and the IAEA would have 'severest consequences' and the latter declared that Iraq's decision to end co-operation with UNSCOM was 'a flagrant violation' of resolution 687 (1991): see UKMIL, 69 BYIL, 1998, pp. 589 ff., and Gray, 'Unity to Polarisation', pp. 11 ff.

²⁵⁴ See the Attorney General, Hansard, House of Lords, vol. 646, Written Answer, 17 March 2003. This UK position was referred to without demur by the US Secretary of State, Briefing, 17 March, 2003: see www.state.gov/secretary/rm/2003/18771.htm. See also the letters dated 21 March 2003 sent to the President of the Security Council from the Permanent Representatives of the UK, US and Australia, S/2003/350-2. See also 52 ICLQ, 2003, p. 812 ff.

²⁵⁵ See, as to resolutions 678 (1990) and 687 (1991), above, pp. 1253 and 1248.

including 687, decided to afford that state a 'final opportunity to comply with its disarmament obligations under relevant resolutions of the Council' and established an enhanced inspection regime. The Council called for declarations from Iraq detailing all aspects of its programmes with regard to weapons of mass destruction and ballistic missiles, noting that false statements or omissions would constitute a further material breach. It decided that Iraq was to provide UNMOVIC and the IAEA with immediate, unimpeded, unconditional and unrestricted access to all relevant sites, records and officials. The Council decided to convene further to 'consider the situation and the need for full compliance with all of the relevant Council resolutions in order to secure international peace and security' and recalled in that context that 'the Council has repeatedly warned Iraq that it will face serious consequences as a result of its continued violations of its obligations'. This resolution was adopted unanimously.

Subsequent events, however, revealed Iraqi deficiencies in complying with the resolution.²⁵⁶ The Security Council was divided on the need for a follow-up resolution to 1441 in order for force to be used and a draft resolution drawn up by the UK, US and Spain was withdrawn on 17 March once it became clear that one or more permanent members would exercise a veto.²⁵⁷ On 20 March the military operations commenced. The Security Council can authorise member states to resort to force in order to maintain international peace and security, as in the Kuwait conflict of 1990–1, and the Council did affirm that Iraq's failure to comply with its obligations in resolution 687 to divest itself of weapons of mass destruction constituted a threat to international peace and security. Resolution 1441 was intended as a final opportunity and it was provided that serious consequences would ensue upon Iraq's failure to comply. However, whether this amounts to a justification in international law for the UK and the US to use force in the face of the opposition of other Security Council members remains controversial.²⁵⁸

²⁵⁶ See e.g. UNMOVIC Report of 28 February 2003, S/2003/232, pp. 3, 12–13 and UNMOVIC Working Document on Unresolved Disarmament Issues: Iraq's Proscribed Weapons Programme ('Cluster Document'), 6 March 2003.

²⁵⁷ See US Secretary of State, Briefing, 17 March 2003, www.state.gov/secretary/rm/2003/18771.htm.

²⁵⁸ See e.g. 'Agora', 97 AJIL, 2003, p. 553; Gray, *Use of Force*, pp. 270 ff.; Dinstein, *War*, pp. 297 ff.; E. Papastavridis, 'Interpretation of Security Council Resolutions under Chapter VII in the Aftermath of the Iraqi Crisis', 56 ICLQ, 2007, p. 83; J.-M. Sorel, 'L'ONU et l'Irak: Le Vil Plomb N'Est Pas Transformé en Or Pur', 108 RGDIP, 2004, p. 845; S. Wheatley, 'The Security Council, Democratic Legitimacy and Regime Change in Iraq', 17 EJIL, 2006, p. 531; and C. Greenwood, 'International Law and the Pre-emptive Use of Force:

The use of force in non-enforcement situations

In some recent peacekeeping situations, missions established without reference to Chapter VII of the Charter have later been expanded with mandates wholly or partly referring specifically to Chapter VII and in some cases this has led to the application of force by the UN. The results are variable. In both Bosnia and Somalia the temptation to resort to more robust tactics (often for the best of humanitarian reasons) involving the use of force, but without adequate political or military resources or support, led to severe difficulties.

Former Yugoslavia The outbreak of hostilities in Yugoslavia led the Security Council in resolution 713 (1991), adopted on 25 September 1991, to impose an arms embargo on that country. As the situation deteriorated, the decision was taken to establish a peacekeeping force (the UN Protection Force or UNPROFOR) in order to ensure the demilitarisation of three protected areas in Croatia (inhabited by Serbs).²⁵⁹ This resolution did not refer to Chapter VII and did specifically note the request of the Government of Yugoslavia for a peacekeeping operation.²⁶⁰ The full deployment of the force was authorised by resolution 749 (1992). During the following months the mandate of UNPROFOR was gradually extended. By resolution 762 (1992), for example, it was authorised to monitor the situation in areas of Croatia under Yugoslav army control,²⁶¹ while by resolution 779 (1992) UNPROFOR assumed responsibility for monitoring the demilitarisation of the Prevlaka peninsula near Dubrovnik.²⁶² At the same time, the situation in Bosnia and Herzegovina deteriorated. Both Croatia and the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) were criticised for their actions in Bosnia in resolution 757 (1992)²⁶³ and sanctions were imposed upon the latter. In resolution 758 (1992), the Council approved an enlargement of UNPROFOR's mandate and strength and

Afghanistan, Al-Qaida and Iraq', 4 *San Diego Journal of International Law*, 2003, p. 7. See also Sarooshi, *Collective Security*, chapter 4 and pp. 174 ff. with regard to delegation of Chapter VII powers to member states and the limitations thereupon.

²⁵⁹ Security Council resolution 743 (1992). See also the Report of the Secretary-General, S/23592 and Security Council resolutions 721 (1991) and 724 (1991).

²⁶⁰ The resolution, however, did mention article 25.

²⁶¹ See also Security Council resolution 769 (1992).

²⁶² Note also Security Council resolution 802 (1993) criticising Croatia for its attacks within or adjacent to the UN protected areas and upon UNPROFOR personnel.

²⁶³ The Security Council in this resolution was explicitly acting under Chapter VII. See also resolution 752 (1992) also criticising outside interference in Bosnia, which did not refer to Chapter VII.

authorised the deployment of military observers and related personnel and equipment to Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia.²⁶⁴

In a further measure responding to the dire situation, the Security Council, acting under Chapter VII, adopted resolution 770 (1992) calling on all states to 'take nationally or through regional agencies or arrangements all measures necessary' to facilitate, in co-ordination with the UN, the delivery of humanitarian assistance to and within Bosnia. The phrase 'all necessary measures', it will be recalled, permits in UN terminology the resort to force.²⁶⁵ The mandate of UNPROFOR was augmented by resolution 776 (1992) to incorporate support for the humanitarian relief activities of the UN High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) and, in particular, to provide protection where requested. It was noted in the Secretary-General's Report, approved by this resolution, that the normal peacekeeping rules of engagement would be followed, so that force could be used in self-defence, particularly where attempts were made to prevent the carrying out of the mandate.²⁶⁶ However, resolution 776 (1992) made no mention of either Chapter VII or 'all necessary measures'.

A further stage in the evolution of UNPROFOR's role occurred with the adoption of the 'no-fly' ban imposed on military flights over Bosnia by Security Council resolution 781 (1992). UNPROFOR was given the task of monitoring compliance with this ban.²⁶⁷

In order to protect certain Bosnian Moslem areas under siege from Bosnian Serb forces, the Security Council established a number of 'safe

²⁶⁴ Additional elements were deployed to ensure the security of the airport by resolution 761 (1992). Note that neither of these resolutions referred to Chapter VII. See also S/1994/300, with regard to UNPROFOR's mandate relating to Sarajevo airport. The airlift of humanitarian supplies into this airport was the longest lasting such airlift in history and well over 150,000 tons were delivered: see S/1995/444, para. 23.

²⁶⁵ The Secretary-General was, however, careful to state that this resolution created no additional mandate for UNPROFOR: see S/1995/444, para. 25.

²⁶⁶ See S/24540. Note that a number of resolutions extended the application of Chapter VII to UNPROFOR's freedom of movement, e.g. resolutions 807 (1993) and 847 (1993), and force was used on a number of occasions in self-defence: see e.g. S/1995/444, para. 55.

²⁶⁷ See also Security Council resolution 786 (1992). The ban on air activity was expanded in resolution 816 (1993) to cover flights by all fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft. At the request of the Secretary-General, the no-fly zone was enforced by aircraft from NATO: see S/1995/444, para. 30. A 'dual key' system was put into operation under which decisions on targeting and execution were to be taken jointly by UN and NATO commanders and the principle of proportionality of response to violations was affirmed: see e.g. Joint Press Statement of 29 October 1994, PKO/32.

areas'.²⁶⁸ Although Chapter VII was referred to in these resolutions, it was cited only in the context of resolution 815 (1993), which dealt with the security of UNPROFOR personnel. The enforcement of the 'safe areas' was therefore to be attained by UNPROFOR personnel authorised to use force only to protect themselves.²⁶⁹ Although the Secretary-General stated that approximately 34,000 extra troops would be necessary, only an additional 7,000 were authorised.²⁷⁰ At the request of the Secretary-General, NATO established a 3-kilometre 'total exclusion zone' and a 20-kilometre 'military exclusion zone' around Gorazde and a 20-kilometre 'heavy weapons exclusion zone' around Sarajevo. These zones were to be enforced by air strikes if necessary, although no Security Council resolutions referred to such zones or created any special regime with regard to them.²⁷¹ Relations between UNPROFOR and the Bosnian Serbs led to a series of incidents in the spring of 1995. The latter breached the Sarajevo no-heavy-weapons arrangement. This precipitated NATO airstrikes which provoked the taking hostage of several hundred UNPROFOR soldiers. The 'safe area' of Srebrenica was then captured by Bosnian Serb forces in July 1995, involving major human rights abuses against the population. After incidents involving other 'safe areas' and Sarajevo, NATO with UN approval launched a series of airstrikes.²⁷² At the same time, Bosnian and Croat forces captured areas held by the Bosnian Serbs. A ceasefire agreement came into force on 12 October 1995.²⁷³

UN peacekeeping missions in former Yugoslavia were reorganised in March 1995, following the capture by Croatian forces of three of the four protected areas inhabited by Serbs in Croatia. The UN missions therefore comprised UNPROFOR in Bosnia,²⁷⁴ the UN Confidence Restoration Operation in Croatia (UNCRO)²⁷⁵ and the UN Preventive Deployment

²⁶⁸ See resolutions 819 (1993) and 824 (1993). These were Srebrenica, Sarajevo, Tuzla, Zepa, Gorazde and Bihac.

²⁶⁹ See also Security Council resolution 836 (1993).

²⁷⁰ Security Council resolution 844 (1993). See also S/25939. Note that the Secretary-General called for the demilitarisation of the 'safe areas', S/1994/1389. At the request of the Secretary, UNPROFOR was also given the task of monitoring the ceasefire agreement between the Bosnian and Croatian armies: see Security Council resolution 908 (1994), and given additional responsibilities with regard to Sarajevo: see Security Council resolution 900 (1994).

²⁷¹ S/1995/444, paras. 48–9.

²⁷² See also Security Council resolution 998 (1995) regarding the proposal to establish a rapid reaction force.

²⁷³ See S/1995/987. ²⁷⁴ See also Security Council resolution 1026 (1995).

²⁷⁵ See also Security Council resolutions 990 (1995) and 994 (1995).

Force (UNPREDEP) in the former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia.²⁷⁶ As a consequence of the Dayton peace agreement initialled in November 1995, UNPROFOR was replaced by a multinational implementation force (IFOR)²⁷⁷ composed primarily of troops from NATO countries. In addition, it was proposed to set up a UN International Police Task Force to carry out a variety of police-related training and assistance missions.²⁷⁸

The evolution of the UN role in the complex Yugoslav tragedy may be characterised as a series of impromptu actions taken in response to traumatic events. UNPROFOR was never authorised to use force beyond that required in self-defence while performing their rapidly expanding duties. The UN sought to fulfil its fundamental mandated responsibilities with respect to Sarajevo and the transportation of humanitarian aid in co-operation with the warring parties based on the peacekeeping principles of impartiality and consent. But the situation was far from a normal peacekeeping situation of separating hostile forces that consent to such separation. The use of air power was subsequently authorised both in order to defend UNPROFOR personnel and to deter attacks upon the 'safe areas', which had been proclaimed as such with little in the way of initial enforcement means. Eventually air strikes by NATO were resorted to in the face of fears of further Bosnian Serb capture of 'safe areas'. Whether a peacekeeping mission in the traditional sense can ever really be mounted in the conditions then faced in Bosnia must be seriously in doubt, although the humanitarian efforts undertaken were important. Only a meaningful enforcement mandate could have given the UN a chance to put an end to the fighting. But that required a major political commitment and substantial resources. These states are rarely willing to provide unless their own vital national interests are at stake.

Somalia²⁷⁹ The Somali situation marked a similar effort by the UN to resolve a humanitarian crisis arising out of civil war conditions and one that saw a peacekeeping mission drifting into an enforcement one. Following

²⁷⁶ Security Council resolutions 981 (1995), 982 (1995) and 983 (1995). The Security Council had authorised deployment of a preventive force in Macedonia in resolution 795 (1992). See also S/24923, annex.

²⁷⁷ See Security Council resolution 1031 (1995).

²⁷⁸ See e.g. S/1995/1031 and Security Council resolution 1026 (1995). The International Police Task Force was established under resolution 1035 (1995).

²⁷⁹ See e.g. Franck, *Fairness*, pp. 301 ff., and I. Lewis and J. Mayall, 'Somalia' in *The New Interventionism 1991–1994* (ed. J. Mayall), Cambridge, 1996, p. 94. See also J. M. Sorel, 'La Somalie et les Nations Unies', AFDI, 1992, p. 61.

a prolonged period of civil war, the Security Council urged all parties to agree to a ceasefire and imposed an arms embargo. The Secretary-General was requested to organise humanitarian assistance.²⁸⁰ A UN technical mission was then established to look at mechanisms to provide such aid and to examine peacekeeping options.²⁸¹ The UN Operation in Somalia (UNOSOM) was set up shortly thereafter,²⁸² but this modest operation (of fifty ceasefire observers and a security force) was deemed insufficient to ensure the delivery of humanitarian assistance, and the deployment of additional UN security units in order to protect the distribution centres and humanitarian convoys was authorised.²⁸³ However, the situation continued to deteriorate and few humanitarian supplies arrived where needed due to constant attacks.²⁸⁴ Accordingly, after the Secretary-General had concluded that Chapter VII action was required,²⁸⁵ the Security Council determined that the 'magnitude of the human tragedy caused by the conflict in Somalia, further exacerbated by the obstacles being created to the distribution of humanitarian assistance, constitutes a threat to international peace and security'. The use of 'all necessary means to establish as soon as possible a secure environment for humanitarian relief operations' was authorised and the Unified Task Force was created (UNITAF).²⁸⁶ This comprised troops from over twenty states, including some 30,000 from the US.²⁸⁷

This operation was expanded the following spring and UNOSOM II was established with an enlarged mandate with enforcement powers under Chapter VII.²⁸⁸ UNOSOM II was given the humanitarian mandate of UNITAF, together with 'responsibility for the consolidation, expansion and maintenance of a secure environment throughout Somalia' and the provision of security to assist the repatriation of refugees and the assisted resettlement of displaced persons. The force was also to complete the disarmament of factions, enforce the Addis Ababa agreement of January 1993²⁸⁹ and help rebuild the country. The authorisation to take all

²⁸⁰ Security Council resolution 733 (1992). See also S/23829, 1992.

²⁸¹ Security Council resolution 746 (1992).

²⁸² Security Council resolution 751 (1992). This was not originally a Chapter VII operation.

²⁸³ Security Council resolution 775 (1992). See also S/244480, 1992. Under resolution 767 (1992) Somalia was divided into four operational zones for the delivery of food aid and ceasefire purposes.

²⁸⁴ See S/24859, 1992. ²⁸⁵ S/24868, 1992. ²⁸⁶ Security Council resolution 794 (1992).

²⁸⁷ The operation was termed 'Operation Restore Hope' and it arrived in Somalia in December 1992: see S/24976, 1992 and S/25168, 1993.

²⁸⁸ Security Council resolution 814 (1993). See also S/25354, 1993.

²⁸⁹ See S/25168, annex III.

necessary measures was reiterated in resolution 837 (1993), following an attack upon UNOSOM II forces. This authorisation was stated to include taking action against those responsible for the attacks and to establish the effective authority of UNOSOM II throughout the country. A series of military incidents then took place involving UN forces.²⁹⁰ Security Council resolution 897 (1994), while condemning continued violence in the country especially against UN personnel, authorised a reduction in UNOSOM II's force levels to 22,000.²⁹¹ And in resolution 954 (1994), the Council decided to terminate the mission at the end of March 1995 and authorised UNOSOM II to take actions necessary to protect the mission and the withdrawal of personnel and assets and to that end called upon member states to provide assistance to aid the withdrawal process. The Secretary-General concluded his report of 14 October 1994 noting that the vacuum of civil authority and of governmental authority severely hampered the work of the UN, while 'the presence of UNOSOM II troops has had limited impact on the peace process and limited impact on security in the face of continuing interclan fighting and banditry'.²⁹²

Rwanda²⁹³ Following a civil war between government forces and RPF rebels, the Security Council authorised the deployment of the UN Observer Mission Uganda Rwanda (UNOMUR) on the Ugandan side of the border.²⁹⁴ A peace agreement was signed between the parties at Arusha and the UN set up the UN Assistance Mission for Rwanda (UNAMIR) with a mandate to ensure the security of the capital, Kigali, monitor the ceasefire agreement and monitor the security situation generally up to the installation of the new government.²⁹⁵ However, the projected transitional institutions were not set up and the security situation deteriorated. Following the deaths of the Presidents of Rwanda and Burundi in an airplane crash on 5 April 1994, full-scale civil war erupted which led to massacres of Hutu opposition leaders and genocidal actions against members of the Tutsi minority. Faced with this situation, the Security Council rejected the option of strengthening UNAMIR and empowering it

²⁹⁰ See e.g. S/26022, 1993, and Security Council resolutions 865 (1993), 878 (1993), 885 (1993) and 886 (1993).

²⁹¹ See also Security Council resolutions 923 (1994) and 946 (1994).

²⁹² S/1994/1166, Part 2, para. 22. ²⁹³ See e.g. Franck, *Fairness*, pp. 300 ff.

²⁹⁴ See Security Council resolution 846 (1993). See also resolutions 812 (1993) and 891 (1993). This mission was terminated in resolution 928 (1994).

²⁹⁵ Security Council resolution 872 (1993). See also resolutions 893 (1994) and 909 (1994).

under Chapter VII in favour of withdrawing most of the mission from the country.²⁹⁶

As the situation continued to deteriorate, the Council imposed an arms embargo on the country, authorised the increase of UNAMIR to 5,500 and its redeployment in Rwanda and expanded its mandate to include the establishment and maintenance of secure humanitarian areas.²⁹⁷ However, delays in implementing this led to a proposal from France to establish a French-commanded force to act under Chapter VII of the Charter and subject to Security Council authorisation in order to protect displaced persons and civilians at risk. This was accepted in resolution 929 (1994) in which the Council, acting under Chapter VII, authorised a two-month operation (Operation Turquoise) until UNAMIR was up to strength. Member states were authorised to use all necessary measures to achieve their humanitarian objectives. The force, therefore acting as the 1990–1 Gulf War Coalition had on the basis of Security Council authorisation under Chapter VII, established a humanitarian protected zone in south-western Rwanda. Gradually UNAMIR built up to strength and it began deploying troops in the protected zone on 10 August 1994, taking over responsibility from the French-led force shortly thereafter and deploying in areas throughout the country. UNAMIR's mandate ended on 6 March 1996.²⁹⁸

Sierra Leone After prolonged fighting, a military junta took power and the Security Council imposed an oil and arms embargo which was terminated upon the return of the democratically elected President.²⁹⁹ This was followed by the establishment of the UN Observer Mission in Sierra Leone with the function of monitoring the disarmament process and restructuring the security forces.³⁰⁰ This mandate was increased following further violence.³⁰¹ In October 1998, the Security Council, noting the signing of the Lomé Agreement the previous July, set up the UN Mission in Sierra Leone (UNAMSIL) with an initial 6,000 military personnel to replace the previous mission with an enhanced mandate, including establishing a presence at key locations in the country, monitoring the cease-fire and facilitating humanitarian assistance. Specifically acting under

²⁹⁶ Security Council resolution 912 (1994).

²⁹⁷ Security Council resolution 918 (1994). See also resolutions 925 (1994) and 935 (1994).

²⁹⁸ See Security Council resolution 1029 (1995).

²⁹⁹ See resolutions 1132 (1997) and 1156 (1998). ³⁰⁰ See resolution 1181 (1998).

³⁰¹ See resolutions 1220 (1999), 1231 (1999), 1245 (1999) and 1260 (1999).

Chapter VII, paragraph 14 of resolution 1270 (1999), the Council decided that ‘in the discharge of its mandate UNAMSIL may take the necessary action to ensure the security and freedom of movement of its personnel and . . . to afford protection to civilians under imminent threat of physical violence’. The force was increased and the mandate revised in resolution 1289 (2000) to include in paragraph 10, specifically citing Chapter VII, the provision of security at key locations and at other sites and to assist the Sierra Leone law enforcement authorities in the discharge of their responsibilities. UNAMSIL was further authorised to ‘take the necessary action’ to fulfil the additional tasks.³⁰²

The Democratic Republic of the Congo The Security Council has also concerned itself with the civil war and foreign interventions in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (the former Zaire). Following fighting involving both internal and external forces, the Lusaka Ceasefire Agreement was signed in July 1999.³⁰³ This was welcomed by the Security Council and the deployment of a small UN military liaison force was authorised.³⁰⁴ This force was designated the UN Organisation Mission in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (MONUC).³⁰⁵ The Mission was expanded and extended with a mandate *inter alia* to include monitoring the ceasefire and to supervise and verify the disengagement arrangements.³⁰⁶ Paragraph 8 of the resolution, specifically citing Chapter VII, states that the Council has decided that MONUC ‘may take the necessary action . . . to protect United Nations and co-located JMC [Joint Military Commission] personnel, facilities, installations and equipment, ensure the security and freedom of movement of its personnel, and protect civilians under imminent threat of physical violence’. During the summer of 2000, fighting broke out between Ugandan and Rwandan forces in the Congo and the Security Council in resolution 1304 (2000), acting under Chapter VII, demanded that Uganda and Rwanda withdraw all their forces from the Congo and that all other foreign military presence and activity, direct and indirect, be brought to an end. MONUC was asked to monitor the cessation of hostilities and

³⁰² The mission was further extended and expanded: see e.g. resolutions 1299 (2000), 1346 (2001), 1400 (2002) and 1436 (2002). It ended in 2005 to be succeeded by the UN Integrated Office in Sierra Leone: see resolutions 1562 (2004) and 1610 (2005). See also, as to the role of ECOWAS, below, p. 1278, note 365.

³⁰³ See S/1999/815 and resolution 1234 (1999). See also P. Okawa, ‘Congo’s War: The Legal Dimensions of a Protracted Conflict’, 77 BYIL, 2006, p. 203, and above, chapter 20, p. 1154.

³⁰⁴ Resolution 1258 (1999).

³⁰⁵ Resolution 1279 (1999).

³⁰⁶ Resolution 1291 (2000).

the disengagement of forces and withdrawal of foreign forces.³⁰⁷ This demand was repeated in resolutions 1341 (2001) and 1355 (2001), again acting under Chapter VII.³⁰⁸ In resolution 1797 (2008), MONUC was authorised to assist the authorities in organising, preparing and conducting local elections, while in resolution 1804 (2008), the Security Council demanded that armed groups and militias in the eastern part of the country immediately lay down their arms and turn themselves in to Congolese and MONUC authorities for disarmament, demobilisation, repatriation, resettlement and reintegration. In virtually all of these resolutions, the situation was characterised as a 'threat to international peace and security in the region'.³⁰⁹

Sudan Following a long-running civil war in the south of the country, an agreement was signed on 20 July 2002 (the Machakos Protocol) between the parties and this led to subsequent agreements in 2004. In June that year, the UN established a special political mission (UNAMIS) to assist the parties. Faced with a deteriorating situation in Darfur in the western Sudan, the Security Council, acting under Chapter VII of the Charter, adopted resolution 1556 (2004), calling for political talks between the parties, endorsing the dispatch of international monitors, including a protection force envisioned by the African Union, and assigning certain responsibilities to UNAMIS.³¹⁰ On 9 January 2005, a full peace agreement (the Comprehensive Peace Agreement) was signed, ending the civil war in the south of Sudan. In resolution 1590 (2005), the Council, acting under Chapter VII, established the UN Mission in Sudan (UNMIS) to support implementation of the Comprehensive Peace Agreement and to take over from UNAMIS, and authorised it to 'take the necessary action' to protect UN and humanitarian personnel. A peaceful solution to the Darfur crisis was also called for in this resolution.³¹¹ African Union efforts to seek a solution to the crisis in Darfur culminated in the signing of the Darfur

³⁰⁷ The mandate of MONUC was further extended in a series of resolutions: 1316 (2000); 1332 (2000); 1493 (2003); 1565 (2004); 1592 (2005); 1635 (2005); 1711 (2006); and 1794 (2007).

³⁰⁸ See also resolutions 1376 (2001), 1399 (2002), 1417 (2002), 1457 (2003) and 1468 (2003).

³⁰⁹ See as to the imposition of sanctions, above, p. 1247.

³¹⁰ See also resolution 1564 (2004) authorising a human rights presence and resolution 1574 (2004).

³¹¹ Note that on 1 February 2005, a UN Commission of Inquiry into Darfur called for in resolution 1564 (2004) reported that while genocide had not been committed by the Sudan government, its forces and allied Janjaweed militias had carried out 'indiscriminate attacks, including killing of civilians, torture, enforced disappearances, destruction of

Peace Agreement on 5 May 2006. Following a recommendation from the UN Secretary-General,³¹² the Security Council adopted resolution 1706 (2006) under Chapter VII, determining that the situation in Darfur constituted a threat to international peace and security and deciding that the UNMIS forces be increased and deployed in Darfur in order to support implementation of the Darfur Peace Agreement, without prejudice to their existing mandate in the south of Sudan. UNMIS was authorised to use all necessary measures to protect UN personnel, to support implementation of the peace agreement, to protect civilians under threat of physical violence and to collect arms.³¹³

Following discussions with the African Union in view of the deteriorating situation in Darfur,³¹⁴ and in the light of the presence of forces from the African Mission in the Sudan (AMIS),³¹⁵ the Security Council, noting that the situation continued to constitute a threat to international peace and security, adopted resolution 1769 (2007) establishing the UN–African Union Hybrid Operation in Darfur (UNAMID) incorporating AMIS personnel to consist of a force of up to 19,555 military personnel. Unity of command and control was provided for, with command and control structures and backstopping provided by the United Nations. The Council, acting under Chapter VII, decided that UNAMID was authorised to take the necessary action to protect its personnel, facilities, installations and equipment, and to ensure the security and freedom of movement of its own personnel and humanitarian workers, to support early and effective implementation of the Darfur Peace Agreement, to prevent the disruption of its implementation and armed attacks, and to protect civilians, without prejudice to the responsibility of the government of Sudan.

The range of UN actions from humanitarian assistance to enforcement – conclusions

The UN has not been able to operate Chapter VII as originally envisaged. It has, however, been able to develop a variety of mechanisms to fill the

villages, rape and other forms of sexual violence, pillaging and forced displacement', S/2005/60.

³¹² S/2006/591.

³¹³ The mandate of UNMIS was extended in resolutions 1709 (2006), 1714 (2006) and 1755 (2007).

³¹⁴ See S/2007/307/Rev.1. As to the imposition of sanctions, see above, p. 1247, and as to the reference of the Darfur situation to the International Criminal Court, see above, chapter 8, p. 412.

³¹⁵ See below, p. 1280.

gap left by the non-implementation of article 43. First and foremost, the Council may delegate its enforcement powers to member states. This occurred in Korea, the Gulf War and to some extent in Rwanda. However, the events concerning Iraq have shown uncertainty as to the extent to which, if at all, such authorisation may be implied from resolutions adopted. The UN has also been able to create peacekeeping forces, whose mandate has traditionally been to separate hostile forces with their consent, such as in the Middle East and in Cyprus. The evolution of peacekeeping activities to include confused civil war situations where fighting has not ended and no lasting ceasefire has been put into operation, although prefigured in the Congo crisis of the 1960s, has really taken place in the last few years. It has brought attendant dangers for, as has been seen, the slippage from peacekeeping to self-defence activities more widely defined and thence to *de facto* enforcement action is sometimes hard to avoid and complicated to justify in legal terms. Consent is the basis of traditional peacekeeping and irrelevant in enforcement activities. In the mandate drift that has been evident in some situations, elements of both consent and imposition have been present in a way that has confused the role of the UN. Nevertheless, behind the difficulties of the UN have lain a dearth of both political will demonstrated by, and material resources provided by, member states for the completion of complex enforcement actions.

Developments that have been seen in recent years have demonstrated an acceptance of a far broader conception of what constitutes a threat to international peace and security, so that not only external aggression but certain purely internal convulsions may qualify, thus constraining further the scope of article 2(7) and the exclusive jurisdiction of states. Secondly, the range of actions taken by the Security Council under Chapter VII has increased to cover a wide variety of missions and the creation of international criminal tribunals to prosecute alleged war criminals for crimes occurring within particular states arising out of civil wars. Not only that, but with regard to Iraq, the Security Council took a range of binding measures of unprecedented scope, from the guaranteeing of a contested boundary to implementing strict controls on certain kinds of armaments and establishing a compensation commission to be funded by a levy on oil exports. Finally, increasing flexibility has been manifested in the creation and use of such forces. The establishment of the hybrid UN–African Union force for Darfur is an interesting development and one that may prefigure a number of similar operations as regions may increasingly wish to marry regional personnel with expertise, equipment and logistical support from outside the region.

The Security Council, international law and the International Court of Justice

The issue of the relationship between binding decisions of the Council and international law generally has arisen with particular force in recent years in view of the rapidly increased range and nature of activity by the Security Council. The issue has involved particular consideration of the role of the International Court.³¹⁶ The Security Council is, of course, constrained by the provisions of the Charter itself. It must follow the procedures laid down and act within the confines of its constitutional authority as detailed particularly in Chapters V to VII. Its composition and voting procedures are laid down, as are the conditions under which it may adopt binding enforcement measures. As the International Court has emphasised, '[t]he political character of an organ cannot release it from the observance of the treaty provisions established by the Charter when they constitute limitations on its powers or criteria for its judgment.'³¹⁷ In particular, the Council must under article 24(2) act in accordance with the Purposes and Principles of the Charter, article 1(1) of which declares that one of the aims of the organisation is to bring about a resolution

³¹⁶ See, for example, G. R. Watson, 'Constitutionalism, Judicial Review, and the World Court', 34 *Harvard International Law Journal*, 1993, p. 1; Gowlland-Debbas, 'Security Council Enforcement', p. 55, and Gowlland-Debbas, 'The Relationship between the International Court of Justice and the Security Council in the Light of the *Lockerbie* Case', 88 *AJIL*, 1994, p. 643; R. St J. Macdonald, 'Changing Relations between the International Court of Justice and the Security Council of the United Nations', *Canadian YIL*, 1993, p. 3; R. F. Kennedy, '*Libya v. United States*: The International Court of Justice and the Power of Judicial Review', 33 *Va. JIL*, 1993, p. 899; T. M. Franck, 'The "Powers of Appreciation": Who is the Ultimate Guardian of UN Legality?', 86 *AJIL*, 1992, p. 519, and Franck, *Fairness*, pp. 242 ff.; W. M. Reisman, 'The Constitutional Crisis in the United Nations', 87 *AJIL*, 1993, p. 83; E. McWhinney, 'The International Court as Emerging Constitutional Court and the Co-ordinate UN Institutions (Especially the Security Council): Implications of the *Aerial Incident at Lockerbie*', *Canadian YIL*, 1992, p. 261; J. M. Sorel, 'Les Ordonnances de la Cour Internationale de Justice du 14 Avril 1992 dans l'Affaire Relative a des Questions d'Interpretation et d'Application de la Convention de Montreal de 1971 Resultant de l'Incident Aérien de Lockerbie', *Revue Générale de Droit International Public*, 1993, p. 689; M. N. Shaw, 'The Security Council and the International Court of Justice: Judicial Drift and Judicial Function' in *The International Court of Justice* (eds. A. S. Muller, D. Raič and J. M. Thuránszky), The Hague, 1997, p. 219; J. Alvarez, 'Judging the Security Council', 90 *AJIL*, 1996, p. 1, and D. Akande, 'The International Court of Justice and the Security Council: Is There Room for Judicial Control of Decisions of the Political Organs of the United Nations?', 46 *ICLQ*, 1997, p. 309.

³¹⁷ *Conditions of Admission of a State to Membership in the United Nations*, ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 64; 15 *AD*, p. 333. See also Judge Bedjaoui, the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 45; 94 *ILR*, pp. 478, 528.

of international disputes by peaceful means 'and in conformity with the principles of justice and international law'.³¹⁸

The Council has recently not only made determinations as to the existence of a threat to or breach of international peace and security under article 39 in traditional inter-state conflict situations, but also under Chapter VII binding determinations as to the location of boundaries, supervision of destruction of weaponry, liability under international law for loss or damage, methods of compensation, asserted repudiation of foreign debt,³¹⁹ the establishment of tribunals to try individual war criminals,³²⁰ and assertions as to the use of force against those responsible for, and those inciting, attacks against UN personnel, including their arrest, prosecution and punishment.³²¹ In addition, the Council has asserted that particular acts were null and void, demanding non-recognition.³²²

In view of this increased activity and the impact this has upon member states, the issue has arisen as to whether there is a body capable of ensuring that the Council does act in conformity with the Charter and international law. Since the International Court is the 'principal judicial organ' of the UN,³²³ it would seem to be the natural candidate, and indeed the problem has been posed in two recent cases. In the *Genocide (Bosnia and Herzegovina v. Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro))* case,³²⁴ it was claimed by Bosnia that the Security Council-imposed arms embargo upon the former Yugoslavia had to be construed in a manner that did not deprive Bosnia of its inherent right of self-defence under article 51 of the Charter and under customary international law.³²⁵ In the *Lockerbie* case,³²⁶ Libya claimed that the UK and US were seeking to compel it to surrender alleged

³¹⁸ See Judge Weeramantry's Dissenting Opinion in the *Lockerbie* case, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 65 and that of Judge Bedjaoui, *ibid.*, p. 46; 94 ILR, pp. 548 and 529. See also Judge Fitzmaurice in the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 17, 294; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 284-5.

³¹⁹ See Security Council resolution 687 (1991) with regard to Iraq after the Gulf War.

³²⁰ Security Council resolutions 808 (1993) and 827 (1993) regarding former Yugoslavia and resolution 955 (1994) regarding Rwanda. See also the *Tadić* case decided by the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, Case No. IT-94-1-AR72, pp. 13 ff.; 105 ILR, pp. 419, 428 ff.

³²¹ Security Council resolution 837 (1993) concerning Somalia.

³²² Security Council resolutions 662 (1990) regarding the purported annexation by Iraq of Kuwait and 541 (1983) terming the purported Turkish Cypriot state 'legally invalid'.

³²³ Article 92 of the Charter. ³²⁴ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 6; 95 ILR, pp. 1, 21.

³²⁵ See also the second provisional measures order, ICJ Reports, 1993, pp. 325, 327-8; 95 ILR, pp. 43, 45-6. The Court confined itself to the Genocide Convention.

³²⁶ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 3, 14; 94 ILR, pp. 478, 497.

bombers contrary to the Montreal Convention, 1971 (which required that a state either prosecute or extradite alleged offenders) and that the Council's actions in resolutions 731 (1992) and 748 (1992)³²⁷ were contrary to international law.

While the question of the compatibility of Security Council resolutions with international law was not discussed by the Court in the *Bosnia* case, the issue assumed central position in the *Lockerbie* case. The Court here affirmed that all member states were obliged to accept and carry out the decisions of the Security Council in accordance with article 25 of the Charter and that *prima facie* this obligation extended to resolution 748 (1992), which imposed sanctions upon Libya for failing to extradite the suspects. Thus, in accordance with article 103 of the Charter, under which obligations under the Charter prevail over obligations contained in other international agreements, the resolution prevailed over the Montreal Convention.³²⁸ Judge Shahabuddeen in his Separate Opinion underlined that the issue in the case was whether a decision of the Council could override the legal rights of states and, if so, whether there were any limitations upon its power to characterise a situation as one justifying the making of the decision importing such consequences.³²⁹

The issue was raised in the request for provisional measures phase of the *Congo v. Uganda* case. Uganda argued that the request by the Congo for interim measures would 'directly conflict with the Lusaka Agreement, and with the Security Council resolutions – including resolution 1304 . . . calling for implementation of the Agreement'.³³⁰ The Court noted that resolution 1304 was adopted under Chapter VII, but concluded after quoting the text of the resolution that the Security Council had taken no decision which would *prima facie* preclude the rights claimed by the Congo from being regarded as appropriate for protection by the indication of provisional measures.³³¹ While there is no doubt that under the Charter system the Council's discretion to determine the existence of threats to or breaches of international peace and security is virtually absolute, limited only by inherent notions of good faith and non-abuse

³²⁷ Calling upon Libya to surrender the suspects and imposing sanctions for failing so to do.

³²⁸ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 15; 94 ILR, p. 498.

³²⁹ ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 32; 94 ILR, p. 515. Judge Lachs noted that the Court was bound 'to respect' the binding decisions of the Security Council as part of international law, ICJ Reports, 1992, p. 26; 94 ILR, p. 509. See Franck, *Fairness*, p. 243, who emphasised that the verb used, to 'respect', does not mean to 'defer to'. Note that Judge Lachs also pointed to the Court as the 'guardian of legality for the international community as a whole, both within and without the United Nations', *ibid.*

³³⁰ ICJ Reports, Order of 1 July 2000, para. 30.

³³¹ *Ibid.*, para. 36.

of rights,³³² and its discretion to impose measures consequent upon that determination in order to maintain or restore international peace and security is undoubtedly extensive,³³³ the determination of the legality or illegality of particular situations is essentially the Council's view as to the matching of particular facts with existing rules of international law. That view, when adopted under Chapter VII, will bind member states, but where it is clearly wrong in law and remains unrectified by the Council subsequently, a challenge to the system is indubitably posed. While the Court can, and has, examined and analysed UN resolutions in the course of deciding a case or rendering an Advisory Opinion, for it to assert a right of judicial review in the fullest sense enabling it to declare invalid a binding Security Council resolution would equally challenge the system as it operates. Between the striking down of Chapter VII decisions and the acceptance of resolutions clearly embodying propositions contrary to international law, an ambiguous and indeterminate area lies.

*The role of the General Assembly*³³⁴

The focus of attention during the 1950s shifted from the Security Council to the General Assembly as the use of the veto by the permanent members led to a perception of the reduced effectiveness of the Council. Since it was never really envisaged that the General Assembly would play a large part in the preservation of international peace and security, its powers as defined in the Charter were vague and imprecise. Articles 10 to 14 provide that the Assembly may discuss any question within the scope of the Charter and may consider the general principles of co-operation in the maintenance of international peace and security. The Assembly may make recommendations with respect to questions relating to international peace to members of the United Nations or the Security Council or both, provided (except in the case of general principles of co-operation, including disarmament) the Council is not dealing with the particular matter. In addition, any

³³² See e.g. Gowlland-Debbas, 'Security Council Enforcement', pp. 93–4. See also the *Tadić* case decided by the Appeals Chamber of the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia, Case No. IT-94-1-AR72, pp. 13 ff.; 105 ILR, pp. 419, 428 ff.

³³³ Note that under article 1(1) actions to bring about the adjustment or settlement of international disputes or situations which might lead to a breach of the peace must be in conformity with 'the principles of justice and international law', while there is no such qualification with regard to effective collective measures to prevent and remove threats to the peace and the suppression of breaches of the peace or acts of aggression.

³³⁴ See e.g. Simma, *Charter*, pp. 247 ff., and White, *Keeping the Peace*, part II.

question respecting international peace and security on which action is necessary has to be referred to the Security Council.

The Uniting for Peace resolution was adopted by the Assembly in 1950 and was founded on the view that as the Security Council had the primary responsibility for the maintenance of peace under article 24, it could therefore be argued that the Assembly possessed a secondary responsibility in such matters, which could be activated in the event of obstruction in the Security Council. The resolution³³⁵ declared that where the Council failed to exercise its responsibility upon the occurrence of a threat to the peace, breach of the peace or act of aggression because of the exercise of the veto by any of its permanent members, the General Assembly was to consider the matter at once with a view to making appropriate recommendations to members for collective measures. Such measures could include the use of force when necessary in the case of a breach of the peace or act of aggression, and, if not already in session, the Assembly would be able to meet within twenty-four hours in emergency special session.³³⁶

However problems soon arose in the context of the creation by the Assembly in 1956 of the United Nations Emergency Force which was to supervise the ceasefire in the Middle East, and by the United Nations Secretary-General in 1960 of the United Nations Force in the Congo. It was argued that since article 11 provides that any question dealing with international peace and security on which action was necessary had to be referred to the Security Council, the constitutionality of such forces was questionable. A number of states refused to pay their share of the expenses incurred, and the matter was referred to the International Court. In the *Certain Expenses* case,³³⁷ the Court took the term 'action'³³⁸ to refer to 'enforcement action', thus permitting action which did not amount to enforcement action to be called for by the General Assembly and the Secretary-General.³³⁹ This opinion, although leading to some interpretive problems, did permit the creation of United

³³⁵ General Assembly resolution 377(V). See e.g. J. Andrassy, 'Uniting for Peace', 50 AJIL, 1956, p. 563. See also M. J. Petersen, 'The Uses of the Uniting for Peace Resolution since 1950', 8 *International Organisation*, 1959, p. 219, and F. Woolsey, 'The Uniting for Peace Resolution of the United Nations', 45 AJIL, 1951, p. 129.

³³⁶ The General Assembly under article 20 of the UN Charter meets only in regular annual sessions and in such special sessions as occasion may require.

³³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281.

³³⁸ Article 11(2) of the Charter provides that the General Assembly may discuss any questions relating to the maintenance of international peace and security, but any such question 'on which action is necessary' must be referred to the Security Council.

³³⁹ Accordingly, the UN Emergency Force in the Middle East established in 1956 was not contrary to article 11(2) since it had not been intended to take enforcement action, ICJ

Nations peacekeeping forces in situations where because of superpower rivalry it was not possible for the Security Council to reach a decision, provided such forces were not concerned with enforcement action. The adoption of this kind of action remains firmly within the prerogative of the Security Council.

In practice the hopes raised by the adoption of the Uniting for Peace resolution have not really been fulfilled. The procedure prescribed within the resolution has been used, for example, with regard to the Suez and Hungarian crises of 1956, the Lebanese and Jordanian troubles of 1958, the Congo upheavals of 1960, the Middle East in 1967, the conflict leading to the creation of Bangladesh in 1971, Afghanistan in 1980, Namibia in 1981 and the Palestine question in 1980 and 1982. But it cannot be said that the Uniting for Peace system has in effect exercised any great influence regarding the maintenance of international peace and security. It has provided a method whereby disputes may be aired before the Assembly in a way that might not have otherwise been possible, but as a reserve mechanism for the preservation or restoration of international peace, it has not proved very successful.

*The UN and regional arrangements and agencies*³⁴⁰

The Security Council has increasingly made use of regional organisations in the context of peacekeeping and peace enforcement. Chapter VIII of the UN Charter concerns regional arrangements. Article 52 provides that nothing contained in the Charter precludes the existence of regional arrangements or agencies for dealing with such matters relating to international peace and security as are appropriate for such arrangements or agencies, providing that these are consistent with the Purposes and Principles of the UN itself.³⁴¹ Article 53 notes that the Security Council where appropriate shall utilise such arrangements or agencies for enforcement action under its authority. Without the authorisation of the Security

Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 165, 171–2. This precipitated a crisis over the arrears of the states refusing to pay their contributions.

³⁴⁰ See e.g. Simma, *Charter*, pp. 807 ff., and Cot, *et al.*, *Charte*, pp. 1367 ff. See also Gray, *Use of Force*, chapter 9; A. Abass, *Regional Organisations and the Development of Collective Security: Beyond Chapter VIII of the UN Charter*, Oxford, 2004; Sarooshi, *Collective Security*, chapter 6, and O. Schachter, 'Authorised Uses of Force by the United Nations and Regional Organisations' in *The New International Order and the Use of Force* (eds. L. Damrosch and D. J. Scheffer), Boulder, 1991, p. 65.

³⁴¹ Note also the relevance of the right of collective self-defence under both customary international law and article 51 of the Charter: see above, chapter 20, p. 1146.

Council, regional enforcement action is not possible.³⁴² Article 54 provides that the Security Council is to be kept fully informed at all times of activities undertaken or in contemplation by regional organisations. The definition of 'regional arrangements or agencies' is left open, so that a useful measure of flexibility is provided, enabling the term to cover a wide range of regional organisations going beyond those strictly established for defence co-operation.³⁴³

Several issues arise. First, there is the issue of when regional action may be deemed to be appropriate, and here recent events have demonstrated a broader measure of flexibility akin to the widening definition of what constitutes a threat to international peace and security. Secondly, there is the extent to which regional action is consistent with UN purposes and principles, and here the provisions of article 103, assigning priority to Charter obligations over obligations contained in other international agreements, should be noted. Thirdly, there is the question as to whether a broad or a narrow definition of enforcement action is to be accepted.³⁴⁴ Fourthly, the important issue is raised as to whether prior approval by the Security Council is required in order for a regional organisation to engage in an activity consistent with Chapter VIII. Practice here recently appears to suggest rather controversially that not only is prior approval not required, but that Security Council authorisation need not occur until substantially after the action has commenced.³⁴⁵ However, it is clear that the UN is keen to co-ordinate activity with regional organisations.³⁴⁶

³⁴² See e.g. M. Akehurst, 'Enforcement Action by Regional Agencies', 42 BYIL, 1967, p. 175; *Les Forces Régionales du Maintien de la Paix* (ed. A. Pellet), Paris, 1982; C. Borgen, 'The Theory and Practice of Regional Organization Intervention in Civil Wars', 26 *New York University Journal of International Law and Politics*, 1994, p. 797, and I. Pogany, 'The Arab League and Regional Peacekeeping', 34 NILR, 1987, p. 54.

³⁴³ A number of organisations specifically self-identify as regional agencies as understood by Chapter VIII, such as the Organisation of American States (see article 1 of the Charter of the OAS, 1948), the Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe (see para. 25 of the Helsinki Summit Declaration, 1992 and the Charter for European Security, 2000, 39 ILM, 2000, p. 255 and General Assembly resolution 47/10) and the Commonwealth of Independent States (see 35 ILM, 1996, p. 783). See as to the OSCE role in Bosnia under the Dayton peace arrangements, above, chapter 18, p. 1034.

³⁴⁴ That is, whether all actions noted in articles 41 and 42 are covered or just those using military force.

³⁴⁵ Note that the report of the High-Level Panel on Threats, Challenges and Change, A/59/565, 2 December 2004, stated that, 'Authorization from the Security Council should in all cases be sought for regional peace operations, recognizing that in some urgent situations that authorization may be sought after such operations have commenced', *ibid.* at para. 272(a).

³⁴⁶ See, for example, the Secretary-General, *An Agenda for Peace*, A/47/277, 17 June 1992, p. 37 and Secretary-General, *In Larger Freedom*, A/59/2005, 21 March 2005, para.

Article 52(2) and (3) establishes that peaceful settlement of disputes through regional mechanisms before resort is had to the Security Council is the preferred route and this, on the whole, has been the practice of the UN.³⁴⁷ Enforcement action is a different matter and here priority lies with the Council under the Charter. However, the reference to the inherent right of collective self-defence in article 51 does detract somewhat from the effect of Chapter VIII, and it also seems clear that regional peacekeeping operations, in the traditional sense of being based on consent of the parties and eschewing the use of force save in self-defence, do not need the authorisation of the Security Council.

Practice in the post-Cold War era has amply demonstrated the increasing awareness by the Security Council of the potentialities of regional organisations. References in resolutions of the Council have varied in this regard. Some have specifically mentioned, commended or supported the work of named regional organisations without mentioning Chapter VIII,³⁴⁸ others have referred explicitly to Chapter VIII,³⁴⁹ while others have stated that the Council is acting under Chapter VIII.³⁵⁰

A particularly interesting example of the interaction of regional organisations and the UN occurred with regard to Haiti. The OAS adopted sanctions against Haiti upon the overthrow of the elected President Jean-Bertrand Aristide in 1991.³⁵¹ Although the General Assembly welcomed

213, proposing that the UN should sign memoranda of understanding with regional organisations having a conflict prevention or peacekeeping capacity, linking such organisations with the UN Standby Arrangements System. See also the World Summit Outcome 2005, General Assembly resolution 60/1, and Security Council resolution 1631 (2005) and the subsequent report of the Secretary-General, A/61/204–S/2006/590, 28 July 2006, paras. 94 ff. See also S/25184 (1993).

³⁴⁷ Although article 52(4) provides that 'this article in no way impairs the application of articles 34 and 35'. See e.g. Simma, *Charter.*, p. 848.

³⁴⁸ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 743 (1992) commending the work of the European Community and the CSCE in former Yugoslavia and 855 (1993) endorsing the activities of the CSCE in former Yugoslavia; and resolution 865 (1993) noting the efforts of the Arab League, the OAU and the Organisation of the Islamic Conference with regard to Somalia.

³⁴⁹ E.g. Security Council resolutions 727 (1992) in regard to former Yugoslavia; 795 (1992) in regard to Macedonia; 757 (1992) in regard to former Yugoslavia; 816 (1993) extending the 'no-fly' zone over Bosnia; 820 (1993) in regard to former Yugoslavia; and resolution 751 (1992) with regard to Somalia, 'cognisant of the importance of co-operation between the United Nations and regional organisations in the context of Chapter VIII of the Charter of the United Nations'.

³⁵⁰ See e.g. Security Council resolution 787 (1992) with regard to the maritime blockade of former Yugoslavia; resolution 794 (1992) with regard to Somalia.

³⁵¹ OAS resolutions MRE/RES.1/91, MRE/RES.2/91 and MRE/RES.3/92. See article 19 of the OAS Charter. See also S/23109, 1991.

the actions,³⁵² the Security Council did not react. Eventually in June 1993, the Council, acting under Chapter VII, imposed an arms and oil embargo on Haiti. Resolution 841 (1993) specifically referred to a series of OAS resolutions,³⁵³ commended the work of the OAS Secretary-General and stressed the need 'for effective co-operation between regional organisations and the United Nations'.³⁵⁴ In resolution 875 (1993), the Council, acting under Chapters VII and VIII, called upon member states 'acting nationally or through regional agencies or arrangements' in co-operation with the legitimate Government of Haiti to act to ensure the implementation of the arms and oil embargo.³⁵⁵

Liberia constitutes another instructive example.³⁵⁶ A complicated civil war broke out during 1989–90 and, in the absence of any moves by the UN or the OAS, the Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) decided to act. This organisation, which consists of sixteen members including Liberia, is aimed at improving living standards in the region.³⁵⁷ A Protocol on Non-Aggression was signed in 1978 and came into force three years later.³⁵⁸ This prohibits aggression among member states and does not specifically mention peacekeeping nor provide for the right of unilateral intervention. In May 1990, ECOWAS established a Standing Mediation Committee and this called for an immediate ceasefire in Liberia and for its implementation to be monitored by an ECOWAS monitoring group (ECOMOG). This group, led by Nigeria, landed in Liberia in August 1990 and became involved in actual

³⁵² See General Assembly resolution 46/7, 1991.

³⁵³ Including in addition to those already mentioned, resolutions MRE/RES.4/92, MRE/RES.5/93 and CP/RES.594 (923/92), and declarations CP/Dec. 8 (927/93), CP/Dec. 9 (931/93) and CP/Dec. 10 (934/93).

³⁵⁴ See also Security Council resolutions 917 (1994) and 933 (1994).

³⁵⁵ Note also the problematic US argument concerning its invasion of Grenada, claiming that the 1981 treaty establishing the Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States operated as the necessary 'existing' or 'special' treaty which would excuse intervention and a violation of territorial integrity under article 22 of the OAS Charter. However, the OECS Defence Committee could only act unanimously and in cases of external aggression and the landing of troops in order to overthrow the Marxist government on the island would not appear to satisfy the requirements: see e.g. J. N. Moore, *Law and the Grenada Mission*, Charlottesville, 1984, pp. 45–50, and W. C. Gilmore, *The Grenada Intervention*, London, 1984. See also American Bar Association Section of International Law and Practice, Report on Grenada, 1984.

³⁵⁶ See e.g. G. Nolte, 'Restoring Peace by Regional Action: International Legal Aspects of the Liberian Conflict', 53 ZaöRV, 1993, p. 603.

³⁵⁷ See article 2 of the ECOWAS Treaty, 1975. See also F. Olonisakin, *Reinventing Peacekeeping in Africa: Conceptual and Legal Issues in ECOMOG Operations*, The Hague, 2000.

³⁵⁸ See also the Protocol Relating to Mutual Assistance on Defence, 1981.

fighting. It is somewhat unclear whether ECOWAS provides a sufficient legal basis of itself to justify the actions taken, and UN involvement did not occur until January 1991, when the President of the Security Council issued a statement commending the efforts of ECOWAS to promote peace in Liberia and calling upon the parties to the conflict to co-operate fully with ECOWAS.³⁵⁹ In April 1992, ECOMOG proceeded to secure a buffer zone on the Liberia–Sierra Leone border envisaged by an October 1991 accord (the Yamoussoukro IV Accord) between the Liberian parties, to secure all entry and exit points in the country and to enforce the disarmament of combatants.³⁶⁰

The situation, however, continued to deteriorate and the Security Council adopted resolution 788 (1992) in November of that year. This determined that the deterioration of the situation constituted a threat to international peace and security ‘particularly in West Africa as a whole’ and recalled Chapter VIII of the Charter. The resolution commended ECOWAS for its ‘efforts to restore peace, security and stability in Liberia’ and, acting under Chapter VII, imposed an arms embargo upon that country. This support was reaffirmed in resolution 813 (1993), which also noted the endorsement of ECOWAS’ efforts by the OAU.³⁶¹ With the assistance of the special representative of the UN Secretary-General, a new peace agreement was signed at Cotonou on 25 July 1993, which called upon ECOWAS and the UN to assist in its implementation.³⁶² The UN Observer Mission in Liberia was established to assist in this process.³⁶³ Security Council resolution 866 (1993) in particular noted that ‘this would be the first peacekeeping mission undertaken by the United Nations in co-operation with a peacekeeping mission already set up by another organisation, in this case ECOWAS’. Subsequent resolutions continued to commend ECOWAS for its actions and the UNOMIL mission was extended. Eventually elections were held.³⁶⁴ When ECOWAS sought

³⁵⁹ S/22110/Add.3, 1991.

³⁶⁰ S/23863, 1992. This was also supported by a statement from the President of the Security Council, S/23886, 1992. See also S/24815, 1993.

³⁶¹ See also S/25402, 1993.

³⁶² The peace agreement provided that ECOMOG would have the primary responsibility of supervising the military provisions of the agreement, with the UN monitoring and verifying the process, S/26200, 1993, and Security Council resolution 866 (1993) preamble.

³⁶³ See Security Council resolutions 856 (1993) and 866 (1993). See also S/26200 and S/26422 and Add. 1, 1993.

³⁶⁴ See e.g. Security Council resolutions 911 (1994); 950 (1994), which also commended African states sending troops to ECOMOG; 1014 (1995), which also encouraged African

to intervene in Liberia in 2003, the Security Council adopted resolution 1497 (2003) under Chapter VII, authorising the establishment of a multinational force based upon ECOWAS to implement a June 2003 ceasefire. The role of ECOWAS within the context of Chapter VIII was specifically commended. Authority was transferred from the ECOWAS force to a new UN Mission in Liberia in October 2003 by resolution 1509.

The Liberian situation is therefore marked by the following features: first, intervention in a civil war in an attempt to secure a ceasefire by a regional organisation whose authority in this area was far from clear constitutionally; secondly, delayed support by the Security Council in the context of Chapter VIII until 1992; thirdly, the first establishment of a dual UN–regional organisation peacekeeping operation; fourthly, the acceptance by the UN of the responsibility of the regional organisation for military issues with the UN mission possessing a rather indeterminate monitoring and peace-encouraging role. It should also be noted that apart from the imposition of the arms embargo in resolution 788 (1992), Security Council resolutions refrained from referring to Chapter VII. The UN, therefore, adopted very much a secondary role. While it is clear that the Security Council ultimately supported the action taken by ECOWAS, it is questionable whether the spirit and terms of Chapter VIII were fully complied with.³⁶⁵ Ultimately, the Security Council fully adopted the actions of ECOWAS, authorised further such actions and then subsumed the ECOWAS operation into a UN peacekeeping mission.

The failed UN experience of the early 1990s in Somalia was succeeded by a long period of neglect in practice, during which the UN maintained the arms embargo on that country and expressed support for regional action to seek to resolve the complicated civil war. In a number of

states to send troops to join ECOMOG; and resolutions 1020 (1995), 1071 (1996), 1100 (1997) and 1116 (1997) concerning elections. Note also the Security Council Presidential Statement of July 1997 after the elections *inter alia* commending ECOMOG, S/PRST/1997/41. See further as to ECOWAS, above, chapter 18, p. 1029.

³⁶⁵ Note also ECOWAS involvement in Guinea Bissau under an agreement between the government and the opposing junta: see 38 ILM, 1999, p. 28. Security Council resolution 1233 (1999) welcomed the ECOMOG role. ECOMOG also played a part in the Sierra Leone crisis: see e.g. Security Council resolution 1162 (1998) commending ECOWAS and ECOMOG for playing an important role in restoring international peace and security, and resolutions 1270 (1999) and 1289 (2000).

Security Council resolutions, for example, the Council, acting under Chapter VII, called for continuation of the arms embargo and also commended the efforts of the African Union (AU) and the Intergovernmental Authority on Development in Eastern Africa (IGAD), the relevant sub-regional organisation, in support of the Transitional Federal Institutions, the claimant Somali government.³⁶⁶ In resolution 1725 (2006), the Council, acting under Chapter VII, and following decisions taken by IGAD and the AU, authorised IGAD and the member states of the AU to establish 'a protection and training mission' in Somalia with the mandate *inter alia* to monitor progress in talks between the Transitional Federal Institutions and the rival Union of Islamic Courts and to maintain security in Baidoa (the headquarters of the Transitional Federal Institutions). In January 2007, the AU decided to deploy for six months a mission to Somalia (AMISOM) aimed at stabilising the situation and which would evolve into a UN operation for long-term stabilisation and post-conflict restoration of Somalia.³⁶⁷

As already noted, the UN in the situation in Bosnia turned to NATO³⁶⁸ in particular in order to enforce the arms embargo against all the states of the former Yugoslavia and to implement sanctions against the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro). NATO airplanes in particular enforced the 'no-fly' zone over Bosnia (Operation Deny Flight) as from April 1993 and on 28 February 1994, four warplanes were shot down by NATO aircraft for violating the zone. NATO airplanes also provided close air support for UNPROFOR activities as from June 1993, and as from April 1994, air support to protect UN personnel in the 'safe areas' was instituted. NATO airstrikes took place at UN request during 1994–5 in a variety of situations.³⁶⁹ Following the Dayton Peace Agreement initialled in November 1995, a 60,000 troop NATO-led implementation force (IFOR) commenced operations in Bosnia. This was authorised by the Security Council, acting under Chapter VII, in resolution 1031 (1995), under which authority was transferred from UNPROFOR to IFOR. Within a short time, this organisation gave way to SFOR (stabilisation force), which was NATO-led but included non-NATO countries.³⁷⁰ SFOR was

³⁶⁶ See resolutions 1630 (2005), 1676 (2006) and 1724 (2006).

³⁶⁷ This was authorised in Security Council resolution 1744 (2007).

³⁶⁸ With the assistance of the WEU in the maritime activities in the Adriatic under Operation Sharp Guard: see above, p. 1258.

³⁶⁹ See e.g. S/1995/444, 1995.

³⁷⁰ See Security Council resolution 1088 (1996). See also www.nato.int/sfor/index.htm.

replaced by an EU force, EUFOR, in December 2004.³⁷¹ In Kosovo, an international security presence parallels the international civil presence³⁷² and this force, KFOR, like SFOR in Bosnia, is NATO-led.³⁷³ Kosovo declared independence in February 2008.³⁷⁴ In December 2001, the Security Council authorised the establishment of an International Security Assistance Force in Afghanistan (ISAF) pursuant to the Bonn Agreement.³⁷⁵ In March 2003, the NATO peacekeeping mission in the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia, which had commenced in August 2001, was handed over to the European Union, this being the first such mission for the EU.³⁷⁶

The most dramatic and far-reaching co-operation with a regional organisation in the context of peacekeeping and enforcement is the UN–African Union Hybrid Operation in Darfur. The African Mission in Sudan (AMIS) was created in July 2004, as part of a ceasefire monitoring arrangement together with the European Union. In August that year, AU troops were sent to protect the monitors and the force grew from there. Due to the deteriorating situation, including difficulties with the government of Sudan and resource problems, the AU force eventually merged with the UN force to form the hybrid mission (UNAMID) in 2007.³⁷⁷

³⁷¹ As authorised by Security Council resolution 1575 (2004). Note the creation of an Interim Emergency Multinational Force in Bunia (the Democratic Republic of the Congo) in Security Council resolution 1484 on 30 May 2003. By a decision of 5 June 2003, the Council of the European Union authorised the sending of a peacekeeping force pursuant to the Security Council resolution. See also EUFOR operations in the Democratic Republic of the Congo during 2006: see Council Joint Action 2006/319/CFSP (repealed by Council Joint Action 2007/147/CFSP) and Council Decision 2006/412/CFSP as authorised in Security Council resolution 1671 (2006); and in Chad and the Central African Republic since 2007: see Council Joint Action 2007/677/CFSP and Council Decision 2008/101/CFSP as authorised by the Security Council in resolution 1778 (2007).

³⁷² See Security Council resolution 1244 (1999). See also above, chapter 5, p. 1232.

³⁷³ See e.g. www.nato.int/kfor/welcome.html.

³⁷⁴ See further above, chapter 9, p. 452.

³⁷⁵ See resolution 1386 (2001). Its mandate has been regularly extended under different leaders: see e.g. resolutions 1413 (2002), 1444 (2003), 1510 (2003) which extended its role throughout the country, 1563 (2004), 1623 (2005), 1707 (2006) and 1776 (2007). ISAF has been supported and led by NATO since 11 August 2003: see www.nato-otan.org/isaf/topics/history/index.html.

³⁷⁶ See www.nato-otan.org/issues/nato_fyrom/evolution.html.

³⁷⁷ See www.africa-union.org/DARFUR/homedar.htm; www.unmis.org/english/au.htm and www.accord.org.za/ct/2005-4/ct4_2005_pgs52_53.pdf. See further as to UNAMID, above, p. 1266.

Suggestions for further reading

Bowett's Law of International Institutions (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, London, 2001

The Charter of the United Nations (ed. B. Simma), 2nd edn, Oxford, 2002

S. Chesterman, T. M. Franck and D. M. Malone, *Law and Practice of the United Nations*, Oxford, 2008

J. P. Cot, A. Pellet and M. Forteau, *La Charte des Nations Unies: Commentaire Article par Article*, 3rd edn, Paris, 2005

J. G. Merrills, *International Dispute Settlement*, 4th edn, Cambridge, 2005, chapter 10

International institutions¹

Introduction

The evolution of the modern nation-state and the consequent development of an international order founded upon a growing number of independent and sovereign territorial units inevitably gave rise to questions of international co-operation.² The first major instance of organised international co-operation occurred with the Peace of Westphalia in 1648, which ended the thirty-year religious conflict of Central Europe and formally established the modern secular nation-state arrangement of European politics.³ Over a century later the Napoleonic wars terminated with the Congress of Vienna in 1815, marking the first systematic attempt to regulate international affairs by means of regular international

¹ Often called 'international organisations'. The terms will be used interchangeably.

² See C. F. Amerasinghe, *Principles of the Institutional Law of International Organizations*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2005; J. E. Alvarez, *International Organizations as Law-Makers*, Oxford, 2005; D. Sarooshi, *International Organizations and their Exercise of Sovereign Powers*, Oxford, 2005; H. G. Schermers and N. M. Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, 3rd edn, The Hague, 1995; J. Klabbers, *An Introduction to International Institutional Law*, Cambridge, 2002; *Bowett's Law of International Institutions* (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein) 5th edn, London, 2001; N. White, *The Law of International Organizations*, Manchester, 1996; P. Reuter, *International Institutions*, London, 1958; *Encyclopedia of Public International Law* (ed. R. Bernhardt), Amsterdam, 1983, vols. V and VI; G. Schwarzenberger, *International Law*, London, 1976, vol. III; E. Lauterpacht, 'The Development of the Law of International Organizations by the Decisions of International Tribunals', 152 HR, p. 377; F. Kirgis, *International Organizations in their Legal Settings*, 2nd edn, St Paul, 1993; A. El Erian, 'The Legal Organization of International Society' in *Manual of Public International Law* (ed. M. Sørensen), London, 1968, p. 55; M. Whiteman, *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1968, vol. XIII; *A Handbook of International Organizations* (ed. R. J. Dupuy), Dordrecht, 1988; I. Seidl-Hohenveldern, *Corporations In and Under International Law*, Cambridge, 1987; F. Morgenstern, *Legal Problems of International Organizations*, Cambridge, 1986, and Nguyen Quoc Dinh, P. Daillier and A. Pellet, *Droit International Public*, 7th edn, Paris, 2002, p. 571. See also G. Schiavone, *International Organizations: A Dictionary and Directory*, London, 1992, and Union of International Associations, *Yearbook of International Organizations*, 39th edn, Brussels, 5 vols., 2002–3.

³ See e.g. L. Gross, 'The Peace of Westphalia, 1648–1948', 42 AJIL, 1948, p. 20.

conferences.⁴ The Congress system lasted, in various guises, for practically a century and institutionalised not only the balance of power approach to politics, but also a semi-formal international order.⁵

Until the outbreak of the First World War, world affairs were to a large extent influenced by the periodic conferences that were held in Europe. The Paris conference of 1856 and the Berlin gathering of 1871 dealt with the problems of the Balkans, while the 1884–5 Berlin conferences imposed some order upon the scramble for Africa that had begun to develop. These, and other such conferences, constituted an important prelude to the establishment of international institutions, but became themselves ever more inadequate to fulfil the job they had been intended to do. A conference could only be called into being upon the initiative of one or more of the states involved, usually following some international crisis, and this ad hoc procedure imposed severe delays upon the resolution of the issue. It meant that only states specifically invited could attend and these states made decisions upon the basis of unanimous agreement, a factor which severely restricted the utility of the system.⁶

The nineteenth century also witnessed a considerable growth in international non-governmental associations, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross (founded in 1863) and the International Law Association (founded in 1873). These private international unions⁷ demonstrated a wide-ranging community of interest on specific topics, and an awareness that co-operation had to be international to be effective. Such unions created the machinery for regular meetings and many established permanent secretariats. The work done by these organisations was, and remains, of considerable value in influencing governmental activities and stimulating world action.⁸

In addition, there developed during the course of the nineteenth century a series of public international unions. These were functional associations linking together governmental departments or administrations for specific purposes, and were set up by multilateral treaties. The first instances of such inter-governmental associations were provided by the international commissions established for the more efficient functioning of such vital arteries of communication as the Rhine and Danube rivers,

⁴ See e.g. El Erian, 'Legal Organization', p. 58. See also A. Zamoyksi, *Rites of Peace*, London, 2007.

⁵ See e.g. Reuter, *Institutions*, pp. 55–6. See also Bowett's *International Institutions*, chapter 1.

⁶ Bowett's *International Institutions*, p. 3. ⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 4–65.

⁸ See as to the role of the International Committee of the Red Cross in international humanitarian law, above, chapter 21, p. 1200.

and later for other rivers of Central and Western Europe.⁹ The powers given to the particular commissions varied from case to case, but most of them performed important administrative and legislative functions. In 1865 the International Telegraphic Union was set up with a permanent bureau or secretariat and nine years later the Universal Postal Union was created. This combined a permanent bureau with periodic conferences, with decisions being taken by majority vote. This marked a step forward, since one of the weaknesses of the political order of ad hoc conferences had been the necessity for unanimity.

The latter half of the nineteenth century was especially marked by the proliferation of such public international unions, covering transportation, communications, health and economic co-operation. These unions restricted themselves to dealing with specific areas and were not comprehensive, but they introduced new ideas which paved the way for the universal organisations of the twentieth century. Such concepts as permanent secretariats, periodic conferences, majority voting, weighted voting and proportionate financial contributions were important in easing administrative co-operation, and they laid the basis for contemporary international institutions.

International organisations (or institutions) have now become indispensable. In a globalised world they facilitate co-operation across state frontiers, allowing for the identification, discussion and resolution of difficulties in a wide range of subjects, from peacekeeping and peace-enforcement to environmental, economic and human rights concerns. This dimension of the international legal system permits the relatively rapid creation of new rules, new patterns of conduct and new compliance mechanisms. Indeed, if there is one paramount characteristic of modern international law, it is the development and reach of international institutions, whether universal or global, regional or subregional.

A brief survey of international institutions

Institutions of a universal character

The innovation of the twentieth century was, of course, the creation of the global, comprehensive organisations of the League of Nations in 1919 and the United Nations in 1945. These were, in many ways, the logical culmination of the pioneering work of the private and public international unions,

⁹ See Bowett's *International Institutions*, pp. 6–9.

the large numbers of which required some form of central co-ordination. This function both the League¹⁰ and the UN attempted to provide.¹¹ Associated with the UN are the specialised agencies. These are organisations established by inter-governmental agreement and having wide international responsibilities in economic, social, cultural and other fields that have been brought into relationship with the United Nations.¹² Most of the specialised agencies have devised means whereby the decisions of the particular organisation can be rendered virtually binding upon members. This is especially so with regard to the International Labour Organisation (established in 1919 to protect and extend the rights of workers), UNESCO (the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation established to further the increase and diffusion of knowledge by various activities, including technical assistance and co-operative ventures with national governments) and the World Health Organisation (established in 1946 with the aim of unifying the standards of health care).¹³ Although such institutions are not able to legislate in the usual sense, they are able to apply pressures quite effectively to discourage non-compliance with recommendations or conventions.¹⁴

The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD – the World Bank) emerged from the Bretton Woods Conference of 1944 to encourage financial investment, and it works in close liaison with the International Monetary Fund (IMF), which aims to assist monetary co-operation and increase world trade. A state can only become a member

¹⁰ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, chapter 2; G. Scott, *Rise and Fall of the League of Nations*, London, 1973; El Erian, 'Legal Organization', pp. 60 ff., and F. P. Walters, *A History of the League of Nations*, Oxford, 2 vols., 1952.

¹¹ See above, chapter 22.

¹² Article 57 of the Charter. See also articles 62–6 and e.g. J. Harrod, 'Problems of the United Nations Specialised Agencies at the Quarter Century', 28 YBWA, 1974, p. 187, and Klein, in Bernhardt, *Encyclopedia of Public International Law*, vol. V, pp. 349–69. See also El Erian, 'Legal Organization', pp. 55, 96–106.

¹³ See also the Food and Agriculture Organisation, created in 1943 to collect and distribute information related to agricultural and nutritional matters: see e.g. R. W. Phillips, *FAO, Its Origins, Formation and Evolution 1945–1981*, Rome, 1981. See also www.fao.org/.

¹⁴ The following specialised agencies should also be noted in passing: the International Civil Aviation Organisation; the Universal Postal Union; the International Telecommunication Union; the World Meteorological Organisation; the International Maritime Organisation; the World Intellectual Property Organisation; the International Fund for Agricultural Development; the UN Industrial Development Organisation and the International Fund for Agricultural Development. The International Atomic Energy Agency exists as an autonomous organisation within the UN. See e.g. L. Henkin, R. C. Pugh, O. Schachter and H. Smit, *International Law: Cases and Materials*, 3rd edn, St Paul, 1993, chapter 18.

of the World Bank if it is an IMF member. The plenary organ of these agencies is the Board of Governors and the executive organs are the Executive Directors. These agencies, based in Washington DC, are assisted by the International Development Association (IDA) and the International Finance Corporation (IFC), which are affiliated to the World Bank and encourage financial investment and the obtaining of loans on easy terms. These financial organisations differ from the rest of the specialised agencies in that authority lies with the Board of Governors, and voting is determined on a weighted basis according to the level of subscriptions made. Very important decisions require the consent of 70 to 85 per cent of the votes. The IBRD, IDA and IFC together with the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency constitute the 'World Bank Group'.¹⁵

A number of international economic arrangements and institutions (not being specialised agencies) of increasing importance have been established. The GATT¹⁶ arose out of an international conference held at Havana in 1947–8 at which it was decided to establish an International Trade Organisation. The organisation did not in fact come into being. However, a General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) had been agreed shortly before the conference, involving a series of tariff concessions and trade rules, and this originally temporary instrument continued. The arrangement operated on the basis of a bilateral approach to trade negotiations coupled with unconditional acceptance of the most-favoured-nation principle (by which the most favourable benefits obtained by one state are passed on to other states), although there were special conditions for developing states in this respect. A series of tariff and trade negotiating rounds were held under the auspices of the GATT, which thus

¹⁵ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, pp. 87 ff. See also W. M. Scammell, 'The International Monetary Fund' in *The Evolution of International Organizations* (ed. E. Luard), London, 1966, chapter 9; A. Shonfield, 'The World Bank', in *ibid.*, chapter 10; R. Townley, 'The Economic Organs of the United Nations', in *ibid.*, chapter 11, and C. W. Alexandrowicz, *The Law-Making Functions of the Specialised Agencies of the United Nations*, Sydney, 1973, chapter 9. See also www.worldbank.org/.

¹⁶ See e.g. A. F. Lowenfeld, *International Economic Law*, 2nd edn, Oxford, 2008; J. H. Jackson, *Sovereignty, the WTO, and Changing Fundamentals of International Law*, Cambridge, 2006; K. W. Dam, *The GATT, Law and International Economic Relations*, Chicago, 1970; J. H. Jackson, *The World Trading System*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, MA, 1997; T. Flory, 'Les Accords du Tokyo Round du GATT et la Réforme des Procédures de Règlement des Différends dans la Système Commercial Interétatique', 86 RGDIP, 1982, p. 235; A. H. Qureshi, *International Economic Law*, London, 1999, and I. Seidl-Hohenveldern, *International Economic Law*, 2nd edn, Dordrecht, 1992, p. 90.

offered a package approach to trade negotiations, and a wide variety of tariff reductions was achieved, as well as agreement reached on mitigating non-tariff barriers. The eighth such round, termed the Uruguay round, commenced in 1986 and concluded with the signing at Marrakesh on 15 April 1994 of a long and complex agreement covering a range of economic issues. It also provided for the establishment of the World Trade Organisation on 1 January 1995 as a permanent institution with its own secretariat. The organisation consists of a Ministerial Conference, with representatives of all members meeting at least once every two years; a General Council composed of representatives of all members meeting as appropriate and exercising the functions of the Conference between sessions;¹⁷ Councils for Trade in Goods, Trade in Services and Trade Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights operating under the general guidance of the General Council; a Secretariat and a Director-General.¹⁸ The organisation's main aims are to administer and implement the multilateral and plurilateral trade agreements together making up the WTO, to act as a forum for multilateral trade negotiations, to try and settle trade disputes and to oversee national trade policies. The GATT of 1947 continued until the end of 1995, when it was effectively subsumed, with changes, as GATT 1994 within the WTO system.¹⁹

Regional institutions

The proliferation of regional institutions, linking together geographically and ideologically related states, since the close of the Second World War, has been impressive. A number of factors can help explain this. The onset of the Cold War and the failure of the Security Council's enforcement procedures stimulated the growth of regional defence alliances (such as NATO and the Warsaw Pact) and bloc politics. The decolonisation process resulted in the independence of scores of states, most of which were eager to play a non-aligned role between East and West, and the rise of globalisation has meant that all states form part of one economic trading system and can no longer individually function effectively, thus precipitating the evolution of regional economic arrangements.

¹⁷ The General Council will also meet to discharge the responsibilities of the Dispute Settlement Body and the Trade Policy Review Body: see article IV(3) and (4) of the 1994 Agreement.

¹⁸ See article IV of the Agreement.

¹⁹ See further as to the WTO dispute settlement system, above, chapter 18, p. 1036.

Europe

It is in Europe that regionalism became most developed institutionally. The establishment of the European Economic Community (thereafter European Union), in particular, was intended to lay the basis for a resurgent Europe with meaningful economic and political integration.²⁰ It has developed to become a major regional organisation with significant supra-national components. Consisting originally of three interlocking communities (the European Coal and Steel Community 1951, the European Atomic Energy Community 1957 and the European Economic Community 1957), the European Union aims at establishing a single unified market with common external tariffs and the elimination of internal tariffs and quotas, and it promotes the free movement of capital and labour. The Single European Act, 1986 and the Treaty on European Union, 1992 both introduced significant changes. The Treaty of Lisbon, signed in 2007 and currently awaiting ratification, is intended to streamline the governance of the Union. The membership of the Union has progressively increased and currently stands at twenty-seven. The institutions of the Union comprise primarily the European Parliament, the Council of Ministers, the Commission and the Court of Justice.²¹

The Council of Europe was created in 1949 with wide-ranging co-operative aims.²² There are currently forty-seven member states. The Council comprises the Committee of Ministers, consisting of governmental representatives, and the Parliamentary Assembly, composed of members representing the Parliaments of the member states. The most important part of the work of the Council of Europe is the preparation and conclusion of conventions and protocols.²³ There are a very large

²⁰ D. Chalmers and A. Tomkins, *European Union Public Law*, Cambridge, 2007; P. Craig and G. De Burca, *EU Law: Text, Cases and Materials*, 4th edn, Oxford, 2007; T. C. Hartley, *The Foundations of European Community Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2007; J. Steiner, L. Woods and C. Twigg-Flesner, *EU Law*, 9th edn, Oxford, 2006; Lasok's *Law and Institutions of the European Communities* (eds. D. Lasok and K. P. E. Lasok), 7th edn, London, 2001, and D. Wyatt and A. Dashwood, *European Community Law*, 4th edn, London, 2000.

²¹ Note also the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development established in 1960 and developed out of the European machinery created to administer the American Marshall Plan, which was aimed at reviving the European economies: see e.g. C. Archer, *Organising Europe*, London, 1994, chapter 3; Bowett's *International Institutions*, pp. 167 ff., and Miller, 'The OECD', YBWA, 1963, p. 80.

²² See e.g. Archer, *Organising Europe*, chapter 4; A. H. Robertson, *The Council of Europe*, 2nd edn, London, 1961, and T. Ouchterlony, *The Council of Europe in the New Europe*, Edinburgh, 1991. See also above, chapter 7, p. 345, and www.coe.int.

²³ See articles 15 and 16 of the Statute of the Council of Europe.

number of these, including pre-eminently the European Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms (1950), but including also the European Social Charter (1961) and agreements dealing with cultural and educational questions and conventions covering patents, extradition, migration, state immunity, terrorism and others.

The Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe (OSCE)²⁴ was originally created in 1975 following the Helsinki Conference of European powers (plus the USA and Canada). The Helsinki Final Act was not a binding treaty but a political document, concerned with three areas or 'baskets', being security questions in Europe; co-operation in the fields of economics, science and technology; and co-operation in humanitarian fields. The Conference itself (at the time termed the CSCE) was a diplomatic conference with regular follow-up meetings to review the implementation of the Helsinki Final Act, but after the changes in Eastern Europe in the late 1980s the organisation began to develop. The Charter of Paris for a New Europe signed in 1990 provided for the first standing institutions. The OSCE is essentially a conflict prevention organisation, with an Office for Democratic Institutions and Human Rights, responsible for the promotion of human rights and democracy in the OSCE area. It also monitors elections. Overall responsibility for executive action is exercised by the Chairman-in-Office, who is assisted by the Troika (i.e. the present, preceding and succeeding Chairmen). The High Commissioner on National Minorities was appointed in 1992²⁵ and there exist a variety of Missions to assist in dispute settlement. The OSCE was also assigned a role in the Bosnia peace arrangements.²⁶ There are currently fifty-six participating states in the organisation.

The North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)²⁷ was created in 1949 to counter possible threats from the USSR. It associated the USA and Canada with fourteen European powers for the protection, in essence,

²⁴ See e.g. *The CSCE* (ed. A. Bloed), Dordrecht, 1993; J. Maresca, *To Helsinki – The CSCE 1973–75*, Durham, 1987; *Essays on Human Rights in the Helsinki Process* (eds. A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk), Dordrecht, 1985; A. Bloed and P. Van Dijk, *The Human Dimension of the Helsinki Process*, Dordrecht, 1991, and D. McGoldrick, 'The Development of the Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe – From Process to Institution' in *Legal Visions of the New Europe* (eds. B. S. Jackson and D. McGoldrick), London, 1993, p. 135. See also www.osce.org/ and above, chapters 7, p. 372, and 18, p. 1032.

²⁵ See further above, chapter 7, p. 376. ²⁶ See further above, chapter 18, p. 1034.

²⁷ See e.g. *The NATO Handbook*, Brussels, 2002 and at www.nato.int/docu/handbook/2001/index.htm; Archer, *Organising Europe*, chapter 9; *Bowett's International Institutions*, pp. 180 ff.; K. Myers, *NATO, The Next Thirty Years*, Boulder, 1980, and L. S. Kaplan and R. W. Clawson, *NATO After Thirty Years*, Wilmington, 1981.

of Western Europe (although Greece and Turkey are also involved). By the Treaty,²⁸ the parties agreed to consult where the territorial integrity, political independence or security of any of them has been threatened,²⁹ and accepted that an armed attack against one or more of them in Europe or North America should be considered an attack against all.³⁰

The alliance (now comprising twenty-six states) consists of a Council, which is the supreme organ and on which all members are represented,³¹ and a NATO parliamentary conference (the North Atlantic Assembly), which acts as an official consultative body. The ending of the Cold War brought about a variety of changes in the organisation. The Euro-Atlantic Partnership Council (EAPC) was established in 1997 (it currently has fifty members, among them NATO states and former members of the Warsaw Pact, including successor states of the USSR).³² In 1994, the Partnership for Peace programme was inaugurated and this brings together EAPC and other OSCE states into a co-operative framework, which has the potential to provide the mechanism for enlarging the membership of NATO itself. There are currently thirty-four such partners. While the Partnership for Peace focuses upon practical, defence-related and military co-operation, the EAPC constitutes the forum for broad consultation on political and security issues. Countries participating in the Partnership for Peace sign a Framework Document, affirming the commitment to the preservation of democratic societies and the maintenance of the principles of international law, to fulfil in good faith the obligations of the UN Charter and the principles contained in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and to respect existing borders.³³

²⁸ 43 AJIL, 1949, Supp., p. 159.

²⁹ Article 4. Support to Turkey was requested and provided in early 2003 under article 4: see www.nato.int/docu/pr/2003/p030216e.htm.

³⁰ Article 5. This was invoked for the first time on 12 September 2001, when the Allies declared that the terrorist attack on the US was deemed to constitute an attack on all members of the alliance: see www.nato.int/docu/pr/2003/p030216e.htm.

³¹ Article 9.

³² This replaced the North Atlantic Co-operation Council established in 1991.

³³ See as to NATO's involvement in peacekeeping and peace-enforcement, above, chapter 22, p. 1279. Note also the Western European Union, described by the Treaty on European Union, 1992 as an integral part of the EU and as its defence component to strengthen the European pillar of the Atlantic alliance. It had a role in the Yugoslav crisis, both in enforcing the Security Council sanctions in co-operation with NATO and in forming part of the joint European Union/WEU administration of the city of Mostar in Bosnia in July 1994. It also conducted a police training mission in Albania in 1997 and demining operations in Croatia from 1997: see e.g. Archer, *Organising Europe*, chapter 10, and T. Taylor, *European Defence Co-operation*, London, 1984. See also www.weu.int/.

The Commonwealth of Independent States was established by an Agreement signed by Russia, Belarus and Ukraine in Minsk on 8 December 1991, to which eight other former Republics of the USSR adhered at Alma Ata on 21 December that year. Georgia joined in 1993, so that the organisation now comprises all the former Soviet Republics apart from the three Baltic States. The organisation is based on respect for the territorial integrity of member states and member states agreed to maintain and retain under joint command, a common military and strategic space, including joint control over nuclear weapons. It was also agreed to establish common co-ordinating institutions.³⁴ The CIS adopted a Charter in Minsk in January 1993.³⁵ Under this Charter, the Commonwealth is expressed to be based on the sovereign equality of its members, who are independent subjects of international law. It is expressly stated that the CIS is not a state nor does it possess supranational powers.³⁶ The supreme organ is the Council of Heads of State, while the Council of Heads of Government has a co-ordinating role.³⁷ Decisions of both Councils are to be achieved by common consent.³⁸ In 1993, the leaders of the CIS states, apart from Ukraine and Turkmenistan, signed a treaty to create an Economic Union, while in 1995, seven of the twelve member states signed an agreement for the Defence of the CIS External Borders. A large number of agreements have been signed between member states on a variety of subjects, including prevention of drug smuggling and terrorism, but many of these agreements have not been ratified.³⁹

The American continent⁴⁰

The Organisation of American States emerged after the Second World War and built upon the work already done by the Pan-American Union and the various inter-American Conferences since 1890. It consists of two basic treaties: the 1947 Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance

³⁴ See articles 5, 6 and 7 of the Minsk Agreement, 31 ILM, 1992, pp. 143 ff.

³⁵ See 4 Finnish YIL, 1993, p. 263. ³⁶ See article 1. ³⁷ See articles 21 and 22.

³⁸ Article 23. There are a number of other councils linking various ministers, see articles 27, 28, 30 and 31, together with an Economic Court and a Commission on Human Rights, see articles 32 and 33.

³⁹ See www.cis.minsk.by/main.aspx?uid=74.

⁴⁰ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, chapter 7; A. V. W. Thomas and A. J. Thomas, *The Organization of American States*, Dallas, 1963; M. Ball, *The OAS in Transition*, Durham, 1969, and M. Wood, 'The Organization of American States', 33 YBWA, 1979, p. 148. See also www.oas.org/.

(the Rio Treaty), which is a collective self-defence system, and the 1948 Pact of Bogotá, which is the original Charter of the OAS and which was amended in 1967 by the Buenos Aires Protocol, in 1985 by the Cartagena de Indias Protocol and by the 1992 Washington Protocol and the 1993 Managua Protocol. There are currently thirty-five member states. The OAS is a collective security system, an attack on one being deemed an attack on all. The organisation consists of a General Assembly, the supreme organ, which is a plenary organ with wide terms of reference; meetings of consultation of Ministers of Foreign Affairs, which exercise broad powers; a Permanent Council which performs both secretarial supervision and political functions, subject to the authority of the aforementioned institutions, and a number of subsidiary organs. The organisation has adopted a Human Rights Convention⁴¹ and is the most developed of the regional organisations outside Europe, but without any of the supranational powers possessed by the European Union.⁴²

The Arab League⁴³

The Arab League was created in 1944 and has broad aims. The Council of the League is the supreme organ and performs a useful conciliatory role and various subsidiary organs dealing with economic, cultural and social issues have been set up. Its headquarters are in Tunisia, having been moved there from Egypt after the Israel–Egypt Peace Treaty of 1979. There is also a permanent secretariat and a Secretary-General. The Council of the League has been involved in the peacekeeping operations in Kuwait in 1961, where an Inter-Arab Force was established to deter Iraqi threats, and in Lebanon in 1976 as an umbrella for the operations of the Syrian

⁴¹ See above, chapter 7, p. 381.

⁴² There exist also a number of other American organisations of limited competence: see e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, chapter 7. These include, for example, the Inter-American Bank (1959); the Andean Pact (1969); the Caribbean Community and Common Market or CARICOM (1973); the Latin American Integration Association (1980); the Southern Cone Common Market or MERCOSUR (1991) and the Association of Caribbean States (1994).

⁴³ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 237, and R. W. MacDonald, *The League of Arab States*, Princeton, 1965. See also B. Boutros-Ghali, 'La Ligue des États Arabes', 137 HR, 1972, p. 1, and H. A. Hassouna, *The League of Arab States*, Dobbs Ferry, 1975. Note also the existence of the Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries, founded in 1960, which obtained the power to fix crude oil prices in 1973: see e.g. I. Seymour, *OPEC, Instrument of Change*, London, 1980, and I. Skeet, *OPEC: Twenty-five Years of Prices and Politics*, Cambridge, 1988. See also www.Arabji.com/ArabGovt/ArabLeague.htm.

troops.⁴⁴ It played no meaningful part in the Gulf wars and crises from 1980 to 2003.⁴⁵

Africa⁴⁶

The Organisation of African Unity was established in 1963 in Ethiopia and was replaced by the African Union in 2001. The Constitutive Act of the Union lists a series of objectives in article 3 and these include the achieving of greater unity between African countries; defending the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its member states; the promotion of peace, security and stability on the continent and of human and peoples' rights in accordance with the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights and other relevant human rights instruments; and the promotion of sustainable development. Article 4 of the Constitutive Act sets out the Principles of the Union and these include respect of borders existing on achievement of independence; establishment of a common defence policy for the African continent; peaceful resolution of conflicts among member states and the prohibition of the use of force or threat to use force among member states of the Union. Interestingly, in addition to the emphasis on territorial integrity, the Principles also provide for the right of the Union to intervene in a member state pursuant to a decision of the Assembly in respect of grave circumstances, namely war crimes, genocide and crimes against humanity, and the right of member states to request intervention from the Union in order to restore peace and security.⁴⁷ Also included are respect for democratic principles, human rights, the rule of law and good governance, and condemnation and rejection of unconstitutional changes of governments. The organs of the Union include an Assembly, the supreme organ of the Union, composed of heads of state or government or their representatives, which sets the common policy of the Union;

⁴⁴ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 238, and G. Feuer, 'Le Force Arabe de Sécurité au Liban', 22 AFDI, 1976, p. 51. See also above, chapter 18, p. 1031.

⁴⁵ Note also the existence of the Gulf Co-operation Council: see *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 240.

⁴⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 243; Z. Cervenka, *The Organization of African Unity and Its Charter*, London, 1969, and *The Unfinished Quest for Unity*, London, 1977; B. Andemicael, *The OAU and the UN*, London, 1976; M. Wolfers, *Politics in the Organization of African Unity*, London, 1976; C. A. A. Packer and D. Rukare, 'The New African Union and Its Constitutive Act', 96 AJIL, 2002, p. 365, and K. D. Magliveras and G. J. Naldi, 'The African Union – A New Dawn for Africa?', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 415. See also above, chapter 18, p. 1026, and www.africa-union.org/.

⁴⁷ See e.g. B. Kioko, 'The Right of Intervention under the African Union's Constitutive Act: From Non-Interference to Non-Intervention', 85 *International Review of the Red Cross*, 2003, p. 807.

an Executive Council, composed of foreign or other ministers, which co-ordinates and takes decisions on policies in areas of common interest to the member states, such as foreign trade, water resources and energy; the Pan-African Parliament and the Court of Justice, the jurisdiction of which comprises the application and interpretation of the Act and which is currently being merged with the African Court of Human Rights.⁴⁸

Asia

The Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN) was created in 1967.⁴⁹ It possesses economic, political and cultural aims and groups together Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, the Philippines, Singapore, Thailand and Vietnam. In 1976 three agreements were signed: a Treaty of Amity and Co-operation, which reaffirmed the parties' commitment to peace and dealt with the peaceful settlement of disputes; the Declaration of ASEAN Concord, which called for increased political and economic co-ordination and co-operation; and the Agreement of Establishment of the Permanent Secretariat to co-ordinate the national secretariats established under the 1967 ASEAN Declaration. In 1987, the Protocol amending the Treaty of Amity was signed, under which countries outside the ASEAN region could accede to the treaty. A number of economic agreements have also been signed, ranging from the Manila Declaration of 1987 to the Framework Agreement on Enhancing ASEAN Economic Co-operation, 1992 and the decision to establish an ASEAN Free Trade Area within fifteen years utilising a Common Effective Preferential Tariff scheme. In 2003, ASEAN Concord II was signed, establishing the ASEAN Security Community, Economic Community and Socio-Cultural Community,⁵⁰ and on 20 November 2007 the ASEAN Charter was adopted.

The supreme policy-making body of ASEAN is the Summit, comprising the Heads of State or Government, with a Co-ordinating Council composed of Foreign Ministers.⁵¹ A variety of community councils and sectorial ministerial bodies were also established.⁵² An ASEAN Human

⁴⁸ As to the peaceful settlement mechanisms and as to other African organisations, see above, chapter 18, p. 1026.

⁴⁹ See e.g. *Bowett's International Institutions*, p. 228. See also T. W. Allen, *The ASEAN Report*, Washington, 2 vols., 1979, and *Understanding ASEAN* (ed. A. Broinowski), London, 1982. See also www.aseansec.org/.

⁵⁰ See 43 ILM, 2004, p. 18. ⁵¹ See articles 7 and 8 of the Charter.

⁵² See articles 9 and 10. There is also a Secretary-General and Secretariat and a Committee of Permanent Representatives: see articles 11 and 12.

Rights Body was proposed under conditions to be determined.⁵³ Decision-making is in principle to be by consultation and consensus.⁵⁴

Some legal aspects of international organisations⁵⁵

There is no doubt that the contribution to international law generally made by the increasing number and variety of international organisations is marked. In many fields, the practice of international organisations has had an important effect and one that is often not sufficiently appreciated. In addition, state practice within such organisations is an increasingly significant element within the general process of customary law formation. This is particularly true with regard to the United Nations, with its universality of membership and extensive field of activity and interest, although not all such practice will be capable of transmission into customary law, and particular care will have to be exercised with regard to the *opinio juris*, or binding criterion.⁵⁶

As well as the impact of the practice of international organisations upon international law, it is worth noting the importance of international legal norms within the operations of such organisations. The norms in question guide the work and development of international institutions and may act to correct illegal acts.⁵⁷ International organisations have in the past been defined in international treaties simply as 'inter-governmental organisations' in order to demonstrate that the key characteristic of such groupings

⁵³ Article 14.

⁵⁴ Article 20. Where there is no consensus, it will be for the ASEAN Summit to decide how to proceed in a particular matter. Article 22 calls for the establishment of dispute settlement mechanisms.

⁵⁵ See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*; Bowett's *International Institutions*, part 3; Klabbers, *Introduction*; A. Reinisch, *International Organizations Before National Courts*, Cambridge, 2000; I. Brownlie, *Principles of Public International Law*, 6th edn, Oxford, 2003, chapter 31, and Reuter, *International Institutions*, pp. 227–64. See also E. Lauterpacht, 'Development' and 'The Legal Effects of Illegal Acts of International Organizations' in *Cambridge Essays in International Law*, Cambridge, 1965, p. 98; K. Skubiszewski, 'Enactment of Law by International Organizations', 4 BYIL, 1965–6, p. 198; Whiteman, *Digest*, vol. XIII; R. Higgins, *The Development of International Law Through the Political Organs of the United Nations*, Oxford, 1963, and generally other sources cited in footnote 2 above.

⁵⁶ See above, chapter 3, p. 84.

⁵⁷ See e.g. the *IMCO case*, ICJ Reports, 1960, p. 150; 30 ILR, p. 426; the *Conditions of Admission of a State to the United Nations case*, ICJ Reports, 1948, p. 57; 15 AD, p. 333; and the *Certain Expenses of the United Nations case*, ICJ Reports, 1962, p. 151; 34 ILR, p. 281. See also E. Lauterpacht, 'Development', pp. 388–95.

is that their membership comprises states.⁵⁸ However, the International Law Commission in article 2 of its Draft Articles on the Responsibility of International Organisations refers to ‘an organisation established by a treaty or other instrument governed by international law and possessing its own legal personality’, while noting that international organisations ‘may include as members, in addition to states, other entities’.⁵⁹ Amerasinghe refers to organisations ‘normally created by a treaty or convention to which states are parties and the members of the organisation so created are generally states’ and points to basic characteristics such as establishment by international agreement among states, possession of a constitution, possession of organs separate from its members, establishment under international law, and either exclusive or predominant membership of states or governments.⁶⁰

One may therefore distinguish public international organisations that are the subject of this chapter, from private or non-governmental organisations and from international public companies.⁶¹ The former may have a wide-ranging, open or universal membership (such as the UN and the specialised agencies) or may have a limited or closed membership (such as the African Union or the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development). Organisations may have a wider or narrower range of functions, depending upon their constitution, with the UN as a good example of the former and the World Health Organisation as a good example of the latter. Whether a grouping will be regarded as an international organisation will depend essentially upon whether it in fact possesses some or all of the criteria noted above.

*Personality*⁶²

The role of international organisations in the world order centres on their possession of international legal personality as distinct from, and

⁵⁸ See e.g. the Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organizations, 1975; the Vienna Convention on Succession of States in Respect of Treaties, 1978 and the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organizations, 1986.

⁵⁹ Report of the International Law Commission, 2003, A/58/10, pp. 38 ff.

⁶⁰ *Principles*, pp. 9 and 10.

⁶¹ See above, chapter 5, p. 248.

⁶² See e.g. H. Thirlway, ‘The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice, 1960–1989 (Part Eight)’, 67 BYIL, 1996, p. 1; Klabbbers, *Introduction*, chapter 3; *Bowett’s International Institutions*, chapter 15; Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 3; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, chapter 11; C. W. Jenks, ‘The Legal Personality of

in addition to, personality under domestic law. Once this is established, they become subjects of international law and thus capable of enforcing rights and duties upon the international plane as distinct from operating merely within the confines of separate municipal jurisdictions. Not all arrangements by which two or more states co-operate will necessarily establish separate legal personality. The International Court of Justice in *Nauru v. Australia*⁶³ noted that the arrangements under which Australia, New Zealand and the UK became the joint 'Administering Authority' for Nauru in the Trusteeship Agreement approved by the UN in 1947 did not establish a separate international legal personality distinct from that of the states.

The question of personality will in the first instance depend upon the terms of the instrument establishing the organisation. If states wish the organisation to be endowed specifically with international personality, this will appear in the constituent treaty and will be determinative of the issue.⁶⁴ But this actually occurs in only a minority of cases. However, personality on the international plane may be inferred from the powers or purposes of the organisation and its practice.⁶⁵ This is the more usual situation and one authoritatively discussed and settled (at least as far as the UN was concerned directly) by the International Court in the *Reparation for Injuries Suffered in the Service of the United Nations* case.⁶⁶ The Court held that the UN had international legal personality because this was indispensable in order to achieve the purposes and principles specified in the Charter. In other words, it was a necessary inference from the

International Organizations', 22 BYIL, 1945, p. 267; M. Rama-Montaldo, 'International Legal Personality and Implied Powers of International Organizations', 44 BYIL, 1970, p. 111; M. Sørensen, 'Principes de Droit International Public', 101 HR, 1960, pp. 1, 127 ff.; H. Barberis, 'Nouvelles Questions Concernant la Personnalité Juridique Internationale', 179 HR, 1983, p. 145; F. Seyersted, 'Objective International Personality of Intergovernmental Organizations', 34 *Nordisk Tidsskrift for International Ret*, 1964, p. 1, and C. Ijalaye, *The Extension of Corporate Personality in International Law*, Dobbs Ferry, 1978. See also above, chapter 5, p. 195.

⁶³ ICJ Reports, 1992, pp. 240, 258; 97 ILR, pp. 1, 25.

⁶⁴ See e.g. article 6 of the European Coal and Steel Community Treaty, 1951, and article 210 of the EEC Treaty, 1957 (now article 281 of the EC Treaty, Consolidated Version). See also *Costa (Flaminio) v. ENEL* [1964] ECR 585; 93 ILR, p. 23.

⁶⁵ Note also the approach championed by Seyersted that international organisations become *ipso facto* international legal persons where there exists at least one organ with a will distinct from that of the member states: see Seyersted, 'Objective International Personality', and Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, p. 978.

⁶⁶ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 174; 16 AD, p. 318.

functions and rights the organisation was exercising and enjoying. The Court emphasised that it had to be:

acknowledged that its [i.e. UN's] members, by entrusting certain functions to it, with the attendant duties and responsibilities, have clothed it with the competence required to enable those functions to be effectively discharged.⁶⁷

The possession of international personality meant that the organisation was a subject of international law and capable of having international rights and duties and of enforcing them by bringing international claims.

In reaching this conclusion, the Court examined the United Nations Charter and subsequent relevant treaties and practice to determine the constitutional nature of the United Nations and the extent of its powers and duties. It noted the obligations of members towards the organisation, its ability to make international agreements and the provisions of the Charter contained in Articles 104 and 105, whereby the United Nations was to enjoy such legal capacity, privileges and immunities in the territory of each member state as were necessary for the fulfilment of its purposes.

The Court emphasised that:

fifty states, representing the vast majority of the members of the international community, had the power in conformity with international law, to bring into being an entity possessing objective international personality, and not merely personality recognised by them alone.⁶⁸

Accordingly, the Court derived the objective international legal personality of the UN from the intention of the members, either directly or implicitly. Such personality was objective in the sense that it could be maintained as against non-members as well, of course, as against members. Objective personality is not dependent upon prior recognition by the non-member concerned and would seem to flow rather from the nature and functions of the organisation itself. It may be that the number of states members of the organisation in question is relevant to the issue of objective personality, but it is not determinative.⁶⁹

⁶⁷ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 179; 16 AD, p. 322. ⁶⁸ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 185; 16 AD, p. 330.

⁶⁹ See the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, St Paul, 1987, vol. I, p. 141, noting that '[a]n international organisation with a substantial membership is a person in international law even in relation to states not members of the organisation. However, a state does not have to recognise the legal personality of an organisation of which it is not a member, which has few members, or which is regional in scope in a region to which the state does not belong.' Cf. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 90. It should be noted that the

The attribution of international legal personality to an international organisation is therefore important in establishing that organisation as an entity operating directly upon the international stage rather than obliging the organisation to function internationally through its member states, who may number in the tens of dozens or more. The latter situation inevitably leads to considerable complication in the reaching of agreements as well as causing problems with regard to enforcing the responsibility or claims of such organisations internationally. The question of the effect of international personality upon the liability of member states for problems affecting the organisation will be referred to later in this chapter.⁷⁰ However, one needs to be careful not to confuse international with domestic legal personality. Many constituent instruments of international organisations expressly or impliedly provide that the organisation in question shall have personality in domestic law so as to enable it, for example, to contract or acquire or dispose of property or to institute legal proceedings in the local courts or to have the legal capacity necessary for the exercise of its functions.⁷¹ Article 104 of the United Nations Charter itself provides that the UN 'shall enjoy in the territory of each of its members such legal capacity as may be necessary for the exercise of its functions and the fulfilment of its purposes'. Where such provisions exist, it follows that member states of the organisation have accepted an obligation to recognise such legal personality within their legal systems. How that may be achieved will vary from state to state and will depend upon the domestic legal system.⁷²

The issue also arises at this point as to whether states that are not parties to the treaty in question and thus not member states of the particular international organisation are obliged to recognise the personality of such organisation. This can be achieved either directly, by entering into an agreement with the organisation – a headquarters agreement permitting the establishment of the organisation within the jurisdiction is the obvious

question of objective personality is not essentially linked to recognition by non-member states as such. What will, however, be important will be patterns of dealing with such organisations by non-member states.

⁷⁰ See below, p. 1314.

⁷¹ See e.g. articles IX(2) and VII(2) respectively of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund and the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development. See also article 16 of the Constitution of the Food and Agriculture Organisation, article 6h of the Constitution of the World Health Organisation and article 12 of the Constitution of UNESCO.

⁷² See also e.g. article 282 of the EC Treaty (Consolidated Version) and Klabbers, *Introduction*, p. 49.

example⁷³ – or indirectly by virtue of the rules of private international law (or conflict of laws).

Of course, most international organisations need to operate within particular states and thus require that their personality be recognised not only within international law but also within particular domestic law in order to be able to make and defend claims and generally to perform legal acts in domestic law. This may be achieved in different ways. In many legal systems, a domestic court will determine the legal status and capacity of a legal person by reference to the applicable or proper law, which will in the case of international organisations be international law. Thus if the organisation had personality under international law, this would suffice to establish personality under domestic law.⁷⁴ Indeed, in states where treaties form part of domestic law upon ratification by parliament, then domestic legal personality would be a consequence of becoming a party to an international agreement establishing an international organisation explicitly endowed with legal personality, such as the UN, for example.⁷⁵

However, in the UK, the approach has been rather different since the UK adopts a dualist approach to international treaties, so that in order for such agreements to operate within the domestic system, express legislative incorporation is required.⁷⁶ The International Organisations Act 1968 grants the legal capacity of a body corporate to any organisation declared by Order in Council to be an organisation of which the UK and one or more foreign states are members. The view taken by the House of Lords in the *Tin* case⁷⁷ was that the legal effect of the Order in Council of 1972 concerning the International Tin Council (ITC) was to create the ITC as a legal person separate and distinct from its members, since ‘as

⁷³ See e.g. *Re Poncet* 15 AD, p. 346 (concerning Switzerland and the UN).

⁷⁴ See e.g. *International Tin Council v. Amalgamet Inc.* 524 NYS 2d 971 (1988); 80 ILR, p. 30. See also *UNRAA v. Daan* 16 AD, p. 337 and *Branno v. Ministry of War* 22 ILR, p. 756.

⁷⁵ See e.g. *UN v. B* 19 ILR, p. 490 and *International Tin Council v. Amalgamet Inc.* 524 NYS 2d 971 (1988). See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 69 ff. As to the relationship between international law and domestic law generally, see above, chapter 4.

⁷⁶ See e.g. J. W. Bridge, ‘The United Nations and English Law’, 18 ICLQ, 1969, p. 689; G. Marston, ‘The Origin of the Personality of International Organizations in United Kingdom Law’, 40 ICLQ, 1991, p. 403, and F. A. Mann, ‘International Organizations as National Corporations’, 107 LQR, 1991, p. 357. See also R. Higgins, Report on the ‘Legal Consequences for Member States of the Non-Fulfilment by International Organizations of their Obligations toward Third States’, *Annuaire de l’Institut de Droit International*, 1995 I, p. 249.

⁷⁷ *J. H. Rayner (Mincing Lane) Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1989] 3 WLR 969, 982 and 1004 ff.; 81 ILR, pp. 670, 678 and 703 ff.

an international legal persona [it] had no status under the laws of the United Kingdom.⁷⁸ In other words, without such legislative action, an international organisation would have no legal existence in the UK. There is an exception to this strict approach and that is where the organisation has been granted legal personality in another country. The case of *Arab Monetary Fund v. Hashim (No. 3)*⁷⁹ concerned the attempt by the AMF to bring an action before the English courts to recover funds allegedly embezzled. The relevant constituent treaty of 1976 between a number of Arab states gave the AMF 'independent juridical personality' and a decree was adopted in Abu Dhabi giving the organisation independent legal status and the capacity to sue and be sued in United Arab Emirates law. There was, however, no Order in Council under the International Organisations Act 1968 giving the AMF legal personality within the UK. The Court of Appeal took the view that the decision of the House of Lords in the *Tin* case⁸⁰ meant that the ordinary conflict of laws rules allowing recognition of an entity created under foreign law could not be applied to an organisation established under international law, since this would apparently circumvent the principle that an international organisation with legal personality created outside the jurisdiction would not have capacity to sue in England without a relevant authorising Order in Council.⁸¹

The House of Lords, however, by a majority of four to one, expressed the opinion that the majority of the Court of Appeal had felt inhibited by observations made in the *Tin* cases and that the latter cases had not affected the principles that the recognition of a foreign state was a matter for the Crown and that if a foreign state is recognised by the Crown, the courts of the UK would recognise the corporate bodies created by that state. The House of Lords noted that the UK courts could indeed recognise an international organisation as a separate entity by comity provided that the entity was created by one or more of the member states.⁸²

In other words, in the UK, an international organisation can be recognised as having personality by one of several methods: first, where Parliament has by legislation incorporated an international treaty

⁷⁸ [1989] 3 WLR 1008; 81 ILR, p. 708 (per Lord Oliver). But see Lord Templeman in *Arab Monetary Fund v. Hashim (No. 3)* [1991] 2 WLR 729, 738; 85 ILR, pp. 1, 11, who noted that no argument based on incorporation by one or more foreign states had been relevant or canvassed in the *Tin* case.

⁷⁹ [1991] 2 WLR 729; 85 ILR, p. 1. ⁸⁰ [1989] 3 WLR 969; 81 ILR, p. 670.

⁸¹ [1990] All ER 769, 775 (Donaldson MR); 83 ILR, pp. 259–61 and 778 (Nourse LJ); 83 ILR, p. 264.

⁸² [1991] 2 WLR 738–9; 85 ILR, pp. 12–13.

establishing such an organisation;⁸³ secondly, where the executive expressly recognises an international organisation;⁸⁴ thirdly, where an Order in Council under the International Organisations Act so provides; and fourthly, where the courts by virtue of comity recognise an international organisation that has personality in one or more of the member states.⁸⁵ It is an approach that is not without some difficulty, not least because of the implication that an international organisation not the subject of a UK Order in Council and not incorporated in the domestic law of member states may not be recognised as having personality in the UK, even though there exists an international treaty establishing such an international organisation with international personality. On the other hand, to argue that an international organisation has legal personality solely due to the fact that it has legal personality within the domestic law of another country which is thus to be applied in the UK due to conflict of law rules poses its own problems. However, the court in *Westland Helicopters Ltd v. AOI*⁸⁶ held that the law governing the status and capacities of such an organisation was international law.

To state that an international organisation has international personality does not dispose of the question of what such personality entails. While the attribution of international personality to an organisation endows it with a separate identity, distinct from its constituent elements, the consequences of such personality will vary according to the circumstances. Whereas all international legal persons will have some rights and duties (and by definition rights and duties distinct from those of the members of the organisation), they will not all have the same capacities.⁸⁷ The question of how such rights and duties may be enforced or maintained will also depend upon the circumstances. States are recognised as possessing the widest range of rights and duties, those of international organisations are clearly circumscribed in terms of express powers laid down in the constituent instruments or implied powers necessarily derived therefrom or otherwise evolved through practice.⁸⁸ The International Court

⁸³ See [1991] 2 WLR 738; 85 ILR, p. 12, giving the example of the Bretton Woods Agreements Act 1945.

⁸⁴ *Ibid.* ⁸⁵ *Ibid.* ⁸⁶ [1995] 2 WLR 126; 108 ILR, p. 564.

⁸⁷ The International Court in the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 178; 16 AD, p. 330, stated that, 'The subjects of law in any legal system are not necessarily identical in nature or in the extent of their rights, and their nature depends upon the needs of the community.'

⁸⁸ The Court in the *Reparation* case took particular care to emphasise that possession of international personality was far from an ascription of statehood or recognition of equal rights and duties, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 185; 16 AD, p. 330.

emphasised that the attribution of international personality to the UN, for example, was not the same thing as declaring the UN to be a state nor that its legal personality and rights and duties were the same as those of a state. By the same token it did not mean that the UN was a 'super-state'.⁸⁹ The Court declared that UN personality involved the competence to possess and maintain rights and the capacity to enforce them on the international stage.⁹⁰ Accordingly, whereas states would possess the totality of international rights and duties recognised by international law, 'the rights and duties of an entity such as the [UN] Organisation must depend upon its purposes and functions as specified or implied in its constituent documents and developed in practice'.⁹¹ Precisely which powers and capacities are involved will in reality therefore depend upon a careful analysis of the organisation itself, including the relationship of such powers and capacities to the stated purposes and duties of that organisation.

*The constituent instruments*⁹²

International organisations are expressly created by states by formal decision as laid down in their constituent instruments. The very nature, status and authority of such organisations will therefore depend primarily upon the terms of the constituent instruments or constitutions under which they are established. Such instruments have a dual provenance. They constitute multilateral treaties, since they are binding agreements entered into by states parties, and as such fall within the framework of the international law of treaties.⁹³ But such agreements are multilateral treaties possessing a special character since they are also methods of creation of new subjects of international law. This dual nature has an impact most clearly in the realm of interpretation of the basic documents of the organisation.⁹⁴ This was clearly brought out in the Advisory Opinion of

⁸⁹ *Ibid.*, p. 179; 16 AD, p. 322. See also the *WHO* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 73, 89; 62 ILR, pp. 450, 473.

⁹⁰ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 179. ⁹¹ *Ibid.*, p. 180.

⁹² See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 2; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 710 ff., and E. P. Hexner, 'Interpretation by International Organizations of their Basic Instruments', 53 AJIL, 1959, p. 341.

⁹³ As to which see above, chapter 16.

⁹⁴ See C. F. Amerasinghe, 'Interpretation of Texts in Open International Organizations', 65 BYIL, 1994, p. 175; M. N. Shaw, *Title to Territory in Africa: International Legal Issues*, Oxford, 1986, pp. 64–73; S. Rosenne, 'Is the Constitution of an International Organization an International Treaty?', 12 *Comunicazioni e Studi*, 1966, p. 21, and G. Ditefano, 'La Pratique Subséquente des États Parties à un Traité', AFDI, 1994, p. 41. See also

the International Court of Justice (requested by the World Health Organisation) in the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict* case. The Court declared that:

[t]he constituent instruments of international organisations are also treaties of a particular type; their object is to create new subjects of law endowed with a certain autonomy, to which the parties entrust the task of realising common goals. Such treaties can raise specific problems of interpretation owing, *inter alia*, to their character which is conventional and at the same time institutional; the very nature of the organisation created, the objectives which have been assigned to it by its founder, the imperatives associated with the effective performance of its functions, as well as its own practice, are all elements which may deserve special attention when the time comes to interpret these constituent treaties.⁹⁵

Accordingly, one needs to consider the special nature of the constituent instruments as forming not only multilateral agreements but also constitutional documents subject to constant practice, and thus interpretation, both of the institution itself and of member states and others in relation to it. In the first instance, it will usually be for the organs of the institution to interpret the relevant constituent instruments.⁹⁶ In some cases, the constituent instruments themselves will determine the organ with the power of interpretation and may provide the methods and mechanisms for resolving interpretation disputes.⁹⁷ Occasionally, a court or tribunal will be established with such a competence. For example, the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea can interpret the Law of the Sea Convention and the European Court of Justice can interpret the EU treaties and instruments. In so far as the UN is concerned, the Security Council and General Assembly may request an advisory opinion from the International Court of Justice, as may other organs of the organisation and specialised agencies where authorised by the General Assembly with regard to a question within the scope of their activities.⁹⁸ The constituent instruments of

H. Lauterpacht, *The Development of International Law by the International Court*, London, 1958, pp. 267–81, and E. Lauterpacht, 'Development', pp. 414 ff.

⁹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 74–5; 110 ILR, pp. 1, 14–15.

⁹⁶ See *Certain Expenses of the United Nations*, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 168. See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 25 ff.

⁹⁷ The constitutions of the various international financial institutions, such as the International Monetary Fund and the World Bank, invariably provide for binding determination by the supreme plenary organ: see e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 28 ff.

⁹⁸ See article 96(1) and (2) of the Charter. See further above, chapter 19, p. 1108. Note that there is no provision in the Charter authorising the International Court to review decisions of the UN judicially, but see further above, chapter 22, p. 1268.

some organisations provide for binding final determination by the International Court using advisory proceedings, that is, organisations in such situations agree to accept the advisory opinion as binding.⁹⁹ In addition, article XIX, section 32, of the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of Specialised Agencies, 1947, provides that differences between a specialised agency and a member arising out of the interpretation or the application of the convention are to be submitted to the International Court under the advisory procedure contained in article 96 of the Charter and article 65 of the Statute of the Court and the opinion thus obtained is to be treated as decisive by the parties.¹⁰⁰ In contentious cases, the International Court may need to interpret the constituent instruments of an international organisation, including the UN Charter itself, where this is relevant to the determination of the issue at hand.¹⁰¹

The fact that the constituent instruments of international organisations are invariably multilateral agreements means that the process of their interpretation will be governed by articles 31 and 32 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969.¹⁰² However, such agreements are of a special nature since they also form the constitutions of international organisations¹⁰³ and this argues for a more flexible or purpose-orientated

⁹⁹ See e.g. article 37 of the International Labour Organisation Constitution. Article XIV of the UNESCO Constitution 1945 provides that, 'Any question or dispute concerning the interpretation of this Constitution shall be referred for determination to the International Court of Justice or to an arbitral tribunal, as the General Conference may determine.' See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 29.

¹⁰⁰ See also article VIII, section 30, of the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations, 1946, with regard to disputes between the UN and member states as to the interpretation or application of the Convention. Note in addition article VIII, section 21(b) of the UN-US Headquarters Agreement, 1947.

¹⁰¹ Note that by article 34 of the Statute of the International Court, only states may be parties to a contentious case before the Court.

¹⁰² Note that by virtue of article 5 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969, this Convention applies to any treaty which is the constituent instrument of an international organisation and to any treaty adopted within an international organisation, without prejudice to any relevant rules of the organisation. See also the Advisory Opinion on the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons*, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 74, noting that, 'From a formal standpoint, the constituent instruments of international organisations are multilateral treaties, to which the well-established rules of treaty interpretation apply.' See as to the principles of treaty interpretation, above, chapter 16, p. 932.

¹⁰³ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 74, referring to the institutional character of such organisations and emphasising that, 'the very nature of the organisation created, the objectives which have been assigned to it by its founders, the imperatives associated with the effective performance of its functions, as well as its own practice, are all elements which may deserve special attention when the time comes to interpret these constituent treaties'.

method of interpretation. Rather less attention than would be the case in the interpretation of normal treaties is paid to the intentions of the original framers and the *travaux préparatoires* (negotiating materials) and rather more to the principle of effectiveness in the light of the object and purposes of the agreement in question.¹⁰⁴ Because constitutions are 'living instruments' in constant use in order to carry out the purposes of the organisation in changing and developing circumstances, subsequent practice is of particular importance in the context of interpretation.¹⁰⁵ The International Court has relied upon the subsequent practice of international organisations in a number of cases, although usually to support an interpretation already reached by the Court.¹⁰⁶

*The powers of international institutions*¹⁰⁷

International organisations are unlike states that possess a general competence as subjects of international law.¹⁰⁸ They are governed by the principle of speciality, so that, as the International Court has noted, 'they are invested by the states which create them with powers, the limits of which are a function of the common interests whose promotion those states entrust to them'.¹⁰⁹ Such powers may be expressly laid down in the constituent

¹⁰⁴ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 59. See also the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 180.

¹⁰⁵ See article 31(3)b of the Vienna Convention. See also E. Lauterpacht, 'Development', pp. 420 ff.

¹⁰⁶ See e.g. the *Competence of the General Assembly for the Admission of a State to the United Nations* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 4, 9; 17 ILR, pp. 326, 329; the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 17, 22; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 12, and the *IMCO* case, ICJ Reports, 1960, pp. 150, 167–8; 30 ILR, pp. 426, 439–41.

¹⁰⁷ See e.g. Sarooshi, *International Organizations*; Klabbbers, *Introduction*, chapter 4; E. Lauterpacht, 'Development', pp. 423–74; Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 135; Rama-Montaldo, 'Legal Personality'; A. I. L. Campbell, 'The Limits of Powers of International Organizations', 32 ICLQ, 1983, p. 523; K. Skubiszewski, 'Implied Powers of International Organizations' in *International Law at a Time of Perplexity* (ed. Y. Dinstein), Dordrecht, 1989, p. 855, and Kirgis, *International Organizations*, chapter 3.

¹⁰⁸ See the Advisory Opinion of the International Court on the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons in Armed Conflict* brought by the World Health Organisation, ICJ Reports, 1996, p. 66, 78–9.

¹⁰⁹ *Ibid.* The Court here cited the Permanent Court's Advisory Opinion in the *Jurisdiction of the European Commission of the Danube*, PCIJ, Series B, No. 14, p. 64, which noted that, 'As the European Commission is not a state, but an international institution with a special purpose, it only has the functions bestowed upon it by the Definitive Statute with a view to the fulfilment of that purpose, but it has power to exercise those functions to their full extent, in so far as the Statute does not impose restrictions upon it.'

instruments or may arise subsidiarily as implied powers,¹¹⁰ being those deemed necessary for fulfilment of the functions of the particular organisation. The test of validity for such powers has been variously expressed. The International Court noted in the *Reparation* case that:¹¹¹

[u]nder international law the organization must be deemed to have those powers which, though not expressly provided in the charter, are conferred upon it by necessary implication as being essential to the performance of its duties.¹¹²

In the *Effect of Awards of Compensation Made by the UN Administrative Tribunal* case,¹¹³ the Court held that the General Assembly could validly establish an administrative tribunal in the absence of an express power since the capacity to do this arose 'by necessary intendment' out of the Charter, while in the *Certain Expenses of the UN* case,¹¹⁴ the Court declared that 'when the organisation takes action which warrants the assertion that it was appropriate for the fulfilment of one of the stated purposes of the United Nations, the presumption is that such action is not *ultra vires* the organisation'. The tests posited therefore have ranged from powers arising by 'necessary implication as being essential to the performance' of constitutionally laid down duties, to those arising 'by necessary intendment' out of the constituent instrument, to those deemed 'appropriate for the fulfilment' of constitutionally authorised purposes of the organisation. There are clearly variations of emphasis in such formulations.¹¹⁵ Nevertheless, although the functional test is determinative, it operates within the framework of those powers expressly conferred by the constitution of the organisation. Thus any attempt to infer a power that was inconsistent with an express power would fail, although there is clearly an area of ambiguity here.¹¹⁶ In the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons*

¹¹⁰ See Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 158 ff.

¹¹¹ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 182; 16 AD, pp. 318, 326.

¹¹² This passage was cited in the *Legality of the Use by a State of Nuclear Weapons* case, ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 78–9. Compare also the approach adopted by the International Court in the *Reparation* case with that adopted by Judge Hackworth in his Dissenting Opinion in that case, ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 196–8; 16 AD, pp. 318, 328. See also G. G. Fitzmaurice, 'The Law and Procedure of the International Court of Justice: International Organizations and Tribunals', 29 BYIL, 1952, p. 1.

¹¹³ ICJ Reports, 1954, pp. 47, 56–7; 21 ILR, pp. 310, 317–18.

¹¹⁴ ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 168; 34 ILR, pp. 281, 297.

¹¹⁵ See also the *Fédéchar* case, Case 8/55, European Court Reports, 1954–6, p. 299.

¹¹⁶ See also e.g. the *International Status of South-West Africa* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 128, 136–8; 17 ILR, pp. 47, 53; the *Expenses* case, ICJ Reports, 1962, pp. 151, 167–8; 34 ILR, pp. 281, 296 and the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 47–9; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 37.

case,¹¹⁷ the Court noted that the World Health Organisation had under article 2 of its Constitution adopted in 1946 the competence 'to deal with the effects on health of the use of nuclear weapons, or any other hazardous activity, and to take preventive measures aimed at protecting the health of populations in the event of such weapons being used or such activities engaged in'.¹¹⁸ However, the Court concluded that the question asked of it related not to the effects of the use of nuclear weapons on health, but to the legality of the use of such weapons in view of their health and environmental effects. Whatever those effects might be, the competence of the WHO to deal with them was not dependent upon the legality of the acts that caused them. Accordingly, the Court concluded that in the light of the constitution of the WHO as properly interpreted, the organisation had not been granted the competence to address the legality of the use of nuclear weapons and that therefore the competence to request an advisory opinion did not exist since the question posed was not one that could be considered as arising 'within the scope of . . . activities' of the WHO as required by article 96(2) of the UN Charter.¹¹⁹

So far as the International Court itself is concerned, it has held that it possesses 'an inherent jurisdiction enabling it to take such action as may be required, on the one hand to ensure that the exercise of its jurisdiction over the merits, if and when established, shall not be frustrated, and on the other, to provide for the orderly settlement of all matters in dispute, to ensure the observance of the "inherent limitations on the exercise of the judicial function" of the Court, and to "maintain its judicial character"'.¹²⁰

Of great importance is the question of the capacity of international organisations to conclude international treaties.¹²¹ This will primarily

¹¹⁷ ICJ Reports, 1996, pp. 66, 78–9. ¹¹⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 76.

¹¹⁹ Article 96(2) of the UN Charter provides that organs of the UN (apart from the Security Council and General Assembly) and specialised agencies which may at any time be so authorised by the General Assembly may request advisory opinions of the International Court on 'legal questions arising within the scope of their activities'.

¹²⁰ The *Nuclear Tests* case, ICJ Reports, 1974, pp. 253, 259; 57 ILR, p. 398. See the Appeals Chamber in the *Tadić (Jurisdiction)* case, 105 ILR, pp. 453, 463 ff. See also E. Lauterpacht, "Partial" Judgments and the Inherent Jurisdiction of the International Court of Justice' in *Fifty Years of the International Court of Justice* (eds. V. Lowe and M. Fitzmaurice), Cambridge, 1996, pp. 465, 476 ff.

¹²¹ See e.g. Klabbers, *Introduction*, chapter 13; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1096 ff.; J. W. Schneider, *Treaty-Making Power of International Organizations*, Geneva, 1959, and C. Parry 'The Treaty-Making Power of the UN', 26 BYIL, 1949, p. 147. See also above, chapter 16, p. 953, with regard to the Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations. See also *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1982, vol. II, part 2, pp. 9 ff.

depend upon the constituent instrument, since the existence of legal personality is on its own probably insufficient to ground the competence to enter into international agreements.¹²² Article 6 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations, 1986 provides that '[t]he capacity of an international organisation to conclude treaties is governed by the rules of that organisation'. This is a wider formulation than reliance solely upon the constituent instrument and permits recourse to issues of implied powers, interpretation and subsequent practice. It was noted in the commentary of the International Law Commission that the phrase 'the rules of the organisation' meant, in addition to the constituent instruments,¹²³ relevant decisions and resolutions and the established practice of the organisation.¹²⁴ Accordingly, demonstration of treaty-making capacity will revolve around the competences of the organisation as demonstrated in each particular case by reference to the constituent instruments, evidenced implied powers and subsequent practice.

*The applicable law*¹²⁵

International institutions are established by states by means of international treaties. Such instruments fall to be interpreted and applied within the framework of international law. Accordingly, as a general rule, the applicable or 'proper' or 'personal' law of international organisations is international law.¹²⁶ In addition, the organisation in question may well have entered into treaty relationships with particular states, for example,

¹²² See e.g. Hungdah Chiu, *The Capacity of International Organizations to Conclude Treaties and the Special Legal Aspects of the Treaties So Concluded*, The Hague, 1966; *Agreements of International Organizations and the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties* (ed. K. Zemanek), Vienna, 1971; G. Nascimento e Silva, 'The 1986 Vienna Convention and the Treaty-Making Power of International Organizations', 29 German YIL, 1986, p. 68, and 'The 1969 and 1986 Conventions on the Law of Treaties: A Comparison' in Dinstein, *International Law at a Time of Perplexity*, p. 461.

¹²³ See e.g. article 43 and articles 75, 77, 79, 83 and 85 of the UN Charter concerning military assistance arrangements with the Security Council and Trusteeship Agreements respectively.

¹²⁴ *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1982, vol. II, part 2, p. 41.

¹²⁵ See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 20–2 and 227 ff.; F. A. Mann, 'International Corporations and National Law', 42 BYIL, 1967, p. 145; F. Seyersted, 'Applicable Law in Relations Between Intergovernmental Organizations and Private Parties', 122 HR, 1976 III, p. 427, and C. W. Jenks, *The Proper Law of International Organizations*, London, 1961.

¹²⁶ Jenks, *Proper Law*, p. 3, wrote that 'if a body has the character of an international body corporate the law governing its corporate life must necessarily be international in character'. See also the *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, vol. I, pp. 133 ff.

in the case of a headquarters agreement, and these relationships will also be governed by international law. Those matters that will necessarily (in the absence of express provision to the contrary) be governed by international law will include questions as to the existence, constitution, status, membership and representation of the organisation.¹²⁷

However, the applicable law in particular circumstances may be domestic law. Thus, where the organisation is purchasing or leasing land or entering into contracts for equipment or services, such activities will normally be subject to the appropriate national law. Tortious liability as between the organisation and a private individual will generally be subject to domestic law, but tortious activity may be governed by international law depending upon the circumstances, for example, where there has been damage to the property of an international organisation by the police or armed forces of a state. The internal law of the organisation will cover matters such as employment relations, the establishment and functioning of subsidiary organs and the management of administrative services.¹²⁸ The internal law of an organisation, which includes the constituent instruments and subsidiary regulations and norms and any relevant contractual arrangements, may in reality be seen as a specialised and particularised part of international law, since it is founded upon agreements that draw their validity and applicability from the principles of international law.

*The responsibility of international institutions*¹²⁹

The establishment of an international organisation with international personality results in the formation of a new legal person, separate and distinct from that of the states creating it. This separate and distinct personality necessarily imports consequences as to international responsibility,

¹²⁷ See also Colman J in *Westland Helicopters Ltd v. AOI* [1995] 2 WLR 126, 144 ff., and Millett J in *In re International Tin Council* [1987] Ch. 419, 452, upheld by the Court of Appeal, [1989] Ch. 309, 330.

¹²⁸ See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 9. See also P. Cahier, 'Le Droit Interne des Organisations Internationales', 67 RGDIP, 1963, p. 563, and G. Balldore-Pallieri, 'Le Droit Interne des Organisations Internationales', 127 HR, 1969 II, p. 1.

¹²⁹ See e.g. Klabbers, *Introduction*, chapter 14; Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 12; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1166 ff.; *Bowett's International Institutions*, pp. 512 ff.; M. Hirsch, *The Responsibility of International Organizations Towards Third Parties: Some Basic Principles*, Dordrecht, 1995; P. Klein, *La Responsabilité des Organisations Internationales*, Brussels, 1998; C. Eagleton, 'International Organisation and the Law of Responsibility', 76 HR, 1950 I, p. 319; F. V. Garcia Amador, 'State Responsibility: Some New Problems', 94 HR, 1958, p. 410, and M. Perez Gonzalez, 'Les Organisations

both to and by the organisation. The International Court noted in the *Reparation* case, for example, that¹³⁰ ‘when an infringement occurs, the organisation should be able to call upon the responsible state to remedy its default, and, in particular, to obtain from the state reparation for the damage that the default may have caused’ and emphasised that there existed an ‘undeniable right of the organization to demand that its members shall fulfil the obligations entered into by them in the interest of the good working of the organization.’¹³¹ Responsibility is a necessary consequence of international personality and the resulting possession of international rights and duties. Such rights and duties may flow from treaties, such as headquarters agreements,¹³² or from the principles of customary international law.¹³³ The precise nature of responsibility will depend upon the circumstances of the case and, no doubt, analogies drawn from the law of state responsibility with regard to the conditions under which responsibility will be imposed.¹³⁴ In brief, one can note the following. The basis of international responsibility is the breach of an international obligation¹³⁵ and such obligations will depend upon the situation. The Court noted in the *Reparation* case¹³⁶ that the obligations entered into by member states to enable the agents of the UN to perform their duties were obligations owed to the organisation. Thus, the organisation has, in the case of a breach of such obligations, ‘the capacity to claim adequate reparation, and that in assessing this reparation it is authorised to include the damage suffered by the victim or by persons entitled through him’. Whereas

Internationales et le Droit de la Responsabilité’, 92 RGDIP, 1988, p. 63. The International Law Commission is currently considering the question of responsibility of international organisations: see e.g. Report of the ILC, 2007, A/62/10, p. 178, and references to draft articles as currently proposed are to those contained in this document. See also above, chapter 14.

¹³⁰ ICJ Reports, 1949, pp. 174, 183; 16 AD, pp. 318, 327.

¹³¹ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 184; 16 AD, p. 328.

¹³² See e.g. the *WHO Regional Office* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 73; 62 ILR, p. 450 and the *Case Concerning the Obligation to Arbitrate*, ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 12; 82 ILR, p. 225.

¹³³ See the *WHO Regional Office* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, pp. 73, 90; 62 ILR, pp. 450, 474, referring to ‘general rules of international law’.

¹³⁴ See above, chapter 14. See also Report of the ILC, 2007, A/62/10, p. 178.

¹³⁵ See e.g. the *Reparation* case, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 180; 16 AD, p. 323. Article 3 of the ILC draft articles on responsibility of international organisations provides that, ‘Every internationally wrongful act of an international organization entails the international responsibility of the international organization’ and that, ‘There is an internationally wrongful act of an international organization when conduct consisting of an action or omission: (a) Is attributable to the international organization under international law; and (b) Constitutes a breach of an international obligation of that international organization.’

¹³⁶ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 184; 16 AD, p. 328.

the right of a state to assert a claim on behalf of a victim is predicated upon the link of nationality, in the case of an international organisation, the necessary link relates to the requirements of the organisation and therefore the fact that the victim was acting on behalf of the organisation in exercising one of the functions of that organisation. As the Court noted, 'the organization . . . possesses a right of functional protection in respect of its agents'.¹³⁷

Just as a state can be held responsible for injury to an organisation, so can the organisation be held responsible for injury to a state, where the injury arises out of a breach by the organisation of an international obligation deriving from a treaty provision or principle of customary international law.¹³⁸ Again, analogies will be drawn from the general rules relating to state responsibility with regard to the conditions under which responsibility is imposed. For example, the conduct of an organ or an agent of an international organisation in the performance of the functions of that organ or agent (including officials and other persons or entities through whom the organisation acts) is considered as an act of the organisation, irrespective of the position actually held by the organ or agent and even if the conduct exceeds the authority of that organ or agent.¹³⁹ An international organisation which aids or assists a state or another international organisation in the commission of an internationally wrongful act will itself bear international responsibility where the organisation knew the circumstances of the wrongful act and the act would be internationally wrongful if committed by that organisation.¹⁴⁰ As in

¹³⁷ ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 184; 16 AD, p. 329. Note that the Court held that there was no rule of law which assigned priority either to the national state of the victim or the international organisation with regard to the bringing of an international claim, ICJ Reports, 1949, p. 185; 16 AD, p. 330.

¹³⁸ See e.g. the *WHO Regional Office* case, ICJ Reports, 1980, p. 73; 62 ILR, p. 450. Note that under articles 6 and 13 of the Outer Space Treaty, 1967, international organisations may be subject to the obligations of the treaty without being parties to it.

¹³⁹ See articles 4 and 6 of the ILC draft articles on responsibility of international organisations.

¹⁴⁰ Article 12 of the ILC draft articles on the responsibility of international organisations. Note that draft article 25 provides that a state which aids or assists an international organisation in the commission of an internationally wrongful act by the latter is internationally responsible in the same circumstances. But see here *Behrami v. France*, European Court of Human Rights, judgment of 2 May 2007, 133 ILR, p. 1, where the Court dismissed as inadmissible an application against a number of NATO states operating with the framework of KFOR (the international security force in Kosovo authorised by the Security Council under Chapter VII of the UN Charter) on the grounds that the actions complained against were 'directly attributable to the UN', whether to KFOR or to UNMIK (the international civil administration in Kosovo): see above, chapter 7, p. 350.

the case of states, international organisations may benefit from the precluding of responsibility in particular circumstances, such as consent by a state or an international organisation to the commission of the act or where the act constitutes a lawful measure of self-defence in conformity with international law.¹⁴¹ An international organisation responsible for the internationally wrongful act is under an obligation to cease that act and to offer appropriate assurances and guarantees of non-repetition (if circumstances so require) and to make full reparation for the injury caused.¹⁴²

The issue of responsibility has particularly arisen in the context of UN peacekeeping operations and liability for the activities of the members of such forces. In such circumstances, the UN has accepted responsibility and offered compensation for wrongful acts.¹⁴³ The crucial issue will be whether the wrongful acts in question are imputable to the UN and this has not been accepted where the offenders were under the jurisdiction of the national state, rather than under that of the UN. Much will depend upon the circumstances of the operation in question and the nature of the link between the offenders and the UN. It appears, for example, to have been accepted that in the Korean (1950) and Kuwait (1990) operations the relationship between the national forces and the UN was such as to preclude the latter's responsibility.¹⁴⁴ While responsibility will exist for internationally unlawful acts attributable to the institution in question, tortious liability may also arise for injurious consequences caused by lawful activities, for example environmental damage as a result of legitimate space activities.¹⁴⁵

¹⁴¹ Articles 17 and 18. Other examples of circumstances precluding wrongfulness include countermeasures, *force majeure*, distress and necessity: see articles 19–22. However, nothing may preclude the wrongful act of an international organisation which is not in conformity with an obligation arising under a peremptory norm of general international law (*jus cogens*): article 23 and see above, chapter 3, p. 123.

¹⁴² Articles 33 and 34. Full reparation is to take the form of restitution (re-establishment of the situation existing before the wrongful act was committed), compensation and satisfaction, either singly or in combination: see articles 37 to 42.

¹⁴³ See e.g. B. Amrallah, 'The International Responsibility of the United Nations for Activities Carried Out by UN Peace-Keeping Forces', 23 *Revue Égyptienne de Droit International*, 1976, p. 57; D. W. Bowett, *UN Forces*, London, 1964, pp. 149 ff.; F. Seyersted, 'United Nations Forces: Some Legal Problems', 37 *BYIL*, 1961, p. 351. See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 401 ff., and *M v. Organisation des Nations Unies et l'État Belge* 45 ILR, p. 446.

¹⁴⁴ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 403. See also *Behrami v. France*, above, note 140.

¹⁴⁵ As to remedies generally, see K. Wellens, *Remedies Against International Organizations*, Cambridge, 2002.

In the context of often unclear divisions of responsibility between the UN itself and states contributing troops for peacekeeping purposes, particularly serious issues have arisen with regard to allegations of sexual misconduct by UN peacekeepers. Because military members of national contingents are not subject to the criminal jurisdiction of the host state, the model Status of Forces Agreement between the UN and the state where the peacekeeping force was to be stationed envisaged that the Secretary-General would obtain formal assurances from the troop-contributing country concerned that it would exercise jurisdiction with respect to crimes that might be committed by its forces in the mission area. However, this has not been the practice. It has recently been recommended that peacekeeping operations should be accompanied by a memorandum of understanding which would include a provision to this effect.¹⁴⁶

*Liability of member states*¹⁴⁷

The relationship between the member states of an organisation and the organisation itself is often complex. The situation is further complicated upon a consideration of the position of third states (or organisations) prejudiced by the activities of the organisation. The starting point for any analysis is the issue of legal personality. An international organisation created by states that does not itself possess legal personality cannot be the bearer of rights or obligations separate and distinct from those of the member states. It therefore follows that such organisations cannot be interposed as between the injured third parties and the member states of that organisation. In such cases any liability for the debts or delicts attributable to the organisation causing harm to third parties would fall upon the member states.¹⁴⁸ Where, however, the organisation does possess legal personality, the situation is different. Separate personality implies liability for activities entered into. The question of the liability of member states to third parties may arise subsidiarily and poses some difficulty. Such a question falls to be decided by the rules of international law not

¹⁴⁶ See the UN Report on Sexual Exploitation and Abuse by UN Peacekeeping Personnel, A/59/710, 24 March 2005, para. 78. See also A/45/594, annex, para. 48.

¹⁴⁷ See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 13; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 990 ff.; Higgins, 'Legal Consequences'; H. Schermers, 'Liability of International Organizations', 1 *Leiden Journal of International Law*, 1988, p. 14; C. F. Amerasinghe, 'Liability to Third Parties of Member States of International Organizations: Practice, Principle and Judicial Precedent', 85 *AJIL*, 1991, 259.

¹⁴⁸ See e.g. Higgins, 'Legal Consequences', p. 378, and Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 412.

least since it is consequential upon a determination of personality which is in the case of international organisations governed by international law.¹⁴⁹ The problem is also to be addressed in the context of the general principle of international law that treaties do not create obligations for third states without their consent (*pacta tertiis nec nocent nec prosunt*).¹⁵⁰ By virtue of this rule, member states would not be responsible for breaches of agreements between organisations and other parties.

The problems faced by the International Tin Council during 1985–6 are instructive in this context.¹⁵¹ The ITC, created in 1956, conducted its activities in accordance with successive international tin agreements, which aimed to regulate the tin market by virtue of export controls and the establishment of buffer stocks of tin financed by member states. The Sixth International Tin Agreement of 1982 brought together twenty-three producer and consumer states and the EEC. In October 1985, the ITC announced that it had run out of funds and credit and the London Metal Exchange suspended trading in tin. The situation had arisen basically as a result of over-production of the metal and purchasing of tin by the ITC at prices above the market level.

Since the ITC member states refused to guarantee the debts of the organisation and since proposals to create a successor organisation to the ITC collapsed, serious questions were posed as to legal liabilities. The ITC was a corporate entity enjoying a measure of legal immunity in the UK as a result of the International Tin Council (Immunities and Privileges) Order 1972. It had immunity from the jurisdiction of the courts except in cases of enforcement of an arbitral award. The ITC Headquarters Agreement provided that contracts entered into with a person or company resident

¹⁴⁹ It is possible for states to create an international organisation under domestic law, for example, the Bank for International Settlements, but this is very rare: see e.g. M. Giovanoli, 'The Role of the Bank for International Settlements in International Monetary Co-operation and Its Tasks Relating to the European Currency Unit', 23 *The International Lawyer*, 1989, p. 841.

¹⁵⁰ See articles 34 and 35 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties, 1969 and articles 34 and 35 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations or between International Organisations, 1986. See also C. Chinkin, *Third Parties in International Law*, Oxford, 1993. See also above, chapter 16, p. 928.

¹⁵¹ See e.g. The Second Report from the Trade and Industry Committee, 1985–6, HC 305-I, 1986 and *The Times*, 13 March 1986, p. 21 and *ibid.*, 14 March 1986, p. 17. See also G. Wassermann, 'Tin and Other Commodities in Crisis', 20 *Journal of World Trade Law*, 1986, p. 232; E. Lauterpacht, 'Development', p. 412; I. Cheyne, 'The International Tin Council', 36 ICLQ, 1987, p. 931, *ibid.*, 38 ICLQ, 1989, p. 417 and *ibid.*, 39 ICLQ, 1990, p. 945, and R. Sadurska and C. M. Chinkin, 'The Collapse of the International Tin Council: A Case of State Responsibility?', 30 *Va. JIL*, 1990, p. 845.

in the UK were to contain an arbitration clause. It was also the case that where a specific agreement provided for a waiver of immunity by the organisation, the courts would have jurisdiction.¹⁵² Accordingly, the immunity from suit of the ITC was by no means unlimited.

A variety of actions were commenced by the creditors, of which the most important was the direct action. Here, a number of banks and brokers proceeded directly against the Department of Trade and Industry of the British government and other members of the ITC on the argument that they were liable on contracts concluded by the ITC.¹⁵³ The issues were argued at length in the Court of Appeal and in the House of Lords.¹⁵⁴ The main submission¹⁵⁵ for present purposes was that the members of the ITC and the organisation were liable concurrently for the debts under both English and international law. It was argued that under international law members of an international organisation bear joint and several liability for its debts unless the constituent treaty expressly excludes such liability. Although there had been hints of such an approach earlier¹⁵⁶ and treaty practice had been far from consistent, Lord Templeman noted that 'no plausible evidence was produced of the existence of such a rule of international law'¹⁵⁷ and this, it is believed, correctly

¹⁵² See e.g. *Standard Chartered Bank v. ITC* [1986] 3 All ER 257; 77 ILR, p. 8.

¹⁵³ See also the attempt to have the ITC wound up under Part XXI of the Companies Act 1985, *Re International Tin Council* [1988] 3 All ER 257, 361; 80 ILR, p. 181, and the attempt to appoint a receiver by way of equitable execution over the assets of the ITC following an arbitration award against the ITC (converted into a judgment) which it was argued would enable contributions or an indemnity to be claimed from the members, *MacLaine Watson v. International Tin Council* [1988] 3 WLR 1169; 80 ILR, p. 191.

¹⁵⁴ *MacLaine Watson v. Department of Trade and Industry* [1988] 3 WLR 1033 (Court of Appeal); 80 ILR, p. 49 and [1989] 3 All ER 523 (House of Lords) sub. nom. *J. H. Rayner Ltd v. Department of Trade and Industry*; 81 ILR, p. 671.

¹⁵⁵ One submission was that the relevant International Tin Council (Immunities and Privileges) Order 1972 did not incorporate the ITC under English law but conferred upon it the capacities of a body corporate and thus the ITC did not have legal personality. This was rejected by the House of Lords, [1989] 3 All ER 523, 527–8 and 548–9; 81 ILR, pp. 677, 703. Another submission was that the ITC was only authorised to enter into contracts as an agent for the members under the terms of the Sixth International Tin Agreement, 1982. This was also dismissed, on the basis that the terms of the Order clearly authorised the ITC to enter into contracts as a principal, [1989] 3 All ER 530 and 556–7; 81 ILR, pp. 681, 715.

¹⁵⁶ See e.g. *Westland Helicopters v. Arab Organization for Industrialisation* 23 ILM, 1984, 1071; 80 ILR, p. 600. See H. T. Adam, *Les Organismes Internationaux Spécialisés*, Paris, 1965, vol. I, pp. 129–30, and Seidl-Hohenveldern, *Corporations*, pp. 119–20.

¹⁵⁷ [1989] 3 All ER 523, 529; 81 ILR, p. 680. This was the view adopted by a majority of the Court of Appeal: see Ralph Gibson LJ, [1988] 3 WLR 1033, 1149 and Kerr LJ, *ibid.*, 1088–9 (but cf. Nourse LJ, *ibid.*, 1129–31); 80 ILR, pp. 49, 170; 101–2; 147–9. It is fair to

represents the current state of international law.¹⁵⁸ The liability of a member state could arise, of course, either through an express provision¹⁵⁹ in the constituent instruments of the organisation providing for the liability of member states or where the organisation was in fact under the direct control of the state concerned or acted as its agent in law and in fact, or by virtue of unilateral undertakings or guarantee by the state in the particular circumstances.¹⁶⁰

There may, however, be instances where the liability of member states is engaged. For example, in *Matthews v. UK*, the European Court of Human Rights stated that the European Convention on Human Rights did not exclude the transfer of competences to international organisations 'provided that Convention rights continue to be "secured". Member states' responsibility therefore continues even after such a transfer.'¹⁶¹ Similarly, where the member state acts together with an international organisation in the commission of an unlawful act, then it too will be liable.¹⁶²

The accountability of international institutions

The concept of accountability is broader than the principles of responsibility and liability for internationally wrongful acts and rests upon the notion that the lawful application of power imports accountability for its exercise. Such accountability will necessarily range across legal, political, administrative and financial forms and essentially create a

emphasise that the approach of the Court, in effect, was primarily focused upon domestic law and founded upon the perception that without the relevant Order in Council the ITC had no legal existence in the law of the UK. An international organisation had legal personality in the sphere of international law and it did not thereby automatically acquire legal personality within domestic legal systems. For that, at least in the case of the UK, specific legislation was required.

¹⁵⁸ See e.g. the 1991 Partial Award on Liability of the ICC Tribunal in the *Westland Helicopters* case: see Higgins, 'Legal Consequences', p. 393. See also I. F. I. Shihata, 'Role of Law in Economic Development: The Legal Problems of International Public Ventures', 25 *Revue Égyptienne de Droit International*, 1969, pp. 119, 125; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, p. 992, and Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 431 ff.

¹⁵⁹ Or indeed a provision demonstrating such an intention.

¹⁶⁰ See articles 7 and 8 of the Resolution of the Institut de Droit International, *Annuaire de l'Institut de Droit International*, 1995 I, pp. 465, 467.

¹⁶¹ Judgment of 18 February 1999, para. 32; 123 ILR, p. 13. However, see also *Bosphorus Airways v. Ireland*, Judgment of 30 June 2005 and *Behrami v. France*, Judgment of 2 May 2007; 133 ILR, p. 1.

¹⁶² See above, p. 1312.

regulatory and behavioural framework. In such a context, particular attention should be devoted to the principle of good governance, which concerns the benchmarks of good administration and transparent conduct and monitoring; the principle of good faith; the principle of constitutionality and institutional balance, including acting within the scope of functions; the principle of supervision and control with respect to subsidiary organs; the principle of stating reasons for decisions; the principle of procedural regularity to prevent *inter alia* abuse of discretionary powers and errors of fact or law; the principle of objectivity and impartiality, and the principle of due diligence.¹⁶³

*Privileges and immunities*¹⁶⁴

In order to carry out their functions more effectively, states and their representatives benefit from a variety of privileges and immunities. International organisations will also be entitled to the grant of privileges and immunities for their assets, properties and representatives. The two situations are not, of course, analogous in practice, since, for example, the basis of state immunities may be seen in terms of the sovereign equality of states and reciprocity, while this is not realistic with regard to organisations, both because they are not in a position of 'sovereign

¹⁶³ See e.g. A. Momirov, *Accountability of International Organizations in Post-Conflict Governance Missions*, The Hague, 2005, and K. Wellens, 'The Primary Model Rules of Accountability of International Organizations: The Principles and Rules Governing Their Conduct or the Yardsticks for Their Accountability', in *Proliferation of International Organizations* (eds. N. M. Blokker and H. G. Schermers), Leiden, 2001, p. 433. See also the Recommended Rules and Practices drafted by the Committee on the Accountability of International Organisations and adopted in 2004 at the Berlin Conference of the International Law Association.

¹⁶⁴ See e.g. Klabbers, *Introduction*, chapter 8; Reinisch, *International Organizations*, pp. 127 ff.; Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 10; E. Gaillard and I. Pingel-Lenuzza, 'International Organizations and Immunity from Jurisdiction: To Restrict or To Bypass', 51 ICLQ, 2002, p. 1; M. Singer, 'Jurisdictional Immunity of International Organizations: Human Rights and Functional Necessity Concerns', 36 Va. JIL, 1995, p. 53; C. W. Jenks, *International Immunities*, London, 1961; J. F. Lalive, 'L'Immunité de Jurisdiction et d'Execution des Organisations Internationales', 84 HR, 1953 III, p. 205; C. Dominicé, 'Le Nature et l'Étendue de l'Immunité des Organisations' in *Festschrift Ignaz Seidl-Hohenveldern* (ed. K. H. Böckstiegel), Cologne, 1988, p. 11; Nguyen Quoc Dinh, 'Les Privilèges et Immunités des Organisations Internationales d'après les Jurisprudences Nationales Depuis 1945', AFDI, 1957, p. 55; D. B. Michaels, *International Privileges and Immunities*, The Hague, 1971; Kirgis, *International Organizations*, pp. 26 ff.; *Yearbook of the ILC*, 1967, vol. II, pp. 154 ff.; DUSPIL, 1978, pp. 90 ff. and *ibid.*, 1979, pp. 189 ff., and Morgenstern, *Legal Problems*, pp. 5–10.

equality¹⁶⁵ and because they are unable to grant (or withdraw) immunities as a reciprocal gesture. It is also the case that the immunities of states have been restricted in the light of the distinction between transactions *jure imperii* and *jure gestionis*,¹⁶⁶ while any such distinction in the case of international organisations would be inappropriate.¹⁶⁷ The true basis for the immunities accorded to international organisations is that they are necessitated by the effective exercise of their functions. This, of course, will raise the question as to how one is to measure the level of immunities in the light of such functional necessity.

As far as the UN itself is concerned, article 105 of the Charter notes that:

- (1) The Organization shall enjoy in the territory of each of its members such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the fulfilment of its purposes.
- (2) Representatives of the members of the United Nations and officials of the Organization shall similarly enjoy such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the independent exercise of their functions in connection with the Organization.¹⁶⁸

These general provisions have been supplemented by the General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations, 1946, and by the Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the Specialised Agencies, 1947.¹⁶⁹ These general conventions, building upon provisions in the relevant constituent instruments, have themselves been supplemented by bilateral agreements, particularly the growing number of headquarters and host agreements. The UN, for example, has concluded headquarters agreements with the United States for the UN Headquarters in New

¹⁶⁵ The reference, for example, in *Branno v. Ministry of War* 22 ILR, p. 756, to the 'sovereignty of NATO' is misleading.

¹⁶⁶ See above, chapter 13, p. 708.

¹⁶⁷ See R. Higgins, *Problems and Process*, Oxford, 1994, p. 93.

¹⁶⁸ Note that the provisions dealing with privileges and immunities of international financial institutions tend to be considerably more detailed: see e.g. article VII of the Articles of Agreement of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, article IX of the Articles of Agreement of the International Monetary Fund and articles 46 to 55 of the Constitution of the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development.

¹⁶⁹ This also contains separate draft annexes relating to each specialised agency. See also the Agreement on the Privileges and Immunities of the Organisation of American States, 1949; the General Agreement on the Privileges and Immunities of the Council of Europe, 1949 and the Protocol Concerning the Privileges and Immunities of the European Communities, 1965.

York and with Switzerland for the UN Office in Geneva in 1947.¹⁷⁰ Such agreements, for example, provide for the application of local laws within the headquarters area subject to the application of relevant staff administrative regulations; the immunity of the premises and property of the organisation from search, requisition and confiscation and other forms of interference by the host state; exemption from local taxes except for utility charges and freedom of communication.¹⁷¹

The International Court noted in the *Applicability of the Obligation to Arbitrate* case,¹⁷² which concerned US anti-terrorism legislation necessitating the closure of the PLO Observer Mission to the UN in New York, that the US was obliged to respect the obligation contained in section 21 of the UN Headquarters Agreement to enter into arbitration where a dispute had arisen concerning the interpretation and application of the Agreement. This was despite the US view that it was not certain a dispute had arisen, since the existence of an international dispute was a matter for objective determination.¹⁷³ The Court emphasised in particular that the provisions of a treaty prevail over the domestic law of a state party to that treaty.¹⁷⁴

It is clearly the functional approach rather than any representational argument that forms the theoretical basis for the recognition of privileges and immunities with respect to international organisations. This point has been made in cases before domestic courts, but it is important to note that this concept includes the need for the preservation of the independence of the institution as against the state in whose territory it is operating. In *Mendaro v. World Bank*,¹⁷⁵ for example, the US Court of Appeals held that the reason for the granting of immunities to international organisations was to enable them to pursue their functions more effectively and in particular to permit organisations to operate free from unilateral control by a member state over their activities within its territory. In *Iran-US Claims Tribunal v.*

¹⁷⁰ See also the agreements with Austria, 1979, regarding the UN Vienna Centre; with Japan, 1976, regarding the UN University, and with Kenya, 1975, regarding the UN Environment Programme. Note also the various Status of Forces Agreements concluded by the UN with, for example, Egypt in 1957, the Congo in 1961 and Cyprus in 1964, dealing with matters such as the legal status, facilities, privileges and immunities of the UN peacekeeping forces.

¹⁷¹ Similar agreements may cover regional offices of international organisations: see e.g. the Agreement between the World Health Organisation and Egypt, 1951 concerning a regional office of the organisation in that state.

¹⁷² ICJ Reports, 1988, p. 12; 82 ILR, p. 225.

¹⁷³ ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 27–30; 82 ILR, p. 245.

¹⁷⁴ ICJ Reports, 1988, pp. 33–4; 82 ILR, p. 251.

¹⁷⁵ 717 F.2d 610, 615–17 (1983); 99 ILR, pp. 92, 97–9.

AS,¹⁷⁶ the Dutch Supreme Court pointed to the ‘interest of the international organisation in having a guarantee that it will be able to perform its tasks independently and free from interferences under all circumstances’ and noted that ‘an international organisation is in principle not subject to the jurisdiction of the courts of the host state in respect of all disputes which are immediately connected with the performance of the tasks entrusted to the organisation in question’. The Italian Court of Cassation in *FAO v. INPDAI*¹⁷⁷ held that activities closely affecting the institutional purposes of the international organisation qualified for immunity, while the Employment Appeal Tribunal in *Mukuro v. European Bank for Reconstruction and Development*¹⁷⁸ stated that immunity from suit and legal process was justified on the ground that it was necessary for the fulfilment of the purposes of the bank in question, for the preservation of its independence and neutrality from control by or interference from the host state and for the effective and uninterrupted exercise of its multinational functions through its representatives. The Swiss Labour Court in *ZM v. Permanent Delegation of the League of Arab States to the UN* held that ‘customary international law recognised that international organisations, whether universal or regional, enjoy absolute jurisdictional immunity... This privilege of international organisations arises from the purposes and functions assigned to them. They can only carry out their tasks if they are beyond the censure of the courts of member states or their headquarters.’¹⁷⁹

The issue of the immunity of international organisations came before the European Court of Human Rights in *Waite and Kennedy v. Germany*, where the applicants complained that by granting immunity to an international organisation in an employment dispute, Germany had violated the Convention right of free access to a court under article 6(1). The European Court, however, declared that the attribution of privileges and immunities to international organisations was ‘an essential means of ensuring the proper functioning of such organisations free from unilateral interference

¹⁷⁶ 94 ILR, pp. 321, 329. See also *Eckhardt v. Eurocontrol (No. 2)*, *ibid.*, pp. 331, 337–8, where the District Court of Maastricht held that since an international organisation had been created by treaty by states, such organisation was entitled to immunity from jurisdiction on the grounds of customary international law to the extent necessary for the operation of its public service.

¹⁷⁷ 87 ILR, pp. 1, 6–7. See also *Mininni v. Bari Institute*, *ibid.*, p. 28 and *Sindacato UIL v. Bari Institute*, *ibid.*, p. 37.

¹⁷⁸ [1994] ICR 897, 903. See also the *European Molecular Biology Laboratory Arbitration* 105 ILR, p. 1.

¹⁷⁹ 116 ILR, pp. 643, 647.

by individual governments' and that the requirements of article 6 would be satisfied where there existed reasonable alternative means to protect effectively the rights in question under the Convention and a satisfactory system of dispute settlement in the relevant international instruments.¹⁸⁰

It may be that such alternative dispute settlement requirements are not essential where the relevant international agreement providing for the immunities in question pre-dated the European Convention on Human Rights, but this should be regarded as controversial.¹⁸¹

Immunities may be granted to the representatives of states to the organisation, to the officials of the organisation and to the organisation itself. As far as the position of representatives of states to international organisations is concerned, article IV, section 11, of the UN General Convention, 1946 provides for the following privileges and immunities:

- (a) immunity from personal arrest or detention and from seizure of their personal baggage, and in respect of words spoken or written and all acts done by them in their capacity as representatives, immunity from legal process of every kind;
- (b) inviolability for all papers and documents;
- (c) the right to use codes and to receive papers or correspondence by courier or in sealed bags;
- (d) exemption in respect of themselves and their spouses from immigration restrictions, alien registration or national service obligations in the state they are visiting or through which they are passing in the exercise of their functions;
- (e) the same facilities in respect of currency or exchange restrictions as are accorded to representatives of foreign governments on temporary official missions;
- (f) the same immunities and facilities in respect of their personal baggage as are accorded to diplomatic envoys; and also
- (g) such other privileges, immunities and facilities not inconsistent with the foregoing as diplomatic envoys enjoy, except that they shall have no right to claim exemption from customs duties on goods imported (otherwise than as part of their personal baggage) or from excise duties or sales taxes.

¹⁸⁰ Judgment of 18 February 1999, paras. 63 and 67 ff.; 116 ILR, pp. 121, 134, and see *Beer and Regan v. Germany*, European Court of Human Rights, Judgment of 18 February 1999, paras. 53 ff. See also *Consortium X v. Swiss Federal Government*, Swiss Federal Supreme Court, 1st Civil Law Chamber, 2 July 2004 and *Entico Corporation v. UNESCO* [2008] EWHC 531 (Comm).

¹⁸¹ See e.g. *Entico Corporation v. UNESCO* [2008] EWHC 531 (Comm).

Article IV, section 14 provides that such privileges and immunities are accorded

in order to safeguard the independent exercise of their functions in connection with the United Nations. Consequently a Member not only has the right but is under a duty to waive the immunity of its representative in any case where in the opinion of the Member the immunity would impede the course of justice, and it can be waived without prejudice to the purpose for which the immunity is accorded.¹⁸²

One particular issue that has arisen and appears to have received no definitive determination relates to the competence of the host state under customary international law to seek unilaterally to withdraw the immunities of a state representative to an international organisation where relevant international agreements are unclear.¹⁸³ The matter was the subject of an application to the International Court of Justice by the Commonwealth of Dominica against Switzerland in 2006, complaining that the latter state had terminated the appointment of a Head of Mission accredited by the applicant to the UN and specialised agencies (but not to Switzerland).¹⁸⁴ However, the application was subsequently withdrawn.¹⁸⁵

The question of the privileges and immunities of representatives, however, is invariably addressed in headquarters agreements between

¹⁸² Article IV, section 16 provides that the term 'representatives' is deemed to include 'all delegates, deputy delegates, advisers, technical experts and secretaries of delegations'. The question of the representation of states to international organisations is also dealt with in the 1975 Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations of a Universal Character, which is closely modelled on the 1961 Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations, although it has been criticised by a number of host states for permitting more extensive privileges and immunities than is required in the light of functional necessity. See DUSPIL, 1975, pp. 38 ff. Article 30 of the Convention, in particular, provides that the head of mission and the members of the diplomatic staff of the mission shall enjoy immunity from the criminal jurisdiction of the host state and immunity from its civil and administrative jurisdiction, except in cases of real action relating to private immovable property situated in the host state (unless held on behalf of the sending state for the purposes of the mission); actions relating to succession and actions relating to any professional or commercial activity exercised by the person in question in the host state outside his official functions. See also above, chapter 13, p. 764.

¹⁸³ Note that some conventions permit this: see, for example, article VII, section 25 of the Convention on the Immunities of Specialised Agencies. See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 338 ff.

¹⁸⁴ This application dated 26 April 2006 was precipitated by the case of *A v. B*, Swiss Federal Supreme Court, 1st Civil Law Chamber, 8 April 2004, no. 4C.140/2003.

¹⁸⁵ See ICJ, Order of 9 June 2006. The case was entitled 'case concerning the status vis-à-vis the host state of a diplomatic envoy to the United Nations'.

international organisations and host states. Article V, section 15 of the UN Headquarters Agreement, 1947, for example, states that representatives¹⁸⁶ are entitled in the territory of the US 'to the same privileges and immunities, subject to corresponding conditions and obligations, as it accords to diplomatic envoys accredited to it'.¹⁸⁷

Secondly, privileges and immunities are granted to the officials of the organisation. Article V, section 18 of the UN Convention provides that officials of the UN are immune from legal process in respect of words spoken or written and all acts performed by them in their official capacity; exempt from taxation on the salaries and emoluments paid to them by the United Nations; immune from national service obligations; and immune, together with their spouses and relatives dependent on them, from immigration restrictions and alien registration. They also have the right to import free of duty their furniture and effects at the time of first taking up their post in the country in question. In addition, the Secretary-General and all Assistant Secretaries-General are accorded in respect of themselves, their spouses and minor children, the privileges and immunities exemptions and facilities accorded to diplomatic envoys, in accordance with international law.¹⁸⁸ Further, section 20 provides that privileges and immunities are granted to officials in the interests of the United Nations and not for the personal benefit of the individuals themselves. The Secretary-General has the right and the duty to waive the immunity of any official in any case where, in his opinion, the immunity would impede the course of justice and can be waived without prejudice to the interests of the United Nations. In the case of the Secretary-General, the Security Council shall have the right to waive immunity.

Experts performing missions for the UN are also granted a range of privileges and immunities, such as are necessary for the independent exercise of their functions during the period of their missions, including the time spent on journeys in connection with their missions. In particular they are accorded immunity from personal arrest or detention and from seizure of their personal baggage; immunity from legal process in respect of words spoken or written and acts done by them in the course of the performance of their mission; inviolability for all papers and documents; for the purpose of their communications with the United Nations, the right to use codes and to receive papers or correspondence by courier or

¹⁸⁶ These are defined in article V, section 15(1)–(4).

¹⁸⁷ See also *Third US Restatement of Foreign Relations Law*, pp. 518 ff.

¹⁸⁸ Section 19.

in sealed bags; and the same immunities and facilities in respect of their personal baggage as are accorded to diplomatic envoys.¹⁸⁹

The question of the immunities of persons on mission for the UN has come before the International Court in a couple of cases. The International Court delivered an advisory opinion concerning the applicability of provisions in the UN General Convention to special rapporteurs appointed by the Sub-Commission on the Prevention of Discrimination and the Protection of Minorities.¹⁹⁰ As noted above, article VI, section 22, of the Convention provides that experts performing missions for the United Nations are to be accorded such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the independent exercise of their functions during the periods of their missions. The International Court noted that such privileges and immunities could indeed be invoked against the state of nationality or of residence¹⁹¹ and that special rapporteurs for the Sub-Commission were to be regarded as experts on missions within the meaning of section 22.¹⁹² The privileges and immunities that would apply would be those that were necessary for the exercise of their functions, and in particular for the establishment of any contacts which may be useful for the preparation, the drafting and the presentation of their reports to the Sub-Commission.¹⁹³

The issue was revisited in the *Immunity from Legal Process* advisory opinion of the International Court which concerned the question of the immunity from legal process in Malaysia of Mr Kumaraswamy, a Special Rapporteur of the UN Commission of Human Rights on the Independence of Judges and Lawyers.¹⁹⁴ The Court confirmed that article VI, section 22 applied to Mr Kumaraswamy who, as Special Rapporteur, had been entrusted with a mission by the UN and was therefore an expert

¹⁸⁹ Article VI, section 22. Section 23 provides that privileges and immunities are granted in the interests of the United Nations and not for the personal benefit of the individuals themselves and the Secretary-General has the right and the duty to waive the immunity of any expert in any case where, in his opinion, the immunity would impede the course of justice and it can be waived without prejudice to the interests of the United Nations.

¹⁹⁰ *Applicability of Article VI, Section 22, of the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the United Nations*, ICJ Reports, 1989, p. 177; 85 ILR, p. 300. This opinion was requested by the Economic and Social Council, its first request for an Advisory Opinion under article 96(2) of the UN Charter.

¹⁹¹ In the absence of a reservation by the state concerned, ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 195–6; 85 ILR, pp. 322–3.

¹⁹² This applied even though the rapporteur concerned was not, or was no longer, a member of the Sub-Commission, since such a person is entrusted by the Sub-Commission with a research mission, ICJ Reports, 1989, pp. 196–7; 85 ILR, pp. 323–4.

¹⁹³ *Ibid.* ¹⁹⁴ ICJ Reports, 1999, p. 62; 121 ILR, p. 405.

within the terms of the section. The Court held that he was entitled to immunity with regard to the words spoken by him during the course of an interview that was published in a journal and that, in deciding whether an expert on mission was entitled to immunity in particular circumstances, the UN Secretary-General had a 'pivotal role'.¹⁹⁵ The Court concluded by stating that the government of Malaysia had an obligation under article 105 of the Charter and under the General Convention to inform its courts of the position taken by the Secretary-General. Failure to do so rendered the state liable under international law.¹⁹⁶

Thirdly, privileges and immunities are granted to the organisation itself. The range of privileges and immunities usually extended includes immunity from jurisdiction; inviolability of premises and archives; currency and fiscal privileges and freedom of communications.¹⁹⁷ In the case of immunity from jurisdiction, article II, section 2 of the UN General Convention, 1946 provides that:

The United Nations, its property and assets wherever located and by whomsoever held, shall enjoy immunity from every form of legal process except insofar as in any particular case it has expressly waived its immunity. It is, however, understood that no waiver of immunity shall extend to any measure of execution.¹⁹⁸

One question that has arisen is whether such immunity is absolute or, as is the case now with state immunity, a distinction between sovereign or public acts (*jure imperii*) on the one hand and private acts (*jure gestionis*) on the other can be drawn. However, the analogy with state immunity is inappropriate. International organisations do not exercise sovereign power nor is the theoretical basis of reciprocity arguable. International organisations are not states, but entities created in order to perform particular functions. In any event, relevant treaties do not make a distinction between sovereign or public acts and private acts in the case of international organisations and such a distinction cannot be inferred. Amerasinghe has, indeed, concluded that such a distinction is not justified and

¹⁹⁵ ICJ Reports, 1999, pp. 84 and 87.

¹⁹⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 87–8. The Court also affirmed that questions of immunity were preliminary issues to be decided expeditiously *in limine litis*, *ibid.*, p. 88. This is the same position as immunity claims before domestic courts: see above, chapter 13, p. 700.

¹⁹⁷ In all cases, the relevant agreements need to be examined as particular privileges and immunities may vary.

¹⁹⁸ See also article III, section 4 of the Specialised Agencies Convention, 1947. See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 320 ff.

that the key to immunity for international organisations is whether the immunity is necessary for the fulfilment of the organisation's functions and purposes.¹⁹⁹ It should also be noted that international organisations benefit from immunity from execution or enforcement, which means that their property or other assets cannot be seized, while a waiver of immunity from jurisdiction, which must be express, does not encompass a waiver of immunity from execution which would have to be given separately and expressly.²⁰⁰

Immunity will also cover inviolability of premises and archives.²⁰¹ This is particularly important for the effective operation of international organisations. Article II, section 3 of the UN Convention, for example, provides that,

The premises of the United Nations shall be inviolable. The property and assets of the United Nations, wherever located and by whomsoever held, shall be immune from search, requisition, confiscation, expropriation and any other form of interference, whether by executive, administrative, judicial or legislative action,

while section 4 provides that, 'The archives of the United Nations, and in general all documents belonging to it or held by it, shall be inviolable wherever located.'²⁰² Similar provisions exist in all relevant agreements concerning international organisations. The inviolability of premises means that the authorities of a state cannot enter without the permission of the administrative head of the organisation even where a crime has been committed there or in order to arrest a person. Further, the host state is under

¹⁹⁹ *Principles*, p. 322. Note, however, that many international financial institutions, such as the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, known as the World Bank (but not the International Monetary Fund), expressly qualify immunity and permit actions to be brought against them, particularly with regard to applications founded on loan agreements in the case of the World Bank: see article VII of the Articles of Agreement of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development and *Lutcher SA v. Inter-American Development Bank* 382 F.2d 454 (1967) and *Mendaro v. World Bank* 717 F.2d 610 (1983); 92 ILR, p. 92. Note also article 6 of the Headquarters Agreement between the UK and the International Maritime Satellite Organisation, 1980. See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 320 ff.

²⁰⁰ See e.g. article II, section 2 of the UN Convention. See also Singer, 'Jurisdictional Immunity', pp. 72 ff.

²⁰¹ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 330 ff.

²⁰² See also article II, section 5 of the Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of Specialised Agencies, 1947. Note that in *Shearson Lehman v. Maclaine Watson (No. 2)* [1988] 1 WLR 16; 77 ILR, p. 145, the House of Lords held that the inviolability of official documents could be lost as a result of communication to third parties.

a duty of due diligence with regard to the protection of the premises in question. However, the premises remain under the general jurisdiction of the host state, subject to the immunity described. Accordingly, a crime committed on the premises may be prosecuted in the local courts.²⁰³

Immunity also includes certain currency and fiscal privileges, such as exemption from direct taxation with regard to the assets, income and property of the organisation and from customs dues. Organisations may also be permitted to hold and transfer funds and other financial assets freely.²⁰⁴ Freedom of official communications equal to that provided to foreign governments is also usually stipulated with regard to international organisations, including freedom from censorship, while the right to send and receive correspondence by courier and bag, on the same basis as diplomatic couriers and diplomatic bags, is also provided for.²⁰⁵

International agreements concerning privileges and immunities have been implemented into domestic law by specific legislation in a number of states where there is no automatic incorporation of ratified treaties, examples being the UK International Organisations Act 1968²⁰⁶ and the US International Organisations Immunities Act 1945.²⁰⁷ The usual pattern under such legislation is for the general empowering provisions contained in those Acts to be applied to named international organisations by specific secondary acts. In the case of the International Organisations Act 1968, for example, a wide variety of organisations have had privileges and immunities conferred upon them by Order in Council.²⁰⁸ In the case of

²⁰³ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 330 ff.

²⁰⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 335. See also article II, sections 5 and 7 of the UN Convention and article III, sections 7 and 9 of the Specialised Agencies Convention.

²⁰⁵ See article III, sections 9 and 10 of the UN Convention and article IV, sections 11 and 12 of the Specialised Agencies Convention. See also Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 335 ff.

²⁰⁶ Replacing the International Organisations (Immunities and Privileges) Act 1950. The International Organisations Act 1981 *inter alia* extended the 1968 Act to commonwealth organisations and to international commodity organisations and permitted the extension of privileges and immunities to states' representatives attending conferences in the UK. See also the International Organisations Act 2005.

²⁰⁷ See also *Legislative Texts and Treaty Provisions Concerning the Legal Status, Privileges and Immunities of International Organizations*, ST/LEG/SER.B/10 and 11.

²⁰⁸ See e.g. the African Development Bank, SI 1983/142; Council of Europe, SI 1960/442; European Patent Organisation, SI 1978/179 and SI 1980/1096; International Maritime and Satellite Organisation, SI 1980/187; NATO, SI 1974/1257 and SI 1975/1209, and the UN, SI 1974/1261 and SI 1975/1209. An examination of Orders in Council would demonstrate the following privileges and immunities: immunity from suit and legal process; inviolability of official archives and premises; exemption or relief from taxes and rates, but not import taxes except where the goods or publications are imported or exported for official use; various reliefs with regard to car tax and VAT (value added tax) with regard to cars or

the US Act, the same process is normally conducted by means of Executive Orders.²⁰⁹

*Dissolution*²¹⁰

The constitutions of some international organisations contain express provisions with regard to dissolution. Article VI(5) of the Articles of Agreement of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (the World Bank), for example, provides for dissolution by a vote of the majority of Governors exercising a majority of total voting, and detailed provisions are made for consequential matters. Payment of creditors and claims, for instance, will have precedence over asset distribution, while the distribution of assets will take place on a proportional basis to shareholding. Different organisations with such express provisions take different positions with regard to the type of majority required for dissolution. In the case of the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, for example, a majority of two-thirds of the members and three-quarters of the total voting power is required. A simple majority vote is sufficient in the case of the International Monetary Fund, and a majority of member states coupled with a majority of votes is necessary in the case of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development. Where an organisation has been established for a limited period, the constitution will invariably provide for dissolution upon the expiry of that period.²¹¹ Where there are no specific provisions concerning dissolution,

goods destined for official use, and priority to be given to telecommunications to and from the UN Secretary-General, the heads of principal organs of the UN and the President of the International Court: see also the International Organisations Immunities Act 1945. I. See also sections 2–7 of the US International Organisations Immunities Act 1945.

²⁰⁹ See e.g. the Executive Order 12359 of 22 April 1980 designating the Multi-National Force and Observers as a public international organisation under s. 1 of the 1945 Act entitled to enjoy the privileges, exemptions and immunities conferred by that Act. See also Executive Order 12403 of 8 February 1983 with regard to the African Development Bank; Executive Order 12467 of 2 March 1984 with regard to the International Boundary and Water Commission, US and Mexico; Executive Order 12628 of 8 March 1988 with regard to the UN Industrial Development Organisation, and Executive Order 12647 of 2 August 1988 with regard to the Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency. See further Cumulative DUSPIL 1981–8, Washington, 1993, vol. I, pp. 330 ff.

²¹⁰ See e.g. Amerasinghe, *Principles*, chapter 15; Klabbers, *Introduction*, chapter 15, and Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1015 ff. See also C. W. Jenks, 'Some Constitutional Problems of International Organizations', 22 BYIL, 1945, p. 11, and *Bowett's International Institutions*, pp. 526 ff.

²¹¹ This applies particularly to commodity organisations: see e.g. the International Tin Agreement, 1981; the Natural Rubber Agreement, 1987 and the International Sugar Agreement, 1992.

it is likely that an organisation may be dissolved by the decision of its highest representative body.²¹² The League of Nations, for example, was dissolved by a decision taken by the Assembly without the need for individual assent by each member²¹³ and a similar process was adopted with regard to other organisations.²¹⁴ It is unclear whether unanimity is needed or whether the degree of majority required under the constitution of the particular organisation for the determination of important questions²¹⁵ would suffice.²¹⁶ The actual process of liquidating the assets and dealing with the liabilities of dissolved organisations is invariably laid down by the organisation itself, either in the constitutional documents or by special measures adopted on dissolution.

*Succession*²¹⁷

Succession between international organisations takes place when the functions and (usually) the rights and obligations are transferred from one organisation to another. This may occur by way of straightforward replacement,²¹⁸ or by absorption,²¹⁹ or by merger, or by effective secession of part of an organisation, or by simple transfer of certain functions from one organisation to another.²²⁰ This is achieved by agreement and is dependent upon the constitutional competence of the successor organisation

²¹² See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, p. 468, and Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, p. 1024.

²¹³ In fact the decision was taken unanimously by the thirty-five members present, ten members being absent: see e.g. H. McKinnon Wood, 'Dissolution of the League of Nations', 23 BYIL, 1946, p. 317.

²¹⁴ See e.g. the dissolutions of the International Meteorological Organisation; the UN Relief and Rehabilitation Administration; the International Refugee Organisation; the International Commission for Air Navigation; the South East Asian Treaty Organisation and the Latin American Free Trade Association: see Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1024–5.

²¹⁵ E.g. the two-thirds majority required under article 18 of the UN Charter for the General Assembly's determination of important questions.

²¹⁶ Organisations may be dissolved where the same parties to the treaty establishing the organisations enter a new agreement or possibly by disuse or more controversially as a result of changed circumstances (*rebus sic stantibus*): see Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1021–8.

²¹⁷ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 473 ff.; Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, pp. 1015 ff.; H. Chiu, 'Succession in International Organizations', 14 ICLQ, 1965, p. 83, and P. R. Myers, *Succession between International Organizations*, London, 1993.

²¹⁸ Such as the replacement of the League of Nations by the United Nations.

²¹⁹ E.g. the absorption of the International Bureau of Education by UNESCO.

²²⁰ See Amerasinghe, *Principles*, pp. 474 ff.

to perform the functions thus transferred of the former organisation. In certain circumstances, succession may proceed by way of implication in the absence of express provision.²²¹ The precise consequences of such succession will depend upon the agreement concerned between the parties in question.²²² In general, assets of the predecessor organisation will go to the successor organisation, as well as archives.²²³ Whether the same rule applies to debts is unclear.²²⁴

Suggestions for further reading

J. E. Alvarez, *International Organizations as Law-Makers*, Oxford, 2005

C. F. Amerasinghe, *Principles of the Institutional Law of International Organizations*, 2nd edn, Cambridge, 2005

Bowett's Law of International Institutions (eds. P. Sands and P. Klein), 5th edn, London, 2001

J. Klabbbers, *An Introduction to International Institutional Law*, Cambridge, 2002

D. Sarooshi, *International Organizations and their Exercise of Sovereign Powers*, Oxford, 2005

H. G. Schermers and N. M. Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, 3rd edn, The Hague, 1995

²²¹ The International Court in the *Status of South-West Africa* case, ICJ Reports, 1950, pp. 128, 134–7; 17 ILR, pp. 47, 51–5, held that the supervisory responsibilities of South Africa under the mandate to administer the territory of South West Africa/Namibia continued beyond the dissolution of the League of Nations and were in essence succeeded to by the UN. This was in the context of the fact that the mandate itself constituted an international status for the territory which therefore continued irrespective of the existence of the League and partly because the resolution of the Assembly of the League dissolving the League of Nations had declared that the supervisory functions of the League were ending, not the mandates themselves. It was emphasised that the obligation to submit to supervision did not disappear merely because the supervisory organ had ceased to exist as the UN performed similar, though not identical, supervisory functions. The Court concluded that the UN General Assembly was legally qualified to exercise these supervisory functions, in the light *inter alia* of articles 10 and 80 of the UN Charter. This was reaffirmed by the Court in the *Namibia* case, ICJ Reports, 1971, pp. 16, 37; 49 ILR, pp. 2, 26–34.

²²² See Schermers and Blokker, *International Institutional Law*, p. 1017 with regard to the relationship between the World Trade Organisation and the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) arrangements.

²²³ See e.g. *PAU v. American Security and Trust Company*, US District Court for the District of Columbia, 18 ILR, p. 441.

²²⁴ See e.g. Klabbbers, *Introduction*, pp. 329–30.

SOME USEFUL INTERNATIONAL LAW WEBSITES

See also web references in chapter footnotes

General sites (with links to relevant materials)

www.washlaw.edu/forint/forintmain.html The foreign and international law web of the Washburn University School of Law Library

www.asil.org/resource/home.htm Electronic resource guide of the American Society of International Law

www.llrx.com/international-law.html Web journal research guide

www.lib.uchicago.edu/~llou/forintl.html LyonetteLouis-Jacques guide to international law research, University of Chicago

www.law.ecel.uwa.edu.au/intlaw/ University of Western Australia guide to international law resources

www2.spfo.unibo.it/spolfo/ILMAIN.htm University of Bologna research guide to international law

www.law.cam.ac.uk/RCIL/home.htm Lauterpacht Research Centre for International Law

www.worldlii.org/catalog/ World Law site

www.hg.org/govt.html Hieros Gamos law links

library.ukc.ac.uk/library/lawlinks/international.htm University of Kent law links

www.bibl.ulaval.ca/ress/droit/bouton8.html University of Laval, French Canadian site on international law

www.ridi.org/ French resource for international law generally

This listing excludes subscription services. The links were correct at the date of writing. No responsibility is undertaken as to their continued existence or accuracy.

www.un.org/law United Nations site dealing with international law generally

www4.worldbank.org/legal/lawlibrary.html World Bank Law Library, including links to international organisations, treaties and legal topics

www.un.org/law/ilc/ International Law Commission

www.icc-cpi.int/legaltools ICC Legal Tools (these deal mostly with international criminal law, but also with general international law, human rights law, humanitarian law and national implementation)

www.asil.org/resource/home.htm ASIL Guide for Electronic Resources for International Law

www.llrx.com/international_law.html Law & Technology Resources for Legal Professions (International Law Guide)

www2.lib.uchicago.edu/~llou/forintlhw.html University of Chicago Library (Legal Research on International Law Issues Using the Internet)

www2.spfo.unibo.it/spolfo/ILMAIN.htm University of Bologna (Research Guide to International Law on the Internet)

www.lcil.cam.ac.uk/ The Lauterpacht Centre for International Law, University of Cambridge

www.worldlii.org/catalog/ World Law

www.hg.org/govt.html HG.org Worldwide Legal Directories

www.bibl.ulaval.ca/mieux/chercher/portails/droit/droit_international Université Laval

www.ridi.org/ Réseau Internet pour le Droit International

www.un.org/law/ United Nations (International Law)

History of international law

www.yale.edu/lawweb/avalon/avalon.htm Yale University Avalon Project – historical documents

Sources

Treaties (see also Treaties)

<http://untreaty.un.org/> UN treaty site

Cases (see also International courts and tribunals)

www.virtual-institute.de/en/wcd/wcd.cfm Max Planck Institute World Court digest

www.jura.uni-duesseldorf.de/rave/e/englhome.asp Index to court decisions and journal articles

Sources and evidence of custom/state practice/development of international law (see also International law and municipal law)

www.un.org/law/ilc/ International Law Commission

www.uncitral.org/en-index.htm UN Commission on International Trade Law

www.gksoft.com/govt/en/ Links to government websites

Writings

www.jura.uni-duesseldorf.de/rave/e/englhome.asp Index to court decisions and journal articles

www.ejil.org/ and www3.oup.co.uk/ejilaw/ European Journal of International Law

<http://stu.findlaw.com/journals/international.html> International law journals

www.srdi.ws/ Summary of international law journals (French)

International law and municipal law*National constitutions and legislation*

www.oefre.unibe.ch/law/icl/index.html International constitutional law site from University of Berne

www.findlaw.com/01topics/06constitutional/03forconst/index.html World constitutions

www.legislation.hmso.gov.uk/ UK legislation

www.hmso.gov.uk/stat.htm UK statutory instruments

www.bailii.org/ British and Irish legal information – cases and legislation

<http://thomas.loc.gov/> US legislation

www.canlii.org/ Canadian legal materials

www.llrx.com/features/canadian3.htm Canadian law
www.journal-officiel.gouv.fr/ French legislation
www.llrx.com/features/frenchlaw.htm French law
www.austlii.org/ Australian legal materials
www.worldlii.org/ Materials from other jurisdictions
<http://jurist.law.pitt.edu/world/index.htm> Links to national laws

National cases

www.courtserve2.net/index.htm UK cases
www.bailii.org/ British and Irish legal information – cases and legislation
www.scotcourts.gov.uk/ Scottish cases
<http://supct.law.cornell.edu/supct/index.php> US Supreme Court cases
http://europa.eu.int/comm/justice_home/ejn/index_en.htm European Judicial Network in civil and commercial law
www.coe.fr/venice/links-e.htm Venice Commission links to national constitutional courts

Human rights (See also International humanitarian law)

International human rights

www.un.org/rights/index.html UN human rights
www.unhchr.ch/ UN High Commissioner for Human Rights
www1.umn.edu/humanrts/ University of Minnesota human rights library
<http://humanrights.britishcouncil.org/newsite2/frameset.asp?CatID=1&CatName=News&GroupID=3&GroupName=World&UserID=> British Council's human rights network
www.law-lib.utoronto.ca/diana/ Women's human rights resources
www.amnesty.org/ Amnesty International
www.un.org/law/icc/ International Criminal Court
www.iccnw.org/ International Criminal Court materials

www.icty.org/ International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia

www.ictr.org/ International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda

Regional human rights

www.echr.coe.int/ European Court of Human Rights

www.cpt.coe.int/en/ European Committee for the Prevention of Torture

[www.coe.int/t/E/human rights/ecri/](http://www.coe.int/t/E/human_rights/ecri/) European Commission against Racism and Intolerance

www.ecmi.de/doc/index.html European Centre for Minority Issues

www.achpr.org/ African Commission for Human and Peoples' Rights

www1.umn.edu/humanrts/africa/comcases/allcases.html Decisions of African Commission

www1.umn.edu/humanrts/cases/commissn.htm Inter-American Commission on Human Rights

www1.umn.edu/humanrts/iachr/iachr.html Inter-American Court of Human Rights

www.corteidh.or.cr/ Official site for Inter-American Court of Human Rights

www.cidh.oas.org/ Official site for Inter-American Commission

www.gwdg.de/~ujvr/hrch/hrch.htm Human Rights Chamber, Bosnia

Territory

www.ibru.dur.ac.uk/ International Boundaries Research Unit, University of Durham

<http://garnet.acns.fsu.edu/~phensel/territory.html> general boundary links

www.antdiv.gov.au/default.asp?casid=76 Antarctica site of Australian government

Air and space law

www.iasl.mcgill.ca/ McGill University Institute of Air and Space Law

www.icao.int/ International Civil Aviation Organisation

www.oosa.unvienna.org/SpaceLaw/spacelaw.htm UN international space law site

www.fas.org/spp/civil/russia/pol_docs.htm Russian space policy documents

www.nasa.gov/ NASA

www.esa.int/export/esaCP/index.html European Space Agency

Law of the sea

www.un.org/Depts/los/index.htm UN site dealing with law of the sea issues

www.oceanlaw.org/ Council on Ocean Law site

Treaties

www.yale.edu/lawweb/avalon/avalon.htm University of Yale Avalon Project

<http://fletcher.tufts.edu/multilaterals.html> University of Tufts Fletcher School Multilaterals Project

<http://untreaty.un.org/> UN treaty site

<http://conventions.coe.int/> Council of Europe treaty site

www.state.gov/s/l/c8455.htm US treaties in force site

www.fco.gov.uk/servlet/Front?pagename=OpenMarket/Xcelerate/ShowPage&c=Page&cid=1007029396014 UK Foreign Office treaty site

www.austlii.edu.au/au/other/dfat/ Australian Treaties Library

International environmental law

www.ipcc.ch/ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, established by WMO and UNEP

<http://unfccc.int/> UN Framework Convention on Climate Change

www.internationalwaterlaw.org/ International Water Law Project

www.iaea.org/worldatom/ IAEA

www.nea.fr/ OECD Nuclear Energy Agency

www.un.org/esa/sustdev/ UN Commission on Sustainable Development

<http://iisd.liisd.ca/> International Institute for Sustainable Development

International courts and tribunals (see also Human rights)

www.pict-pcti.org/home.html International Courts and Tribunals Project site

www.icj-cij.org/ International Court of Justice

www.itlos.org/ International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea

<http://pca-cpa.org/> Permanent Court of Arbitration

<http://europa.eu.int/cj/en/index.htm> European Court of Justice and Court of First Instance

www.eca.eu.int/EN/menu.htm European Court of Auditors

<http://wbln0018.worldbank.org/ipn/ipnweb.nsf> World Bank Inspection Panels

www.bicusa.org/mdbs/wbg/inspectionpanel/ World Bank Inspection Panel

<http://untreaty.un.org/ola-internet/unat.htm> UN Administrative Tribunal

www.worldbank.org/icsid/ International Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes

www.iccwbo.org/index-court.asp International Chamber of Commerce dispute resolution

www.iusct.org/index-english.html Iran–US Claims Tribunal

www.unog.ch/uncc/ UN Compensation Commission (Iraq)

www.tas-cas.org/ Court of Arbitration for Sport

www.ccj.org.ni/ Central American Court of Justice

www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/dispu_e.htm WTO dispute settlement

International terrorism

<http://jurist.law.pitt.edu/terrorism.htm> terrorism

www.un.org/terrorism UN website on terrorism

www.undcp.org/odccp/terrorism.html UN Office on Drugs and Crime terrorism programme

www.un.org/Docs/sc/committees/1373/ Counter-Terrorism Committee of the Security Council

http://europa.eu.int/comm/justice_home/news/terrorism/documents/index_en.htm EU and terrorism materials

International humanitarian law

www.ihlresearch.org/portal/ihli/portalhome.php International humanitarian law research site

www.icrc.org/ International Committee of the Red Cross

www1.umn.edu/humanrts/instrtree/auoy.htm University of Minnesota international humanitarian law

www.yale.edu/lawweb/avalon/lawofwar/lawwar.htm University of Yale Avalon Project laws of war

www.yale.edu/lawweb/avalon/imt/imt.htm Nuremberg war crimes trials

<http://fas-www.harvard.edu/~hsp/> Chemical and biological weapons site

www.sipri.se/ Stockholm International Peace Research Institute

<http://ourworld.compuserve.com/homepages/Aspals/Homepage.htm> Military law site

International institutions*General*

www.uia.org/extlinks/pub.php Links to international organisations

www.un.org/ United Nations

www.wto.org WTO

Specialised agencies

www.imo.org/home.asp International Maritime Organisation
<http://ilo.org/> ILO
<http://who.org/> WHO
www.fao.org/ Food and Agriculture Organisation

Regional organisations

www.nato.int/sfor/index.htm SFOR
www.nato.int/kfor/welcome.html KFOR
www.weu.int/ WEU
www.oecd.org/ OECD
www.coe.int/ Council of Europe
<http://europa.eu.int/> EU
www.arableagueonline.org/arableague/index_en.jsp Arab League
www.africa-union.org/ African Union
www.aseansec.org/ Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN)
www.sadc.int/index.php?lang=english&path=&page=index SADC
www.ecowas.int/ ECOWAS
www.iss.co.za/AF/RegOrg/unity_to_union/ecowas.html ECOWAS documents
www.oas.org/default.htm OAS
www.al-bab.com/arab/docs/league.htm Arab League
www.nato.int/ NATO
www.osce.org/ OSCE
www.nafta-sec-alena.org/english/index.htm NAFTA
www.mercosur.org.uy/ Mercosur
www.ohr.int/ High Representative of Bosnia and Herzegovina

International Criminal Law

www.icc-cpi.int International Criminal Court

www.un.org/icty International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia

www.sc-sl.org Special Court for Sierra Leone

www.eccc.gov.kh Extraordinary Chambers in the Courts of Cambodia

INDEX

Abbreviations used in the index

- ACHPR (African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights (1981))
(Banjul Charter)
- ACHR (American Convention on Human Rights (1969))
- ACY (Arbitration Commission of the European Conference on Yugoslavia)
- AMIS (African Mission in the Sudan)
- AMISOM (African Mission to Somalia)
- ASEAN (Association of South East Asian Nations)
- AU (African Union)
- Banjul Charter (African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights (1981))
- BITs (bilateral investment treaties)
- CARICOM (Association of Caribbean States)
- CEDAW (Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women) (1979)
- CERD (Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination)
- CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons)
- CFSP (Common Foreign and Security Policy)
- CIS (Commonwealth of Independent States)
- COCOM (Coordinating Committee for Multilateral Export Controls)
- CoE (Council of Europe)
- COMECON (Council for Mutual Economic Assistance)
- Comesa (Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa)
- CRC (Convention on the Rights of the Child (1989))
- CSCE (Conference on Security and Co-operation in Europe)
- Draft Code of Offences (ILC Draft Code of Offences against the Peace and Security of Mankind (1954))
- DSB (WTO Dispute Settlement Body)
- DSU (WTO Dispute Settlement Understanding)
- EAPC (Euro-Atlantic Partnership Council)
- EBRD (European Bank for Reconstruction and Development)
- EC (European Community)
- ECAFE (Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East)
- ECHR (European Convention on Human Rights (1950))
- ECJ (European Court of Justice)
- ECOMOG (ECOWAS Monitoring Group)
- ECOSOC (Economic and Social Council)
- ECOWAS (Economic Community of West African States)
- ECSC (European Coal and Steel Community)
- ECtHR (European Court of Human Rights)
- EDC (Enforced Disappearances Convention (2006))
- EEZ (exclusive economic zone)
- EFTA (European Free Trade Area)

- EIA (environmental impact assessment)
 EMEP (Cooperative Programme on long-range transmission of air pollutants in Europe)
 EMU (European Monetary Union)
 ESC (European Social Charter (1961))
 EU (European Union)
 EUFOR (EU Force in Yugoslavia)
 EULEX (EU Rule of Law Mission in Kosovo)
 FAO (Food and Agriculture Organisation)
 FRG (Federal Republic of Germany)
 FRY (Federal Republic of Yugoslavia)
 FTC (NAFTA Free Trade Commission)
 GATS (General Agreement on Trade in Services)
 GATT (General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (1947/1994))
 GC (Geneva Humanitarian Conventions (1949))
 GCHS (Geneva Convention on the High Seas (1958))
 GCTS (Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea (1958))
 GDR (German Democratic Republic)
 GEF (Global Environmental Facility)
 'grave breach' (grave breaches as identified by the Geneva Conventions (1949))
 IAComHR (Inter-American Commission on Human Rights)
 IACtHR (Inter-American Court of Human Rights)
 IAEA (International Atomic Energy Agency)
 IBRD (International Bank for Reconstruction and Development)
 ICAO (International Civil Aviation Organisation)
 ICC (International Chamber of Commerce)
 ICC (International Criminal Court)
 ICCPR (International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights (1966))
 ICESCR (International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (1966))
 ICJ (International Court of Justice)
 ICSID (International Convention/Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes)
 ICTR (International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda)
 ICTY (International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia)
 IDA (International Development Association)
 IFAD (International Fund for Agricultural Development)
 IFC (International Finance Corporation)
 IFOR (Implementation Force)
 IGAD (Intergovernmental Authority on Development in Eastern Africa)
 ILA (International Law Association)
 ILC (International Law Commission)
 ILO (International Labour Organisation)
 IMCO (International Maritime Organisation)
 IMF (International Monetary Fund)
 IMO (International Maritime Organisation)
 ISAF (International Security Force in Afghanistan) 1280
 ITLOS (International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea)
 ITU (International Telegraphic, later Telecommunication, Union)
 KFOR (Kosovo Force)
 MICIVIH (UN–OAS civilian mission on human rights in Haiti)
 MINURSO (UN Mission for the Referendum in Western Sahara)
 MONUC (UN Mission in the Congo)
 MWC (Convention on the Protection of the Rights of Migrant Workers and Their Families (1990))
 NAFO (North Atlantic Fisheries Organisation)
 NAFTA (North America Free Trade Area)
 NAIL (New Approaches to International Law)
 NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organisation)

- NGOs (non-governmental organisations)
- NLM (national liberation movement)
- OAS (Organisation of American States)
- OAU (Organisation of African Unity)
- ODIHR (Office of Democratic Institutions and Human Rights)
- OECD (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development)
- OECS (Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States)
- OHCHR (Office of the UN High Commissioner for Human Rights)
- ONUC (UN Operation in the Congo)
- ONUCA (UN Observer Group in Central America)
- ONUMOZ (UN Operation in Mozambique)
- ONUVEN (UN Observer Group for the Verification of Elections in Nigeria)
- OPEC (Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries)
- OSCE (Organisation for Security and Co-operation in Europe)
- PCA (Permanent Court of Arbitration)
- PCIJ (Permanent Court of International Justice)
- PLO (Palestine Liberation Organisation)
- POPs (persistent organic pollutants)
- RoP (Rules of Procedure)
- RWCT (Rwanda War Crimes Tribunal)
- SADR (Saharan Arab Democratic Republic)
- SAR (Hong Kong Administrative Arrangement)
- SC (Security Council)
- SFOR (UN Stabilisation Force)
- SFRY (Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia)
- SWAPO (South West Africa People's Organisation)
- TC (Torture Convention (1984))
- TRIPS (Agreement on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights)
- TRNC (Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus)
- UAR (United Arab Republic)
- UDHR (Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948))
- UDI (Unilateral Declaration of Independence)
- UDI (Unilateral Declaration of Independence (Rhodesia) (1965))
- UNAMIC (UN Advance Mission in Cambodia)
- UNAMID (UN–African Union Hybrid Operation in Dafur)
- UNAMIR (UN Assistance Mission for Uganda)
- UNAMIS (UN Special Political Mission in Sudan)
- UNAMSIL (UN Mission in Sierra Leone)
- UNASOG (UN Aouzou Strip Observer Group)
- UNAVEM (UN Angola Verification Mission)
- UNC (United Nations Charter)
- UNCESCR (UN Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights)
- UNCHR (UN Commission on Human Rights)
- UNCITRAL (UN Commission on International Trade Law)
- UNCLOS (United Nations Conference/Convention on the Law of the Sea)
- UNCRO (UN Confidence Restoration Operation in Croatia)
- UNCTAD (UN Conference on Trade and Development)
- UNDRO (UN Disaster Relief Office)
- UNEF (UN Emergency Force)
- UNEP (UN Environment Programme)
- UNESCO (UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation)
- UNGA (United Nations General Assembly)
- UNHRC (UN Human Rights Committee)
- UNIDO (UN Industrial Development Organisation)
- UNIKOM (UN Iraq–Kuwait Observer Mission)
- UNMIH (UN Mission in Haiti)

- UNMIK (UN Mission in Kosovo)
 - UNMIS (UN Mission in Sudan)
 - UNMISET (UN Mission of Support in East Timor)
 - UNMOGIP (UN Military Observer Group in India and Pakistan)
 - UNMOP (UN Mission of Observers in Prevlaka)
 - UNMOVIC (UN Monitoring, Verification and Inspection Commission)
 - UNOMIL (UN Observer Mission in Liberia)
 - UNOMUR (UN Observer Mission Uganda Rwanda)
 - UNOSOM (UN Operation in Somalia)
 - UNPREDEP (UN Preventive Deployment Force)
 - UNPROFOR (UN Protection Force)
 - UNSCOB (UN Special Committee on the Balkans)
 - UNSCOM (UN Special Commission (Iraq))
- Aaland Islands
- Finnish Declaration on (WWI peace treaties) 294 n162
 - minorities, protection of 294 n162
 - servitudes and 539–40
 - state succession and 969 n75
 - territorial sovereignty 200–1, 251–2, 489 n12
 - treaty succession 539–40
- abandonment of territory 505, 521
- Abkhazia 238, 258, 1223 n94, 1230
- Aboriginals: *see* indigenous peoples
- academic writers as source of
- international law (ICJ 38(1)(d)) 28, 112–13
 - in absence of supreme authority in international law 113
 - declining influence 113
 - development of profession 28
 - as interpreters and stimulators 113
 - subsidiary nature 112
- access to courts, right of
- ECtHR 6 357
- immunity from jurisdiction of international organisations and 1321
- accountability
- see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act
 - international organisations 66, 1317–18
 - Namibia, UN Council for 248
 - World Bank 1040
- accretion 495, 498, 499, 520, 531
- Achille Lauro* incident 665, 679–80, 1161 n221
- ACHR (1969) 381–91, 1292, *see also* IACoMHR; IACtHR; OAS
- American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man as aid to interpretation 389
- Death Penalty, Protocol on the Abolition of (1990) 384
- derogation 274–5
- Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, Inter-American Protocol (1985) 384
- entry into force 381

- ACHR (*cont.*)
 environmental rights 847
 limitation/claw-back provisions 275 n57
 municipal law as violation of obligations 383
 non-parties, applicability to 382
 obligation to investigate 390
 obligation to prevent violations 390
 repeal of offending legislation 383
 signatories 381 n216
- ACHR, derogations
 'compelling governmental interest' 388
 non-derogation principle 389
- acid rain 845
- acquiescence
see also estoppel; prescription as means of territorial acquisition
 customary international law and 80–1, 89–91
 definition 80–1, 89
 equity and 89
 failure to protest as 89–91, 560, 563–4
 good faith and 89
 new states and 91
 self-defence, right to (UNC 51) and 1137
 state responsibility, lapse of claim and 799
 statehood/recognition of international persons and 242, 244, 261
 territorial acquisition and 505–6, 516–17
 territorial sovereignty over high seas 609
 treaty validity and 939
- acquiescence, jurisprudence
Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries 77, 90, 560
Gulf of Maine 89
- acquired rights of aliens in case of state succession 1001–4
 agreement as preferred option 1003
 continuation, presumption of 1003
 contractual rights and duties 1002–3
 expropriation and 1003
 as fundamental principle of international law 1001
German Settlers case 1002
Lighthouses arbitration 1003–4
 nationals of successor state distinguished 1001
 non-vested rights distinguished 1003
Robert E. Brown case 1003
 state responsibility for failure to observe 1003–4
West Rand Central Gold Mining Company case 1002–3
- acquired rights, respect for
 archipelagic states 567–8
 as general principle of law 103
 human rights treaties 983 n142
 minorities and 524 n207
 territorial acquisition and 524
- act of state doctrine
see also justiciability
 act performed wholly on foreign territory, limitation to 722
 burden/standard of proof 192
Buttes 181–4
 deportation/expulsion 827
 justiciability considerations 180–92
 political question doctrine 189–92
 state immunity and 699–701, 722
- administrative treaties 151
- admiralty proceedings relating to state-owned ships, state immunity and 728
- advisory opinions
 ECtHR 352–3
 IACtHR 385, 388–90, 391, 398 n8
 ICJ: *see* ICJ advisory jurisdiction
 ITLOS 642
- affirmative action: *see* differential treatment, justifiable
- Afghanistan
 arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1247
 diplomatic relations and 458 n50
 human rights in 305
 Iranian diplomats, murder of 764
 ISAF 1280
 Red Cross and 1201
 UN effectiveness 1233–4
 UN Good Offices Mission 1228
 Uniting for Peace resolution 1273
 US attacks on 1134, 1136–7, 1140

- USSR invasion 36, 1153, 1234
- USSR withdrawal (Geneva Accords (1988)) 1228
- Africa
 - see also* colonial territories; decolonisation; ECOWAS; *uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of boundaries
 - cession of territories 503–4
 - contiguity principle and 524
 - ECA (UN Economic Commission for Africa) 1213
 - judicial/arbitral settlement
 - procedures, opposition to 1027, 1063
 - scramble for/Berlin Conferences (1884–5) 1283
 - uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of boundaries 526–7, 968, 969, 1028
- African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights (1981): *see* Banjul Charter (1981)
- African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights 392–5
 - educational and promotional responsibilities 392
 - establishment 392
 - financial resources 394
 - IAComHR compared 392
 - membership 392
 - reporting obligations 394
 - Rules of Procedure 394
 - Secretary, appointment 392
 - Special Rapporteurs 392–3
 - working groups 393
- African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights, complaints procedure
 - inter-state complaints 393
 - intergovernmental organisations and 394
 - jurisprudence 394
 - non-state complaints 393–4
 - provisional measures 393–4
 - special cases involving serious or massive violation of rights 393
- African Court of Human and Peoples' Rights
 - establishment 394
 - individual right of petition 394–5
 - merger with African Union Court of Justice 1294
 - NGOs and 394–5
- African Union
 - AMIS 1266, 1280
 - AMISOM 1279
 - Charter: *see* Banjul Charter (1981)
 - common defence policy 1293
 - Constitutive Act 1293
 - Court of Justice 1115 n371, 1294
 - Darfur and 1230 n132, 1265–6
 - dispute settlement 1293
 - Hazardous Wastes, Bamako Convention on (1991) 806 n129, 896
 - history 1293–4
 - humanitarian intervention 1293
 - Liberia, involvement in 1277, 1279
 - national liberation movements (NLMs) and 245–6
 - OAU, change of name from 391, 1293
 - object and purpose 47, 1293
 - organisation and structure 1293–4
 - Pan-African Parliament 1294
 - peaceful co-existence and 215–16
 - peacekeeping operations 236–7, 1265–6, 1277, 1279, 1293
 - Principles 1293
 - recognition of Bantustans and 202
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1275 n348
 - SADR and 236–7
 - self-determination and 256
 - Somalia and 1275 n348
 - Sudan and 1265–6
 - territorial integrity and 1293
 - Terrorism, Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism (1999/2005) 1164
 - UNAMID 1266, 1267
 - use of force, prohibition 1293
 - uti possidetis* principle and 290, 526, 1028
 - website 1340
- African Union, dispute settlement
 - 1026–30
 - Algeria–Morocco boundary dispute (1963) 1027

- African Union (*cont.*)
 Cairo Declaration (1993)
 (Mechanism for Conflict
 Prevention, Management and
 Resolution) 1027–8
 Commission of Mediation,
 Conciliation and Arbitration 1023,
 1026–7
 Peace and Security Council: *see*
 African Union for Peace and
 Security Council
 Peace and Security Council
 526 n219
 Somali–Ethiopia conflict 1027
 Western Sahara (1978) 1027
- African Union for Peace and Security
 Council
 African Standby Force 1028
 Cairo Declaration (1993) and 1028
 Commission of African Union 1028
 Continental Early Warning
 System 1028
 establishment (2002) 1028
 human rights, respect for 1028
 membership 1029
 as organ of OAU 1028
 Panel of the Wise 1028
 role and powers 1028–9
 rule of law and 1028
 Special Fund 1028
 territorial integrity 1028
 territorial sovereignty 1028
uti possidetis principle 1028
- Afro-Asian states
 Bandung Conference (1955) 215
 European influence on 100
 expropriation/nationalisation
 and 828
 SC and 1207
 UNGA voting and 1211 n30
- Agenda for Peace* 1113, 1215, 1217–18,
 1226 n109, 1234, 1274, 1313
- aggression
see also peace and security, right to;
 use of force; war
 customary international law and 147,
 439
 determination of existence (UNC
 39) 1240–1
 individual criminal
 responsibility 402, 439, 671
 jurisdiction 671
 League of Nations and 30–1, 1121–2,
 1215–16
 aggression by
 Burundi, Rwanda and Uganda 393
 Germany 30–1
 Iraq (against diplomats in
 Kuwait) 1241, 1241 n180
 Israel against PLO headquarters in
 Tunisia (SC resolution 573
 (1985)) 1241 n180
 Italy 30
 Japan 30
 South Africa in Angola (SC resolution
 387 (1976)) 1241 n180
 aggression, definition/classification as
 Allied Control Council Law
 No. 10 439
 blockade as 1240
 as crime against peace 439, 671,
 1123
 as crime of leadership 439
 difficulties over 410, 439–40
 examples 1240
 ICC Statute 411, 439
 ILC Draft Code of Crimes against the
 Peace and Security of Mankind
 (1996) 439 n226, 671
 as international crime 439–40, 807
jus cogens and 808 n198
 mercenaries and 1153 n177
 as ‘most serious crime’ 411
 Nuremberg Charter/Tribunal 400,
 439
 SC Chapter VII responsibilities
 and 439–40
 as the ‘supreme international
 crime’ 439
 Tokyo Charter 439
 UNGA resolution 3314 (XXIX)
 (Consensus Definition) 439, 469
 n104, 488 n6, 502 n78, 671 n116,
 1133 n70, 1148 n157, 1152 n174,
 1153 n177, 1240
 aggression, prohibition
 ECOWAS Protocol on
 Non-Aggression (1978) 1276

- as *erga omnes* obligation 124
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms 808
 - n198
- Kellogg–Briand Pact (1928) 439
 - n226
- natural law and 54
- peaceful co-existence and 216
- Third World and 39–40
- Tokyo Tribunal 400
- Ahtisaari Plan (Comprehensive Proposal for the Kosovo Status Settlement) (2008) 204
- EU Special Representative 204
- International Civilian Representative (ICR) 204
- air pollution: *see* atmospheric pollution
- aircraft
 - see also* civil aviation, conventions relating to
 - crimes against: *see* hijacking; piracy
 - nationality 664
 - registration 664
 - transit passage (straits) 577
- airspace
 - see also* outer space
 - archipelagic states and 568
 - civil aviation conventions and 542–3
 - customary international law and 78
 - over continental shelf 589
 - over territorial waters 570
 - sovereignty over (*usque ad coelum*) 78, 541–3, 570
 - website 1337
- Al-Qaida/Taliban 386, 1136, 1174 n33, 1208, 1247 n219
- Alaska
 - Cook Inlet and 563–4
 - sale to US (1867) 500
- Albania
 - CoE Torture Committee and 363 n115
 - ICJ and 1073
 - minorities in 294 n164
 - OSCE mission 1033
 - recognition pre-WWI 199
- Algeria, pre-colonial archives 995
- aliens
 - see also* deportation/expulsion; expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national; standard of treatment of alien
 - Council of Europe and 347 n8
 - state's right to refuse admission 826
- Alma Ata Declaration (1991) 209, 961 n21, 968 n69, 977, 1291
- Alsace-Lorraine, treaty succession (1919) 974
- alternative reconciliation systems
 - Rwandan Gacaca court system 272
 - truth and reconciliation commissions 272
- American Civil War, non-recognition policy and 482–3
- American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man (1948) 382, 469
- legal status 389
- American Revolution 26
- amicus curiae* briefs 1073
- AMIS 1266, 1280
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VII) 1280
- AMISOM 1279
- amnesty laws 271–2, 420
 - in Peru 372 n35, 390
 - truth and reconciliation commissions 272
- Amsterdam Treaty (1999) 179
 - human rights and 370–1
- anadromous species 624 n356
- Andean Pact (1969) 1292 n42
- Angola
 - civil war in 1150, 1233–4
 - communist intervention 1150
 - Cuban intervention in 1150, 1228–9
 - intervention in Congo 1154
 - non-recognition policy 482
 - South African troops in 1150, 1241 n180
 - UN mission 1228–9
 - UNAVEM I 1228–9
- Annan, Kofi 1215–16
- annexation of territory, legal effect 501–2
- Falkland Islands 532
- treaty succession 973–4
- Antarctic Minerals Resources Convention (1988) 537–8, 857 n65

- Antarctic Treaty (1959) 536–8
 - as law-making treaty 95
 - suspension of territorial claims and 536
- Antarctic Treaty System 536–8
 - consultative status and meetings 537
 - Environmental Protection Committee 538
- Antarctica
 - British Antarctic Territory 536
 - as common heritage of mankind 533–4, 538 n283
 - criminal jurisdiction 663
 - definition 535–6
 - demilitarisation 536
 - discovery 536
 - environmental protection 536–7, 538
 - Marie Byrd Land 536
 - overlapping nature of claims 536
 - sector principle 536
 - as *terra nullius* 198 n9
 - territorial claims 535–6
- anthropology and the law 52–3, 55
- Aouzou Strip Observer Group (UNASOG) 1011–12
- apartheid
 - as crime against humanity 436–7, 438
 - as ‘grave breach’ 401
 - ICTY 5 and 670
 - individual criminal responsibility 401, 402
 - as international crime 401, 671, 807
 - jurisdiction 674 n674
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norm 808 n198
 - lasting legacy 269
 - recognition of actions promoting, exclusion 203 n32
 - in South Africa 202 n31, 203
 - UN condemnation/emphasis on 649, 1205
 - UN Special Committee 303
 - UN Special Session (1989) 1212 n33
 - UNCHR Group of Three 305
 - universal jurisdiction 671
 - as usage/customary international law 115
- Apartheid Convention (1973) 286, 305, 335
 - individual criminal responsibility 401
- appeal against conviction or sentence, right of, ECHR Protocol VII 348
- Aquinas, St Thomas 22, 53, 1119
- Arab Charter on Human Rights (1994)
 - Cairo Declaration on Human Rights in Islam (1990) and 395
 - entry into force 395
 - ICCPR and 395
 - ICESCR and 395
 - international norms and standards, compatibility with 395 n298
 - Islamic Shari’ah and 395 n295
 - scope 395
 - UDHR and 395
 - UNC and 395
- Arab Human Rights Commission
 - establishment 395
 - membership 395
 - reporting obligations 395
- Arab League
 - establishment (1944) 1292
 - Gulf Co-operation Council 1254 n246, 1293 n45
 - human rights and 395
 - national liberation movements (NLMs) and 245–6
 - OPEC 1292 n43
 - peacekeeping 1292–3
 - privileges and immunities 1321
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1275 n348
 - in Somalia 1275 n348
 - structure and organisation 1292
 - websites 1340
- Arab League, dispute settlement 1031–2
 - Arab Deterrent Force 1032
 - Arab Security Force 1032
 - conciliation attempts 1031–2
 - Inter-Arab force 1032
- Arab world
 - counter-terrorism and 1164
 - Israel, recognition of 447, 462 nn71 and 74, 464
 - national identity and 395
 - ouster from Spain 20
 - US, diplomatic relations with 467

- arbitral awards
 - challenge to, timeliness 1054
 - final and binding effect 1033, 1041, 1042, 1044, 1053
 - new facts subsequent to, relevance 1054
 - obligation to accept 1049
 - recognition and enforcement 720–1, 1041, 1042, 1044
 - rectification or correction 1054
 - res judicata* and 1053 n263
 - revision 1054
- arbitral awards, nullity on grounds of
 - corruption of arbitrator 1053
 - ‘essential error’ 1053–4
 - excess of powers/*excès de pouvoir* and 1053
 - failure to state reasons 1053
 - ILC Model Rules and 1053–4
 - invalidity of compromis 1053
 - manifest error 1054
 - serious departure from fundamental rule of procedure 1053
- arbitrary arrest during armed conflict, as ‘grave breach’ 403
- arbitration clause/agreement
 - applicable law, determinant of 1052
 - as basis of jurisdiction 1051
 - BITs and 1041, 1042
 - compromis*/special agreement 1051
 - consent, need for 1051
 - ICSID 1041
 - OSCE arbitral tribunals 1033
 - rules of procedure and 1052
 - waiver of state immunity and 741–2, 744
- arbitration (commercial): *see* International Chamber of Commerce (ICC)
- arbitration (commercial), ICSID and: *see* ICSID
- arbitration (inter-state) 1048–56, *see also* arbitral awards; arbitration tribunals
 - as adjudicative technique 1054
 - advantages 1055
 - Conciliation and Arbitration, CSCE Convention on (1992) 378
 - conciliation distinguished 1022
 - consent, need for: *see* arbitration clause/agreement
 - definition 1049, 1054
 - dispute settlement involving non-state parties and 1055
 - as equitable method 1049
 - European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes (1957) 1032
 - evaluation 1054–6
 - GATT 1036
 - good faith and 1054
 - ICJ process compared 1054
 - League of Nations 1216
 - limitations 1055–6
 - MERCOSUR 1038 n165
 - NAFTA 1039–40
 - NATO 1032
 - negotiation, role 1054
 - OSCE 1033
 - PCA: *see* PCA
 - UNCLOS Annexes VII and VIII 636
- arbitration (inter-state), history and development 1048–50
 - Alabama Claims*, role 111, 1048
 - Hague Convention for the Pacific Settlement of Disputes (1899) and 1048–9
 - Hague Convention for the Pacific Settlement of Disputes (1907) and 1049
 - Interpretation of Article 3 of the Treaty of Lausanne* and 1049
- arbitration tribunals
 - see also individual tribunals*
 - appointment to 1050–1
 - composition 1050–1
 - umpire/chair 1051
- arbitration tribunals, applicable law
 - arbitration clause/agreement and 1052
 - General Act for the Pacific Settlement of Disputes (1928) 1052 n257
 - general principles of international law 1052
 - international law unless parties agree otherwise 1052
 - ‘law and equity’ 1052

- arbitration tribunals, jurisdiction
 - arbitration clause/agreement as basis 1051
 - compétence de la compétence* 1051, 1052–3
- arbitration tribunals, procedure
 - see also UNCITRAL, Arbitration Rules
 - arbitration clause/agreement and 1052
 - Hague Conventions (1899/1907) 1052
 - ILC Model Rules (UNGA resolution 1262 (XI)) 1050, 1053–4
 - Iran–US Claims Tribunal 1044
 - PCA Optional Rules for Arbitrating Disputes between Two States (1992) 1050
- archipelagic states 565–8
 - acquired rights and 567–8
 - archipelagic sea lanes passage 568
 - Bahrain as 566
 - baselines 561–2, 565–7
 - customary international law 568
 - declaration of status as, relevance 566
 - definition (GCTS/UNCLOS provisions) 566–7
 - hot pursuit and 618
 - Indonesia as 566
 - innocent passage (UNCLOS 52 and 53) 568
 - internal waters 556 n13, 567 n69
 - Japan as 566
 - overflight 542 n304, 568
 - piracy and 616
 - submarine cables and 567–8
 - territorial sovereignty and 567–8
 - traditional fishing rights and 567–8
 - UK as 566
 - UNCLOS and 555
- archives, inviolability
 - consular 755, 773, 795
 - diplomatic 755, 795
 - international organisations 776, 1326, 1327–8
 - international organisations, representatives of states 1322
- archives, state succession and: see state succession to state archives
- Arctic
 - continental shelf 588
 - pollution-free zone 583
- Arctic territory, claims to
 - contiguity principle and 535
 - definition of area 534–5
 - occupation and 535
 - sector principle 535
- Argentina
 - Antarctic, claims over 535–6
 - continental shelf 585
 - freedom of association 341
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - human rights in 383
 - ILO and 341
 - torture in 329
- ‘armed attack’ 1132–3, see also self-defence, right to (UNC 51)
 - action against embassy or individuals abroad 1134, 1143–4
 - burden of proof 1133, 1135
 - by non-state entities 1134–7
 - computer attacks 1139 n103
 - intentional and targeted attack 1133
 - Nicaragua 1133
 - Oil Platforms 1133
 - sending of armed bands 1132–3, 1134
 - September 11 attacks 1136–7
 - single act as 1133
 - state responsibility and 1133
 - terrorist attack 1136–7
 - time of 1133–4
 - on unflagged ship 1133
- armed conflict
 - see also aggression; civil war; international humanitarian law; neutrality; non-international armed conflict; use of force; weapons, prohibited
 - colonial domination, alien occupation and racist regimes, fights against as international conflicts 1149 n157, 1172, 1173 n30, 1195 n143
 - definition (ILC Draft Articles) 1126
 - definition (*Tadić*) 435, 1190–3

- duration 435, 1191–3
- environmental protection and 1186
 - n94, 1190
- freedom of navigation (high seas)
 - and 610–11
- international and non-international
 - conflict distinguished 1191–4
- Kunarac* 1194
- Optional Protocol on the Involvement
 - of Children in (2000) 332
- peacekeeping operations 1232–3
- sporadic fighting over limited
 - area 1194
- treaties and 904 n9, 946, 952 n225,
 - 1126 n37
- VCLT, continuing applicability 752
- armed forces
 - see also* peacekeeping operations
 - conscription of foreign nationals 659
 - intervention in third state,
 - effect 1193
 - national service, immunity of
 - international officials 1324
 - prerogative power and 153, 184
 - presence on foreign territory, need for
 - consent of host state 184, 214, 651,
 - 1231
 - privileges and immunities 776
 - state immunity and 708, 713, 728
 - state responsibility and 790
 - status of forces agreements 184, 658,
 - 776, 1231, 1233 n143
 - tortious liability 1310
- Armenia
 - see also* Nagorno-Karabakh
 - Azerbaijan and 237–8
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
- arms control
 - regional and subregional
 - arrangements 1034
 - treaty succession and 976–7
- arms sanctions as response to threat to
 - or breach of the peace (UNC 41)
- Afghanistan 1247
- Congo 1247
- Eritrea 1246–7
- Ethiopia 1246–7
- Haiti 1276
- Iran 1247
- Ivory Coast 1247 n218
- Liberia 1246–7, 1277–8
- Libya 1244–5, 1270
- North Korea 1247
- Rwanda 1246–7, 1263
- Sierra Leone 1246–7
- Somalia 1246–7, 1260–1, 1278–9
- Sudan 1247
- Yugoslavia (FRY) 1245, 1246, 1257,
 - 1269, 1279
- arms trading, search and visit, right
 - of 619
- arrest: *see* detention; forcible
 - abduction/unlawful arrest
- artificial islands 199, 582, 583, 609
- ASEAN 1294–5
 - Common Effective Preferential Tariff
 - Scheme 1294
 - decision-making 1295
 - Declaration of ASEAN Concord
 - (1976) 1294
 - dispute settlement 1034 n145
 - establishment (1967) 1294
 - Framework Agreement on Enhancing
 - ASEAN Economic Co-operation
 - (1992) 1294
 - Free Trade Area 1294
 - Human Rights Body 1294–5
 - Manila Declaration (1987) 1294
 - membership 1294
 - object and purpose 1294
 - Permanent Secretariat, Agreement of
 - the Establishment of (1976) 1294
 - Security Community, Economic
 - Community and Socio-Cultural
 - Community (2007) (Concord
 - II) 1294
 - Treaty of Amity and Co-operation
 - (1976) 1294
 - website 1340
- Asia
 - 19th century use of force
 - against 1121
 - cession of territories 503–4
 - counter-terrorism in 1164
 - ESCAP (UN Economic and Social
 - Commission for Asia and the
 - Pacific) 1213
 - regional organisations 1294–5

- Asian–African Legal Consultative Committee 119
- asphyxiating and deleterious gases 1189
- Associated States of the West Indies 239
- Association of Caribbean States 1292
 - n42
- associations of states
 - confederations 217, 238–9
 - Cook Islands and New Zealand 239
 - independence, right to 239
 - international legal personality 238–42
- astronauts, rescue 547
- asylum
 - see also* refugees; Refugees Convention (1951)
 - applicable law 758
 - Asylum* case 76–7
 - consular immunity and 774
 - customary international law 758
 - IACoMHR recommendation on 383 n228
 - international crimes and 383 n228
 - in Latin America 2, 27, 76–7
 - as matter of common interest for EU members 370
 - right to (UDHR 14) 279
 - right to, whether 758–9
 - treaty provision for 758–9
 - ‘urgent and compelling reasons of humanity’ and 750
- asylum seekers
 - African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
 - terrorism and 1161 n216
- atmospheric pollution 844, 871–5, *see also* polluting substances; transboundary pollution, conventions and other international instruments relating to
 - ‘atmosphere’ 871
 - customary international law 872
 - EMEP 873
 - Pollutant Release and Transfer Register 848 n20
 - ‘pollution’ 871–3
 - Trail Smelter* 872
- Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979) 871–4
 - ‘best efforts’ obligation 873
 - co-operation obligation 873
 - information, notification and consultation 873
 - ‘pollution’ 871–3
 - state responsibility and 856
- Austin, John 3–4
- Australia
 - acquisition by occupation 504
 - Antarctic claims 535–6
 - Antarctic mining 538
 - continental shelf 588
 - customary international law and 167
 - external affairs powers 221–2
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction, blocking legislation 691 n238
 - federal/component state powers, allocation 221–2
 - Foreign States Immunities Act 1985 707 n53, 708 n60, 728 n168, 745 n257
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - justiciability 184 n292, 189
 - legitimate expectations 168–9
 - nuclear tests: *see* nuclear tests
 - Racial Discrimination Convention (1965) and 221–2
 - recognition of governments 459
 - terrorist threat assessment, justiciability 189
 - treaties, ratification 168–9
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 167–8, 169–70
 - unincorporated treaties and 168–9
 - websites 1332, 1335, 1336, 1337
- Austria
 - state immunity and 704–5
 - state immunity from execution/attachment 748
- Austrian State Treaty (1955) 294, 1188
- Austro-Hungarian Empire, dissolution 293, 974, 980 n131, 999
- minorities in 293
- state succession to public debt 999
- state succession (Treaty of St Germain (1919)) 957–8, 996, 999

- aut dedere aut judicare* principle
 - bilateral arrangements 679
 - Bonn Declaration (1978) 679
 - Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, ILC Draft Code (1996) 671, 1160
 - extradition treaties 673–9, 687
 - hijacking conventions 676–9
 - Hostages Convention (1979) 676
 - Internationally Protected Persons Convention (1973) 675, 764–5
 - terrorist offences 1160
 - Torture Convention (1984) and 674, 675
 - treaty provisions 674–9
- avulsion 531
- Azerbaijan 200, *see also*
 - Nagorno-Karabakh
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
 - SC resolutions 238
 - territorial integrity 238
- Bahrain, as archipelagic state 566
- balance of interests
 - contiguous zone 578–9
 - damage to individual and benefit 1182
- EEZ 580
- environment and trade/economic development 45, 48–9, 849–51, 879, *see also* environmental protection and trade/economic development, balance
- equality of law and fact 288–9
- fishing zones 581
- goal and means 1182
- hazardous activities 861–2
- human rights 281
- humanitarian law and military necessity 1178 n55, 1181–2, 1183, 1184–5, 1187
- Law of the Sea Convention (1982) 555
- legitimate security interests and human rights 1182
- rights and obligations 44
- sovereignty and the international community 892
- sustainable development as 870
- balance of power 20, 27, 57, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1283
- balance of terror 43
- Baltic states
 - see also individual states*
 - annexation by USSR (1940) 203, 468, 961
 - CIS and 240, 378, 1291
 - Climate Change Convention (1992) and 879
 - declaration of independence 961–2
 - EU Declaration (1991) 961
 - EU statement on the presence of Russian troops (1992) 214
 - recognition (1991) 203
 - resumption of statehood/dissolution of USSR 36, 207, 209
 - sacred trust concept 251
 - state succession and 961–2
- Bamako Convention on Hazardous Wastes (1991) 806 n129, 896
- Ban Ki-Moon 1215
- Bandung Conference (1955) 215
- Bangladesh
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - prisoners of war, treatment of 669
 - secession from Pakistan (1971) 200, 960, 1273
 - territorial claims 498 n58
 - Uniting for Peace resolution and 1273
- Bangladesh–Pakistan boundary 498 n58
- Banjul Charter (1981)
 - see also* African Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights
 - conclusion/entry into force 391
 - environment rights 847
 - individuals, duties to state 392
 - non-derogation, absence of provision for 275 n55
 - 'peoples' 392
 - scope 391–2
 - self-determination, right to 290
 - signatories 391
- Bank of International Settlement 249
- Bantustans 202–3, 480–1, 526

- baselines 558–62, 591
 - Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries* 559–61
 - archipelagic states 561–2, 565–7
 - courbe tangente* 560 n30
 - economic interests and 560–1
 - GCTS/UNCLOS provisions 558–9, 561
 - large-scale charts and 558
 - long usage and 560–1
 - low-tide elevation and 558–9
 - low-water line 558–9
 - Qatar v. Bahrain* 561–2
 - straight baselines 559–62, 565–7
 - tracé parallèle* 560
- Bay of Biscay, continental shelf 585
- bays 562–5
 - closing line 562–4
 - condominium 563
 - GCTS provisions 562
 - historic 562–4
 - innocent passage 563
 - pluri-state bays 563
- Beagle Channel* mediation 1018 n38, 1055
- behaviouralism 55–60
- Belarus
 - see also* Byelorussia SSR
 - CIS membership 249
 - Climate Change Convention (1992) and 879
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
 - state succession and 961 n21
 - treaty succession 976–7
 - UDHR and 278–9
- Belgian Congo, secession, right to 526
- Belgium
 - criminal jurisdiction, presence of accused, relevance 672–3
 - deep sea mining 630
 - Grave Breaches of International Humanitarian Law, law of 10 February 1999 672
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - international law in municipal courts 173
 - nuclear power installations in 775 n116, 890 n254
 - recognition of governments 459
 - rescue of hostages in the Congo 1144
 - secession from the Netherlands (1830) 971, 974–5, 985 n152
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 177–8
 - treaty succession (1830) 971, 974–5
- belligerent occupation
 - see also* civilian population during armed conflict, protection of (GC IV and Protocol I (Part IV)); Israel occupied territories; occupation (acquisition of territory)
 - adequate food and medical supplies 1180
 - annexation, exclusion 1182
 - balance between legitimate security interests and human rights 1182
 - Congo v. Uganda* 1177, 1181
 - Construction of a Wall* 1179
 - continuity of benefits in case of changes to institutions 1180
 - criminal jurisdiction 654 n38
 - definition/classification as 1177
 - effective control test 1177–8
 - Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission 1179
 - forced labour or conscription 1180
 - freedom from arrest for pre-occupation opinions 1180
 - GC IV provisions 1177–80
 - Hague Regulations (1907) 1177, 1178, 1180
 - human rights law, applicability 1180–4
 - human rights treaties, applicability 1180–1, 1183
 - long-lasting occupations 1183 n80
 - military necessity 401, 1181–2
 - national security and public order considerations 1181–2
 - nationality, acquisition and 662
 - penal laws, continuity 1180 n63
 - powers and authority of military commander 1182
 - proactive obligations of occupying power 1183–4
 - proportionality and 1182
 - sovereignty, effect on 500–1, 1178
 - state responsibility and 1181, 1193

- status of public or judicial officials 1180
- West Bank 1178–9, 1181–2
- belligerent reprisals 1130 n59
- belligerent status
 - civil war and 1149–51
 - control test 1193–4
 - Nicaragua* 1193–4
 - recognition of 245, 444, 453, 1149–50
- belligerents
 - see also* armed conflict
 - Hague Conferences (1899 and 1907) and 1169
 - insurgents distinguished 1149
 - international law, applicability to 245, 1169
 - international legal personality 245
 - rights and duties 1149–50
 - as subjects of international law 1150
- Bering Sea, straddling stocks 625 n358, 627
- Bering Straits 578 n115
- Berlin Conference (1871) 1283
- Berlin Conferences (1884–5) 1283
- Berlin, status post-WWII
 - as focus of East–West conflict 57
 - relinquishment of Three Power rights and responsibilities (1990) 228, 965
- Bernadotte, Count 47
- Bessarabia, USSR annexation 468
- Biafra, recognition of 461
- bigamy, jurisdiction 663
- Bin Laden, Osama 1134
- Biodiversity Convention (1992) 846
- biological experiments, prohibition 1171
- BITs (bilateral investment treaties) 837–40
 - applicable law, jurisdiction of forum state 840
 - compensation for expropriation 839–40
 - as consent to arbitration 1041, 1042
 - customary international law and 838
 - diplomatic protection and 818 n244, 838
 - fair and equitable treatment 839
 - ICSID arbitration, provision for 1041
 - increasing resort to 818 n244
 - ‘investment’ 830 n303, 838–9
 - MFN treatment 839
 - non-discrimination 839
 - non-expropriation
 - undertaking 839–40
 - object and purpose 838
 - ‘prompt, adequate and effective compensation’ 834
 - as source of international law, limitations 98 n107, 841
 - state practice and 98 n107, 838, 841
 - UK practice 838–9
- Black Sea Straits 930
- Blackstone, William 140
- blockades
 - as aggressive act 1240
 - as enforcement measure (UNC 41) 1244
 - ‘force’ (UNC 2(4)), whether 611, 1121, 1124, 1130
 - SC and 1130
 - as UNC 42 measure 1251, 1275 n350
 - Yugoslavia 1275 n350
- Bodin, Jean 21, 26
- Bogotá Declaration on the geostationary orbit (1976) 552
- Bogotá Pact (1948) (Treaty of Pacific Settlement) 1023, 1031
 - consent to ICJ jurisdiction and 1080
- Bolivia
 - human rights in 383
 - ICSID, denunciation 1041 n184
- booby-traps, prohibition of use against civilians 1189
- Bophuthatswana
 - apartheid and 203 n32, 674
 - independence/recognition of 202–3
- borders: *see* boundaries
- Bosnia and Herzegovina
 - see also* Dayton Agreement (1995)
 - Bosnian Serb forces in 1245–6, 1258–9, 1260
 - confederation with Croatia 238 n215
 - Constitutional Court 380
 - currency and exchange restrictions 380 n213
 - elections, supervision 1033–4
 - ethnic cleansing 316

- Bosnia and Herzegovina (*cont.*)
 Genocide Convention (1948),
 succession to 981, 984
 genocide in 283–5
 High Representative, role 203–4,
 231–2, 427
 human rights in 982
 humanitarian assistance 1258
 IFOR 1260, 1279–80
 independence/recognition of 201,
 203–4, 239 n217, 461–2
 international legal personality 231–2
 NATO no-fly zones 1258, 1275, 1279
 OSCE supervision of elections 377
 n201, 1033–4, 1274 n343, 1289
 Peace Implementation
 Council 231–2
 property, right of refugees to
 recover 380 n212
 recognition of 461–2
 recognition and UN
 membership 201, 210, 461–2, 962
 referendum (1992) 962
 self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 1269
 SFOR and: *see* SFOR
 title to territory, non-recognition 470
 UN and 1224, 1257–60
 website 1340
- Bosnia and Herzegovina Human Rights
 Chamber 379–80
 6-months rule 380
 admissibility 380
 applicable law 427
 decisions, final and binding
 nature 380
 ECHR implementation and 379
 establishment 231 n179, 379
 exhaustion of local remedies and 380
 full Chamber/panels 380
 housing-related issues and property
 rights as focus 380
 indictments 427
 membership 379
 President 380
 standing 379–80
 termination of mandate 380
 ‘victim of violation’ 379–80
 website 1336
 workload 380
- Bosnia and Herzegovina Human Rights
 Commission (2004) 380
- Bosnia War Crimes Chamber
 admissibility decisions, review of 426
 appeals chamber 426
 Dayton Agreement (1995) and 427
 n166
 establishment (2003) 426
 ICTY completion strategy and 426
 judges, appointment 427
 Office of the Prosecutor of the State
 Court 427
 as part of Bosnia State Court 426
 Registry 427
 trial chambers/panels 426–7
- Bosnia War Crimes Chamber,
 jurisdiction
 cases submitted by the ICTY Office of
 the Prosecutor 426
 highly sensitive cases 426
 as referred by ICTY 426
 ‘Rules of the Road’ cases 426
- Bosphorus and Dardenelles Straits
 (Montreux Convention
 (1936)) 578
- boundaries
see also territorial acquisition;
 territorial integrity; territorial
 title/territorial sovereignty;
 evidence of including *effectivités*;
uti possidetis doctrine/stability of
 boundaries
 delimitation (land) 108–9
 equity and 108–9
 Helsinki Final Act (1975) and 372–3
 intangibility: *see uti possidetis*
 doctrine/stability of boundaries
 inviolability 451, 452, 1123
 natural boundaries 524
 treaty succession 529 n234
 UN guarantee (Kuwait–Iraq
 boundary) (SC resolution 687
 (1991)) 521 n193, 1248, 1267
 websites 1336
- boundary awards as source of
 title 497–8
- boundary disputes 496
 Algeria–Morocco (1963) 1027
 Chad–Libya 1011–12

- federal state disputes, relevance to international law 112, 223, 498
- recognition of state and 199–200
- self-determination, right to and 524
- boundary treaties
 - CIS Agreement on the Defence of its External Borders (1995) 1291
 - erga omnes* obligations 495
 - as executed treaties/final and binding effect 496, 528–9
 - as means of acquiring territory 495–8
 - state succession and 529 n234, 967–70, 971
 - as validation of non-binding document 496
- boundary treaties, interpretation
 - customary international law and 496
 - difficulties 496–7
 - fundamental change of
 - circumstances/*rebus sic stantibus* (VCLT 62(2)) 968–9
 - intention of parties, difficulty of determining 496
 - intertemporal 496–7, 500 n68
 - subsequent practice and 497
 - VCLT 31 and 32 and 496
- Boutros-Ghali, Boutros 1215
- boycotts 236, 1124, 1252
- BP 803
- Brazil, Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
- Brierly, J. 147, 490
- British Antarctic Territory 536
- British Commonwealth 239–40, 788, 1084
- British Somaliland 237, *see also* Somalia; Somaliland
- broadcasting
 - Declaration of Guiding Principles on the Use of Satellite Broadcasting (UNESCO) (1972) 550
 - ITU regulations 550–1
 - Principles Governing the Use by State of Artificial Earth Satellites for International Direct Television Broadcasting (UNGA resolution 37/92) 550
- broadcasting, unauthorised (UNCLOS 109 and 110), right of search and visit 615, 617
- Brunei, ASEAN membership 1294
- Bryan treaties (commissions of inquiry) 1020
- Bulgaria, minorities in 293 n164
- burden/standard of proof
 - act of state doctrine 192
 - advisory jurisdiction 1111–12
 - armed attack 1133, 1135
 - DSB 1037
 - fault 784, 888
 - force majeure* 796
 - genocide 285 n116
 - human rights treaties 938
 - ICC 441
 - ICJ 1091, 1100, 1133
 - innocent passage 571
 - interest of a legal nature 1100
 - regional international law 77, 92
 - self-defence 1133, 1135
 - state immunity: *see* state immunity, burden/standard of proof
 - state responsibility 780, 784, 888
 - third state intervention 1098–101
- Burma, independence 493–4
- Burundi, treaty succession and 958 n6
- Byelorussia SSR
 - see also* Belarus
 - change of name 1211
 - recognition 262–3
 - UN membership 218, 464
- Bynkershoek 25, 112
- Byrd amendment 164
- Byzantium 18, 19
- cabotage 570
- Cairo Declaration (1993) (Mechanism for Conflict Prevention, Management and Resolution) 1027–8
- Cairo Declaration on Human Rights in Islam (1990) 395
- Calvo doctrine 824
- Cambodia
 - ASEAN membership 1294
 - Khmer Rouge/Pol Pot atrocities 421
 - London embassy, abandonment 757–8
 - Paris Peace Agreements (1991) 231

- Cambodia (*cont.*)
 recognition of government 466, 757
 UN and 231, 1234
 UNAMIC 1129 n124
 US rescue of hostages 1144
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of 421–3
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of, judges
 independent co-investigation judges 422
 as mix of Cambodian and international 421–2
 nomination 421–2
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of, jurisdiction
 crimes against humanity under ICTY Statute 422
 as determined by Cambodian Law establishing Chambers (2001) 421
 genocide 422
 ‘grave breaches’ 422
 offences committed between 17 April 1975 and 6 January 1979, limitation to 421
 serious violations of Cambodian penal law 421
 serious violations of international conventions recognised by Cambodia 421
 serious violations of international humanitarian law and custom 421
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of, organs/organisation
 cases completed and in process 422–3
 co-prosecutors 422
 composition and appointment to 421–2
 establishment under Cambodian law (2001) 421
 Supreme Court Chamber 421
 Trial Chamber 421
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of, procedure
 applicable law 422
 due process and 422
 ICCPR and 422
 international standards of justice and 422
- Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of, UN–Cambodia Agreement (2003) 421
 treaty status 421
 VCLT (1969) and 421
- Cameroon, Nigerian minorities in 524 n207
- Canada
 Arctic claims 535
 Coastal Fisheries Protection Act 1985 627
 customary international law and 166–7
 deep sea mining 630
 employment contracts, state immunity in relation to 726
 extraterritorial jurisdiction, blocking legislation 693 n251
 federal/component state powers, allocation 219, 733
 Gulf War and 1253 n246
 ILO conventions and 220
 international law in municipal courts 166–7
 legislation, presumption of consistency with international obligations 143, 153
 minorities in 295, 296, 321
 pollution-free zones 583
 recognition of governments 459
 secession of Quebec 255–6, 291 n151, 293, 295, 523
 State Immunity Act 1982 707 n52, 716, 727 n163
 state immunity and 711, 714
 straddling stocks 667
 websites 1332, 1334, 1335
- canals: *see* Kiel Canal; Panama Canal Zone; Suez Canal
- canon law 19
- carbon sinks 878–9, 880
- CARICOM (Association of Caribbean States) 1292 n42
- Cartagena de Indias Protocol (1985) 381 n219
- catadromous species 624 n356
- Catholic Church, role 19, 21, 53, 609
- CEDAW: *see* General Recommendations (CEDAW); Women, Committee on the Elimination of All Forms of

- Discrimination Against; Women, Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against (1979)
- Celtic Sea, continental shelf 588
- Central African Republic
 - EU peacekeeping force 1280 n371
 - EUFOR 1280 n371
 - referral of situation to ICC 413
- Central America, OAS mediation 1224 n98
- Central American Court of Justice
 - individual's right of petition 259
 - website 1338
- central bank, immunity from execution 745
- CERD: *see* Racial Discrimination Committee
- cession of territory 499–500
 - actual delivery, relevance 500
 - African territories 503–4
 - Alaska sale (1867) 500
 - Alsace-Lorraine (1919) 974
 - Asian territories 503–4
 - by gift or exchange 500
 - consent, need for 515 n159
 - implementation of treaties relating to 151
 - intention to transfer, need for 499
- Island of Palmas* 499
- nationality following 1007
- in peace treaty 500
- as peaceful transfer 499
- Philippines 500
- prerogative power and 181
- servitudes and 499
- state succession to public debt and 998
- territorial sea 570
- treaty succession 973–4
- validity of treaties prior to UNC (VCLT 52) 502, 508 n110
- Venice (1866) 500
- West Indies, sale of territories in (1916) 500
- Ceylon: *see* Sri Lanka
- CFCs 876–7, 878
- CFSP pillar 241, 242
 - human rights and 370
- Chad
 - civil war, AU mediation (1978) 1027
 - EU peacekeeping force 1280 n371
 - EUFOR 1280 n371
 - minorities in 524 n207
- Chad–Libya boundary dispute
 - see also* Libya/Chad, Territorial Dispute *in the table of cases*
 - settlement 1011–12
- Channel Islands, effect on delimitation 594
- Channel Tunnel fixed link, jurisdiction 657
- Charter for European Security (2000) 1274 n343
- Charter of Paris (1990) 375, 1289
 - expert resource list 375
 - institutionalisation of Helsinki Act process 375
 - recognition of states and 451
- Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence 1137 n94
- Chechnya
 - ethnic cleansing 347 n8
 - human rights in 346–7, 364 n123
 - OSCE Mission 375 n188, 1033
 - Russia's admission to the CoE and 346 n4
- chemicals
 - Chemicals, Inter-Organisation Programme for the Sound Management of (1995) 897 n310
 - Prior Informed Consent Procedure Convention (1998) 896 n299
- Cheng, Bin 78
- Chernobyl incident: *see* nuclear accidents
- Child, Committee on Rights of 331–3
 - Concluding Observations 332–3
 - establishment 331
 - follow-up measures 333
 - general comments 333
 - general discussion days 332, 333
 - general recommendations 332
 - membership 331
 - powers 331–2
 - reporting obligations 331
 - urgent action procedure 332

- Child, Convention on the Rights of (1989)
- Armed Conflict, Optional Protocol on the Involvement of Children in (2000) 332
 - 'best interests of the child' as primary consideration 331
 - child prostitution and 325
 - conclusion/entry into force 331
 - education in respect for the environment 847
 - minorities' rights and 368 n151
 - obligations 331
- child, rights of
- see also* children
 - ACHR 19 381
 - armed conflict and 332 n365
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - correspondence and (CRC 24) 331
 - death penalty and 318, 395 n298
 - disablement, right to enjoy full life in case of (CRC 23) 331
 - drugs, protection from (CRC 33) 313
 - economic, social and cultural measures 317
 - family and (CRC 24) 331
 - freedom of expression (CRC 13) 317, 331
 - freedom of thought, conscience and religion (CRC 14) 331
 - 'girl-child' 325, 332, 420 n126
 - health and (CRC 24) 331
 - IAComHR Special Rapporteur 383
 - illegitimacy and 357, 661
 - international humanitarian law, application to (CRC 38) 313
 - justice system 333
 - life (CRC 6) 331
 - name (CRC 7) 331
 - national human rights institutions, role 333
 - nationality (ICCPR 24(3)/CRC 7) 318, 331, 659 n59, 662
 - non-derogation principle 275
 - non-discrimination 318, 357
 - privacy and (CRC 24) 331
 - prostitution and 325
 - refugee status, appropriate protection and assistance (CRC 22) 331
 - sale of 305, 332 n367
 - Sierra Leone 420
 - UN Children's Fund 303
 - UNCHR 305
 - UNHRC General Comment 17 317–18
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280, 332
 - violence, protection from physical and mental (CRC 19) 331
- child soldiers 331, 332, 413, 1176
- Children, Optional Protocol on their Involvement in (2000) 332
- Chile
- claims over the Antarctic 535–6
 - continental shelf 585
 - human rights in 304, 383
- China
- see also* Manchuria
 - ancient civilisations 15
 - Belgrade embassy, bombing 756
 - deep sea mining 630
 - economic expansion 38
 - international law and 36–8
 - international relations, approach to 38
 - Japanese invasion of (1931) 30, 468
 - law as a concept and 37–8
 - as major power 44
 - Marxism–Leninism and 38
 - moral principles and 37
 - Nuclear Test Ban Treaty (1963) and 888
 - peaceful co-existence and 37, 215
 - recognition as state/government 445, 455, 463, 467, 476–7
 - SC membership/veto 3, 215, 1206, 1237
 - Sun Yat Sen incident (1896) 754
 - Taiwan and 234–5
 - treaties, compliance/implementation (VCLT 26–7) 38
 - treaties as source of international law and 38
 - unequal treaties and 38
- China–India conflict 1199

- Chorzów Factory principle/restitutio in integrum* 389–90, 801–5, *see also* damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure
- arbitral tribunals and 802 n15
- cultural objects and 802 n154
- as general principle of law 103, 801–2
- IACtHR 802 nn150 and 152
- ICJ jurisprudence 801–2
- ILC Articles on State Responsibility 802–3
- illegal possession of territory 802 n154
- ITLOS 801
- marine pollution and 901
- moral damage and 802
- obligation to terminate illegal situation distinguished 803
- restitution, compensation and satisfaction as 802
- restitution in kind 802–3
- USSR acceptance of responsibility for aerial accident in Belgium 785 n45
- Chorzów Factory principle/restitutio in integrum*, jurisprudence
- AMCO 103
- Arrest Warrant case 1102
- BP case 803
- Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project 801, 804, 1102
- Genocide Convention case 801
- Great Belt case 1102
- Rainbow Warrior 803
- Right to Information on Consular Assistance 389–90
- Saiga (No. 2) 801–2
- Texaco 803–4
- USS Stark incident 786 n50
- CIS
- Alma Ata Declaration (1991) 209, 961 n21, 968 n69, 977, 1291
- Baltic states and 240, 378, 1291
- consensus decision-taking 240–1
- Council of Heads of State 1291
- Defence of CIS External Borders, Agreement on (1995) 1291
- Economic Court 1115 n371, 1291
- Economic Union 1291
- establishment 1291
- human rights in 240, 378–9
- international legal personality 240–1
- membership 240, 1291
- Minsk Agreement (1991) 961 n21, 968 n69, 1291
- nuclear weapons and 1291
- organisation 1291
- origins 203, 240
- as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1274 n343
- state succession and 240, 960–1
- status 1291
- structure 240–1
- territorial integrity and 240, 968 n69, 1291
- uti possidetis* principle 968 n69
- CIS Charter (1993)
- conclusion 1291
- equality of states and 1291
- as treaty 240
- CIS Convention on Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms (1995) 378–9
- CoE Parliamentary Assembly resolution 1249 (2001) and 379
- ECCHR, primacy 379
- entry into force 379
- implementation 378–9
- minorities, protection of 378
- participation in public life, right of 378
- work, right to 378
- CIS Human Rights Commission 378–9
- 6-months rule 379
- exhaustion of local remedies, need for 379
- individual and collective applications 379
- inter-state complaints 378–9
- Ciskei 480–1
- city states 20
- civil aviation, conventions relating to *see also* hijacking
- Chicago Convention (1944) 664
- Montreal Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts against the Safety of Civil Aviation

- civil aviation (*cont.*)
 - (1971) 668, 674 n 134, 676, 677–8, 687 n213, 1160 n212, 1270
 - Rome Convention on Damage Caused by Foreign Aircraft to Third Parties on the Surface (1952) 925
 - Tokyo Convention on Offences Committed on Board Aircraft (1963) 668, 676–7, 678, 1160 n212
 - websites 1337
 - civil jurisdiction 651–2
 - assets in forum state and 652
 - civil law practice 652, 663
 - common law practice 663
 - customary international law 652
 - domicile as basis 647, 650, 651, 652, 663
 - habitual residence as basis 652
 - nationality and 663
 - service of writ as basis 651–2
 - state practice, absence 652
 - territorial sea 574–5
 - civil law systems
 - civil jurisdiction and 652, 663
 - nationality and 661
 - state immunity and 710–11
 - civil and political rights
 - see also* ICCPR (1966)
 - Banjul Charter 391
 - definition and scope 208, 269–70
 - relative priority 269–70
 - USSR and 268–9
 - civil war
 - see also* non-international armed conflict; rebellions
 - in Angola 1150, 1233–4
 - belligerent status and 1149–51
 - as internal matter 1148–9
 - intervention in 1148–51
 - in Liberia 1276–7
 - neutrality and 1150
 - in Nigeria 460–1, 526, 1152 n175, 1201, 1233–4
 - recognition of governments and 460
 - in Rwanda 1262–3
 - self-determination, right to and 1148
 - state responsibility and 791–3
 - UN involvement in 1151 n163
 - in Vietnam 1150
 - civilian population during armed conflict, protection of (GC IV and Protocol I (Part IV)) 1176–86, *see also* belligerent occupation
 - apartheid and 401
 - attack on as ‘grave breach’ 401
 - as basic principle of humanitarian law 1169–70, 1184–5
 - Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission 1185
 - ‘grave breaches’ against 401
 - indiscriminate attacks 1185
 - Iran–Iraq war 1185 n91
 - Kosovo 1185 n88
 - mines and booby-traps, prohibition (Conventional Weapons Treaty (1980)) 1189–90
 - non-international armed conflict and 435, 1196
 - proportionality and 1184–5
 - Protection of Civilians in Armed Conflicts (SC resolution 1674 (2006)) 1184 n83
 - racial discrimination and 401
 - spreading of terror 1185
 - transfer or deportation 401
 - widespread or systematic attack on as crime against humanity 408
- civilian property, destruction and appropriation (GC IV, 53)/protection of civilian objects (Protocol I, 52–7) 1169–70, 1184–6
 - attack on works or installations containing dangerous forces (dams, dykes and nuclear generating stations) 401, 1186
 - ‘civilian objects’ 1186
 - cultural objects 1186
 - customary international law 1184 n87
 - dual purpose objects 1184–5
 - as ‘grave breach’ 403, 434
 - Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (1954) 1186 n96
 - individual criminal responsibility 1200

- military objectives, limitation of action to 1184–5
 - non-international armed conflict and 435
 - reprisals 1186
 - wanton destruction of cities, towns and villages 1200
- ‘civilisation’ as test of statehood 200
- claims commissions, US–Mexico 1056
- Clarion–Clipperton Ridge 630–1
- ‘clean slate’ principle 957, 974–5, 977–8, 979
- climate change 846, *see also* global warming
 - clean development mechanism 880
 - as common concern of mankind 534 n260, 875–6, 878
 - common heritage of mankind and 534 n260, 875–6
 - consensus on 881 n202
 - developing countries and 869, 879, 881
 - Kyoto Protocol (1997) 880–1
 - Marrakesh Accords (2001) 881
 - precautionary principle and 869
 - state responsibility and 857
 - sustainable development and 870
 - UNGA resolution 43/53 (global warming) 875–6, 878
 - websites 1337
- Climate Change Convention (1992)
 - administrative arrangements 880
 - adoption 878
 - ‘adverse effects’ 857
 - balance of interests 879
 - Baltic states 879
 - Belarus and 879
 - carbon sinks 878–9, 880
 - Compliance Committee 881
 - Conference of the parties 879–80, 881
 - co-operation obligation 879
 - developed country obligations 879, 881
 - developing countries and 879, 881
 - entry into force 880
 - greenhouse gases 878–9, 880–1
 - Kyoto Protocol (1997) 880–1
 - landlocked states 879
 - maintenance of inventories 878
 - objective 878
 - programmes to mitigate 878–9
 - Ukraine 879
 - website 1337
- closed seas doctrine 24, 553–4, *see also* high seas, freedom of
- cluster bombs 1190 n120
- ‘coalition of states’ 1253–4
- coastal state jurisdiction
 - in internal waters and ports 557–8
 - warships and 558
- coastal state obligations, notice of danger 571
- coastal state rights
 - laws and regulations relating to innocent passage 570, 572
 - municipal law and 570
 - national security 570
 - seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI) 588–9
 - territorial sea 569–70
 - UNCLOS and 555
- coastal trading 570
- COCOM, US ban on export to 692
- cod war 581–2, 1032
- codes of practice 118
 - environmental protection 118
 - international economic law 118
 - international trade 97, 118
 - merchant and maritime codes 19–20
- codification and development of international law
 - Committee on the Principles of International Law and 121
 - ILA and 121
 - ILC and 119–21
 - ILO and 121
 - Institut de Droit International 121
 - international organisations 1295
 - specialised agencies 121
 - UNCITRAL and 121
 - UNCTAD and 121
 - UNESCO and 121
- coercion of state
 - ‘coercion’ 943–4
 - as *erga omnes* obligation 944
 - Fisheries Jurisdiction* case 943

- coercion of state (*cont.*)
 - ILC Articles on State Responsibility 782
 - VCLT 52 500, 502, 942–4
 - Vienna Declaration on the Prohibition of Military, Political or Economic Coercion in the Conclusion of Treaties (1966) 943
- Cold War
 - international law and 33, 36, 41
 - international relations, impact on 36–7
- Cold War, impact 33, 36–7, 41, 573, 1209–10, 1217, 1224, 1226, 1234, 1287, 1290
- collective expulsion, prohibition, migrant workers and (MWC 22) 333
- collective promotion of human rights, Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
- collective rights 271, 281, 291, 299, 301–2, 366
- collective security 1235–56, *see also* aggression; arms sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); regional arrangements for the maintenance of international peace and security (UNC Chapter VIII); threat to the peace, actual breach or aggression (UNC 39)
 - breach of peace and 1241
 - evolution of the system 1235–6
 - NATO and 1290
 - OAS 1292
 - SC role 1236
 - September 11 attacks and 1290 n30
 - UNGA and 1271–3
- collective self-defence (Rio Treaty (1947)) 1291–2
- collective self-defence (UNC 51) 1136–7
 - cumulation of individual rights to self-defence distinguished 1146–7
 - customary international law 1146, 1147, 1273
 - inherent right 793, 1146
 - Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance (1947) 1137
 - intervention at request of government and 1152
 - Iraqi invasion of Kuwait and 1147
 - NATO and 1137, 1146–7
 - Nicaragua 1147
 - state responsibility and 793
 - Warsaw Pact and 1146–7
- collective use of force (Chapter VII) 1251–6
 - ‘coalition of states’ 1253–4
 - commitment of air-force contingents (UNC 45) 1251
 - commitment of forces to Security Council (UNC 43) 1244, 1251–2, 1266–7
 - delegation to states 1267
 - evaluation 1266–7
 - flexibility of concept 1267
 - implied authorisation 1254–6
 - Iraqi invasion of Kuwait (SC resolution 660 (1990)) 1253–4
 - justification by subsequent events 1254–6
 - Korean War 4, 1252–3
 - Liberia and 1278–9
 - Military Staffs Committee (UNC 47) 1244, 1251, 1254
 - Rwanda 1263
 - Sierra Leone 1263–4
 - Somalia 1261–2
 - state responsibility and 807
 - Yugoslavia 1258–9
- collective use of force other than under Chapter VII 1257–67
 - Congo 1264–5
 - Rwanda 1262–3
 - Sierra Leone 1263–4
 - Somalia 1260–2
 - Yugoslavia 1257–60
- collisions on the high seas
 - GCHS 11(1) 618, 656–7
 - Lotus principle 84–5, 618, 655–7
- Colombia
 - asylum and 76–7, 92, 758–9
 - Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
 - Contadora negotiating process 1031

- dissolution (1829–31) 980
- human rights in 317, 330, 383, 387
 - n247
- ICC and 411 n83
- satellites and 552
- state succession to public debt 998–9
- treaty succession (1829–31) 980
- Colonial Declaration: *see* Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples (1960) (UNGA resolution 1514 (XV))
- colonial domination
 - as international crime 807
 - use of force and 807
- colonial territories
 - see also* decolonisation; self-determination
 - colonial application clauses 926
 - domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) and 212–13, 649
 - international law in municipal courts 213, 649
 - pre-colonial archives 995
 - status 495
- COMECON 57
- Comesa 1038
 - Court of Justice 1115 n371
- comity 2
 - effects doctrine and 689 n218
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction and 694
 - international legal personality of international organisations and 1301, 1302
 - presumption of conformity with 159, 690, 691
 - state immunity and 706, 717
- command responsibility principle 399, 402, 408, 443 n229
- commissions of inquiry 638
 - as alternative to arbitration 1020
 - Bryan treaties 1020
 - conciliation distinguished 1022
 - disputed fact, limitation to 1020
 - Dogger Bank incident (1904) 1020
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and 1199–1200
 - Hague Conference (1899) 1020
 - Hague Conference (1907) 1020–1
 - ILO and 1021
 - inquiry as fact-finding procedure distinguished 1020 n46, 1022
 - International Fact-Finding Commission (grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions) 1199–1200
 - Letelier and Moffitt* 1021
 - Maine* incident and 1020 n47
 - PCA Optional Rules for Fact-Finding Commissions of Inquiry (1997) 1022 n62
 - Red Crusader* 1021
 - specialised agencies and 1021–2
 - Taft/Knox Treaties (1911) 1020 n54
 - UN use of 1021–2
 - US attitude to 1020
 - World Bank Inspection Panel 1021 n59
- Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights: *see* UNCESCR
- Committee on the Principles of International Law 121
- common concern of mankind 534 n260, 875–6, 878
- common heritage of mankind 533–4
 - Antarctica 533–4, 538 n283
 - climate change and 534 n260, 875–6
 - concept of 488
 - landlocked states and 607
 - law of the sea and 488, 492, 533–4
 - moon 533, 548–9, 882
 - Moon Treaty (1979) 881–2
 - seabed resources (UNCLOS 136) 554–5, 629
- Commonwealth of Nations, international legal personality 239–40
- communist states: *see* socialist states
- companies
 - see also* multinational private companies; multinational public companies
 - limited liability companies 105
 - nationality of: *see* nationality of companies
 - non-recognition and 479
 - privatised utilities 787

- compensation: *see* damages; damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure
- competition law (EU) 695–6
- compulsory service in forces of a hostile power, as ‘grave breaches’ 434
- COMSAT 549
- conciliation 1022–4
 - African Union Commission of Mediation, Conciliation and Arbitration 1023, 1026–7
 - Arab League and 1031–2
 - arbitration distinguished 1022
 - Cairo Declaration (1994) 1028
 - compulsory commitment 1022 n65
 - Conciliation and Arbitration, CSCE Convention on (1992) 378
 - Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations (1975) 1023
 - definition 1022
 - European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes (1957) 1023, 1032
 - evaluation 1022–4
 - flexibility 1024
 - GATT 1035–6
 - good offices/mediation and 1022, 1023
 - Institut de Droit International Regulations (1961) 1023
 - Jan Mayen* 1024
 - Law of the Sea Convention (1982) 1024
 - law of the sea disputes 638
 - NAFTA 1039
 - NATO 1032
 - negotiations as parallel procedure 1024
 - Organisation of Eastern Caribbean States (1981) 1022 n65
 - Ozone Layer Convention (1985) 1022, 1024
 - Pact of Bogotá (1948) 1023
 - PCA Optional Conciliation Rules (1998) 1023 n68
 - PCA Optional Rules for Conciliation of Disputes Relating to Natural Resources and the Environment (2002) 1023 n68
 - UN Model Rules (UNGA resolution 50/50) 1023
 - UNCLOS 284 635, 638
 - VCLT Annex 1022 n65
 - Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations 1022 n65
 - Vienna Convention on State Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts (1983) 1023–4
 - Vienna Convention on Treaty Succession (1978) 1023–4
- conciliation commissions 1022–4, *see also* claims commissions; truth and reconciliation commissions
- Chaco Commission (1929) 1023 n66
- Conciliation Commission for the Congo (1960) 1024
- Conciliation Commission for Palestine (UNGA resolution 194 (III)) 1024
- Franco-Siamese Conciliation Commission (1947) 1023 n66
- Franco-Swiss Commission (1955) 1023 n66
- ICSID 1040–1, 1042
- ILO 340–1
- ILO Convention against Discrimination in Education 1035 n151
- OSCE 1033
- Racial Discrimination Committee 313
- UNCLOS 284 and 635
- UNESCO Conciliation and Good Offices Commission 342
- UNESCO Convention against Discrimination in Education 1035 n151
- UNHRC 319
- conciliation, reports
 - good faith consideration obligation 1022
 - non-binding nature of reports 1022, 1023
- condominiums
 - Fonseca, Gulf of 229–30, 563

- Gulf Neutral Zone (1922) 229 n168
- international legal
 - personality 228–30
- New Hebrides 228–9
- confederations 217, 238–9
- conflict of laws
 - definition and scope 1–2, 647
 - jurisdiction, rules relating to 647
 - public international law, overlap 647
- conflict prevention
 - see also* OSCE/CSCE
 - human rights and 377
 - national minorities and 376
- Confucius 37–8
- Congo, Conciliation Commission for (1960) 1024
- Congo, Democratic Republic of
 - aggression by Burundi, Rwanda and Uganda, allegations of 393
- aid to government authorities (SC resolution 1234 (1999)) 1154
- arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1247
- Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
- collective use of force (Chapter VII) 1264–5
- collective use of force other than under Chapter VII 1264
- EUFOR 1280 n371
- human rights in 305
- independence 205
- Interim Emergency Multinational Force in Bunia 1280 n371
- intervention in 1154–5, 1270
- Lusaka Ceasefire Agreement (1999) 1154, 1264, 1270
- minorities in 295 n170
- MONUC 1154, 1262–3, 1264–5
- ONUC 1226–7
- referral of situation to ICC 413
- rescue of hostages 1144
- SC resolution 1234 (1999) 526, 1154
- as threat to peace 1264–5
- UN peacekeeping 1226–7, 1273
- UN Secretary-General and 1216, 1226–7
- Congress of Vienna (1815) 27, 28, 1282–3
- conquest 500–2
 - Falkland Islands 532, 533
- conscription, introduction of 28
- consensus
 - see also* aggression, definition/classification as, UNGA resolution 3314 (XXIX) (Consensus Definition)
 - acta jure gestionis/acta jure imperii* distinction and 711
 - ASEAN decision-taking 1295
 - ASEAN dispute settlement and 1294–5
 - CIS 240–1
 - climate change 881 n202
 - definition 910 n40
 - formation of international law 10, 74, 93, 147 n88
 - GATT/WTO dispute settlement 1035, 1036–7
 - ICJ Chambers, composition 1062
 - International Seabed Authority and 634 nn398 and 400
 - private/public law dichotomy 710
 - as reflection of shift from exclusive to inclusive law-making 10
 - Rio Statement of Principles and 870
 - SC reform and 1208
 - sustainable development principles 870
 - treaty drafting and 368, 910
 - UNCLOS III and 10 n38
 - UNHRC and 315, 316
 - use of force and 1118, 1139 n99
- consent
 - maritime delimitation 590–1
 - peacekeeping operations 1227
 - territorial acquisition and 515–17
- consent as basis of international law 9–11
 - dualism and 29–30, 131
 - municipal and international law interrelationship and 143
 - ‘new’ states and 9
 - positivism and 131
 - treaties and 94–5, 148
 - USSR and 33
 - withdrawal of consent, effect 10
- consent as basis for jurisdiction: *see* arbitration clause/agreement; ICJ jurisdiction, consent

- consent and the formation of customary international law
 - see also* acquiescence
 - acquiescence 80–1, 89–91
 - implied consent 11, 34
 - Lotus* 81
 - new states and 91
 - non-participation in practice 80–1, 84–5
 - persistent objector rule 91
 - regional or local customary law and 93
- Consolato del Mare 19
- conspiracy
 - cross-border jurisdiction 655
 - individual criminal responsibility 399
 - Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 399
- Constantinople Convention (1888) 540, 930
- Constantinople, fall of 20
- constituent instruments: *see* international organisations, constituent instruments
- consular access (VCCR 36)
 - Avena* 135–6, 220–1, 774
 - as general principle of international law 389–90, 774 n435
 - LaGrand* 135, 220–1, 773–4
 - Right to Information on Consular Assistance* (IACtHR) 389–90, 773 n436
 - UN Mission in Kosovo incident 774 n435
 - US due process rules and 135–6, 220–1, 389–90
- consular archives and documents
 - definition 763
 - inviolability (VCCR 33) 755, 773, 795
- consular bag 761, 773
- consular immunities
 - arrest and detention 774
 - criminal proceedings and 774
 - diplomatic asylum and 774
 - functional nature 774
 - Koeppel and Koeppel* 774
 - waiver 774 n438
- consular premises
 - inviolability 772
 - protection obligation 772–3
 - tax exemption 773
- consular privileges and immunities
 - see also* consular access (VCCR 36); consular immunities; Vienna Convention on Consular Relations (1963)
 - consular bag 761, 773
 - customs duties, exemption 772
 - freedom of communication 773
 - tax exemption 772
- consular relations
 - consular functions 772
 - development of institution 751
 - exequatur*, need for 772
 - exequatur* as recognition of state 463
 - modern communication methods, effect 751
- Consular Relations Convention (1963), diplomatic bag 761
- consultation obligation
 - Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979) 873
 - GATT XXII 1035
 - Non-Navigational Uses of International Waterways Convention (1997) 885
 - Vienna Convention on State Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts (1983) 1015 n22
 - Vienna Convention on Treaty Succession (1978) 1015 n22
- Contadora negotiating process (Esquipulas II agreement) 1031
- contiguity principle
 - in Africa 524
 - Arctic territory, claims to 535
- contiguous zone 554, 578–80
 - 12-mile limit 579–80
 - 24-mile limit 580
 - as balance of coastal and non-coastal state interests 578–9
 - claim, need for 579
 - fiscal regulations 578, 579, 580
 - fishing rights 578
 - GCTS provisions 579–80

- Gidel and 579
- hot pursuit and 618
- islands, right to 564–5
- jurisdiction 657
- maritime resources and 579
- as part of EEZ 580
- as part of high seas 579
- sanitary regulations and 579
- UNCLOS provisions 580
- continental shelf 584–90, *see also*
 - maritime delimitation
- airspace and 589
- claims to 586, 588
- coastal states' rights and duties 588–90
- customary international law 585
 - n144, 596, 601 n243, *see also* Continental Shelf Convention (1958), customary international law
- definition 584, 586–8
- delimitation 592–605
- distance criterion 597
- EEZ and 586, 597 n217
- equity and 108, 594–605
- exploration and exploitation 589
- GCTS provisions 586–7
- geographical criterion for determining 586–7
- history and development of
 - concept 585–6
- hot pursuit and 618
- inherent right to 586
- installations 589–90
- intertemporal law 508–9
- islands, right to 564–5, 588
- mineral resources and 584–5, 588–9
 - as natural prolongation 586, 587–8, 592, 593, 594, 596, 606, 1024
- navigation, fishing and conservation
 - of living resources, unjustifiable interference 589
- occupation/effective control,
 - relevance 587
- oil rigs 589–90
- opposite and adjacent states 592
- payments or contributions in kind for
 - exploitation of 590
- rocks, right to 588
- safety zones 589
- seabed, subsoil and waters around
 - coast as alternative claim 585
- sedentary species and 589, 624 n356
- sovereign rights 588–9
- submarine cables and pipelines 589
- superjacent water as high seas 589
- Third World and 555
- title to 588–9
- Truman Proclamation (1945) 585, 588–9
- UNCLOS provisions 586, 587–8
- wrecks and 589
- Continental Shelf, Commission on the
 - Limits of 587–8
 - membership 587–8
 - reporting obligations 588
- Continental Shelf Convention (1958) 585, 587–8, 592–7
 - customary international law
 - and 85–6, 87–8, 586–7, 591–5, 596–7, 599, 601 n243, 605–6, *see also* continental shelf, customary international law
 - reservations 916
 - third parties, applicability to 85–6, 87–8, 95–6
- Control Council Law No. 10 400, 439
- Cook Inlet 563–4
- Cook Islands, international legal
 - personality 239
- Copenhagen Criteria (1993) 371 n164
- corporal punishment 1196 n151
- Corpus Juris Civilis* 18
- correspondence, freedom from unlawful
 - interference, child (CRC 24) 331
- corruption of
 - arbitrators 1053
 - representative of state (VCLT 50) 942
- Cosmos incident 546, 854
- Costa Rica, recognition of government (1919) 455–6
- Council of Europe 345–7, 1289, *see also*
 - ECHR; ECtHR
- aims 345, 1288
- conventions and other instruments
 - concluded under auspices of: *see* ECHR (1950); Minorities, Framework Convention for the

- Council of Europe (*cont.*)
 - Protection of (1994) (CoE);
 - Minority Languages, European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages (1992)
 - establishment and role 345, 1288–9
 - European Social Charter: *see* European Social Charter (1961) (as amended)
 - Honouring of Obligations and Commitments Committee 346 n5
 - human rights and 345–7
 - human rights and counter-terrorism, Guidelines (2002 and 2005) 1166
 - immunities 1319 n169
 - Macedonia and 346
 - membership 345–6, 1288
 - minorities, protection of 298, 365–8, *see also* Minorities, Framework Convention for the Protection of (1994) (CoE)
 - municipal law and 140
 - OSCE/CSCE and 378
 - Parliamentary Assembly 345, 1288
 - principles 345
 - Privileges and Immunities of the Council of Europe, General Agreement on (1949) 1319 n169
 - resolutions and recommendations 359
 - rule of law and 345, 350
 - Standing Conference of Local and Regional Authorities 345, 365
 - structure 345, 1288
 - USSR and 347 n8
 - websites 1337, 1340
- Council of Europe Commissioner for Human Rights
 - establishment 346
 - individual petitions, exclusion 346 n6
 - object and purpose 346
 - opinion 347
 - recommendations 347
 - reporting obligations, absence 346 n6
- Council of Europe, Committee of Ministers 345, 352 n38, 353–4, 359–60, 1288
- advisory opinion, right to request 352 n38
- CoE internal organisation, responsibility for 359
- Declaration on Monitoring Arrangements (1994) 346
- democracy, role in promotion of 359
- implementation of ECtHR decisions and 353–4, 359–60
- as political body 359
- promotion of CoE's aims and 359
- resolutions and recommendations and 359
- counter-claims
 - challenge to admissibility 1097
 - defence distinguished 1096
 - direct connection with subject-matter of claim, need for 1096–7
 - ICJ 284, 1096–7
 - as independent claim 1096
 - ITLOS 641
 - as testing of the law 84
- counterfeiting, jurisdiction 674
- countermeasures
 - conditions attaching to 795–6
 - excluded measures (ILC Draft Articles on State Responsibility, art. 50) 795
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* 794
 - previous internationally wrongful act, need for 794, 795
 - prior request for discontinuation of act, need for 794, 795–6
 - proportionality and 794, 795
 - responsibility for breach of international obligation and 127, 794–6, 1313 n141
 - termination of treaty as response to prior breach by other party (VCLT 60) 794, 947
- courtesy 2
- crab fisheries (Alaskan King Crab) 589
- crimes against humanity
 - applicability outside armed conflict 438, 670
 - Cambodian Extraordinary Chambers and 422
 - East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes 425

- ICC and 411, 670
- ICTR and 408
- ICTY and 404
- individual criminal responsibility 46, 399, 402, 671
- as international crimes 436–8
- Iraqi High Tribunal 429
- as ‘most serious crime’ 411, 670
- Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations Convention (1968) 669
- non-combatants, applicability to 438
- Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 399, 400, 436, 669–70
- Serbian War Crimes Chamber 429
- as ‘serious crime’ 425
- universal jurisdiction 668–73, 1200
- war crimes distinguished 438
- crimes against humanity,
 - definition/classification as 670
 - apartheid 436–7, 438
 - cruel and inhuman treatment 436
 - deportation 408, 436
 - enforced disappearances 334, 436–7
 - extermination 408, 436
 - genocide 438, 670
 - imprisonment/detention during armed conflict 436
 - legality until law of territory where perpetrated, relevance 436
 - nuclear weapons, threat or use of 317
 - persecution on political, racial or religious grounds 408, 436
 - rape 408, 436
 - slavery 408, 436
 - torture 408, 436
 - widespread or systematic attack
 - against civilian population 408
 - wilful killing/murder 408, 436
- crimes against humanity, elements of the crime/relevant factors
 - attack on civilian population, relationship with 438
 - knowledge of aims of attack 438
 - nationality of victim 438
 - personal motivation 438
 - policy or plan 437–8
 - widespread and systematic attack 437
- crimes against humanity, jurisprudence
 - Akayesu* 437, 438
 - Kunurac* 437–8
 - Martić* 438
 - Tadić* 437, 438
- crimes against peace
 - aggression as 439, 671, 1123
 - individual criminal responsibility 399, 439
 - Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 399, 400, 669–70
 - war crimes distinguished 670
- Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, ILC Draft Code (1996) 401, 402, 671
- aut dedere aut judicare* principle 671, 1160
- individual criminal responsibility
 - and 401, 439 n226, 671
 - omissions from 1991 Draft 671
 - prohibited weapons 1187 n101
 - universal jurisdiction and 671
- crimes against UN and association
 - personnel, individual criminal responsibility 402, 671
- criminal jurisdiction 652–87
 - Antarctica 663
 - belligerent occupation 654 n38
 - Channel Tunnel fixed link 657
 - civil law practice 663
 - common law practice 663–4
 - concurrent jurisdiction 654–5
 - conspiracy 655
 - cross-border offences: *see* cross-border jurisdiction; effects doctrine
 - illegal arrest: *see* forcible abduction/unlawful arrest
 - immigration offences 655
 - internal waters 557
 - international crimes 398
 - international organisations and 1328
 - Israel–Jordan Peace Treaty (1994) 657–8
 - nationality principle 654, 659–64, *see also* nationality as basis of jurisdiction
 - optional exercise 141–2, 652
 - outer space 548 n323

- criminal jurisdiction (*cont.*)
 - passive personality principle, 664–6, *see also* passive personality principle
 - piracy: *see* piracy
 - presence of accused, relevance 672–3
 - protective principle 666–8, *see also* protective principle
 - quasi-universal jurisdiction 673–83
 - territorial principle 652–8, *see also* territorial jurisdiction
 - territorial sea 141–2, 574, 656–7
 - ‘treaty crimes’ 674–5
 - treaty provision 398–9, 673–80
 - universal principle 668–87, *see also* universal jurisdiction
- criminal responsibility: *see* individual criminal responsibility
- critical date
 - breach of treaty and 946
 - territorial acquisition 509–10
- Croatia
 - see also* Yugoslavia
 - confederation with Bosnia and Herzegovina 238 n215
 - demilitarisation 1229
 - economic sanctions (UNC 41) 1245–6
 - ethnic cleansing 316
 - human rights 982
 - human rights treaties and 982–3
 - minorities in 461
 - peacekeeping operations 1229
 - recognition of 201, 461
 - recognition and UN
 - membership 201, 210, 962
 - state succession and 210, 962
 - treaty succession 982–3
 - UN membership 201
 - UNCRO 1259
- cross-border jurisdiction
 - see also* effects
 - doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters
 - Channel Tunnel fixed link 657
 - customs control 658
 - definition 654–5
 - immigration controls 657–8
 - Israel–Jordan Peace Treaty (1994) and 657–8
 - Lockerbie bombing 654–5
 - cruel and inhuman treatment
 - as crime against humanity 436
 - as ‘grave breach’ 401, 434
 - cruel and inhuman treatment, classification as
 - death penalty 322, 358
 - stoning 358
 - cruel and inhuman treatment, prohibition
 - ACHR 5 274, 381
 - civilians in wartime 1177
 - ECHR 3 357
 - individual criminal responsibility 401
 - interrogation techniques in Northern Ireland 357
 - non-derogation principle 274
 - non-international armed conflict 1195, 1196
 - prisoners of war (Geneva Convention (1949)) 1175
 - cruise missiles 189–90, 1134
 - CSCE: *see* OSCE/CSCE
 - Cuba
 - Angola and 1150, 1228–9
 - embargoes 693 n251, 1130
 - human rights in 305, 383
 - missile crisis 8, 1153, 1233
 - secession from Spain (1898) 975
 - US sanctions 692–3, 694–5
 - cultural co-operation 373
 - cultural genocide 283
 - cultural heritage
 - state archives and 994, 996
 - state succession to state property and 991, 996
 - UNCLOS and 994
 - cultural identity
 - CIS Convention 378
 - migrant workers and (MWC 31) 333
 - cultural objects in armed conflict 1186
 - attacks on as ‘grave breach’ 401, 403
 - military necessity and 1186
 - cultural objects, restitution 802 n154
 - cultural relativism 41–2, 268–70
 - culture, right to protection of

- Banjul Charter 391
- as collective right 281
- EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371
- indigenous peoples 298
- minorities 294, 296, 297, 366
- currency counterfeiting, individual criminal responsibility 399
- currency and exchange restrictions
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina 380 n213
 - international organisations, privileges and immunities 1328
 - international organisations, representatives of states to 1322
- customary international law 72–98, *see also* codification and development of international law; consent and the formation of customary international law; customary law; *opinio juris*; regional international law; sources of international law (ICJ 38); state practice as source of international law, requirements
 - burden/standard of proof 92
 - consensus and 10, 74, 93, 147 n88
 - definition 6
 - as democratic process 74
 - determination of existence, responsibility for 75–6
 - as ‘evidence of general practice accepted as law’ 74
 - as evolving process 902
 - flexibility 74, 78–9, 93
 - ILC role 120
 - ‘instant’ 74, 78
 - municipal law and 166–7, 173, 174–6
 - positivism and 51, 75
 - as reflection of interests of individual states 79–80
 - usage distinguished 115
- customary international law as reflected
 - in treaties and comparable international instruments
 - bilateral treaties and 97–8
 - co-existence of treaty and customary law 85–6, 87–8, 96–7, 555, 586–7, 591–5, 596–7, 599, 601 n243, 605–6, 716–17, 752, 928–9, 984, 990, 1132, 1167–8, 1187–8
 - codification and development of international law
 - distinguished 85–6, 95
 - Continental Shelf Convention 85–6, 87–8, 586–7, 591–5, 596–7, 599, 601 n243, 605–6
 - development/creation of customary international law and 95–6, 556
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocol I 1184 n87, 1187
 - Hague Convention IV (1899) and Regulations (1907) 1168 n7, 1187–8
 - Law of the Sea Convention (1982) 556, 559, 568
 - opinio juris* and 88–9
 - Racial Discrimination Convention (1965) 286
 - UN Charter 929
 - Vienna Convention on State Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts (1983) 986, 987, 990, 1000
 - Vienna Convention on Treaties (1969) 496, 903, 933, 948, 951
 - Vienna Convention on Treaty Succession (1978) 976
- customary law
 - see also* customary international law; regional international law
 - definition 72 n8
 - democratic nature of 74
 - development of 72–3
 - indigenous peoples 229, 299, 300
 - international law, relevance to 41, 73–4
 - local practices 92–3
 - municipal law, relevance in 73
- customs control
 - consular exemption 772
 - contiguous zone and 578, 579, 580
 - cross-border jurisdiction 658
 - diplomatic exemption 767, 770 n413
 - EEZ 583, 643
 - international organisations, privileges and immunities 1328
 - territorial sea and 570, 572
- customs unions, status 202, 211–12, 954

- customs zones 579
- Cyprus
 - federal status 235
 - independence (1960) 235, 294 n166, 987 n163
 - international law in municipal courts 170–1
 - state succession to public property (1960) 987
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 170–1
 - Turkish invasion 1228
 - UN mediation 1221
 - UN Secretary-General and 1227
- Cyprus, Turkish Republic of Northern (TRNC)
 - as *de facto* administered entity 236
 - international legal personality 235–6
 - recognition, refusal of 236, 464, 478–9, 1269
 - SC resolutions 235–6, 469–70, 1269
 - UN peacekeeping 1227
- Czech Republic
 - boundaries 968 n69
 - establishment 209
 - UN membership 985, 1211
- Czech and Slovak Republic
 - dissolution 198, 209, 980, 992–3
 - nationality 1008
 - state succession to state property 992–3
 - treaty succession 980–1
 - uti possidetis* principle 968
- Czechoslovakia
 - see also Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project
 - German invasion of 468, 501–2
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - minorities in 293 n164
 - treaty succession 970
 - UDHR and 278–9
 - USSR invasion of/intervention in 35, 36, 57, 1233–4
- damages for, individual criminal responsibility 416
- damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure
 - see also Chorzów Factory principle/*restitutio in integrum*
 - actual investment 836
 - applicable law 840
 - ‘appropriate compensation’ 834
 - BITs and 839–40
 - Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States (1974) 834–5
 - customary international law 834–5
 - debts or monies due 835
 - direct and foreseeable damage 836
 - discounted cash flow (DCF) and 836
 - Energy Charter Treaty 835, 837 n350
 - exemplary damages 804–5
 - fair market value 805, 835–7
 - injury to citizens or their property 1101–2
 - interest and 802 n152
 - just compensation 835 n333
 - lawfulness of taking and 836–7
 - lost profits 804, 836–7
 - lump-sum settlement 823, 840–1, 1044–5
 - material damage, in absence of 805
 - moral damages 802, 805
 - NAFTA 835 n335
 - offset 802 n152
 - pain and suffering 805
 - physical assets 835
 - prompt, adequate and effective 834, 835
 - property of nationals 933–4
 - punitive damages 804–5
 - treaties of friendship, commerce and navigation and 840 n395
 - UN Compensation Commission 1045
 - UNGA resolution 1803 (XVII) (Permanent sovereignty over natural resources) 834–5
 - wilful or negligent action or omission of injured party and 802 n152, 1102
 - World Bank Foreign Direct Investment Guidelines (1992) 835
- damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure
 - jurisprudence

- AMCO 103
- Aminoil 834
- Amoco 837
- INA 836–7
- Metalclad 836
- SEDCO 841
- Texaco 834
- Danube
 - see also* Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project
 - economic sanctions (UNC 41) 1245–6
- Danube Commission 28, 76, 1283–4, 1306 n109
- Danzig, status 231 n176
- Dar al-Islam 18
- Dardenelles Straits (Montreux Convention (1936)) 578
- Darfur 1265–6, *see also* Sudan
 - African Commission resolution on 393
 - SC referral to the ICC 412
 - UN–AU joint peacekeeping force 1230 n132
 - UNAMID 1266, 1267
- Dayton Agreement (1995)
 - see also* Bosnia and Herzegovina
 - Bosnia War Crimes Chamber and 427 n166
 - Bosnian Commission on Human Rights and 1034
 - constitution of Bosnia and Herzegovina as independent state 239 n217, 461
 - economic and arms sanctions and 210, 1246
 - equitable principles and 109
 - High Representative and 204–5, 231–2
 - Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and Herzegovina: *see* Bosnia and Herzegovina Human Rights Chamber
 - ICTY and 406 n57
 - IFOR and 1260, 1279–80
 - implementation, responsibility for 231–2
 - OSCE role in Bosnia 377 n201, 1033–4, 1274 n343
 - Peace Implementation Council 231–2
 - Yugoslavia (FRY), renaming as 284 n105
- DDT 874
- de Visscher, C. 79, 507
- death penalty
 - see also* executions
 - African Commission working party 393
 - as arbitrary deprivation of life (ACHR 4) 390
 - child/minors 318, 395 n298
 - as cruel and inhuman treatment 322
 - due process and 321, 390, 1196 n151
 - extradition and 321, 358
 - interim measures and 320
 - Iraqi High Tribunal 429
 - legal representation, right to 321
 - pregnant women and 318
- death penalty, abolition
 - Death Penalty, Inter-American Protocol on the Abolition of (1990) 384
 - ECHR Protocol XIII 348
 - ICCPR, second Optional Protocol and 322 n315
- ‘debt for nature’ swaps 851
- debt recovery, use of force and 1121 n14
- Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples (1960) (UNGA resolution 1514 (XV))
 - importance in history of decolonisation 253
 - self-determination, right to 40, 115–16, 252–3, 255, 256
 - territorial integrity 290
 - uti possidetis* principle 290
- Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning Friendly Relations (1970) (UNGA resolution 2625 (XXV))
 - as aid to interpretation of UN Charter 1123
 - colonial territories and 495
 - equality of states 214
 - good faith fulfilment of obligations 104

- Declaration on Principles (*cont.*)
- ICCPR and ICESCR and 253–4
 - non-binding effect 1123–4
 - non-interference principle and 213, 1123, 1127
 - as *opinio juris* 115
 - peaceful settlement of disputes 1013, 1123
 - prohibition of the use of force and 469, 1123–4
 - rebels, assistance to 1152–3
 - reprisals, prohibition 671, 1123
 - self-determination, right to 116, 252–3, 256, 290, 522, 526, 1123, 1148
 - territorial acquisition and 502, 508 n110
 - territorial integrity 469, 1123
 - use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 1123–5
 - wars of aggression as crime against peace 1123
- Declarations
- Armed Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States (UNGA resolution 2131 (XX)) 1127
 - Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and of Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief 287 n128
 - Elimination of Violence against Women (1994) (UNGA resolution 48/104) 287 n129, 325
 - Enhancement of the Effectiveness of the Principle of Refraining from the Threat or Use of Force in International Relations (UNGA resolution 42/22) 1123 n24
 - Human Rights of Individuals who are not Nationals of the Country in which they Live (UNGA resolution 40/144) 826
 - Measures to Eliminate International Terrorism (UNGA resolutions 49/60 and 51/210) 1160–1
 - non-binding effect 1222
 - Outer Space (UNGA resolutions 1962 (XVII) and 51/126) 544
 - Protection from torture/cruel, inhuman and degrading treatment (UNGA resolution 3452 (XXX)) 327
 - Religious Intolerance 305
 - Right to Development (UNGA resolution 41/128) 301–2
 - Rights and Duties of States, ILC Draft (1949) 134 n17
 - Rights of Indigenous Peoples (2007) 299, 307 n220
 - Rights of Persons Belonging to National or Ethnic, Religious and Linguistic Minorities (UNGA resolution 47/135) 297
- decolonisation
- see also* Declaration on the Granting of Independence to Colonial Countries and Peoples (1960) (UNGA resolution 1514 (XV)); *uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of boundaries
 - creation of new states and 198, 199
 - devolution agreements 958, 967, 979
 - international law and 38–40, 44
 - national liberation movements (NLMs), role 245
 - non-alignment and 1287
 - state archives and 994–5
 - state succession to state property 977, 990 n182, 994–5
 - State Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts (1983), Vienna Convention on (1983) 977
 - territorial acquisition and 492
 - Third World, impact on attitudes of 269
 - treaty succession: *see* treaty succession
 - UN and 1205
 - UN Special Committee 253, 303
- deep sea mining: *see* seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI)
- defence ministers, immunity *ratione personae* 740 n235
- deforestation 866 n118, 875
- demilitarised zones, status 969, 1221 n85, 1229–30, 1248, 1257, 1259 n270

- democracy
 - as basis for human rights 268
 - humanitarian intervention and 1158
 - and international law 27
 - Office for Democratic Institutions and Human Rights (OSCE) 1289
 - recognition of states and 452
- democracy, right to
 - CoE and 359
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
- denial of justice, standard of treatment of aliens and 825
- Denmark
 - Arctic claims 535
 - civil jurisdiction 652
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction, blocking legislation 691 n238
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
- Denmark/Iceland Union
 - dissolution 996 n215
 - state archives and 996 n215
- deportation or transfer of protected persons (GC IV, 49) 1169–70, 1180
 - as crime against humanity 408, 436
 - as ‘grave breach’ 401, 408, 434
 - ICTR 408
 - individual criminal responsibility 1200
 - right of 826
- deportation/expulsion
 - see also* collective expulsion, prohibition
 - of alien lawfully resident (ECHR Protocol VII) 348
 - Boffolo* 826
 - duty to receive expelled national 827 n291
 - enforcement of expulsion orders 347 n8
 - European Convention on Establishment (1956) 827
 - gender discrimination and 321
 - ICCPR 13 826–7
 - reasons, need for 826
 - torture and (TC 3) 327, 329
- detention
 - see also* prompt hearing, right to
- African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
- ‘cleansing’ operations in Chechen Republic and 347
- Committee for the Prevention of Torture, right to visit places of 363–5
- Torture Sub-Committee on 330
- developing countries
 - see also* self-determination; Third World
 - climate change and 869, 879, 881
 - diplomatic communications, rights relating to 759 n356
 - environmental protection and 869
 - national identity and 35, 40–1
 - North–South axis 41
 - ozone depletion and 869 n132
 - SC membership 39–40
 - seabed resources and 555, 628
 - standard of treatment of aliens and 823
 - state immunity and 710
 - USSR approach to international law and 35
- development, right to
 - see also* sustainable development principle
 - Banjul Charter 391
 - CESCR General Comment 3 302
 - as collective right 301
 - Declaration on Right to Development (UNGA resolution 41/128) 301–2
 - Energy for Development, UN Committee on 1213 n42
 - sustainable development (Rio Principle 3) and 302
 - UNCHR working group on 304
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1994) 302
 - Working Group on 302
- differential treatment, justifiable 288–9, 296–7, 318, 324
 - affirmative action 288–9, 296–7, 318, 324
 - CEDAW General Comment 5 324
 - forms of 324
- diplomatic archives and documents, inviolability (VCLT 24) 755, 795

- diplomatic asylum: *see* asylum
- diplomatic bag
 - see also* diplomatic communications, rights relating to
 - abuse, protection against 759–61
 - consular bag 761, 773
 - Consular Relations Convention (1963) and 761
 - customary international law 760 n346
 - definition 759 n337
 - Dikko incident (1984) 758
 - electronic screening, legitimacy 760, 761
 - ILC Draft Articles on the Diplomatic Courier and the Diplomatic Bag (1989) 759 n337, 761
 - Libyan embassy siege and 760
 - lorry, whether 759 n342
 - preservation and protection of human life and 760–1
 - protest against violation 759–60
 - reservations to Vienna Convention 760
 - Rome airport incident (1964) 759 n342
 - visible markings and contents 759
- diplomatic communications, rights relating to 759–62
 - developing countries' views on 759 n356
 - diplomatic bag: *see* diplomatic bag
 - freedom/protection of 759
 - messages in code and cipher 759
 - wireless transmitter, need for permission 759
- diplomatic courier, privileges and immunities 761–2
- diplomatic functions
 - promotion of information and friendly relations 753
 - representation and protection of interests and nationals of sending state 753
 - as sovereign activity 725–7
- diplomatic head of mission/ambassador *agrément*, need for/reasons for refusal 753
 - classes of 753
 - named individual requirement 753
 - presentation of credentials, effect 753
- diplomatic immunities (personal)
 - absolute nature 737, 738 n227
 - of ambassador 737
 - civil and administrative jurisdiction 766–70
 - criminal jurisdiction of receiving state 766, 770
 - employment contracts: *see* employment contracts, state
 - immunity in relation to execution 767
 - ICJ judges 1059–60
 - immovable property exception 766
 - motoring offences 766
 - private professional or commercial activity exception 767, 769–70
 - succession matters exception 766–7
 - summons as witness 767
 - UK *Memorandum on Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities in the UK* 767
- diplomatic immunities (personal), waiver 771–2
 - counter-claims and 771
 - express waiver, need for 771, 772
 - inter partes* undertaking, effect 771–2
 - rarity 771
 - as right of sending state 771–2
 - US *Guidance with regard to Personal Rights and Immunities of Foreign Diplomatic and Consular Personnel* 771
 - waiver from execution distinguished 771
- diplomatic missions
 - persona non grata*, practice relating to declaration of 186, 753, 759, 766, 770
 - reduction of staff as sanction (SC resolution 748 (1992)) 753
- diplomatic obligations
 - non-interference in domestic affairs 753
 - respect for laws and regulations of host state 753

- diplomatic premises
 - 'full facilities for the performance of the functions of the mission' (VCLT 25) 762
 - immunity from search, requisition, attachment or execution 762
 - Iranian Hostages* case: *see* United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran Case (USA v. Iran) (Iranian hostages case) *in the table of cases*
 - mission premises and diplomatic residences distinguished 762–3
 - recognition as 463 n78
 - state immunity and 728, 755, 762–3
 - tax exemption (VCLT 23) 762
 - UK State Immunity Act 1978 762–3
 - unsuitable use 755
 - use compatible with diplomatic functions obligation 755
 - VCLT provisions 762–3
- diplomatic premises,
 - abandonment 757–8
 - break in relations and 758 n329
 - Cambodian embassy in London 747–8
 - Iranian embassy in London 758
 - squatters' rights 757 n328
 - transfer of title to host state 757–8
 - UK practice 757–8
 - US practice 758 n329
- diplomatic premises,
 - inviolability 754–9
 - Chinese embassy in Belgrade, US bombing of 756
 - emergency entry 754
 - entry with consent 757 n324
 - Iraqi embassy in Pakistan 754 n309
 - justification, possibility of 754
 - Libyan embassy in London 756–7, 760
 - Nicaraguan embassy in Panama 754 n309
 - obligation to protect and 755–6
 - respect and protection obligation
 - following break in relations distinguished 756
 - self-defence, right of and 756–7
 - Ugandan embassy in Kinshasa 755–6
- diplomatic premises, obligation to protect 754–8
 - Congo v. Uganda* 755–6
 - due diligence obligation 1327–8
 - Ethiopian entry, ransacking and seizure of Eritrean Embassy residence 756 n319
 - reciprocity and 754
 - US embassy and consular premises in China 756
 - US embassy in Tehran 755
- diplomatic privileges (personal)
 - see also* diplomatic immunities (personal); Internationally Protected Persons Convention (1973)
 - administrative and technical staff, entitlement 768
 - Congo v. Uganda* 765
 - customs duties and inspection 767, 770 n413
 - diplomatic bag: *see* diplomatic bag; diplomatic communications, rights relating to
 - diplomatic couriers 761–2
 - diplomats' families, entitlement 767–8
 - duration 768–70
 - entitlement, evidence of 765
 - Eritrean detention of Ethiopian Chargé d'Affaires 765 n372
 - following termination of office 738 n225
 - freedom of movement and travel 764
 - head of state entitlement to 737
 - ICJ judges 1059–60
 - inviolability of papers,
 - correspondence and property 765
 - inviolability of person 764–5
 - inviolability of private residence 765
 - Iranian Hostages* case: *see* United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran Case (USA v. Iran) (Iranian hostages case) *in the table of cases*
 - Islamic law (*aman*) 18
 - nationality, relevance 767, 768

- diplomatic privileges (*cont.*)
 - notification of appointment, arrival and departure of members of mission and family members, need for 768–9
 - protection obligation 764
 - ratione personae* 737, 738, 740
 - reciprocity and 764
 - recognition of state/government, dependence on 453, 454, 471–2
 - social security provisions, exemption 767
 - sovereign immunity as source of 751
 - state immunity and 709 n63, 755 n314
 - tax exemption 767, 768 n384, 770 n413
 - territorial integrity/territorial sovereignty, respect for as basis 697, 751
 - UNGA resolution 53/97 (condemnation of violence against diplomatic and consular missions and persons) 764
- diplomatic protection
 - see also* nationality of claims; protection of nationals abroad, use of force; standard of treatment of aliens
 - BITs and 818 n244
 - customary international law 811
 - definition 809–10
 - dual nationality and 815
 - espousal of claim principle 258, 810, 1044
 - EU citizens and 810 n211
 - exhaustion of local remedies, need for 811, 819–20, 1071–2
 - flag state jurisdiction and 819
 - ILC Articles on State Responsibility and 809
 - justiciability 188–9
 - legitimate expectations 188, 812
 - mediation and 809
 - mixed arbitral tribunals/claims commissions and 823
 - national working for international organisation and 811 212
 - scope 809
 - shareholders 817–18
 - ships 819
 - statelessness and 810–11
 - UK Rules regarding the Taking up of International Claims by HMG 811–12, 814, 818
- Diplomatic Protection, ILC Draft Articles on (2006)
 - art. 4 (state of nationality of natural person) 812 n223, 814
 - art. 6(1) (dual nationality: joint protection) 815 n233
 - art. 7 (claim against state of nationality) 815
 - art. 8 (stateless persons and refugees) 811–12
 - art. 9 (nationality of corporation) 817
 - art. 14 (exhaustion of local remedies) 820
 - art. 15 (effective remedy) 820
- diplomatic protection, jurisprudence
 - Abbasi* 812
 - Application of Genocide Convention* case 809 n202
 - Barcelona Traction* 811, 816–17
 - Diallo* 817–18
 - Iran–US Tribunal cases 815
 - Mavrommatis* 810
 - Mergé* case 815
 - Nottebohm* 813–14
- diplomatic relations 750–72, *see also* Diplomatic Relations Convention (1961) (VCDR)
 - armed conflict and 752
 - dispute settlement and 1014–47
 - history 54–5, 750–2
 - international rights and duties in absence of 471
 - modern communication methods, effect 751
 - mutual consent, need for 752–3
 - reciprocal nature of obligations 751–2
 - recognition *de facto* and 460
 - recognition of governments and 457, 458, 460, 467, 471

- special missions: *see* Special Missions Convention (1969); special missions, immunities
- statehood, as criterion of 198, 202, 244, 451, 453
- diplomatic relations, break
 - as alternative to withdrawal of recognition 467
 - break or reduction of representation as response to threat to the peace (UNC 41) 753, 1242, 1245, 1248
 - respect for and protection of diplomatic premises following 756
- Diplomatic Relations Convention (1961) (VCDR) 752–72
 - armed conflict, applicability in case of 752
 - codification/development of international law 752
 - customary international law, continuing role 752
 - drafting process 120
 - entry into force 903
 - ICJ jurisdiction 1079
 - non-parties, applicability to 770
 - reservations 760
 - scope and general approach 752
- diplomatic representation, as sovereign power 217
- diplomatic status, responsibility for determining 193
- Disabilities, Committee on the Rights of Persons with
 - confidential inquiries 334
 - grave or systematic violations, right to inquire into 334
 - individual communications 334
 - inter-state complaints 334
 - membership 334
 - reporting obligations 334
- Disabilities, Convention on the Rights of Persons with (2006)
 - conclusion 334
 - discrimination, prohibition 334
 - states' obligations 334
- disabled persons, rights
 - children (CRC 23) 331
 - ESC and 361
- General Comment (UNCESCR) No. 5 310
- Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280
- disappearances: *see* enforced disappearances
- disarmament, UN Special Sessions 1212 n33
- discovery, Antarctica 536
- discovery as means of territorial acquisition 504, 508
- discrimination: *see* gender discrimination; non-discrimination principle; racial discrimination; religious discrimination
- Discrimination Sub-Commission: *see* Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of
- dispute settlement 1010–56, *see also*
 - African Union, dispute settlement;
 - Arab League, dispute settlement;
 - League of Nations, dispute settlement;
 - NATO, dispute settlement;
 - OAS, dispute settlement;
 - OSCE/CSCE, dispute settlement;
 - peacekeeping operations; *and individual tribunals*
- commitment to peaceful settlement as criterion for recognition of state 452
- compulsory adjudication, increasing acceptability 1115
- consent, need for 1012
- Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) 1013
- diplomatic procedures and adjudication distinguished 1011, 1047
- 'dispute' 1012
- EEZ 583
- EU 1038
- existence of a dispute, need for 1012
- Fisheries Disputes Chamber 640 n443
- fishing rights 635, 636–7
- friendly settlement as preferred option 342–3, 353, 387, 1216

- dispute settlement (*cont.*)
 ICSID: *see* ICSID
 justiciable and non-justiciable disputes,
 distinguishability 1012–13
 ‘legal’ dispute 1012–13
 marine scientific research 636
 methods 1013–14, *see also*
 commissions of inquiry;
 conciliation; conciliation
 commissions; good
 offices/mediation; law of the sea,
 dispute settlement (UNCLOS Part
 XV); negotiation as means of
 dispute settlement; OSCE/CSCE
 multiple methods used in
 conjunction 1011–12
 obligation to settle disputes by
 peaceful means (UNC 2(3)) 1013
 political context 1013
 regional arrangements (UNC Chapter
 VIII) 1024–6, *see also* regional
 arrangements for the maintenance
 of international peace and security
 (UNC Chapter VIII)
 reservations to treaty provisions 921
 seabed resources: *see* Seabed Disputes
 Chamber (UNCLOS 186–91)
 specialised agencies and 1034–5
 Treaties between States and
 International Organisations
 Convention (1986) and 945–6
 treaties, invalidity, termination,
 withdrawal or suspension
 (VCLT 65–6) 952–3
 use of force, prohibition 1123
 dispute settlement, agreements relating
 to
 see also law of the sea, dispute
 settlement (UNCLOS Part XV)
 Bogotá Pact (1948) 1023, 1031
 Chad–Libya Framework Agreement
 on the Peaceful Settlement of the
 Territorial Dispute (1989) 1011
 Conciliation and Arbitration, CSCE
 Convention on (1992) 378
 European Convention for the
 Peaceful Settlement of Disputes
 (1957) 1023, 1032
 interpretation of 936
 Manila Declaration on the Peaceful
 Settlement of International
 Disputes (1982) (UNGA resolution
 37/10) 1013 n17, 1014 nn18
 and 20, 1016 n28, 1026 n78
 OSCE Convention on Conciliation
 and Arbitration (1992) 1033
 Vienna Convention on State
 Succession to State Property,
 Archives and Debts (1983) 1015
 n22
 Vienna Convention on Treaty
 Succession (1978) 1015 nn22
 and 23, 1023–4
 WWI Peace Treaties 936
 dissolution of states
 Austro-Hungarian Empire 293, 974,
 980 n131, 999
 by consent 208–9
 continuity of states and 209
 Czech and Slovak Republic 198, 209,
 980, 992–3
 Denmark/Iceland Union 996 n215
 extinction of territory and 208 n52
 as fact 208
 federal states 210, 218
 gradual dissolution 959–60
 illegal use of force and 208
 internal upheavals and 208
 Irish Free State/UK (1921) 999
 legal consequences 208
 Mali Federation (1960) 974, 980
 Norway/Sweden Union 980
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland, Federation
 of (1963) 980
 state practice 980
 treaty succession 974, 979–81
 United Arab Republic 974, 980
 USSR 36, 44, 198, 207, 209,
 240–1, 315–16, 345, 527,
 960–2, 993
 Yugoslavia (SFRY) 36, 198, 209–10,
 959–60
 dissolution of states, state succession
 and 960–3
 nationality and 1007–8
 public debt 998–1001
 state archives 996

- distress 797–8
 - force majeure* distinguished 797
 - responsibility for breach of
 - international obligation and 1313 n141
- Dogger Bank incident (1904) 1020
- domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) 488, 493, 647–9, 1205, *see also* intervention in the affairs of another state, justification; intervention in the affairs of another state, prohibition
- acquisition of title and 493
- Chapter VII enforcement action as exception to 1237, 1267
- colonial issues and 212–13, 649
- definition as matter of international law 648 n8, 1084, 1205
- diplomatic obligations and 753
- erosion of 648–9
- as general principle of international law 649, 1205
- human rights and: *see* human rights, state sovereignty/domestic jurisdiction principle and
- ICJ jurisdiction and 1083–4
- individual petition, effect of agreement to 273
- interaction between international and domestic law and 648–9
- OSCE/CSCE and 375–6
- premature recognition of states and 460–1
- relativity of concept 212, 648
- state sovereignty and 212–14
- territorial integrity and 522
- treatment of own nationals and 648
- domestic violence
 - against women 324, 325, 385
 - armed conflict and 1197–8
- domicile as basis for civil jurisdiction 647, 650, 651, 652, 663
- Dominican Republic
 - human rights in 383
 - ILO and 341
 - UNHRC and 315 n271
- double criminality principle 686
- Dover Straits, France–UK Agreement (1988) 577
- drug abuse
 - UN Special Session 1212 n33
 - websites 1339
- Drug Control Programme 1213
- drug trafficking
 - Convention against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs and Psychotropic Substances (1988) 674 n134
 - ILC Draft Code on Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind (1991) 671 n119
- individual criminal responsibility 399
- international court, proposal for 410
- jurisdiction, treaty provision 673, 674
- UNCLOS 108 616 n328
- visit and search, rights of 619
- drugs, protection of child from illicit use (CRC 33) 331
- dual nationality
 - diplomatic protection and 815
 - equality of states and 815
 - ICSID and 1042
 - Iran–US Claims Tribunal 815, 1044
 - Mergé* case 815
 - state succession and 1004–5
- dualism 29–30
 - consent as basis 29, 131
 - definition 131, 132–3
 - inconsistencies of doctrine 30
 - transformation doctrine 139
 - Triepel and 29–30
- due diligence
 - appropriateness test 861
 - diplomatic premises, inviolability and 1327–8
 - environmental damage, state responsibility 854–6, 861, 887–8
 - flexibility of concept 855
 - international organisations and 1318
 - proportionality and 861
 - Sierra Leone Special Court 420 n126
 - state responsibility and 785, 791
 - treaty provision (general) 855–6
 - ultra-hazardous activities 887–8
 - UNCLOS provision 855

- due process/fair trial
 - ACHR 8 390
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990)
 - and 374
 - death penalty and 321, 390
 - deprivation as 'grave breach' 434
 - ECHR 6 348, 357, 716–17
 - Extraordinary Chambers of
 - Cambodia 422
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
 - ICC 55 441–2
 - ICC 66 442
 - ICC 67 442–3
 - ICCPR 14 315
 - ICTR 20 441
 - ICTY 21 406, 440–1
 - Iraqi High Tribunal 429
 - legal representation, right to 321
 - non-international armed
 - conflict 1195
 - state immunity and 716–17
 - UDHR 9 and 10 279
 - UN Compensation Commission
 - (Iraq) 1047 n220
 - UNHRC General Comment 32 319
- Duguit, L. 53–4
- dum-dum bullets 1189
- Dunant, Henry 1168
- duties to the state 392
- East Timor
 - applicable law 425
 - international legal personality 233–4
 - occupation by Indonesia 425
 - SC resolutions 233–4
 - self-determination, right to 255
 - UNGA resolutions 1021 n59
 - UNMISET 234, 425, 1230
 - UNTAET 233–4, 424–5, 1230
- East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes
 - applicable law 425
 - Armando Dos Santos* 425
 - composition 425
 - crimes against humanity 425
 - establishment (UNTAET Regulation 2000/15) 424–5
 - genocide and 425
 - individual criminal
 - responsibility 425
 - judges 425
 - jurisdiction 425
 - murder 425
 - non-retroactivity of UNTAET
 - Regulation 425
 - sexual offences 425
 - suspension of operations 425
 - torture 425
- Eastern Europe
 - minorities in 293–4, 297–8
 - post-WWI states 448
 - SC and 1207
 - uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of
 - boundaries and 527–8
- Eastern Slavonia 1229–30, *see also* UNTAES
- EBRD
 - dissolution provisions 1329
 - privileges and immunities 1319
 - n168, 1321
 - sustainable development and 869
 - n136
- EC
 - international legal personality 241
 - as 'legal order' 241
- ECA (UN Economic Commission for Africa) 1213
- ECAFE 262
- ECE (UN Economic Commission for Europe) 1213
- ECHR (1950) 347–60
 - belligerent occupation, applicability
 - in case of 1183
 - binding nature 46
 - Bosnia, applicability to 379
 - CIS Human Rights Convention
 - and 379
 - conclusion 347
 - customary international law and 716
 - 'decision in accordance with the
 - law' 348
 - EU and 369–70
 - European public order and 349, 354
 - 'general principles of international
 - law' 933–4
 - implementation, choice of
 - means 348, 357, *see also* Bosnia

- and Herzegovina Human Rights Chamber; ECtHR
- 'in time of emergency' (ECHR 15) 357–8
- incorporation 348
- individual's standing 46, 259, 352, 353
- KFOR operations and 350–1
- limitation/claw-back provisions 275 n57, 348, 357–8
- margin of appreciation 356–7
- national security considerations 358
- non-derogation principle 274, 356
- objective nature of obligations 348–9
- obligation to make inquiry/ investigate 358
- obligation to take steps to safeguard life 358
- reservations 354 n52, 916–17
- rule of law and 347
- SC resolutions, primacy (UNC 103) 1183 n79
- state immunity and 716–17
- state responsibility and 349–50
- underlying principles 347
- 'within the jurisdiction' (ECHR 1)/ extraterritorial application 276, 349–50, 658 n55, 687, 826
- ECHR (1950), interpretation
 - as constitutional instrument of European public order 349
- effectiveness principle 349, 352 n37
- municipal law and 156
- principles of international law, conformity with 349, 717
- subsequent changes, need to reflect (living instrument principle) 349, 937–8
- teleological approach (object and purpose) 349
- ECJ 1038
 - EU fisheries disputes and 635
 - individual's rights and 46
 - municipal courts and 140, 156–7
 - website 1338
- ECLAC (UN Economic Commission for Latin America) 1213
- ECOMOG 1029, 1276–8
- Economic Community of West African States: *see* ECOWAS
- economic relations, international law and 40
- economic restrictions as retorsion 1128
- economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41) 4–5, 1242–51, *see also* arms sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); blockades; boycotts
 - against individuals or entities 1250
- Al-Qaida/Taliban 1163 n225
- challenge to inclusion on list, right of (SC resolution 1730 (2006)) 1250–1
- Chapter VII action 4
- conflict with EU or municipal law, possibility of 154–5
- evaluation 1250–1
- Haiti 1239–40, 1243, 1276
- Iraq and 4, 1243–4, 1276
- Korean war and 4
- League of Nations and 1217
- necessity 3–4
- no-fly zones 1156, 1254–5, 1258, 1275 n349, 1279
- non-recognition policy and 470
- obligation to implement 154–5
- Rhodesia 4, 469, 1242–3
- Sanctions Assistance Missions 1033 n141
- Sanctions Committee (FRY) 1246
- Sanctions Committee (Iraq) 1243–4
- Sanctions Committee (Libya) 1245
- sanctions committees 1208
- SC 1267 monitoring committee 1163 n225
- Yugoslavia (SFRY) 210
- Economic, Social and Cultural Rights Committee: *see* UNCESCR
- Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, Inter-American Protocol (1985)
 - individual/state petition and 384
 - reporting obligations 384
 - trade unions, right to organise and join 384

economic and social rights

ACHR 26 381

African Commission working
group 393

IAComHR and 383

rights of the child and 317

USSR and 268–9

ECOSOC

human rights responsibilities 303–4

membership 1213

national liberation movements
(NLMs) and 246recommendations, non-binding
effect 1213

role and powers 1213

subsidiary organs 1213

voting 1213

ecosystems 856–8, 871, 876 n176, 878,
886

ECOWAS

constituent instrument 1029

Democracy and Good Governance
Protocol (2001) 1029dispute settlement role 1029, 1038,
1276–8

ECOMOG 1029, 1276–8

Guinea-Bissau 1029, 1278 n365

Liberia and 1029, 1276–8

Liberia–Sierra Leone buffer
zone 1277Mechanism for Conflict Prevention,
Management and Resolutions,
Peacekeeping and Security
(1999) 1029

Mediation and Security

Council 1029 n108

membership 1276

Protocol on Non-Aggression
(1978) 1276as regional arrangement (Chapter
VII) 1276–8SC/AU endorsement of action in
Somalia 1277

Sierra Leone and 1029

Standing Mediation Committee
1276

websites 1340

ECSC, international legal
personality 241

ECtHR 351–60

ECtHR, admissibility

6-months rule 355

exhaustion of local remedies 273–4,
355–6

oral hearings 352

prejudice, need for 360

procedure for determining 351–2

ECtHR, decisions

binding effect 353

Committee of Ministers, role 353–4,
359–60

ICJ, divergence from 1116

implementation, responsibility
for 353

municipal courts and 140

precedent and 352

publication 353

ECtHR, jurisdiction, powers and role

advisory opinions 352–3

effective examination of issues 352
n37

fact-finding, avoidance 357

friendly settlement 353

interim measures (RoP 39) 352 n37

subsidiarity principle 356–7

ECtHR, organisation and procedure

1998 reorganisation (Protocol
XI) 351, 353–4

2004 reforms (Protocol XIV) 360

ad hoc judges 1061 n21

Chambers, composition 351, 354

Committees (3 judges) 351

full-time status 353

Grand Chamber 351

Grand Chamber, referral to 352, 353,
354

Judge Rapporteurs 351–2

judges, appointment 351

judges, participation in different
stages of same case 354

President (Chambers) 351

President and Vice-presidents
(Court) 351

public hearings 353

rules of procedure 351

Sections 351

third party intervention 353

website 1336

- women, failure to include in nominations list 352 n38
- workload 360
- ECtHR, remedies
 - just satisfaction 353, 359, 806 n184
 - measures to prevent recurrence/end continuing violation 360
 - publication of information provided by state 360
- ECtHR, standing/*locus standi*
 - abstract issues/*actio popularis*, exclusion 354–5
 - individual applications 259, 352, 353
 - inter-state applications 352, 354
 - ‘victim of a violation’ 355
- Ecuador, Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
- Education, Convention against Discrimination in (1960), complaints procedure 342
- education, right to
 - ACHR 13 384
 - CIS Convention 378
 - ECHR Protocol I 348
 - Education Rights of Minorities, OSCE Hague Recommendation (1996) 376 n194
 - environmental protection and 847
 - ICESCR 13 308–9
 - indigenous peoples 299
 - migrants (MWC 30) 333
 - UDHR 26 279
- educational co-operation 373
- EEZ 580–4
 - artificial islands 582, 589
 - as balance between coastal and non-coastal state interests 580
 - claims to 583
 - coastal states’ rights and duties 582
 - contiguous zone as part of 580
 - continental shelf and 586, 597 n217
 - customary international law and 74, 583, 601 n243
 - customs control 583, 643
 - dispute settlement 583, 636–7
 - equity and 108, 583
 - establishment of concept 554
 - fish stocks and 624
 - fishing zones and 580–2, 583
 - freedom of navigation 582
 - hot pursuit and 618
 - islands, right to 564–5, 582
 - marine pollution 899
 - marine scientific research 582, 583 n134
 - non-coastal states’ rights and duties 582–3
 - North Sea, Declaration on the Co-ordinated Extension of Jurisdiction in 583
 - opposite and adjacent states 592
 - overflight, right of 582
 - pollution-free zones and 583
 - seabed and subsoil rights, exclusion 597
 - security/neutrality zones and 584
 - straits and 576–7
 - submarine cables and pipelines 582
 - Third World and 555
 - UNCLOS provisions 582–3
 - USA–USSR Maritime Boundary Agreement (1990) 584
 - width 582
- effective remedy, right to
 - see also* exhaustion of local remedies
 - Charter of Paris (1990) 375
 - ECHR 13 348, 358–9
 - UDHR 8 279
- effectivités: *see* territorial title/territorial sovereignty, evidence of including *effectivités*
- effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters 688–92
 - as balancing exercise 689–90
 - blocking legislation 691–2
 - COCOM ban 692
 - comity and 689 n218, 690
 - diplomatic protest 691 n238
 - ‘effect’ 689
 - EU and 694–5
 - EU competition law and 695–6
 - EU–USA, Agreement Regarding the Application of Competition Laws (1991) 694
 - EU–USA, Memorandum of Understanding on Cuban sanctions 1997 694–5

- effects doctrine/extraterritorial (*cont.*)
 freezing of Iranian assets and 692
 Helms-Burton legislation 693–5
 nationality issues and 688 n219
 OAS Judicial Committee Opinion on
 validity of US legislation 693–4
 objective territorial principle
 distinguished 688
 punitive damages and 688
 Siberian pipeline episode 692
 UK–US agreement to consult in case
 of difficulty (1984) 692 n247
 US sanctions 692–3
- Egypt
see also United Arab Republic
 Gulf War and 1253 n246
 recognition of Israel 462 n74
 treaties in ancient Egypt 14
- Egypt–Syria union: *see* United Arab
 Republic
- EIAs 865–7
 Environmental Impact Assessment in
 a Transboundary Context
 Convention (1991) 847–8, 858,
 866–7
 EU and 866
 hazardous activities and 861
 international watercourses 865 n115,
 884
 nuclear power installations 866 n116
Nuclear Tests case 867
 public participation 847–8, 866–7
 UNCLOS 865–6
 UNEP 865 n114
- Eichmann* case
 forcible abduction/unlawful
 arrest 214, 651, 680
 non-retroactivity principle (*nullum
 crimen sine lege*) 672
 passive personality principle 664 n77
 universal jurisdiction 669 n102,
 671–2
- Eilat blockade 1138
- El Salvador
 continental shelf 585
 human rights in 305, 383
 UN mission 1229 n123
- elderly, rights: *see* older persons, rights
- elections, right to free
see also public life, right to participate
 in
 Copenhagen Final Act (1990)
 and 374
 ECHR Protocol I 348
 ICCPR 292–3
 observers 1229–30
- embargoes 1124
 Cuba 693 n251, 1130
 Iranian assets 688 n220
 Israel 1125
 Libya 1245
 Sierra Leone 1263
 South Africa 4
- embassies: *see* diplomatic head of
 mission/ambassador; diplomatic
 premises
- embassy bank accounts, immunity from
 execution/attachment 746–8, 762
- emblems, use in time of war 1170, 1172
- empiricism 25, 52–3
- employment contracts, state immunity
 in relation to 719 n114, 725–7, 770
Barrandon 726–7
Canada Labour Code 726
 diplomatic missions employees
 and 725–7, 770
 nationality of individual,
 relevance 725
Quattri 726
Sengupta 725–6
- endangered species 845
- Energy Charter Treaty (1995)
 damages/compensation 835, 837
 n350
 environmental protection and
 trade/economic development,
 balance 850
 expropriation, lawfulness 842 n373
 ICSID and 1041 n188
 ‘investment’ 830 n303, 839 n356
- Energy for Development, UN
 Committee on 1213 n42
- Energy, UN Committee on New and
 Renewable Sources 1213 n42
- enforced disappearances
see also Forced Disappearances of
 Persons, Inter-American
 Convention on (1994)

- as crime against humanity 334, 436–7
- Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
- definition (EDC 2) 334
- as extraditable offence 678 n153
- in Honduras 390
- IACoMHR and 383
- right to life (ECHR 2) and 358
- UNCHR working group 304
- universal jurisdiction and 678 n153
- Enforced Disappearances Committee 334–5
- individual communications (EDC 31) 335
- inter-state complaints (EDC 32) 335
- interim measures (EDC 30) 335
- on-site visits, right to make (EDC 33) 335
- reporting obligations (EDC 29) 335
- urgent measures (EDC 34) 335
- Enforced Disappearances Convention (2006)
 - conclusion 307 n220, 334
 - criminal offence, obligation to establish (EDC 4) 334
- England
 - see also* UK
 - Law Merchant (*lex mercatoria*) 19
 - as nation-state 20
- Entebbe incident 680, 1144
- environmental damage, state responsibility 851–62
- ‘adverse effects’ on the environment 857–8, 863
- Civil Liability for Environmental Damage Convention (1993) 858
- climate change 857
- customary international law 851–4
- damage caused by private individuals 858–9
- difficulties of applying traditional approach 862
- due diligence obligation 854–6, 861, 887–8
- hazardous activities: *see* hazardous activities; Hazardous Activities, ILC Draft Articles on the Prevention of Transboundary Harm from (2001) international watercourses 851–2, 883
- Iraqi invasion of Kuwait and 858 n73, 1045 n209, 1248–9
- obligation to avoid injury to other states 851–3, 857, 885
- ozone depletion 857
- Stockholm Declaration (1992) 853
- strict liability 853–5
- territorial sovereignty, relevance 851
- UNCLOS provisions 853
- environmental damage, state responsibility, jurisprudence
 - Corfu Channel* 852, 854
 - Gut Dam* arbitration 854
 - Island of Palmas* 852
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* case 852–3
 - Nuclear Tests* case 852
 - River Oder* 851–2
 - Trail Smelter* 852, 854
- environmental offences
 - as international crime 807
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 807
 - universal jurisdiction 671
- environmental protection 844–901, *see also* international watercourses; precautionary principle; sustainable development principle
- armed conflict and 1186 n94, 1190
- coastal state’s right to regulate 572
- conventions relating to 846
- developed countries and 868–9
- developing countries and 869
- ecosystems 856–8, 871, 876 n176, 878, 886
- education and 847
- ‘environment’, definition for purposes of 858
- expropriation and 834
- Gulf War, oil spillage 1190
- Hague Declaration on the Environment (1989) 878
- ICJ Chamber for Environmental Matters 1062
- international law, role 45, 48, 60, 845

- environmental protection (*cont.*)
- NGOs and 846
 - nuclear tests and 889
 - nuclear weapons and 793
 - policy-oriented approach to international law and 60
 - 'polluter pays' principle 870–1, 884
 - prohibited weapons 1190
 - Prohibition of Military or Any Other Hostile Use of Environmental Modification Techniques, Convention on (1977) 1190
 - scope 844–5, *see also* atmospheric pollution; EIAs; hazardous activities; ozone depletion; precautionary principle; sustainable development principle
 - soft law and 118
 - territorial principle and 852–3
 - treaty interpretation and 887
 - UNEP 846, 865, 878, 1213
 - Vienna Convention on Treaty Succession (1978) and 1023–4
 - websites 1337–8
- Environmental Protection Committee (Antarctica) 538
- environmental protection, international
- co-operation on 845–6, 862–71, *see also* information and participation in public debate, right to
 - Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979) 873
 - Climate Change Convention (1992) 879
 - Corfu Channel* 863
 - international watercourses 884–5
 - notification obligation 861, 863–4
 - Ozone Layer Convention (1985) 876
 - Rio Declaration (1992) 863
 - state responsibility and 861
 - Stockholm Declaration (1992) 862–3
- environmental protection and trade/economic development, balance 45, 48–9, 849–51
- 'debt for nature' swaps 851
 - Energy Charter Treaty (1994) 850
 - OECD Declaration on Integrating Climate Change Adaptation into Development Co-operation (2006) 850 n22
 - precautionary principle 850–1
 - Rio Declaration (1972) 850, *see also* Rio Declaration on Environment and Development (1972)
 - Stockholm Declaration (1972) 849–50
- environmental rights
- Aarhus Convention (1998) 848–9
 - ACHR 847
 - African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights (1981) 847
 - CRC (1989) 847
 - Dublin Declaration on the Environmental Imperative (1990) 848
 - European Charter on Environment and Health (1982) 848 n18
 - as human right 847–8
 - IDI Strasbourg resolution (1997) 848, 865, 872 n154
 - information and participation in public discussion 847–9
 - Minorities Sub-Commission Draft Principles on Human Rights and the Environment (1994) 848
 - OSCE/CSCE 847
 - Rio Declaration (1992): *see* Rio Declaration on Environment and Development (1972)
 - Stockholm Declaration (1972) 847
- equal pay, right to
- MWC 28 333
 - UDHR 23 279
- equality before the courts, CIS Convention 378
- equality before the law
- see also* non-discrimination
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - equality in fact, need for 288–9
 - EU Charter on Fundamental Rights (2000) 371
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
 - Kelsen on 132
 - migrants (MWC 18) 333
 - minorities 366
 - UDHR 7 279

- equality of parties
 - peacekeeping operations 1235
 - UNHRC General Comment 32 319
 - n291
- equality of states 129, 214–15, 371, 395
 - act of state doctrine and 180
 - Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States (1974) and 833
 - CIS Charter (1993) 1291
 - Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) 214
 - diplomatic privileges and immunities and 751
 - diplomatic protection in case of dual nationality and 815
 - domestic jurisdiction (UNC 2(7)) and 1205
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) 214 n88
 - jurisdiction and 645, 698
 - justiciability and 180–3
 - law creation and 215
 - monism and 132
 - natural law and 215
 - ‘new’ states and 39
 - peaceful co-existence and 215, 216
 - positivism and 215
 - state immunity and 215, 735, 1318–19
 - state responsibility and 778
 - state sovereignty and 6, 26, 45, 214–15
 - state succession and 957
 - Third World concern for 269
 - Tunkin and 35
 - UN Charter 1205
 - UN voting arrangements and 215, 1211
 - values-based legal system and 45
 - Vattel and 26
 - Vyshinsky and 33
- Equatorial Guinea, human rights in 305
- equity
 - acquiescence and 89
 - arbitration and 1049, 1052
 - boundary delimitation (land) 108–9
 - boundary delimitation (*uti possidetis*) 530
 - EEZ and 108, 583
 - equality distinguished 107 n159, 108, 597
 - ex aequo et bono* compared 1087
 - international watercourses 104, 884, 885
 - as law 105–9, 1052, 1087
 - maritime delimitation 106–8, 594–7, 605
 - Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses Convention (1997) and 108
 - rule of law and 107
 - stability and certainty of the law considerations 594–5, 605
 - state succession to state property and 990 n182, 991–2, 998, 999–1000
 - territorial acquisition and 515
 - UNCLOS and 108
- equity, jurisprudence
 - Anglo-French Continental Shelf* 593, 595
 - Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago* 605
 - Barcelona Traction* 107
 - Burkina Faso/Republic of Mali* 108–9
 - Cameroon v. Nigeria* 604–5
 - Diversion of Water* 106
 - Eritrea/Yemen* 603
 - Guinea–Guinea Bissau Maritime Delimitation* 596
 - Gulf of Maine* 595, 601–2
 - Jan Mayen* 599–601
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 109
 - Libya/Malta* 107, 596–7
 - North Sea Continental Shelf* 106–7, 593, 595
 - Qatar v. Bahrain* 603–4
 - Rann of Kutch* 106
 - St Pierre and Miquelon* 598–9, 602
 - South-West Africa* cases 107
 - Tunisia/Libya* 107–8, 594–5, 597–8
- erga omnes* obligations
 - aggression, prohibition 124
 - Barcelona Traction* 124, 982
 - boundary treaties 495
 - definition 260
 - direct effect 178–9
 - genocide/Genocide Convention 124, 125, 284, 981–2

- erga omnes* (cont.)
 human rights treaties 981–2
jus cogens/peremptory norms distinguished 124–5
 non-recognition 470
 procedural nature of rule 124
 racial discrimination, prohibition 124
 self-determination, right to 125, 255
 slavery 124
 state responsibility and 800, 808
 torture, prohibition 124–5
 treaty-based human rights 275
 validity of treaties (VCLT 52) and 944
- Eritrea
 arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1246–7
 breaches of diplomatic privileges and immunities 765 n372
 secession from Ethiopia 1229
 UN mission 1230
 UN presence 1229
- Eritrea–Ethiopia Claims Commission
 applicable law 1168
 protection of civilian population in armed conflict 1185
- Eritrea/Yemen*
 historic traditions 41 n141
 PCA and 1050
 treaties, interpretation and 934
- ESCAP (UN Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific) 1213
- espionage, Siberian pipeline episode 692
- Esquipulas II agreement (1987) 1031
- Estonia
 CIS membership 249
 minorities in 293 n164
 non-recognition of Soviet Republic of 483
 OSCE Mission 1033
 USSR invasion/annexation of 468, 961
- estoppel
see also acquiescence; preclusion; *res judicata*
 definition/requirements 102–3, 517–19
 formation of customary international law 89
 as general principle of law 102–3
 individual petition, effect of agreement to 273
 statehood/recognition of international persons and 242, 244, 261–2
 title to territory and 515, 517–19
 treaty validity and 941–2
- estoppel, jurisprudence
Cameroon v. Nigeria 103, 519
ELSI 102–3
Serbian Loans 102
Temple of Vihear 102, 518–19
- Estrada doctrine 457–8
- Eternal Law 22, 53
- ethics: *see* moral principles
- Ethiopia
see also Eritrea; Ethiopia, Italian occupation of
 arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1246–7
 breaches of diplomatic privileges and immunities 756 n319
 pre-colonial archives 995
 Somali claims over 523–4, 1027
 UN mission 1230
- Ethiopia, Italian occupation of 30, 460, 467, 468
 Ethiopian archives, restoration 995
 recognition of 460, 467, 468, 473–4
- ethnic cleansing
 in Chechnya 347 n8
 in FRY, Croatia and Bosnia and Herzegovina 316, 982
 genocide distinguished 433
 as ‘grave breach’ 403
- ethnic identity, CIS Convention 378
- EU
 accession, requirements for 371
 CFCs 878
 Copenhagen Criteria (1993) 371 n164
 diplomatic protection 810 n211
 dispute settlement 1038
 EEC/ECSC/Euratom and 1288
 EEZ and 583
 EIAs 866

- European Communities/European Community (EC) and 1288
- extraterritorial jurisdiction 695–6
- fisheries dispute settlement 635
- fundamental principles of 370–1
- immunities 1319 n169
- institutions 1288
- international legal personality 241–2
- legal status 734–5
- membership 1288
- NAFO and 627
- nuclear accidents 891 n259
- object and purpose 47–8, 1288
- origins 1288
- ‘polluter pays’ principle 870
- Privileges and Immunities of the European Communities, Protocol Concerning (1965) 1329 n169
- recognition of
 - Bosnia-Herzegovina 461–2
 - recognition of Croatia 461
 - recognition of governments 459 n56
 - recognition of Yugoslav Republics, Declaration on (1991) 452, 465 n89
- as regional arrangement (Chapter VII) 1275 n348
- rule of law 370
- Single European Act (1986) 1288
- Social Chapter 1173, *see also* European Social Charter (1961) (as amended)
- Somalia and 1275 n348
- state immunity and 734–5
- structure 241
- suspension of rights 371
- Terrorism, Framework Decision on (2002) 1164
- treaty-making powers 242
- US extraterritorial legislation and 694–5
- website 1340
- WEU and 1290 n33
- EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371–2
- legal status 371–2
- Lisbon Treaty (2007) and 371
- Poland and 371 n172
- scope 371
- ‘shared set of values’ and 371
- UK and 371 n172
- EU competition law 695–6
- EU co-operation agreements, human rights clause 372
- EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States (1991) 207, 451–2, 461, 522, 976
- EU and human rights 369–72
- Amsterdam Treaty (1999) 370–1
- Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371–2
- co-operation agreements and 372
- ECHR and 369–70
- European Parliament and 372
- ‘fundamental rights’, obligation to respect 370
- fundamental rights protected by member state constitutions and 369
- general principles of law/customary international law and 369
- human rights treaties involving member states and 369
- Maastricht Treaty (1992) 370
- Treaty of Rome (1957) and 369
- EU law
 - direct effect 178–9
 - human rights, sources 369–70
 - in municipal courts 140, 156–7
 - primacy 156–7, 178, 179, 241
- EU pillars 241–2
- EU Special Representative (Kosovo) 204
- EU, treaties relating to
 - interpretation, responsibility for 1304
- Lisbon Treaty (2007) 242, 371–2, 1288
- Maastricht Treaty 241, 370
- Nice Treaty 241 n238
- Treaty on European Union (TEU) (1992) 1288
- EUFOR
 - Central African Republic 1280 n371
 - Chad 1280 n371
 - Congo and 1280 n371
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1280
- EULEX 204 n41

- EURATOM
 - environmental protection and 889
 - international legal personality 241
- Euro-Atlantic Partnership Council (EAPC) 1290
- Eurofima 249
- Europe, human rights in 345–80
- European Commission on Legal Co-operation 119
- European Committee of Social Rights
 - implementation of ESC and 361–2
 - membership and term of office 361
 - publication of decisions 361–2
 - reporting obligations 361
- European Committee of Social Rights, complaints procedure
 - admissibility 362
 - Collective Complaints 362
 - decisions, implementation 362
 - standing/*locus standi* 362
- European Convention for the Peaceful Settlement of Disputes (1957)
 - arbitration provisions 1032
 - conciliation provisions 1023, 1032
 - ICJ jurisdiction 1032
- European Convention for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman and Degrading Treatment or Punishment: *see* Torture, European Convention on (1987)
- European Parliament
 - European Parliamentary Elections Act 1978 (UK) 149
 - human rights and 372
 - status 1288
- European Social Charter (1961) (as amended) 360–2
 - adherents 361
 - complaints procedure: *see* European Committee of Social Rights, complaints procedure
 - delay in concluding 360–1
 - disabled persons, rights 361
 - European Committee of Social Rights, role 361–2
 - family life, right to 361
 - gender discrimination 361 n102
 - NGOs and 362
 - partial acceptance, possibility of 361
 - poverty and 361 n104
 - revisions (1991/1996) 361 n104
 - scope 361–2
 - sexual harassment, protection against 361 n104
 - trade union rights 361, 362
- European Space Agency, website 1337
- evidence: *see* ICJ, evidence
- ex injuria jus non oritur* 104–5, 468
- excès de pouvoir* 1053
- Executions, Special Rapporteur on
 - Extrajudicial, Summary or Arbitrary 305, 330, 1165 n236, *see also* death penalty
- executive certificates
 - conclusiveness 193–4, 471, 473, 477–8, 482, 484–5, 704
 - evidentiary value 481, 747
 - judicial review 193
 - matters deemed to fall outside scope of 479, 480–1
 - non-committal position 480–1
 - recognition and 471, 472–3, 477–8, 480–1
 - scope 192–3
 - state immunity and 747
 - UK and 193–4, 471, 473, 477–8, 479, 480, 482, 704
 - US and 194, 471, 482, 484–5
- exemplary damages 804–5
- exhaustion of conciliation
 - procedures 1080
- exhaustion of diplomatic
 - negotiations 1015–17, 1070
- Barbados v. Trinidad and Tobago* 1016 n24
- German External Debts* 1017
- ILC Draft Instrument on Protection of the Environment from Damage Caused by Space Debris (1994) 1016 n28
- Land Reclamation case* 1012–17
- Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 1017
- North Sea Continental Shelf cases* 1016
- Railway Traffic case* 1016

- exhaustion of local remedies 819–22,
 - see also* effective remedy, right to
 - 6-months rule (ECtHR) 355, 356
 - as admissibility issue 1070, 1071
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina Human Rights Chamber 380
 - CIS Convention on Human Rights 379
 - CIS Human Rights Commission and 379
 - customary international law 819, 822–3
 - diplomatic protection and 811, 819–20, 1071–2
 - domestic jurisdiction principle and 649 n14, 819
 - ECtHR and 273–4, 355–6
 - effective remedy, need for 273, 274 n48, 355, 820–1
 - human rights and 273–4
 - Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and Herzegovina 380
 - IACtHR and 273–4
 - identity of claims, relevance 822
 - ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection (2006) 820
 - inter-state cases 355–6
 - inter-state claims and 821–2
 - ITLOS 642
 - procedural rule, whether 819
 - Racial Discrimination Convention 273
 - state responsibility and 819–20
 - UNESCO and 342
 - UNHRC and 273–4, 319
 - waiver 821–2
 - Women, Committee on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination 323
- exhaustion of local remedies, jurisprudence
 - Ambatielos* 820
 - ELSI* 821–2
 - Finnish Ships* arbitration 820–1
 - Interhandel* 821
- expert bodies: *see* UN treaty bodies
- expert evidence, ICJ 1089
- explosives or inflammatory projectiles 1168, 1186, 1189–90
- expropriation/nationalisation of property of national 828, 933–4
- expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national 827–43, *see also* *Chorzów Factory* principle/*restitutio in integrum*; damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure; expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national, legality; standard of treatment of aliens
- BITs and: *see* BITs (bilateral investment treaties)
- ECtHR, Protocol 1 and 829 n299
- in expropriating state 191–2
- foreign-owned property outside the jurisdiction distinguished 650
- ‘internationalised’ contract and 829
- justiciability 191–2
- ‘property’ 830
- restitution and 803–4
- state contracts and 829
- expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national, definition/classification as 830–2
- creeping expropriation 832
- Indonesian nationalisations (1965) 830–1
- interference with rights amounting to deprivation of effective control and use 831
- investor’s assumption of risks and 831
- NAFTA 830 n305, 832 n312
- seizure of controlling stock interest 831–2
- taking of ancillary rights 832
- expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national, jurisprudence
 - AIG* 837 n250
 - Amoco* 837
 - Biloune* 831–2
 - BP* case 833
 - Certain German Interests in Polish Upper Silesia* 833
 - Generation Ukraine* 832 n313

expropriation/nationalisation (*cont.*)

- INA* 836–7
- Liamco* 830, 833, 842
- Metalclad* 832 n312, 836
- Santa Elena* 832, 833–4
- Starrett* 831
- Texaco* 829, 834
- expropriation/nationalisation of
 - property of foreign national, legality/requirements 828–37
 - applicable law 840
 - Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States (1974) 833
 - compensation 192, 834–7, *see also* damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure
 - NAFTA 835 n335
 - non-discrimination 842
 - public purpose 833–4
 - taking for environmental reasons 834
 - UNGA resolution 1803 (XVII) (Permanent sovereignty over natural resources) 833, 834–5
 - wartime measures 833
- expulsion: *see* collective expulsion, prohibition; deportation/expulsion
- extermination, as crime against humanity 408, 436
- extinction of states: *see* dissolution of states
- extraditable offences
 - enforced disappearances 678 n153
 - Internationally Protected Persons Convention (1973) and 764–5
 - treaty provision for 674, 675
- extradition 686–9, *see also* forcible abduction/unlawful arrest
 - customary international law 686
 - death penalty and 321, 358–9
 - definition 686
 - double criminality and 686
 - ECHR jurisdiction (ECHR 1) and 349, 687
 - entitlement to request 646, 647
 - human rights law and 687
 - of own nationals 687
 - political offence doctrine and 667, 686–7

- speciality principle 686
- terrorism and 1160, 1161
- torture and (TC 3) 327, 329
- unincorporated treaties and 185
- extradition treaties
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle and 673–9, 687
 - CoE and 1288–9
 - extraditable offences and 674
 - international terrorist conventions and 687, 1159
 - interpretation 155 n129
 - legislative approval 151
 - as source of international law 98 n107
- extrajudicial killings 126 n238, 160 n165, 305, 330, 684–5, 1165 n236
- extraterritorial jurisdiction
 - belligerent occupation and 654 n38
 - comity and 694
 - consent of other state, relevance 658
 - effects doctrine: *see* effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters
 - exclusion 653
 - presumption against 653–4, 688
 - UK and 688 n218
 - USA and 688–96
- extraterritorial legislation
 - see also* foreign law, recognition and enforcement
 - effective link, need for 650
 - possibility of 649
 - taxes 650
- ‘failed’ states 201–2
- fair trial/hearing: *see* due process/fair trial
- Falk, R. A. 61
- Falkland Islands
 - conquest and annexation 532, 533
 - discovery and occupation claims 532
 - history 532
 - prescription and 532
 - recognition of UK title 533
 - security zone 584 n139
 - self-determination, right to 199, 533
- Falklands war
 - exclusion zone 1130 n62
 - hospital ships 1172 n26

- Protecting Power 1199 n171
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 1146
- family life, right to
 - CRC 24 331
 - ECHR 8 348
 - ESC and 361
 - ICCPR 17 275
 - non-derogation principle 275
- family reunification, right of, Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373–4
- family unity, right to, state succession and 1007
- FAO
 - legal personality in domestic law 1299 n71
 - privileges and immunities 1321
 - as subject of international law 47
 - website 1340
- FAO complaints procedure, ICJ/arbitration and 1034 n148
- fault
 - burden/standard of proof 784, 888
 - due diligence requirement: *see* due diligence
 - environmental damage 853–6
 - intentional or negligent conduct (*dolus/culpa*) and 783
 - nuclear activities, civil liability 894
 - pollution 887–8, 900–1
 - Space Objects, Convention on International Liability for Damage caused by (1972) 854, 888
 - state responsibility and 783–5, 853–6
 - strict liability ('objective' responsibility/'risk' theory) 783, 789, 853–5, 887–8, 894, 900
 - treaty provision 855–6
 - ultra vires* acts of officials 789
- federal states 217–23
 - ACY Opinion No. 1 and 217–18
 - allocation of powers 217–18
 - boundary disputes, relevance to international law 112, 223, 498
 - confederation distinguished 217, 238–9
 - dissolution 210, 218
 - ILO Conventions and 220
 - international legal personality 218–19
 - jurisdictional competence 647
 - law applicable between component units as source of international law 112, 223
 - secession, right to 218, 255–6, 291 n151, 293, 295, 963
 - self-determination, right to and 218
 - state responsibility and 222–3
 - treaty-making powers 161, 218–20
 - treaty obligations 220–2
- federal states, state immunity and 709, 733–5
 - Alamieyeseigha* 734
 - European Convention on State Immunity (1972) 733
 - Mellenger* 733
 - UK State Immunity Act 1978 and 733–4
 - UN State Immunity Convention (2004) and 734
- feudalism 20, 489
- Fiji, *Nuclear Tests* case and 1098
- Finland
 - see also* Aaland Islands
 - Arctic territory 535
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction, blocking legislation 691 n238
 - minorities in 294 n164, 296
 - secession from Russian Empire (1919) 201, 975
 - Soviet invasion of 31, 468
 - state succession 539–40
 - treaty succession 200–1, 971, 975
- fiscal regulations of coastal state 578, 579, 580
- fish stocks
 - anadromous species 624 n356
 - catadromous species 624 n356
 - conservation and management obligations (UNCLOS 56(1)) 624
 - EEZ 623–4
 - high seas fishing rights and 624
 - highly migratory species 624 n356, 627–8
 - marine mammals 624 n356
 - sedentary species 589, 624 n356
 - sovereign rights of coastal states 624

- fishing rights
 - see also* straddling stocks
 - archipelagic states and 567–8
 - contiguous zone 578
 - dispute settlement 635, 636–7, 640 n443
 - high seas 609, 610
- fishing rights, Conventions relating to
 - European Fisheries Convention (1964) 581
 - North Atlantic Fisheries Convention (1978) 627
- fishing stocks, halibut 627
- fishing zones
 - as balance of coastal state and traditional fishing rights 581
 - conservation of fishing stocks and 581
 - customary international law 581, 582
 - EEZ and 580–2
 - establishment 554
 - exclusive jurisdiction and 581
 - Fisheries Jurisdiction* 581
 - preferential rights 582
 - recognition, relevance 581–2
 - Rockall 565 n61
 - UK and 565 n61
- flag state jurisdiction
 - collisions on the high seas 618
 - crimes committed on board ship 557
 - diplomatic protection and 819
 - disciplinary offences 557
 - exclusive jurisdiction/single flag requirement 613–14
 - flagless ships 611, 613–14
 - high seas and 611–14
 - in internal waters 556–8
 - international law, obligation to enforce 611
 - Lotus* principle 655–7
 - marine pollution 899
 - in port 557–8
 - slave trading 616
 - straddling stocks 626
 - warships/state-owned ships 558, 614
- flags of convenience 611–12
- Fonseca, Gulf of, as
 - condominium 229–30, 563
- force majeure*
 - assumption of risk and 796 n109
 - burden/standard of proof 796
 - conduct of claimant state and 796 n109
 - distress distinguished 797
 - Gill* 796
 - ILC Articles on State Responsibility 796
 - innocent passage and 571, 577, 796 n108
 - Rainbow Warrior* 797–8
 - responsibility for breach of international obligation and 779, 796–7, 1313 n141
 - Serbian Loans* 796
- ‘force’ (UNC 2(4)), classification
 - as 1124–6, *see also* use of force (UNC 2(4))
 - blockades 1121, 1124, 1130, 1138, 1240, 1244, 1251, 1275
 - economic force 1124–5
 - embargoes 1124–5, *see also* embargoes
 - internal use 1126
 - reprisals: *see* reprisals
 - retorsion 1128–9
 - threats of force 1125–6
- Forced Disappearances of Persons, Inter-American Convention on (1994) 384
 - petitions and communications, procedure 384
 - precautionary measures 384
- forced labour 340, 1180
- forcible abduction/unlawful arrest 651
 - Alvarez-Machain* 685–6
 - effect on jurisdiction 214, 681–3
 - Eichmann* 214, 651, 680
 - extradition arrangements and 681–3
 - on or over high seas 680–1
 - protest, relevance 681–2
 - UK jurisprudence 682–3
 - US jurisprudence 681–2
- foreign arbitral award, recognition and enforcement, recognition of government and 484

- foreign direct investment
 - see also* BITs (bilateral investment treaties)
 - insurance against political risks 842
 - 'investment' 830 n303, 838–9, *see also* ICSID
 - Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency 842–3
 - World Bank Guidelines (1992) 250, 828, 835, 837, 842 n373
- foreign judgment, recognition and enforcement, refusal on grounds of manifest bias 649
- procedure in foreign courts, relevance 649
- foreign law, recognition and enforcement
 - conflict with international law and 140, 186–7
 - as conflict of laws problem 650
 - fiscal law 650
 - judicial notice and 140
 - justiciability 186–7
 - law contrary to international law 650
 - nuclear activities, civil liability and 895
 - penal law 650
 - public policy exception 187
 - recognition and 471–3, 483
- foreign ministers
 - full powers (VCLT 7) and 908
 - as internationally protected persons 675–6
- foreign ministers, immunity *ratione personae* (*Congo v. Belgium*) 739–40
- acts in violation of international law 740
- torture 740
- Foreign Office certificates: *see* executive certificates
- foreign relations, justiciability 140, 182, 187–92
- Forests, Consensus Statement on the Management, Conservation and Sustainable Development of (1992) 870 n138
- Formosa: *see* Taiwan (Taipei)
- forum prorogatum* 1076
- fragmentation of international law, risk of 65–7, 123–4
 - ILC Report on Fragmentation 66, 123
- France
 - Algerian archives 995
 - Antarctic claims 535–6
 - Antarctic mining 538
 - deep sea mining 630
 - employment contracts, state immunity in relation to 726–7
 - extradition of own nationals 687
 - international law in municipal courts 173–4
 - Iraq annexation of Kuwait and 1253 n246
 - Morocco and: *see* Morocco–France relationship
 - as nation-state 20
 - nationality 661
 - nuclear power installations 775 n116, 890 n254
 - Nuclear Test Ban Treaty (1963) and 888
 - nuclear tests: *see* nuclear tests
 - outer space, control of information 551
 - Rainbow Warrior*: *see* *Rainbow Warrior*
 - recognition of governments 459, 467
 - Rwanda and 1263
 - SC membership 3, 1206
 - SC membership/veto 3, 215, 1206, 1237
 - state immunity from jurisdiction 726–7
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 173–4
 - US–Vietnam mediation 1018
 - Vietnamese archives 995
- Franck, T. M. 61–2
- Franco regime 460
- fraud, validity of treaties and (VCLT 48) 942
- free trade, respect for, recognition of states and 452

- freedom of assembly 268
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - ECHR 11 348
 - ICCPR 21 292
 - OSCE/CSCE 374
 - UDHR 20 279
- freedom of association 271, *see also*
 - trade union, freedom to organise or join
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - in Argentina 341
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - ECHR 11 348, 357
 - ICCPR 22 292, 315
 - ILO and 338
- Freedom of Association, ILO
 - Committee on jurisprudence 340–1
 - membership 340
- Freedom of Association, ILO
 - Fact-finding and Conciliation Commission 340–1
 - Argentina and 341
 - Dominican Republic 341
 - South Africa and 341
- freedom of expression
 - ACHR 13 388–9
 - African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
 - compulsory licensing of journalists and 388–9
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - ECHR 10 348
 - IAComHR Special Rapporteur 383 n229
 - ICCPR 19 292
 - ILO and 338
 - rights of the child and (CRC 331) 317, 331
 - UDHR 19 279
- freedom of information, satellite broadcasting and 550
- freedom of movement
 - ECHR Protocol IV 348
 - publication of laws and regulations governing 373–4
- freedom of movement, right to enter/leave one's own country
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - ECHR Protocol IV 348
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
- freedom of navigation (high seas) 609, 610–11
 - armed conflict and 610–11
 - customary international law 610
 - dispute settlement 636
 - EEZ compared 582
 - self-defence, right of (UNC 51) and 610–11
- freedom of navigation (high seas), jurisprudence
 - Corfu Channel* 610
 - Nicaragua* 610
- freedom of navigation (international watercourses), SC resolution 242 (1967) 1221 n85
- freedom of thought, conscience and religion 271, *see also* religious discrimination, prohibition
 - ACHR 12 275
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - as basic civil right 268
 - child's rights (CRC 14) 331
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - Declaration on Religious Intolerance 305
 - ECHR 9 348
 - EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
 - ICCPR 18 275, 315
 - indigenous peoples' rights and 298
 - minorities' rights and 281, 297, 366
 - non-derogation 274–5
 - Religion or Belief, OSCE Advisory Panel of Experts on the Freedom of 377 n201
 - UDHR 18 279
- French Revolution 26, 27
- Friendly Relations Declaration: *see* Declaration on Principles of International Law Concerning

- Friendly Relations (1970) (UNGA resolution 2625 (XXV))
- friendly settlement as preferred option 342–3, 353, 387
- frontiers: *see* boundaries
- functionalist approaches 48, 58 n47
- fundamental change of circumstances/*rebus sic stantibus* (VCLT 62(2))
- boundary treaties 968–9
- customary international law 950, 951
- Fisheries Jurisdiction* 950–1
- Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* 951–2
- justification for 950
- pacta sunt servanda* and 950
- requirements 951
- termination of treaties on grounds of 950–2
- fundamental norms: *see* *jus cogens*/peremptory norms
- fundamental rights in the EU: *see* EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000); EU and human rights
- Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project
 - see also* Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project Case (Hungary/Slovakia) (Judgment) *in the table of cases*;
 - international watercourses
 - servitudes and 970
 - summary of issues 886–7
 - treaty succession and 887
 - Water Co-operation Facility 887 n239
- Gabon, seabed resources 628
- games theory 58
- GATT
 - establishment/status 40, 1286
 - Taiwan and 235
 - third parties and 97
 - Uruguay Round 1034–5, 1287
- GATT/WTO dispute settlement
 - procedures 1035–8, 1287
 - conciliation (GATT XXIII) 1035
 - consensus and 1035, 1036–7
 - consultations (GATT XXII) 1035
 - good offices/mediation 1035–6
 - nullification or impairment of benefit and 1035
- Panel reports, adoption and implementation 1035
- Panels 1035
- retaliatory measures 1035
- Uruguay Round additions 1034–5
- website 1338
- GATT/WTO dispute settlement
 - procedures (DSU) 1036–8
 - Appellate Body 1037
 - compensation for
 - non-compliance 1037
 - compliance 1037
 - consultations 1036
 - ‘covered agreements’ 1036
 - Dispute Settlement Body 1036
 - general international law, impact on 1037–8
 - good offices, conciliation or mediation 1036
 - international trade law, role in development of 1036–7
 - monitoring 1037
 - panel reports 1036–7
 - suspension of concessions and obligations 1037
- Gaza 247
- gender discrimination
 - see also* Women, Committee on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against; women, rights of
 - affirmative action 324
 - deportation rules 321
 - ECtHR, nominations for
 - appointment as judge and 352 n38
 - equal pay and (UDHR 23) 279
 - ESC and 361 n102
 - minorities and 297
 - nationality and 662
- General Assembly: *see* UNGA; UNGA resolutions
- General Comments (CRC)
 - 2 (role of independent human rights institutions) 333
 - 10 (children’s rights in juvenile justice) 333

General Comments (UNCESCR)

- 1 (technical assistance measures) 310
- 2 (international technical assistance measures) 310
- 3 (international co-operation) 302
n199, 310
- 4 (housing) 310
- 5 (disabilities) 310
- 5 (rights of persons with disabilities) 310
- 6 (older persons) 310
- 10 (national human rights institutions) 276 n67
- 16 (equal treatment of men and women) 310
- 18 (right to work) 310
- 19 (right to social security) 310

General Comments (UNHRC) 316–19

- 6 (right to life) 317
- 12 (self-determination) 291–2
- 17 (rights of the child) 317–18
- 22 (non-discrimination) 287 n128, 288 n 135, 318
- 23 (minorities) 296–7, 318
- 24 (ICCPR reservations) 318, 923–4
- 26 (ICCPR denunciation/withdrawal) 318, 945–6, 983
- 28 (rights of women and General Comment 23) 318–19
- 29 (non-derogable provisions) 319 n291
- 32 (fair trial/equality of parties) 319 n291

general principles of law/international law 98–105

- acquired rights, respect for 103, 1001
- Chorzów Factory* principle/*restitutio in integrum* 103, 801–2
- consular access (VCCR 36) 388–9
- discretionary nature 105
- distinction, difficulty of 99
- domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) 648, 1205
- equity: *see* equity
- estoppel 102–3
- ex injuria jus non oritur* 104–5, 468
- good faith: *see* good faith

natural law and 99

non-discrimination 288

non liquet and 98–9, 1087, 1189
pacta sunt servanda 29, 94, 103, 903–4, 966–7

‘polluter pays’ principle 870–1

positivism and 99

‘recognised by civilised nations’ 100

reparation for breach of international obligation 801 n147

res judicata 101–2

‘rules’ and ‘principles’,
equivalence 98 n109

self-determination, right to 40,
251–5

source of law, status as 99, 109, 123,
127

territorial integrity 488

UDHR and 279

uti possidetis doctrine/stability of
boundaries 290–1, 968

war, renunciation as an instrument of
policy 1122

general principles of law/international law, jurisprudence

Barcelona Traction 105

Chorzów Factory 100

Corfu Channel 101

German Settlers in Poland 100–1

UN Administrative Tribunal 101

General Recommendations (CEDAW)

5 (temporary special measures) 324

8 (opportunities for participation in
government) 324

12 (reporting on measures to deal
with violence towards women)
324

14 (female circumcision,
eradication) 324

19 (measures to deal with violence
towards women) 324

21 (equality in marriage and family
relations) 324

24 (women and health) 324

25 (temporary special measures) 324

General Recommendations (CERD)

XII (42) (successor states) 313 n259

XIV (42) (non-discrimination) 313
n259

- XIX (discrimination based on descent) 313
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) 1169–70, 1172–6, *see also* civilian property; civilian property, destruction and appropriation (GC IV, 53)
- biological experiments, prohibition 1171
- civilians 1169, 1176–84
- combatant, definition 1173–4
- combatant, ‘unlawful’ 1174
- conduct of hostilities 1184–90
- conscription of protected persons 1180
- as customary international law 1187
- deportation or transfer of protected persons (GC IV, 49) 1169–70, 1180, *see also* deportation or transfer of protected persons (GC IV, 49)
- emblems 1172
- forced labour 1180
- hostage-taking and 1169–70
- individual criminal responsibility 401
- and ‘law of the Hague’ as single system 1170
- medical units and establishments 1171–2
- obligation to respect and ensure respect 1199
- origins 28, 1169
- prisoners of war, *see also* prisoners of war
- reprisals 1169–70, 1175, 1185–6
- scope 1169–70
- torture 1169–70
- wounded and sick 1169–70, 1171–2, 1186 n94
- wounded, sick and shipwrecked members of the armed forces at sea 1169, 1172
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977), applicability
- civilians 1174
- combatants in irregular warfare 1173
- ‘declared war or any other [international] armed conflict’ 1170–1
- in international conflict 435, 1170–1
- Israel occupied territories 1178–80
- military necessity and 1178 n55, 1181–2, 1183, 1184–5
- in non-international armed conflict 404–5, 408, 435, 1149–51, 1194–5
- struggles against racist regimes 1172, 1173 n30
- wars against colonial domination 1172, 1173 n30
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977), enforcement 1199–1201
- ad hoc inquiries 1200
- individual criminal responsibility 401, 425
- International Fact-Finding Commission (grave breaches) 1199–1200
- Protecting Powers 1199
- universal jurisdiction and 669–70
- Geneva Conventions (1958), drafting process 120
- Geneva Conventions on the law of the sea (1958)
 - see also* Continental Shelf Convention (1958); High Seas Convention (1958); Territorial Sea Convention (1958)
- customary international law and 555
- genocide 430–3
 - in Bosnia and Herzegovina 283–5
 - burden/standard of proof 285 n116
 - as crime against humanity 438, 670
 - East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes 425
- Extraordinary Chambers of Cambodia 422
- Iraqi High Tribunal 429
- in Rwanda 283, 407, 409
- Genocide Convention (1948) 282–5
 - conclusion 280
 - ICJ jurisdiction in relation to (Art. IX) 283, 284

- Genocide Convention (*cont.*)
 - individual criminal responsibility
 - and 46, 401
 - as law-making treaty 95
 - reservations 388, 918–19
 - treaty succession 981–2, 984
- Genocide Convention (1948),
 - applicability
 - absence of territorial limitation 284
 - events prior to a given date 284
 - group in geographically limited area 285
 - non-international armed conflict 284
- Genocide Convention (1948),
 - obligations
 - erga omnes* nature 125, 284, 981–2
 - as obligations of conduct 285
 - prevention of genocide 285
 - punishment of genocide 285
- genocide, definition/requirements
 - cultural genocide, exclusion 283, 432
 - ethnic cleansing distinguished 433
 - ethnic cleansing as evidence of 433
 - genocide by omission 433
 - Genocide Convention II 282
 - group ‘as such’ 285, 431
 - group ‘in part’ 432–3
 - group membership, difficulty of defining 432
 - ICTR 409, 433
 - ICTY 4 430, 432
 - intention: *see* genocide, *mens rea* requirement
 - as international crime 282, 284, 430–3, 807
 - jurisprudence relating to 283–4
 - limited geographical area, effect 431
 - material elements 433
 - mens rea* 431
 - as ‘most serious crime’ 411
 - political groups, exclusion 282
 - rape and sexual violence as 433, 670
 - as serious crime 425
 - standard of proof 285
 - widespread and systematic acts 431
- genocide, jurisdiction
 - ICJ 283, 284
 - ICTR 408, 431
 - ICTY 404, 431
 - international penal tribunal 282, 410
 - place where act committed 282
 - universal 671, 673
- genocide, *mens rea* requirement
 - confessions and 431
 - difficulty of establishing 431
 - of each perpetrator 432
 - ICTR jurisprudence 431
 - ICTY jurisprudence 431–2
 - incitement, need for in case of 431
 - inference from facts 431
 - intention to destroy group in whole or in part 282, 285, 431
- genocide, prohibition 282–5
 - as collective right 281
 - customary international law 275
 - erga omnes* obligation 124, 125, 284
 - ILC Code of Offences 410
 - indigenous peoples 299
 - as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 126, 808
 - state responsibility and 276, 283, 284–5
- genocide, responsibility
 - individual criminal responsibility 46, 262, 400–1, 402, 425, 439, 671
 - state responsibility 276, 283, 284–5
- Gentili, Alberico 23, 112
- genuine link, need for (nationality) 258, 611–13, 643, 1005, 1006
- Gény, François 53–4, 75
- geographically disadvantaged states 555, 608, 634 n399
- Georgia
 - Alma Ata Declaration and 961 n21
 - CIS membership 240, 1291
 - international humanitarian law and 1192
 - OSCE Mission 375 n188, 1033
 - secession attempts 238
 - UN mission 1230
- geostationary orbit 552
 - sovereignty and (Bogotá Declaration (1976)) 552
- German Empire
 - dissolution 293
 - minorities, protection of 293
 - state succession 964–5

- Germany, Democratic Republic of (GDR)
 as agent of USSR 477–8
 Nuclear Test Ban Treaty (1963) and 471
 recognition by FRG 227
 recognition of government 455, 471, 477–8, 483–4, 964
 recognition as state 964
 USSR forces, withdrawal 965
- Germany, Federal Republic of (FRG)
 deep sea mining 630, 631
 employment contracts, state immunity in relation to 726 n155
 extradition of own nationals 687
 ICJ and 1073
 minority languages 365 n129
 nationality 661
 nuclear power installations 775 n116, 890 n254
 recognition by GDR 227
 state immunity from execution/attachment 746
 state immunity in respect of torture 718 n108
 as successor to the Reich 964–5
 treaties/municipal law relationship 170–2
- Germany, FRG–GDR unification (1990) 208–9, 227–8, 964–6
 arms/armed forces limitations 228, 965
 assimilation of GDR 228, 965–6, 971, 972–3
 Berlin State Bank, FRG's assumption of responsibility for 998
 borders 228, 965
 FRG–GDR Monetary, Economic and Social Union Treaty (1990) 228, 965
 state succession to public debt 998
 state succession to state property 992
 treaty succession 971, 972–3
 UN membership and 1211
 Unification Treaty (1990) 228, 965–6, 972–3, 992
- Germany pre-1945
 aggression 30–1
- Czechoslovakia, invasion of 468, 501–2
 Nazism 54, 294
 unification (1871) 28
- Germany, status post-WWII 227–8
 agency of necessity 227
 annexation, exclusion 227, 501
 Berlin, relinquishment of Three Power rights and responsibilities (1990) 228, 965
 Control Council Law No. 10 400, 439
 Convention on Relations between the Three Powers and FRG (1955) 964
 Final Settlement (1990) (France, UK, USA, USSR–GDR, FRG) 228, 965
 Four Power rights and responsibilities 464–5
 FRG–GDR relationship and 463 n79, 964
 'Germany as a whole' 964–5
 international legal personality 227–8
 occupation (FRG), termination 964
 peace treaty, reservation of powers pending 227, 228
 Polish administrative area (Kaliningrad) 964 n45
 Saarland 965 n55
 suspension of Allied rights and responsibilities (1990) 965 n54
- Ghana, ILO and 340
- Gibraltar, self-determination, right to 523 n199
- Gidel, A. 113, 579
- 'girl-child' 325, 332, 420 n126
- glasnost* 36, 46–7, 1209
- Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy (2006) 1161
- Global Environmental Facility (GEF) 846, 874, 881
- global warming 845, 875–6, 878–81, *see also* climate change; Climate Change Convention (1992)
 as common concern of mankind 878
 greenhouse gases 878–9, 880–1
 Hague Declaration on the Environment (1989) 878
 UNEP and 878
 UNGA resolutions 43/53 and 44/207 878

- globalisation
 - as challenge to nation-state 48 n16
 - international law, effect on 36, 41–2, 44, 48–9, 65–6, 197, 1115–16
 - regional organisations and 1287
 - state sovereignty and 48
- Golan Heights, proposed change in status 469 n105, 502 n80
- good faith
 - acquiescence and 89
 - Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) 104
 - as general principle of law 103–4, 1205
 - ILC Draft Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States (1949) 134 n17
 - international organisations and 1318
 - Nuclear Tests* case 104
 - peaceful co-existence and 216
 - Rio Declaration (1992) 104 n142
 - territorial acquisition and 515
 - treaties, interpretation and 933
 - UN Charter and 103–4, 1205
 - unilateral acts and 122
- good offices/mediation 1013, 1017, 1018–19
 - Afghanistan (1988) (UN Secretary-General's good offices) 1019
 - African Union Commission of Mediation, Conciliation and Arbitration 1023, 1026–7
 - AU commissions in relation to particular disputes 1027
 - Beagle Channel 1018 n38, 1055
 - Cairo Declaration (1994) 1028
 - Central America 1224 n98
 - conciliation and 1022, 1023
 - diplomatic protection and 809
 - ECOWAS 1029 n108, 1276
 - GATT 1035–6
 - Hague Conventions (1899/1907) 1019
 - India–Pakistan Dispute (1965) (USSR) 1018
 - Middle East (1973–4) (US Secretary of State) 1018
 - Myanmar 1223 n97
 - NAFTA (1994) 1039
 - NATO 1032
 - OAS 1019 n42
 - Pact of Bogotá (1948) 1023, 1031
 - regional organisations and 1019
 - Russo-Japanese War (1906) (US President) 1018
 - SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation 1029–30
 - SC 1221
 - UN Good Offices Mission in Afghanistan and Pakistan 1228
 - UN Secretary-General 1018–19, 1215–16, 1223–4
 - UNESCO Conciliation and Good Offices Commission 342
 - UNGA/Security Council 1217, 1218, 1221
 - US–North Vietnamese negotiations (France) 1018
 - WIPO Mediation, Arbitration and Expedited Arbitration Rules (1994) 1035 n151
- Gorazde 1259
- government, interventionism 55–6
- government, right to participate in: *see* public life, right to participate in
- 'grave breaches'
 - Extraordinary Chambers of Cambodia 422
 - ICTY Statute 403
 - individual criminal responsibility 401–2, 403
 - universal jurisdiction 434–5, 669–70, 1200
- 'grave breaches', classification as
 - arbitrary arrest during armed conflict 403
 - attacks on cultural objects in armed conflict 401, 403
 - attacks on religious property/places of worship 401, 403
 - civilian population as object of attack 401
 - compulsory service in forces of a hostile power 434
 - cruel and inhuman treatment 401
 - deportation or transfer of protected person 401, 408, 434

- destruction and appropriation of
 - civilian property 401, 403, 434
- ethnic cleansing 403
- fair and regular trial, deprivation of 434
- historic monuments and works of art, attacks on 401
- hostages, taking of civilians as 401, 434
- ICTY 2 433–4
- mass killings 403
- pillage 403, 1196
- racial discrimination 401
- rape 403, 1196
- torture or inhuman treatment 401, 403, 434
- wilful killing 401, 403, 434, 669, 670
- wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health 434
- Great Belt dispute 578 n115
- Greece
 - continental shelf 509, 1220 n78
 - extraterritorial exercise of jurisdiction 665 n82
 - human rights in 363 n115, 364
 - international law in ancient Greece 16
 - Kosovo and 453
 - minorities in 293 n164
 - state immunity in respect of tortious activity 728 n165
 - state succession and 1003–4
 - Torture Committee (CoE) and 363 n115
 - UNSCOB 1226
- greenhouse gases 878–9, 880–1
- Greenland, sovereignty over: *see* Eastern Greenland case *in the table of cases*
- Grenada, US invasion (1984) 1144, 1151, 1183 n79, 1276 n355
- Grotius, Hugo 23–4, 112, 553–4, 1120
- Guantanamo Bay detention centre
 - human rights and counter-terrorism, tension between 1165–6
 - status 658
 - urgent measures and 386
- Guatemala, human rights in 305, 383
- guerillas
 - combatant status 1173
 - state responsibility for 790
- guidelines, legal status 118
- Guinea, UNHRC and 315 n271
- Guinea-Bissau
 - see also* Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal (Arbitral Award of 31 July 1989 (Guinea-Bissau v. Senegal)) and Guinea/Guinea-Bissau Maritime Delimitation Case *in the table of cases*
 - ECOWAS 1029, 1278 n365
 - independence (UNGA resolution 3061 (XXVIII)) 205–6
 - Portuguese military occupation (1972–3) 205–6
- Gulf of Aqaba 578 n115
- Gulf Co-operation Council 1293 n45
- membership 1253 n246
- Gulf of Fonseca: *see* Fonseca, Gulf of
- Gulf Neutral Zone (1922) 229 n168
- Gulf of Sirte 564
- Gulf War 1253–4
- habeas corpus 389, 658 n57, 754
- non-derogation principle 389
- habitual residence
 - civil jurisdiction and 652
 - criminal jurisdiction and 676, 1232
 - nationality in case of state succession and 1006, 1007–8
 - statelessness and 676, 1232
- Habsburg empire: *see* Austro-Hungarian Empire
- Hague Conferences (1899/1907) 28, 1168–9
- ‘belligerents’ and 1169
- Hague Convention IV (1899) and Regulations (1907)
 - continuing validity 1169
 - as customary international law 928, 1168 n7, 1187–8
 - enforcement 1169
 - and Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) as single system 1170
- Martens Clause 1169 n9
- reciprocity and 1169
- scope 1169

- Hague Convention for the Pacific Settlement of Disputes 1049
- Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (1954) 1186 n96
- Haiti
 arms sanctions 1276
 economic sanctions (UNC 41) 1239–40, 1243, 1276
 Governors Island Agreement (1993) 1240
 human rights in 383
 MICIVIH 1239
 MNF 1230 n129
 OAS and 1275–6
 as threat to the peace 1239–40
 UNMIH 1230 n129
 UNSMIH 1230
- halibut 627
- halons 876–7
- Hammerskjöld, Dag 1215
- Hanseatic League 19
- harbours and ports: *see* internal waters; ports
- Hart, H. L. A. 51–2
- Harvard Research drafts 121, 654 n40, 659 n58, 666 n93, 668 n99
- Haw-Haw, Lord 667
- Hawaii
 treaty succession 973–4
 US annexation (1898) 973–4
- hazardous activities 859–62, *see also*
 nuclear activities
 ‘activity’ 887
 ILC work on 859–62
 international liability and state responsibility distinguished 860
 ‘polluter pays’ principle 870, 896
 Prior Informed Consent Procedure Convention (1998) 896 n299
 strict liability and 887–8
 Transboundary Harm Arising out of Hazardous Activities, Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss (2006) 858 n71, 862
 ultra-hazardous activities 887–97
- Hazardous Activities, ILC Draft Articles on the Prevention of
 Transboundary Harm from (2001) 856 n60, 860–2
 applicability 860
 due diligence obligation 861
 EIAs 861
 ‘equitable balance of interests’ 861–2
 good faith co-operation 861
 measures to prevent or minimise risk 860–1
 monitoring mechanisms 861
 notification and information obligation 861
 ‘risk of causing significant transboundary harm’ 860
- hazardous waste 845, 895–7, *see also*
 marine pollution
 Bamako Convention (1991) 806 n129, 896
 Basle Convention (1989) 846 n8, 863, 896
 notification obligations 896
 OECD and 896
 Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents Convention (1992) 870–1, 897
- headquarters agreements
 applicable law 1309–10
 privileges and immunities provisions 1319–20, 1322–3
 as recognition of international legal personality 1299–1300
 UN agreements 1319–20
- heads of state
 full powers (VCLT 7) and 134, 908–9, 941
 individual criminal responsibility 399, 409, 735
 as internationally protected persons 675–6
 as representative of state (VCLT 7(2)) 134, 908–9, 941
 treaty-making powers 907–8
- heads of state, former
 immunity from jurisdiction *ratione materiae* 420, 738
 individual criminal responsibility 409
- heads of state, immunities 735–8
 absolute immunity 737

- customary international law 736
- diplomatic privileges and immunities 737
- diplomatic privileges and immunities, assimilation to 738 n225
- hearing of claim to immunity in open court and 764 n369
- jus cogens* nature of 737
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 126 n239
- official and private acts distinguished 737
- ratione personae* 736–8
- responsibility for determining right to 736–7
- torture 718
- UN Convention on State Immunity (2004) 709
- heads of state, immunities, jurisprudence
 - Ghaddafi* 737
 - Marcos* cases 736
 - Noriega* 736
 - Pinochet* (No. 3) 738
 - Tachiona* 737–8
- health
 - see also* WHO
 - child (CRC 24) 331
 - Declaration on Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
 - international law, role 48
 - women and 324
- health services, right to
 - indigenous peoples 299
 - migrant workers and (MWC 28) 333
- healthy environment, right to 302, 392, 847–8
 - European Charter on Environment and Health (1982) 848 n18
- Hebron 247
- Hegel, G. W. F. 29
- Helms-Burton legislation: *see* effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters
- Helsinki Conference (1992) 1274, 1289
- Helsinki Declaration on the Protection of the Ozone Layer (1989) 877
- Helsinki Final Act (1975)
 - see also* OSCE
 - Basket I 373, 1289
 - Basket II 373 n179, 1289
 - Basket III 373–4, 1289
 - boundaries/territorial settlement and 372–3
 - Charter of Paris (1990) 375
 - Copenhagen Concluding Document (1990) 374
 - equality of states 214 n88
 - human contacts 373
 - human rights, impact on 117–18, 373
 - implementation, right of individuals to observe and promote 373
 - non-binding status 373, 1289
 - recognition of states and 451
 - scope 372–3
 - self-determination, right to 289–90
 - signatories 372
 - USSR and 373
 - Vienna Concluding Document (1989) 374
 - Vienna follow-up meeting (1989) 373
- Helsinki Final Act (1975), implementation measures 374
 - bilateral meetings 374
 - exchange of information 374
 - follow-up meetings 1289
- Helsinki Rules (1966) 883–4
- Hickenlooper Amendments 191, 1128–9
- High Representative (Bosnia and Herzegovina) 203–4, 231–2
- high seas 609–28, *see also* contiguous zones; continental shelf; EEZ; flag state jurisdiction; hot pursuit; marine pollution; territorial sea
 - broadcasting and 617
 - conservation and management obligations (UNCLOS 117–20) 624
 - continental shelf, waters superjacent to 589
 - definition including variations over time 609
 - environmental damage, state responsibility 853

- high seas (*cont.*)
 - illegal arrests 680–1
 - peaceful use, limitation to (UNCLOS 88) 610
 - remote sensing 551
 - as *res communis* 492, 503, 517, 553–4
 - territorial acquisition and 517
- High Seas Convention (1958)
 - see also* Law of the Sea Convention (1982)
 - ‘generally declaratory of established principles of international law’ 595, 610
- high seas, freedom of
 - see also* freedom of navigation (high seas); law of the sea, history and development
 - artificial islands 609
 - Bynkershoek and 25
 - closed seas doctrine and 24, 553–4, 609
 - customary international law 610
 - encroachments on 554–5, 578, 609
 - fishing rights 609, 610
 - Grotius and 24, 553–4
 - interests of others, obligation to respect 609–10
 - International Seabed Area activities and 610
 - landlocked states and 610
 - mineral resources, impact on doctrine 554
 - naval exercises 610
 - nuclear tests and 610
 - overflight 609, 636
 - Papal Bulls (1493 and 1506) 609
 - scientific research 609, 610
 - search and visit, right of: *see* search and visit, right of
 - submarine cables and pipelines 609
 - UNCLOS 87 609–11
- high seas (jurisdiction) 611–28, *see also*
 - flag state jurisdiction; ships (jurisdiction)
 - compensation for unjustified exercise 614–15
 - hot pursuit: *see* hot pursuit
 - Lotus* principle 655–7
 - marine pollution 620–3
 - piracy and 614, 615–16
 - right of approach 614–15
 - right of search and visit: *see* search and visit, right of
 - slave trading 614, 616
 - unauthorised broadcasting 615, 617
- hijacking
 - Achille Lauro* incident 665, 679–80, 1161 n221
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle 676–9
 - Bonn Declaration (1978) 679
 - customary international law 678
 - enforcement of hijacking conventions 678–9
 - Hague Convention (1970) 668, 674 n134, 676, 677, 678, 687 n213, 1160 n212
 - as international crime 678
 - Montreal Convention (1971) 668, 674 n134, 676, 677–8, 687 n213, 1160 n212
 - self-help and 679–80
 - state practice 678
 - Tokyo Convention (1963) 668, 676–7, 678, 1160 n212
 - universal jurisdiction and 678
- historic bays 562–4
 - requirements 563–4
- historic title 41 n141, 591, 592
- dispute settlement 637
- historic traditions: *see* customary law
- history of international law: *see* international law, history and development
- Hittites 14
- HIV/AIDS, UNGA special session on (2001) 1212 n33
- Hizbollah 1136, 1231
- Hobbes, Thomas 26
- Holy Roman Empire 19
- Holy See
 - Beagle Channel mediation 1018 n38, 1055
 - diplomatic relations 244
 - as government 244
 - history 243–4
 - international legal personality 197, 243–4, 261

- international organisations and 244
- Italy and 244
- Lateran Treaty (1929) 244
- state, whether 197, 243–4, 261
- treaty-making powers 244
- Honduras, enforced disappearances 390
- Hong Kong
 - history 1008–9
 - human rights in 317 n281, 1009
 - ICCPR/ICESCR and 1009
 - lease over the New Territories 539, 1008
 - SAR 1008–9
 - state succession and 1008–9
 - termination of British sovereignty and jurisdiction 539 n285, 1008–9
 - treaty succession and 974
 - WTO dispute settlement 1037 n159
- hors de combat*: see civilian population during armed conflict, protection of (GC IV and Protocol I (Part IV)); civilian property, destruction and appropriation; non-combatants/persons *hors de combat*
- hospital ships, protected status 1172
- hostage-taking
 - Iranian Hostages* case: see United States Diplomatic and Consular Staff in Tehran Case (USA v. Iran) (Iranian hostages case) *in the table of cases*
 - non-international armed conflict and 1195
 - rescue 1144
 - state immunity and 715–16
- hostage-taking of civilians in time of war 1169–70, 1177
 - as ‘grave breach’ 401
 - individual criminal responsibility 1200
 - killing of 1200
- hostage-taking, conventions and other international instruments relating to
 - Declaration on Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) 401, 1169–70
 - SC resolution 579 (1985) 1161 n221
- Hostages Convention (1979)
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle and 676
 - protective principle and 668
- hot pursuit
 - development of concept 617
 - GCHS/UNCLOS provisions 617–18
 - non-compliance with rules 643
 - requirements 617–18
 - use of force, avoidance 618
- housing issues, Bosnia and Herzegovina
 - Human Rights Chamber and 380
- housing, right to adequate 301, 310, 361
- Hudson Bay 563
- human contacts, right to 373–4
- human dignity, right to 60, 61, 267, 1195
 - as common foundation of human rights and humanitarian law 1196
- Human Dimension of the CSCE (Moscow Mechanism)
 - annual meetings 376–7
- Copenhagen Concluding Document (1990) 374
- Helsinki Conference (1992)
 - and 375–7
- ODIHR 377
- Permanent Council, role 377
- Vienna Concluding Document (1989) 374
- human rights
 - see also ACHR; ECHR; ECtHR; IACtHR; ICCPR (1966); ICESCR (1966); international humanitarian law; UNCHR; UNHRC; Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948); and *individual rights*
 - African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
 - African Union for Peace and Security Council 1028
 - ASEAN and 1294–5
 - balance of interests and 281
 - belligerent occupation and 1180–4
 - CFSP pillar 370

human rights (*cont.*)

CIS and 240
 collective rights 271
 conflict prevention and 377
 cultural relativism and 41–2, 268–70
 customary international law 275
 environment and 847–8, *see also*
 environmental rights
 equality of states and 45, 49
 ethics/morality and 266
 EU and 369–72
 European system 345–80
 extradition and 687
 Helsinki Final Act (1975)
 and 117–18, 373
 Human Rights of Individuals who are
 not Nationals of the Country in
 which they Live (UNGA resolution
 40/144) 826
 individual as subject of international
 law and 258, 268–9
 interdependence 848
 international humanitarian law,
 convergence 1168, 1196–8
 international legal personality
 and 197
 as interrelated complex of rights
 280
jus cogens/peremptory norms
 and 266–7
 minorities and: *see* minorities,
 protection of
 municipal and international law,
 interrelationship 130
 national security 357–8, 1181–2
 Office for Democratic Institutions
 and Human Rights (OSCE) 1289
 OSCE and 372–8, 1289
 promotion as basic purpose of
 government 374
 recognition of states and 451, 452,
 461
 ‘right’ 265–6
 specialised agencies and 299
 standard of treatment of aliens
 and 825–6
 state immunity and 715–18
 state responsibility and 793
 state as source of 268–9

state sovereignty/domestic
 jurisdiction principle and 49, 213,
 268, 269, 270, 272–3, 278, 488, 648
 state/statehood, right to and 207, 451
 sustainable development principle
 and 848
 terrorism and 43–4, 1159, 1161,
 1164–6
 UN Norms on the Responsibilities of
 Transnational Corporations
 (2003) 250
 universality 269, 280
 values underlying 267
 websites 1335–6

Human Rights Chamber of Bosnia and
 Herzegovina: *see* Bosnia and
 Herzegovina Human Rights
 Chamber

Human Rights Commission: *see*
 UNCHR (UN Commission on
 Human Rights)

Human Rights Committee: *see* UNHRC
 human rights, compliance/enforcement

see also Child, Committee on the
 Rights of; Disabilities, Committee
 on the Rights of Persons with;
 ECOSOC; Enforced
 Disappearances Committee;
 Migrant Workers Committee;
 Racial Discrimination Committee;
 regional human rights bodies,
 common practices; Torture
 Committee; UN Human Rights
 Council; UN, human rights
 responsibilities; UN treaty bodies;
 UNHRC; Women, Committee on
 the Elimination of All Forms of
 Discrimination Against
 amnesty laws and 271–2, 372 n35,
 390, 420

education in 280, 281, 337
 exhaustion of local remedies
 and 273–4

extraterritorial responsibilities 276
 inconsistencies, risk of 327, 336–7
 level of 266

machinery for 271

national human rights bodies 276

non-state actors 272

- obligation of states and international organisations actively to protect 276
- obligation to investigate 358, 390
- proliferation of supervisory committees 334
- public debate, role 304
- state responsibility for 276
- human rights, development of law
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) and 117–18
 - League of Nations 270–1
 - Marxism and 267
 - natural law and 54, 258, 266–7
 - new norms and instruments, proposals for 337
 - NGOs and 271, 276 n69
 - policy-oriented approach to international law and 60, 267
 - positivism and 266, 267, 270
 - UN conventions 302–3
 - WWI peace treaties 271
 - WWII and 271–2
- human rights in
 - CIS 240, 378–9
 - Czechoslovakia 278–9
 - Haiti 383
 - non-self-governing territories 277
 - South Africa 304
 - USSR 50 268–9, 278–9
- Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of 307–8
- change of name 307
- Communications, Working Group on 305, 308
- draft Norms on the Responsibilities of Transnational Corporations and other Business Enterprises with Regard to Human Rights (2003) 250
- Draft Principles on Human Rights and the Environment (1994) 848
- establishment 294
- Human Rights and the Environment, report on (1994) 848
- indigenous minorities, working group on 299, 308
- inter-sessional working group 297, 309
- membership 308
- role 304, 305
- Slavery, Working Group on the Contemporary Forms of 308
- special rapporteurs 1325
- states of emergency, reports on 308
- termination (UNGA resolution 60/251) 307
- Terrorism and Human Rights, report on 1164 n234
- human rights treaties
 - see also individual treaties*
 - acquired rights and 983 n142
 - belligerent occupation and 1180–1, 1183
 - burden/standard of proof 938
 - co-existence of treaty and customary law 716–17, 984
 - compliance/implementation 220 n112
 - cultural relativism as justification for breach 270
 - denunciation/withdrawal (VCLT 56) 946
 - as distinct category 388, 967
 - erga omnes* obligations 981–2
 - extraterritorial application 276, 322, 349–50
 - interpretation 349, 937–8
 - legal order, establishment by 388
 - monitoring bodies, role 924, 983–4
 - non-derogation principle 274–5, 389
 - ratification, importance of 336
 - reservations 336, 354 n52, 388, 922–4
 - reservations, competence to determine validity 923–4
 - territorial treaties, analogy with 981–2
 - treaty succession and 336–7, 981–4
 - USA implementation/ compliance 220 n112
 - USSR and 269
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993): *see* Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1994)

- human rights treaties,
 - limitation/claw-back provisions 275
 - 'compelling governmental interest' 388
 - 'decision reached in accordance with the law' 348
 - national security considerations 358
- humanitarian intervention by
 - states 1155–8
 - 19th century 270, 1155
 - AU 1293
 - dislike of doctrine 1155–6
 - humanitarian necessity and 1156–7, 1184–5, 1187
 - in Kosovo 1156–7
 - reconstruction following
 - intervention, obligation 1158
 - 'responsibility to protect' and 1158
 - restoration of democracy 1158
 - safe haven in northern Iraq 1156
 - self-determination, right to and 1158
 - in Somalia 1260–2
 - state, status as and 201–2
 - UK Policy Guidelines on
 - Humanitarian Crises (2001) 1157
 - n201
 - use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 1155–8
- humanitarian law: *see* international humanitarian law
- Hume, David 25
- Hungary
 - see also* Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project
 - minorities in 297 n198
 - recognition of government (1956) 455
 - Roma and 297 n198
 - Torture Committee (CoE) and 363 n115
 - USSR, intervention in 57, 1273
- IACoMHR 381–7, *see also* ACHR (1969); IACtHR
 - admissibility 382
 - advisory services 383
 - asylum and 383 n228
 - communications 382
 - contempt laws (*leyes de desacato*), study on 393–4
 - disappearances and 383
 - enforced disappearances and 384
 - establishment 381
 - Inter-American Torture Convention (1985) and 384
 - international crimes and 383 n228
 - membership 385
 - mentally ill, protection of 383 n228
 - migrant workers, rights of 383 n228
 - municipal law and ACHR obligations, determination of conflict 383
 - powers 381–2
 - as principle organ of OAS 381
 - promotion of human rights and 382
 - publications 382–3
 - recommendations to states on
 - progressive measures 382
 - refugees and 383
 - reports to OAS 383
 - right to act on own initiative/*ex propria motu* 383
 - torture and 383
 - websites 1336
 - workload 382
- IACoMHR complaints procedure
 - compliance record 387
 - follow-up measures 387
 - friendly settlement as preferred option 387
 - individual petition, right of 259, 382, 384, 385
 - inter-state complaints 382
 - jurisdiction over Guantanamo Bay
 - detention centre 386
 - precautionary measures 384, 385–6
 - proposals and recommendations 387
 - provisional measures 384
- IACoMHR, Special Rapporteurs on
 - children 383
 - freedom of expression 383 n229
 - human rights and
 - counter-terrorism 1164–5
 - indigenous peoples 383
 - women 383

- IACoMHR, Statute 381–2
 amendment (1965) 382
 amendment (1978) 382
- IACTHR 387–91
 3-months rule 387
 admissibility 390
 advisory jurisdiction 385, 388–90, 391, 398 n8
Chorzów Factory principle/*restitutio in integrum* 802 nn150 and 152
 contentious jurisdiction 390–1
 exhaustion of local remedies and 273–4
 IACoMHR, action at request of 387
 jurisdiction, dependence on prior consent 387
 jurisdiction, tribunal's obligation to establish 644
 membership 387
 provisional measures 384, 387, 391
 role 388
 treaty interpretation and 388
 website 1336
- IAEA
 Civil Liability for Nuclear Damage Convention (1960) 893–4
 Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste (1990) 893 n277, 896–7
 Early Notification of a Nuclear Accident Convention (1986) and 890–1
 establishment 889
 Guidelines for Mutual Emergency Arrangements (1977) 891
 Iraq and 1249, 1256
 Nuclear Accident, Vienna Convention on Assistance in case of (1986) 889, 891–2
 Nuclear Safety Convention (1994) 892–3
 object and purpose 889
 Principles of Radioactive Waste Management (1995) 893 n277
 standards and guidelines 889
 Third Party Liability in the Field of Nuclear Energy (1960) 893–4
 website 894, 1338
- IBRD
see also World Bank
 legal personality in domestic law 1299 n71, 1315 n149
- ICAO (International Civil Aviation Organisation), website 1337
- ICC (International Chamber of Commerce): *see* International Chamber of Commerce (ICC)
- ICC (International Criminal Court), admissibility
 independence and impartiality of alternative forum and 415
 intention to shield from criminal responsibility and 415
 investigation or prosecution by state with jurisdiction and 414–15
non bis in idem principle 415
- ICC (International Criminal Court), appeals against decisions
 Appeals Chamber, composition and powers 417
 by convicted person 417
 by Prosecutor 417
 grounds 417
 on jurisdiction/admissibility 417
 of Pre-Trial Chamber 417
 on Pre-Trial Chamber's own initiative action 417
 on release of person being investigated 417
 on sentence 417
 of Trial Chamber 417
- ICC (International Criminal Court), history and development 410–11
 drug-trafficking, proposed international court for and 410
 Genocide Convention (1948) and 282, 410
 ILC draft Statute 410–11
 opposition to 411
 Preparatory Committee 411
 treaty basis 411
 websites 1335, 1341
- ICC (International Criminal Court), individual criminal responsibility 411, 670, 735
 heads of state and 735

ICC (International Criminal Court),
 investigations
 authorisation to commence 413,
 416
 decision not to proceed 416
 Pre-Trial Chamber and 413,
 416
 subsequent request following
 refusal 413 n90
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 judges
 election by Assembly of States
 Parties 415
 Pre-Trial Division and 416
 qualities and qualifications 415, 416,
 417
 representation of world's legal
 systems and 415
 term of office 416
 Trial Division and 416
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 jurisdiction 411–15
 12-months rule (SC resolution 1422
 (2002)) 414
 aggression 439–40
 complementarity 414
 consent, need for 411
 crimes committed after entry into
 force, limitation to 411
 determination by Court 413,
 416
 'most serious crimes' 411, 670
 nationals 411
 preliminary determination by
 Pre-Trial Chamber 413, 416
 referral by Prosecutor 412–13
 referral by Security Council 412,
 413–14
 referral by states party 412–13
 SC/ICC, uncertainty over respective
 competences 439–40
 states parties, limitation to 411
 territorial/personal nature 412
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 organs/organisation
see also ICC (International Criminal
 Court), appeals against decisions
 Appeals Division 415, 417
 Deputy Prosecutors 415
 Office of the Prosecutor 415

Pre-Trial Chamber: *see* ICC
 (International Criminal Court),
 Pre-Trial Chamber
 Pre-Trial Division 415, 416
 Presidency 415
 Prosecutor 415
 Registry 415
 Trial Chamber: *see* ICC (International
 Criminal Court), Trial Chamber
 Trial Division 415
 websites 1336, 1340
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 Pre-Trial Chamber 416
 authorisation of investigation 412–13
 composition 416
 own initiative action, right of 416
 review of Prosecutor's decision not to
 proceed with investigation 416
 victims' representations to 412–13
 warrants of arrest/summons to
 appear 416
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 procedure
 committal for trial 416
 fair trial (ICC 55) 441–2
 fair trial (ICC 66) 442
 fair trial (ICC 67) 442
 Pre-Trial 416
 prompt hearing 416
 protection and privacy of victims and
 witnesses 416
 referrals by state party 412–13
 Trial Chamber, establishment 416
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 state obligations
 obligations under another treaty
 and 414
 surrender on request 414
 unwillingness or inability to
 prosecute and 414–15
 USA and 414
 ICC (International Criminal Court),
 Statute (1998)
 crimes against humanity,
 definition/classification as 436–7
 Elements of Crimes 411 n81
 entry into force 411
 incorporation in Iraqi law 429
 range and content 411
 'treaty crimes', omission 674–5

- ICC (International Criminal Court),
 Trial Chamber 416–17
 composition 416
 confidentiality of information 417
 determination of guilt 416
 determination of
 punishment/penalty 416
 function 416
 protection of victims and
 witnesses 417
 public hearings/*in camera*
 proceedings 416–17
- ICCPR (1966)
see also UNHRC
 binding effect 253, 314
 death penalty, second Optional
 Protocol on the abolition of 322
 n315
 Declaration on Principles of
 International Law (1970)
 and 253–4
 denunciation/withdrawal,
 exclusion 318, 945–6, 983
 derogation 275
 Extraordinary Chambers of
 Cambodia and 422
 Hong Kong and 1009
 individual's rights under
 46
 interpretation of UN Charter
 and 253
 nationality, right of choice
 (ICCPR 1) 1005
 occupied territories, applicability
 in 322
 reservations 318, 923–4
 rights covered 314–15
 self-determination and (ICCPR 1)
 253–4, 289, 314, 522
 territorial application: *see* 'within its
 territory and subject to its
 jurisdiction' (ICCPR 2) *below*
 third parties and 253
 treaty succession 983, 1009
 'within its territory and subject to its
 jurisdiction' (ICCPR 2) 276, 314,
 318, 321, 322, 826
- ice packs, territorial sovereignty
 over 535
- Iceland
see also Denmark/Iceland Union
 fishing zones 581–2, 610
- ICESCR (1966) 308–11, *see also* Human
 Rights, Sub-commission on the
 Promotion and Protection of;
 UNCESCR
 best efforts obligation to achieve
 progressive realisation of rights
 (ICESCR 2) 308
 binding effect 253, 308, 309
 conclusion and entry into force
 308
 Declaration on Principles of
 International Law (1970)
 and 253–4
 Hong Kong and 1009
 implementation, difficulties of
 309
 individual's rights under 46
 interpretation of UN Charter
 and 253–4
 nationality, right of choice
 (ICESCR 1) 1005
 reporting obligation
 (ICESCR 16–22) 309–10
 third parties and 253
 treaty succession 983, 1009
- ICJ 1057–1117
 antecedents 1057–8
 developing countries and 38–9
 Liechtenstein and 217
 website 1079, 1338
- ICJ, admissibility 1071–2, *see also* ICJ,
standing/locus standi
 at merits stage 1088, 1097
 counter-claims 1096–7
 definition 1071
 exhaustion of diplomatic
 negotiations, relevance 1015–17,
 1070
 exhaustion of local remedies
 and 1072
 moot case/dispute no longer in
 existence 887–8, 1069, 1070, 1088,
 1098
 object and purpose 1108–9
 as preliminary matter 1072,
 1106
 seisin 1072

- ICJ advisory jurisdiction 1108–13
 - authorisation from UNGA, need for 1112
 - burden/standard of proof 1111–12
 - consent of parties, relevance 1109–10
 - ‘decisiveness’ of opinion 1113
 - on difference between UN and member state 1113
 - Difference Relating to Immunity* 1113
 - Eastern Carelia* 1110–12
 - hypothetical situation and 1108–9
 - international organisations, right to request 954–5, 1072, 1304–5
 - legal question, need for 1112
 - as legal task 1109
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* (WHO request) 1112, 1303–8
 - non-binding nature 1034–5, 1110
 - ‘other organs and specialised agencies’, right to request (UNC 96(2)) 1112
 - political considerations and 1109
 - presumption in favour of jurisdiction 1110
 - reformulation of request 1109
 - refusal of party to participate, effect 1109–10
 - right to request 1108, 1112
 - SC and 1113–14
 - specialised agencies and 1034–5, 1308 n119, 1325 n190
 - sufficiency of evidence 1111
 - UN Secretary-General and 1113
 - Western Sahara* 1110–11
 - ‘within the scope of their activities’ requirement (UNC 96(2)) 1111, 1112
- ICJ, applicable law
 - equitable considerations within framework of the law 1087
 - ex aequo et bono* 1087
 - ICJ 38 sources 1086
 - moral principles, relevance 12
 - non-liquet* 98–9, 1087, 1189
 - special factors at request of parties 1086 n193
- ICJ Chambers
 - appointment of judges 1062–3
 - arbitration compared 1063
 - attraction to states reluctant to engage in third party adjudication 1063
 - Chamber for Environmental Matters 1062
 - Chamber of Summary Procedure 1062
 - composition 1062–3
 - composition, consensus approach 1062
 - flexibility 1063
 - procedure 1062
- ICJ, counter-claims 1096–7
 - challenge to admissibility 1097
 - defence distinguished 1096
 - direct connection with subject-matter of claim, need for 1096–7
 - as independent claim 1096
- ICJ decisions
 - binding force 963, 1101, 1104
 - Cameroon v. Nigeria* 110–11
 - compliance/non-compliance 1104
 - development of international law and 110, 1104
 - ECtHR and ICTY, divergence 1116
 - enforcement 1104
 - finality 963, 1104
 - municipal courts and 158–9, 220–1
 - new events subsequent to, effect 1071
 - rejection in subsequent case 110–11
 - separate opinions 1059
 - third parties and 110, 1101
- ICJ decisions, interpretation (ICJ 60) 1105
 - clarification, limitation to 1105
 - dispute, need for 1105
 - operative part of judgment, limitation to 1105
- ICJ decisions, re-examination of situation 1107–8
 - Nuclear Tests* 888–9, 1107–8
 - special procedure, possibility of 1107
- ICJ decisions, revision (ICJ 61) 1071, 1105–7
 - admissibility as preliminary matter 1106
 - cumulative nature of ICJ 61
 - requirements 1106–7

- decisive fact unknown to Court and party claiming revision, need for 1105–6
- negligence, relevance 1106
- time-limits 1106
- ICJ, evidence 1088–92
- advisory jurisdiction and 1111
- affidavits 1090
- boundaries 1090
- burden/standard of proof 1091, 1100, 1133
- Court's competence to determine procedure 1089
- documentary evidence 1090
- evaluation 1089–90
- expert evidence 1089
- findings of fact made by another tribunal 1090
- flexibility 1088–9
- improperly obtained 1092
- inferences and admissions against interest 1089
- judicial notice 1091
- on-site visits 1089
- power to compel 1089
- subpoena, absence of provision for 1089
- witnesses, infrequency 1089
- ICJ judges
- ad hoc 1060–2
- dismissal, requirements 1060
- election 1059, 1209
- impartiality 1060 n17
- non-participation on grounds of conflict of interest 1060 n17
- participation in different stages of same case 1060 n17, 1061 n25
- president/vice-president 1060
- privileges and immunities 1059–60
- qualifications and conditions 1060
- term of office 1059–60
- ICJ jurisdiction 1064–1117, *see also* ICJ
- advisory jurisdiction
- absence of party, effect 255
- amendment of claim, possibility of 1070 n91
- compétence de la compétence* 1069, 1070, 1084, 1086
- concurrent 1066–7
- Connally amendment 1083–4
- consent/*compromis*, limitation to 1066, 1086
- contentious 1070–86
- Court's right to choose own grounds 1071
- critical date 1070
- final and binding nature of Court's decision on 1071
- formal requirements, relevance 1070
- grounds for declining 1065–6
- hypothetical case, exclusion in contentious cases 1068, 1088
- ILO conventions and 340
- inherent powers 1070, 1074, 1308
- judicial review and 1113–14, 1271
- law of the sea disputes 635
- legal dispute requirement: *see* ICJ, legal dispute requirement
- as legal/objective matter 1070, 1080
- merits distinguished 1071
- motives of parties, relevance 1071, 1088
- as preliminary matter 1072
- remedies 1071
- SC role distinguished 1066
- wrongfulness of act, sufficiency to found jurisdiction 1085–6
- ICJ jurisdiction, consent 3, 1075–81
- compromissory clause 1079
- conduct of parties as 1076
- consent to PCIJ jurisdiction and 1080–1
- forum prorogatum* and 1076
- as fundamental principle 1075, 1085–6
- jus cogens*/fundamental norms, relevance 1085
- Monetary Gold* 1078–9
- Pact of Bogotá, effect 1080
- referral by Security Council and 1076–7
- signed minutes of meeting as 1077
- special agreement/*compromis* 1075
- third party rights and 1078–9
- treaty provisions 1079
- unilateral application and 1077
- withdrawal or amendment 1080, 1084–6

- ICJ jurisdiction, optional clause (ICJ 36(2)) 269, 1081–6
- acceptances 1081–2
 - conditions/reservations 1082–5
 - implications of acceptance 1082
 - interpretation of declaration, responsibility for 1083–4
 - modification or termination after initiation of proceedings 1084–5
 - ratione personae* reservations 1084–5
 - ratione temporis* reservations 1084
 - reciprocity, need for 1082–3
 - treaty status 905
 - USSR and 269 n18
 - ‘vital interests’/domestic jurisdiction and 1083–4
 - withdrawal or amendment 1085–6
- ICJ, legal dispute requirement 1032, 1064–7
- burden of proof 1100
 - ‘dispute’, existence of 1068–70
 - hypothetical case 1068, 1088
 - ICJ/Security Council responsibilities distinguished 1220, 1221
 - jurisprudence 1067–9
 - ‘legal dispute’ 1067–8
 - legal interest 1088
 - moot case/dispute no longer in existence 887–8, 1069, 1070, 1088, 1098
 - political factors, relevance 1064–7
 - request for interpretation of judgment 1105
- ICJ, organisation 1058–64
- composition 39–40, 1058–9
 - politicisation, allegations of 1059, 1061
 - seat 1060
- ICJ, preliminary objections 1074–5, 1087–8
- joinder with merits 1087
 - jurisdiction 1074–5
 - merits as separate issue 1087–8
 - as preliminary matter 1087
 - res judicata* and 102
 - time-limit 1087
- ICJ procedure
- Court’s competence to determine 1089, 1107
 - evidence 1089
 - pleadings 1064
 - Practice Directions 1063–4
 - Rules of Court 1063–4
 - seisin 1072
- ICJ, provisional measures 283–4, 1066, 1093–6
- avoidance of irreparable harm and 1094–5
 - binding effect 1095–6
 - conflict with state’s treaty obligations 1270
 - on Court’s own initiative 1095
 - non-aggravation or extension of dispute and 1095
 - object and purpose of Statute and 1095–6
 - preservation of the evidence 1095
 - preservation of parties’ rights 1094–5
 - prima facie* jurisdiction and 1093–4
 - urgency 1094–5
- ICJ, remedies 1101–4, *see also* Chorzów Factory principle/*restitutio in integrum*; damages/compensation for expropriation or breach of international law, measure; remedies; reparation for breach of international obligation
- declaratory judgment 1101
 - inherent jurisdiction 1072, 1101
 - ubi jus ibi remedium* 1072
- ICJ role 1113–14, *see also* Security Council and international law/ICJ relationship
- development of international law 1064–5, 1114
 - extension of contentious jurisdiction to international organisations 1113
 - as guardian of legality for international community as a whole 1270 n329
 - increased activity 1114
 - integrity of judicial process 1070–1, 1073, 1308
 - interpretation of the constituent instruments of international organisations 1304–5

- judicial nature 1064–5, 1070–1, 1308
- judicial review 1113–14, 1304 n98
- national courts and 1113
- ‘principal judicial organ of the UN’ 1058, 1065, 1113–14, 1117, 1210, 1269–70
- resolution of case in accordance with international law 1065–7
- Serbia and Montenegro v. UK* 1065
- as superior court in international system 1117
- UN Secretary-General and 1113
- ICJ, standing/*locus standi* 1072–4
 - Albania 1073
 - amicus curiae* briefs 1073
 - arbitral tribunals distinguished 1055
 - contentious and advisory jurisdiction distinguished 1072
 - FRG 1073
 - international organisations 1072, 1113
 - Italy 1073
 - Japan 1072 n103
 - Liechtenstein 217, 1072 n103
 - Nauru 1072 n103
 - NGOs 1073
 - as preliminary matter 1073
 - San Marino 1072 n103
 - Serbia and Montenegro 963, 1073–4
 - states not party to Statute, requirements 1072–3
 - states party to Statute, limitation to 1072–4
 - Switzerland 1072
 - treaties in force prior to ICJ Statute 1073
 - Yugoslavia (FRY) 963
- ICJ, third state intervention 642, 1097–1101
 - binding effect of decision on third party 1101
 - burden/standard of proof 1098–1101
 - construction of convention to which third states are party (ICJ 63) 1098
 - ‘interest of a legal nature’ 1100
 - jurisdictional link between intervener and parties to the case, relevance 1100
 - legal interest likely to be affected by decision 226, 1098
 - opposition by parties, relevance 1098
 - right to be heard 1101
 - South West Africa* cases 226
 - status of intervener 1098
 - threshold 1099–1101
- ICJ/PCIJ relationship 31, 1058, 1080–1, 1083
- ICSID 1040–2
 - applicable law 1042
 - arbitral tribunals 1038–9
 - autonomy/‘international’ status 1041
 - conciliation commissions 1040–1, 1042
 - denunciation 1041 n184
 - individuals, standing 259, 1041–2
 - NAFTA and 1038–9, 1041
 - nationality of claims 1042
 - procedure 1042
 - role 1040–1
 - website 1338
- ICSID Additional Facility 1038–9
- ICSID awards
 - final and binding nature 1041, 1042
 - recognition and enforcement 1041, 1042
- ICSID, jurisdiction
 - Additional Facility and 1041
 - ‘any legal dispute arising directly out of an investment’ 1041
 - BITs provision for 1041, 1042
 - consent, need for 1041
 - dual nationals, exclusion 1042
 - exclusion of disputes 1041 n184
 - national of state other than one complained against requirement 1042
 - parties to the Convention, limitation to 1041
 - treatment as national of another state 1042
- ICTR
 - see also* ICC (International Criminal Court); ICTY
 - completion strategy 409
 - consent to jurisdiction, relevance 403
 - establishment by Security Council Chapter VII resolution 403, 407–8

ICTR (*cont.*)

- fair trial (ICTR 20) 441
- ICTY, similarities 408
- jurisprudence 409
- prioritisation 409
- Rwanda, tensions with 409
- website 1336

ICTR, individual criminal

- responsibility 46
- aiding and abetting the planning, preparation or execution of crimes 408
- command responsibility 408
- for genocide 283
- head of state, former 409, 735
- planning, instigation, ordering and committing of crimes 408
- position of accused person, relevance 408
- superior orders and 408

ICTR, judges

- ad litem* 408, 409
- nationality 408
- number 408, 409

ICTR, jurisdiction

- consent to, relevance 408
- crimes against humanity 408, 436–8
- GC, common article 3 and Additional Protocol II (non-international armed conflict) 408
- genocide 408, 431
- national courts referral to 409–10
- national proceedings, grounds for deferral 408–9
- non bis in idem* principle 408
- serious violations of international humanitarian law in the territory in 1994 408

ICTR, organisation

- Appeals Chamber (Joint ICTY/ICTR) 404, 406, 408
- mismanagement problems 409
- Office of the Prosecutor 408
- Prosecutor, establishment and appointment of separate 409
- Registry 408
- Trial Chambers 408

ICTY

- see also* ICC (International Criminal Court); ICTR
- cases completed and in progress 407

- Commission of Experts 403
- completion strategy 406–7, 426
- establishment by Security Council Chapter VII resolution 403, 406
- legality 406
- Statute, drafting and approval 403
- website 1336, 1341

ICTY, individual criminal

- responsibility 46
- aiding and abetting the planning, preparation or execution of crimes 404
- customary international law and 405
- for genocide 283
- for ‘grave breaches’ 401, 403
- head of state 409, 735
- mitigation of punishment and 404
- non-international armed conflict and 404–5
- planning, instigation, ordering and committing of crimes 404
- position of accused person, relevance 404
- superior orders and 404–5
- superior’s knowledge of subordinate’s act and 404

ICTY, judges

- ad litem* 404, 409
- Chamber judges 404
- number 404, 409

ICTY, judgments

- appeal for error of law or fact 406
- ICJ decisions, divergence 1116
- punishment 406

ICTY, jurisdiction

- absence of cut-off date 404
- concurrent/primacy 405
- consent to, relevance 403
- crimes against humanity 404, 436–8, 670
- events in Kosovo 404
- events in Macedonia 404 n43
- genocide 404, 431

- ‘grave breaches’ 403
- grave breaches of the Geneva
 - Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) 404
- national courts in region of former Yugoslavia, referral to 407
- national proceedings, grounds for deferral 405
- non bis in idem* principle 405
- serious violations of international humanitarian law in the territory since 1991 404
- torture 326
- violation of the laws or customs of war 404
- ICTY, organisation
 - Appeals Chamber (Joint ICTY/ICTR) 404, 406, 408
 - appointment by UNGA 404
 - composition 404
 - ICTR judges, inclusion in Appeals Chamber Panel 404
 - Office of the Prosecutor 404
 - Registry 404
 - term 404
 - Trial Chambers 404
- ICTY, procedure
 - arrest, detention, surrender of accused persons 406
 - fair trial (ICTY 21) 406, 440–1
 - indictment 406
 - initiation of investigations 405
 - on-site investigations 405
 - prima facie* case requirement 406
 - Prosecutor’s powers 405
 - Prosecutor’s role 405–6
 - protection of victims and witnesses 406
- ICTY, state obligations
 - compliance with request for assistance or order issued by Tribunal 405
 - co-operation in the investigation and prosecution of accused 405
- IDA, role 1286, *see also* World Bank
- IFA, role 1286
- IFAD (International Fund for Agricultural Development) 1285 n14
- IFC (International Finance Corporation) 1285–6
- IFOR 1260, 1279–80
- IGAD
 - Liberia and 1279
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1279
- ILA
 - establishment (1873) 1283
 - information and notification obligations 864–5
 - Internally Displaced Persons, Declaration of International Law Principles (2000) 287 n129
 - Montreal Rules of International Law Applicable to Transfrontier Pollution (1982) 856–7, 864, 872
 - role 121
 - Rules on Groundwaters (1986) 884
 - Rules on Water Pollution (1982) 884 n217
 - Space Debris, Draft Instrument on the Protection of the Environment from 347 n321, 882, 1016 n28
 - State Immunity, Draft Articles for Convention on (1994) 708 n61, 709 n64, 734–5
- ILC 119–21
 - Chorzów Factory* principle/*restitutio in integrum* 802
 - consultative partners 119
 - customary international law, role in establishing 121
 - Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States, Draft (1949) 134 n17
 - Diplomatic Courier and the Diplomatic Bag, Draft Articles (1989) 759 n337, 761–2
 - Diplomatic Protection, Draft Articles on: *see* Diplomatic Protection, ILC Draft Articles on (2006)
 - draft conventions 120–1
 - Effects of Armed Conflicts on Treaties, Draft Articles on 904 n9, 946, 952 n225, 1126 n37
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* and 120

ILC (*cont.*)

ICC, draft Statute 410–11

individual criminal

responsibility 401, 402

Jurisdictional Immunities, Draft

Articles on (1991) 738

jus cogens/peremptory norms

and 126

membership 40, 119

Model Rules on Arbitral Procedure

(UNGA resolution 1262

(XI)) 1050, 1053–4

Nationality of Natural Persons in

Relation to a Succession of States,

Draft Articles (1999) 1006–8

Offences, Draft Articles 401, 410, 439
n226*opinio juris* and 88–9, 120–1

Report on Fragmentation 66, 123

reports 120–1

Reservations to Normative

Multilateral Treaties Including

Human Rights Treaties,

Preliminary Conclusions

(1997) 924

Reservations to Treaties, Draft Guide

to Practice (2007) 914 n56, 915

n61, 916, 918, 919, 921 n91, 922

n92, 924 n104

Responsibilities of International

Organisations, Draft

Articles 1295–6, 1312

self-determination, right to as

universal principle of law 290

State Responsibility, ILC Articles on

(2001): *see* State Responsibility, ILC

Articles on (2001)

State Succession, Draft Articles

(1981) 990 n182, 1007

Transboundary Harm Arising out of

Hazardous Activities, Draft

Principles on the Allocation of Loss

(2006) 858 n71, 862

Transboundary Harm from

Hazardous Activities, Draft Articles

on the Prevention of, 855 n51, 856

n60, 860–2, *see also* Hazardous

Activities, ILC Draft Articles on the

Prevention of Transboundary

Harm from (2001)

website 1333

working methods 120

illegitimacy

nationality and 661

prohibition of discrimination against

(ECHR 14) 357

ILO 338–41

binding decisions 1285

codification and development of

international law and 121

commissions of inquiry 1021

conciliation commissions 340–1

constituent instrument,

interpretation 1305 n99

environmental protection and 889

establishment (1919) 31, 271, 338,
1285

gender discrimination and 325

international labour standards, role

in promoting 338–9

Philadelphia Declaration (1944)

338

principles 338

Racial Discrimination Committee

and 313

as specialised agency 338 n401

as subject of international law 47

Tripartite Declaration of Principles

concerning Multinational

Enterprises and Social Policy

250

tripartite structure 338, 340

website 1340

ILO complaints procedure 340–1

Committee on Freedom of

Association 340–1

ICJ and 340, 1034 n148

inter-state complaints 340

standing/*locus standi* 340

ILO conventions

see also ICJ complaints procedure
above

29 (Forced Labour) 340

107 (Indigenous and Tribal

Populations (1957)) 298

169 (Indigenous and Tribal Peoples in

Independent Countries

(1989)) 298

federal states and 220

ICJ jurisdiction 340

- ILO conventions and recommendations,
 - Committee of Experts on the Application of
 - establishment 339
 - membership 339
 - role 339
- ILO conventions and recommendations,
 - role and procedure 338–9
- International Labour Conference
 - Committee on the Application of 339–40
 - reporting obligations 339
 - social justice and 339
 - submission to national authorities 339
- IMCO: *see* IMO (formerly IMCO)
- IMF
 - constituent instrument,
 - interpretation 1304 n97
 - dissolution powers 1329
 - establishment 40, 1285–6
 - legal personality in domestic law 1299 n71
 - privileges and immunities 1319 n168
 - state succession to state property and 993
- immigration control
 - Channel Tunnel fixed link and 657
 - contiguous zone 578, 579, 580
 - cross-border jurisdiction 657–8
 - international officials and 1324
 - international organisations,
 - representatives to and 1322
- immigration offences, criminal
 - jurisdiction 655
- immunity *ratione personae* 735–40, *see also* diplomatic immunities (personal); employment contracts, state immunity in relation to; heads of state, former, immunity from jurisdiction *ratione materiae*; heads of state, immunities, jurisprudence; international officials, privileges and immunities; international organisations, privileges and immunities; international organisations, privileges and immunities of representatives of states to; state immunity *headings*
 - absolute immunity 739
 - Congo v. Belgium* 739
 - customary international law 739
 - defence ministers 740 n235
 - diplomatic agents 737, 738, 740
 - foreign ministers 739–40
 - heads of government other than heads of state 738–9
 - ‘holders of high-ranking office in a state’ 740
 - serving heads of state 735–8
- IMO (formerly IMCO)
 - dispute settlement 1016 n25, 1035
 - pollution incidents and 900
 - rules and standards 899
 - website 1340
- imprisonment for civil debt, prohibition
 - ECHR Protocol 4 348
 - ICCPR 275
 - non-derogation 275
- imprisonment/detention during armed conflict, as crime against humanity 436
- incendiary devices 1189–90
- incorporation doctrine 140–8
 - applicability to non-customary law 140–1
 - constitutional bars 147–8
 - customary international law,
 - limitation to 140, 157–8
 - treaties, ratification and 140
- independence of
 - Bantustans 202–3, 469
 - Bophuthatswana 202–3
 - Burma 493
 - Congo 205
 - Cyprus (1960) 235, 294 n166, 987 n163
 - Guinea-Bissau 205–6
 - Kosovo 201, 204, 424, 452–3
 - Latin America 27
 - Lithuania 203
 - Moldova 238
 - Namibia 227
 - Palau 1214
 - Somaliland 237
 - Timor-Leste 233–4
 - Transkei 202–3

- independence of states
 - associations of states 239
 - constitutional provisions of former power and 493–4
 - critical date (territorial acquisition) and 510
 - definition 211–12
 - as fundamental right 211–14
 - as legal concept 202, 211
 - means of acquiring 493–4
 - referendum, role in determining 201 n24, 962
 - restrictions on, effect 211–12
 - rights and duties deriving from 212–14
 - state/statehood, as criterion for 202–4
 - unilateral declarations of 201, 203, 206, 478, 1242–3
 - use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 1123
- independence of states, jurisprudence
 - Austro-German Customs Union* 211–12
 - Island of Palmas* 211 n74
 - Lotus* 212
 - Nicaragua* 212
- India
 - ancient civilisations 15
 - deep sea mining 630
 - as major power 44
 - manganese production 628
 - municipal and international law, interrelationship 170
 - peaceful coexistence and 215
 - seabed resources 628
 - as successor to British India 960, 985, 999
 - UNMOGIP 1226 n108
- India–Pakistan relations
 - dispute (1965) (USSR mediation) 1018
 - Indian treatment of Pakistani prisoners of war 1199
 - state succession to public debt 999
- indigenous peoples, rights
 - African Commission working group 393
 - American Declaration on Indigenous Peoples 300
 - autonomy/self-government 299
 - collective rights 299
 - Declaration on the Rights of (2007) 299, 307 n220
 - definition 298
 - education 299
 - forced assimilation, prohibition 299
 - genocide, protection from 299
 - health services 299
 - IAComHR Special Rapporteur 383
 - IACtHR and 300–1
 - ILO conventions relating to 298
 - independent experts group 300
 - individual rights 299
 - juridical personality/personality before the law 300
 - land tenure/way of life associated with the land 229, 296, 298, 300
 - legal systems, respect for 229, 299, 300
 - liberty and security 299
 - Martinez Cobo Report (1984) 298–9
 - media, access to 299
 - minority status 296, 298
 - nationality 299
 - natural resources 300, 390
 - in New Hebrides 229
 - in Nicaragua 300
 - in Paraguay 300–1
 - participation in life of state 299
 - ‘peoples’, use of 298
 - property rights 300, 390–1
 - reserves 296
 - self-determination 299
 - self-identification as fundamental criterion 298
 - social, cultural, religious and spiritual values and practices 298, 299
 - special rapporteur: *see* special rapporteurs
 - UN Development Group Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples’ Issues (2008) 299–300
 - UN Permanent Forum on Indigenous Issues 299

- UNCHR working group on 299, 308
- Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280
- Voluntary Fund 299
- Working Group 299
- individual criminal responsibility 397–443, *see also* international criminal courts and tribunals; Nuremberg Charter (1945)
- aggression 402, 439, 671
- aiding and abetting the planning, preparation or execution of crimes 404
- apartheid 401, 402
- civilian property in time of conflict, destruction 1200
- command responsibility 399, 402, 408, 443 n229
- conspiracy 399
- crime against the UN 402
- crimes against humanity 46, 399, 402, 671
- crimes against peace 399, 402
- Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, ILC Draft Code (1996) and 401, 439 n226, 671
- crimes against UN and associated personnel 402, 671
- cruel and inhuman treatment 401
- currency offences 399
- customary international law and 405, 435–6
- deportation or transfer of protected persons (GC IV, 49) 1200
- development of concept 397–9
- drug trafficking 399
- East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes 425
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols (1977) 401
- genocide/Genocide Convention (1948) 46, 262, 400–1, 402, 425, 439, 671
- ‘grave breaches’ 401–2, 403
- heads of state 399, 409, 735
- hostage-taking of civilians in time of war 1200
- ICC 411, 670
- ICTR 46, 283, 408
- ICTY 46, 283, 403, 404
- ILC Draft Code of Offences 401, 402
- international criminal courts and tribunals 397
- international humanitarian law 1200
- internationalised criminal courts and tribunals 418
- Iraqi High Tribunal 429
- jurisdiction and: *see* criminal jurisdiction
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 126
- mitigation of punishment and 404
- non-international armed conflict and 404–5
- Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 46, 399–401, 669, 735, 1200
- obscene publications 399
- piracy 262, 397
- planning, instigation, ordering and committing of crimes 404
- position of accused person, relevance 404, 408
- prisoners of war, ill treatment 1200
- punishment/penalty 404, 406, 416
- SC resolutions on Somalia and Kuwait 402
- sexual offences 425
- Sierra Leone Special Court 418
- slave trading 397
- state responsibility, effect on 402, 782, 807
- submarine telegraph cables and 399
- superior orders defence: *see* superior orders defence
- superior’s knowledge of subordinate’s act and 404
- Tokyo Tribunal 46, 400
- torture 401, 425, 684
- treaty-defined crime under international law, need for 398, 399
- war crimes 262, 399, 402, 434, 439, 671, 1200
- wilful killing/murder 425, 1200

- individuals, status in international
 - law 45–6, 257–9, *see also*
 - individual criminal responsibility; standing/*locus standi* (individual)
 - duties to the state (Banjul Charter) 392
 - ECHR and 46
 - ECJ and 46
 - Genocide Convention (1948) and 46
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) and 373
 - human rights and 258, 268–9
 - ICCPR and 46
 - ICESCR and 46
 - ICTR and 46
 - ICTY and 46
 - international legal personality 262
 - minorities, protection and 259
 - mixed arbitral tribunals 258–9
 - nationality and 258
 - Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 46
 - as objects of 258
 - rights and obligations
 - distinguished 46–7
 - standing 258–9
 - Tokyo Tribunal 46
 - treaty rights and obligations 149–50, 185
 - UDHR (1948) and 46
 - USSR and 46–7, 268–9
- individuals, status in international law, treaty provision
 - ACHR 259
 - Convention for the Establishment of the Central American Court of Justice (1907) 259
 - EC treaties 259
 - ECHR 259
 - Germany–Poland Convention on Upper Silesia (1922) 259
 - ICCPR Optional Protocol (1966) 259
 - ICSID (1965) 259, 1041–2
 - Racial Discrimination Convention (1965) 259
 - Treaty of Versailles (1919) 258–9
 - WWI treaties 259, 294
- Indonesia
 - ASEAN membership 1294
 - Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
 - expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national 830–1
 - Netherlands, dispute with 1221
 - straight baselines 565–6
 - Straits of Lombok and Sunda, closure 568
- Industrial Revolution 28
- inflammatory projectiles 1186
- information and notification obligation
 - see also* EIAs
 - Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979) 873
 - Basle Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes (1989) 896
 - Corfu Channel* 863
 - hazardous activities 861, 865
 - IAEA Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste (1990) 896–7
 - ILA and 864–5
 - Montreal Rules (1982) 864
 - Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses (1997) 885–6
 - Nordic Convention on the Protection of the Environment (1979) 864
 - Nordic Mutual Assistance Agreement (1963) 891
 - nuclear accident, bilateral agreements 890–1
 - Nuclear Accident, Convention on Early Notification of (1986) 890–1
 - OECD and 863–4
 - Preparedness, Response and Co-operation Convention (1990) 870–1, 900
 - Prior Informed Consent Procedure Convention (1998) 896 n299
 - Protection and Use of Transboundary Watercourses Convention (1992) 884, 885–6
 - regional agreements 865 n115
 - Rio Declaration (1992) 864
 - state practice 864–5
 - treaty provisions 865–6
- information and participation in public debate, right to

- see also* public life, right to participate in
- Aarhus Convention (1998) 848–9
- Aarhus Convention Compliance Committee 849
- EIAs 847–8, 866–7
- environmental matters 847–8
- Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
- OSCE/CSCE (1982) 847
- ratification of treaties and 912
- satellite broadcasting and 550
- innocent passage
- see also* straits (innocent passage); straits (transit passage) (UNCLOS 34 and 35)
- airspace 542–3
- archipelagic sea lanes passage 568
- archipelagic waters 568
- internal waters 557, 569
- innocent passage (territorial sea) 569, 570–4
- action in case of non-innocent passage 571
- bays 563
- charges 571
- civil jurisdiction and 574–5
- criminal jurisdiction and 574
- force majeure* and 571, 577, 796 n108
- GCTS provisions (GCTS 17) 570–1, 572
- ‘innocent’ 571–4, 576
- Innocent Passage, Uniform Interpretation of the Rules of International Law Governing (1989) 573–4
- landlocked states 570, 608
- laws and regulations, compliance obligation (GCTS 17) 572
- laws and regulations, right to adopt (UNCLOS 21(1)) 570, 572
- notice of danger, obligation 571
- nuclear substances and 574 n95
- ‘passage’ 571
- scientific research and 572
- suspension 571
- Third World and 573
- UNCLOS provisions (UNCLOS 17–26) 570, 571–2, 573–4
- Uniform Interpretation of the Rules of International Law Governing Innocent Passage (1989) 573–4
- warships in time of peace 570, 572–4
- inquiry: *see* commissions of inquiry
- Institut de Droit International
- arbitration procedure and 1048 n231
- codification and development of international law and 121
- conciliation procedure and 1023 n68
- domestic jurisdiction principle and 273
- environmental protection and 848, 865, 872 n154
- international humanitarian law and UN peacekeeping forces 1233 n143
- international law in municipal courts 138
- international watercourses and 884 n217
- intertemporal law and 508 n109
- liability of member states for acts of international organisations 1317
- recognition of states, legal effects 448
- Regulations on the Procedure of Conciliation (1961) 1023
- self-defence (UNC 51) and 1137 n94, 1139 n103, 1140 n108
- treaties and the effects of armed conflicts 946 n202
- universal jurisdiction 672–3
- insurgents
- definition 1149
- international legal personality 245
- intervention and 1149
- recognition of 245, 444
- insurrections, state responsibility and 791–3
- intangibility principle: *see uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of boundaries
- intellectual property proceedings, state immunity and 728
- INTELSAT 249, 549
- Inter-American Bank 1292
- Inter-American Committee on Peaceful Settlement 1031
- Inter-American Convention against Terrorism 1164

- Inter-American Convention on Human Rights (1969): *see* ACHR (1969)
- Inter-American Council of Jurists 119
- Inter-American Peace Committee 1031
- Inter-Arab Force (Iraq–Kuwait conflict) 1032
- INTER-SPUTNIK 549
- inter-state courts/tribunals
 - see also* ICJ; ICSID; ITLOS; PCA; PCIJ
 - co-operation between 1116–17
 - cross-reference 1117
 - ICJ, role 1117
 - proliferation 1115–17
- Interim Emergency Multinational Force in Bunia 1280 n371
- interim measures: *see* provisional measures
- internal armed conflict, applicability of international law 245
- internal waters 556–8, *see also* criminal jurisdiction
 - archipelagic states and 556 n13, 567 n69
 - assimilation to coastal state territory 556–7
 - classification as 556–7
 - innocent passage, exclusion 557
 - jurisdiction over foreign ships 557–8, 574
 - piracy and 616
- internally displaced persons, African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
- Internally Displaced Persons, ILA Declaration of International Law Principles (2000) 287 n129
- international administration of territories 230–4
 - Jerusalem and 230
 - Trieste 230–1
- international administrative law 48, 1295
- international agencies, development 1284–5
- International Centre for the Settlement of Investment Disputes (ICSID): *see* ICSID
- International Chamber of Commerce (ICC), dispute settlement 1043, 1338
- International Civilian Representative (ICR) (Kosovo) 204
- International Commission for Air Navigation, dissolution 1330 n214
- International Committee of the Red Cross: *see* Red Cross (ICRC)
- international communications, international law, role 48
- ‘international community’ 5–6
 - in ancient world 15–16
 - Dar al-Islam and 18
- international co-operation: *see* environmental protection, international co-operation on
- international crimes
 - see also* crimes against humanity; crimes against peace and security; individual criminal responsibility; international criminal courts and tribunals; universal jurisdiction; war crimes
 - IACoMHR recommendation on 383 n228
 - international delicts distinguished 807
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 126, 807–8
 - state responsibility and 807–8
- international crimes, classification as
 - aggression 126, 439–40
 - apartheid 401, 671, 807
 - colonial domination by force 807
 - crimes against humanity 436–8
 - environmental pollution 807
 - genocide 282, 284, 430–3, 807
 - hijacking 678
 - piracy 397
 - slave trading 397
 - slavery 807
 - war crimes 433–6
- international criminal courts and tribunals, development of 397, 399–402, *see also* Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal; Tokyo Tribunal
 - Allied High Tribunal (1919) 399
 - post-WWI military tribunals 399
 - post-WWII war crimes trials under Control Council Law No. 10 400, 439

- international economic law 40, 48
- international legal personality
 - and 197
- municipal and international law, interrelationship 130
- soft law and 118
- international humanitarian
 - law 1167–1203, *see also* armed conflict; human rights; weapons, prohibited
 - choice of methods of warfare, limitation on 1186–7
 - customary international law 1167–8, 1187
 - emblems, use in time of war 1170, 1172
 - enforcement 1199–1201
 - food aid to Iraq 1244 n200
 - in Georgia 1192
 - human rights law, convergence 1168, 1196–8
 - ICRC principles (general) 1201–2
 - ICRC principles (non-international armed conflicts) 1201–2
 - ICRC, role 1200–1
 - individual criminal responsibility 1200
 - military necessity and 1178 n55, 1181–2, 1183, 1184–5
 - serious violation of 404, 408, 418, 419–20, 421, 429, 435–6
 - state responsibility and 434, 793
 - websites 1339
- international humanitarian law,
 - applicability
 - ‘armed conflict’ 1190–3
 - children (CRC 38) 331
 - combatants and non-combatants distinguished 1170–1
 - from initiation of conflict to conclusion of peace 435, 1191–3
 - international armed conflict 435
 - international legal personality and 197
 - non-international armed conflict 404–5, 408, 435
 - peacekeeping operations 1232–3
 - Tadić* 435, 1190–3
 - US intervention in Grenada 1183 n79
 - whole territory of state or under the control of warring party 435
- international humanitarian law and the conduct of hostilities 1184–90
 - protection of civilians as basic principle 1169–70, 1184–5
- international humanitarian law, conventions and similar international instruments related to
 - applicability to third parties 1168
- customary international law and 1167–8
- Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards 1198
- Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded in Armies in the Field (1864) 1168
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977): *see* Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977)
- Geneva Conventions, Protocol I 1184–6
- Hague Convention IV and Regulations: *see* Hague Convention IV (1899) and Regulations (1907)
- Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (1954) 1186 n96
- Protection of Civilians in Armed Conflicts (SC resolution 1674 (2006)) 1184 n83
- St Petersburg Declaration (1868) 1168, 1186, 1189
- termination for material breach (VCLT 60(5)) 949
- international humanitarian law, history and development 28, 270, 1167–70
 - battle of Solferino and 1168
 - change of terminology from laws of war 1167
 - Dunant, Henry and 1168
 - Geneva Conventions (1929) 1169
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977), 1169–70, *see also* Geneva Conventions (1949)
 - Hague Conferences (1899 and 1907) 1168–9

- international humanitarian (*cont.*)
 - St Petersburg Declaration (1868) 1168, 1186, 1189
- international humanitarian law, scope
 - conduct of hostilities: *see* international humanitarian law and the conduct of hostilities
 - 'violations of the laws or customs of war' 1192
 - wounded and sick 270, 1169–70, 1186 n94
 - wounded, sick and shipwrecked members of the armed forces at sea 1169, 1186 n94
- international investment law
 - see also* multinational private companies, codes of conduct
 - municipal and international law, interrelationship 130
- International Labour Conference, 339–40, *see also* ILO
- international law
 - see also* general principles of law/international law; international law, history and development; intertemporal law
 - comity and 2
 - conflicts within 140
 - gaps/*non-liquet* 98–9, 1087, 1189
 - municipal law and: *see* municipal courts and international law; municipal and international law, interrelationship
 - SC and 1268–71
 - subjects of: *see* subjects of international law
- international law, breach
 - municipal law as defence 133–6, 137, 138, 648, 941
 - Nottebohm* 648
- international law, compliance with
 - see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act; treaties, compliance/implementation (VCLT 26–7)
 - advantages of compliance 8
 - China and 38
 - exaggerated expectations 7, 12–13
 - justification of actions by reference to international law 8
 - legal terminology and practice as essential part of international relations 8–9
 - legitimacy and 61–3
 - level of 6–8
 - as obligation 138
 - reciprocity as driving force 7–8
 - rules of the game, recognition of need for 7
 - vital interests as justification for violation 8
- international law, definition, function and scope 2, 34, *see also* international trade law
 - balance of interests and 45
 - balance of rights and obligations and 44
 - economic relations 40, 48
 - environmental protection 45, 48
 - functionalist approach 48, 58 n47
 - health 48
 - labour standards 48
 - marine resources 48
 - peaceful co-existence as basic premise 44
 - policy-oriented approaches 58–63, 64, 267
- international law, history and development 13–42, *see also* codification; natural law; positivism
 - 19th century 27–30, 270
 - 20th century 30–1
 - ancient world 14–18
 - authoritative decision-takers and 59–60
 - behaviouralism and 55–60
 - China and 36–8
 - cold war and 33, 36, 41
 - communist approaches to 31–8
 - consistency and certainty of law/responsiveness to change conundrum 43–4
 - decolonisation and 38–40, 44
 - developing countries and 9, 23, 38–42
 - diplomatic law 750–2

- Eurocentricity 27–9, 39–40, 44–5, 114, 200
- expansion of 28, 31, 43–9
- globalisation and 36, 41–2, 44, 48–9, 65–6, 197, 1115–16
- Middle Ages 19–20
- nation-state and 13–14, 20–2, 487–8, 1282
- positivism as brake on 51
- power politics and 12, 55, 79–80, 215, 489, 1206
- Renaissance 14, 20–2
- as response to changing conditions 488–9
- self-determination principle and 40
- Spain and 22–3
- technological development and 41, 43–4, 48
- USSR and 8, 31–8
- websites 1333, 1334
- international law as law 1–13
 - auto-limitation 9
 - basis of obligation 9–11, 61–3
 - binding, whether 61–3
 - consensus doctrine 10–11
 - contractual/consensual approach 9–11
 - moral principles, relevance 2, 3–4, 12, 54, 74–5
 - natural law and 23
 - ‘new’ states and 9
 - politics and 11–13, 24, 38, 44, 67–8, 79–80, 488–9
 - positivism and 52
- international law, research, resources and teaching of 28
- websites 1332–3
- international law, theories of
 - see also* consent as basis of international law; international law, compliance with; positivism
 - critical legal studies movement and 63–5
 - diplomatic history, relevance 54–5
 - dualism 29–30, *see also* dualism
 - general theory of international law, impossibility 63
 - institutional processes, relevance 54–5
 - legal philosophy and 49–54
 - liberalism and 63
 - monism 29
 - NAIL (New Approaches to International Law) 63–4
 - recognition theories and 449
- international law, universality
 - China and 38
 - decolonisation and 38–40
 - fragmentation, risk of 65–7, 123–4
 - law between socialist states and 35
 - Law Merchant 19
 - regional international law 2, 35
 - regional organisations and 48
 - universalism/particularism 27, 41–2, 64
 - USSR and 33–5
- international legal personality 195–7,
 - see also* juridical personality/
 - personality before the law, right to; state/statehood; subjects of international law
- applicable law 219–20
- human rights law and 197
- international economic law and 197
- international humanitarian law and 197
- Lisbon Treaty (2007) and 242
- multiplicity of models 242, 260, 263–4
- practice as source of international law and 263
- recognition of government and 457
- rights, duties and the enforcement of 196, 263
- state responsibility and 263, 1311
- states: *see* state/statehood
- international legal personality,
 - criteria/relevant factors and the acquisition of 195–7
- attribution of rights and duties as determining factor 263–4
- capacity to enter into international legal relations 260, 263
- constitutional/constituent instrument provisions 97, 216, 261
- definition and scope 195–6
- directly imposed international law obligations 262

- international legal personality (*cont.*)
 - effective territorial control 262–3
 - enforcement powers, relevance 264
 - ‘legal entity distinct from its members’ test 264
 - members’ intention 1298
 - objective (*erga omnes*) 260, 263, 1298
 - qualified personality 261, 262–3
 - recognition of, need for 220–1, 261–2, 449
 - status falling short of 196–7, 263–4, 1297
 - treaty-making powers 260, 263
- international legal personality of
 - associations of states 238–42
 - belligerents 245
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina 231–2
 - Byelorussia 218, 262–3
 - Commonwealth of Nations 239–40
 - condominiums 228–30
 - Cook Islands 239
 - East Timor 233–4
 - EC 241
 - ECSC 241
 - EU 241–2
 - EU pillars 241–2
 - EURATOM 241
 - federal states 217–23
 - Germany post-WWII 227–8
 - Holy See 197, 243–4, 261
 - ICRC 244 n244, 261–2
 - individuals 262
 - insurgents 245
 - international organisations: *see*
 - international organisations,
 - international legal personality
 - international organisations, *see also*
 - international organisations,
 - international legal personality
 - internationally administered territories 230–4
 - Kosovo 232–3
 - multinational private companies 249–50, 262
 - multinational public companies 248–9
 - national liberation movements (NLMs) 245–8
 - Nauru 199, 224 n136, 1297
 - Palestine 247–8
 - Palestinian Authority 247–8
 - private persons party to agreement
 - subject to international law 262
 - SADR 236–7
 - Sovereign Order of Malta 243
 - SWAPO 248
 - Taiwan 234–5
 - tribes 216–17, 264, 503, 525
 - TRNC 235–6
 - trust territories 224–8
 - Ukraine SSR 218
 - UN 47, 83, 1297–8, 1302–3
 - UN Council for Namibia 248
 - Vanuatu 229
- international legal system
 - enforcement machinery, absence, 3, 4–5, *see also* economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); regional arrangements for the maintenance of international peace and security (UNC Chapter VIII); self-defence, right to (UNC 51)
 - establishment of rights and duties 902–3
 - judicial system, limitations 3, 70
 - legislature, absence 3, 70
 - non-hierarchical nature 5–6
 - separation of powers and 6, 11–12
 - weaknesses 12–13
- International Meteorological Organisation, dissolution 1330 n214
- international officials
 - diplomatic protection and 811 n212
 - as internationally protected persons 675–6
- international officials, privileges and immunities 1324–6
 - customs duty on first installation, freedom from 1324
 - experts 1324–5
 - functional test 1324
 - immigration restrictions, exemption 1324
 - immunity from jurisdiction 1324
 - immunity from national service obligations 1324

- tax exemption 1324
- UN Secretary-General 1324
- waiver obligation 1324
- international organisations
 - see also individual organisations;*
 - regional organisations
 - codification and development of international law and 1295
 - collective recognition of states and 465–6
 - dissolution 1329–30
 - growth 28, 47–8
 - ICJ and 1072, 1113
 - norms governing work and development as part of international law 1295
 - origin 1284
 - state practice and 82–3, 88–9, 1295
 - state succession and 985–6
 - succession 1330–1
 - websites 1339
- international organisations,
 - accountability 66, 1317–18
 - abuse of power and 1318
 - balance between constitutionality and institutional balance 1318
 - due diligence 1318
 - good faith and 1318
 - reasoned decisions, need for 1318
 - subsidiary organs and 1318
 - transparency 1318
 - World Bank 1040
- international organisations, applicable law 1309–10
 - commercial contracts 1310
 - headquarters agreements 1309–10
 - internal law of organisation 1310
 - status-related matters 1310
 - tortious liability 1310
 - treaty relationships 1310
- international organisations, constituent instruments 1303–6
 - as constitutional/constitutive instrument 1303–4
- ECOWAS 1029
- as internal law of organisation 1310
- international legal personality and 216, 261, 1297, 1299, 1303
- interpretation of 936–7
- Legality of Nuclear Weapons* (WHO request) 1303–4
- member state liability and 1317
- multilateral treaty status 1303, 1305–6
- powers, dependence on 97, 1302, 1307, 1308–9
- privileges and immunities of organisations, general conventions on and 1319–20
- reservations, exclusion 920
- subsequent practice 261
- treaties between states and international organisations and 954
- VCLT, applicability (VCLT 5) 907, 937
- international organisations, constituent instruments, interpretation 936–7, 1304–8
- ICJ advisory proceedings and 954, 1072, 1304–5
- Legality of Nuclear Weapons* (WHO request) 1303–4
- responsibility for 1304–5
- special rules 936–7, 1305–6
- specialised agencies and 1305
- subsequent practice and 937
- teleological approach (object and purpose) 936–7, 1305–6
- UN Charter 937
- VCLT 31 and 32, applicability 1305
- international organisations, definition/classification as ILC Articles on the Responsibility of International Organisations 1295–6
- multinational public companies distinguished 1296
- NGOs distinguished 1296
- as product of treaty 1296
- Treaty Succession, Vienna Convention on (1978) 1295–6
- international organisations, international legal personality 47, 259–60, 1296–1303
- applicable law 260
- by inference 1297–8
- capacity and 1303

- international organisations (*cont.*)
 - capacity to claim reparation for
 - breach of obligations 1311–12
 - constituent instrument as basis 216, 261, 1297, 1303
 - determining factors 259–60, 1296
 - effects 1299, 1302–3
 - intention of members and 1298
 - Nauru v. Australia* 1297
 - objective (*erga omnes*) 1298, 1299
 - organisations created under domestic law and 1315 n149
 - recognition under private international law 1300
 - Reparation for Injuries* 47, 83, 1297–8, 1302–3
 - responsibility and 1311
 - right to sue and be sued 1311–12
 - rights and duties resulting from 1302–3
 - as subjects of international law 47, 258, 259–60, 1297
 - Third Restatement of Foreign Relations Law* 1298 n69
- international organisations,
 - international legal personality under domestic law
 - acceptance in domestic law of status under international law 1300
 - Arab Monetary Fund* case 1301
 - headquarters agreement and 1299–1300
 - incorporation of treaty and 1301–2
 - legislation, need for 1300–2
 - obligation of member states to make provision for 1299
 - personality under domestic law distinguished 1296–7, 1299
 - private international law and 1300
 - recognition by courts on basis of comity/acceptance in other states 1302
 - recognition by the executive 1302
 - Tin* cases 1300–2
 - UK and 1300–2
 - Westland Helicopters* 1302
- international organisations, member state liability towards organisation
 - 1311–12
 - Reparation* case 1311–12
- international organisations, member state liability towards third parties
 - 1314–17
 - applicable law 1314–15
 - Matthews v. UK* 1317
 - organisation not having legal personality and 1314
 - pacta tertiis nec nocent nec prosunt* rule 1315
 - Tin* cases 721, 1315–17
 - tortious liability 721
 - transfer of competences to international organisation and 1317
- international organisations, membership and relationship with members 1295–6
- entities other than states 1296
- Holy See and 244
- state sovereignty and 57, 488
- states, limitation to 1295–6
- international organisations, powers and responsibilities
 - human rights obligations 276
 - ILC Commentary 1309
 - Treaties between States and International Organisations Convention (1986) 1309
 - treaty-making powers 1308–9
- international organisations, privileges and immunities 1318–29, *see also* international officials, privileges and immunities
 - access to courts, right of and 1321–2
 - criminal jurisdiction and 1328
 - currency restrictions and 1328
 - customary international law 776, 1321 n176
 - customs duties, exemption 1328
 - diplomatic bags and 1328
 - freedom of communication 1320, 1328
 - functional necessity test 776, 1319–22
 - General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the UN (1946) 776
 - headquarters agreements and 1319–20, 1323–4

- immunity from execution or enforcement 1327
- immunity from jurisdiction 1326
- international financial institutions and 1319 n168
- inviolability of premises and archives 776, 1326, 1327–8
- jure imperii/jure gestionis* distinction, relevance 1318–19, 1326–7
- Privileges and Immunities of the Council of Europe, General Agreement on (1949) 1319 n169
- Privileges and Immunities of the European Communities, Protocol Concerning (1965) 1329 n169
- Privileges and Immunities of the OAS Agreement (1949) 1319 n169
- reciprocity, relevance 1318–19, 1326
- specialised agencies 776 n447, 1319
- state immunity
 - distinguished 1318–19, 1326–7
- UN 1319–21, *see also* UN, privileges and immunities
 - waiver 1327
- international organisations, privileges and immunities, jurisprudence
 - Eckhardt v. Eurocontrol* (No. 2) and 1321 n176
 - FAO v. INPDAI* 1321
 - Iran–US Claims Tribunal v. AS* 1320–1
 - Kukuru v. EBRD* 1321
 - Mandaro v. World Bank* 1320
 - Obligation to Arbitrate* case 1320
 - Waite and Kennedy v. Germany* 1321–2
 - ZM v. Permanent Delegation of the League of Arab States to the UN* 1321
- international organisations, privileges and immunities of representatives of states to 775–6, 1322–4
- administrative and technical staff, entitlement 776
- codes and cyphers, right to use 1322
- currency and exchange restrictions, facilities relating to 1322
- customary international law 1323
- customs exemption 1322
- diplomatic bag 761
- functional test 1323
- headquarters agreements
 - provisions 1323–4
- immigration restrictions, exemption 1322
- immunity from arrest/seizure of personal baggage 1322
- immunity from civil and administrative jurisdiction 776
- immunity from criminal jurisdiction 776
- International Organisations, Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with (1975): *see* International Organisations, Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with (1975)
- inviolability of archives, documents and correspondence 1322
- inviolability of premises 776
- municipal law and 1328–9
- personal baggage immunities and facilities 1322
- ‘representative’ 1323 n182
- tax exemption 1322
- UK practice 1328
- unilateral withdrawal and 1323
- US practice 1328
- waiver obligation 1323
- international organisations,
 - responsibility 13, 1310–14, *see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act including acts of, international organisation
 - for acts of organ or agent 1312
 - for aid or assistance to a state or another organisation 1312
 - attribution 1312
 - countermeasures and 1313 n141
 - customary international law 1311
 - distress and 1313 n141
 - force majeure* and 1313 n141
 - ILC Draft Articles on 1295–6, 1312
 - international legal personality and 1311
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms 1313 n141
 - for lawful acts 1313

- international organisations (*cont.*)
 - necessity and 1313 n141
 - outer space 546, 859, 1312 n138
 - peacekeeping operations 1313–14
 - preclusion 1312–13
 - remedies 1313
 - tortious liability 1313
 - treaty base 1311
- International Organisations, Vienna
 - Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with (1975)
 - criticism of/refusal to sign 775–6, 1323 n182
 - diplomatic bag 761
 - diplomatic relations between sending and host states, relevance 775–6
 - General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the UN distinguished 776
 - scope 775–6, 1323 n182
- International Organisations, Vienna
 - Convention on Treaties between States and (1986)
 - advisory opinions and 954–5
 - conclusion 953
 - dispute settlement provisions 954–5
 - ILC views on 953–4
 - member states of organisation and 953–4
 - powers and responsibilities of organisation and 1309
 - ‘reservation’ to 914 n57
 - VCLT, relationship with 953
- International Refugee Organisation, dissolution 1330 n214
- international relations, history and development 1282–4
 - 19th century changes 27–8
 - American Continent, developments on 1291
 - ASEAN, establishment and development 1294–5
 - Berlin Conference (1871) 1283
 - Berlin Conferences (1884–5) 1283
 - China and 38
 - Cold War, impact 33, 36–7, 41, 573, 1209, 1217, 1224, 1226, 1234, 1287, 1290
 - Congress system 1282–3
 - establishment (1919) 31, 271, 338, 1285
 - games theory and 58
 - ILA, establishment (1873) 1283
 - international conferences and conventions, effect of growth in 28, 54–5
 - international law as reflection of 43, 67–8
 - international river commissions 1283
 - Islamic approach to 18
 - Napoleonic wars 27, 1282
 - natural law value system and 21
 - NGOs: *see* NGOs
 - non-alignment 57, 1287
 - Paris Conference (1856) 1283
 - Peace of Westphalia (1948) 26, 1120, 1282
 - power politics and 36, 55, 215
 - public international
 - unions/intergovernmental associations 1283–4
 - Red Cross, establishment (1863) 1283
 - scramble for Africa 1283
 - superpower politics 57
 - Thirty Years War 1283
 - Treaty of Versailles (1919) and 30
 - unanimity approach 1283
 - USSR approach to 35, 36
- International Seabed Authority (UNCLOS 156–85) 633–5
 - ‘Area’ 629
 - Assembly, composition and powers 633–4
 - consensus and 634 nn398 and 400
 - Council, composition and powers 633, 634
 - Economic Planning Commission 634
 - Enterprise 629, 630, 633, 634–5
 - ‘equitable sharing’ principle and 590, 629
 - exploitation of the continental shelf and 590
 - ITLOS and 639
 - landlocked states and 634 n399
 - Legal and Technical Commission 634
 - opposition to 631

- organs 633–5
- role and responsibilities 629–31
- special interests, representation of 634 n399
- International Settlement Bank 249
 - state succession to state property and 993
- International Steering Group (Kosovo) 204
- international straits: *see* straits (innocent passage); straits (transit passage)
- international trade law, history and development 45, *see also* effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters; GATT
- Law Merchant as 19–20
- Renaissance 14, 20–2
- soft law and 118
- WTO dispute settlement procedures and 1037–8
- international watercourses 883–7, *see also* Danube; Danube Commission; Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project; Kiel Canal; Panama Canal Zone; Suez Canal
 - adverse impact, measures to avoid 885–6
 - bilateral agreements 885, 886 n235
 - Civil Liability and Compensation for Damage Caused by the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents (2003) 884 n218
 - Congress of Vienna (1815) and 28
 - consultation and negotiation 886
 - customary international law 851–2, 883
 - definition 883
 - dispute settlement 885–6
 - ecosystems, protection of 886
 - EIAs 865 n115, 884
 - equitable and reasonable share principle 108, 884, 885
 - freedom of navigation 1221 n85
 - Helsinki Rules (1966) 883–4
 - ILA Rules on Groundwaters (1986) 884
 - ILA Rules on Water Pollution (1982) 884 n217
 - international co-operation 884–5
 - Lac Lanoux* 852, 864, 883 n215, 1017
 - measures to protect 884
 - Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses Convention (1997) 108, 885–6
 - notification obligations 884, 885–6
 - obligation to avoid injury to other states 885
 - Oder* 851–2, 883
 - ‘polluter pays’ principle 884
 - ‘pollution’ 886 n233
 - precautionary principle 884
 - regional agreements 886 n235
 - Rhine Commission: *see* Rhine Commission
 - riparian rights 883, 885
 - state succession 970
 - sustainable development principle 884
 - ‘transboundary impact’ 858
 - transboundary protection, state responsibility 858
 - Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes Convention (1992) 858, 884–5
- international watercourses,
 - boundaries 498, 505–6, 531
 - accretion and 495, 498, 499, 520, 531
 - avulsion and 531
 - change of boundary and 531
 - channel as 498, 531
 - navigable/non-navigable rivers 498
 - thalweg* 531
- ‘internationalised’ contracts 829
- internationalised criminal courts and tribunals 417–30, *see also* Bosnia War Crimes Chamber; Cambodia, Extraordinary Chambers of; East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes; Iraqi High Tribunal; Kosovo Regulation 64 panels; Lebanon Special Tribunal; Serbian War Crimes Chamber; Sierra Leone Special Court
- applicable law 418
- definition 417–18

- internationalised criminal courts (*cont.*)
 - individual criminal responsibility and 418
 - reason for growth in 417
- Internationally Protected Persons
 - Convention (1973) adoption 764
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle and 675, 764–5
 - extraditable offences and 764–5
 - ‘international protected persons’ 675–6
 - passive personality principle 665
 - summary of provisions 764–5
- InterOceanmetal Joint Organisation 630
- intertemporal law
 - boundary treaties, interpretation 496–7, 500 n68
 - continental shelf 508–9
 - legislative interpretation and 160–1
 - territorial acquisition 496–7, 500 n68, 508–9, 520–1
 - treaties of cession prior to UNC, validity 500 n68, 508 n110
 - treaties, interpretation 496–7, 500 n68
- intervention in the affairs of another state, justification
 - aid to government
 - authorities 1151–2, 1154–5
 - collective self-defence and 1152
 - Congo 1154–5
 - Grenada 1144, 1151, 1183 n79, 1276 n355
 - human rights protection 49, 213, 268, 269, 270, 272–3, 278, 488, 648
 - humanitarian intervention by states 449, 1155–8, *see also* humanitarian intervention by states
 - Nicaragua 1151 n165
 - Panama 1151
 - state practice 1152
 - threats to international peace and security 1237
- intervention in the affairs of another state, prohibition 1147–58, *see also* domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)); use of force (UNC 2(4))
 - aid to rebels 213, 1152–5
 - civil wars 1148–51
 - colonial territories and 212–13, 649
 - Congo 1154–5
 - Corfu Channel* 1127–8
 - Declaration on Armed Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States (1965) 1127
 - Declaration on Friendly Relations (UNGA resolution 2625 (XXV)) 213, 1123, 1127, 1148
 - democratic rights and 49
 - equality of states and 1205
 - EU and 213
 - national identity and 213
 - Nicaragua 1148, 1153
 - peaceful co-existence and 215
 - positivism and 279
 - racial oppression and 213
 - restoration of democracy 1158
 - Rushdie *fatwa* as 213 n82
 - state practice 1153
 - territorial jurisdiction and 213–14
 - UNC 2(7) 212–13, 488
- investment: *see* foreign direct investment
- Iran
 - arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1247
 - embargoes 688 n220
 - human rights in 305
 - London embassy 757 n324
 - non-recognition policy and 484
 - nuclear weapons and 1247
 - prisoners of war 1021 n59
 - Rushdie *fatwa* as intervention in UK affairs 213 n82
 - straight baselines 561 n37
- Iran–Iraq war 1228
 - as breach of the peace (SC resolution 598 (1987)) 1241
 - child soldiers and 331
 - civilian population and 1185 n91
 - freedom of navigation and 610–11
 - genuine link/reflagging 612–13
 - UN Iran–Iraq Military Observer Group 1228
 - UNIIMOG 1244 n201
- Iran–US Claims Tribunal 1043–5
 - applicable law 1043–4

- claims below and above \$250,000
 - distinguished 1044
- composition 1044
- development of international law
 - and 111, 1044–5
- diplomatic protection
 - distinguished 1044
- dual nationals and 1044
- espousal of claim principle and 1044
- establishment 1043
- final and binding nature of
 - awards 1044
- individual, standing 1043
- privileges and immunities 1320–1
- recognition and enforcement of
 - awards 1044
- rules of procedure (UNCITRAL as
 - modified by parties or Tribunal) 1044
- Security Fund 1044
- Iran–US Claims Tribunal, jurisdiction
 - disputes relating to the interpretation of the Claims Settlement Agreement 1043
 - inter-state contractual claims 1043
 - violations of individuals' property rights arising out of the hostages crisis 1043
- Iran–US relations
 - freezing of assets 692
 - sanctions 692–3
- Iraq
 - see also* Iran–Iraq war
 - Arab League and 1032
 - Coalition Provisional Authority 428
 - human rights in 83–4, 305
 - ICC Statute (1998),
 - incorporation 429
 - invasion of Kuwait: *see* Kuwait, Iraqi invasion of
 - Kurds and 1156, 1239, 1254–5
 - minorities in 293 n164
 - no-fly zones 1156, 1254–5
 - 'oil-for-food' scheme 1250
 - prisoners of war 1021 n59
 - prisoners of war, treatment of 1175 n39
 - Red Cross and 1201, 1243
 - safe haven 1156
 - as threat to the peace (SC 688 (1991)) 1156, 1239, 1254–5
 - UN blockade 1244
 - UN failure 1224, 1234
 - UNIKOM 1229
 - UNMOVIC 1249–50, 1256
 - UNSCOM 1249–50, 1255 n253
 - US missile attack in Baghdad (1993) 1145
 - WMD and 1248–50
- Iraq, occupation of 1183–4
 - human rights, Special Representative 1183–4
 - internationally recognised government of Iraq as objective 1183–4
 - obligations of occupying powers 1183–4
- Iraqi High Tribunal
 - Appeals Chamber 429
 - death penalty 429
 - due process/fair trial and 429
 - establishment 428–9
 - individual criminal responsibility 429
- Iraqi Special Tribunal, as successor to 429
- judges (Iraqi nationals) 429
- non-Iraqi nationals, role 429
- President 429
- Trial Chambers 429
- Iraqi High Tribunal, jurisdiction
 - concurrent/primacy 429
 - crimes against humanity 429
 - crimes committed between 16 July 1968 and 1 May 2003 429
 - crimes of regime of Saddam Hussein 429
 - genocide 429
 - over Iraqi nationals or residents 429
 - war crimes 429
- Ireland
 - continental shelf 588
 - customary international law and 167
 - international law in municipal courts 170
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 170

- Irish Free State–UK Treaty (1921), state succession to public debt and 999
- irregular forces, right of self-defence and 1135–6
- ISAF 1280
- Isaiah 15
- Islamic approach to international law/international relations 18
- diplomatic privileges and immunities and 18
- inter-faith relations 18
- war, laws of 18
- Islamic Conference 395 n295
- Islamic Shari'ah as applicable law 395 n295
- islands 564–5
- artificial 199, 582, 583, 609
- chain 559, 565
- contiguous zone, right to 564–5
- continental shelf, right to 564–5, 588
- creation 498
- definition (GCTS/UNCLOS) 564
- EEZ, right to 564–5, 582
- installations on the continental shelf distinguished 589–90
- low-tide elevations distinguished 559
- maritime delimitation and 594–5, 598, 603, 605
- oil rigs distinguished 589–90
- rocks, status 559, 565, 582
- self-determination and 199
- sovereignty over 524
- territorial sea, entitlement 564–5
- Israel
- boundary disputes 200
- diplomatic premises, immunity in relation to 755 n314
- Eichmann* case 214, 651, 671–2, 680, *see also Eichmann* case
- embargoes 1125
- Entebbe rescue 680, 1144
- international law in ancient Israel 15
- international law in municipal courts 166
- recognition 200, 457
- recognition by Arab countries 447, 462 nn71 and 74
- Red Cross and 1201
- self-defence, right to (including pre-emptive action) 1135, 1138, 1139
- state succession 960
- Israel occupied territories *see also Construction of a Wall* case, *Beit Sourik* and *Mara'abe in the table of cases*
- annexation, exclusion 1182
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977), applicability 1178–9
- Golan Heights, proposed change in status 469 n105, 502 n80
- human rights and 1181–2
- ICCPR, applicability 322
- national security and public order considerations 1181–2
- powers and authority of military commander 1182
- Special Committee on Practices in 303
- territorial acquisition and 502
- West Bank 1178–9, 1181–2
- withdrawal from, agreements related to 247
- Israel–Egypt Peace Treaty (1979) 1228 n117
- Israel–Jordan Peace Treaty (1994), jurisdictional arrangements 657–8
- Italy
- 1930s aggression 30
- city states 20
- customary international law and 173
- deep sea mining 630
- employment contracts, state immunity in relation to 726
- Gulf War and 1253 n246
- Holy See and 244
- ICJ and 1073
- international law in municipal courts 173
- state immunity from execution/attachment 747
- state succession (1947) 958 n4
- unification (1870) 28

ITLOS

see also law of the sea, dispute
settlement (UNCLOS Part XV); law
of the sea, jurisprudence

ad hoc judges 639

advisory opinions 642

applicable law 639–40

composition 638–9

counter-claims 641

exhaustion of domestic remedies
642

experts 639

jurisdiction 639

jurisprudence 642–4

non-appearance 641

non-state entities and 639

parallel treaties, primacy 637–8

prompt release proceedings

(UNCLOS 292) 642–3

provisional measures 637–8, 640–1,
643, 644

qualifications 639

Seabed Disputes Chamber: *see* Seabed
Disputes Chamber (UNCLOS
186–91)

standing 639

term of office 639

third party intervention 641–2

website 1338

ITU 28, 244, 549, 550–1, 1285 n14

establishment (1865) 28, 1284
role 549

Ivory Coast, arms sanctions
(UNC 41) 1247 n218

Jammu 1226 n108

Jan Mayen Island 599–601

Japan

1930s aggression 30

as archipelagic state 566

customary international law and 176

deep sea mining 630

ICJ and 1072 n103

international law in municipal
courts 177

invasion of China/Manchuria
(1931) 30, 468

League of Nations, withdrawal
from 30

minorities in 295

Pacific Islands Trust Territory
and 224

Taiwan and 234

treaties/municipal law
relationship 176

Jay Treaty (1794) 823, 1048

Jericho 247

Jerusalem

proposed international status
(1947) 230

SC resolutions (476 (1980) and 478
(1980)) (change of status) 469

Jordan, 1958 crisis 1273

journalists, compulsory licensing 388–9

Joyce case 667

Judaism, and international law 15

judicial decisions as source of
international law 109–12

cross-reference between municipal
and international courts 130

cross-reference between
tribunals 111, 352 n37

as evidence of customary
international law 112

ICTR and ICTY decisions 111

international arbitral tribunals 111

municipal courts 111, 112

PCIJ/ICJ decisions 109–11

as subsidiary source 109

websites 1334–5

judicial impartiality 1060 n17

judicial independence 11–12

African Commission resolution
on 393

ICC 415

Zimbabwe 393

judicial notice

of foreign law 140

ICJ 1091

of international law 140–1

judicial review 182, 188–91, 193, 692,
812

ICJ and 1113–14, 1271

judicial role 56, 146, 147

juridical personality/personality before
the law, right to

ACHR 3 274

ICCPR 16 275

indigenous peoples and 300

non-derogation 274

jurisdiction

- see also* domestic jurisdiction
 - principle (UNC 2(7)); justiciability applicable law 647
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle 671, 1160
- civil jurisdiction: *see* civil jurisdiction; torts in violation of international law, jurisdiction (US Alien Tort Claims Act)
- criminal jurisdiction: *see* criminal jurisdiction
- definition, difficulties and confusion 647
- executive jurisdiction 650–1, *see also* forcible abduction/unlawful arrest
- extraterritorial jurisdiction: *see* extraterritorial jurisdiction
- federal states: *see* federal states
- international law and conflict of laws rules distinguished 646–7
- law-making (prescriptive) and law-enforcement jurisdiction distinguished 645–6
- legislative, executive and judicial jurisdiction distinguished 645, 649–50
- overview 645–7
- ships: *see* ships (jurisdiction)
- territorial jurisdiction: *see* territorial jurisdiction
- jurisdiction based on nationality, collisions on the high seas 618
- jus civile* 16–17
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms 124–7
 - acquired rights 1001
 - aggression 808 n198
 - apartheid 808 n198
 - creation of 126–7
 - customary/treaty law, limitation to 127
 - definition 125–6
 - environmental offences 807
 - erga omnes* rules distinguished 124–5
 - genocide 126, 808
 - heads of state immunities and 126 n239
 - human rights 266–7
 - ICJ jurisdiction and 1085

- international crimes 126
- lex specialis derogat legi generalis* and 124
- natural law and 125–6
- non-derogation principle 125, 126, 275, 807, 1197
- piracy 126
- racial discrimination 808 n198
- SC resolutions and 127
- self-determination, right to 808 n198
- slave trading 126, 808
- slavery 808 n198
- standing/*locus standi* and 125
- state immunity from jurisdiction and 127, 716
- State Responsibility, ILC Articles and 126, 807–8
- torture 326, 808
- treaty amendment and 931–2
- treaty obligations and 127
- treaty reservations and 1217
- universal jurisdiction and 673–4
- use of force, prohibition 126
- validity of treaties and (VCLT 53 and 64) 125, 127, 944
- jus communis* 534
- jus gentium* 16–18
- jus soli* 661
- just satisfaction (ECHR 41) 353, 359, 806 n184
- just war 1119–20
 - balance of power system and 1120
 - Grotius 24
 - law of war and 1120–1
 - nation-state and 1119–21
 - Peace of Westphalia (1948) 26, 1120, 1282
 - positivism and 1120
 - St Augustine 1119
 - state sovereignty and 1119–21
 - Suarez 1120
 - Vitoria 23, 1120
 - WWI and 1121
- justice, natural law and 24, 54
- Justice and Home Affairs Pillar 241, 242
- justiciability 179–88, *see also* act of state doctrine

- basis of doctrine 180–1
 - constitutionality of foreign government 186
 - defence matters 184
 - definition 179–80
 - diplomatic protection 188–9
 - diplomatic representation, matters related to 186 n302
 - domestic acts, applicability to 180–1
 - evidential bar considerations 180
 - foreign law 186–7
 - foreign relations and 140, 182, 187–92
 - individual's treaty rights and obligations 185
 - manageable judicial standards, need for 182, 186, 190–1
 - separation of powers and 180, 189
 - state immunity and 180, 182–3, 699–701
 - state sovereignty and 180–3
 - taking of property in foreign state 191–2
 - terrorist threat assessment 189
 - treaty concluded between third states 185–6
 - unincorporated treaties 183–6
- Kadesh 14
- Kaliningrad 964 n45
- Kant, Immanuel 132
- Kashmir 1221, 1226 n108
- Katanga
 - secession 205
 - self-determination and 392
- Kazakhstan
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
 - treaty succession 976–7
- Kellogg–Briand Pact (1928) 439 n226, 468, 501, 506, 509, 942, 1122
- Kelsen, Hans 49–51, 72, 131–2, 1068 n75
- Kenya
 - Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
 - bombing of US embassy 1134
 - Somali claims over 523–4
 - treaty succession and 958 n6
- Kerkennah islands, effect on delimitation 594
- KFOR
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1280
 - state responsibility and 350–1, 787–8, 1312 n140
 - website 1340
- Khrushchev, Nikita 33
- Kiel Canal, as international waterway (Treaty of Versailles) 540, 930
- Kinmen 235
- Korean war 57, 1215
 - collective use of force (Chapter VII) 4
- Korovin, E. A. 32
- Koskenniemi, M. 63–5
- Kosovo
 - see also* KFOR
 - Ahtisaari Plan (2008) 204, 452–3
 - applicable law 233
 - civilian population and 1185 n88
 - Constitutional Framework for Provisional Self-Government (2001) 233
 - EU Special Representative 204
 - EULEX 204 n41
 - humanitarian intervention in 1158–9
 - ICTY and 404
 - independence 201, 204, 424, 452–3
 - International Civilian Representative (ICR) 204
 - international legal personality 232–3
 - International Steering Group 204
 - minorities in 295 n170
 - OSCE Mission 1033
 - recognition of 453
 - recognition and UN membership 453
 - SC resolution 1244 (1999) and 232–3, 452
 - sovereignty over 233
 - Special Representative, role 233
 - territorial title 233
 - Torture Committee (CoE) and 363 n115
 - UN membership and 453
 - UNMIK 232–3, 423
 - War and Ethnic Crimes Court 423 n145

- Kosovo Regulation 64 panels
 - applicable law 424
 - composition 423–44
 - establishment 423
 - problems relating to 424
- Kozhenyikov, F. I. 34
- Kurds, repression by Iraq (SC 688 (1991)) 1156, 1239, 1254–5
- Kuwait
 - boundary with Iraq, UN guarantee (SC resolution 687) 521 n193, 1248, 1267
 - torture and 716–17
- Kuwait, Iraqi invasion of 186–7, *see also* UN Compensation Commission (Iraq)
 - as act of aggression 1241 n180
 - Arab League and 1032
 - as breach of the peace 1241
 - collective self-defence and 1147
 - economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41) 4, 1243–4, 1248–50
 - individual criminal responsibility 402
 - Iraq's historic claim to Kuwait and 525
 - non-recognition policy and 469–70, 1269
 - SC resolution 660 (1990) 1241, 1253–4
 - SC resolution 661 (1990) 1147 n149, 1243
 - SC resolution 662 (1990) 1269
 - SC resolutions 402, 469–70, 502, 1223, 1269
 - state responsibility for damage arising from (SC resolution 687 (1991)) 858 n73, 1045 n209, 1248–9
 - UNIKOM 1229
- Kyoto Protocol (1997) 880–1
- Kyrgyzstan, EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
- labour rights: *see* ILO; work, right to; workers' rights
- Lagash 14
- LaGrand* 135
- lakes: *see* international watercourses
- land law, municipal and international
 - law distinguished 489, 490–1
- landlocked states 607–8
 - access to the sea, right of (UNCLOS 125) 607–8
 - climate change and 879
 - common heritage of mankind and 607
 - equality of treatment in ports 608
 - freedom of the high seas and 610
 - innocent passage and 570, 608
 - International Seabed Authority and 634 n399
 - law of the sea, role in the development of 80
 - living resources, right to equitable exploitation (UNCLOS 69(1)) 608
 - seabed resources 590, 607–8
 - UNCLOS and 555
- language, rights relating to 268, 281, 294, 297, 318, 365–6, 367, *see also* Minority Languages, European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages (1992)
 - CIS Convention 378
 - Linguistic Rights of Minorities, OSCE Oslo Recommendations (1998) 376
 - Use of Minority Languages in the Broadcast Media, OSCE Guidelines (2003) 376 n192
- Laos, ASEAN membership 1294
- Las Malvinas: *see* Falkland Islands
- laser weapons 1190
- Lateran Treaty (1929) 244
- Latin America
 - 19th century use of force against 1121
 - Andean Pact (1669) 1292 n42
 - asylum and 2, 27, 76–7
 - ECLAC (UN Economic Commission for Latin America) 1213
 - independence 27
 - nuclear weapons, prohibition 610 n297
 - regional international law 2, 27, 76–7, 92

- SC and 39–40, 1207
- SC membership 39–40
- specialised agencies 384
- standard of treatment of alien 27
- US sphere of influence 57
- uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of boundaries and 525–6, 967–8
- Latin American Free Trade Organisation, dissolution 1330 n214
- Latin American Integration Association 1292 n42
- Latvia
 - CIS membership 249
 - minorities in 294 n164
 - USSR invasion/annexation of 468, 961
- Lauterpacht, H. 131–2, 197, 200, 205, 218, 260, 449–50
- law
 - anthropology and 52–3, 55
 - function of 1
 - natural law *see* natural law
 - positivism: *see* positivism
 - psychology and 52–3, 55
 - realism and 49, 53, 55–6
 - sanction and 3–4
 - sociology and 51–4, 55–6, 59
- law-habit 11
- Law Merchant 19
- Law Merchant (*lex mercatoria*) 19
- law of the sea
 - see also* contiguous zone; continental shelf; EEZ; high seas, freedom of; ITLOS; Law of the Sea Convention (1982); marine pollution; marine resources; maritime delimitation; seabed; territorial sea
 - common heritage of mankind and 488, 492, 533–4, 554–5, 629
 - economic pressures and 555
 - websites 1337
- Law of the Sea Convention (1982)
 - as balance of interests 555
 - customary international law and 556, 559, 568
 - entry into force 555–6
 - Geneva Conventions (1958), continuing relevance 555
 - interpretation, responsibility for 1304
 - as law-creating treaty 556
 - pressures leading to 555
 - Third World and 555
- law of the sea, dispute settlement (UNCLOS Part XV) 635–44, *see also* ITLOS
 - arbitral tribunal (Annex VII) 635–6
 - arbitral tribunal (Annex VIII) 636
 - choice of forum 635–6
 - choice of means 635
 - commissions of inquiry 638
 - compulsory procedures (UNCLOS 286 and 287) 635, 636–8
 - conciliation (UNCLOS 284) 635, 638
 - delimitation 637, 640 n443
 - ECJ and 635
 - EEZ rights 583, 636–7
 - expeditious exchange of views (UNCLOS 283) 635
 - fishing rights 635, 636–7, 640 n443
 - freedom of navigation 636
 - historic title 637
 - ICJ and 635
 - international organisations and 636 n410
 - marine scientific research 636
 - military and law enforcement activities 637
 - negotiation obligation (UNCLOS 283(1)) 638, 1015–16
 - parallel conventions, primacy 637–8
 - peaceful settlement obligation (UNCLOS 279) 635
 - submarine cables and pipelines 636
- law of the sea, history and development
 - closed sea/open sea conflict 553–4, 568, 609
 - Consolato del Mare 19
 - encroachment on the freedom of the high seas 554–5, 568–9
 - Geneva Conventions (1958) 555
 - ‘land dominates the sea’ principle 553, 560–1
 - Law Merchant (*lex mercatoria*) 19

- law of the sea (*cont.*)
 - Mare Clausum Sive de Dominio Maris* (Grotius) 24, 553–4
 - Rhodian Sea Law 19
 - UNCLOS/Law of the Sea Convention (1982), role 556
- League of Nations
 - abolition of war and 1121–2, 1215–16
 - dissolution 1330
 - establishment 30, 1284
 - as European organisation 30
 - expulsion from 31
 - failure 30–1
 - human rights and 270–1
 - individual's right of petition 271
 - Liechtenstein and 217
 - minorities protection 31, 271
 - recognition of states and 468
 - self-determination and 251–2
 - terrorism and 1159 n211
 - UN and 31, 225, 1114 n362
 - USA and 30
 - use of force and 1121–2, 1216–17
 - USSR and 30–1, 33
 - withdrawals from 30
- League of Nations, dispute
 - settlement 1216–17
 - arbitration, judicial settlement or inquiry (LoN 12) 1216
 - obligation not to war with party to dispute (LoN 15) 1216–17
 - report and
 - recommendations 1216–17
 - settlement as preferred option 1216
- leases of territory 539, *see also* Hong Kong; servitudes
 - Panama Canal Zone 539
- Lebanon
 - Arab League and 1032
 - International Independent Investigation Commission 427
 - peacekeeping in 1212 n33, 1230–1, 1273
 - UN Interim Force 1212 n33
- Lebanon Special Tribunal
 - applicable law 428
 - Chambers 428
 - Defence Office 428
 - establishment by Chapter VII Security Council resolutions 427–8
 - judges 428
 - Prosecutor 428
 - Registry 428
- Lebanon Special Tribunal, jurisdiction
 - attacks connected in accordance with principles of criminal justice 428
 - attacks in Lebanon between 1 October 2004 and 12 December 2005 428
 - attacks similar in nature and gravity to attack of 14 February 2005 428
 - concurrent/primacy 428
 - later date decided by Security Council and the parties 428
- legal assistance, right to, Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
- legal dispute, definition 1012–13, 1067–8
- legal order, requirements 2–3
- legal personality: *see* international legal personality
- legal representation, right to, death penalty and 321
- legislation, interpretation
 - consistency with international obligations, presumption of 143, 153, 159, 164–5, 168
 - intertemporal approach 160–1
 - unincorporated treaties and 150–1, 183–5
- legislation, website 1334–5
- legislative jurisdiction 649–50, *see also* extraterritorial legislation; foreign law, recognition and enforcement
- legitimacy of criminal law
 - proceedings 417–18
- legitimacy of international law 61–3
- legitimate expectations
 - diplomatic protection 188, 812
 - ratified but unincorporated treaty 151, 168–9
- lex specialis derogat legi generalis* 66, 124, 1181
- jus cogens* and 124
- regional international law and 92–3
- Right of Passage* 92–3

- liberalism and international law 63
- Liberia
 - arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1246–7, 1277–9
 - AU involvement in 1277, 1279
 - Chapter VII action 1278–9
 - civil war 1029
 - ECOMOG and 1029, 1276–8
 - ECOWAS and 1029, 1276–8
 - flags of convenience 611–12
 - IGAD and 1279
 - peacekeeping operations in 1276–9
 - Protocol on Non-Aggression (1978) 1276
 - regional arrangements (Chapter VII) and 1276–9
 - as threat to the peace (SC resolution 788 (1992)) 1238
 - UN failure in 1278–9
 - UN Mission (SC resolution 1509 (2003)) 1278
 - UN Observer Mission 1277
 - Yamoussoukro Accord (1991) 1277
- Liberia–Sierra Leone buffer zone 1277
- liberty and security of person, right to
 - see also* enforced disappearances
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - CIS Convention 378
 - as collective right 299
 - ECHR 5 348
 - ICCPR 9 315
 - indigenous peoples 299
 - as natural right 266
 - UDHR 3 279
- Libya
 - see also* Chad–Libya boundary dispute
 - Aouzou Strip and 1011–12
 - arms and air embargo (UNC 41) 753, 1245
 - embargoes 1245
 - Gulf of Sirte as historic bay 564
 - London embassy 756, 760
 - sanctions (UNC 41) 1270
 - terrorism and 1244–5
 - US air raid 1144
 - US sanctions 692–3
- Liechtenstein
 - ICJ and 217, 1072 n103
- League of Nations membership 217
- nationality/diplomatic protection 813–14
- sovereign status 217
- Torture Committee and 364
- UN membership 217, 1072 n103
- life, right to
 - see also* death penalty; enforced disappearances
 - ACHR 4 274, 381
 - arbitrary loss 317 n284
 - armed conflict and 317 n284
 - CIS Convention 378
 - CRC 6 331
 - date of conception, relevance 381
 - Declaration on Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
 - ECHR 2 274, 348, 357, 358
 - ICCPR 6 275, 314
 - as natural right 266
 - non-derogation principle and 274, 275, 358
- Lisbon Treaty (2007)
 - Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) and 371–2
 - ECHR and 372
 - EU international legal personality 242
 - object and purpose 1288
- Lithuania
 - annexation by USSR (1940) 203
 - CIS membership 249
 - declaration of independence (1990) 203
 - independence/recognition of 203
 - minorities in 294 n164
 - USSR invasion/annexation of 468, 961
- Litvinov Agreement (1933) 162, 465
- lobster fisheries 589
- local government, participation of minorities in 368 n151
- Locke, John 25, 26, 266
- locus standi*: *see* standing/*locus standi*
- Lombok, Strait of 568
- Lord's Resistance Army 413, 1154–5

- lump-sum settlement 823, 840–1, 1044–5
 - distribution, responsibility for 841
 - evidence of customary international law, whether 841
- Lusaka Ceasefire Agreement (1999) 1154, 1264, 1270
- Maastricht Treaty 241
 - human rights and 370
- McDougal, M. S. 59–60
- Macedonia
 - see also* Yugoslavia
 - CoE and 346
 - CoE Torture Committee and 364 n115
 - Council of Europe 346
 - ICTY and 404 n43
 - OSCE Mission 1033
 - peacekeeping operations 1280
 - recognition 462 n71, 464
 - UN membership 464, 1211
 - UNPREDEP 1259–60
- Machiavelli, Nicolò 20
- Maine, H. 22
- Malaysia
 - ASEAN membership 1294
 - immunity of UN special rapporteur 1325–6
- Mali Federation, dissolution (1960) 974, 980
- Malta, Sovereign Order of 243
- Malvinas: *see* Falkland Islands
- Managua Protocol (1993) 381 n219
- Manchuria
 - Japanese invasion of (1931) 30, 468
 - non-recognition doctrine and 468
- mandate system 224–7, *see also* South West Africa mandate
 - definition 31, 224
 - freedom of thought, conscience and religion 271
 - human rights and 270–1
 - mandate agreements as treaties 905
 - Permanent Mandates Commission 271
 - as ‘sacred trust of civilisation’ 224, 251, 271, 277
 - self-determination, right to and 251
 - sovereignty and 225, 493
 - trusteeship system and 224, 225–6, 277
- Manila Declaration (1987) (ASEAN) 1294
- maps as evidence 496, 519–20, 1091
 - large-scale charts 558
- Mareva* injunction 743
- margin of appreciation 356–7
- Marie Byrd Land 536
- Marine Environment Disputes Chamber 640 n443
- marine mammals 624 n356
- marine pollution 620–3, 844, 898–901, *see also* oil pollution
 - coastal state jurisdiction 899
 - compensation for impairment of environment 901
 - due diligence and 855
 - EEZ and 899
 - flag state jurisdiction 899
 - forum 901
 - GCHS 24 620
 - IMO and 899, 900
 - insurance obligation 901
 - limited liability 901
 - port state jurisdiction 899
 - regional conventions 898 n314
 - reporting obligations 900
 - state-owned ships 899
 - strict liability 900
 - territorial sea and 899
 - warships and 899
- marine pollution, conventions relating to
 - Civil Liability Convention (1969/1992) 621, 894 n286, 900–1
 - Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage from Exploration and Exploitation of Seabed Mineral Resources 900 n325
 - International Fund Convention (1971) 621, 901
 - Intervention on the High Seas Convention (1969) 620–1, 798 n124, 900
 - London Dumping Convention (1972) 621, 855, 893

- MARPOL Convention (1973) 621, 898–9
- Oslo Dumping Convention (1972) 621, 895
- Paris Convention on Marine Pollution from Land-Based Sources (1986) 621, 872, 875, 894, 895
- Preparedness, Response and Co-operation Convention (1990) 870–1, 900
- Prevention of Pollution of the Seas by Oil (1954) 621
- UNCLOS 621–3, 875, 898 n314, 899
- marine resources
 - see also* seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI)
 - as common heritage of mankind 554–5
 - conservation obligations and rights 572
 - fishing zones and 581
 - freedom of the high seas doctrine, impact on 554–5
 - international law, role 48
 - landlocked states and 608
- marine scientific research
 - dispute settlement 636
 - EEZ 582, 583 n134
 - high seas 609, 610
 - innocent passage and 572
 - seabed resources distinguished 629 n374
- maritime delimitation 590–607, *see also*
 - baselines; continental shelf; Continental Shelf Convention (1958), customary international law and
 - 3-mile and 12-mile territorial sea limits distinguished 592
 - access to fish stocks 600, 602, 606
 - agreement, need for 590–1, 595–6
 - coastal configuration 596–7, 598, 604, 606
 - coastal lengths 597, 598, 599, 605, 606
 - customary international law in relation to continental shelf and EEZ, relevance 601
 - defence arrangements and 602
 - delimitations involving opposite and adjacent coasts distinguished 591, 592, 600
 - dispute settlement 637, 640 n443
 - distance 597
 - distributive justice, exclusion 107 n159, 108, 597
 - economic position of two states 597–8
 - equidistance/special circumstances principle 85–6, 107 n154, 591–5, 599, 600, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 916
 - equitable principles 106–8, 593–605
 - GCTS provisions 591, 592–5
 - geography as key factor 596, 598, 602
 - historic title and 591, 592
 - islands, relevance 594–5, 598, 603, 605
 - jurisprudence: *see* equity, jurisprudence
 - landmass 597–8
 - marine scientific research considerations 602
 - median line 591–2, 594, 595, 597, 598, 599–600, 603
 - methodology 591–2, 595–6, 597, 598–9, 604–6
 - modus vivendi* line 605–6
 - non-encroachment 593, 597, 598, 599, 606
 - non-refashioning of nature 107, 597, 606
 - oil resources and 602, 606
 - practice of parties 606–7
 - proportionality 593, 597, 598, 599, 601, 603, 604
 - security considerations 600, 606
 - single continental shelf and fishing zone/EEZ boundary 595–6, 601–4
 - ‘special circumstances’ and ‘relevant circumstances’, relevance 599 n234
 - territorial sea 591–2
 - UNCLOS provisions 591–2, 595–605
 - uti possidetis* principle and 591
- maritime law: *see* law of the sea
- Maroua Declaration (1975), validity 134, 914

- Marrakesh Accords (2001) 881
 Marrakesh Agreement (1994) 1287
 marriage, right of, ECHR 12 348
 Marshall Islands 225
 Marshall Plan 1288 n21
 Martens clause 1169 n9
 Marxism and international law 31–2,
 267
 in China 37–8
 mass killings, as ‘grave breach’ 403
 material breach of treaty: *see* treaties,
 termination for material breach
 (VCLT 60)
 Matsu 235
 Mauritania, territorial claims against
 Morocco 237, 254, 491, 525,
 1110
 Mayotte 1019 n42
 Media, OSCE Representative on the
 freedom of the press 377
 distinction 1018
 Hague Conventions
 (1899/1907) 1019
 third party involvement 108
 mediation: *see* good offices/mediation
 mentally ill, protection of, IACoMHR
 recommendation on 383 n228
 mercenaries, recruitment, use, financing
 and training
 as act of aggression 1153 n177
 Convention on (1989) 1173 n31
 ILC Draft Code of Crimes against the
 Peace and Security of Mankind
 (1991) 671
 special rapporteur 305
 MERCOSUR
 membership 1038
 website 1340
 MERCOSUR dispute settlement
 procedures (Protocol of
 Brasilia) 1038 n165
 arbitration 1038 n165
 negotiations 1038 n165
 merger of states 208–9
 as absorption process 965–6, 997–8
 Germany (1871) 28
 Germany (1990): *see* Germany,
 FRG–GDR unification (1990)
 Italy (1870) 28
 Yemen Arab Republic/People’s
 Democratic Republic of Yemen
 (1990) 963–4
 merger of states, state succession
 and 963–6
 nationality and 1007
 state archives 996
 state property and 992
 treaty succession and 971–3
 Mesopotamia 14
 meteorology, remote sensing 551
 Mexico–US relations, Texas, secession
 of 998
 MFN treatment 839
 MICIVIH 1239
 Micronesia 224, 225
 Middle Ages 18, 19–20, 21 n71
 Middle East
 see also individual countries
 1948 War 1237
 early treaties 14
 ICRC and 1201
 SC and 446, 1209, 1241
 SC resolution 54 (1948) 1237
 SC resolution 242 (1967) 469, 502,
 1209, 1221, 1223
 as threat to the peace (SC resolution
 54 (1948)) 1237
 UN peacekeeping force, role 1267
 UN peacekeeping force,
 withdrawal 1216
 UN Secretary-General and 1227
 UNEF 1226, 1228, 1272
 UNEF II 1227, 1228 n117
 UNGA special sessions 1212
 Uniting for Peace and 1273
 UNTSO 1226
 US mediation 1018
 Middle East Peace Conference
 (1993) 245
 Migrant Workers Committee 333–4
 establishment 334
 individual complaints 334
 inter-state complaints 334
 membership 334
 reporting obligations 334
 Migrant Workers Convention (1990)
 applicability (MWC 2 and 3)
 333

- conclusion/entry into force 333
- minorities and 369 n151
- migrant workers, rights of
 - collective expulsion, protection from (MWC 22) 333
 - cultural identity (MWC 31) 333
 - education (MWC 30) 333
 - equality of treatment with nationals 333
 - health/medical treatment (MWC 28) 333
 - IACoMHR 383 n228
 - 'migrant' (MWC 2) 333
 - protection of minorities and 296
 - regular/documented situation and 333
 - trade union, freedom to join (MRC 26) 333
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280
- migration
- military necessity
 - belligerent occupation and 401, 1181–2
 - cultural objects and 1186
 - humanitarian considerations and 1181–2, 1183, 1184
 - ICTY and 443 n229
 - protection of cultural property and 1186
- Military Staffs Committee (UNC 47) 1244, 1251, 1254
- mineral resources
 - Antarctica: *see* Antarctic Minerals Resources Convention (1988)
 - continental shelf 584–5
 - seabed: *see* seabed resources, Conventions and other international instruments relating to; seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI)
- mines and booby traps
 - Corfu Channel* 575–6, 784–6
 - state responsibility and 785–6
 - US mining of Nicaraguan waters 785
- mines and booby traps, prohibition of use against civilians 1189–90
- Minorities, Framework Convention for the Protection of (1994) (CoE) 365–8
 - CAHMIN (Committee for the Protection of National Minorities) 366 n135
 - conclusion and entry into force 366
 - FRY and 367 n141
 - 'national minorities', absence of definition 368
 - obligations 366–7
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) and 366
- Minorities, Framework Convention for the Protection of (1994) (CoE), implementation 367–8
 - Advisory Committee 367–8
 - Committee of Ministers and 367–8
 - conclusions and recommendations 367–8
 - individual complaints, exclusion 367
 - monitoring arrangements 367, 368
 - non-parties and 367 n141
 - publication of conclusions and recommendations 368
 - publication of reports 367
 - reporting obligations 367
- Minorities, Independent Expert on 297
- Minorities, OSCE High Commissioner on National
 - confidentiality of proceedings 376
 - Education Rights of Minorities, Hague Recommendation (1996) 376 n194
 - establishment 376, 1289
 - Linguistic Rights of Minorities, Oslo Recommendations (1998) 376
 - Public Life, Lund Guidelines on the Effective Participation of National Minorities in (1999) 376 n194
 - Use of Minority Languages in the Broadcast Media, Guidelines on (2003) 376 n194
- minorities, protection of 293–301, *see also* Minorities, Framework Convention for the Protection of (1994) (CoE)
 - Aaland Islands 294 n162
 - acquired rights and 524 n207

- minorities, protection (*cont.*)
 - affirmative action 296–7
 - CIS Convention 378
 - collective activity, right of 271
 - as collective right 271, 281, 294, 299, 366
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - Council of Europe 298, 365–8
 - cultural life 294, 296, 297, 366
 - Declaration on Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
 - determination of existence as objective matter 296, 298
 - differential treatment, justification 296–7
 - Eastern and Central European states and 293–4, 297–8
 - ECHR 14 365
 - equality of fact, need for 271, 288
 - gender discrimination and 297
 - geographic proportions, avoidance of measures changing 367
 - ICCPR 27 294–7
 - indigenous peoples: *see* indigenous peoples
 - as individual right 294–5
 - individual's standing 259, 294
 - language, right to 281, 294, 297, 365, 367, *see also* Minority Languages, European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages (1992)
 - League of Nations, role 31, 294
 - migrant workers and 296
 - 'minorities' 295, 296, 368
 - Minority Schools in Albania* 271, 288
 - nationality of individuals, relevance 295, 296
 - Nazi exploitation of minority issues 294
 - NGOs, role 297
 - Nigerian minorities in
 - Cameroon 524 n207
 - non-discrimination and 271, 366
 - OSCE/CSCE 298, 376
 - Peace Treaty (Italy–Allied Powers) (1947) 294 n166
 - petition, right of 294
 - political life, right to participate in 366
 - recognition of states and 451, 452, 461
 - religion, right to practise 281, 297, 366
 - reserves 296
 - Roma 297 n198
 - satellite broadcasting and 550
 - self-determination, right to 522–3
 - technical co-operation and 297
 - territorially based rights 296
 - UN Declaration on (UNGA resolution 47/135) 297
 - UNHRC 305
 - UNHRC General Comment 23 296–7, 318
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280, 366
 - women and 318–19, 321
 - WWI minorities treaties 259, 271, 293–4
 - WWII, treaty provisions following 294
- Minorities Sub-Commission: *see* Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of
- Minority Languages, European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages (1992) 365–6
 - accession by non-CoE members 366
 - measures to promote use of 365
- Minority Languages, European Charter for Regional or Minority Languages (1992), Committee of Experts 365–6
- membership 365
- reporting obligations 365
- standing/*locus standi* 365
- minors
 - see also* child, rights of
 - death penalty and 318
- Minsk Process 1033 n142
- MINURSO 1229
- mixed arbitral tribunals/claims commissions

- diplomatic protection and 823
- individuals, standing 258–9
- Mexican Claims commissions 1056
- Moldova
 - CoE membership 346 n4
 - EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States (1991) and 451–2
 - independence 238
 - OSCE Mission 375, 1033
- monism 29, 131–2
 - equality of states and 132
 - pacta sunt servanda* as basis 29
 - positivism and 51, 131
- Montenegro
 - see also* Yugoslavia
 - secession 963 n39
 - UN membership 1211
- Montreal Rules of International Law
 - Applicable to Transfrontier Pollution (1982) 856–7, 864, 872
- MONUC 1154, 1262–3, 1264–5
- moon
 - as common heritage of mankind 548–9, 882
 - demilitarisation 548
 - international regime 548–9
 - peaceful purposes, limitation of activities to 548
- Moon Treaty (1979) 548–9, 881–2, *see also* Outer Space Treaty (1967)
- moral principles
 - China and 37
 - human rights and 266
 - international law and 2, 3–4, 12, 54, 74–5, 1010
 - natural law and 25, 53–4
 - ‘positive morality’ 3–4
 - positivism and 29, 49
- Morocco
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - SADR and 236–7
 - territorial claims against Mauritania 237, 254, 491, 525, 1110
 - territorial claims over Algerian territory 525
 - Western Sahara and 525, *see also* Western Sahara
- Morocco–France relationship (Treaty of Fez (1912)) 216
- sovereign status of Morocco 216
- Moscow Mechanism: *see* Human Dimension of the CSCE (Moscow Mechanism)
- Mozambique
 - General Peace Agreement (1992) 1223 n97
 - ONUMOZ 1229 n122
 - peacekeeping operations 1229
 - Rhodesia and 1241 n180, 1242 n189
- Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency 842–3
- multinational private companies
 - see also* Transnational Corporations, UN Commission on
 - definition 249–50
 - international legal personality 249–50
- multinational private companies, codes of conduct
 - draft Norms on the Responsibilities of Transnational Corporations and other Business Enterprises with Regard to Human Rights (2003) 250
- ILO Tripartite Declaration of Principles concerning Multinational Enterprises and Social Policy 250
- OECD Guidelines for Multinational Enterprises 250
- UN Commission on Transnational Corporations, draft Code of Conduct 250
- World Bank Guidelines on the Treatment of Foreign Direct Investment 250, 828, 835, 837, 842 n373
- multinational public companies
 - definition 248–9
 - examples 249
 - international legal personality 248–9
 - international organisations distinguished 1296

- municipal courts and international law 138–79, *see also* judicial decisions as source of international law
 - cross-citation between municipal and international courts 130
 - ECJ decisions and 140
 - ECtHR decisions and 140, 156
 - ICJ decisions 158–9
 - international law as defence 130
 - municipal court decisions as source of international law 111, 112
 - public policy considerations 139
- municipal and international law, interrelationship 129–94, *see also* municipal courts and international law
 - ambiguity 142–8
 - applicability of municipal law in international tribunals 136–7
 - conflict between 140, 143, 159, 164–6
 - consent and 143
 - distinction between 1, 2–4, 130
 - dualism: *see* dualism
 - growing interpenetration 129–30, 138
 - incorporation doctrine: *see* incorporation doctrine
 - jurisprudence 134–7, 141–7, 157–61
 - monism: *see* monism
 - positivism and 131
 - primacy 131–7, 158–9, 164, 177–9
 - state sovereignty and 178
 - transformation doctrine: *see* transformation doctrine
 - treaties: *see* treaties, compliance/implementation (VCLT 26–7); treaties, interpretation (VCLT 31–3)
 - UK practice 139–57
 - US practice 150–1, 157–66
 - websites 1334–5
- municipal law
 - as defence to breach of international law 133–6, 137, 138, 648, 941
 - as evidence of compliance with international obligations 137
 - as evidence of state practice 83, 136–7
- murder: *see* wilful killing/murder
- mutual assistance 674
- Myanmar 1223 n97
 - ASEAN membership 1294
- NAFTA (1992)
 - ‘expropriation’ 830 n305, 832 n312
 - expropriation, requirements 835 n335
 - ‘full and equitable treatment’ (NAFTA 1105) 1039 n174
 - ‘full protection and security’ (NAFTA 1105) 1039 n174
 - interpretation, FTC responsibility for 1039
 - object and purpose 1038
 - parties to 1038
 - website 1340
- NAFTA dispute settlement
 - procedures 1038–40
 - applicable law 1039
 - Arbitral Panels 1039–40
 - bi-national panel reviews 1039
 - compliance obligation 1039–40
 - Final Reports 1039–40
 - financial services provisions 1039
 - Free Trade Commission 1039
 - good of-
 - fices/mediation/conciliation 1039
 - ICSID Additional Facility 1038–9
 - ICSID arbitral tribunal 1038–9, 1041
 - individual investor/state party disputes (Chapter 11) 1038–9
 - Initial Reports 1039–40
 - inter-state disputes (Chapter 20) 1039–40
 - interim measures 1039
 - Scientific Review Board 1039
 - suspension of benefits of equivalent effect 1040
 - UNCITRAL Arbitration Rules and 1038–9
 - website 1340
- Nagorno-Karabakh 237–8, 375 n186, 1033 n142
- NAIL (New Approaches to International Law) 63–4
- name, right to
 - ACHR 18 275, 381

- CRC 7 331
- non-derogation 275
- Namibia
 - see also* South West Africa mandate
 - independence 227, 1234
 - intervention in Congo 1154
 - status 225–7, 248
 - SWAPO and 248
 - UN and 1234
 - UN responsibility for 226
 - UNGA Special Session 1212 n33
 - Uniting for Peace and 1273
 - UNTAG 231 n177, 1229
- Namibia, UN Council for 303, 1212
 - establishment, role and purpose 248
 - international legal personality 248
 - membership and accountability 248
 - travel and identity documents 248
- Napoleonic wars 27, 1282
- nation-state
 - death of 67 n87
 - international law, history and development and 9, 13–14, 20–2, 48 n16, 58, 1282–3
 - just war and 1119–21
 - as principal subject of international law 1, 10
- national debt: *see* public debt; state succession to public debt
- national identity, importance 35, 40–1, 213
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
- national liberation movements (NLMs)
 - decolonisation and 245
 - ECOSOC and 246
 - international legal personality 245–8
 - petition to UN, right of 245
 - PLO as 248
 - recognition by AU or Arab League, effect 245–6
 - recognition as state, effect 246
 - UNGA observer status 245
- national security
 - coastal state rights 570
 - human rights and 357–8, 1181–2
 - protective principle: *see* protective principle
 - security zones 584
- national treatment, migrant workers' right to 333
- nationalisations: *see* expropriation/ nationalisation of property of foreign national
- nationalism 27–8
- nationality
 - civil jurisdiction and 663
 - definition 660–1
 - diplomatic protection and 258, 661, *see also* nationality of claims
 - dual nationality: *see* dual nationality
 - Hague Convention on the Conflict of Nationality Laws (1930) 660, 812–13
 - as link between individual and international law 258, 660–1, 808–9, 813–14
 - Nationality Decrees in Tunis and Morocco* 660, 813
 - Nottebohm* 660, 813–14
 - obligations of national 660
 - rights deriving from 659–60
 - state practice 813–14
- nationality, acquisition/grant
 - births on ships and 662 n69
 - children of diplomatic personnel 661–2
 - children of enemy aliens 662
 - civil law practice 661
 - common law practice 661–2
 - genuine link, need for 258, 611–13, 643, 660–1, 664, 813–14, 815, 1005, 1006
 - jus sanguinis* 661
 - jus soli* 661
 - naturalisation 663
 - in occupied territory 662
 - right to choose (ICCPR/ICESCR) 1005
 - state succession and 489
 - state's right to determine 258, 812–13
 - state's right to determine rules relating to 648, 660
- nationality as basis of jurisdiction
 - criminal jurisdiction 654, 659–64
 - territorial jurisdiction and 653
 - universal jurisdiction and 673

- nationality of claims 258, 648, 808–19,
 - see also* diplomatic protection
 - companies and 815–18
 - continuity requirement 810–11, 814
 - ICSID 1042
 - ILC Articles on State Responsibility and 808
- nationality of companies 1042
 - diplomatic protection and 815–17
 - foreign control, effect 1042
 - ILC Draft Articles on Diplomatic Protection 817
 - subsidiary companies incorporated abroad 688 n219
- Nationality, European Convention on (1997), state succession and 1005–6
- nationality of
 - aircraft 664
 - ships: *see* ships (nationality and registration)
- nationality of married women 662
 - Convention on the Elimination of Discrimination against Women (1979) and 662
 - Convention on the Nationality of Married Women (1957) and 662
 - nationality of children, rights in regard to 662
- nationality, right to
 - ACHR 20 275
 - child (ICCPR 24(3)/CRC 7) 318, 331, 659 n59, 662
 - European Convention on Nationality (1948) 659 n59
 - ICCPR 659 n59
 - illegitimacy 661
 - indigenous peoples 299
 - minorities and 295, 296
 - non-derogation 275
 - UDHR 659 n59
- nationality and state succession 957, 1004–8
 - ACY Opinion No. 2 1005
 - agreement as preferred option 1005–6
 - applicable law 1004
 - automatic acquisition of new nationality 1005
 - cession of territory and 1007
 - change, presumption of 1004–5, 1006
 - dual nationality and 1004–5
 - European Convention on Nationality (1997) and 1005–6
 - family unity and 1007
 - genuine link and 1005, 1006
 - habitual residents 1006, 1007–8
 - ILC Draft Articles on (1999) 1006–8
 - merger/dissolution of state and 1007–8
 - option to retain original nationality and depart 1005
 - retention of original nationality, provision for 1004–5
 - right of option 1005, 1007–8
 - right to a nationality and 1006
 - rules relating to, obligation of new sovereign to declare 1004
 - Statelessness, Convention on the Reduction of (1961) and 1005
 - statelessness, obligation to avoid 1005, 1006
- nationals abroad, use of force to protect:
 - see* protection of nationals abroad, use of force
- native peoples, South American Indians 23
- NATO 1289–90
 - collective security and 1290
 - collective self-defence (UNC 51) and 1137, 1146–7
 - EAPC and 1290
 - humanitarian intervention in Kosovo 1156–7
 - membership 1290
 - object and purpose 47
 - origin and purpose 57, 1210, 1289–90
 - Partnership for Peace 1290
 - protection of civilian population in case of armed conflict 1185 n88
 - September 11 attacks and 1290 n30
 - Status of Forces Agreement (1951) 184, 658, 776 n448, 1320 n170
 - structure and organisation 1290
 - territorial integrity and 1290

- UN Security Council and 1210
- US Afghanistan operations and 1136
- NATO, dispute settlement
 - arbitration (inter-state) 1032
 - cod war and 1032
 - conciliation 1032
 - good offices/mediation 1032
- natural boundaries 524
- natural law 53–4
 - absolute values 25
 - academic writers, influence 112
 - aggression, prohibition and 54
 - Catholic Church and 53
 - equality of states and 215
 - general principles of
 - law/international law and 99
 - Greek concept 17, 21
 - human rights and 54, 258, 266–7
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms
 - and 125–6, 266–7
 - jus gentium* and 17–18
 - justice and 24, 54
 - moral principles and 25, 53–4
 - as moralistic system 25
 - obligatory character of international
 - law and 23
 - pacta sunt servanda* and 23
 - positivism and 24–7, 49–54
 - reason and 24
 - Renaissance and 22
 - Roman concept 17–18
 - Spanish philosophy and 23
 - state sovereignty and 27, 132
 - Stoic concept 17
 - treaties, role 25
- natural resources, right to
 - indigenous peoples and 300, 390
 - moon: *see* moon
- natural resources, right to permanent
 - sovereignty over
 - Stockholm Declaration 850
 - UN Council for Namibia and 248
 - UNGA resolution 1803 (XVII) 833, 834–5
- Natural Resources, UN Committee
 - on 1213 n42
- natural rights 26–7
- naturalisation 663
- naturalism: *see* natural law
- Nauru
 - ICJ and 1072 n103
 - international legal personality 199, 224 n136, 1297
- naval exercises, right to conduct on the
 - high seas 610
- Nazism
 - minority issues, exploitation of 294
 - natural law and 54
- necessity
 - see also* *force majeure*; military necessity
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* 798–9
- ILC Articles on State Responsibility 798
- Oil Platforms* 1141
- Rainbow Warrior* 798
- responsibility for breach of
 - international obligation
 - and 798–9, 1313 n141
- Saiga* (No. 2) 798–9
- self-defence, right to 793, 1131, 1134 n80, 1140–1
- state responsibility and 793
- negotiation as means of dispute
 - settlement 638, 1014–17, *see also* exhaustion of diplomatic negotiations
 - arbitration, role in 1054
 - at request of Security Council 1221
 - consultation obligation 1015 n22
 - court's direction for 1016
 - good faith obligation 1016, 1017
 - as preliminary to other
 - methods 1015
 - threat to the peace and (UNC 33) 1017
- negotiation as means of dispute
 - settlement, treaty
 - obligation 1015–17, 1070
- IMCO (1948) 1016 n25
- Manila Declaration on the Peaceful Settlement of International Disputes (1982) (UNGA resolution 37/10) 1013 n17, 1016 n28
- MERCOSUR 1038 n165

- negotiation as means (*cont.*)
 - Non-Navigational Uses of International Waterways Convention (1997) 885
 - Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (1968) 1017
 - Revised General Act for the Settlement of Disputes (1949) 1016 n25
 - UNC 33 1017
 - UNCLOS 283(1) 638, 1015
- Netherlands
 - civil jurisdiction 652
 - customary international law and 173
 - deep sea mining 630
 - freedom of the seas and 24
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - Indonesia and 1221
 - international law in municipal courts 172
 - nuclear power installations 775 n116
 - recognition of governments 459 n56
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 172–3
- neutral zones 229 n168
- neutrality (general)
 - civil war and 1150
 - development of law of 1121
- neutrality zones 584
- New Hebrides, status 228–9
- new states
 - see also* developing countries
 - acquiescence in existing rules of international law 91
 - international law, impact on 38–42
- New Territories (Hong Kong) 539, 1008
- New Zealand
 - Antarctic claims 535–6
 - Cook Islands and 239
 - customary international law and 167
 - French nuclear tests: *see* nuclear tests
 - international law in municipal courts 167
 - Rainbow Warrior*: *see* *Rainbow Warrior*
 - recognition of governments 459 n56
 - unincorporated treaties and 169
- NGOs
 - see also* Red Cross (ICRC)
 - 19th century origin 1283
 - African Court of Human and Peoples' Rights and 394–5
 - environmental protection and 846
 - ESC and 362
 - human rights and 271, 276 n69
 - ICJ, standing 1073
 - minorities and 297
 - outer space and 546
 - role 1283
 - as subjects of international law 261
 - UNHRC and 315–16
- Nicaragua
 - border conflicts 1032
 - election observers 1229 n122
 - human rights in 383
 - indigenous peoples in 300
 - ONUEN 1229
- Nice Treaty 241 n238
- Niger 1253 n246
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
- Nigeria
 - civil war in 460–1, 526, 1152 n175, 1201, 1233–4
 - Liberia, involvement in 1276–7
 - Maroua Declaration (1975): *see* Maroua Declaration (1975)
 - secession, right to 526
- non-aggression principle: *see* aggression, prohibition
- non-alignment 57, 1287
- non bis in idem* principle
 - ECHR Protocol VII 348
 - ICC 415
 - ICTR 408
 - ICTY 405
- non-combatants/persons *hors de combat*
 - crimes against humanity and 438
 - non-international armed conflict and (GC, common article 3) 435, 1194–5
- non-derogation principle
 - amendment or modification of treaty and 931–2
 - armed conflict 274, 1197
 - child, rights of 275
 - cruel and inhuman treatment 274
 - family life 275

- freedom of thought, conscience and religion 274–5
- fundamental rights 125, 126, 275, 1197
- habeas corpus 389
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms 125, 126, 275, 807, 1197
- public life 275
- slavery 274, 275
- torture 274, 275
- non-discrimination principle 286–9, *see also* differential treatment, justifiable; gender discrimination; Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of; minorities, protection of; non-discrimination principle; racial discrimination; religious discrimination, prohibition; women, rights of
- BITs 839
- child, rights of 318, 357
- customary international law 275, 286–7
- ‘discrimination’ 288, 318
- ECHR Protocol XIII 348
- equality in fact, need for 288
- EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371
- expropriation and 842
- as general principle of law 288
- Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
- ICCPR 286, 287–8
- ICESCR 286
- minorities and 271, 366
- MWC provisions 333
- racial discrimination: *see* racial discrimination
- regional instruments 286–7
- rights of the child and 318
- UDHR 286
- UNC 55 and 56 286–7
- UNHRC General Comment 22 287 n128, 288 n135, 318
- WWI peace treaties 271
- non-international armed conflict 1194–8, *see also* belligerents; civil war; rebellions
- civilians, protection of 435, 1196
- Coard v. USA* 1197
- colonial domination, alien occupation and racist regimes, fights against as international conflicts 1149 n157, 1172, 1173 n30, 1195 n143
- common article 3, applicability 1194–5
- customary international law 436
- Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards 1198
- definition/classification as 1194
- domestic law in conflict state, continuing applicability 1196 n145
- due process/fair trial 1195
- Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) and 404–5, 408, 435, 1149–51
- Genocide Convention (1948) and 284
- hostage-taking 1195
- human dignity, respect for 1195, 1196
- human rights and humanitarian law, convergence 1197–8
- humanitarian law threshold 1198
- ICRC draft principles 1202–3
- individual criminal responsibility and 404–5
- internal disturbances distinguished 1195
- international humanitarian law and 404–5, 408, 435
- non-combatants/persons *hors de combat* (GC, common article 3) 435, 1194–5
- non-combatants/persons *hors de combat* (Protocol I) 1195–6
- in Rwanda 435
- terrorism and 1196
- torture and 1195, 1196
- wounded and sick 1195
- non-intervention principle: *see* intervention in affairs of another state, prohibition
- non liquet* 98–9, 1087, 1189
- Non-Proliferation Treaty: *see* Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (1968)

- non-recognition, effect
 - see also* recognition (general), legal effects; recognition of states, legal effects and underlying theories
 - acts consistent with forum state's constitution 483
 - acts not hostile to forum state 483
 - acts not intended to circumvent forum state policy 484
 - humanitarian acts and 470 n112
 - in international law 470–1
 - in municipal law 471–86
 - on private rights and obligations 478–9, 483–4
 - on state's international law rights and obligations 470–1
- non-recognition policy 457, 468–70
 - American Civil War and 482–3
 - Angola and 482
 - Bantustans and 469
 - companies, legal personality 479
 - definition 468
 - economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41) and 470
 - erga omnes* obligation 470
 - Estonia and 483
 - ex injuria jus non oritur* principle and 468
 - GDR 455, 471, 477–8, 483–4
 - Iraqi invasion of Kuwait 469–70
 - Kellogg–Briand Pact (1928), relevance 468
 - League of Nations and 468
 - Lithuania's declaration of independence (1940) 203
 - Manchuria and 468
 - Namibia 470
 - Panama Canal and 457
 - prohibition on the use of force against territorial integrity 469
 - Rhodesian UDI (1965) 469
 - Stimson doctrine 468
 - title to territory obtained through aggression 470
 - TRNC and 236, 464, 469–70
 - USSR annexation of Lithuania (1940) 203
- non-retroactivity principle (*nullum crimen sine lege*)
 - ACHR 9 274
 - ECHR 7 274, 348
 - Eichmann* 672
 - ICCPR 15 275
 - non-derogation 274
 - universal jurisdiction and 672
- non-retroactivity principle (treaties) (VCLT 28) 926
 - Torture Convention 329
- non-self-governing territories
 - human rights and 277
 - promotion of well-being as a 'sacred trust' 277
- Racial Discrimination Committee and 313–14
 - Western Sahara 237
- Noriega, Manuel, status 736, 1151
- North Atlantic Fisheries Organisation (NAFO) 626–7
- North Korea
 - arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1247
 - recognition of 445
 - security zone 584 n139
- North Pole, continental shelf 588
- North Sea, Declaration on the Co-ordinated Extension of Jurisdiction in 583
- North–South divide 41
- North Vietnam
 - French mediation 1018
 - informal contacts 463
 - recognition of government 455
- Northern Ireland
 - CoE's Torture Committee and 363 n115
 - interrogation techniques in 357
- Northern Mariana Islands 225
- Norway
 - Antarctic claims 535–6
 - Arctic territory 535
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - minorities in 295
 - Spitzbergen and 535
 - straight baselines 559–60
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 178

- Norway/Sweden Union
 - dissolution 980
 - treaty-making powers 909
- nuclear accidents
 - assistance 891–2
 - Assistance in case of Nuclear Accident Convention (1986) 889, 891–2
 - balance between interests of
 - sovereignty and the international community 892
 - Early Notification in case of Nuclear Accident Convention (1986) 890–1
 - Nordic Mutual Assistance Agreement (1963) 891
 - Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents Convention (1992) 870–1, 897
 - UNDRO and 891
- nuclear activities 888–95
 - environmental protection and 845
 - IAEA: *see* IAEA
 - innocent passage and 574 n95
 - outer space 547, 858 n72, 881–2
 - recognition of states and 452
- nuclear activities, civil liability 893–5
 - access to courts of foreign polluter and 893
 - Civil Liability for Nuclear Damage Convention (1963) 893–5
 - enforcement of foreign judgments and 895
 - insurance obligation 894
 - inter-state claims 895
 - jurisdiction 895
 - Maritime Carriage of Nuclear Material, Convention Relating to Civil Liability (1971) 894 n282
 - Nuclear Ships, Brussels Convention on the Liability of Operators of (1962) 894 n282
 - operator responsibility 894
 - state responsibility and 894
 - strict liability 894
 - Supplementary Compensation for Nuclear Damage Convention (1997) 894–5
 - Third Party Liability in the Field of Nuclear Energy (1960) 893–5
- nuclear activities, treaties and other international instruments relating to
 - see also* nuclear accidents; Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (1968)
 - bilateral agreements 866 n116
 - Nordic Mutual Assistance Agreement (1963) 891
 - Nuclear Safety Convention 892–3
 - Nuclear Test Ban Treaty (1963) 471, 610, 888–9
- Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (1968)
 - good faith negotiations
 - obligation 1017
 - Iran and 1247
 - legality of nuclear weapons and 889
 - prohibition of use of nuclear weapons and 1189
 - recognition of states and 452, 976
- nuclear power installations 890 n254
 - bilateral agreements relating to 866 n116
 - EIAs 866 n116
 - environmental protection and 850, 866, 889
 - Nuclear Safety Convention (1994) 892–3
- nuclear-powered ships 225, 574 n95
- Nuclear Safety Convention (1994) 892–3
 - compliance obligations 892–3
 - licensing obligation 893
 - non-binding provisions 893
 - reporting obligations 892–3
 - responsibility for safety 892, 893
- Nuclear Ships, Brussels Convention on the Liability of Operators of (1962) 894 n282
- Nuclear Test Ban Treaty (1963)
 - China and 888
 - France and 888
 - third parties and 610, 888–9
- nuclear tests
 - customary international law 610
 - environmental protection and 889
 - freedom of the high seas and 610

- nuclear waste
 - High Seas Convention (1958) and 620, 889 n251
 - IAEA Code of Practice on the International Transboundary Movement of Radioactive Waste (1990) 893 n277, 896–7
 - IAEA Principles of Radioactive Waste Management (1995) 893 n277, 897 n302
 - Safety of Spent Fuel and Radioactive Waste Management Convention (1997) 893 n277, 897 n302
- nuclear weapons
 - absence of prohibition 1188–9
 - balance of terror and 43
 - CIS 1291
 - crimes against humanity and 317
 - environmental protection and 793
 - international law, effect on 43
 - Iran 1247
 - legality 99 n112, 889
 - non-proliferation obligations: *see* Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (1968)
 - outer space 545
 - regional treaties 610 n297
 - right to life and 317
 - self-defence, right to (UNC 51) and 99 n112, 1142–3
 - UNHRC General Comment 6 and 317
- Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal
 - aggression 400, 439
 - annexation of territory, effect 501–2
 - composition 399–400
 - conspiracy and 399
 - crimes against humanity and 399, 400, 436
 - crimes against peace and 399, 400
 - as customary international law 400
 - heads of state and 735
 - individual criminal responsibility 46, 399–401, 669, 735, 1200
 - superior orders defence 400
 - UNGA resolution 95 (I) and 400
 - universal jurisdiction 669–70
 - war crimes and 399, 400, 434–5
 - website 1339
- OAS
 - see also* ACHR (1969); Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, Inter-American Protocol (1985); Forced Disappearances of Persons, Inter-American Convention on (1994); IAComHR, IACtHR; Torture Convention (Inter-American) (1985); Women, Inter-American Convention on the Prevention, Punishment and Eradication of Violence Against (1994)
 - American Declaration on Indigenous Peoples 300
 - as collective security system 1292
 - collective self-defence and 1291–2
 - establishment (1948) 1291–2
 - EU powers distinguished 1292
 - Haiti, involvement in 1275–6
 - Helms-Burton legislation, Judicial Committee Opinion on 693–4
 - immunities 1319 n169
 - Inter-American Treaty of Reciprocal Assistance (Rio Treaty) 1291–2
 - mediation 1019 n42
 - object and purpose 47, 1290
 - Pan American Union and 1291
 - Privileges and Immunities of the OAS Agreement (1949) 1319 n169
 - recognition of states and 451, 458 n49
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VIII) 1274 n343, 1275–6
 - structure and organisation 1292
 - treaty status 389
 - website 1340
- OAS Charter (1948) 1291–2
 - American Declaration of the Rights and Duties (1948) and 382, 389, 469
 - dispute settlement provisions 1030
 - Protocols amending 381 n219, 1292
 - recognition of states, legal effects 448

- OAS, dispute settlement 1030–1
 - Bogotá Charter (1948) 1030–1
 - Bogotá Pact (1948) (Treaty of Pacific Settlement) 1023, 1032
 - Costa Rica–Nicaragua frontier incidents 1031
 - Inter-American Committee on Peaceful Settlement 1031
 - Inter-American Peace Committee 1031
 - International Verification and Follow-up Commission 1031
 - OAS Permanent Council 1031
- OAU: *see* African Union
- obscene publications, individual
 - criminal responsibility and 399
- occupation (acquisition of territory) 448, 491, 495, 502–11, *see also* belligerent occupation; territorial title/territorial sovereignty, evidence of including *effectivités*
 - Arctic 535
 - continental shelf 587
 - definition 503
 - Falkland Islands 532
 - Pacific Islands 512
 - terra nullius* and 503
- occupied territory
 - see also* Israel occupied territories
 - East Timor 425
 - ECHR and 350
 - ICCPR and 322
 - state responsibility for acts in 350
- Oder–Neisse (FRG–Poland)
 - border 228, 965
- ODIHR
 - Monitoring Section 377
 - role 377
- OECD
 - environmental protection and 889
 - Guidelines for Multinational Enterprises 250
 - hazardous waste and 896
 - Marshall Plan and 1288 n21
 - ‘polluter pays’ principle 870
 - pollution and 870, 871
 - purpose 1288 n21
 - website 1338, 1340
- OECS, treaty (1981) as basis for US intervention in Grenada 1183 n79, 1276 n355
- OECS/CSCE, conciliation 1022 n65, 1023
- Office for Democratic Institutions and Human Rights (OSCE) 1289
- offshore installations 90, 589–90, 609
- ‘oil for food’ scheme (SC resolution 778 (1992)) 1046
- oil pollution 809–901, *see also* marine pollution
 - Gulf War oil spillage 1190
 - ‘polluter pays’ principle 870
 - Torrey Canyon* 621, 798, 900 n322
- oil resources, maritime delimitation and 602
- oil rigs 589–90
- Okhotsk, Sea of, straddling stocks 625 n358, 627
- older persons, rights
 - ESC 361 n102
 - General Comment (UNCESCR) 6 310
- Oleron, Rolls of 19
- Oman 1253 n246
- ONUC 1226–7
- ONUMOT 1229 n122
- ONUEN 1229
- OPEC 1292 n43
- Operation Turquoise 1263
- opinio juris* 74–6, 84–9
 - codification treaties and 88–9
 - creation of new rule and 86–8
 - definition 84
 - evidence of 87–9
 - ILC reports and 88–9, 120–1
 - as marker of existence of rule 68 n89
 - outer space and 544
 - UNGA/SC resolutions and 88, 115, 116–17, 254, 544
 - USSR and 34
- opinio juris*, jurisprudence
 - Lotus* 84
 - Nicaragua* 86, 87, 96
 - North Sea Continental Shelf* cases 85–6, 87–8, 96

- Organisation of African Unity: *see*
 African Union
 Organisation of the Islamic Conference
 as regional arrangement (Chapter
 VIII) 1275 n348
 Somalia and 1275 n348
 OSCE/CSCE
 see also Charter of Paris (1990);
 Helsinki Final Act (1975); Human
 Dimension of the CSCE (Moscow
 Mechanism)
 Bosnia, supervision of elections 377
 n201, 1033–4, 1274 n343, 1289
 Chairman-in-Office 1289
 as Chapter VIII regional
 organisation 1274 n343
 as conflict prevention
 organisation 1289
 Council of Europe and 378
 CSCE period 372–7
 development following the end of the
 Cold War 1289
 dispute settlement missions 1289
 domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC
 2(7)) and 375–6
 election-monitoring role 1289
 environmental rights 847
 High Commissioner on National
 Minorities: *see* Minorities, OSCE
 High Commissioner on National
 human rights and 372–8
 institutionalisation of Helsinki Act
 process 375
 Media, OSCE Representative on the
 Freedom of 377
 minorities, protection of 298
 Office for Democratic Institutions
 and Human Rights 1289
 organisation 1289
 origin and development 1289
 Permanent Council 377
 as regional arrangement (Chapter
 VIII) 376, 1274 n343, 1275 n348
 Religion or Belief, Advisory Panel of
 Experts on the Freedom of 377
 n201
 Roma and 376
 structure 1289
 as successor to CSCE 377
 Terrorism, Ministerial Declaration
 and Plan of Action on Combating
 (2001) 1164
 Troika 1289
 website 1340
 Yugoslavia, involvement in 1275
 n348
 OSCE/CSCE, dispute
 settlement 1032–4
 arbitral tribunals 1033
 Conciliation and Arbitration
 Convention (1992) 378, 1033
 conciliation commissions 1033
 Dispute Settlement
 Mechanism 1032–3
 Missions 375, 1033
 rapid and equitable solution of
 disputes in good faith
 obligation 1032
 Sanctions Assistance Missions 1033
 n141
 Valletta Report (1991) 1032–3
 Ottoman Empire, dissolution 293, 1000
 n235
 minorities, protection of 293
 state succession to public debt 999
 outer space 541–52, 881–2, *see also*
 airspace; space objects
 as common heritage of mankind 488,
 545, 881–2
 criminal jurisdiction 548 n323
 customary international law/state
 practice 544
 débris 547 n321, 882
 Débris, ILA Draft Instrument on the
 Protection of the Environment
 from (1994) 347 n321, 882, 1016
 n28
 definition and delimitation 543–4
 demilitarisation 548
 exploration 543
 geostationary orbit 552
 innocent passage, exclusion 542
 international environmental damage,
 state responsibility and 853
 international law, role 45
 international regulation of activities
 in 544–6
 jurisdiction 548 n323

- Moon Treaty (1979) 548–9, 881–2
- nuclear activities 547, 858 n72, 881–2
- private activities 548 n323
- remote sensing 551–2
- as *res communis* 492, 544
- 'Star Wars' and 545 n314
- telecommunications and 549–52
- UN Committee on Peaceful Uses of Outer Space 545 n314
- UNESCO and 550
- websites 1337
- Outer Space, Committee on the Peaceful Uses of 545 n314, 550, 551–2
- outer space conventions and other international instruments relating to
 - ILA International Instrument on the Protection of the Environment from Damage Caused by Space Debris (Buenos Aires 1994) 347 n321, 1016 n28
- International Liability for Damage caused by Space Objects (1972) 546–7
- Principles Governing Activities of States in the Exploration and Use of Outer Space (1967) 545–6
- Principles Relevant to the Use of Nuclear Power Sources in Outer Space (UNGA resolution 47/68) 547, 881 n206
- Registration of Objects Launched into Outer Space (1976) 547
- Rescue of Astronauts, Return of Astronauts and the Return of Objects Launched into Outer Space (1968) 547
- UNGA resolution 1962 (XVII) (Declaration on Outer Space) 544
- Outer Space Treaty (1967) 545–6, 881, *see also* Moon Treaty (1979)
 - common heritage of mankind and 488 n8, 545
 - international organisations and 546, 1312 n138
 - NGOs 546
 - nuclear weapons, exclusion 545
 - peaceful purposes limitation 545–6
 - state responsibility 545–6, 859
- overflight, right of
 - archipelagic states 542 n304, 568
 - EEZ 582
 - high seas 609, 636
 - straits 576, 577, 578 n115
- ozone depletion 845, 875–81
 - developing countries and 869 n132
 - GEF and 846, 871 n168
 - halons 876–7
 - precautionary principle 867–8
 - state responsibility and 857
- Ozone Layer Convention (1985)
 - 'adverse effects' 857, 876 n176
 - CFCs 876–7, 878
 - conciliation 1022, 1024
 - co-operation obligation 876
 - disputes settlement 876
 - entry into force 876
 - as framework agreement 876
 - 'ozone layer' 857, 875
 - protective measures 876
 - state responsibility and 855 n50
 - UNEP and 846
- Ozone Layer, Helsinki Declaration on (1989) 877
- Ozone Layer, Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete (1987) 846, 869 n132, 876–8
 - Adjustments and Amendments (1990) 877
 - Adjustments and Amendments (1992) 877–8
 - controlled substances 876–7
 - dispute settlement 877
 - Implementation Committee 877–8
 - Multilateral Fund 877–8
- Pacific
 - Clarion–Clipperton Ridge 630–1
 - ESCAP (UN Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific) 1213
 - straddling stocks 627
- pacific blockade, as measure short of war 1121
- Pacific Islands Trust Territory 1214 n45
 - self-determination, right of 225
 - as special arrangement 224

- Pact of Paris (1928): *see* Kellogg–Briand Pact (1928)
- pacta sunt servanda*
 as general principle of law 29, 94,
 103, 903–4, 966–7
 natural law and 23
 as non-consensual obligation 10, 29,
 50–1
 positivism and 10, 29, 50–1, 52
rebus sic stantibus doctrine and 950
- Pakistan
see also Bangladesh;
 Bangladesh–Pakistan boundary;
 India–Pakistan relations
 divided territory 200
 Gulf War and 1253 n246
 as new state 960
 State Immunity Ordinance 1981 707
 n53, 745 n257
 state succession and 985
 UN Good Offices Mission 1228
 UN membership 985
 UN mission 1228
 UNMOGIP 1226 n108
- Palau 225, 1214
- Palestine
see also PLO, status
 Conciliation Commission
 (1948) 1024
 General Assembly Special Session
 on 1212 n33
 international legal personality 247–8
 partition (1947) 230
 recognition (1988) 199
 self-determination, right of 1181
 as threat to the peace (SCR 54
 (1948)) 1237
 Uniting for Peace resolution
 and 1273
- Palestine Conciliation Commission
 (UNGA resolution 194 (III)) 1024
- Palestine People, Special Committee on
 the Inalienable Rights of 303
- Palestinian Authority
 international legal personality 247–8
 PLO distinguished 247, 248
 powers and responsibilities 247
- Palestinian Interim Self-Government
 Authority 247
- Pan-African Parliament 1294
- Pan-American Union 1291–2
- Panama
 ‘clean state’ approach 971
 Contadora negotiating process
 1031 n125
 flags of convenience 611–12
 secession from Colombia (1903) 971,
 975, 998–9
 US intervention (1989) 1144, 1151,
 1189
 WMD measures 620
- Panama Canal
 non-recognition policy and 457
 servitudes 540
- Panama Canal Zone
 jurisdictional rights 658 n34
 lease 539
 transfer of sovereignty to
 Panama 539
- papacy, role and status 19, 20, 609
- Papal Bulls (1493 and 1506) 609
- papal states 243–4
- Paraguay
 human rights in 383
 indigenous peoples in 300–1
- Paris Conference (1856) 1283
- parliamentary supremacy 50
- Partnership for Peace 1290
 Framework Document 1290
- Pashukanis, Evgeny 32–3
- passive personality principle 664–6
Achille Lauro 665
Congo v. Belgium (Arrest Warrant)
 case 666
Cutting case 664–5
Eichmann 664 n77
 Hostages Convention (1979) and
 665
- Internationally Protected Persons
 Convention (1973) and 665
- Lotus* 665
- terrorist offences and 666 n91
- Third US Restatement* 666 n91
- UK/US and 665–6
- PCA 1049–50
 arbitration and 1058
 composition of tribunals 1051
 election of ICJ judges and 1059

- establishment 28, 111, 1049, 1057–8
- examples of use 1049–50
- International Bureau 1049
- Optional Conciliation Rules
 - (1998) 1023 n68
- Optional Rules for Arbitrating Disputes between Two States
 - (1992) 1050
- Optional Rules for Conciliation of Disputes Relating to Natural Resources and the Environment
 - (2002) 1023 n68
- Optional Rules for Fact-Finding Commissions of Inquiry
 - (1997) 1022 n62
- panels, composition, qualifications and nomination procedure 1049
- PCIJ, effect on 1054
- Permanent Administrative Council 1049
- role 1049, 1057–8
- website 636 n410, 1338
- PCIJ
 - compulsory jurisdiction, optional clause declarations 1083
 - decisions as source of international law 110
 - establishment 31, 1058
 - ICJ as successor 31, 1058, 1080–1, 1083
- peace, *see also* collective security; dispute settlement; peacekeeping operations; use of force
- peace and security, right to 268, 302
 - Banjul Charter 393
 - recognition of states and 452
- peace treaties
 - Israel–Egypt (1979) 1228 n117
 - Israel–Jordan (1994) 657–8
 - Japan (1951) 234
 - WWI 259, 271, 294 n162
 - WWII 227, 228, 294
- peaceful co-existence 215–16
 - AU and 215–16
 - Bandung Conference (1955) 215
 - as basic premise of international law 44
 - China and 37, 215
 - definition 34–5
 - equality of states and 215, 216
 - Five Principles of Peaceful Co-existence (1954) 215
 - good faith and 216
 - India and 215
 - non-aggression obligation 216
 - non-intervention principle and 215
 - state sovereignty and 34, 215
 - territorial integrity and 215, 216
 - Third World and 215–16
 - UNGA resolutions 215
 - USSR and 33–6, 216
- peacekeeping operations 1224–33
 - Abkhazia 1230
 - African Union 1265–6
 - as alternative to UNC 43 force contributions 1224, 1266–7
 - AMIS 1266, 1280
 - AMISOM 1279
 - Angola 1228–9, 1233–4
 - Arab League 1292–3
 - ‘armed conflict’, whether 1232–3
 - Congo 1226–7, 1273
 - consent of host state, need for 1227, 1234, 1235, 1267, 1275, 1321
 - Croatia 1229
 - Darfur 1230 n132, 1265–6
 - definition and scope 1225, 1226, 1234–5
 - East Timor 1230
 - enforcement action distinguished 1227
 - equality of treatment 1235
 - Eritrean independence plebiscite 1229
 - evaluation 1227–8, 1233–5
 - fact-finding missions 1234–5
 - Georgia 1230
 - Haiti 1230
 - history 1224, 1226–31
 - IFOR 1260, 1279–80
 - impartiality, need for 1234
 - Interim Emergency Multinational Force in Bunia 1280 n371
 - international humanitarian law, applicability 1232–3
 - international organisations, responsibility for activities of members 1313–14

- peacekeeping operations (*cont.*)
 jurisdiction in relation to 418, 1232, 1314
 KFOR: *see* KFOR
 Lebanon 1212 n33, 1230–1
 Liberia 1276–8
 Middle East, withdrawal 1216
 MINURSO 1229
 MONUC 1154, 1262–3, 1264–5
 Mozambique 1229
 as non-enforcement actions 1272–3
 ONUC 1226–7
 ONUMOZ 1229 n122
 ONUVEN 1229
 Operation Turquoise 1263
 ‘Peace Operations 2010’ 1235
 Peace Operations Panel
 review 1234–5
 Peacekeeping Commission 1218 n67
 privileges and immunities 1231
 refocusing of role from policing to
 rule of law and human rights 1235
 regional organisations (Chapter
 VIII) 1275
 resources, insufficiency 1228
 Rwanda 1233 n143, 1263–4
 Safety of UN Personnel Convention
 (1994) 1231–2
 SC authority to establish 1224–5
 SC measures under UNC 42
 and 1224–5
 Sierra Leone 418
 Somalia 1260–2, 1279
 South African elections (1994) 1229
 status of forces agreements 1231,
 1233, 1314
 status of forces/state responsibility
 and 350–1, 787–8, 1231, 1312
 n140
 status as UN organs 1231
 subsidiary organ status (UNC 29)
 and 1224
 Sudan 1265–6
 Timor-Leste 1230
 truce-supervision activities 1226–7
 UN Interim Force (Lebanon) 1212
 n33
 UN International Police Task Force
 (Yugoslavia) 1260
 UN Iran–Iraq Military Observer
 Group 1228
 UN Secretary-General and 1216,
 1225, 1226–7
 UNAMIC 1129 n124
 UNAMID 1266, 1267
 UNAMIR 1262–3
 UNAMIS 1265, 1280
 UNAMSIL 1263–4
 UNAVEM I 1228–9
 UNC provisions relevant to 1224–5
 UNCRO 1259
 UNEF 1226, 1228, 1272
 UNEF II 1227, 1228 n117
 UNGA and 1225, 1271–3
 UNIKOM 1229
 Uniting for Peace (UNGA resolution
 377 (V)) 1212, 1222 n90, 1272–3
 UNMIS 1265–6
 UNMOP 1229–30
 UNOMIL 1277
 UNOMUR 1262
 UNOSOM II 1261–2
 UNPREDEP 1259–60
 UNPROFOR 1257–60
 UNSCOB 1226
 UNSMIH 1230
 UNTAES 231 n177, 1229–30
 UNTAG 231 n177, 1229
 use of force, exclusion 1234, 1235
 USSR and 8, 33–5
 Yugoslavia 1257–60
 Penghu 235
 ‘people’ 256–7, 392
 indigenous ‘peoples’ 298
 peremptory norms: *see jus*
cogens/peremptory norms
perestroika 36, 46–7, 1209
 Permanent Mandates Commission
 271
 persecution on political, racial or
 religious grounds, as crime against
 humanity 408, 436
 Persian Gulf, continental shelf 584
 persistent organic pollutants
 (POPs) 874
 personality before the law: *see* juridical
 personality/personality before the
 law, right to

- Peru
 amnesty laws, compatibility with
 IACHR 372 n35, 390
 continental shelf 585
- Pescadores 234
- Philadelphia Declaration (1994) 338
- Philippines, ASEAN membership
 1294
- pillage 403, 1196, 1198
 as 'grave breach' 403, 1196
- pillars (EU), international legal
 personality 241–2
- pipelines: *see* submarine cables and
 pipelines
- piracy
 attempts to commit offence,
 sufficiency 398
 definition 398, 615
 GCHS 15 615 n323
 high seas and 614, 615–16
 individual criminal
 responsibility 262, 397
 internal waters, territorial sea and
 archipelagic waters 616
 as international crime 397
jure gentium 270, 398
 jurisdiction 614, 615–16
 as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 126
 as municipal law offence 398
 Regional Co-operation in Asia
 Agreement (2005) 616
terra nullius and 398, 615–16
 third parties acting in good faith
 and 616
 UNCLOS 101 615
 universal jurisdiction and 270, 397,
 615–16, 668
- PLO, status
see also Palestinian Authority;
 Palestinian Interim
 Self-Government Authority
 agreements with Israel on Palestinian
 Authority 247–8
 international legal personality 246–8
 Israel–PLO Declaration of Principles
 on Interim Self-Government
 Arrangements (1993) and 199
 n17, 246–7
 as NLM 248
 state responsibility for internationally
 wrongful act and 683
 UN mission office 165
 UN observer status 246
 USA and 165
- poisoned gas 1188
- Pol Pot 421, 757
- Poland
see also Chorzów Factory
 principle/*restitutio in integrum*
 Austro-Hungarian Empire,
 dissolution and 980 n131, 1002
 borders with Germany 228, 965, 1002
 deep sea mining 630 n383
 EU Charter of Fundamental Rights
 (2000) 371 n172
German Settlers 100, 1002
 international law and 173, 178 n252
 minorities 293 n164
 recognition post-WWI 448, 475–6
 UDHR and 278–9
 USSR intervention in 57
 WMD and 620 n341
- polar regions 534–8, *see also* Antarctica;
 Arctic territory, claims to
- police powers, state immunity and 715,
 716, 732
- policy-oriented approaches to
 international law 58–63, 64, 267
- Polisario 236
- political offences 667, 686–7
 European Convention on the
 Suppression of Terrorism (1977)
 and 687 n211
- political question doctrine 189–92, 683
- political rights, minorities 366
- politics
 19th century developments 27–8
 international law and 11–13, 24, 38,
 44, 67–8, 79–80, 488–9
 recognition of states/governments
 and 445, 447, 450, 455, 456, 457–8,
 465, 468, 471
 UNCHR and 306
- 'polluter pays' principle
 EU and 870
 as general principle of international
 environmental law 870–1
 hazardous activities 870, 896

- 'polluter pays' (*cont.*)
 - international watercourses 884
 - OECD and 870
 - Rio Declaration (1992) 870
- polluting substances
 - nitrogen oxides 873
 - POPs (persistent organic pollutants) 873
 - sulphur emissions 873
- 'pollution' 871–2, 886 n233
- pollution-free zones 583, *see also*
 - atmospheric pollution; marine pollution
- Ponsonby rule 152–3, 912
- POPs (persistent organic pollutants) 874
- population expansion
- ports
 - jurisdiction 556–8
 - landlocked states' right to equality of treatment 607–8
 - servitudes and 539
 - straddling stocks obligations 626
- Portugal
 - closed seas concept 24, 553–4, 609
 - Guinea-Bissau and: *see* Guinea-Bissau
 - international law in municipal courts 173
 - nuclear power 775 n116
- Portugal, African colonial territories
 - ILO Convention on Forced Labour (1930) and 340
 - NLM participation in UNGA Fourth Committee 245
- positivism 49–53
 - 19th century 29–30, 46, 49, 270
 - academic writers and 28, 113
 - consent as basis of international law 131
 - customary international law and 51, 75
 - development of international law, as brake on 51
 - domestic jurisdiction principle and 270
 - equality of states and 215
 - fundamental norms, dependence on 49–51
 - general principles of
 - law/international law and 99
 - human rights and 266, 267, 270
 - individual as subject of international law and 258
 - intellectual basis 21–2
 - international law as law and 52
 - just war and 1120
 - monism and 51, 131
 - moral principles and 29, 49
 - municipal and international law, interrelationship 131
 - natural law and 24–7
 - pacta sunt servanda* and 10, 29, 50–1, 52
 - as political concept 50
 - sovereignty and 29, 46, 75, 131
 - state succession and 957
 - state/statehood and 29, 267
 - transformation doctrine 139
 - USSR and 33–4
 - Zouche, Richard and 25
- post, telegraph and telephone services (PTT)
 - see also* ITU; UPU
 - as sovereign power 217
- Pound, Roscoe 52
- poverty
 - European Social Charter (1961) (as amended) 361 n104
 - ILO and 338
- power politics 12, 55, 79–80, 215, 489, 1206
- Praetor Peregrinus 17
- precautionary measures: *see* provisional measures
- precautionary principle 867–8, *see also* sustainable development principle
 - Bergen Ministerial Declaration (1990) 867–8
 - climate change and 869
 - Energy Charter Treaty (1994) and 850
 - international watercourses and 884
 - Rio Declaration 867
 - straddling stocks 625
- precedent/*stare decisis* doctrine 141, 145, 174, 706–7
 - ECtHR and 352

- interrelationship between different tribunals 1116
- state immunity cases 706–7
- preclusion 516, 796, *see also* estoppel
- preliminary objections: *see* ICJ, preliminary objections
- prerogative 137, 149
 - justiciability and 181–2
- prescription as means of territorial acquisition 491, 495, 504–7, 532, *see also* territorial title/territorial sovereignty, evidence of including *effectivités*
- acquiescence/absence of
 - challenge 505–6
- acquisitive prescription 517
- de Visscher's views on 507
- definition 504–5
- Falkland Islands 532
- high seas 609
- occupation distinguished 505
- peaceful and uninterrupted
 - possession, need for 505–6, 517 n171
- reasonable period 506–7
- requirements
 - (*Botswana/Namibia*) 504–5
- press, freedom of, OSCE Representative on 377
- Prevention of Discrimination and the Protection of Minorities, Sub-Commission on: *see* Human Rights, Sub-commission on the Promotion and Protection of
- Prevlaka peninsular
 - UNMOP 1229–30
 - UNPROFOR 1257
- printing, importance 20
- prisoners, treatment of, codes of
 - practice relating to 327
- prisoners of war
 - 19th century treaties on 270
 - Bangladeshi treatment of Pakistani prisoners 669
 - combatants in irregular warfare 1173
 - definition 1172–3
 - disciplinary offences 1176
 - doubts about status 1174
 - exchange of 1201
 - Geneva Convention (1949) 1169–70, 1172–6
 - history and development 270
 - humane treatment 1175
 - Indian treatment of Pakistani prisoners 1199
 - individual criminal responsibility for ill-treatment 1200
 - medical treatment 1176
 - obligations of 1175–6
 - obligations towards 1175–6
 - release and repatriation 1176
 - religious activities 1176
 - reprisals 1175, 1186
 - Taliban fighters/Al-Qaida operatives 1174 n33
 - torture 1175
 - UK Military Manual 1174 n32
 - US Law of Land Warfare 1174 n32
 - war crimes committed by 1176
- privacy, freedom from unlawful
 - interference
 - child (CRC 24) 331
 - CIS Convention 378
 - ECHR 8 348
 - UDHR 12 279
- private international law: *see* conflict of laws
- privileges and immunities: *see* consular privileges and immunities; diplomatic immunities (personal); diplomatic privileges (personal); international organisations, privileges and immunities; peacekeeping operations, privileges and immunities
- Privy Council, state responsibility and 788
- prize law 79
- prompt hearing, right to
 - anti-terrorist measures and 357–8
 - ECHR 5(3) and 6(1) 357–8
 - ICC 416
 - ICCPR 9(4) 322
 - military discipline cases, applicability to 322
- prompt release proceedings (UNCLOS 292) 642–3

- 'property' 830
 - Harvard Draft Convention on the International Responsibility of States for Injuries to Aliens (1961) 830
 - Liamco* 830
- property rights
 - see also* expropriation/nationalisation
 - of property of foreign national; state succession to property, archives, assets and liabilities
 - ACHR 21 390
 - Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina Human Rights Chamber and 380
 - ECHR Protocol I 348, 829
 - indigenous peoples 300, 390–1
 - as natural right 27, 266
- proportionality
 - balance between damage to individual and benefit 1182
 - balance between goal and means 1182
 - belligerent occupation and 1182
 - countermeasures 794, 795
 - due diligence and 861
 - least harmful means requirement 1182
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 1141, 1142
 - Oil Platforms* 1142
 - protection of civilian population during hostilities and 1184–5
 - protection of nationals abroad 1144–5
 - remedies 802–3, 806
 - reprisals 1186
 - self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 1131, 1134 n80, 1139, 1140–3, 1188
 - state responsibility and 793
 - US bombing raid in Libya 1144–5
 - US invasions in Panama and Grenada 1144–5, 1183 n79
 - use of force and 1120
- prostitution 326
 - Suppression of Traffic in Persons and Exploitation of Prostitution Convention (1949) 303
- protected persons, unlawful deportation or transfer, as 'grave breach': *see* deportation or transfer of protected persons (GC IV, 49)
- protected states 216–17
- Protecting Powers 1199
- protection of nationals abroad, use of force 1143–5
 - 'armed attack', need for 1143–4
 - in Cambodia 1144
 - Entebbe 680, 1144
 - Grenada, US intervention in 1144
 - Libya, US bombing attack on 1144–5
 - Panama, US intervention in 1144
 - permission of government of territory concerned 1144
 - proportionality, need for 1144–5
 - rescue of hostages in the Congo 1144
 - UK views on 1145
 - US action 1144–5
- protective measures: *see* provisional measures
- protective principle 666–8
 - definition and scope 666–7
 - Hostages Convention (1979) 668
 - Joyce v. DPP* 667
 - risk of abuse 667
 - treaty usage 668
 - US practice 667 n97
 - vital interests and 667
- protectorates 216–17
- protest, effect: *see* acquiescence, failure to protest as
- provisional measures
 - African Commission 393–4
 - assurances regarding non-repetition of act complained of 643
 - avoidance of irreparable harm and 352 n37, 386, 641, 1094–5
 - binding effect 1095–6
 - on Court's own initiative 1095
 - ECtHR (RoP 39) 352 n37
 - Enforced Disappearances Committee 335
 - Guantanamo Bay detention centre and 386
 - IAComHR 384, 385–6
 - IACtHR 384, 387, 391
 - ICJ: *see* ICJ, provisional measures

- Inter-American Forced Disappearances Convention (1994) 384
- ITLOS 637–8, 640–1, 643, 644
- NAFTA 1039
- non-aggravation or extension of dispute and 283–4, 1095
- non-compliance as violation of treaty obligations 320
- object and purpose of relevant treaty provision and 1095–6
- preservation of the evidence 1095
- preservation of parties' rights 641, 1094–5
- prima facie* jurisdiction and 1093–4
- request to take measures to stop challenged conduct 283–4
- Seabed Disputes Chamber 640 n444
- 'serious and urgent', requirement 384 n237, 386
- Torture Committee (UN) 328–9
- UNHRC 320
- urgency 335, 386, 641, 1094–5
- psychology and the law 52–3, 55
- public debt
 - see also* state succession to public debt
 - classification of 997
 - definition 997
- public international law: *see* conflict of laws; international law
- public life, right to participate in
 - see also* elections, right to free; information and participation in public debate, right to; public life, right to participate in
- ACHR 23 275, 381
- CEDAW General Recommendation 8 324
- CERC General Recommendation 21 293
- CIS Convention 378
- ICCPR 25 292–3
- non-derogation 275
- Public Life, OSCE Guidelines on the Effective Participation of National Minorities in (1999) 376 n194
- public policy
 - see also* political question doctrine
 - municipal courts and international law 139
- publicists: *see* academic writers as source of international law (ICJ 38(1)(d))
- Pufendorf, Samuel 25, 112
- punishment, collective 1196, 1198
- punishment/penalty in case of criminal responsibility
 - compensation to victims 416
 - financial penalty 416
 - ICC and 416
 - ICTY and 404, 406
 - imprisonment, limitation to 406
 - maximum term 416
- punitive damages 804–5
- Quebec 255, 291 n151, 293, 295, 523
- racial discrimination
 - as 'grave breach' 401
 - individual criminal responsibility 401
 - prohibition: *see* racial discrimination, prohibition
 - SFRY and 312
 - Zionism and 395 n298
- Racial Discrimination Committee 311–14
 - conciliation commissions 313
 - confidentiality of proceedings 313
 - early warning measures 312, 337
 - establishment 311–12
 - evaluation of 313–14
 - exhaustion of local remedies 273
 - financing and budgetary arrangements 336
 - general recommendations: *see* General Recommendations (CERD)
 - ILO/UNESCO, co-operation with 313
 - individual right of petition 313
 - individual's standing 259
 - inter-state complaints 313
 - meetings 313
 - membership 312
 - powers 312
 - reporting obligations 312–13, 314

- Racial Discrimination (*cont.*)
 reporting obligations, improvements
 to procedures 314
 role and activities 312–14
 trust/non-self-governing territories
 and 313–14
 urgent procedures 312, 337
- Racial Discrimination Convention
 (1965)
 ad hoc Conciliation Commission 313
 compromissory clause (ICJ) 1079
 conclusion/entry into force 280, 286
 federal state compliance 221–2
 individual's rights under 259
 'racial discrimination' 288
 treaty succession 983 n144
- racial discrimination, prohibition
see also non-discrimination
 customary international law
 and 286–7
 as *erga omnes* obligation 124
 as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 808
 n198
 state sovereignty/domestic
 jurisdiction principle and 213
 Vienna Declaration and Programme
 of Action (1993) 280
- racist regimes, applicability of Geneva
 Conventions in struggles against
 1149 n157, 1172, 1173 n30, 1195
 n143
- Radbruch, Gustav 53
- radioactive materials, safety
 considerations 881, 889
 dumping at sea 620
 nuclear power installations and 643,
 893–4
 outer space 547, 881 n206
 Transboundary Movement of Nuclear
 Waste, IAEA Code of Practice
 (1990) 896–7
- Rainbow Warrior
Chorzów Factory principle/*restitutio
 in integrum* 803
 damages, measure of 803
 material breach of treaty 948
 state responsibility 779, 786, 797–8,
 800
 termination of treaty and 946
- Rameses II 14
- rape
 as crime against humanity 408, 436
 Darfur 1265 n311
 Declaration of Minimum
 Humanitarian Standards 1198
 definition in international law 409
 ethnic cleansing and 433
 Geneva Conventions, Protocol I
 and 1196
 as genocide 670
 as 'grave breach' 403, 1196
- realism and the law 49, 53, 55–6
- rebellions
see also civil war
 aid to rebels, exclusion 1152–8
 Declaration on Principles of
 International Law (1970) 1152–3
 as internal matter 1149, 1195
 use of force, right 1126
- rebus sic stantibus*: *see* fundamental
 change of circumstances/*rebus sic
 stantibus* (VCLT 62(2))
- reciprocity
 as basis for compliance with law 7,
 40, 44
 as essential element in obligations
 between states 751–2, 754, 764,
 1082–3, 1169, 1318–19, 1326
- recognition (general) 444–5
 as discretionary act 450, 453, 471
 executive certificates, role 471,
 472–3, 477–8, 480–1, 482, *see also*
 executive certificates
 as executive responsibility 471, 473
 of fishing zone claims 581–2
 judicial role 471, 482
 non-recognition policy: *see*
 non-recognition policy
 political considerations 445, 447,
 450, 455, 456, 457–8, 465, 468, 471
 recognition as what? 445, 453
 as responsibility of individual
 state 444, 450–1, 466
 territorial sovereignty over the high
 seas 609
- recognition (general), legal effects
see also non-recognition, effect
 contracts, enforceability 473

- de facto/de jure*,
 - distinguishability 453–4, 472–8, 483–4
- diplomatic privileges and immunities
 - and 453, 454, 471–2
- diplomatic relations and 457, 458, 460, 471
- effect on state itself 456
- enforcement of international rights
 - and obligations and 457
- as evidence of factual situation 449
- in municipal law 460
- property outside territory of
 - recognised state and 473–4, 483
- recognition and enforcement of
 - foreign law, right to 471–3, 483
- retroactivity 454, 473, 475–7, 485
- right to sue and be sued 449, 471, 480–1
- state immunity and 453, 454, 455, 471, 704
- state practice 450
- succession to property belonging to
 - predecessor state and 472–4
- successive *de jure* governments
 - and 475, 476
- territorial acquisition, role 492–3, 494–5, 516–17, 520–1, 533
- as undertaking to deal with
 - recognised entity as governing authority 454–5
- recognition of governments 454–68
 - approval of government
 - distinguished 458, 1151
 - automatic recognition (Estrada doctrine) 457–8
 - civil war and 460
 - constitutionality of government and 481
 - constitutive/declaratory theories compared 458
- de facto/de jure* 454, 457, 459–60, 466–7, 472–3
- effective control, need
 - for/sufficiency 455–6, 460, 477, 481, 1151
- Estrada doctrine 457–8
- formal recognition, abandonment of practice 458–9, 481
- international legal personality
 - and 457
- legitimacy doctrine (Tobar doctrine) 457
- legitimacy of government, need for 455–6
- nature of forum states' dealings with, relevance 481
- recognition by non-forum states, relevance 481
- recognition of state and 456–7
- recognition as what? 454
- Tobar doctrine 457
- UK practice 193–4, 455, 458–9, 467, 472–81
- unconstitutional change of
 - government, limitation to 454
- US practice 162, 458, 467
- USSR (1921/1924) 460
- Wilson doctrine 457, 458
- recognition of governments,
 - withdrawal 466–8
- break of diplomatic relations as
 - alternative 467
- of *de facto* recognition 466
- recognition of successor government and 466–7
- recognition, jurisprudence
 - Adams v. Adams* 478
 - Arab Monetary Fund v. Hashim* 479 n139
 - Arantzazu Mendi* 474–6
 - Autocephalous Church of Cyprus v. Goldberg* 484
 - Caglar v. Bellingham* 478–9
 - Carl Zeiss Stiftung v. Rayner and Keeler Ltd (No. 2)* 445, 477–8, 480–1, 482
 - Civil Air Transport Inc. v. Central Air Transport Corporation* 476–7
 - Gdynia Amerika Linie v. Boguslawski* 475–6
 - Gur Corporation v. Trust Bank of Africa* 480
 - Haile Selassie v. Cable and Wireless Ltd (No. 2)* 473
 - Hesperides Hotels Ltd v. Aegean Turkish Holidays* 478
 - Kunstammlungen zu Weimar v. Elicofon* 484

recognition, jurisprudence (*cont.*)

- Luther v. Sagor* 472–3, 483
 - The Maret* 483, 485
 - Ministry of Defense of the Islamic Republic of Iran v. Gould* 484
 - National Petrochemical v. M/T Stolt Sheaf* 484–5
 - Republic of Panama v. Citizens & Southern International Bank* 484–5
 - Republic of Somalia v. Woodhouse Drake* 481
 - Salimoff v. Standard Oil Co.* 483, 485
 - Sokoloff v. National City Bank of New York* 483
 - Tinoco* 455–6
 - Transportes Aereos de Angola v. Ronair* 482
 - UK 472–81
 - Upright v. Mercury Business Machines* 483–4
 - USA 482–6
- recognition of
- Albania pre-WWI 199
 - belligerent status 245, 444, 453, 1149–50
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina 201, 461–2
 - Croatia 201, 461
 - liberation movements 245, 246
 - Palestine (1988) 199
 - SADR 236
 - TRNC 236, 464, 469–70
- recognition of states 445–54
- boundary disputes and 199
 - EU practice 451–2
 - FRG–GDR relationship and 463 n79, 964
 - OAS and 448, 451, 458 n49
 - post-WWI 448
 - premature recognition 460–2
 - recognition of government and 456–7
 - state succession and 959
 - title to territory, legality of acquisition and 470, 492–3, 494, 500, 521
 - UK practice 447, 451, 464
 - US practice 162, 445, 446–7, 450–1, 452
- recognition of states, collective 465–6
- by international organisation 465–6

- EU recognition of Yugoslav Republics and 465
- recognition of states, conditional 465
- criteria, changes in distinguished 465
 - Litvinov Agreement (1933) and 465
 - non-fulfilment of conditions, effect 465
- recognition of states, criteria other than those relevant to statehood
- see also* state/statehood, criteria
 - boundaries, respect for and 451, 452
 - Charter of Paris and 451
 - democracy, respect for 452
 - disarmament obligations and 452, 976
 - EU Guidelines (1991) 207, 451–2, 461
 - free trade, respect for 452
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) and 451
 - human rights 451, 461
 - independence, wish for on part of state to be recognised 452
 - minorities and 451, 461
 - non-proliferation obligations and 452, 976
 - nuclear safety and 452
 - OSCE/CSCE commitments and 451
 - peaceful settlement of succession and regional disputes, commitment to 452
 - recognition as compensation for failure to fulfil criteria 462
 - rule of law and 207, 451
 - security commitments, acceptance 452
 - UN Charter and 451
- recognition of states, implied 462–5
- accidental recognition, risk of 462–3
 - bilateral treaty and 463
 - claims by state against unrecognised entity, effect 464
 - consular *exequatur* and 463
 - disclaimer 462–3, 464
 - establishment of diplomatic relations as 463
 - informal diplomatic contacts, whether 463

- intention to recognise, need for 453–4
- international conference, participation in 464
- message of congratulation to new state as 463
- Montevideo Convention on the Rights and Duties of States (1933) and 462 n73
- multilateral treaty negotiations and signature 464
- recognition of government 457
- state practice 465
- recognition of states, legal effects and underlying theories 444–5, 470–86, *see also* non-recognition, effect
 - ACY Opinion No. 1 198, 210, 448
 - ACY Opinion No. 8 449
 - ACY Opinion No. 13 958, 991–2
 - ACY Opinion No. 18 450
 - constitutive theory 207, 261, 445–6, 447, 448–50, 471, 492–3, 494–5
 - de facto* and *de jure* recognition distinguished 453–4
 - declaratory theory 207, 446–8, 449
 - Institut de Droit International (1936 resolution) 448
 - international law theories and 449
 - international legal personality/subject of international law status and 220–1, 261–2, 449, 1302–3
 - Lauterpacht doctrine 449–50
 - OAS Charter (1948) 448
 - opposability bilaterally 445, 449, 453
 - opposability *erga omnes* 445, 453
 - statehood and, 198, 200, 201, 202, 207–8, 246, 261–2, 445–6, 448, 453, *see also* state/statehood
 - UN membership and 201, 453, 461–2, 464, 466
 - WWI Peace Treaties and 448
- Red Crescent, protection of 1172
- Red Cross (ICRC)
 - in Afghanistan 1201
 - Declaration of Minimum Humanitarian Standards (1990) 1198
 - establishment (1863) 28, 1283
 - exchange of prisoners of war and 1201
 - food aid, supervision of 1243
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) and 28, 1200
 - humanitarian role 1200–1
 - international legal personality 244 n244, 261–2
 - in Iraq 1201, 1243
 - Iraq prisoners of war and 1175
 - Israel and 1201
 - membership 1200
 - Middle East and 1201
 - in Nigeria 1201
 - principles (general) 1201–2
 - principles (non-international armed conflicts) 1202–3
 - role 28, 1200–1
 - in Rwanda 1201
 - in Somalia 1201
 - in Sri Lanka 1201
 - treaty-making power 28, 262
 - website 1339
 - in Yugoslavia 1201
- Red Diamond, protection of 1172
- Red Sea servitudes 540
- referenda, role 201 n24, 962, 1229
- refugees
 - see also* asylum
 - African Commission Special Rapporteur 392–3
 - children and (CRC 22) 331
 - IACoMHR and 383
 - Internally Displaced Persons, ILA Declaration of International Law Principles (2000) 287 n129
 - International Refugee Organisation, dissolution 1330 n214
 - property, right to recover 380 n212
 - Refugees Convention (1951) and Protocol (1967)
 - conclusion 303 n203
 - implementing legislation 185
 - Refugees, UN High Commissioner for (UNHCR)
 - establishment 1213
 - UNGA reporting obligation 303
 - UNPROFOR and 1258

- regional arrangements for the
 - maintenance of international peace and security (UNC Chapter VIII) 1024–6, 1273–80, *see also individual organisations*
 - Agenda for Peace* and 1274 n346
 - AMIS 1280
 - CIS as 1274 n343
 - concurrent jurisdiction 1026
 - conflict with UNC obligations 1025
 - consent and 1275
 - consistency with UNC Principles and Purposes requirement (UNC 52) 1273
 - ECOWAS as 1276–9
 - ‘enforcement action’ for purposes of 1274
 - enforcement action, SC authorisation (UNC 53(1)) 1025, 1030, 1273, 1274–5
 - EUFOR 1280
 - flexibility of definition 1274
 - IGAD as 1279
 - Interim Emergency Multinational Force in Bunia 1280 n371
 - ISAF 1280
 - KFOR 1280
 - Liberia and 1276–9
 - Manila Declaration on the Peaceful Settlement of International Disputes (1982) (UNGA resolution 37/10) 1026 n78
 - notification to SC requirement (UNC 54) 1274
 - OAS as 1274 n343, 1275–6
 - OSCE as 376, 1274 n343, 1275 n348
 - peaceful settlement of disputes before resort to SC 1275
 - primacy of UNC obligations (UNC 103) 1274
 - SC authorisation/approval 1274–5
 - SC and UNGA roles and 1025–6
 - UN co-ordination with 1274, 1277–8
 - UN Standby Arrangements System and 1275 n346
 - UNAMIS 1280
- regional human rights bodies, common practices
 - inter-state complaints 352, 354, 382
 - procedure 382
- regional international law 92–3
 - burden/standard of proof 77, 92
 - consensus and 93
 - development of 48
 - Latin America and 2, 27, 76–7, 92
 - lex specialis derogat legi generalis* and 92–3
 - USSR and 35
- regional international law, jurisprudence
 - Asylum* case 76–7, 78, 92
 - Right of Passage* 92–3
- regional organisations 1287–96, *see also*
 - Arab League and *individual organisations*
- regional organisations
 - Africa 1293–4
 - Americas 1291–2
 - Arab League 1292–3
 - Asia 1294–5
 - Europe 1288–91
 - globalisation and 1287
 - good offices/mediation 1019
 - growth in 1287
 - proliferation 47–8
 - UN Economic Commissions 1213
 - UN Secretary-General and 1223–4
 - universality of international law and 48
 - websites 1340
- Reisman, W. M. 60
- religion, freedom of: *see* freedom of thought, conscience and religion; religious discrimination, prohibition
- religious activities, prisoners of war 1175
- religious communities, Helsinki Final Act (1975) 373
- religious discrimination, prohibition *see also* freedom of thought, conscience and religion
- customary international law 287
- Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Intolerance and of Discrimination Based on Religion or Belief 287 n128, 305

- special rapporteur on freedom of religion or belief 287 n128, 305
- religious property and places of worship during armed conflict 1186
- attacks on as 'grave breach' 401, 403
- remedies
see also Chorzów Factory
 principle/*restitutio in integrum*;
 effective remedy, right to; ICJ,
 remedies; remedies; satisfaction as
 remedy for breach of international
 obligation; state responsibility for
 internationally wrongful act,
 consequences/remedies
- declaratory judgment 1101
- direct negotiation to resolve
 issues 1103–4
- ICCPR and 322 n315
- inherent jurisdiction 1072, 1101
- international organisations and
 1313
- moral or legal damage to state
 and 805–6
- mutual cancellation of claims and
 counter-claims 1102
- need for/*ubi jus ibi remedium* 196,
 322 n315, 1072, *see also* effective
 remedy, right to
- proportionality and 802–3, 806
- Rainbow Warrior* 800, 805–6
- reparation: *see Chorzów Factory*
 principle/*restitutio in integrum*;
 reparation
- repeal of offending legislation 383
- review and reconsideration of
 offending action 1103
- specific performance 803
- Torture Convention and 327
- unilateral undertaking to comply
 with obligations 1103
- remote sensing 551–2
 UNGA Principles on (resolution
 41/65) 551–2
- Renaissance and the development of
 international law 14, 20–2
- RENAMO 1223 n97, 1229 n122
- reparation for breach of international
 obligation 801–6, *see also Chorzów*
Factory principle/*restitutio in*
integrum; damages/compensation
 for expropriation or breach of
 international law, measure;
 remedies; state responsibility for
 internationally wrongful act
 applicable law 802
 as general principle of international
 law 801 n147
 international organisations, capacity
 to claim 1311–12
Reparation case 1311–12
 restitution in kind 802–3
 wilful or negligent action or omission
 of injured party and 802 n152,
 1102
- reprisals
see also countermeasures
 belligerent reprisals 1130 n59
 civilian objects 1186
 Declaration on Principles of
 International Law (1970) and 671,
 1123
 definition 1129
 Geneva Conventions (1949) and
 Protocols I and II (1977) 1169–70,
 1175, 1177, 1185–6
 lawfulness 1129–30, 1185–6
 as measure short of war 1121
Naulilaa 1129–30
 prisoners of war and 1175, 1186
 proportionality 1186
 Protocol I 1186
 purpose 1186
 restrictions on the use of force and 5,
 1122, 1123, 1129–30
 retorsion distinguished 1129
 wounded and sick 1186 n94
 wounded, sick and shipwrecked
 members of the armed forces at
 sea 1186 n94
- Republika Srpska 239 n217
- res communis*
 acquiescence and 517
 common heritage principle
 compared 533–4
 definition 492
 high seas as 492, 503, 517, 553–4
 outer space 492, 544
 territorial sea 569

res judicata

- see also* estoppel
- arbitral awards and 1053 n263
- Corfu Channel* 101
- as general principle of law 101–2
- Genocide Convention* case 101–2
- Laguna del Desierto* 101 n124
- preliminary objections judgments and 102
- Right of Passage* 101–2
- reservations, *see also* treaties, reservations
- reserves, right to live in 296
- residence, right to choose, ECHR, Protocol IV 348
- restitution: *see Chorzów Factory*
- principle/*restitutio in integrum*
- retorsion
 - definition 1128, 1129
 - Hickenlooper amendment as 1128–9
 - lawfulness 1128–9
- Rhine Commission 28, 1283–4, 1306 n109
- Rhodesia
 - Mozambique and 1241 n180, 1242 n189
 - Portugal and 469
 - sanctions and 4, 469
 - as threat to the peace (SC resolution 221 (1966)) 1237
 - UDI (1965), effect 206, 469, 478, 1242–3
- Rhodesia and Nyasaland, Federation of, dissolution (1963) 980
- Rhodian Sea Law 19
- Rio Declaration (1992), ‘polluter pays’ principle 870
- Rio Declaration on Environment and Development (1972)
 - common but differentiated responsibilities (Principle 7) 868–9
 - consensus approach 870
 - development, right to (Principle 3) 302
 - EIAs (Principle 19) 865 n115
 - environment as a human right and 848

- environmental protection and trade/economic development, balance 850
- good faith (Principles 19 and 27) 104 n142
- international co-operation 863
- notification obligation (Principle 19) 864
- precautionary principle (Principle 15) 867
- sovereignty over natural resources (Principle 2) 850
- states and sovereign rights, focus on 848
- sustainable development (Principle 3) 848, 869
- riots, as internal matters 1126, 1195
- ‘risk’ theory/strict liability 783, 789, 853–5, 887–8, 894, 900
- rivers: *see* international watercourses
- Rockall 565 n61
- rocks, status 559, 565, 582
- Rolls of Oleron 19
- Roma
 - OSCE/CSCE and 376
 - problems of 297 n198
- Roman law 16–18, 171, 490, 495, 957
- Romania
 - CoE Torture Committee and 363 n115
 - minorities in 293 n164, 295
- Rome Statute: *see* ICC (International Criminal Court), Statute (1998)
- Rousseau, C. 113, 132–3
- royal prerogative: *see* prerogative
- rule of law
 - African Union for Peace and Security Council 1028
 - CoE and 345, 350
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - ECHR and 347
 - equity and 107
 - EU and 370
 - recognition of states and 207, 451
 - UNESCO and 341
 - USSR and 36

- Russia
see also USSR
 Alaska sale (1867) 500
 Baltic states, troops in 214
 CoE Torture Committee and 363
 n115
 continental shelf 588
 customary international law and 176
 international law in municipal courts 176
 League of Nations/PCIJ and 1110
 n344
 minorities in 295
 SC membership/veto 3, 209, 215, 961, 1206, 1237
 straddling stocks 627
 as successor to USSR 36, 209, 240, 960–1
 treaties/municipal law relationship 176
 UN membership 960–1, 985
- Rwanda
 arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1246–7, 1263
 civil war 1262–3
 collective use of force (Chapter VII) 1263
 collective use of force other than under Chapter VII 1262–3
 conflict in, non-international nature 435
 EU and 370
 genocide 407, 409
 ICRC and 1201
 intervention in Congo 1154, 1264–5
 peacekeeping operations 1263
 as threat to the peace (SC resolution 788 (1992)) 1238
 UN mission 1233 n143
 UNAMIR 1262–3
 UNOMUR 1262
- Rwanda, International Criminal Tribunal for (ICTR): *see* ICTR
- Rwanda, Special Rapporteur on 330
- Rwandan Gacaca court system 272
- Saar, status 231 n176
- Saarland 965 n55
- SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation 1029–30
 enforcement action 1030
 establishment of SADC (1992) 1029
 Inter-State Politics and Diplomacy Committee 1030
 jurisdiction 1030
 objective 1029–30
 SC and 1030
 ‘significant inter-state conflict’ 1030
 structures 1030
- safety zones (installations on the continental shelf) 589
- Saharan Arab Democratic Republic (SADR)
see also Western Sahara
 AU and 236–7
 effective control test 237
 international legal personality 236–7
 Morocco and 236–7
 recognition 236–7
 self-determination, right to 236–7
 UK and 237 n208
- St Augustine 1119
- St Petersburg Declaration (1868) 1168, 1186, 1189
- St Pierre and Miquelon 598–9, 602
- Sami community in Sweden 295–6
- San Marino, ICJ and 1072 n103
- Sanctions Assistance Missions 1033
 n141
- sanctions, bilateral
see also arms sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41)
 effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters and 692–3
- sanitary regulations of coastal state 571, 572, 579, 580
- Sanjak 1033
- satellite broadcasting 550–1
 freedom of information and 550
 minorities, protection of 550
 state sovereignty and 550
- satellites 78

- satisfaction as remedy for breach of international obligation
 - acknowledgment of breach 806
 - apology 806
 - declaration of breach of international obligations 806, 1101
 - definition 805
 - establishment of fund to promote closer relations 806
 - expression of regret 806
 - measures to prevent recurrence/end continuing violation 360, 803, 806, 1313
 - public condemnation 806
 - public condemnation as 806
 - Rainbow Warrior* 806
 - state practice 805–6
- Saudi Arabia
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - torture and 715, 717–18
 - UDHR and 278–9
- scientific research: *see* marine scientific research
- Scilly Isles, effect on delimitation 594
- Seabed Disputes Chamber (UNCLOS 186–91)
 - accelerated procedure 640 n444
 - ad hoc chambers 640
 - advisory opinion jurisdiction 640
 - applicable law 640
 - Chamber for Fisheries Disputes 640 n443
 - Chamber for Marine Environment Disputes 640 n443
 - Chamber for Maritime Delimitation Disputes 640 n443
 - Chamber of Summary Procedure 640
 - decisions, enforceability 640 n441
 - inter-state disputes 637
 - jurisdiction 637, 640
 - procedure 640 n441
 - provisional measures 640 n444, 641
 - standing 640
- seabed resources, Conventions and other international instruments relating to
 - Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage from Exploration and Exploitation of Seabed Mineral Resources 900 n325
- Geneva Convention on the Territorial Sea (1958) 570
- Interim Agreement on Polymetallic Nodules (1982) 631
- Provisional Understanding Regarding Deep Seabed Mining (1984) 631
- Provisional Understanding on Resolution of Practical Problems of Deep Sea Mining Areas (1987) 631–2
- seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI) 628–34, *see also* marine resources
 - ‘Area’ (UNCLOS 1) 629
 - Authority: *see* International Seabed Authority (UNCLOS 156–85)
 - Clarion–Clipperton Zone 630–1
 - coastal state rights 588–9
 - as common heritage of mankind (UNCLOS 3) 554–5, 629
 - consortia 628
 - developing countries/Third World and 555, 628
 - dispute settlement: *see* Seabed Disputes Chamber (UNCLOS 186–91)
 - Enterprise 629, 630, 633, 634–5
 - landlocked states and 590
 - mineral resources, extent and distribution 628
 - mining technology 43, 628
 - moratorium (UNGA resolution 2574 (XXIV)) 629
 - overlapping claims 631
 - pioneer investors 630–1
 - reciprocating states regime 631–2
 - UN Declaration of Principles Governing the Seabed (1970) 533, 629
 - universality principle 632
- seabed resources (UNCLOS, Part XI), Implementation Agreement (1994) 632–3
- costs and institutional arrangements (Annex) 633
- developed states and 633
- entry into force 632

- provisional application 632–3
- transfer of technology (deep sea mining) 633
- UNCLOS, interpretation as single instrument 632
- seabed and subsoil, rights to prior to UNCLOS 582
- EEZ 597
- search and visit, right of
 - arms trading 619
 - GCHS 22 615
 - slave trading 614, 616, 619
 - straddling stocks 626
 - submarine cables, protection 619
 - treaty rights 619–20
 - unauthorised broadcasting and (UNCLOS 110) 615
 - UNCLOS 110 615
 - WMD 619–20
- SEATO, dissolution 1330 n214
- secession, legal effects
 - decolonisation and secession from independent state distinguished 975
 - dissolution distinguished 974
 - state succession to public debt and 998–1001
 - treaty succession 974–7
- secession, right to/examples of
 - Bangladesh 1273
 - Belgian Congo 526
 - Belgium/Netherlands (1830) 971, 974–5
 - Cuba/Spain (1898) 975
 - federal states 218, 255–6, 291 n151, 293, 295, 963
 - in Georgia 238
 - in Moldova 238
 - in Nigeria 526
 - Panama/Colombia (1903) 975
 - Quebec 255, 291 n151, 293, 295, 523
 - self-determination and 206–7, 255–6, 291, 293, 295, 523
 - in Somalia 237
 - in Sudan 526
 - in Yugoslavia (FRY) 963
- Security Council 1206–10, 1218–21
 - developing states and 1208 n12
 - ICC and 439–40
 - membership 3, 39–40, 215, 961, 1206–7
 - proposals for change 1207–8
 - referrals to ICC 412, 413–14
 - UNGA working group on equitable representation and increase in membership 1207 n13
 - veto: *see* veto (SC)
- Security Council committees and subsidiary organs
 - see also* ICTR; ICTY; UN Compensation Commission
 - Admission of New Members 1208
 - Council meeting away from Headquarters 1208
 - Counter-Terrorism 1162–3, 1164 n234, 1208, 1209, 1339
 - Experts on Rules of Procedure 1208
 - Governing Council of the UN Compensation Commission 1208
 - Peacebuilding Commission 1208
 - sanctions committees 1208
- Security Council and international law/ICJ relationship 1268–71, *see also* ICJ role
 - ‘conformity with the principles of justice and international law’ obligation 1268–9, 1271 n333
 - Congo v. Uganda* 1270
 - Genocide Convention* case 1269–70
- ICJ advisory jurisdiction and 1113–14
- ICJ as possible court of review 1269–71
- ICJ’s obligation to respect SC decisions 1270
- Lockerbie* 1269–70
- obligation to comply with international law including UNC obligations 1268–71
- SC and ICJ roles distinguished 1066
- SC ‘legal’ decisions 1269
- SC referral to the ICJ 1076–7
- Security Council resolutions
 - binding effect 47, 114, 1219, 1223, 1270
 - conflict with legal rights of states 1270

- Security Council resolutions (*cont.*)
 as evidence of state practice 82–3,
 115–17, 544, 1295
 ICJ's obligation to respect 1270
 on ICTR 407, 409, 1269
 on ICTY 403
jus cogens/peremptory norms
 and 127
opinio juris and 544
 Rhodesia 469
 on South West Africa/Namibia 226,
 227, 230
 treaty obligations, primacy (UNC
 103) 127, 1183 n79
- Security Council resolutions by number
 54 (1948) (Middle East) 1237
 221 (1966) (Rhodesia) 1237
 242 (1967) (Middle East) 469, 502,
 1209, 1221, 1223
 301 (1971) (Namibia) 227
 338 (1973) 1209 n22, 1221 n85, 1241
 n135
 353 (1974) (Northern Cyprus) 235
 367 (1975) (good offices mission to
 Cyprus) 1018–19
 476 (1980) (Jerusalem) 469 n105
 478 (1980) (Jerusalem) 469 n105
 491 (1981) (Golan Heights) 469 n105
 497 (1981) (Golan Heights) 502 n80
 502 (1982) (Falklands) 1146
 541 (1983) (Northern Cyprus) 235,
 236, 469–70, 1269
 550 (1984) (Northern Cyprus) 236
 573 (1985) (Israel/PLO) 1241 n180
 579 (1985) (hostage-taking) 1161
 n221
 598 (1982) (Iran–Iraq war) 1241
 660 (1990) (Iraqi invasion of
 Kuwait) 1253
 660 (1990) (Iraqi occupation of
 Kuwait) 1241, 1253–4
 661 (1990) (Iraqi occupation of
 Kuwait) 1147 n149, 1243
 662 (1990) (Iraqi occupation of
 Kuwait) 470, 502, 1253, 1269
 665 (1990) (Iraqi sanctions) 1244
 667 (1990) (Iraq action against
 diplomats in Kuwait) 1241 n180,
 1253
 670 (1990) (Iraqi sanctions) 1244
 674 (1990) (Iraqi occupation of
 Kuwait) 402
 678 (1990) (Iraqi occupation of
 Kuwait) 1253
 683 (1990) (US–Pacific Islands
 Compacts of Association) 225
 687 (1991) (Iraq–Kuwait) 521, 858,
 1045, 1209, 1234, 1248–50, 1255
 n253, 1269
 688 (1991) (Iraqi repression of
 Kurds) 1156, 1239, 1254–5
 692 (1991) (Iraq–Kuwait) 1045
 705 (1991) (Iraq) 1045
 706 (1991) (Iraq) 1045
 713 (1991) (Yugoslavia) 1237–8
 731 (1992) (Libya) 1162, 1245
 733 (1992) (Somalia) 1238
 748 (1992) (Libya) 1270
 749 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1257
 752 (1992) (SFRY) 210
 757 (1992) (SFRY) 210
 757 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1257
 758 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1257–8
 762 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1257
 770 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1258
 776 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1258
 777 (1992) (SFRY) 210, 963
 778 (1992) ('oil for food'
 scheme) 1046
 779 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1257
 788 (1992) (Liberia) 1238, 1277
 789 (1992) (Yugoslavia) 1258
 815 (1993) (Yugoslavia) 1259
 866 (1993) (Liberia) 1277
 915 (1994) (UNASOG) 1011–12
 929 (1994) (Operation
 Turquoise) 1263
 955 (1994) (ICTR) 407, 1269
 1022 (1995) (SFRY) 210
 1031 (1995) (Dayton
 Agreement) 231
 1031 (1995) (IFOR) 1279
 1070 (1996) (Sudan) 1162
 1192 (1998) (sanctions on
 Libya) 1245
 1234 (1999) (Congo) 526, 1154, 1264
 1244 (1999) (Kosovo) 232–3, 452,
 1157, 1280
 1264 (1999) (East Timor) 233–4, 424
 n150, 1230

- 1267 (1999) (Al-Qaida sanctions) 1164 n225
- 1272 (1999) (UNTAET) 233–4, 1230
- 1315 (2000) (Sierra Leone Special Court) 418
- 1368 (2001) (11 September attacks) 1136, 1162, 1209, 1239
- 1373 (2001) (11 September attacks) 1136, 1162, 1163, 1208, 1209, 1210, 1239
- 1373 (2001) (terrorist measures) 1136
- 1441 (2002) (Iraqi non-compliance with SC resolutions) 1255–6
- 1442 (2002) (referrals to ICC) 414
- 1497 (2003) (Liberia) 1277–8
- 1509 (2003) (UN Mission in Liberia) 1278
- 1540 (2004) (WMD) 620, 1163, 1208, 1210, 1240
- 1556 (2004) (Sudan) 1265
- 1590 (2005) (Sudan) 1265
- 1624 (2005) (terrorist measures) 1163
- 1645 (2005) (Peacekeeping Commission) 1218 n67
- 1664 (2006) (Special Tribunal for Lebanon) 427
- 1674 (2006) (Protection of Civilians in Armed Conflicts) 1184 n83
- 1701 (2006) (Lebanon) 1230–1
- 1706 (2006) (Sudan) 1266
- 1730 (2006) (sanctions de-listing) 1250–1
- 1757 (2007) (Special Tribunal for Lebanon) 427–8
- 1769 (2007) (Sudan) 1266
- Security Council, role and powers 1218–21, *see also* peacekeeping operations; threat to the peace, actual breach or aggression (UNC 39)
- admission, suspension and expulsion, recommendations to UNGA 1209, 1210
- Chapter VI 1219–21
- Chapter VI and Chapter VII action distinguished 1219, 1220, 1225, 1236, 1257–67, 1272–3
- Cold War and 1209–10
- collective security 1236, *see also* collective security decisions, binding effect 1208–9, 1219
- enforcement measures (Chapter VII) 1208–9
- evaluation 1209–10
- as executive organ 47, 1206
- good offices/mediation 1221
- ICJ judges, election 1209
- international peace and security 1024–6, 1206, 1208–9, 1218–21
- investigation of dispute (UNC 34) 1219–20
- member states' rights 1220
- non-member states' rights 1220
- Pacific Islands Trust Territory 224
- parties' obligation to refer dispute to (UNC 37) 1220
- peaceful settlement of disputes (Chapter VI) 1208–9, 1218–21, 1222
- peacekeeping operations, authority to establish 1225
- recommendation of procedures or methods of adjustment (UNC 36(1)) 1220
- recommendation to refer to the ICJ 1220, 1221
- recommendations, non-binding effect 1208–9, 1220
- recommendations for pacific settlement (UNC 38) 1220 n77
- request to parties to negotiate settlement 1221
- resolution 242 (1967), importance 1209, 1221
- right to call on parties to settle dispute by peaceful means (UNC 33) 1220
- strategic trust areas 1209, 1214
- substitutes for 1210
- terrorism and 1161–3, 1209
- third parties' rights 1221
- UNGA concurrent responsibilities and 1210, 1222, 1271–3

- security, right to: *see* liberty and security of person, right to; national security; peace and security, right to
- security zones 584
- sedentary species 589, 624 n356
- Selden, John 24
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 1131–47
- acquiescence and 1137
- against embassy abroad, sufficiency 1134
- against irregular forces 1135–6
- anticipatory or pre-emptive 1137–40
- armed attack, need for 1133–40, *see also* ‘armed attack’
- attacks by non-state entities 1134–7
- burden of proof 1133, 1135
- Chatham House Principles on International Law on the Use of Force in Self-Defence 1137 n94
- collective self-defence: *see* collective self-defence (UNC 51)
- customary international law and 97, 793, 1132, 1137 n94, 1139
- determination of legality, responsibility for 4–5
- diplomatic premises, inviolability and 576–7
- Entebbe incident 680, 1144
- Falklands War 1146
- high seas during armed conflict and 611
- independence of states and 212
- inherent right 1131–2, 1136, 1137 n94
- Institut de Droit International resolution (2007) 1139 n103, 1140 n108
- necessity 1131, 1134 n80, 1140–1
- no-fly zones and 1254–5
- nuclear weapons and 99 n112, 1142–3
- proportionality 1131, 1134 n80, 1139, 1140–3, 1188
- report to Security Council, need for 1143
- SC resolution 502 (1982) 1146
- SC resolution 661 (1990) 1147 n149
- SC resolutions 1368 (2001) and 1373 (2001) 1136
- state responsibility and 793
- terrorism and 1135–7
- UN arms embargo and 1269
- US operations in Afghanistan 1136–7
- use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 4–5, 1123–4, 1131–47
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51), jurisprudence
- 1967 Israel–Arab War 1138
- Caroline* 1131, 1139–40, 1145
- Congo v. Uganda* 1135–6
- Construction of a Wall* 1135
- Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 99 n112, 1141, 1142
- Nicaragua* 1132, 1134–5, 1138–9, 1140–1, 1147
- Oil Platforms* 1141, 1142
- self-determination, right to 251–7
- 19th century and 28
- Aaland Islands* 200–1, 251–2
- ACHR 20 290, 392
- associations of states 238–9
- AU and 256
- boundary disputes and 524
- in case of foreign occupation 523
- CIS and 241
- civil wars and 1148
- as collective right 281, 292
- Colonial Declaration (UNGA resolution 1514 (XV)) 40, 115–16, 252–3, 255, 256, 522–3
- as criterion of statehood 198
- customary international law, whether 254
- Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) 116, 252–3, 256, 290, 522, 526, 1148
- decolonisation process and 40, 252–3
- definition 256–7
- democratic governance and 292–3
- economic self-determination, right to 40, 293
- effective government, required standard 205–6
- as *erga omnes* obligation 125, 255
- EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States (1991) and 207

- Falkland Islands 199, 533
 federal states 218
 as general principle of international law 40, 251–5, 290
 General Recommendation 21 293
 Gibraltar and 523 n199
 Helsinki Final Act (1975) 289–90
 as human right 289–93
 humanitarian intervention and 1158
 ICCPR Art. 1 253, 289, 314, 522
 ICESCR Art. 1 253, 289, 308
 ILC and 290
 indigenous peoples 299
 insurgents and belligerents 245
 internal self-determination, right to 292–3, 523
 international law, effect on 40
 islands 199
 jurisprudence 254–5
 as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 808 n198
 League of Nations and 251–2
 as legal principle 115–16
 mandate system and 251
 minorities 522–3
 minorities protection and 251
opinio juris and 254
 Pacific Islands Trust Territories–US Compacts of Association (1986) and 225
 Palestine 1181
 ‘people’ 256–7
 SADR 236–7
 secession and 206–7, 255, 291, 293, 295, 523
 Somalia 523–4
 state practice 252, 290
 state/statehood and 205–7, 257
 territorial integrity and 256–7, 290–1, 392, 488, 523–4
 trust territories 225
 UN Charter (UNC 1(2) and UNC 55) 252
 UNGA resolution 1541 (XV) and 256 n293
 UNHRC and 290
 UNHRC General Comment No. 1 291–2
 use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 1123, 1148–9
uti possidetis doctrine/stability of boundaries and 526–8
 Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) and 291 n151
 self-executing treaties 162–4, 177
 self-help: *see* self-defence, right to (UNC 51)
 Senegal, Gulf War and 1253 n246
 separation of powers
 act of state and 137, 149
 in the international legal system 6, 11–12, 1268–71
 treaty implementation and 148, 168
 September 11 attacks
 as ‘armed attack’ 1136–7
 NATO response 1290 n29
 SC resolution 1368 (2001) 1136, 1162, 1209, 1239
 SC resolution 1373 (2001) 1136, 1162, 1163, 1208, 1209, 1210, 1239
 self-defence, right to (UNC 51) and 1135 n83, 1136
 as threat to international security 1162, 1218, 1239
 Serbia
 see also Yugoslavia (FRY); Yugoslavia (SFRY)
 state succession 210, 960, 962–4
 UN membership 1211
 UNGA resolution 60/264 (secession of Montenegro) 963 n39
 UNTAES and 231 n177, 1229–30
 Yugoslavia (FRY), change to (2006) 963
 Serbian War Crimes Chamber
 applicable law (Serbian law) 429
 establishment by Serbian National Assembly 429–30
 judges 429–30
 as national court 430
 Serbian War Crimes Chamber, jurisdiction
 crimes against humanity 429
 serious violations of international humanitarian law 429
 Serbo-Croat-Slovene state, minorities 293 n164

- serious injury to body or health, as war crime 434
- service of process on foreign state
 acceptable means 749
Kuwait Airways 749
 state immunity and 749
 UK State Immunity Act 1978 749
Westminster City Council v. Iran 749
- servitudes 538–41, *see also* leases of territory
 Aaland Islands 539–40
 cession of territory and 499
 customary international law 970
 definition 538, 539
Eritrea/Yemen 540
 examples 539
Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project 970
North Atlantic Fisheries arbitration and 541
 Panama Canal 540
 Red Sea and 540
 Suez Canal 540
 territorial sovereignty distinguished 490
 treaty succession and 969–70
- sexual discrimination: *see* gender discrimination
- sexual harassment, protection against 361 n104
- sexual offences
 ethnic cleansing and 433
 individual criminal responsibility 425
 as ‘serious crime’ 425
- SFOR
 Dayton Agreement, responsibility for implementation 231 n179
 establishment 1279
 website 1279 n370, 1340
- Shabra and Shatilla murders 672 n121
- shareholders, diplomatic protection and 817–18
- Sharon, Ariel 672, 737 n221
- ships (arrest/attachment), in territorial waters 575–6
- ships (jurisdiction)
see also hot pursuit; innocent passage
 collisions on the high seas 84–5, 618, 656–7
 criminal jurisdiction 574
 flag state: *see* flag state jurisdiction
 high seas 611–28
 internal waters 557–8
 territorial waters 574–5
- ships (jurisdiction), jurisprudence
Franconia 141–2
Lotus 84–5, 212, 618, 655–7
NBB v. Ocean Trade Company 557 n18
Parlement Belge 148–9, 702, 705
R v. Anderson 557
Schooner Exchange v. McFaddon 558, 653, 699
Wildenhus 557
- ships (nationality and registration)
 conditions for, requirement to state 611
 conditions, state’s right to determine 664
 customary international law and 612
 diplomatic protection and 819
 evidence of 613
 flag, dependence on 611
 flagless/stateless ships 611, 613–14
 genuine link requirement (UNCLOS 91) 611–13, 643, 664
 Iran–Iraq War, reflagging during 612–13
 ships owned or operating in/from Yugoslavia (FRY) 1245 n207
 UN Conference on Conditions of Registration of Ships (1984) 612
- ships (nationality and registration), jurisprudence
IMCO 612
Naim Molvan v. AG for Palestine 613–14
Saiga (No. 2) 611–12, 613, 819
- ships, state-owned (immunities) 148–9, 703–4, 705–6
 Brussels Convention (1926) 704 n33
 GCTS (1958) and 704 n33
 ownership and control distinguished 703–4
 UNCLOS and 704 n33
 warships, limitation to 148–9

- Sierra Leone
 - collective use of force (Chapter VII) 1263–4
 - collective use of force other than under Chapter VII 1263–4
 - ECOWAS and 1029
 - embargoes 1263
 - Malicious Damages Act 1861 420 n126
 - peacekeeping operations 418
 - Prevention of Cruelty to Children Act 1926 420 n126
 - threat to international peace and security (UNSC resolutions) 1238, 1277
 - UN Observer Mission 1263
 - UNAMSIL 1263–4
 - Sierra Leone Special Court 418–20
 - appeal, right of 419
 - due diligence 420 n126
 - establishment (SC resolution 1315 (2000)) 418
 - heads of state, immunities from jurisdiction of former 420, 735
 - individual criminal responsibility 418
 - Sierra Leone Special Court, applicable law
 - decisions of Sierra Leone Supreme Court 419
 - ICTR/ICTY decisions 419
 - Sierra Leone Special Court, judges
 - appointment 419
 - number 419–20
 - Sierra Leone Special Court, jurisdiction
 - cases completed and in progress 420
 - concurrent/primacy 418, 420
 - crimes against humanity 419
 - crimes under Sierra Leonean law 420
 - GC, common article 3 and Additional Protocol II (non-international armed conflict) 419
 - peacekeepers 418
 - serious violations of international humanitarian law 418, 419–20
 - Sierra Leone Special Court, organs/organisation
 - Appeals Chamber 418, 419
 - collection of evidence 419
 - completion strategy 420
 - investigation and prosecution 419
 - Office of the Prosecutor, powers 419
 - Prosecutor 418, 419
 - Registry 418, 419
 - Sierra Leonean/international staff 419
 - Trial Chambers 418–19
 - website 1341
 - Silesia, minorities post-WWI 293 n164
 - Singapore
 - ASEAN, membership 1294
 - State Immunity Act 1979 707, 727 n163, 745 n257
 - Single European Act (1986) 1288
 - slave trading, prohibition
 - 19th century and 619
 - High Seas Convention (1958) and 614, 616
 - individual criminal responsibility 397
 - as international crime 397
 - as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 126, 808
 - obligation to take effective measures to prevent and punish (UNCLOS 99) 616
 - right of search and visit 614, 616, 619
 - treaty provisions 616 n328
 - UNCLOS and 614, 616
 - universal jurisdiction 397–8
- slavery
 - as crime against humanity 408, 436
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms 808 n198
 - slavery, prohibition
 - 19th century and 270
 - ACHR 6 274
 - customary international law 275
 - ECHR 4 274, 348
 - as *erga omnes* obligation 124
 - ICCPR 8 275, 315
 - as international crime 807
 - non-derogation 274, 275
 - Slavery, Slave Trade and Institutions and Practices Similar to Slavery, Convention on (1956) 303

- slavery, prohibition (*cont.*)
 - Suppression of Traffic in Persons and Exploitation of Prostitution (1949) 303
 - universal jurisdiction and 270, 673
- Slavery, UNCHR Working Group on the Contemporary Forms of 308
- Slavonia: *see* UNTAES
- Slovakia
 - boundaries 968 n69
 - establishment 209
 - UN membership 985, 1211
- Slovenia, recognition and UN membership 210, 962
- smuggling, agreements/regulations regulating 579, 619, 1291
- Social Charter: *see* European Social Charter (1961) (as amended)
- social contract 26–7
- social and economic rights
 - ACHPR 391
 - ACHR 381
 - Economic Rights Committee: *see* UNCESCR
 - Minorities, Framework Convention for the Protection of 366
 - Third World and 269–70
- social justice, ILO and 339
- social security provisions, diplomatic exemption 767
- social security, right to
 - CIS Convention 378
 - ESC 11–14 361
 - General Comments (UNCESCR) 19 308
 - state succession to property and 992 n194
 - UDHR 25 279
- social values, protection of 298
- socialist states
 - see also* USSR
 - human rights and 278–9
 - international law and 31–8
 - trade with 692–3
- sociology and law 51–4, 55–6, 59
- soft law 117–19
- Solferino, battle of 1168
- Somalia
 - AMISOM 1279
 - arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1246–7, 1260–1, 1278–9
 - AU mediation 1027, 1279
 - civil conflict 208 n56
 - collective use of force (Chapter VII) 1261, 1279
 - humanitarian assistance 1260–2
 - ICRC and 1201
 - individual criminal responsibility 402
 - international humanitarian law and 402
 - Organisation of the Islamic Conference and 1275 n348
 - peacekeeping operations 1260–2, 1279
 - recognition of governments and 481
 - self-determination, right to and 523–4
 - territorial claims 491, 523–4
 - as threat to the peace (SC resolution 733 (1992)) 1238
 - Transitional Federal Institutions/Union of Islamic Courts 1279
 - UN failure in 1224
 - UNOSOM II 1261–2
 - war crimes and 402
- Somaliland
 - AU and 237
 - Constitution (2001) 237
 - declaration of independence (1991) 237, 467 n99
 - relations falling short of recognition as state 237, 467 n99
 - UK and 237 n211, 467 n99
- sources of international law (ICJ 38) 69–128, *see also* customary international law; equity; general principles; general principles of law/international law; judicial decisions as source of international law; state practice as source of international law; treaties as source of international law
- customary law 41
- customary and treaty law, primacy 94–5, 123–4

- decisions of international institutions 51
- definition 70
- formal and material sources, distinguishability 71
- general applicability of Statute enumeration 70–1
- hierarchy 66, 94, 123–7
- ILC and 119–21
- international administrative law 1295
- international legal system deficiencies and 70
- judicial decisions 109–12
- law-creation and law-determination, distinguishability 71, 113–14
- municipal law analogies 105, 489, 490
- municipal law sources distinguished 69–70
- states as subjects, makers and enforcers of law 6
- UNGA and SRC resolutions 114–17
- unilateral acts 121–2
- websites 1333–4
- South Africa
 - apartheid: *see* apartheid
 - Bantustans 202–3, 470, 480–1, 526
 - Ciskei and 480–1
 - customary international law and 174–6
 - diplomatic protection, justiciability 188–9
 - elections (1994), UN role 1229
 - embargoes 4
 - Foreign States Immunities Act 1981 707 n53, 727 n163, 745 n257
 - freedom of association 341
 - human rights in 304
 - ILO and 341
 - international law in municipal courts 174–6
 - justiciability 188–9
 - Namibia and: *see* Namibia; South West Africa mandate
 - precedent/*stare decisis* doctrine 174
 - secession and 526
 - state immunity and commercial transactions 720
 - Status of Ciskei Act 1981 480
 - treaties/municipal law relationship 174–5
- South Africa, intervention in Angolan civil war 1150, 1241 n180
- South Africa, legislation
 - Constitution 1996 175–6
 - Constitution (interim) 1993 174–5, 202 n31
- South African Development Community (SADC): *see* SADC
- Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation
- South American Indians 23
- South Korea, invasion by North Korea as breach of the peace (SC S/1501) 1241
- South Ossetia 258
- South Pacific Nuclear Free Zone 610
- South West Africa mandate 225–7, 230, 1214, *see also* Namibia
 - mandate, succession 1331 n221
 - petition to UN, right of 225
 - termination of mandate 226
- sovereign immunity: *see* state immunity
- Sovereign Order of Malta, international legal personality 243
- sovereign powers
 - diplomatic representation 217
 - postal administration 217
- sovereignty: *see* state sovereignty; territorial sovereignty
- Soviet Union: *see* USSR
- space: *see* outer space
- space law, influence of USSR and US 80
- space objects
 - damage by 347 n321, 546–7, 1016 n28
 - International Liability for Damage Caused by Space Objects Convention (1972) 854, 888
 - jurisdiction 546
- Spain
 - civil war, recognition issues 460
 - closed seas concept 24, 553–4, 609
 - CoE Torture Committee and 363 n115
 - continental shelf 588

- Spain (*cont.*)
 development of international law
 and 22–3
 genocide, jurisdiction 673
 Gulf War and 1253 n246
 as nation-state 20
 in the New World 23
 state immunity from
 execution/attachment 747–8
 universal jurisdiction and 673
 Spanish Inquisition 23
 Special Missions Convention
 (1969) 774–5
 customary international law,
 whether 775
 drafting process 120
 notification of size and
 composition 775
 siting, need for agreement on 775
 special missions, immunities
 official activities, limitation to
 775
 ratione materiae 775
 Sissoko 775
 Tabatabai 775
 UN Convention on State Immunity
 (2004) 709
 special rapporteurs 222–3, 287 n128,
 299, 304–5, 320, 325, 1325
 specialised agencies 338–44, *see also*
 individual agencies
 binding nature of decisions 1285
 codification and development of
 international law and 121
 colonial territories, assistance to 246
 249
 commissions of inquiry and 1021–2
 constituent instruments,
 interpretation 1305
 definition 1285
 dispute settlement
 procedures 1034–5
 human rights and 299
 ICJ advisory jurisdiction
 and 1034–5, 1308 n119, 1325 n190
 influence, means of exerting 1285
 Latin American system and 384
 list of 1285 n14
 privileges and immunities 776 n447
 Privileges and Immunities of the
 Specialised Agencies, Convention
 on (1947) 1319
 recognition and 245–6
 role 1285
 speciality principle 686
 specific performance
 as remedy 803
 state immunity and 743
 spheres of influence 57
 Spitzbergen 535
 Sri Lanka
 Red Cross and 1201
 suspension of US aid 1129
 stability clauses 829
 Stalin, Joseph 33
 Stammmler, R. 53
 standard of living, right to adequate
 (ICESCR 11) 308
 standard of proof, genocide 285
 standard of treatment of aliens 823–7,
 see also acquired rights of aliens in
 case of state succession; aliens;
 deportation/expulsion;
 expropriation/nationalisation of
 property of foreign national
 19th century developments 270,
 824–5
 Calvo doctrine 824
 denial of justice and 825
 developing countries' attitude
 towards 823
 differential treatment,
 justification 826
 Harvard Draft Convention on the
 International Responsibility of
 States for Injury to Aliens
 (1961) 830
 human rights obligations and 825–6
 international minimum
 standard 824–5
 in Latin America 27
 MFN treatment 839
 mixed claims commissions and 823
 national treatment 825
 standard of treatment of aliens,
 jurisprudence
 Certain German Interests in Polish
 Upper Silesia 824

- Garcia* 824
- Neer* 824–5
- Roberts* 824
- standards, legal status 118
- standing/*locus standi*
 - European Committee of Social Rights complaints procedure 362
 - Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities (1994) 367
 - ICC appeals 417
 - ICJ 963, 1072–4
 - ILO complaints procedure 340
 - international organisations 1311–12
 - ITLOS 639
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 125
 - Minority Languages Convention Committee of Experts 365
 - NGOs 1073
 - Seabed Disputes Chamber 640
- standing/*locus standi* (individual)
 - African Commission 393–4
 - CEDAW 324
 - CERC 313
 - CIS Human Rights Commission 379
 - Committee on Economic and Social Rights 311
 - as common practice 335
 - diplomatic protection and 258
 - ECtHR 259, 352, 353
 - Enforced Disappearances Committee 335
 - IAComHR 259, 382, 384, 385
 - ICSID 259, 1041–2
 - Iran–US Claims Tribunal 1043
 - ITLOS 639
 - mandated/trust territories and 225, 245
 - Migrant Workers Committee 334
 - NAFTA Chapter 11 investment disputes 1038–9
 - post-WWII developments 271
 - Torture Committee (UN) 328
 - treaty provision 258–9
 - UNESCO 342
 - UNHRC 319–22
 - ‘victim of violation’ 330, 379–80
 - ‘Star Wars’ 545 n314
 - stare decisis* doctrine: *see* precedent/*stare decisis* doctrine
 - state agencies/instrumentalities/entities, jurisprudence
 - Baccus* 703, 729
 - Bancec* 732
 - Czarnikoff v. Rolimpex* 731
 - Dole Food Co. v. Patrickson* 722 n132
 - Krajina v. Tass Agency* 703, 729–33
 - Kuwait Airways* 731
 - Trendtex* 728–9
 - state agencies/instrumentalities/entities, state immunity entitlement 728–33, 736
 - act of state and 192
 - sovereign acts, limitation to 731
 - state agencies/instrumentalities/entities, status as for state immunity purposes
 - applicable law for determining 703, 729
 - bank as 722
 - control test 730
 - direct ownership requirement 722 n132
 - evidence of, source and evaluation 730
 - functional test 730
 - ‘government’/government departments 732–3
 - intention to give sovereign status and 731–2
 - ITLOS and 639
 - responsibility for determining 736–7
 - separate legal personality requirement 728–31
 - UN State Immunity Convention (2004) and 709
 - state archives
 - see also* state succession to state archives
 - cultural heritage and 994, 996
 - definition 993–4
 - UNESCO and 994
 - state contracts
 - applicable law 829
 - ‘internationalised’ contracts and 829
 - pacta sunt servanda* and 829
 - stability clauses 829

- state of emergency
 - reports on 308
 - right to declare 389
- state immunity
 - diplomatic privileges and immunities and 709 n63, 728, 755, 762–3
 - reciprocity and 1318–19, 1326
- state immunity, burden/standard of
 - proof 708–9, 712, 740 n237, 743, 748–9
 - balance of probabilities 748–9
 - court's own motion obligation 748 n278
 - execution/attachment 743, 746–7
 - head of mission certificate and 747
 - jurisdiction 712, 740 n237
 - Maclaine Watson* 748–9
 - purpose of funds 746–7
 - sovereign nature of act 708–9
 - UK State Immunity Act 1978 and 748
- state immunity, classification of act for purposes of 708–14
 - acts *jure imperii* and *jure gestionis* distinguished 701, 708 n61, 709–14, 1319
 - civil law practice 710–11
 - commercial transactions: *see* state immunity and commercial transactions
 - contract for repair of ambassador's residence 719 n112
 - developing countries and 710
 - development programme, participation in 723
 - employment contracts: *see* employment contracts, state immunity in relation to
 - enforcement of arbitration award 720–1
 - exchange control, acts in compliance with 722
 - government bonds, issue/rescheduling 722–3
 - hostage-taking 715–16
 - human rights violations 715–18
 - ILC draft articles 708 n61
 - initial and subsequent acts, distinguishability 712, 714
 - issue of foreign Treasury notes 721
 - as judicial act 708 n59
 - lease on ambassadorial residence 755 n314
 - military bases, acts in connection with 713–14
 - military training agreement 723
 - modified 'nature' test 710
 - nature v. purpose test 709–14
 - official publication 723
 - police powers 715, 716, 732
 - private citizen test 710–11, 714 n90, 722–3
 - reward for information about fugitive 723
 - security enforcement 716
 - state-sponsored terrorism 685 n197, 715–16
 - tortious activity 684, 685, 721
 - torture 160, 715, 716–18
 - UN State Immunity Convention (2004) 708–9
 - violations of international law 160, 684, 685
- state immunity, classification for purposes of, *jus cogens*/peremptory norms violation and 127, 716
- state immunity and commercial transactions 718–25
 - act in forum state in connection with commercial act elsewhere 723–4
 - acta *jure imperii* and *jure gestionis* distinction, relevance 719
 - acts 'other than in the exercise of sovereign authority' and 719–21
 - 'commercial transaction' (UK State Immunity Act 1978) 718–21
 - 'commercial transaction' (UN State Immunity Convention) 725
 - 'commercial transaction' (US Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 1976) 721–3
 - direct effect in forum state of commercial act elsewhere 723–4
 - inter-state transactions 724

- UN State Immunity
 - Convention 720–1, 724–5
- state immunity, entitlement
 - Duff Development* case 704
 - EEC 734–5
 - federal states and 709, 733–5
 - ‘foreign state’ 704, 728–35
 - government departments
 - 732–3
 - heads of state: *see* heads of state
 - political subdivision 709
 - recognition of state or government,
 - dependence on 453, 454, 455, 471, 704
 - ‘state’ 709
 - state agencies/instrumentalities/
 - entities: *see* state agencies/
 - instrumentalities/entities, state
 - immunity entitlement; state
 - agencies/instrumentalities/entities,
 - status as for state immunity
 - purposes
 - state-owned ships 148–9, 703–4, 705–6
 - ‘terrorist states’ 685 n197, 715–16
 - warships 699
- State Immunity, European Convention
 - on (1972)
 - federal states and 733
 - immunity from execution 744
 - immunity as rule subject to
 - exceptions 707 n56, 708 n61
 - tortious proceedings 727
- State immunity, European Tribunal in
 - matters of 707 n56, 744–5
- state immunity, exceptions
 - employment contracts: *see*
 - employment contracts, state
 - immunity in relation to
 - immovable property in the forum
 - state, action related to 723, 728, 766 n382
 - property taken in violation of
 - international law 728 n168
- state immunity from
 - execution/attachment 744–8
 - burden of proof 743
 - central bank assets 745
 - classification of act for purposes of:
 - see* state immunity, classification of
 - act
 - connection between property and
 - entity in proceedings, need
 - for 744–5
 - embassy bank account and 746–8, 762
 - European Convention on State
 - Immunity (1972) and 744
 - ‘property’ 745
 - property taken in violation of
 - international law 745 n262
 - purpose of property to be seized,
 - relevance 744–8, 762
 - state immunity from jurisdiction
 - distinguished 744, 745–6
 - UK State Immunity Act 745
 - UN State Immunity Convention
 - (2004) and 744
 - US Foreign Sovereign Immunities
 - Act 1976 745–6
- state immunity from
 - execution/attachment, waiver
 - arbitration clause/agreement 744
 - by international agreement 744
 - contractual provision 744
 - pre-judgment attachment 742
 - waiver of immunity from jurisdiction
 - distinguished 740, 744
 - written consent, need for 745
- state immunity from
 - jurisdiction 677–742
 - civil and criminal jurisdiction
 - distinguished 718
 - classification of act for purposes of:
 - see* state immunity, classification of
 - act for purposes of
 - customary international law
 - 716
 - state immunity from jurisdiction,
 - procedural matters
 - due process/right to a remedy
 - and 716–17
 - service of process 749
 - state immunity from jurisdiction,
 - theories of
 - absolute immunity 701–4

- state immunity (*cont.*)
 act of state doctrine and 699–701, 722
 comity and 706, 717
 conventions relating to 698
 historical development 697–704
in personam/in rem actions, attempt to distinguish 706–7
 non-justiciability distinguished 180, 182–3, 699–701
 as personal attribute 697–8
 precedent/*stare decisis* doctrine and 706–7
 privileges and immunities of international organisations distinguished 1318–19, 1326–7
 restrictive immunity 704–8
 as rule of immunity subject to exceptions 707, 708–9, 715, 749
 as rule of procedure/jurisdiction 700, 717–18
 sovereign equality of states and 1318–19, 1326
 state practice, dependence on 698, 704–8
 Tate Letter (1952) 705
 territorial integrity/territorial sovereignty, respect for as basis 697
- state immunity from jurisdiction,
 waiver 740–2
 action to establish immunity and 741 n239
 arbitration clause and 741–2
 bilateral treaty provisions 742 n245
 burden of proof 740 n237
 choice of law clause and 740 n238, 741
 counterclaims and 741
 express waiver 740
 failure to challenge award and 741
 submission to the jurisdiction as 740–1
 UK State Immunity Act 1978 740–1
 UN State Immunity Convention (2004) 740, 741
 waiver of immunity from execution distinguished 740, 744
- state immunity from pre-judgment attachment 742–3
Mareva injunction 743
 UN Convention on State Immunity (2004) and 743 n248
 waiver 742
- State Immunity, Inter-American Draft Convention on (1983) 707 n56
- state immunity, jurisprudence
Abbott 747–8
AIC Ltd v. Nigeria 720, 745
Al-Adsani cases 716–17
Alamieyeseigha 734
Alcom 707, 718 n111, 746–7, 762
Alfred Dunhill 705
Baccus 703, 729
Banamar 747
Bancec 732
Bouzari 716
Canada Labour Code 711, 714, 726
Condor 747
Cristina 702–3
Czarnikoff v. Rolimpex 731
De Sanchez case 711
Ferrini 718 n108
Holland v. Lampen-Wolfe 699, 713–14, 716, 731
International Association of Machinists 700
Intpro 763
P Congreso Del Partido 707, 710–11, 712–13, 714
Jones v. Saudi Arabia 717–18, 733
KJ International v. MV Oscar Jupiter 720
Krajina v. Tass Agency 703, 729–30
Kuwait Airways 714, 731
Leasing West 748
Letelier case 700–1, 727–8, 749–50
Littrell (No. 2) 713
MacLaine Watson 734–5, 763
Mellenger 733
Parlement Belge 148–9, 702, 705
Permanent Mission of India v. New York State 723
Philippine Admiral case 705–6
Philippine Embassy case 746
Pinochet (No. 3) 699, 718, 737, 738
Porto Alexandre 703

- Propend Finance* 752
- Re P (No. 2)* 732–3
- Saudi Arabia v. Nelson* 715
- Schooner Exchange v. McFadden* 699
- Sengupta* 714 n90, 725–6
- Simpson v. Libya* 715–16
- Svenska Petroleum v. Lithuania* 720–1
- Tel Oren* 750
- Thai-Europe Tapioca case* 706
- Trendtex* 706–7, 728–9
- Verlinden* 750
- Victory Transport case* 705, 708, 735
- Weltover* 724
- Yuan Ysmael* 703
- Zedan* 724
- state immunity, procedural matters, as preliminary matter 700, 743, 748
- State Immunity, UN Convention on (2004)
 - acts *jure imperii* and *jure gestionis* distinguished 720
 - commercial activity and 720–1, 724–5
 - ‘commercial transaction’ 725
 - criminal proceedings, exclusion 707 n53
 - federal states and 734
 - immovable property in forum state, action relating to 766 n382
 - post-judgment attachment and 744–5
 - pre-judgment attachment and 743 n248
 - ratione personae* and *ratione materiae* entitlement distinguished 738
 - restrictive immunity and 707 n53
 - as rule subject to exceptions 708–9, 717
 - ‘state’ (art. 2(1)(b)) 709, 734
 - tortious proceedings 727
 - waiver of immunity 740, 741
- state practice, classification as/evidence of 81–4
 - BITs 98 n107, 838
 - claims and counter-claims 84
 - codification treaties 88–9
 - enforcement action, relevance 83–4
 - federal court decisions 112, 223
 - ILC reports 88–9, 120–1
 - municipal court decisions 112
 - municipal law 83, 136–7
 - practice of entities other than states and international organisations 263
 - practice of international organisations 82–3, 88–9, 1295
 - publications relating to 82 n39
 - Scotia* 83
 - statements and arguments falling short of firm position 82 n38
 - UNGA/SCR resolutions 82–3, 88–9, 115–17, 1295
 - UNHRC practice 290
- state practice as source of international law, jurisprudence
 - Anglo-Norwegian Fisheries case* 77, 90, 560
 - Asylum case* 76–7, 78, 92
 - European Commission of the Danube* 76 n19
 - Lotus* 81
 - Nicaragua* 77–8
 - North Sea Continental Shelf cases* 77, 85–6, 95–6
- state practice as source of international law, requirements
 - classification as state practice: *see* state practice, classification as/evidence of
 - consistency with law/legal facts 514–15
 - constant and uniform practice 75, 76–81, 560, 563–4
 - continuity 80
 - difficulties of establishing 73–4
 - duration 75, 76, 80, 86
 - formalisation 28
 - ‘immemorial usage’ 76 n19
 - intention to create norm 117
 - lump sum settlements 841
 - persistent objector rule 91
 - power politics and 79–80, 215
 - practice subsequent to treaty, relevance 85–6, 252
 - repetition 75, 76, 78–9
 - SEDCO* 841
 - sufficiency 74, 76–81

- state practice (*cont.*)
 - uniformity 77–8
 - USSR and 34
- state responsibility for consequences of lawful act 1313
- State Responsibility, ILC Articles on (2001)
 - art. 1 (general principle of state responsibility) 781
 - art. 2 (elements) 782
 - art. 3 (characterisation of act) 782
 - art. 4 (conduct of organs of state) 222, 786–7
 - art. 5 (conduct of persons or entities exercising governmental authority) 787–8
 - art. 6 (organs placed at disposal of state by another state) 788
 - art. 7 (excess of authority/contravention of instructions) 789
 - art. 8 (conduct directed or controlled by state) 789–91
 - art. 9 (conduct in absence or default of official authorities) 791
 - art. 10 (conduct of insurrectional or other movement) 791–3
 - art. 11 (conduct acknowledged and accepted by state as its own) 793
 - art. 12 (existence of breach) 782
 - art. 13 (critical date) 782
 - art. 14 (continuing breach) 782
 - art. 15 (composite act) 782
 - art. 16 (aid or assistance) 782
 - art. 17 (direction and control of act) 782
 - art. 18 (coercion) 782
 - art. 19 [1996 Draft Articles] (*jus cogens*/peremptory norms breaches) 126, 807–8
 - art. 20 (consent) 793, 1152 n171
 - art. 21 (self-defence) 793, 1132 n66
 - art. 22 (countermeasures) 794–5
 - art. 23 (*force majeure*) 796–7
 - art. 24 (distress) 797
 - art. 25 (necessity) 798–9
 - art. 30 (cessation and non-repetition) 800–1, 803 n161
 - art. 31 (reparation) 801–2
 - art. 32 (internal law as justification: irrelevance) 802 n151
 - art. 34 (forms of reparation) 802
 - art. 35 (restitution) 802–3
 - art. 36(1) (compensation obligation) 804
 - art. 36(2) (measure of compensation) 804–5
 - art. 37 (satisfaction) 803
 - art. 39 (compensation: offset) 802 n152
 - art. 40 (serious breach of *jus cogens*/peremptory norms obligation) 808
 - art. 40(2) ('serious breach' of peremptory norm obligation) 127
 - art. 41 (serious breach of *jus cogens*/peremptory norms obligation: consequences) 808
 - art. 41(2) (non-recognition of lawfulness of peremptory norm breach) 127
 - art. 42 (invocation of responsibility) 799
 - art. 44 (admissibility of claims/nationality of claims) 808
 - art. 44(b) (exhaustion of local remedies) 808, 819–20
 - art. 45 (loss of right to invoke) 799
 - art. 46 (plurality of injured states) 799
 - art. 47 (plurality of responsible states) 799
 - art. 48 (invocation by state other than injured state) 124, 800
 - art. 49 (countermeasures) 795
 - art. 50 (obligations not affected by countermeasures) 795
 - art. 50(d) (countermeasures in case of breach of peremptory norm) 127
 - art. 51 (countermeasures: proportionality) 795
 - art. 52 (countermeasures: conditions) 795–6
 - art. 58 (individual responsibility) 782
 - fault 785
 - importance 120
 - summary and drafting history 780–1

- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act 778–843, *see also* *Chorzów Factory* principle/*restitutio in integrum*; expropriation/nationalisation; international law, compliance with; reparation for breach of international obligation; standard of treatment of aliens
- applicable law 138, 778–80
- of belligerents 1181, 1193
- breaches of *jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 127
- burden/standard of proof 780, 784, 888
- Chapter VII enforcement action and 807–8
- definition 778
- environmental damage: *see* environmental damage, state responsibility
- exhaustion of local remedies 819–20
- federal states and 222–3
- individual criminal responsibility and 402, 782, 807
- international legal personality and 263, 1311
- Iraqi invasion of Kuwait 858 n73, 1045 n209, 1248–9
- jurisdiction/admissibility distinguished 1085–6
- nuclear activities, civil liability and 894
- in occupied territory 350
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 793
- State Responsibility, ILC Articles on (2001): *see* State Responsibility, ILC Articles on (2001)
- state succession law, interrelationship 779–80
- in territory occupied by third power 350
- treaty obligations, interrelationship 779
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, consequences/ remedies 800–22, *see also* satisfaction as remedy for breach of international obligation
- acknowledgment of breach 806
- cessation of act/assurances of non-repetition 800–1, 803 n161
- guarantee of non-repetition 806
- reparation 801–6
- satisfaction 805–6
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, consequences/ remedies, jurisprudence *LaGrand* 800–1 *Rainbow Warrior* 779, 786, 797–8, 800
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, imputability 781, 785–99, *see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act including acts of adoption of act as its own 792–3 definition 786 ILC Articles 786–9 knowledge of act, sufficiency 785–6 *ultra vires* acts 788–9
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act including armed attack 1133
- breach of international humanitarian law 434
- breach of treaty 779, 785
- damage caused by air crash 785
- damage to state property 785
- genocide 276, 283, 284–5
- human rights, failure to prevent abuses 276
- international crimes 807–8
- mine-laying in internal or territorial waters 785–6
- mob violence 791–3
- violation of territorial integrity 785
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act including acts of *see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, imputability
- agents operating abroad 322, 658 n55
- armed bands sent to third country 1135
- belligerents 1150
- contras* 790

- state responsibility (*cont.*)
 - entities falling short of statehood 263
 - executive 138
 - guerrillas 790
 - international organisation 1312 n140
 - judiciary 138, 786, 788
 - KFOR 350–1, 787–8, 1312 n140
 - legislature 138
 - organ or agent of state placed at disposal of international entity 787–8
 - organs, persons or groups whose acts are attributable 222, 284–5, 786–7
 - peacekeeping forces 350–1, 787–8, 1231, 1312 n140
 - person or entity exercising elements of governmental authority 787
 - persons exercising elements of governmental authority in default/absence of official authorities 791
 - persons or groups of persons acting under direction or control of state 789–91
 - PLO 683
 - political subdivisions/components of federal state 222–3, 786
 - predecessor state/government 791–2, 1003–4, 1152 n171
 - private persons 789, 858–9
 - privatised companies 787
 - UK Privy Council 788
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, invocation/claim 799–800
 - acquiescence in lapse of claim 799
 - by state individually or group of states 799
 - erga omnes* obligations and 800, 808
 - Eurotunnel* 799 n136
 - joint and separate responsibility 799
 - radical change to other states to which obligation owed and 799
 - ‘specially affects’ requirement 799
 - waiver of claim and 799
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, jurisprudence
 - see also Chorzów Factory*
 - principle/*restitutio in integrum*
 - Aerial Incident case* 785
 - Barcelona Traction* 800
 - Behrami* 350–1, 787–8, 1312 n140
 - Caire* 783, 788
 - Corfu Channel case* 784–6
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* 794
 - Genocide Convention case* 786–7, 791
 - Gill* 796, 797
 - Home Missionary Society* 783–4
 - ICJ/ICTR and ECtHR, difference of views on 1116
 - Iranian Hostages case* 793
 - LaGrand* 223
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 793
 - Loizidou* 790
 - Mossé* 788
 - Neer* 783
 - Nicaragua* 785, 790
 - Rainbow Warrior* 779, 786, 797–8
 - Rankin* 792
 - Right to Information on Consular Assistance* 389–90
 - Sandline* 789
 - Short* 792
 - Spanish Zones of Morocco* 781
 - Special Rapporteur case* 222–3, 786
 - Tadić* 790
 - Union Bridge Company case* 788–9
 - Yeager* 792
 - Youman* 788
 - Zafiro* 789
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, justification/ circumstances precluding responsibility 793–9
 - consent to act 793, 1152 n171
 - countermeasures, acts constituting, 127, 794–6, 1313 n141, *see also* countermeasures
 - distress 797–8
 - due diligence 785, 791
 - force majeure* 779, 796–7, 1313 n141
 - human rights considerations 793
 - humanitarian considerations 793
 - necessity and 793
 - proportionality and 793
 - self-defence 793
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, loss or damage

- resulting from unlawful act or omission 781, 856–8
- ‘adverse effects’ on the environment 857–8, 863
- Antarctic Mineral Resources Convention (1988) 857 n65
- Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979) 856
- ILA Montreal Rules (1982) 856–7
- ILC Draft Articles on Prevention of Transboundary Harm from Hazardous Activities 856 n60
- Ozone Layer Convention (1985) 857
- reasonable and equitable use of territory and 857
- risk, sufficiency 856
- Trail Smelter* 856–7
- UNCLOS provisions 856
- state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, requirements/ classification as
 - see also* fault; state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, loss or damage resulting from unlawful act or omission, need for
- aid or assistance in breach by third state 782
- applicable law 782
- coercion 782
- continuing and composite act distinguished 782
- contractual and tortious responsibility, absence of distinction 779
- critical date 782
- customary international law 786–7
- direction and control of act 782
- failure to control acts of private individuals 789
- fault, relevance 783–5, 853–5, *see also* due diligence; fault
- ILC Articles 781–2
- imputable act or omission breaching obligation 781, *see also* state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, imputability
- international legal obligation between two states 781
- state sovereignty
 - see also* independence of states
- acts dependent on/reflecting 181
- anti-terrorist measures and 43–4
- balance of power and 57
- belligerent occupation and 501
- CIS and 240
- constraints on, effect 211–12, 213, 216
- constraints under international law 58, 63–4, 70
- developing countries and 36, 39, 40
- devolution of 494
- domestic and international sovereignty distinguished 21–2, 29, 44
- domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) 212–14, 647–8
- equality of states and 6, 26, 45, 129, 214–15
- globalisation and 48
- history of concept 13, 21–2, 26, 487–8
- human rights and 49, 213, 268, 269, 270, 272–3, 278, 488, 648
- international organisations and 57, 488
- jurisdictional rights and 212, 217, 645
- just war and 1119–21
- justiciability and 180–3
- Kosovo and 233
- Liechtenstein 217
- mandated territories and 225, 493
- Morocco (Treaty of Fez (1912)) and 216
- municipal and international law, interrelationship and 178
- natural law and 27, 132
- peaceful co-existence and 34, 215, 216
- positivism and 29, 46, 75, 131
- protected states 216
- protectorates 216–17
- reciprocity and 44
- satellite broadcasting and 550
- suspension, effect 503
- technological developments, effect 488

- state sovereignty (*cont.*)
 - territory and 487–8
 - Third World concern for 269
 - UN Charter and 1205
 - USSR and 33–4, 35
 - ‘will of the state’ and 29, 30
- state succession 956–1009, *see also*
 - treaty succession
 - Aaland Islands* 969 n75
 - ad hoc nature of rules 958–9
 - Baltic states 961–2
 - continuity of legal personality and 957
 - customary international law 958 n6, 959, 967, 976, 984, 986, 987, 989, 990
 - date of 454 n34, 959–60, 962
 - definition 959
 - dissolution of states and 960–3
 - Hong Kong 1008–9
 - ILC Draft Articles (1981) 990 n182, 1007
 - international organisations and 960–1, 985–6, *see also* UN membership
 - merger of states: *see* merger of states, state succession and
 - municipal and international law rules distinguished 957
 - nationality and: *see* nationality and state succession
 - positivism and 957
 - private rights: *see* acquired rights of aliens in case of state succession
 - recognition and acquiescence, role 959
 - Roman Law and 957
 - state responsibility for internationally wrongful act, interrelationship 779–80
 - succession of governments distinguished 957
 - transference and inherent rights and duties distinguished 957
 - Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues (2001) 989, 991, 992 n192, 993
- state succession, bilateral treaties and 957–8
 - Burma–UK (1947) 958
 - Minsk Agreement (1991) 961 n21, 968 n69, 1291
 - Peace Treaty (Italy–Allied Powers) (1947) 958 n4
 - St Germain (1919) 957–8, 996, 996 n215, 999
- state succession, continuity of state and 209, 960–6
 - British India/India/Pakistan 960, 985, 999
 - German Reich/FRG 964–5
 - Israel/British Palestine 960
 - protest, effect 962–3
 - Russia/USSR 36, 209, 240, 960–1
 - SC membership and 961
 - UN membership and 960–1
 - USSR/Baltic states 961–2
 - Yugoslavia (FRY)/Serbia 960
 - Yugoslavia (SFRY) 209–10, 960, 962–3, 981
- state succession, jurisprudence
 - ACY Opinion No. 8 958
 - Espionage Prosecution* case 958–9
- state succession to property, archives, assets and liabilities 986–1004
 - ACY Opinion No. 9 986
 - ACY Opinion No. 11 454 n34
 - ACY Opinion No. 13 991–2
 - ACY Opinion No. 14 986–91
 - customary international law 986, 990, 1000, 1001
 - ‘property, rights and interests owned by the state’ 987
 - public prerogative test 988–9
 - recognition and 472–4
 - settlement by agreement as preferred solution 986–7
 - ‘social ownership’ and 988–9
 - Treaty of St Germain (1919) 957–8, 996 n215, 999
- state succession to public debt 996–1001
 - Austro-Hungarian Empire (1919/1923 Peace Treaties) 999
 - Colombia/Panama (1903) 998–9
 - continuity of debt, presumption of 997, 998

- customary international law 997, 1000, 1001
- equitable distribution and 998, 999–1000
- Irish Free State–UK Treaty (1921) 999
- local/localised debts 996
- merger/unification and 997–8
- newly independent states and 1000–1
- Ottoman Empire and 999
- private creditors and 997
- secession and 1000
- secured debt 999
- state practice 998–9
- Texas secession (1840) 998
- Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues (2001) and 1000
- state succession to state archives 993–6
 - in absence of agreement 994–5
 - agreement, need for 995–6
 - Algerian archives 995
 - ‘archives’ 993–4
 - archives relating to territory 995
 - compensation, relevance 994
 - decolonisation situation and 994–5
 - Denmark/Iceland Union and 996 n215
 - dissolution of states and 996
 - Ethiopian archives (Treaty of Peace with Italy (1947)) 995
 - merger of states and 996
 - pre-colonial period archives 995
 - reproduction of archives and 995
 - third state archives 994
 - treaty provision for 994
 - Treaty of St Germain (1919) 996 n215
 - Vietnamese archives 995
 - Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues (2001) and 996
- state succession to state property 987–93
 - agreement, need for 986–7, 988, 992–3
 - applicable law 987–8
 - cultural heritage and 991, 996
 - customary international law 986, 990
 - Cyprus and 987 n162
 - Czech and Slovak Republic agreements 992–3
 - date in case of variation between several successor states 988
 - date of passing 988
 - decolonisation situation and 990 n182
 - equitable division 991–2
 - equity and 990 n182
 - ‘financial assets’ 992 n194
 - FRG–GDR unification (1990) and 992
 - IMF/World Bank-held assets/IMF key 993
 - immovable property outside the successor state 989–90
 - immovable property in the successor state 989
 - merger/unification and 992
 - movable property outside the successor state 991–2
 - movable property in the successor state 990–1
 - newly independent states and 990
 - private rights distinguished 987 n160, 988–9
 - ‘public property’ 987–9
 - social security assets 992
 - state practice 992–3
 - territorial principle 988, 989, 990–1
 - USSR/successor state agreements 993
 - Yugoslavia (SFRY), dissolution and 988–91, 993
- State Succession to State Property, Archives and Debts, Vienna Convention on (1983) 986–7
 - agreement, need for 986–7, 996
 - ‘archives’ 994
 - conclusion 959
 - customary international law and 986, 987, 990, 1000, 1001
 - date of succession 959
 - decolonised territories 977
 - dispute settlement 1015 n22, 1023–4
 - equitable division 991–2, 999–1000
 - immovable property outside the successor state 990 n181, 991–2
 - immovable property in the successor state 989

State Succession (*cont.*)

- movable property in the successor state 990–1
- newly independent states and 995, 1000–1
- private creditors and 997
- ‘state property’ 987
- state/statehood 197–242, *see also*
 - equality of states; independence, right to; international legal personality; recognition of states as abstraction 29
 - creation of 197–204
 - date, difficulty of determining 200–1
 - decolonisation and 198
 - extinction: *see* dissolution of states
 - ‘failed’ states 201–2
 - GDR 964
 - Holy See and 197, 243–4, 261
 - humanitarian intervention and 201–2
 - international law, dependence on principles of 45
 - merger of states 208–9
 - positivism and 29, 267
 - self-determination and 205–7, 257
 - states as primary subjects of international law 45, 46, 197, 261, 487–8
- state/statehood, criteria
 - see also* recognition of states, criteria other than those relevant to statehood
- ACY Opinion No. 1 198, 210, 448
- boundary disputes,
 - relevance 199–200
- ‘civilisation’ 200
- defined territory 198, 199, 451, 487–8, 492–3, 494–5
- democracy, relevance 207
- diplomatic relations/capacity to enter into 198, 202, 244, 451, 453, 734
- divided territory, relevance 200, 202
- economic position, relevance 203–4
- effective government/organised political authority 198–9, 200–2, 205–6, 237, 451, 461–2
- estoppel/acquiescence and 242, 244, 261–2

- flexibility 198–9
- human rights, respect for 207
- as interaction between law and fact 197–8
- internal political and constitutional arrangements, relevance 198, 200
- international legal personality and 202, 1302–3
- minorities, treatment of and 207
- Montevideo Convention on the Rights and Duties of States (1933) 198
- permanent population 198, 199, 451
- recognition and 198, 200, 201, 202, 207–8, 244, 246, 261–2, 445–6, 448, 450–1, 453
- self-determination and 198, 205–7, *see also* self-determination, right to
- statelessness
 - change of husband’s nationality and 662
 - diplomatic protection and 810–11
 - jurisdiction over stateless person habitually resident in the territory 676, 1232
- ships 611, 613–14
- state succession and 1005, 1006
- Stateless Persons, Convention on Status of (1954) 303, 335
- Statelessness, Convention on the Reduction of (1961) 303, 1005
- Stimson doctrine 468
 - state succession and 1005
- Stockholm Declaration (1972)
 - see also* UNEP
 - environment as a human right 847
 - environmental protection and trade/economic development, balance 849–50
 - hazardous waste 895 n291
 - international co-operation
 - obligation 862–3
 - obligation to avoid injury to other states 853, 857
 - obligation to provide information 890 n253
 - sustainable development principle 869 n135

- Stockholm Declaration (1992),
 international co-operation
 obligation 862–3
- stoicism 17
- straddling stocks 624–8
 Bering Sea 625 n358, 627
 conservation measures, need for
 agreement on 624–6
 flag state jurisdiction 626
 NAFO and 626–7
 Okhotsk, Sea of 625 n358, 627
 port state rights and obligations 626
 precautionary principle 625
 regional organisations, role 625–8
 Russian EEZ 627
 search and visit, right of 626
 Straddling Stocks Agreement
 (1995) 625–6
 UNCLOS provisions 624–5
 Western and Central Pacific Ocean,
 Convention on the Conservation
 and Management of Highly
 Migratory Fish Stocks in
 (2001) 627–8
- straits (innocent passage) 555, 575–8,
 see also straits (transit passage)
 bilateral treaty provisions 578
 Corfu Channel 575–6
 EEZ and 576–7
 exceptions 576–7
 GCTS provisions (GCTS
 16(4)) 575–6
 ‘innocent’ 576
 as residual right (UNCLOS 45)
 577
 ‘strait’ 576 n102
- straits (transit passage)
 see also straits (innocent passage)
 Bosphorus and Dardenelles
 (Montreux Convention
 (1936)) 578
 customary international law 577
 Dover Straits 577
 force majeure 577
 overflight 576, 577, 578 n115
 submarines 577
 suspension, exclusion 577
- straits (transit passage) (UNCLOS 34
 and 35) 576–8
- Strupp, K. 131
- Suárez, Francisco 23, 1120
- subjects of international law 1, 195–264,
 see also international legal
 personality; state/statehood
- belligerents 1150
- extension/range 45–8, 196–7, 1302
 n87
- individuals as: *see* individuals, status
 in international law
- international organisations,
 international legal personality as:
 see international organisations,
 international legal personality
- NGOs 261
- positivism, effect on 258
- recognition and 261
- UN 47, 261
- submarine cables and pipelines
- archipelagic states and 567–8
- continental shelf 589
- dispute settlement 636
- EEZ 582
- high seas and 609
- individual criminal responsibility
 and 399
- search and visit, right of 619
- submarines, straits (transit
 passage) 577
- subsidiarity, ECtHR and 356–7
- Sudan
- AMIS 1266
- arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1247
- AU and 1265–6
- collective use of force (Chapter
 VII) 1265
- collective use of force other than
 under Chapter VII 1265
- human rights in 305
- Machakos Protocol (2002)
 1265
- secession and 526
- as threat to the peace (SC resolutions
 1044 (1996) and 1054
 (1996)) 1238–9
- UNAMID 1266, 1267
- UNAMIS 1265, 1280
- UNMIS 1265–6
- US attacks on 1134

- Suez Canal
 Constantinople Convention (1888) 540
 as international waterway (Constantinople Convention (1888)) 540, 930
 servitudes 540
- Suez crisis (1956) 1226, 1273
- Sulu, Sultanate of 1100 n284
- Sumeria 14
- summary executions, special rapporteur on 305
- Sun Yat Sen incident (1896) 754
- Sunda, Straits of 568
- superior orders defence
see also individual criminal responsibility
 ICTR 408
 ICTY 404–5
 mitigation and 404–5
 Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Tribunal 400
 Tokyo Tribunal 400
- Suriname, human rights in 383
- sustainable development, EBRD and 869 n136
- Sustainable Development, Inter-Agency Committee on 846, 870 n140
- sustainable development principle
see also precautionary principle
 as balance of economic, environmental and social factors 870
- Bergen Ministerial Declaration (1990) 867–8
- Climate Change Convention (1992) 870
- consensus on 870
- as human right 848
- international watercourses 884
- Rio Principle 3 848, 869
- Stockholm Declaration (1972) 869 n135
- Sustainable Development, UN
 Commission on 846, 870 n140, 1213
 website 1338
- SWAPO 1229 n122
 international legal personality 248
- Sweden
see also Aaland Islands
 civil jurisdiction 652
 minorities in 295–6
 as Protecting Power 1199
 Sami community 295–6
- Switzerland
 BIS and 249
 ECHR reservations 916–17, 922
 federal/component state powers, allocation 219
 ICJ and 1072
 immunities of international organisations 1321
 nationality 661
 nuclear power installations 890 n254
 as Protecting Power 1199
 UN membership and 1072 n103
- Syria
see also United Arab Republic
 Gulf War and 1253 n246
 UN membership 985
- Taft/Knox Treaties (1911) 1020 n54
- Taipei: *see* Taiwan (Taipei)
- Taiwan (Taipei)
 cession to Japan (1895) 234
 China (People's Republic) and 234–5
 as 'customs territory' 235
 entitlement to property sold prior to recognition of China 476–7
 GATT and 235
 history 234–5
 international legal personality 234–5
 ITLOS and 639
 recognition 464 n80
 recognition, withdrawal 467
 SC resolutions 234–5
 sovereignty, renunciation by Japan 234
 Straddling Stocks Agreement (1995) and 625 n360
 UK relations with 463
 WTO and 235
- Tajikistan 1033
- EU Guidelines on Recognition and 452 n28
- EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States (1991) and 451–2

- taking of property: *see*
 - expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national
- Taliban/Al-Qaida 386, 1136, 1174 n33, 1208, 1247 n219
- Tanganyika–Zanzibar, treaty
 - succession 958 n6, 972 n92, 973
- Tanzania
 - bombing of US embassy 1134
 - establishment 973
- Tate Letter (1952) 705
- tax exemption
 - consular premises 773
 - consuls 772
 - diplomatic agents 767, 768 n384, 770 n413
 - diplomatic premises 762
 - international officials 1324
 - international organisations 1320, 1327, 1328 n208
 - representatives to international organisations 1322
 - UN Secretary-General 1324
- taxation, jurisdictional link, need for 650
- technological development,
 - international law and 41, 43–4, 488
- Tehran Proclamation on Human Rights (1968) 279
- telecommunications
 - COMSAT 549
 - INTELSAT 249, 549
 - INTER-SPUTNIK 549
 - outer space and 549–52
 - satellite broadcasting 550–1, *see also* satellite broadcasting
 - World Administrative Radio Conferences 549
- terra nullius* 507, 511, 516, 615
 - absence of 198
 - acquiescence and 516
 - acquisition of territory and 495, 503, 511
 - Antarctica and 198 n9
 - jurisdiction and 398, 615–16
 - non-recognition of state and 471
 - prescription and 504–5, 507
 - res communis* distinguished 492
 - suspension of sovereignty, effect 503
 - Western Sahara* 503
- territorial acquisition 492–521, *see also*
 - cession of territory
 - abandonment of territory and 505, 521
 - accretion 495, 498, 499, 520, 531
 - acquiescence 505–6, 516–17
 - acquired rights and 524
 - annexation, legal effect 501–2
 - avulsion 531
 - boundary awards and 497
 - boundary treaties and 495–8
 - cession 151, 181, 499–500
 - classification of modes 495
 - conquest 469, 500–2, 532, 533
 - consent and 515–17
 - constitutive theory and 492–3, 494–5
 - critical date 509–10
 - Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) 502, 508 n110
 - decolonisation and 492
 - discovery 504, 508, 532
 - domestic jurisdiction considerations and 493
 - effective control 502–21, *see also* territorial title/territorial sovereignty, evidence of including *effectivités*
 - equity and 515
 - good faith and 515
 - high seas and 517
 - ice packs 535
 - intertemporal law 496–7, 500 n68, 508–9, 520–1
 - loss of territory 521
 - low-tide elevations and 558–9
 - new states and 492–5
 - occupation: *see* occupation (acquisition of territory)
 - prescription: *see* prescription as means of territorial acquisition
 - recognition/statehood considerations and 492–3, 494–5, 516–17, 520–1, 533
 - restitution of illegally-held territory 802 n154
 - SC resolution 242 (1967) 469, 520

- territorial acquisition (*cont.*)
 - subsequent conduct including
 - recognition, acquiescence and estoppel 515–20
 - of *terra nullius* 198, 503
 - transfer by former power 494
 - use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 502, 520–1
- territorial disputes, classification 491–2
- territorial integrity 522–8
 - African Union for Peace and Security Council 1028
 - AU and 1293
 - Azerbaijan 238
 - CIS and 240, 968 n69, 1291
 - Declaration on the Rights and Duties of States (1949) and 469
 - domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) and 522
 - as fundamental principle of international law 488
 - humanitarian intervention and 1155–6
 - inviolability of frontiers and 451, 452, 1123
 - NATO and 1290
 - non-recognition policy and 469
 - peaceful co-existence and 215
 - SC resolution 242 (1967) 1221 n85
 - self-determination and 256–7, 290–1, 392, 488, 522–4
 - UNGA resolutions on 290, 469
 - use of force (UNC 2(4)) and 468, 1123, 1126–8
 - USSR and 35
 - uti possidetis* doctrine/stability of
 - boundaries: *see uti possidetis*
 - doctrine/stability of boundaries
- territorial jurisdiction
 - see also* domestic jurisdiction
 - principle (UNC 2(7));
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction;
 - extraterritorial legislation;
 - intervention in affairs of another state, justification; intervention in affairs of another state, prohibition
 - basis of principle 652–3
 - control of the territory as basis 658, *see also* belligerent occupation
 - criminal jurisdiction 652–8
 - cross-border jurisdiction: *see*
 - cross-border jurisdiction
 - as default position 645–7, 649
 - environmental protection and 852–3
 - Franconia* 141–2
 - Guantanamo Bay Naval Base and 658
 - Lockerbie bombing 654–5
 - Lotus* 655–7
 - nationality of accused, relevance 653
 - objective territorial principle 654–9, *see also* effects doctrine/
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction on
 - economic matters
 - territorial sea 656–7
 - ‘within its territory and subject to its jurisdiction’ (ICCPR 2) 276, 314, 318, 321, 322
 - ‘within the jurisdiction’ (ECHR 1) 276, 349–50, 658 n55
- territorial sea 556–75
 - archipelagic states: *see* archipelagic states
 - assimilation to coastal state
 - territory 570
 - baselines: *see* baselines
 - cabotage 570
 - cession 570
 - coastal state regulatory powers 570
 - delimitation 591–2
 - innocent passage: *see* innocent passage (territorial sea)
 - installations on the continental shelf and 589–90
 - internal waters: *see* internal waters
 - islands, entitlement 564–5
 - juridical nature 569–70
 - long-standing regional economic interests and 561
 - marine pollution 899
 - national security and 570
 - as *res communis* 569
 - sovereign rights of coastal state 569–70
 - states with opposite/adjacent coasts 591
 - width 554, 568–9
- Territorial Sea Convention (1958)
 - airspace 570

- archipelagic states 566
- bays 562
- coastal state rights 570
- islands 564–5
- seabed and subsoil 570
- straight baselines 561
- width, failure to agree on 568–9
- territorial sea, jurisdiction
 - civil 574–5
 - criminal 141–2, 574, 656–7
 - exclusive jurisdiction and 554
 - Franconia* 141–2
 - piracy 616
- territorial sovereignty
 - see also* domestic jurisdiction
 - principle (UNC 2(7)); forcible abduction/unlawful arrest; intervention in the affairs of another state, prohibition; territorial title
 - Aaland Islands* 200–1, 251–2
 - African Union for Peace and Security Council 1028
 - airspace 78, 541–3, 570
 - archipelagic states 567–8
 - concept/definition 487–8, 489–92, 852
 - countervailing tendencies 49
 - criminal jurisdiction and 652–3
 - environmental damage and: *see* environmental damage, state responsibility
 - executive jurisdiction and 650–1
 - as fundamental concept of international law 487–8
 - mandated and trust territories 493
 - municipal law analogies 489, 490, 491 n23
 - Roman Law and 490
 - servitudes distinguished 490
 - title distinguished 588–9
 - trust territories and 493
- territorial title
 - as basis for territorial sovereignty 490
 - belligerent occupation and 500–1, 1178
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina 470
 - changes, effect of 489, 524
 - contiguity principle 524
 - continental shelf 588–9
 - as evidence of right 490
 - jurisprudence 489, 491, 511–15
 - Kosovo 233
 - non-recognition policy and 470
 - relativity of ‘better title’ as basis 490–1, 511–14, 524
 - as source of right 490
 - sovereign rights distinguished 588–9
- territorial title/territorial sovereignty, evidence of including *effectivités* 511–15
- ‘à titre de souverain’ requirement 505, 513
- as balance of competing state activities 507
- exercise of sovereignty as test 513–14
- flexibility of concept 511–12
- historical claims 525
- intention to acquire, need for 513
- legal title, relevance 514–15
- maps 496, 519–20, 1091
- minimum level of state activity, need for 511
- personal allegiance 491
- post-independence evidence 530
- state archives post-decolonisation and 995
- statements of government officials 1090
- uti possidetis* principle and 529–30
- within geographical area, sufficiency 514
- territorial waters, airspace, sovereignty over 570
- terrorism
 - see also* hijacking
 - Achille Lauro* incident 665, 679–80, 1161 n221
 - as armed attack 1136–7
 - asylum seekers and 1161 n216
 - best practice measures 1163
 - Committee on the implementation of Security Council resolution 1373 (2001) 1163
 - Counter-Terrorism Committee 1162–3, 1164 n234, 1208, 1209, 1339
 - definition 1159, 1160, 1161 n210

terrorism (*cont.*)

- detention without trial and 357–8
- during armed hostilities 1185
- Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy (2006) 1161
- human rights and 43–4, 1159, 1161, 1164–6
- human rights and counter-terrorism, CoE Guidelines (2002 and 2005) 1166
- human rights, IACoMHR Special Rapporteur on 1164–5
- ICTR 4 1196 n151
- international law and 43–4, 1159–66
- League of Nations and 1159 n211
- Libya and 1238–9
- motivation, relevance 1159
- non-international armed conflict 1196
- OSCE Ministerial Declaration and Plan of Action on Combating Terrorism (2001) 1164
- political offence doctrine and 687 n211
- SC and 1161–3
- Security 1267 Committee 1163 n223
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51) 1135–7
- September 11 attacks: *see* September 11 attacks
- sovereignty and 43–4
- state immunity and 685 n197, 715–16
- states' obligation to refrain from 1160–1
- states' reports on measures 1163
- threat assessment, justiciability 189
- as threat to international peace and security 1136, 1161–3
- UN Ad Hoc Committee on (1972) 1160
- UN Charter purposes and principles and 1161 n216, 1162
- UNGA resolutions 1161
- uninvolved third states as target 1159
- websites 1139, 1159 n207, 1163 n228, 1339
- terrorism, conventions relating to 687, 1159–60

Comprehensive Convention on

- International Terrorism, progress on 1161
- Conventions, UN Ad Hoc Committee on (1996) 1161
- extradition and 687
- list 1160 n212, 1164
- regional conventions 1164
- terrorism, jurisdiction
 - aut dedere aut judicare* 1160, 1161
 - bilateral arrangements 679
 - extradition obligation 1160
 - obligation to establish 1160
 - obligation to make an offence 1160
 - support for terrorism distinguished 670
 - universal 670
- Texas, secession of 998
- Thailand
 - ASEAN membership 1294
 - border dispute with Cambodia (*Temple of Preah Vihear*) 518–19, 941–2
 - straight baselines 561 n37
 - US good offices and 1018 n36
- thalweg* principle 531
- third party intervention
 - ICJ: *see* ICJ, third state intervention
 - interest of a legal nature liable to be affected by decision 641–2
 - ITLOS 641
- Third World
 - see also* developing countries
 - apartheid, impact on 269
 - appropriateness 40–1
 - civil and political rights 269–70
 - continental shelf and 555
 - decolonisation, impact on 269
 - economic and social rights 269–70
 - EEZ and 555
 - equality of states and 269
 - heterogenous nature 40–1, 269
 - human rights and 269–70
 - innocent passage and 573
 - international law priorities/attitudes to 38–42, 114, 269, 823
 - law of the sea and 555
 - origin of concept 57
 - peaceful co-existence and 215–16

- seabed resources and 555, 628
- state sovereignty and 36, 39, 40, 269
- warships in territorial sea 573
- threat to the peace, actual breach or
 - aggression (UNC 39) 1217–18, *see also* aggression; arms sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); collective use of force (Chapter VII); collective use of force other than under Chapter VII; economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); peacekeeping; peacekeeping operations
- actual breaches 1241
- Agenda for Peace* 1113, 1215, 1217–18, 1226 n109, 1234, 1274, 1313
- broadening of concept 1237, 1267
- Chapter Six and a Half 1225
- Chapter VI and Chapter VII action distinguished 1208–9, 1218–21, 1222, 1236, 1257–67, 1272–3
- ‘determination of the situation’ (UNC 39) 1236–41
- domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7)) and 1237, 1267
- former Yugoslavia (SC resolution 713 (1991)) 1237–8
- good faith and non-abuse of rights obligations of SC 1270–1
- Haiti 1239–40
- ICTR and ICTY as response to (UNC 41) 1248
- internal situations 1237
- Liberia (SC resolution 788 (1992)) 1238, 1277
- mandate drift 1257–67
- measures involving force (UNC 42) 1251–6
- measures not involving force (UNC 41) 1242–51
- Middle East war (1948) (SC resolution 54 (1948)) 1237
- Palestine 1237
- peace enforcement 1218
- peacebuilding 1218
- peacemaking 1218
- preventive diplomacy 1218
- preventive or enforcement measures, third state right of consultation (UNC 50) 1243–4
- provisional action to prevent aggravation (UNC 40) 1241–2
- Rhodesia (SC resolution 221 (1966)) 1237
- Rwanda (SC resolution 788 (1992)) 1238
- as a safety net 1237
- SC and 1024–6, 1206, 1208–9, 1218–21
- September 11 attacks 1162, 1218, 1239
- severance or reduction of diplomatic relations and (UNC 41) 1242, 1245
- Sudan (SC resolutions 1044 (1996) and 1054 (1996)) 1238–9
- Tadić* 1240
- terrorism and 1136, 1161–3
- UN Secretary-General and 1222–3
- UNGA and 1210, 1217–18, 1221–2
- WMD (SC resolution 1540 (2004)) 619, 1240
- Yugoslavia (SC resolution 713 (1991)) 1237–8
- Timor-Leste, independence 234, 1230
- Tiran Strait 578 n115
- title: *see* territorial title
- Tobar doctrine 457
- Tokyo Tribunal/Charter
 - aggression and 439
 - aggression, prohibition 400
 - composition 400
 - individual criminal responsibility and 46, 400
 - superior orders defence 400
- Torrey Canyon* 621, 798, 900 n322
- tortious proceedings, state immunity in respect of 684, 685, 721, 727–8
- torts in violation of international law, jurisdiction (US Alien Tort Claims Act) 683–6
- Alvarez-Machain* 685–6
- Amerada Hess* 685
- Filartiga v. Pena-Irala* 159–61, 683
- as jurisdictional statute 160–1, 686
- Kadić v. Karadžić* 684

torts in violation (*cont.*)

- non-governmental acts, limitation to 684
- political question doctrine and 683
- Sanchez-Espinoza* 684
- scope 160–1, 684–6
- Siderman* 160
- state immunity and 160, 684, 685
- Tel Oren* 683, 684
- terrorism and 160, 684–6
- Torture Victim Protection Act 1992 and 160 n165, 684–5
- violations of international law, US citizens' right of suit 684

torture

- in Argentina 329
- civil law remedy, obligation 716–18
- as crime against humanity 408, 436
- criminal law remedy, obligation 718
- customary international law 329, 675
- definition 327
- as 'grave breach' 401, 403, 434
- individual criminal responsibility 401, 425, 684
- jurisdiction 398–9
- Kuwait and 716–17
- physical, mental and moral integrity, respect for and 381
- in Rwanda 1196 n151
- in Saudi Arabia 717–18
- Special Rapporteur on 305, 325, 330
- universal jurisdiction 675
- women and 325

Torture Committee (CoE)

- annual reports, publication 364–5
- confidentiality of proceedings 364–5
- establishment 363
- fact-finding and reporting 363
- membership 363 n111
- on-site visits 363
- places of detention, right to visit 363–5
- reports on visits 364
- role 363

Torture Committee (UN) 326–30

- concluding observations/general comments 328–9
- confidential inquiries 328
- confidentiality of proceedings 328

establishment 327

- examination of evidence, state's co-operation 328

financing and budgetary arrangements 336

individual communications ('victim') 328

inter-state complaints 328

interim measures 328

membership 327

new claims during

proceedings 329–30

non-confidential summary account, possibility of 328

reporting obligations/procedure 328–9, 335

Special Rapporteur (follow-up) 329

Special Rapporteur on Torture,

co-operation with 330

standard of proof 329

Sub-Committee on Detention

(Optional Protocol) 330

Torture Convention (1984)

'any territory under its

jurisdiction' 327

aut dedere aut judicare principle 674, 675

implementation 675

opting-out options 328

signature/entry into force 326

'torture' (TC 1) 327

UNCHR working group on drafting of 305

USSR and 269

Torture Convention (1984), obligations

criminal offence, establishment as (TC 4) 327

jurisdiction, establishment of (TC 5) 327

non-return to country where risk of torture (TC 3) 327, 329

prevention measures (TC 2) 327

prosecution or extradition of persons charged with (TC 7) 327

remedy, provision of (TC 14) 327, 716 n98

Torture Convention (Inter-American) (1985) 384, 390

conclusion 384

- torture, conventions and other international instruments relating to
- Arab Charter on Human Rights 395
 - Code of Conduct for Law Enforcement Officers (1979) 327
 - ECHR 3 274, 326, 348
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and Protocols I and II (1977) 1169–70
 - ICCPR 7 275
 - Principles of Medical Ethics (1982) 327
 - Standard Minimum Rules for the Treatment of Prisoners (1955) 327
 - UDHR 5 279
 - UN Declaration (1975) (UNGA resolution 3452 (XXX)) 326–7
- Torture, European Convention on (1987) 362–5
- object and purpose 362–3
 - parties to 362
- Torture, OSCE Panel for the Prevention of 377 n201
- torture, prohibition
- ACHR 5 381
 - civilians in wartime 1177
 - Copenhagen Final Act (1990) and 374
 - customary international law 275, 326
 - as *erga omnes* obligation 124–5
 - IACoMHR and 383
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norm 326, 808 n198
 - non-derogation 274, 275
 - in non-international armed conflict 1195, 1196
 - prisoners of war 1175
 - state immunity and 160, 715, 716–18
 - state responsibility and 276
 - Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280
 - women and 325
- trade union, freedom to organise or join
- ECHR 11(1) 357
 - ESC and 361, 362
 - migrant workers, rights (MWC 26) 333
- OAS Protocol on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (1988) and 384
- ‘transboundary impact’ 858
- transboundary pollution, conventions and other international instruments relating to
- see also* Hazardous Activities, ILC Draft Articles on the Prevention of Transboundary Harm from (2001)
- Aarhus Convention (1998) 848–9
- Civil Liability and Compensation for Damage Caused by the Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents (2003) 884 n218
- Helsinki Protocol (1985) 873
- Long-Range Transboundary Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979): *see* Atmospheric Pollution Convention (1979)
- Non-Navigational Uses of International Watercourses Convention (1997) 108, 885–6
- Oslo Protocol (1994) 874
- Persistent Organic Pollutants Convention (2001) 874
- website 874 n169
- Sophia Protocol (1988) 873
- Transboundary Context, Convention on EIAs in Context of (1991) 847–8, 858
- Transboundary Effects of Industrial Accidents Convention (1992) 870–1, 897
- Transboundary Harm Arising out of Hazardous Activities, Draft Principles on the Allocation of Loss (2006) 858 n71, 862
- Transboundary Movement of Nuclear Waste, IAEA Code of Practice (1990) 896–7
- Transboundary Watercourses and International Lakes Convention (1992) 858, 884–5
- Transdnistria 238
- transfer of technology (deep sea mining) 633

- transformation doctrine 139, 141–8
 - definition 141
 - eclipse by incorporation doctrine 141–8
 - ratification of treaties and 139
- transit passage: *see* innocent passage;
 - landlocked states, access to the sea, right of (UNCLOS 125); straits (transit passage)
- Transkei, independence/recognition of 202–3
- Transnational Corporations, UN Commission on
 - see also* multinational private companies; multinational public companies
 - draft Code of Conduct 250
 - establishment 1213 n42
- travaux préparatoires* (VCLT 32)
 - as aid to interpretation 155–6, 917, 921 n91, 935
 - confirmatory role 935 n158
 - ECHR 917
 - non-participants in negotiations and 935 n158
 - Treaty of Versailles (1919) 935 n158
- travel and identity documents, UN Council for Namibia and 248
- travel restrictions as retorsion 1128
- treason, jurisdiction 663, 667
- treaties 902–55
 - in the ancient world 14, 16
 - conventions governing: *see* International Organisations, Vienna Convention on Treaties between States and (1986); Treaty Succession, Vienna Convention on (1978); Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties (1969)
 - function 902–3
 - natural law and 25
 - non-retroactivity: *see* non-retroactivity principle (treaties)
 - recognition of states and 463
 - special treaty-regimes 67
 - succession: *see* treaty succession
 - websites 1334, 1337
- treaties, amendment and modification (VCLT 39–41) 930–2
- accession to treaty after
 - amendment 931
- amendment and modification
 - distinguished 930
- by subsequent treaty (VCLT 30) 932
- jus cogens* rule and 931–2
- multilateral treaties (VCLT 40) 931–2
- non-derogable provisions and 931–2
- oral or tacit amendment 931
- procedure 931–2
- treaty provision for 931
- UN Charter 931, 1207–8, 1209
- treaties, applicable law
 - customary international law 93 n91, 94
 - forum state law 165
- treaties, application (VCLT 28–30)
 - 926–30, *see also* *erga omnes* obligations
- in case of armed conflict 904 n9, 946, 952 n225, 1126 n37
- co-existence of treaty and customary law 85–6, 87–8, 96–7, 555, 586–7, 591–5, 596–7, 599, 601 n243, 605–6, 716–17, 752, 928–9, 984, 990, 1132, 1167–8, 1187–8
- colonial application clauses 926
- conflict between UN Charter and other treaty obligations (UNC 103) 127, 927, 1025, 1183 n79, 1236, 1270, 1274
- entirety of party's territory (VCLT 29) 926
- erga omnes* obligations 275, 930
- extension to newly acquired territory 971
- extraterritorial/territorial 273, 322, 349–50
- non-retroactivity (VCLT 28) 926
- provisional application 632–3
- successive treaties (VCLT 30) 476, 637–8, 927–8, 931–2
- treaties by category 94
 - administrative agreements 151
 - boundary/territorial treaties 151, 162, 495–8, 528–9, 967–70, 979–80
 - Bryan treaties (commissions of inquiry) 1020

- codification treaties 95, *see also*
 - customary international law as reflected in treaties and comparable international instruments
- constituent instruments of
 - international organisations: *see* international organisations, constituent instruments
- devolution agreements 958, 967, 979
- dispositive treaties 496, 969–70
- executive agreements 161–2
- ‘financial’ treaties 151
- human rights treaties: *see* human rights treaties
- law-making treaties 94, 958
- multilateral/bilateral 967, 970–1, 976–7
- political/‘personal’ treaties 967, 970, 979–80
- self-executing/non-self-executing treaties 162–4, 177
- treaty-contracts 94
- treaties, compliance/implementation (VCLT 26–7)
 - see also* treaties, termination for material breach (VCLT 60); treaties, unincorporated
- Aarhus Convention provisions 849
- between signature and ratification 911
- cession of territory and 151
- China and 38
- choice of means 348, 357
- civil law systems and 171–6
- compliance obligation 38
- constitution, as aid to interpretation of 169–70
- constitutional provision for 169–79
- derogation 274–5
- diversity of practice 177–9
- federal states 218–19, 220–2
- implementing legislation, need for 149–53, 172, 177–8
- jurisprudence 149–51
- methods 152–3
- municipal law conflict, relevance (VCLT 27) 134, 153–4, 164, 165–6, 941
- Nuclear Safety Convention (1994) 892–3
- pacta sunt servanda* (VCLT 26) 94, 904, 966–7, *see also* *pacta sunt servanda*
- state responsibility
 - considerations 779, 946
- treaties concluded in breach of *jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 127
- treaties not involving change to municipal law 151–2
- treaties as ‘supreme law of the land’ 165–6
- war-related treaties 151
- treaties, conclusion (VCLT 6–18)
 - flexibility 907–8
 - full powers (VCLT 7) 134, 908–9
 - government department agreements 908
 - head of state agreements 908
 - as prerogative power 181
 - signature as consent 911
- treaties, consent (VCLT 11) 94–5, 148, 909–13
 - accession 913
 - adoption by UNGA resolution 909–10
 - adoption in international conferences and 909
 - by acceptance 913
 - by all parties 910
 - by approval 913
 - by exchange of instruments (VCLT 13) 911
 - by ratification: *see* treaties, ratification (VCLT 14)
 - by signature (VCLT 12) 910–11, *see also* treaties, signature (VCLT 12)
 - consensus and 368, 910
 - unanimity/majority voting and 919
- treaties, consequences of invalidity (VCLT 69–72) 944–5
 - acts performed in good faith before invocation of invalidity (VCLT 69(2)) 945
 - acts performed in reliance on treaty (VCLT 69(2)) 944–5
 - jus cogens* conflict and (VCLT 71) 945

- treaties, consequences (*cont.*)
 - voidability (VCLT 64) 127, 945
 - voidness *ab initio* (VCLT 69(1)) 127, 944–5
- treaties, definition/form (VCLT 2(1)(a)) 93–4, 902, 904
 - American Declaration on the Rights and Duties of Man (1948) 389
 - Anglo-Iranian Oil Co. case* 905
 - CIS Charter 240
 - concession agreements 905
 - constituent instruments as 907
 - contractual nature 94–5, 910
 - flexibility 905
 - ICJ optional declarations 905
 - intention of parties and 906 n19
 - intention to create binding obligations, need for 905–7
 - internal treaties within international organisations 906
 - mandate agreements 905
 - memoranda of understanding 906
 - nomenclature, relevance 93, 904
 - non-binding agreements
 - distinguished 118–19, 905–7
 - OAS Charter (1948) 389
 - oral agreements 904
 - Qatar v. Bahrain* 907
 - UN–Cambodia Agreement
 - establishing Extraordinary Chambers in the Courts of Cambodia (2003) 421
 - unilateral declarations 905
- treaties, denunciation/withdrawal (VCLT 56)
 - human rights treaties 946
 - ICCPR (1966) 318, 945–6, 983
 - ICSID 1041 n184
 - League of Nations Covenant 30
- treaties, entry into force
 - effect on non-ratifying states 926
 - registration and publication
 - following 926
 - timing 925–6
- treaties and the individual,
 - unincorporated treaty 149–50
- treaties, interpretation (VCLT 31–3) 932–8
 - ambiguity and 935
 - boundary treaties: *see* boundary treaties, interpretation
 - clear language/ordinary meaning in context (VCLT 31(1)) 156–7, 933–4, 936
 - constituent instruments: *see* international organisations, constituent instruments, interpretation
 - constituent instruments 936–7
 - ‘context’ (VCLT 31(2)) 934
 - customary international law 933
 - derogation from ordinary meaning 938
 - dispute settlement provisions 936
 - effectiveness principle 349, 352 n37, 936
 - environmental law and 887
 - explanatory memoranda 152–3
 - general principles of international law, applicability 933–4
 - good faith and 933
 - human rights treaties: *see* human rights treaties, interpretation
 - IACtHR and 388
 - interpretative declarations 915–18
 - intertemporal approach 496–7, 500 n68, 934
 - jurisprudence 155–6, 936–8
 - literal approach 932–3
 - manifest absurdity or unreasonable result (VCLT 32(b)) 935
 - multilingual texts (VCLT 33) 938
 - object and purpose, interpretation of 921 n91
 - other treaties concluded at the same time and 389
 - parallel interpretation of customary international law 97
 - parties’ intention and 932, 934
 - ‘relevant rules of international law applicable between the parties’ (VCLT 31(3)(c)) 935
 - special meaning intended by parties (VCLT 31(4)) 938
 - subsequent changes, need to reflect (living instrument principle) 349, 887, 937–8

- subsequent practice (VCLT 31(3)(b)) 252, 261, 497, 934–5
- supplementary means (VCLT 32) 935–6
- teleological approach (object and purpose) (VCLT 31(1)) 155, 156–7, 349, 932–3, 1305–6
- travaux préparatoires*: see *travaux préparatoires*
- unilateral interpretation, effect 932
- treaties and municipal law, primacy 1320
- treaties, parties
 - international organisations and states: see International Organisations, Vienna Convention on Treaties between States and (1986)
 - unequal treaties 38
- treaties, ratification (VCLT 14)
 - advantages of requirement 912
 - ‘approval’/‘acceptance’ compared 913
 - bilateral agreements 913
 - as consent 910, 911–13
 - definition 911
 - depository 913
 - incorporation and 140
 - internal law and 139
 - legitimate expectations and 151, 168–9
 - multilateral treaties 913
 - origin 911
 - Ponsonby Rule and 152–3, 912
 - requirement for 912–13
 - responsibility for 911
 - transformation doctrine and 139
 - validity of treaty and 134
- treaties, registration 926
 - consequences of failure to register (UNC 102) 926
 - secret treaties and 926
 - timing 925
- treaties, reservations (VCLT 19–23) 913–25
 - acceptance by other parties (VCLT 20) 388, 918–20, 921
 - advantages of system 914
 - Anglo-French Continental Shelf* case 916
 - Belilos* case 916–17, 922
 - bilateral agreements and 915
 - compatibility with object and purposes of treaty, need for 388, 918, 919, 921, 924
 - constituent instruments 920
 - Continental Shelf Convention (1958) and 916
 - definition (VCLT 2) 913–14
 - dispute settlement provisions and 921
 - ECHR and 354 n52, 916–17
 - effect 920–2
 - federal states and 220
 - human rights treaties 336, 354 n52, 388, 922–4
 - ILC Draft Guide to Practice (2007) 914 n56, 915 n61, 916, 918, 919, 921 n91, 922 n92, 924 n104
 - impermissible reservations 354 n52, 919, 921–4
 - interpretative declarations distinguished 915–18
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 127
 - League of Nations and 918
 - Loizidou (Preliminary Objections)* 922–3
 - Norwegian Loans* case 1082–3
 - political statements accompanying treaty distinguished 915
 - Reservations to the Genocide Convention* case 388, 918
 - Reservations to Normative Multilateral Treaties Including Human Rights Treaties, ILC Preliminary Conclusions (1997) 924
 - timing (VCLT 19) 919
 - UNHRC General Comment 24/52 and 318, 923–4
 - universality/integrity debate 914–15
 - validity, presumption of 921
 - validity, responsibility for determining 922, 923–4
 - VCLT 27 and 760

- treaties, signature (VCLT 12)
 - as consent 910–11
 - formality of 910–11
 - as interim step 911
 - legal effect 911
 - recognition of states and 326
 - withdrawal 911 n45
- treaties as source of international law
 - (ICJ 38(1)(a)) 6, 93–8
 - bilateral treaties 97–8
 - China and 38
 - law-creating treaties 95–6, 556
 - primacy 94–5, 123–4
 - USSR and 34
- treaties, termination for material breach (VCLT 60) 947–9
 - anticipated breach and 948
 - customary international law 947–8
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project* 948
 - humanitarian treaties and (VCLT 60(5)) 949
 - multilateral treaties and (VCLT 60(2)) 948–9
 - Rainbow Warrior* 946
 - as reprisal or countermeasure 794, 947
 - Tacna-Arica* arbitration 947–8
- treaties, termination and suspension (VCLT 54–64) 945–52, *see also* treaties, termination for material breach (VCLT 60)
 - armed conflict and 946 n202
 - by agreement of parties (VCLT 54 and 57) 945
 - consequences (VCLT 70 and 72) 952
 - denunciation or withdrawal (VCLT 56): *see* treaties, denunciation/withdrawal (VCLT 56)
 - desuetude 123
 - dispute settlement (VCLT 66) 952–3
 - effect on rights created prior to termination and suspension (VCLT 70(1)(b)) 946
 - fulfilment of purposes and 946
 - fundamental change of circumstances and (VCLT 62) 950–2, *see also* fundamental change of circumstances/*rebus sic stantibus* (VCLT 62)
 - impossibility of performance (VCLT 61) 949–50
 - Rainbow Warrior* 946
 - subsequent treaty and (VCLT 59) 947
 - suspension (VCLT 58) 946–7, 949–50
 - treaty provision for (VCLT 54 and 57) 945–6
- treaties, third parties and (VCLT 34–8) 95–6, 903, 928–30, 1312
 - ILC views on 928
 - intention/agreement of parties (VCLT 35) 929
 - obligations and rights distinguished 929
 - pacta tertiis nec nocent nec prosunt* rule 928, 1315
 - UNC 2(6) and 97, 928–9, 1124
- treaties, unincorporated
 - as aid to interpretation of legislation 150–1, 160, 183–5
 - as factual background 150
 - individual's rights and obligations under 149–50
 - interpretation, responsibility for 150
 - justiciability 183–6
 - legitimate expectations and 151, 168–9
- treaties, validity (VCLT 42–53) 939–52, *see also* treaties, consequences of invalidity (VCLT 69–72)
 - acquiescence and (VCLT 45) 939
 - bases for challenge to (VCLT 42) 939
 - breach of internal law regarding competence, relevance (VCLT 46(1)) 940–1
 - Cameroon v. Nigeria* 134, 940–1
 - coercion of representative of state and (VCLT 51) 942
 - coercion of state (VCLT 52) 500, 502, 942–4
 - conclusion in violation of internal law (VCLT 46) 134, 940–1
 - corruption of representative of state and (VCLT 50) 942

- Declaration on the Prohibition of Military, Political or Economic Coercion in the Conclusion of Treaties (1966) 943
- dispute settlement (VCLT 65–8) 952–3
- erga omnes* obligations 944
- error and (VCLT 48) 941–2
- estoppel from challenging 941–2
- fraud and 942
- jus cogens*/peremptory norms and (VCLT 53 and 64) 125, 127, 944
- ‘manifest’ violation of internal law concerning rule of fundamental importance 134, 940–1
- ratification and 134
- separability (VCLT 44) 939
- unauthorised conclusion 909
- treaty-making powers
- applicable law 908
 - EU 242
 - federal states 161, 218–20
 - Holy See 244
 - ICRC 262
 - international legal responsibility and 260, 263
 - international organisations 1308–9
 - as prerogative power 149, 181
 - unions of states and 909
- treaty succession 966–84
- Aaland Islands 539–40
 - agreement of all parties to multilateral treaty, need for 979
 - agreement between states concerned, need for 975
 - agreement with contracting parties, need for 967, 972–3
 - Alsace-Lorraine 974
 - application to part of new territory 972, 975
 - arms control and 976–7
 - Belgium (1830) 971, 974–5
 - boundary treaties 529 n234, 967–70, 971
 - cession of territory 973–4
 - chairpersons of human rights treaty bodies and 984
 - ‘clean slate’ principle 957, 971, 974–5, 977–8, 979
 - continuity in respect of human rights treaties, presumption of 984
 - continuity in respect of non-newly independent states, presumption of 975–7, 980
 - customary international law 958 n6, 967, 976, 984
 - Czechoslovakia 970
 - devolution agreements 958, 967, 979
 - dissolution and 974, 979–81
 - EU Guidelines on Recognition of New States (1991) 976
 - extension of treaty to newly acquired territory 971
 - Finland 200–1, 971, 975
 - FRG–GDR unification (1990) 971, 972–3
 - fundamental change of circumstances/*rebus sic stantibus* (VCLT 62(2)) 968–9
 - Gabčíkovo–Nagymaros Project 887
 - Genocide Convention (1948) 981–2, 984
 - German Unification (1990) and 966 n57
 - Hawaii 973–4
 - Hong Kong 974
 - human rights treaties 336–7, 981–4
 - ICCPR/ICESCR 982–3
 - ICJ jurisprudence 981, 984
 - merger of states 971–3
 - multilateral treaties 970–1, 976–7, 979
 - ‘newly independent states’ 975–6, 977–9, 990
 - object and purpose of treaty and 971–2, 973–4, 975, 979
 - parties’ intention and 971–2, 980
 - political/‘personal’ treaties 967, 970, 979–80
 - Racial Discrimination Convention 983 n144
 - recognition conditions and 976
 - secession (other than decolonisation) 975–7
 - stability of treaty relationships and 975–6
 - Tanganyika–Zanzibar 958 n6, 972 n92, 973

- treaty succession (*cont.*)
 territorial regimes/servitudes, treaties
 creating 539–40, 969–70, 979–80
 treaty monitoring bodies, role 983–4
 UNCHR resolution 1994/16 983–4
 UNHRC General Comment 26
 (continuity of obligations) 983
 unilateral declarations, effect 967,
 979
 United Arab Republic 972 n92, 973
 Treaty Succession, Vienna Convention
 on (1978)
 see also the table of treaties
 boundary treaties 529 n234, 969
 cession of territory 973
 conciliation 1023–4
 conclusion/entry into force 959
 continuity in absence of agreement to
 contrary 980–1
 customary international law and 976
 date of succession 959
 decolonised territories 975, 977–9
 dispute settlement 1015 nn22
 and 23, 1023–4
 international organisations,
 definition 1295–6
 leases and servitudes 538
 merger of states 971–2
 ‘newly independent states’ 975–6,
 977–9, 990
 stability of treaty relationships 975–6
 tribes, status 216–17, 264, 503, 525
 Triepel, H. 29–30, 131
 Trieste 230–1
 Trinidad and Tobago
 death penalty 320
 drug-trafficking, proposal for
 international court 410
 UNHRC interim measures,
 non-compliance 320
 Troika (OSCE) 1289
 Truman Proclamation (1945) 585,
 588–9
 trust territories
 classification as 1214
 individual petition, right of 225, 245
 international legal personality 224–8
 Racial Discrimination Committee
 and 313–14
 self-determination, right to 225
 strategic trust areas, Security Council
 responsibility for 1209, 1214
 Trusteeship Council 1214
 Pacific Islands Trust Territory
 and 224, 225
 suspension of operation (1994) 1214
 trusteeship system
 individual petition, right of 225, 245
 mandate system and 224, 225–6, 277
 as ‘sacred trust of civilisation’ 277
 truth and reconciliation commissions
 272, *see also* amnesty laws
 tuna fisheries
 conventions relating to 624 n356,
 628 n367, 637–8
 sustainable development and 870
 n139
 Tunkin, G. I. 32–5, 81, 91, 94, 99, 196,
 215, 216, 268
 Turkey, CoE Torture Committee
 and 363 n115
 Turkmenistan, EU Guidelines (1991)
 and 451–2
 Tuvalu 199, 208 n52
 Uganda
 Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
 intervention in the Congo 1264–5
 referral of Lord’s Resistance Army
 situation to ICC 413
 treaty succession and 958 n6
 UK
 Antarctic claims 535–6
 as archipelagic state 566
 BITs 838–9
 British Antarctic Territory 536
 continental shelf 588
 Council of Europe and 140
 criminal law jurisdiction 663–4
 deep sea mining 630, 631
 diplomatic premises and 463 n79,
 757–8
 Diplomatic Privileges and Immunities
 in the UK Memorandum 767
 diplomatic protection 188, 811–12,
 814, 818
 ECHR during belligerent occupation
 (Military Manual) 1183

- ECHR, incorporation 156
- ECtHR decisions 156
- employment contracts, state immunity in relation to 725–6, 770
- EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371 n172
- EU law and 140, 156–7, 179
- evidence obtained in violation of international law 140
- executive certificates 193–4, 471, 473, 477–8, 479, 480, 484–5, 704
- extraterritorial jurisdiction and 688 n218, 691–2
- fishing zones and 565 n61
- flags of convenience/reflagging 613
- forcible abduction/unlawful arrest and 682–3
- Humanitarian Crises, Policy Guidelines on (2001) 1157 n201
- incorporation doctrine 140–8
- international organisations, international legal personality 1300–2
- international organisations, liability of member states 1315–17
- international organisations, privileges and immunities 1328
- Iraq annexation of Kuwait and 1253 n246
- judicial notice of international law 140–1, 144
- judicial review 182, 188–91
- judicial role 146, 147
- justiciability 140, 179–88
- law of the sea, role in development of 79
- legislation, presumption of consistency with international obligations 143, 153
- legitimate expectations 151, 188
- municipal and international law, interrelationship 139–57
- passive personality principle and 665
- Ponsonby Rule 152–3, 912
- prerogative 137, 149
- prisoners of war (Military Manual) 1174 n32
- Privy Council, state responsibility for acts of 788
- protection of nationals abroad, use of force 1145
- protective principle and 667
- recognition, effects 472–81
- recognition of governments 193–4, 455, 458–9, 467, 481
- recognition of states 447, 450–1, 463, 464
- Refugees Convention (1950) 185
- SADR and 237 n208
- sanctions obligations 154–5
- SC membership 3
- SC membership/veto 3, 215, 1206, 1237
- separation of powers 148
- ships, state-owned (immunities) 148–9
- Somaliland and 237 n211, 467 n99
- state immunity and 702–3, 705–7, 710–11, 727–8, 732–5
- state immunity and commercial transactions 718–21
- state immunity from execution/attachment 745
- state immunity from jurisdiction, waiver 740–2
- state immunity from pre-judgment attachment 742–3
- state immunity and human rights law violations 716–18
- Taiwan and 463
- territorial sea and 565 n61, 569
- Torture Convention (1984), implementation 675
- transformation doctrine 139, 145
- treason, jurisdiction 663, 667
- UK legislation
 - Antarctic Act 1994 663
 - Anti-Terrorism Crime and Security Act 2001 663
 - Asylum and Immigration Act 1996 185
 - Asylum and Immigration Appeals Act 1993 152
 - Bretton Woods Agreements Act 1945 1302
 - Burma Independence Act 1948 493–4
 - Civil Aviation Act 1982 679 n156
 - Civil Partnership Act 2004 768 n393

UK legislation (*cont.*)

- Crown Proceedings Act 193
- Deep Sea Mining (Temporary Provisions) Act 1981 631
- Diplomatic and Consular Premises Act 1987 463 n78
- Diplomatic Privileges Act 1964 193 n354
- European Communities Act 1972 156–7, 179
- European Parliamentary Elections Act 1978 149
- Extradition Act 1989 687 n211
- Extradition Act 2003 (Designation of Part 2 Territories) Order 2003 687 n211
- Fishing Limits Act 1964 581
- Fishery Limits Act 1976 565 n61
- Foreign Corporations Act 1991 479
- Hong Kong Act 1985 539 n285
- Human Rights Act 1998 156
- International Organisations Act 1972 1300–1, 1328
- Merchant Shipping Act 1894 663
- Offences Against the Person Act 1861 663
- Official Secrets Act 1911 663
- Outer Space Act 1986 547 n323
- Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980 691–2, 693
- Sex Offenders Act 1997 663
- Sexual Offences (Conspiracy and Incitement) Act 1996 663
- State Immunity Act 1978 182, 193, 713 nn82 and 83, 716–21, 725–6, 727–8, 732, 733–4, 738 nn225 and 226, 740–1, 743–4, 745, 746, 748–9, 750 n288, 762–3, 770
- Suppression of Terrorism Act 1978 663
- Taking of Hostages Act 1982 674
- Territorial Sea Act 1987 569
- Territorial Waters Jurisdiction Act 1878 142
- United Nations Act 1946 154–5
- War Crimes Act 1991 663–4
- website 1334
- UK legislation, interpretation
 - treaties as aid 150–1, 154
 - unincorporated treaties and 150, 168, 183
- UK, treaties
 - boundary/territorial treaties 151
 - ‘financial’ treaties 151
 - implementation and enforcement 148–57
 - implementing legislation, need for 149–53
 - interpretation 150, 152–4, 155–7
 - interpretation of legislation and 150–1, 154
 - legitimate expectations and 151
 - municipal law conflict, relevance 153–4
 - Ponsonby Rule and 152–3, 912
 - ratification (VCLT 14) 140, 912–13
 - treaty-making power 149, 161, 908
 - treaty succession 980–1
 - unincorporated treaties, effect 51, 183–6
- Ukraine
 - CIS membership 249
 - Climate Change Convention (1992) 879
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 451–2
 - minorities in 295
 - OSCE Mission 1033
 - recognition 262–3
 - state succession and 961 n21
 - treaty succession 976–7
 - UDHR and 278–9
 - UN membership 218, 464
- ultra-hazardous activities 887–97, *see also* hazardous activities; nuclear activities
- UN 1204–81, *see also* crimes against UN and associated personnel; ECOSOC; Security Council; Trusteeship Council; UNGA
 - establishment 31, 1204, 1284–5
 - Headquarters, choice of 31
 - international law, applicability 1232–3
 - League of Nations and 31, 225, 1330, 1331 n221
 - purposes 1204–5
 - universality 31, 47
 - website 1339

- UN Administrative Tribunal, website 1338
- UN Centre for Human Rights 280, 336
- UN Charter (UNC)
 - amendment, procedure 931, 1209
 - amendment, proposals for 931, 1207–8
 - assistance in respect of UN action under Charter 1206–19
 - conflict with obligations under another international agreement, primacy (UNC 103) 127, 927, 1025, 1183 n79, 1236, 1270, 1274
 - as constitutional document 1205
 - as customary international law 929
 - domestic jurisdiction principle: *see* domestic jurisdiction principle (UNC 2(7))
 - equality of states 1205
 - good faith and (UNC 2(2)) 103–4, 1205
 - human rights provisions 276–8
 - interpretation as living instrument 937
 - interpretation, responsibility for 1304
 - League of Nations Covenant as basis 1216
 - non-UN members and 97, 928–9, 1124
 - peaceful settlement of disputes obligation 105
 - political aims, effect 252
 - self-determination principle (UNC 1(2) and UNC 55) 252
 - self-executing, whether 163–4
 - sovereign independence and 1205
 - third parties and (UNC 2(6)) 97, 928–9, 1124
- UN Charter (UNC), interpretation
 - Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) and 1123
 - ICCPR and ICESCR as aids 253–4
 - subsequent practice and 252
- UN Children's Fund 303
- UN Commission on Sustainable Development: *see* Sustainable Development, UN Commission on
- UN Compensation Commission (Iraq) 1045–7
 - applicable law 1047
 - Compensation Fund 1046
 - due process and 1047 n220
 - establishment (SC resolution 692 (1991)) 1045
 - expedited procedure 1047
 - Governing Council 1208
 - jurisdiction 1045
 - jurisprudence 1046–7
 - measure of compensation 1045
 - 'oil for food' scheme (SC resolution 778 (1992)) 1046
 - as political organ 1047
 - procedure 1046
 - as quasi-judicial body 1047
 - structure 1045
 - as subsidiary organ of Security Council 1045, 1208
 - website 1338
- UN Conference on Conditions of Registration of Ships (1984) 612
- UN Development Group Guidelines on Indigenous Peoples' Issues (2008) 299–300
- UN Drug Control Programme 1213
- UN Economic, Social and Cultural Rights Committee: *see* UNCESCR
- UN forces: *see* peacekeeping operations
- UN High Commissioner for Human Rights
 - establishment (1993) 280, 1213
 - role and responsibilities 280–1
 - unified human rights treaty body, proposal for 337
 - website 281, 1335
- UN Human Rights Council 306–7
 - Advisory Committee 307
 - complaints procedure 307
 - Enforced Disappearances Convention (2006) 299, 307 n220
 - establishment 1213
 - functions 306
 - membership 306
 - reports 1213
 - review mechanism 306–7
 - special procedures 307
 - as subsidiary organ of UNGA 306
 - as successor to UNCHR 306

- UN Human Rights Council, election to 1213
- UN, human rights
 - responsibilities 303–43, *see also* human rights, compliance and enforcement; UN treaty bodies; *and individual committees*
- ECOSOC 303
- evaluation 335–7
- inconsistencies, risk of 327, 336–7
- legal obligations, whether 277–8
- member state obligation to take joint and separate action (UNC 56) 277
- proliferation of committees, effect 336
- promotion and encouragement (UNC 1) 276–7
- promotion of universal respect for (UNC 55) 277
- resource problem 336
- UN Centre for Human Rights 336
- UNGA obligations (UNC 13(1)) 277, 303
- UN human rights responsibilities, Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 276, 280, 291 n151, 302, 324, 332 n365, 336
- UN membership 31, 47
 - admissions procedure 1209, 1210
 - entitlement 1210
 - expulsion 1211
 - non-retroactivity 963
 - recognition of states and 201, 453, 461–2, 464, 466
 - refusal of credentials 1211
 - state succession and 960–1, 985–6
 - ‘states’, limitation to (UNC 4) 201, 453, 461–2, 464, 963
 - suspension 1211
 - universality 1295
- UN membership of
 - Bosnia and Herzegovina 201
 - Croatia 201
 - Czech Republic 985
 - India 985
 - Kosovo 453
 - Liechtenstein 217, 1072 n103
 - Macedonia 464, 1211
 - Montenegro 1211
 - Pakistan 985
 - Serbia 1211
 - Slovakia 985
 - Switzerland 1072 n103
 - UAR 985
 - Yemen 985
 - Yugoslavia (FRY) 210, 963
- UN Peacebuilding Commission 1218 n67
- UN Permanent Forum on Indigenous Issues 299
- UN, privileges and immunities
 - Convention on Privileges and Immunities of the Specialised Agencies (1947) 1319
 - General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the UN (1946) 776, 1319
 - headquarters agreements and 1319–20
 - immunity of premises and property 1320
 - tax exemption 1320
 - UNC 105 1319
- UN Relief and Works Agency 1212–13
- UN role
 - Agenda for Peace* 1113, 1215, 1217–18, 1226 n109, 1234, 1274, 1313
 - changing nature 649, 1205
 - effectiveness in maintenance of peace 1233–5
 - preservation and restoration of world peace (UNC 1) 1204–81
 - Road Map Towards Implementation of the UN Millennium Declaration* (2001) 1218
- UN Secretary-General/Secretariat 122–4, 1214–16
 - action at request of parties 1223
 - action at request of UNGA or Security Council 1223, 1225
 - action in concert with regional organisations 1223–4
 - appointment 1215
 - assumption of Security Council functions 1210, 1223

- authority and power 1215–16
- binding Security Council resolutions and 1223
- chief administrative officer of UN (UNC 79) 1223
- Congo crisis (1960) and 1216, 1226–7
- Cyprus (1964) 1227
- depository for treaty ratifications 913
- discretionary nature of powers 1223
- good offices 1018–19, 1215–16, 1223–4
- holders of office 1215
- ICJ advisory jurisdiction and 1113
- inherent powers 1223
- international peace and security 1222–3
- Middle East peacekeeping force, withdrawal 1216
- peacekeeping forces and 1216, 1225, 1226–7
- qualifications and qualities 1214
- respect for international character of responsibilities 1214–15
- tax exemption 1324
- UN Security Council: *see* Security Council
- UN Special Committees
 - Apartheid 303
 - Decolonisation 253, 303
 - Inalienable Rights of the Palestine People 303
 - Israeli Practices in the Occupied Territories 303
- UN Standby Arrangements System 1275 n346
- UN Statistical Commission 1213n40
- UN, status
 - international legal personality 47, 83, 1297–8, 1300–3
 - Reparation for Injuries* 47, 83, 1297–8, 1302–3
 - statehood distinguished 1302
 - as subject of international law 47, 261
- UN treaty bodies
 - see also* Child, Committee on the Rights of; Disabilities, Committee on the Rights of Persons with; Enforced Disappearances Committee; Migrant Workers Committee; Racial Discrimination Committee; Torture Committee; UNHRC; Women, Committee on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against
 - autonomy 309, 311
 - chairpersons of human rights treaty bodies meetings 325, 336, 984
 - harmonisation of working methods, working party 336 n390
 - inter-committee meetings 336 n390
 - UN Secretariat, role 311
 - unified body, proposal for 337
 - unified body, pros and cons 337
- UN treaty bodies, common practices
 - grave or serious allegations, right to inquire into 335
- individual communications 225, 245, 258, 311, 313, 319–22, 324, 328, 334, 335, 342, *see also*
 - standing/*locus standi* (individual)
- inter-state complaints 313, 328, 334, 335
- reporting obligations 309–10, 312–13, 314, 315, 316–17, 328–9, 331, 334, 335, 337
- reporting procedures, guidelines on harmonisation of 337
- UNAMIC 1129 n124
- UNAMIR 1262–3
- UNAMIS 1265
 - as regional arrangement (Chapter VII) 1280
- UNAMSIL 1263–4
- UNASOG 1011–12
- UNAVEM I 1228–9
- UNCESCR
 - establishment 309, 1213 n42
 - financing and budgetary arrangements 336
 - General Comments: *see* General Comments (UNCESCR)
 - general discussion days 310–11, 332
 - General Recommendation 21 (self-determination) 293
 - individual right of petition, exclusion 311
 - inter-state complaints, exclusion 311

- UNCESCR (*cont.*)
 means of implementation,
 adequacy 309
 meetings 309
 non-autonomous status 309, 1213
 n42
 reporting obligations,
 effectiveness 309–10
- UNCHR 304–6
 achievements 306
 complaints, power to deal with
 (ECOSOC resolution 1235
 (XVII)) 304
 criticisms of 306
 membership 304
 minorities and 305
 politicisation 306
 public debate and 304
 recommendations to UN bodies,
 right to make 281
 replacement by Human Rights
 Council 306, 1213 n40
 resolution 1994/16 (adhesion of
 successor states to human rights
 treaties) 983–4
 special rapporteurs 222–3, 287 n128,
 299, 304–5, 1325
- UNCHR, working groups
 Apartheid, Group of Three 305
 child, rights of 305
 Communications (ECOSOC
 resolution 1503 (XLVIII)) 305,
 308
 Declaration on Religious
 Intolerance 305
 Disappearances 304
 Right to Development 304
 Situations revealing a Consistent
 Pattern of Gross Violations of
 Human Rights 304, 305
 Torture Convention (1984) 305
- UNCITRAL
 Arbitration Rules 1038–9, 1044
 development of international law
 and 121
 website 1334
- UNCLOS III, consensus and 10
 n38
- UNCRO 1259
- UNCTAD
 development of international law
 and 121
 establishment 40, 1213
- UNDRO 891
- UNEF
 establishment 1226, 1272
 as non-enforcement action 1272–3
 withdrawal 1228
- UNEF II 1227, 1228 n117
- UNEP 846, 865, 878, 1213
- unequal treaties 38
- UNESCO 341–3
 advisory jurisdiction of ICJ and 1325
 n190
 aims 341
 codification and development of
 international law and 121
 conventions and resolutions, member
 state obligations 342
 dispute settlement 1035
 establishment 341, 1285
 General Conference 341–2
 legal personality in domestic
 law 1299 n71
 object and purpose 1285
 outer space and 550
questions of massive, systematic or
 flagrant violations 343
 Racial Discrimination Committee
 and 313
 rule of law and 341
 state archives and 994
 structure 341–2
- UNESCO, complaints procedure
 absence of constitutional
 provision 342
 admissibility 342
 Committee on conventions and
 Recommendations, role 342–3
 Conciliation and Good Offices
 Commission 342
 confidentiality of proceedings
 342–3
 exhaustion of local remedies, need
 for 342
 friendly settlement as
 objective 342–3
 individual communications 342

- UNGA, organisation and procedure
see also ILC; Namibia, UN Council
 for; UNCITRAL; UNRRWA
 First Committee (disarmament and
 international security) 303,
 1212
 Second Committee (economic and
 financial) 1212
 Third Committee (social,
 humanitarian and cultural) 303,
 1212
 Fourth Committee (special political
 and decolonisation) 245, 1212
 Fifth Committee (administrative and
 budgetary) 1212
 Sixth Committee (legal) 303, 1212
 General Committee 1212
 meetings 1272
 NLM observer status 245–6
 Special Political Committee 303
 special sessions 1212, 1272
 Standing Committees 1212
 Uniting for Peace (UNGA resolution
 377 (V)) 1212, 1222 n90,
 1272–3
 UNGA resolutions by number
 91 (I) (Switzerland and ICJ
 Statute) 1072
 95 (I) (Nuremberg Charter) 400
 109 (II) (threats to Greece) 1226
 194 (III) (Palestine Conciliation
 Commission) 1024
 377 (V) (Uniting for Peace) 1212,
 1222 n90, 1272–3
 1262 (XI) (ILC Model Rules on
 Arbitral Procedure) 1050,
 1053–4
 1514 (XV): *see* Declaration on the
 Granting of Independence to
 Colonial Countries and Peoples
 (1960) (UNGA resolution 1514
 (XV))
 1541 (XV) (Obligation to transmit
 information under Art. 73(e)
 (non-self-governing
 territories)) 256 n294
 1803 (XVII) (Permanent sovereignty
 over natural resources) 83, 834–53
 1962 (XVII) (Outer Space) 544
 2131 (XX) (Armed Intervention in
 the Domestic Affairs of
 States) 1127
 2145 (XXI) (South West Africa) 226
 2248 (XXII) (South West Africa)
 226
 2574 (XXIV) (seabed resources:
 moratorium) 629
 2625 (XXV): *see* Declaration on
 Principles of International Law
 Concerning Friendly Relations
 (1970) (UNGA resolution 2625
 (XXV))
 3034 (XXVII) (ad hoc committee on
 terrorism) 1160
 3061 (XXVIII)
 (Guinea-Bissau) 205–6
 3247 (XXIX) (NLMs) 245–6
 3314 (XXIX) (definition of
 aggression) 439, 469 n104, 488 n6,
 502 n78, 1148 n157, 1152 n174,
 1153 n177
 3452 (XXX) (torture/cruel, inhuman
 or degrading treatment) 327
 36/39 (ILC membership) 40
 37/10 (Manila Declaration on the
 Peaceful Settlement of
 International Disputes) 1013 n17,
 1014 nn18 and 20, 1016 n28, 1026
 n78
 40/144 (Human Rights of Individuals
 who are not Nationals of the
 Country in which they Live)
 826
 41/65 (Principles on Remote
 Sensing) 551–2
 41/128 (Declaration on the Right to
 Development) 301–2
 42/22 (Enhancement of the
 Effectiveness of the Principle of
 Refraining from the Threat or Use
 of Force in International
 Relations) 1123 n24
 43/53 (global warming) 875–6, 878
 44/207 (global warming) 878
 47/68 (Outer Space) 547
 47/135 (minorities) 297
 48/104 (violence against women) 287
 n129, 325

- UNGA resolutions (*cont.*)
 48/134 (national institutions for protection of human rights) 276 n67
 48/141 (UNCHR) 280
 49/60 (Declaration on Measures to Eliminate International Terrorism) 1160–1
 50/50 (UN Model Rules for the Conciliation of Disputes Between States) 1023
 51/126 (Outer Space) 544
 51/210 (Ad Hoc Committee on Terrorist Conventions) 1161
 53/97 (condemnation of violence against diplomatic and consular missions and persons) 764
 55/12 (FRY: UN membership) 210, 963 n39
 60/1 (Declaration on Measures to Eliminate International Terrorism) 1160–1
 60/180 (Peacekeeping Commission) 1218 n67
 60/251 (Human Rights Council) 306, 307, 1165
 60/264 (secession of Montenegro) 963 n39
 60/288 (Ad Hoc Committee on Terrorism) 1161
 UNGA resolutions, legal status
 adoption of treaties and 909–10
 as evidence of state practice 82–3, 115–17, 544, 1295
 Legality of Nuclear Weapons 116–17
 non-binding nature 3, 1212, 1222, 1225
 opinio juris and 115, 116–17, 544
 UNGA, role 3, 114–15
 admission, suspension and expulsion of member states 1209, 1210, 1211
 authorisation of request for advisory opinion 1113
 declarations, non-binding effect 1222
 discussion and recommendation on any UN matter (UNC 10 and 11) 1221–2
 establishment of subsidiary organs 303, 1225
 human rights responsibilities (UNC 13(1)) 277, 303
 ICJ judges, election 1209
 ICTY judges, appointment 404
 international peace and security 1210, 1221–2, 1225, 1271–3
 as parliamentary body of UN 1210, 1212
 recommendations for peaceful adjustment (UNC 14) 1222, 1225
 SC and 1209, 1210, 1217, 1218, 1221–2
 SC functions, assumption of 1210, 1222, 1271–3
 SC, referral of question requiring action to SC (UNC 11) 1272–3
 UN charter, review and amendment 1209
 UNGA, voting
 2/3 majority requirement 1211
 bloc voting 1211 n30
 equality of states and 211, 1211
 UNHCR: *see* Refugees, UN High Commissioner for (UNHCR)
 UNHRC 314–22
 conciliation commissions 319
 confidentiality of proceedings 305
 consensus decision-taking 315, 316
 establishment 315
 General Comments 316–19, *see also* General Comments (UNHRC)
 ICCPR, competence to interpret 923–4
 inter-state complaints 319
 interim measures 320
 meetings 315
 membership 314–15
 minorities and 294–7
 NGOs and 315–16
 reporting obligations 315, 316–17
 self-determination and 290
 specific comments 316–17
 torture and 326
 UN Secretary-General and 319
 urgent action procedure 337
 Yugoslavia and 982–3

- UNHRC, individual petitions 319–22
 - Communications Working Group and 319, 320
 - concurrent jurisdiction 319
 - decisions, compliance/enforcement 320
 - exhaustion of local remedies and 273–4, 319
 - interim decisions 319
 - jurisprudence 321–2
 - right of (Optional Protocol I) 319
 - Special Rapporteur (communications) 320
 - Special Rapporteur (follow-up) 320 n302
 - workload 320
- UNIDO, dispute settlement 1035
- unification of states: *see* merger of states
- UNIIMOG 1244 n201
- UNIKOM 1229
- unilateral acts, legal effect 121–2, 201, 203, 206, 478, 905, 967, 979, 1242–3
- United Arab Republic
 - dissolution 974, 980, 985
 - treaty succession 972 n92, 973, 974, 980
- UN membership 985
- Uniting for Peace (UNGA resolution 377 (V)) 1212, 1222 n90, 1272–3
- Universal Declaration of Human Rights (1948) (UDHR) 278–80
 - abstentions 278–9
 - binding, whether 46, 279
 - Byelorussia and 278–9
 - as customary international law 279
 - Czechoslovakia and 278–9
 - general principles of law/international law and 279
 - human rights as general principles of international law and 265
 - individual's rights under 46
 - Poland and 278–9
 - proposal for binding universal convention, delay 280
 - Saudi Arabia and 278–9
 - scope 279
 - SFRY and 278–9
 - Ukraine and 278–9
- universal jurisdiction 668–87
 - apartheid 671
 - arrest/detention on high seas or within the forum state 398
 - aut dedere aut judicare* principle 671, 1160
 - crimes against humanity 668–73, 1200
 - crimes against peace 670
 - Crimes against the Peace and Security of Mankind, ILC Draft Code (1996) and 671
 - definition 397–8, 668
 - Eichmann* 669 n102, 671–2
 - enforced disappearances 678 n153
 - environmental offences 671
 - Geneva Conventions (1949) and 669–70
 - genocide, jurisdiction 671, 673
 - 'grave breaches' 434–5, 669–70, 1200
 - hijacking 678
 - Institut de Droit International and 672–3
 - international crimes, sufficiency of status as 671
 - jus cogens*/peremptory norms and 673–4
 - justification 668
 - municipal courts and 671–3
 - nationality, relevance 673
 - Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations Convention (1968) and 669
 - non-retroactivity principle (*nullum crimen sine lege*) and 672
 - Nuremberg Charter (1945)/Nuremberg Tribunal and 669–70
 - piracy 270, 397–8, 615–16, 668
 - presence of the accused, relevance 672–3
 - slave trading 397–8
 - slavery and 270, 673
 - state practice 671–3
 - terrorism, support for and 670
 - torture 675
 - war crimes 434–5, 668–73
- UNMIK 232–3
- UNMIS 1265–6

- UNMISSET 234, 425
- UNMOGIP 1226 n108
- UNMOP 1229–30
- UNMOVIC 1249–50, 1256
- UNOMIL 1277
- UNOMUR 1262
- UNOSOM II 1261–2
- UNPREDEP 1259–60
- UNPROFOR 1257–60
- UNRRWA, dissolution 1330 n214
- UNSCOB 1226
- UNSCOM 1249–50, 1255 n253
- UNSMIH 1230
- UNTAC 231, 1129 n124
- UNTAES 231 n177, 1229–30
- UNTAET 233–4, 424–5, 1230
- UNTAG 231 n177, 1229
- UNTSO 1226
- UPU 219, 1098 n74, 1163
 - establishment (1874) 28, 1284
- urgent/emergency measures 335, 386, 393–4, *see also* provisional measures
- Uruguay, human rights in 383
- Uruguay Round 1034–5, 1287
- USA
 - act of state doctrine 191–2
 - Afghanistan operations 1134, 1136–7, 1140
 - Antarctic and 536
 - Arab countries and 467
 - Arctic territory 535
 - boundary disputes between constituent states 498
 - commissions of inquiry 1020
 - Connally Amendment (ICJ jurisdiction) 1083–4
 - consular access (VCCR 36) and 135–6, 220–1
 - criminal jurisdiction 663 n73
 - deep sea mining 630
 - Diplomatic and Consular Personnel, Guidance with regard to Personal Rights and Immunities* 771
 - diplomatic motoring offences 766 n379
 - diplomatic premises, abandonment 758
 - diplomatic protection 814 n232
 - EEZ 584
 - expropriation/nationalisation of property of foreign national 191–2
 - extraterritorial jurisdiction: *see* effects doctrine/extraterritorial jurisdiction on economic matters
 - federal/component state powers, allocation 219, 220
 - flags of convenience 612–13
 - forcible abduction/unlawful arrest and 681–2
 - foreign relations, justiciability 189–92
 - Grenada, invasion of (1984) 1144, 1151, 1183 n79, 1276 n355
 - Hawaii, annexation of (1898) 973–4
 - heads of state, immunities 736–7
 - Hickenlooper Amendments 191, 1128–9
 - historic bays 564–5
 - human rights breaches, justiciability 190
 - human rights treaties, implementation 220 n112
 - ICC obligations and 414
 - ICJ decisions and 158–9, 220–1
 - ILO conventions and 220
 - Innocent Passage, Uniform Interpretation of the Rules of International Law Governing (1989) 573–4
 - international law, respect for 8
 - international organisations, privileges and immunities 1320, 1328
 - intertemporal law 160–1
 - Iraq annexation of Kuwait and 1253 n246
 - League of Nations and 30
 - Marshall Islands and 225
 - municipal and international law, interrelationship 157–66
 - Northern Mariana Islands and 225
 - Pacific Islands Trust Territories and 225
 - Palau and 225
 - Panama, intervention in 1144, 1151, 1189
 - passive personality principle and 665–6

- PLO and 165
- political question doctrine 189–92
- prisoners of war (Law of Land Warfare) 1174 n32
- protection of nationals abroad, use of force 1144–5
- protective principle and 667 n97
- publications relating to state practice 82 n39
- recognition of governments 162, 458, 467
- recognition of states 445, 446–7, 450–1, 452
- SC membership/veto 3, 215, 1237
- space law, influence on 80
- sphere of influence 57
- State Department suggestions (executive certificates) 194, 471, 482, 484–5, 705
- state immunity and 703–4, 715–16
- state immunity in case of violations of international law including human rights 684, 685, 715–16
- state immunity and commercial transactions 721–4
- state immunity from execution/attachment 745–6
- state immunity from jurisdiction, waiver 742
- Taiwan and 467
- taking of property in foreign state, justiciability 191–2
- Tate Letter (1952) 705
- territorial sea and 569
- UN and 163–4
- USA legislation
 - Act to Combat Terrorism 1984 679
 - Alien Tort Claims Act 1789 159–61, 683–6, *see also* torts in violation of international law, jurisdiction (US Alien Tort Claims Act)
 - Anti-Hijacking Act 1974 679 n158
 - Anti-Terrorism Act 1987 165
 - anti-trust legislation 688–96
 - Antiterrorism and Effective Death Penalty Act 1996 685 n197, 715–16
 - Byrd amendment 164
 - Comprehensive Crime Control Act 665
 - Cuban Democracy Act 1992 692–3
 - Detainee Treatment Act 2005 658 n57
 - Diplomatic Relations Act 1978 766 n379
 - Foreign Assistance Act 1129
 - Foreign Operations, Export Financing and Related Programs Appropriations Act 1994 766 n379
 - Foreign Sovereign Immunities Act 685, 700 n14, 701, 707, 708, 709 n64, 715, 721–2, 727–8, 731–2, 736–7, 742, 745–6, 750 n288
 - International Organisations Immunities Act 1945 1328–9
 - Military Commissions Act 2006 659 n57
 - Omnibus Diplomatic Security and Anti-Terrorism Act 665–6
 - presumption of consistency with international obligations 159, 164–5
 - Taiwan Relations Act 467
 - Torture Victim Protection Act 1992 160 n165, 684–5
 - website 1334
- USA, treaties
 - applicable law 165
 - boundary/territorial treaties 162
 - compliance/implementation (VCLT 26–7) 220
 - executive agreements 161–2
 - municipal law conflict, relevance (VCLT 27) 164, 165–6
 - ratification (VCLT 14) 913
 - self-executing/non-self-executing treaties 162–4
 - treaties as ‘supreme law of the land’ 165–6
 - treaty-making powers 161, 219, 908
 - treaty succession, attitude to 974 n106, 976–7
 - UN Charter, status 163–4
 - website 1337
- usage 115
- use of force prior to UN Charter 1119–22, *see also* war, renunciation as instrument of policy
 - hostile measures short of war 1121

- use of force prior (*cont.*)
 - humanitarian intervention 270, 1155
 - just war 1110–20
 - League of Nations and 1121–2, 1216–17
 - as means of asserting rights or punishment 1121
 - proportionality 1120
 - reprisals 1121, 1122, 1123
 - self-defence, right to and 1017
- use of force (UNC 2(4)) 1123–8, *see also*
 - aggression; blockades; boycotts; collective use of force (Chapter VII); collective use of force other than under Chapter VII; economic sanctions as response to threat to or breach of the peace (UNC 41); humanitarian intervention by states; intervention in the affairs of another state, justification; intervention in the affairs of another state, prohibition; regional arrangements for the maintenance of international peace and security (UNC Chapter VIII); reprisals
- Chapter VII action 1123–4
- colonial domination and 807
- as customary international law 1123
- Declaration on Armed Intervention in the Domestic Affairs of States (1965) 1127
- Declaration on the Enhancement of the Effectiveness of the Principle of Refraining from the Threat or Use of Force (1987) 1123 n24
- Declaration on Principles of International Law (1970) and 1123–5
- ‘force’ 1124–6, *see also* ‘force’ (UNC 2(4)), classification as
- as general principle of law 1123–4
- humanitarian intervention by states 155–8
- independence of states and 1123
- as *jus cogens*/peremptory norm 126
- non-recognition policy and 469
- protection of nationals
 - abroad 1143–5, *see also* protection of nationals abroad, use of force
- retorsion 1128–9
- self-defence, right to (UNC 51)
 - and 4–5, 1123–4, *see also* self-defence, right to (UNC 51)
- self-determination, right to 1123, 1148–9
- territorial acquisition and 502
- territorial integrity and 468, 1123, 1126–8
- use or threat of force (general)
 - consensus, need for 1118, 1139 n99
 - validity of treaties and (VCLT 52) 500, 502, 942–4
- USSR
 - Angola, intervention in 1150
 - Arctic claims 535
 - Baltic states and: *see* Baltic states
 - civil and political rights 268–9
 - CoE and 347 n8
 - deep sea mining 630
 - economic and social rights 268–9
 - EEZ 584
 - Gulf War and 1253 n246
 - Helsinki Final Act (1975) and 373
 - human rights in 50, 268–9, 278–9
 - human rights treaties and 269
 - ICJ and 269 n18
 - India–Pakistan Dispute (1965), mediation 1018
 - individuals, status in international law 46–7, 268–9
 - Innocent Passage, Uniform Interpretation of the Rules of International Law Governing (1989) 573–4
 - international law and 8, 31–8
 - international relations, approach to 35, 36
 - League of Nations and 30–1, 33
 - lump sum settlements 840–1
 - outer space, control of information 551
 - peaceful co-existence and 33–6, 215, 216
 - perestroika* and *glasnost* 36, 1209
 - recognition by UK 460, 472–3
 - recognition by USA 162, 465, 483
 - recognition of government (1921/1924) 460
 - rule of law and 36
 - sacred trust concept 251

- SC membership/veto 3, 1206–7, 1237
 Siberian pipeline episode 692
 space law, influence on 80
 sphere of influence 57
 state immunity from jurisdiction
 and 708
 state sovereignty and 33–4, 35
 state succession 36, 240, 960–1
 territorial integrity and 35
 Torture Convention (1984) and 269
 UDHR and 278–9
 UN boycott 1252
 UN peacekeeping and 8, 33–5
 UNHRC and 315–16
 Uniform Interpretation of the Rules
 of International Law Governing
 Innocent Passage (1989) 573–4
uti possidetis principle and 527, 968
 veto, use of 1206–7
 warships, innocent passage 573
 USSR, dissolution
 see also CIS; Russia; and individual
 former republics
 CoE and 345
 EU Guidelines (1991) 207
 human rights and 315–16
 human rights treaties and 983 n144
 regulation of process, need for 198
 Soviet attitude to international law
 and 36, 44
 state succession and 209, 240–1,
 960–2
 state succession to state property,
 agreements on 993
 treaty succession 976–7, 983 n144
 uti possidetis principle and 527
 USSR, invasion of/intervention in
 Afghanistan 36, 1153, 1233–4
 Baltic states 468, 961
 Bessarabia 468
 Czechoslovakia 35, 36, 57, 468,
 1233–4
 Estonia 468
 Finland 31, 468
 Hungary 57
 Latvia 468
 Lithuania 203, 468
 Poland 57
uti possidetis doctrine/stability of
 boundaries 522, 525–8
 ACY Opinion No. 2 291
 Africa and 526–7, 968, 969, 1028
 African Union for Peace and Security
 Council 1028
 AU and 290, 526
 AU Constitutive Act 1293
 Banjul Charter and 392
Burkina Faso/Mali case 290–1, 968
 CIS 968 n69
 critical date and 509–10
 customary international law 526
 Czech and Slovak Republic 968 n69
 decolonisation and 967–8
 definition 200 n19, 290, 509, 527,
 967–8
 determination of boundaries for
 purposes of 515, 525, 530
 Eastern Europe 527–8
effectivités and 529–30
 equity and 530
Eritrea/Yemen 969
 former USSR and 527
 former Yugoslavia and 527–8
 fundamental change of
 circumstances/*rebus sic stantibus*
 (VCLT 62(2)) 968–9
 as general principle of law 290–1,
 968
 internal boundaries, applicability
 to 528 n230
 Latin America and 525–6, 967–8
Libya/Chad 969
 maritime delimitation and 591
 new states created from independent
 states and 968
 non-boundary territorial disputes,
 applicability to 528 n233
 object and purpose 290
 prescription and 504–5
 recognition of states and 451
 self-determination and 526–8
 Somali–Ethiopia conflict and 1027
 UNGA resolutions and 290
 USSR 527, 968
 Vienna Convention on Succession to
 Treaties and 969
 Yugoslavia (SFRY) and 527–8, 968
 n68
 Uzbekistan, EU Guidelines (1991)
 and 451–2

- Valletta Report (1991) 1032–3
- Vanuatu 229
- Vatican City: *see* Holy See
- Vattel, Emerich de 26, 112
- Venice, cession (1866) 500
- veto (SC) 3, 4, 37, 215, 1206–7, 1222, 1237
- abstention and 1207, 1252
- ‘double-veto’ 1207
- procedural and non-procedural matters distinguished 1207
- Uniting for Peace resolution as response to 1272
- use in Iraq situation 1256
- victims, protection and privacy 406, 416–17
- Vienna Convention on Consular Relations (1963) (VCCR)
- as codification of existing law 772 n424
- drafting process 120
- Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations (1961): *see* Diplomatic Relations Convention (1961) (VCDR)
- Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties (1969) (VCLT)
- as customary international law 496, 903, 933, 948, 951
- drafting process 120
- inter-state agreements, limitation to 904
- third parties and 903
- treaties concluded since entry into force, limitation to 496
- Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties between States and International Organisations (1986): *see* International Organisations, Vienna Convention on Treaties between States and (1986)
- Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their Relations with International Organisations (1975): *see* International Organisations, Vienna Convention on the Representation of States in their relations with (2975)
- Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1994) 276, 280, 291 n151, 302, 324, 332 n365, 336
- Vietnam 1185
- archives, Franco-Vietnamese agreement (1950) 995
- as focus of East–West conflict 57
- US intervention in 8
- Vietnam War 669, 1150, 1233
- violence, protection from
- child (CRC 19) 331
- women 287 n129, 324, 325
- Vitoria, Francisco 22–3, 24, 1120
- Vojvodina 1033
- Vyshinsky and 33
- war
- see also* aggression
- determination of existence of 193
- hostile measures short of war 1121
- as prerogative/discretionary power 181
- war crimes
- crimes against humanity
- distinguished 438
- crimes against peace
- distinguished 670
- East Timor Special Panels for Serious Crimes 425
- individual criminal responsibility 262, 399, 402, 434, 439, 671, 1200
- as international crime 433–6
- as ‘most serious crime’ 411
- Non-Applicability of Statutory Limitations Convention (1968) 669
- prisoners of war, liability for 1176
- as ‘serious crime’ 425
- universal jurisdiction 434–5, 668–73
- war crimes, definition/classification
- as 433–4
- ICC 8 434
- ICTY 3 434
- violation of laws or customs of war (ICTY 3) 434
- war crimes, jurisdiction 398–9
- ICC and 411
- Iraqi High Tribunal, jurisdiction 429

- Nuremberg Charter
 - (1945)/Tribunal 399, 400
 - over nationals 411
- war, laws of
 - see also* international humanitarian law
 - in ancient Greece 16
 - Catholic Church, influence on 19
 - De jure belli ac Pacis* (Grotius) 23–4
 - De jure belli* (Gentili) 23
 - demise of the just war and 1120–1
 - Islam and 18
 - jus ad bellum* and *jus in bello*
 - distinguished 1120–1, 1167
 - non-international armed conflict and 435
- war, renunciation as instrument of policy
 - see also* aggression; use of force prior to UN Charter; use of force (UNC 2(4))
 - as general principle of international law 1122
 - Kellogg–Briand Pact (1928) 439
 - n226, 468, 501, 506, 509, 942, 1122
- Warsaw, UN Security Council and 1210
- Warsaw Pact
 - collective self-defence (UNC 51) and 1146–7
 - EAPC and 1290
 - establishment 1210
 - object and purpose 47
 - origin 57, 1210
- warships
 - immunity from jurisdiction 148–9, 575, 614
 - innocent passage, right of 570, 572–4
 - marine pollution and 899
 - state immunity, entitlement 699
 - as state organ 558
- warships, jurisdiction
 - flag state jurisdiction 558, 614
 - internal waters 558
 - territorial waters 575
- Washington Protocol (1992) 381
 - n219
- weapons, prohibited 1186–90
 - asphyxiating and deleterious gases 1189
 - balance between military necessity and humanitarian considerations 1187
 - cluster bombs 1190 n120
 - dum-dum bullets 1189
 - explosives or inflammatory projectiles 1168, 1186, 1189–90
 - Gulf War oil spillage 1190
 - incendiary devices 1189–90
 - laser weapons 1190
 - Legality of Nuclear Weapons* 1187–9
 - mines and booby traps 575–6, 784–6, 1189–90
 - minimum suffering test 1187
 - nuclear weapons: *see* nuclear weapons
 - poisonous weapons 434, 1187, 1192
 - weapons causing long-term harm to the environment 1190
 - weapons not detectable by x-ray 1189
- weapons, prohibited, treaties and similar international instruments related to
 - Convention on the Prohibition of Military or Any Other Hostile Use of Environmental Modification Techniques (1977) 1190
 - Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production and Transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines (Ottawa) (1997) 1190
 - Conventional Weapons Treaty and Protocols (1980) 1189–90
 - Geneva Conventions (1949), Protocol I 1190
 - Geneva Protocol (1929) 1189
 - Hague Declarations (1899) 1189
 - St Petersburg Declaration (1886) 1168, 1186, 1189
- West Bank: *see* Israel occupied territories
- West Indies, sale of territories by Denmark 500
- Western Sahara
 - see also* Mauritania, territorial claims against Morocco; Saharan Arab Democratic Republic (SADR)
 - AU mediation (1978) 1027
 - MINURSO 1229
 - as non-self-governing territory 237
 - referendum 1229

- Westphalia, Peace of (1648) 26, 1120, 1282
- WEU
 EU and 1290 n33
 NATO, co-operation with 1279 n368
 website 1340
- whales 624 n356
- WHO
 competence 1112, 1303–6
 establishment (1946) 1285
 ICJ advisory jurisdiction and 1112, 1303–6
 legal personality in domestic law 1299 n71
 website 1340
- WHO complaints procedure,
 ICJ/arbitration and 1034 n148
- wilful killing/murder
 as crime against humanity 408, 436
 as 'grave breach' 401, 403, 434, 669, 670
 individual criminal
 responsibility 425, 1200
 as 'serious crime' 425
- Wilson doctrine of democratic
 legitimacy 457, 458
- WIPO, Mediation, Arbitration and
 Expedited Arbitration Rules
 (1994) 1035 n151
- witnesses, protection and privacy 406, 416–17
- WMD
 bilateral agreements 620
 criminalisation 620
 Interdiction Principles
 (2003) 619–20
 Iraq 1248–50
 SC resolution 687 (1991) 1248–50
 SC resolution 1540 (2004) 620
 search and visit, right of 619–20
 as threat to the peace 1240
- Women, Committee on the Elimination
 of All Forms of Discrimination
 Against
see also General Recommendations
 (CEDAW)
 Commission on the Status of Women
 and 322
 establishment 322–3
 general recommendations,
 procedure 323–4
 grave or systematic violations, right
 to inquire into 324, 334
 individual petition, right of (Optional
 Protocol) 324
 inquiries 324
 meetings 323, 324
 membership 323
 procedure 323
 reporting obligations 323
 torture, prohibition 325
- Women, Convention on the Elimination
 of All Forms of Discrimination
 Against (1979)
 'discrimination against women' 287
 n129, 288
 nationality and 662
 standing to pursue remedy for
 breach 385
- Women, Convention on the Nationality
 of Married (1957) 662
- Women, Inter-American Commission
 of 385
 advisory opinions, right to seek 385
- Women, Inter-American Convention on
 the Prevention, Punishment and
 Eradication of Violence Against
 (1994) 325, 385
- women, rights of
see also gender discrimination
 African Commission Special
 Rapporteur 392–3
 Commission on the Status of
 Women 322
 death penalty and 318
 development 301
 differential treatment, justifiable 324
 ECtHR, nominations for
 appointment as judge and 352 n38
 equality in marriage and family
 relations 324
 female circumcision, eradication
 324
 government, participation in 324
 growing importance 324–5
 health and 324
 IACoMHR special rapporteur 383
 ILO and 325

- in international law 65
- minorities and 318–19, 321
- nationality 662
- prostitution and 325
- UN treaty body obligations 325
- UNHRC General Comment 28 318–19
- Vienna Declaration and Programme of Action (1993) 280, 324
- Violence Against Women, Declaration on Elimination of (1994) 287 n129, 325
- violence, measures to protect against 324
- Violence, Special Rapporteur on its Causes and Consequences 325
- websites 1335
- Women, UN Commission on the Status of 322, 1213 n40
- work, right to
 - CIS Convention 378
 - General Comment (UNCESCR) 1 310
 - ICESCR 6 and 7 308
 - UDHR 23 279
- workers' rights
 - consultation 361 n102
 - ESC 361
 - EU Charter of Fundamental Rights (2000) 371
 - participation in the improvement of working conditions 361 n102
- working conditions
 - see also* ILO
 - 19th century developments 270
- World Administrative Radio Conferences 549
- World Bank
 - accountability 1040
 - constituent instrument, interpretation 1304 n97
 - decision-making 1286
 - dissolution powers 1329
 - establishment (1944) 40, 1285–6
 - Foreign Direct Investment guidelines 250, 828, 835, 837, 842 n373
 - Global Environmental Facility (GEF) 846, 874, 881
 - Governor, role 1286
 - IDA 1286
 - IFC and 1286
 - immunity from jurisdiction, waiver 1327 n199
 - membership 1285–6
 - Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency 842–3
 - privileges and immunities 1319 n168
 - state succession to state property and 993
 - structure and organisation 1286
 - voting 1286
 - websites 1333, 1338
- World Bank dispute settlement procedures
 - Bank Board, role 1040
 - Bank Management, role 1040
 - Inspection Panel 1021 n59
- World Cultural and Natural Heritage Convention (1972), federal state compliance 222
- World Food Council 303
- World Food Programme 262
- World Heritage List 222
- wrecks 589
- WTO
 - see also* GATT/WTO dispute settlement procedures; GATT/WTO dispute settlement procedures (DSU)
 - aims 1287
 - establishment (1995) 1287
 - GATS Council 1287
 - General Council 1287
 - Marrakesh Agreement (1994) 1287
 - Ministerial Conferences 1287
 - structure and organisation 1287
 - Taiwan (Taipei) and 235
 - Trade in Goods Council 1287
 - TRIPS Council 1287
 - website 1339
- Yamoussoukro Accord (1991) 1277
- Yemen Arab Republic/People's Democratic Republic of Yemen
 - UN membership 985
 - unification (1990) 963–4

- Yugoslavia (FRY)
 - arms sanctions (UNC 41) 1245, 1246, 1257, 1269, 1279
 - designation as (Dayton Agreement) 284 n105
 - ethnic cleansing 316
 - Framework Convention for the Protection of National Minorities (1994) and 367 n141
 - human rights in 982
 - ICJ, standing 963, 1073–4
 - Kosovo, sovereignty and territorial title 233
 - redesignation as Serbia (2006) 963, 1211
 - as successor to SFRY 209–10, 962–3, 981
 - UN membership 210, 963, 985
 - Yugoslavia, International Criminal Tribunal for the Former (ICTY):
 - see* ICTY
 - Yugoslavia (SFRY)
 - Racial Discrimination Committee and 312
 - UDHR and 278–9
 - Yugoslavia (SFRY), dissolution and succession 36, 198, 209–10
 - ACY Opinion No. 1 198, 210, 448
 - ACY Opinion No. 2 291, 1005
 - ACY Opinion No. 8 210
 - ACY Opinion No. 11 454 n34
 - ACY Opinion No. 13 958, 991–2
 - ACY Opinion No. 14 986–91
 - ACY Opinion No. 18 450
 - collective use of force other than under Chapter VII 1257–60
 - continuity of state and 209–10, 960, 962–3, 981
 - date 959–60, 962
 - economic sanctions as enforcement measures (UNC 41) 210, 1245–6
 - EU Declaration on recognition of Yugoslav Republics 452, 465 n88
 - EU Guidelines (1991) and 207, 451–2
 - maritime blockade 1275 n350
 - nationality and 1008
 - recognition of successor states 451–3
 - SC resolutions 210, 963
 - as threat to the peace (SC resolution 713 (1991)) 1237–8
 - uti possidetis* principle and 527–8, 968 n68
 - Yugoslav Agreement on Succession Issues (2001) 989, 991, 992 n192, 993, 996, 1000
- Zaire
- see also* Congo, Democratic Republic of
 - Bogotá Declaration (1976) 552
 - seabed resources 628
 - UNHRC and 315 n271
- Zambia, treaty succession and 958 n6
- Zimbabwe, judicial independence 393
- Zionism, racial discrimination, whether 395 n298
- Zouche, Richard 25